# EDB Postgres AI for WarehousePG

Version 6.27.4

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Built at 2026-09-18T20:08:45

1 EDB Postgres AI for WarehousePG 15
2 WarehousePG 6.x release notes 16
WarehousePG 6.x release notes 17
3 Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG 19
3.1 Platform Requirements 20
3.2 Estimating Storage Capacity 28
3.3 Configuring Your Systems 30
3.4 Installing WarehousePG 43
3.5 Creating the Data Storage Areas 46
3.6 Validating Your Systems 48
3.7 Initializing WarehousePG 50
3.8 Installing additional modules 56
3.8.1 Installing procedural languages 57
3.8.2 Installing external components 58
3.9 Installing Optional Extensions 59
3.9.1 Platform Extension Framework (PXF) 60
3.10 Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings 61
3.11 Enabling iptables (Optional) 66
3.12 Installation Management Utilities 69
3.13 Example Ansible Playbook 70
3.14 WarehousePG Environment Variables 72
3.15 Procedural Language, Machine Learning, and Geospatial Extensions 75
3.16 Migrating WarehousePG from Enterprise Linux 7 to 8 or 9 76
3.17 Performing a minor upgrade 84
3.18 Upgrading from an Earlier WarehousePG 6 Release 89
4 WarehousePG Administrator Guide 92
4.1 WarehousePG Concepts 93
4.1.1 About Redundancy and Failover in WarehousePG 94
4.1.2 About Parallel Data Loading 97
4.1.3 About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG 98
4.1.3.1 Example of Managing Transaction IDs 103
4.1.4 About Database Statistics in WarehousePG 106
4.1.5 About Management and Monitoring Utilities 112
4.1.6 About the WarehousePG Architecture 113
4.2 Managing WarehousePG 122
4.2.1 About the WarehousePG Release Version Number 123
4.2.2 Starting and Stopping WarehousePG 124
4.2.3 Accessing the Database 127
4.2.3.1 Establishing a Database Session 128
4.2.3.2 Supported Client Applications 129
4.2.3.3 WarehousePG Client Applications 130
4.2.3.4 Connecting with psql 131
4.2.3.5 Using the PgBouncer Connection Pooler 132
4.2.3.6 Database Application Interfaces 138
4.2.3.7 Troubleshooting Connection Problems 139
4.2.4 Configuring WarehousePG 140
4.2.4.1 About WarehousePG Coordinator and Local Parameters 141
4.2.4.2 Configuration Parameter Categories 142

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved. 

4.2.4.3 Setting Configuration Parameters 143
4.2.4.3.1 Setting a Local Configuration Parameter 144
4.2.4.3.2 Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter 145
4.2.4.3.2.1 Setting Parameters at the System Level 146
4.2.4.3.2.2 Setting Parameters at the Database Level 147
4.2.4.3.2.3 Setting Parameters at the Role Level 148
4.2.4.3.2.4 Setting Parameters in a Session 149
4.2.4.4 Viewing Server Configuration Parameter Settings 150
4.2.5 Enabling Compression 151
4.2.6 Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect 152
4.2.7 Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features 155
4.2.7.1 Overview of WarehousePG High Availability 156
4.2.7.2 Enabling Mirroring in WarehousePG 159
4.2.7.2.1 Enabling Coordinator Mirroring 160
4.2.7.2.2 Enabling Segment Mirroring 161
4.2.7.3 How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment 162
4.2.7.4 Understanding Segment Recovery 164
4.2.7.5 Recovering from Segment Failures 167
4.2.7.6 Recovering a Failed Coordinator 171
4.2.7.7 Checking for Failed Segments 172
4.2.7.8 Overview of Coordinator Mirroring 173
4.2.7.9 Overview of Segment Mirroring 175
4.2.7.10 Restoring coordinator Mirroring After a Recovery 178
4.2.8 Backing Up and Restoring Databases 180
4.2.9 Expanding a WarehousePG System 182
4.2.9.1 System Expansion Overview 183
4.2.9.2 Planning WarehousePG System Expansion 185
4.2.9.3 Preparing and Adding Hosts 189
4.2.9.4 Initializing New Segments 192
4.2.9.5 Redistributing Tables 196
4.2.9.6 Post Expansion Tasks 198
4.2.10 Monitoring WarehousePG 199
4.2.11 Routine System Maintenance Tasks 212
4.2.12 Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks 216
4.3 Managing WarehousePG Access 220
4.3.1 Configuring Client Authentication 221
4.3.1.1 Using Kerberos Authentication 227
4.3.1.2 Configuring Kerberos for Linux Clients 233
4.3.1.3 Configuring Kerberos For Windows Clients 236
4.3.1.4 Using LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL 240
4.3.2 Managing Roles and Privileges 242
4.4 Defining Database Objects 249
4.4.1 Creating and Managing Databases 250
4.4.2 Creating and Managing Tablespaces 252
4.4.3 Creating and Managing Schemas 255
4.4.4 Creating and Managing Tables 257
4.4.5 Choosing the Table Storage Model 262
4.4.6 Partitioning Large Tables 272

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.4.7 Creating and Using Sequences 284
4.4.8 Using Indexes in WarehousePG 287
4.4.9 Creating and Managing Views 291
4.4.9.1 Best Practices when Creating Views 292
4.4.9.2 Working with View Dependencies 293
4.4.9.3 About View Storage in WarehousePG 299
4.4.10 Creating and Managing Materialized Views 300
4.5 Inserting, Updating, and Deleting Data 302
4.6 Querying Data 308
4.6.1 About WarehousePG Query Processing 309
4.6.2 About GPORCA 315
4.6.2.1 Overview of GPORCA 316
4.6.2.2 Activating and Deactivating GPORCA 317
4.6.2.3 Collecting Root Partition Statistics 318
4.6.2.4 Considerations when Using GPORCA 320
4.6.2.5 GPORCA Features and Enhancements 322
4.6.2.6 Changed Behavior with GPORCA 326
4.6.2.7 GPORCA Limitations 327
4.6.2.8 Determining the Query Optimizer that is Used 329
4.6.3 Defining Queries 331
4.6.4 WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) 342
4.6.5 Using Functions and Operators 346
4.6.6 Working with JSON Data 353
4.6.7 Working with XML Data 366
4.6.8 Using Full Text Search 378
4.6.8.1 About Full Text Search 379
4.6.8.2 Searching Text in Database Tables 382
4.6.8.3 Controlling Text Search 384
4.6.8.4 Additional Text Search Features 389
4.6.8.5 Text Search Parsers 393
4.6.8.6 Text Search Dictionaries 395
4.6.8.7 Text Search Configuration Example 402
4.6.8.8 Testing and Debugging Text Search 404
4.6.8.9 GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search 409
4.6.8.10 psql Support 410
4.6.8.11 Limitations 413
4.6.9 Query Performance 414
4.6.10 Managing Spill Files Generated by Queries 415
4.6.11 Query Profiling 416
4.6.12 Using WarehousePG MapReduce 420
4.6.13 About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables 427
4.7 Overview of WarehousePG Integrated Analytics 429
4.7.1 Machine Learning and Deep Learning using MADlib 431
4.7.2 Graph Analytics 441
4.7.3 Geospatial Analytics 447
4.7.4 Procedural Languages 454
4.7.4.1 PL/Java Language 455
4.7.4.2 PL/Perl Language 469

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.7.4.3 PL/Python Language 473
4.7.4.4 PL/R Language 484
4.7.4.5 PL/pgSQL Language 490
4.8 Working with External Data 497
4.8.1 Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables 498
4.8.1.1 Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper 499
4.8.2 Defining External Tables 507
4.8.2.1 file:// Protocol 509
4.8.2.2 gpfdist:// Protocol 510
4.8.2.3 gpfdists:// Protocol 511
4.8.2.4 pxf:// Protocol 512
4.8.2.5 s3:// Protocol 513
4.8.2.6 Using a Custom Protocol 523
4.8.2.7 Handling Errors in External Table Data 524
4.8.2.8 Creating and Using External Web Tables 525
4.8.2.9 Examples for Creating External Tables 526
4.8.2.9.1 Example 1—Single gpfdist instance on single-NIC machine 527
4.8.2.9.2 Example 2—Multiple gpfdist instances 528
4.8.2.9.3 Example 3—Multiple gpfdists instances 529
4.8.2.9.4 Example 4—Single gpfdist instance with error logging 530
4.8.2.9.5 Example 5—TEXT Format on a Hadoop Distributed File Server 531
4.8.2.9.6 Example 6—Multiple files in CSV format with header rows 532
4.8.2.9.7 Example 7—Readable External Web Table with Script 533
4.8.2.9.8 Example 8—Writable External Table with gpfdist 534
4.8.2.9.9 Example 9—Writable External Web Table with Script 535
4.8.2.9.10 Example 10—Readable and Writable External Tables with XML Transformations 536
4.8.3 Using the WarehousePG Parallel File Server (gpfdist) 537
4.9 Loading and Unloading Data 541
4.9.1 Loading Data Using an External Table 542
4.9.2 Loading and Writing Non-HDFS Custom Data 543
4.9.2.1 Using a Custom Format 544
4.9.2.1.1 Importing and Exporting Fixed Width Data 545
4.9.2.1.2 Examples of Reading Fixed-Width Data 546
4.9.2.2 Using a Custom Protocol 547
4.9.3 Handling Load Errors 549
4.9.3.1 Define an External Table with Single Row Error Isolation 550
4.9.3.2 Capture Row Formatting Errors and Declare a Reject Limit 551
4.9.3.3 Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log 552
4.9.3.4 Moving Data between Tables 553
4.9.4 Loading Data with gpload 554
4.9.5 Transforming External Data with gpfdist and gpload 556
4.9.6 Loading Data with COPY 566
4.9.7 Running COPY in Single Row Error Isolation Mode 567
4.9.8 Optimizing Data Load and Query Performance 568
4.9.9 Unloading Data from WarehousePG 569
4.9.9.1 Defining a File-Based Writable External Table 570
4.9.9.1.1 Example 1 - WarehousePG file server (gpfdist) 571
4.9.9.1.2 Example 2—Hadoop file server (pxf) 572

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.9.9.2 Defining a Command-Based Writable External Web Table 573
4.9.9.2.1 Deactivating EXECUTE for Web or Writable External Tables 574
4.9.9.3 Unloading Data Using a Writable External Table 575
4.9.9.4 Unloading Data Using COPY 576
4.9.10 Formatting Data Files 577
4.9.10.1 Formatting Rows 578
4.9.10.2 Formatting Columns 579
4.9.10.3 Representing NULL Values 580
4.9.10.4 Escaping 581
4.9.10.4.1 Escaping in Text Formatted Files 582
4.9.10.4.2 Escaping in CSV Formatted Files 583
4.9.10.5 Character Encoding 584
4.9.11 Example Custom Data Access Protocol 585
4.9.11.1 Installing the External Table Protocol 586
4.9.11.1.1 gpextprotocal.c 587
4.10 Managing Performance 592
4.10.1 Defining Database Performance 593
4.10.2 Distribution and Skew 595
4.10.3 Common Causes of Performance Issues 597
4.10.4 WarehousePG Memory Overview 600
4.10.5 Managing Resources 604
4.10.5.1 Using Resource Groups 605
4.10.5.2 Using Resource Queues 620
4.10.6 Investigating a Performance Problem 631
4.11 Backing Up and Restoring Databases 633
5 WarehousePG Best Practices 634
5.1 Best Practices Summary 635
5.2 System Configuration 640
5.3 Schema Design 644
5.4 Memory and Resource Management with Resource Groups 649
5.5 Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues 652
5.6 System Monitoring and Maintenance 655
5.6.1 Updating Statistics with ANALYZE 657
5.6.2 Managing Bloat in a Database 659
5.6.3 Monitoring WarehousePG Log Files 662
5.7 Loading Data 663
5.8 Identifying and Mitigating Heap Table Performance Issues 666
5.9 Security 667
5.10 Encrypting Data and Database Connections 670
5.11 Tuning SQL Queries 678
5.12 High Availability 681
6 WarehousePG Reference Guide 689
6.1 SQL Commands 690
6.1.1 ABORT 701
6.1.2 ALTER AGGREGATE 702
6.1.3 ALTER COLLATION 704
6.1.4 ALTER CONVERSION 706
6.1.5 ALTER DATABASE 708

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved. 

6.1.6 ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES 710
6.1.7 ALTER DOMAIN 713
6.1.8 ALTER EXTENSION 716
6.1.9 ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE 719
6.1.10 ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER 721
6.1.11 ALTER FOREIGN TABLE 723
6.1.12 ALTER FUNCTION 727
6.1.13 ALTER GROUP 731
6.1.14 ALTER INDEX 733
6.1.15 ALTER LANGUAGE 735
6.1.16 ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW 736
6.1.17 ALTER OPERATOR 738
6.1.18 ALTER OPERATOR CLASS 740
6.1.19 ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY 742
6.1.20 ALTER PROTOCOL 745
6.1.21 ALTER RESOURCE GROUP 747
6.1.22 ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE 750
6.1.23 ALTER ROLE 753
6.1.24 ALTER SCHEMA 758
6.1.25 ALTER SEQUENCE 759
6.1.26 ALTER SERVER 762
6.1.27 ALTER TABLE 764
6.1.28 ALTER TABLESPACE 777
6.1.29 ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION 779
6.1.30 ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY 781
6.1.31 ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER 783
6.1.32 ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE 784
6.1.33 ALTER TYPE 785
6.1.34 ALTER USER 788
6.1.35 ALTER USER MAPPING 789
6.1.36 ALTER VIEW 791
6.1.37 ANALYZE 793
6.1.38 BEGIN 797
6.1.39 CHECKPOINT 800
6.1.40 CLOSE 801
6.1.41 CLUSTER 803
6.1.42 COMMENT 805
6.1.43 COMMIT 809
6.1.44 COPY 810
6.1.45 CREATE AGGREGATE 820
6.1.46 CREATE CAST 826
6.1.47 CREATE COLLATION 829
6.1.48 CREATE CONVERSION 831
6.1.49 CREATE DATABASE 833
6.1.50 CREATE DOMAIN 836
6.1.51 CREATE EXTENSION 838
6.1.52 CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE 840
6.1.53 CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER 849


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6.1.54 | CREATE FOREIGN TABLE | 851 |
| 6.1.55 | CREATE FUNCTION | 854 |
| 6.1.56 | CREATE GROUP | 864 |
| 6.1.57 | CREATE INDEX | 865 |
| 6.1.58 | CREATE LANGUAGE | 870 |
| 6.1.59 | CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW | 873 |
| 6.1.60 | CREATE OPERATOR | 875 |
| 6.1.61 | CREATE OPERATOR CLASS | 880 |
| 6.1.62 | CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY | 884 |
| 6.1.63 | CREATE PROTOCOL | 885 |
| 6.1.64 | CREATE RESOURCE GROUP | 887 |
| 6.1.65 | CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE | 890 |
| 6.1.66 | CREATE ROLE | 894 |
| 6.1.67 | CREATE RULE | 899 |
| 6.1.68 | CREATE SCHEMA | 902 |
| 6.1.69 | CREATE SEQUENCE | 904 |
| 6.1.70 | CREATE SERVER | 907 |
| 6.1.71 | CREATE TABLE | 909 |
| 6.1.72 | CREATE TABLE AS | 923 |
| 6.1.73 | CREATE TABLESPACE | 927 |
| 6.1.74 | CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION | 930 |
| 6.1.75 | CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY | 932 |
| 6.1.76 | CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER | 934 |
| 6.1.77 | CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE | 936 |
| 6.1.78 | CREATE TYPE | 938 |
| 6.1.79 | CREATE USER | 945 |
| 6.1.80 | CREATE USER MAPPING | 946 |
| 6.1.81 | CREATE VIEW | 947 |
| 6.1.82 | DEALLOCATE | 950 |
| 6.1.83 | DECLARE | 951 |
| 6.1.84 | DELETE | 954 |
| 6.1.85 | DISCARD | 957 |
| 6.1.86 | DO | 958 |
| 6.1.87 | DROP AGGREGATE | 960 |
| 6.1.88 | DROP CAST | 962 |
| 6.1.89 | DROP COLLATION | 964 |
| 6.1.90 | DROP CONVERSION | 965 |
| 6.1.91 | DROP DATABASE | 966 |
| 6.1.92 | DROP DOMAIN | 968 |
| 6.1.93 | DROP EXTENSION | 969 |
| 6.1.94 | DROP EXTERNAL TABLE | 971 |
| 6.1.95 | DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER | 973 |
| 6.1.96 | DROP FOREIGN TABLE | 974 |
| 6.1.97 | DROP FUNCTION | 975 |
| 6.1.98 | DROP GROUP | 977 |
| 6.1.99 | DROP INDEX | 978 |
| 6.1.100 | DROP LANGUAGE | 980 |
| 6.1.101 | DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW | 982 |


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6.1.102 | DROP OPERATOR | 983 |
| 6.1.103 | DROP OPERATOR CLASS | 985 |
| 6.1.104 | DROP OPERATOR FAMILY | 987 |
| 6.1.105 | DROP OWNED | 989 |
| 6.1.106 | DROP PROTOCOL | 991 |
| 6.1.107 | DROP RESOURCE GROUP | 992 |
| 6.1.108 | DROP RESOURCE QUEUE | 994 |
| 6.1.109 | DROP ROLE | 996 |
| 6.1.110 | DROP RULE | 997 |
| 6.1.111 | DROP SCHEMA | 999 |
| 6.1.112 | DROP SEQUENCE | 1000 |
| 6.1.113 | DROP SERVER | 1001 |
| 6.1.114 | DROP TABLE | 1002 |
| 6.1.115 | DROP TABLESPACE | 1004 |
| 6.1.116 | DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION | 1006 |
| 6.1.117 | DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY | 1008 |
| 6.1.118 | DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER | 1010 |
| 6.1.119 | DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE | 1011 |
| 6.1.120 | DROP TYPE | 1012 |
| 6.1.121 | DROP USER | 1013 |
| 6.1.122 | DROP USER MAPPING | 1014 |
| 6.1.123 | DROP VIEW | 1015 |
| 6.1.124 | END | 1016 |
| 6.1.125 | EXECUTE | 1017 |
| 6.1.126 | EXPLAIN | 1018 |
| 6.1.127 | FETCH | 1023 |
| 6.1.128 | GRANT | 1026 |
| 6.1.129 | INSERT | 1032 |
| 6.1.130 | LISTEN | 1035 |
| 6.1.131 | LOAD | 1037 |
| 6.1.132 | LOCK | 1038 |
| 6.1.133 | MOVE | 1041 |
| 6.1.134 | NOTIFY | 1043 |
| 6.1.135 | PREPARE | 1045 |
| 6.1.136 | REASSIGN OWNED | 1047 |
| 6.1.137 | REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW | 1049 |
| 6.1.138 | REINDEX | 1051 |
| 6.1.139 | RELEASE SAVEPOINT | 1053 |
| 6.1.140 | RESET | 1054 |
| 6.1.141 | RETRIEVE | 1055 |
| 6.1.142 | REVOKE | 1057 |
| 6.1.143 | ROLLBACK | 1060 |
| 6.1.144 | ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT | 1061 |
| 6.1.145 | SAVEPOINT | 1063 |
| 6.1.146 | SELECT | 1065 |
| 6.1.147 | SELECT INTO | 1082 |
| 6.1.148 | SET | 1084 |
| 6.1.149 | SET CONSTRAINTS | 1086 |


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.1.150 SET ROLE 1087
6.1.151 SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION 1089
6.1.152 SET TRANSACTION 1091
6.1.153 SHOW 1094
6.1.154 START TRANSACTION 1096
6.1.155 TRUNCATE 1098
6.1.156 UNLISTEN 1100
6.1.157 UPDATE 1102
6.1.158 VACUUM 1106
6.1.159 VALUES 1109
6.1.160 ALTER RULE 1112
6.1.161 ALTER TRIGGER 1113
6.1.162 CREATE TRIGGER 1115
6.1.163 DROP TRIGGER 1117
6.1.164 SQL Syntax Summary 1119
6.2 Data Types 1164
6.2.1 Date/Time Types 1166
6.2.2 Pseudo-Types 1174
6.2.3 Text Search Data Types 1176
6.2.4 Range Types 1179
6.3 Summary of Built-in Functions 1183
6.4 Additional modules 1210
6.4.1 Procedural languages 1211
6.4.2 External components 1212
6.5 Character Set Support 1213
6.6 Server Configuration Parameters 1216
6.6.1 Parameter Categories 1217
6.6.2 Configuration Parameters 1227
6.7 WarehousePG Utility Guide 1301
6.7.1 About the WarehousePG utilities 1302
6.7.2 Additional Supplied Programs 1303
6.7.3 Utility Reference 1304
6.7.3.1 analyzedb 1305
6.7.3.2 clusterdb 1310
6.7.3.3 createdb 1312
6.7.3.4 createuser 1315
6.7.3.5 dropdb 1319
6.7.3.6 dropuser 1321
6.7.3.7 gpactivatestandby 1323
6.7.3.8 gpaddmirrors 1325
6.7.3.9 gpcheckcat 1329
6.7.3.10 gpcheckperf 1333
6.7.3.11 gpconfig 1336
6.7.3.12 gpdeletesystem 1339
6.7.3.13 gpexpand 1341
6.7.3.14 gpfdist 1345
6.7.3.15 gpinitstandby 1350
6.7.3.16 gpinitsystem 1353

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.7.3.17 gpload 1361
6.7.3.18 gplogfilter 1373
6.7.3.19 gpmapreduce 1376
6.7.3.20 gpmapreduce.yaml 1378
6.7.3.21 gpmemreport 1386
6.7.3.22 gpmemwatcher 1388
6.7.3.23 gpmovemirrors 1390
6.7.3.24 gprecoverseg 1392
6.7.3.25 gpreload 1397
6.7.3.26 gpscp 1399
6.7.3.27 gpssh 1401
6.7.3.28 gpssh-exkeys 1404
6.7.3.29 gpstart 1407
6.7.3.30 gpstate 1410
6.7.3.31 gpstop 1415
6.7.3.32 pg_config 1418
6.7.3.33 pg_dump 1421
6.7.3.34 pg_dumpall 1429
6.7.3.35 pg_restore 1434
6.7.3.36 pgbouncer 1440
6.7.3.37 pgbouncer-admin 1442
6.7.3.38 pgbouncer.ini 1450
6.7.3.39 psql 1466
6.7.3.40 reindexdb 1489
6.7.3.41 vacuumdb 1492
6.8 System Catalogs 1495
6.8.1 System Catalogs Definitions 1496
6.8.1.1 foreign_data_wrapper_options 1500
6.8.1.2 foreign_data_wrappers 1501
6.8.1.3 foreign_server_options 1502
6.8.1.4 foreign_servers 1503
6.8.1.5 foreign_table_options 1504
6.8.1.6 foreign_tables 1505
6.8.1.7 gp_configuration_history 1506
6.8.1.8 gp_distributed_log 1507
6.8.1.9 gp_distributed_xacts 1508
6.8.1.10 gp_distribution_policy 1509
6.8.1.11 gpexpand.expansion_progress 1510
6.8.1.12 gp_endpoints 1511
6.8.1.13 gpexpand.status 1512
6.8.1.14 gpexpand.status_detail 1513
6.8.1.15 gp_fastsequence 1514
6.8.1.16 gp_id 1515
6.8.1.17 gp_pgdatabase 1516
6.8.1.18 gp_resgroup_config 1517
6.8.1.19 gp_resgroup_status 1518
6.8.1.20 gp_resgroup_status_per_host 1519
6.8.1.21 gp_resgroup_status_per_segment 1520

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6.8.1.22 | gp_resqueue_status | 1521 |
| 6.8.1.23 | gp_segment_configuration | 1522 |
| 6.8.1.24 | gp_segment_endpoints | 1523 |
| 6.8.1.25 | gp_session_endpoints | 1524 |
| 6.8.1.26 | gp_stat_replication | 1525 |
| 6.8.1.27 | gp_transaction_log | 1526 |
| 6.8.1.28 | gp_version_at_initdb | 1527 |
| 6.8.1.29 | pg_aggregate | 1528 |
| 6.8.1.30 | pg_am | 1530 |
| 6.8.1.31 | pg_amop | 1531 |
| 6.8.1.32 | pg_amproc | 1532 |
| 6.8.1.33 | pg_appendonly | 1533 |
| 6.8.1.34 | pg_attrdef | 1534 |
| 6.8.1.35 | pg_attribute | 1535 |
| 6.8.1.36 | pg_attribute_encoding | 1537 |
| 6.8.1.37 | pg_auth_members | 1538 |
| 6.8.1.38 | pg_authid | 1539 |
| 6.8.1.39 | pg_available_extension_versions | 1540 |
| 6.8.1.40 | pg_available_extensions | 1541 |
| 6.8.1.41 | pg_cast | 1542 |
| 6.8.1.42 | pg_class | 1543 |
| 6.8.1.43 | pg_compression | 1545 |
| 6.8.1.44 | pg_constraint | 1546 |
| 6.8.1.45 | pg_conversion | 1548 |
| 6.8.1.46 | pg_cursors | 1549 |
| 6.8.1.47 | pg_database | 1550 |
| 6.8.1.48 | pg_db_role_setting | 1551 |
| 6.8.1.49 | pg_depend | 1552 |
| 6.8.1.50 | pg_description | 1553 |
| 6.8.1.51 | pg_enum | 1554 |
| 6.8.1.52 | pg_extension | 1555 |
| 6.8.1.53 | pg_exttable | 1556 |
| 6.8.1.54 | pg_foreign_data_wrapper | 1557 |
| 6.8.1.55 | pg_foreign_server | 1558 |
| 6.8.1.56 | pg_foreign_table | 1559 |
| 6.8.1.57 | pg_index | 1560 |
| 6.8.1.58 | pg_inherits | 1561 |
| 6.8.1.59 | pg_language | 1562 |
| 6.8.1.60 | pg_largeobject | 1563 |
| 6.8.1.61 | pg_locks | 1564 |
| 6.8.1.62 | pg_matviews | 1565 |
| 6.8.1.63 | pg_max_external_files | 1566 |
| 6.8.1.64 | pg_namespace | 1567 |
| 6.8.1.65 | pg_opclass | 1568 |
| 6.8.1.66 | pg_operator | 1569 |
| 6.8.1.67 | pg_opfamily | 1570 |
| 6.8.1.68 | pg_partition | 1571 |
| 6.8.1.69 | pg_partition_columns | 1572 |


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.8.1.70 pg_partition_encoding 1573
6.8.1.71 pg_partition_rule 1574
6.8.1.72 pg_partition_templates 1575
6.8.1.73 pg_partitions 1576
6.8.1.74 pg_pltemplate 1577
6.8.1.75 pg_proc 1578
6.8.1.76 pg_resgroup 1580
6.8.1.77 pg_resgroupcapability 1581
6.8.1.78 pg_resourcetype 1582
6.8.1.79 pg_resqueue 1583
6.8.1.80 pg_resqueue_attributes 1584
6.8.1.81 pg_resqueuecapability 1585
6.8.1.82 pg_rewrite 1586
6.8.1.83 pg_roles 1587
6.8.1.84 pg_rules 1588
6.8.1.85 pg_shdepend 1589
6.8.1.86 pg_shdescription 1590
6.8.1.87 pg_stat_activity 1591
6.8.1.88 pg_stat_all_indexes 1593
6.8.1.89 pg_stat_all_tables 1595
6.8.1.90 pg_stat_last_operation 1597
6.8.1.91 pg_stat_last_shoperation 1598
6.8.1.92 pg_stat_operations 1599
6.8.1.93 pg_stat_partition_operations 1600
6.8.1.94 pg_stat_replication 1601
6.8.1.95 pg_statistic 1602
6.8.1.96 pg_stat_resqueues 1603
6.8.1.97 pg_tablespace 1604
6.8.1.98 pg_trigger 1605
6.8.1.99 pg_type 1606
6.8.1.100 pg_type_encoding 1609
6.8.1.101 pg_user_mapping 1610
6.8.1.102 pg_user_mappings 1611
6.8.1.103 user_mapping_options 1612
6.8.1.104 user_mappings 1613
6.8.1.105 gp_global_sequence 1614
6.8.1.106 gp_stat_archiver 1615
6.8.1.107 gp_suboverflowed_backend 1616
6.8.2 System Tables 1617
6.8.3 System Views 1618
6.9 The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema 1619
6.10 SQL Features, Reserved and Key Words, and Compliance 1640
6.10.1 Summary of WarehousePG Features 1641
6.10.2 Reserved Identifiers and SQL Key Words 1650
6.10.3 SQL 2008 Optional Feature Compliance 1662
6.11 Objects Removed in WarehousePG 6 1678
6.12 Server Programmatic Interfaces 1686
6.12.1 WarehousePG Partner Connector API 1687

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.12.2 Developing a Background Worker Process 1704
6.13 The gpperfmon Database 1706
6.13.1 database_* 1709
6.13.2 diskspace_* 1710
6.13.3 interfacestats* 1711
6.13.4 logalert* 1712
6.13.5 queries_* 1713
6.13.6 segment_* 1715
6.13.7 socketstats* 1716
6.13.8 system_* 1717
6.13.9 dynamic_memory_info 1718
6.13.10 memory_info 1719
6.14 Server Configuration Parameter Changes from WarehousePG 5 to 6 1720
7 About this Documentation 1722
8 PXF Upgrade and Migration 1723
8.1 Upgrading PXF When You Upgrade from a Previous WarehousePG 6.x Version 1724
9 WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide 1726
9.1 WarehousePG Ports and Protocols 1727
9.2 Auditing 1729
9.3 Configuring Client Authentication 1732
9.4 Configuring Database Authorization 1744
9.5 Security Best Practices 1751
9.6 Encrypting Data and Database Connections 1755
9.7 Securing the Database 1765

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 1 EDB Postgres AI for WarehousePG

## Introducing WarehousePG

WarehousePG is a new Apache 2-licensed fork of the formerly open source Greenplum Database. It offers binary compatibility with the legacy Greenplum versions most widely deployed by customers (6.x and 7.x) — plus net-new functionality and integrations.

### Key features

- Petabytes scale with high-speed /-concurrency performance, via MPP Cluster topology with a Postgres fork based on PG 12.12.
- A Master (coordinator) for query optimization and parallel plan and distribution
- Multiple segments (workers) for parallel execution of queries with each segment being a Postgres instance.
- High availability with standbys for the Master and mirrors for the segments.
- High-speed interconnections for continuous data processing pipelining.

### Support

For business-critical workloads, EDB Postgres AI provides support for WarehousePG. See the EDB Postgres AI support for Greenplum workloads page for more information.

### Documentation

This section is adapted from the WarehousePG v7.x documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 2 WarehousePG 6.x release notes

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# WarehousePG 6.x release notes

The WarehousePG documentation describes the latest version of WarehousePG 6.

| Version | Release date |
|---|---|
| 6.27.5-WHPG | 10 June 2026 |
| 6.27.4-WHPG | 7 April 2026 |
| 6.27.3-WHPG | 28 January 2026 |
| 6.27.2-WHPG | 8 December 2025 |

## WarehousePG 6.27.5-WHPG

Released: 10 June 2026

WarehousePG 6.27.5-WHPG includes the following bug fixes and other changes:

### Bug fixes

- Fixed `GPHOME_CLIENTS` resolution in `greenplum_clients_path.sh` to correctly locate client binaries.

### Security

- Hardened multiple modules against integer overflow vulnerabilities for CVE-2026-6473, including ltree, `ts_headline`, intarray, the regex engine, `unicode_normalize`, `formatting.c`, `array_agg`, and the hstore PL/Perl and PL/Python extensions.
- Fixed a format-string vulnerability in `timeofday()` for CVE-2026-6474 where a crafted time zone setting could abuse the `pg_strftime()` `%Z` format specifier to cause crashes or corrupt server memory.
- Fixed a path traversal vulnerability in `pg_rewind` for CVE-2026-6475 where paths received from a rogue endpoint could overwrite files outside the target directory.
- Fixed a buffer overrun in the frontend large object interface (`libpq`) for CVE-2026-6477 where `PQfn()` could write beyond the end of the result buffer when the server returned more data than requested.
- Added timing-safe comparisons for secret material in all authentication paths for CVE-2026-6478, covering SCRAM, MD5, RADIUS, and plain authentication methods.
- Fixed a stack overflow vulnerability in `ProcessStartupPacket()` for CVE-2026-6479 where a malicious client could alternate SSL and GSS negotiation requests indefinitely to exhaust server stack space.
- Fixed an SQL injection and buffer overrun vulnerability in the `refint` contrib module for CVE-2026-6637.

## WarehousePG 6.27.4-WHPG

Released: 7 April 2026

WarehousePG 6.27.4-WHPG includes the following new features, enhancements, bug fixes, and other changes:

### Bug fixes

- Resolved critical stability issues in the ORCA optimizer including fixes for segmentation faults and infinite recursion.
- Fixed an issue where unnecessary motion was created on query executor slices.
- Corrected behavior and stability when running the `execute on initplan` function.
- Removed role assertions in `get_ao_compression_ratio()` and `aorow_compression_ratio_internal` to allow the function to execute on query executors, enabling the use of `gp_dist_random()` to retrieve compression statistics from all segments.

### Security

- Fixed a heap buffer overflow vulnerability in libpq for CVE-2025-12818 by hardening memory allocation against integer overflows. This change implements stricter `size_t` calculations for large, untrusted inputs to ensure allocated buffers are sufficient for their contents.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### WarehousePG 6.27.3-WHPG

Released: 28 January 2026

WarehousePG 6.27.3-WHPG includes the following new features, enhancements, bug fixes, and other changes:

#### Bug fixes

- Made the `ReScanForeignScan` callback optional for Foreign Data Wrappers (FDWs) to simplify the implementation and improve compatibility for external data sources.
- Removed the `GUC_NO_SHOW_ALL` flag for the `archive_timeout` configuration parameter to ensure the setting is correctly displayed in all system configuration views.

### WarehousePG 6.27.2-WHPG

Released: 8 December 2025

WarehousePG 6.27.2-WHPG includes the following new features, enhancements, bug fixes, and other changes:

#### Enhancements

- Restored the functionality of `greenplum-abi-tests` to ensure ongoing development stability and interface compatibility.
- Adjusted `ftsprobe` logging to use `WARNING` severity for failure and retry exhaustion events, ensuring these critical messages are always visible regardless of `gp_log_fts` settings.

#### Bug fixes

- Resolved mirror promotion failures and fixed assertion failures caused by the incorrect application of the `fmtId()` function.
- Improved error detection reliability in `status_check` cases and implemented checks for MergeAppend nodes in the share input mutator.
- Optimized internal performance by transitioning to `LWLocks` for instrumentation headers and using pipes instead of sockets for immediate poll termination.
- Fixed an issue where tables with corrupted `reloptions` could not be dropped due to compression validation errors being incorrectly raised during non-validation code paths.

#### Security

- Included a fix for CVE-2025-1094.
- Included a fix for CVE-2024-10979.
- Included a fix for CVE-2024-10977.
- Included a fix for CVE-2024-0985.
- Included a fix for CVE-2020-14343.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 3 Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

Information about installing, configuring, and upgrading WarehousePG software and configuring WarehousePG host machines.

- Platform Requirements
  This topic describes the WarehousePG 6 platform and operating system software requirements.
- Estimating Storage Capacity
  To estimate how much data your WarehousePG cluster can accommodate, use these measurements as guidelines. Also keep in mind that you may want to have extra space for landing backup files and data load files on each segment host.
- Configure Operating System
  Describes how to prepare your operating system environment for WarehousePG software installation.
- Installing the WarehousePG Software
  Describes how to install the WarehousePG software binaries on all of the hosts that will comprise your WarehousePG cluster, how to enable passwordless SSH for the `gpadmin` user, and how to verify the installation.
- Creating the Data Storage Areas
  Describes how to create the directory locations where WarehousePG data is stored for each coordinator, standby, and segment instance.
- Validating Your Systems
  Validate your hardware and network performance.
- Initializing WarehousePG
  Describes how to initialize a WarehousePG database system.
- Installing Additional Modules
  Installation guides for extensions, procedural languages, and external components that require a separate package install, as well as instructions for enabling bundled modules.
- Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings
  Describes the available timezone and localization features of WarehousePG.
- Performing a minor upgrade
  Explains how to upgrade to a newer version of WarehousePG 6.x.
- Upgrading to WarehousePG 6
  This topic identifies the upgrade paths for upgrading a WarehousePG 6.x release to a newer 6.x release.
- Migrating WarehousePG from Enterprise Linux 7 to 8 or 9 This topic describes how to migrate a WarehousePG installation from Enterprise Linux (EL) version 7 to Enterprise Linux 8 or Enterprise Linux 9, while maintaining your existing version of WarehousePG.
- Enabling iptables (Optional)
  On Linux systems, you can configure and enable the `iptables` firewall to work with WarehousePG.
- Installation Management Utilities
  References for the command-line management utilities used to install and initialize a WarehousePG cluster.
- WarehousePG Environment Variables
  Reference of the environment variables to set for WarehousePG.
- Example Ansible Playbook
  A sample Ansible playbook to install a WarehousePG software release onto the hosts that will comprise a WarehousePG cluster.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.1 Platform Requirements

This topic describes the WarehousePG 6 platform and operating system software requirements for deploying the software to on-premise hardware, or to public cloud services such as AWS, GCP, or Azure.

### Operating System Requirements

WarehousePG 6 runs on the following operating system platforms:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 64-bit 9.x
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 64-bit 8.7 or later (As of WarehousePG version 6.20. See the following Note)
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 64-bit 7.x (See the following Note.)
- Rocky Linux 9.x
- Rocky Linux 8.7 or later
- CentOS 64-bit 7.x
- Oracle Linux 64-bit 7, using the Red Hat Compatible Kernel (RHCK)

> **Note** If you use endpoint security software on your WarehousePG hosts, it may affect your database performance and stability. SeeAbout Endpoint Security Sofware for more information.

> **Caution** A kernel issue in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.5 and 8.6 can cause I/O freezes and synchronization problems with XFS filesystems. This issue is fixed in RHEL 8.7. See RHEL8: xfs_buf deadlock between inode deletion and block allocation.

> **Caution** For WarehousePG that is installed on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x or CentOS 7.x prior to 7.3, an operating system issue might cause WarehousePG that is running large workloads to hang in the workload. The WarehousePG issue is caused by Linux kernel bugs.

RHEL 7.3 and CentOS 7.3 resolves the issue.

> **Caution** A kernel issue in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.5 and 8.6 can cause I/O freezes and synchronization problems with XFS filesystems. This issue is fixed in RHEL 8.7. See RHEL8: xfs_buf deadlock between inode deletion and block allocation.

WarehousePG server supports TLS version 1.2 and TLS version 1.3 on RHEL/CentOS systems.

#### Software Dependencies

WarehousePG 6 requires the following software packages on RHEL, CentOS, and Rocky Linux systems, which are installed automatically as dependencies when you install the WarehousePG RPM package:

- apr
- apr-util
- bash
- bzip2
- curl
- compat-openssl11 (RHEL/Rocky 9)
- iproute
- krb5-devel
- libcgroup-tools (RHEL/CentOS 7 and RHEL/Rocky 8)
- libcurl
- libevent (RHEL/CentOS 7 and RHEL/Rocky 8)
- libuuid
- libxml2
- libyaml
- libzstd (RHEL/Rocky 9)
- less
- net-tools (Debian/Fedora)
- openldap
- openssh
- openssh-client
- openssh-server
- openssl
- openssl-libs (RHEL/CentOS 7 and RHEL/Rocky 8)
- perl
- python3 (RHEL/Rocky 9)
- readline
- rsync
- sed

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- tar
- which
- zip
- zlib

WarehousePG 6 client software requires these operating system packages:

- apr
- bzip2
- libedit
- libyaml
- libevent (RHEL/CentOS 7 and RHEL/Rocky 8)
- openssh
- zlib

WarehousePG 6 uses Python 2.7.18, which is included with the product installation (and not installed as a package dependency).

> **Important** SSL is supported only on the WarehousePG coordinator host system. It cannot be used on the segment host systems.

> **Important** For all WarehousePG host systems, if SELinux is enabled in `Enforcing` mode then the WarehousePG process and users can operate successfully in the default `Unconfined` context. If increased confinement is required, then you must configure SELinux contexts, policies, and domains based on your security requirements, and test your configuration to ensure there is no functionality or performance impact to WarehousePG. Similarly, you should either deactivate or configure firewall software as needed to allow communication between WarehousePG hosts. See Deactivate or Configure SELinux.

#### Java

WarehousePG 6 supports these Java versions for PL/Java and PXF:

- Open JDK 8 or Open JDK 11, available from AdoptOpenJDK
- Oracle JDK 8 or Oracle JDK 11

### WarehousePG Tools and Extensions Compatibility

#### Extensions

This table lists the versions of the WarehousePG Extensions that are compatible with this release of WarehousePG 6.

#### WarehousePG Extensions Compatibility

| Component | Package Version | Additional Information |
|---|---|---|
| PL/Java | 2.0.4 | Supports Java 8 and 11. |
| PL/R | 3.0.3 | R 3.3.3 |
| MADlib Machine Learning | 2.1, 2.0, 1.21, 1.20, 1.19, 1.18, 1.17, 1.16 | Support matrix at MADlib FAQ. |
| PostGIS Spatial and Geographic Objects | 2.5.4, 2.1.5 | |

For information about the Oracle Compatibility Functions, see Oracle Compatibility Functions.

These WarehousePG extensions are installed with WarehousePG

- Fuzzy String Match Extension
- PL/Python Extension
- pgcrypto Extension

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Data Connectors**

- WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) - PXF provides access to Hadoop, object store, and SQL external data stores. Refer to PXF for WarehousePG for PXF configuration and usage information.
- WarehousePG Connector for Apache Spark v1.6.2 - The WarehousePG Connector for Apache Spark supports high speed, parallel data transfer between WarehousePG and an Apache Spark cluster using Spark's Scala API.
- WarehousePG Connector for Apache NiFi v1.0.0 - The WarehousePG Connector for Apache NiFi enables you to set up a NiFi dataflow to load record-oriented data from any source into WarehousePG.

> **Note** WarehousePG 6 does not support the ODBC driver for Cognos Analytics V11.

### Hardware Requirements

The following table lists minimum recommended specifications for hardware servers intended to support WarehousePG on Linux systems in a production environment. All host servers in your WarehousePG cluster must have the same hardware and software configuration. WarehousePG also provides hardware build guides for its certified hardware platforms. It is recommended that you work with a WarehousePG clusters Engineer to review your anticipated environment to ensure an appropriate hardware configuration for WarehousePG.

| Requirement | Specification |
|---|---|
| Minimum CPU | Any x86_64 compatible CPU |
| Minimum Memory | 16 GB RAM per server |
| Disk Space Requirements | - 150MB per host for WarehousePG installation<br>- Approximately 300MB per segment instance for metadata<br>- Cap disk capacity at 70% full to accommodate temporary files and prevent performance degradation |
| Network Requirements | - 10 Gigabit Ethernet within the array<br>- NIC bonding is recommended when multiple interfaces are present<br>- WarehousePG can use either IPV4 or IPV6 protocols. |

### Storage

The only file system supported for running WarehousePG is the XFS file system.

WarehousePG is supported on network or shared storage if the shared storage is presented as a block device to the servers running WarehousePG and the XFS file system is mounted on the block device. Network file systems are *not* supported. When using network or shared storage, WarehousePG mirroring must be used in the same way as with local storage, and no modifications may be made to the mirroring scheme or the recovery scheme of the segments.

Other features of the shared storage such as de-duplication and/or replication are not directly supported by WarehousePG, but may be used with support of the storage vendor as long as they do not interfere with the expected operation of WarehousePG.

WarehousePG can be deployed to virtualized systems only if the storage is presented as block devices and the XFS file system is mounted for the storage of the segment directories.

WarehousePG is supported on Amazon Web Services (AWS) servers using either Amazon instance store (Amazon uses the volume names `ephemeral[0-23]`) or Amazon Elastic Block Store (Amazon EBS) storage. If using Amazon EBS storage the storage should be RAID of Amazon EBS volumes and mounted with the XFS file system for it to be a supported configuration.

### Hadoop Distributions

WarehousePG provides access to HDFS with the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF).

PXF can use Cloudera, Hortonworks Data Platform, MapR, and generic Apache Hadoop distributions. PXF bundles all of the JAR files on which it depends, including the following Hadoop libraries:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| PXF Version | Hadoop Version | Hive Server Version | HBase Server Version |
|---|---|---|---|
| 6.x, 5.15.x, 5.14.0, 5.13.0, 5.12.0, 5.11.1, 5.10.1 | 2.x, 3.1+ | 1.x, 2.x, 3.1+ | 1.3.2 |
| 5.8.2 | 2.x | 1.x | 1.3.2 |
| 5.8.1 | 2.x | 1.x | 1.3.2 |

> **Note** If you plan to access JSON format data stored in a Cloudera Hadoop cluster, PXF requires a Cloudera version 5.8 or later Hadoop distribution.

## Public Cloud Requirements

### Operating System

The operating system parameters for cloud deployments are the same as on-premise with a few modifications. Use the WarehousePG Installation Guide for reference. Additional changes are as follows:

Add the following line to `sysctl.conf`:

```
net.ipv4.ip_local_reserved_ports=65330
```

AWS requires loading network drivers and also altering the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use the faster networking capabilities. More information on this is provided in the AWS documentation.

### Storage

The disk settings for cloud deployments are the same as on-premise with a few modifications. Use the WarehousePG Installation Guide for reference. Additional changes are as follows:

- Mount options:

  ```
  rw,noatime,nobarrier,nodev,inode64
  ```

  > **Note** The `nobarrier` option is not supported on RHEL 8 nodes.

- Use mq-deadline instead of the deadline scheduler for the R5 series instance type in AWS
- Use a swap disk per VM (32GB size works well)

### Amazon Web Services (AWS)

#### Networking and Security Groups

Deploy all coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment instances in the same virtual private cloud (VPC), and use each instance's private IP address, not its public IP address, for inter-node communication and connectivity tests. A security group that only allows inbound SSH from a jump host isn't enough for the WarehousePG interconnect traffic between instances. Add a dedicated security group with a self-referencing inbound rule that allows all traffic from other instances in the same group, and apply it to every coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment instance.

#### Virtual Machine Type

AWS provides a wide variety of virtual machine types and sizes to address virtually every use case. Testing in AWS has found that the optimal instance types for WarehousePG are "Memory Optimized". These provide the ideal balance of Price, Memory, Network, and Storage throughput, and Compute capabilities.

Price, Memory, and number of cores typically increase in a linear fashion, but the network speed and disk throughput limits do not. You may be tempted to use the largest instance type to get the highest network and disk speed possible per VM, but better overall performance for the same spend on compute resources can be obtained by using more VMs that are smaller in size.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Compute

AWS uses Hyperthreading when reporting the number of vCPUs, therefore 2 vCPUs equate to 1 core. The processor types are frequently getting faster so using the latest instance type will be not only faster, but usually less expensive. For example, the R5 series provides faster cores at a lower cost compared to R4.

#### Memory

This variable is pretty simple. WarehousePG needs at least 8GB of RAM per segment process to work optimally. More RAM per segment helps with concurrency and also helps hide disk performance deficiencies.

#### Network

AWS provides 25Gbit network performance on the largest instance types, but the network is typically not the bottleneck in AWS. The "up to 10Gbit" network is sufficient in AWS.

Installing network drivers in the VM is also required in AWS, and depends on the instance type. Some instance types use an Intel driver while others use an Amazon ENA driver. Loading the driver requires modifying the machine image (AMI) to take advantage of the driver.

### Storage

#### Elastic Block Storage (EBS)

The AWS default disk type is General Performance (GP2) which is ideal for IOP dependent applications. GP2 uses SSD disks and relative to other disk types in AWS, is expensive. The operating system and swap volumes are ideal for GP2 disks because of the size and higher random I/O needs.

Throughput Optimized Disks (ST1) are a disk type designed for high throughput needs such as WarehousePG. These disks are based on HDD rather than SSD, and are less expensive than GP2. Use this disk type for the optimal performance of loading and querying data in AWS.

Cold Storage (SC1) provides the best value for EBS storage in AWS. Using multiple 2TB or larger disks provides enough disk throughput to reach the throughput limit of many different instance types. Therefore, it is possible to reach the throughput limit of a VM by using SC1 disks.

EBS storage is durable so data is not lost when a virtual machine is stopped. EBS also provides infrastructure snapshot capabilities that can be used to create volume backups. These snapshots can be copied to different regions to provide a disaster recovery solution. The WarehousePG Cloud utility `gpsnap`, available in the AWS Cloud Marketplace, automates backup, restore, delete, and copy functions using EBS snapshots.

Storage can be grown in AWS with "gpgrow". This tool is included with the WarehousePG on AWS deployment and allows you to grow the storage independently of compute. This is an online operation in AWS too.

#### Ephemeral

Ephemeral Storage is directly attached to VMs, but has many drawbacks:

- Data loss when stopping a VM with ephemeral storage
- Encryption is not supported
- No Snapshots
- Same speed can be achieved with EBS storage
- Not recommended

#### AWS Recommendations

####### Coordinator

| Instance Type | Memory | vCPUs | Data Disks |
|---|---|---|---|
| r5.xlarge | 32 | 4 | 1 |
| r5.2xlarge | 64 | 8 | 1 |
| r5.4xlarge | 128 | 16 | 1 |

####### Segments

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Instance Type | Memory | vCPUs | Data Disks |
|---|---|---|---|
| r5.4xlarge | 128 | 16 | 3 |

Performance testing has indicated that the Coordinator node can be deployed on the smallest r5.xlarge instance type to save money without a measurable difference in performance. Testing was performed using the TPC-DS benchmark.

The Segment instances run optimally on the r5.4xlarge instance type. This provides the highest performance given the cost of the AWS resources.

### Google Compute Platform (GCP)

#### Virtual Machine Type

The two most common instance types in GCP are "Standard" or "HighMem" instance types. The only difference is the ratio of Memory to Cores. Each offer 1 to 64 vCPUs per VM.

#### Compute

Like AWS, GCP uses Hyperthreading, so 2 vCPUs equate to 1 core. The CPU clock speed is determined by the region in which you deploy.

#### Memory

Instance type n1-standard-8 has 8 vCPUs with 30GB of RAM while n1-highmem-8 also has 8 vCPUs with 52GB of RAM. There is also a HighCPU instance type that generally isn't ideal for WarehousePG. Like AWS and Azure, the machines with more vCPUs will have more RAM.

#### Network

GCP network speeds are dependent on the instance type but the maximum network performance is possible (10Gbit) with a virtual machine as small as only 8 vCPUs.

#### Storage

Standard (HDD) and SSD disks are available in GCP. SSD is slightly faster in terms of throughput but comes at a premium. The size of the disk does not impact performance.

The biggest obstacle to maximizing storage performance is the throughput limit placed on every virtual machine. Unlike AWS and Azure, the storage throughput limit is relatively low, consistent across all instance types, and only a single disk is needed to reach the VM limit.

#### GCP Recommendations

Testing has revealed that *while using the same number of vCPUs*, a cluster using a large instance type like n1-highmem-64 (64 vCPUs) will have lower performance than a cluster using more of the smaller instance types like n1-highmem-8 (8 vCPUs). In general, use 8x more nodes in GCP than you would in another environment like AWS while using the 8 vCPU instance types.

The HighMem instance type is slightly faster for higher concurrency. Furthermore, SSD disks are slightly faster also but come at a cost.

####### Coordinator and Segment Instances

| Instance Type | Memory | vCPUs | Data Disks |
|---|---|---|---|
| n1-standard-8 | 30 | 8 | 1 |
| n1-highmem-8 | 52 | 8 | 1 |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Azure

> **Note** On the Azure platform, in addition to bandwidth, the number of network connections present on a VM at any given moment can affect the VM's network performance. The Azure networking stack maintains the state for each direction of a TCP/UDP connection in a data structures called a *flow*. A typical TCP/UDP connection will have 2 flows created: one for the inbound direction and another for the outbound direction. The number of network flows on Azure is limited to an upper bound. See Virtual machine network bandwidth in the Azure documentation for more details. In practice this can present scalability challenges for workloads based on the number of concurrent queries, and on the complexity of those queries. Always test your workload on Azure to validate that you are within the Azure limits, and be advised that if your workload increases you may hit Azure flow count boundaries at which point your workload may fail. Use the UDP interconnect, and not the TCP interconnect, when using Azure. A connection pooler and resource group settings can also be used to help keep flow counts at a lower level.

##### Virtual Machine Type

Each VM type has limits on disk throughput so picking a VM that doesn't have a limit that is too low is essential. Most of Azure is designed for OLTP or Application workloads, which limits the choices for databases like WarehousePG where throughput is more important. Disk type also plays a part in the throughput cap, so that needs to be considered too.

##### Compute

Most instance types in Azure have hyperthreading enabled, which means 2 vCPUs equate to 1 core. However, not all instance types have this feature, so for these others, 1 vCPU equates to 1 core.

The High Performance Compute (HPC) instance types have the fastest cores in Azure.

##### Memory

In general, the larger the virtual machine type, the more memory the VM will have.

##### Network

The Accelerated Networking option offloads CPU cycles for networking to "FPGA-based SmartNICs". Virtual machine types either support this or do not, but most do support it. Testing of WarehousePG hasn't shown much difference and this is probably because of Azure's preference for TCP over UDP. Despite this, UDPIFC interconnect is the ideal protocol to use in Azure.

There is an undocumented process in Azure that periodically runs on the host machines on UDP port 65330. When a query runs using UDP port 65330 and this undocumented process runs, the query will fail after one hour with an interconnect timeout error. This is fixed by reserving port 65330 so that WarehousePG doesn't use it.

##### Storage

Storage in Azure is either Premium (SSD) or Regular Storage (HDD). The available sizes are the same and max out at 4TB. Instance types either do or do not support Premium but, interestingly, the instance types that do support Premium storage, have a *lower* throughput limit. For example:

- Standard_E32s_v3 has a limit of 768 MB/s.
- Standard_E32_v3 was tested with `gpcheckperf` to have 1424 write and 1557 read MB/s performance.

To get the maximum throughput from a VM in Azure, you have to use multiple disks. For larger instance types, you have to use upwards of 32 disks to reach the limit of a VM. Unfortunately, the memory and CPU constraints on these machines means that you have to run fewer segments than you have disks, so you have to use software RAID to utilize all of these disks. Performance takes a hit with software RAID, too, so you have to try multiple configurations to optimize.

The size of the disk also impacts performance, but not by much.

Software RAID not only is a little bit slower, but it also requires `umount` to take a snapshot. This greatly lengthens the time it takes to take a snapshot backup.

Disks use the same network as the VMs so you start running into the Azure limits in bigger clusters when using big virtual machines with 32 disks on each one. The overall throughput drops as you hit this limit and is most noticeable during concurrency testing.

##### Azure Recommendations

The best instance type to use in Azure is "Standard_H8" which is one of the High Performance Compute instance types. This instance series is the only one utilizing InfiniBand, but this does not include IP traffic. Because this instance type is n0t available in all regions, the "Standard_D13_v2" is also available.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

####### Coordinator

| Instance Type | Memory | vCPUs | Data Disks |
|---|---|---|---|
| D13_v2 | 56 | 8 | 1 |
| H8 | 56 | 8 | 1 |

####### Segments

| Instance Type | Memory | vCPUs | Data Disks |
|---|---|---|---|
| D13_v2 | 56 | 8 | 2 |
| H8 | 56 | 8 | 2 |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.2 Estimating Storage Capacity

To estimate how much data your WarehousePG cluster can accommodate, use these measurements as guidelines. Also keep in mind that you may want to have extra space for landing backup files and data load files on each segment host.

- Calculating Usable Disk Capacity
- Calculating User Data Size
- Calculating Space Requirements for Metadata and Logs

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Calculating Usable Disk Capacity

To calculate how much data a WarehousePG cluster can hold, you have to calculate the usable disk capacity per segment host and then multiply that by the number of segment hosts in your WarehousePG array. Start with the raw capacity of the physical disks on a segment host that are available for data storage (raw_capacity), which is:

```
disk_size * number_of_disks
```

Account for file system formatting overhead (roughly 10 percent) and the RAID level you are using. For example, if using RAID-10, the calculation would be:

```
(raw_capacity * 0.9) / 2 = formatted_disk_space
```

For optimal performance, do not completely fill your disks to capacity, but run at 70% or lower. So with this in mind, calculate the usable disk space as follows:

```
formatted_disk_space * 0.7 = usable_disk_space
```

Using only 70% of your disk space allows WarehousePG to use the other 30% for temporary and transaction files on the same disks. If your host systems have a separate disk system that can be used for temporary and transaction files, you can specify a tablespace that WarehousePG uses for the files. Moving the location of the files might improve performance depending on the performance of the disk system.

Once you have formatted RAID disk arrays and accounted for the maximum recommended capacity (usable_disk_space), you will need to calculate how much storage is actually available for user data ( `U` ). If using WarehousePG mirrors for data redundancy, this would then double the size of your user data ( `2 * U` ). WarehousePG also requires some space be reserved as a working area for active queries. The work space should be approximately one third the size of your user data (work space = `U/3` ):

```
With mirrors: (2 * U) + U/3 = usable_disk_space

Without mirrors: U + U/3 = usable_disk_space
```

Guidelines for temporary file space and user data space assume a typical analytic workload. Highly concurrent workloads or workloads with queries that require very large amounts of temporary space can benefit from reserving a larger working area. Typically, overall system throughput can be increased while decreasing work area usage through proper workload management. Additionally, temporary space and user space can be isolated from each other by specifying that they reside on different tablespaces.

In the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*, see these topics:

- Managing Performance for information about workload management
- Creating and Managing Tablespaces for information about moving the location of temporary and transaction files
- Monitoring System State for information about monitoring WarehousePG disk space usage

**Parent topic:** Estimating Storage Capacity

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Calculating User Data Size

As with all databases, the size of your raw data will be slightly larger once it is loaded into the database. On average, raw data will be about 1.4 times larger on disk after it is loaded into the database, but could be smaller or larger depending on the data types you are using, table storage type, in-database compression, and so on.

- Page Overhead - When your data is loaded into WarehousePG, it is divided into pages of 32KB each. Each page has 20 bytes of page overhead.
- Row Overhead - In a regular 'heap' storage table, each row of data has 24 bytes of row overhead. An 'append-optimized' storage table has only 4 bytes of row overhead.
- Attribute Overhead - For the data values itself, the size associated with each attribute value is dependent upon the data type chosen. As a general rule, you want to use the smallest data type possible to store your data (assuming you know the possible values a column will have).
- Indexes - In WarehousePG, indexes are distributed across the segment hosts as is table data. The default index type in WarehousePG is B-tree. Because index size depends on the number of unique values in the index and the data to be inserted, precalculating the exact size of an index is impossible. However, you can roughly estimate the size of an index using these formulas.

  ```
  B-tree: unique_values * (data_type_size + 24 bytes)

  Bitmap: (unique_values * =number_of_rows * 1 bit * compression_ratio / 8) + (unique_values * 32)
  ```

**Parent topic:** Estimating Storage Capacity

### Calculating Space Requirements for Metadata and Logs

On each segment host, you will also want to account for space for WarehousePG log files and metadata:

- **System Metadata** — For each WarehousePG segment instance (primary or mirror) or coordinator instance running on a host, estimate approximately 20 MB for the system catalogs and metadata.
- **Write Ahead Log** — For each WarehousePG segment (primary or mirror) or coordinator instance running on a host, allocate space for the write ahead log (WAL). The WAL is divided into segment files of 64 MB each. At most, the number of WAL files will be:

  ```
  2 * checkpoint_segments + 1
  ```

  You can use this to estimate space requirements for WAL. The default checkpoint_segments setting for a WarehousePG instance is 8, meaning 1088 MB WAL space allocated for each segment or coordinator instance on a host.
- **WarehousePG Log Files** — Each segment instance and the coordinator instance generates database log files, which will grow over time. Sufficient space should be allocated for these log files, and some type of log rotation facility should be used to ensure that to log files do not grow too large.

**Parent topic:** Estimating Storage Capacity

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.3 Configuring Your Systems

Describes how to prepare your operating system environment for WarehousePG software installation.

Perform the following tasks in order:

1. Make sure your host systems meet the requirements described in Platform Requirements.
2. Deactivate or configure SELinux.
3. Deactivate or configure firewall software.
4. Set the required operating system parameters.
5. Synchronize system clocks.
6. Create the gpadmin account.

Unless noted, these tasks should be performed for *all* hosts in your WarehousePG array (coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment hosts).

The WarehousePG host naming convention for the coordinator host is `mdw` and for the standby coordinator host is `smdw`.

The segment host naming convention is sdwN where sdw is a prefix and N is an integer. For example, segment host names would be `sdw1`, `sdw2` and so on. NIC bonding is recommended for hosts with multiple interfaces, but when the interfaces are not bonded, the convention is to append a dash (`-`) and number to the host name. For example, `sdw1-1` and `sdw1-2` are the two interface names for host `sdw1`.

> **Important** When data loss is not acceptable for a WarehousePG cluster, WarehousePG coordinator and segment mirroring is recommended. If mirroring is not enabled then WarehousePG stores only one copy of the data, so the underlying storage media provides the only guarantee for data availability and correctness in the event of a hardware failure.

> **Note** For information about upgrading WarehousePG from a previous version, see the *WarehousePG Release Notes* for the release that you are installing.

> **Note** Automating the configuration steps described in this topic and Installing the WarehousePG Software with a system provisioning tool, such as Ansible, Chef, or Puppet, can save time and ensure a reliable and repeatable WarehousePG installation.

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Deactivate or Configure SELinux

For all WarehousePG host systems running RHEL or CentOS, SELinux must either be `Disabled` or configured to allow unconfined access to WarehousePG processes, directories, and the gpadmin user.

If you choose to deactivate SELinux:

1. As the root user, check the status of SELinux:

   ```
   # sestatus
   SELinuxstatus: disabled
   ```

2. If SELinux is not deactivated, deactivate it by editing the `/etc/selinux/config` file. As root, change the value of the `SELINUX` parameter in the `config` file as follows:

   ```
   SELINUX=disabled
   ```

   > **Note**
   >
   > After editing the config file, rerun `sestatus` and confirm `Mode from config file: disabled`. That field reads `/etc/selinux/config` directly and reflects your edit immediately. `SELinux status:` and `Current mode:` show the state the running kernel loaded at boot, and continue to show the previous state until you reboot.

3. If the System Security Services Daemon (SSSD) is installed on your systems, edit the SSSD configuration file and set the `selinux_provider` parameter to `none` to prevent SELinux-related SSH authentication denials that could occur even with SELinux deactivated. As root, edit `/etc/sssd/sssd.conf` and add this parameter:

   ```
   selinux_provider=none
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Reboot the system to apply any changes that you made and verify that SELinux is deactivated.

If you choose to enable SELinux in `Enforcing` mode, then WarehousePG processes and users can operate successfully in the default `Unconfined` context. If you require increased SELinux confinement for WarehousePG processes and users, you must test your configuration to ensure that there are no functionality or performance impacts to WarehousePG. See the SELinux User's and Administrator's Guide for detailed information about configuring SELinux and SELinux users.

### Deactivate or Configure Firewall Software

You should also deactivate firewall software such as `iptables` or `firewalld`. If firewall software is not deactivated, you must instead configure your software to allow required communication between WarehousePG hosts.

To deactivate `iptables`:

1. As the root user, check the status of `iptables`:

   ```
   # /sbin/chkconfig --list iptables
   ```

   If `iptables` is deactivated, the command output is:

   ```
   iptables 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:off 4:off 5:off 6:off
   ```

2. If necessary, run this command as root to deactivate `iptables`:

   ```
   /sbin/chkconfig iptables off
   ```

   You will need to reboot your system after applying the change.

3. For systems with `firewalld`, check the status of `firewalld` with the command:

   ```
   # systemctl status firewalld
   ```

   If `firewalld` is deactivated, the command output is:

   ```
   * firewalld.service - firewalld - dynamic firewall daemon
      Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/firewalld.service; disabled; vendor preset: enabled)
      Active: inactive (dead)
   ```

4. If necessary, run these commands as root to deactivate `firewalld`:

   ```
   # systemctl stop firewalld.service
   # systemctl disable firewalld.service
   ```

   > **Note**
   >
   > On some machine images, `firewalld` isn't installed. In that case, `systemctl stop firewalld.service` returns `Failed to stop firewalld.service: Unit firewalld.service not loaded`, and `systemctl disable firewalld.service` fails with its own `unit not found` message. Both errors are harmless. If `firewalld` isn't installed, it's already effectively deactivated, and no further action is needed.

If you decide to enable `iptables` with WarehousePG for security purposes, see Enabling iptables (Optional) for important considerations and example configurations.

See the documentation for the firewall or your operating system for additional information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Recommended OS Parameters Settings

WarehousePG requires that certain Linux operating system (OS) parameters be set on all hosts in your WarehousePG cluster (masters and segments).

In general, the following categories of system parameters need to be altered:

- **Shared Memory** - A WarehousePG instance will not work unless the shared memory segment for your kernel is properly sized. Most default OS installations have the shared memory values set too low for WarehousePG. On Linux systems, you must also deactivate the OOM (out of memory) killer. For information about WarehousePG shared memory requirements, see the WarehousePG server configuration parameter shared_buffers in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.
- **Network** - On high-volume WarehousePG clusters, certain network-related tuning parameters must be set to optimize network connections made by the WarehousePG interconnect.
- **User Limits** - User limits control the resources available to processes started by a user's shell. WarehousePG requires a higher limit on the allowed number of file descriptors that a single process can have open. The default settings may cause some WarehousePG queries to fail because they will run out of file descriptors needed to process the query.

More specifically, you need to edit the following Linux configuration settings:

- The hosts File
- The sysctl.conf File
- System Resources Limits
- Core Dump
- XFS Mount Options
- Disk I/O Settings
    - Read ahead values
    - Disk I/O scheduler disk access

- Networking
- Transparent Huge Pages (THP)
- IPC Object Removal
- SSH Connection Threshold

#### The hosts File

Edit the `/etc/hosts` file and make sure that it includes the host names and all interface address names for every machine participating in your WarehousePG cluster.

#### The sysctl.conf File

The `sysctl.conf` parameters listed in this topic are for performance, optimization, and consistency in a wide variety of environments. Change these settings according to your specific situation and setup.

Set the parameters in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file and reload with `sysctl -p`:

:::: warning Caution The `kernel.shmall`, `kernel.shmmax`, and `vm.overcommit_ratio` values in this example are calculated for a specific host with 1583 GB of memory. Don't copy these values as-is to a host with a different amount of memory. A `vm.overcommit_ratio` that's too high for the host's actual memory can produce the same `could not map anonymous shared memory` failure covered in Troubleshooting Initialization Problems. Calculate `kernel.shmall` and `kernel.shmmax` for your own host as described in Shared Memory Pages below, and `vm.overcommit_ratio` as described in Segment Host Memory below, then substitute your calculated values in the file. ::::

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# kernel.shmall = _PHYS_PAGES / 2 # See Shared Memory Pages
kernel.shmall = 197951838
# kernel.shmmax = kernel.shmall * PAGE_SIZE
kernel.shmmax = 810810728448
kernel.shmmni = 4096
vm.overcommit_memory = 2 # See Segment Host Memory
vm.overcommit_ratio = 95 # See Segment Host Memory

net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 10000 65535 # See Port Settings
kernel.sem = 250 2048000 200 8192
kernel.sysrq = 1
kernel.core_uses_pid = 1
kernel.msgmnb = 65536
kernel.msgmax = 65536
kernel.msgmni = 2048
net.ipv4.tcp_syncookies = 1
net.ipv4.conf.default.accept_source_route = 0
net.ipv4.tcp_max_syn_backlog = 4096
net.ipv4.conf.all.arp_filter = 1
net.ipv4.ipfrag_high_thresh = 41943040
net.ipv4.ipfrag_low_thresh = 31457280
net.ipv4.ipfrag_time = 60
net.core.netdev_max_backlog = 10000
net.core.rmem_max = 2097152
net.core.wmem_max = 2097152
vm.swappiness = 10
vm.zone_reclaim_mode = 0
vm.dirty_expire_centisecs = 500
vm.dirty_writeback_centisecs = 100
vm.dirty_background_ratio = 0 # See System Memory
vm.dirty_ratio = 0
vm.dirty_background_bytes = 1610612736
vm.dirty_bytes = 4294967296
```

#### Shared Memory Pages

WarehousePG uses shared memory to communicate between `postgres` processes that are part of the same `postgres` instance. `kernel.shmall` sets the total amount of shared memory, in pages, that can be used system wide. `kernel.shmmax` sets the maximum size of a single shared memory segment in bytes.

Set `kernel.shmall` and `kernel.shmmax` values based on your system's physical memory and page size. In general, the value for both parameters should be one half of the system physical memory.

Use the operating system variables `_PHYS_PAGES` and `PAGE_SIZE` to set the parameters.

```
kernel.shmall = ( _PHYS_PAGES / 2)
kernel.shmmax = ( _PHYS_PAGES / 2) * PAGE_SIZE
```

To calculate the values for `kernel.shmall` and `kernel.shmmax`, run the following commands using the `getconf` command, which returns the value of an operating system variable.

```
echo $(expr $(getconf _PHYS_PAGES) / 2)
echo $(expr $(getconf _PHYS_PAGES) / 2 \* $(getconf PAGE_SIZE))
```

As best practice, we recommend you set the following values in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file using calculated values. For example, a host system has 1583 GB of memory installed and returns these values: _PHYS_PAGES = 395903676 and PAGE_SIZE = 4096. These would be the `kernel.shmall` and `kernel.shmmax` values:

```
kernel.shmall = 197951838
kernel.shmmax = 810810728448
```

If the WarehousePG coordinator has a different shared memory configuration than the segment hosts, the _PHYS_PAGES and PAGE_SIZE values might differ, and the `kernel.shmall` and `kernel.shmmax` values on the coordinator host will differ from those on the segment hosts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Segment Host Memory

The `vm.overcommit_memory` Linux kernel parameter is used by the OS to determine how much memory can be allocated to processes. For WarehousePG, this parameter should always be set to 2.

`vm.overcommit_ratio` is the percent of RAM that is used for application processes and the remainder is reserved for the operating system. The default is 50 on Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

For `vm.overcommit_ratio` tuning and calculation recommendations with resource group-based resource management or resource queue-based resource management, refer to Options for Configuring Segment Host Memory in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

#### Port Settings

To avoid port conflicts between WarehousePG and other applications during WarehousePG initialization, make a note of the port range specified by the operating system parameter `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range`. When initializing WarehousePG using the `gpinitsystem` cluster configuration file, do not specify WarehousePG ports in that range. For example, if `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 10000 65535`, set the WarehousePG base port numbers to these values.

```
PORT_BASE = 6000
MIRROR_PORT_BASE = 7000
```

For information about the `gpinitsystem` cluster configuration file, see Initializing WarehousePG.

For Azure deployments with WarehousePG avoid using port 65330; add the following line to sysctl.conf:

```
net.ipv4.ip_local_reserved_ports=65330
```

For additional requirements and recommendations for cloud deployments, see WarehousePG Cloud Technical Recommendations.

#### IP Fragmentation Settings

When the WarehousePG interconnect uses UDP (the default), the network interface card controls IP packet fragmentation and reassemblies.

If the UDP message size is larger than the size of the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a network, the IP layer fragments the message. (Refer to Networking later in this topic for more information about MTU sizes for WarehousePG.) The receiver must store the fragments in a buffer before it can reorganize and reassemble the message.

The following `sysctl.conf` operating system parameters control the reassembly process:

| OS Parameter | Description |
|---|---|
| net.ipv4.ipfrag_high_thresh | The maximum amount of memory used to reassemble IP fragments before the kernel starts to remove fragments to free up resources. The default value is 4194304 bytes (4MB). |
| net.ipv4.ipfrag_low_thresh | The minimum amount of memory used to reassemble IP fragments. The default value is 3145728 bytes (3MB). (Deprecated after kernel version 4.17.) |
| net.ipv4.ipfrag_time | The maximum amount of time (in seconds) to keep an IP fragment in memory. The default value is 30. |

The recommended settings for these parameters for WarehousePG follow:

```
net.ipv4.ipfrag_high_thresh = 41943040
net.ipv4.ipfrag_low_thresh = 31457280
net.ipv4.ipfrag_time = 60
```

#### System Memory

For host systems with more than 64GB of memory, these settings are recommended:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
vm.dirty_background_ratio = 0
vm.dirty_ratio = 0
vm.dirty_background_bytes = 1610612736 # 1.5GB
vm.dirty_bytes = 4294967296 # 4GB
```

For host systems with 64GB of memory or less, remove `vm.dirty_background_bytes` and `vm.dirty_bytes` and set the two `ratio` parameters to these values:

```
vm.dirty_background_ratio = 3
vm.dirty_ratio = 10
```

Increase `vm.min_free_kbytes` to ensure `PF_MEMALLOC` requests from network and storage drivers are easily satisfied. This is especially critical on systems with large amounts of system memory. The default value is often far too low on these systems. Use this awk command to set `vm.min_free_kbytes` to a recommended 3% of system physical memory:

```
awk 'BEGIN {OFMT = "%.0f";} /MemTotal/ {print "vm.min_free_kbytes =", $2 * .03;}'
               /proc/meminfo >> /etc/sysctl.conf
```

Do not set `vm.min_free_kbytes` to higher than 5% of system memory as doing so might cause out of memory conditions.

#### System Resources Limits

Set the following parameters in the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file:

```
* soft nofile 524288
* hard nofile 524288
* soft nproc 131072
* hard nproc 131072
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) and CentOS systems, parameter values in the `/etc/security/limits.d/90-nproc.conf` file (RHEL/CentOS 6) or `/etc/security/limits.d/20-nproc.conf` file (RHEL/CentOS 7 and later) override the values in the `limits.conf` file. Ensure that any parameters in the override file are set to the required value. The Linux module `pam_limits` sets user limits by reading the values from the `limits.conf` file and then from the override file. For information about PAM and user limits, see the documentation on PAM and `pam_limits`.

Run the `ulimit -u` command on each segment host to display the maximum number of processes that are available to each user. Validate that the return value is `131072`.

#### Core Dump

Enable core file generation to a known location by adding the following line to `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
kernel.core_pattern = /var/crash/core-%e-%s-%u-%g-%p-%t
```

Add the following line to `/etc/security/limits.conf`:

```
* soft  core unlimited
```

To apply the changes to the live kernel, run the following command:

```
# sysctl -p
```

#### XFS Mount Options

XFS is the preferred data storage file system on Linux platforms. Use the `mount` command with the following recommended XFS mount options for RHEL 7 and CentOS systems:

```
rw,nodev,noatime,nobarrier,inode64
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The `nobarrier` option is not supported on RHEL 8 systems or later. Use only the options:

```
rw,nodev,noatime,inode64
```

See the `mount` manual page (`man mount` opens the man page) for more information about using this command.

The XFS options can also be set in the `/etc/fstab` file. This example entry from an `fstab` file specifies the XFS options.

```
/dev/data /data xfs nodev,noatime,inode64 0 0
```

> **Note** You must have root permission to edit the `/etc/fstab` file.

#### Disk I/O Settings

- Read-ahead value

  Each disk device file should have a read-ahead (`blockdev`) value of 16384. To verify the read-ahead value of a disk device:

  ```
  # sudo /sbin/blockdev --getra <devname>
  ```

  For example:

  ```
  # sudo /sbin/blockdev --getra /dev/sdb
  ```

  To set blockdev (read-ahead) on a device:

  ```
  # sudo /sbin/blockdev --setra <bytes> <devname>
  ```

  For example:

  ```
  # sudo /sbin/blockdev --setra 16384 /dev/sdb
  ```

  See the manual page (man) for the `blockdev` command for more information about using that command (`man blockdev` opens the man page).

  > **Note** The `blockdev --setra` command is not persistent. You must ensure the read-ahead value is set whenever the system restarts. How to set the value will vary based on your system.

  One method to set the `blockdev` value at system startup is by adding the `/sbin/blockdev --setra` command in the `rc.local` file. For example, add this line to the `rc.local` file to set the read-ahead value for the disk `sdb`.

  ```
  /sbin/blockdev --setra 16384 /dev/sdb
  ```

  On systems that use systemd, you must also set the execute permissions on the `rc.local` file to enable it to run at startup. For example, on a RHEL/CentOS 7 system, this command sets execute permissions on the file.

  ```
  # chmod +x /etc/rc.d/rc.local
  ```

  Restart the system to have the setting take effect.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Disk I/O scheduler

  The Linux disk scheduler orders the I/O requests submitted to a storage device, controlling the way the kernel commits reads and writes to disk.

  A typical Linux disk I/O scheduler supports multiple access policies. The optimal policy selection depends on the underlying storage infrastructure. The recommended scheduler policy settings for WarehousePG clusters for specific OSs and storage device types follow:

| Storage Device Type | OS | Recommended Scheduler Policy |
|---|---|---|
| Non-Volatile Memory Express (NVMe) | RHEL 7<br>RHEL 8<br>RHEL 9 | `none` |
| Solid-State Drives (SSD) | RHEL 7 | `noop` |
| | RHEL 8<br>RHEL 9 | `none` |
| Other | RHEL 7 | `deadline` |
| | RHEL 8<br>RHEL 9 | `mq-deadline` |

  To specify a scheduler until the next system reboot, run the following:

```
# echo schedulername > /sys/block/<devname>/queue/scheduler
```

  For example:

```
# echo deadline > /sys/block/sbd/queue/scheduler
```

  > **Note** Using the `echo` command to set the disk I/O scheduler policy is not persistent; you must ensure that you run the command whenever the system reboots. How to run the command will vary based on your system.

  To specify the I/O scheduler at boot time on systems that use `grub2` such as RHEL 7.x or CentOS 7.x and later, use the system utility `grubby`. This command adds the parameter when run as `root`:

```
# grubby --update-kernel=ALL --args="elevator=deadline"
```

  After adding the parameter, reboot the system.

  This `grubby` command displays kernel parameter settings:

```
# grubby --info=ALL
```

  Refer to your operating system documentation for more information about the `grubby` utility. If you used the `grubby` command to configure the disk scheduler on a RHEL or CentOS 7.x system and later and it does not update the kernels, see the Note at the end of the section.

  For additional information about configuring the disk scheduler, refer to the RedHat Enterprise Linux documentation forRHEL 7, RHEL 8, or RHEL 9.

#### Networking

The maximum transmission unit (MTU) of a network specifies the size (in bytes) of the largest data packet/frame accepted by a network-connected device. A jumbo frame is a frame that contains more than the standard MTU of 1500 bytes.

You may control the value of the MTU at various locations:

- The WarehousePG gp_max_packet_size server configuration parameter. The default max packet size is 8192. This default assumes a jumbo frame MTU.
- The operating system MTU settings for network interfaces.
- The physical switch MTU settings.

These settings are connected, in that they should always be either the same, or close to the same, value, or otherwise in the order of WarehousePG < Operating System < Virtual or Physical switch for MTU size.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If the interconnect network supports jumbo frames, set the MTU to 9000 and keep `gp_max_packet_size` at its default of 8192. If the network doesn't support jumbo frames and the MTU is 1500, reduce `gp_max_packet_size` to 1472 to avoid fragmented packets.

9000 is a common supported setting for switches, and is the recommended OS and rack switch MTU setting for your WarehousePG hosts.

#### Transparent Huge Pages (THP)

Deactivate Transparent Huge Pages (THP) as it degrades WarehousePG performance. On systems that use `grub2`, such as RHEL 7.x or CentOS 7.x and later, use the system utility `grubby`. This command adds the parameter when run as root.

```
# grubby --update-kernel=ALL --args="transparent_hugepage=never"
```

After adding the parameter, reboot the system.

This cat command checks the state of THP. The output indicates that THP is deactivated.

```
cat /sys/kernel/mm/*transparent_hugepage/enabled
```

output

```
always [never]
```

For more information about Transparent Huge Pages or the `grubby` utility, see your operating system documentation. If the `grubby` command does not update the kernels, see the Note at the end of the section.

#### IPC Object Removal

Deactivate IPC object removal for RHEL 7.2 or CentOS 7.2. The default `systemd` setting `RemoveIPC=yes` removes IPC connections when non-system user accounts log out. This causes the WarehousePG utility `gpinitsystem` to fail with semaphore errors. Perform one of the following to avoid this issue.

- When you add the `gpadmin` operating system user account to the coordinator node in Creating the WarehousePG Administrative User, create the user as a system account.
- Deactivate `RemoveIPC`. Set this parameter in `/etc/systemd/logind.conf` on the WarehousePG host systems.

  ```
  RemoveIPC=no
  ```

  The setting takes effect after restarting the `systemd-login` service or rebooting the system. To restart the service, run this command as the root user.

  ```
  service systemd-logind restart
  ```

#### SSH Connection Threshold

Certain WarehousePG management utilities including `gpexpand`, `gpinitsystem`, and `gpaddmirrors`, use secure shell (SSH) connections between systems to perform their tasks. In large WarehousePG deployments, cloud deployments, or deployments with a large number of segments per host, these utilities may exceed the host's maximum threshold for unauthenticated connections. When this occurs, you receive errors such as: `ssh_exchange_identification: Connection closed by remote host`.

To increase this connection threshold for your WarehousePG cluster, update the SSH `MaxStartups` and `MaxSessions` configuration parameters in one of the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` or `/etc/sshd_config` SSH daemon configuration files.

> **Note** You must have root permission to edit these two files.

If you specify `MaxStartups` and `MaxSessions` using a single integer value, you identify the maximum number of concurrent unauthenticated connections (`MaxStartups`) and maximum number of open shell, login, or subsystem sessions permitted per network connection (`MaxSessions`). For example:

```
MaxStartups 200
MaxSessions 200
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If you specify `MaxStartups` using the "start:rate:full" syntax, you enable random early connection drop by the SSH daemon. start identifies the maximum number of unauthenticated SSH connection attempts allowed. Once start number of unauthenticated connection attempts is reached, the SSH daemon refuses rate percent of subsequent connection attempts. full identifies the maximum number of unauthenticated connection attempts after which all attempts are refused. For example:

```
Max Startups 10:30:200
MaxSessions 200
```

Restart the SSH daemon after you update `MaxStartups` and `MaxSessions`. For example, run the following command as the `root` user:

```
# systemctl restart sshd
```

For detailed information about SSH configuration options, refer to the SSH documentation for your Linux distribution.

> **Note** If the `grubby` command does not update the kernels of a RHEL 7.x or CentOS 7.x system, you can manually update all kernels on the system. For example, to add the parameter `transparent_hugepage=never` to all kernels on a system.

1. Add the parameter to the `GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX` line in the file parameter in `/etc/default/grub`.

   ```
   GRUB_TIMEOUT=5
   GRUB_DISTRIBUTOR="$(sed 's, release .*$,,g' /etc/system-release)"
   GRUB_DEFAULT=saved
   GRUB_DISABLE_SUBMENU=true
   GRUB_TERMINAL_OUTPUT="console"
   GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="crashkernel=auto rd.lvm.lv=cl/root rd.lvm.lv=cl/swap rhgb quiet transparent_hugepage=never"
                GRUB_DISABLE_RECOVERY="true"
   ```

   > **Note** You must have root permission to edit the `/etc/default/grub` file.

2. As root, run the `grub2-mkconfig` command to update the kernels.

   ```
   # grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/grub2/grub.cfg
   ```

3. Reboot the system.

### Synchronizing System Clocks

You must use NTP (Network Time Protocol) to synchronize the system clocks on all hosts that comprise your WarehousePG cluster. Accurate time keeping is essential to ensure reliable operations on the database and data integrity.

There are many different architectures you may choose from to implement NTP. We recommend you use one of the following:

- Configure coordinator as the NTP primary source and the other hosts in the cluster connect to it.
- Configure an external NTP primary source and all hosts in the cluster connect to it.

Depending on your operating system version, the NTP protocol may be implemented by the `ntpd` daemon, the `chronyd` daemon, or other. Refer to your preferred NTP protocol documentation for more details.

#### Option 1: Configure System Clocks with the Coordinator as the Primary Source

1. On the coordinator host, log in as root and edit your NTP daemon configuration file. Set the `server` parameter to point to your data center's NTP time server. For example (if `10.6.220.20` was the IP address of your data center's NTP server):

   ```
   server 10.6.220.20
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. On each segment host, log in as root and edit your NTP daemon configuration file. Set the first `server` parameter to point to the coordinator host, and the second server parameter to point to the standby coordinator host. For example:

```
server mdw prefer
server smdw
```

3. On the standby coordinator host, log in as root and edit the `/etc/ntp.conf` file. Set the first `server` parameter to point to the primary coordinator host, and the second server parameter to point to your data center's NTP time server. For example:

```
server mdw prefer
server 10.6.220.20
```

4. Synchronize the system clocks on all WarehousePG hosts as root. If you are using the `ntpd` daemon:

```
systemctl restart ntp
```

If you are using the `chronyd` daemon:

```
systemctl restart chronyd
```

#### Option 2: Configure System Clocks with an External Primary Source

1. On each host, including coordinator, standby coordinator, and segments, log in as root and edit your NTP daemon configuration file. Set the first `server` parameter to point to your data center's NTP time server. For example (if `10.6.220.20` was the IP address of your data center's NTP server):

```
server 10.6.220.20
```

2. On the coordinator host, use your NTP daemon to synchronize the system clocks on all WarehousePG hosts. For example, usinggpssh: If you are using the `ntpd` daemon:

```
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_allhosts -v -e 'ntpd'
```

If you are using the `chronyd` daemon:

```
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_allhosts -v -e 'chronyd'
```

### Creating the WarehousePG Administrative User

Create a dedicated operating system user account on each node to run and administer WarehousePG. This user account is named `gpadmin` by convention.

> **Important** You cannot run the WarehousePG server as `root`.

The `gpadmin` user must have permission to access the services and directories required to install and run WarehousePG.

The `gpadmin` user on each WarehousePG host must have an SSH key pair installed and be able to SSH from any host in the cluster to any other host in the cluster without entering a password or passphrase (called "passwordless SSH"). If you enable passwordless SSH from the coordinator host to every other host in the cluster ("1-*n* passwordless SSH"), you can use the WarehousePG `gpssh-exkeys` command-line utility later to enable passwordless SSH from every host to every other host ("*n*-*n* passwordless SSH").

You can optionally give the `gpadmin` user sudo privilege, so that you can administer all hosts in the WarehousePG cluster as `gpadmin` using the `sudo`, `ssh/scp`, and `gpssh/gpscp` commands.

The following steps show how to set up the `gpadmin` user on a host, set a password, create an SSH key pair, and (optionally) enable sudo capability. These steps must be performed as root on every WarehousePG cluster host. (For a large WarehousePG cluster you will want to automate these steps using your system provisioning tools.)

> **Note** See Example Ansible Playbook for an example that shows how to automate the tasks of creating the `gpadmin` user and installing the WarehousePG software on all hosts in the cluster.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Create the `gpadmin` group and user.

   > **Note** If you are installing WarehousePG on RHEL 7.2 or CentOS 7.2 and want to deactivate IPC object removal by creating the `gpadmin` user as a system account, provide both the `-r` option (create the user as a system account) and the `-m` option (create a home directory) to the `useradd` command.

   This example creates the `gpadmin` group, creates the `gpadmin` user as a system account with a home directory and as a member of the `gpadmin` group, and creates a password for the user.

   ```
   # groupadd gpadmin
   # useradd gpadmin -r -m -g gpadmin
   # passwd gpadmin
   ```

   output

   ```
   New password: <changeme>
   Retype new password: <changeme>
   ```

   > **Note** You must have root permission to create the `gpadmin` group and user.

   > **Note** Make sure the `gpadmin` user has the same user id (uid) and group id (gid) numbers on each host to prevent problems with scripts or services that use them for identity or permissions. For example, backing up WarehousePGs to some networked filesystems or storage appliances could fail if the `gpadmin` user has different uid or gid numbers on different segment hosts. When you create the `gpadmin` group and user, you can use the `groupadd -g` option to specify a gid number and the `useradd -u` option to specify the uid number. Use the command `id gpadmin` to see the uid and gid for the `gpadmin` user on the current host.

2. Switch to the `gpadmin` user and generate an SSH key pair for the `gpadmin` user.

   ```
   su gpadmin
   ssh-keygen -t rsa -b 4096
   ```

   output

   ```
   Generating public/private rsa key pair.
   Enter file in which to save the key (/home/gpadmin/.ssh/id_rsa):
   Created directory '/home/gpadmin/.ssh'.
   Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
   Enter same passphrase again:
   ```

   At the passphrase prompts, press Enter so that SSH connections will not require entry of a passphrase.

3. Grant sudo access to the `gpadmin` user.

   > **Note**
   >
   > This step is optional, but it's helpful, and it simplifies some procedures elsewhere in this guide, such as Creating the Data Storage Areas, that run `sudo` commands on remote hosts through `gpssh`. If `gpadmin` doesn't have sudo access, you can't use `gpssh` or `gpscp` to run those commands. Because `gpssh` provides no terminal for a password prompt, the grant must let `gpadmin` run `sudo` without a password (`NOPASSWD`), as shown below, for those procedures to work.

   On Red Hat or CentOS, run `visudo` and uncomment the `%wheel` group entry.

   ```
   %wheel        ALL=(ALL)       NOPASSWD: ALL
   ```

   Make sure you uncomment the line that has the `NOPASSWD` keyword.

   Add the `gpadmin` user to the `wheel` group with this command.

   ```
   # usermod -aG wheel gpadmin
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Next Steps

- Installing WarehousePG Software
- Validating Your Systems
- Initializing WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.4 Installing WarehousePG

WarehousePG software is a downloadable package that you install on each host system using your operating system's package management system. You must install WarehousePG on each host machine of the WarehousePG cluster.

Perform the following tasks in order:

1. Install EDB Postgres AI for WarehousePG
2. Enable passwordless SSH
3. Verify your installation

> **Note**
>
> Starting from WarehousePG 6.27.4, the default installation directory is `/usr/edb/whpg6`. For backward compatibility, symlinks are provided at `/usr/local/greenplum-db` and `/usr/local/greenplum-db-clients`.

Before you begin installing WarehousePG, be sure you have completed the steps inConfigure operating system to configure each of the coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment host machines for WarehousePG.

> **Important**
>
> You require sudo or root user access to install from a pre-built RPM file.

### Installing EDB Postgres AI for WarehousePG

To install, you will need an EDB Repos 2.0 token to gain access to the EDB private software repositories. For instructions on obtaining this token, see:Get your token.

Save the EDB Subscription token in an environment variable:

```
export EDB_SUBSCRIPTION_TOKEN=<your-token>
```

Run the following command to add the EDB repository to your system:

```
curl -1sSLf "https://downloads.enterprisedb.com/$EDB_SUBSCRIPTION_TOKEN/gpsupp/setup.rpm.sh" | sudo -E bash
```

> **Important**
>
> Starting with WarehousePG 6.27.4, the `warehouse-pg-6-clients` package is mandatory and must be installed alongside the server package.

Install the EPEL repository and Warehouse-pg packages according to your operating system:

```
sudo dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-
8.noarch.rpm
sudo dnf install -y warehouse-pg-6 warehouse-pg-6-
clients
```

```
sudo dnf -y install https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-
9.noarch.rpm
sudo dnf install -y warehouse-pg-6 warehouse-pg-6-
clients
```

Change the owner and group of the installed files to `gpadmin`:

```
sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /usr/edb/whpg*
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Enabling passwordless SSH

The `gpadmin` user on each WarehousePG host must be able to connect from any host in the cluster to any other host in the cluster without entering a password or passphrase (called "passwordless SSH"). If you enable passwordless SSH from the coordinator host to every other host in the cluster ("1-*n* passwordless SSH"), you can use the WarehousePG `gpssh-exkeys` command-line utility to enable passwordless SSH from every host to every other host ("*n*-*n* passwordless SSH").

1. Log in to the coordinator host as the `gpadmin` user.

2. Source the `path` file in the WarehousePG installation directory.

   ```
   source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_clients_path.sh
   ```

   > **Note**
   >
   > Add the above `source` command to the `gpadmin` user's `.bashrc` or other shell startup file so that the WarehousePG path and environment variables are set whenever you log in as `gpadmin`.

3. Use the `ssh-copy-id` command to add the `gpadmin` user's public key to the `authorized_hosts` SSH file on every other host in the cluster.

   ```
   ssh-copy-id scdw
   ssh-copy-id sdw1
   ssh-copy-id sdw2
   ssh-copy-id sdw3
   . .
   .
   ```

   This enables 1-*n* passwordless SSH. You will be prompted to enter the `gpadmin` user's password for each host. If you have the `sshpass` command on your system, you can use a command like the following to avoid the prompt.

   ```
   SSHPASS=<password> sshpass -e ssh-copy-id scdw
   ```

4. In the `gpadmin` home directory, create a file named `hostfile_exkeys` that has the machine configured host names and host addresses (interface names) for each host in your WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment hosts). Make sure there are no blank lines or extra spaces. Check the `/etc/hosts` file on your systems for the correct host names to use for your environment. For example, if you have a coordinator, standby coordinator, and three segment hosts with two unbonded network interfaces per host, your file would look something like this:

   ```
   cdw
   cdw-1
   cdw-2
   scdw
   scdw-1
   scdw-2
   sdw1
   sdw1-1
   sdw1-2
   sdw2
   sdw2-1
   sdw2-2
   sdw3
   sdw3-1
   sdw3-2
   ```

5. Run the `gpssh-exkeys` utility with your `hostfile_exkeys` file to enable *n*-*n* passwordless SSH for the `gpadmin` user.

   ```
   gpssh-exkeys -f hostfile_exkeys
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Verifying your installation

To make sure the WarehousePG software was installed and configured correctly, run the following confirmation steps from your WarehousePG coordinator host. If necessary, correct any problems before continuing on to the next task.

1. Log in to the coordinator host as `gpadmin`:

   ```
   su - gpadmin
   ```

2. Use the `gpssh` utility to see if you can log in to all hosts without a password prompt, and to confirm that the WarehousePG software was installed on all hosts. Use the `hostfile_exkeys` file you used to set up passwordless SSH. For example:

   ```
   gpssh -f hostfile_exkeys -e 'ls -l
   /usr/edb/whpg6'
   ```

   If the installation was successful, you should be able to log in to all hosts without a password prompt. All hosts should show that they have the same contents in their installation directories, and that the directories are owned by the `gpadmin` user.

   If you are prompted for a password, run the following command to redo the ssh key exchange:

   ```
   gpssh-exkeys -f hostfile_exkeys
   ```

#### WarehousePG installation files and directories

The following files and directories are included with your WarehousePG installation:

- `greenplum_path.sh` — This file contains the environment variables for WarehousePG. See Setting WarehousePG environment variables.
- **bin** — This directory contains the WarehousePG management utilities. This directory also contains the PostgreSQL client and server programs, most of which are also used in WarehousePG.
- **docs/cli_help** — This directory contains help files for WarehousePG command-line utilities.
- **docs/cli_help/gpconfigs** — This directory contains sample `gpinitsystem` configuration files and host files that can be modified and used when installing and initializing WarehousePG.
- **ext** — Bundled programs (such as Python) used by some WarehousePG utilities.
- **include** — The C header files for WarehousePG.
- **lib** — WarehousePG and PostgreSQL library files.
- **sbin** — Supporting/Internal scripts and programs.
- **share** — Shared files for WarehousePG.

### Next steps

Perform the following steps once your installation of WarehousePG is complete:

- Create the data storage areas
- Validate the WHPG cluster
- Initialize WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.5 Creating the Data Storage Areas

Describes how to create the directory locations where WarehousePG data is stored for each coordinator, standby, and segment instance.

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Creating Data Storage Areas on the Coordinator and standby coordinator Hosts

A data storage area is required on the WarehousePG coordinator and standby coordinator hosts to store WarehousePG cluster data such as catalog data and other system metadata.

#### To create the data directory location on the coordinator

The data directory location on the coordinator is different than those on the segments. The coordinator does not store any user data, only the system catalog tables and system metadata are stored on the coordinator instance, therefore you do not need to designate as much storage space as on the segments.

1. Create or choose a directory that will serve as your coordinator data storage area. This directory should have sufficient disk space for your data and be owned by the `gpadmin` user and group. For example, run the following command using `sudo`:

   ```
   sudo mkdir -p /data/master
   ```

2. Change ownership of this directory, and any parent directories you created, to the `gpadmin` user. For example:

   ```
   sudo chown gpadmin:gpadmin /data
   sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /data/master
   ```

3. As the `gpadmin` user, use gpssh to create the coordinator data directory location on your standby coordinator as well. For example:

   ```
   gpssh -h smdw -e 'sudo mkdir -p /data/master'
   gpssh -h smdw -e 'sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /data/master'
   ```

### Creating Data Storage Areas on Segment Hosts

Data storage areas are required on the WarehousePG segment hosts for primary segments. Separate storage areas are required for mirror segments.

#### To create the data directory locations on all segment hosts

1. On the coordinator host, switch to the `gpadmin` user and source the `greenplum_path.sh` file.

   ```
   sudo -iu gpadmin
   source /usr/local/greenplum-db/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

   > **Note**
   >
   > Logging in as `root` with `su` fails on hosts where root login is deactivated, such as Amazon EC2 instances. The `gpssh` commands in this topic use `sudo` on the remote hosts instead, so you can run them as `gpadmin`, provided `gpadmin` has `sudo` privilege as described in Creating the WarehousePG Administrative User.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Create a file called `hostfile_gpssh_segonly`. This file should have only one machine configured host name for each segment host. For example, if you have three segment hosts:

```
sdw1
sdw2
sdw3
```

3. Using gpssh, create the primary and mirror data directory locations on all segment hosts at once using the `hostfile_gpssh_segonly` file you just created. For example:

```
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_segonly -e 'sudo mkdir -p /data1/primary'
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_segonly -e 'sudo mkdir -p /data2/primary'
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_segonly -e 'sudo mkdir -p /data1/mirror'
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_segonly -e 'sudo mkdir -p /data2/mirror'
gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh_segonly -e 'sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /data1 /data2'
```

> **Caution**
>
> Use `chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /data1 /data2` rather than `chown -R gpadmin /data*/*`. The latter sets only the owner, not the group, so the primary and mirror directories stay in the `root` group. Setting both the owner and group to `gpadmin` avoids permission problems later.

## Next Steps

- Validating Your Systems
- Initializing WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.6 Validating Your Systems

Validate your hardware and network performance.

WarehousePG provides a management utility called gpcheckperf, which can be used to identify hardware and system-level issues on the machines in your WarehousePG array. gpcheckperf starts a session on the specified hosts and runs the following performance tests:

- Network Performance ( `gpnetbench*` )
- Disk I/O Performance ( `dd` test)
- Memory Bandwidth ( `stream` test)

Before using `gpcheckperf` , you must have a trusted host setup between the hosts involved in the performance test. You can use the utilitygpssh-exkeys to update the known host files and exchange public keys between hosts if you have not done so already. Note that `gpcheckperf` calls to gpssh and gpscp, so these WarehousePG utilities must be in your `$PATH` .

- **Validating Network Performance**
- **Validating Disk I/O and Memory Bandwidth**

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Validating Network Performance

To test network performance, run gpcheckperf with one of the network test run options: parallel pair test ( `-r N` ), serial pair test ( `-r n` ), or full matrix test ( `-r M` ). The utility runs a network benchmark program that transfers a 5 second stream of data from the current host to each remote host included in the test. By default, the data is transferred in parallel to each remote host and the minimum, maximum, average and median network transfer rates are reported in megabytes (MB) per second. If the summary transfer rate is slower than expected (less than 100 MB/s), you can run the network test serially using the `-r n` option to obtain per-host results. To run a full-matrix bandwidth test, you can specify `-r M` which will cause every host to send and receive data from every other host specified. This test is best used to validate if the switch fabric can tolerate a full-matrix workload.

Most systems in a WarehousePG array are configured with multiple network interface cards (NICs), each NIC on its own subnet. When testing network performance, it is important to test each subnet individually. For example, considering the following network configuration of two NICs per host:

| WarehousePG Host | Subnet1 NICs | Subnet2 NICs |
|---|---|---|
| Segment 1 | sdw1-1 | sdw1-2 |
| Segment 2 | sdw2-1 | sdw2-2 |
| Segment 3 | sdw3-1 | sdw3-2 |

You would create four distinct host files for use with the gpcheckperf network test:

| hostfile_gpchecknet_ic1 | hostfile_gpchecknet_ic2 |
|---|---|
| sdw1-1 | sdw1-2 |
| sdw2-1 | sdw2-2 |
| sdw3-1 | sdw3-2 |

You would then run gpcheckperf once per subnet. For example (if testing an *even* number of hosts, run in parallel pairs test mode):

```
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic1 -r N -d /tmp > subnet1.out
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic2 -r N -d /tmp > subnet2.out
```

If you have an *odd* number of hosts to test, you can run in serial test mode ( `-r n` ).

**Parent topic:** Validating Your Systems

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Validating Disk I/O and Memory Bandwidth

To test disk and memory bandwidth performance, run gpcheckperf with the disk and stream test run options ( `-r ds` ). The disk test uses the `dd` command (a standard UNIX utility) to test the sequential throughput performance of a logical disk or file system. The memory test uses the STREAM benchmark program to measure sustainable memory bandwidth. Results are reported in MB per second (MB/s).

#### To run the disk and stream tests

1. Log in on the coordinator host as the `gpadmin` user.
2. Source the `greenplum_path.sh` path file from your WarehousePG installation. For example:

   ```
   $ source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

3. Create a host file named `hostfile_gpcheckperf` that has one host name per segment host. Do not include the coordinator host. For example:

   ```
   sdw1
   sdw2
   sdw3
   sdw4
   ```

4. Run the `gpcheckperf` utility using the `hostfile_gpcheckperf` file you just created. Use the `-d` option to specify the file systems you want to test on each host (you must have write access to these directories). You will want to test all primary and mirror segment data directory locations. For example:

   ```
   $ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpcheckperf -r ds -D \
     -d /data1/primary -d  /data2/primary \
     -d /data1/mirror -d  /data2/mirror
   ```

5. The utility may take a while to perform the tests as it is copying very large files between the hosts. When it is finished you will see the summary results for the Disk Write, Disk Read, and Stream tests.

**Parent topic:** Validating Your Systems

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 3.7 Initializing WarehousePG

Describes how to initialize a WarehousePG database system.

The instructions in this chapter assume you have already prepared your hosts as described in Configure Operating System and installed the WarehousePG software on all of the hosts in the system according to the instructions in Installing the WarehousePG Software.

This chapter contains the following topics:


- Overview
- Initializing WarehousePG
- Setting WarehousePG Environment Variables
- Next Steps


**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

## Overview

Because WarehousePG is distributed, the process for initializing a WarehousePG management system (DBMS) involves initializing several individual PostgreSQL database instances (called *segment instances* in WarehousePG).

Each database instance (the coordinator and all segments) must be initialized across all of the hosts in the system in such a way that they can all work together as a unified DBMS. WarehousePG provides its own version of `initdb` called gpinitsystem, which takes care of initializing the database on the coordinator and on each segment instance, and starting each instance in the correct order.

After the WarehousePG database system has been initialized and started, you can then create and manage databases as you would in a regular PostgreSQL DBMS by connecting to the WarehousePG coordinator.

## Initializing WarehousePG

These are the high-level tasks for initializing WarehousePG:

1. Make sure you have completed all of the installation tasks described in Configure Operating System and Installing the WarehousePG Software.
2. Create a host file that contains the host addresses of your segments. See Creating the Initialization Host File.
3. Create your WarehousePG cluster configuration file. See Creating the WarehousePG Configuration File.
4. By default, WarehousePG will be initialized using the locale of the coordinator host system. Make sure this is the correct locale you want to use, as some locale options cannot be changed after initialization. See Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings for more information.
5. Run the WarehousePG initialization utility on the coordinator host. See Running the Initialization Utility.
6. Set the WarehousePG timezone. See Setting the WarehousePG Timezone.
7. Set environment variables for the WarehousePG user. See Setting WarehousePG Environment Variables.

When performing the following initialization tasks, you must be logged into the coordinator host as the `gpadmin` user, and to run WarehousePG utilities, you must source the `greenplum_path.sh` file to set WarehousePG environment variables. For example, if you are logged into the coordinator, run these commands.

```
su - gpadmin
source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
```

### Creating the Initialization Host File

The gpinitsystem utility requires a host file that contains the list of addresses for each segment host. The initialization utility determines the number of segment instances per host by the number host addresses listed per host times the number of data directory locations specified in the `gpinitsystem_config` file.

This file should only contain segment host addresses (not the coordinator or standby coordinator). For segment machines with multiple, unbonded network interfaces, this file should list the host address names for each interface — one per line.

> **Note** The WarehousePG segment host naming convention is sdwN where sdw is a prefix and N is an integer. For example, `sdw2` and so on. If hosts have multiple unbonded NICs, the convention is to append a dash ( `-` ) and number to the host name. For example, `sdw1-1` and `sdw1-2` are the two interface names for host `sdw1` . However, NIC bonding is recommended to create a load-balanced, fault-tolerant network.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### To create the initialization host file

1. Create a file named `hostfile_gpinitsystem`. In this file add the host address name(s) of your *segment* host interfaces, one name per line, no extra lines or spaces. For example, if you have four segment hosts with two unbonded network interfaces each:

```
sdw1-1
sdw1-2
sdw2-1
sdw2-2
sdw3-1
sdw3-2
sdw4-1
sdw4-2
```

2. Save and close the file.

> **Note** If you are not sure of the host names and/or interface address names used by your machines, look in the `/etc/hosts` file.

### Creating the WarehousePG Configuration File

Your WarehousePG configuration file tells the gpinitsystem utility how you want to configure your WarehousePG cluster. An example configuration file can be found in `$GPHOME/docs/cli_help/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config`.

#### To create a gpinitsystem_config file

1. Create the `gpconfigs` directory in the `gpadmin` home directory, if it doesn't already exist, then make a copy of the `gpinitsystem_config` file to use as a starting point. For example:

```
mkdir -p ~/gpconfigs
cp $GPHOME/docs/cli_help/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config \
     ~/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Open the file you just copied in a text editor.

   Set all of the required parameters according to your environment. See gpinitsystem for more information. A WarehousePG cluster must contain a coordinator instance and at *least two* segment instances (even if setting up a single node system).

   The `gpinitsystem_config` file is heavily commented. These are the parameters marked **Required** in the gpinitsystem reference. All other parameters in the file, including the mirror parameters covered in step 3 below, are optional and can be left at their default values.

| Parameter | Description | Example value |
|---|---|---|
| `ARRAY_NAME` | Name for the cluster | `"WHPG Cluster"` |
| `SEG_PREFIX` | Prefix for segment data directories | `gpseg` |
| `PORT_BASE` | Base port for primary segments | `6000` |
| `DATA_DIRECTORY` | Primary segment data directories, one entry per segment per host | `(/data1/primary /data2/primary)` |
| `MASTER_HOSTNAME` | Hostname of the coordinator host | `mdw` |
| `MASTER_DIRECTORY` | Coordinator data directory | `/data/master` |
| `MASTER_PORT` | Coordinator port | `5432` |
| `TRUSTED_SHELL` | Shell `gpinitsystem` uses to run commands on remote hosts | `ssh` |
| `CHECK_POINT_SEGMENTS` | Maximum distance between automatic WAL checkpoints, in log file segments | `8` |
| `ENCODING` | Character set encoding | `UNICODE` |

   The `DATA_DIRECTORY` parameter is what determines how many segments per host will be created. If your segment hosts have multiple network interfaces, and you used their interface address names in your host file, the number of segments will be evenly spread over the number of available interfaces.

   To specify `PORT_BASE`, review the port range specified in the `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range` parameter in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file. See Recommended OS Parameters Settings.

   Here is an example of the *required* parameters in the `gpinitsystem_config` file:

```
SEG_PREFIX=gpseg
PORT_BASE=6000
declare -a DATA_DIRECTORY=(/data1/primary /data1/primary /data1/primary /data2/primary /data2/primary
/data2/primary)
MASTER_HOSTNAME=mdw
MASTER_DIRECTORY=/data/master
MASTER_PORT=5432
TRUSTED_SHELL=ssh
CHECK_POINT_SEGMENTS=8
ENCODING=UNICODE
```

3. (Optional) If you want to deploy mirror segments, uncomment and set the mirroring parameters according to your environment. To specify `MIRROR_PORT_BASE`, review the port range specified under the `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range` parameter in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file. Here is an example of the *optional* mirror parameters in the `gpinitsystem_config` file:

```
MIRROR_PORT_BASE=7000
declare -a MIRROR_DATA_DIRECTORY=(/data1/mirror /data1/mirror /data1/mirror /data2/mirror /data2/mirror
/data2/mirror)
```

   > **Note** You can initialize your WarehousePG cluster with primary segments only and deploy mirrors later using the gpaddmirrors utility.

4. Save and close the file.

#### Running the Initialization Utility

The gpinitsystem utility will create a WarehousePG cluster using the values defined in the configuration file.

These steps assume you are logged in as the `gpadmin` user and have sourced the `greenplum_path.sh` file to set WarehousePG environment variables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### To run the initialization utility

1. Run the following command referencing the path and file name of your initialization configuration file ( `gpinitsystem_config` ) and host file ( `hostfile_gpinitsystem` ). Use absolute paths (or paths relative to `$HOME` , as shown here), so the command works regardless of your current working directory. For example:

   ```
   gpinitsystem -c ~/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config -h ~/gpconfigs/hostfile_gpinitsystem
   ```

   For a fully redundant system (with a standby coordinator and a *spread* mirror configuration) include the `-s` and `--mirror-mode=spread` options. For example:

   ```
   gpinitsystem -c ~/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config -h ~/gpconfigs/hostfile_gpinitsystem \
     -s <standby_master_hostname> --mirror-mode=spread
   ```

   During a new cluster creation, you may use the `-O output\_configuration\_file` option to save the cluster configuration details in a file. For example:

   ```
   gpinitsystem -c ~/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config -O ~/gpconfigs/config_template
   ```

   This output file can be edited and used at a later stage as the input file of the `-I` option, to create a new cluster or to recover from a backup. See gpinitsystem for further details.

   > **Note** Calling `gpinitsystem` with the `-O` option does not initialize the WarehousePG cluster; it merely generates and saves a file with cluster configuration details.

2. The utility will verify your setup information and make sure it can connect to each host and access the data directories specified in your configuration. If all of the pre-checks are successful, the utility will prompt you to confirm your configuration. For example:

   ```
   => Continue with WarehousePG creation? Yy/Nn
   ```

3. Press `y` to start the initialization.

4. The utility will then begin setup and initialization of the coordinator instance and each segment instance in the system. Each segment instance is set up in parallel. Depending on the number of segments, this process can take a while.

5. At the end of a successful setup, the utility will start your WarehousePG cluster. You should see:

   ```
   => WarehousePG instance successfully created.
   ```

#### Troubleshooting Initialization Problems

If the utility encounters any errors while setting up an instance, the entire process will fail, and could possibly leave you with a partially created system. Refer to the error messages and logs to determine the cause of the failure and where in the process the failure occurred. Log files are created in `~/gpAdminLogs` .

The top-level log entries, such as `Failed to start segment instance database` or `Errors generated from parallel processes` , only report that a failure occurred, not the underlying cause. The actual cause is usually further down in the same log file. To find it, search the `gpinitsystem` log for the host and initialization run you want to check. The log file is appended to on every run for the day, so check the timestamps on the matched lines to make sure you're looking at the run that just failed.

```
grep -E 'FATAL|ERROR|error' ~/gpAdminLogs/gpinitsystem_<date>.log | tail -20
```

If the result includes `could not map anonymous shared memory: Cannot allocate memory` , the host likely doesn't have enough memory for the configured `max_connections` (default: 250 on the coordinator and 750 on segments, which is always 3x the coordinator value). This shortage is common on smaller hosts. Set a lower value, such as `MASTER_MAX_CONNECT=50` , in your `gpinitsystem_config` file (or pass `-m 50` to `gpinitsystem` ) and retry.

Depending on when the error occurred in the process, you may need to clean up and then try the `gpinitsystem` utility again. For example, if some segment instances were created and some failed, you may need to stop `postgres` processes and remove any utility-created data directories from your data storage area(s). A backout script is created to help with this cleanup if necessary. Don't rerun `gpinitsystem` before you clean up. Retrying without running the backout script first fails immediately with an error such as `Master host data directory already exists` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Using the Backout Script

If the gpinitsystem utility fails, it will create the following backout script if it has left your system in a partially installed state:

```
~/gpAdminLogs/backout_gpinitsystem_<user>_<timestamp>
```

You can use this script to clean up a partially created WarehousePG cluster. This backout script will remove any utility-created data directories, `postgres` processes, and log files. After correcting the error that caused `gpinitsystem` to fail and running the backout script, you should be ready to retry initializing your WarehousePG array.

The following example shows how to run the backout script:

```
bash ~/gpAdminLogs/backout_gpinitsystem_gpadmin_20071031_121053
```

#### Setting the WarehousePG Timezone

As a best practice, configure WarehousePG and the host systems to use a known, supported timezone. WarehousePG uses a timezone from a set of internally stored PostgreSQL timezones. Setting the WarehousePG timezone prevents WarehousePG from selecting a timezone each time the cluster is restarted and sets the timezone for the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances.

Use the gpconfig utility to show and set the WarehousePG timezone. For example, these commands show the WarehousePG timezone and set the timezone to `US/Pacific`.

```
gpconfig -s TimeZone
gpconfig -c TimeZone -v 'US/Pacific'
```

You must restart WarehousePG after changing the timezone. The command `gpstop -ra` restarts WarehousePG. The catalog view `pg_timezone_names` provides WarehousePG timezone information.

For more information about the WarehousePG timezone, see Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings.

### Setting WarehousePG Environment Variables

You must set environment variables in the WarehousePG user ( `gpadmin` ) environment that runs WarehousePG on the WarehousePG coordinator and standby coordinator hosts. A `greenplum_path.sh` file is provided in the WarehousePG installation directory with environment variable settings for WarehousePG.

The WarehousePG management utilities also require that the `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` environment variable be set. This should point to the directory created by the `gpinitsystem` utility in the coordinator data directory location.

> **Note** The `greenplum_path.sh` script changes the operating environment in order to support running the WarehousePG-specific utilities. These same changes to the environment can negatively affect the operation of other system-level utilities, such as `ps` or `yum`. Use separate accounts for performing system administration and database administration, instead of attempting to perform both functions as `gpadmin`.

These steps ensure that the environment variables are set for the `gpadmin` user after a system reboot.

#### To set up the gpadmin environment for WarehousePG

1. Open the `gpadmin` profile file (such as `.bashrc` ) in a text editor. For example:

   ```
   vi ~/.bashrc
   ```

2. Add lines to this file to source the `greenplum_path.sh` file and set the `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` environment variable. For example:

   ```
   source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   export MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY=/data/master/gpseg-1
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. (Optional) You may also want to set some client session environment variables such as `PGPORT`, `PGUSER` and `PGDATABASE` for convenience. For example:

```
export PGPORT=5432
export PGUSER=gpadmin
export PGDATABASE=gpadmin
```

4. (Optional) If you use RHEL 7 or CentOS 7, add the following line to the end of the `.bashrc` file to enable using the `ps` command in the `greenplum_path.sh` environment:

```
export LD_PRELOAD=/lib64/libz.so.1 ps
```

5. Save and close the file.

6. After editing the profile file, source it to make the changes active. For example:

```
source ~/.bashrc
```

7. If you have a standby coordinator host, copy your environment file to the standby coordinator as well. For example:

```
cd ~
scp .bashrc <standby_hostname>:`pwd`
```

> **Note** The `.bashrc` file should not produce any output. If you wish to have a message display to users upon logging in, use the `.bash_profile` file instead.

## Next Steps

After your system is up and running, the next steps are:

- Allowing Client Connections
- Creating Databases and Loading Data

### Allowing Client Connections

After a WarehousePG is first initialized it will only allow local connections to the database from the `gpadmin` role (or whatever system user ran `gpinitsystem`). If you would like other users or client machines to be able to connect to WarehousePG, you must give them access. See the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more information.

### Creating Databases and Loading Data

After verifying your installation, you may want to begin creating databases and loading data. See DDL: Defining Database Objects and Loading and Unloading Data in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more information about creating databases, schemas, tables, and other database objects in WarehousePG and loading your data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.8 Installing additional modules

WarehousePG ships with bundled modules that require no extra install, and supports separately provided modules that require a package install on each host before enabling.

### Bundled modules

Bundled modules are included in the WarehousePG distribution. Activate them in each database where you want them available:

```
psql -d <database_name> -c 'CREATE EXTENSION
<extension_name>;'
```

To remove a bundled extension from a database:

```
psql -d <database_name> -c 'DROP EXTENSION
<extension_name>;'
```

Some bundled modules use `shared_preload_libraries` instead of `CREATE EXTENSION`. See the bundled modules reference for details on each module.

### Separately provided modules

Separately provided modules require downloading and installing a package on every host in your cluster first. See the category pages below for links to installation instructions:

- **Extensions** — machine learning, geospatial, and statistical extensions.
- **Procedural languages** — additional languages for writing database functions.
- **External components** — tools that integrate with WarehousePG but aren't database extensions.

For a complete list of available modules in each category, see Additional Supplied Modules.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 3.8.1 Installing procedural languages

PL/pgSQL, PL/Perl, and PL/Python ship with WarehousePG and don't require a separate install. Enable them with `CREATE EXTENSION` in the target database.

The following procedural languages require a separate package install on each host:

- Installing PL/Java
  Enables writing functions in the Java programming language.

- Installing PL/R
  Enables writing functions in the R programming language.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 3.8.2 Installing external components

External components are separately installed tools that extend WarehousePG's capabilities beyond the database itself.

- WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF)
  Provides access to external data stores including Hadoop, object storage, and relational databases.

- whpg-backup
  Provides parallel backup and restore for WarehousePG clusters.

- whpg-backup-s3-plugin
  Adds Amazon S3 support to whpg-backup.

- WarehousePG Enterprise Manager
  Provides a web-based management and monitoring interface for WarehousePG clusters.

- FlowServer for WarehousePG
  Provides workflow orchestration and scheduling for WarehousePG.

- WarehousePG Copy
  Provides high-performance data loading and unloading for WarehousePG.

- WarehousePG Disaster Recovery
  Provides physical backups, point-in-time recovery, and warm standby for WarehousePG clusters.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.9 Installing Optional Extensions

Information about installing optional WarehousePG extensions and packages, such as the Procedural Language extensions.

- WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF)

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 3.9.1 Platform Extension Framework (PXF)

*Optional.* If you do not plan to use PXF, no action is necessary.

If you plan to use PXF, refer to PXF for WarehousePG for installation and usage information.

**Parent topic:** Installing Optional Extensions (WarehousePG)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.10 Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings

Describes the available timezone and localization features of WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Configuring the Timezone

WarehousePG selects a timezone to use from a set of internally stored PostgreSQL timezones. The available PostgreSQL timezones are taken from the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) Time Zone Database, and WarehousePG updates its list of available timezones as necessary when the IANA database changes for PostgreSQL.

WarehousePG selects the timezone by matching a PostgreSQL timezone with the value of the `TimeZone` server configuration parameter, or the host system time zone if `TimeZone` is not set. For example, when selecting a default timezone from the host system time zone, WarehousePG uses an algorithm to select a PostgreSQL timezone based on the host system timezone files. If the system timezone includes leap second information, WarehousePG cannot match the system timezone with a PostgreSQL timezone. In this case, WarehousePG calculates a "best match" with a PostgreSQL timezone based on information from the host system.

As a best practice, configure WarehousePG and the host systems to use a known, supported timezone. This sets the timezone for the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances, and prevents WarehousePG from selecting a best match timezone each time the cluster is restarted, using the current system timezone and WarehousePG timezone files (which may have been updated from the IANA database since the last restart). Use the `gpconfig` utility to show and set the WarehousePG timezone. For example, these commands show the WarehousePG timezone and set the timezone to `US/Pacific`.

```
# gpconfig -s TimeZone
# gpconfig -c TimeZone -v 'US/Pacific'
```

You must restart WarehousePG after changing the timezone. The command `gpstop -ra` restarts WarehousePG. The catalog view `pg_timezone_names` provides WarehousePG timezone information.

### About Locale Support in WarehousePG

WarehousePG supports localization with two approaches:

- Using the locale features of the operating system to provide locale-specific collation order, number formatting, and so on.
- Providing a number of different character sets defined in the WarehousePG server, including multiple-byte character sets, to support storing text in all kinds of languages, and providing character set translation between client and server.

Locale support refers to an application respecting cultural preferences regarding alphabets, sorting, number formatting, etc. WarehousePG uses the standard ISO C and POSIX locale facilities provided by the server operating system. For additional information refer to the documentation of your operating system.

Locale support is automatically initialized when a WarehousePG cluster is initialized. The initialization utility, gpinitsystem, will initialize the WarehousePG cluster with the locale setting of its execution environment by default, so if your system is already set to use the locale that you want in your WarehousePG cluster then there is nothing else you need to do.

When you are ready to initiate WarehousePG and you want to use a different locale (or you are not sure which locale your system is set to), you can instruct `gpinitsystem` exactly which locale to use by specifying the -n locale option. For example:

```
$ gpinitsystem -c gp_init_config -n sv_SE
```

See Initializing WarehousePG for information about the database initialization process.

The example above sets the locale to Swedish (sv) as spoken in Sweden (SE). Other possibilities might be `en_US` (U.S. English) and `fr_CA` (French Canadian). If more than one character set can be useful for a locale then the specifications look like this: `cs_CZ.ISO8859-2`. What locales are available under what names on your system depends on what was provided by the operating system vendor and what was installed. On most systems, the command `locale -a` will provide a list of available locales.

Occasionally it is useful to mix rules from several locales, for example use English collation rules but Spanish messages. To support that, a set of locale subcategories exist that control only a certain aspect of the localization rules:

- `LC_COLLATE` — String sort order
- `LC_CTYPE` — Character classification (What is a letter? Its upper-case equivalent?)
- `LC_MESSAGES` — Language of messages
- `LC_MONETARY` — Formatting of currency amounts

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `LC_NUMERIC` — Formatting of numbers
- `LC_TIME` — Formatting of dates and times

If you want the system to behave as if it had no locale support, use the special locale `C` or `POSIX`.

The nature of some locale categories is that their value has to be fixed for the lifetime of a WarehousePG cluster. That is, once `gpinitsystem` has run, you cannot change them anymore. `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` are those categories. They affect the sort order of indexes, so they must be kept fixed, or indexes on text columns will become corrupt. WarehousePG enforces this by recording the values of `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` that are seen by gpinitsystem. The server automatically adopts those two values based on the locale that was chosen at initialization time.

The other locale categories can be changed as desired whenever the server is running by setting the server configuration parameters that have the same name as the locale categories (see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information on setting server configuration parameters). The defaults that are chosen by gpinitsystem are written into the coordinator and segment `postgresql.conf` configuration files to serve as defaults when the WarehousePG cluster is started. If you delete these assignments from the coordinator and each segment `postgresql.conf` files then the server will inherit the settings from its execution environment.

Note that the locale behavior of the server is determined by the environment variables seen by the server, not by the environment of any client. Therefore, be careful to configure the correct locale settings on each WarehousePG host (coordinator and segments) before starting the system. A consequence of this is that if client and server are set up in different locales, messages may appear in different languages depending on where they originated.

Inheriting the locale from the execution environment means the following on most operating systems: For a given locale category, say the collation, the following environment variables are consulted in this order until one is found to be set: `LC_ALL`, `LC_COLLATE` (the variable corresponding to the respective category), `LANG`. If none of these environment variables are set then the locale defaults to `C`.

Some message localization libraries also look at the environment variable `LANGUAGE` which overrides all other locale settings for the purpose of setting the language of messages. If in doubt, please refer to the documentation for your operating system, in particular the documentation about `gettext`, for more information.

Native language support (NLS), which enables messages to be translated to the user's preferred language, is not enabled in WarehousePG for languages other than English. This is independent of the other locale support.

#### Locale Behavior

The locale settings influence the following SQL features:

- Sort order in queries using `ORDER BY` on textual data
- The ability to use indexes with `LIKE` clauses
- The `upper`, `lower`, and `initcap` functions
- The `to_char` family of functions

The drawback of using locales other than `C` or `POSIX` in WarehousePG is its performance impact. It slows character handling and prevents ordinary indexes from being used by `LIKE`. For this reason use locales only if you actually need them.

#### Troubleshooting Locales

If locale support does not work as expected, check that the locale support in your operating system is correctly configured. To check what locales are installed on your system, you may use the command `locale -a` if your operating system provides it.

Check that WarehousePG is actually using the locale that you think it is. `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings are determined at initialization time and cannot be changed without redoing gpinitsystem. Other locale settings including `LC_MESSAGES` and `LC_MONETARY` are initially determined by the operating system environment of the coordinator and/or segment host, but can be changed after initialization by editing the `postgresql.conf` file of each WarehousePG coordinator and segment instance. You can check the active locale settings of the coordinator host using the `SHOW` command. Note that every host in your WarehousePG array should be using identical locale settings.

### Character Set Support

The character set support in WarehousePG allows you to store text in a variety of character sets, including single-byte character sets such as the ISO 8859 series and multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended Unix Code), UTF-8, and Mule internal code. All supported character sets can be used transparently by clients, but a few are not supported for use within the server (that is, as a server-side encoding). The default character set is selected while initializing your WarehousePG array using `gpinitsystem`. It can be overridden when you create a database, so you can have multiple databases each with a different character set.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Name [^1] | Description | Language | Server? | Bytes/Char | Aliases |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BIG5 | Big Five | Traditional Chinese | No | 1-2 | WIN950, Windows950 |
| EUC_CN | Extended UNIX Code-CN | Simplified Chinese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_JP | Extended UNIX Code-JP | Japanese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_KR | Extended UNIX Code-KR | Korean | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_TW | Extended UNIX Code-TW | Traditional Chinese, Taiwanese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| GB18030 | National Standard | Chinese | No | 1-2 | |
| GBK | Extended National Standard | Simplified Chinese | No | 1-2 | WIN936, Windows936 |
| ISO_8859_5 | ISO 8859-5, ECMA 113 | Latin/Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_6 | ISO 8859-6, ECMA 114 | Latin/Arabic | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_7 | ISO 8859-7, ECMA 118 | Latin/Greek | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_8 | ISO 8859-8, ECMA 121 | Latin/Hebrew | Yes | 1 | |
| JOHAB | JOHA | Korean (Hangul) | Yes | 1-3 | |
| KOI8 | KOI8-R(U) | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | KOI8R |
| LATIN1 | ISO 8859-1, ECMA 94 | Western European | Yes | 1 | ISO88591 |
| LATIN2 | ISO 8859-2, ECMA 94 | Central European | Yes | 1 | ISO88592 |
| LATIN3 | ISO 8859-3, ECMA 94 | South European | Yes | 1 | ISO88593 |
| LATIN4 | ISO 8859-4, ECMA 94 | North European | Yes | 1 | ISO88594 |
| LATIN5 | ISO 8859-9, ECMA 128 | Turkish | Yes | 1 | ISO88599 |
| LATIN6 | ISO 8859-10, ECMA 144 | Nordic | Yes | 1 | ISO885910 |
| LATIN7 | ISO 8859-13 | Baltic | Yes | 1 | ISO885913 |
| LATIN8 | ISO 8859-14 | Celtic | Yes | 1 | ISO885914 |
| LATIN9 | ISO 8859-15 | LATIN1 with Euro and accents | Yes | 1 | ISO885915 |
| LATIN10 | ISO 8859-16, ASRO SR 14111 | Romanian | Yes | 1 | ISO885916 |
| MULE_INTERNAL | Mule internal code | Multilingual Emacs | Yes | 1-4 | |
| SJIS | Shift JIS | Japanese | No | 1-2 | Mskanji, ShiftJIS, WIN932, Windows932 |
| SQL_ASCII | unspecified [^2] | any | No | 1 | |
| UHC | Unified Hangul Code | Korean | No | 1-2 | WIN949, Windows949 |
| UTF8 | Unicode, 8-bit | all | Yes | 1-4 | Unicode |
| WIN866 | Windows CP866 | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | ALT |
| WIN874 | Windows CP874 | Thai | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1250 | Windows CP1250 | Central European | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1251 | Windows CP1251 | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | WIN |
| WIN1252 | Windows CP1252 | Western European | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1253 | Windows CP1253 | Greek | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1254 | Windows CP1254 | Turkish | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1255 | Windows CP1255 | Hebrew | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1256 | Windows CP1256 | Arabic | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1257 | Windows CP1257 | Baltic | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1258 | Windows CP1258 | Vietnamese | Yes | 1 | ABC, TCVN, TCVN5712, VSCII |

[^1]: Not all APIs support all the listed character sets. For example, the JDBC driver does not support MULE_INTERNAL, LATIN6, LATIN8, and LATIN10.

[^2]: The SQL_ASCII setting behaves considerably differently from the other settings. Byte values 0-127 are interpreted according to the ASCII standard, while byte values 128-255 are taken as uninterpreted characters. If you are working with any non-ASCII data, it is unwise to use the SQL_ASCII setting as a client encoding. SQL_ASCII is not supported as a server encoding.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Setting the Character Set

gpinitsystem defines the default character set for a WarehousePG cluster by reading the setting of the `ENCODING` parameter in the `gp_init_config` file at initialization time. The default character set is `UNICODE` or `UTF8`.

You can create a database with a different character set besides what is used as the system-wide default. For example:

```
=> CREATE DATABASE korean WITH ENCODING 'EUC_KR';
```

> **Important** Although you can specify any encoding you want for a database, it is unwise to choose an encoding that is not what is expected by the locale you have selected. The `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings imply a particular encoding, and locale-dependent operations (such as sorting) are likely to misinterpret data that is in an incompatible encoding.

Since these locale settings are frozen by gpinitsystem, the apparent flexibility to use different encodings in different databases is more theoretical than real.

One way to use multiple encodings safely is to set the locale to `C` or `POSIX` during initialization time, thus deactivating any real locale awareness.

### Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client

WarehousePG supports automatic character set conversion between server and client for certain character set combinations. The conversion information is stored in the coordinator `pg_conversion` system catalog table. WarehousePG comes with some predefined conversions or you can create a new conversion using the SQL command `CREATE CONVERSION`.

| Server Character Set | Available Client Character Sets |
|---|---|
| BIG5 | not supported as a server encoding |
| EUC_CN | EUC_CN, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| EUC_JP | EUC_JP, MULE_INTERNAL, SJIS, UTF8 |
| EUC_KR | EUC_KR, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| EUC_TW | EUC_TW, BIG5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| GB18030 | not supported as a server encoding |
| GBK | not supported as a server encoding |
| ISO_8859_5 | ISO_8859_5, KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251 |
| ISO_8859_6 | ISO_8859_6, UTF8 |
| ISO_8859_7 | ISO_8859_7, UTF8 |
| ISO_8859_8 | ISO_8859_8, UTF8 |
| JOHAB | JOHAB, UTF8 |
| KOI8 | KOI8, ISO_8859_5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251 |
| LATIN1 | LATIN1, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN2 | LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1250 |
| LATIN3 | LATIN3, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN4 | LATIN4, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN5 | LATIN5, UTF8 |
| LATIN6 | LATIN6, UTF8 |
| LATIN7 | LATIN7, UTF8 |
| LATIN8 | LATIN8, UTF8 |
| LATIN9 | LATIN9, UTF8 |
| LATIN10 | LATIN10, UTF8 |
| MULE_INTERNAL | MULE_INTERNAL, BIG5, EUC_CN, EUC_JP, EUC_KR, EUC_TW, ISO_8859_5, KOI8, LATIN1 to LATIN4, SJIS, WIN866, WIN1250, WIN1251 |
| SJIS | not supported as a server encoding |
| SQL_ASCII | not supported as a server encoding |
| UHC | not supported as a server encoding |
| UTF8 | all supported encodings |
| WIN866 | WIN866 |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Server Character Set | Available Client Character Sets |
|---|---|
| ISO_8859_5 | KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1251 |
| WIN874 | WIN874, UTF8 |
| WIN1250 | WIN1250, LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| WIN1251 | WIN1251, ISO_8859_5, KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866 |
| WIN1252 | WIN1252, UTF8 |
| WIN1253 | WIN1253, UTF8 |
| WIN1254 | WIN1254, UTF8 |
| WIN1255 | WIN1255, UTF8 |
| WIN1256 | WIN1256, UTF8 |
| WIN1257 | WIN1257, UTF8 |
| WIN1258 | WIN1258, UTF8 |

To enable automatic character set conversion, you have to tell WarehousePG the character set (encoding) you would like to use in the client. There are several ways to accomplish this:

- Using the `\encoding` command in `psql`, which allows you to change client encoding on the fly.
- Using `SET client_encoding TO`. Setting the client encoding can be done with this SQL command:

  ```
  => SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO '<value>';
  ```

  To query the current client encoding:

  ```
  => SHOW client_encoding;
  ```

  To return to the default encoding:

  ```
  => RESET client_encoding;
  ```

- Using the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable. When `PGCLIENTENCODING` is defined in the client's environment, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)
- Setting the configuration parameter `client_encoding`. If `client_encoding` is set in the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to WarehousePG is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

If the conversion of a particular character is not possible — suppose you chose `EUC_JP` for the server and `LATIN1` for the client, then some Japanese characters do not have a representation in `LATIN1` — then an error is reported.

If the client character set is defined as `SQL_ASCII`, encoding conversion is deactivated, regardless of the server's character set. The use of `SQL_ASCII` is unwise unless you are working with all-ASCII data. `SQL_ASCII` is not supported as a server encoding.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.11 Enabling iptables (Optional)

On Linux systems, you can configure and enable the `iptables` firewall to work with WarehousePG.

> **Note** WarehousePG performance might be impacted when `iptables` is enabled. You should test the performance of your application with `iptables` enabled to ensure that performance is acceptable.

For more information about `iptables` see the `iptables` and firewall documentation for your operating system. See also Deactivating SELinux and Firewall Software.

### How to Enable iptables

1. As `gpadmin`, run this command on the WarehousePG coordinator host to stop WarehousePG:

   ```
   $ gpstop -a
   ```

2. On the WarehousePG hosts:

   1. Update the file `/etc/sysconfig/iptables` based on the Example iptables Rules.

   2. As root user, run these commands to enable `iptables`:

      ```
      # chkconfig iptables on
      # service iptables start
      ```

3. As gpadmin, run this command on the WarehousePG coordinator host to start WarehousePG:

   ```
   $ gpstart -a
   ```

> **Caution** After enabling `iptables`, this error in the `/var/log/messages` file indicates that the setting for the `iptables` table is too low and needs to be increased.

```
ip_conntrack: table full, dropping packet.
```

As root, run this command to view the `iptables` table value:

```
# sysctl net.ipv4.netfilter.ip_conntrack_max
```

To ensure that the WarehousePG workload does not overflow the `iptables` table, as root, set it to the following value:

```
# sysctl net.ipv4.netfilter.ip_conntrack_max=6553600
```

The value might need to be adjusted for your hosts. To maintain the value after reboot, you can update the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file as discussed in Setting the WarehousePG Recommended OS Parameters.

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Example iptables Rules

When `iptables` is enabled, `iptables` manages the IP communication on the host system based on configuration settings (rules). The example rules are used to configure `iptables` for WarehousePG coordinator host, standby coordinator host, and segment hosts.

- Example Coordinator and standby coordinator iptables Rules
- Example Segment Host iptables Rules

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The two sets of rules account for the different types of communication WarehousePG expects on the coordinator (primary and standby) and segment hosts. The rules should be added to the `/etc/sysconfig/iptables` file of the WarehousePG hosts. For WarehousePG, `iptables` rules should allow the following communication:

- For customer facing communication with the WarehousePG coordinator, allow at least `postgres` and `28080` (`eth1` interface in the example).
- For WarehousePG cluster interconnect, allow communication using `tcp`, `udp`, and `icmp` protocols (`eth4` and `eth5` interfaces in the example).

  The network interfaces that you specify in the `iptables` settings are the interfaces for the WarehousePG hosts that you list in the hostfile_gpinitsystem file. You specify the file when you run the `gpinitsystem` command to initialize a WarehousePG cluster. See Initializing WarehousePG for information about the hostfile_gpinitsystem file and the `gpinitsystem` command.
- For the administration network on a WarehousePG DCA, allow communication using `ssh`, `ntp`, and `icmp` protocols. (`eth0` interface in the example).

In the `iptables` file, each append rule command (lines starting with `-A`) is a single line.

The example rules should be adjusted for your configuration. For example:

- The append command, the `-A` lines and connection parameter `-i` should match the connectors for your hosts.
- the CIDR network mask information for the source parameter `-s` should match the IP addresses for your network.

#### Example Coordinator and standby coordinator iptables Rules

Example `iptables` rules with comments for the `/etc/sysconfig/iptables` file on the WarehousePG coordinator host and standby coordinator host.

```
*filter
# Following 3 are default rules. If the packet passes through
# the rule set it gets these rule.
# Drop all inbound packets by default.
# Drop all forwarded (routed) packets.
# Let anything outbound go through.
:INPUT DROP [0:0]
:FORWARD DROP [0:0]
:OUTPUT ACCEPT [0:0]
# Accept anything on the loopback interface.
-A INPUT -i lo -j ACCEPT
# If a connection has already been established allow the
# remote host packets for the connection to pass through.
-A INPUT -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT
# These rules let all tcp and udp through on the standard
# interconnect IP addresses and on the interconnect interfaces.
# NOTE: gpsyncmaster uses random tcp ports in the range 1025 to 65535
# and WarehousePG uses random udp ports in the range 1025 to 65535.
-A INPUT -i eth4 -p udp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth5 -p udp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth4 -p tcp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
-A INPUT -i eth5 -p tcp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
\# Allow udp/tcp ntp connections on the admin network on WarehousePG DCA.
-A INPUT -i eth0 -p udp --dport ntp -s 203.0.113.0/21 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth0 -p tcp --dport ntp -s 203.0.113.0/21 -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
# Allow ssh on all networks (This rule can be more strict).
-A INPUT -p tcp --dport ssh -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
# Allow WarehousePG on all networks.
-A INPUT -p tcp --dport postgres -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
# Allow ping and any other icmp traffic on the interconnect networks.
-A INPUT -i eth4 -p icmp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth5 -p icmp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT
\# Allow ping only on the admin network on WarehousePG DCA.
-A INPUT -i eth0 -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -s 203.0.113.0/21 -j ACCEPT
# Log an error if a packet passes through the rules to the default
# INPUT rule (a DROP).
-A INPUT -m limit --limit 5/min -j LOG --log-prefix "iptables denied: " --log-level 7
COMMIT
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Example Segment Host iptables Rules

Example `iptables` rules for the `/etc/sysconfig/iptables` file on the WarehousePG segment hosts. The rules for segment hosts are similar to the coordinator rules with fewer interfaces and fewer `udp` and `tcp` services.

```
*filter
:INPUT DROP
:FORWARD DROP
:OUTPUT ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i lo -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -m state --state ESTABLISHED,RELATED -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth2 -p udp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth3 -p udp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth2 -p tcp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
-A INPUT -i eth3 -p tcp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
-A INPUT -p tcp --dport ssh -j ACCEPT --syn -m state --state NEW
-A INPUT -i eth2 -p icmp -s 192.0.2.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth3 -p icmp -s 198.51.100.0/22 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -i eth0 -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -s 203.0.113.0/21 -j ACCEPT
-A INPUT -m limit --limit 5/min -j LOG --log-prefix "iptables denied: " --log-level 7
COMMIT
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.12 Installation Management Utilities

References for the command-line management utilities used to install and initialize a WarehousePG cluster.

For a full reference of all WarehousePG utilities, see the WarehousePG Utility Guide.

The following WarehousePG management utilities are located in `$GPHOME/bin`.

- gpactivatestandby
- gpaddmirrors
- gpcheckperf
- gpdeletesystem
- gpinitstandby
- gpinitsystem
- gpscp
- gpssh
- gpssh-exkeys
- gpstart
- gpstop

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.13 Example Ansible Playbook

A sample Ansible playbook to install a WarehousePG software release onto the hosts that will comprise a WarehousePG cluster.

This Ansible playbook shows how tasks described in Installing the WarehousePG Software might be automated using Ansible.

> **Important** This playbook is provided as an *example only* to illustrate how WarehousePG cluster configuration and software installation tasks can be automated using provisioning tools such as Ansible, Chef, or Puppet.

The example playbook is designed for use with CentOS 7. It creates the `gpadmin` user, installs the WarehousePG software release, sets the owner and group of the installed software to `gpadmin`, and sets the Pam security limits for the `gpadmin` user.

You can revise the script to work with your operating system platform and to perform additional host configuration tasks.

Following are steps to use this Ansible playbook.

1. Install Ansible on the control node using your package manager. See the Ansible documentation for help with installation.
2. Set up passwordless SSH from the control node to all hosts that will be a part of the WarehousePG cluster. You can use the `ssh-copy-id` command to install your public SSH key on each host in the cluster. Alternatively, your provisioning software may provide more convenient ways to securely install public keys on multiple hosts.
3. Create an Ansible inventory by creating a file called `hosts` with a list of the hosts that will comprise your WarehousePG cluster. For example:

   ```
   mdw
   sdw1
   sdw2
   ...
   ```

   This file can be edited and used with the WarehousePG `gpssh-exkeys` and `gpinitsystem` utilities later on.
4. Copy the playbook code below to a file `ansible-playbook.yml` on your Ansible control node.
5. Edit the playbook variables at the top of the playbook, such as the `gpadmin` administrative user and password to create, and the version of WarehousePG you are installing.
6. Run the playbook, passing the package to be installed to the `package_path` parameter.

   ```
   ansible-playbook ansible-playbook.yml -i hosts -e package_path=./greenplum-db-6.0.0-rhel7-x86_64.rpm
   ```

**Ansible Playbook - WarehousePG Installation for CentOS 7**

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
---

- hosts: all
  vars:
    - version: "6.0.0"
    - greenplum_admin_user: "gpadmin"
    - greenplum_admin_password: "changeme"
    # - package_path: passed via the command line with: -e package_path=./greenplum-db-6.0.0-rhel7-x86_64.rpm
  remote_user: root
  become: yes
  become_method: sudo
  connection: ssh
  gather_facts: yes
  tasks:
    - name: create greenplum admin user
      user:
        name: "{{ greenplum_admin_user }}"
        password: "{{ greenplum_admin_password | password_hash('sha512', 'DvkPtCtNH+UdbePZfm9muQ9pU') }}"
    - name: copy package to host
      copy:
        src: "{{ package_path }}"
        dest: /tmp
    - name: install package
      yum:
        name: "/tmp/{{ package_path | basename }}"
        state: present
    - name: cleanup package file from host
      file:
        path: "/tmp/{{ package_path | basename }}"
        state: absent
    - name: find install directory
      find:
        paths: /usr/local
        patterns: 'greenplum*'
        file_type: directory
      register: installed_dir
    - name: change install directory ownership
      file:
        path: '{{ item.path }}'
        owner: "{{ greenplum_admin_user }}"
        group: "{{ greenplum_admin_user }}"
        recurse: yes
      with_items: "{{ installed_dir.files }}"
    - name: update pam_limits
      pam_limits:
        domain: "{{ greenplum_admin_user }}"
        limit_type: '-'
        limit_item: "{{ item.key }}"
        value: "{{ item.value }}"
      with_dict:
        nofile: 524288
        nproc: 131072
    - name: find installed greenplum version
      shell: . /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh && /usr/edb/whpg6/bin/postgres --gp-version
      register: postgres_gp_version
    - name: fail if the correct greenplum version is not installed
      fail:
        msg: "Expected greenplum version {{ version }}, but found '{{ postgres_gp_version.stdout }}'"
      when: "version is not defined or version not in postgres_gp_version.stdout"
```

When the playbook has run successfully, you can proceed with Creating the Data Storage Areas and Initializing WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.14 WarehousePG Environment Variables

Reference of the environment variables to set for WarehousePG.

Set these in your user's startup shell profile (such as `~/.bashrc` or `~/.bash_profile`), or in `/etc/profile` if you want to set them for all users.

- Required Environment Variables
- Optional Environment Variables

**Parent topic:** Installing and Upgrading WarehousePG

### Required Environment Variables

> **Note** `GPHOME`, `PATH` and `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` can be set by sourcing the `greenplum_path.sh` file from your WarehousePG installation directory

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Environment Variables

#### GPHOME

This is the installed location of your WarehousePG software. For example:

```
GPHOME=/usr/edb/whpg6/
export GPHOME
```

#### PATH

Your `PATH` environment variable should point to the location of the WarehousePG `bin` directory. For example:

```
PATH=$GPHOME/bin:$PATH
export PATH
```

#### LD_LIBRARY_PATH

The `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable should point to the location of the WarehousePG/PostgreSQL library files. For example:

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$GPHOME/lib
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

#### MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY

This should point to the directory created by the gpinitsystem utility in the coordinator data directory location. For example:

```
MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY=/data/master/gpseg-1
export MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Optional Environment Variables

The following are standard PostgreSQL environment variables, which are also recognized in WarehousePG. You may want to add the connection-related environment variables to your profile for convenience, so you do not have to type so many options on the command line for client connections. Note that these environment variables should be set on the WarehousePG coordinator host only.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Environment Variables

### PGAPPNAME

The name of the application that is usually set by an application when it connects to the server. This name is displayed in the activity view and in log entries. The `PGAPPNAME` environmental variable behaves the same as the `application_name` connection parameter. The default value for `application_name` is `psql`. The name cannot be longer than 63 characters.

### PGDATABASE

The name of the default database to use when connecting.

### PGHOST

The WarehousePG coordinator host name.

### PGHOSTADDR

The numeric IP address of the coordinator host. This can be set instead of or in addition to `PGHOST` to avoid DNS lookup overhead.

### PGPASSWORD

The password used if the server demands password authentication. Use of this environment variable is not recommended for security reasons (some operating systems allow non-root users to see process environment variables via `ps`). Instead consider using the `~/.pgpass` file.

### PGPASSFILE

The name of the password file to use for lookups. If not set, it defaults to `~/.pgpass`. See the topic about The Password File in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

### PGOPTIONS

Sets additional configuration parameters for the WarehousePG coordinator server.

### PGPORT

The port number of the WarehousePG server on the coordinator host. The default port is 5432.

### PGUSER

The WarehousePG user name used to connect.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### PGDATESTYLE

Sets the default style of date/time representation for a session. (Equivalent to `SET datestyle TO...`)

#### PGTZ

Sets the default time zone for a session. (Equivalent to `SET timezone TO...`)

#### PGCLIENTENCODING

Sets the default client character set encoding for a session. (Equivalent to `SET client_encoding TO...`)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.15 Procedural Language, Machine Learning, and Geospatial Extensions

The extension documentation in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* contains information about installing extension packages and using extensions.

- WarehousePG PL/R Language Extension
- WarehousePG PL/Java Language Extension
- WarehousePG MADlib Extension for Analytics
- WarehousePG PostGIS Extension

> **Important** If you intend to use an extension package with WarehousePG 6 you must install and use a WarehousePG extension package that is built for WarehousePG 6. Any custom modules that were used with earlier versions must be rebuilt for use with WarehousePG 6.

**Parent topic:** Installing Optional Extensions (WarehousePG)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.16 Migrating WarehousePG from Enterprise Linux 7 to 8 or 9

Use this procedure to migrate a WarehousePG installation from Enterprise Linux (EL) version 7 to Enterprise Linux 8 or Enterprise Linux 9, while maintaining your existing version of WarehousePG.

Enterprise Linux includes CentOS, Rocky, Redhat (RHEL), and Oracle Linux (OEL) as the variants supported by WarehousePG. See Platform Requirements for a list of the supported operating systems.

Major version upgrades of Linux operating systems are always a complex task in a WarehousePG environment. You must weigh the risks of the different upgrade methods, as well as consider the impact of the required downtime.

### Important Upgrade Considerations

The GNU C Library, commonly known as `glibc`, is the GNU Project's implementation of the C standard library. Between EL 7 and 8, the version of `glibc` changes from 2.17 to 2.28, and between EL 7 and EL 9, the version of `glibc` changes from 2.17 to 2.34. These are major changes that impact many languages and their collations. The collation of a database specifies how to sort and compare strings of character data. A change in sorting for common languages can have a significant impact on PostgreSQL and WarehousePGs.

PostgreSQL and WarehousePGs use locale data provided by the operating system's C library for sorting text. Sorting happens in a variety of contexts, including for user output, merge joins, B-tree indexes, and range partitions. In the latter two cases, sorted data is persisted to disk. If the locale data in the C library changes during the lifetime of a database, the persisted data may become inconsistent with the expected sort order, which could lead to erroneous query results and other incorrect behavior.

If an index is not sorted in a way that an index scan is expecting it, a query could fail to find data, and an update could insert duplicate data. Similarly, in a partitioned table, a query could look in the wrong partition and an update could write to the wrong partition. It is essential to the correct operation of a database that you are aware of and understand any locale definition changes. Below are examples of the impact from locale changes in an EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9 upgrade:

**Example 1** A range-partitioned table using default partitions displaying the rows in an incorrect order after an upgrade:

```
CREATE TABLE partition_range_test_3(id int, date text) DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
      (
        PARTITION jan START ('01') INCLUSIVE,
        PARTITION feb START ('"02"') INCLUSIVE,
        PARTITION mar START ('"03"') INCLUSIVE );

INSERT INTO partition_range_test_3 VALUES (1, '01'), (1, '"01"'), (1, '"02"'), (1, '02'), (1, '03'), (1, '"03"'), (1,
'04'), (1, '"04"');
```

Results for EL 7:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3 ORDER BY date;
 id | date
----+------
  1 | "01"
  1 | 01
  1 | "02"
  1 | 02
  1 | "03"
  1 | 03
  1 | "04"
  1 | 04
(8 rows)

# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3_1_prt_jan;
 id | date
----+------
  1 | 01
  1 | "01"
  1 | 02
(3 rows)

# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3_1_prt_feb;
 id | date
----+------
  1 | "02"
  1 | 03
(2 rows)
```

After upgrading to EL 8:

```
# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3 WHERE date='03';
 id | date
----+------
(0 rows)

=# EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3 WHERE date='03';
                                        QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Gather Motion 4:1  (slice1; segments: 4)  (cost=0.00..720.00 rows=50 width=36)
   ->  Append  (cost=0.00..720.00 rows=13 width=36)
         ->  Seq Scan on partition_range_test_3_1_prt_mar  (cost=0.00..720.00 rows=13 width=36)
               Filter: (date = '03'::text)
 Optimizer: Postgres query optimizer
(5 rows)

# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_3_1_prt_feb;
 id | date
----+------
  1 | "02"
  1 | 03
(2 rows)
```

**Example 2** A range-partitioned table not using a default partition encountering errors after the upgrade.

```
CREATE TABLE partition_range_test_2 (id int, date text) DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
      (PARTITION Jan START ( '01') INCLUSIVE ,
      PARTITION Feb START ( '02') INCLUSIVE ,
      PARTITION Mar START ( '03') INCLUSIVE
      END ( '04') EXCLUSIVE);

INSERT INTO partition_range_test_2 VALUES (1, '01'), (1, '"01"'), (2, '"02"'), (2, '02'), (3, '03'), (3, '"03"');
```

Results for EL 7:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_2 ORDER BY date;
id | date
----+------
  1 | 01
  1 | "01"
  2 | 02
  2 | "02"
  3 | 03
  3 | "03"
```

After upgrading to EL 8:

```
# SELECT * FROM partition_range_test_2 ORDER BY date;
id | date
----+------
  1 | 01
  2 | "02"
  2 | 02
  3 | "03"
  3 | 03
(5 rows)

# INSERT INTO partition_range_test_2 VALUES (1, '"01"');
ERROR:  no partition of relation "partition_range_test_2" found for row  (seg1 10.80.0.2:7003 pid=40499)
DETAIL:  Partition key of the failing row contains (date) = ("01").
```

You must take the following into consideration when planning an upgrade from EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9:

- When using an in-place upgrade method, all indexes involving columns of collatable data type, such as `text`, `varchar`, `char`, and `citext`, must be reindexed before the database instance is put into production.
- When using an in-place upgrade method, range-partitioned tables using collatable data types in the partition key should be checked to verify that all rows are still in the correct partitions.
- To avoid downtime due to reindexing or repartitioning, consider upgrading using WarehousePG Copy or WarehousePG Backup and Restore instead of an in-place upgrade.
- When using an in-place upgrade method, databases or table columns using the `C` or `POSIX` locales are not affected. All other locales are potentially affected.

### Upgrade Methods

The following methods are the currently supported options to perform a major version upgrade from EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9 with WarehousePG.

- Using WarehousePG Copy Utility to copy from WarehousePG on EL 7 to a separate WarehousePG on EL 8 or EL 9.
- Using WarehousePG Backup and Restore to restore a backup taken from WarehousePG on EL 7 to a separate WarehousePG on EL 8 or EL 9.
- Using operating system vendor supported utilities, such as `leapp` to perform an in-place, simultaneous upgrade of EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9 for all WarehousePG hosts in a cluster then following the required post upgrade steps.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support a rolling upgrade, such that some WarehousePG Segment Hosts are operating with EL 7 and others with EL 8 or EL 9. All Segment Hosts must be upgraded together or otherwise before WarehousePG is started and workload continued after an upgrade.

#### WarehousePG Backup and Restore

WarehousePG Backup and Restore supports parallel and non-parallel methods for backing up and restoring databases.

The utility is compatible with the WarehousePG cluster from the source and destination running on different operating systems, including EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9. The `glibc` changes are not relevant for this migration method because the data is rewritten on the new cluster, which addresses any locale sorting changes. However, if the backup command includes the option `--leaf-partition-data`, it creates one data file per leaf partition, instead of one data file for the entire table. In this situation, when you restore the partition data to the upgraded cluster, the utility copies the data directly into the leaf partitions, which may lead to data being copied into an incorrect partition caused by the `glibc` changes. Therefore, you must ensure that the backup command does not use the option `--leaf-partition-data` so partitioned tables are copied as a single data file.

Any of the supported options for storage locations to perform the data transfer are supported for the EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9 upgrade.

As part of the overall process of this upgrade method, you:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Create a new WarehousePG cluster on the EL 8 or EL 9 systems with no data.
- Address any Operating System Configuration Differences.
- Use `gpbackup` to take a full backup of the source WarehousePG cluster on EL 7. Ensure that you are not using the option `--leaf-partition-data`.
- Restore the backup with `gprestore` to the destination WarehousePG cluster on EL 8 or EL 9.
- Remove the source WarehousePG cluster on the EL 7 systems.

The advantages of this method are different options for storage locations, and migration issues not impacting the source cluster. The disadvantage of this method is that it requires two separate WarehousePG clusters during the migration. It is also generally slower than WarehousePG Copy, and it requires table locks to perform a full backup.

#### Simultaneous, In-Place Upgrade

Redhat and Oracle Linux both support options for in-place upgrade of the operating system using the Leapp utility.

> **Note** In-Place upgrades with the Leapp utility are not supported with Rocky or CentOS Linux. You must use WarehousePG Copy or WarehousePG Backup and Restore instead.

WarehousePG includes the `el8_migrate_locale.py` utility which helps you identify and address the main challenges associated with an in-place upgrade from EL 7 to 8 or EL 9 caused by the `glibc` GNU C library changes.

As part of the overall process of this upgrade method, you:

- Run the `el8_migrate_locale.py` utility to perform pre-check scripts, these scripts report information on any objects whose data the upgrade might affect.
- Stop the WarehousePG cluster and use Leapp to run an in-place upgrade of the operating system.
- Address any required operating system configuration differences and start the WarehousePG cluster.
- Follow the required steps given by the `el8_migrate_locale.py` utility for fixing the data that is impacted by the `glibc` locale sorting changes.

The advantage of this method is that it does not require two different WarehousePG clusters. The disadvantages are the risk of performing an in-place operating system upgrade, no downgrade options after any issues, the risk of issues that could leave your cluster in a non-operating state, and the requirement of additional steps after the upgrade is complete to address the `glibc` changes. You must also plan downtime of your WarehousePG for the entire process.

Continue reading for a detailed list of steps to upgrade your cluster using this method.

> **Important** We recommend you take a backup of your cluster before proceeding with this method, as you will not be able to recover the database if the upgrade does not complete successfully. You may also be prepared to contact your operating system vendor for any issues encountered with the Leapp utility.

##### Run the Pre-Check Script

Before you begin the upgrade, run the following commands:

```
python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-index --out index.out
python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-table --pre_upgrade --out table.out
```

The subcommand `precheck-index` checks each database for indexes involving columns of type `text`, `varchar`, `char`, and `citext`, and the subcommand `precheck-table` checks each database for range-partitioned tables using these types in the partition key. The option `--pre_upgrade` lists the partition tables with the partition key using built-in collatable types.

Examine the output files to identify which indexes and range-partitioned tables may be affected by the `glibc` GNU C library changes. The provided information will help you estimate the amount of work required during the upgrade process before you perform the OS upgrade. In order to address the issues caused to the range-partitioned tables, the utility rebuilds the affected tables at a later step. This can result in additional space requirements for your database, so you must account for the additional database space reported by these commandss.

Note that the `--pre_upgrade` option only reports tables based on the metadata available. We recommend that you use the `precheck-table` subcommand with the `--pre_upgrade` option before the OS upgrade to get an estimate, and run it again without the `--pre_upgrade` option after the OS upgrade has completed, in order to verify the exact tables that you need to address, which can be the same or a subset of the tables reported before the upgrade.

For example, the `precheck-table` subcommand with the `--pre_upgrade` option before the OS upgrade reports that there are 2 affected tables:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
$ python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-table --pre_upgrade --out table_pre_upgrade.out
2024-03-05 07:48:57,527 - WARNING - There are 2 range partitioning tables with partition key in collate types(like
varchar, char, text) in database testupgrade, these tables might be affected due to Glibc upgrade and should be checked
when doing OS upgrade from EL7 to EL8.
2024-03-05 07:48:57,558 - WARNING - no default partition for testupgrade.normal
--------------------------------------------
total partition tables size  : 128 KB
total partition tables       : 2
total leaf partitions        : 4
--------------------------------------------
```

However, after the upgrade, it only reports 1 table, which is the most accurate output.

```
$ python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-table --out table.out
2024-03-05 07:49:23,940 - WARNING - There are 2 range partitioning tables with partition key in collate types(like
varchar, char, text) in database testupgrade, these tables might be affected due to Glibc upgrade and should be checked
when doing OS upgrade from EL7 to EL8.
2024-03-05 07:49:23,941 - INFO - worker[0]: begin:
2024-03-05 07:49:23,941 - INFO - worker[0]: connect to <testupgrade> ...
2024-03-05 07:49:23,973 - INFO - start checking table testupgrade.normal_1_prt_1 ...
2024-03-05 07:49:23,999 - INFO - check table testupgrade.normal_1_prt_1 OK.
2024-03-05 07:49:24,000 - INFO - Current progress: have 1 remaining, 0.06 seconds passed.
2024-03-05 07:49:24,007 - INFO - start checking table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_mar ...
2024-03-05 07:49:24,171 - INFO - check table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_mar error out: ERROR:  trying to
insert row into wrong partition  (seg0 10.0.138.21:20000 pid=4204)
DETAIL:  Expected partition: partition_range_test_1_1_prt_feb, provided partition: partition_range_test_1_1_prt_mar.

2024-03-05 07:49:24,171 - INFO - start checking table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_feb ...
2024-03-05 07:49:24,338 - INFO - check table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_feb error out: ERROR:  trying to
insert row into wrong partition  (seg3 10.0.138.20:20001 pid=4208)
DETAIL:  Expected partition: partition_range_test_1_1_prt_others, provided partition: partition_range_test_1_1_prt_feb.

2024-03-05 07:49:24,338 - INFO - start checking table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_others ...
2024-03-05 07:49:24,349 - INFO - check table testupgrade.partition_range_test_1_1_prt_others OK.
2024-03-05 07:49:24,382 - INFO - Current progress: have 0 remaining, 0.44 seconds passed.
2024-03-05 07:49:24,383 - INFO - worker[0]: finish.
--------------------------------------------
total partition tables size  : 96 KB
total partition tables       : 1
total leaf partitions        : 3
--------------------------------------------
```

The `precheck-index` and `precheck-table` subcommands will effectively execute the following queries on each database within the cluster:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
-- precheck-index

SELECT
  indexrelid :: regclass :: text,
  indrelid :: regclass :: text,
  coll,
  collname,
  pg_get_indexdef(indexrelid)
FROM
  (
    SELECT
      indexrelid,
      indrelid,
      indcollation[i] coll
    FROM
      pg_index,
      generate_subscripts(indcollation, 1) g(i)
  ) s
  JOIN pg_collation c ON coll = c.oid
WHERE
  collname != 'C'
  and collname != 'POSIX';


-- precheck-table

SELECT
  poid, -- oid in pg_partition
  attrelid :: regclass :: text as partitionname,
  attcollation, -- the defined collation of the column, or zero if the is not of a collatable data type
  attname,
  attnum
FROM
  (
    select
      p.oid as poid,
      t.attcollation,
      t.attrelid,
      t.attname,
      t.attnum
    from
      pg_partition p
      join pg_attribute t on p.parrelid = t.attrelid
      and t.attnum = ANY(p.paratts :: smallint[])
      and p.parkind = 'r' -- filter out the range-partition tables
      ) s
  JOIN pg_collation c ON attcollation = c.oid
WHERE
  collname NOT IN ('C', 'POSIX');
```

#### Perform the Upgrade

Stop the WarehousePG cluster and use the Leapp utility to run the in-place upgrade for your operating system. Visit the Redhat Documentation and the Oracle Documentation (use this link for version 9) for more information on how to use the utility.

Once the upgrade is complete, address any Operating System Configuration Differences, and start the WarehousePG cluster.

#### Fix the Impacted Data

##### Indexes

You must reindex all indexes involving columns of collatable data types ( `text` , `varchar` , `char` , and `citext` ) before the database instance is put into production.

Run the utility with the `migrate` subcommand to reindex the necessary indexes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
python el8_migrate_locale.py migrate --input index.out
```

##### Range-Partitioned Tables

You must check range-partitioned tables that use collatable data types in the partition key to verify that all rows are still in the correct partitions.

First, run utility with the `precheck-table` subcommand in order to verify if the rows are still in the correct partitions after the operating system upgrade.

```
python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-table --out table.out
```

The utility returns the list of range-partitioned tables whose rows have been affected. Run the utility using the `migrate` subcommand to rebuild the partitions that have their rows in an incorrect order after the upgrade.

```
python el8_migrate_locale.py migrate --input table.out
```

#### Verify the Changes

Run the pre-upgrade scripts again for each database to verify that all required changes in the database have been addressed.

```
python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-index --out index.out
python el8_migrate_locale.py precheck-table --out table.out
```

If the utility returns no indexes nor tables, you have successfully addressed all the issues in your WarehousePG cluster caused by the `glibc` GNU C library changes.

### Operating System Configuration Differences

When you prepare your operating system environment for WarehousePG software installation, there are different configuration options depending on the version of your operating system. See Configure Operating System and Using Resource Groups for detailed documentation. This section summarizes the main differences to take into consideration when you upgrade from EL 7 to EL 8 or EL 9 regardless of the upgrade method you use.

#### XFS Mount Options

XFS is the preferred data storage file system on Linux platforms. Use the mount command with the following recommended XFS mount options. The `nobarrier` option is not supported on EL 8/9 systems. Use only the options `rw,nodev,noatime,inode64`.

#### Disk I/O Settings

The Linux disk scheduler orders the I/O requests submitted to a storage device, controlling the way the kernel commits reads and writes to disk. A typical Linux disk I/O scheduler supports multiple access policies. The optimal policy selection depends on the underlying storage infrastructure. For EL 8/9, use the following recommended scheduler policy:

| Storage Device Type | Recommended Scheduler Policy |
|---|---|
| Non-Volatile Memory Express (NVMe) | none |
| Solid-State Drives (SSD) | none |
| Other | mq-deadline |

To specify the I/O scheduler at boot time for EL 8 you must either use TuneD or uDev rules. See the Redhat 8 Documentation or Redhat 9 Documentation]for full details.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Synchronizing System Clocks

You must use NTP (Network Time Protocol) to synchronize the system clocks on all hosts that comprise your WarehousePG cluster. Accurate time keeping is essential to ensure reliable operations on the database and data integrity. You may either configure the coordinator as the NTP primary source and the other hosts in the cluster connect to it, or configure an external NTP primary source and all hosts in the cluster connect to it. For EL 8/9, use the Chrony service to configure NTP.

#### Configuring and Using Resource Groups

WarehousePG resource groups use Linux Control Groups (cgroups) to manage CPU resources. WarehousePG also uses cgroups to manage memory for resource groups for external components. With cgroups, WarehousePG isolates the CPU and external component memory usage of your WarehousePG processes from other processes on the node. This allows WarehousePG to support CPU and external component memory usage restrictions on a per-resource-group basis.

If you are using Redhat 8.x or 9, make sure that you configured the system to mount the `cgroups-v1` filesystem by default during system boot. See Using Resource Groups for more details.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.17 Performing a minor upgrade

Perform a minor version upgrade to 6.x. Because minor versions are binary-compatible, this process replaces the software binaries without requiring a full data migration.

An upgrade involves stopping the WHPG cluster, updating the software binaries across all nodes, and restarting the services.

> **Note**
>
> Starting from WarehousePG 6.27.4, the installation directory has been consolidated to `/usr/edb/whpg6`. For backward compatibility, the system automatically maintains a symbolic link at `/usr/local/greenplum-db` and `/usr/local/greenplum-db-clients`.

In this guide:

- `6.origin` refers to your current version.
- `6.target` refers to the version you are upgrading to.

### Process overview

The following high-level steps summarize the upgrade lifecycle:

1. Prepare for maintenance: Isolate the cluster and secure a full backup.
2. Clear automation: Disable scheduled tasks and coordinate infrastructure snapshots.
3. Validate baseline: Verify current software versions and run smoke tests.
4. Quiesce the database: Stop peripheral services and the WHPG cluster.
5. Replace binaries: Install the new software package across all cluster nodes.
6. Restore services: Restart the cluster and verify health.
7. Re-establish connectivity: Restore automation, connection pooling, and federation.
8. Hand back: Resume normal business operations and monitoring.

### Preparing for maintenance

These steps isolate the cluster from external traffic and automated scripts before the system handover.

1. Stop all monitoring applications: Shut down all monitoring agents to prevent false alerts during the maintenance window.

2. Stop scheduled tasks: Disable external schedulers that trigger jobs against the database.

3. Stop applications: Notify users and shut down application servers, web services, and BI tools. Ensure no new connections are being initiated.

4. Perform a backup of all databases: Execute a full backup. This is your final safety point before modifying the environment.

```
gpbackup --leaf-partition-data
```

### Clearing automation and system handover

Once data is secure and traffic has ceased, prepare the operating system environment.

1. Hand over the for infrastructure maintenance: Coordinate with your Infrastructure or Platform team to perform any required pre-upgrade safety measures. This may include creating environment snapshots, initiating virtual machine checkpoints, or performing hardware-level health checks to ensure the underlying platform is stable.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Save and remove crontab entries: Perform these steps as the `root` user on coordinator and standby nodes to prevent maintenance scripts from firing during the binary swap.

    1. Back up your `gpadmin` tasks from both the coordinator and standby nodes:

    ```
    crontab -l -u gpadmin > /home/gpadmin/crontab_backup_$(date +%F)
    ```

    2. Check for other user crontabs:

    ```
    crontab -u <username> -
    l
    for user in $(cut -f1 -d: /etc/passwd); do echo $user; crontab -u $user -l; done >crontab_all
    2>crontab_all_no_cron
    ```

    3. Remove current entries:

    ```
    crontab -r
    ```

    4. Verify the list is empty (should return `no crontab for gpadmin`):

    ```
    crontab -l
    ```

### Establishing a pre-upgrade baseline

Before beginning the update, capture the current state of your environment. This baseline serves as a reference point to ensure that all software versions, configurations, and connectivity are restored correctly once the update is complete.

1. Inventory installed packages: Document the exact versions of the WHPG packages currently running on the coordinator and segments.
    - For RHEL 8, RHEL 9: `sudo rpm -qa | grep whpg`
    - For RHEL 7: `sudo yum list installed | grep whpg`
2. Record component versions: Document the versions of any additionally installed components, such as PXF, or PgBouncer. For example:
    - Check PXF version: `pxf --version`
    - Check pgBouncer version: Connect to the admin console with `psql -p 6543 -U pgbouncer -d pgbouncer` and run `SHOW VERSION;`.
3. Perform a PXF smoke test: Ensure pre-upgrade connectivity is functional to confirm any connectivity issues found after the upgrade were not pre-existing. For example:

```
psql -x demo -c 'SELECT * FROM public.jsonb_events LIMIT
2;'
```

### Quiescing the database

Perform a final cleanup of the running database instance.

1. Stop exernal services: Shut down the PXF service on all nodes and stop the PgBouncer connection pooler.
    - Stop PXF: `pxf cluster stop`
    - Stop pgBouncer: Connect to the admin console with `psql -p 6543 -U pgbouncer -d pgbouncer` and run `SHUTDOWN;`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Terminate sessions and check queries: Ensure no active user queries remain. Forcefully terminate any remaining client backends.

```
# View active
queries
psql -d postgres -c "SELECT * FROM pg_stat_activity where backend_type = 'client backend' and state <>
'idle';"
# Terminate a specific
PID
psql -d postgres -c 'SELECT
pg_cancel_backend(<procpid>);'
```

3. Verify segment health: Run `gpstate -m`. All segments must be in `Synchronized` status. If not, run `gprecoverseg -a` and wait for completion.

4. Stop the WHPG cluster:

```
gpstop -a -M fast
```

### Replacing binaries and restarting WHPG

Perform the following steps as the `gpadmin` user. When upgrading, the package manager will automatically remove old files in `/usr/local/greenplum-db-<version>` and install new files to `/usr/edb/whpg6`.

1. On the coordinator, back up old WHPG binaries:

```
sudo cp -R /usr/local/greenplum-db-6.origin-WHPG /usr/local/greenplum-db-6.origin-
WHPG_save
sudo chown -R gpadmin /usr/local/greenplum-db-6.origin-
WHPG_save
```

2. Download your `6.target` package. See Downloading the WarehousePG Server Software for details on how to download the packages. From your jump host, copy the new package to the coordinator:

```
scp <warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm>
gpadmin@coordinator_host:/tmp
scp <warehouse-pg-6.target-clients.rpm>
gpadmin@coordinator_host:/tmp
```

   Where `<warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm>` is the package of the WarehousePG version to install.

3. On the coordinator, create a file `hostfile_without_coord` that lists all hosts in the cluster except the coordinator. For example:

```
scdw
sdw1
sdw2
sdw3
```

4. From the coordinator, create a directory for the binaries on all hosts and transfer the new package:

```
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord -e "mkdir -p
/tmp/binary"
gpsync -f hostfile_without_coord <warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm> =:/tmp/binary
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Install WHPG `6.target` on the coordinator:

> **Important**
>
> Starting with WarehousePG 6.27.4 the `warehouse-pg-6-clients` package is mandatory and must be installed alongside the server package.

   - For RHEL 8, RHEL 9:

```
sudo rpm -U <warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm> -
v
sudo chown -R gpadmin.
/usr/edb/whpg6
```

   - For RHEL 7:

```
sudo yum install -y <warehouse-pg-
6.target.rpm>
sudo chown -R gpadmin.
/usr/edb/whpg6
```

6. Install WHPG `6.target` on segments: From the coordinator, run:

   - For RHEL 8, RHEL 9:

```
source
/home/gpadmin/.bashrc
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord -e "sudo rpm -U <warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm> -v"
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord -e "sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin
/usr/edb/whpg6"
```

   - For RHEL 7:

```
source
/home/gpadmin/.bashrc
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord -e "sudo yum install -y <warehouse-pg-6.target.rpm>"
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord -e "sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /usr/edb/whpg6"
```

7. Verify symbolic links: Ensure `/usr/local/greenplum-db` and `/usr/local/greenplum-db-clients` point to `/usr/edb/whpg6` across the cluster and that `gpadmin` is the owner of the installation directories:

```
ll /usr/local/'| grep 'greenplum-db ->' |
sort
gpssh -f hostfile_without_coord  -e "ll /usr/local/'| grep 'greenplum-db ->' |
sort"
```

### Restoring services and finalizing the upgrade

Start the WHPG cluster on the target version. After the cluster is back online, restart the extension services and restore the operational environment.

1. Update environment: Ensure `/home/gpadmin/.bashrc` on coordinator and standby points to the new path, then reload:

```
source
/home/gpadmin/.bashrc
```

2. Start WHPG:

```
gpstart -a
```

3. Perform system health check: Run `gpstate -f` and `gpstate -m` to ensure all segments are up and mirrors are synchronized.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Verify the installed version:

```
psql -d postgres -c "select
version();"
psql -d postgres -c "select distinct  version() from
gp_dist_random('gp_id');"
```

### Restoring automation and connectivity

Once the core database services are back online, re-establish the secondary layers to return the cluster to a full operational state.

1. Restore crontabs: Reload the saved files for `gpadmin` on coordinator and standby hosts. For example:

```
crontab -u gpadmin /home/gpadmin/crontab_backup_YYYY-MM-
DD
```

2. Start PXF and re-run the smoke test query:

```
pxf cluster start
psql -x demo -c 'SELECT * FROM public.jsonb_events LIMIT
2;'
```

3. Start PgBouncer: Restart the connection pooler and verify client connections.

```
pgbouncer -d /data/gpdata/pgbouncer/pgbouncer.ini
psql -p 6543 -U pgbouncer -d pgbouncer -c "SHOW CLIENTS;"
```

### Handing back the system

With the upgrade verified and the infrastructure services restored, the final phase involves transitioning the environment back to the end-users and resuming normal business operations.

1. Applications: Re-enable application traffic and BI tools.
2. Schedules: Re-enable external schedulers.
3. Monitoring: Resume all monitoring agents.
4. Handover: Formally notify the Infrastructure or Platform teams that the cluster is stable on version `6.target`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 3.18 Upgrading from an Earlier WarehousePG 6 Release

The upgrade path supported for this release is WarehousePG 6.x to a newer WarehousePG 6.x release.

> **Important** Set the WarehousePG timezone to a value that is compatible with your host systems. Setting the WarehousePG timezone prevents WarehousePG from selecting a timezone each time the cluster is restarted and sets the timezone for the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances. After you upgrade to this release and if you have not set a WarehousePG timezone value, verify that the selected WarehousePG timezone is acceptable for your deployment. See Configuring Timezone and Localization Settings for more information.

### Prerequisites

Before starting the upgrade process, perform the following checks.

- Verify the health of the WarehousePG host hardware, and verify that the hosts meet the requirements for running WarehousePG. The WarehousePG `gpcheckperf` utility can assist you in confirming the host requirements.

  > **Note** If you need to run the `gpcheckcat` utility, run it a few weeks before the upgrade during a maintenance period. If necessary, you can resolve any issues found by the utility before the scheduled upgrade.

  The utility is in `$GPHOME/bin`. Place WarehousePG in restricted mode when you run the `gpcheckcat` utility. See the *WarehousePG Utility Guide* for information about the `gpcheckcat` utility.

  If `gpcheckcat` reports catalog inconsistencies, you can run `gpcheckcat` with the `-g` option to generate SQL scripts to fix the inconsistencies.

  After you run the SQL scripts, run `gpcheckcat` again. You might need to repeat the process of running `gpcheckcat` and creating SQL scripts to ensure that there are no inconsistencies. Run the SQL scripts generated by `gpcheckcat` on a quiescent system. The utility might report false alerts if there is activity on the system.

- If you have configured the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) in your previous WarehousePG installation, you must stop the PXF service, and you might need to back up PXF configuration files before upgrading to a new version of WarehousePG. Refer to PXF Pre-Upgrade Actions for instructions.

  If you have not yet configured PXF, no action is necessary.

### Upgrading from 6.x to a Newer 6.x Release

An upgrade from WarehousePG 6.x to a newer 6.x release involves stopping WarehousePG, updating the WarehousePG software binaries, and restarting WarehousePG. If you are using WarehousePG extension packages there are additional requirements. See Prerequisites in the previous section.

> **Note**
>
> Starting from WarehousePG 6.27.4, the default installation directory is `/usr/edb/whpg6`. For backward compatibility, symlinks are provided at `/usr/local/greenplum-db` and `/usr/local/greenplum-db-clients`.

1. Log in to your WarehousePG coordinator host as the WarehousePG administrative user:

   ```
   $ su - gpadmin
   ```

2. Perform a smart shutdown of your WarehousePG 6.x system (there can be no active connections to the database). This example uses the `-a` option to deactivate confirmation prompts:

   ```
   $ gpstop -a
   ```

3. Copy the new WarehousePG software installation package to the `gpadmin` user's home directory on each coordinator, standby, and segment host.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. *If you used `yum` to install WarehousePG to the default location*, run this command on each host to upgrade to the new software release.

   For RHEL/CentOS systems:

   ```
   $ sudo yum upgrade ./greenplum-db-<version>-<platform>.rpm
   ```

   The `yum` command installs the new WarehousePG software files into a version-specific directory under `/usr/edb/whpg6` and updates the symbolic link `/usr/local/greenplum-db` to point to the new installation directory.

5. *If you used `rpm` to install WarehousePG to a non-default location on RHEL/CentOS systems*, run `rpm` on each host to upgrade to the new software release and specify the same custom installation directory with the `--prefix` option. For example:

   ```
   $ sudo rpm -U ./greenplum-db-<version>-<platform>.rpm --prefix=<directory>
   ```

   The `rpm` command installs the new WarehousePG software files into a version-specific directory under the `<directory>` you specify, and updates the symbolic link `<directory>/greenplum-db` to point to the new installation directory.

6. Update the permissions for the new installation. For example, run this command as `root` to change the user and group of the installed files to `gpadmin`.

   ```
   $ sudo chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin /usr/edb/whpg*
   ```

7. If needed, update the `greenplum_path.sh` file on the coordinator and standby coordinator hosts for use with your specific installation. These are some examples.

   - If WarehousePG uses LDAP authentication, edit the `greenplum_path.sh` file to add the line:

     ```
     export LDAPCONF=/etc/openldap/ldap.conf
     ```

   - If WarehousePG uses PL/Java, you might need to set or update the environment variables `JAVA_HOME` and `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` in `greenplum_path.sh`.

     > **Note** When comparing the previous and new `greenplum_path.sh` files, be aware that installing some WarehousePG extensions also updates the `greenplum_path.sh` file. The `greenplum_path.sh` from the previous release might contain updates that were the result of installing those extensions.

8. Edit the environment of the WarehousePG superuser ( `gpadmin` ) and make sure you are sourcing the `greenplum_path.sh` file for the new installation. For example change the following line in the `.bashrc` or your chosen profile file:

   ```
   source /usr/local/greenplum-db-<current_version>/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

   to:

   ```
   source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

   Or if you are sourcing a symbolic link ( `/usr/local/greenplum-db` ) in your profile files, update the link to point to the newly installed version. For example:

   ```
   $ sudo rm /usr/local/greenplum-db
   $ sudo ln -s /usr/edb/whpg6 /usr/local/greenplum-db
   ```

9. Source the environment file you just edited. For example:

   ```
   $ source ~/.bashrc
   ```

10. After all segment hosts have been upgraded, log in as the `gpadmin` user and restart your WarehousePG cluster:

    ```
    # su - gpadmin
    $ gpstart
    ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

11. Re-install WarehousePG extensions. If you were previously using any WarehousePG extensions such as pgcrypto, PL/R, PL/Java, or PostGIS, download the corresponding packages and install using this utility. See the extension documentation for details.

    Also copy any files that are used by the extensions (such as JAR files, shared object files, and libraries) from the previous version installation directory to the new version installation directory on the coordinator and segment host systems.

12. If you configured PXF in your previous WarehousePG installation, you may need to install PXF in your new WarehousePG installation, and you may be required to re-initialize or register the PXF service after you upgrade WarehousePG. Refer to the Step 2 PXF upgrade procedure for instructions.

After upgrading WarehousePG, ensure that all features work as expected. For example, test that backup and restore perform as expected, and WarehousePG features such as user-defined functions, and extensions such as MADlib and PostGIS perform as expected.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 4 WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Information about configuring, managing and monitoring WarehousePG installations, and administering, monitoring, and working with databases. The guide also contains information about WarehousePG architecture and concepts such as parallel processing.

- WarehousePG Concepts
  This section provides an overview of WarehousePG components and features such as high availability, parallel data loading features, and management utilities.
- Managing a WarehousePG cluster
  This section describes basic system administration tasks performed by a WarehousePG cluster administrator.
- Managing WarehousePG Access
  Securing WarehousePG includes protecting access to the database through network configuration, database user authentication, and encryption.
- DDL: Defining Database Objects
  This section covers data definition language (DDL) in WarehousePG and how to create and manage database objects.
- Distribution and Skew
  WarehousePG relies on even distribution of data across segments.
- DML: Inserting, Updating and Deleting
  This section provides information about manipulating data and concurrent access in WarehousePG.
- Querying Data
  This topic provides information about using SQL in WarehousePGs.
- Working with External Data
  Both external and foreign tables provide access to data stored in data sources outside of WarehousePG as if the data were stored in regular database tables. You can read data from and write data to external and foreign tables.
- Loading and Unloading Data
  The topics in this section describe methods for loading and writing data into and out of a WarehousePG, and how to format data files.
- Managing Performance
  The topics in this section cover WarehousePG performance management, including how to monitor performance and how to configure workloads to prioritize resource utilization.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.1 WarehousePG Concepts

This section provides an overview of WarehousePG components and features such as high availability, parallel data loading features, and management utilities.

- **About the WarehousePG Architecture**
  WarehousePG is a massively parallel processing (MPP) database server with an architecture specially designed to manage large-scale analytic data warehouses and business intelligence workloads.
- **About Management and Monitoring Utilities**
  WarehousePG provides standard command-line utilities for performing common monitoring and administration tasks.
- **About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG**
  WarehousePG uses the PostgreSQL Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) model to manage concurrent transactions for heap tables.
- **About Parallel Data Loading**
  This topic provides a short introduction to WarehousePG data loading features.
- **About Redundancy and Failover in WarehousePG**
  This topic provides a high-level overview of WarehousePG high availability features.
- **About Database Statistics in WarehousePG**
  An overview of statistics gathered by the ANALYZE command in WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.1.1 About Redundancy and Failover in WarehousePG

This topic provides a high-level overview of WarehousePG high availability features.

You can deploy WarehousePG without a single point of failure by mirroring components. The following sections describe the strategies for mirroring the main components of a WarehousePG cluster. For a more detailed overview of WarehousePG high availability features, see Overview of WarehousePG High Availability.

> **Important** When data loss is not acceptable for a WarehousePG cluster, WarehousePG coordinator and segment mirroring is recommended. If mirroring is not enabled then WarehousePG stores only one copy of the data, so the underlying storage media provides the only guarantee for data availability and correctness in the event of a hardware failure.

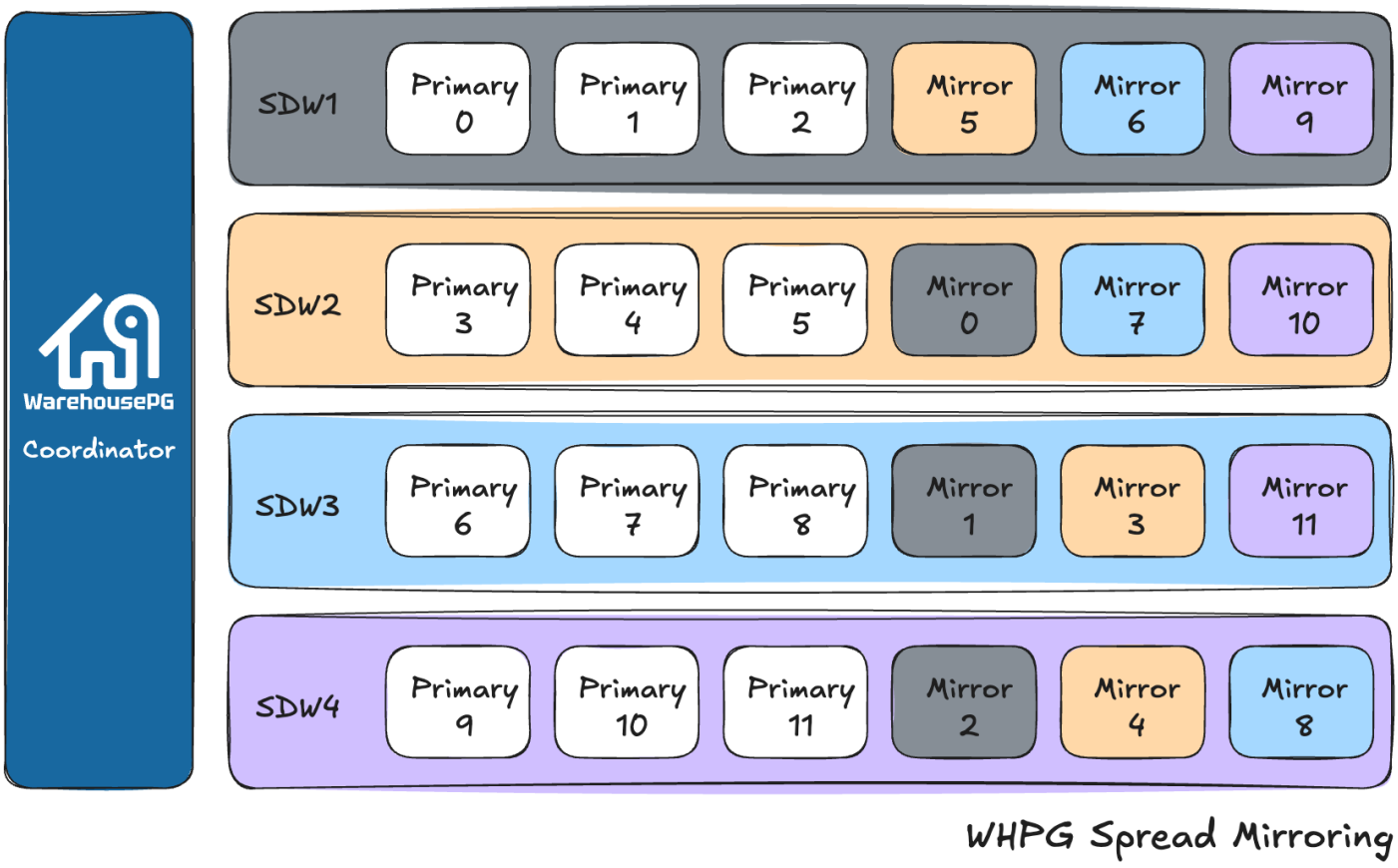
### About Segment Mirroring

When you deploy your WarehousePG database system, you can configure *mirror* segment instances. Mirror segments allow database queries to fail over to a backup segment if the primary segment becomes unavailable. The mirror segment is kept current by a transaction log replication process, which synchronizes the data between the primary and mirror instances.

As a best practice, the secondary (mirror) segment instance must always reside on a different host than its primary segment instance to protect against a single host failure. In virtualized environments, the secondary (mirror) segment must always reside on a different storage system than the primary. Mirror segments can be arranged over the remaining hosts in the cluster in configurations designed to maximize availability, or minimize the performance degradation when hosts or multiple primary segments fail.

Two standard mirroring configurations are available when you initialize or expand a WarehousePG cluster. The default configuration, called *group mirroring*, places all the mirrors for a host's primary segments on one other host in the cluster. The other standard configuration, *spread mirroring*, can be selected with a command-line option. Spread mirroring spreads each host's mirrors over the remaining hosts and requires that there are more hosts in the cluster than primary segments per host.

This diagram shows how table data is distributed across segments when spread mirroring is configured.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Segment Failover and Recovery

When segment mirroring is enabled in a WarehousePG cluster, the system will automatically fail over to the *mirror segment* instance if a *primary segment* instance becomes unavailable. A WarehousePG cluster can remain operational if a segment instance or host goes down as long as all the data is available on the remaining active segment instances.

If the coordinator cannot connect to a segment instance, it marks that segment instance as down in the WarehousePG cluster catalog and brings up the mirror segment in its place. A failed segment instance will remain out of operation until an administrator takes steps to bring that segment back online. An administrator can recover a failed segment while the system is up and running. The recovery process copies over only the changes that were missed while the segment was out of operation.

If you do not have mirroring enabled, the system will automatically shut down if a segment instance becomes invalid. You must recover all failed segments before operations can continue.

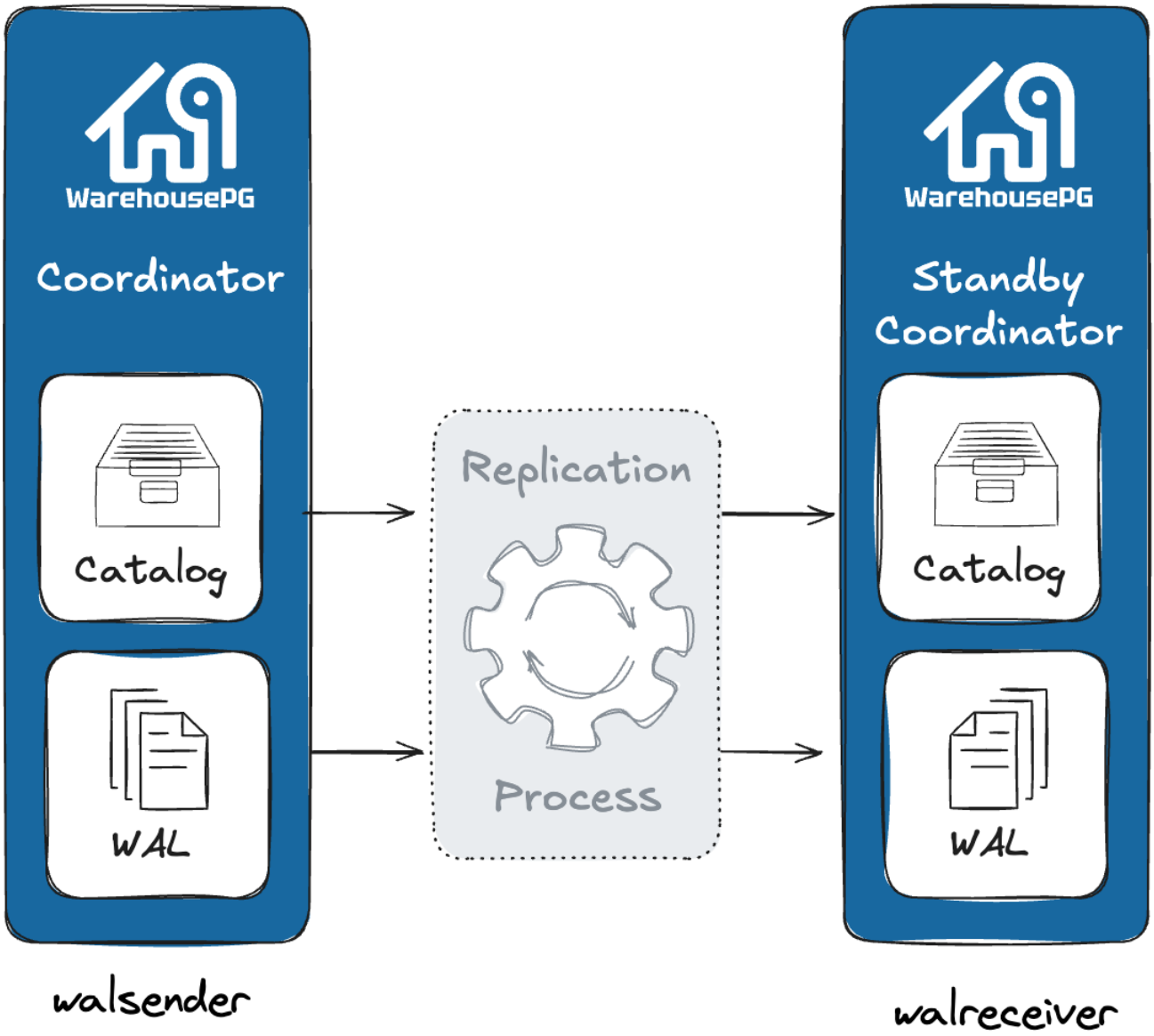
### About Coordinator Mirroring

You can also optionally deploy a backup or mirror of the coordinator instance on a separate host from the coordinator host. The backup master instance (the *standby coordinator*) serves as a *warm standby* in the event that the primary coordinator host becomes non-operational. The standby coordinator is kept current by a transaction log replication process, which synchronizes the data between the primary and standby coordinator.

If the primary coordinator fails, the log replication process stops, and the standby coordinator can be activated in its place. The switchover does not happen automatically, but must be triggered externally. Upon activation of the standby coordinator, the replicated logs are used to reconstruct the state of the coordinator host at the time of the last successfully committed transaction. The activated standby coordinator effectively becomes the WarehousePG coordinator, accepting client connections on the coordinator port (which must be set to the same port number on the coordinator host and the backup coordinator host).

Since the coordinator does not contain any user data, only the system catalog tables need to be synchronized between the primary and backup copies. When these tables are updated, changes are automatically copied over to the standby coordinator to ensure synchronization with the primary coordinator.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




### About Interconnect Redundancy

The *interconnect* refers to the inter-process communication between the segments and the network infrastructure on which this communication relies. You can achieve a highly available interconnect using by deploying dual Gigabit Ethernet switches on your network and redundant Gigabit connections to the WarehousePG host (coordinator and segment) servers. For performance reasons, 10-Gb Ethernet, or faster, is recommended.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Concepts

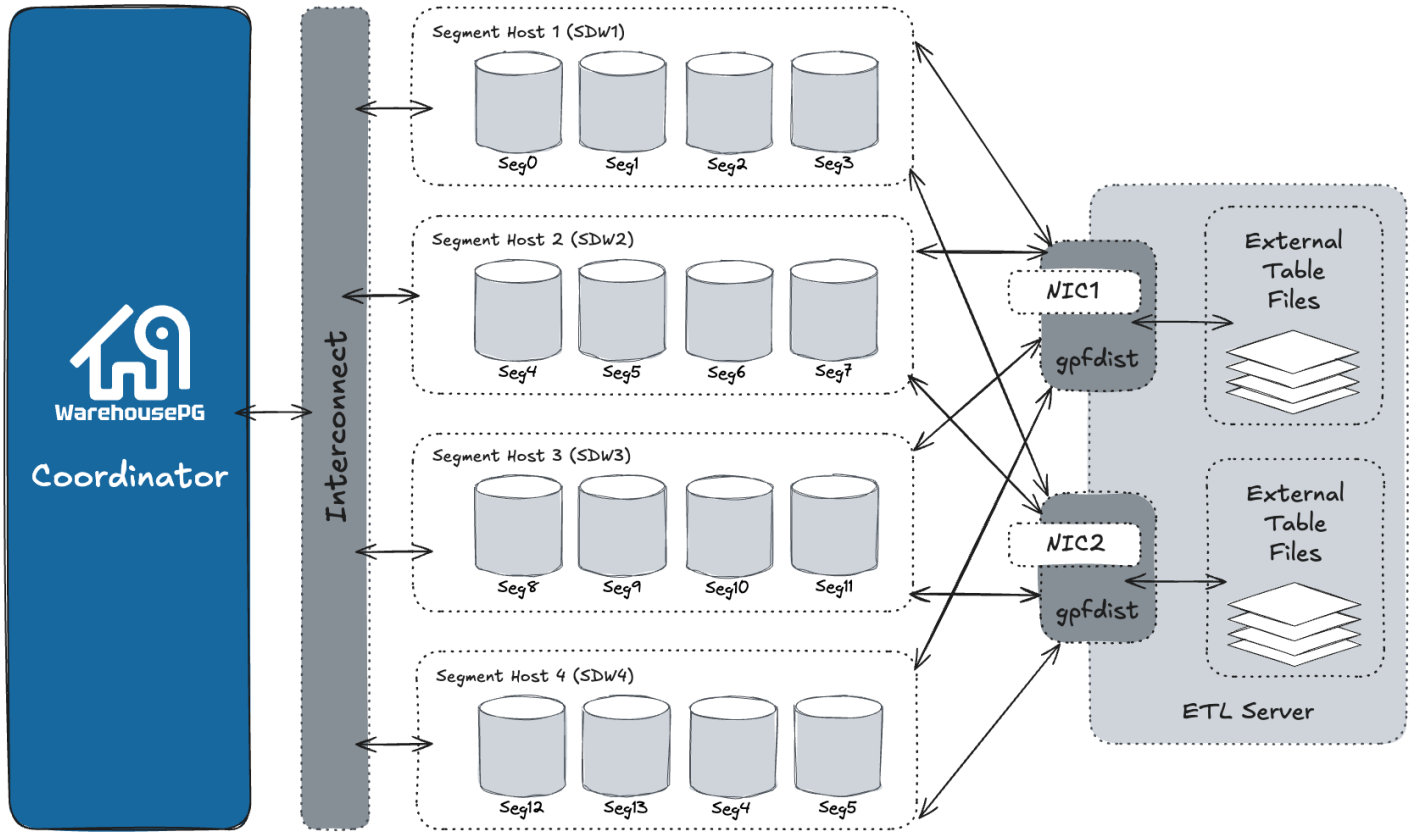
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.1.2 About Parallel Data Loading

This topic provides a short introduction to WarehousePG data loading features.

In a large scale, multi-terabyte data warehouse, large amounts of data must be loaded within a relatively small maintenance window. WarehousePG supports fast, parallel data loading with its external tables feature. Administrators can also load external tables in single row error isolation mode to filter bad rows into a separate error log while continuing to load properly formatted rows. Administrators can specify an error threshold for a load operation to control how many improperly formatted rows cause WarehousePG to cancel the load operation.

By using external tables in conjunction with WarehousePG's parallel file server ( `gpfdist` ), administrators can achieve maximum parallelism and load bandwidth from their WarehousePG cluster.




Another WarehousePG utility, `gpload` , runs a load task that you specify in a YAML-formatted control file. You describe the source data locations, format, transformations required, participating hosts, database destinations, and other particulars in the control file and `gpload` runs the load. This allows you to describe a complex task and run it in a controlled, repeatable fashion.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Concepts

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.1.3 About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG

WarehousePG uses the PostgreSQL Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) model to manage concurrent transactions for heap tables.

Concurrency control in a database management system allows concurrent queries to complete with correct results while ensuring the integrity of the database. Traditional databases use a two-phase locking protocol that prevents a transaction from modifying data that has been read by another concurrent transaction and prevents any concurrent transaction from reading or writing data that another transaction has updated. The locks required to coordinate transactions add contention to the database, reducing overall transaction throughput.

WarehousePG uses the PostgreSQL Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) model to manage concurrency for heap tables. With MVCC, each query operates on a snapshot of the database when the query starts. While it runs, a query cannot see changes made by other concurrent transactions. This ensures that a query sees a consistent view of the database. Queries that read rows can never block waiting for transactions that write rows. Conversely, queries that write rows cannot be blocked by transactions that read rows. This allows much greater concurrency than traditional database systems that employ locks to coordinate access between transactions that read and write data.

> **Note** Append-optimized tables are managed with a different concurrency control model than the MVCC model discussed in this topic. They are intended for "write-once, read-many" applications that never, or only very rarely, perform row-level updates.

#### Snapshots

The MVCC model depends on the system's ability to manage multiple versions of data rows. A query operates on a snapshot of the database at the start of the query. A snapshot is the set of rows that are visible at the beginning of a statement or transaction. The snapshot ensures the query has a consistent and valid view of the database for the duration of its execution.

Each transaction is assigned a unique *transaction ID* (XID), an incrementing 32-bit value. When a new transaction starts, it is assigned the next XID. An SQL statement that is not enclosed in a transaction is treated as a single-statement transaction—the `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` are added implicitly. This is similar to autocommit in some database systems.

> **Note** WarehousePG assigns XID values only to transactions that involve DDL or DML operations, which are typically the only transactions that require an XID.

When a transaction inserts a row, the XID is saved with the row in the `xmin` system column. When a transaction deletes a row, the XID is saved in the `xmax` system column. Updating a row is treated as a delete and an insert, so the XID is saved to the `xmax` of the current row and the `xmin` of the newly inserted row. The `xmin` and `xmax` columns, together with the transaction completion status, specify a range of transactions for which the version of the row is visible. A transaction can see the effects of all transactions less than `xmin`, which are guaranteed to be committed, but it cannot see the effects of any transaction greater than or equal to `xmax`.

Multi-statement transactions must also record which command within a transaction inserted a row (`cmin`) or deleted a row (`cmax`) so that the transaction can see changes made by previous commands in the transaction. The command sequence is only relevant during the transaction, so the sequence is reset to 0 at the beginning of a transaction.

XID is a property of the database. Each segment database has its own XID sequence that cannot be compared to the XIDs of other segment databases. The coordinator coordinates distributed transactions with the segments using a cluster-wide *session ID number*, called `gp_session_id`. The segments maintain a mapping of distributed transaction IDs with their local XIDs. The coordinator coordinates distributed transactions across all of the segment with the two-phase commit protocol. If a transaction fails on any one segment, it is rolled back on all segments.

You can see the `xmin`, `xmax`, `cmin`, and `cmax` columns for any row with a `SELECT` statement:

```
SELECT xmin, xmax, cmin, cmax, * FROM <tablename>;
```

Because you run the `SELECT` command on the coordinator, the XIDs are the distributed transactions IDs. If you could run the command in an individual segment database, the `xmin` and `xmax` values would be the segment's local XIDs.

> **Note** WarehousePG distributes all of a replicated table's rows to every segment, so each row is duplicated on every segment. Each segment instance maintains its own values for the system columns `xmin`, `xmax`, `cmin`, and `cmax`, as well as for the `gp_segment_id` and `ctid` system columns. WarehousePG does not permit user queries to access these system columns for replicated tables because they have no single, unambiguous value to evaluate in a query.

#### Transaction ID Wraparound

The MVCC model uses transaction IDs (XIDs) to determine which rows are visible at the beginning of a query or transaction. The XID is a 32-bit value, so a database could theoretically run over four billion transactions before the value overflows and wraps to zero. However, WarehousePG uses *modulo 232* arithmetic with XIDs, which allows the transaction IDs to wrap around, much as a clock wraps at twelve o'clock. For any given XID, there could be about two billion past XIDs and two billion future XIDs. This works until a version of a row persists through about two billion transactions, when it suddenly appears to be a new row. To prevent this, WarehousePG has a special XID, called `FrozenXID`, which is always considered older than any regular XID it is compared with. The `xmin` of a row must be replaced with `FrozenXID` within two billion transactions, and this is one of the functions the `VACUUM` command performs.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Vacuuming the database at least every two billion transactions prevents XID wraparound. WarehousePG monitors the transaction ID and warns if a `VACUUM` operation is required.

A warning is issued when a significant portion of the transaction IDs are no longer available and before transaction ID wraparound occurs:

```
WARNING: database "<database_name>" must be vacuumed within <number_of_transactions> transactions
```

When the warning is issued, a `VACUUM` operation is required. If a `VACUUM` operation is not performed, WarehousePG stops creating transactions to avoid possible data loss when it reaches a limit prior to when transaction ID wraparound occurs and issues this error:

```
FATAL: database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data loss in database "<database_name>"
```

See Recovering from a Transaction ID Limit Error for the procedure to recover from this error.

The server configuration parameters `xid_warn_limit` and `xid_stop_limit` control when the warning and error are displayed. The `xid_warn_limit` parameter specifies the number of transaction IDs before the `xid_stop_limit` when the warning is issued. The `xid_stop_limit` parameter specifies the number of transaction IDs before wraparound would occur when the error is issued and new transactions cannot be created.

### Transaction Isolation Levels

The SQL standard defines four levels of transaction isolation. The most strict is Serializable, which the standard defines as any concurrent execution of a set of Serializable transactions is guaranteed to produce the same effect as running them one at a time in some order. The other three levels are defined in terms of phenomena, resulting from interaction between concurrent transactions, which must not occur at each level. The standard notes that due to the definition of Serializable, none of these phenomena are possible at that level.

The phenomena which are prohibited at various levels are:

- *dirty read* – A transaction reads data written by a concurrent uncommitted transaction.
- *non-repeatable read* – A transaction re-reads data that it has previously read and finds that the data has been modified by another transaction (that committed since the initial read).
- *phantom read* – A transaction re-executes a query returning a set of rows that satisfy a search condition and finds that the set of rows satisfying the condition has changed due to another recently-committed transaction.
- *serialization anomaly* - The result of successfully committing a group of transactions is inconsistent with all possible orderings of running those transactions one at a time.

The four transaction isolation levels defined in the SQL standard and the corresponding behaviors are described in the table below.

| Isolation Level | Dirty Read | Non-Repeatable | Phantom Read | Serialization Anomoly |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `READ UNCOMMITTED` | Allowed, but not in WarehousePG | Possible | Possible | Possible |
| `READ COMMITTED` | Impossible | Possible | Possible | Possible |
| `REPEATABLE READ` | Impossible | Impossible | Allowed, but not in WarehousePG | Possible |
| `SERIALIZABLE` | Impossible | Impossible | Impossible | Impossible |

WarehousePG implements only two distinct transaction isolation levels, although you can request any of the four described levels. The WarehousePG `READ UNCOMMITTED` level behaves like `READ COMMITTED`, and the `SERIALIZABLE` level falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`.

The table also shows that WarehousePG's `REPEATABLE READ` implementation does not allow phantom reads. This is acceptable under the SQL standard because the standard specifies which anomalies must not occur at certain isolation levels; higher guarantees are acceptable.

The following sections detail the behavior of the available isolation levels.

*Important*: Some WarehousePG data types and functions have special rules regarding transactional behavior. In particular, changes made to a sequence (and therefore the counter of a column declared using `serial`) are immediately visible to all other transactions, and are not rolled back if the transaction that made the changes aborts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Read Committed Isolation Level

The default isolation level in WarehousePG is `READ COMMITTED`. When a transaction uses this isolation level, a `SELECT` query (without a `FOR UPDATE/SHARE` clause) sees only data committed before the query began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed during query execution by concurrent transactions. In effect, a `SELECT` query sees a snapshot of the database at the instant the query begins to run. However, `SELECT` does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed. Also note that two successive `SELECT` commands can see different data, even though they are within a single transaction, if other transactions commit changes after the first `SELECT` starts and before the second `SELECT` starts.

`UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands behave the same as `SELECT` in terms of searching for target rows: they find only the target rows that were committed as of the command start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the would-be updater waits for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the second updater can proceed with updating the originally found row. If the first updater commits, the second updater will ignore the row if the first updater deleted it, otherwise it will attempt to apply its operation to the updated version of the row. The search condition of the command (the `WHERE` clause) is re-evaluated to see if the updated version of the row still matches the search condition. If so, the second updater proceeds with its operation using the updated version of the row. In the case of `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE`, this means the updated version of the row is locked and returned to the client.

`INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause behaves similarly. In `READ COMMITTED` mode, each row proposed for insertion will either insert or update. Unless there are unrelated errors, one of those two outcomes is guaranteed. If a conflict originates in another transaction whose effects are not yet visible to the `INSERT`, the `UPDATE` clause will affect that row, even though possibly no version of that row is conventionally visible to the command.

`INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` clause may have insertion not proceed for a row due to the outcome of another transaction whose effects are not visible to the `INSERT` snapshot. Again, this is only the case in `READ COMMITTED` mode.

Because of the above rules, it is possible for an updating command to see an inconsistent snapshot: it can see the effects of concurrent updating commands on the same rows it is trying to update, but it does not see effects of those commands on other rows in the database. This behavior makes `READ COMMITTED` mode unsuitable for commands that involve complex search conditions; however, it is just right for simpler cases. For example, consider updating bank balances with transactions like:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
12345;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
7534;
COMMIT;
```

If two such transactions concurrently try to change the balance of account `12345`, we clearly want the second transaction to start with the updated version of the account's row. Because each command is affecting only a predetermined row, letting it access the updated version of the row does not create any troublesome inconsistency.

More complex usage may produce undesirable results in `READ COMMITTED` mode. For example, consider a `DELETE` command operating on data that is being both added and removed from its restriction criteria by another command; assume `website` is a two-row table with `website.hits` equaling `9` and `10`:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE website SET hits = hits + 1;
-- run from another session:  DELETE FROM website WHERE hits =
10;
COMMIT;
```

The `DELETE` will have no effect even though there is a `website.hits = 10` row before and after the `UPDATE`. This occurs because the pre-update row value `9` is skipped, and when the `UPDATE` completes and `DELETE` obtains a lock, the new row value is no longer `10` but `11`, which no longer matches the criteria.

Because `READ COMMITTED` mode starts each command with a new snapshot that includes all transactions committed up to that instant, subsequent commands in the same transaction will see the effects of the committed concurrent transaction in any case. The point at issue above is whether or not a single command sees an absolutely consistent view of the database.

The partial transaction isolation provided by `READ COMMITTED` mode is adequate for many applications, and this mode is fast and simple to use; however, it is not sufficient for all cases. Applications that do complex queries and updates might require a more rigorously consistent view of the database than `READ COMMITTED` mode provides.

#### Repeatable Read Isolation Level

The `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level only sees data committed before the transaction began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed during transaction execution by concurrent transactions. (However, the query does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed.) This is a stronger guarantee than is required by the SQL standard for this isolation level, and prevents all of the phenomena described in the table above. As mentioned previously, this is specifically allowed by the standard, which only describes the minimum protections each isolation level must provide.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level is different from `READ COMMITTED` in that a query in a `REPEATABLE READ` transaction sees a snapshot as of the start of the first non-transaction-control statement in the transaction, not as of the start of the current statement within the transaction. Successive `SELECT` commands within a single transaction see the same data; they do not see changes made by other transactions that committed after their own transaction started.

Applications using this level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

`UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands behave the same as `SELECT` in terms of searching for target rows: they will only find target rows that were committed as of the transaction start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction will wait for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the `REPEATABLE READ` can proceed with updating the originally found row. But if the first updater commits (and actually updated or deleted the row, not just locked it), then WarehousePG rolls back the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction with the message:

```
ERROR:  could not serialize access due to concurrent update
```

because a `REPEATABLE READ` transaction cannot modify or lock rows changed by other transactions after the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction began.

When an application receives this error message, it should abort the current transaction and retry the whole transaction from the beginning. The second time through, the transaction will see the previously-committed change as part of its initial view of the database, so there is no logical conflict in using the new version of the row as the starting point for the new transaction's update.

Note that you may need to retry only updating transactions; read-only transactions will never have serialization conflicts.

The `REPEATABLE READ` mode provides a rigorous guarantee that each transaction sees a completely stable view of the database. However, this view will not necessarily always be consistent with some serial (one at a time) execution of concurrent transactions of the same level. For example, even a read-only transaction at this level may see a control record updated to show that a batch has been completed but not see one of the detail records which is logically part of the batch because it read an earlier revision of the control record. Attempts to enforce business rules by transactions running at this isolation level are not likely to work correctly without careful use of explicit locks to block conflicting transactions.

#### Serializable Isolation Level

The `SERIALIZABLE` level, which WarehousePG does not fully support, guarantees that a set of transactions run concurrently produces the same result as if the transactions ran sequentially one after the other. If `SERIALIZABLE` is specified, WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`. The MVCC Snapshot Isolation (SI) model prevents dirty reads, non-repeatable reads, and phantom reads without expensive locking, but there are other interactions that can occur between some `SERIALIZABLE` transactions in WarehousePG that prevent them from being truly serializable. These anomalies can often be attributed to the fact that WarehousePG does not perform *predicate locking*, which means that a write in one transaction can affect the result of a previous read in another concurrent transaction.

### About Setting the Transaction Isolation Level

The default transaction isolation level for WarehousePG is specified by the default_transaction_isolation server configuration parameter, and is initially `READ COMMITTED`.

When you set `default_transaction_isolation` in a session, you specify the default transaction isolation level for all transactions in the session.

To set the isolation level for the current transaction, you can use the SET TRANSACTION SQL command. Be sure to set the isolation level before any `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, `UPDATE`, or `COPY` statement:

```
BEGIN;
SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
...
COMMIT;
```

You can also specify the isolation mode in a `BEGIN` statement:

```
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Removing Dead Rows from Tables

Updating or deleting a row leaves an expired version of the row in the table. When an expired row is no longer referenced by any active transactions, it can be removed and the space it occupied can be reused. The `VACUUM` command marks the space used by expired rows for reuse.

When expired rows accumulate in a table, the disk files must be extended to accommodate new rows. Performance degrades due to the increased disk I/O required to run queries. This condition is called *bloat* and it should be managed by regularly vacuuming tables.

The `VACUUM` command (without `FULL`) can run concurrently with other queries. It marks the space previously used by the expired rows as free, and updates the free space map. When WarehousePG later needs space for new rows, it first consults the table's free space map to find pages with available space. If none are found, new pages will be appended to the file.

`VACUUM` (without `FULL`) does not consolidate pages or reduce the size of the table on disk. The space it recovers is only available through the free space map. To prevent disk files from growing, it is important to run `VACUUM` often enough. The frequency of required `VACUUM` runs depends on the frequency of updates and deletes in the table (inserts only ever add new rows). Heavily updated tables might require several `VACUUM` runs per day, to ensure that the available free space can be found through the free space map. It is also important to run `VACUUM` after running a transaction that updates or deletes a large number of rows.

The `VACUUM FULL` command rewrites the table without expired rows, reducing the table to its minimum size. Every page in the table is checked, and visible rows are moved up into pages which are not yet fully packed. Empty pages are discarded. The table is locked until `VACUUM FULL` completes. This is very expensive compared to the regular `VACUUM` command, and can be avoided or postponed by vacuuming regularly. It is best to run `VACUUM FULL` during a maintenance period. An alternative to `VACUUM FULL` is to recreate the table with a `CREATE TABLE AS` statement and then drop the old table.

You can run `VACUUM VERBOSE tablename` to get a report, by segment, of the number of dead rows removed, the number of pages affected, and the number of pages with usable free space.

Query the `pg_class` system table to find out how many pages a table is using across all segments. Be sure to `ANALYZE` the table first to get accurate data.

```
SELECT relname, relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname='<tablename>';
```

Another useful tool is the `gp_bloat_diag` view in the `gp_toolkit` schema, which identifies bloat in tables by comparing the actual number of pages used by a table to the expected number. See "The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema" in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more about `gp_bloat_diag`.

- Example of Managing Transaction IDs

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Concepts

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.1.3.1 Example of Managing Transaction IDs

For WarehousePG, the transaction ID (XID) value an incrementing 32-bit ($2^{32}$) value. The maximum unsigned 32-bit value is 4,294,967,295, or about four billion. The XID values restart at 3 after the maximum is reached. WarehousePG handles the limit of XID values with two features:

- Calculations on XID values using modulo-$2^{32}$ arithmetic that allow WarehousePG to reuse XID values. The modulo calculations determine the order of transactions, whether one transaction has occurred before or after another, based on the XID.

  Every XID value can have up to two billion ($2^{31}$) XID values that are considered previous transactions and two billion (231 -1 ) XID values that are considered newer transactions. The XID values can be considered a circular set of values with no endpoint similar to a 24 hour clock.

  Using the WarehousePG modulo calculations, as long as two XIDs are within $2^{31}$ transactions of each other, comparing them yields the correct result.

- A frozen XID value that WarehousePG uses as the XID for current (visible) data rows. Setting a row's XID to the frozen XID performs two functions.

  - When WarehousePG compares XIDs using the modulo calculations, the frozen XID is always smaller, earlier, when compared to any other XID. If a row's XID is not set to the frozen XID and $2^{31}$ new transactions are run, the row appears to be run in the future based on the modulo calculation.
  - When the row's XID is set to the frozen XID, the original XID can be used, without duplicating the XID. This keeps the number of data rows on disk with assigned XIDs below ($2^{32}$).

> **Note** WarehousePG assigns XID values only to transactions that involve DDL or DML operations, which are typically the only transactions that require an XID.

**Parent topic:** About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG

#### Simple MVCC Example

This is a simple example of the concepts of a MVCC database and how it manages data and transactions with transaction IDs. This simple MVCC database example consists of a single table:

- The table is a simple table with 2 columns and 4 rows of data.
- The valid transaction ID (XID) values are from 0 up to 9, after 9 the XID restarts at 0.
- The frozen XID is -2. This is different than the WarehousePG frozen XID.
- Transactions are performed on a single row.
- Only insert and update operations are performed.
- All updated rows remain on disk, no operations are performed to remove obsolete rows.

The example only updates the amount values. No other changes to the table.

The example shows these concepts.

- How transaction IDs are used to manage multiple, simultaneous transactions on a table.
- How transaction IDs are managed with the frozen XID
- How the modulo calculation determines the order of transactions based on transaction IDs

##### Managing Simultaneous Transactions

This table is the initial table data on disk with no updates. The table contains two database columns for transaction IDs, `xmin` (transaction that created the row) and `xmax` (transaction that updated the row). In the table, changes are added, in order, to the bottom of the table.

| item | amount | xmin | xmax |
|---|---|---|---|
| widget | 100 | 0 | null |
| giblet | 200 | 1 | null |
| sprocket | 300 | 2 | null |
| gizmo | 400 | 3 | null |

The next table shows the table data on disk after some updates on the amount values have been performed.

- xid = 4: `update tbl set amount=208 where item = 'widget'`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- xid = 5: `update tbl set amount=133 where item = 'sprocket'`
- xid = 6: `update tbl set amount=16 where item = 'widget'`

In the next table, the bold items are the current rows for the table. The other rows are obsolete rows, table data that on disk but is no longer current. Using the xmax value, you can determine the current rows of the table by selecting the rows with `null` value. WarehousePG uses a slightly different method to determine current table rows.

| item | amount | xmin | xmax |
|---|---|---|---|
| widget | 100 | 0 | 4 |
| **giblet** | **200** | 1 | **null** |
| sprocket | 300 | 2 | 5 |
| **gizmo** | **400** | 3 | **null** |
| widget | 208 | 4 | 6 |
| **sprocket** | **133** | 5 | **null** |
| **widget** | **16** | 6 | **null** |

The simple MVCC database works with XID values to determine the state of the table. For example, both these independent transactions run concurrently.

- `UPDATE` command changes the sprocket amount value to `133` (xmin value `5`)
- `SELECT` command returns the value of sprocket.

During the `UPDATE` transaction, the database returns the value of sprocket `300`, until the `UPDATE` transaction completes.

#### Managing XIDs and the Frozen XID

For this simple example, the database is close to running out of available XID values. When WarehousePG is close to running out of available XID values, WarehousePG takes these actions.

- WarehousePG issues a warning stating that the database is running out of XID values.

  ```
  WARNING: database "<database_name>" must be vacuumed within <number_of_transactions> transactions
  ```

- Before the last XID is assigned, WarehousePG stops accepting transactions to prevent assigning an XID value twice and issues this message.

  ```
  FATAL: database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data loss in database "<database_name>"
  ```

To manage transaction IDs and table data that is stored on disk, WarehousePG provides the `VACUUM` command.

- A `VACUUM` operation frees up XID values so that a table can have more than 10 rows by changing the xmin values to the frozen XID.
- A `VACUUM` operation manages obsolete or deleted table rows on disk. This database's `VACUUM` command changes the XID values `obsolete` to indicate obsolete rows. A WarehousePG `VACUUM` operation, without the `FULL` option, deletes the data opportunistically to remove rows on disk with minimal impact to performance and data availability.

For the example table, a `VACUUM` operation has been performed on the table. The command updated table data on disk. This version of the `VACUUM` command performs slightly differently than the WarehousePG command, but the concepts are the same.

- For the widget and sprocket rows on disk that are no longer current, the rows have been marked as `obsolete`.

- For the giblet and gizmo rows that are current, the xmin has been changed to the frozen XID.

  The values are still current table values (the row's xmax value is `null`). However, the table row is visible to all transactions because the xmin value is frozen XID value that is older than all other XID values when modulo calculations are performed.

After the `VACUUM` operation, the XID values `0`, `1`, `2`, and `3` available for use.

| item | amount | xmin | xmax |
|---|---|---|---|
| widget | 100 | obsolete | obsolete |
| **giblet** | **200** | -2 | **null** |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| item | amount | xmin | xmax |
|---|---|---|---|
| sprocket | 300 | obsolete | obsolete |
| **gizmo** | **400** | -2 | **null** |
| widget | 208 | 4 | 6 |
| **sprocket** | **133** | 5 | **null** |
| **widget** | **16** | 6 | **null** |

When a row disk with the xmin value of `-2` is updated, the xmax value is replaced with the transaction XID as usual, and the row on disk is considered obsolete after any concurrent transactions that access the row have completed.

Obsolete rows can be deleted from disk. For WarehousePG, the `VACUUM` command, with `FULL` option, does more extensive processing to reclaim disk space.

#### Example of XID Modulo Calculations

The next table shows the table data on disk after more `UPDATE` transactions. The XID values have rolled over and start over at `0`. No additional `VACUUM` operations have been performed.

| item | amount | xmin | xmax |
|---|---|---|---|
| widget | 100 | obsolete | obsolete |
| giblet | 200 | -2 | 1 |
| sprocket | 300 | obsolete | obsolete |
| gizmo | 400 | -2 | 9 |
| widget | 208 | 4 | 6 |
| **sprocket** | **133** | 5 | **null** |
| widget | 16 | 6 | 7 |
| **widget** | **222** | 7 | **null** |
| giblet | 233 | 8 | 0 |
| **gizmo** | **18** | 9 | **null** |
| giblet | 88 | 0 | 1 |
| **giblet** | **44** | 1 | **null** |

When performing the modulo calculations that compare XIDs, WarehousePG, considers the XIDs of the rows and the current range of available XIDs to determine if XID wrapping has occurred between row XIDs.

For the example table XID wrapping has occurred. The XID `1` for giblet row is a later transaction than the XID `7` for widget row based on the modulo calculations for XID values even though the XID value `7` is larger than `1`.

For the widget and sprocket rows, XID wrapping has not occurred and XID `7` is a later transaction than XID `5`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.1.4 About Database Statistics in WarehousePG

An overview of statistics gathered by the ANALYZE command in WarehousePG.

Statistics are metadata that describe the data stored in the database. The query optimizer needs up-to-date statistics to choose the best execution plan for a query. For example, if a query joins two tables and one of them must be broadcast to all segments, the optimizer can choose the smaller of the two tables to minimize network traffic.

The statistics used by the optimizer are calculated and saved in the system catalog by the `ANALYZE` command. There are three ways to initiate an analyze operation:

- You can run the `ANALYZE` command directly.
- You can run the `analyzedb` management utility outside of the database, at the command line.
- An automatic analyze operation can be triggered when DML operations are performed on tables that have no statistics or when a DML operation modifies a number of rows greater than a specified threshold.

These methods are described in the following sections. The `VACUUM ANALYZE` command is another way to initiate an analyze operation, but its use is discouraged because vacuum and analyze are different operations with different purposes.

Calculating statistics consumes time and resources, so WarehousePG produces estimates by calculating statistics on samples of large tables. In most cases, the default settings provide the information needed to generate correct execution plans for queries. If the statistics produced are not producing optimal query execution plans, the administrator can tune configuration parameters to produce more accurate statistics by increasing the sample size or the granularity of statistics saved in the system catalog. Producing more accurate statistics has CPU and storage costs and may not produce better plans, so it is important to view explain plans and test query performance to ensure that the additional statistics-related costs result in better query performance.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Concepts

### System Statistics

#### Table Size

The query planner seeks to minimize the disk I/O and network traffic required to run a query, using estimates of the number of rows that must be processed and the number of disk pages the query must access. The data from which these estimates are derived are the `pg_class` system table columns `reltuples` and `relpages`, which contain the number of rows and pages at the time a `VACUUM` or `ANALYZE` command was last run. As rows are added or deleted, the numbers become less accurate. However, an accurate count of disk pages is always available from the operating system, so as long as the ratio of `reltuples` to `relpages` does not change significantly, the optimizer can produce an estimate of the number of rows that is sufficiently accurate to choose the correct query execution plan.

When the `reltuples` column differs significantly from the row count returned by `SELECT COUNT(*)`, an analyze should be performed to update the statistics.

When a `REINDEX` command finishes recreating an index, the `relpages` and `reltuples` columns are set to zero. The `ANALYZE` command should be run on the base table to update these columns.

#### The pg_statistic System Table and pg_stats View

The `pg_statistic` system table holds the results of the last `ANALYZE` operation on each database table. There is a row for each column of every table. It has the following columns:

- starelid

  The object ID of the table or index the column belongs to.

- staattnum

  The number of the described column, beginning with 1.

- stainherit

  If true, the statistics include inheritance child columns, not just the values in the specified relation.

- stanullfrac

  The fraction of the column's entries that are null.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- stawidth

  The average stored width, in bytes, of non-null entries.

- stadistinct

  A positive number is an estimate of the number of distinct values in the column; the number is not expected to vary with the number of rows. A negative value is the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows, that is, the ratio of rows with distinct values for the column, negated. This form is used when the number of distinct values increases with the number of rows. A unique column, for example, has an `n_distinct` value of -1.0. Columns with an average width greater than 1024 are considered unique.

- stakind*N*

  A code number indicating the kind of statistics stored in the *N*th slot of the `pg_statistic` row.

- staop*N*

  An operator used to derive the statistics stored in the *N*th slot. For example, a histogram slot would show the < operator that defines the sort order of the data.

- stanumbers*N*

  float4 array containing numerical statistics of the appropriate kind for the *N*th slot, or `NULL` if the slot kind does not involve numerical values.

- stavalues*N*

  Column data values of the appropriate kind for the *N*th slot, or `NULL` if the slot kind does not store any data values. Each array's element values are actually of the specific column's data type, so there is no way to define these columns' types more specifically than *anyarray*.

The statistics collected for a column vary for different data types, so the `pg_statistic` table stores statistics that are appropriate for the data type in four *slots*, consisting of four columns per slot. For example, the first slot, which normally contains the most common values for a column, consists of the columns `stakind1`, `staop1`, `stanumbers1`, and `stavalues1`.

The `stakindN` columns each contain a numeric code to describe the type of statistics stored in their slot. The `stakind` code numbers from 1 to 99 are reserved for core PostgreSQL data types. WarehousePG uses code numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 99. A value of 0 means the slot is unused. The following table describes the kinds of statistics stored for the three codes.

**Contents of pg_statistic "slots"**

| stakind Code | Description |
|---|---|
| 1 | *Most CommonValues (MCV) Slot*<br><br>- `staop` contains the object ID of the "=" operator, used to decide whether values are the same or not.<br>- `stavalues` contains an array of the *K* most common non-null values appearing in the column.<br>- `stanumbers` contains the frequencies (fractions of total row count) of the values in the `stavalues` array.<br><br>The values are ordered in decreasing frequency. Since the arrays are variable-size, *K* can be chosen by the statistics collector. Values must occur more than once to be added to the `stavalues` array; a unique column has no MCV slot. |
| 2 | *Histogram Slot* – describes the distribution of scalar data.<br><br>- `staop` is the object ID of the "<" operator, which describes the sort ordering.<br>- `stavalues` contains *M* (where `M>=2`) non-null values that divide the non-null column data values into `M-1` bins of approximately equal population. The first `stavalues` item is the minimum value and the last is the maximum value.<br>- `stanumbers` is not used and should be `NULL`.<br><br>If a Most Common Values slot is also provided, then the histogram describes the data distribution after removing the values listed in the MCV array. (It is a *compressed histogram* in the technical parlance). This allows a more accurate representation of the distribution of a column with some very common values. In a column with only a few distinct values, it is possible that the MCV list describes the entire data population; in this case the histogram reduces to empty and should be omitted. |
| 3 | *Correlation Slot* – describes the correlation between the physical order of table tuples and the ordering of data values of this column.<br><br>- `staop` is the object ID of the "<" operator. As with the histogram, more than one entry could theoretically appear.<br>- `stavalues` is not used and should be `NULL`.<br>- `stanumbers` contains a single entry, the correlation coefficient between the sequence of data values and the sequence of their actual tuple positions. The coefficient ranges from +1 to -1. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| stakind Code | Description |
|---|---|
| 4 | *Most Common Elements Slot* - is similar to a Most Common Values (MCV) Slot, except that it stores the most common non-null *elements* of the column values. This is useful when the column datatype is an array or some other type with identifiable elements (for instance, `tsvector`).<br><br>- `staop` contains the equality operator appropriate to the element type.<br>- `stavalues` contains the most common element values.<br>- `stanumbers` contains common element frequencies.<br><br>Frequencies are measured as the fraction of non-null rows the element value appears in, not the frequency of all rows. Also, the values are sorted into the element type's default order (to support binary search for a particular value). Since this puts the minimum and maximum frequencies at unpredictable spots in `stanumbers`, there are two extra members of `stanumbers` that hold copies of the minimum and maximum frequencies. Optionally, there can be a third extra member that holds the frequency of null elements (the frequency is expressed in the same terms: the fraction of non-null rows that contain at least one null element). If this member is omitted, the column is presumed to contain no `NULL` elements.<br><br>**Note:** For `tsvector` columns, the `stavalues` elements are of type `text`, even though their representation within `tsvector` is not exactly `text`. |
| 5 | *Distinct Elements Count Histogram Slot* - describes the distribution of the number of distinct element values present in each row of an array-type column. Only non-null rows are considered, and only non-null elements.<br><br>- `staop` contains the equality operator appropriate to the element type.<br>- `stavalues` is not used and should be `NULL`.<br>- `stanumbers` contains information about distinct elements. The last member of `stanumbers` is the average count of distinct element values over all non-null rows. The preceding *M* (where `M >=2`) members form a histogram that divides the population of distinct-elements counts into `M-1` bins of approximately equal population. The first of these is the minimum observed count, and the last the maximum. |
| 99 | *Hyperloglog Slot* - for child leaf partitions of a partitioned table, stores the `hyperloglog_counter` created for the sampled data. The `hyperloglog_counter` data structure is converted into a `bytea` and stored in a `stavalues5` slot of the `pg_statistic` catalog table. |

The `pg_stats` view presents the contents of `pg_statistic` in a friendlier format. The `pg_stats` view has the following columns:

- schemaname

  The name of the schema containing the table.

- tablename

  The name of the table.

- attname

  The name of the column this row describes.

- inherited

  If true, the statistics include inheritance child columns.

- null_frac

  The fraction of column entries that are null.

- avg_width

  The average storage width in bytes of the column's entries, calculated as `avg(pg_column_size(column_name))`.

- n_distinct

  A positive number is an estimate of the number of distinct values in the column; the number is not expected to vary with the number of rows. A negative value is the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows, that is, the ratio of rows with distinct values for the column, negated. This form is used when the number of distinct values increases with the number of rows. A unique column, for example, has an `n_distinct` value of -1.0. Columns with an average width greater than 1024 are considered unique.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- most_common_vals

  An array containing the most common values in the column, or null if no values seem to be more common. If the `n_distinct` column is -1, `most_common_vals` is null. The length of the array is the lesser of the number of actual distinct column values or the value of the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter. The number of values can be overridden for a column using `ALTER TABLE table SET COLUMN column SET STATISTICS N`.

- most_common_freqs

  An array containing the frequencies of the values in the `most_common_vals` array. This is the number of occurrences of the value divided by the total number of rows. The array is the same length as the `most_common_vals` array. It is null if `most_common_vals` is null.

- histogram_bounds

  An array of values that divide the column values into groups of approximately the same size. A histogram can be defined only if there is a `max()` aggregate function for the column. The number of groups in the histogram is the same as the `most_common_vals` array size.

- correlation

  WarehousePG computes correlation statistics for both heap and AO/AOCO tables, but the Postgres Planner uses these statistics only for heap tables.

- most_common_elems

  An array that contains the most common element values.

- most_common_elem_freqs

  An array that contains common element frequencies.

- elem_count_histogram

  An array that describes the distribution of the number of distinct element values present in each row of an array-type column.

Newly created tables and indexes have no statistics. You can check for tables with missing statistics using the `gp_stats_missing` view, which is in the `gp_toolkit` schema:

```
SELECT * from gp_toolkit.gp_stats_missing;
```

#### Sampling

When calculating statistics for large tables, WarehousePG creates a smaller table by sampling the base table. If the table is partitioned, samples are taken from all partitions.

#### Updating Statistics

Running `ANALYZE` with no arguments updates statistics for all tables in the database. This could take a very long time, so it is better to analyze tables selectively after data has changed. You can also analyze a subset of the columns in a table, for example columns used in joins, `WHERE` clauses, `SORT` clauses, `GROUP BY` clauses, or `HAVING` clauses.

Analyzing a severely bloated table can generate poor statistics if the sample contains empty pages, so it is good practice to vacuum a bloated table before analyzing it.

See the *SQL Command Reference* in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for details of running the `ANALYZE` command.

Refer to the *WarehousePG Management Utility Reference* for details of running the `analyzedb` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Analyzing Partitioned Tables

When the `ANALYZE` command is run on a partitioned table, it analyzes each child leaf partition table, one at a time. You can run `ANALYZE` on just new or changed partition tables to avoid analyzing partitions that have not changed.

The `analyzedb` command-line utility skips unchanged partitions automatically. It also runs concurrent sessions so it can analyze several partitions concurrently. It runs five sessions by default, but the number of sessions can be set from 1 to 10 with the `-p` command-line option. Each time `analyzedb` runs, it saves state information for append-optimized tables and partitions in the `db_analyze` directory in the coordinator data directory. The next time it runs, `analyzedb` compares the current state of each table with the saved state and skips analyzing a table or partition if it is unchanged. Heap tables are always analyzed.

If GPORCA is enabled (the default), you also need to run `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` on the root partition of a partitioned table (not a leaf partition) to refresh the root partition statistics. GPORCA requires statistics at the root level for partitioned tables. The Postgres Planner does not use these statistics.

The time to analyze a partitioned table is similar to the time to analyze a non-partitioned table since `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` does not collect statistics on the leaf partitions (the data is only sampled).

The WarehousePG server configuration parameter optimizer_analyze_root_partition affects when statistics are collected on the root partition of a partitioned table. If the parameter is `on` (the default), the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is not required to collect statistics on the root partition when you run `ANALYZE`. Root partition statistics are collected when you run `ANALYZE` on the root partition, or when you run `ANALYZE` on a child leaf partition of the partitioned table and the other child leaf partitions have statistics. If the parameter is `off`, you must run `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` to collect root partition statistics.

If you do not intend to run queries on partitioned tables with GPORCA (setting the server configuration parameter optimizer to `off`), you can also set the server configuration parameter `optimizer_analyze_root_partition` to `off` to limit when `ANALYZE` updates the root partition statistics.

### Configuring Statistics

There are several options for configuring WarehousePG statistics collection.

#### Statistics Target

The statistics target is the size of the `most_common_vals`, `most_common_freqs`, and `histogram_bounds` arrays for an individual column. By default, the target is 25. The default target can be changed by setting a server configuration parameter and the target can be set for any column using the `ALTER TABLE` command. Larger values increase the time needed to do `ANALYZE`, but may improve the quality of the Postgres Planner estimates.

Set the system default statistics target to a different value by setting the `default_statistics_target` server configuration parameter. The default value is usually sufficient, and you should only raise or lower it if your tests demonstrate that query plans improve with the new target. For example, to raise the default statistics target from 100 to 150 you can use the `gpconfig` utility:

```
gpconfig -c default_statistics_target -v 150
```

The statistics target for individual columns can be set with the `ALTER TABLE` command. For example, some queries can be improved by increasing the target for certain columns, especially columns that have irregular distributions. You can set the target to zero for columns that never contribute to query optimization. When the target is 0, `ANALYZE` ignores the column. For example, the following `ALTER TABLE` command sets the statistics target for the `notes` column in the `emp` table to zero:

```
ALTER TABLE emp ALTER COLUMN notes SET STATISTICS 0;
```

The statistics target can be set in the range 0 to 1000, or set it to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target.

Setting the statistics target on a parent partition table affects the child partitions. If you set statistics to 0 on some columns on the parent table, the statistics for the same columns are set to 0 for all children partitions. However, if you later add or exchange another child partition, the new child partition will use either the default statistics target or, in the case of an exchange, the previous statistics target. Therefore, if you add or exchange child partitions, you should set the statistics targets on the new child table.

#### Automatic Statistics Collection

WarehousePG can be set to automatically run `ANALYZE` on a table that either has no statistics or has changed significantly when certain operations are performed on the table. For partitioned tables, automatic statistics collection is only triggered when the operation is run directly on a leaf table, and then only the leaf table is analyzed.

Automatic statistics collection is governed by a server configuration parameter, and has three modes:

- `none` deactivates automatic statistics collection.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `on_no_stats` triggers an analyze operation for a table with no existing statistics when any of the commands `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `INSERT`, or `COPY` are run on the table by the table owner.
- `on_change` triggers an analyze operation when any of the commands `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `INSERT`, or `COPY` are run on the table by the table owner, and the number of rows affected exceeds the threshold defined by the `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold` configuration parameter.

The automatic statistics collection mode is set separately for commands that occur within a procedural language function and commands that run outside of a function:

- The `gp_autostats_mode` configuration parameter controls automatic statistics collection behavior outside of functions and is set to `on_no_stats` by default.
- The `gp_autostats_mode_in_functions` parameter controls the behavior when table operations are performed within a procedural language function and is set to `none` by default.

With the `on_change` mode, `ANALYZE` is triggered only if the number of rows affected exceeds the threshold defined by the `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold` configuration parameter. The default value for this parameter is a very high value, 2147483647, which effectively deactivates automatic statistics collection; you must set the threshold to a lower number to enable it. The `on_change` mode could trigger large, unexpected analyze operations that could disrupt the system, so it is not recommended to set it globally. It could be useful in a session, for example to automatically analyze a table following a load.

Setting the `gp_autostats_allow_nonowner` server configuration parameter to `true` also instructs WarehousePG to trigger automatic statistics collection on a table when:

- `gp_autostats_mode=on_change` and the table is modified by a non-owner.
- `gp_autostats_mode=on_no_stats` and the first user to `INSERT` or `COPY` into the table is a non-owner.

To deactivate automatic statistics collection outside of functions, set the `gp_autostats_mode` parameter to `none`:

```
gpconfigure -c gp_autostats_mode -v none
```

To enable automatic statistics collection in functions for tables that have no statistics, change `gp_autostats_mode_in_functions` to `on_no_stats`:

```
gpconfigure -c gp_autostats_mode_in_functions -v on_no_stats
```

Set the `log_autostats` system configuration parameter to on if you want to log automatic statistics collection operations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.1.5 About Management and Monitoring Utilities

WarehousePG provides standard command-line utilities for performing common monitoring and administration tasks.

WarehousePG command-line utilities are located in the $GPHOME/bin directory and are run on the coordinator host. WarehousePG provides utilities for the following administration tasks:

- Installing WarehousePG on an array
- Initializing WarehousePG
- Starting and stopping WarehousePG
- Adding or removing a host
- Expanding the array and redistributing tables among new segments
- Managing recovery for failed segment instances
- Managing failover and recovery for a failed coordinator instance
- Backing up and restoring a database (in parallel)
- Loading data in parallel
- Transferring data between WarehousePGs
- System state reporting

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Concepts

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.1.6 About the WarehousePG Architecture

WarehousePG is a massively parallel processing (MPP) database server with an architecture specially designed to manage large-scale analytic data warehouses and business intelligence workloads.

MPP (also known as a *shared nothing* architecture) refers to systems with two or more processors that cooperate to carry out an operation, each processor with its own memory, operating system and disks. WarehousePG uses this high-performance system architecture to distribute the load of multi-terabyte data warehouses, and can use all of a system's resources in parallel to process a query.

WarehousePG is based on PostgreSQL open-source technology. It is essentially several PostgreSQL disk-oriented database instances acting together as one cohesive database management system (DBMS). It is based on PostgreSQL 9.4, and in most cases is very similar to PostgreSQL with regard to SQL support, features, configuration options, and end-user functionality. Database users interact with WarehousePG as they would with a regular PostgreSQL DBMS.

WarehousePG can use the append-optimized (AO) storage format for bulk loading and reading of data, and provides performance advantages over HEAP tables. Append-optimized storage provides checksums for data protection, compression and row/column orientation. Both row-oriented or column-oriented append-optimized tables can be compressed.

The main differences between WarehousePG and PostgreSQL are as follows:

- GPORCA is leveraged for query planning, in addition to the Postgres Planner.
- WarehousePG can use append-optimized storage.
- WarehousePG has the option to use column storage, data that is logically organized as a table, using rows and columns that are physically stored in a column-oriented format, rather than as rows. Column storage can only be used with append-optimized tables. Column storage is compressible. It also can provide performance improvements as you only need to return the columns of interest to you. All compression algorithms can be used with either row or column-oriented tables, but Run-Length Encoded (RLE) compression can only be used with column-oriented tables. WarehousePG provides compression on all Append-Optimized tables that use column storage.

The internals of PostgreSQL have been modified or supplemented to support the parallel structure of WarehousePG. For example, the system catalog, optimizer, query executor, and transaction manager components have been modified and enhanced to be able to run queries simultaneously across all of the parallel PostgreSQL database instances. The WarehousePG *interconnect* (the networking layer) enables communication between the distinct PostgreSQL instances and allows the system to behave as one logical database.

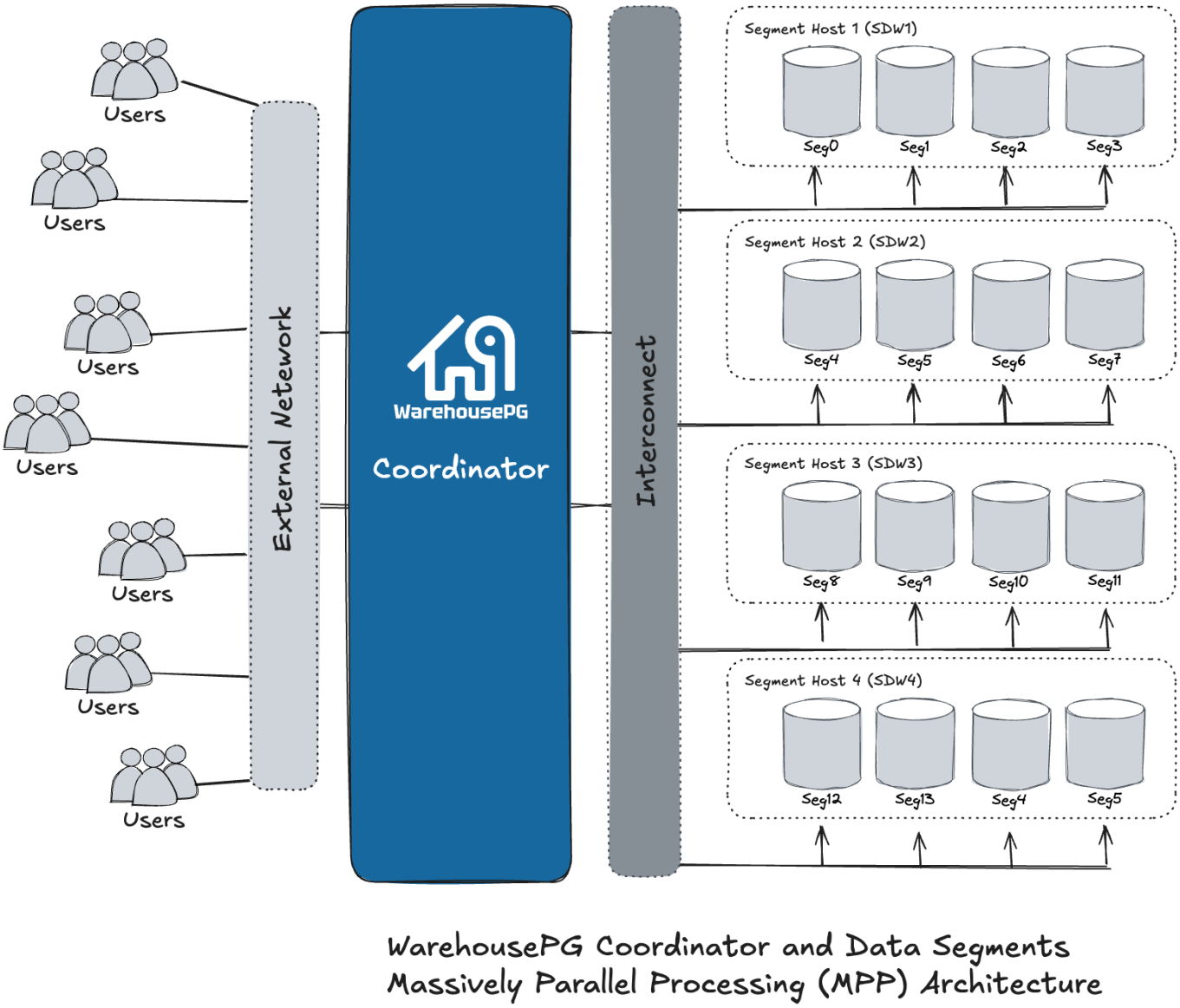
WarehousePG also can use declarative partitions and sub-partitions to implicitly generate partition constraints.

WarehousePG also includes features designed to optimize PostgreSQL for business intelligence (BI) workloads. For example, WarehousePG has added parallel data loading (external tables), resource management, query optimizations, and storage enhancements, which are not found in standard PostgreSQL. Many features and optimizations developed by WarehousePG make their way into the PostgreSQL community. For example, table partitioning is a feature first developed by WarehousePG, and it is now in standard PostgreSQL.

WarehousePG queries use a Volcano-style query engine model, where the execution engine takes an execution plan and uses it to generate a tree of physical operators, evaluates tables through physical operators, and delivers results in a query response.

WarehousePG stores and processes large amounts of data by distributing the data and processing workload across several servers or *hosts*. WarehousePG is an *array* of individual databases based upon PostgreSQL 9.4 working together to present a single database image. The *coordinator* is the entry point to the WarehousePG cluster. It is the database instance to which clients connect and submit SQL statements. The coordinator coordinates its work with the other database instances in the system, called *segments*, which store and process the data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




WarehousePG Coordinator and Data Segments
Massively Parallel Processing (MPP) Architecture

The following topics describe the components that make up a WarehousePG cluster and how they work together.

- About the WarehousePG Coordinator
- About the WarehousePG Segments
- About the WarehousePG Interconnect
- About ETL Hosts for Data Loading

### About the WarehousePG Coordinator

The WarehousePG coordinator is the entry to the WarehousePG cluster, accepting client connections and SQL queries, and distributing work to the segment instances.

WarehousePG end-users interact with WarehousePG (through the coordinator) as they would with a typical PostgreSQL database. They connect to the database using client programs such as `psql` or application programming interfaces (APIs) such as JDBC, ODBC or libpq (the PostgreSQL C API).

The coordinator is where the *global system catalog* resides. The global system catalog is the set of system tables that contain metadata about the WarehousePG cluster itself. The coordinator does not contain any user data; data resides only on the *segments*. The coordinator authenticates client connections, processes incoming SQL commands, distributes workloads among segments, coordinates the results returned by each segment, and presents the final results to the client program.

WarehousePG uses Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) for coordinator/standby coordinator mirroring. In WAL-based logging, all modifications are written to the log before being applied, to ensure data integrity for any in-process operations.

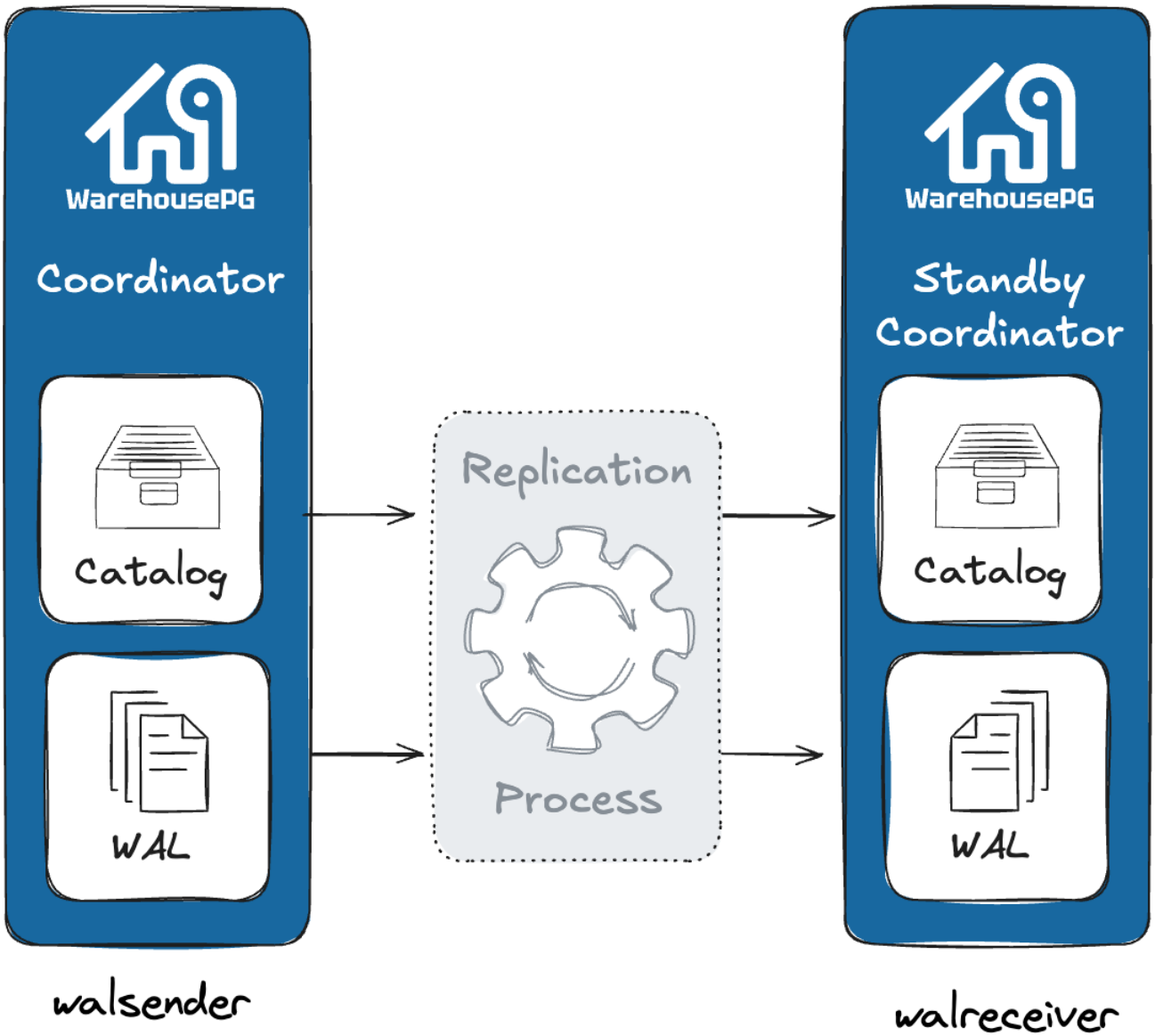
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Coordinator Redundancy

You may optionally deploy a *backup* or *mirror* of the coordinator instance. A backup coordinator host serves as a *warm standby* if the primary coordinator host becomes nonoperational. You can deploy the standby coordinator on a designated redundant coordinator host or on one of the segment hosts.

The standby coordinator is kept up to date by a transaction log replication process, which runs on the standby coordinator host and synchronizes the data between the primary and standby coordinator hosts. If the primary coordinator fails, the log replication process shuts down, and an administrator can activate the standby coordinator in its place. When the standby coordinator is active, the replicated logs are used to reconstruct the state of the coordinator host at the time of the last successfully committed transaction.

Since the coordinator does not contain any user data, only the system catalog tables need to be synchronized between the primary and backup copies. When these tables are updated, changes automatically copy over to the standby coordinator so it is always synchronized with the primary.




### About the WarehousePG Segments

WarehousePG segment instances are independent PostgreSQL databases that each store a portion of the data and perform the majority of query processing.

When a user connects to the database via the WarehousePG coordinator and issues a query, processes are created in each segment database to handle the work of that query. For more information about query processes, see About WarehousePG Query Processing.

User-defined tables and their indexes are distributed across the available segments in a WarehousePG cluster; each segment contains a distinct portion of data. The database server processes that serve segment data run under the corresponding segment instances. Users interact with segments in a WarehousePG cluster through the coordinator.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

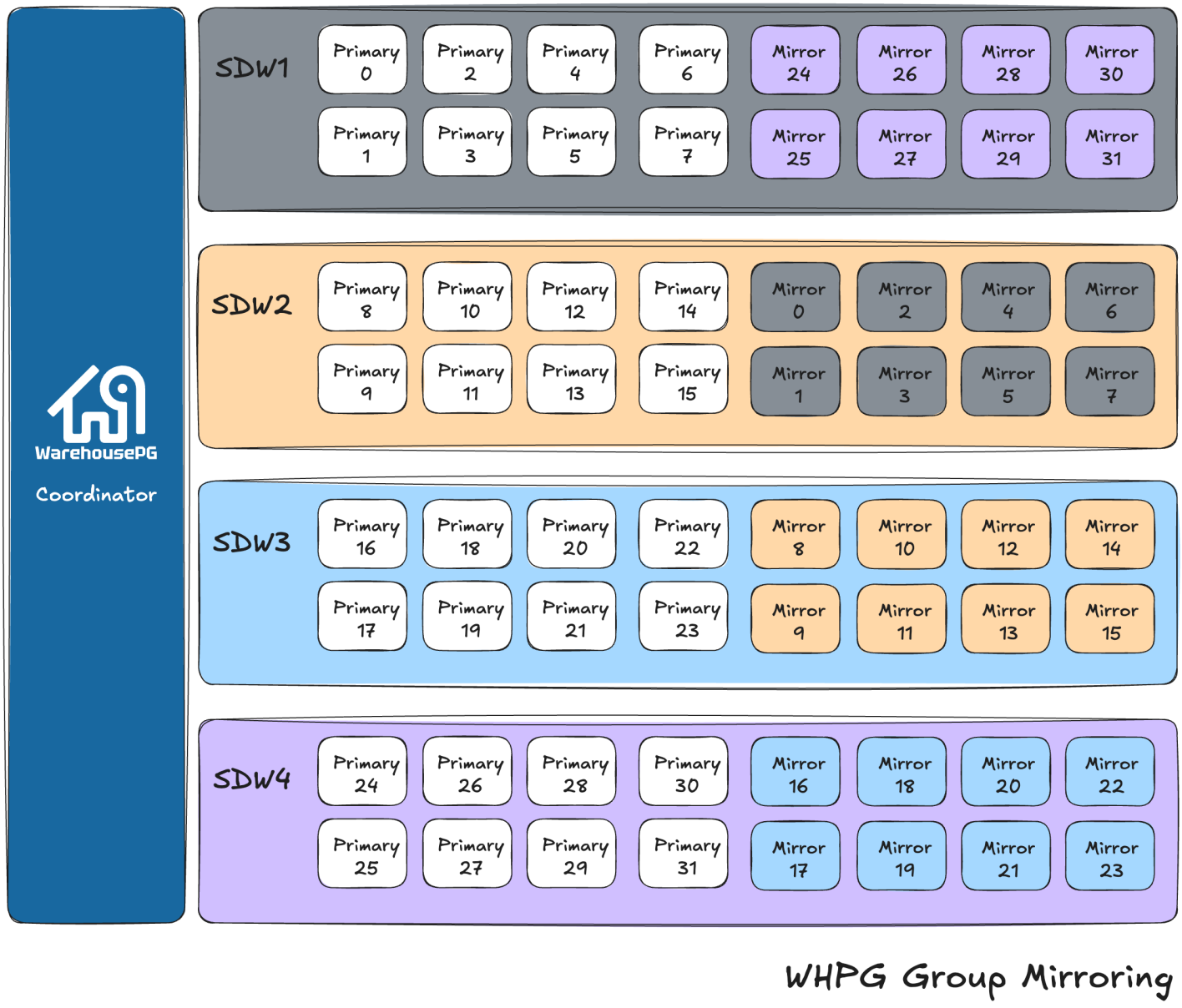
A server that runs a segment instance is called a *segment host*. A segment host typically runs from two to eight WarehousePG segments, depending on the CPU cores, RAM, storage, network interfaces, and workloads. Segment hosts are expected to be identically configured. The key to obtaining the best performance from WarehousePG is to distribute data and workloads *evenly* across a large number of equally capable segments so that all segments begin working on a task simultaneously and complete their work at the same time.

#### Segment Redundancy

When you deploy your WarehousePG database system, you have the option to configure *mirror* segments. Mirror segments allow database queries to fail over to a backup segment if the primary segment becomes unavailable.

A mirror segment must always reside on a different host than its primary segment. Mirror segments can be arranged across the hosts in the system in one of two standard configurations, or in a custom configuration you design. The default configuration, called *group* mirroring, places the mirror segments for all primary segments on one other host. Another option, called *spread* mirroring, spreads mirrors for each host's primary segments over the remaining hosts. Spread mirroring requires that there be more hosts in the system than there are primary segments on the host. On hosts with multiple network interfaces, the primary and mirror segments are distributed equally among the interfaces.

This diagram shows how table data is distributed across the segments when the default group mirroring option is configured.




WHPG Group Mirroring

#### Segment Failover and Recovery

When mirroring is enabled in a WarehousePG cluster, the system automatically fails over to the mirror copy if a primary copy becomes unavailable. A WarehousePG cluster can remain operational if a segment instance or host goes down only if all portions of data are available on the remaining active segments.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If the coordinator cannot connect to a segment instance, it marks that segment instance as *invalid* in the WarehousePG cluster catalog. The segment instance remains invalid and out of operation until an administrator brings that segment back online. An administrator can recover a failed segment while the system is up and running. The recovery process copies over only the changes that were missed while the segment was nonoperational.

If you do not have mirroring enabled and a segment becomes invalid, the system automatically shuts down. An administrator must recover all failed segments before operations can continue.

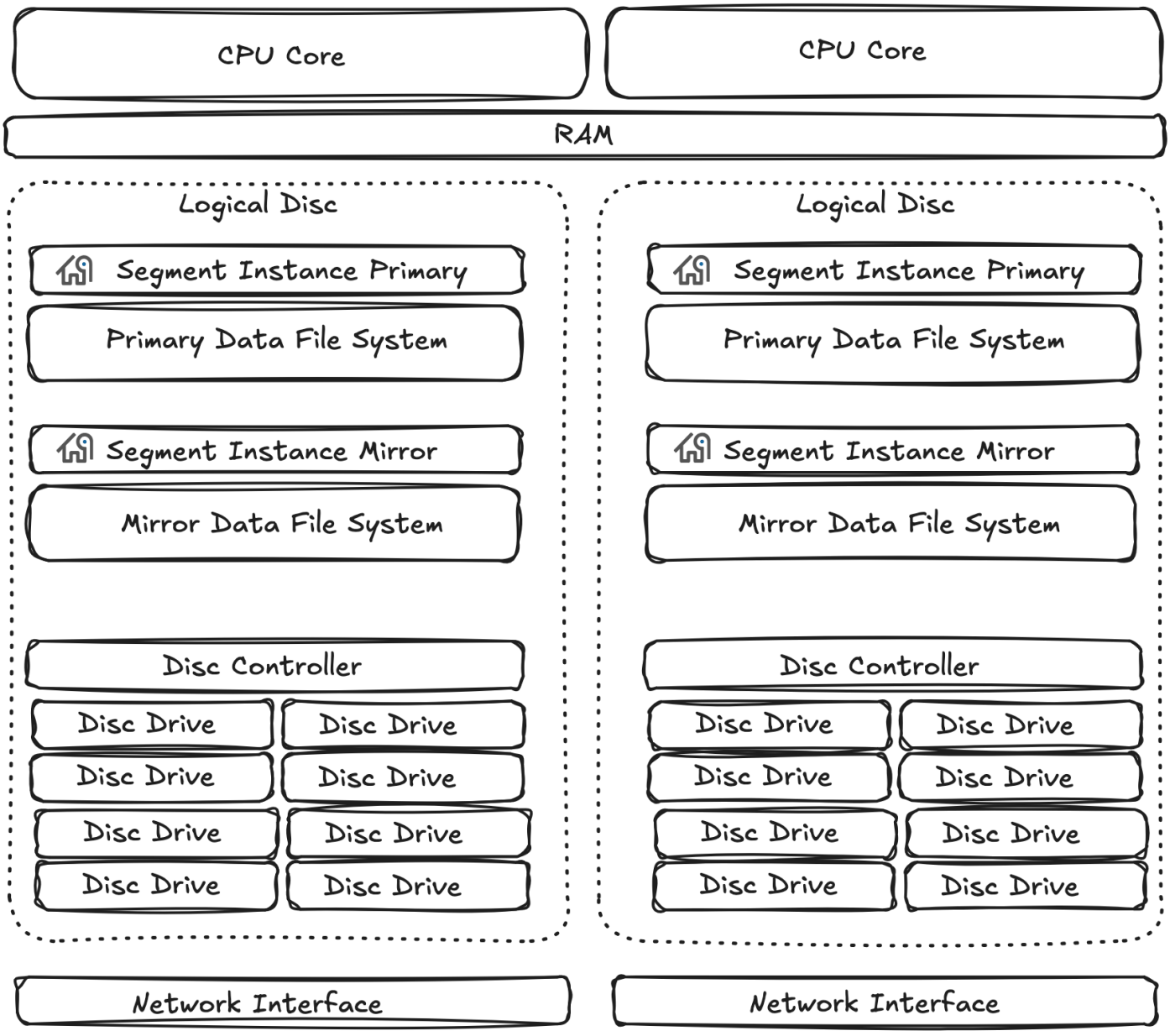
#### Example Segment Host Hardware Stack

Regardless of the hardware platform you choose, a production WarehousePG processing node (a segment host) is typically configured as described in this section.

The segment hosts do the majority of database processing, so the segment host servers are configured in order to achieve the best performance possible from your WarehousePG cluster. WarehousePG's performance will be as fast as the slowest segment server in the array. Therefore, it is important to ensure that the underlying hardware and operating systems that are running WarehousePG are all running at their optimal performance level. It is also advised that all segment hosts in a WarehousePG array have identical hardware resources and configurations.

Segment hosts should also be dedicated to WarehousePG operations only. To get the best query performance, you do not want WarehousePG competing with other applications for machine or network resources.

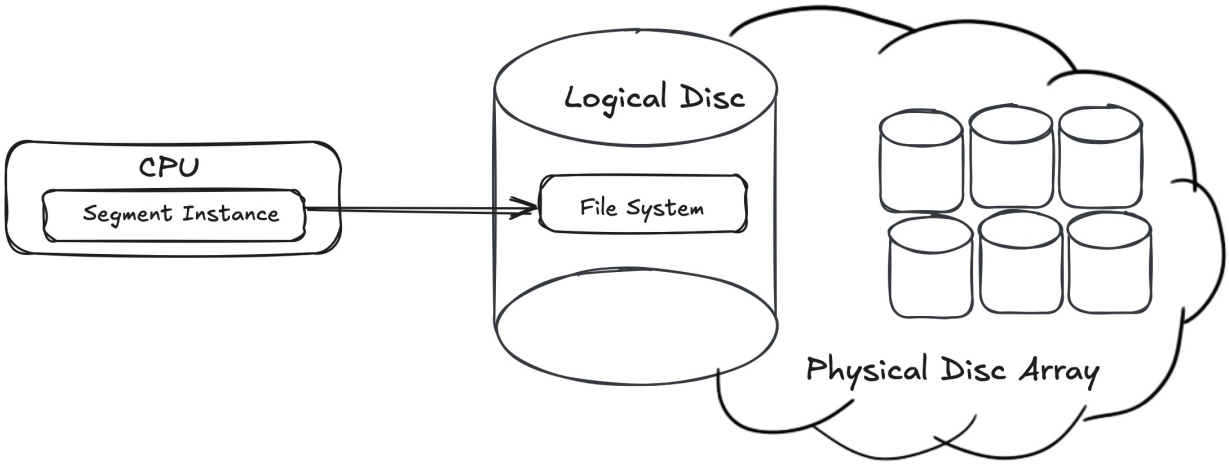
The following diagram shows an example WarehousePG segment host hardware stack. The number of effective CPUs on a host is the basis for determining how many primary WarehousePG segment instances to deploy per segment host. This example shows a host with two effective CPUs (one dual-core CPU). Note that there is one primary segment instance (or primary/mirror pair if using mirroring) per CPU core.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Example Segment Disk Layout

Each CPU is typically mapped to a logical disk. A logical disk consists of one primary file system (and optionally a mirror file system) accessing a pool of physical disks through an I/O channel or disk controller. The logical disk and file system are provided by the operating system. Most operating systems provide the ability for a logical disk drive to use groups of physical disks arranged in RAID arrays.




Depending on the hardware platform you choose, different RAID configurations offer different performance and capacity levels. WarehousePG supports and certifies a number of reference hardware platforms and operating systems. Check with your sales account representative for the recommended configuration on your chosen platform.

### About the WarehousePG Interconnect

The interconnect is the networking layer of the WarehousePG architecture.

The *interconnect* refers to the inter-process communication between segments and the network infrastructure on which this communication relies. The WarehousePG interconnect uses a standard Ethernet switching fabric. For performance reasons, a 10-Gigabit system, or faster, is recommended.

By default, the interconnect uses User Datagram Protocol with flow control (UDPIFC) for interconnect traffic to send messages over the network. The WarehousePG software performs packet verification beyond what is provided by UDP. This means the reliability is equivalent to Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), and the performance and scalability exceeds TCP. If the interconnect is changed to TCP, WarehousePG has a scalability limit of 1000 segment instances. With UDPIFC as the default protocol for the interconnect, this limit is not applicable.

#### Interconnect Redundancy

A highly available interconnect can be achieved by deploying dual 10 Gigabit Ethernet switches on your network, and redundant 10 Gigabit connections to the WarehousePG coordinator and segment host servers.

#### Network Interface Configuration

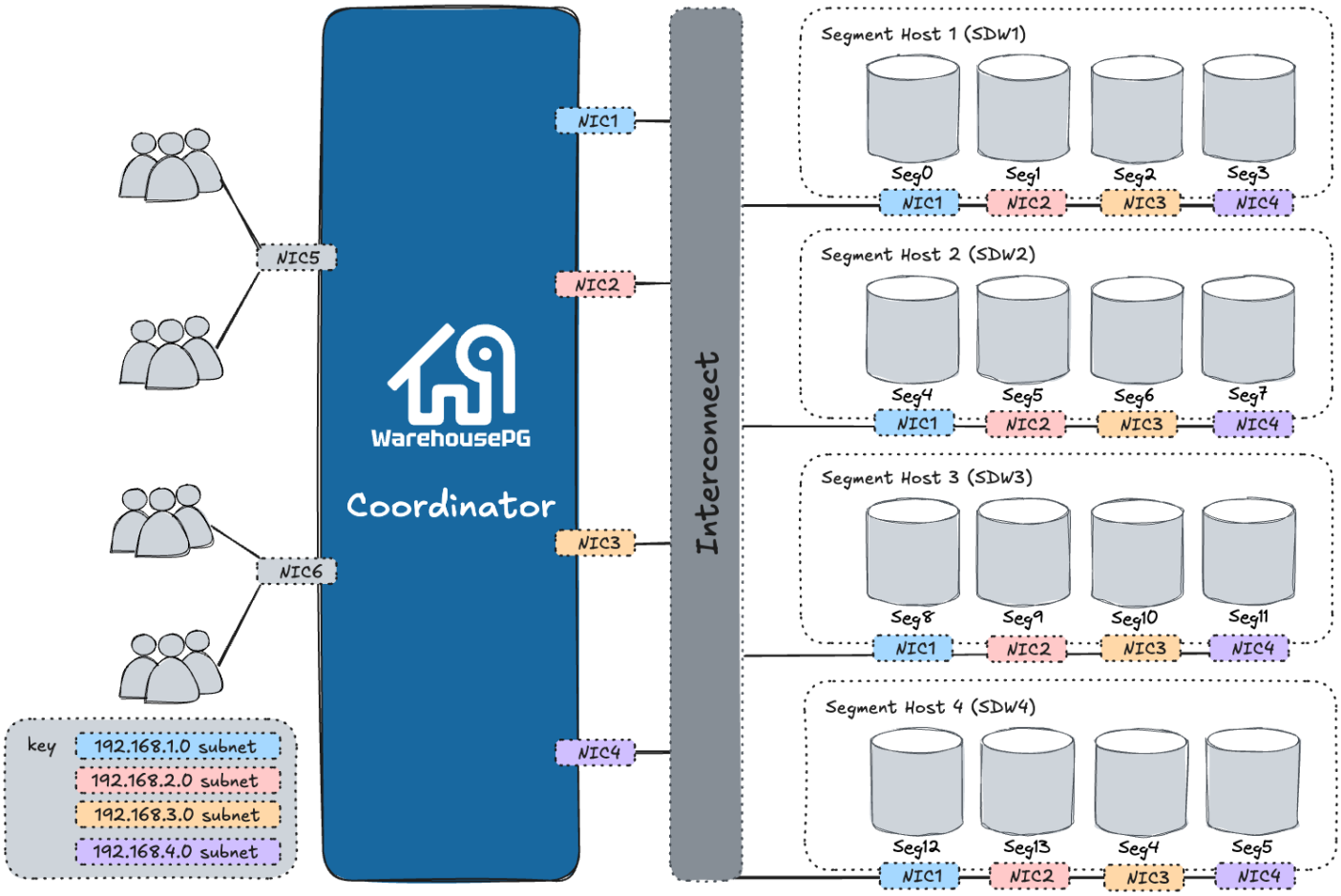
A segment host typically has multiple network interfaces designated to WarehousePG interconnect traffic. The coordinator host typically has additional external network interfaces in addition to the interfaces used for interconnect traffic.

Depending on the number of interfaces available, you will want to distribute interconnect network traffic across the number of available interfaces. This is done by assigning segment instances to a particular network interface and ensuring that the primary segments are evenly balanced over the number of available interfaces.

This is done by creating separate host address names for each network interface. For example, if a host has four network interfaces, then it would have four corresponding host addresses, each of which maps to one or more primary segment instances. The `/etc/hosts` file should be configured to contain not only the host name of each machine, but also all interface host addresses for all of the WarehousePG hosts (coordinator, standby coordinator, segments, and ETL hosts).

With this configuration, the operating system automatically selects the best path to the destination. WarehousePG automatically balances the network destinations to maximize parallelism.

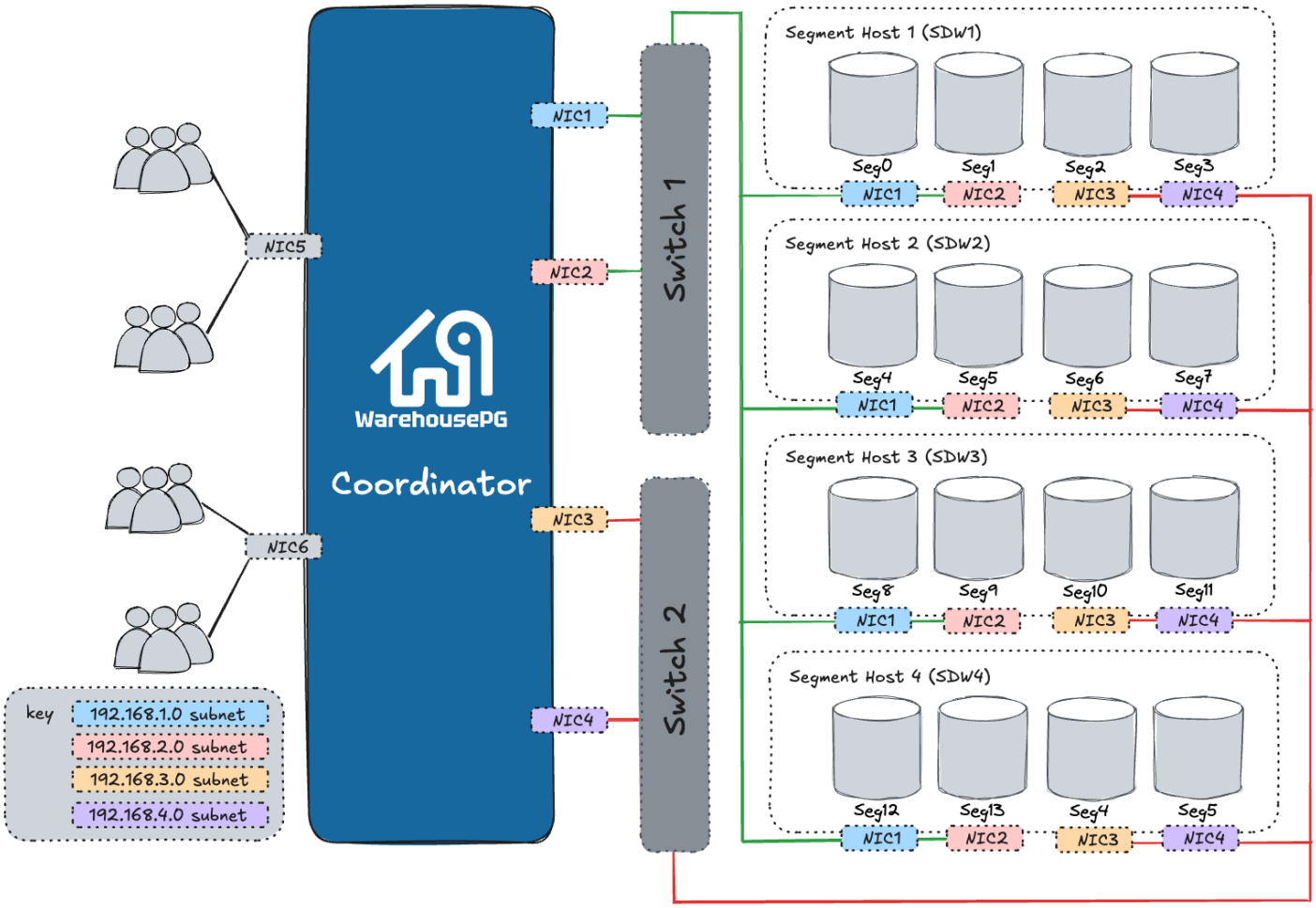
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




**Switch Configuration**

When using multiple 10 Gigabit Ethernet switches within your WarehousePG array, evenly divide the number of subnets between each switch. In this example configuration, if we had two switches, NICs 1 and 2 on each host would use switch 1 and NICs 3 and 4 on each host would use switch 2. For the coordinator host, the host name bound to NIC 1 (and therefore using switch 1) is the effective coordinator host name for the array. Therefore, if deploying a warm standby coordinator for redundancy purposes, the standby coordinator should map to a NIC that uses a different switch than the primary coordinator.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




### About ETL Hosts for Data Loading

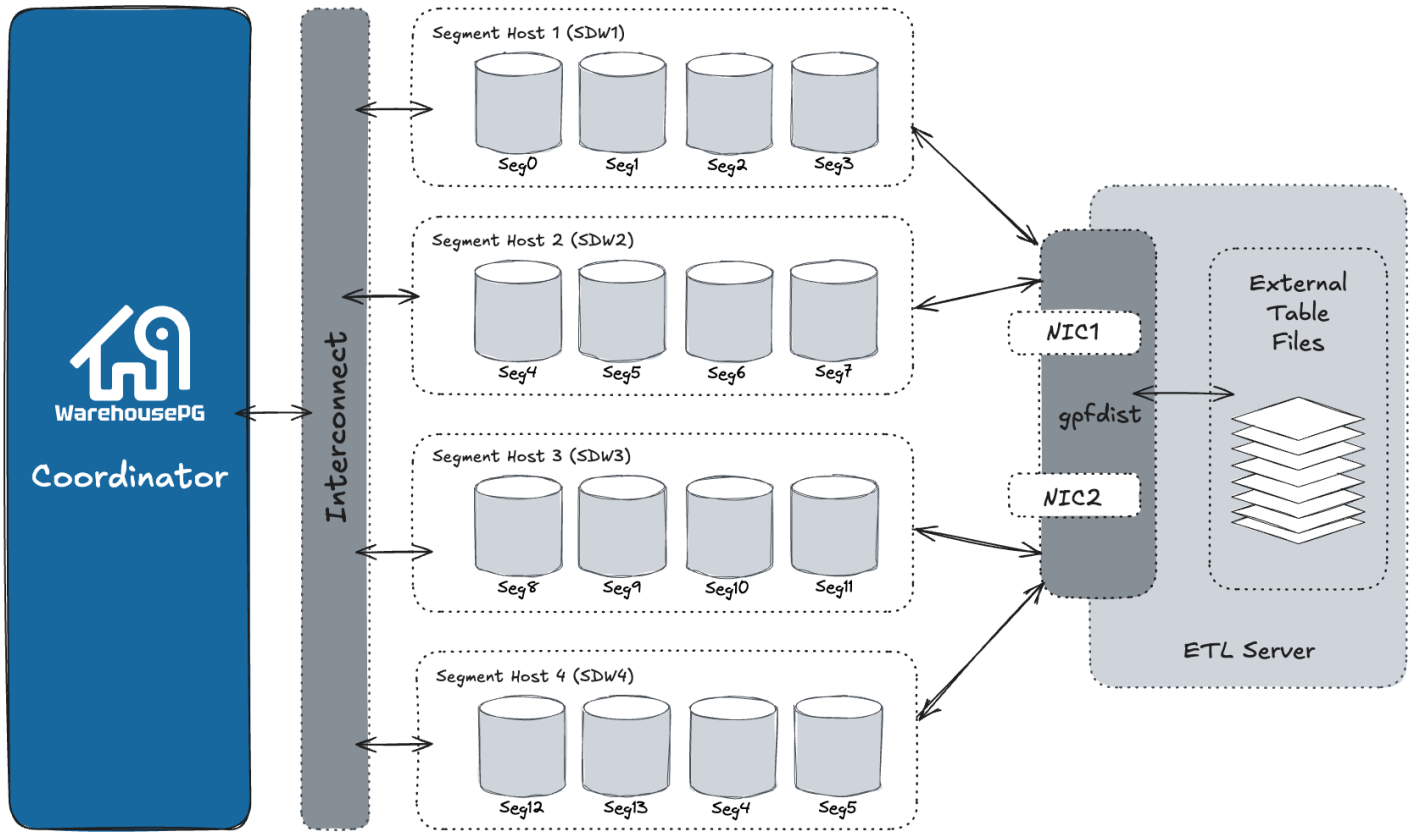
WarehousePG supports fast, parallel data loading with its external tables feature. By using external tables in conjunction with WarehousePG's parallel file server ( `gpfdist` ), administrators can achieve maximum parallelism and load bandwidth from their WarehousePG cluster. Many production systems deploy designated ETL servers for data loading purposes. These machines run the WarehousePG parallel file server ( `gpfdist` ), but not WarehousePG instances.

One advantage of using the `gpfdist` file server program is that it ensures that all of the segments in your WarehousePG cluster are fully utilized when reading from external table data files.

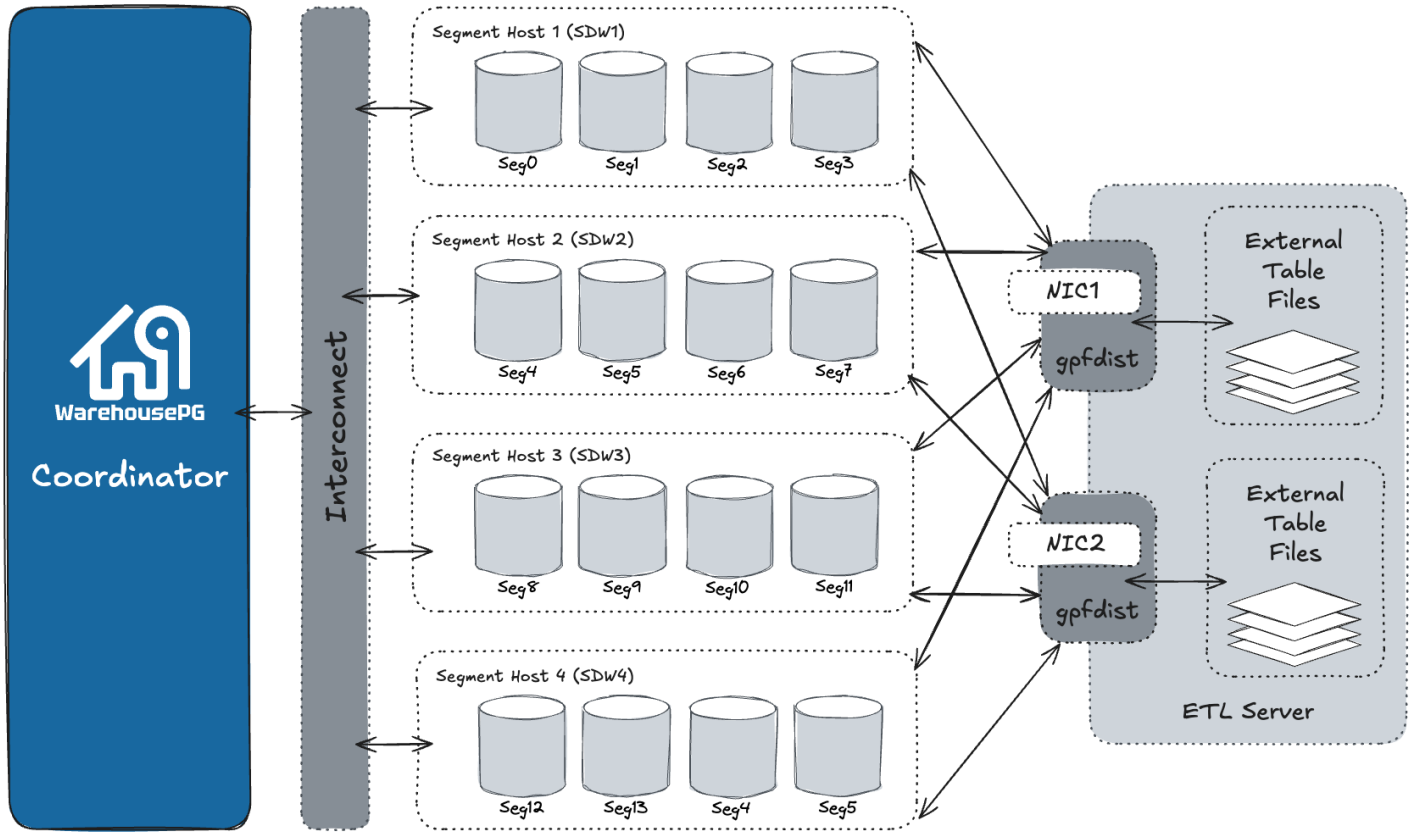
The `gpfdist` program can serve data to the segment instances at an average rate of about 350 MB/s for delimited text formatted files and 200 MB/s for CSV formatted files. Therefore, you should consider the following options when running `gpfdist` in order to maximize the network bandwidth of your ETL systems:

- If your ETL machine is configured with multiple network interface cards (NICs) as described in Network Interface Configuration, run one instance of `gpfdist` on your ETL host and then define your external table definition so that the host name of each NIC is declared in the `LOCATION` clause (see `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*). This allows network traffic between your WarehousePG segment hosts and your ETL host to use all NICs simultaneously.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




- Run multiple `gpfdist` instances on your ETL host and divide your external data files equally between each instance. For example, if you have an ETL system with two network interface cards (NICs), then you could run two `gpfdist` instances on that machine to maximize your load performance. You would then divide the external table data files evenly between the two `gpfdist` programs.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2 Managing WarehousePG

This section describes basic system administration tasks performed by a WarehousePG cluster administrator.

- About the WarehousePG Release Version Number
  WarehousePG version numbers and the way they change identify what has been modified from one WarehousePG release to the next.
- Starting and Stopping WarehousePG
  In a WarehousePG DBMS, the database server instances (the coordinator and all segments) are started or stopped across all of the hosts in the system in such a way that they can work together as a unified DBMS.
- Accessing the Database
  This topic describes the various client tools you can use to connect to WarehousePG, and how to establish a database session.
- Configuring the WarehousePG cluster
  Server configuration parameters affect the behavior of WarehousePG.
- Enabling Compression
  You can configure WarehousePG to use data compression with some database features and with some utilities.
- Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect
  You can configure a WarehousePG cluster to use proxies for interconnect communication to reduce the use of connections and ports during query processing.
- Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features
  The fault tolerance and the high-availability features of WarehousePG can be configured.
- Backing Up and Restoring Databases
  This topic describes how to use WarehousePG backup and restore features.
- Expanding a WarehousePG cluster
  To scale up performance and storage capacity, expand your WarehousePG database system by adding hosts to the system. In general, adding nodes to a WarehousePG cluster achieves a linear scaling of performance and storage capacity.
- Monitoring a WarehousePG cluster
  You can monitor a WarehousePG cluster using a variety of tools included with the system or available as add-ons.
- Routine System Maintenance Tasks
  To keep a WarehousePG cluster running efficiently, the database must be regularly cleared of expired data and the table statistics must be updated so that the query optimizer has accurate information.
- Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks
  This section lists monitoring and maintenance activities recommended to ensure high availability and consistent performance of your WarehousePG cluster.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.1 About the WarehousePG Release Version Number

WarehousePG version numbers and the way they change identify what has been modified from one WarehousePG release to the next.

A WarehousePG release version number takes the format x.y.z, where:

- x identifies the Major version number
- y identifies the Minor version number
- z identifies the Patch version number

WarehousePG releases that have the same Major release number are guaranteed to be backwards compatible. WarehousePG increments the Major release number when the catalog changes or when incompatible feature changes or new features are introduced. Previously deprecated functionality may be removed in a major release.

The Minor release number for a given Major release increments when backwards compatible new features are introduced or when a WarehousePG feature is deprecated. (Previously deprecated functionality will never be removed in a minor release.)

WarehousePG increments the Patch release number for a given Minor release for backwards-compatible bug fixes.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.2 Starting and Stopping WarehousePG

In a WarehousePG DBMS, the database server instances (the coordinator and all segments) are started or stopped across all of the hosts in the system in such a way that they can work together as a unified DBMS.

Because a WarehousePG cluster is distributed across many machines, the process for starting and stopping a WarehousePG cluster is different than the process for starting and stopping a regular PostgreSQL DBMS.

Use the `gpstart` and `gpstop` utilities to start and stop WarehousePG, respectively. These utilities are located in the $GPHOME/bin directory on your WarehousePG coordinator host.

> **Important** Do not issue a `kill` command to end any Postgres process. Instead, use the database command `pg_cancel_backend()`.

Issuing a `kill -9` or `kill -11` can introduce database corruption and prevent root cause analysis from being performed.

For information about `gpstart` and `gpstop`, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

### Starting WarehousePG

Start an initialized WarehousePG cluster by running the `gpstart` utility on the coordinator instance.

Use the `gpstart` utility to start a WarehousePG cluster that has already been initialized by the `gpinitsystem` utility, but has been stopped by the `gpstop` utility. The `gpstart` utility starts WarehousePG by starting all the Postgres database instances on the WarehousePG cluster. `gpstart` orchestrates this process and performs the process in parallel.

Run `gpstart` on the coordinator host to start WarehousePG:

```
$ gpstart
```

### Restarting WarehousePG

Stop the WarehousePG cluster and then restart it.

The `gpstop` utility with the `-r` option can stop and then restart WarehousePG after the shutdown completes.

To restart WarehousePG, enter the following command on the coordinator host:

```
$ gpstop -r
```

### Reloading Configuration File Changes Only

Reload changes to WarehousePG configuration files without interrupting the system.

The `gpstop` utility can reload changes to the pg_hba.conf configuration file and to *runtime* parameters in the coordinator postgresql.conf file without service interruption. Active sessions pick up changes when they reconnect to the database. Many server configuration parameters require a full system restart ( `gpstop -r` ) to activate. For information about server configuration parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

Reload configuration file changes without shutting down the WarehousePG cluster using the `gpstop` utility:

```
$ gpstop -u
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Starting the Coordinator in Maintenance Mode

Start only the coordinator to perform maintenance or administrative tasks without affecting data on the segments.

1. Run `gpstart` using the -m option:

   ```
   $ gpstart -m
   ```

2. Connect to the coordinator in maintenance mode to do catalog maintenance. For example:

   ```
   $ PGOPTIONS='-c gp_session_role=utility' psql postgres
   ```

3. After completing your administrative tasks, stop the coordinator in maintenance mode. Then, restart it in production mode.

   ```
   $ gpstop -m
   $ gpstart
   ```

> **Caution** Incorrect use of maintenance mode connections can result in an inconsistent system state. Only Technical Support should perform this operation.

### Stopping WarehousePG

The `gpstop` utility stops or restarts your WarehousePG cluster and always runs on the coordinator host. When activated, `gpstop` stops all `postgres` processes in the system, including the coordinator and all segment instances. The `gpstop` utility uses a default of up to 64 parallel worker threads to bring down the Postgres instances that make up the WarehousePG cluster. The system waits for any active transactions to finish before shutting down. If after two minutes there are still active connections, `gpstop` will prompt you to either continue waiting in smart mode, stop in fast mode, or stop in immediate mode. To stop WarehousePG immediately, use fast mode.

> **Important** Immediate shut down mode is not recommended. This mode stops all database processes without allowing the database server to complete transaction processing or clean up any temporary or in-process work files.

- To stop WarehousePG:

  ```
  $ gpstop
  ```

- To stop WarehousePG in fast mode:

  ```
  $ gpstop -M fast
  ```

  By default, you are not allowed to shut down WarehousePG if there are any client connections to the database. Use the `-M fast` option to roll back all in progress transactions and terminate any connections before shutting down.

### Stopping Client Processes

WarehousePG launches a new backend process for each client connection. A WarehousePG user with `SUPERUSER` privileges can cancel and terminate these client backend processes.

Canceling a backend process with the `pg_cancel_backend()` function ends a specific queued or active client query. Terminating a backend process with the `pg_terminate_backend()` function terminates a client connection to a database.

The `pg_cancel_backend()` function has two signatures:

- `pg_cancel_backend( pid int4 )`
- `pg_cancel_backend( pid int4, msg text )`

The `pg_terminate_backend()` function has two similar signatures:

- `pg_terminate_backend( pid int4 )`
- `pg_terminate_backend( pid int4, msg text )`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If you provide a `msg`, WarehousePG includes the text in the cancel message returned to the client. `msg` is limited to 128 bytes; WarehousePG truncates anything longer.

The `pg_cancel_backend()` and `pg_terminate_backend()` functions return `true` if successful, and `false` otherwise.

To cancel or terminate a backend process, you must first identify the process ID of the backend. You can obtain the process ID from the `pid` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view. For example, to view the process information associated with all running and queued queries:

```
=# SELECT usename, pid, waiting, state, query, datname
     FROM pg_stat_activity;
```

Sample partial query output:

```
 usename |  pid     | waiting | state  |         query          | datname
---------+----------+---------+--------+------------------------+---------
  sammy  |   31861  |    f    | idle   | SELECT * FROM testtbl; | testdb
  billy  |   31905  |    t    | active | SELECT * FROM topten;  | testdb
```

Use the output to identify the process id (`pid`) of the query or client connection.

For example, to cancel the waiting query identified in the sample output above and include `'Admin canceled long-running query.'` as the message returned to the client:

```
=# SELECT pg_cancel_backend(31905 ,'Admin canceled long-running query.');
ERROR:  canceling statement due to user request: "Admin canceled long-running query."
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3 Accessing the Database

This topic describes the various client tools you can use to connect to WarehousePG, and how to establish a database session.

- Establishing a Database Session
- Supported Client Applications
- WarehousePG Client Applications
- Connecting with psql
- Database Application Interfaces
- Troubleshooting Connection Problems

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3.1 Establishing a Database Session

Users can connect to WarehousePG using a PostgreSQL-compatible client program, such as `psql`. Users and administrators *always* connect to WarehousePG through the coordinator node; the segments cannot accept client connections.

In order to establish a connection to the WarehousePG coordinator, you will need to know the following connection information and configure your client program accordingly.

| Connection Parameter | Description | Environment Variable |
|---|---|---|
| Application name | The application name that is connecting to the database. The default value, held in the `application_name` connection parameter is *psql*. | `$PGAPPNAME` |
| Database name | The name of the database to which you want to connect. For a newly initialized system, use the `postgres` database to connect for the first time. | `$PGDATABASE` |
| Host name | The host name of the WarehousePG coordinator. The default host is the local host. | `$PGHOST` |
| Port | The port number that the WarehousePG coordinator instance is running on. The default is 5432. | `$PGPORT` |
| User name | The database user (role) name to connect as. This is not necessarily the same as your OS user name. Check with your WarehousePG administrator if you are not sure what you database user name is. Note that every WarehousePG cluster has one superuser account that is created automatically at initialization time. This account has the same name as the OS name of the user who initialized the WarehousePG cluster (typically `gpadmin`). | `$PGUSER` |

Connecting with psql provides example commands for connecting to WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3.2 Supported Client Applications

Users can connect to WarehousePG using various client applications:

- A number of WarehousePG Client Applications are provided with your WarehousePG installation. The `psql` client application provides an interactive command-line interface to WarehousePG.
- Using standard Database Application Interfaces, such as ODBC and JDBC, users can create their own client applications that interface to WarehousePG.
- Most client tools that use standard database interfaces, such as ODBC and JDBC, can be configured to connect to WarehousePG.

> **Note**
>
> While WarehousePG is compatible with community PostgreSQL drivers, EDB recommends using the EDB ODBC Connector or the EDB JDBC Connector for production environments. These drivers are specifically optimized for EDB-supported Postgres distributions, including WarehousePG, and ensure full compatibility with enterprise security and performance features.
>
> Download these drivers from the EDB Connectors page.

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3.3 WarehousePG Client Applications

WarehousePG comes installed with a number of client utility applications located in the `$GPHOME/bin` directory of your WarehousePG coordinator host installation. The following are the most commonly used client utility applications:

| Name | Usage |
|---|---|
| `createdb` | create a new database |
| `createuser` | define a new database role |
| `dropdb` | remove a database |
| `dropuser` | remove a role |
| `psql` | PostgreSQL interactive terminal |
| `reindexdb` | reindex a database |
| `vacuumdb` | garbage-collect and analyze a database |

When using these client applications, you must connect to a database through the WarehousePG coordinator instance. You will need to know the name of your target database, the host name and port number of the coordinator, and what database user name to connect as. This information can be provided on the command-line using the options `-d`, `-h`, `-p`, and `-U` respectively. If an argument is found that does not belong to any option, it will be interpreted as the database name first.

All of these options have default values which will be used if the option is not specified. The default host is the local host. The default port number is 5432. The default user name is your OS system user name, as is the default database name. Note that OS user names and WarehousePG user names are not necessarily the same.

If the default values are not correct, you can set the environment variables `PGDATABASE`, `PGHOST`, `PGPORT`, and `PGUSER` to the appropriate values, or use a `psql` `~/.pgpass` file to contain frequently-used passwords.

For information about WarehousePG environment variables, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*. For information about psql, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.3.4 Connecting with psql

Depending on the default values used or the environment variables you have set, the following examples show how to access a database via `psql`:

```
$ psql -d gpdatabase -h master_host -p 5432 -U `gpadmin`
```

```
$ psql gpdatabase
```

```
$ psql
```

If a user-defined database has not yet been created, you can access the system by connecting to the `postgres` database. For example:

```
$ psql postgres
```

After connecting to a database, `psql` provides a prompt with the name of the database to which `psql` is currently connected, followed by the string `=>` (or `=#` if you are the database superuser). For example:

```
gpdatabase=>
```

At the prompt, you may type in SQL commands. A SQL command must end with a `;` (semicolon) in order to be sent to the server and run. For example:

```
=> SELECT * FROM mytable;
```

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about using the `psql` client application and SQL commands and syntax.

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.3.5 Using the PgBouncer Connection Pooler

The PgBouncer utility manages connection pools for PostgreSQL and WarehousePG connections.

The following topics describe how to set up and use PgBouncer with WarehousePG. Refer to the PgBouncer web site for information about using PgBouncer with PostgreSQL.


- Overview
- Migrating PgBouncer
- Configuring PgBouncer
- Starting PgBouncer
- Managing PgBouncer


**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

### Overview

A database connection pool is a cache of database connections. Once a pool of connections is established, connection pooling eliminates the overhead of creating new database connections, so clients connect much faster and the server load is reduced.

The PgBouncer connection pooler, from the PostgreSQL community, is included in your WarehousePG installation. PgBouncer is a light-weight connection pool manager for WarehousePG and PostgreSQL. PgBouncer maintains a pool for connections for each database and user combination. PgBouncer either creates a new database connection for a client or reuses an existing connection for the same user and database. When the client disconnects, PgBouncer returns the connection to the pool for re-use.

In order not to compromise transaction semantics for connection pooling, PgBouncer supports several types of pooling when rotating connections:

- *Session pooling* - Most polite method. When a client connects, a server connection will be assigned to it for the whole duration the client stays connected. When the client disconnects, the server connection will be put back into the pool. This is the default method.
- *Transaction pooling* - A server connection is assigned to a client only during a transaction. When PgBouncer notices that transaction is over, the server connection will be put back into the pool.
- *Statement pooling* - Most aggressive method. The server connection will be put back into the pool immediately after a query completes. Multi-statement transactions are disallowed in this mode as they would break.

You can set a default pool mode for the PgBouncer instance. You can override this mode for individual databases and users.

PgBouncer supports the standard connection interface shared by PostgreSQL and WarehousePG. The WarehousePG client application (for example, `psql`) connects to the host and port on which PgBouncer is running rather than the WarehousePG coordinator host and port.

PgBouncer includes a `psql`-like administration console. Authorized users can connect to a virtual database to monitor and manage PgBouncer. You can manage a PgBouncer daemon process via the admin console. You can also use the console to update and reload PgBouncer configuration at runtime without stopping and restarting the process.

PgBouncer natively supports TLS.

### Migrating PgBouncer

When you migrate to a new WarehousePG version, you must migrate your PgBouncer instance to that in the new WarehousePG installation.

- **If you are migrating to a WarehousePG version 6 or later**, you must shut down the PgBouncer instance in your old installation and reconfigure and restart PgBouncer in your new installation.
- If you used stunnel to secure PgBouncer connections in your old installation, you must configure SSL/TLS in your new installation using the built-in TLS capabilities of PgBouncer 1.8.1 and later.
- If you currently use the built-in PAM LDAP integration, you may choose to migrate to the new native LDAP PgBouncer integration introduced in WarehousePG version 6.22; refer to Configuring LDAP-based Authentication for PgBouncer for configuration information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Configuring PgBouncer

You configure PgBouncer and its access to WarehousePG via a configuration file. This configuration file, commonly named `pgbouncer.ini`, provides location information for WarehousePGs. The `pgbouncer.ini` file also specifies process, connection pool, authorized users, and authentication configuration for PgBouncer.

Sample `pgbouncer.ini` file contents:

```
[databases]
postgres = host=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=postgres
pgb_mydb = host=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=mydb

[pgbouncer]
pool_mode = session
listen_port = 6543
listen_addr = 127.0.0.1
auth_type = md5
auth_file = users.txt
logfile = pgbouncer.log
pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
admin_users = gpadmin
```

Refer to the pgbouncer.ini reference page for the PgBouncer configuration file format and the list of configuration properties it supports.

When a client connects to PgBouncer, the connection pooler looks up the the configuration for the requested database (which may be an alias for the actual database) that was specified in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file to find the host name, port, and database name for the database connection. The configuration file also identifies the authentication mode in effect for the database.

PgBouncer requires an authentication file, a text file that contains a list of WarehousePG users and passwords. The contents of the file are dependent on the `auth_type` you configure in the `pgbouncer.ini` file. Passwords may be either clear text or MD5-encoded strings. You can also configure PgBouncer to query the destination database to obtain password information for users that are not in the authentication file.

#### PgBouncer Authentication File Format

PgBouncer requires its own user authentication file. You specify the name of this file in the `auth_file` property of the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file. `auth_file` is a text file in the following format:

```
"username1" "password" ...
"username2" "md5abcdef012342345" ...
"username2" "SCRAM-SHA-256$<iterations>:<salt>$<storedkey>:<serverkey>"
```

`auth_file` contains one line per user. Each line must have at least two fields, both of which are enclosed in double quotes (`" "`). The first field identifies the WarehousePG user name. The second field is either a plain-text password, an MD5-encoded password, or or a SCRAM secret. PgBouncer ignores the remainder of the line.

(The format of `auth_file` is similar to that of the `pg_auth` text file that WarehousePG uses for authentication information. PgBouncer can work directly with this WarehousePG authentication file.)

Use an MD5 encoded password. The format of an MD5 encoded password is:

```
"md5" + MD5_encoded(<password><username>)
```

You can also obtain the MD5-encoded passwords of all WarehousePG users from the `pg_shadow` view.

PostgreSQL SCRAM secret format:

```
SCRAM-SHA-256$<iterations>:<salt>$<storedkey>:<serverkey>
```

See the PostgreSQL documentation and RFC 5803 for details on this.

The passwords or secrets stored in the authentication file serve two purposes. First, they are used to verify the passwords of incoming client connections, if a password-based authentication method is configured. Second, they are used as the passwords for outgoing connections to the backend server, if the backend server requires password-based authentication (unless the password is specified directly in the database's connection string). The latter works if the password is stored in plain text or MD5-hashed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

SCRAM secrets can only be used for logging into a server if the client authentication also uses SCRAM, the PgBouncer database definition does not specify a user name, and the SCRAM secrets are identical in PgBouncer and the PostgreSQL server (same salt and iterations, not merely the same password). This is due to an inherent security property of SCRAM: The stored SCRAM secret cannot by itself be used for deriving login credentials.

The authentication file can be written by hand, but it's also useful to generate it from some other list of users and passwords. See `./etc/mkauth.py` for a sample script to generate the authentication file from the `pg_shadow` system table. Alternatively, use

```
auth_query
```

instead of `auth_file` to avoid having to maintain a separate authentication file.

#### Configuring HBA-based Authentication for PgBouncer

PgBouncer supports HBA-based authentication. To configure HBA-based authentication for PgBouncer, you set `auth_type=hba` in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file. You also provide the filename of the HBA-format file in the `auth_hba_file` parameter of the `pgbouncer.ini` file.

Contents of an example PgBouncer HBA file named `hba_bouncer.conf`:

```
local       all     bouncer             trust
host        all     bouncer      127.0.0.1/32       trust
```

Example excerpt from the related `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file:

```
[databases]
p0 = port=15432 host=127.0.0.1 dbname=p0 user=bouncer pool_size=2
p1 = port=15432 host=127.0.0.1 dbname=p1 user=bouncer
...

[pgbouncer]
...
auth_type = hba
auth_file = userlist.txt
auth_hba_file = hba_bouncer.conf
...
```

Refer to the HBA file format discussion in the PgBouncer documentation for information about PgBouncer support of the HBA authentication file format.

#### Configuring LDAP-based Authentication for PgBouncer

Starting in WarehousePG version 6.22, PgBouncer supports native LDAP authentication between the `psql` client and the `pgbouncer` process. Configuring this LDAP-based authentication is similar to configuring HBA-based authentication for PgBouncer:

- Specify `auth-type=hba` in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file.
- Provide the file name of an HBA-format file in the `auth_hba_file` parameter of the `pgbouncer.ini` file, and specify the LDAP parameters (server address, base DN, bind DN, bind password, search attribute, etc.) in the file.

> **Note** You may, but are not required to, specify LDAP user names and passwords in the `auth-file`. When you do *not* specify these strings in the `auth-file`, LDAP user password changes require no PgBouncer configuration changes.

If you enable LDAP authentication between `psql` and `pgbouncer` and you use `md5`, `password`, or `scram-sha-256` for authentication between PgBouncer and WarehousePG, ensure that you configure the latter password independently.

Excerpt of an example PgBouncer HBA file named `hba_bouncer_for_ldap.conf` that specifies LDAP authentication follows:

```
host all user1 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldapserver=<ldap-server-address> ldapbasedn="CN=Users,DC=greenplum,DC=org"
ldapbinddn="CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=greenplum,DC=org" ldapbindpasswd="ChangeMe1!!"
ldapsearchattribute="SomeAttrName"
```

Refer to the WarehousePG LDAP Authentication discussion for more information on configuring an HBA file for LDAP.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Example excerpt from the related `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file:

```
[databases]
* = port = 6000 host=127.0.0.1

[pgbouncer]
listen_addr = 0.0.0.0
listen_port = 6432

auth_type = hba
auth_hba_file = hba_bouncer_for_ldap.conf
...
```

#### About Specifying an Encrypted LDAP Password

Starting in WarehousePG version 6.26, PgBouncer supports encrypted LDAP passwords. To utilize an encrypted LDAP password with PgBouncer, you must:

- Place the encrypted password in the `${HOME}/.ldapbindpass` file.
- Specify `ldapbindpasswd="$bindpasswd"` in the HBA-based authentication file for PgBouncer.
- Specify the file system path to the encryption key in the `auth_key_file` setting in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file.
- Specify the encryption cipher in the `auth_cipher` setting in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file.

The following example commands create an encrypted password and place it in `${HOME}/.ldapbindpass`:

```
# generate a key file named ldkeyfile
$ openssl rand -base64 256 | tr -d '\n' > ldkeyfile

# encrypt the password
$ encrypted_passwd=$(echo -n "your_secret_password_here" | openssl enc -aes-256-cbc -base64 -md sha256 -pass
file:ldkeyfile

# copy the encrypted password to required location
$ echo -n $encrypted_passwd > "${HOME}/.ldapbindpass"
```

An excerpt of an example PgBouncer HBA file named `hba_bouncer_with_ldap_encrypted.conf` that specifies LDAP authentication with an encrypted password follows:

```
host all user2 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldapserver=<ldap-server-address> ldapbindpasswd="$bindpasswd"
ldapbasedn="CN=Users,DC=greenplum,DC=org" ldapbinddn="CN=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=greenplum,DC=org"
ldapsearchattribute="SomeAttrName"
```

Example excerpt from the related `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file:

```
[databases]
* = port = 6000 host=127.0.0.1

[pgbouncer]
listen_addr = 0.0.0.0
listen_port = 6432

auth_type = hba
auth_hba_file = hba_bouncer_with_ldap_encrypted.conf
auth_key_file = /home/user2/ldkeyfile
auth_cipher = -aes-128-ecb
...
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Starting PgBouncer

You can run PgBouncer on the WarehousePG coordinator or on another server. If you install PgBouncer on a separate server, you can easily switch clients to the standby coordinator by updating the PgBouncer configuration file and reloading the configuration using the PgBouncer Administration Console.

Follow these steps to set up PgBouncer.

1. Create a PgBouncer configuration file. For example, add the following text to a file named `pgbouncer.ini`:

   ```
   [databases]
   postgres = host=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=postgres
   pgb_mydb = host=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=mydb

   [pgbouncer]
   pool_mode = session
   listen_port = 6543
   listen_addr = 127.0.0.1
   auth_type = md5
   auth_file = users.txt
   logfile = pgbouncer.log
   pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
   admin_users = gpadmin
   ```

   The file lists databases and their connection details. The file also configures the PgBouncer instance. Refer to the pgbouncer.ini reference page for information about the format and content of a PgBouncer configuration file.

2. Create an authentication file. The filename should be the name you specified for the `auth_file` parameter of the `pgbouncer.ini` file, `users.txt`. Each line contains a user name and password. The format of the password string matches the `auth_type` you configured in the PgBouncer configuration file. If the `auth_type` parameter is `plain`, the password string is a clear text password, for example:

   ```
   "gpadmin" "gpadmin1234"
   ```

   If the `auth_type` in the following example is `md5`, the authentication field must be MD5-encoded. The format for an MD5-encoded password is:

   ```
   "md5" + MD5_encoded(<password><username>)
   ```

3. Launch `pgbouncer`:

   ```
   $ $GPHOME/bin/pgbouncer -d pgbouncer.ini
   ```

   The `-d` option runs PgBouncer as a background (daemon) process. Refer to the pgbouncer reference page for the `pgbouncer` command syntax and options.

4. Update your client applications to connect to `pgbouncer` instead of directly to WarehousePG server. For example, to connect to the WarehousePG named `mydb` configured above, run `psql` as follows:

   ```
   $ psql -p 6543 -U someuser pgb_mydb
   ```

   The `-p` option value is the `listen_port` that you configured for the PgBouncer instance.

### Managing PgBouncer

PgBouncer provides a `psql`-like administration console. You log in to the PgBouncer Administration Console by specifying the PgBouncer port number and a virtual database named `pgbouncer`. The console accepts SQL-like commands that you can use to monitor, reconfigure, and manage PgBouncer.

For complete documentation of PgBouncer Administration Console commands, refer to the pgbouncer-admin command reference.

Follow these steps to get started with the PgBouncer Administration Console.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Use `psql` to log in to the `pgbouncer` virtual database:

   ```
   $ psql -p 6543 -U username pgbouncer
   ```

   The username that you specify must be listed in the `admin_users` parameter in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file. You can also log in to the PgBouncer Administration Console with the current Unix username if the `pgbouncer` process is running under that user's UID.

2. To view the available PgBouncer Administration Console commands, run the `SHOW help` command:

   ```
   pgbouncer=# SHOW help;
   NOTICE:  Console usage
   DETAIL:
       SHOW HELP|CONFIG|DATABASES|FDS|POOLS|CLIENTS|SERVERS|SOCKETS|LISTS|VERSION|...
       SET key = arg
       RELOAD
       PAUSE
       SUSPEND
       RESUME
       SHUTDOWN
       [...]
   ```

3. If you update PgBouncer configuration by editing the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration file, you use the `RELOAD` command to reload the file:

   ```
   pgbouncer=# RELOAD;
   ```

#### Mapping PgBouncer Clients to WarehousePG Server Connections

To map a PgBouncer client to a WarehousePG server connection, use the PgBouncer Administration Console `SHOW CLIENTS` and `SHOW SERVERS` commands:

1. Use `ptr` and `link` to map the local client connection to the server connection.
2. Use the `addr` and the `port` of the client connection to identify the TCP connection from the client.
3. Use `local_addr` and `local_port` to identify the TCP connection to the server.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3.6 Database Application Interfaces

You may want to develop your own client applications that interface to WarehousePG. PostgreSQL provides a number of database drivers for the most commonly used database application programming interfaces (APIs), which can also be used with WarehousePG. These drivers are available as a separate download. Each driver (except libpq, which comes with PostgreSQL) is an independent PostgreSQL development project and must be downloaded, installed and configured to connect to WarehousePG. The following drivers are available:

| API | PostgreSQL Driver | Download Link |
|---|---|---|
| ODBC | EDB ODBC Connector | EDB Connectors page |
| JDBC | EDB JDBC Connector | EDB Connectors page |
| Perl DBI | pgperl | https://metacpan.org/release/DBD-Pg |
| Python DBI | pygresql | http://www.pygresql.org/ |
| Python DBI | psycopg2 | https://www.psycopg.org/ |
| libpq C Library | libpq | https://www.postgresql.org/docs/12/libpq.html |

> **Note**
>
> While WarehousePG is compatible with community PostgreSQL drivers, EDB recommends using the EDB ODBC Connector or the EDB JDBC Connector for production environments. These drivers are specifically optimized for EDB-supported Postgres distributions, including WarehousePG, and ensure full compatibility with enterprise security and performance features.

General instructions for accessing a WarehousePG with an API are:

1. Download your programming language platform and respective API from the appropriate source. For example, you can get the Java Development Kit (JDK) and JDBC API from Oracle.
2. Write your client application according to the API specifications. When programming your application, be aware of the SQL support in WarehousePG so you do not include any unsupported SQL syntax.

Download the appropriate driver and configure connectivity to your WarehousePG coordinator instance.

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.3.7 Troubleshooting Connection Problems

A number of things can prevent a client application from successfully connecting to WarehousePG. This topic explains some of the common causes of connection problems and how to correct them.

| Problem | Solution |
|---|---|
| No `pg_hba.conf` entry for host or user | To enable WarehousePG to accept remote client connections, you must configure your WarehousePG coordinator instance so that connections are allowed from the client hosts and database users that will be connecting to WarehousePG. This is done by adding the appropriate entries to the `pg_hba.conf` configuration file (located in the coordinator instance's data directory). For more detailed information, see Allowing Connections to WarehousePG. |
| WarehousePG is not running | If the WarehousePG coordinator instance is down, users will not be able to connect. You can verify that the WarehousePG cluster is up by running the `gpstate` utility on the WarehousePG coordinator host. |
| Network problems | If users connect to the WarehousePG coordinator host from a remote client, network problems can prevent a connection (for example, DNS host name resolution problems, the host system is down, and so on.). To ensure that network problems are not the cause, connect to the WarehousePG coordinator host from the remote client host. For example: `ping hostname` |
| Interconnect timeouts | If the system cannot resolve the host names and IP addresses of the hosts involved in WarehousePG, queries and connections will fail. For some operations, connections to the WarehousePG coordinator use `localhost` and others use the actual host name, so you must be able to resolve both. If you encounter this error, first make sure you can connect to each host in your WarehousePG array from the coordinator host over the network. In the `/etc/hosts` file of the master and all segments, make sure you have the correct host names and IP addresses for all hosts involved in the WarehousePG array. The `127.0.0.1` IP must resolve to `localhost`. |
| Too many clients already | By default, WarehousePG is configured to allow a maximum of 250 concurrent user connections on the master and 750 on a segment. A connection attempt that causes that limit to be exceeded will be refused. This limit is controlled by the `max_connections` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file of the WarehousePG coordinator. If you change this setting for the master, you must also make appropriate changes at the segments. |

**Parent topic:** Accessing the Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.4 Configuring WarehousePG

Server configuration parameters affect the behavior of WarehousePG.They are part of the PostgreSQL "Grand Unified Configuration" system, so they are sometimes called "GUCs." Most of the WarehousePG server configuration parameters are the same as the PostgreSQL configuration parameters, but some are WarehousePG-specific.

- About WarehousePG Coordinator and Local Parameters
- Setting Configuration Parameters
- Viewing Server Configuration Parameter Settings
- Configuration Parameter Categories

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.4.1 About WarehousePG Coordinator and Local Parameters

Server configuration files contain parameters that configure server behavior. The WarehousePG configuration file, postgresql.conf, resides in the data directory of the database instance.

The coordinator and each segment instance have their own postgresql.conf file. Some parameters are *local*: each segment instance examines its postgresql.conf file to get the value of that parameter. Set local parameters on the coordinator and on each segment instance.

Other parameters are *coordinator* parameters that you set on the coordinator instance. The value is passed down to (or in some cases ignored by) the segment instances at query run time.

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about *local* and *coordinator* server configuration parameters.

**Parent topic:** Configuring the WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.4.2 Configuration Parameter Categories

Configuration parameters affect categories of server behaviors, such as resource consumption, query tuning, and authentication. Refer to Parameter Categories in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for a list of WarehousePG server configuration parameter categories.

**Parent topic:** Configuring the WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.4.3 Setting Configuration Parameters

Many configuration parameters limit who can change them and where or when they can be set. For example, to change certain parameters, you must be a WarehousePG superuser. Other parameters can be set only at the system level in the postgresql.conf file or require a system restart to take effect.

Many configuration parameters are *session* parameters. You can set session parameters at the system level, the database level, the role level or the session level. Database users can change most session parameters within their session, but some require superuser permissions.

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about setting server configuration parameters.

- Setting a Local Configuration Parameter
- Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

**Parent topic:** Configuring the WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.3.1 Setting a Local Configuration Parameter

To change a local configuration parameter across multiple segments, update the parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file of each targeted segment, both primary and mirror. Use the `gpconfig` utility to set a parameter in all WarehousePG `postgresql.conf` files. For example:

```
$ gpconfig -c gp_vmem_protect_limit -v 4096
```

Restart WarehousePG to make the configuration changes effective:

```
$ gpstop -r
```

**Parent topic:** Setting Configuration Parameters

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.4.3.2 Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

To set a coordinator configuration parameter, set it at the WarehousePG coordinator instance. If it is also a *session* parameter, you can set the parameter for a particular database, role or session. If a parameter is set at multiple levels, the most granular level takes precedence. For example, session overrides role, role overrides database, and database overrides system.

- Setting Parameters at the System Level
- Setting Parameters at the Database Level
- Setting Parameters at the Role Level
- Setting Parameters in a Session

**Parent topic:** Setting Configuration Parameters

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.3.2.1 Setting Parameters at the System Level

Coordinator parameter settings in the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file are the system-wide default. To set a coordinator parameter:

1. Edit the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` file.
2. Find the parameter to set, uncomment it (remove the preceding `#` character), and type the desired value.
3. Save and close the file.
4. For *session* parameters that do not require a server restart, upload the `postgresql.conf` changes as follows:

   ```
   $ gpstop -u
   ```

5. For parameter changes that require a server restart, restart WarehousePG as follows:

   ```
   $ gpstop -r
   ```

For details about the server configuration parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.3.2.2 Setting Parameters at the Database Level

Use `ALTER DATABASE` to set parameters at the database level. For example:

```
=# ALTER DATABASE mydatabase SET search_path TO myschema;
```

When you set a session parameter at the database level, every session that connects to that database uses that parameter setting. Settings at the database level override settings at the system level.

**Parent topic:** Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.3.2.3 Setting Parameters at the Role Level

Use `ALTER ROLE` to set a parameter at the role level. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE bob SET search_path TO bobschema;
```

When you set a session parameter at the role level, every session initiated by that role uses that parameter setting. Settings at the role level override settings at the database level.

**Parent topic:** Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.3.2.4 Setting Parameters in a Session

Any session parameter can be set in an active database session using the `SET` command. For example:

```
=# SET statement_mem TO '200MB';
```

The parameter setting is valid for the rest of that session or until you issue a `RESET` command. For example:

```
=# RESET statement_mem;
```

Settings at the session level override those at the role level.

**Parent topic:** Setting a Coordinator Configuration Parameter

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.4.4 Viewing Server Configuration Parameter Settings

The SQL command `SHOW` allows you to see the current server configuration parameter settings. For example, to see the settings for all parameters:

```
$ psql -c 'SHOW ALL;'
```

`SHOW` lists the settings for the coordinator instance only. To see the value of a particular parameter across the entire system (coordinator and all segments), use the `gpconfig` utility. For example:

```
$ gpconfig --show max_connections
```

**Parent topic:** Configuring the WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.5 Enabling Compression

You can configure WarehousePG to use data compression with some database features and with some utilities.Compression reduces disk usage and improves I/O across the system, however, it adds some performance overhead when compressing and decompressing data.

You can configure support for data compression with these features and utilities. See the specific feature or utility for information about support for compression.

- Append-optimized tables support compressing table data. See CREATE TABLE.
- User-defined data types can be defined to compress data. SeeCREATE TYPE.
- The external table protocols gpfdist (gpfdists), s3, and pxf support compression when accessing external data. For information about external tables, see CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE.
- Workfiles (temporary spill files that are created when running a query that requires more memory than it is allocated) can be compressed. See the server configuration parameter gp_workfile_compression.
- The WarehousePG utilities gpbackup, gprestore, gpload, and gplogfilter support compression.

For some compression algorithms (such as zlib) WarehousePG requires software packages installed on the host system. For information about required software packages, see the *WarehousePG Installation Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.6 Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect

You can configure a WarehousePG cluster to use proxies for interconnect communication to reduce the use of connections and ports during query processing.

The WarehousePG *interconnect* (the networking layer) refers to the inter-process communication between segments and the network infrastructure on which this communication relies. For information about the WarehousePG architecture and interconnect, see About the WarehousePG Architecture.

In general, when running a query, a QD (query dispatcher) on the WarehousePG coordinator creates connections to one or more QE (query executor) processes on segments, and a QE can create connections to other QEs. For a description of WarehousePG query processing and parallel query processing, see About WarehousePG Query Processing.

By default, connections between the QD on the coordinator and QEs on segment instances and between QEs on different segment instances require a separate network port. You can configure a WarehousePG cluster to use proxies when WarehousePG communicates between the QD and QEs and between QEs on different segment instances. The interconnect proxies require only one network connection for WarehousePG internal communication between two segment instances, so it consumes fewer connections and ports than `TCP` mode, and has better performance than `UDPIFC` mode in a high-latency network.

To enable interconnect proxies for the WarehousePG cluster, set these system configuration parameters.

- List the proxy ports with the parameter gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses. You must specify a proxy port for the coordinator, standby coordinator, and all segment instances.
- Set the parameter gp_interconnect_type to `proxy`.

> **Note** When expanding a WarehousePG cluster, you must deactivate interconnect proxies before adding new hosts and segment instances to the system, and you must update the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter with the newly-added segment instances before you re-enable interconnect proxies.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

### Example

This example sets up a WarehousePG cluster to use proxies for the WarehousePG interconnect when running queries. The example sets the gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses parameter and tests the proxies before setting the gp_interconnect_type parameter for the WarehousePG cluster.

- Setting the Interconnect Proxy Addresses
- Testing the Interconnect Proxies
- Setting Interconnect Proxies for the System

#### Setting the Interconnect Proxy Addresses

Set the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter to specify the proxy ports for the coordinator and segment instances. The syntax for the value has the following format and you must specify the parameter value as a single-quoted string.

```
<db_id>:<cont_id>:<seg_address>:<port>[, ... ]
```

For the coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment instance, the first three fields, db_id, cont_id, and seg_address can be found in the gp_segment_configuration catalog table. The fourth field, port, is the proxy port for the WarehousePG coordinator or a segment instance.

- db_id is the `dbid` column in the catalog table.
- cont_id is the `content` column in the catalog table.
- seg_address is the IP address or hostname corresponding to the `address` column in the catalog table.
- port is the TCP/IP port for the segment instance proxy that you specify.

> **Important** If a segment instance hostname is bound to a different IP address at runtime, you must run `gpstop -u` to re-load the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` value.

This is an example PL/Python function that displays or sets the segment instance proxy port values for the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter. To create and run the function, you must enable PL/Python in the database with the `CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
--
-- A PL/Python function to setup the interconnect proxy addresses.
-- Requires the Python modules os and socket.
--
-- Usage:
--   select my_setup_ic_proxy(-1000, '');              -- display IC proxy values for segments
--   select my_setup_ic_proxy(-1000, 'update proxy');  -- update the gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses parameter
--
-- The first argument, "delta", is used to calculate the proxy port with this formula:
--
--   proxy_port = postmaster_port + delta
--
-- The second argument, "action", is used to update the gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses parameter.
-- The parameter is not updated unless "action" is 'update proxy'.
-- Note that running  "gpstop -u" is required for the update to take effect.
-- A WarehousePG cluster restart will also work.
--
create or replace function my_setup_ic_proxy(delta int, action text)
returns table(dbid smallint, content smallint, address text, port int) as $$
    import os
    import socket

    results = []
    value = ''

    segs = plpy.execute('''SELECT dbid, content, port, address
                             FROM gp_segment_configuration
                            ORDER BY 1''')
    for seg in segs:
        dbid = seg['dbid']
        content = seg['content']
        port = seg['port']
        address = seg['address']

        # decide the proxy port
        port = port + delta

        # append to the result list
        results.append((dbid, content, address, port))

        # build the value for the GUC
        if value:
            value += ','
        value += '{}:{}:{}:{}'.format(dbid, content, address, port)

    if action.lower() == 'update proxy':
        os.system('''gpconfig --skipvalidation -c gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses -v "'{}'"'''.format(value))
        plpy.notice('''the settings are applied, please reload with 'gpstop -u' to take effect.''')
    else:
        plpy.notice('''if the settings are correct, re-run with 'update proxy' to apply.''')
    return results
$$ language plpythonu execute on master;
```

> **Note** When you run the function, you should connect to the database using the WarehousePG interconnect type `UDPIFC` or `TCP`. This example uses `psql` to connect to the database `mytest` with the interconnect type `UDPIFC`.

```
PGOPTIONS="-c gp_interconnect_type=udpifc" psql -d mytest
```

Running this command lists the segment instance values for the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter.

```
select my_setup_ic_proxy(-1000, '');
```

This command runs the function to set the parameter.

```
select my_setup_ic_proxy(-1000, 'update proxy');
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

As an alternative, you can run the sgpconfig utility to set the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter. To set the value as a string, the value is a single-quoted string that is enclosed in double quotes. The example WarehousePG cluster consists of a coordinator and a single segment instance.

```
gpconfig --skipvalidation -c gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses -v "'1:-1:192.168.180.50:35432,2:0:192.168.180.54:35000'"
```

After setting the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter, reload the `postgresql.conf` file with the `gpstop -u` command. This command does not stop and restart the WarehousePG cluster.

#### Testing the Interconnect Proxies

To test the proxy ports configured for the system, you can set the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable when you start a `psql` session in a command shell. This command sets the environment variable to enable interconnect proxies, starts `psql`, and logs into the database `mytest`.

```
PGOPTIONS="-c gp_interconnect_type=proxy" psql -d mytest
```

You can run queries in the shell to test the system. For example, you can run a query that accesses all the primary segment instances. This query displays the segment IDs and number of rows on the segment instance from the table `sales`.

```
# SELECT gp_segment_id, COUNT(*) FROM sales GROUP BY gp_segment_id ;
```

#### Setting Interconnect Proxies for the System

After you have tested the interconnect proxies for the system, set the server configuration parameter for the system with the `gpconfig` utility.

```
gpconfig -c  gp_interconnect_type -v proxy
```

Reload the `postgresql.conf` file with the `gpstop -u` command. This command does not stop and restart the WarehousePG cluster.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7 Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

The fault tolerance and the high-availability features of WarehousePG can be configured.

> **Important** When data loss is not acceptable for a WarehousePG cluster, WarehousePG coordinator and segment mirroring is recommended. If mirroring is not enabled then WarehousePG stores only one copy of the data, so the underlying storage media provides the only guarantee for data availability and correctness in the event of a hardware failure.

For information about the utilities that are used to enable high availability, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

- Overview of WarehousePG High Availability
- Enabling Mirroring in WarehousePG
- How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment
- Understanding Segment Recovery
- Recovering from Segment Failures
- Recovering a Failed Coordinator

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.1 Overview of WarehousePG High Availability

A WarehousePG cluster can be made highly available by providing a fault-tolerant hardware platform, by enabling WarehousePG high-availability features, and by performing regular monitoring and maintenance procedures to ensure the health of all system components.

Hardware components will eventually fail, whether due to normal wear or an unexpected circumstance. Loss of power can lead to temporarily unavailable components. A system can be made highly available by providing redundant standbys for components that can fail so that services can continue uninterrupted when a failure does occur. In some cases, the cost of redundancy is higher than users' tolerance for interruption in service. When this is the case, the goal is to ensure that full service is able to be restored, and can be restored within an expected timeframe.

With WarehousePG, fault tolerance and data availability is achieved with:

- Hardware level RAID storage protection
- Data storage checksums
- WarehousePG segment mirroring
- Coordinator mirroring
- Dual clusters
- Database backup and restore

#### Hardware level RAID

A best practice WarehousePG deployment uses hardware level RAID to provide high performance redundancy for single disk failure without having to go into the database level fault tolerance. This provides a lower level of redundancy at the disk level.

#### Data storage checksums

WarehousePG uses checksums to verify that data loaded from disk to memory has not been corrupted on the file system.

WarehousePG has two kinds of storage for user data: heap and append-optimized. Both storage models use checksums to verify data read from the file system and, with the default settings, they handle checksum verification errors in a similar way.

WarehousePG coordinator and segment database processes update data on pages in the memory they manage. When a memory page is updated and flushed to disk, checksums are computed and saved with the page. When a page is later retrieved from disk, the checksums are verified and the page is only permitted to enter managed memory if the verification succeeds. A failed checksum verification is an indication of corruption in the file system and causes WarehousePG to generate an error, cancelling the transaction.

The default checksum settings provide the best level of protection from undetected disk corruption propagating into the database and to mirror segments.

Heap checksum support is enabled by default when the WarehousePG cluster is initialized with the `gpinitsystem` management utility. Although it is strongly discouraged, a cluster can be initialized without heap checksum support by setting the `HEAP_CHECKSUM` parameter to off in the `gpinitsystem` cluster configuration file. See gpinitsystem.

Once initialized, it is not possible to change heap checksum support for a cluster without reinitializing the system and reloading databases.

You can check the read-only server configuration parameter data_checksums to see if heap checksums are enabled in a cluster:

```
$ gpconfig -s data_checksums
```

When a WarehousePG cluster starts up, the `gpstart` utility checks that heap checksums are consistently enabled or deactivated on the coordinator and all segments. If there are any differences, the cluster fails to start. See gpstart.

In cases where it is necessary to ignore heap checksum verification errors so that data can be recovered, setting theignore_checksum_failure system configuration parameter to on causes WarehousePG to issue a warning when a heap checksum verification fails, but the page is then permitted to load into managed memory. If the page is updated and saved to disk, the corrupted data could be replicated to the mirror segment. Because this can lead to data loss, setting `ignore_checksum_failure` to on should only be done to enable data recovery.

For append-optimized storage, checksum support is one of several storage options set at the time an append-optimized table is created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. The default storage options are specified in the `gp_default_storage_options` server configuration parameter. The `checksum` storage option is activated by default and deactivating it is strongly discouraged.

If you choose to deactivate checksums for an append-optimized table, you can either

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- change the `gp_default_storage_options` configuration parameter to include `checksum=false` before creating the table, or
- add the `checksum=false` option to the `WITH storage\_options` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

Note that the `CREATE TABLE` statement allows you to set storage options, including checksums, for individual partition files.

See the CREATE TABLE command reference and the gp_default_storage_options configuration parameter reference for syntax and examples.

### Segment Mirroring

WarehousePG stores data in multiple segment instances, each of which is a WarehousePG PostgreSQL instance. The data for each table is spread between the segments based on the distribution policy that is defined for the table in the DDL at the time the table is created. When segment mirroring is enabled, for each segment instance there is a *primary* and *mirror* pair. The mirror segment is kept up to date with the primary segment using Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)-based streaming replication. SeeOverview of Segment Mirroring.

The mirror instance for each segment is usually initialized with the `gpinitsystem` utility or the `gpexpand` utility. As a best practice, the mirror runs on a different host than the primary instance to protect from a single machine failure. There are different strategies for assigning mirrors to hosts. When choosing the layout of the primaries and mirrors, it is important to consider the failure scenarios to ensure that processing skew is minimized in the case of a single machine failure.

### Coordinator Mirroring

There are two coordinator instances in a highly available cluster, a*primary* and a *standby*. As with segments, the coordinator and standby should be deployed on different hosts so that the cluster can tolerate a single host failure. Clients connect to the primary coordinator and queries can be run only on the primary coordinator. The standby coordinator is kept up to date with the primary coordinator using Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)-based streaming replication. See Overview of Coordinator Mirroring.

If the coordinator fails, the administrator runs the `gpactivatestandby` utility to have the standby coordinator take over as the new primary coordinator. You can configure a virtual IP address for the coordinator and standby so that client programs do not have to switch to a different network address when the current coordinator changes. If the coordinator host fails, the virtual IP address can be swapped to the actual acting coordinator.

### Dual Clusters

An additional level of redundancy can be provided by maintaining two WarehousePG clusters, both storing the same data.

Two methods for keeping data synchronized on dual clusters are "dual ETL" and "backup/restore."

Dual ETL provides a complete standby cluster with the same data as the primary cluster. ETL (extract, transform, and load) refers to the process of cleansing, transforming, validating, and loading incoming data into a data warehouse. With dual ETL, this process is run twice in parallel, once on each cluster, and is validated each time. It also allows data to be queried on both clusters, doubling the query throughput. Applications can take advantage of both clusters and also ensure that the ETL is successful and validated on both clusters.

To maintain a dual cluster with the backup/restore method, create backups of the primary cluster and restore them on the secondary cluster. This method takes longer to synchronize data on the secondary cluster than the dual ETL strategy, but requires less application logic to be developed. Populating a second cluster with backups is ideal in use cases where data modifications and ETL are performed daily or less frequently.

### Backup and Restore

Making regular backups of the databases is recommended except in cases where the database can be easily regenerated from the source data. Backups should be taken to protect from operational, software, and hardware errors.

Use the gpbackup utility to backup WarehousePGs. `gpbackup` performs the backup in parallel across segments, so backup performance scales up as hardware is added to the cluster.

When designing a backup strategy, a primary concern is where to store the backup data. The data each segment manages can be backed up on the segment's local storage, but should not be stored there permanently—the backup reduces disk space available to the segment and, more importantly, a hardware failure could simultaneously destroy the segment's live data and the backup. After performing a backup, the backup files should be moved from the primary cluster to separate, safe storage. Alternatively, the backup can be made directly to separate storage.

Using a WarehousePG storage plugin with the `gpbackup` and `gprestore` utilities, you can send a backup to, or retrieve a backup from a remote location or a storage appliance. WarehousePG storage plugins support connecting to locations including Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) locations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Using the Backup/Restore Storage Plugin API you can create a custom plugin that the `gpbackup` and `gprestore` utilities can use to integrate a custom backup storage system with the WarehousePG.

- Overview of Segment Mirroring
- Overview of Coordinator Mirroring

**Parent topic:** Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.2 Enabling Mirroring in WarehousePG

You can configure your WarehousePG cluster with mirroring at setup time using `gpinitsystem` or enable mirroring later using `gpaddmirrors` and `gpinitstandby`. This topic assumes you are adding mirrors to an existing system that was initialized without mirrors.

- Enabling Segment Mirroring
- Enabling Coordinator Mirroring

**Parent topic:** Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.2.7.2.1 Enabling Coordinator Mirroring

You can configure a new WarehousePG cluster with a standby coordinator using `gpinitsystem` or enable it later using `gpinitstandby`. This topic assumes you are adding a standby coordinator to an existing system that was initialized without one.

For information about the utilities gpinitsystem and gpinitstandby, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**To add a standby coordinator to an existing system**

1. Ensure the standby coordinator host is installed and configured: `gpadmin` system user created, WarehousePG binaries installed, environment variables set, SSH keys exchanged, and that the data directories and tablespace directories, if needed, are created.

2. Run the `gpinitstandby` utility on the currently active *primary* coordinator host to add a standby coordinator host to your WarehousePG cluster. For example:

   ```
   $ gpinitstandby -s smdw
   ```

   Where `-s` specifies the standby coordinator host name.

To switch operations to a standby coordinator, see Recovering a failed coordinator.

**To check the status of the coordinator mirroring process (optional)**

You can run the `gpstate` utility with the `-f` option to display details of the standby coordinator host.

```
$ gpstate -f
```

The standby coordinator status should be passive, and the WAL sender state should be streaming.

For information about the gpstate utility, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Enabling Mirroring in WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.2.2 Enabling Segment Mirroring

Mirror segments allow database queries to fail over to a backup segment if the primary segment is unavailable. By default, mirrors are configured on the same array of hosts as the primary segments. You may choose a completely different set of hosts for your mirror segments so they do not share machines with any of your primary segments.

> **Important** During the online data replication process, WarehousePG should be in a quiescent state, workloads and other queries should not be running.

#### To add segment mirrors to an existing system (same hosts as primaries)

1. Allocate the data storage area for mirror data on all segment hosts. The data storage area must be different from your primary segments' file system location.
2. Use gpssh-exkeys to ensure that the segment hosts can SSH and SCP to each other without a password prompt.
3. Run the gpaddmirrors utility to enable mirroring in your WarehousePG cluster. For example, to add 10000 to your primary segment port numbers to calculate the mirror segment port numbers:

   ```
   $ gpaddmirrors -p 10000
   ```

   Where `-p` specifies the number to add to your primary segment port numbers. Mirrors are added with the default group mirroring configuration.

#### To add segment mirrors to an existing system (different hosts from primaries)

1. Ensure the WarehousePG software is installed on all hosts. See the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for detailed installation instructions.
2. Allocate the data storage area for mirror data, and tablespaces if needed, on all segment hosts.
3. Use `gpssh-exkeys` to ensure the segment hosts can SSH and SCP to each other without a password prompt.
4. Create a configuration file that lists the host names, ports, and data directories on which to create mirrors. To create a sample configuration file to use as a starting point, run:

   ```
   $ gpaddmirrors -o <filename>
   ```

   The format of the mirror configuration file is:

   ```
   <row_id>=<contentID>|<address>|<port>|<data_dir>
   ```

   Where `row_id` is the row in the file, contentID is the segment instance content ID, address is the host name or IP address of the segment host, port is the communication port, and `data_dir` is the segment instance data directory.

   For example, this is contents of a mirror configuration file for two segment hosts and two segment instances per host:

   ```
   0=2|sdw1-1|41000|/data/mirror1/gp2
   1=3|sdw1-2|41001|/data/mirror2/gp3
   2=0|sdw2-1|41000|/data/mirror1/gp0
   3=1|sdw2-2|41001|/data/mirror2/gp1
   ```

5. Run the `gpaddmirrors` utility to enable mirroring in your WarehousePG cluster:

   ```
   $ gpaddmirrors -i <mirror_config_file>
   ```

   The `-i` option specifies the mirror configuration file you created.

**Parent topic:** Enabling Mirroring in WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.3 How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment

With segment mirroring enabled, WarehousePG automatically fails over to a mirror segment instance when a primary segment instance goes down. Provided one segment instance is online per portion of data, users may not realize a segment is down. If a transaction is in progress when a fault occurs, the in-progress transaction rolls back and restarts automatically on the reconfigured set of segments. The gpstate utility can be used to identify failed segments. The utility displays information from the catalog tables including gp_segment_configuration.

If the entire WarehousePG cluster becomes nonoperational due to a segment failure (for example, if mirroring is not enabled or not enough segments are online to access all user data), users will see errors when trying to connect to a database. The errors returned to the client program may indicate the failure. For example:

```
ERROR: All segment databases are unavailable
```

#### How a Segment Failure is Detected and Managed

On the WarehousePG coordinator host, the Postgres `postmaster` process forks a fault probe process, `ftsprobe`. This is also known as the FTS (Fault Tolerance Server) process. The `postmaster` process restarts the FTS if it fails.

The FTS runs in a loop with a sleep interval between each cycle. On each loop, the FTS probes each primary segment instance by making a TCP socket connection to the segment instance using the hostname and port registered in the `gp_segment_configuration` table. If the connection succeeds, the segment performs a few simple checks and reports back to the FTS. The checks include running a `stat` system call on critical segment directories and checking for internal faults in the segment instance. If no issues are detected, a positive reply is sent to the FTS and no action is taken for that segment instance.

If the connection cannot be made, or if a reply is not received in the timeout period, then a retry is attempted for the segment instance. If the configured maximum number of probe attempts fail, the FTS probes the segment's mirror to ensure that it is up, and then updates the `gp_segment_configuration` table, marking the primary segment "down" and setting the mirror to act as the primary. The FTS updates the gp_configuration_history table with the operations performed.

When there is only an active primary segment and the corresponding mirror is down, the primary goes into the *Not In Sync* state and continues logging database changes, so the mirror can be synchronized without performing a full copy of data from the primary to the mirror.

#### Configuring FTS Behavior

There is a set of server configuration parameters that affect FTS behavior:

- gp_fts_probe_interval

  How often, in seconds, to begin a new FTS loop. For example if the setting is 60 and the probe loop takes 10 seconds, the FTS process sleeps 50 seconds. If the setting is 60 and probe loop takes 75 seconds, the process sleeps 0 seconds. The default is 60, and the maximum is 3600.

- gp_fts_probe_timeout

  Probe timeout between coordinator and segment, in seconds. The default is 20, and the maximum is 3600.

- gp_fts_probe_retries

  The number of attempts to probe a segment. For example if the setting is 5 there will be 4 retries after the first attempt fails. Default: 5

- gp_log_fts

  Logging level for FTS. The value may be "off", "terse", "verbose", or "debug". The "verbose" setting can be used in production to provide useful data for troubleshooting. The "debug" setting should not be used in production. Default: "terse"

- gp_segment_connect_timeout

  The maximum time (in seconds) allowed for a mirror to respond. Default: 600 (10 minutes)

In addition to the fault checking performed by the FTS, a primary segment that is unable to send data to its mirror can change the status of the mirror to down. The primary queues up the data and after `gp_segment_connect_timeout` seconds pass, indicates a mirror failure, causing the mirror to be marked down and the primary to go into `Not In Sync` mode.

- Checking for Failed Segments

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parent topic: Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.7.4 Understanding Segment Recovery

This topic provides background information about concepts and principles of segment recovery. If you have down segments and need immediate help recovering them, see the instructions in Recovering from Segment Failures. For information on how WarehousePG detects that segments are down and an explanation of the Fault Tolerance Server (FTS) that manages down segment tracking, see How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment.

This topic is divided into the following sections:


- Segment Recovery Basics
- Segment Recovery: Flow of Events
- Simple Failover and Recovery Example
- The Three Types of Segment Recovery


**Parent topic:** Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

### Segment Recovery Basics

If the coordinator cannot connect to a segment instance, it marks that segment as down in the WarehousePG `gp_segment_configuration` table. The segment instance remains offline until an administrator takes steps to bring the segment back online. The process for recovering a down segment instance or host depends on the cause of the failure and on whether or not mirroring is enabled. A segment instance can be marked as down for a number of reasons:

- A segment host is unavailable; for example, due to network or hardware failures.
- A segment instance is not running; for example, there is no `postgres` database listener process.
- The data directory of the segment instance is corrupt or missing; for example, data is not accessible, the file system is corrupt, or there is a disk failure.

In order to bring the down segment instance back into operation again, you must correct the problem that made it fail in the first place, and then – if you have mirroring enabled – you can attempt to recover the segment instance from its mirror using the `gprecoverseg` utility. See The Three Types of Segment Recovery, below, for details on the three possible ways to recover a downed segment's data.

### Segment Recovery: Flow of Events

#### When a Primary Segment Goes Down

The following summarizes the flow of events that follow a **primary** segment going down:

1. A primary segment goes down.
2. The Fault Tolerance Server (FTS) detects this and marks the segment as down in the `gp_segment_configuration` table.
3. The mirror segment is promoted to primary and starts functioning as primary. The previous primary is demoted to mirror.
4. The user fixes the underlying problem.
5. The user runs `gprecoverseg` to bring back the (formerly primary) mirror segment.
6. The WAL synchronization process ensures that the mirror segment data is synchronized with the primary segment data. Users can check the state of this synching with `gpstate -e`.
7. WarehousePG marks the segments as up (`u`) in the `gp_segment_configuration` table.
8. If segments are not in their preferred roles, user runs `gprecoverseg -r` to restore them to their preferred roles.

#### When a Mirror Segment Goes Down

The following summarizes the flow of events that follow a **mirror** segment going down:

1. A mirror segment goes down.
2. The Fault Tolerance Server (FTS) detects this and marks the segment as down in the `gp_segment_configuration` table.
3. The user fixes the underlying problem.
4. The user runs `gprecoverseg` to bring back the (formerly mirror) mirror segment.
5. The synching process occurs: the mirror comes into sync with its primary via WAL synching. You can check the state of this synching with `gpstate -e`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Rebalancing After Recovery

After a segment instance has been recovered, the segments may not be in their preferred roles, which can cause processing to be skewed. The `gp_segment_configuration` table has the columns `role` (current role) and `preferred_role` (original role at the beginning). When a segment's `role` and `preferred_role` do not match the system may not be balanced. To rebalance the cluster and bring all the segments into their preferred roles, run the `gprecoverseg -r` command.

### Simple Failover and Recovery Example

Consider a single primary-mirror segment instance pair where the primary segment has failed over to the mirror. The following table shows the segment instance preferred role, role, mode, and status from the `gp_segment_configuration` table before beginning recovery of the failed primary segment.

You can also run `gpstate -e` to display any issues with a primary or mirror segment instances.

| Segment Type | `preferred_role` | `role` | `mode` | `status` |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Primary | `p` (primary) | `m` (mirror) | `n` (Not In Sync) | `d` (down) |
| Mirror | `m` (mirror) | `p` (primary) | `n` (Not In Sync) | `u` (up) |

The primary segment is down and segment instances are not in their preferred roles. The mirror segment is up and its role is now primary. However, it is not synchronized with its mirror (the former primary segment) because that segment is down. You must potentially fix either issues with the host the down segment is running on, issues with the segment instance itself, or both. You then use `gprecoverseg` to prepare failed segment instances for recovery and initiate synchronization between the primary and mirror instances.

After `gprecoverseg` has completed, the segments are in the states shown in the following table where the primary-mirror segment pair is up with the primary and mirror roles reversed from their preferred roles.

> **Note** There might be a lag between when `gprecoverseg` completes and when the segment status is set to `u` (up).

| Segment Type | `preferred_role` | `role` | `mode` | `status` |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Primary | `p` (primary) | `m` (mirror) | `s` (Synchronized) | `u` (up) |
| Mirror | `m` (mirror) `p` (primary) | `s` (Synchronized) | `u` (up) | |

The `gprecoverseg -r` command rebalances the system by returning the segment roles to their preferred roles.

| Segment Type | `preferred_role` | `role` | `mode` | `status` |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Primary | `p` (primary) | `p` (primary) | `s` (Synchronized) | `u` (up) |
| Mirror | `m` (mirror) | `m` (mirror) | `s` (Synchronized) | `u` (up) |

### The Three Types of Segment Recovery

WarehousePG can perform three types of segment recovery: full, differential, and incremental (the default).

- Full recovery

  Full recovery recovers all segments. Specifically, it erases all data files and directories on the current mirror segment and copies to the mirror segment the exact contents of the current primary segment. Full recovery uses the `pg_basebackup` utility to copy files.

  With full recovery, you may recover:

  - to the current host -- known as "in-place recovery"
  - to a different host within the current cluster
  - to a new host outside of the current cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Differential recovery

  Differential recovery performs a filesystem-level diff between the primary and mirror segments, and copies from the primary to the mirror only those files that have changed on the primary. With differential recovery, you may only do in-place recovery. Differential recovery uses the `rsync` command to copy files.

  > **Note** Differential recovery is not supported when using input configuration files ( `gprecoverseg -i` ).

- Incremental recovery (default)

  Incremental recovery brings the mirror segment contents into sync with the primary segment contents with the aid of write-ahead log files (WAL files). With incremental recovery, you may only do in-place recovery. Incremental recovery uses the `pg_rewind` utility to copy files.

  By default, `gprecoverseg` performs an incremental recovery, placing the mirror into *Synchronizing* mode, which starts to replay the recorded changes from the primary onto the mirror. If the incremental recovery cannot be completed, the recovery fails and you should run `gprecoverseg` again with the `-F` option, to perform full recovery. This causes the primary to copy all of its data to the mirror.

  > **Note** After a failed incremental recovery attempt you must perform a full recovery.

  Whenever possible, you should perform an incremental recovery rather than a full recovery, as incremental recovery is substantially faster. If you**do** need to perform an in-place full recovery, you can speed up in-place full recovery with `gprecoverseg` 's `--differential` option, which causes `gprecoverseg` to skip recovery of any files and directories that are unchanged.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.7.5 Recovering from Segment Failures

This topic walks you through what to do when one or more segments or hosts are down and you want to recover the down segments. The recovery path you follow depends primarily which of these 3 scenarios fits your circumstances:

- you want to recover in-place to the current host
- you want to recover to a different host, within the cluster
- you want to recover to a new host, outside of the cluster

The steps you follow within these scenarios can vary, depending on:

- whether you want to do an incremental or a full recovery
- whether you want to recover all segments or just a subset of segments

> **Note** Incremental recovery is only possible when recovering segments to the current host (in-place recovery).

This topic is divided into the following sections:


- Prerequisites
- Recovery Scenarios
- Post-Recovery Tasks


**Parent topic:** Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

### Prerequisites

- Mirroring is enabled for all segments.
- You've already identified which segments have failed. If necessary, see the topic Checking for Failed Segments.
- The coordinator host can connect to the segment host.
- All networking or hardware issues that caused the segment to fail have been resolved.

### Recovery Scenarios

This section documents the steps for the 3 distinct segment recovery scenarios. Follow the link to instructions that walk you through each scenario.


- Recover In-Place to Current Host
  - Incremental Recovery
  - Full Recovery
  - Differential Recovery
- Recover to A Different Host within the Cluster
- Recover to A New Host, Outside of the Cluster


#### Recover In-Place to Current Host

When recovering in-place to the current host, you may choose between incremental recovery (the default), full recovery, and differential recovery.

##### Incremental Recovery

Follow these steps for incremental recovery:

1. To recover all segments, run `gprecoverseg` with no options:

```
gprecoverseg
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. To recover a subset of segments:

    1. Manually create a `recover_config_file` file in a location of your choice, where each segment to recover has its own line with format `failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory` or `failedHostname|failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory`

       For multiple segments, create a new line for each segment you want to recover, specifying the hostname the address, port number and data directory for each down segment. For example:

       ```
       failedAddress1|failedPort1|failedDataDirectory1
       failedAddress2|failedPort2|failedDataDirectory2
       failedAddress3|failedPort3|failedDataDirectory3
       ```

       or

       ```
       failedHostname1|failedAddress1|failedPort1|failedDataDirectory1
       failedHostname2|failedAddress2|failedPort2|failedDataDirectory2
       failedHostname2|failedAddress3|failedPort3|failedDataDirectory3
       ```

    2. Alternatively, generate a sample recovery file using the following command; you may edit the resulting file if necessary:

       ```
       $ gprecoverseg -o /home/gpadmin/recover_config_file
       ```

    3. Pass the `recover_config_file` to the `gprecoverseg -i` command:

       ```
       $ gprecoverseg -i /home/gpadmin/recover_config_file
       ```

3. Perform the post-recovery tasks summarized in the section Post-Recovery Tasks.

#### Full Recovery

1. To recover all segments, run `gprecoverseg -F`:

   ```
   gprecoverseg -F
   ```

2. To recover specific segments:

    1. Manually create a `recover_config_file` file in a location of your choice, where each segment to recover has its own line with following format:

       ```
       failedAddress1|failedPort1|failedDataDirectory1<SPACE>failedAddress2|failedPort2|failedDataDirectory2
       ```

       or

       ```
       failedHostname1|failedAddress1|failedPort1|failedDataDirectory1<SPACE>failedHostname2|failedAddress2|failedPort2|
       iledDataDirectory2
       ```

       Note the literal **SPACE** separating the lines.

    2. Alternatively, generate a sample recovery file using the following command and edit the resulting file to match your desired recovery configuration:

       ```
       $ gprecoverseg -o /home/gpadmin/recover_config_file
       ```

    3. Run the following command, passing in the config file generated in the previous step:

       ```
       $ gprecoverseg -i recover_config_file
       ```

3. Perform the post-recovery tasks summarized in the section Post-Recovery Tasks.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Differential Recovery

Follow these steps for differential recovery:

1. Run `gprecoverseg --differential`

### Recover to A Different Host within the Cluster

> **Note** Only full recovery is possible when recovering to a different host in the cluster.

Follow these steps to recover all segments or just a subset of segments to a different host in the cluster:

1. Manually create a `recover_config_file` file in a location of your choice, where each segment to recover has its own line with following format:

   ```
   failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory<SPACE>newAddress|newPort|newDataDirectory
   ```

   or

   ```
   failedHostname|failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory<SPACE>newHostname|newAddress|newPort|newDataDirectory
   ```

   Note the literal **SPACE** separating the details of the down segment from the details of where the segment will be recovered to.

   Alternatively, generate a sample recovery file using the following command and edit the resulting file to match your desired recovery configuration:

   ```
   $ gprecoverseg -o -p /home/gpadmin/recover_config_file
   ```

2. Run the following command, passing in the config file generated in the previous step:

   ```
   $ gprecoverseg -i recover_config_file
   ```

3. Perform the post-recovery tasks summarized in the section Post-Recovery Tasks.

### Recover to A New Host, Outside of the Cluster

Follow these steps if you are planning to do a hardware refresh on the host the segments are running on.

> **Note** Only full recovery is possible when recovering to a new host.

#### Requirements for New Host

The new host must:

- have the same WarehousePG software installed and configured as the failed host
- have the same hardware and OS configuration as the failed host (same hostname, OS version, OS configuration parameters applied, locales, gpadmin user account, data directory locations created, ssh keys exchanged, number of network interfaces, network interface naming convention, and so on)
- have sufficient disk space to accommodate the segments
- be able to connect password-less with all other existing segments and WarehousePG coordinator.

#### Steps to Recover to a New Host

1. Bring up the new host

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Run the following command to recover all segments to the new host:

```
gprecoverseg -p <new_host_name>
```

You may also specify more than one host. However, be sure you do not trigger a double-fault scenario when recovering to two hosts at a time.

```
gprecoverseg -p <new_host_name1>,<new_host_name2>
```

> **Note** In the case of multiple failed segment hosts, you can specify the hosts to recover to with a comma-separated list. However, it is strongly recommended to recover to one host at a time. If you must recover to more than one host at a time, then it is critical to ensure that a double fault scenario does not occur, in which both the segment primary and corresponding mirror are offline.

3. Perform the post-recovery tasks summarized in the section Post-Recovery Tasks.

#### Post-Recovery Tasks

Follow these steps once `gprecoverseg` has completed:

1. Validate segement status and preferred roles:

```
select * from gp_segment_configuration
```

2. Monitor mirror synchronization progress:

```
gpstate -e
```

3. If necessary, run the following command to return segments to their preferred roles:

```
gprecoverseg -r
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.6 Recovering a Failed Coordinator

If the primary coordinator fails, the WarehousePG cluster is not accessible and WAL replication stops. Use gpactivatestandby to activate the standby coordinator. Upon activation of the standby coordinator, WarehousePG reconstructs the coordinator host state at the time of the last successfully committed transaction.

These steps assume a standby coordinator host is configured for the system. See Enabling coordinator mirroring.

#### To activate the standby coordinator

1. Run the `gpactivatestandby` utility from the standby coordinator host you are activating. For example:

   ```
   $ export PGPORT=5432
   $ gpactivatestandby -d /data/master/gpseg-1
   ```

   Where `-d` specifies the data directory of the coordinator host you are activating.

   After you activate the standby, it becomes the *active* or *primary* coordinator for your WarehousePG array.

2. After the utility completes, run `gpstate` with the `-b` option to display a summary of the system status:

   ```
   $ gpstate -b
   ```

   The coordinator instance status should be `Active`. When a standby coordinator is not configured, the command displays `No coordinator standby configured` for the standby coordinator status. If you configured a new standby coordinator, its status is `Passive`.

3. Optional: If you have not already done so while activating the prior standby coordinator, you can run `gpinitstandby` on the active coordinator host to configure a new standby coordinator.

   > **Important** You must initialize a new standby coordinator to continue providing coordinator mirroring.

   For information about restoring the original coordinator and standby coordinator configuration, see Restoring Coordinator Mirroring After a Recovery.

- Restoring Coordinator Mirroring After a Recovery

**Parent topic:** Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.7 Checking for Failed Segments

With mirroring enabled, you can have failed segment instances in the system without interruption of service or any indication that a failure has occurred. You can verify the status of your system using the `gpstate` utility, by examing the contents of the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table, or by checking log files.

#### Check for failed segments using gpstate

The `gpstate` utility provides the status of each individual component of a WarehousePG cluster, including primary segments, mirror segments, coordinator, and standby coordinator.

On the coordinator host, run the gpstate utility with the `-e` option to show segment instances with error conditions:

```
$ gpstate -e
```

If the utility lists `Segments with Primary and Mirror Roles Switched`, the segment is not in its *preferred role* (the role to which it was assigned at system initialization). This means the system is in a potentially unbalanced state, as some segment hosts may have more active segments than is optimal for top system performance.

Segments that display the `Config status` as `Down` indicate the corresponding mirror segment is down.

See Recovering from Segment Failures for instructions to fix this situation.

#### Check for failed segments using the gp_segment_configuration table

To get detailed information about failed segments, you can check the gp_segment_configuration catalog table. For example:

```
$ psql postgres -c "SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration WHERE status='d';"
```

For failed segment instances, note the host, port, preferred role, and data directory. This information will help determine the host and segment instances to troubleshoot. To display information about mirror segment instances, run:

```
$ gpstate -m
```

#### Check for failed segments by examining log files

Log files can provide information to help determine an error's cause. The coordinator and segment instances each have their own log file in `log` of the data directory. The coordinator log file contains the most information and you should always check it first.

Use the gplogfilter utility to check the WarehousePG log files for additional information. To check the segment log files, run `gplogfilter` on the segment hosts using gpssh.

#### To check the log files

1. Use `gplogfilter` to check the coordinator log file for `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `FATAL` or `PANIC` log level messages:

   ```
   $ gplogfilter -t
   ```

2. Use `gpssh` to check for `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `PANIC` log level messages on each segment instance. For example:

   ```
   $ gpssh -f seg_hosts_file -e 'source
   /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh ; gplogfilter -t
   /data1/primary/*/log/gpdb*.log' > seglog.out
   ```

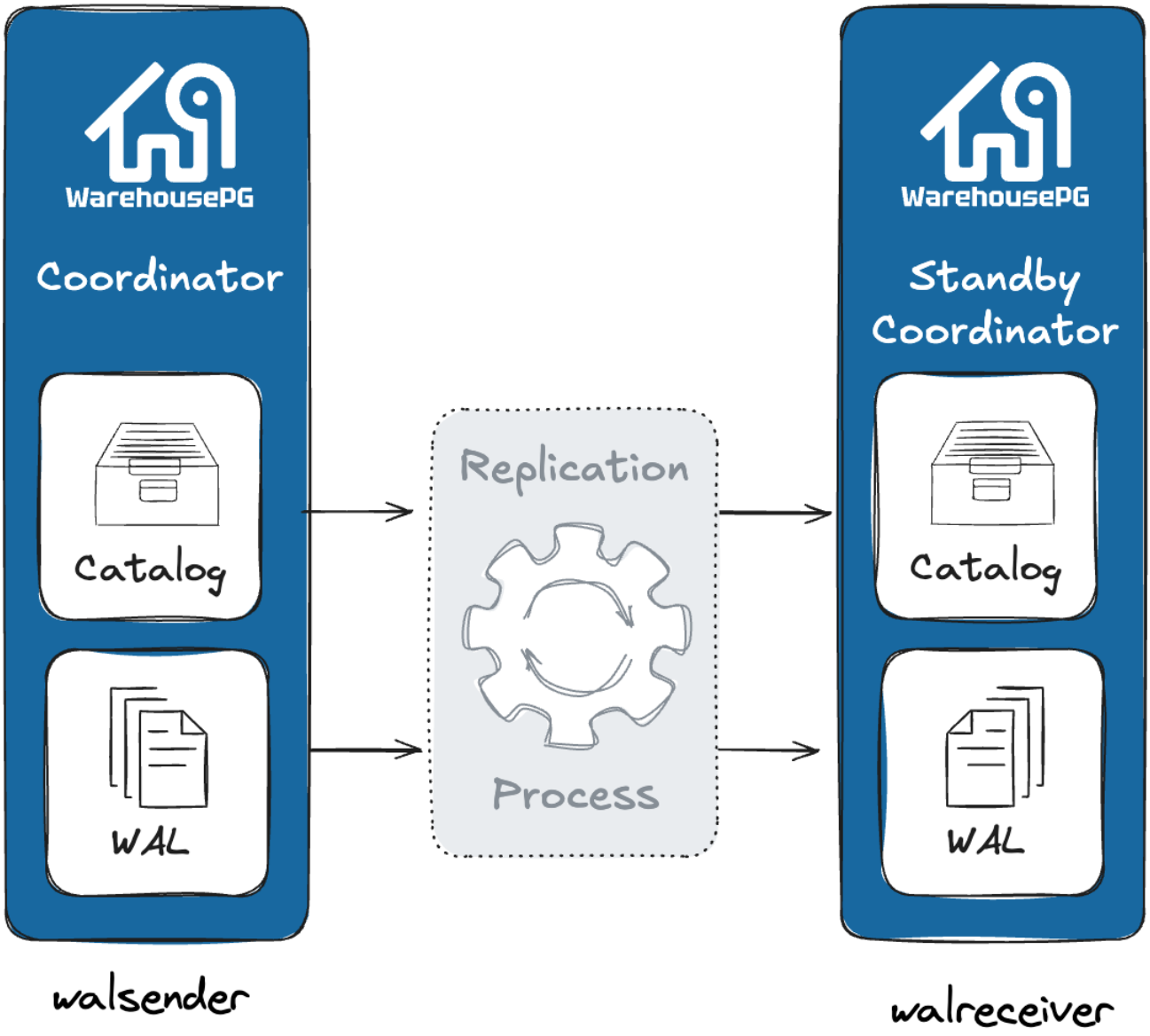
**Parent topic:** How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.8 Overview of Coordinator Mirroring

You can deploy a backup or mirror of the coordinator instance on a separate host machine. The backup coordinator instance, called the *standby coordinator*, serves as a warm standby if the primary coordinator becomes nonoperational. You create a standby coordinator from the primary coordinator while the primary is online.

When you enable coordinator mirroring for an existing system, the primary coordinator continues to provide service to users while a snapshot of the primary coordinator instance is taken. While the snapshot is taken and deployed on the standby coordinator, changes to the primary coordinator are also recorded. After the snapshot has been deployed on the standby coordinator, the standby coordinator is synchronized and kept current using Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)-based streaming replication. WarehousePG WAL replication uses the `walsender` and `walreceiver` replication processes. The `walsender` process is a primary coordinator process. The `walreceiver` is a standby coordinator process.




Since the coordinator does not house user data, only system catalog tables are synchronized between the primary and standby coordinators. When these tables are updated, the replication logs that capture the changes are streamed to the standby coordinator to keep it current with the primary. During WAL replication, all database modifications are written to replication logs before being applied, to ensure data integrity for any in-process operations.

This is how WarehousePG handles a coordinator failure.

- If the primary coordinator fails, the WarehousePG cluster shuts down and the coordinator replication process stops. The administrator runs the `gpactivatestandby` utility to have the standby coordinator take over as the new primary coordinator. Upon activation of the standby coordinator, the replicated logs reconstruct the state of the primary coordinator at the time of the last successfully committed transaction. The activated standby coordinator then functions as the WarehousePG coordinator, accepting connections on the port specified when standby coordinator was initialized. See Recovering a failed coordinator.
- If the standby coordinator fails or becomes inaccessible while the primary coordinator is active, the primary coordinator tracks database changes in logs that are applied to the standby coordinator when it is recovered.

These WarehousePG cluster catalog tables contain mirroring and replication information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- The catalog table gp_segment_configuration contains the current configuration and state of primary and mirror segment instances and the coordinator and standby coordinator instance.
- The catalog view gp_stat_replication contains replication statistics of the `walsender` processes that are used for WarehousePG coordinator and segment mirroring.

**Parent topic:** Overview of WarehousePG High Availability

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.7.9 Overview of Segment Mirroring

When WarehousePG High Availability is enabled, there are two types of segment instances: *primary* and *mirror*. Each primary segment has one corresponding mirror segment. A primary segment instance receives requests from the coordinator to make changes to the segment data and then replicates those changes to the corresponding mirror. If WarehousePG detects that a primary segment has failed or become unavailable, it changes the role of its mirror segment to primary segment and the role of the unavailable primary segment to mirror segment. Transactions in progress when the failure occurred roll back and must be restarted. The administrator must then recover the mirror segment, allow the mirror to synchronize with the current primary segment, and then exchange the primary and mirror segments so they are in their preferred roles.

If segment mirroring is not enabled, the WarehousePG cluster shuts down if a segment instance fails. Administrators must manually recover all failed segments before WarehousePG operations can resume.

When segment mirroring is enabled for an existing system, the primary segment instances continue to provide service to users while a snapshot of the primary segments are taken. While the snapshots are taken and deployed on the mirror segment instances, changes to the primary segment are also recorded. After the snapshot has been deployed on the mirror segment, the mirror segment is synchronized and kept current using Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)-based streaming replication. WarehousePG WAL replication uses the `walsender` and `walreceiver` replication processes. The `walsender` process is a primary segment process. The `walreceiver` is a mirror segment process.

When database changes occur, the logs that capture the changes are streamed to the mirror segment to keep it current with the corresponding primary segments. During WAL replication, database changes are written to the logs before being applied, to ensure data integrity for any in-process operations.

When WarehousePG detects a primary segment failure, the WAL replication process stops and the mirror segment automatically starts as the active primary segment. If a mirror segment fails or becomes inaccessible while the primary is active, the primary segment tracks database changes in logs that are applied to the mirror when it is recovered. For information about segment fault detection and the recovery process, see How WarehousePG Detects a Failed Segment and Recovering from Segment Failures.

These WarehousePG cluster catalog tables contain mirroring and replication information.

- The catalog table gp_segment_configuration contains the current configuration and state of primary and mirror segment instances and the coordinator and standby coordinator instance.
- The catalog view gp_stat_replication contains replication statistics of the `walsender` processes that are used for WarehousePG coordinator and segment mirroring.

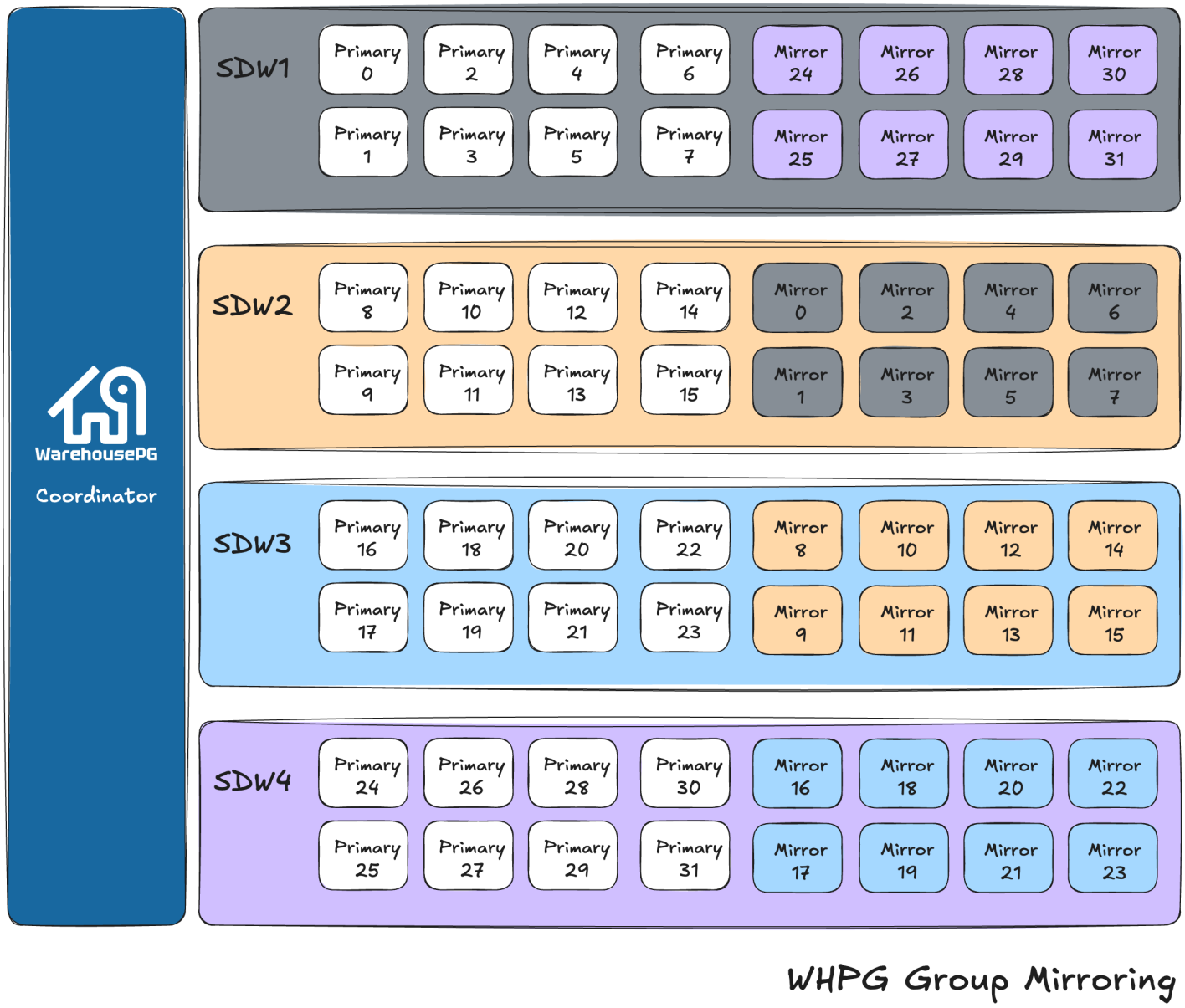
#### About Segment Mirroring Configurations

Mirror segment instances can be placed on hosts in the cluster in different configurations. As a best practice, a primary segment and the corresponding mirror are placed on different hosts. Each host must have the same number of primary and mirror segments. When you create segment mirrors with the WarehousePG utilities gpinitsystem or gpaddmirrors you can specify the segment mirror configuration, group mirroring (the default) or spread mirroring. With `gpaddmirrors`, you can create custom mirroring configurations with a `gpaddmirrors` configuration file and specify the file on the command line.

*Group mirroring* is the default mirroring configuration when you enable mirroring during system initialization. The mirror segments for each host's primary segments are placed on one other host. If a single host fails, the number of active primary segments doubles on the host that backs the failed host.

This diagram illustrates a group mirroring configuration:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

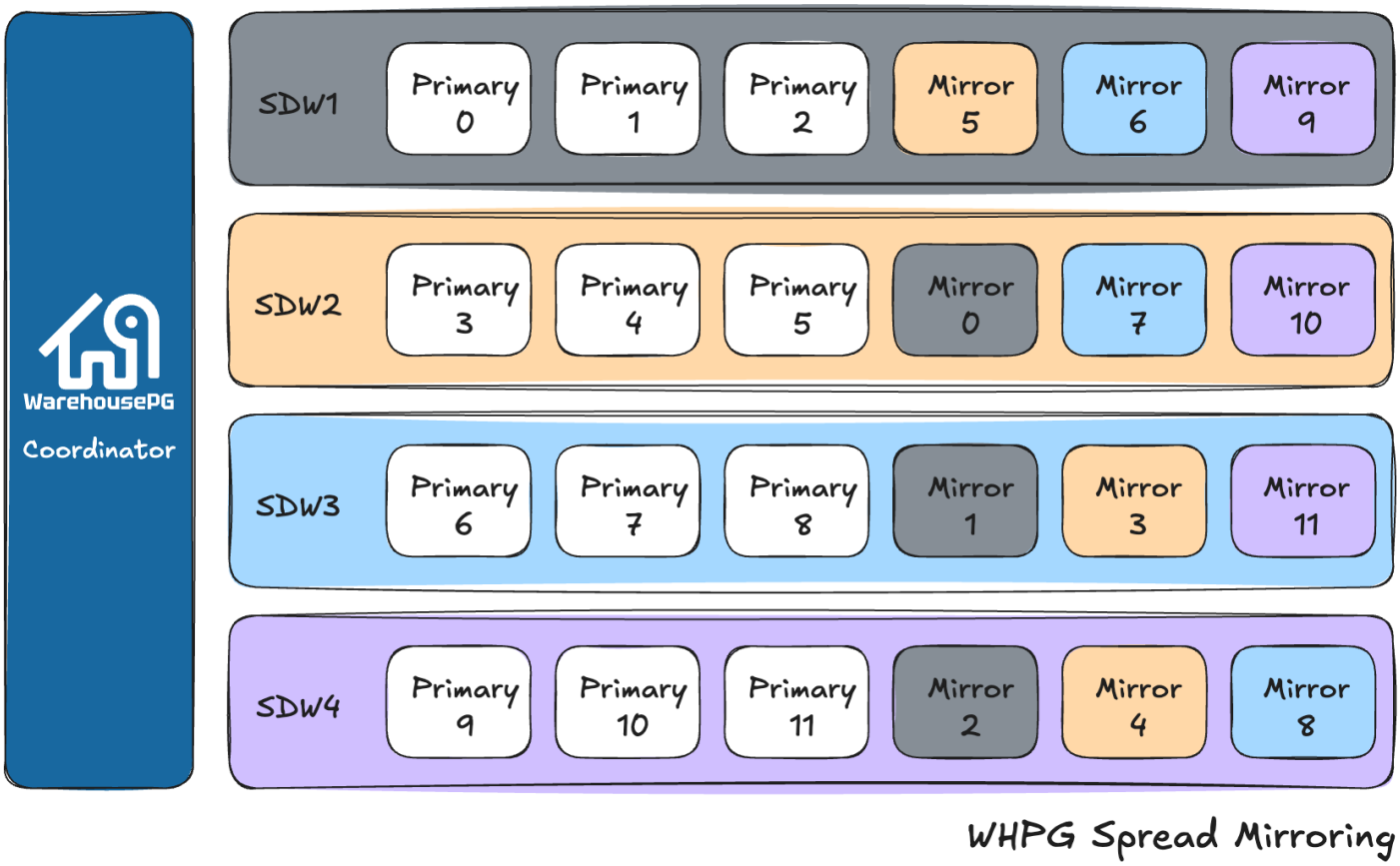



WHPG Group Mirroring

*Spread mirroring* can be specified during system initialization. This configuration spreads each host's mirrors over multiple hosts so that if any single host fails, no other host will have more than one mirror promoted to an active primary segment. Spread mirroring is possible only if there are more hosts than segments per host.

This diagram illustrates the placement of mirrors in a spread segment mirroring configuration:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




**Note** You must ensure you have the appropriate number of host systems for your mirroring configuration when you create a system or when you expand a system. For example, to create a system that is configured with spread mirroring requires more hosts than segment instances per host, and a system that is configured with group mirroring requires at least two new hosts when expanding the system. For information about segment mirroring configurations, see Segment Mirroring Configurations. For information about expanding systems with segment mirroring enabled, seePlanning Mirror Segments.

**Parent topic:** Overview of WarehousePG High Availability

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.7.10 Restoring coordinator Mirroring After a Recovery

After you activate a standby coordinator for recovery, the standby coordinator becomes the primary coordinator. You can continue running that instance as the primary coordinator if it has the same capabilities and dependability as the original coordinator host.

You must initialize a new standby coordinator to continue providing coordinator mirroring unless you have already done so while activating the prior standby coordinator. Run gpinitstandby on the active coordinator host to configure a new standby coordinator. See Enabling Coordinator Mirroring.

You can restore the primary and standby coordinator instances on the original hosts. This process swaps the roles of the primary and standby coordinator hosts, and it should be performed only if you strongly prefer to run the coordinator instances on the same hosts they occupied prior to the recovery scenario.

> **Important** Restoring the primary and standby coordinator instances to their original hosts is not an online operation. The coordinator host must be stopped to perform the operation.

For information about the WarehousePG utilities, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Recovering a failed coordinator

### To restore the coordinator mirroring after a recovery

1. Ensure the original coordinator host is in dependable running condition; ensure the cause of the original failure is fixed.
2. On the original coordinator host, move or remove the data directory, `gpseg-1`. This example moves the directory to `backup_gpseg-1`:

   ```
   $ mv /data/coordinator/gpseg-1 /data/coordinator/backup_gpseg-1
   ```

   You can remove the backup directory once the standby is successfully configured.
3. Initialize a standby coordinator on the original coordinator host. For example, run this command from the current coordinator host, smdw:

   ```
   $ gpinitstandby -s mdw
   ```
4. After the initialization completes, check the status of standby coordinator, mdw. Run gpstate with the `-f` option to check the standby coordinator status:

   ```
   $ gpstate -f
   ```

   The standby coordinator status should be `passive`, and the WAL sender state should be `streaming`.

### To restore the coordinator and standby instances on original hosts (optional)

> **Note** Before performing the steps in this section, be sure you have followed the steps to restore coordinator mirroring after a recovery, as described in theTo restore the coordinator mirroring after a recoveryprevious section.

1. Stop the WarehousePG coordinator instance on the standby coordinator. For example:

   ```
   $ gpstop -m
   ```
2. Run the `gpactivatestandby` utility from the original coordinator host, mdw, that is currently a standby coordinator. For example:

   ```
   $ gpactivatestandby -d $MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY
   ```

   Where the `-d` option specifies the data directory of the host you are activating.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. After the utility completes, run `gpstate` with the `-b` option to display a summary of the system status:

   ```
   $ gpstate -b
   ```

   The coordinator instance status should be `Active`. When a standby coordinator is not configured, the command displays `No coordinator standby configured` for the standby coordinator state.

4. On the standby coordinator host, move or remove the data directory, `gpseg-1`. This example moves the directory:

   ```
   $ mv /data/coordinator/gpseg-1 /data/coordinator/backup_gpseg-1
   ```

   You can remove the backup directory once the standby is successfully configured.

5. After the original coordinator host runs the primary WarehousePG coordinator, you can initialize a standby coordinator on the original standby coordinator host. For example:

   ```
   $ gpinitstandby -s smdw
   ```

   After the command completes, you can run the `gpstate -f` command on the primary coordinator host, to check the standby coordinator status.

### To check the status of the coordinator mirroring process (optional)

You can run the `gpstate` utility with the `-f` option to display details of the standby coordinator host.

```
$ gpstate -f
```

The standby coordinator status should be `passive`, and the WAL sender state should be `streaming`.

For information about the gpstate utility, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.8 Backing Up and Restoring Databases

Performing backups regularly ensures that you can restore your data or rebuild your WarehousePG cluster if data corruption or a system failure occurs. You can also use backups to migrate data from one WarehousePG cluster to another.

WarehousePG supports parallel and non-parallel methods for backing up and restoring databases. Parallel operations scale regardless of the number of segments in your system, because segment hosts each write their data to local disk storage simultaneously. With non-parallel backup and restore operations, the data must be sent over the network from the segments to the coordinator, which writes all of the data to its storage. In addition to restricting I/O to one host, non-parallel backup requires that the coordinator have sufficient local disk storage to store the entire database.

### Parallel Backup with gpbackup and gprestore

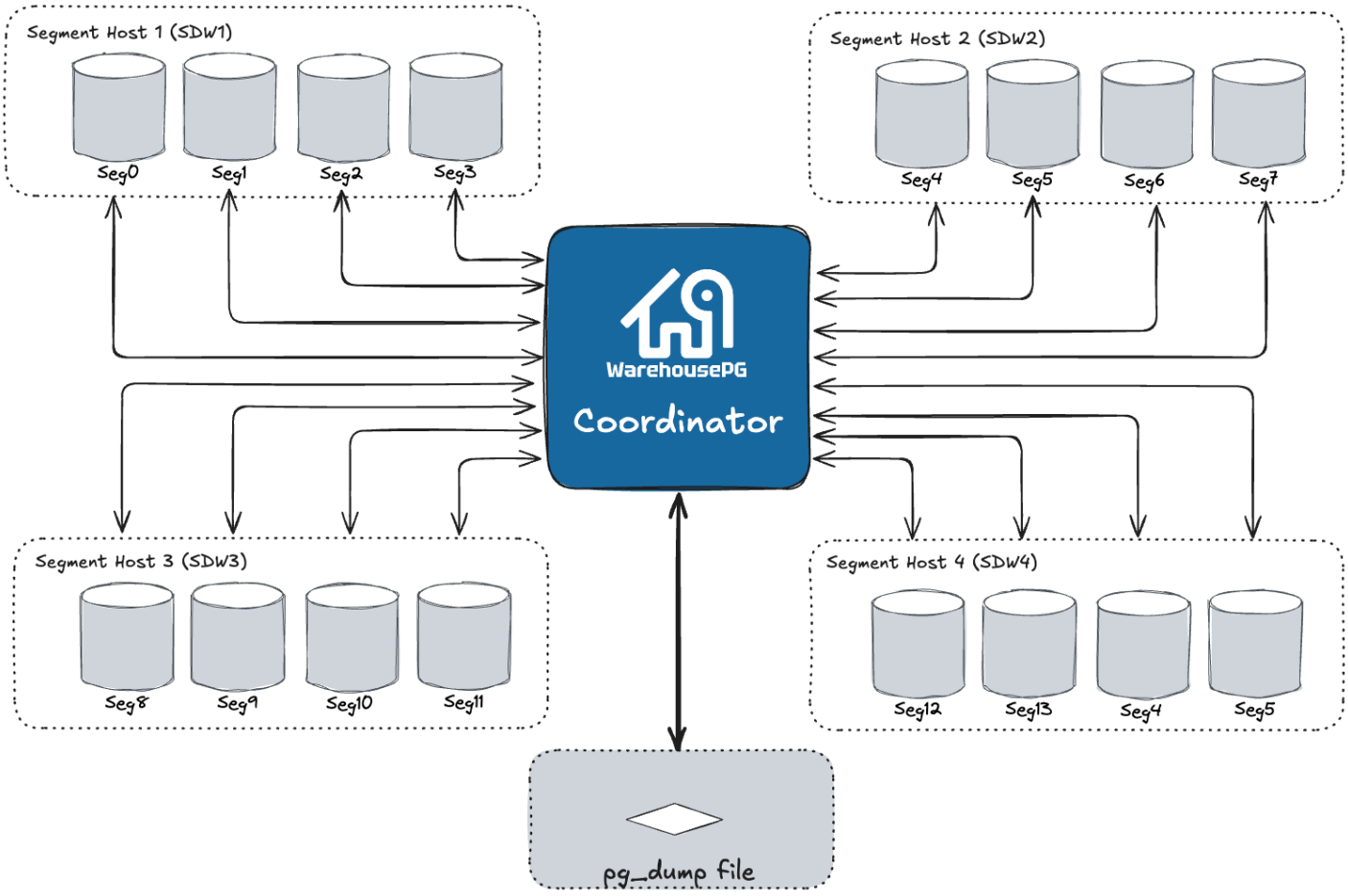
`gpbackup` and `gprestore` are the recommended WarehousePG backup and restore utilities, provided as a separate download. For documentation, seeWarehousePG Backup and Restore.

### Non-Parallel Backup with pg_dump

The PostgreSQL `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` non-parallel backup utilities can be used to create a single dump file on the coordinator host that contains all data from all active segments.

The PostgreSQL non-parallel utilities should be used only for special cases. They are much slower than using the WarehousePG backup utilities since all of the data must pass through the coordinator. Additionally, it is often the case that the coordinator host has insufficient disk space to save a backup of an entire distributed WarehousePG.

The `pg_restore` utility requires compressed dump files created by `pg_dump` or `pg_dumpall`. To perform a non-parallel restore using parallel backup files, you can copy the backup files from each segment host to the coordinator host, and then load them through the coordinator.




Another non-parallel method for backing up WarehousePG data is to use the `COPY TO` SQL command to copy all or a portion of a table out of the database to a delimited text file on the coordinator host.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parent topic: Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.9 Expanding a WarehousePG System

To scale up performance and storage capacity, expand your WarehousePG cluster by adding hosts to the system. In general, adding nodes to a WarehousePG cluster achieves a linear scaling of performance and storage capacity.

Data warehouses typically grow over time as additional data is gathered and the retention periods increase for existing data. At times, it is necessary to increase database capacity to consolidate different data warehouses into a single database. Additional computing capacity (CPU) may also be needed to accommodate newly added analytics projects. Although it is wise to provide capacity for growth when a system is initially specified, it is not generally possible to invest in resources long before they are required. Therefore, you should expect to run a database expansion project periodically.

Because of the WarehousePG MPP architecture, when you add resources to the system, the capacity and performance are the same as if the system had been originally implemented with the added resources. Unlike data warehouse systems that require substantial downtime in order to dump and restore the data, expanding a WarehousePG cluster is a phased process with minimal downtime. Regular and ad hoc workloads can continue while data is redistributed and transactional consistency is maintained. The administrator can schedule the distribution activity to fit into ongoing operations and can pause and resume as needed. Tables can be ranked so that datasets are redistributed in a prioritized sequence, either to ensure that critical workloads benefit from the expanded capacity sooner, or to free disk space needed to redistribute very large tables.

The expansion process uses standard WarehousePG operations so it is transparent and easy for administrators to troubleshoot. Segment mirroring and any replication mechanisms in place remain active, so fault-tolerance is uncompromised and disaster recovery measures remain effective.

- System Expansion Overview
  You can perform a WarehousePG expansion to add segment instances and segment hosts with minimal downtime. In general, adding nodes to a WarehousePG cluster achieves a linear scaling of performance and storage capacity.
- Planning WarehousePG cluster Expansion
  Careful planning will help to ensure a successful WarehousePG expansion project.
- Preparing and Adding Hosts
  Verify your new host systems are ready for integration into the existing WarehousePG cluster.
- Initializing New Segments
  Use the `gpexpand` utility to create and initialize the new segment instances and create the expansion schema.
- Redistributing Tables
  Redistribute tables to balance existing data over the newly expanded cluster.
- Post Expansion Tasks
  After the expansion is completed, you must perform different tasks depending on your environment.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.9.1 System Expansion Overview

You can perform a WarehousePG expansion to add segment instances and segment hosts with minimal downtime. In general, adding nodes to a WarehousePG cluster achieves a linear scaling of performance and storage capacity.

Data warehouses typically grow over time, often at a continuous pace, as additional data is gathered and the retention period increases for existing data. At times, it is necessary to increase database capacity to consolidate disparate data warehouses into a single database. The data warehouse may also require additional computing capacity (CPU) to accommodate added analytics projects. It is good to provide capacity for growth when a system is initially specified, but even if you anticipate high rates of growth, it is generally unwise to invest in capacity long before it is required. Database expansion, therefore, is a project that you should expect to have to run periodically.

When you expand your database, you should expect the following qualities:

- Scalable capacity and performance. When you add resources to a WarehousePG, the capacity and performance are the same as if the system had been originally implemented with the added resources.
- Uninterrupted service during expansion, once past the initialization phase. Regular workloads, both scheduled and ad-hoc, are not interrupted.
- Transactional consistency.
- Fault tolerance. During the expansion, standard fault-tolerance mechanisms—such as segment mirroring—remain active, consistent, and effective.
- Replication and disaster recovery. Any existing replication mechanisms continue to function during expansion. Restore mechanisms needed in case of a failure or catastrophic event remain effective.
- Transparency of process. The expansion process employs standard WarehousePG mechanisms, so administrators can diagnose and troubleshoot any problems.
- Configurable process. Expansion can be a long running process, but it can be fit into a schedule of ongoing operations. The expansion schema's tables allow administrators to prioritize the order in which tables are redistributed, and the expansion activity can be paused and resumed.

The planning and physical aspects of an expansion project are a greater share of the work than expanding the database itself. It will take a multi-discipline team to plan and run the project. For on-premise installations, space must be acquired and prepared for the new servers. The servers must be specified, acquired, installed, cabled, configured, and tested. For cloud deployments, similar plans should also be made. Planning New Hardware Platforms describes general considerations for deploying new hardware.

After you provision the new hardware platforms and set up their networks, configure the operating systems and run performance tests using WarehousePG utilities. The WarehousePG software distribution includes utilities that are helpful to test and burn-in the new servers before beginning the software phase of the expansion. See Preparing and Adding Hosts for steps to prepare the new hosts for WarehousePG.

Once the new servers are installed and tested, the software phase of the WarehousePG expansion process begins. The software phase is designed to be minimally disruptive, transactionally consistent, reliable, and flexible.

- The first step of the software phase of expansion process is preparing the WarehousePG cluster: adding new segment hosts and initializing new segment instances. This phase can be scheduled to occur during a period of low activity to avoid disrupting ongoing business operations. During the initialization process, the following tasks are performed:
    - WarehousePG software is installed.
    - Databases and database objects are created in the new segment instances on the new segment hosts.
    - The *gpexpand* schema is created in the postgres database. You can use the tables and view in the schema to monitor and control the expansion process. After the system has been updated, the new segment instances on the new segment hosts are available.
    - New segments are immediately available and participate in new queries and data loads. The existing data, however, is skewed. It is concentrated on the original segments and must be redistributed across the new total number of primary segments.
    - Because some of the table data is skewed, some queries might be less efficient because more data motion operations might be needed.
- The last step of the software phase is redistributing table data. Using the expansion control tables in the *gpexpand* schema as a guide, tables are redistributed. For each table:
    - The gpexand utility redistributes the table data, across all of the servers, old and new, according to the distribution policy.
    - The table's status is updated in the expansion control tables.
    - After data redistribution, the query optimizer creates more efficient execution plans when data is not skewed. When all tables have been redistributed, the expansion is complete.

> **Important** The `gprestore` utility cannot restore backups you made before the expansion with the `gpbackup` utility, so back up your databases immediately after the system expansion is complete.

Redistributing table data is a long-running process that creates a large volume of network and disk activity. It can take days to redistribute some very large databases. To minimize the effects of the increased activity on business operations, system administrators can pause and resume expansion activity on an ad hoc basis, or according to a predetermined schedule. Datasets can be prioritized so that critical applications benefit first from the expansion.

In a typical operation, you run the `gpexpand` utility four times with different options during the complete expansion process.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. To create an expansion input file:

   ```
   gpexpand -f <hosts_file>
   ```

2. To initialize segments and create the expansion schema:

   ```
   gpexpand -i <input_file>
   ```

   `gpexpand` creates a data directory, copies user tables from all existing databases on the new segments, and captures metadata for each table in an expansion schema for status tracking. After this process completes, the expansion operation is committed and irrevocable.

3. To redistribute table data:

   ```
   gpexpand -d <duration>
   ```

   During initialization, `gpexpand` adds and initializes new segment instances. To complete system expansion, you must run `gpexpand` to redistribute data tables across the newly added segment instances. Depending on the size and scale of your system, redistribution can be accomplished in a single session during low-use hours, or you can divide the process into batches over an extended period. Each table or partition is unavailable for read or write operations during redistribution. As each table is redistributed across the new segments, database performance should incrementally improve until it exceeds pre-expansion performance levels.

   You may need to run `gpexpand` several times to complete the expansion in large-scale systems that require multiple redistribution sessions. `gpexpand` can benefit from explicit table redistribution ranking; see Planning Table Redistribution.

   Users can access WarehousePG during initialization, but they may experience performance degradation on systems that rely heavily on hash distribution of tables. Normal operations such as ETL jobs, user queries, and reporting can continue, though users might experience slower response times.

4. To remove the expansion schema:

   ```
   gpexpand -c
   ```

For information about the gpexpand utility and the other utilities that are used for system expansion, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.9.2 Planning WarehousePG System Expansion

Careful planning will help to ensure a successful WarehousePG expansion project.

The topics in this section help to ensure that you are prepared to perform a system expansion.

- System Expansion Checklist is a checklist you can use to prepare for and perform the system expansion process.
- Planning New Hardware Platforms covers planning for acquiring and setting up the new hardware.
- Planning New Segment Initialization provides information about planning to initialize new segment hosts with `gpexpand`.
- Planning Table Redistribution provides information about planning the data redistribution after the new segment hosts have been initialized.

> **Important** When expanding a WarehousePG cluster, you must deactivate WarehousePG interconnect proxies before adding new hosts and segment instances to the system, and you must update the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter with the newly-added segment instances before you re-enable interconnect proxies. For example, these commands deactivate WarehousePG interconnect proxies by setting the interconnect to the default (`UDPIFC`) and reloading the `postgresql.conf` file to update the WarehousePG cluster configuration.

```
gpconfig -r gp_interconnect_type
gpstop -u
```

For information about WarehousePG interconnect proxies, see Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect.

**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

#### System Expansion Checklist

This checklist summarizes the tasks for a WarehousePG cluster expansion.

Table 1. WarehousePG cluster Expansion Checklist

| | |
|---|---|
| **Online Pre-Expansion Tasks** | |
| * System is up and available | |
| ☐ | Plan for ordering, building, and networking new hardware platforms, or provisioning cloud resources. |
| ☐ | Devise a database expansion plan. Map the number of segments per host, schedule the downtime period for testing performance and creating the expansion schema, and schedule the intervals for table redistribution. |
| ☐ | Perform a complete schema dump. |
| ☐ | Install WarehousePG binaries on new hosts. |
| ☐ | Copy SSH keys to the new hosts (`gpssh-exkeys`). |
| ☐ | Validate disk I/O and memory bandwidth of the new hardware or cloud resources (`gpcheckperf`). |
| ☐ | Validate that the coordinator data directory has no extremely large files in the `log` directory. |
| **Offline Pre-Expansion Tasks** | |
| * The system is unavailable to all user activity during this process. | |
| ☐ | Validate that there are no catalog issues (`gpcheckcat`). |
| ☐ | Validate disk I/O and memory bandwidth of the combined existing and new hardware or cloud resources (`gpcheckperf`). |
| **Online Segment Instance Initialization** | |
| * System is up and available | |
| ☐ | Prepare an expansion input file (`gpexpand`). |
| ☐ | Initialize new segments into the system and create an expansion schema (`gpexpand -i input_file`). |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Online Expansion and Table Redistribution**

* System is up and available

| | |
|---|---|
| ☐ | Before you start table redistribution, stop any automated snapshot processes or other processes that consume disk space. |
| ☐ | Redistribute tables through the expanded system ( `gpexpand` ). |
| ☐ | Remove expansion schema ( `gpexpand -c` ). |
| ☐ | **Important:** Run `analyze` to update distribution statistics.<br>During the expansion, use `gpexpand -a` , and post-expansion, use `analyze` . |

**Back Up Databases**

* System is up and available

| | |
|---|---|
| ☐ | Back up databases using the `gpbackup` utility. Backups you created before you began the system expansion cannot be restored to the newly expanded system because the `gprestore` utility can only restore backups to a WarehousePG cluster with the same number of segments. |

### Planning New Hardware Platforms

A deliberate, thorough approach to deploying compatible hardware greatly minimizes risk to the expansion process.

Hardware resources and configurations for new segment hosts should match those of the existing hosts.

The steps to plan and set up new hardware platforms vary for each deployment. Some considerations include how to:

- Prepare the physical space for the new hardware; consider cooling, power supply, and other physical factors.
- Determine the physical networking and cabling required to connect the new and existing hardware.
- Map the existing IP address spaces and developing a networking plan for the expanded system.
- Capture the system configuration (users, profiles, NICs, and so on) from existing hardware to use as a detailed list for ordering new hardware.
- Create a custom build plan for deploying hardware with the desired configuration in the particular site and environment.

After selecting and adding new hardware to your network environment, ensure you perform the tasks described inPreparing and Adding Hosts.

### Planning New Segment Initialization

Expanding WarehousePG can be performed when the system is up and available. Run `gpexpand` to initialize new segment instances into the system and create an expansion schema.

The time required depends on the number of schema objects in the WarehousePG cluster and other factors related to hardware performance. In most environments, the initialization of new segments requires less than thirty minutes offline.

These utilities cannot be run while `gpexpand` is performing segment initialization.

- `gpbackup`
- `gpcheckcat`
- `gpconfig`
- `gprestore`

> **Important** After you begin initializing new segments, you can no longer restore the system using backup files created for the pre-expansion system. When initialization successfully completes, the expansion is committed and cannot be rolled back.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Planning Mirror Segments

If your existing system has mirror segments, the new segments must have mirroring configured. If there are no mirrors configured for existing segments, you cannot add mirrors to new hosts with the `gpexpand` utility. For more information about segment mirroring configurations that are available during system initialization, see About Segment Mirroring Configurations.

For WarehousePG clusters with mirror segments, ensure you add enough new host machines to accommodate new mirror segments. The number of new hosts required depends on your mirroring strategy:

- **Group Mirroring** — Add at least two new hosts so the mirrors for the first host can reside on the second host, and the mirrors for the second host can reside on the first. This is the default type of mirroring if you enable segment mirroring during system initialization.
- **Spread Mirroring** — Add at least one more host to the system than the number of segments per host. The number of separate hosts must be greater than the number of segment instances per host to ensure even spreading. You can specify this type of mirroring during system initialization or when you enable segment mirroring for an existing system.
- **Block Mirroring** — Adding one or more blocks of host systems. For example add a block of four or eight hosts. Block mirroring is a custom mirroring configuration. For more information about block mirroring, see Segment Mirroring Configurations.

#### Increasing Segments Per Host

By default, new hosts are initialized with as many primary segments as existing hosts have. You can increase the segments per host or add new segments to existing hosts.

For example, if existing hosts currently have two segments per host, you can use `gpexpand` to initialize two additional segments on existing hosts for a total of four segments and initialize four new segments on new hosts.

The interactive process for creating an expansion input file prompts for this option; you can also specify new segment directories manually in the input configuration file. For more information, see Creating an Input File for System Expansion.

#### About the Expansion Schema

At initialization, the `gpexpand` utility creates an expansion schema named *gpexpand* in the postgres database.

The expansion schema stores metadata for each table in the system so its status can be tracked throughout the expansion process. The expansion schema consists of two tables and a view for tracking expansion operation progress:

- *gpexpand.status*
- *gpexpand.status_detail*
- *gpexpand.expansion_progress*

Control expansion process aspects by modifying *gpexpand.status_detail*. For example, removing a record from this table prevents the system from expanding the table across new segments. Control the order in which tables are processed for redistribution by updating the `rank` value for a record. For more information, see Ranking Tables for Redistribution.

### Planning Table Redistribution

Table redistribution is performed while the system is online. For many WarehousePG clusters, table redistribution completes in a single `gpexpand` session scheduled during a low-use period. Larger systems may require multiple sessions and setting the order of table redistribution to minimize performance impact. Complete the table redistribution in one session if possible.

> **Important** To perform table redistribution, your segment hosts must have enough disk space to temporarily hold a copy of your largest table. All tables are unavailable for read and write operations during redistribution.

The performance impact of table redistribution depends on the size, storage type, and partitioning design of a table. For any given table, redistributing it with `gpexpand` takes as much time as a `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT` operation would. When redistributing a terabyte-scale fact table, the expansion utility can use much of the available system resources, which could affect query performance or other database workloads.

#### Table Redistribution Method

WarehousePG uses a *rebuild* table distribution method to redistribute data during an expansion. WarehousePG:

1. Creates a new table.
2. Copies all of the data from the old table to the new table.
3. Replaces the old table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The rebuild method is similar to creating a new table with a `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT` command. During data redistribution, WarehousePG acquires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table.

#### Managing Redistribution in Large-Scale WarehousePG clusters

When planning the redistribution phase, consider the impact of the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock taken on each table. User activity on a table can delay its redistribution, but also tables are unavailable for user activity during redistribution.

You can manage the order in which tables are redistributed by adjusting their ranking. SeeRanking Tables for Redistribution. Manipulating the redistribution order can help adjust for limited disk space and restore optimal query performance for high-priority queries sooner.

##### Systems with Abundant Free Disk Space

In systems with abundant free disk space (required to store a copy of the largest table), you can focus on restoring optimum query performance as soon as possible by first redistributing important tables that queries use heavily. Assign high ranking to these tables, and schedule redistribution operations for times of low system usage. Run one redistribution process at a time until large or critical tables have been redistributed.

##### Systems with Limited Free Disk Space

If your existing hosts have limited disk space, you may prefer to first redistribute smaller tables (such as dimension tables) to clear space to store a copy of the largest table. Available disk space on the original segments increases as each table is redistributed across the expanded system. When enough free space exists on all segments to store a copy of the largest table, you can redistribute large or critical tables. Redistribution of large tables requires exclusive locks; schedule this procedure for off-peak hours.

Also consider the following:

- Run multiple parallel redistribution processes during off-peak hours to maximize available system resources.
- When running multiple processes, operate within the connection limits for your WarehousePG cluster. For information about limiting concurrent connections, see Limiting Concurrent Connections.

#### Redistributing Append-Optimized and Compressed Tables

`gpexpand` redistributes append-optimized and compressed append-optimized tables at different rates than heap tables. The CPU capacity required to compress and decompress data tends to increase the impact on system performance. For similar-sized tables with similar data, you may find overall performance differences like the following:

- Uncompressed append-optimized tables expand 10% faster than heap tables.
- Append-optimized tables that are defined to use data compression expand at a significantly slower rate than uncompressed append-optimized tables, potentially up to 80% slower.
- Systems with data compression such as ZFS/LZJB take longer to redistribute.

> **Important** If your system hosts use data compression, use identical compression settings on the new hosts to avoid disk space shortage.

#### Redistributing Partitioned Tables

Because the expansion utility can process each individual partition on a large table, an efficient partition design reduces the performance impact of table redistribution. Only the child tables of a partitioned table are set to a random distribution policy. The read/write lock for redistribution applies to only one child table at a time.

#### Redistributing Indexed Tables

Because the `gpexpand` utility must re-index each indexed table after redistribution, a high level of indexing has a large performance impact. Systems with intensive indexing have significantly slower rates of table redistribution.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.2.9.3 Preparing and Adding Hosts

Verify your new host systems are ready for integration into the existing WarehousePG cluster.

To prepare new host systems for expansion, install the WarehousePG software binaries, exchange the required SSH keys, and run performance tests.

Run performance tests first on the new hosts and then all hosts. Run the tests on all hosts with the system offline so user activity does not distort results.

Generally, you should run performance tests when an administrator modifies host networking or other special conditions in the system. For example, if you will run the expanded system on two network clusters, run tests on each cluster.

> **Note** Preparing host systems for use by a WarehousePG cluster assumes that the new hosts' operating system has been properly configured to match the existing hosts, described in Configure Operating System.

**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

#### Adding New Hosts to the Trusted Host Environment

New hosts must exchange SSH keys with the existing hosts to enable WarehousePG administrative utilities to connect to all segments without a password prompt. Perform the key exchange process twice with the gpssh-exkeys utility.

First perform the process as `root`, for administration convenience, and then as the user `gpadmin`, for management utilities. Perform the following tasks in order:

1. To exchange SSH keys as root
2. To create the gpadmin user
3. To exchange SSH keys as the gpadmin user

> **Note** The WarehousePG segment host naming convention is `sdwN` where `sdw` is a prefix and `N` is an integer ( `sdw1`, `sdw2` and so on). For hosts with multiple interfaces, the convention is to append a dash ( `-` ) and number to the host name. For example, `sdw1-1` and `sdw1-2` are the two interface names for host `sdw1`.

##### To exchange SSH keys as root

1. Create a host file with the existing host names in your array and a separate host file with the new expansion host names. For existing hosts, you can use the same host file used to set up SSH keys in the system. In the files, list all hosts (coordinator, backup coordinator, and segment hosts) with one name per line and no extra lines or spaces. Exchange SSH keys using the configured host names for a given host if you use a multi-NIC configuration. In this example, `mdw` is configured with a single NIC, and `sdw1`, `sdw2`, and `sdw3` are configured with 4 NICs:

   ```
   mdw
   sdw1-1
   sdw1-2
   sdw1-3
   sdw1-4
   sdw2-1
   sdw2-2
   sdw2-3
   sdw2-4
   sdw3-1
   sdw3-2
   sdw3-3
   sdw3-4
   ```

2. Log in as `root` on the coordinator host, and source the `greenplum_path.sh` file from your WarehousePG installation.

   ```
   $ su -
   # source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

3. Run the `gpssh-exkeys` utility referencing the host list files. For example:

   ```
   # gpssh-exkeys -e /home/gpadmin/<existing_hosts_file> -x
   /home/gpadmin/<new_hosts_file>
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. `gpssh-exkeys` checks the remote hosts and performs the key exchange between all hosts. Enter the `root` user password when prompted. For example:

```
***Enter password for root@<hostname>: <root_password>
```

**To create the gpadmin user**

1. Use gpssh to create the `gpadmin` user on all the new segment hosts (if it does not exist already). Use the list of new hosts you created for the key exchange. For example:

```
# gpssh -f <new_hosts_file> '/usr/sbin/useradd gpadmin -d
/home/gpadmin -s /bin/bash'
```

2. Set a password for the new `gpadmin` user. On Linux, you can do this on all segment hosts simultaneously using `gpssh`. For example:

```
# gpssh -f <new_hosts_file> 'echo <gpadmin_password> | passwd
gpadmin --stdin'
```

3. Verify the `gpadmin` user has been created by looking for its home directory:

```
# gpssh -f <new_hosts_file> ls -l /home
```

**To exchange SSH keys as the gpadmin user**

1. Log in as `gpadmin` and run the `gpssh-exkeys` utility referencing the host list files. For example:

```
# gpssh-exkeys -e /home/gpadmin/<existing_hosts_file> -x
/home/gpadmin/<new_hosts_file>
```

2. `gpssh-exkeys` will check the remote hosts and perform the key exchange between all hosts. Enter the `gpadmin` user password when prompted. For example:

```
***Enter password for gpadmin@<hostname>: <gpadmin_password>
```

### Validating Disk I/O and Memory Bandwidth

Use the gpcheckperf utility to test disk I/O and memory bandwidth.

**To run gpcheckperf**

1. Run the `gpcheckperf` utility using the host file for new hosts. Use the `-d` option to specify the file systems you want to test on each host. You must have write access to these directories. For example:

```
$ gpcheckperf -f <new_hosts_file> -d /data1 -d /data2 -v
```

2. The utility may take a long time to perform the tests because it is copying very large files between the hosts. When it is finished, you will see the summary results for the Disk Write, Disk Read, and Stream tests.

For a network divided into subnets, repeat this procedure with a separate host file for each subnet.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Integrating New Hardware into the System

Before initializing the system with the new segments, shut down the system with `gpstop` to prevent user activity from skewing performance test results. Then, repeat the performance tests using host files that include *all* hosts, existing and new.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.9.4 Initializing New Segments

Use the `gpexpand` utility to create and initialize the new segment instances and create the expansion schema.

The first time you run gpexpand with a valid input file it creates and initializes segment instances and creates the expansion schema. After these steps are completed, running `gpexpand` detects if the expansion schema has been created and, if so, performs table redistribution.

> **Note** To prevent catalog inconsistency across existing and new segments, be sure that no DDL operations are running during the initialization phase.

- Creating an Input File for System Expansion
- Running gpexpand to Initialize New Segments
- Rolling Back a Failed Expansion Setup

**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

### Creating an Input File for System Expansion

To begin expansion, `gpexpand` requires an input file containing information about the new segments and hosts. If you run `gpexpand` without specifying an input file, the utility displays an interactive interview that collects the required information and automatically creates an input file.

If you create the input file using the interactive interview, you may specify a file with a list of expansion hosts in the interview prompt. If your platform or command shell limits the length of the host list, specifying the hosts with `-f` may be mandatory.

#### Creating an input file in Interactive Mode

Before you run `gpexpand` to create an input file in interactive mode, ensure you know:

- The number of new hosts (or a hosts file)
- The new hostnames (or a hosts file)
- The mirroring strategy used in existing hosts, if any
- The number of segments to add per host, if any

The utility automatically generates an input file based on this information, `dbid`, `content` ID, and data directory values stored in *gp_segment_configuration*, and saves the file in the current directory.

##### To create an input file in interactive mode

1. Log in on the coordinator host as the user who will run your WarehousePG cluster; for example, `gpadmin`.
2. Run `gpexpand`. The utility displays messages about how to prepare for an expansion operation, and it prompts you to quit or continue.

   Optionally, specify a hosts file using `-f`. For example:

   ```
   $ gpexpand -f /home/gpadmin/<new_hosts_file>
   ```

3. At the prompt, select `Y` to continue.
4. Unless you specified a hosts file using `-f`, you are prompted to enter hostnames. Enter a comma separated list of the hostnames of the new expansion hosts. Do not include interface hostnames. For example:

   ```
   > sdw4, sdw5, sdw6, sdw7
   ```

   To add segments to existing hosts only, enter a blank line at this prompt. Do not specify `localhost` or any existing host name.
5. Enter the mirroring strategy used in your system, if any. Options are `spread|grouped|none`. The default setting is `grouped`.

   Ensure you have enough hosts for the selected grouping strategy. For more information about mirroring, see Planning Mirror Segments.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

6. Enter the number of new primary segments to add, if any. By default, new hosts are initialized with the same number of primary segments as existing hosts. Increase segments per host by entering a number greater than zero. The number you enter will be the number of additional segments initialized on all hosts. For example, if existing hosts currently have two segments each, entering a value of `2` initializes two more segments on existing hosts, and four segments on new hosts.

7. If you are adding new primary segments, enter the new primary data directory root for the new segments. Do not specify the actual data directory name, which is created automatically by `gpexpand` based on the existing data directory names.

   For example, if your existing data directories are as follows:

   ```
   /gpdata/primary/gp0
   /gpdata/primary/gp1
   ```

   then enter the following (one at each prompt) to specify the data directories for two new primary segments:

   ```
   /gpdata/primary
   /gpdata/primary
   ```

   When the initialization runs, the utility creates the new directories `gp2` and `gp3` under `/gpdata/primary`.

8. If you are adding new mirror segments, enter the new mirror data directory root for the new segments. Do not specify the data directory name; it is created automatically by `gpexpand` based on the existing data directory names.

   For example, if your existing data directories are as follows:

   ```
   /gpdata/mirror/gp0
   /gpdata/mirror/gp1
   ```

   enter the following (one at each prompt) to specify the data directories for two new mirror segments:

   ```
   /gpdata/mirror
   /gpdata/mirror
   ```

   When the initialization runs, the utility will create the new directories `gp2` and `gp3` under `/gpdata/mirror`.

   These primary and mirror root directories for new segments must exist on the hosts, and the user running `gpexpand` must have permissions to create directories in them.

   After you have entered all required information, the utility generates an input file and saves it in the current directory. For example:

   ```
   gpexpand_inputfile_yyyymmdd_145134
   ```

   If the WarehousePG cluster is configured with tablespaces, the utility automatically generates an additional tablespace mapping file. This file is required for later parsing by the utility so make sure it is present before proceeding with the next step. For example:

   ```
   gpexpand_inputfile_yyyymmdd_145134.ts
   ```

**Expansion Input File Format**

Use the interactive interview process to create your own input file unless your expansion scenario has atypical needs.

The format for expansion input files is:

```
hostname|address|port|datadir|dbid|content|preferred_role
```

For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
sdw5|sdw5-1|50011|/gpdata/primary/gp9|11|9|p
sdw5|sdw5-2|50012|/gpdata/primary/gp10|12|10|p
sdw5|sdw5-2|60011|/gpdata/mirror/gp9|13|9|m
sdw5|sdw5-1|60012|/gpdata/mirror/gp10|14|10|m
```

For each new segment, this format of expansion input file requires the following:

| Parameter | Valid Values | Description |
|---|---|---|
| hostname | Hostname | Hostname for the segment host. |
| port | An available port number | Database listener port for the segment, incremented on the existing segment *port* base number. |
| datadir | Directory name | The data directory location for a segment as per the gp_segment_configuration system catalog. |
| dbid | Integer. Must not conflict with existing *dbid* values. | Database ID for the segment. The values you enter should be incremented sequentially from existing *dbid* values shown in the system catalog `gp_segment_configuration`. For example, to add four segment instances to an existing ten-segment array with *dbid* values of 1-10, list new *dbid* values of 11, 12, 13 and 14. |
| content | Integer. Must not conflict with existing *content* values. | The content ID of the segment. A primary segment and its mirror should have the same content ID, incremented sequentially from existing values. For more information, see *content* in the reference for `gp_segment_configuration`. |
| preferred_role | `p` or `m` | Determines whether this segment is a primary or mirror. Specify `p` for primary and `m` for mirror. |

### Running gpexpand to Initialize New Segments

After you have created an input file, run `gpexpand` to initialize new segment instances.

#### To run gpexpand with an input file

1. Log in on the coordinator host as the user who will run your WarehousePG cluster; for example, `gpadmin`.
2. Run the `gpexpand` utility, specifying the input file with `-i`. For example:

   ```
   $ gpexpand -i input_file
   ```

   The utility detects if an expansion schema exists for the WarehousePG cluster. If a *gpexpand* schema exists, remove it with `gpexpand -c` before you start a new expansion operation. See Removing the Expansion Schema.

   When the new segments are initialized and the expansion schema is created, the utility prints a success message and exits.

When the initialization process completes, you can connect to WarehousePG and view the expansion schema. The *gpexpand* schema resides in the postgres database. For more information, see About the Expansion Schema.

After segment initialization is complete, redistribute the tables to balance existing data over the new segments.

### Monitoring the Cluster Expansion State

At any time, you can check the state of cluster expansion by running the `gpstate` utility with the `-x` flag:

```
$ gpstate -x
```

If the expansion schema exists in the postgres database, `gpstate -x` reports on the progress of the expansion. During the first expansion phase, `gpstate` reports on the progress of new segment initialization. During the second phase, `gpstate` reports on the progress of table redistribution, and whether redistribution is paused or active.

You can also query the expansion schema to see expansion status. See Monitoring Table Redistribution for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Rolling Back a Failed Expansion Setup

You can roll back an expansion setup operation (adding segment instances and segment hosts) only if the operation fails.

If the expansion fails during the initialization step, while the database is down, you must first restart the database in coordinator-only mode by running the `gpstart -m` command.

Roll back the failed expansion with the following command:

```
gpexpand --rollback
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.9.5 Redistributing Tables

Redistribute tables to balance existing data over the newly expanded cluster.

After creating an expansion schema, you can redistribute tables across the entire system with gpexpand. Plan to run this during low-use hours when the utility's CPU usage and table locks have minimal impact on operations. Rank tables to redistribute the largest or most critical tables first.

> **Note** When redistributing data, WarehousePG must be running in production mode. WarehousePG cannot be in restricted mode or in coordinator mode. Thegpstart options `-R` or `-m` cannot be specified to start WarehousePG.

While table redistribution is underway, any new tables or partitions created are distributed across all segments exactly as they would be under normal operating conditions. Queries can access all segments, even before the relevant data is redistributed to tables on the new segments. The table or partition being redistributed is locked and unavailable for read or write operations. When its redistribution completes, normal operations resume.

- Ranking Tables for Redistribution
- Redistributing Tables Using gpexpand
- Monitoring Table Redistribution

**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

### Ranking Tables for Redistribution

For large systems, you can control the table redistribution order. Adjust tables' `rank` values in the expansion schema to prioritize heavily-used tables and minimize performance impact. Available free disk space can affect table ranking; see Managing Redistribution in Large-Scale WarehousePG clusters.

To rank tables for redistribution by updating `rank` values in *gpexpand.status_detail*, connect to WarehousePG using `psql` or another supported client. Update *gpexpand.status_detail* with commands such as:

```
=> UPDATE gpexpand.status_detail SET rank=10;

=> UPDATE gpexpand.status_detail SET rank=1 WHERE fq_name = 'public.lineitem';
=> UPDATE gpexpand.status_detail SET rank=2 WHERE fq_name = 'public.orders';
```

These commands lower the priority of all tables to `10` and then assign a rank of `1` to `lineitem` and a rank of `2` to `orders`. When table redistribution begins, `lineitem` is redistributed first, followed by `orders` and all other tables in *gpexpand.status_detail*. To exclude a table from redistribution, remove the table from the *gpexpand.status_detail* table.

### Redistributing Tables Using gpexpand

#### To redistribute tables with gpexpand

1. Log in on the coordinator host as the user who will run your WarehousePG cluster, for example, `gpadmin`.
2. Run the `gpexpand` utility. You can use the `-d` or `-e` option to define the expansion session time period. For example, to run the utility for up to 60 consecutive hours:

   ```
   $ gpexpand -d 60:00:00
   ```

   The utility redistributes tables until the last table in the schema completes or it reaches the specified duration or end time. `gpexpand` updates the status and time in *gpexpand.status* when a session starts and finishes.

> **Note** After completing table redistribution, run the `VACUUM ANALYZE` and `REINDEX` commands on the catalog tables to update table statistics, and rebuild indexes. See Routine Vacuum and Analyze in the *Administration Guide* and `VACUUM` in the *Reference Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Monitoring Table Redistribution

During the table redistribution process you can query the expansion schema to view:

- a current progress summary, the estimated rate of table redistribution, and the estimated time to completion. Use *gpexpand.expansion_progress*, as described in Viewing Expansion Status.
- per-table status information, using *gpexpand.status_detail*. See Viewing Table Status.

See also Monitoring the Cluster Expansion State for information about monitoring the overall expansion progress with the `gpstate` utility.

#### Viewing Expansion Status

After the first table completes redistribution, *gpexpand.expansion_progress* calculates its estimates and refreshes them based on all tables' redistribution rates. Calculations restart each time you start a table redistribution session with `gpexpand`. To monitor progress, connect to WarehousePG using `psql` or another supported client; query *gpexpand.expansion_progress* with a command like the following:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gpexpand.expansion_progress;
             name             |         value
------------------------------+-----------------------
 Bytes Left                   | 5534842880
 Bytes Done                   | 142475264
 Estimated Expansion Rate     | 680.75667095996092 MB/s
 Estimated Time to Completion | 00:01:01.008047
 Tables Expanded              | 4
 Tables Left                  | 4
(6 rows)
```

#### Viewing Table Status

The table *gpexpand.status_detail* stores status, time of last update, and more facts about each table in the schema. To see a table's status, connect to WarehousePG using `psql` or another supported client and query *gpexpand.status_detail*:

```
=> SELECT status, expansion_started, source_bytes FROM
gpexpand.status_detail WHERE fq_name = 'public.sales';
  status   |     expansion_started      | source_bytes
-----------+----------------------------+--------------
 COMPLETED | 2017-02-20 10:54:10.043869 |   4929748992
(1 row)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.9.6 Post Expansion Tasks

After the expansion is completed, you must perform different tasks depending on your environment.


- Removing the Expansion Schema
- Setting Up PXF on the New Host


**Parent topic:** Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

### Removing the Expansion Schema

You must remove the existing expansion schema before you can perform another expansion operation on the WarehousePG cluster.

You can safely remove the expansion schema after the expansion operation is complete and verified. To run another expansion operation on a WarehousePG cluster, first remove the existing expansion schema.

1. Log in on the coordinator host as the user who will be running your WarehousePG cluster (for example, `gpadmin`).
2. Run the `gpexpand` utility with the `-c` option. For example:

   ```
   $ gpexpand -c
   ```

   > **Note** Some systems require you to press Enter twice.

### Setting Up PXF on the New Host

If you are using PXF in your WarehousePG cluster, you must perform some configuration steps on the new hosts.

There are different steps to follow depending on your PXF version and the type of installation.

#### PXF 5

- You must install the same version of the PXF `rpm` or `deb` on the new hosts.
- Log into the WarehousePG coordinator and run the following commands:

  ```
  gpadmin@gpmaster$ pxf cluster reset
  gpadmin@gpmaster$ pxf cluster init
  ```

#### PXF 6

- You must install the same version of the PXF `rpm` or `deb` on the new hosts.
- Log into the WarehousePG coordinator and run the following commands:

  ```
  gpadmin@gpmaster$ pxf cluster register
  gpadmin@gpmaster$ pxf cluster sync
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.10 Monitoring WarehousePG

You can monitor a WarehousePG cluster using a variety of tools included with the system or available as add-ons.

Observing the WarehousePG cluster day-to-day performance helps administrators understand the system behavior, plan workflow, and troubleshoot problems. This chapter discusses tools for monitoring database performance and activity.

Also, be sure to review Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks for monitoring activities you can script to quickly detect problems in the system.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

### Monitoring System State

As a WarehousePG administrator, you must monitor the system for problem events such as a segment going down or running out of disk space on a segment host. The following topics describe how to monitor the health of a WarehousePG cluster and examine certain state information for a WarehousePG cluster.

- Checking System State
- Checking Disk Space Usage
- Checking for Data Distribution Skew
- Checking for and Terminating Overflowed Backends
- Viewing Metadata Information about Database Objects
- Viewing Session Memory Usage Information
- Viewing Query Workfile Usage Information

### Checking System State

A WarehousePG cluster is comprised of multiple PostgreSQL instances (the coordinator and segments) spanning multiple machines. To monitor a WarehousePG cluster, you need to know information about the system as a whole, as well as status information of the individual instances. The `gpstate` utility provides status information about a WarehousePG cluster.

#### Viewing Coordinator and Segment Status and Configuration

The default `gpstate` action is to check segment instances and show a brief status of the valid and failed segments. For example, to see a quick status of your WarehousePG cluster:

```
$ gpstate
```

To see more detailed information about your WarehousePG array configuration, use `gpstate` with the `-s` option:

```
$ gpstate -s
```

#### Viewing Your Mirroring Configuration and Status

If you are using mirroring for data redundancy, you may want to see the list of mirror segment instances in the system, their current synchronization status, and the mirror to primary mapping. For example, to see the mirror segments in the system and their status:

```
$ gpstate -m
```

To see the primary to mirror segment mappings:

```
$ gpstate -c
```

To see the status of the standby coordinator mirror:

```
$ gpstate -f
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Checking Disk Space Usage

A database administrator's most important monitoring task is to make sure the file systems where the coordinator and segment data directories reside do not grow to more than 70 percent full. A filled data disk will not result in data corruption, but it may prevent normal database activity from continuing. If the disk grows too full, it can cause the database server to shut down.

You can use the `gp_disk_free` external table in the `gp_toolkit` administrative schema to check for remaining free space (in kilobytes) on the segment host file systems. For example:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_disk_free
   ORDER BY dfsegment;
```

### Checking Sizing of Distributed Databases and Tables

The `gp_toolkit` administrative schema contains several views that you can use to determine the disk space usage for a distributed WarehousePG database, schema, table, or index.

For a list of the available sizing views for checking database object sizes and disk space, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Viewing Disk Space Usage for a Database

To see the total size of a database (in bytes), use the *gp_size_of_database* view in the *gp_toolkit* administrative schema. For example:

```
=> SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_size_of_database
   ORDER BY sodddatname;
```

#### Viewing Disk Space Usage for a Table

The *gp_toolkit* administrative schema contains several views for checking the size of a table. The table sizing views list the table by object ID (not by name). To check the size of a table by name, you must look up the relation name ( `relname` ) in the *pg_class* table. For example:

```
=> SELECT relname AS name, sotdsize AS size, sotdtoastsize
   AS toast, sotdadditionalsize AS other
   FROM gp_toolkit.gp_size_of_table_disk as sotd, pg_class
   WHERE sotd.sotdoid=pg_class.oid ORDER BY relname;
```

For a list of the available table sizing views, see the*WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Viewing Disk Space Usage for Indexes

The *gp_toolkit* administrative schema contains a number of views for checking index sizes. To see the total size of all index(es) on a table, use the *gp_size_of_all_table_indexes* view. To see the size of a particular index, use the *gp_size_of_index* view. The index sizing views list tables and indexes by object ID (not by name). To check the size of an index by name, you must look up the relation name ( `relname` ) in the *pg_class* table. For example:

```
=> SELECT soisize, relname as indexname
   FROM pg_class, gp_toolkit.gp_size_of_index
   WHERE pg_class.oid=gp_size_of_index.soioid
   AND pg_class.relkind='i';
```

## Checking for Data Distribution Skew

All tables in WarehousePG are distributed, meaning their data is divided across all of the segments in the system. Unevenly distributed data may diminish query processing performance. A table's distribution policy, set at table creation time, determines how the table's rows are distributed. For information about choosing the table distribution policy, see the following topics:

- Viewing a Table's Distribution Key
- Viewing Data Distribution
- Checking for Query Processing Skew

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The *gp_toolkit* administrative schema also contains a number of views for checking data distribution skew on a table. For information about how to check for uneven data distribution, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Viewing a Table's Distribution Key

To see the columns used as the data distribution key for a table, you can use the `\d+` meta-command in `psql` to examine the definition of a table. For example:

```
=# `\d+ sales
`                Table "retail.sales"
 Column      |     Type     | Modifiers | Description
-------------+--------------+-----------+-------------
 sale_id     | integer      |           |
 amt         | float        |           |
 date        | date         |           |
Has OIDs: no
Distributed by: (sale_id)
```

When you create a *replicated* table, WarehousePG stores all rows in the table on every segment. Replicated tables have no distribution key. Where the `\d+` meta-command reports the distribution key for a normally distributed table, it shows `Distributed Replicated` for a replicated table.

#### Viewing Data Distribution

To see the data distribution of a table's rows (the number of rows on each segment), you can run a query such as:

```
=# SELECT gp_segment_id, count(*)
   FROM <table_name> GROUP BY gp_segment_id;
```

A table is considered to have a balanced distribution if all segments have roughly the same number of rows.

> **Note** If you run this query on a replicated table, it fails because WarehousePG does not permit user queries to reference the system column `gp_segment_id` (or the system columns `ctid`, `cmin`, `cmax`, `xmin`, and `xmax`) in replicated tables. Because every segment has all of the tables' rows, replicated tables are evenly distributed by definition.

#### Checking for Query Processing Skew

When a query is being processed, all segments should have equal workloads to ensure the best possible performance. If you identify a poorly-performing query, you may need to investigate further using the `EXPLAIN` command. For information about using the `EXPLAIN` command and query profiling, see Query Profiling.

Query processing workload can be skewed if the table's data distribution policy and the query predicates are not well matched. To check for processing skew, you can run a query such as:

```
=# SELECT gp_segment_id, count(*) FROM <table_name>
   WHERE <column>='<value>' GROUP BY gp_segment_id;
```

This will show the number of rows returned by segment for the given `WHERE` predicate.

As noted in Viewing Data Distribution, this query will fail if you run it on a replicated table because you cannot reference the `gp_segment_id` system column in a query on a replicated table.

##### Avoiding an Extreme Skew Warning

You may receive the following warning message while running a query that performs a hash join operation:

`Extreme skew in the innerside of Hashjoin`

This occurs when the input to a hash join operator is skewed. It does not prevent the query from completing successfully. You can follow these steps to avoid skew in the plan:

1. Ensure that all fact tables are analyzed.
2. Verify that any populated temporary table used by the query is analyzed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. View the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` plan for the query and look for the following:
    - If there are scans with multi-column filters that are producing more rows than estimated, then set the `gp_selectivity_damping_factor` server configuration parameter to 2 or higher and retest the query.
    - If the skew occurs while joining a single fact table that is relatively small (less than 5000 rows), set the `gp_segments_for_planner` server configuration parameter to 1 and retest the query.

4. Check whether the filters applied in the query match distribution keys of the base tables. If the filters and distribution keys are the same, consider redistributing some of the base tables with different distribution keys.
5. Check the cardinality of the join keys. If they have low cardinality, try to rewrite the query with different joining columns or additional filters on the tables to reduce the number of rows. These changes could change the query semantics.

### Checking for and Terminating Overflowed Backends

Subtransaction overflow arises when a WarehousePG backend creates more than 64 subtransactions, resulting in a high lookup cost for visibility checks. This slows query performance, but even more so when it occurs in combination with long-running transactions, which result in still more lookups. Terminating suboverflowed backends and/or backends with long-running transactions can help prevent and alleviate performance problems.

WarehousePG includes an extension -- `gp_subtransaction_overflow` -- and a view -- `gp_suboverflowed_backend` -- that is run over a user-defined function to help users query for suboverflowed backends. Users can use segment id and process id information reported in the view to terminate the offending backends, thereby preventing degradation of performance.

Follow these steps to identify and terminate overflowed backends.

1. Create the extension:

    ```
    CREATE EXTENSION gp_subtransaction_overflow;
    ```

2. Select all from the view the extension created:

    ```
    select * from gp_suboverflowed_backend`;
    ```

    This returns output similar to the following:

    ```
    segid |   pids
    -------+-----------
    -1 |
     0 | {1731513}
     1 | {1731514}
     2 | {1731515}
    (4 rows)
    ```

3. Connect to the database in utility mode and query `pg_stat_activity` to return the session id for the process id in the output for a segment. For example:

    ```
    select sess_id from pg_stat_activity where pid=1731513;
    ```

    ```
    sess_id
    ---------
      10
    (1 row)
    ```

4. Terminate the session, which will terminate all associated backends on all segments:

    ```
    select pg_terminate_backend(pid) from pg_stat_activity where sess_id=10;
    ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Verify that there are no more suboverflowed backends:

```
select * from gp_suboverflowed_backend`;
```

```
segid |   pids
-------+-----------
-1 |
 0 |
 1 |
 2 |
(4 rows)
```

#### Logging Statements that Cause Overflowed Subtransactions

You can optionally set a WarehousePG configuration parameter, `gp_log_suboverflow_statement`, to record SQL statements that cause overflowed subtransactions. When this parameter is active, statements that cause overflow are recorded in server logs on the coordinator host and segment hosts with the text: `Statement caused suboverflow: <statement>`.

One way to find these statements is to query the `gp_toolkit.gp_log_system` table. For example, after activating the setting:

```
SET set gp_log_suboverflow_statement = ON;
```

you can find statements that caused overflow with a query such as:

```
SELECT DISTINCT logsegment, logmessage FROM gp_toolkit.gp_log_system
    WHERE logmessage LIKE 'Statement caused suboverflow%';
```

```
 logsegment |                          logmessage
------------+---------------------------------------------------------------
 seg0       | Statement caused suboverflow: INSERT INTO t_1352_1 VALUES(i)
 seg1       | Statement caused suboverflow: INSERT INTO t_1352_1 VALUES(i)
 seg2       | Statement caused suboverflow: INSERT INTO t_1352_1 VALUES(i)
(3 rows)
```

### Viewing Metadata Information about Database Objects

WarehousePG tracks various metadata information in its system catalogs about the objects stored in a database, such as tables, views, indexes and so on, as well as global objects such as roles and tablespaces.

#### Viewing the Last Operation Performed

You can use the system views *pg_stat_operations* and *pg_stat_partition_operations* to look up actions performed on an object, such as a table. For example, to see the actions performed on a table, such as when it was created and when it was last vacuumed and analyzed:

```
=> SELECT schemaname as schema, objname as table,
   usename as role, actionname as action,
   subtype as type, statime as time
   FROM pg_stat_operations
   WHERE objname='cust';
 schema | table | role | action  | type  | time
--------+-------+------+---------+-------+--------------------------
  sales | cust  | main | CREATE  | TABLE | 2016-02-09 18:10:07.867977-08
  sales | cust  | main | VACUUM  |       | 2016-02-10 13:32:39.068219-08
  sales | cust  | main | ANALYZE |       | 2016-02-25 16:07:01.157168-08
(3 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Viewing the Definition of an Object

To see the definition of an object, such as a table or view, you can use the `\d+` meta-command when working in `psql`. For example, to see the definition of a table:

```
=> \d+ <mytable>
```

### Viewing Session Memory Usage Information

You can create and use the *session_level_memory_consumption* view that provides information about the current memory utilization for sessions that are running queries on WarehousePG. The view contains session information and information such as the database that the session is connected to, the query that the session is currently running, and memory consumed by the session processes.


- Creating the session_level_memory_consumption View
- The session_level_memory_consumption View


#### Creating the session_level_memory_consumption View

To create the *session_state.session_level_memory_consumption* view in a WarehousePG, run the script `CREATE EXTENSION gp_internal_tools;` once for each database. For example, to install the view in the database `testdb`, use this command:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c "CREATE EXTENSION gp_internal_tools;"
```

#### The session_level_memory_consumption View

The *session_state.session_level_memory_consumption* view provides information about memory consumption and idle time for sessions that are running SQL queries.

When resource queue-based resource management is active, the column `is_runaway` indicates whether WarehousePG considers the session a runaway session based on the vmem memory consumption of the session's queries. Under the resource queue-based resource management scheme, WarehousePG considers the session a runaway when the queries consume an excessive amount of memory. The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `runaway_detector_activation_percent` governs the conditions under which WarehousePG considers a session a runaway session.

The `is_runaway`, `runaway_vmem_mb`, and `runaway_command_cnt` columns are not applicable when resource group-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `datname` | name | | Name of the database that the session is connected to. |
| `sess_id` | integer | | Session ID. |
| `usename` | name | | Name of the session user. |
| `query` | text | | Current SQL query that the session is running. |
| `segid` | integer | | Segment ID. |
| `vmem_mb` | integer | | Total vmem memory usage for the session in MB. |
| `is_runaway` | boolean | | Session is marked as runaway on the segment. |
| `qe_count` | integer | | Number of query processes for the session. |
| `active_qe_count` | integer | | Number of active query processes for the session. |
| `dirty_qe_count` | integer | | Number of query processes that have not yet released their memory. The value is `-1` for sessions that are not running. |
| `runaway_vmem_mb` | integer | | Amount of vmem memory that the session was consuming when it was marked as a runaway session. |
| `runaway_command_cnt` | integer | | Command count for the session when it was marked as a runaway session. |
| `idle_start` | timestamptz | | The last time a query process in this session became idle. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Viewing Query Workfile Usage Information

The WarehousePG administrative schema *gp_toolkit* contains views that display information about WarehousePG workfiles. WarehousePG creates workfiles on disk if it does not have sufficient memory to run the query in memory. This information can be used for troubleshooting and tuning queries. The information in the views can also be used to specify the values for the WarehousePG configuration parameters `gp_workfile_limit_per_query` and `gp_workfile_limit_per_segment`.

These are the views in the schema *gp_toolkit*:

- The gp_workfile_entries view contains one row for each operator using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time.
- The gp_workfile_usage_per_query view contains one row for each query using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time.
- The gp_workfile_usage_per_segment view contains one row for each segment. Each row displays the total amount of disk space used for workfiles on the segment at the current time.

For information about using *gp_toolkit*, see Using gp_toolkit.

### Viewing the Database Server Log Files

Every database instance in WarehousePG (coordinator and segments) runs a PostgreSQL database server with its own server log file. Log files are created in the `log` directory of the coordinator and each segment data directory.

#### Log File Format

The server log files are written in comma-separated values (CSV) format. Some log entries will not have values for all log fields. For example, only log entries associated with a query worker process will have the `slice_id` populated. You can identify related log entries of a particular query by the query's session identifier ( `gp_session_id` ) and command identifier ( `gp_command_count` ).

The following fields are written to the log:

| Number | Field Name | Data Type | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | event_time | timestamp with time zone | Time that the log entry was written to the log |
| 2 | user_name | varchar(100) | The database user name |
| 3 | database_name | varchar(100) | The database name |
| 4 | process_id | varchar(10) | The system process ID (prefixed with "p") |
| 5 | thread_id | varchar(50) | The thread count (prefixed with "th") |
| 6 | remote_host | varchar(100) | On the coordinator, the hostname/address of the client machine. On the segment, the hostname/address of the coordinator. |
| 7 | remote_port | varchar(10) | The segment or coordinator port number |
| 8 | session_start_time | timestamp with time zone | Time session connection was opened |
| 9 | transaction_id | int | Top-level transaction ID on the coordinator. This ID is the parent of any subtransactions. |
| 10 | gp_session_id | text | Session identifier number (prefixed with "con") |
| 11 | gp_command_count | text | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd") |
| 12 | gp_segment | text | The segment content identifier (prefixed with "seg" for primaries or "mir" for mirrors). The coordinator always has a content ID of -1. |
| 13 | slice_id | text | The slice ID (portion of the query plan being executed) |
| 14 | distr_tranx_id | text | Distributed transaction ID |
| 15 | local_tranx_id | text | Local transaction ID |
| 16 | sub_tranx_id | text | Subtransaction ID |
| 17 | event_severity | varchar(10) | Values include: LOG, ERROR, FATAL, PANIC, DEBUG1, DEBUG2 |
| 18 | sql_state_code | varchar(10) | SQL state code associated with the log message |
| 19 | event_message | text | Log or error message text |
| 20 | event_detail | text | Detail message text associated with an error or warning message |
| 21 | event_hint | text | Hint message text associated with an error or warning message |
| 22 | internal_query | text | The internally-generated query text |
| 23 | internal_query_pos | int | The cursor index into the internally-generated query text |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Number | Field Name | Data Type | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 24 | event_context | text | The context in which this message gets generated |
| 25 | debug_query_string | text | User-supplied query string with full detail for debugging. This string can be modified for internal use. |
| 26 | error_cursor_pos | int | The cursor index into the query string |
| 27 | func_name | text | The function in which this message is generated |
| 28 | file_name | text | The internal code file where the message originated |
| 29 | file_line | int | The line of the code file where the message originated |
| 30 | stack_trace | text | Stack trace text associated with this message |

#### Searching the WarehousePG Server Log Files

WarehousePG provides a utility called `gplogfilter` can search through a WarehousePG log file for entries matching the specified criteria. By default, this utility searches through the WarehousePG coordinator log file in the default logging location. For example, to display the last three lines of each of the log files under the master directory:

```
$ gplogfilter -n 3
```

To search through all segment log files simultaneously, run `gplogfilter` through the `gpssh` utility. For example, to display the last three lines of each segment log file:

```
$ gpssh -f seg_host_file
```

```
=> source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
=> gplogfilter -n 3 /gpdata/gp*/log/gpdb*.log
```

### Using gp_toolkit

Use the WarehousePG administrative schema *gp_toolkit* to query the system catalogs, log files, and operating environment for system status information. The `gp_toolkit` schema contains several views you can access using SQL commands. The *gp_toolkit* schema is accessible to all database users. Some objects require superuser permissions. Use a command similar to the following to add the *gp_toolkit* schema to your schema search path:

```
=> ALTER ROLE myrole SET search_path TO myschema,gp_toolkit;
```

For a description of the available administrative schema views and their usages, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

### SQL Standard Error Codes

The following table lists all the defined error codes. Some are not used, but are defined by the SQL standard. The error classes are also shown. For each error class there is a standard error code having the last three characters 000. This code is used only for error conditions that fall within the class but do not have any more-specific code assigned.

The PL/pgSQL condition name for each error code is the same as the phrase shown in the table, with underscores substituted for spaces. For example, code 22012, DIVISION BY ZERO, has condition name DIVISION_BY_ZERO. Condition names can be written in either upper or lower case.

> **Note** PL/pgSQL does not recognize warning, as opposed to error, condition names; those are classes 00, 01, and 02.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| **Class 00**— Successful Completion | | |
| 00000 | SUCCESSFUL COMPLETION | successful_completion |
| Class 01 — Warning | | |
| 01000 | WARNING | warning |
| 0100C | DYNAMIC RESULT SETS RETURNED | dynamic_result_sets_returned |
| 01008 | IMPLICIT ZERO BIT PADDING | implicit_zero_bit_padding |
| 01003 | NULL VALUE ELIMINATED IN SET FUNCTION | null_value_eliminated_in_set_function |
| 01007 | PRIVILEGE NOT GRANTED | privilege_not_granted |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| 01006 | PRIVILEGE NOT REVOKED | privilege_not_revoked |
| 01004 | STRING DATA RIGHT TRUNCATION | string_data_right_truncation |
| 01P01 | DEPRECATED FEATURE | deprecated_feature |
| **Class 02** — No Data (this is also a warning class per the SQL standard) | | |
| 02000 | NO DATA | no_data |
| 02001 | NO ADDITIONAL DYNAMIC RESULT SETS RETURNED | no_additional_dynamic_result_sets_returned |
| **Class 03** — SQL Statement Not Yet Complete | | |
| 03000 | SQL STATEMENT NOT YET COMPLETE | sql_statement_not_yet_complete |
| **Class 08** — Connection Exception | | |
| 08000 | CONNECTION EXCEPTION | connection_exception |
| 08003 | CONNECTION DOES NOT EXIST | connection_does_not_exist |
| 08006 | CONNECTION FAILURE | connection_failure |
| 08001 | SQLCLIENT UNABLE TO ESTABLISH SQLCONNECTION | sqlclient_unable_to_establish_sqlconnection |
| 08004 | SQLSERVER REJECTED ESTABLISHMENT OF SQLCONNECTION | sqlserver_rejected_establishment_of_sqlconnection |
| 08007 | TRANSACTION RESOLUTION UNKNOWN | transaction_resolution_unknown |
| 08P01 | PROTOCOL VIOLATION | protocol_violation |
| **Class 09** — Triggered Action Exception | | |
| 09000 | TRIGGERED ACTION EXCEPTION | triggered_action_exception |
| **Class 0A** — Feature Not Supported | | |
| 0A000 | FEATURE NOT SUPPORTED | feature_not_supported |
| **Class 0B** — Invalid Transaction Initiation | | |
| 0B000 | INVALID TRANSACTION INITIATION | invalid_transaction_initiation |
| **Class 0F** — Locator Exception | | |
| 0F000 | LOCATOR EXCEPTION | locator_exception |
| 0F001 | INVALID LOCATOR SPECIFICATION | invalid_locator_specification |
| **Class 0L** — Invalid Grantor | | |
| 0L000 | INVALID GRANTOR | invalid_grantor |
| 0LP01 | INVALID GRANT OPERATION | invalid_grant_operation |
| **Class 0P** — Invalid Role Specification | | |
| 0P000 | INVALID ROLE SPECIFICATION | invalid_role_specification |
| **Class 21** — Cardinality Violation | | |
| 21000 | CARDINALITY VIOLATION | cardinality_violation |
| **Class 22** — Data Exception | | |
| 22000 | DATA EXCEPTION | data_exception |
| 2202E | ARRAY SUBSCRIPT ERROR | array_subscript_error |
| 22021 | CHARACTER NOT IN REPERTOIRE | character_not_in_repertoire |
| 22008 | DATETIME FIELD OVERFLOW | datetime_field_overflow |
| 22012 | DIVISION BY ZERO | division_by_zero |
| 22005 | ERROR IN ASSIGNMENT | error_in_assignment |
| 2200B | ESCAPE CHARACTER CONFLICT | escape_character_conflict |
| 22022 | INDICATOR OVERFLOW | indicator_overflow |
| 22015 | INTERVAL FIELD OVERFLOW | interval_field_overflow |
| 2201E | INVALID ARGUMENT FOR LOGARITHM | invalid_argument_for_logarithm |
| 2201F | INVALID ARGUMENT FOR POWER FUNCTION | invalid_argument_for_power_function |
| 2201G | INVALID ARGUMENT FOR WIDTH BUCKET FUNCTION | invalid_argument_for_width_bucket_function |
| 22018 | INVALID CHARACTER VALUE FOR CAST | invalid_character_value_for_cast |
| 22007 | INVALID DATETIME FORMAT | invalid_datetime_format |
| 22019 | INVALID ESCAPE CHARACTER | invalid_escape_character |
| 2200D | INVALID ESCAPE OCTET | invalid_escape_octet |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| 22025 | INVALID ESCAPE SEQUENCE | invalid_escape_sequence |
| 22P06 | NONSTANDARD USE OF ESCAPE CHARACTER | nonstandard_use_of_escape_character |
| 22010 | INVALID INDICATOR PARAMETER VALUE | invalid_indicator_parameter_value |
| 22020 | INVALID LIMIT VALUE | invalid_limit_value |
| 22023 | INVALID PARAMETER VALUE | invalid_parameter_value |
| 2201B | INVALID REGULAR EXPRESSION | invalid_regular_expression |
| 22009 | INVALID TIME ZONE DISPLACEMENT VALUE | invalid_time_zone_displacement_value |
| 2200C | INVALID USE OF ESCAPE CHARACTER | invalid_use_of_escape_character |
| 2200G | MOST SPECIFIC TYPE MISMATCH | most_specific_type_mismatch |
| 22004 | NULL VALUE NOT ALLOWED | null_value_not_allowed |
| 22002 | NULL VALUE NO INDICATOR PARAMETER | null_value_no_indicator_parameter |
| 22003 | NUMERIC VALUE OUT OF RANGE | numeric_value_out_of_range |
| 22026 | STRING DATA LENGTH MISMATCH | string_data_length_mismatch |
| 22001 | STRING DATA RIGHT TRUNCATION | string_data_right_truncation |
| 22011 | SUBSTRING ERROR | substring_error |
| 22027 | TRIM ERROR | trim_error |
| 22024 | UNTERMINATED C STRING | unterminated_c_string |
| 2200F | ZERO LENGTH CHARACTER STRING | zero_length_character_string |
| 22P01 | FLOATING POINT EXCEPTION | floating_point_exception |
| 22P02 | INVALID TEXT REPRESENTATION | invalid_text_representation |
| 22P03 | INVALID BINARY REPRESENTATION | invalid_binary_representation |
| 22P04 | BAD COPY FILE FORMAT | bad_copy_file_format |
| 22P05 | UNTRANSLATABLE CHARACTER | untranslatable_character |
| **Class 23** — Integrity Constraint Violation | | |
| 23000 | INTEGRITY CONSTRAINT VIOLATION | integrity_constraint_violation |
| 23001 | RESTRICT VIOLATION | restrict_violation |
| 23502 | NOT NULL VIOLATION | not_null_violation |
| 23503 | FOREIGN KEY VIOLATION | foreign_key_violation |
| 23505 | UNIQUE VIOLATION | unique_violation |
| 23514 | CHECK VIOLATION | check_violation |
| **Class 24** — Invalid Cursor State | | |
| 24000 | INVALID CURSOR STATE | invalid_cursor_state |
| **Class 25** — Invalid Transaction State | | |
| 25000 | INVALID TRANSACTION STATE | invalid_transaction_state |
| 25001 | ACTIVE SQL TRANSACTION | active_sql_transaction |
| 25002 | BRANCH TRANSACTION ALREADY ACTIVE | branch_transaction_already_active |
| 25008 | HELD CURSOR REQUIRES SAME ISOLATION LEVEL | held_cursor_requires_same_isolation_level |
| 25003 | INAPPROPRIATE ACCESS MODE FOR BRANCH TRANSACTION | inappropriate_access_mode_for_branch_transaction |
| 25004 | INAPPROPRIATE ISOLATION LEVEL FOR BRANCH TRANSACTION | inappropriate_isolation_level_for_branch_transaction |
| 25005 | NO ACTIVE SQL TRANSACTION FOR BRANCH TRANSACTION | no_active_sql_transaction_for_branch_transaction |
| 25006 | READ ONLY SQL TRANSACTION | read_only_sql_transaction |
| 25007 | SCHEMA AND DATA STATEMENT MIXING NOT SUPPORTED | schema_and_data_statement_mixing_not_supported |
| 25P01 | NO ACTIVE SQL TRANSACTION | no_active_sql_transaction |
| 25P02 | IN FAILED SQL TRANSACTION | in_failed_sql_transaction |
| **Class 26** — Invalid SQL Statement Name | | |
| 26000 | INVALID SQL STATEMENT NAME | invalid_sql_statement_name |
| **Class 27** — Triggered Data Change Violation | | |
| 27000 | TRIGGERED DATA CHANGE VIOLATION | triggered_data_change_violation |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| **Class 28** — Invalid Authorization Specification | | |
| 28000 | INVALID AUTHORIZATION SPECIFICATION | invalid_authorization_specification |
| **Class 2B** — Dependent Privilege Descriptors Still Exist | | |
| 2B000 | DEPENDENT PRIVILEGE DESCRIPTORS STILL EXIST | dependent_privilege_descriptors_still_exist |
| 2BP01 | DEPENDENT OBJECTS STILL EXIST | dependent_objects_still_exist |
| **Class 2D** — Invalid Transaction Termination | | |
| 2D000 | INVALID TRANSACTION TERMINATION | invalid_transaction_termination |
| **Class 2F** — SQL Routine Exception | | |
| 2F000 | SQL ROUTINE EXCEPTION | sql_routine_exception |
| 2F005 | FUNCTION EXECUTED NO RETURN STATEMENT | function_executed_no_return_statement |
| 2F002 | MODIFYING SQL DATA NOT PERMITTED | modifying_sql_data_not_permitted |
| 2F003 | PROHIBITED SQL STATEMENT ATTEMPTED | prohibited_sql_statement_attempted |
| 2F004 | READING SQL DATA NOT PERMITTED | reading_sql_data_not_permitted |
| **Class 34** — Invalid Cursor Name | | |
| 34000 | INVALID CURSOR NAME | invalid_cursor_name |
| **Class 38** — External Routine Exception | | |
| 38000 | EXTERNAL ROUTINE EXCEPTION | external_routine_exception |
| 38001 | CONTAINING SQL NOT PERMITTED | containing_sql_not_permitted |
| 38002 | MODIFYING SQL DATA NOT PERMITTED | modifying_sql_data_not_permitted |
| 38003 | PROHIBITED SQL STATEMENT ATTEMPTED | prohibited_sql_statement_attempted |
| 38004 | READING SQL DATA NOT PERMITTED | reading_sql_data_not_permitted |
| **Class 39** — External Routine Invocation Exception | | |
| 39000 | EXTERNAL ROUTINE INVOCATION EXCEPTION | external_routine_invocation_exception |
| 39001 | INVALID SQLSTATE RETURNED | invalid_sqlstate_returned |
| 39004 | NULL VALUE NOT ALLOWED | null_value_not_allowed |
| 39P01 | TRIGGER PROTOCOL VIOLATED | trigger_protocol_violated |
| 39P02 | SRF PROTOCOL VIOLATED | srf_protocol_violated |
| **Class 3B** — Savepoint Exception | | |
| 3B000 | SAVEPOINT EXCEPTION | savepoint_exception |
| 3B001 | INVALID SAVEPOINT SPECIFICATION | invalid_savepoint_specification |
| **Class 3D** — Invalid Catalog Name | | |
| 3D000 | INVALID CATALOG NAME | invalid_catalog_name |
| **Class 3F** — Invalid Schema Name | | |
| 3F000 | INVALID SCHEMA NAME | invalid_schema_name |
| **Class 40** — Transaction Rollback | | |
| 40000 | TRANSACTION ROLLBACK | transaction_rollback |
| 40002 | TRANSACTION INTEGRITY CONSTRAINT VIOLATION | transaction_integrity_constraint_violation |
| 40001 | SERIALIZATION FAILURE | serialization_failure |
| 40003 | STATEMENT COMPLETION UNKNOWN | statement_completion_unknown |
| 40P01 | DEADLOCK DETECTED | deadlock_detected |
| **Class 42** — Syntax Error or Access Rule Violation | | |
| 42000 | SYNTAX ERROR OR ACCESS RULE VIOLATION | syntax_error_or_access_rule_violation |
| 42601 | SYNTAX ERROR | syntax_error |
| 42501 | INSUFFICIENT PRIVILEGE | insufficient_privilege |
| 42846 | CANNOT COERCE | cannot_coerce |
| 42803 | GROUPING ERROR | grouping_error |
| 42830 | INVALID FOREIGN KEY | invalid_foreign_key |
| 42602 | INVALID NAME | invalid_name |
| 42622 | NAME TOO LONG | name_too_long |
| 42939 | RESERVED NAME | reserved_name |
| 42804 | DATATYPE MISMATCH | datatype_mismatch |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| 42P18 | INDETERMINATE DATATYPE | indeterminate_datatype |
| 42809 | WRONG OBJECT TYPE | wrong_object_type |
| 42703 | UNDEFINED COLUMN | undefined_column |
| 42883 | UNDEFINED FUNCTION | undefined_function |
| 42P01 | UNDEFINED TABLE | undefined_table |
| 42P02 | UNDEFINED PARAMETER | undefined_parameter |
| 42704 | UNDEFINED OBJECT | undefined_object |
| 42701 | DUPLICATE COLUMN | duplicate_column |
| 42P03 | DUPLICATE CURSOR | duplicate_cursor |
| 42P04 | DUPLICATE DATABASE | duplicate_database |
| 42723 | DUPLICATE FUNCTION | duplicate_function |
| 42P05 | DUPLICATE PREPARED STATEMENT | duplicate_prepared_statement |
| 42P06 | DUPLICATE SCHEMA | duplicate_schema |
| 42P07 | DUPLICATE TABLE | duplicate_table |
| 42712 | DUPLICATE ALIAS | duplicate_alias |
| 42710 | DUPLICATE OBJECT | duplicate_object |
| 42702 | AMBIGUOUS COLUMN | ambiguous_column |
| 42725 | AMBIGUOUS FUNCTION | ambiguous_function |
| 42P08 | AMBIGUOUS PARAMETER | ambiguous_parameter |
| 42P09 | AMBIGUOUS ALIAS | ambiguous_alias |
| 42P10 | INVALID COLUMN REFERENCE | invalid_column_reference |
| 42611 | INVALID COLUMN DEFINITION | invalid_column_definition |
| 42P11 | INVALID CURSOR DEFINITION | invalid_cursor_definition |
| 42P12 | INVALID DATABASE DEFINITION | invalid_database_definition |
| 42P13 | INVALID FUNCTION DEFINITION | invalid_function_definition |
| 42P14 | INVALID PREPARED STATEMENT DEFINITION | invalid_prepared_statement_definition |
| 42P15 | INVALID SCHEMA DEFINITION | invalid_schema_definition |
| 42P16 | INVALID TABLE DEFINITION | invalid_table_definition |
| 42P17 | INVALID OBJECT DEFINITION | invalid_object_definition |
| **Class 44** — WITH CHECK OPTION Violation | | |
| 44000 | WITH CHECK OPTION VIOLATION | with_check_option_violation |
| **Class 53** — Insufficient Resources | | |
| 53000 | INSUFFICIENT RESOURCES | insufficient_resources |
| 53100 | DISK FULL | disk_full |
| 53200 | OUT OF MEMORY | out_of_memory |
| 53300 | TOO MANY CONNECTIONS | too_many_connections |
| **Class 54** — Program Limit Exceeded | | |
| 54000 | PROGRAM LIMIT EXCEEDED | program_limit_exceeded |
| 54001 | STATEMENT TOO COMPLEX | statement_too_complex |
| 54011 | TOO MANY COLUMNS | too_many_columns |
| 54023 | TOO MANY ARGUMENTS | too_many_arguments |
| **Class 55** — Object Not In Prerequisite State | | |
| 55000 | OBJECT NOT IN PREREQUISITE STATE | object_not_in_prerequisite_state |
| 55006 | OBJECT IN USE | object_in_use |
| 55P02 | CANT CHANGE RUNTIME PARAM | cant_change_runtime_param |
| 55P03 | LOCK NOT AVAILABLE | lock_not_available |
| **Class 57** — Operator Intervention | | |
| 57000 | OPERATOR INTERVENTION | operator_intervention |
| 57014 | QUERY CANCELED | query_canceled |
| 57P01 | ADMIN SHUTDOWN | admin_shutdown |
| 57P02 | CRASH SHUTDOWN | crash_shutdown |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Error Code | Meaning | Constant |
|---|---|---|
| 57P03 | CANNOT CONNECT NOW | cannot_connect_now |
| **Class 58** — System Error (errors external to WarehousePG ) | | |
| 58030 | IO ERROR | io_error |
| 58P01 | UNDEFINED FILE | undefined_file |
| 58P02 | DUPLICATE FILE | duplicate_file |
| Class F0 — Configuration File Error | | |
| F0000 | CONFIG FILE ERROR | config_file_error |
| F0001 | LOCK FILE EXISTS | lock_file_exists |
| **Class P0** — PL/pgSQL Error | | |
| P0000 | PLPGSQL ERROR | plpgsql_error |
| P0001 | RAISE EXCEPTION | raise_exception |
| P0002 | NO DATA FOUND | no_data_found |
| P0003 | TOO MANY ROWS | too_many_rows |
| **Class XX** — Internal Error | | |
| XX000 | INTERNAL ERROR | internal_error |
| XX001 | DATA CORRUPTED | data_corrupted |
| XX002 | INDEX CORRUPTED | index_corrupted |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.11 Routine System Maintenance Tasks

To keep a WarehousePG cluster running efficiently, the database must be regularly cleared of expired data and the table statistics must be updated so that the query optimizer has accurate information.

WarehousePG requires that certain tasks be performed regularly to achieve optimal performance. The tasks discussed here are required, but database administrators can automate them using standard UNIX tools such as `cron` scripts. An administrator sets up the appropriate scripts and checks that they ran successfully. See Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks for additional suggested maintenance activities you can implement to keep your WarehousePG cluster running optimally.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

### Routine Vacuum and Analyze

The design of the MVCC transaction concurrency model used in WarehousePG means that deleted or updated data rows still occupy physical space on disk even though they are not visible to new transactions. If your database has many updates and deletes, many expired rows exist and the space they use must be reclaimed with the `VACUUM` command. The `VACUUM` command also collects table-level statistics, such as numbers of rows and pages, so it is also necessary to vacuum append-optimized tables, even when there is no space to reclaim from updated or deleted rows.

Vacuuming an append-optimized table follows a different process than vacuuming heap tables. On each segment, a new segment file is created and visible rows are copied into it from the current segment. When the segment file has been copied, the original is scheduled to be dropped and the new segment file is made available. This requires sufficient available disk space for a copy of the visible rows until the original segment file is dropped.

If the ratio of hidden rows to total rows in a segment file is less than a threshold value (10, by default), the segment file is not compacted. The threshold value can be configured with the `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` server configuration parameter. `VACUUM FULL` ignores the value of `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` and rewrites the segment file regardless of the ratio.

You can use the `__gp_aovisimap_compaction_info()` function in the *gp_toolkit* schema to investigate the effectiveness of a VACUUM operation on append-optimized tables.

For information about the `__gp_aovisimap_compaction_info()` function see, "Checking Append-Optimized Tables" in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

`VACUUM` can be deactivated for append-optimized tables using the `gp_appendonly_compaction` server configuration parameter.

For details about vacuuming a database, see Vacuuming the Database.

For information about the `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` server configuration parameter and the `VACUUM` command, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Transaction ID Management

WarehousePG's MVCC transaction semantics depend on comparing transaction ID (XID) numbers to determine visibility to other transactions. Transaction ID numbers are compared using modulo 232 arithmetic, so a WarehousePG cluster that runs more than about two billion transactions can experience transaction ID wraparound, where past transactions appear to be in the future. This means past transactions' outputs become invisible. Therefore, it is necessary to `VACUUM` every table in every database at least once per two billion transactions.

WarehousePG assigns XID values only to transactions that involve DDL or DML operations, which are typically the only transactions that require an XID.

> **Important** WarehousePG monitors transaction IDs. If you do not vacuum the database regularly, WarehousePG will generate a warning and error.

WarehousePG issues the following warning when a significant portion of the transaction IDs are no longer available and before transaction ID wraparound occurs:

```
WARNING: database "database_name" must be vacuumed within *number\_of\_transactions* transactions
```

When the warning is issued, a `VACUUM` operation is required. If a `VACUUM` operation is not performed, WarehousePG stops creating transactions when it reaches a limit prior to when transaction ID wraparound occurs. WarehousePG issues this error when it stops creating transactions to avoid possible data loss:

```
FATAL: database is not accepting commands to avoid
wraparound data loss in database "database_name"
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The WarehousePG configuration parameter `xid_warn_limit` controls when the warning is displayed. The parameter `xid_stop_limit` controls when WarehousePG stops creating transactions.

#### Recovering from a Transaction ID Limit Error

When WarehousePG reaches the `xid_stop_limit` transaction ID limit due to infrequent `VACUUM` maintenance, it becomes unresponsive. To recover from this situation, perform the following steps as database administrator:

1. Shut down WarehousePG.
2. Temporarily lower the `xid_stop_limit` by 10,000,000.
3. Start WarehousePG.
4. Run `VACUUM FREEZE` on all affected databases.
5. Reset the `xid_stop_limit` to its original value.
6. Restart WarehousePG.

For information about the configuration parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

For information about transaction ID wraparound see the PostgreSQL documentation.

### System Catalog Maintenance

Numerous database updates with `CREATE` and `DROP` commands increase the system catalog size and affect system performance. For example, running many `DROP TABLE` statements degrades the overall system performance due to excessive data scanning during metadata operations on catalog tables. The performance loss occurs between thousands to tens of thousands of `DROP TABLE` statements, depending on the system.

You should run a system catalog maintenance procedure regularly to reclaim the space occupied by deleted objects. If a regular procedure has not been run for a long time, you may need to run a more intensive procedure to clear the system catalog. This topic describes both procedures.

#### Regular System Catalog Maintenance

It is recommended that you periodically run `REINDEX` and `VACUUM` on the system catalog to clear the space that deleted objects occupy in the system indexes and tables. If regular database operations include numerous `DROP` statements, it is safe and appropriate to run a system catalog maintenance procedure with `VACUUM` daily at off-peak hours. You can do this while the system is available.

These are WarehousePG cluster catalog maintenance steps.

1. Perform a `REINDEX` on the system catalog tables to rebuild the system catalog indexes. This removes bloat in the indexes and improves `VACUUM` performance.

   > **Note** `REINDEX` causes locking of system catalog tables, which could affect currently running queries. To avoid disrupting ongoing business operations, schedule the `REINDEX` operation during a period of low activity.

2. Perform a `VACUUM` on the system catalog tables.

3. Perform an `ANALYZE` on the system catalog tables to update the catalog table statistics.

This example script performs a `REINDEX`, `VACUUM`, and `ANALYZE` of a WarehousePG cluster catalog. In the script, replace `<database-name>` with a database name.

```
#!/bin/bash
DBNAME="<database-name>"
SYSTABLES="' pg_catalog.' || relname || ';' FROM pg_class a, pg_namespace b
WHERE a.relnamespace=b.oid AND b.nspname='pg_catalog' AND a.relkind='r'"

reindexdb --system -d $DBNAME
psql -tc "SELECT 'VACUUM' || $SYSTABLES" $DBNAME | psql -a $DBNAME
analyzedb -as pg_catalog -d $DBNAME
```

> **Note** If you are performing catalog maintenance during a maintenance period and you need to stop a process due to time constraints, run the WarehousePG function `pg_cancel_backend(<PID>)` to safely stop the WarehousePG process.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Intensive System Catalog Maintenance

If system catalog maintenance has not been performed in a long time, the catalog can become bloated with dead space; this causes excessively long wait times for simple metadata operations. A wait of more than two seconds to list user tables, such as with the `\d` metacommand from within `psql`, is an indication of catalog bloat.

If you see indications of system catalog bloat, you must perform an intensive system catalog maintenance procedure with `VACUUM FULL` during a scheduled downtime period. During this period, stop all catalog activity on the system; the `VACUUM FULL` system catalog maintenance procedure takes exclusive locks against the system catalog.

Running regular system catalog maintenance procedures can prevent the need for this more costly procedure.

These are steps for intensive system catalog maintenance.

1. Stop all catalog activity on the WarehousePG cluster.
2. Perform a `REINDEX` on the system catalog tables to rebuild the system catalog indexes. This removes bloat in the indexes and improves `VACUUM` performance.
3. Perform a `VACUUM FULL` on the system catalog tables. See the following Note.
4. Perform an `ANALYZE` on the system catalog tables to update the catalog table statistics.

> **Note** The system catalog table `pg_attribute` is usually the largest catalog table. If the `pg_attribute` table is significantly bloated, a `VACUUM FULL` operation on the table might require a significant amount of time and might need to be performed separately. The presence of both of these conditions indicate a significantly bloated `pg_attribute` table that might require a long `VACUUM FULL` time:

- The `pg_attribute` table contains a large number of records.
- The diagnostic message for `pg_attribute` is `significant amount of bloat` in the `gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_diag` view.

#### Vacuum and Analyze for Query Optimization

WarehousePG uses a cost-based query optimizer that relies on database statistics. Accurate statistics allow the query optimizer to better estimate selectivity and the number of rows that a query operation retrieves. These estimates help it choose the most efficient query plan. The `ANALYZE` command collects column-level statistics for the query optimizer.

You can run both `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` operations in the same command. For example:

```
=# VACUUM ANALYZE mytable;
```

Running the VACUUM ANALYZE command might produce incorrect statistics when the command is run on a table with a significant amount of bloat (a significant amount of table disk space is occupied by deleted or obsolete rows). For large tables, the `ANALYZE` command calculates statistics from a random sample of rows. It estimates the number rows in the table by multiplying the average number of rows per page in the sample by the number of actual pages in the table. If the sample contains many empty pages, the estimated row count can be inaccurate.

For a table, you can view information about the amount of unused disk space (space that is occupied by deleted or obsolete rows) in the*gp_toolkit* view *gp_bloat_diag*. If the `bdidiag` column for a table contains the value `significant amount of bloat suspected`, a significant amount of table disk space consists of unused space. Entries are added to the *gp_bloat_diag* view after a table has been vacuumed.

To remove unused disk space from the table, you can run the command VACUUM FULL on the table. Due to table lock requirements, VACUUM FULL might not be possible until a maintenance period.

As a temporary workaround, run ANALYZE to compute column statistics and then run VACUUM on the table to generate an accurate row count. This example runs ANALYZE and then VACUUM on the *cust_info* table.

```
ANALYZE cust_info;
VACUUM cust_info;
```

> **Important** If you intend to run queries on partitioned tables with GPORCA enabled (the default), you must collect statistics on the partitioned table root partition with the ANALYZE command. For information about GPORCA, see Overview of GPORCA.

> **Note** You can use the WarehousePG utility analyzedb to update table statistics. Tables can be analyzed concurrently. For append optimized tables, analyzedb updates statistics only if the statistics are not current. See the analyzedb utility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Routine Reindexing

For B-tree indexes, a freshly-constructed index is slightly faster to access than one that has been updated many times because logically adjacent pages are usually also physically adjacent in a newly built index. Reindexing older indexes periodically can improve access speed. If all but a few index keys on a page have been deleted, there will be wasted space on the index page. A reindex will reclaim that wasted space. In WarehousePG it is often faster to drop an index ( `DROP INDEX` ) and then recreate it ( `CREATE INDEX` ) than it is to use the `REINDEX` command.

For table columns with indexes, some operations such as bulk updates or inserts to the table might perform more slowly because of the updates to the indexes. To enhance performance of bulk operations on tables with indexes, you can drop the indexes, perform the bulk operation, and then re-create the index.

## Managing WarehousePG Log Files


- Database Server Log Files
- Management Utility Log Files


#### Database Server Log Files

WarehousePG log output tends to be voluminous, especially at higher debug levels, and you do not need to save it indefinitely. Administrators should purge older log files periodically.

WarehousePG by default has log file rotation enabled for the coordinator and segment database logs. Log files are created in the `log` subdirectory of the coordinator and each segment data directory using the following naming convention: `gpdb-*YYYY*-*MM*-*DD_hhmmss*.csv` . Administrators need to implement scripts or programs to periodically clean up old log files in the `log` directory of the coordinator and each segment instance.

Log rotation can be triggered by the size of the current log file or the age of the current log file. The `log_rotation_size` configuration parameter sets the size of an individual log file that triggers log rotation. When the log file size is equal to or greater than the specified size, the file is closed and a new log file is created. The `log_rotation_size` value is specified in kilobytes. The default is 1048576 kilobytes, or 1GB. If `log_rotation_size` is set to 0, size-based rotation is deactivated.

The `log_rotation_age` configuration parameter specifies the age of a log file that triggers rotation. When the specified amount of time has elapsed since the log file was created, the file is closed and a new log file is created. The default `log_rotation_age` , 1d, creates a new log file 24 hours after the current log file was created. If `log_rotation_age` is set to 0, time-based rotation is deactivated.

For information about viewing the database server log files, see Viewing the Database Server Log Files.

#### Management Utility Log Files

Log files for the WarehousePG management utilities are written to `~/gpAdminLogs` by default. The naming convention for management log files is:

```
<script_name>_<date>.log
```

The log entry format is:

```
<timestamp>:<utility>:<host>:<user>:[INFO|WARN|FATAL]:<message>
```

The log file for a particular utility execution is appended to its daily log file each time that utility is run.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.2.12 Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks

This section lists monitoring and maintenance activities recommended to ensure high availability and consistent performance of your WarehousePG cluster.

The tables in the following sections suggest activities that a WarehousePG cluster Administrator can perform periodically to ensure that all components of the system are operating optimally. Monitoring activities help you to detect and diagnose problems early. Maintenance activities help you to keep the system up-to-date and avoid deteriorating performance, for example, from bloated system tables or diminishing free disk space.

It is not necessary to implement all of these suggestions in every cluster; use the frequency and severity recommendations as a guide to implement measures according to your service requirements.

**Parent topic:** Managing a WarehousePG cluster

### Database State Monitoring Activities

**Database State Monitoring Activities**

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| List segments that are currently down. If any rows are returned, this should generate a warning or alert.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Run the following query in the `postgres` database:<br><br>`SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration WHERE status = 'd';` | If the query returns any rows, follow these steps to correct the problem:<br><br>1. Verify that the hosts with down segments are responsive.<br>2. If hosts are OK, check the log files for the primaries and mirrors of the down segments to discover the root cause of the segments going down.<br>3. If no unexpected errors are found, run the `gprecoverseg` utility to bring the segments back online. |
| Check for segments that are up and not in sync. If rows are returned, this should generate a warning or alert.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes | Execute the following query in the `postgres` database:<br><br>`SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration WHERE mode = 'n' and status = 'u' and content <> -1;` | If the query returns rows then the segment might be in the process of moving from `Not In Sync` to `Synchronized` mode. Use `gpstate -e` to track progress. |
| Check for segments that are not operating in their preferred role but are marked as up and `Synchronized`. If any segments are found, the cluster may not be balanced. If any rows are returned this should generate a warning or alert.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Execute the following query in the `postgres` database:<br><br>`SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration WHERE preferred_role <> role and status = 'u' and mode = 's';` | When the segments are not running in their preferred role, processing might be skewed. Run `gprecoverseg -r` to bring the segments back into their preferred roles. |
| Run a distributed query to test that it runs on all segments. One row should be returned for each primary segment.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Execute the following query in the `postgres` database:<br><br>`SELECT gp_segment_id, count(*) FROM gp_dist_random('pg_class') GROUP BY 1;` | If this query fails, there is an issue dispatching to some segments in the cluster. This is a rare event. Check the hosts that are not able to be dispatched to ensure there is no hardware or networking issue. |
| Test the state of coordinator mirroring on WarehousePG. If the value is not "STREAMING", raise an alert or warning.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Run the following `psql` command:<br><br>`psql <dbname> -c 'SELECT pid, state FROM pg_stat_replication;'` | Check the log file from the coordinator and standby coordinator for errors. If there are no unexpected errors and the machines are up, run the `gpinitstandby` utility to bring the standby online. |
| Perform a basic check to see if the coordinator is up and functioning.<br><br>Recommended frequency: run every 5 to 10 minutes<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Run the following query in the `postgres` database:<br><br>`SELECT count(*) FROM gp_segment_configuration;` | If this query fails, the active coordinator may be down. Try to start the database on the original coordinator if the server is up and running. If that fails, try to activate the standby coordinator as coordinator. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Hardware and Operating System Monitoring

### Hardware and Operating System Monitoring Activities

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Check disk space usage on volumes used for WarehousePG data storage and the OS.<br><br>Recommended frequency: every 5 to 30 minutes<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Set up a disk space check.<br><br>- Set a threshold to raise an alert when a disk reaches a percentage of capacity. The recommended threshold is 75% full.<br>- It is not recommended to run the system with capacities approaching 100%. | Use `VACUUM` / `VACUUM FULL` on user tables to reclaim space occupied by dead rows. |
| Check for errors or dropped packets on the network interfaces.<br><br>Recommended frequency: hourly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Set up a network interface checks. | Work with network and OS teams to resolve errors. |
| Check for RAID errors or degraded RAID performance.<br><br>Recommended frequency: every 5 minutes<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Set up a RAID check. | - Replace failed disks as soon as possible.<br>- Work with system administration team to resolve other RAID or controller errors as soon as possible. |
| Check for adequate I/O bandwidth and I/O skew.<br><br>Recommended frequency: when create a cluster or when hardware issues are suspected. | Run the WarehousePG `gpcheckperf` utility. | The cluster may be under-specified if data transfer rates are not similar to the following:<br><br>- 2GB per second disk read<br>- 1 GB per second disk write<br>- 10 Gigabit per second network read and write<br><br>If transfer rates are lower than expected, consult with your data architect regarding performance expectations.<br><br>If the machines on the cluster display an uneven performance profile, work with the system administration team to fix faulty machines. |

## Catalog Monitoring

### Catalog Monitoring Activities

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Run catalog consistency checks in each database to ensure the catalog on each host in the cluster is consistent and in a good state.<br><br>You may run this command while the database is up and running.<br><br>Recommended frequency: weekly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Run the WarehousePG `gpcheckcat` utility in each database:<br><br>`gpcheckcat -O`<br><br>**Note:** With the `-O` option, `gpcheckcat` runs just 10 of its usual 15 tests. | Run the repair scripts for any issues identified. |
| Check for `pg_class` entries that have no corresponding pg_ `attribute` entry.<br><br>Recommended frequency: monthly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | During a downtime, with no users on the system, run the WarehousePG `gpcheckcat` utility in each database:<br><br>`gpcheckcat -R pgclass` | Run the repair scripts for any issues identified. |
| Check for leaked temporary schema and missing schema definition.<br><br>Recommended frequency: monthly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | During a downtime, with no users on the system, run the WarehousePG `gpcheckcat` utility in each database:<br><br>`gpcheckcat -R namespace` | Run the repair scripts for any issues identified. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Check constraints on randomly distributed tables.<br><br>Recommended frequency: monthly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | During a downtime, with no users on the system, run the WarehousePG `gpcheckcat` utility in each database:<br><br>`gpcheckcat -R distribution_policy` | Run the repair scripts for any issues identified. |
| Check for dependencies on non-existent objects.<br><br>Recommended frequency: monthly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | During a downtime, with no users on the system, run the WarehousePG `gpcheckcat` utility in each database:<br><br>`gpcheckcat -R dependency` | Run the repair scripts for any issues identified. |

### Data Maintenance

#### Data Maintenance Activities

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Check for missing statistics on tables. | Check the `gp_stats_missing` view in each database:<br><br>`SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_stats_missing;` | Run `ANALYZE` on tables that are missing statistics. |
| Check for tables that have bloat (dead space) in data files that cannot be recovered by a regular `VACUUM` command.<br><br>Recommended frequency: weekly or monthly<br><br>Severity: WARNING | Check the `gp_bloat_diag` view in each database:<br><br>`SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_diag;` | `VACUUM FULL` acquires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on tables. Run `VACUUM FULL` during a time when users and applications do not require access to the tables, such as during a time of low activity, or during a maintenance window. |

### Database Maintenance

#### Database Maintenance Activities

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Reclaim space occupied by deleted rows in the heap tables so that the space they occupy can be reused.<br><br>Recommended frequency: daily<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Vacuum user tables:<br><br>`VACUUM <table>;` | Vacuum updated tables regularly to prevent bloating. |
| Update table statistics.<br><br>Recommended frequency: after loading data and before executing queries<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Analyze user tables. You can use the `analyzedb` management utility:<br><br>`analyzedb -d <database> -a` | Analyze updated tables regularly so that the optimizer can produce efficient query execution plans. |
| Backup the database data.<br><br>Recommended frequency: daily, or as required by your backup plan<br><br>Severity: CRITICAL | Run the `gpbackup` utility to create a backup of the coordinator and segment databases in parallel. | Best practice is to have a current backup ready in case the database must be restored. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Vacuum, reindex, and analyze system catalogs to maintain an efficient catalog.<br><br>Recommended frequency: weekly, or more often if database objects are created and dropped frequently | 1. `VACUUM` the system tables in each database.<br>2. Run `REINDEX SYSTEM` in each database, or use the `reindexdb` command-line utility with the `-s` option: `reindexdb -s <database>`<br>3. `ANALYZE` each of the system tables: `analyzedb -s pg_catalog -d <database>` | The optimizer retrieves information from the system tables to create query plans. If system tables and indexes are allowed to become bloated over time, scanning the system tables increases query execution time. It is important to run `ANALYZE` after reindexing, because `REINDEX` leaves indexes with no statistics. |

## Patching and Upgrading

### Patch and Upgrade Activities

| Activity | Procedure | Corrective Actions |
|---|---|---|
| Ensure any bug fixes or enhancements are applied to the kernel.<br><br>Recommended frequency: at least every 6 months<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Follow the vendor's instructions to update the Linux kernel. | Keep the kernel current to include bug fixes and security fixes, and to avoid difficult future upgrades. |
| Install WarehousePG minor releases, for example 6.21.*x*.<br><br>Recommended frequency: quarterly<br><br>Severity: IMPORTANT | Follow upgrade instructions in the WarehousePG *Release Notes*. Always upgrade to the latest in the series. | Keep the WarehousePG software current to incorporate bug fixes, performance enhancements, and feature enhancements into your WarehousePG cluster. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.3 Managing WarehousePG Access

Securing WarehousePG includes protecting access to the database through network configuration, database user authentication, and encryption.

- **Configuring Client Authentication**
  This topic explains how to configure client connections and authentication for WarehousePG.
- **Managing Roles and Privileges**
  The WarehousePG authorization mechanism stores roles and permissions to access database objects in the database and is administered using SQL statements or command-line utilities.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.3.1 Configuring Client Authentication

This topic explains how to configure client connections and authentication for WarehousePG.

When a WarehousePG cluster is first initialized, the system contains one predefined *superuser* role. This role will have the same name as the operating system user who initialized the WarehousePG cluster. This role is referred to as `gpadmin`. By default, the system is configured to only allow local connections to the database from the `gpadmin` role. If you want to allow any other roles to connect, or if you want to allow connections from remote hosts, you have to configure WarehousePG to allow such connections. This section explains how to configure client connections and authentication to WarehousePG.

- **Using LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL**
  You can control access to WarehousePG with an LDAP server and, optionally, secure the connection with encryption by adding parameters to pg_hba.conf file entries.
- **Using Kerberos Authentication**
  You can control access to WarehousePG with a Kerberos authentication server.
- **Configuring Kerberos for Linux Clients**
  You can configure Linux client applications to connect to a WarehousePG cluster that is configured to authenticate with Kerberos.
- **Configuring Kerberos For Windows Clients**
  You can configure Microsoft Windows client applications to connect to a WarehousePG cluster that is configured to authenticate with Kerberos.

**Parent topic:** Managing WarehousePG Access

### Allowing Connections to WarehousePG

Client access and authentication is controlled by the standard PostgreSQL host-based authentication file, pg_hba.conf. For detailed information about this file, see The pg_hba.conf File in the PostgreSQL documentation.

In WarehousePG, the pg_hba.conf file of the coordinator instance controls client access and authentication to your WarehousePG cluster. The WarehousePG segments also have pg_hba.conf files, but these are already correctly configured to allow only client connections from the coordinator host. The segments never accept outside client connections, so there is no need to alter the `pg_hba.conf` file on segments.

The general format of the pg_hba.conf file is a set of records, one per line. WarehousePG ignores blank lines and any text after the `#` comment character. A record consists of a number of fields that are separated by spaces or tabs. Fields can contain white space if the field value is quoted. Records cannot be continued across lines. Each remote client access record has the following format:

```
host    database    role    address    authentication-method
```

Each UNIX-domain socket access record is in this format:

```
local    database    role    authentication-method
```

The following table describes meaning of each field.

**Table 1. pg_hba.conf Fields**

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| `local` | Matches connection attempts using UNIX-domain sockets. Without a record of this type, UNIX-domain socket connections are disallowed. |
| `host` | Matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP. Remote TCP/IP connections aren't possible unless the server starts with an appropriate value for the `listen_addresses` server configuration parameter. |
| `hostssl` | Matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with SSL encryption. SSL must be enabled at server start time by setting the `ssl` server configuration parameter. |
| `hostnossl` | Matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that don't use SSL. |
| `database` | Specifies which database names this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all databases. Multiple database names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing database names can be specified by preceding the file name with a `@`. |
| `role` | Specifies which database role names this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all roles. If the specified role is a group and you want all members of that group included, precede the role name with a `+`. Multiple role names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing role names can be specified by preceding the file name with a `@`. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Field | Description |
|---|---|
| `address` | Specifies the client machine addresses that this record matches. This field can contain an IP address, an IP address range, or a host name.<br><br>An IP address range is specified using standard numeric notation for the range's starting address, then a slash ( `/` ) and a CIDR mask length. The mask length indicates the number of high-order bits of the client IP address that must match. Bits to the right of this mask length must be zero in the given IP address. There must not be any white space between the IP address, the `/` , and the CIDR mask length.<br><br>Typical examples of an IPv4 address range specified this way are `172.20.143.89/32` for a single host, `172.20.143.0/24` for a small network, or `10.6.0.0/16` for a larger one. An IPv6 address range might look like `::1/128` for a single host (in this case the IPv6 loopback address) or `fe80::7a31:c1ff:0000:0000/96` for a small network. `0.0.0.0/0` represents all IPv4 addresses, and `::0/0` represents all IPv6 addresses. To specify a single host, use a mask length of 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6. In a network address, don't omit trailing zeroes.<br><br>An entry given in IPv4 format matches only IPv4 connections, and an entry given in IPv6 format matches only IPv6 connections, even if the represented address is in the IPv4-in-IPv6 range. **Note** Entries in IPv6 format are rejected if the host system C library doesn't support IPv6 addresses.<br><br>If a host name is specified (an address that isn't an IP address or IP range is treated as a host name), that name is compared with the result of a reverse name resolution of the client IP address (for example, reverse DNS lookup, if DNS is used). Host name comparisons are case insensitive. If there's a match, then a forward name resolution (for example, forward DNS lookup) is performed on the host name to check whether any of the addresses it resolves to are equal to the client IP address. If both directions match, the entry is considered a match.<br><br>Some host name databases allow associating an IP address with multiple host names, but the operating system only returns one host name when asked to resolve an IP address. The host name used in `pg_hba.conf` must be the one that the address-to-name resolution of the client IP address returns, otherwise the line isn't considered a match.<br><br>When host names are specified in `pg_hba.conf` , make sure that name resolution is reasonably fast. Setting up a local name resolution cache such as `nscd` can help. You can also enable the server configuration parameter `log_hostname` to see the client host name instead of the IP address in the log. |
| `IP-address`<br>`IP-mask` | These fields can be used as an alternative to the CIDR address notation. Instead of specifying the mask length, the actual mask is specified in a separate column. For example, `255.0.0.0` represents an IPv4 CIDR mask length of 8, and `255.255.255.255` represents a CIDR mask length of 32. |
| `authentication-method` | Specifies the authentication method to use when connecting. WarehousePG supports theauthentication methods supported by PostgreSQL 9.4. |

> **Caution** For a more secure system, consider removing records for remote connections that use trust authentication from the `pg_hba.conf` file. Trust authentication grants any user who can connect to the server access to the database using any role they specify. You can safely replace trust authentication with ident authentication for local UNIX-socket connections. You can also use ident authentication for local and remote TCP clients, but the client host must be running an ident service and you must trust the integrity of that machine.

#### Editing the pg_hba.conf File

Initially, the `pg_hba.conf` file is set up with generous permissions for the gpadmin user and no database access for other WarehousePG roles. You will need to edit the `pg_hba.conf` file to enable users' access to databases and to secure the gpadmin user. Consider removing entries that have trust authentication, since they allow anyone with access to the server to connect with any role they choose. For local (UNIX socket) connections, use ident authentication, which requires the operating system user to match the role specified. For local and remote TCP connections, ident authentication requires the client's host to run an indent service. You can install an ident service on the coordinator host and then use ident authentication for local TCP connections, for example `127.0.0.1/28` . Using ident authentication for remote TCP connections is less secure because it requires you to trust the integrity of the ident service on the client's host.

This example shows how to edit the pg_hba.conf file of the coordinator to allow remote client access to all databases from all roles using encrypted password authentication.

##### Editing pg_hba.conf

1. Open the file $MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/pg_hba.conf in a text editor.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Add a line to the file for each type of connection you want to allow. Records are read sequentially, so the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example:

```
# allow the gpadmin user local access to all databases
# using ident authentication
local   all   gpadmin   ident         sameuser
host    all   gpadmin   127.0.0.1/32  ident
host    all   gpadmin   ::1/128       ident
# allow the 'dba' role access to any database from any
# host with IP address 192.168.x.x and use md5 encrypted
# passwords to authenticate the user
# Note that to use SHA-256 encryption, replace md5 with
# password in the line below
host    all   dba   192.168.0.0/32  md5
# allow all roles access to any database from any
# host and use ldap to authenticate the user. WarehousePG role
# names must match the LDAP common name.
host    all   all   192.168.0.0/32  ldap ldapserver=usldap1 ldapport=1389 ldapprefix="cn="
ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=company,dc=com"
```

3. Save and close the file.

4. Reload the pg_hba.conf configuration file for your changes to take effect:

```
$ gpstop -u
```

> **Note** Note that you can also control database access by setting object privileges as described inManaging Object Privileges. The pg_hba.conf file just controls who can initiate a database session and how those connections are authenticated.

### Limiting Concurrent Connections

WarehousePG allocates some resources on a per-connection basis, so setting the maximum number of connections allowed is recommended.

To limit the number of active concurrent sessions to your WarehousePG cluster, you can configure the `max_connections` server configuration parameter. This is a *local* parameter, meaning that you must set it in the `postgresql.conf` file of the coordinator, the standby coordinator, and each segment instance (primary and mirror). The recommended value of `max_connections` on segments is 5-10 times the value on the coordinator.

When you set `max_connections`, you must also set the dependent parameter `max_prepared_transactions`. This value must be at least as large as the value of `max_connections` on the coordinator, and segment instances should be set to the same value as the coordinator.

For example:

- In `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` (including standby coordinator):

```
max_connections=100
max_prepared_transactions=100
```

- In `SEGMENT_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` for all segment instances:

```
max_connections=500
max_prepared_transactions=100
```

The following steps set the parameter values with the WarehousePG utility `gpconfig`.

For information about `gpconfig`, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**To change the number of allowed connections**

1. Log into the WarehousePG coordinator host as the WarehousePG administrator and source the file `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh`.

2. Set the value of the `max_connections` parameter. This `gpconfig` command sets the value on the segments to 1000 and the value on the coordinator to 200.

   ```
   $ gpconfig -c max_connections -v 1000 -m 200
   ```

   The value on the segments must be greater than the value on the coordinator. The recommended value of `max_connections` on segments is 5-10 times the value on the coordinator.

3. Set the value of the `max_prepared_transactions` parameter. This `gpconfig` command sets the value to 200 on the coordinator and all segments.

   ```
   $ gpconfig -c max_prepared_transactions -v 200
   ```

   The value of `max_prepared_transactions` must be greater than or equal to `max_connections` on the coordinator.

4. Stop and restart your WarehousePG cluster.

   ```
   $ gpstop -r
   ```

5. You can check the value of parameters on the coordinator and segments with the `gpconfig -s` option. This `gpconfig` command displays the values of the `max_connections` parameter.

   ```
   $ gpconfig -s max_connections
   ```

> **Note** Raising the values of these parameters may cause WarehousePG to request more shared memory. To mitigate this effect, consider decreasing other memory-related parameters such as `gp_cached_segworkers_threshold`.

### Encrypting Client/Server Connections

Enable SSL for client connections to WarehousePG to encrypt the data passed over the network between the client and the database.

WarehousePG has native support for SSL connections between the client and the coordinator server. SSL connections prevent third parties from snooping on the packets, and also prevent man-in-the-middle attacks. SSL should be used whenever the client connection goes through an insecure link, and must be used whenever client certificate authentication is used.

Enabling WarehousePG in SSL mode requires the following items.

- OpenSSL installed on both the client and the coordinator server hosts (coordinator and standby coordinator).

- The SSL files server.key (server private key) and server.crt (server certificate) should be correctly generated for the coordinator host and standby coordinator host.

  - The private key should not be protected with a passphrase. The server does not prompt for a passphrase for the private key, and WarehousePG start up fails with an error if one is required.
  - On a production system, there should be a key and certificate pair for the coordinator host and a pair for the standby coordinator host with a subject CN (Common Name) for the coordinator host and standby coordinator host. A self-signed certificate can be used for testing, but a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) should be used in production, so the client can verify the identity of the server. Either a global or local CA can be used. If all the clients are local to the organization, a local CA is recommended.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Ensure that WarehousePG can access server.key and server.crt, and any additional authentication files such as `root.crt` (for trusted certificate authorities). When starting in SSL mode, the WarehousePG coordinator looks for server.key and server.crt. As the default, WarehousePG does not start if the files are not in the coordinator data directory ( `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` ). Also, if you use other SSL authentication files such as `root.crt` (trusted certificate authorities), the files must be on the coordinator host.

  If WarehousePG coordinator mirroring is enabled with SSL client authentication, SSL authentication files must be on both the coordinator host and standby coordinator host and *should not be placed* in the default directory `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` . When coordinator mirroring is enabled, an `initstandby` operation copies the contents of the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` from the coordinator to the standby coordinator and the incorrect SSL key, and cert files (the coordinator files, and not the standby coordinator files) will prevent standby coordinator start up.

  You can specify a different directory for the location of the SSL server files with the `postgresql.conf` parameters `sslcert` , `sslkey` , `sslrootcert` , and `sslcrl` . For more information about the parameters, see SSL Client Authentication in the *Security Configuration Guide*.

WarehousePG can be started with SSL enabled by setting the server configuration parameter `ssl=on` in the `postgresql.conf` file on the coordinator and standby coordinator hosts. This `gpconfig` command sets the parameter:

```
gpconfig -c ssl -m on -v off
```

Setting the parameter requires a server restart. This command restarts the system: `gpstop -ra` .

#### Negotiating TLS Version Automatically

WarehousePG negotiates the highest TLS protocol version that both the client and the coordinator support. When both endpoints run OpenSSL 1.1.1 or later, connections use TLS 1.3 automatically, with no additional configuration required.

Confirm the negotiated version for a connection with the `ssl_version()` function, available after you create the `sslinfo` extension:

```
psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION sslinfo;'
psql -d testdb -c 'SELECT ssl_version();'
```

> **Note**
>
> The `pg_stat_ssl` system view, which reports the negotiated TLS version and cipher for each connection, is not available in WarehousePG 6 because WarehousePG 6 is based on PostgreSQL 9.4, and the view was introduced in a later PostgreSQL release.

#### Creating a Self-signed Certificate without a Passphrase for Testing Only

To create a quick self-signed certificate for the server for testing, use the following OpenSSL command:

```
openssl req -new -text -out server.req
```

Enter the information requested by the prompts. Be sure to enter the local host name as *Common Name*. The challenge password can be left blank.

The program will generate a key that is passphrase protected, and does not accept a passphrase that is less than four characters long.

To use this certificate with WarehousePG, remove the passphrase with the following commands:

```
openssl rsa -in privkey.pem -out server.key
rm privkey.pem
```

Enter the old passphrase when prompted to unlock the existing key.

Then, enter the following command to turn the certificate into a self-signed certificate and to copy the key and certificate to a location where the server will look for them.

```
openssl req -x509 -in server.req -text -key server.key -out server.crt
```

Finally, change the permissions on the key with the following command. The server will reject the file if the permissions are less restrictive than these.

```
chmod og-rwx server.key
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For more details on how to create your server private key and certificate, refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.3.1.1 Using Kerberos Authentication

You can control access to WarehousePG with a Kerberos authentication server.

WarehousePG supports the Generic Security Service Application Program Interface (GSSAPI) with Kerberos authentication. GSSAPI provides automatic authentication (single sign-on) for systems that support it. You specify the WarehousePG users (roles) that require Kerberos authentication in the WarehousePG configuration file pg_hba.conf. The login fails if Kerberos authentication is not available when a role attempts to log in to WarehousePG.

Kerberos provides a secure, encrypted authentication service. It does not encrypt data exchanged between the client and database and provides no authorization services. To encrypt data exchanged over the network, you must use an SSL connection. To manage authorization for access to WarehousePGs and objects such as schemas and tables, you use settings in the pg_hba.conf file and privileges given to WarehousePG users and roles within the database. For information about managing authorization privileges, see Managing Roles and Privileges.

For more information about Kerberos, see http://web.mit.edu/kerberos/.

#### Prerequisites

Before configuring Kerberos authentication for WarehousePG, ensure that:

- You can identify the KDC server you use for Kerberos authentication and the Kerberos realm for your WarehousePG cluster. If you have not yet configured your MIT Kerberos KDC server, see Installing and Configuring a Kerberos KDC Server for example instructions.
- System time on the Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC) server and WarehousePG coordinator is synchronized. (For example, install the `ntp` package on both servers.)
- Network connectivity exists between the KDC server and the WarehousePG coordinator host.
- Java 1.7.0_17 or later is installed on all WarehousePG hosts. Java 1.7.0_17 is required to use Kerberos-authenticated JDBC on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x or 7.x.

#### Procedure

Following are the tasks to complete to set up Kerberos authentication for WarehousePG.

- Creating WarehousePG Principals in the KDC Database
- Installing the Kerberos Client on the coordinator host
- Configuring WarehousePG to use Kerberos Authentication
- Mapping Kerberos Principals to WarehousePG Roles
- Configuring JDBC Kerberos Authentication for WarehousePG
- Configuring Kerberos for Linux Clients
- Configuring Kerberos For Windows Clients

**Parent topic:** Configuring Client Authentication

#### Creating WarehousePG Principals in the KDC Database

Create a service principal for the WarehousePG service and a Kerberos admin principal that allows managing the KDC database as the gpadmin user.

1. Log in to the Kerberos KDC server as the root user.

```
$ ssh root@<kdc-server>
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Create a principal for the WarehousePG service.

```
# kadmin.local -q "addprinc -randkey postgres/mdw@GPDB.KRB"
```

The `-randkey` option prevents the command from prompting for a password.

The `postgres` part of the principal names matches the value of the WarehousePG `krb_srvname` server configuration parameter, which is `postgres` by default.

The host name part of the principal name must match the output of the `hostname` command on the WarehousePG coordinator host. If the `hostname` command shows the fully qualified domain name (FQDN), use it in the principal name, for example `postgres/mdw.example.com@GPDB.KRB`.

The `GPDB.KRB` part of the principal name is the Kerberos realm name.

3. Create a principal for the gpadmin/admin role.

```
# kadmin.local -q "addprinc gpadmin/admin@GPDB.KRB"
```

This principal allows you to manage the KDC database when you are logged in as gpadmin. Make sure that the Kerberos `kadm.acl` configuration file contains an ACL to grant permissions to this principal. For example, this ACL grants all permissions to any admin user in the GPDB.KRB realm.

```
*/admin@GPDB.KRB *
```

4. Create a keytab file with `kadmin.local`. The following example creates a keytab file `gpdb-kerberos.keytab` in the current directory with authentication information for the WarehousePG service principal and the gpadmin/admin principal.

```
# kadmin.local -q "ktadd -k gpdb-kerberos.keytab postgres/mdw@GPDB.KRB gpadmin/admin@GPDB.KRB"
```

5. Copy the keytab file to the coordinator host.

```
# scp gpdb-kerberos.keytab gpadmin@mdw:~
```

### Installing the Kerberos Client on the coordinator host

Install the Kerberos client utilities and libraries on the WarehousePG coordinator.

1. Install the Kerberos packages on the WarehousePG coordinator.

```
$ sudo yum install krb5-libs krb5-workstation
```

2. Copy the `/etc/krb5.conf` file from the KDC server to `/etc/krb5.conf` on the WarehousePG coordinator host.

### Configuring WarehousePG to use Kerberos Authentication

Configure WarehousePG to use Kerberos.

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator host as the gpadmin user.

```
$ ssh gpadmin@<master>
$ source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
```

2. Set the ownership and permissions of the keytab file you copied from the KDC server.

```
$ chown gpadmin:gpadmin /home/gpadmin/gpdb-kerberos.keytab
$ chmod 400 /home/gpadmin/gpdb-kerberos.keytab
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Configure the location of the keytab file by setting the WarehousePG `krb_server_keyfile` server configuration parameter. This `gpconfig` command specifies the folder /home/gpadmin as the location of the keytab file gpdb-kerberos.keytab.

```
$ gpconfig -c krb_server_keyfile -v  '/home/gpadmin/gpdb-kerberos.keytab'
```

4. Modify the WarehousePG file `pg_hba.conf` to enable Kerberos support. For example, adding the following line to `pg_hba.conf` adds GSSAPI and Kerberos authentication support for connection requests from all users and hosts on the same network to all WarehousePG databases.

```
host all all 0.0.0.0/0 gss include_realm=0 krb_realm=GPDB.KRB
```

   Setting the `krb_realm` option to a realm name ensures that only users from that realm can successfully authenticate with Kerberos. Setting the `include_realm` option to `0` excludes the realm name from the authenticated user name. For information about the `pg_hba.conf` file, see The pg_hba.conf file in the PostgreSQL documentation.

5. Restart WarehousePG after updating the `krb_server_keyfile` parameter and the `pg_hba.conf` file.

```
$ gpstop -ar
```

6. Create the gpadmin/admin WarehousePG superuser role.

```
$ createuser gpadmin/admin --superuser
```

   The Kerberos keys for this database role are in the keyfile you copied from the KDC server.

7. Create a ticket using `kinit` and show the tickets in the Kerberos ticket cache with `klist`.

```
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH= kinit -k -t /home/gpadmin/gpdb-kerberos.keytab gpadmin/admin@GPDB.KRB
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH= klist
Ticket cache: FILE:/tmp/krb5cc_1000
Default principal: gpadmin/admin@GPDB.KRB

Valid starting       Expires              Service principal
06/13/2018 17:37:35  06/14/2018 17:37:35  krbtgt/GPDB.KRB@GPDB.KRB
```

   > **Note** When you set up the WarehousePG environment by sourcing the `greenplum-db_path.sh` script, the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable is set to include the WarehousePG `lib` directory, which includes Kerberos libraries. This may cause Kerberos utility commands such as `kinit` and `klist` to fail due to version conflicts. The solution is to run Kerberos utilities before you source the `greenplum-db_path.sh` file or temporarily unset the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` variable when you run Kerberos utilities, as shown in the example.

8. As a test, log in to the postgres database with the `gpadmin/admin` role:

```
$ psql -U "gpadmin/admin" -h mdw postgres
psql (9.4.20)
Type "help" for help.

postgres=# select current_user;
 current_user
---------------
 gpadmin/admin
(1 row)
```

   > **Note** When you start `psql` on the coordinator host, you must include the `-h <master-hostname>` option to force a TCP connection because Kerberos authentication does not work with local connections.

If a Kerberos principal is not a WarehousePG user, a message similar to the following is displayed from the `psql` command line when the user attempts to log in to the database:

```
psql: krb5_sendauth: Bad response
```

The principal must be added as a WarehousePG user.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Mapping Kerberos Principals to WarehousePG Roles

To connect to a WarehousePG cluster with Kerberos authentication enabled, a user first requests a ticket-granting ticket from the KDC server using the `kinit` utility with a password or a keytab file provided by the Kerberos admin. When the user then connects to the Kerberos-enabled WarehousePG cluster, the user's Kerberos principle name will be the WarehousePG role name, subject to transformations specified in the options field of the `gss` entry in the WarehousePG `pg_hba.conf` file:

- If the `krb_realm=<realm>` option is present, WarehousePG only accepts Kerberos principals who are members pf the specified realm.
- If the `include_realm=0` option is specified, the WarehousePG role name is the Kerberos principal name without the Kerberos realm. If the `include_realm=1` option is instead specified, the Kerberos realm is not stripped from the WarehousePG rolename. The role must have been created with the WarehousePG `CREATE ROLE` command.
- If the `map=<map-name>` option is specified, the Kerberos principal name is compared to entries labeled with the specified `<map-name>` in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/pg_ident.conf` file and replaced with the WarehousePG role name specified in the first matching entry.

A user name map is defined in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/pg_ident.conf` configuration file. This example defines a map named `mymap` with two entries.

```
# MAPNAME    SYSTEM-USERNAME         GP-USERNAME
mymap        /^admin@GPDB.KRB$       gpadmin
mymap        /^(.*)_gp)@GPDB.KRB$    \1
```

The map name is specified in the `pg_hba.conf` Kerberos entry in the options field:

```
host all all 0.0.0.0/0 gss include_realm=0 krb_realm=GPDB.KRB map=mymap
```

The first map entry matches the Kerberos principal admin@GPDB.KRB and replaces it with the WarehousePG gpadmin role name. The second entry uses a wildcard to match any Kerberos principal in the GPDB-KRB realm with a name ending with the characters `_gp` and replaces it with the initial portion of the principal name. WarehousePG applies the first matching map entry in the `pg_ident.conf` file, so the order of entries is significant.

For more information about using username maps see Username maps in the PostgreSQL documentation.

### Configuring JDBC Kerberos Authentication for WarehousePG

Enable Kerberos-authenticated JDBC access to WarehousePG.

You can configure WarehousePG to use Kerberos to run user-defined Java functions.

1. Ensure that Kerberos is installed and configured on the WarehousePG coordinator. See Installing the Kerberos Client on the coordinator host.

2. Create the file .java.login.config in the folder `/home/gpadmin` and add the following text to the file:

   ```
   pgjdbc {
     com.sun.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule required
     doNotPrompt=true
     useTicketCache=true
     debug=true
     client=true;
   };
   ```

3. Create a Java application that connects to WarehousePG using Kerberos authentication. The following example database connection URL uses a PostgreSQL JDBC driver and specifies parameters for Kerberos authentication:

   ```
   jdbc:postgresql://mdw:5432/mytest?kerberosServerName=postgres
   &jaasApplicationName=pgjdbc&user=gpadmin/gpdb-kdc
   ```

   The parameter names and values specified depend on how the Java application performs Kerberos authentication.

4. Test the Kerberos login by running a sample Java application from WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Installing and Configuring a Kerberos KDC Server

Steps to set up a Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC) server on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux host for use with WarehousePG.

If you do not already have a KDC, follow these steps to install and configure a KDC server on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux host with a `GPDB.KRB` realm. The host name of the KDC server in this example is gpdb-kdc.

1. Install the Kerberos server and client packages:

   ```
   $ sudo yum install krb5-libs krb5-server krb5-workstation
   ```

2. Edit the /etc/krb5.conf configuration file. The following example shows a Kerberos server configured with a default `GPDB.KRB` realm.

   ```
   [logging]
    default = FILE:/var/log/krb5libs.log
    kdc = FILE:/var/log/krb5kdc.log
    admin_server = FILE:/var/log/kadmind.log

   [libdefaults]
    default_realm = GPDB.KRB
    dns_lookup_realm = false
    dns_lookup_kdc = false
    ticket_lifetime = 24h
    renew_lifetime = 7d
    forwardable = true
    default_tgs_enctypes = aes128-cts des3-hmac-sha1 des-cbc-crc des-cbc-md5
    default_tkt_enctypes = aes128-cts des3-hmac-sha1 des-cbc-crc des-cbc-md5
    permitted_enctypes = aes128-cts des3-hmac-sha1 des-cbc-crc des-cbc-md5

   [realms]
    GPDB.KRB = {
     kdc = gpdb-kdc:88
     admin_server = gpdb-kdc:749
     default_domain = gpdb.krb
    }

   [domain_realm]
    .gpdb.krb = GPDB.KRB
    gpdb.krb = GPDB.KRB

   [appdefaults]
    pam = {
       debug = false
       ticket_lifetime = 36000
       renew_lifetime = 36000
       forwardable = true
       krb4_convert = false
    }
   ```

   The `kdc` and `admin_server` keys in the `[realms]` section specify the host ( `gpdb-kdc` ) and port where the Kerberos server is running. IP numbers can be used in place of host names.

   If your Kerberos server manages authentication for other realms, you would instead add the `GPDB.KRB` realm in the `[realms]` and `[domain_realm]` section of the `kdc.conf` file. See the Kerberos documentation for information about the `kdc.conf` file.

3. To create the Kerberos database, run the `kdb5_util` .

   ```
   # kdb5_util create -s
   ```

   The `kdb5_util` create command creates the database to store keys for the Kerberos realms that are managed by this KDC server. The -s option creates a stash file. Without the stash file, every time the KDC server starts it requests a password.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Add an administrative user to the KDC database with the `kadmin.local` utility. Because it does not itself depend on Kerberos authentication, the `kadmin.local` utility allows you to add an initial administrative user to the local Kerberos server. To add the user `gpadmin` as an administrative user to the KDC database, run the following command:

   ```
   # kadmin.local -q "addprinc gpadmin/admin"
   ```

   Most users do not need administrative access to the Kerberos server. They can use `kadmin` to manage their own principals (for example, to change their own password). For information about `kadmin`, see the Kerberos documentation.

5. If needed, edit the /var/kerberos/krb5kdc/kadm5.acl file to grant the appropriate permissions to `gpadmin`.

6. Start the Kerberos daemons:

   ```
   # /sbin/service krb5kdc start#
   /sbin/service kadmin start
   ```

7. To start Kerberos automatically upon restart:

   ```
   # /sbin/chkconfig krb5kdc on
   # /sbin/chkconfig kadmin on
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.3.1.2 Configuring Kerberos for Linux Clients

You can configure Linux client applications to connect to a WarehousePG cluster that is configured to authenticate with Kerberos.

If your JDBC application on Red Hat Enterprise Linux uses Kerberos authentication when it connects to your WarehousePG, your client system must be configured to use Kerberos authentication. If you are not using Kerberos authentication to connect to a WarehousePG, Kerberos is not needed on your client system.


- Requirements
- Setting Up Client System with Kerberos Authentication
- Running a Java Application


For information about enabling Kerberos authentication with WarehousePG, see the chapter "Setting Up Kerberos Authentication" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Configuring Client Authentication

#### Requirements

The following are requirements to connect to a WarehousePG that is enabled with Kerberos authentication from a client system with a JDBC application.


- Prerequisites
- Required Software on the Client Machine


##### Prerequisites

- Kerberos must be installed and configured on the WarehousePG coordinator host.

  > **Important** WarehousePG must be configured so that a remote user can connect to WarehousePG with Kerberos authentication. Authorization to access WarehousePG is controlled by the `pg_hba.conf` file. For details, see "Editing the pg_hba.conf File" in the *WarehousePG Administration Guide*, and also see the *WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide*.

- The client system requires the Kerberos configuration file `krb5.conf` from the WarehousePG coordinator.

- The client system requires a Kerberos keytab file that contains the authentication credentials for the WarehousePG user that is used to log into the database.

- The client machine must be able to connect to WarehousePG coordinator host.

  If necessary, add the WarehousePG coordinator host name and IP address to the system `hosts` file. On Linux systems, the `hosts` file is in `/etc`.

##### Required Software on the Client Machine

- The Kerberos `kinit` utility is required on the client machine. The `kinit` utility is available when you install the Kerberos packages:

  - krb5-libs
  - krb5-workstation

  > **Note** When you install the Kerberos packages, you can use other Kerberos utilities such as `klist` to display Kerberos ticket information.

Java applications require this additional software:

- Java JDK

  Java JDK 1.7.0_17 is supported on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x.

- Ensure that JAVA_HOME is set to the installation directory of the supported Java JDK.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Setting Up Client System with Kerberos Authentication

To connect to WarehousePG with Kerberos authentication requires a Kerberos ticket. On client systems, tickets are generated from Kerberos keytab files with the `kinit` utility and are stored in a cache file.

1. Install a copy of the Kerberos configuration file `krb5.conf` from the WarehousePG coordinator. The file is used by the WarehousePG client software and the Kerberos utilities.

   Install `krb5.conf` in the directory `/etc`.

   If needed, add the parameter `default_ccache_name` to the `[libdefaults]` section of the `krb5.ini` file and specify location of the Kerberos ticket cache file on the client system.

2. Obtain a Kerberos keytab file that contains the authentication credentials for the WarehousePG user.

3. Run `kinit` specifying the keytab file to create a ticket on the client machine. For this example, the keytab file `gpdb-kerberos.keytab` is in the current directory. The ticket cache file is in the `gpadmin` user home directory.

   ```
   > kinit -k -t gpdb-kerberos.keytab -c /home/gpadmin/cache.txt
     gpadmin/kerberos-gpdb@KRB.EXAMPLE.COM
   ```

### Running psql

From a remote system, you can access a WarehousePG that has Kerberos authentication enabled.

#### To connect to WarehousePG with psql

1. As the gpadmin user, open a command window.

2. Start `psql` from the command window and specify a connection to the WarehousePG specifying the user that is configured with Kerberos authentication.

   The following example logs into the WarehousePG on the machine `kerberos-gpdb` as the `gpadmin` user with the Kerberos credentials `gpadmin/kerberos-gpdb`:

   ```
   $ psql -U "gpadmin/kerberos-gpdb" -h kerberos-gpdb postgres
   ```

### Running a Java Application

Accessing WarehousePG from a Java application with Kerberos authentication uses the Java Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS)

1. Create the file `.java.login.config` in the user home folder.

   For example, on a Linux system, the home folder is similar to `/home/gpadmin`.

   Add the following text to the file:

   ```
   pgjdbc {
     com.sun.security.auth.module.Krb5LoginModule required
     doNotPrompt=true
     useTicketCache=true
     ticketCache = "/home/gpadmin/cache.txt"
     debug=true
     client=true;
   };
   ```

2. Create a Java application that connects to WarehousePG using Kerberos authentication and run the application as the user.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This example database connection URL uses a PostgreSQL JDBC driver and specifies parameters for Kerberos authentication.

```
jdbc:postgresql://kerberos-gpdb:5432/mytest?
  kerberosServerName=postgres&jaasApplicationName=pgjdbc&
  user=gpadmin/kerberos-gpdb
```

The parameter names and values specified depend on how the Java application performs Kerberos authentication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.3.1.3 Configuring Kerberos For Windows Clients

You can configure Microsoft Windows client applications to connect to a WarehousePG cluster that is configured to authenticate with Kerberos.

When a WarehousePG cluster is configured to authenticate with Kerberos, you can configure Kerberos authentication for the WarehousePG client utilities `gpload` and `psql` on a Microsoft Windows system. The WarehousePG clients authenticate with Kerberos directly.

This section contains the following information.


- Installing and Configuring Kerberos on a Windows System
- Running the psql Utility
- Example gpload YAML File
- Creating a Kerberos Keytab File
- Issues and Possible Solutions


These topics assume that the WarehousePG cluster is configured to authenticate with Kerberos. For information about configuring WarehousePG with Kerberos authentication, refer to Using Kerberos Authentication.

**Parent topic:** Configuring Client Authentication

#### Installing and Configuring Kerberos on a Windows System

The `kinit`, `kdestroy`, and `klist` MIT Kerberos Windows client programs and supporting libraries are installed on your system when you install the WarehousePG Client and Load Tools package:

- `kinit` - generate a Kerberos ticket
- `kdestroy` - destroy active Kerberos tickets
- `klist` - list Kerberos tickets

You must configure Kerberos on the Windows client to authenticate with WarehousePG:

1. Copy the Kerberos configuration file `/etc/krb5.conf` from the WarehousePG coordinator to the Windows system, rename it to `krb5.ini`, and place it in the default Kerberos location on the Windows system, `C:\ProgramData\MIT\Kerberos5\krb5.ini`. This directory may be hidden. This step requires administrative privileges on the Windows client system. You may also choose to place the `/etc/krb5.ini` file in a custom location. If you choose to do this, you must configure and set a system environment variable named `KRB5_CONFIG` to the custom location.

2. Locate the `[libdefaults]` section of the `krb5.ini` file, and remove the entry identifying the location of the Kerberos credentials cache file, `default_ccache_name`. This step requires administrative privileges on the Windows client system.

   This is an example configuration file with `default_ccache_name` removed. The `[logging]` section is also removed.

```
[libdefaults]
 debug = true
 default_etypes = aes256-cts-hmac-sha1-96
 default_realm = EXAMPLE.LOCAL
 dns_lookup_realm = false
 dns_lookup_kdc = false
 ticket_lifetime = 24h
 renew_lifetime = 7d
 forwardable = true

[realms]
 EXAMPLE.LOCAL = {
  kdc =bocdc.example.local
  admin_server = bocdc.example.local
 }

[domain_realm]
 .example.local = EXAMPLE.LOCAL
 example.local = EXAMPLE.LOCAL
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Set up the Kerberos credential cache file. On the Windows system, set the environment variable `KRB5CCNAME` to specify the file system location of the cache file. The file must be named `krb5cache`. This location identifies a file, not a directory, and should be unique to each login on the server. When you set `KRB5CCNAME`, you can specify the value in either a local user environment or within a session. For example, the following command sets `KRB5CCNAME` in the session:

   ```
   set KRB5CCNAME=%USERPROFILE%\krb5cache
   ```

4. Obtain your Kerberos principal and password or keytab file from your system administrator.

5. Generate a Kerberos ticket using a password or a keytab. For example, to generate a ticket using a password:

   ```
   kinit [<principal>]
   ```

   To generate a ticket using a keytab (as described in Creating a Kerberos Keytab File):

   ```
   kinit -k -t <keytab_filepath> [<principal>]
   ```

6. Set up the WarehousePG clients environment:

   ```
   set PGGSSLIB=gssapi
   "c:\Program Files\Greenplum\greenplum-clients\greenplum_clients_path.bat"
   ```

### Running the psql Utility

After you configure Kerberos and generate the Kerberos ticket on a Windows system, you can run the WarehousePG command line client `psql`.

If you get warnings indicating that the Console code page differs from Windows code page, you can run the Windows utility `chcp` to change the code page. This is an example of the warning and fix:

```
psql -h prod1.example.local warehouse
psql (9.4.20)
WARNING: Console code page (850) differs from Windows code page (1252)
 8-bit characters might not work correctly. See psql reference
 page "Notes for Windows users" for details.
Type "help" for help.

warehouse=# \q

chcp 1252
Active code page: 1252

psql -h prod1.example.local warehouse
psql (9.4.20)
Type "help" for help.
```

### Creating a Kerberos Keytab File

You can create and use a Kerberos `keytab` file to avoid entering a password at the command line or listing a password in a script file when you connect to a WarehousePG cluster, perhaps when automating a scheduled WarehousePG task such as `gpload`. You can create a keytab file with the Java JRE keytab utility `ktab`. If you use AES256-CTS-HMAC-SHA1-96 encryption, you need to download and install the Java extension *Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files for JDK/JRE* from Oracle.

> **Note** You must enter the password to create a keytab file. The password is visible onscreen as you enter it.

This example runs the Java `ktab.exe` program to create a keytab file (`-a` option) and list the keytab name and entries (`-l` `-e` `-t` options).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
C:\Users\dev1>"\Program Files\Java\jre1.8.0_77\bin"\ktab -a dev1
Password for dev1@EXAMPLE.LOCAL:<your_password>
Done!
Service key for dev1 is saved in C:\Users\dev1\krb5.keytab

C:\Users\dev1>"\Program Files\Java\jre1.8.0_77\bin"\ktab -l -e -t
Keytab name: C:\Users\dev1\krb5.keytab
KVNO Timestamp Principal
---- -------------- ------------------------------------------------------
 4 13/04/16 19:14 dev1@EXAMPLE.LOCAL (18:AES256 CTS mode with HMAC SHA1-96)
 4 13/04/16 19:14 dev1@EXAMPLE.LOCAL (17:AES128 CTS mode with HMAC SHA1-96)
 4 13/04/16 19:14 dev1@EXAMPLE.LOCAL (16:DES3 CBC mode with SHA1-KD)
 4 13/04/16 19:14 dev1@EXAMPLE.LOCAL (23:RC4 with HMAC)
```

You can then generate a Kerberos ticket using a keytab with the following command:

```
kinit -kt dev1.keytab dev1
```

or

```
kinit -kt %USERPROFILE%\krb5.keytab dev1
```

### Example gpload YAML File

When you initiate a `gpload` job to a WarehousePG cluster using Kerberos authentication, you omit the `USER:` property and value from the YAML control file.

This example `gpload` YAML control file named `test.yaml` does not include a `USER:` entry:

```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
DATABASE: warehouse
HOST: prod1.example.local
PORT: 5432

GPLOAD:
   INPUT:
    - SOURCE:
         PORT_RANGE: [18080,18080]
         FILE:
           - /Users/dev1/Downloads/test.csv
    - FORMAT: text
    - DELIMITER: ','
    - QUOTE: '"'
    - ERROR_LIMIT: 25
    - LOG_ERRORS: true
   OUTPUT:
    - TABLE: public.test
    - MODE: INSERT
   PRELOAD:
    - REUSE_TABLES: true
```

These commands run `kinit` using a keytab file, run `gpload.bat` with the `test.yaml` file, and then display successful `gpload` output.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
kinit -kt %USERPROFILE%\krb5.keytab dev1

gpload.bat -f test.yaml
2016-04-10 16:54:12|INFO|gpload session started 2016-04-10 16:54:12
2016-04-10 16:54:12|INFO|started gpfdist -p 18080 -P 18080 -f "/Users/dev1/Downloads/test.csv" -t 30
2016-04-10 16:54:13|INFO|running time: 0.23 seconds
2016-04-10 16:54:13|INFO|rows Inserted = 3
2016-04-10 16:54:13|INFO|rows Updated = 0
2016-04-10 16:54:13|INFO|data formatting errors = 0
2016-04-10 16:54:13|INFO|gpload succeeded
```

### Issues and Possible Solutions

- This message indicates that Kerberos cannot find your Kerberos credentials cache file:

  ```
  Credentials cache I/O operation failed XXX
  (Kerberos error 193)
  krb5_cc_default() failed
  ```

  To ensure that Kerberos can find the file, set the environment variable `KRB5CCNAME` and run `kinit`.

  ```
  set KRB5CCNAME=%USERPROFILE%\krb5cache
  kinit
  ```

- This `kinit` message indicates that the `kinit -k -t` command could not find the keytab.

  ```
  kinit: Generic preauthentication failure while getting initial credentials
  ```

  Confirm that the full path and filename for the Kerberos keytab file is correct.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.3.1.4 Using LDAP Authentication with TLS/SSL

You can control access to WarehousePG with an LDAP server and, optionally, secure the connection with encryption by adding parameters to pg_hba.conf file entries.

WarehousePG supports LDAP authentication with the TLS/SSL protocol to encrypt communication with an LDAP server:

- LDAP authentication with STARTTLS and TLS protocol – STARTTLS starts with a clear text connection (no encryption) and upgrades it to a secure connection (with encryption).
- LDAP authentication with a secure connection and TLS/SSL (LDAPS) – WarehousePG uses the TLS or SSL protocol based on the protocol that is used by the LDAP server.

If no protocol is specified, WarehousePG communicates with the LDAP server with a clear text connection.

To use LDAP authentication, the WarehousePG coordinator host must be configured as an LDAP client. See your LDAP documentation for information about configuring LDAP clients.

#### Enabling LDAP Authentication with STARTTLS and TLS

To enable STARTTLS with the TLS protocol, in the pg_hba.conf file, add an `ldap` line and specify the `ldaptls` parameter with the value 1. The default port is 389. In this example, the authentication method parameters include the `ldaptls` parameter.

```
ldap ldapserver=myldap.com ldaptls=1 ldapprefix="uid=" ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

Specify a non-default port with the `ldapport` parameter. In this example, the authentication method includes the `ldaptls` parameter and the `ldapport` parameter to specify the port 550.

```
ldap ldapserver=myldap.com ldaptls=1 ldapport=500 ldapprefix="uid=" ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

#### Enabling LDAP Authentication with a Secure Connection and TLS/SSL

To enable a secure connection with TLS/SSL, add `ldaps://` as the prefix to the LDAP server name specified in the `ldapserver` parameter. The default port is 636.

This example `ldapserver` parameter specifies a secure connection and the TLS/SSL protocol for the LDAP server `myldap.com`.

```
ldapserver=ldaps://myldap.com
```

To specify a non-default port, add a colon (:) and the port number after the LDAP server name. This example `ldapserver` parameter includes the `ldaps://` prefix and the non-default port 550.

```
ldapserver=ldaps://myldap.com:550
```

#### Configuring Authentication with a System-wide OpenLDAP System

If you have a system-wide OpenLDAP system and logins are configured to use LDAP with TLS or SSL in the pg_hba.conf file, logins may fail with the following message:

```
could not start LDAP TLS session: error code '-11'
```

To use an existing OpenLDAP system for authentication, WarehousePG must be set up to use the LDAP server's CA certificate to validate user certificates. Follow these steps on both the coordinator and standby hosts to configure WarehousePG:

1. Copy the base64-encoded root CA chain file from the Active Directory or LDAP server to the WarehousePG coordinator and standby coordinator hosts. This example uses the directory `/etc/pki/tls/certs`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Change to the directory where you copied the CA certificate file and, as the root user, generate the hash for OpenLDAP:

```
# cd /etc/pki/tls/certs
# openssl x509 -noout -hash -in <ca-certificate-file>
# ln -s <ca-certificate-file> <ca-certificate-file>.0
```

3. Configure an OpenLDAP configuration file for WarehousePG with the CA certificate directory and certificate file specified.

   As the root user, edit the OpenLDAP configuration file `/etc/openldap/ldap.conf`:

```
SASL_NOCANON on
 URI ldaps://ldapA.example.priv ldaps://ldapB.example.priv ldaps://ldapC.example.priv
 BASE dc=example,dc=priv
 TLS_CACERTDIR /etc/pki/tls/certs
 TLS_CACERT /etc/pki/tls/certs/<ca-certificate-file>
```

   > **Note** For certificate validation to succeed, the hostname in the certificate must match a hostname in the URI property. Otherwise, you must also add `TLS_REQCERT allow` to the file.

4. As the gpadmin user, edit `/usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh` and add the following line.

```
export LDAPCONF=/etc/openldap/ldap.conf
```

### Notes

WarehousePG logs an error if the following are specified in an pg_hba.conf file entry:

- If both the `ldaps://` prefix and the `ldaptls=1` parameter are specified.
- If both the `ldaps://` prefix and the `ldapport` parameter are specified.

Enabling encrypted communication for LDAP authentication only encrypts the communication between WarehousePG and the LDAP server.

See Encrypting Client/Server Connections for information about encrypting client connections.

### Examples

These are example entries from an pg_hba.conf file.

This example specifies LDAP authentication with no encryption between WarehousePG and the LDAP server.

```
host all plainuser 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldapserver=myldap.com ldapprefix="uid=" ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

This example specifies LDAP authentication with the STARTTLS and TLS protocol between WarehousePG and the LDAP server.

```
host all tlsuser 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldapserver=myldap.com ldaptls=1 ldapprefix="uid="
ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

This example specifies LDAP authentication with a secure connection and TLS/SSL protocol between WarehousePG and the LDAP server.

```
host all ldapsuser 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldapserver=ldaps://myldap.com ldapprefix="uid="
ldapsuffix=",ou=People,dc=example,dc=com"
```

**Parent topic:** Configuring Client Authentication

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.3.2 Managing Roles and Privileges

The WarehousePG authorization mechanism stores roles and permissions to access database objects in the database and is administered using SQL statements or command-line utilities.

WarehousePG manages database access permissions using *roles*. The concept of roles subsumes the concepts of *users* and *groups*. A role can be a database user, a group, or both. Roles can own database objects (for example, tables) and can assign privileges on those objects to other roles to control access to the objects. Roles can be members of other roles, thus a member role can inherit the object privileges of its parent role.

Every WarehousePG cluster contains a set of database roles (users and groups). Those roles are separate from the users and groups managed by the operating system on which the server runs. However, for convenience you may want to maintain a relationship between operating system user names and WarehousePG role names, since many of the client applications use the current operating system user name as the default.

In WarehousePG, users log in and connect through the coordinator instance, which then verifies their role and access privileges. The coordinator then issues commands to the segment instances behind the scenes as the currently logged in role.

Roles are defined at the system level, meaning they are valid for all databases in the system.

In order to bootstrap the WarehousePG cluster, a freshly initialized system always contains one predefined *superuser* role (also referred to as the system user). This role will have the same name as the operating system user that initialized the WarehousePG cluster. Customarily, this role is named `gpadmin`. In order to create more roles you first have to connect as this initial role.

**Parent topic:** Managing WarehousePG Access

### Security Best Practices for Roles and Privileges

- **Secure the gpadmin system user.** WarehousePG requires a UNIX user id to install and initialize the WarehousePG cluster. This system user is referred to as `gpadmin` in the WarehousePG documentation. This `gpadmin` user is the default database superuser in WarehousePG, as well as the file system owner of the WarehousePG installation and its underlying data files. This default administrator account is fundamental to the design of WarehousePG. The system cannot run without it, and there is no way to limit the access of this gpadmin user id. Use roles to manage who has access to the database for specific purposes. You should only use the `gpadmin` account for system maintenance tasks such as expansion and upgrade. Anyone who logs on to a WarehousePG host as this user id can read, alter or delete any data; including system catalog data and database access rights. Therefore, it is very important to secure the gpadmin user id and only provide access to essential system administrators. Administrators should only log in to WarehousePG as `gpadmin` when performing certain system maintenance tasks (such as upgrade or expansion). Database users should never log on as `gpadmin`, and ETL or production workloads should never run as `gpadmin`.
- **Assign a distinct role to each user that logs in.** For logging and auditing purposes, each user that is allowed to log in to WarehousePG should be given their own database role. For applications or web services, consider creating a distinct role for each application or service. See Creating New Roles (Users).
- **Use groups to manage access privileges.** See Role Membership.
- **Limit users who have the SUPERUSER role attribute.** Roles that are superusers bypass all access privilege checks in WarehousePG, as well as resource queuing. Only system administrators should be given superuser rights. See Altering Role Attributes.

### Creating New Roles (Users)

A user-level role is considered to be a database role that can log in to the database and initiate a database session. Therefore, when you create a new user-level role using the `CREATE ROLE` command, you must specify the `LOGIN` privilege. For example:

```
=# CREATE ROLE jsmith WITH LOGIN;
```

A database role may have a number of attributes that define what sort of tasks that role can perform in the database. You can set these attributes when you create the role, or later using the `ALTER ROLE` command. See Altering Role Attributes for a description of the role attributes you can set.

#### Altering Role Attributes

A database role may have a number of attributes that define what sort of tasks that role can perform in the database.

| Attributes | Description |
|---|---|
| `SUPERUSER` or `NOSUPERUSER` | Determines if the role is a superuser. You must yourself be a superuser to create a new superuser. `NOSUPERUSER` is the default. |
| `CREATEDB` or `NOCREATEDB` | Determines if the role is allowed to create databases. `NOCREATEDB` is the default. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Attributes | Description |
|---|---|
| `CREATEROLE` or `NOCREATEROLE` | Determines if the role is allowed to create and manage other roles. `NOCREATEROLE` is the default. |
| `INHERIT` or `NOINHERIT` | Determines whether a role inherits the privileges of roles it is a member of. A role with the `INHERIT` attribute can automatically use whatever database privileges have been granted to all roles it is directly or indirectly a member of. `INHERIT` is the default. |
| `LOGIN` or `NOLOGIN` | Determines whether a role is allowed to log in. A role having the `LOGIN` attribute can be thought of as a user. Roles without this attribute are useful for managing database privileges (groups). `NOLOGIN` is the default. |
| `CONNECTION LIMIT` *connlimit* | If role can log in, this specifies how many concurrent connections the role can make. -1 (the default) means no limit. |
| `CREATEEXTTABLE` or `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` | Determines whether a role is allowed to create external tables. `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` is the default. For a role with the `CREATEEXTTABLE` attribute, the default external table `type` is `readable` and the default `protocol` is `gpfdist`. Note that external tables that use the `file` or `execute` protocols can only be created by superusers. |
| `PASSWORD '`*passwora*`'` | Sets the role's password. If you do not plan to use password authentication you can omit this option. If no password is specified, the password will be set to null and password authentication will always fail for that user. A null password can optionally be written explicitly as `PASSWORD NULL`. |
| `ENCRYPTED` or `UNENCRYPTED` | Controls whether a new password is stored as a hash string in the `pg_authid` system catalog. If neither `ENCRYPTED` nor `UNENCRYPTED` is specified, the default behavior is determined by the `password_encryption` configuration parameter, which is `on` by default. If the supplied *password* string is already in hashed format, it is stored as-is, regardless of whether `ENCRYPTED` or `UNENCRYPTED` is specified.<br><br>See Protecting Passwords in WarehousePG for additional information about protecting login passwords. |
| `VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'` | Sets a date and time after which the role's password is no longer valid. If omitted the password will be valid for all time. |
| `RESOURCE QUEUE queue_name` | Assigns the role to the named resource queue for workload management. Any statement that role issues is then subject to the resource queue's limits. Note that the `RESOURCE QUEUE` attribute is not inherited; it must be set on each user-level (`LOGIN`) role. |
| `DENY deny_interval` or `DENY deny_point` | Restricts access during an interval, specified by day or day and time. For more information see Time-based Authentication. |

You can set these attributes when you create the role, or later using the `ALTER ROLE` command. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE jsmith WITH PASSWORD 'passwd123';
=# ALTER ROLE admin VALID UNTIL 'infinity';
=# ALTER ROLE jsmith LOGIN;
=# ALTER ROLE jsmith RESOURCE QUEUE adhoc;
=# ALTER ROLE jsmith DENY DAY 'Sunday';
```

A role can also have role-specific defaults for many of the server configuration settings. For example, to set the default schema search path for a role:

```
=# ALTER ROLE admin SET search_path TO myschema, public;
```

### Role Membership

It is frequently convenient to group users together to ease management of object privileges: that way, privileges can be granted to, or revoked from, a group as a whole. In WarehousePG this is done by creating a role that represents the group, and then granting membership in the group role to individual user roles.

Use the `CREATE ROLE` SQL command to create a new group role. For example:

```
=# CREATE ROLE admin CREATEROLE CREATEDB;
```

Once the group role exists, you can add and remove members (user roles) using the `GRANT` and `REVOKE` commands. For example:

```
=# GRANT admin TO john, sally;
=# REVOKE admin FROM bob;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For managing object privileges, you would then grant the appropriate permissions to the group-level role only (see Object Privileges). The member user roles then inherit the object privileges of the group role. For example:

```
=# GRANT ALL ON TABLE mytable TO admin;
=# GRANT ALL ON SCHEMA myschema TO admin;
=# GRANT ALL ON DATABASE mydb TO admin;
```

The role attributes `LOGIN`, `SUPERUSER`, `CREATEDB`, `CREATEROLE`, `CREATEEXTTABLE`, and `RESOURCE QUEUE` are never inherited as ordinary privileges on database objects are. User members must actually `SET ROLE` to a specific role having one of these attributes in order to make use of the attribute. In the above example, we gave `CREATEDB` and `CREATEROLE` to the `admin` role. If `sally` is a member of `admin`, then `sally` could issue the following command to assume the role attributes of the parent role:

```
=> SET ROLE admin;
```

### Managing Object Privileges

When an object (table, view, sequence, database, function, language, schema, or tablespace) is created, it is assigned an owner. The owner is normally the role that ran the creation statement. For most kinds of objects, the initial state is that only the owner (or a superuser) can do anything with the object. To allow other roles to use it, privileges must be granted. WarehousePG supports the following privileges for each object type:

**Object Privileges**

| Object Type | Privileges |
|---|---|
| Tables, External Tables, Views | `SELECT` `INSERT` `UPDATE` `DELETE` `REFERENCES` `TRIGGER` `TRUNCATE` `ALL` |
| Columns | `SELECT` `INSERT` `UPDATE` `REFERENCES` `ALL` |
| Sequences | `USAGE` `SELECT` `UPDATE` `ALL` |
| Databases | `CREATE` `CONNECT` `TEMPORARY` `TEMP` `ALL` |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Object Type | Privileges |
|---|---|
| Domains | `USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Foreign Data Wrappers | `USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Foreign Servers | `USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Functions | `EXECUTE`<br>`ALL` |
| Procedural Languages | `USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Schemas | `CREATE`<br>`USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Tablespaces | `CREATE`<br>`ALL` |
| Types | `USAGE`<br>`ALL` |
| Protocols | `SELECT`<br>`INSERT`<br>`ALL` |

> **Note** You must grant privileges for each object individually. For example, granting `ALL` on a database does not grant full access to the objects within that database. It only grants all of the database-level privileges ( `CONNECT` , `CREATE` , `TEMPORARY` ) to the database itself.

Use the `GRANT` SQL command to give a specified role privileges on an object. For example, to grant the role named `jsmith` insert privileges on the table named `mytable` :

```
=# GRANT INSERT ON mytable TO jsmith;
```

Similarly, to grant `jsmith` select privileges only to the column named `col1` in the table named `table2` :

```
=# GRANT SELECT (col1) on TABLE table2 TO jsmith;
```

To revoke privileges, use the `REVOKE` command. For example:

```
=# REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON mytable FROM jsmith;
```

You can also use the `DROP OWNED` and `REASSIGN OWNED` commands for managing objects owned by deprecated roles. Only an object's owner or a superuser can drop an object or reassign ownership. For example:

```
=# REASSIGN OWNED BY sally TO bob;
=# DROP OWNED BY visitor;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Simulating Row Level Access Control

WarehousePG does not support row-level access or row-level, labeled security. You can simulate row-level access by using views to restrict the rows that are selected. You can simulate row-level labels by adding an extra column to the table to store sensitivity information, and then using views to control row-level access based on this column. You can then grant roles access to the views rather than to the base table.

### Encrypting Data

WarehousePG is installed with an optional module of encryption/decryption functions called `pgcrypto`. The `pgcrypto` functions allow database administrators to store certain columns of data in encrypted form. This adds an extra layer of protection for sensitive data, as data stored in WarehousePG in encrypted form cannot be read by anyone who does not have the encryption key, nor can it be read directly from the disks.

> **Note** The `pgcrypto` functions run inside the database server, which means that all the data and passwords move between `pgcrypto` and the client application in clear-text. For optimal security, consider also using SSL connections between the client and the WarehousePG coordinator server.

To use `pgcrypto` functions, register the `pgcrypto` extension in each database in which you want to use the functions. For example:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c "CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto"
```

See pgcrypto in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about individual functions.

### Protecting Passwords in WarehousePG

In its default configuration, WarehousePG saves MD5 hashes of login users' passwords in the pg_authid system catalog rather than saving clear text passwords. Anyone who is able to view the `pg_authid` table can see hash strings, but no passwords. This also ensures that passwords are obscured when the database is dumped to backup files.

WarehousePG supports SHA-256 and SCRAM-SHA-256 password hash algorithms as well. The password_hash_algorithm server configuration parameter value and pg_hba.conf settings determine how passwords are hashed and what authentication method is in effect.

| password_hash_algorithm Parameter Value | pg_hba.conf Authentication Method | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| MD5 | md5 | The default WarehousePG password hash algorithm. |
| SCRAM-SHA-256 | scram-sha-256 | The most secure method. Requires a client library that supports SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication. |
| SHA-256 | password | Clear text passwords are sent over the network, SSL-secured client connections are recommended. |

The password hash function runs when the password is set by using any of the following commands:

- `CREATE USER name WITH ENCRYPTED PASSWORD 'password'`
- `CREATE ROLE name WITH LOGIN ENCRYPTED PASSWORD 'password'`
- `ALTER USER name WITH ENCRYPTED PASSWORD 'password'`
- `ALTER ROLE name WITH ENCRYPTED PASSWORD 'password'`

The `ENCRYPTED` keyword may be omitted when the `password_encryption` system configuration parameter is `on`, which is the default value. The `password_encryption` configuration parameter determines whether clear text or hashed passwords are saved when the `ENCRYPTED` or `UNENCRYPTED` keyword is not present in the command.

> **Note** The SQL command syntax and `password_encryption` configuration variable include the term *encrypt*, but the passwords are not technically encrypted. They are *hashed* and therefore cannot be decrypted.

Although it is not recommended, passwords may be saved in clear text in the database by including the `UNENCRYPTED` keyword in the command or by setting the `password_encryption` configuration variable to `off`. Note that changing the configuration value has no effect on existing passwords, only newly-created or updated passwords.

To set `password_encryption` globally, run these commands in a shell as the `gpadmin` user:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
$ gpconfig -c password_encryption -v 'off'
$ gpstop -u
```

To set `password_encryption` in a session, use the SQL `SET` command:

```
=# SET password_encryption = 'on';
```

#### About MD5 Password Hashing

In its default configuration, WarehousePG saves MD5 hashes of login users' passwords.

The hash is calculated on the concatenated clear text password and role name. The MD5 hash produces a 32-byte hexadecimal string prefixed with the characters `md5`. The hashed password is saved in the `rolpassword` column of the `pg_authid` system table.

The default `md5` authentication method hashes the password twice before sending it to WarehousePG, once on the password and role name and then again with a salt value shared between the client and server, so the clear text password is never sent on the network.

#### About SCRAM-SHA-256 Password Hashing

Passwords may be hashed using the SCRAM-SHA-256 hash algorithm instead of the default MD5 hash algorithm. When a password is encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256, it has the format:

```
SCRAM-SHA-256$<iteration count>:<salt>$<StoredKey>:<ServerKey>
```

where `<salt>`, `<StoredKey>`, and `<ServerKey>` are in base64-encoded format. This format is the same as that specified by RFC 5803.

To enable SCRAM-SHA-256 hashing, change the `password_hash_algorithm` configuration parameter from its default value, `MD5`, to `SCRAM-SHA-256`. The parameter can be set either globally or at the session level. To set `password_hash_algorithm` globally, execute these commands in a shell as the `gpadmin` user:

```
$ gpconfig -c password_hash_algorithm -v 'SCRAM-SHA-256'
$ gpstop -u
```

To set `password_hash_algorithm` in a session, use the SQL `SET` command:

```
=# SET password_hash_algorithm = 'SCRAM-SHA-256';
```

#### About SHA-256 Password Hashing

Passwords may be hashed using the SHA-256 hash algorithm instead of the default MD5 hash algorithm. The algorithm produces a 64-byte hexadecimal string prefixed with the characters `sha256`.

> **Note** Although SHA-256 uses a stronger cryptographic algorithm and produces a longer hash string for password hashing, it does not include SHA-256 password hashing over the network during client authentication. To use SHA-256 password hashing, the authentication method must be set to `password` in the `pg_hba.conf` configuration file so that clear text passwords are sent to WarehousePG. SHA-256 password hashing cannot be used with the `md5` authentication method. **Because clear text passwords are sent over the network, it is very important to use SSL-secured client connections when you use SHA-256.**

To enable SHA-256 hashing, change the `password_hash_algorithm` configuration parameter from its default value, `MD5`, to `SHA-256`. The parameter can be set either globally or at the session level. To set `password_hash_algorithm` globally, execute these commands in a shell as the `gpadmin` user:

```
$ gpconfig -c password_hash_algorithm -v 'SHA-256'
$ gpstop -u
```

To set `password_hash_algorithm` in a session, use the SQL `SET` command:

```
=# SET password_hash_algorithm = 'SHA-256';
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Time-based Authentication

WarehousePG enables the administrator to restrict access to certain times by role. Use the `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` commands to specify time-based constraints.

For details, refer to the *WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4 Defining Database Objects

This section covers data definition language (DDL) in WarehousePG and how to create and manage database objects.

Creating objects in a WarehousePG includes making up-front choices about data distribution, storage options, data loading, and other WarehousePG features that will affect the ongoing performance of your database system. Understanding the options that are available and how the database will be used will help you make the right decisions.

Most of the advanced WarehousePG features are enabled with extensions to the SQL `CREATE` DDL statements.

- Creating and Managing Databases
- Creating and Managing Tablespaces
- Creating and Managing Schemas
- Creating and Managing Tables
- Choosing the Table Storage Model
- Partitioning Large Tables
- Creating and Using Sequences
- Using Indexes in WarehousePG
- Creating and Managing Views
- Creating and Managing Materialized Views

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.1 Creating and Managing Databases

A WarehousePG cluster is a single instance of WarehousePG. There can be several separate WarehousePG clusters installed, but usually just one is selected by environment variable settings. See your WarehousePG administrator for details.

There can be multiple databases in a WarehousePG cluster. This is different from some database management systems (such as Oracle) where the database instance *is* the database. Although you can create many databases in a WarehousePG cluster, client programs can connect to and access only one database at a time — you cannot cross-query between databases.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### About Template and Default Databases

WarehousePG provides some template databases and a default database, *template1*, *template0*, and *postgres*.

By default, each new database you create is based on a *template* database. WarehousePG uses *template1* to create databases unless you specify another template. Creating objects in *template1* is not recommended. The objects will be in every database you create using the default template database.

WarehousePG uses another database template, *template0*, internally. Do not drop or modify *template0*. You can use *template0* to create a completely clean database containing only the standard objects predefined by WarehousePG at initialization.

You can use the *postgres* database to connect to WarehousePG for the first time. WarehousePG uses *postgres* as the default database for administrative connections. For example, *postgres* is used by startup processes, the Global Deadlock Detector process, and the FTS (Fault Tolerance Server) process for catalog access.

### Creating a Database

The `CREATE DATABASE` command creates a new database. For example:

```
=> CREATE DATABASE <new_dbname>;
```

To create a database, you must have privileges to create a database or be a WarehousePG superuser. If you do not have the correct privileges, you cannot create a database. Contact your WarehousePG administrator to either give you the necessary privilege or to create a database for you.

You can also use the client program `createdb` to create a database. For example, running the following command in a command line terminal connects to WarehousePG using the provided host name and port and creates a database named *mydatabase*:

```
$ createdb -h masterhost -p 5432 mydatabase
```

The host name and port must match the host name and port of the installed WarehousePG cluster.

Some objects, such as roles, are shared by all the databases in a WarehousePG cluster. Other objects, such as tables that you create, are known only in the database in which you create them.

> **Caution** The `CREATE DATABASE` command is not transactional.

#### Cloning a Database

By default, a new database is created by cloning the standard system database template, *template1*. Any database can be used as a template when creating a new database, thereby providing the capability to 'clone' or copy an existing database and all objects and data within that database. For example:

```
=> CREATE DATABASE <new_dbname> TEMPLATE <old_dbname>;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Creating a Database with a Different Owner

Another database owner can be assigned when a database is created:

```
=> CREATE DATABASE <new_dbname> WITH <owner=new_user>;
```

### Viewing the List of Databases

If you are working in the `psql` client program, you can use the `\l` meta-command to show the list of databases and templates in your WarehousePG cluster. If using another client program and you are a superuser, you can query the list of databases from the `pg_database` system catalog table. For example:

```
=> SELECT datname from pg_database;
```

### Altering a Database

The ALTER DATABASE command changes database attributes such as owner, name, or default configuration attributes. For example, the following command alters a database by setting its default schema search path (the `search_path` configuration parameter):

```
=> ALTER DATABASE mydatabase SET search_path TO myschema, public, pg_catalog;
```

To alter a database, you must be the owner of the database or a superuser.

### Dropping a Database

The `DROP DATABASE` command drops (or deletes) a database. It removes the system catalog entries for the database and deletes the database directory on disk that contains the data. You must be the database owner or a superuser to drop a database, and you cannot drop a database while you or anyone else is connected to it. Connect to `postgres` (or another database) before dropping a database. For example:

```
=> \c postgres
=> DROP DATABASE mydatabase;
```

You can also use the client program `dropdb` to drop a database. For example, the following command connects to WarehousePG using the provided host name and port and drops the database *mydatabase*:

```
$ dropdb -h masterhost -p 5432 mydatabase
```

> **Caution** Dropping a database cannot be undone.

The `DROP DATABASE` command is not transactional.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.2 Creating and Managing Tablespaces

Tablespaces allow database administrators to have multiple file systems per machine and decide how to best use physical storage to store database objects. Tablespaces allow you to assign different storage for frequently and infrequently used database objects or to control the I/O performance on certain database objects. For example, place frequently-used tables on file systems that use high performance solid-state drives (SSD), and place other tables on standard hard drives.

A tablespace requires a host file system location to store its database files. In WarehousePG, the file system location must exist on all hosts including the hosts running the coordinator, standby coordinator, each primary segment, and each mirror segment.

A tablespace is WarehousePG cluster object (a global object), you can use a tablespace from any database if you have appropriate privileges.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support different tablespace locations for a primary-mirror pair with the same content ID. It is only possible to configure different locations for different content IDs. Do not modify symbolic links under the `pg_tblspc` directory so that primary-mirror pairs point to different file locations; this will lead to erroneous behavior.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### Creating a Tablespace

The `CREATE TABLESPACE` command defines a tablespace. For example:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE fastspace LOCATION '/fastdisk/gpdb';
```

Database superusers define tablespaces and grant access to database users with the `GRANT``CREATE` command. For example:

```
GRANT CREATE ON TABLESPACE fastspace TO admin;
```

### Using a Tablespace to Store Database Objects

Users with the `CREATE` privilege on a tablespace can create database objects in that tablespace, such as tables, indexes, and databases. The command is:

```
CREATE TABLE tablename(options) TABLESPACE spacename
```

For example, the following command creates a table in the tablespace*space1*:

```
CREATE TABLE foo(i int) TABLESPACE space1;
```

You can also use the `default_tablespace` parameter to specify the default tablespace for `CREATE TABLE` and `CREATE INDEX` commands that do not specify a tablespace:

```
SET default_tablespace = space1;
CREATE TABLE foo(i int);
```

There is also the `temp_tablespaces` configuration parameter, which determines the placement of temporary tables and indexes, as well as temporary files that are used for purposes such as sorting large data sets. This can be a comma-separate list of tablespace names, rather than only one, so that the load associated with temporary objects can be spread over multiple tablespaces. A random member of the list is picked each time a temporary object is to be created.

The tablespace associated with a database stores that database's system catalogs, temporary files created by server processes using that database, and is the default tablespace selected for tables and indexes created within the database, if no `TABLESPACE` is specified when the objects are created. If you do not specify a tablespace when you create a database, the database uses the same tablespace used by its template database.

You can use a tablespace from any database in the WarehousePG cluster if you have appropriate privileges.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Viewing Existing Tablespaces

Every WarehousePG cluster has the following default tablespaces.

- `pg_global` for shared system catalogs.
- `pg_default`, the default tablespace. Used by the *template1* and *template0* databases.

These tablespaces use the default system location, the data directory locations created at system initialization.

To see tablespace information, use the `pg_tablespace` catalog table to get the object ID (OID) of the tablespace and then use `gp_tablespace_location()` function to display the tablespace directories. This is an example that lists one user-defined tablespace, `myspace`:

```
SELECT oid, * FROM pg_tablespace ;

  oid  |  spcname   | spcowner | spcacl | spcoptions
-------+------------+----------+--------+------------
  1663 | pg_default |       10 |        |
  1664 | pg_global  |       10 |        |
 16391 | myspace    |       10 |        |
(3 rows)
```

The OID for the tablespace `myspace` is `16391`. Run `gp_tablespace_location()` to display the tablespace locations for a system that consists of two segment instances and the coordinator.

```
# SELECT * FROM gp_tablespace_location(16391);
 gp_segment_id |    tblspc_loc
---------------+------------------
             0 | /data/mytblspace
             1 | /data/mytblspace
            -1 | /data/mytblspace
(3 rows)
```

This query uses `gp_tablespace_location()` the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table to display segment instance information with the file system location for the `myspace` tablespace.

```
WITH spc AS (SELECT * FROM  gp_tablespace_location(16391))
  SELECT seg.role, spc.gp_segment_id as seg_id, seg.hostname, seg.datadir, tblspc_loc
    FROM spc, gp_segment_configuration AS seg
    WHERE spc.gp_segment_id = seg.content ORDER BY seg_id;
```

This is information for a test system that consists of two segment instances and the coordinator on a single host.

```
 role | seg_id | hostname |       datadir        |    tblspc_loc
------+--------+----------+----------------------+------------------
 p    |     -1 | testhost | /data/master/gpseg-1 | /data/mytblspace
 p    |      0 | testhost | /data/data1/gpseg0   | /data/mytblspace
 p    |      1 | testhost | /data/data2/gpseg1   | /data/mytblspace
(3 rows)
```

### Dropping Tablespaces

To drop a tablespace, you must be the tablespace owner or a superuser. You cannot drop a tablespace until all objects in all databases using the tablespace are removed.

The `DROP TABLESPACE` command removes an empty tablespace.

> **Note** You cannot drop a tablespace if it is not empty or if it stores temporary or transaction files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Moving the Location of Temporary or Transaction Files

You can move temporary or transaction files to a specific tablespace to improve database performance when running queries, creating backups, and to store data more sequentially.

The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `temp_tablespaces` controls the location for both temporary tables and temporary spill files for hash aggregate and hash join queries. Temporary files for purposes such as sorting large data sets are also created in these tablespaces.

`temp_tablespaces` specifies tablespaces in which to create temporary objects (temp tables and indexes on temp tables) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace.

Also note the following information about temporary or transaction files:

- You can dedicate only one tablespace for temporary or transaction files, although you can use the same tablespace to store other types of files.
- You cannot drop a tablespace if it used by temporary files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.3 Creating and Managing Schemas

Schemas logically organize objects and data in a database. Schemas allow you to have more than one object (such as tables) with the same name in the database without conflict if the objects are in different schemas.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### The Default "Public" Schema

Every database has a default schema named *public*. If you do not create any schemas, objects are created in the *public* schema. All database roles (users) have `CREATE` and `USAGE` privileges in the *public* schema. When you create a schema, you grant privileges to your users to allow access to the schema.

### Creating a Schema

Use the `CREATE SCHEMA` command to create a new schema. For example:

```
=> CREATE SCHEMA myschema;
```

To create or access objects in a schema, write a qualified name consisting of the schema name and table name separated by a period. For example:

```
myschema.table
```

See Schema Search Paths for information about accessing a schema.

You can create a schema owned by someone else, for example, to restrict the activities of your users to well-defined namespaces. The syntax is:

```
=> CREATE SCHEMA `schemaname` AUTHORIZATION `username`;
```

### Schema Search Paths

To specify an object's location in a database, use the schema-qualified name. For example:

```
=> SELECT * FROM myschema.mytable;
```

You can set the `search_path` configuration parameter to specify the order in which to search the available schemas for objects. The schema listed first in the search path becomes the *default* schema. If a schema is not specified, objects are created in the default schema.

#### Setting the Schema Search Path

The `search_path` configuration parameter sets the schema search order. The `ALTER DATABASE` command sets the search path. For example:

```
=> ALTER DATABASE mydatabase SET search_path TO myschema,
public, pg_catalog;
```

You can also set `search_path` for a particular role (user) using the `ALTER ROLE` command. For example:

```
=> ALTER ROLE sally SET search_path TO myschema, public,
pg_catalog;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Viewing the Current Schema

Use the `current_schema()` function to view the current schema. For example:

```
=> SELECT current_schema();
```

Use the `SHOW` command to view the current search path. For example:

```
=> SHOW search_path;
```

### Dropping a Schema

Use the `DROP SCHEMA` command to drop (delete) a schema. For example:

```
=> DROP SCHEMA myschema;
```

By default, the schema must be empty before you can drop it. To drop a schema and all of its objects (tables, data, functions, and so on) use:

```
=> DROP SCHEMA myschema CASCADE;
```

### System Schemas

The following system-level schemas exist in every database:

- `pg_catalog` contains the system catalog tables, built-in data types, functions, and operators. It is always part of the schema search path, even if it is not explicitly named in the search path.
- `information_schema` consists of a standardized set of views that contain information about the objects in the database. These views get system information from the system catalog tables in a standardized way.
- `pg_toast` stores large objects such as records that exceed the page size. This schema is used internally by the WarehousePG cluster.
- `pg_bitmapindex` stores bitmap index objects such as lists of values. This schema is used internally by the WarehousePG cluster.
- `pg_aoseg` stores append-optimized table objects. This schema is used internally by the WarehousePG cluster.
- `gp_toolkit` is an administrative schema that contains external tables, views, and functions that you can access with SQL commands. All database users can access `gp_toolkit` to view and query the system log files and other system metrics.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.4 Creating and Managing Tables

WarehousePG tables are similar to tables in any relational database, except that table rows are distributed across the different segments in the system. When you create a table, you specify the table's distribution policy.

### Creating a Table

The `CREATE TABLE` command creates a table and defines its structure. When you create a table, you define:

- The columns of the table and their associated data types. See Choosing Column Data Types.
- Any table or column constraints to limit the data that a column or table can contain. SeeSetting Table and Column Constraints.
- The distribution policy of the table, which determines how WarehousePG divides data across the segments. SeeChoosing the Table Distribution Policy.
- The way the table is stored on disk. See Choosing the Table Storage Model.
- The table partitioning strategy for large tables. See Creating and Managing Databases.

#### Choosing Column Data Types

The data type of a column determines the types of data values the column can contain. Choose the data type that uses the least possible space but can still accommodate your data and that best constrains the data. For example, use character data types for strings, date or timestamp data types for dates, and numeric data types for numbers.

For table columns that contain textual data, specify the data type `VARCHAR` or `TEXT`. Specifying the data type `CHAR` is not recommended. In WarehousePG, the data types `VARCHAR` or `TEXT` handle padding added to the data (space characters added after the last non-space character) as significant characters, the data type `CHAR` does not. For information on the character data types, see the `CREATE TABLE` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

Use the smallest numeric data type that will accommodate your numeric data and allow for future expansion. For example, using `BIGINT` for data that fits in `INT` or `SMALLINT` wastes storage space. If you expect that your data values will expand over time, consider that changing from a smaller datatype to a larger datatype after loading large amounts of data is costly. For example, if your current data values fit in a `SMALLINT` but it is likely that the values will expand, `INT` is the better long-term choice.

Use the same data types for columns that you plan to use in cross-table joins. Cross-table joins usually use the primary key in one table and a foreign key in the other table. When the data types are different, the database must convert one of them so that the data values can be compared correctly, which adds unnecessary overhead.

WarehousePG has a rich set of native data types available to users. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about the built-in data types.

#### Setting Table and Column Constraints

You can define constraints on columns and tables to restrict the data in your tables. WarehousePG support for constraints is the same as PostgreSQL with some limitations, including:

- `CHECK` constraints can refer only to the table on which they are defined.
- `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints must be compatible with their table's distribution key and partitioning key, if any.

  > **Note** `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints are not allowed on append-optimized tables because the `UNIQUE` indexes that are created by the constraints are not allowed on append-optimized tables.

- `FOREIGN KEY` constraints are allowed, but not enforced.
- Constraints that you define on partitioned tables apply to the partitioned table as a whole. You cannot define constraints on the individual parts of the table.

##### Check Constraints

Check constraints allow you to specify that the value in a certain column must satisfy a Boolean (truth-value) expression. For example, to require positive product prices:

```
=> CREATE TABLE products
           ( product_no integer,
             name text,
             price numeric CHECK (price > 0) );
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Not-Null Constraints

Not-null constraints specify that a column must not assume the null value. A not-null constraint is always written as a column constraint. For example:

```
=> CREATE TABLE products
       ( product_no integer NOT NULL,
         name text NOT NULL,
         price numeric );
```

#### Unique Constraints

Unique constraints ensure that the data contained in a column or a group of columns is unique with respect to all the rows in the table. The table must be hash-distributed or replicated (not `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`). If the table is hash-distributed, the constraint columns must be the same as (or a superset of) the table's distribution key columns. For example:

```
=> CREATE TABLE products
       ( `product_no` integer `UNIQUE`,
         name text,
         price numeric)
`      DISTRIBUTED BY (``product_no``)`;
```

#### Primary Keys

A primary key constraint is a combination of a `UNIQUE` constraint and a `NOT NULL` constraint. The table must be hash-distributed (not `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`), and the primary key columns must be the same as (or a superset of) the table's distribution key columns. If a table has a primary key, this column (or group of columns) is chosen as the distribution key for the table by default. For example:

```
=> CREATE TABLE products
       ( `product_no` integer `PRIMARY KEY`,
         name text,
         price numeric)
`      DISTRIBUTED BY (``product_no``)`;
```

#### Foreign Keys

Foreign keys are not supported. You can declare them, but referential integrity is not enforced.

Foreign key constraints specify that the values in a column or a group of columns must match the values appearing in some row of another table to maintain referential integrity between two related tables. Referential integrity checks cannot be enforced between the distributed table segments of a WarehousePG.

### Choosing the Table Distribution Policy

All WarehousePG tables are distributed. When you create or alter a table, you optionally specify `DISTRIBUTED BY` (hash distribution), `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` (round-robin distribution), or `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` (fully distributed) to determine the table row distribution.

> **Note** The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_create_table_random_default_distribution` controls the table distribution policy if the DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified when you create a table.

For information about the parameter, see "Server Configuration Parameters" of the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

Consider the following points when deciding on a table distribution policy.

- **Even Data Distribution** — For the best possible performance, all segments should contain equal portions of data. If the data is unbalanced or skewed, the segments with more data must work harder to perform their portion of the query processing. Choose a distribution key that is unique for each record, such as the primary key.
- **Local and Distributed Operations** — Local operations are faster than distributed operations. Query processing is fastest if the work associated with join, sort, or aggregation operations is done locally, at the segment level. Work done at the system level requires distributing tuples across the segments, which is less efficient. When tables share a common distribution key, the work of joining or sorting on their shared distribution key columns is done locally. With a random distribution policy, local join operations are not an option.
- **Even Query Processing** — For best performance, all segments should handle an equal share of the query workload. Query workload can be skewed if a table's data distribution policy and the query predicates are not well matched. For example, suppose that a sales transactions table is distributed on the customer ID column (the distribution key). If a predicate in a query references a single customer ID, the query processing work is concentrated on just one segment.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The replicated table distribution policy ( `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` ) should be used only for small tables. Replicating data to every segment is costly in both storage and maintenance, and prohibitive for large fact tables. The primary use cases for replicated tables are to:

- remove restrictions on operations that user-defined functions can perform on segments, and
- improve query performance by making it unnecessary to broadcast frequently used tables to all segments.

> **Note** The hidden system columns ( `ctid` , `cmin` , `cmax` , `xmin` , `xmax` , and `gp_segment_id` ) cannot be referenced in user queries on replicated tables because they have no single, unambiguous value. WarehousePG returns a `column does not exist` error for the query.

#### Declaring Distribution Keys

`CREATE TABLE` 's optional clauses `DISTRIBUTED BY` , `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` , and `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` specify the distribution policy for a table. The default is a hash distribution policy that uses either the `PRIMARY KEY` (if the table has one) or the first column of the table as the distribution key. Columns with geometric or user-defined data types are not eligible as WarehousePG distribution key columns. If a table does not have an eligible column, WarehousePG distributes the rows randomly or in round-robin fashion.

Replicated tables have no distribution key because every row is distributed to every WarehousePG segment instance.

To ensure even distribution of hash-distributed data, choose a distribution key that is unique for each record. If that is not possible, choose `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` . For example:

```
=> CREATE TABLE products
`                        (name varchar(40),
                         prod_id integer,
                         supplier_id integer)
             DISTRIBUTED BY (prod_id);
`
```

```
=> CREATE TABLE random_stuff
`                        (things text,
                         doodads text,
                         etc text)
             DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;
`
```

> **Important** If a primary key exists, it is the default distribution key for the table. If no primary key exists, but a unique key exists, this is the default distribution key for the table.

#### Custom Distribution Key Hash Functions

The hash function used for hash distribution policy is defined by the hash operator class for the column's data type. As the default WarehousePG uses the data type's default hash operator class, the same operator class used for hash joins and hash aggregates, which is suitable for most use cases. However, you can declare a non-default hash operator class in the `DISTRIBUTED BY` clause.

Using a custom hash operator class can be useful to support co-located joins on a different operator than the default equality operator ( `=` ).

##### Example Custom Hash Operator Class

This example creates a custom hash operator class for the integer data type that is used to improve query performance. The operator class compares the absolute values of integers.

Create a function and an equality operator that returns true if the absolute values of two integers are equal.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE FUNCTION abseq(int, int) RETURNS BOOL AS
$$
  begin return abs($1) = abs($2); end;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OPERATOR |=| (
  PROCEDURE = abseq,
  LEFTARG = int,
  RIGHTARG = int,
  COMMUTATOR = |=|,
  hashes, merges);
```

Now, create a hash function and operator class that uses the operator.

```
CREATE FUNCTION abshashfunc(int) RETURNS int AS
$$
  begin return hashint4(abs($1)); end;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS abs_int_hash_ops FOR TYPE int4
  USING hash AS
  OPERATOR 1 |=|,
  FUNCTION 1 abshashfunc(int);
```

Also, create less than and greater than operators, and a btree operator class for them. We don't need them for our queries, but the Postgres Planner will not consider co-location of joins without them.

```
CREATE FUNCTION abslt(int, int) RETURNS BOOL AS
$$
  begin return abs($1) < abs($2); end;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OPERATOR |<| (
  PROCEDURE = abslt,
  LEFTARG = int,
  RIGHTARG = int);

CREATE FUNCTION absgt(int, int) RETURNS BOOL AS
$$
  begin return abs($1) > abs($2); end;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OPERATOR |>| (
  PROCEDURE = absgt,
  LEFTARG = int,
  RIGHTARG = int);

CREATE FUNCTION abscmp(int, int) RETURNS int AS
$$
  begin return btint4cmp(abs($1),abs($2)); end;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS abs_int_btree_ops FOR TYPE int4
  USING btree AS
  OPERATOR 1 |<|,
  OPERATOR 3 |=|,
  OPERATOR 5 |>|,
  FUNCTION 1 abscmp(int, int);
```

Now, you can use the custom hash operator class in tables.

```
CREATE TABLE atab (a int) DISTRIBUTED BY (a abs_int_hash_ops);
CREATE TABLE btab (b int) DISTRIBUTED BY (b abs_int_hash_ops);

INSERT INTO atab VALUES (-1), (0), (1);
INSERT INTO btab VALUES (-1), (0), (1), (2);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Queries that perform a join that use the custom equality operator `|=|` can take advantage of the co-location.

With the default integer opclass, this query requires Redistribute Motion nodes.

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT a, b FROM atab, btab WHERE a = b;
                           QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------
 Gather Motion 4:1  (slice3; segments: 4)
   ->  Hash Join
         Hash Cond: (atab.a = btab.b)
         ->  Redistribute Motion 4:4  (slice1; segments: 4)
               Hash Key: atab.a
               ->  Seq Scan on atab
         ->  Hash
               ->  Redistribute Motion 4:4  (slice2; segments: 4)
                     Hash Key: btab.b
                     ->  Seq Scan on btab
 Optimizer: Postgres query optimizer
(11 rows)
```

With the custom opclass, a more efficient plan is possible.

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS OFF) SELECT a, b FROM atab, btab WHERE a |=| b;
                           QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------
  Gather Motion 4:1  (slice1; segments: 4)
   ->  Hash Join
         Hash Cond: (atab.a |=| btab.b)
         ->  Seq Scan on atab
         ->  Hash
               ->  Seq Scan on btab
 Optimizer: Postgres query optimizer
(7 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.5 Choosing the Table Storage Model

WarehousePG supports several storage models and a mix of storage models. When you create a table, you choose how to store its data. This topic explains the options for table storage and how to choose the best storage model for your workload.


- Heap Storage
- Append-Optimized Storage
- Choosing Row or Column-Oriented Storage
- Using Compression (Append-Optimized Tables Only)
- Checking the Compression and Distribution of an Append-Optimized Table
- Altering a Table
- Dropping a Table


> **Note** To simplify the creation of database tables, you can specify the default values for some table storage options with the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_default_storage_options`.

For information about the parameter, see "Server Configuration Parameters" in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### Heap Storage

By default, WarehousePG uses the same heap storage model as PostgreSQL. Heap table storage works best with OLTP-type workloads where the data is often modified after it is initially loaded. `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations require storing row-level versioning information to ensure reliable database transaction processing. Heap tables are best suited for smaller tables, such as dimension tables, that are often updated after they are initially loaded.

### Append-Optimized Storage

Append-optimized table storage works best with denormalized fact tables in a data warehouse environment. Denormalized fact tables are typically the largest tables in the system. Fact tables are usually loaded in batches and accessed by read-only queries. Moving large fact tables to an append-optimized storage model eliminates the storage overhead of the per-row update visibility information, saving about 20 bytes per row. This allows for a leaner and easier-to-optimize page structure. The storage model of append-optimized tables is optimized for bulk data loading. Single row `INSERT` statements are not recommended.

#### To create a heap table

Row-oriented heap tables are the default storage type.

```
=> CREATE TABLE foo (a int, b text) DISTRIBUTED BY (a);
```

Use the `WITH` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` command to declare the table storage options. The default is to create the table as a regular row-oriented heap-storage table. For example, to create an append-optimized table with no compression:

```
=> CREATE TABLE bar (a int, b text)
    WITH (appendoptimized=true)
    DISTRIBUTED BY (a);
```

> **Note** You use the `appendoptimized=value` syntax to specify the append-optimized table storage type. `appendoptimized` is a thin alias for the `appendonly` legacy storage option. WarehousePG stores `appendonly` in the catalog, and displays the same when listing storage options for append-optimized tables.

`UPDATE` and `DELETE` are not allowed on append-optimized tables in a repeatable read or serizalizable transaction and will cause the transaction to end prematurely. `DECLARE...FOR UPDATE` and triggers are not supported with append-optimized tables. `CLUSTER` on append-optimized tables is only supported over B-tree indexes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Choosing Row or Column-Oriented Storage

WarehousePG provides a choice of storage orientation models: row, column, or a combination of both. This topic provides general guidelines for choosing the optimum storage orientation for a table. Evaluate performance using your own data and query workloads.

- Row-oriented storage: good for OLTP types of workloads with many iterative transactions and many columns of a single row needed all at once, so retrieving is efficient.
- Column-oriented storage: good for data warehouse workloads with aggregations of data computed over a small number of columns, or for single columns that require regular updates without modifying other column data.

For most general purpose or mixed workloads, row-oriented storage offers the best combination of flexibility and performance. However, there are use cases where a column-oriented storage model provides more efficient I/O and storage. Consider the following requirements when deciding on the storage orientation model for a table:

- **Updates of table data.** If you load and update the table data frequently, choose a row-orientedheap table. Column-oriented table storage is only available on append-optimized tables.

  See Heap Storage for more information.

- **Frequent INSERTs.** If rows are frequently inserted into the table, consider a row-oriented model. Column-oriented tables are not optimized for write operations, as column values for a row must be written to different places on disk.

- **Number of columns requested in queries.** If you typically request all or the majority of columns in the `SELECT` list or `WHERE` clause of your queries, consider a row-oriented model. Column-oriented tables are best suited to queries that aggregate many values of a single column where the `WHERE` or `HAVING` predicate is also on the aggregate column. For example:

  ```
  SELECT SUM(salary)...
  ```

  ```
  SELECT AVG(salary)... WHERE salary > 10000
  ```

  Or where the `WHERE` predicate is on a single column and returns a relatively small number of rows. For example:

  ```
  SELECT salary, dept ... WHERE state='CA'
  ```

- **Number of columns in the table.** Row-oriented storage is more efficient when many columns are required at the same time, or when the row-size of a table is relatively small. Column-oriented tables can offer better query performance on tables with many columns where you access a small subset of columns in your queries.

- **Compression.** Column data has the same data type, so storage size optimizations are available in column-oriented data that are not available in row-oriented data. For example, many compression schemes use the similarity of adjacent data to compress. However, the greater adjacent compression achieved, the more difficult random access can become, as data must be uncompressed to be read.

#### To create a column-oriented table

The `WITH` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` command specifies the table's storage options. The default is a row-orientedheap table. Tables that use column-oriented storage must be append-optimized tables. For example, to create a column-oriented table:

```
=> CREATE TABLE bar (a int, b text)
    WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column)
    DISTRIBUTED BY (a);
```

## Using Compression (Append-Optimized Tables Only)

There are two types of in-database compression available in the WarehousePG for append-optimized tables:

- Table-level compression is applied to an entire table.
- Column-level compression is applied to a specific column. You can apply different column-level compression algorithms to different columns.

The following table summarizes the available compression algorithms.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Table Orientation | Available Compression Types | Supported Algorithms |
|---|---|---|
| Row | Table | `ZLIB`, `ZSTD` |
| Column | Column and Table | `RLE_TYPE`, `ZLIB`, `ZSTD` |

When choosing a compression type and level for append-optimized tables, consider these factors:

- CPU usage. Your segment systems must have the available CPU power to compress and uncompress the data.
- Compression ratio/disk size. Minimizing disk size is one factor, but also consider the time and CPU capacity required to compress and scan data. Find the optimal settings for efficiently compressing data without causing excessively long compression times or slow scan rates.
- Speed of compression. Higher compression levels can yield different compression ratios (always at the cost of speed). This varies by compression type: `ZLIB` versus `ZTSD`.
- Speed of decompression/scan rate. Performance with compressed append-optimized tables depends on hardware, query tuning settings, and other factors. Perform comparison testing to determine the actual performance in your environment.

> **Note** Do not create compressed append-optimized tables on file systems that use compression. If the file system on which your segment data directory resides is a compressed file system, your append-optimized table must not use compression.

Performance with compressed append-optimized tables depends on hardware, query tuning settings, and other factors. You should perform comparison testing to determine the actual performance in your environment.

> **Note** Zstd compression level can be set to values between 1 and 19. Compression level with zlib can be set to values from 1 - 9. Compression level with RLE can be set to values from 1 - 4.

An `ENCODING` clause specifies compression type and level for individual columns. When an `ENCODING` clause conflicts with a `WITH` clause, the `ENCODING` clause has higher precedence than the `WITH` clause.

#### To create a compressed table

The `WITH` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` command declares the table storage options. Tables that use compression must be append-optimized tables. For example, to create an append-optimized table with zlib compression at a compression level of 5:

```
=> CREATE TABLE foo (a int, b text)
   WITH (appendoptimized=true, compresstype=zlib, compresslevel=5);
```

### Checking the Compression and Distribution of an Append-Optimized Table

WarehousePG provides built-in functions to check the compression ratio and the distribution of an append-optimized table. The functions take either the object ID or a table name. You can qualify the table name with a schema name.

Table 2. Functions for compressed append-optimized table metadata

| Function | Return Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| get_ao_distribution(name)<br>get_ao_distribution(oid) | Set of (dbid, tuplecount) rows | Shows the distribution of an append-optimized table's rows across the array. Returns a set of rows, each of which includes a segment *dbid* and the number of tuples stored on the segment. |
| get_ao_compression_ratio(name)<br>get_ao_compression_ratio(oid) | float8 | Calculates the compression ratio for a compressed append-optimized table. If information is not available, this function returns a value of -1. |

The compression ratio is returned as a common ratio. For example, a returned value of `3.19`, or `3.19:1`, means that the uncompressed table is slightly larger than three times the size of the compressed table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The distribution of the table is returned as a set of rows that indicate how many tuples are stored on each segment. For example, in a system with four primary segments with *dbid* values ranging from 0 - 3, the function returns four rows similar to the following:

```
=# SELECT get_ao_distribution('lineitem_comp');
 get_ao_distribution
---------------------
(0,7500721)
(1,7501365)
(2,7499978)
(3,7497731)
(4 rows)
```

### Support for Run-length Encoding

WarehousePG supports Run-length Encoding (RLE) for column-level compression. RLE data compression stores repeated data as a single data value and a count. For example, in a table with two columns, a date and a description, that contains 200,000 entries containing the value `date1` and 400,000 entries containing the value `date2`, RLE compression for the date field is similar to `date1 200000 date2 400000`. RLE is not useful with files that do not have large sets of repeated data as it can greatly increase the file size.

There are four levels of RLE compression available. The levels progressively increase the compression ratio, but decrease the compression speed.

WarehousePG combines delta compression with RLE compression for data in columns of type `BIGINT`, `INTEGER`, `DATE`, `TIME`, or `TIMESTAMP`. The delta compression algorithm is based on the change between consecutive column values and is designed to improve compression when data is loaded in sorted order or when the compression is applied to data in sorted order.

### Adding Column-level Compression

You can add the following storage directives to a column for append-optimized tables with column orientation:

- Compression type
- Compression level
- Block size for a column

Add storage directives using the `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER TABLE`, and `CREATE TYPE` commands.

The following table details the types of storage directives and possible values for each.

Table 3. Storage Directives for Column-level Compression

| Name | Definition | Values | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|
| `compresstype` | Type of compression. | `zstd:` Zstandard algorithm<br>`zlib:` deflate algorithm<br>`RLE_TYPE`: run-length encoding<br>`none`: no compression | Values are not case-sensitive. |
| | | `zlib` compression: `1` - `9` | `1` is the fastest method with the least compression. `1` is the default.<br>`9` is the slowest method with the most compression. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Name | Definition | Values | Comment | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | `zstd` compression: `1` - `19` | `1` is the fastest method with the least compression. `1` is the default.<br>`19` is the slowest method with the most compression. | | |
| `compresslevel` | Compression level. | `RLE_TYPE` compression: `1` – `6`<br>`1` - apply RLE only<br>`2` - apply RLE then apply zlib compression level 1<br>`3` - apply RLE then apply zlib compression level 5<br>`4` - apply RLE then apply zlib compression level 9<br>`5` - apply RLE then apply zstd compression level 1<br>`6` - apply RLE then apply zstd compression level 3 | `1` is the fastest method with the least compression.<br>`1` is the default method. Within each compression sub-type (RLE with zlib or RLE with zstd), higher compression levels yield higher compression ratios at the cost of speed. Since zstd outperforms zlib in terms of compression ratios and speed, we highly recommend using levels 5 and above. | | |
| | | `blocksize` | The size in bytes for each block in the table | `8192 – 2097152` | The value must be a multiple of 8192. |

The following is the format for adding storage directives.

```
[ ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [,…] ) ]
```

where the word ENCODING is required and the storage directive has three parts:

- The name of the directive
- An equals sign
- The specification

Separate multiple storage directives with a comma. Apply a storage directive to a single column or designate it as the default for all columns, as shown in the following `CREATE TABLE` clauses.

*General Usage:*

```
<column_name> <data_type> ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [, … ] ), …
```

```
COLUMN <column_name> ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [, … ] ), …
```

```
DEFAULT COLUMN ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [, … ] )
```

*Example:*

```
C1 char ENCODING (compresstype=zstd, blocksize=65536)
```

```
COLUMN C1 ENCODING (compresstype=zlib, compresslevel=6, blocksize=65536)
```

```
DEFAULT COLUMN ENCODING (compresstype=zstd)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Default Compression Values

If the compression type, compression level and block size are not defined, the default is no compression, and the block size is set to the Server Configuration Parameter `block_size`.

#### Precedence of Compression Settings

Column compression settings are inherited from the type level to the table level to the partition level to the subpartition level. The lowest-level settings have priority.

- Column compression settings defined at the table level override any compression settings for the type.
- Column compression settings specified at the table level override any compression settings for the entire table.
- Column compression settings specified for partitions override any compression settings at the column or table levels.
- Column compression settings specified for subpartitions override any compression settings at the partition, column or table levels.
- When an `ENCODING` clause conflicts with a `WITH` clause, the `ENCODING` clause has higher precedence than the `WITH` clause.

> **Note** The `INHERITS` clause is not allowed in a table that contains a storage directive or a column reference storage directive.

Tables created using the `LIKE` clause ignore storage directive and column reference storage directives.

#### Optimal Location for Column Compression Settings

The best practice is to set the column compression settings at the level where the data resides. See Example 5, which shows a table with a partition depth of 2. `RLE_TYPE` compression is added to a column at the subpartition level.

#### Storage Directives Examples

The following examples show the use of storage directives in `CREATE TABLE` statements.

##### Example 1

In this example, column `c1` is compressed using `zstd` and uses the block size defined by the system. Column `c2` is compressed with `zlib`, and uses a block size of `65536`. Column `c3` is not compressed and uses the block size defined by the system.

```
CREATE TABLE T1 (c1 int ENCODING (compresstype=zstd),
                 c2 char ENCODING (compresstype=zlib, blocksize=65536),
                 c3 char)    WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column);
```

##### Example 2

In this example, column `c1` is compressed using `zlib` and uses the block size defined by the system. Column `c2` is compressed with `zstd`, and uses a block size of `65536`. Column `c3` is compressed using `RLE_TYPE` and uses the block size defined by the system.

```
CREATE TABLE T2 (c1 int ENCODING (compresstype=zlib),
                 c2 char ENCODING (compresstype=zstd, blocksize=65536),
                 c3 char,
                 COLUMN c3 ENCODING (compresstype=RLE_TYPE)
                 )
    WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column);
```

##### Example 3

In this example, column `c1` is compressed using `zlib` and uses the block size defined by the system. Column `c2` is compressed with `zstd`, and uses a block size of `65536`. Column `c3` is compressed using `zlib` and uses the block size defined by the system. Note that column `c3` uses `zlib` (not `RLE_TYPE`) in the partitions, because the column storage in the partition clause has precedence over the storage directive in the column definition for the table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE T3 (c1 int ENCODING (compresstype=zlib),
                 c2 char ENCODING (compresstype=zstd, blocksize=65536),
                 c3 text, COLUMN c3 ENCODING (compresstype=RLE_TYPE) )
   WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column)
   PARTITION BY RANGE (c3) (START ('1900-01-01'::DATE)
                            END ('2100-12-31'::DATE),
                            COLUMN c3 ENCODING (compresstype=zlib));
```

#### Example 4

In this example, `CREATE TABLE` assigns the `zlib` `compresstype` storage directive to `c1`. Column `c2` has no storage directive and inherits the compression type ( `zstd` ) and block size ( `65536` ) from the `DEFAULT COLUMN ENCODING` clause.

Column `c3`'s `ENCODING` clause defines its compression type, `RLE_TYPE`. The `ENCODING` clause defined for a specific column overrides the `DEFAULT ENCODING` clause, so column `c3` uses the default block size, `32768`.

Column `c4` has a compress type of `none` and uses the default block size.

```
CREATE TABLE T4 (c1 int ENCODING (compresstype=zlib),
                 c2 char,
                 c3 text,
                 c4 smallint ENCODING (compresstype=none),
                 DEFAULT COLUMN ENCODING (compresstype=zstd,
                                          blocksize=65536),
                 COLUMN c3 ENCODING (compresstype=RLE_TYPE)
                 )
  WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column);
```

#### Example 5

This example creates an append-optimized, column-oriented table, T5. T5 has two partitions, `p1` and `p2`, each of which has subpartitions. Each subpartition has `ENCODING` clauses:

- The `ENCODING` clause for partition `p1`'s subpartition `sp1` defines column `i`'s compression type as `zlib` and block size as 65536.
- The `ENCODING` clauses for partition `p2`'s subpartition `sp1` defines column `i`'s compression type as `rle_type` and block size is the default value. Column `k` uses the default compression and its block size is 8192.

```
CREATE TABLE T5(i int, j int, k int, l int)
    WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column)
    PARTITION BY range(i) SUBPARTITION BY range(j)
    (
       partition p1 start(1) end(2)
       ( subpartition sp1 start(1) end(2)
         column i encoding(compresstype=zlib, blocksize=65536)
       ),
       partition p2 start(2) end(3)
       ( subpartition sp1 start(1) end(2)
           column i encoding(compresstype=rle_type)
           column k encoding(blocksize=8192)
       )
    );
```

For an example showing how to add a compressed column to an existing table with the `ALTER TABLE` command, see Adding a Compressed Column to Table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Adding Compression in a TYPE Command

When you create a new type, you can define default compression attributes for the type. For example, the following `CREATE TYPE` command defines a type named `int33` that specifies `zlib` compression.

First, you must define the input and output functions for the new type, `int33_in` and `int33_out`:

```
CREATE FUNCTION int33_in(cstring) RETURNS int33
  STRICT IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE internal AS 'int4in';
CREATE FUNCTION int33_out(int33) RETURNS cstring
  STRICT IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE internal AS 'int4out';
```

Next, you define the type named `int33`:

```
CREATE TYPE int33 (
   internallength = 4,
   input = int33_in,
   output = int33_out,
   alignment = int4,
   default = 123,
   passedbyvalue,
   compresstype="zlib",
   blocksize=65536,
   compresslevel=1
   );
```

When you specify `int33` as a column type in a `CREATE TABLE` command, the column is created with the storage directives you specified for the type:

```
CREATE TABLE t2 (c1 int33)
    WITH (appendoptimized=true, orientation=column);
```

Table- or column- level storage attributes that you specify in a table definition override type-level storage attributes. For information about creating and adding compression attributes to a type, see CREATE TYPE. For information about changing compression specifications in a type, see ALTER TYPE.

#### Choosing Block Size

The blocksize is the size, in bytes, for each block in a table. Block sizes must be between 8192 and 2097152 bytes, and be a multiple of 8192. The default is 32768.

Specifying large block sizes can consume large amounts of memory. Block size determines buffering in the storage layer. WarehousePG maintains a buffer per partition, and per column in column-oriented tables. Tables with many partitions or columns consume large amounts of memory.

### Altering a Table

The `ALTER TABLE` command changes the definition of a table. Use `ALTER TABLE` to change table attributes such as column definitions, distribution policy, storage model, and partition structure (see also Maintaining Partitioned Tables). For example, to add a not-null constraint to a table column:

```
=> ALTER TABLE address ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;
```

#### Altering Table Distribution

`ALTER TABLE` provides options to change a table's distribution policy. When the table distribution options change, the table data may be redistributed on disk, which can be resource intensive. You can also redistribute table data using the existing distribution policy.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Changing the Distribution Policy

For partitioned tables, changes to the distribution policy apply recursively to the child partitions. This operation preserves the ownership and all other attributes of the table. For example, the following command redistributes the table sales across all segments using the customer_id column as the distribution key:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET DISTRIBUTED BY (customer_id);
```

When you change the hash distribution of a table, table data is automatically redistributed. Changing the distribution policy to a random distribution does not cause the data to be redistributed. For example, the following `ALTER TABLE` command has no immediate effect:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;
```

Changing the distribution policy of a table to `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` or from `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` automatically redistributes the table data.

#### Redistributing Table Data

To redistribute table data for tables with a random distribution policy (or when the hash distribution policy has not changed) use `REORGANIZE=TRUE`. Reorganizing data may be necessary to correct a data skew problem, or when segment resources are added to the system. For example, the following command redistributes table data across all segments using the current distribution policy, including random distribution.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET WITH (REORGANIZE=TRUE);
```

Changing the distribution policy of a table to `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` or from `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` always redistributes the table data, even when you use `REORGANIZE=FALSE`.

#### Altering the Table Storage Model

Table storage, compression, and orientation can be declared only at creation. To change the storage model, you must create a table with the correct storage options, load the original table data into the new table, drop the original table, and rename the new table with the original table's name. You must also re-grant any table permissions. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE sales2 (LIKE sales)
WITH (appendoptimized=true, compresstype=zlib,
      compresslevel=1, orientation=column);
INSERT INTO sales2 SELECT * FROM sales;
DROP TABLE sales;
ALTER TABLE sales2 RENAME TO sales;
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON sales TO admin;
GRANT SELECT ON sales TO guest;
```

> **Note** The `LIKE` clause does not copy over partition structures when creating a new table.

See Exchanging a Partition to learn how to change the storage model of a partitioned table.

##### Adding a Compressed Column to Table

Use `ALTER TABLE` command to add a compressed column to a table. All of the options and constraints for compressed columns described in Adding Column-level Compression apply to columns added with the `ALTER TABLE` command.

The following example shows how to add a column with `zlib` compression to a table, `T1`.

```
ALTER TABLE T1
      ADD COLUMN c4 int DEFAULT 0
      ENCODING (compresstype=zlib);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Inheritance of Compression Settings

A partition added to a table that has subpartitions defined with compression settings inherits the compression settings from the subpartition. The following example shows how to create a table with subpartition encodings, then alter it to add a partition.

```
CREATE TABLE ccddl (i int, j int, k int, l int)
  WITH
    (appendoptimized = TRUE, orientation=COLUMN)
  PARTITION BY range(j)
  SUBPARTITION BY list (k)
  SUBPARTITION template(
    SUBPARTITION sp1 values(1, 2, 3, 4, 5),
    COLUMN i ENCODING(compresstype=ZLIB),
    COLUMN j ENCODING(compresstype=ZSTD),
    COLUMN k ENCODING(compresstype=ZLIB),
    COLUMN l ENCODING(compresstype=ZLIB))
  (PARTITION p1 START(1) END(10),
   PARTITION p2 START(10) END(20))
;

ALTER TABLE ccddl
  ADD PARTITION p3 START(20) END(30)
;
```

Running the `ALTER TABLE` command creates partitions of table `ccddl` named `ccddl_1_prt_p3` and `ccddl_1_prt_p3_2_prt_sp1`. Partition `ccddl_1_prt_p3` inherits the different compression encodings of subpartition `sp1`.

### Dropping a Table

The `DROP TABLE` command removes tables from the database. For example:

```
DROP TABLE mytable;
```

To empty a table of rows without removing the table definition, use `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE`. For example:

```
DELETE FROM mytable;

TRUNCATE mytable;
```

`DROP TABLE` always removes any indexes, rules, triggers, and constraints that exist for the target table. Specify `CASCADE` to drop a table that is referenced by a view. `CASCADE` removes dependent views.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.6 Partitioning Large Tables

Table partitioning enables supporting very large tables, such as fact tables, by logically dividing them into smaller, more manageable pieces. Partitioned tables can improve query performance by allowing the WarehousePG query optimizer to scan only the data needed to satisfy a given query instead of scanning all the contents of a large table.


- About Table Partitioning
- Deciding on a Table Partitioning Strategy
- Creating Partitioned Tables
- Loading Partitioned Tables
- Verifying Your Partition Strategy
- Viewing Your Partition Design
- Maintaining Partitioned Tables

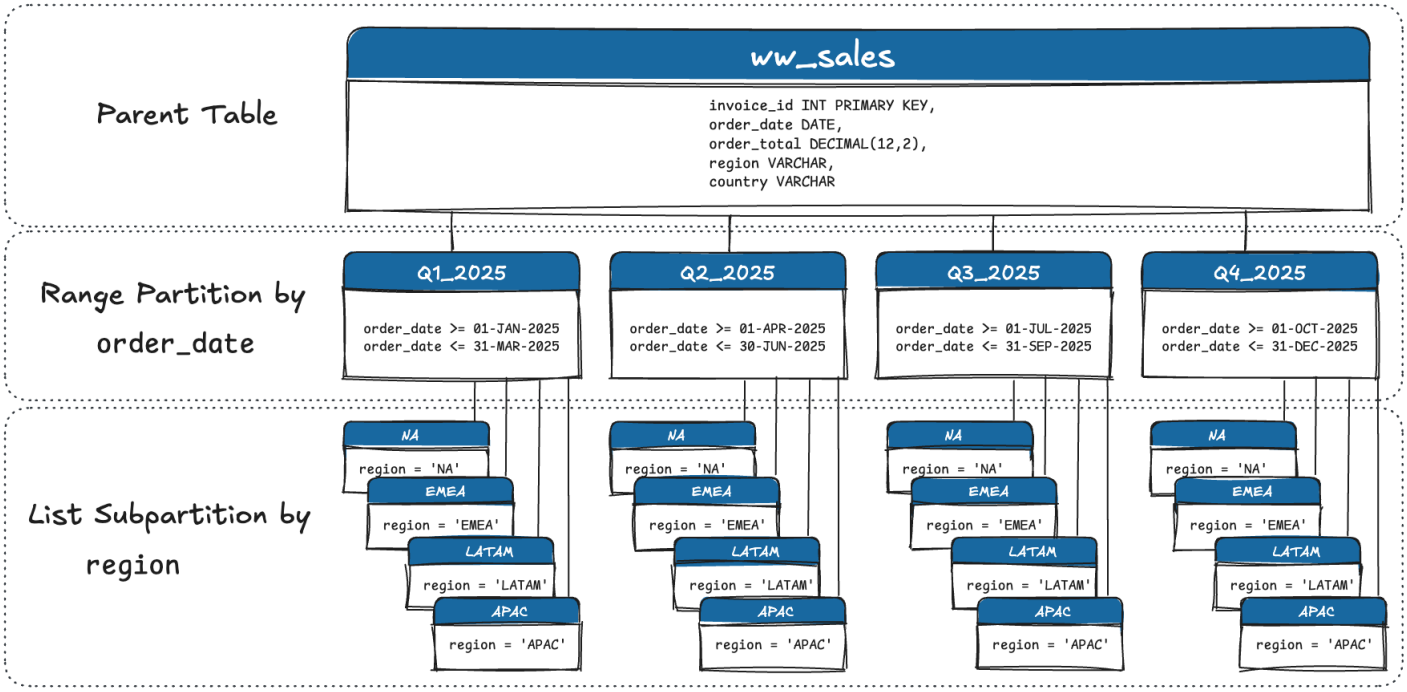

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### About Table Partitioning

Partitioning does not change the physical distribution of table data across the segments. Table distribution is physical: WarehousePG physically divides partitioned tables and non-partitioned tables across segments to enable parallel query processing. Table *partitioning* is logical: WarehousePG logically divides big tables to improve query performance and facilitate data warehouse maintenance tasks, such as rolling old data out of the data warehouse.

WarehousePG supports:

- *range partitioning*: division of data based on a numerical range, such as date or price.
- *list partitioning*: division of data based on a list of values, such as sales territory or product line.
- A combination of both types.




### Table Partitioning in WarehousePG

WarehousePG divides tables into parts (also known as partitions) to enable massively parallel processing. Tables are partitioned during `CREATE TABLE` using the `PARTITION BY` (and optionally the `SUBPARTITION BY`) clause. Partitioning creates a top-level (or parent) table with one or more levels of sub-tables (or child tables). Internally, WarehousePG creates an inheritance relationship between the top-level table and its underlying partitions, similar to the functionality of the `INHERITS` clause of PostgreSQL.

WarehousePG uses the partition criteria defined during table creation to create each partition with a distinct `CHECK` constraint, which limits the data that table can contain. The query optimizer uses `CHECK` constraints to determine which table partitions to scan to satisfy a given query predicate.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The WarehousePG cluster catalog stores partition hierarchy information so that rows inserted into the top-level parent table propagate correctly to the child table partitions. To change the partition design or table structure, alter the parent table using `ALTER TABLE` with the `PARTITION` clause.

To insert data into a partitioned table, you specify the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. You also can specify a leaf child table of the partitioned table in an `INSERT` command. An error is returned if the data is not valid for the specified leaf child table. Specifying a non-leaf or a non-root partition table in the DML command is not supported.

### Deciding on a Table Partitioning Strategy

WarehousePG does not support partitioning replicated tables ( `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` ). Not all hash-distributed or randomly distributed tables are good candidates for partitioning. If the answer is *yes* to all or most of the following questions, table partitioning is a viable database design strategy for improving query performance. If the answer is *no* to most of the following questions, table partitioning is not the right solution for that table. Test your design strategy to ensure that query performance improves as expected.

- **Is the table large enough?** Large fact tables are good candidates for table partitioning. If you have millions or billions of records in a table, you may see performance benefits from logically breaking that data up into smaller chunks. For smaller tables with only a few thousand rows or less, the administrative overhead of maintaining the partitions will outweigh any performance benefits you might see.
- **Are you experiencing unsatisfactory performance?** As with any performance tuning initiative, a table should be partitioned only if queries against that table are producing slower response times than desired.
- **Do your query predicates have identifiable access patterns?** Examine the `WHERE` clauses of your query workload and look for table columns that are consistently used to access data. For example, if most of your queries tend to look up records by date, then a monthly or weekly date-partitioning design might be beneficial. Or if you tend to access records by region, consider a list-partitioning design to divide the table by region.
- **Does your data warehouse maintain a window of historical data?** Another consideration for partition design is your organization's business requirements for maintaining historical data. For example, your data warehouse may require that you keep data for the past twelve months. If the data is partitioned by month, you can easily drop the oldest monthly partition from the warehouse and load current data into the most recent monthly partition.
- **Can the data be divided into somewhat equal parts based on some defining criteria?** Choose partitioning criteria that will divide your data as evenly as possible. If the partitions contain a relatively equal number of records, query performance improves based on the number of partitions created. For example, by dividing a large table into 10 partitions, a query will run 10 times faster than it would against the unpartitioned table, provided that the partitions are designed to support the query's criteria.

Do not create more partitions than are needed. Creating too many partitions can slow down management and maintenance jobs, such as vacuuming, recovering segments, expanding the cluster, checking disk usage, and others.

Partitioning does not improve query performance unless the query optimizer can eliminate partitions based on the query predicates. Queries that scan every partition run slower than if the table were not partitioned, so avoid partitioning if few of your queries achieve partition elimination. Check the explain plan for queries to make sure that partitions are eliminated. See Query Profiling for more about partition elimination.

> **Caution** Be very careful with multi-level partitioning because the number of partition files can grow very quickly. For example, if a table is partitioned by both day and city, and there are 1,000 days of data and 1,000 cities, the total number of partitions is one million. Column-oriented tables store each column in a physical table, so if this table has 100 columns, the system would be required to manage 100 million files for the table, for each segment.

Before settling on a multi-level partitioning strategy, consider a single level partition with bitmap indexes. Indexes slow down data loads, so performance testing with your data and schema is recommended to decide on the best strategy.

### Creating Partitioned Tables

You partition tables when you create them with `CREATE TABLE` . This topic provides examples of SQL syntax for creating a table with various partition designs.

To partition a table:

1. Decide on the partition design: date range, numeric range, or list of values.
2. Choose the column(s) on which to partition the table.
3. Decide how many levels of partitions you want. For example, you can create a date range partition table by month and then subpartition the monthly partitions by sales region.

- Defining Date Range Table Partitions
- Defining Numeric Range Table Partitions
- Defining List Table Partitions
- Defining Multi-level Partitions
- Partitioning an Existing Table

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Defining Date Range Table Partitions

A date range partitioned table uses a single `date` or `timestamp` column as the partition key column. You can use the same partition key column to create subpartitions if necessary, for example, to partition by month and then subpartition by day. Consider partitioning by the most granular level. For example, for a table partitioned by date, you can partition by day and have 365 daily partitions, rather than partition by year then subpartition by month then subpartition by day. A multi-level design can reduce query planning time, but a flat partition design runs faster.

You can have WarehousePG automatically generate partitions by giving a `START` value, an `END` value, and an `EVERY` clause that defines the partition increment value. By default, `START` values are always inclusive and `END` values are always exclusive. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, date date, amt decimal(10,2))
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
( START (date '2016-01-01') INCLUSIVE
   END (date '2017-01-01') EXCLUSIVE
   EVERY (INTERVAL '1 day') );
```

You can also declare and name each partition individually. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, date date, amt decimal(10,2))
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
( PARTITION Jan16 START (date '2016-01-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Feb16 START (date '2016-02-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Mar16 START (date '2016-03-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Apr16 START (date '2016-04-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION May16 START (date '2016-05-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Jun16 START (date '2016-06-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Jul16 START (date '2016-07-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Aug16 START (date '2016-08-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Sep16 START (date '2016-09-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Oct16 START (date '2016-10-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Nov16 START (date '2016-11-01') INCLUSIVE ,
  PARTITION Dec16 START (date '2016-12-01') INCLUSIVE
                  END (date '2017-01-01') EXCLUSIVE );
```

You do not have to declare an `END` value for each partition, only the last one. In this example, `Jan16` ends where `Feb16` starts.

#### Defining Numeric Range Table Partitions

A numeric range partitioned table uses a single numeric data type column as the partition key column. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE rank (id int, rank int, year int, gender
char(1), count int)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (year)
( START (2006) END (2016) EVERY (1),
  DEFAULT PARTITION extra );
```

For more information about default partitions, see Adding a Default Partition.

#### Defining List Table Partitions

A list partitioned table can use any data type column that allows equality comparisons as its partition key column. A list partition can also have a multi-column (composite) partition key, whereas a range partition only allows a single column as the partition key. For list partitions, you must declare a partition specification for every partition (list value) you want to create. For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE rank (id int, rank int, year int, gender
char(1), count int )
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY LIST (gender)
( PARTITION girls VALUES ('F'),
  PARTITION boys VALUES ('M'),
  DEFAULT PARTITION other );
```

> **Note** The current Postgres Planner allows list partitions with multi-column (composite) partition keys. A range partition only allows a single column as the partition key. GPORCA does not support composite keys, so you should not use composite partition keys.

For more information about default partitions, see Adding a Default Partition.

#### Defining Multi-level Partitions

You can create a multi-level partition design with subpartitions of partitions. Using a *subpartition template* ensures that every partition has the same subpartition design, including partitions that you add later. For example, the following SQL creates the two-level partition design shown in About table partitioning:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (trans_id int, date date, amount
decimal(9,2), region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (trans_id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
SUBPARTITION BY LIST (region)
SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
( SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
  SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
  SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe'),
  DEFAULT SUBPARTITION other_regions)
  (START (date '2011-01-01') INCLUSIVE
   END (date '2012-01-01') EXCLUSIVE
   EVERY (INTERVAL '1 month'),
   DEFAULT PARTITION outlying_dates );
```

The following example shows a three-level partition design where the `sales` table is partitioned by `year`, then `month`, then `region`. The `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` clauses ensure that each yearly partition has the same subpartition structure. The example declares a `DEFAULT` partition at each level of the hierarchy.

```
CREATE TABLE p3_sales (id int, year int, month int, day int,
region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (year)
    SUBPARTITION BY RANGE (month)
       SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
        START (1) END (13) EVERY (1),
        DEFAULT SUBPARTITION other_months )
           SUBPARTITION BY LIST (region)
             SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
               SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
               SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe'),
               SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
               DEFAULT SUBPARTITION other_regions )
( START (2002) END (2012) EVERY (1),
  DEFAULT PARTITION outlying_years );
```

> **Caution** When you create multi-level partitions on ranges, it is easy to create a large number of subpartitions, some containing little or no data. This can add many entries to the system tables, which increases the time and memory required to optimize and run queries. Increase the range interval or choose a different partitioning strategy to reduce the number of subpartitions created.

#### Partitioning an Existing Table

Tables can be partitioned only at creation. If you have a table that you want to partition, you must create a partitioned table, load the data from the original table into the new table, drop the original table, and rename the partitioned table with the original table's name. You must also re-grant any table permissions. For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE sales2 (LIKE sales)
PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
( START (date 2016-01-01') INCLUSIVE
   END (date '2017-01-01') EXCLUSIVE
   EVERY (INTERVAL '1 month') );
INSERT INTO sales2 SELECT * FROM sales;
DROP TABLE sales;
ALTER TABLE sales2 RENAME TO sales;
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON sales TO admin;
GRANT SELECT ON sales TO guest;
```

> **Note** The `LIKE` clause does not copy over partition structures when creating a new table.

#### Limitations of Partitioned Tables

For each partition level, a partitioned table can have a maximum of 32,767 partitions.

A primary key or unique constraint on a partitioned table must contain all the partitioning columns. A unique index can omit the partitioning columns; however, it is enforced only on the parts of the partitioned table, not on the partitioned table as a whole.

Tables created with the `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` distribution policy cannot be partitioned.

GPORCA, the WarehousePG next generation query optimizer, supports uniform multi-level partitioned tables. If GPORCA is enabled (the default) and the multi-level partitioned table is not uniform, WarehousePG runs queries against the table with the Postgres Planner. For information about uniform multi-level partitioned tables, see About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables.

For information about exchanging a leaf child partition with an external table, see Exchanging a Leaf Child Partition with an External Table.

These are limitations for partitioned tables when a leaf child partition of the table is an external table:

- Queries that run against partitioned tables that contain external table partitions are run with the Postgres Planner.
- The external table partition is a read only external table. Commands that attempt to access or modify data in the external table partition return an error. For example:
    - `INSERT`, `DELETE`, and `UPDATE` commands that attempt to change data in the external table partition return an error.
    - `TRUNCATE` commands return an error.
    - `COPY` commands cannot copy data to a partitioned table that updates an external table partition.
    - `COPY` commands that attempt to copy from an external table partition return an error unless you specify the `IGNORE EXTERNAL PARTITIONS` clause with `COPY` command. If you specify the clause, data is not copied from external table partitions.

      To use the `COPY` command against a partitioned table with a leaf child table that is an external table, use an SQL query to copy the data. For example, if the table `my_sales` contains a with a leaf child table that is an external table, this command sends the data to `stdout`:

      ```
      COPY (SELECT * from my_sales ) TO stdout
      ```

    - `VACUUM` commands skip external table partitions.
- The following operations are supported if no data is changed on the external table partition. Otherwise, an error is returned.
    - Adding or dropping a column.
    - Changing the data type of column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- These `ALTER PARTITION` operations are not supported if the partitioned table contains an external table partition:
    - Setting a subpartition template.
    - Altering the partition properties.
    - Creating a default partition.
    - Setting a distribution policy.
    - Setting or dropping a `NOT NULL` constraint of column.
    - Adding or dropping constraints.
    - Splitting an external partition.
- The WarehousePG `gpbackup` utility does not back up data from a leaf child partition of a partitioned table if the leaf child partition is a readable external table.

### Loading Partitioned Tables

After you create the partitioned table structure, top-level parent tables are empty. Data is routed to the bottom-level child table partitions. In a multi-level partition design, only the subpartitions at the bottom of the hierarchy can contain data.

Rows that cannot be mapped to a child table partition are rejected and the load fails. To avoid unmapped rows being rejected at load time, define your partition hierarchy with a `DEFAULT` partition. Any rows that do not match a partition's `CHECK` constraints load into the `DEFAULT` partition. See Adding a Default Partition.

At runtime, the query optimizer scans the entire table inheritance hierarchy and uses the `CHECK` table constraints to determine which of the child table partitions to scan to satisfy the query's conditions. The `DEFAULT` partition (if your hierarchy has one) is always scanned. `DEFAULT` partitions that contain data slow down the overall scan time.

When you use `COPY` or `INSERT` to load data into a parent table, the data is automatically rerouted to the correct partition, just like a regular table.

Best practice for loading data into partitioned tables is to create an intermediate staging table, load it, and then exchange it into your partition design. See Exchanging a Partition.

### Verifying Your Partition Strategy

When a table is partitioned based on the query predicate, you can use `EXPLAIN` to verify that the query optimizer scans only the relevant data to examine the query plan.

For example, suppose a *sales* table is date-range partitioned by month and subpartitioned by region as shown in About table partitioning. For the following query:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM sales WHERE date='01-07-12' AND
region='usa';
```

The query plan for this query should show a table scan of only the following tables:

- the default partition returning 0-1 rows (if your partition design has one)
- the January 2012 partition (*sales_1_prt_1*) returning 0-1 rows
- the USA region subpartition (*sales_1_2_prt_usa*) returning *some number* of rows.

The following example shows the relevant portion of the query plan.

```
->  `Seq Scan on``sales_1_prt_1` sales (cost=0.00..0.00 `rows=0`
    width=0)
Filter: "date"=01-07-12::date AND region='USA'::text
->  `Seq Scan on``sales_1_2_prt_usa` sales (cost=0.00..9.87
`rows=20`
     width=40)
```

Ensure that the query optimizer does not scan unnecessary partitions or subpartitions (for example, scans of months or regions not specified in the query predicate), and that scans of the top-level tables return 0-1 rows.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Troubleshooting Selective Partition Scanning

The following limitations can result in a query plan that shows a non-selective scan of your partition hierarchy.

- The query optimizer can selectively scan partitioned tables only when the query contains a direct and simple restriction of the table using immutable operators such as:

  =, < , <= , >, >= , and <>

- Selective scanning recognizes `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions, but does not recognize `VOLATILE` functions within a query. For example, `WHERE` clauses such as `date > CURRENT_DATE` cause the query optimizer to selectively scan partitioned tables, but `time > TIMEOFDAY` does not.

### Viewing Your Partition Design

You can look up information about your partition design using the *pg_partitions* system view. For example, to see the partition design of the *sales* table:

```
SELECT partitionboundary, partitiontablename, partitionname,
partitionlevel, partitionrank
FROM pg_partitions
WHERE tablename='sales';
```

The following table and views also show information about partitioned tables.

- *pg_partition*- Tracks partitioned tables and their inheritance level relationships.
- *pg_partition_templates*- Shows the subpartitions created using a subpartition template.
- *pg_partition_columns* - Shows the partition key columns used in a partition design.

### Maintaining Partitioned Tables

To maintain a partitioned table, use the `ALTER TABLE` command against the top-level parent table. The most common scenario is to drop old partitions and add new ones to maintain a rolling window of data in a range partition design. You can convert (*exchange*) older partitions to the append-optimized compressed storage format to save space. If you have a default partition in your partition design, you add a partition by *splitting* the default partition.

- Adding a Partition
- Renaming a Partition
- Adding a Default Partition
- Dropping a Partition
- Truncating a Partition
- Exchanging a Partition
- Splitting a Partition
- Modifying a Subpartition Template
- Exchanging a Leaf Child Partition with an External Table

> **Important** When defining and altering partition designs, use the given partition name, not the table object name. The given partition name is the `partitionname` column value in the *pg_partitions* system view. Although you can query and load any table (including partitioned tables) directly using SQL commands, you can only modify the structure of a partitioned table using the `ALTER TABLE...PARTITION` clauses.

Partitions are not required to have names. If a partition does not have a name, use one of the following expressions to specify a partition: `PARTITION FOR (value)` or `PARTITION FOR (RANK(number))`.

For a multi-level partitioned table, you identify a specific partition to change with `ALTER PARTITION` clauses. For each partition level in the table hierarchy that is above the target partition, specify the partition that is related to the target partition in an `ALTER PARTITION` clause. For example, if you have a partitioned table that consists of three levels, year, quarter, and region, this `ALTER TABLE` command exchanges a leaf partition `region` with the table `region_new`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION year_1 ALTER PARTITION quarter_4 EXCHANGE PARTITION region WITH TABLE region_new ;
```

The two `ALTER PARTITION` clauses identify which `region` partition to exchange. Both clauses are required to identify the specific leaf partition to exchange.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Adding a Partition

You can add a partition to a partition design with the `ALTER TABLE` command. If the original partition design included subpartitions defined by a *subpartition template*, the newly added partition is subpartitioned according to that template. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION
            START (date '2017-02-01') INCLUSIVE
            END (date '2017-03-01') EXCLUSIVE;
```

If you did not use a subpartition template when you created the table, you define subpartitions when adding a partition:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION
            START (date '2017-02-01') INCLUSIVE
            END (date '2017-03-01') EXCLUSIVE
      ( SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
        SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
        SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe') );
```

When you add a subpartition to an existing partition, you can specify the partition to alter. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(12))
      ADD PARTITION africa VALUES ('africa');
```

> **Note** You cannot add a partition to a partition design that has a default partition. You must split the default partition to add a partition. See Splitting a Partition.

#### Renaming a Partition

Partitioned tables use the following naming convention. Partitioned subtable names are subject to uniqueness requirements and length limitations.

```
<parentname>_<level>_prt_<partition_name>
```

For example:

```
sales_1_prt_jan16
```

For auto-generated range partitions, where a number is assigned when no name is given):

```
sales_1_prt_1
```

To rename a partitioned child table, rename the top-level parent table. The *<parentname>* changes in the table names of all associated child table partitions. For example, the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE sales RENAME TO globalsales;
```

Changes the associated table names:

```
globalsales_1_prt_1
```

You can change the name of a partition to make it easier to identify. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales RENAME PARTITION FOR ('2016-01-01') TO jan16;
```

Changes the associated table name as follows:

```
sales_1_prt_jan16
```

When altering partitioned tables with the `ALTER TABLE` command, always refer to the tables by their partition name (*jan16*) and not their full table name (*sales_1_prt_jan16*).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

> **Note** The table name cannot be a partition name in an `ALTER TABLE` statement. For example, `ALTER TABLE sales...` is correct, `ALTER TABLE sales_1_part_jan16...` is not allowed.

#### Adding a Default Partition

You can add a default partition to a partition design with the `ALTER TABLE` command.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD DEFAULT PARTITION other;
```

If your partition design is multi-level, each level in the hierarchy must have a default partition. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(1)) ADD DEFAULT
PARTITION other;

ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(2)) ADD DEFAULT
PARTITION other;

ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(3)) ADD DEFAULT
PARTITION other;
```

If incoming data does not match a partition's `CHECK` constraint and there is no default partition, the data is rejected. Default partitions ensure that incoming data that does not match a partition is inserted into the default partition.

#### Dropping a Partition

You can drop a partition from your partition design using the `ALTER TABLE` command. When you drop a partition that has subpartitions, the subpartitions (and all data in them) are automatically dropped as well. For range partitions, it is common to drop the older partitions from the range as old data is rolled out of the data warehouse. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales DROP PARTITION FOR (RANK(1));
```

#### Truncating a Partition

You can truncate a partition using the `ALTER TABLE` command. When you truncate a partition that has subpartitions, the subpartitions are automatically truncated as well.

```
ALTER TABLE sales TRUNCATE PARTITION FOR (RANK(1));
```

#### Exchanging a Partition

You can exchange a partition using the `ALTER TABLE` command. Exchanging a partition swaps one table in place of an existing partition. You can exchange partitions only at the lowest level of your partition hierarchy (only partitions that contain data can be exchanged).

You cannot exchange a partition with a replicated table. Exchanging a partition with a partitioned table or a child partition of a partitioned table is not supported.

Partition exchange can be useful for data loading. For example, load a staging table and swap the loaded table into your partition design. You can use partition exchange to change the storage type of older partitions to append-optimized tables. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE jan12 (LIKE sales) WITH (appendoptimized=true);
INSERT INTO jan12 SELECT * FROM sales_1_prt_1 ;
ALTER TABLE sales EXCHANGE PARTITION FOR (DATE '2012-01-01')
WITH TABLE jan12;
```

> **Note** This example refers to the single-level definition of the table `sales`, before partitions were added and altered in the previous examples.

> **Caution** If you specify the `WITHOUT VALIDATION` clause, you must ensure that the data in table that you are exchanging for an existing partition is valid against the constraints on the partition. Otherwise, queries against the partitioned table might return incorrect results or even end up to data corruption after UPDATE/DELETE operation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_enable_exchange_default_partition` controls availability of the `EXCHANGE DEFAULT PARTITION` clause. The default value for the parameter is `off`, the clause is not available and WarehousePG returns an error if the clause is specified in an `ALTER TABLE` command.

For information about the parameter, see "Server Configuration Parameters" in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

> **Caution** Before you exchange the default partition, you must ensure the data in the table to be exchanged, the new default partition, is valid for the default partition. For example, the data in the new default partition must not contain data that would be valid in other leaf child partitions of the partitioned table. Otherwise, queries against the partitioned table with the exchanged default partition that are run by GPORCA might return incorrect results or even end up to data corruption after UPDATE/DELETE operation.

#### Splitting a Partition

Splitting a partition divides a partition into two partitions. You can split a partition using the `ALTER TABLE` command. You can split partitions only at the lowest level of your partition hierarchy (partitions that contain data). For a multi-level partition, only range partitions can be split, not list partitions. The split value you specify goes into the *latter* partition.

For example, to split a monthly partition into two with the first partition containing dates January 1-15 and the second partition containing dates January 16-31:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION FOR ('2017-01-01')
AT ('2017-01-16')
INTO (PARTITION jan171to15, PARTITION jan1716to31);
```

If your partition design has a default partition, you must split the default partition to add a partition.

When using the `INTO` clause, specify the current default partition as the second partition name. For example, to split a default range partition to add a new monthly partition for January 2017:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT DEFAULT PARTITION
START ('2017-01-01') INCLUSIVE
END ('2017-02-01') EXCLUSIVE
INTO (PARTITION jan17, default partition);
```

#### Modifying a Subpartition Template

Use `ALTER TABLE` SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE to modify the subpartition template of a partitioned table. Partitions added after you set a new subpartition template have the new partition design. Existing partitions are not modified.

The following example alters the subpartition template of this partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (trans_id int, date date, amount decimal(9,2), region text)
  DISTRIBUTED BY (trans_id)
  PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
  SUBPARTITION BY LIST (region)
  SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
    ( SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
      SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
      SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe'),
      DEFAULT SUBPARTITION other_regions )
  ( START (date '2014-01-01') INCLUSIVE
    END (date '2014-04-01') EXCLUSIVE
    EVERY (INTERVAL '1 month') );
```

This `ALTER TABLE` command, modifies the subpartition template.

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
( SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
  SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
  SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe'),
  SUBPARTITION africa VALUES ('africa'),
  DEFAULT SUBPARTITION regions );
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

When you add a date-range partition of the table sales, it includes the new regional list subpartition for Africa. For example, the following command creates the subpartitions `usa`, `asia`, `europe`, `africa`, and a default partition named `other`:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION "4"
  START ('2014-04-01') INCLUSIVE
  END ('2014-05-01') EXCLUSIVE ;
```

To view the tables created for the partitioned table `sales`, you can use the command `\dt sales*` from the psql command line.

To remove a subpartition template, use `SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` with empty parentheses. For example, to clear the sales table subpartition template:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ();
```

#### Exchanging a Leaf Child Partition with an External Table

You can exchange a leaf child partition of a partitioned table with a readable external table. The external table data can reside on a host file system, an NFS mount, or a Hadoop file system (HDFS).

For example, if you have a partitioned table that is created with monthly partitions and most of the queries against the table only access the newer data, you can copy the older, less accessed data to external tables and exchange older partitions with the external tables. For queries that only access the newer data, you could create queries that use partition elimination to prevent scanning the older, unneeded partitions.

Exchanging a leaf child partition with an external table is not supported if the partitioned table contains a column with a check constraint or a `NOT NULL` constraint.

For information about exchanging and altering a leaf child partition, see the `ALTER TABLE` command in the *WarehousePG Command Reference*.

For information about limitations of partitioned tables that contain a external table partition, see Limitations of Partitioned Tables.

##### Example Exchanging a Partition with an External Table

This is a simple example that exchanges a leaf child partition of this partitioned table for an external table. The partitioned table contains data for the years 2010 through 2013.

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, year int, qtr int, day int, region text)
  DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
  PARTITION BY RANGE (year)
  ( PARTITION yr START (2010) END (2014) EVERY (1) ) ;
```

There are four leaf child partitions for the partitioned table. Each leaf child partition contains the data for a single year. The leaf child partition table `sales_1_prt_yr_1` contains the data for the year 2010. These steps exchange the table `sales_1_prt_yr_1` with an external table the uses the `gpfdist` protocol:

1. Ensure that the external table protocol is enabled for the WarehousePG cluster.

   This example uses the `gpfdist` protocol. This command starts the `gpfdist` protocol.

   ```
   $ gpfdist
   ```

2. Create a writable external table.

   This `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE` command creates a writable external table with the same columns as the partitioned table.

   ```
   CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE my_sales_ext ( LIKE sales_1_prt_yr_1 )
     LOCATION ( 'gpfdist://gpdb_test/sales_2010' )
     FORMAT 'csv'
     DISTRIBUTED BY (id) ;
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Create a readable external table that reads the data from that destination of the writable external table created in the previous step.

   This `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` create a readable external that uses the same external data as the writable external data.

   ```
   CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE sales_2010_ext ( LIKE sales_1_prt_yr_1)
     LOCATION ( 'gpfdist://gpdb_test/sales_2010' )
     FORMAT 'csv' ;
   ```

4. Copy the data from the leaf child partition into the writable external table.

   This `INSERT` command copies the data from the child leaf partition table of the partitioned table into the external table.

   ```
   INSERT INTO my_sales_ext SELECT * FROM sales_1_prt_yr_1 ;
   ```

5. Exchange the existing leaf child partition with the external table.

   This `ALTER TABLE` command specifies the `EXCHANGE PARTITION` clause to switch the readable external table and the leaf child partition.

   ```
   ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION yr_1
      EXCHANGE PARTITION yr_1
      WITH TABLE sales_2010_ext WITHOUT VALIDATION;
   ```

   The external table becomes the leaf child partition with the table name `sales_1_prt_yr_1` and the old leaf child partition becomes the table `sales_2010_ext`.

   > **Caution** In order to ensure queries against the partitioned table return the correct results, the external table data must be valid against the `CHECK` constraints on the leaf child partition. In this case, the data was taken from the child leaf partition table on which the `CHECK` constraints were defined.

6. Drop the table that was rolled out of the partitioned table.

   ```
   DROP TABLE sales_2010_ext ;
   ```

You can rename the name of the leaf child partition to indicate that `sales_1_prt_yr_1` is an external table.

This example command changes the `partitionname` to `yr_1_ext` and the name of the child leaf partition table to `sales_1_prt_yr_1_ext`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales RENAME PARTITION yr_1 TO  yr_1_ext ;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.7 Creating and Using Sequences

A WarehousePG sequence object is a special single row table that functions as a number generator. You can use a sequence to generate unique integer identifiers for a row that you add to a table. Declaring a column of type `SERIAL` implicitly creates a sequence counter for use in that table column.

WarehousePG provides commands to create, alter, and drop a sequence. WarehousePG also provides built-in functions to return the next value in the sequence ( `nextval()` ) or to set the sequence to a specific start value ( `setval()` ).

> **Note** The PostgreSQL `currval()` and `lastval()` sequence functions are not supported in WarehousePG.

Attributes of a sequence object include the name of the sequence, its increment value, and the last, minimum, and maximum values of the sequence counter. Sequences also have a special boolean attribute named `is_called` that governs the auto-increment behavior of a `nextval()` operation on the sequence counter. When a sequence's `is_called` attribute is `true` , `nextval()` increments the sequence counter before returning the value. When the `is_called` attribute value of a sequence is `false` , `nextval()` does not increment the counter before returning the value.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### Creating a Sequence

The CREATE SEQUENCE command creates and initializes a sequence with the given sequence name and optional start value. The sequence name must be distinct from the name of any other sequence, table, index, or view in the same schema. For example:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE myserial START 101;
```

When you create a new sequence, WarehousePG sets the sequence `is_called` attribute to `false` . Invoking `nextval()` on a newly-created sequence does not increment the sequence counter, but returns the sequence start value and sets `is_called` to `true` .

### Using a Sequence

After you create a sequence with the `CREATE SEQUENCE` command, you can examine the sequence and use the sequence built-in functions.

#### Examining Sequence Attributes

To examine the current attributes of a sequence, query the sequence directly. For example, to examine a sequence named `myserial` :

```
SELECT * FROM myserial;
```

#### Returning the Next Sequence Counter Value

You can invoke the `nextval()` built-in function to return and use the next value in a sequence. The following command inserts the next value of the sequence named `myserial` into the first column of a table named `vendors` :

```
INSERT INTO vendors VALUES (nextval('myserial'), 'acme');
```

`nextval()` uses the sequence's `is_called` attribute value to determine whether or not to increment the sequence counter before returning the value. `nextval()` advances the counter when `is_called` is `true` . `nextval()` sets the sequence `is_called` attribute to `true` before returning.

A `nextval()` operation is never rolled back. A fetched value is considered used, even if the transaction that performed the `nextval()` fails. This means that failed transactions can leave unused holes in the sequence of assigned values.

> **Note** You cannot use the `nextval()` function in `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statements if mirroring is enabled in WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Setting the Sequence Counter Value

You can use the WarehousePG `setval()` built-in function to set the counter value for a sequence. For example, the following command sets the counter value of the sequence named `myserial` to `201`:

```
SELECT setval('myserial', 201);
```

`setval()` has two function signatures: `setval(sequence, start_val)` and `setval(sequence, start_val, is_called)`. The default behaviour of `setval(sequence, start_val)` sets the sequence `is_called` attribute value to `true`.

If you do not want the sequence counter advanced on the next `nextval()` call, use the `setval(sequence, start_val, is_called)` function signature, passing a `false` argument:

```
SELECT setval('myserial', 201, false);
```

`setval()` operations are never rolled back.

### Altering a Sequence

The ALTER SEQUENCE command changes the attributes of an existing sequence. You can alter the sequence start, minimum, maximum, and increment values. You can also restart the sequence at the start value or at a specified value.

Any parameters not set in the `ALTER SEQUENCE` command retain their prior settings.

`ALTER SEQUENCE sequence START WITH start_value` sets the sequence's `start_value` attribute to the new starting value. It has no effect on the `last_value` attribute or the value returned by the `nextval(sequence)` function.

`ALTER SEQUENCE sequence RESTART` resets the sequence's `last_value` attribute to the current value of the `start_value` attribute and the `is_called` attribute to `false`. The next call to the `nextval(sequence)` function returns `start_value`.

`ALTER SEQUENCE sequence RESTART WITH restart_value` sets the sequence's `last_value` attribute to the new value and the `is_called` attribute to `false`. The next call to the `nextval(sequence)` returns `restart_value`. This is the equivalent of calling `setval(sequence, restart_value, false)`.

The following command restarts the sequence named `myserial` at value `105`:

```
ALTER SEQUENCE myserial RESTART WITH 105;
```

### Dropping a Sequence

The DROP SEQUENCE command removes a sequence. For example, the following command removes the sequence named `myserial`:

```
DROP SEQUENCE myserial;
```

### Specifying a Sequence as the Default Value for a Column

You can reference a sequence directly in the CREATE TABLE command in addition to using the `SERIAL` or `BIGSERIAL` types. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE tablename ( id INT4 DEFAULT nextval('myserial'), name text );
```

You can also alter a table column to set its default value to a sequence counter:

```
ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER COLUMN id SET DEFAULT nextval('myserial');
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Sequence Wraparound

By default, a sequence does not wrap around. That is, when a sequence reaches the max value (`+32767` for `SMALLSERIAL`, `+2147483647` for `SERIAL`, `+9223372036854775807` for `BIGSERIAL`), every subsequent `nextval()` call produces an error. You can alter a sequence to make it cycle around and start at `1` again:

```
ALTER SEQUENCE myserial CYCLE;
```

You can also specify the wraparound behaviour when you create the sequence:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE myserial CYCLE;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.8 Using Indexes in WarehousePG

In most traditional databases, indexes can greatly improve data access times. However, in a distributed database such as WarehousePG, indexes should be used more sparingly. WarehousePG performs very fast sequential scans; indexes use a random seek pattern to locate records on disk. WarehousePG data is distributed across the segments, so each segment scans a smaller portion of the overall data to get the result. With table partitioning, the total data to scan may be even smaller. Because business intelligence (BI) query workloads generally return very large data sets, using indexes is not efficient.

First try your query workload without adding indexes. Indexes are more likely to improve performance for OLTP workloads, where the query is returning a single record or a small subset of data. Indexes can also improve performance on compressed append-optimized tables for queries that return a targeted set of rows, as the optimizer can use an index access method rather than a full table scan when appropriate. For compressed data, an index access method means only the necessary rows are uncompressed.

WarehousePG automatically creates `PRIMARY KEY` constraints for tables with primary keys. To create an index on a partitioned table, create an index on the partitioned table that you created. The index is propagated to all the child tables created by WarehousePG. Creating an index on a table that is created by WarehousePG for use by a partitioned table is not supported.

Note that a `UNIQUE CONSTRAINT` (such as a `PRIMARY KEY CONSTRAINT`) implicitly creates a `UNIQUE INDEX` that must include all the columns of the distribution key and any partitioning key. The `UNIQUE CONSTRAINT` is enforced across the entire table, including all table partitions (if any).

Indexes add some database overhead — they use storage space and must be maintained when the table is updated. Ensure that the query workload uses the indexes that you create, and check that the indexes you add improve query performance (as compared to a sequential scan of the table). To determine whether indexes are being used, examine the query `EXPLAIN` plans. See Query Profiling.

Consider the following points when you create indexes.

- **Your Query Workload.** Indexes improve performance for workloads where queries return a single record or a very small data set, such as OLTP workloads.
- Compressed Tables. Indexes can improve performance on compressed append-optimized tables for queries that return a targeted set of rows. For compressed data, an index access method means only the necessary rows are uncompressed.
- **Avoid indexes on frequently updated columns.** Creating an index on a column that is frequently updated increases the number of writes required when the column is updated.
- **Create selective B-tree indexes.** Index selectivity is a ratio of the number of distinct values a column has divided by the number of rows in a table. For example, if a table has 1000 rows and a column has 800 distinct values, the selectivity of the index is 0.8, which is considered good. Unique indexes always have a selectivity ratio of 1.0, which is the best possible. WarehousePG allows unique indexes only on distribution key columns.
- **Use Bitmap indexes for low selectivity columns.**The WarehousePG Bitmap index type is not available in regular PostgreSQL. See About Bitmap Indexes.
- **Index columns used in joins.** An index on a column used for frequent joins (such as a foreign key column) can improve join performance by enabling more join methods for the query optimizer to use.
- **Index columns frequently used in predicates.** Columns that are frequently referenced in `WHERE` clauses are good candidates for indexes.
- **Avoid overlapping indexes.** Indexes that have the same leading column are redundant.
- **Drop indexes for bulk loads.** For mass loads of data into a table, consider dropping the indexes and re-creating them after the load completes. This is often faster than updating the indexes.
- **Consider a clustered index.** Clustering an index means that the records are physically ordered on disk according to the index. If the records you need are distributed randomly on disk, the database has to seek across the disk to fetch the records requested. If the records are stored close together, the fetching operation is more efficient. For example, a clustered index on a date column where the data is ordered sequentially by date. A query against a specific date range results in an ordered fetch from the disk, which leverages fast sequential access.

### To cluster an index in WarehousePG

Using the `CLUSTER` command to physically reorder a table based on an index can take a long time with very large tables. To achieve the same results much faster, you can manually reorder the data on disk by creating an intermediate table and loading the data in the desired order. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE new_table (LIKE old_table)
       AS SELECT * FROM old_table ORDER BY myixcolumn;
DROP old_table;
ALTER TABLE new_table RENAME TO old_table;
CREATE INDEX myixcolumn_ix ON old_table;
VACUUM ANALYZE old_table;
```

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Index Types

WarehousePG supports the Postgres index types B-tree, GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN. Hash indexes are not supported. Each index type uses a different algorithm that is best suited to different types of queries. B-tree indexes fit the most common situations and are the default index type. See Index Types in the PostgreSQL documentation for a description of these types.

> **Note** WarehousePG allows unique indexes only if the columns of the index key are the same as (or a superset of) the WarehousePG distribution key. Unique indexes are not supported on append-optimized tables. On partitioned tables, a unique index cannot be enforced across all child table partitions of a partitioned table. A unique index is supported only within a partition.

### About Bitmap Indexes

WarehousePG provides the Bitmap index type. Bitmap indexes are best suited to data warehousing applications and decision support systems with large amounts of data, many ad hoc queries, and few data modification (DML) transactions.

An index provides pointers to the rows in a table that contain a given key value. A regular index stores a list of tuple IDs for each key corresponding to the rows with that key value. Bitmap indexes store a bitmap for each key value. Regular indexes can be several times larger than the data in the table, but bitmap indexes provide the same functionality as a regular index and use a fraction of the size of the indexed data.

Each bit in the bitmap corresponds to a possible tuple ID. If the bit is set, the row with the corresponding tuple ID contains the key value. A mapping function converts the bit position to a tuple ID. Bitmaps are compressed for storage. If the number of distinct key values is small, bitmap indexes are much smaller, compress better, and save considerable space compared with a regular index. The size of a bitmap index is proportional to the number of rows in the table times the number of distinct values in the indexed column.

Bitmap indexes are most effective for queries that contain multiple conditions in the `WHERE` clause. Rows that satisfy some, but not all, conditions are filtered out before the table is accessed. This improves response time, often dramatically.

#### When to Use Bitmap Indexes

Bitmap indexes are best suited to data warehousing applications where users query the data rather than update it. Bitmap indexes perform best for columns that have between 100 and 100,000 distinct values and when the indexed column is often queried in conjunction with other indexed columns. Columns with fewer than 100 distinct values, such as a gender column with two distinct values (male and female), usually do not benefit much from any type of index. On a column with more than 100,000 distinct values, the performance and space efficiency of a bitmap index decline.

Bitmap indexes can improve query performance for ad hoc queries. `AND` and `OR` conditions in the `WHERE` clause of a query can be resolved quickly by performing the corresponding Boolean operations directly on the bitmaps before converting the resulting bitmap to tuple ids. If the resulting number of rows is small, the query can be answered quickly without resorting to a full table scan.

#### When Not to Use Bitmap Indexes

Do not use bitmap indexes for unique columns or columns with high cardinality data, such as customer names or phone numbers. The performance gains and disk space advantages of bitmap indexes start to diminish on columns with 100,000 or more unique values, regardless of the number of rows in the table.

Bitmap indexes are not suitable for OLTP applications with large numbers of concurrent transactions modifying the data.

Use bitmap indexes sparingly. Test and compare query performance with and without an index. Add an index only if query performance improves with indexed columns.

## Creating an Index

The `CREATE INDEX` command defines an index on a table. A B-tree index is the default index type. For example, to create a B-tree index on the column *gender* in the table *employee*:

```
CREATE INDEX gender_idx ON employee (gender);
```

To create a bitmap index on the column *title* in the table *films*:

```
CREATE INDEX title_bmp_idx ON films USING bitmap (title);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Indexes on Expressions

An index column need not be just a column of the underlying table, but can be a function or scalar expression computed from one or more columns of the table. This feature is useful to obtain fast access to tables based on the results of computations.

Index expressions are relatively expensive to maintain, because the derived expressions must be computed for each row upon insertion and whenever it is updated. However, the index expressions are not recomputed during an indexed search, since they are already stored in the index. In both of the following examples, the system sees the query as just `WHERE indexedcolumn = 'constant'` and so the speed of the search is equivalent to any other simple index query. Thus, indexes on expressions are useful when retrieval speed is more important than insertion and update speed.

The first example is a common way to do case-insensitive comparisons with the `lower` function:

```
SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE lower(col1) = 'value';
```

This query can use an index if one has been defined on the result of the `lower(col1)` function:

```
CREATE INDEX test1_lower_col1_idx ON test1 (lower(col1));
```

This example assumes the following type of query is performed often.

```
SELECT * FROM people WHERE (first_name || ' ' || last_name) = 'John Smith';
```

The query might benefit from the following index.

```
CREATE INDEX people_names ON people ((first_name || ' ' || last_name));
```

The syntax of the `CREATE INDEX` command normally requires writing parentheses around index expressions, as shown in the second example. The parentheses can be omitted when the expression is just a function call, as in the first example.

### Examining Index Usage

WarehousePG indexes do not require maintenance and tuning. You can check which indexes are used by the real-life query workload. Use the `EXPLAIN` command to examine index usage for a query.

The query plan shows the steps or *plan nodes* that the database will take to answer a query and time estimates for each plan node. To examine the use of indexes, look for the following query plan node types in your `EXPLAIN` output:

- **Index Scan** - A scan of an index.
- **Bitmap Heap Scan** - Retrieves all
- from the bitmap generated by BitmapAnd, BitmapOr, or BitmapIndexScan and accesses the heap to retrieve the relevant rows.
- **Bitmap Index Scan** - Compute a bitmap by OR-ing all bitmaps that satisfy the query predicates from the underlying index.
- **BitmapAnd** or **BitmapOr** - Takes the bitmaps generated from multiple BitmapIndexScan nodes, ANDs or ORs them together, and generates a new bitmap as its output.

You have to experiment to determine the indexes to create. Consider the following points.

- Run `ANALYZE` after you create or update an index. `ANALYZE` collects table statistics. The query optimizer uses table statistics to estimate the number of rows returned by a query and to assign realistic costs to each possible query plan.
- Use real data for experimentation. Using test data for setting up indexes tells you what indexes you need for the test data, but that is all.
- Do not use very small test data sets as the results can be unrealistic or skewed.
- Be careful when developing test data. Values that are similar, completely random, or inserted in sorted order will skew the statistics away from the distribution that real data would have.
- You can force the use of indexes for testing purposes by using run-time parameters to turn off specific plan types. For example, turn off sequential scans ( `enable_seqscan` ) and nested-loop joins ( `enable_nestloop` ), the most basic plans, to force the system to use a different plan. Time your query with and without indexes and use the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command to compare the results.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Managing Indexes

Use the `REINDEX` command to rebuild a poorly-performing index. `REINDEX` rebuilds an index using the data stored in the index's table, replacing the old copy of the index.

**To rebuild all indexes on a table**

```
REINDEX my_table;
```

```
REINDEX my_index;
```

### Dropping an Index

The `DROP INDEX` command removes an index. For example:

```
DROP INDEX title_idx;
```

When loading data, it can be faster to drop all indexes, load, then recreate the indexes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.9 Creating and Managing Views

Views enable you to save frequently used or complex queries, then access them in a `SELECT` statement as if they were a table. A view is not physically materialized on disk: the query runs as a subquery when you access the view.

These topics describe various aspects of creating and managing views:

- Best Practices when Creating Views outlines best practices when creating views.
- Working with View Dependencies contains examples of listing view information and determining what views depend on a certain object.
- About View Storage in WarehousePG describes the mechanics behind view dependencies.

### Creating Views

The `CREATE VIEW` command defines a view of a query. For example:

```
CREATE VIEW comedies AS SELECT * FROM films WHERE kind = 'comedy';
```

Views ignore `ORDER BY` and `SORT` operations stored in the view.

### Dropping Views

The `DROP VIEW` command removes a view. For example:

```
DROP VIEW topten;
```

The `DROP VIEW...CASCADE` command also removes all dependent objects. As an example, if another view depends on the view which is about to be dropped, the other view will be dropped as well. Without the `CASCADE` option, the `DROP VIEW` command will fail.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.4.9.1 Best Practices when Creating Views

When defining and using a view, remember that a view is just an SQL statement and is replaced by its definition when the query is run.

These are some common uses of views.

- They allow you to have a recurring SQL query or expression in one place for easy reuse.
- They can be used as an interface to abstract from the actual table definitions, so that you can reorganize the tables without having to modify the interface.

If a subquery is associated with a single query, consider using the `WITH` clause of the `SELECT` command instead of creating a seldom-used view.

In general, these uses do not require nesting views, that is, defining views based on other views.

These are two patterns of creating views that tend to be problematic because the view's SQL is used during query execution.

- Defining many layers of views so that your final queries look deceptively simple.

  Problems arise when you try to enhance or troubleshoot queries that use the views, for example by examining the execution plan. The query's execution plan tends to be complicated and it is difficult to understand and how to improve it.

- Defining a denormalized "world" view. A view that joins a large number of database tables that is used for a wide variety of queries.

  Performance issues can occur for some queries that use the view for some `WHERE` conditions while other `WHERE` conditions work well.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.4.9.2 Working with View Dependencies

If there are view dependencies on a table you must use the `CASCADE` keyword to drop it. Also, you cannot alter the table if there are view dependencies on it. This example shows a view dependency on a table.

```
CREATE TABLE t (id integer PRIMARY KEY);
CREATE VIEW v AS SELECT * FROM t;

DROP TABLE t;
ERROR:  cannot drop table t because other objects depend on it
DETAIL:  view v depends on table t
HINT:  Use DROP ... CASCADE to drop the dependent objects too.

ALTER TABLE t DROP id;
ERROR:  cannot drop column id of table t because other objects depend on it
DETAIL:  view v depends on column id of table t
HINT:  Use DROP ... CASCADE to drop the dependent objects too.
```

As the previous example shows, altering a table can be quite a challenge if there is a deep hierarchy of views, because you have to create the views in the correct order. You cannot create a view unless all the objects it requires are present.

You can use view dependency information when you want to alter a table that is referenced by a view. For example, you might want to change a table's column data type from `integer` to `bigint` because you realize you need to store larger numbers. However, you cannot do that if there are views that use the column. You first have to drop those views, then change the column and then run all the `CREATE VIEW` statements to create the views again.

#### Finding View Dependencies

The following example queries list view information on dependencies on tables and columns.

- Finding Direct View Dependencies on a Table
- Finding Direct Dependencies on a Table Column
- Listing View Schemas
- Listing View Definitions
- Listing Nested Views

The example output is based on the Example Data at the end of this topic.

Also, you can use the first example query Finding Direct View Dependencies on a Table to find dependencies on user-defined functions (or procedures). The query uses the catalog table `pg_class` that contains information about tables and views. For functions, you can use the catalog table `pg_proc` to get information about functions.

For detailed information about the system catalog tables that store view information, see About View Storage in WarehousePG.

##### Finding Direct View Dependencies on a Table

To find out which views directly depend on table `t1`, create a query that performs a join among the catalog tables that contain the dependency information, and qualify the query to return only view dependencies.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT v.oid::regclass AS view,
  d.refobjid::regclass AS ref_object    -- name of table
  -- d.refobjid::regproc AS ref_object  -- name of function
FROM pg_depend AS d      -- objects that depend on a table
  JOIN pg_rewrite AS r  -- rules depending on a table
     ON r.oid = d.objid
  JOIN pg_class AS v    -- views for the rules
     ON v.oid = r.ev_class
WHERE v.relkind = 'v'         -- filter views only
  -- dependency must be a rule depending on a relation
  AND d.classid = 'pg_rewrite'::regclass
  AND d.deptype = 'n'         -- normal dependency
  -- qualify object
  AND d.refclassid = 'pg_class'::regclass   -- dependent table
  AND d.refobjid = 't1'::regclass
  -- AND d.refclassid = 'pg_proc'::regclass -- dependent function
  -- AND d.refobjid = 'f'::regproc
;
    view    | ref_object
------------+------------
 v1         | t1
 v2         | t1
 v2         | t1
 v3         | t1
 mytest.vt1 | t1
 mytest.v2a | t1
 mytest.v2a | t1
(7 rows)
```

The query performs casts to the `regclass` object identifier type. For information about object identifier types, see the PostgeSQL documentation on Object Identifier Types.

In some cases, the views are listed multiple times because the view references multiple table columns. You can remove those duplicates using `DISTINCT`.

You can alter the query to find views with direct dependencies on the function `f`.

- In the `SELECT` clause replace the name of the table `d.refobjid::regclass as ref_object` with the name of the function `d.refobjid::regproc as ref_object`
- In the `WHERE` clause replace the catalog of the referenced object from `d.refclassid = 'pg_class'::regclass` for tables, to `d.refclassid = 'pg_proc'::regclass` for procedures (functions). Also change the object name from `d.refobjid = 't1'::regclass` to `d.refobjid = 'f'::regproc`
- In the `WHERE` clause, replace the name of the table `refobjid = 't1'::regclass` with the name of the function `refobjid = 'f'::regproc`.

In the example query, the changes have been commented out (prefixed with `--`). You can comment out the lines for the table and enable the lines for the function.

#### Finding Direct Dependencies on a Table Column

You can modify the previous query to find those views that depend on a certain table column, which can be useful if you are planning to drop a column (adding a column to the base table is never a problem). The query uses the table column information in the `pg_attribute` catalog table.

This query finds the views that depend on the column `id` of table `t1`:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT v.oid::regclass AS view,
  d.refobjid::regclass AS ref_object, -- name of table
  a.attname AS col_name               -- column name
FROM pg_attribute AS a   -- columns for a table
  JOIN pg_depend AS d    -- objects that depend on a column
    ON d.refobjsubid = a.attnum AND d.refobjid = a.attrelid
  JOIN pg_rewrite AS r   -- rules depending on the column
    ON r.oid = d.objid
  JOIN pg_class AS v     -- views for the rules
    ON v.oid = r.ev_class
WHERE v.relkind = 'v'    -- filter views only
  -- dependency must be a rule depending on a relation
  AND d.classid = 'pg_rewrite'::regclass
  AND d.refclassid = 'pg_class'::regclass
  AND d.deptype = 'n'    -- normal dependency
  AND a.attrelid = 't1'::regclass
  AND a.attname = 'id'
;
    view    | ref_object | col_name
------------+------------+----------
 v1         | t1         | id
 v2         | t1         | id
 mytest.vt1 | t1         | id
 mytest.v2a | t1         | id
(4 rows)
```

#### Listing View Schemas

If you have created views in multiple schemas, you can also list views, each view's schema, and the table referenced by the view. The query retrieves the schema from the catalog table `pg_namespace` and excludes the system schemas `pg_catalog`, `information_schema`, and `gp_toolkit`. Also, the query does not list a view if the view refers to itself.

```
SELECT v.oid::regclass AS view,
  ns.nspname AS schema,       -- view schema,
  d.refobjid::regclass AS ref_object -- name of table
FROM pg_depend AS d            -- objects that depend on a table
  JOIN pg_rewrite AS r        -- rules depending on a table
    ON r.oid = d.objid
  JOIN pg_class AS v          -- views for the rules
    ON v.oid = r.ev_class
  JOIN pg_namespace AS ns     -- schema information
    ON ns.oid = v.relnamespace
WHERE v.relkind = 'v'          -- filter views only
  -- dependency must be a rule depending on a relation
  AND d.classid = 'pg_rewrite'::regclass
  AND d.refclassid = 'pg_class'::regclass  -- referenced objects in pg_class -- tables and views
  AND d.deptype = 'n'         -- normal dependency
  -- qualify object
  AND ns.nspname NOT IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema', 'gp_toolkit') -- system schemas
  AND NOT (v.oid = d.refobjid) -- not self-referencing dependency
;
    view    | schema | ref_object
------------+--------+------------
 v1         | public | t1
 v2         | public | t1
 v2         | public | t1
 v2         | public | v1
 v3         | public | t1
 vm1        | public | mytest.tm1
 mytest.vm1 | mytest | t1
 vm2        | public | mytest.tm1
 mytest.v2a | mytest | t1
 mytest.v2a | mytest | t1
 mytest.v2a | mytest | v1
(11 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Listing View Definitions

This query lists the views that depend on `t1`, the column referenced, and the view definition. The `CREATE VIEW` command is created by adding the appropriate text to the view definition.

```
SELECT v.relname AS view,
  d.refobjid::regclass as ref_object,
  d.refobjsubid as ref_col,
  'CREATE VIEW ' || v.relname || ' AS ' || pg_get_viewdef(v.oid) AS view_def
FROM pg_depend AS d
  JOIN pg_rewrite AS r
    ON r.oid = d.objid
  JOIN pg_class AS v
    ON v.oid = r.ev_class
WHERE NOT (v.oid = d.refobjid)
  AND d.refobjid = 't1'::regclass
  ORDER BY d.refobjsubid
;
 view | ref_object | ref_col |                  view_def
------+------------+---------+-------------------------------------------
 v1   | t1         |       1 | CREATE VIEW v1 AS  SELECT max(t1.id) AS id+
      |            |         |    FROM t1;
 v2a  | t1         |       1 | CREATE VIEW v2a AS  SELECT t1.val         +
      |            |         |    FROM (t1                               +
      |            |         |      JOIN v1 USING (id));
 vt1  | t1         |       1 | CREATE VIEW vt1 AS  SELECT t1.id          +
      |            |         |    FROM t1                                +
      |            |         |   WHERE (t1.id < 3);
 v2   | t1         |       1 | CREATE VIEW v2 AS  SELECT t1.val          +
      |            |         |    FROM (t1                               +
      |            |         |      JOIN v1 USING (id));
 v2a  | t1         |       2 | CREATE VIEW v2a AS  SELECT t1.val         +
      |            |         |    FROM (t1                               +
      |            |         |      JOIN v1 USING (id));
 v3   | t1         |       2 | CREATE VIEW v3 AS  SELECT (t1.val || f()) +
      |            |         |    FROM t1;
 v2   | t1         |       2 | CREATE VIEW v2 AS  SELECT t1.val          +
      |            |         |    FROM (t1                               +
      |            |         |      JOIN v1 USING (id));
(7 rows)
```

#### Listing Nested Views

This CTE query lists information about views that reference another view.

The `WITH` clause in this CTE query selects all the views in the user schemas. The main `SELECT` statement finds all views that reference another view.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
WITH views AS ( SELECT v.relname AS view,
  d.refobjid AS ref_object,
  v.oid AS view_oid,
  ns.nspname AS namespace
FROM pg_depend AS d
  JOIN pg_rewrite AS r
    ON r.oid = d.objid
  JOIN pg_class AS v
    ON v.oid = r.ev_class
  JOIN pg_namespace AS ns
    ON ns.oid = v.relnamespace
WHERE v.relkind = 'v'
  AND ns.nspname NOT IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema', 'gp_toolkit') -- exclude system schemas
  AND d.deptype = 'n'    -- normal dependency
  AND NOT (v.oid = d.refobjid) -- not a self-referencing dependency
 )
SELECT views.view, views.namespace AS schema,
  views.ref_object::regclass AS ref_view,
  ref_nspace.nspname AS ref_schema
FROM views
  JOIN pg_depend as dep
    ON dep.refobjid = views.view_oid
  JOIN pg_class AS class
    ON views.ref_object = class.oid
  JOIN  pg_namespace AS ref_nspace
      ON class.relnamespace = ref_nspace.oid
  WHERE class.relkind = 'v'
    AND dep.deptype = 'n'
;
 view | schema | ref_view | ref_schema
------+--------+----------+------------
 v2   | public | v1       | public
 v2a  | mytest | v1       | public
```

#### Example Data

The output for the example queries is based on these database objects and data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE t1 (
   id integer PRIMARY KEY,
   val text NOT NULL
);

INSERT INTO t1 VALUES
   (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');

CREATE FUNCTION f() RETURNS text
   LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT ''suffix''::text';

CREATE VIEW v1 AS
  SELECT max(id) AS id
  FROM t1;

CREATE VIEW v2 AS
  SELECT t1.val
  FROM t1 JOIN v1 USING (id);

CREATE VIEW v3 AS
  SELECT val || f()
  FROM t1;

CREATE VIEW v5 AS
  SELECT f() ;

CREATE SCHEMA mytest ;

CREATE TABLE mytest.tm1 (
   id integer PRIMARY KEY,
   val text NOT NULL
);

INSERT INTO mytest.tm1 VALUES
   (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');

CREATE VIEW vm1 AS
  SELECT id FROM mytest.tm1 WHERE id < 3 ;

CREATE VIEW mytest.vm1 AS
  SELECT id FROM public.t1 WHERE id < 3 ;

CREATE VIEW vm2 AS
  SELECT max(id) AS id
  FROM mytest.tm1;

CREATE VIEW mytest.v2a AS
  SELECT t1.val
  FROM public.t1 JOIN public.v1 USING (id);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.4.9.3 About View Storage in WarehousePG

A view is similar to a table, both are relations - that is "something with columns". All such objects are stored in the catalog table `pg_class`. These are the general differences:

- A view has no data files (because it holds no data).
- The value of `pg_class.relkind` for a view is `v` rather than `r`.
- A view has an `ON SELECT` query rewrite rule called `_RETURN`.

  The rewrite rule contains the definition of the view and is stored in the `ev_action` column of the `pg_rewrite` catalog table.

For more technical information about views, see the PostgreSQL documentation aboutViews and the Rule System.

Also, a view definition is *not* stored as a string, but in the form of a query parse tree. Views are parsed when they are created, which has several consequences:

- Object names are resolved during `CREATE VIEW`, so the current setting of `search_path` affects the view definition.
- Objects are referred to by their internal immutable object ID rather than by their name. Consequently, renaming an object or column referenced in a view definition can be performed without dropping the view.
- WarehousePG can determine exactly which objects are used in the view definition, so it can add dependencies on them.

Note that the way WarehousePG handles views is quite different from the way WarehousePG handles functions: function bodies are stored as strings and are not parsed when they are created. Consequently, WarehousePG does not know on which objects a given function depends.

#### Where View Dependency Information is Stored

These system catalog tables contain the information used to determine the tables on which a view depends.

- `pg_class` - object information including tables and views. The `relkind` column describes the type of object.
- `pg_depend` - object dependency information for database-specific (non-shared) objects.
- `pg_rewrite` - rewrite rules for tables and views.
- `pg_attribute` - information about table columns.
- `pg_namespace` - information about schemas (namespaces).

It is important to note that there is no direct dependency of a view on the objects it uses: the dependent object is actually the view's rewrite rule. That adds another layer of indirection to view dependency information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.4.10 Creating and Managing Materialized Views

Materialized views are similar to views. A materialized view enables you to save a frequently used or complex query, then access the query results in a `SELECT` statement as if they were a table. Materialized views persist the query results in a table-like form. While access to the data stored in a materialized view can be much faster than accessing the underlying tables directly or through a view, the data is not always current.

The materialized view data cannot be directly updated. To refresh the materialized view data, use the `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` command. The query used to create the materialized view is stored in exactly the same way that a view's query is stored. For example, you can create a materialized view that quickly displays a summary of historical sales data for situations where having incomplete data for the current date would be acceptable.

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary AS
  SELECT seller_no, invoice_date, sum(invoice_amt)::numeric(13,2) as sales_amt
    FROM invoice
    WHERE invoice_date < CURRENT_DATE
    GROUP BY seller_no, invoice_date
    ORDER BY seller_no, invoice_date;

CREATE UNIQUE INDEX sales_summary_seller
  ON sales_summary (seller_no, invoice_date);
```

The materialized view might be useful for displaying a graph in the dashboard created for sales people. You could schedule a job to update the summary information each night using this command.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary;
```

The information about a materialized view in the WarehousePG cluster catalogs is exactly the same as it is for a table or view. A materialized view is a relation, just like a table or a view. When a materialized view is referenced in a query, the data is returned directly from the materialized view, just like from a table. The query in the materialized view definition is only used for populating the materialized view.

If you can tolerate periodic updates of materialized view data, the performance benefit can be substantial.

One use of a materialized view is to allow faster access to data brought in from an external data source such as external table or a foreign data wrapper. Also, you can define indexes on a materialized view, whereas foreign data wrappers do not support indexes; this advantage might not apply for other types of external data access.

If a subquery is associated with a single query, consider using the `WITH` clause of the `SELECT` command instead of creating a seldom-used materialized view.

**Parent topic:** DDL: Defining Database Objects

### Creating Materialized Views

The `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` command defines a materialized view based on a query.

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW us_users AS SELECT u.id, u.name, a.zone FROM users u, address a WHERE a.country = 'USA';
```

If a materialized view query contains an `ORDER BY` or `SORT` clause, the clause is ignored when a `SELECT` is performed on the materialized query.

### Refreshing or Deactivating Materialized Views

The `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` command updates the materialized view data.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW us_users;
```

With the `WITH NO DATA` clause, the current data is removed, no new data is generated, and the materialized view is left in an unscannable state. An error is returned if a query attempts to access an unscannable materialized view.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW us_users WITH NO DATA;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Dropping Materialized Views

The `DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW` command removes a materialized view definition and data. For example:

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW us_users;
```

The `DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW ... CASCADE` command also removes all dependent objects. For example, if another materialized view depends on the materialized view which is about to be dropped, the other materialized view will be dropped as well. Without the `CASCADE` option, the `DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW` command fails.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.5 Inserting, Updating, and Deleting Data

This section provides information about manipulating data and concurrent access in WarehousePG.

This topic includes the following subtopics:


- About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG
- Inserting Rows
- Updating Existing Rows
- Deleting Rows
- Working With Transactions
- Global Deadlock Detector
- Vacuuming the Database
- Running Out of Locks


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

### About Concurrency Control in WarehousePG

WarehousePG and PostgreSQL do not use locks for concurrency control. They maintain data consistency using a multiversion model, Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC). MVCC achieves transaction isolation for each database session, and each query transaction sees a snapshot of data. This ensures the transaction sees consistent data that is not affected by other concurrent transactions.

Because MVCC does not use explicit locks for concurrency control, lock contention is minimized and WarehousePG maintains reasonable performance in multiuser environments. Locks acquired for querying (reading) data do not conflict with locks acquired for writing data.

WarehousePG provides multiple lock modes to control concurrent access to data in tables. Most WarehousePG SQL commands automatically acquire the appropriate locks to ensure that referenced tables are not dropped or modified in incompatible ways while a command runs. For applications that cannot adapt easily to MVCC behavior, you can use the `LOCK` command to acquire explicit locks. However, proper use of MVCC generally provides better performance.

| Lock Mode | Associated SQL Commands | Conflicts With |
|---|---|---|
| ACCESS SHARE | `SELECT` | ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| ROW SHARE | `SELECT...FOR lock_strength` | EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| ROW EXCLUSIVE | `INSERT`, `COPY` | SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE | `VACUUM` (without `FULL`), `ANALYZE` | SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| SHARE | `CREATE INDEX` | ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE | | ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| EXCLUSIVE | `DELETE`, `UPDATE`, `SELECT...FOR lock_strength`, `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW CONCURRENTLY` | ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |
| ACCESS EXCLUSIVE | `ALTER TABLE`, `DROP TABLE`, `TRUNCATE`, `REINDEX`, `CLUSTER`, `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` (without `CONCURRENTLY`), `VACUUM FULL` | ACCESS SHARE, ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, ACCESS EXCLUSIVE |

> **Note** By default WarehousePG acquires the more restrictive `EXCLUSIVE` lock (rather than `ROW EXCLUSIVE` in PostgreSQL) for `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` operations on heap tables. When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled the lock mode for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations on heap tables is `ROW EXCLUSIVE`. See Global Deadlock Detector. WarehousePG always holds a table-level lock with `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` statements.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Inserting Rows

Use the `INSERT` command to create rows in a table. This command requires the table name and a value for each column in the table; you may optionally specify the column names in any order. If you do not specify column names, list the data values in the order of the columns in the table, separated by commas.

For example, to specify the column names and the values to insert:

```
INSERT INTO products (name, price, product_no) VALUES ('Cheese', 9.99, 1);
```

To specify only the values to insert:

```
INSERT INTO products VALUES (1, 'Cheese', 9.99);
```

Usually, the data values are literals (constants), but you can also use scalar expressions. For example:

```
INSERT INTO films SELECT * FROM tmp_films WHERE date_prod <
'2016-05-07';
```

You can insert multiple rows in a single command. For example:

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES
    (1, 'Cheese', 9.99),
    (2, 'Bread', 1.99),
    (3, 'Milk', 2.99);
```

To insert data into a partitioned table, you specify the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. You also can specify a leaf child table of the partitioned table in an `INSERT` command. An error is returned if the data is not valid for the specified leaf child table. Specifying a child table that is not a leaf child table in the `INSERT` command is not supported.

To insert large amounts of data, use external tables or the `COPY` command. These load mechanisms are more efficient than `INSERT` for inserting large quantities of rows. See Loading and Unloading Data for more information about bulk data loading.

The storage model of append-optimized tables is optimized for bulk data loading. WarehousePG does not recommend single row `INSERT` statements for append-optimized tables. For append-optimized tables, WarehousePG supports a maximum of 127 concurrent `INSERT` transactions into a single append-optimized table.

### Updating Existing Rows

The `UPDATE` command updates rows in a table. You can update all rows, a subset of all rows, or individual rows in a table. You can update each column separately without affecting other columns.

To perform an update, you need:

- The name of the table and columns to update
- The new values of the columns
- One or more conditions specifying the row or rows to be updated.

For example, the following command updates all products that have a price of *5* to have a price of *10*:

```
UPDATE products SET price = 10 WHERE price = 5;
```

Using `UPDATE` in WarehousePG has the following restrictions:

- While GPORCA supports updates to WarehousePG distribution key columns, the Postgres Planner does not.
- If mirrors are enabled, you cannot use `STABLE` or `VOLATILE` functions in an `UPDATE` statement.
- WarehousePG partitioning columns cannot be updated.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Deleting Rows

The `DELETE` command deletes rows from a table. Specify a `WHERE` clause to delete rows that match certain criteria. If you do not specify a `WHERE` clause, all rows in the table are deleted. The result is a valid, but empty, table. For example, to remove all rows from the products table that have a price of *10*:

```
DELETE FROM products WHERE price = 10;
```

To delete all rows from a table:

```
DELETE FROM products;
```

Using `DELETE` in WarehousePG has similar restrictions to using `UPDATE`:

- If mirrors are enabled, you cannot use `STABLE` or `VOLATILE` functions in an `UPDATE` statement.

#### Truncating a Table

Use the `TRUNCATE` command to quickly remove all rows in a table. For example:

```
TRUNCATE mytable;
```

This command empties a table of all rows in one operation. Note that `TRUNCATE` does not scan the table, therefore it does not process inherited child tables or `ON DELETE` rewrite rules. The command truncates only rows in the named table.

### Working With Transactions

Transactions allow you to bundle multiple SQL statements in one all-or-nothing operation.

The following are the WarehousePG SQL transaction commands:

- `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION` starts a transaction block.
- `END` or `COMMIT` commits the results of a transaction.
- `ROLLBACK` abandons a transaction without making any changes.
- `SAVEPOINT` marks a place in a transaction and enables partial rollback. You can roll back commands run after a savepoint while maintaining commands run before the savepoint.
- `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT` rolls back a transaction to a savepoint.
- `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` destroys a savepoint within a transaction.

#### Transaction Isolation Levels

WarehousePG accepts the standard SQL transaction levels as follows:

- `READ UNCOMMITTED` and `READ COMMITTED` behave like the standard `READ COMMITTED`.
- `REPEATABLE READ` and `SERIALIZABLE` behave like `REPEATABLE READ`.

The following information describes the behavior of the WarehousePG transaction levels.

##### Read Uncommitted and Read Committed

WarehousePG does not allow any command to see an uncommitted update in another concurrent transaction, so `READ UNCOMMITTED` behaves the same as `READ COMMITTED`. `READ COMMITTED` provides fast, simple, partial transaction isolation. `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands operate on a snapshot of the database taken when the query started.

A `SELECT` query:

- Sees data committed before the query starts.
- Sees updates run within the transaction.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Does not see uncommitted data outside the transaction.
- Can possibly see changes that concurrent transactions made if the concurrent transaction is committed after the initial read in its own transaction.

Successive `SELECT` queries in the same transaction can see different data if other concurrent transactions commit changes between the successive queries. `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands find only rows committed before the commands started.

`READ COMMITTED` transaction isolation allows concurrent transactions to modify or lock a row before `UPDATE` or `DELETE` find the row. `READ COMMITTED` transaction isolation may be inadequate for applications that perform complex queries and updates and require a consistent view of the database.

#### Repeatable Read and Serializable

`SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation, as defined by the SQL standard, ensures that transactions that run concurrently produce the same results as if they were run one after another. If you specify `SERIALIZABLE` WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`. `REPEATABLE READ` transactions prevent dirty reads, non-repeatable reads, and phantom reads without expensive locking, but WarehousePG does not detect all serializability interactions that can occur during concurrent transaction execution. Concurrent transactions should be examined to identify interactions that are not prevented by disallowing concurrent updates of the same data. You can prevent these interactions by using explicit table locks or by requiring the conflicting transactions to update a dummy row introduced to represent the conflict.

With `REPEATABLE READ` transactions, a `SELECT` query:

- Sees a snapshot of the data as of the start of the transaction (not as of the start of the current query within the transaction).
- Sees only data committed before the query starts.
- Sees updates run within the transaction.
- Does not see uncommitted data outside the transaction.
- Does not see changes that concurrent transactions make.
- Successive `SELECT` commands within a single transaction always see the same data.
- `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands find only rows committed before the command started. If a concurrent transaction has updated, deleted, or locked a target row, the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction waits for the concurrent transaction to commit or roll back the change. If the concurrent transaction commits the change, the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction rolls back. If the concurrent transaction rolls back its change, the `REPEATABLE READ` transaction can commit its changes.

The default transaction isolation level in WarehousePG is `READ COMMITTED`. To change the isolation level for a transaction, declare the isolation level when you `BEGIN` the transaction or use the `SET TRANSACTION` command after the transaction starts.

### Global Deadlock Detector

The WarehousePG Global Deadlock Detector background worker process collects lock information on all segments and uses a directed algorithm to detect the existence of local and global deadlocks. This algorithm allows WarehousePG to relax concurrent update and delete restrictions on heap tables. (WarehousePG still employs table-level locking on AO/CO tables, restricting concurrent `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `SELECT...FOR lock_strength` operations.)

By default, the Global Deadlock Detector is deactivated and WarehousePG runs the concurrent `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations on a heap table serially. You can activate these concurrent updates and have the Global Deadlock Detector determine when a deadlock exists by setting the server configuration parameter `gp_enable_global_deadlock_detector`.

When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled, the background worker process is automatically started on the coordinator host when you start WarehousePG. You configure the interval at which the Global Deadlock Detector collects and analyzes lock waiting data via the gp_global_deadlock_detector_period server configuration parameter.

If the Global Deadlock Detector determines that deadlock exists, it breaks the deadlock by cancelling one or more backend processes associated with the youngest transaction(s) involved.

When the Global Deadlock Detector determines a deadlock exists for the following types of transactions, only one of the transactions will succeed. The other transactions will fail with an error indicating that concurrent updates to the same row is not allowed.

- Concurrent transactions on the same row of a heap table where the first transaction is an update operation and a later transaction runs an update or delete and the query plan contains a motion operator.
- Concurrent update transactions on the same distribution key of a heap table that are run by the Postgres Planner.
- Concurrent update transactions on the same row of a hash table that are run by the GPORCA optimizer.

> **Note** WarehousePG uses the interval specified in the deadlock_timeout server configuration parameter for local deadlock detection. Because the local and global deadlock detection algorithms differ, the cancelled process(es) may differ depending upon which detector (local or global) WarehousePG triggers first.

> **Note** If the lock_timeout server configuration parameter is turned on and set to a value smaller than `deadlock_timeout` and `gp_global_deadlock_detector_period`, WarehousePG will cancel a statement before it would ever trigger a deadlock check in that session.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

To view lock waiting information for all segments, run the `gp_dist_wait_status()` user-defined function. You can use the output of this function to determine which transactions are waiting on locks, which transactions are holding locks, the lock types and mode, the waiter and holder session identifiers, and which segments are running the transactions. Sample output of the `gp_dist_wait_status()` function follows:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_catalog.gp_dist_wait_status();
-[ RECORD 1 ]----+--------------
segid            | 0
waiter_dxid      | 11
holder_dxid      | 12
holdTillEndXact  | t
waiter_lpid      | 31249
holder_lpid      | 31458
waiter_lockmode  | ShareLock
waiter_locktype  | transactionid
waiter_sessionid | 8
holder_sessionid | 9
-[ RECORD 2 ]----+--------------
segid            | 1
waiter_dxid      | 12
holder_dxid      | 11
holdTillEndXact  | t
waiter_lpid      | 31467
holder_lpid      | 31250
waiter_lockmode  | ShareLock
waiter_locktype  | transactionid
waiter_sessionid | 9
holder_sessionid | 8
```

When it cancels a transaction to break a deadlock, the Global Deadlock Detector reports the following error message:

```
ERROR:  canceling statement due to user request: "cancelled by global deadlock detector"
```

#### Global Deadlock Detector UPDATE and DELETE Compatibility

The Global Deadlock Detector can manage concurrent updates for these types of `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands on heap tables:

- Simple `UPDATE` of a single table. Update a non-distribution key with the Postgres Planner. The command does not contain a `FROM` clause, or a sub-query in the `WHERE` clause.

  ```
  UPDATE t SET c2 = c2 + 1 WHERE c1 > 10;
  ```

- Simple `DELETE` of a single table. The command does not contain a sub-query in the `FROM` or `WHERE` clauses.

  ```
  DELETE FROM t WHERE c1 > 10;
  ```

- Split `UPDATE`. For the Postgres Planner, the `UPDATE` command updates a distribution key.

  ```
  UPDATE t SET c = c + 1; -- c is a distribution key
  ```

  For GPORCA, the `UPDATE` command updates a distribution key or references a distribution key.

  ```
  UPDATE t SET b = b + 1 WHERE c = 10; -- c is a distribution key
  ```

- Complex `UPDATE`. The `UPDATE` command includes multiple table joins.

  ```
  UPDATE t1 SET c = t1.c+1 FROM t2 WHERE t1.c = t2.c;
  ```

  Or the command contains a sub-query in the `WHERE` clause.

  ```
  UPDATE t SET c = c + 1 WHERE c > ALL(SELECT * FROM t1);
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Complex `DELETE`. A complex `DELETE` command is similar to a complex `UPDATE`, and involves multiple table joins or a sub-query.

```
DELETE FROM t USING t1 WHERE t.c > t1.c;
```

The following table shows the concurrent `UPDATE` or `DELETE` commands that are managed by the Global Deadlock Detector. For example, concurrent simple `UPDATE` commands on the same table row are managed by the Global Deadlock Detector. For a concurrent complex `UPDATE` and a simple `UPDATE`, only one `UPDATE` is performed, and an error is returned for the other `UPDATE`.

| Command | Simple `UPDATE` | Simple `DELETE` | Split `UPDATE` | Complex `UPDATE` | Complex `DELETE` |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Simple `UPDATE` | YES | YES | NO | NO | NO |
| Simple `DELETE` | YES | YES | NO | YES | YES |
| Split `UPDATE` | NO | NO | NO | NO | NO |
| Complex `UPDATE` | NO | YES | NO | NO | NO |
| Complex `DELETE` | NO | YES | NO | NO | YES |

### Vacuuming the Database

Deleted or updated data rows occupy physical space on disk even though new transactions cannot see them. Periodically running the `VACUUM` command removes these expired rows. For example:

```
VACUUM mytable;
```

The `VACUUM` command collects table-level statistics such as the number of rows and pages. Vacuum all tables after loading data, including append-optimized tables. For information about recommended routine vacuum operations, see Routine Vacuum and Analyze.

> **Important** The `VACUUM`, `VACUUM FULL`, and `VACUUM ANALYZE` commands should be used to maintain the data in a WarehousePG especially if updates and deletes are frequently performed on your database data. See the `VACUUM` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about using the command.

### Running Out of Locks

WarehousePG can potentially run out of locks when a database operation accesses multiple tables in a single transaction. Backup and restore are examples of such operations.

When WarehousePG runs out of locks, the error message that you may observe references a shared memory error:

```
... "WARNING","53200","out of shared memory",,,,,,"LOCK TABLE ...
... "ERROR","53200","out of shared memory",,"You might need to increase max_locks_per_transaction.",,,,"LOCK TABLE ...
```

> **Note** "shared memory" in this context refers to the shared memory of the internal object: the lock slots. "Out of shared memory" does *not* refer to exhaustion of system- or WarehousePG-level memory resources.

As the hint describes, consider increasing the `max_locks_per_transaction` server configuration parameter when you encounter this error.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6 Querying Data

This topic provides information about using SQL in WarehousePGs.

You enter SQL statements called queries to view, change, and analyze data in a database using the `psql` interactive SQL client and other client tools.

- About WarehousePG Query Processing
  This topic provides an overview of how WarehousePG processes queries. Understanding this process can be useful when writing and tuning queries.
- About GPORCA
  In WarehousePG, the default GPORCA optimizer co-exists with the Postgres Planner.
- Defining Queries
  WarehousePG is based on the PostgreSQL implementation of the SQL standard.
- WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions)
  The `WITH` clause provides a way to use subqueries or perform a data modifying operation in a larger `SELECT` query. You can also use the `WITH` clause in an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command.
- Using Functions and Operators
  Description of user-defined and built-in functions and operators in WarehousePG.
- Working with JSON Data
  WarehousePG supports the `json` and `jsonb` data types that store JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) data.
- Working with XML Data
  WarehousePG supports the `xml` data type that stores XML data.
- Using Full Text Search
  WarehousePG provides data types, functions, operators, index types, and configurations for querying natural language documents.
- Using WarehousePG MapReduce
  MapReduce is a programming model developed by Google for processing and generating large data sets on an array of commodity servers. WarehousePG MapReduce allows programmers who are familiar with the MapReduce model to write map and reduce functions and submit them to the WarehousePG parallel engine for processing.
- Query Performance
  WarehousePG dynamically eliminates irrelevant partitions in a table and optimally allocates memory for different operators in a query.
- Managing Spill Files Generated by Queries
  WarehousePG creates spill files, also known as workfiles, on disk if it does not have sufficient memory to run an SQL query in memory.
- Query Profiling
  Examine the query plans of poorly performing queries to identify possible performance tuning opportunities.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.1 About WarehousePG Query Processing

This topic provides an overview of how WarehousePG processes queries. Understanding this process can be useful when writing and tuning queries.

Users issue queries to WarehousePG as they would to any database management system. They connect to the database instance on the WarehousePG coordinator host using a client application such as `psql` and submit SQL statements.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

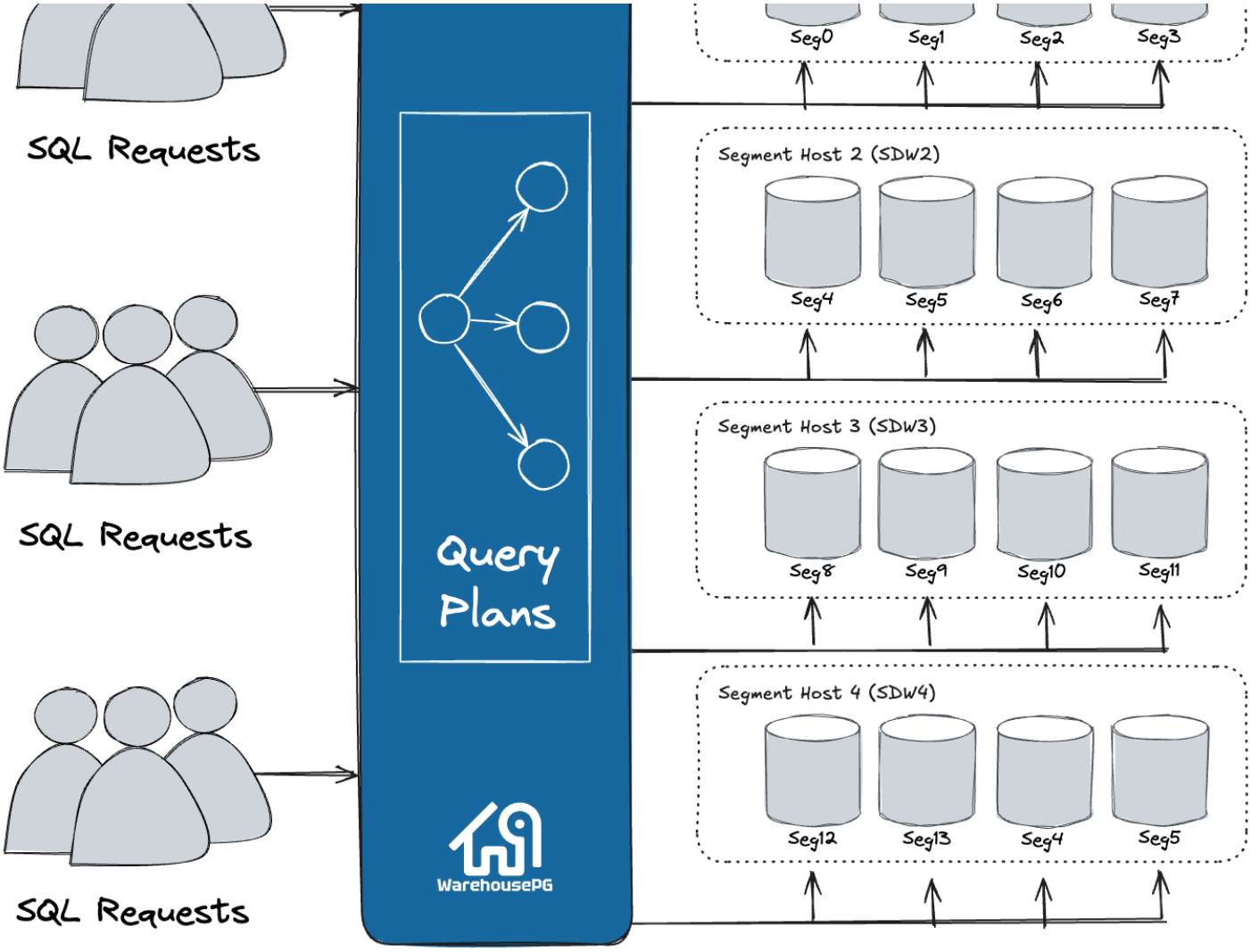
### Understanding Query Planning and Dispatch

The coordinator receives, parses, and optimizes the query. The resulting query plan is either parallel or targeted. The coordinator dispatches parallel query plans to all segments, as shown in Figure 1. The coordinator dispatches targeted query plans to a single segment, as shown inFigure 2. Each segment is responsible for running local database operations on its own set of data.

Most database operations—such as table scans, joins, aggregations, and sorts—run across all segments in parallel. Each operation is performed on a segment database independent of the data stored in the other segment databases.

**Figure 1: Dispatching the parallel query plan**

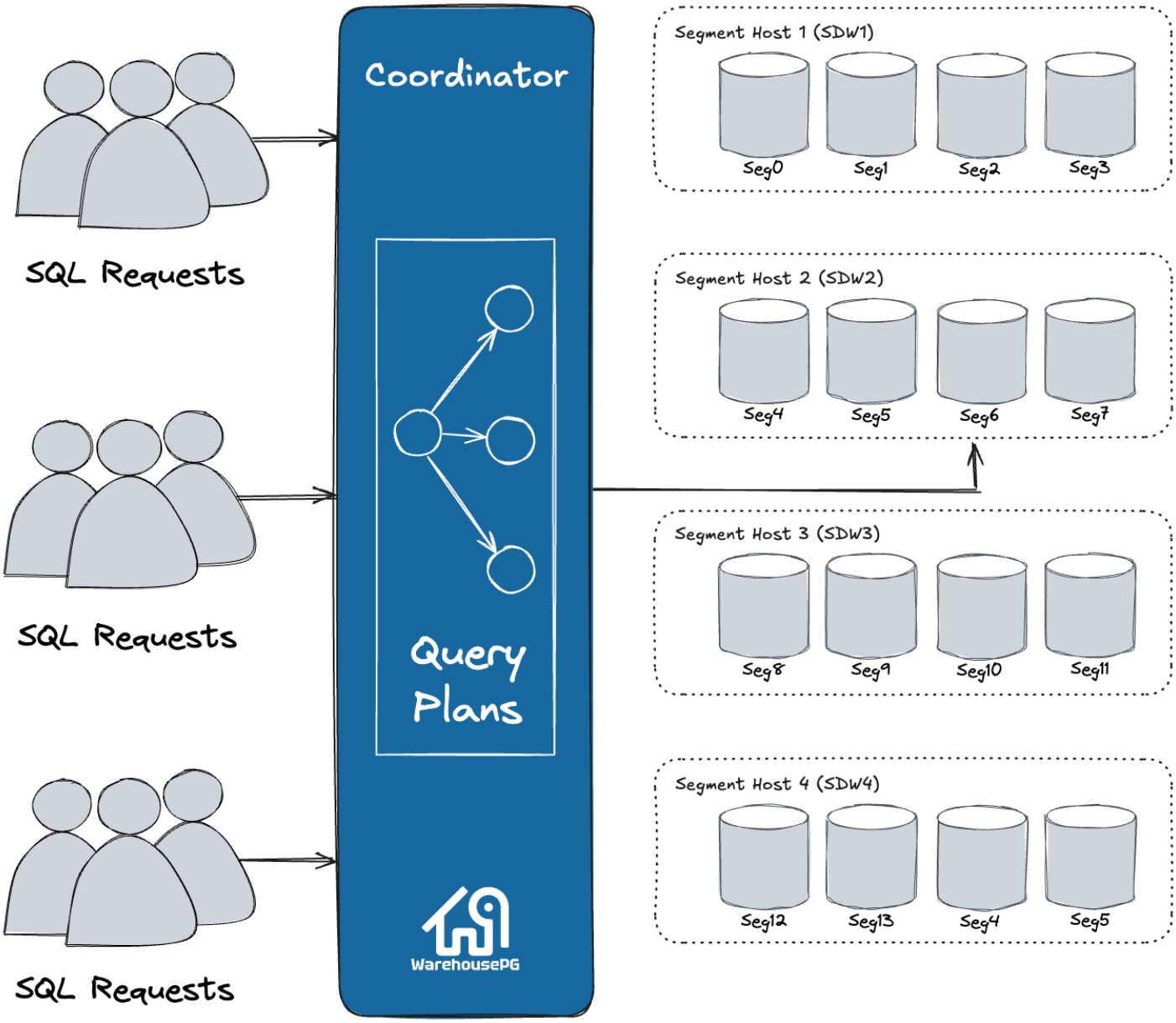
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




Certain queries may access only data on a single segment, such as single-row `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT` operations or queries that filter on the table distribution key column(s). In queries such as these, the query plan is not dispatched to all segments, but is targeted at the segment that contains the affected or relevant row(s).

Figure 2: Dispatching a targeted query plan

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




### Understanding WarehousePG Query Plans

A query plan is the set of operations WarehousePG will perform to produce the answer to a query. Each *node* or step in the plan represents a database operation such as a table scan, join, aggregation, or sort. Plans are read and run from bottom to top.

In addition to common database operations such as table scans, joins, and so on, WarehousePG has an additional operation type called *motion*. A motion operation involves moving tuples between the segments during query processing. Note that not every query requires a motion. For example, a targeted query plan does not require data to move across the interconnect.

To achieve maximum parallelism during query runtime, WarehousePG divides the work of the query plan into *slices*. A slice is a portion of the plan that segments can work on independently. A query plan is sliced wherever a *motion* operation occurs in the plan, with one slice on each side of the motion.

For example, consider the following simple query involving a join between two tables:

```
SELECT customer, amount
FROM sales JOIN customer USING (cust_id)
WHERE dateCol = '04-30-2016';
```

Figure 3 shows the query plan. Each segment receives a copy of the query plan and works on it in parallel.

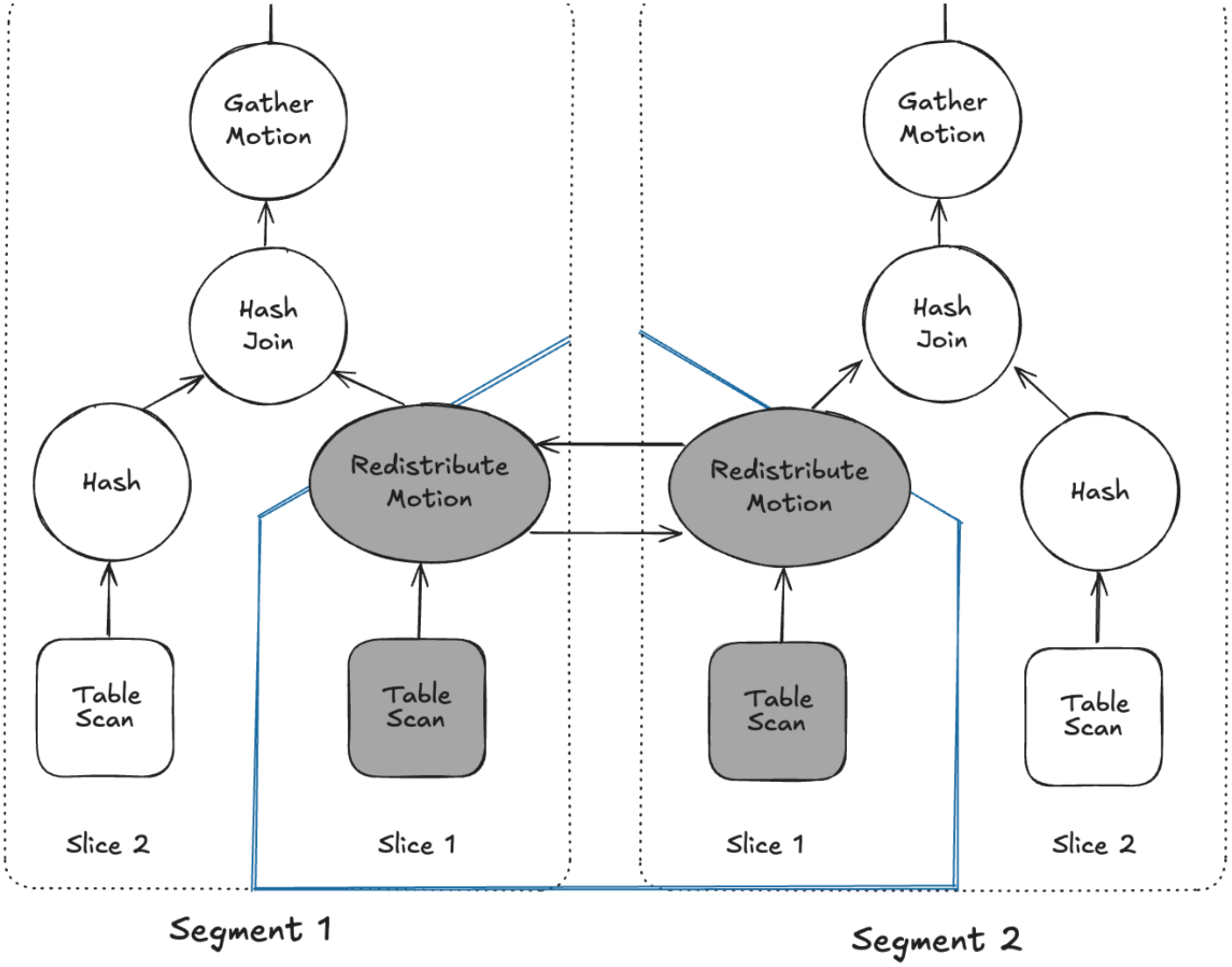
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The query plan for this example has a *redistribute motion* that moves tuples between the segments to complete the join. The redistribute motion is necessary because the customer table is distributed across the segments by `cust_id`, but the sales table is distributed across the segments by `sale_id`. To perform the join, the `sales` tuples must be redistributed by `cust_id`. The plan is sliced on either side of the redistribute motion, creating *slice 1* and *slice 2*.

This query plan has another type of motion operation called a *gather motion*. A gather motion is when the segments send results back up to the coordinator for presentation to the client. Because a query plan is always sliced wherever a motion occurs, this plan also has an implicit slice at the very top of the plan (*slice 3*). Not all query plans involve a gather motion. For example, a `CREATE TABLE x AS SELECT...` statement would not have a gather motion because tuples are sent to the newly created table, not to the coordinator.

**Figure 3: Query slice plan**

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




### Understanding Parallel Query Execution

WarehousePG creates a number of database processes to handle the work of a query. On the coordinator, the query worker process is called the *query dispatcher* (QD). The QD is responsible for creating and dispatching the query plan. It also accumulates and presents the final results. On the segments, a query worker process is called a *query executor* (QE). A QE is responsible for completing its portion of work and communicating its intermediate results to the other worker processes.

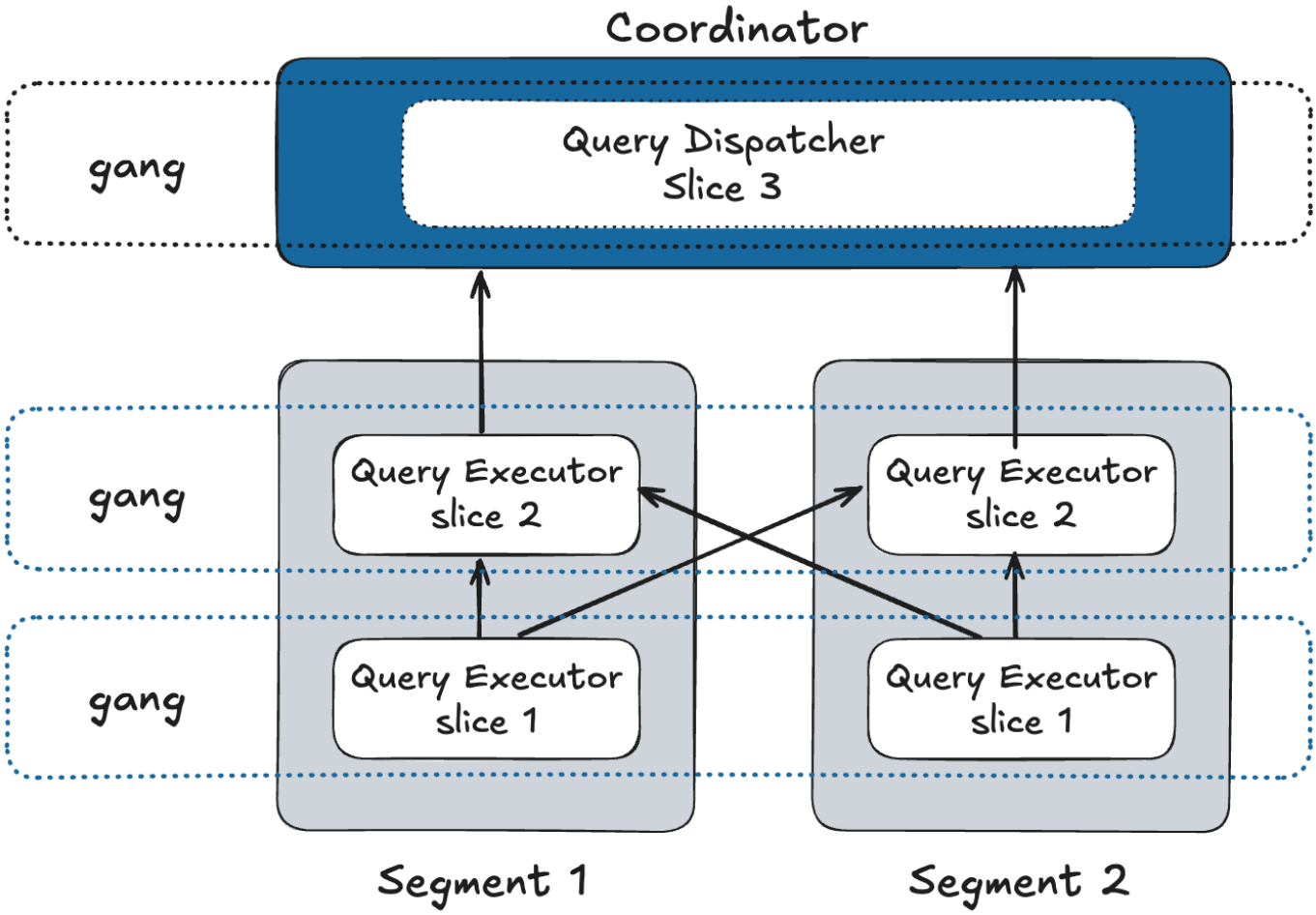
There is at least one worker process assigned to each *slice* of the query plan. A worker process works on its assigned portion of the query plan independently. During query runtime, each segment will have a number of processes working on the query in parallel.

Related processes that are working on the same slice of the query plan but on different segments are called *gangs*. As a portion of work is completed, tuples flow up the query plan from one gang of processes to the next. This inter-process communication between the segments is referred to as the *interconnect* component of WarehousePG.

**Figure 4: Query Worker Processes**

This diagram shows the query worker processes on the coordinator and two segment instances for the query plan illustrated in Figure 3.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.2 About GPORCA

In WarehousePG, the default GPORCA optimizer co-exists with the Postgres Planner.

- **Overview of GPORCA**
  GPORCA extends the planning and optimization capabilities of the Postgres Planner.
- **Activating and Deactivating GPORCA**
  By default, WarehousePG uses GPORCA instead of the Postgres Planner. Server configuration parameters activate or deactivate GPORCA.
- **Collecting Root Partition Statistics**
  For a partitioned table, GPORCA uses statistics of the table root partition to generate query plans. These statistics are used for determining the join order, for splitting and joining aggregate nodes, and for costing the query steps. In contrast, the Postgres Planner uses the statistics of each leaf partition.
- **Considerations when Using GPORCA**
  To run queries optimally with GPORCA, consider the query criteria closely.
- **GPORCA Features and Enhancements**
  GPORCA, the WarehousePG next generation query optimizer, includes enhancements for specific types of queries and operations:
- **Changed Behavior with GPORCA**
  There are changes to WarehousePG behavior with the GPORCA optimizer enabled (the default) as compared to the Postgres Planner.
- **GPORCA Limitations**
  There are limitations in WarehousePG when using the default GPORCA optimizer. GPORCA and the Postgres Planner currently coexist in WarehousePG because GPORCA does not support all WarehousePG features.
- **Determining the Query Optimizer that is Used**
  When GPORCA is enabled (the default), you can determine if WarehousePG is using GPORCA or is falling back to the Postgres Planner.
- **About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables**

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.1 Overview of GPORCA

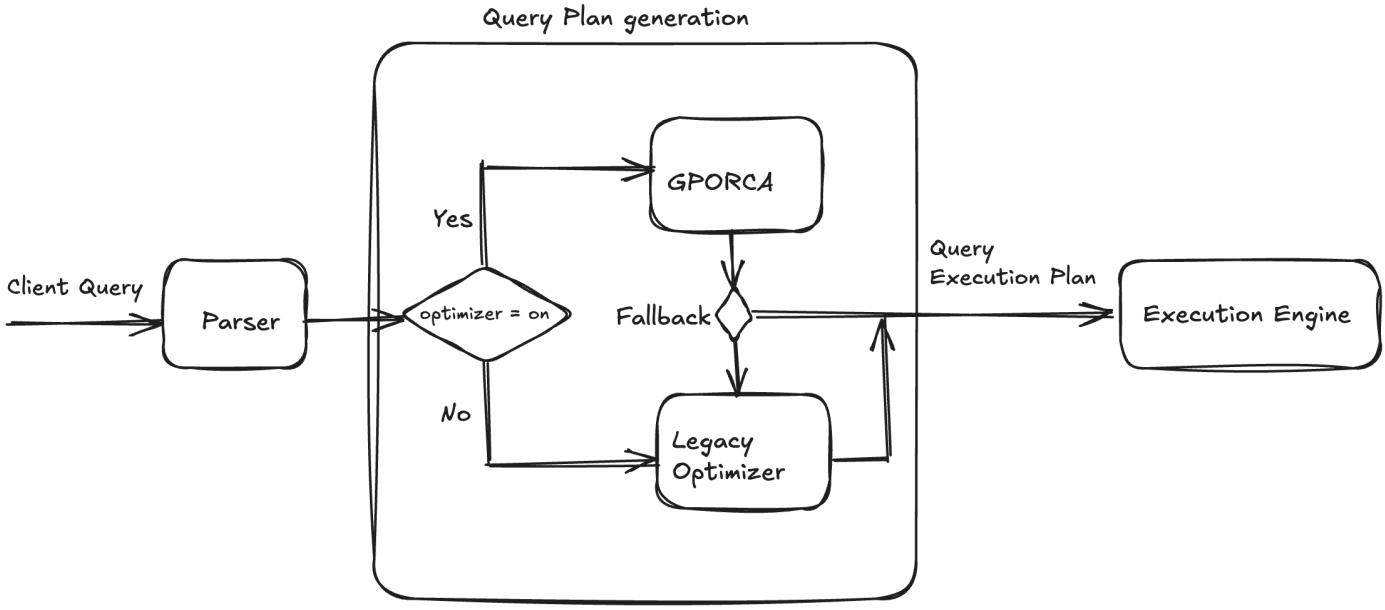
GPORCA extends the planning and optimization capabilities of the Postgres Planner.GPORCA is extensible and achieves better optimization in multi-core architecture environments. WarehousePG uses GPORCA by default to generate an execution plan for a query when possible.

GPORCA also enhances WarehousePG query performance tuning in the following areas:

- Queries against partitioned tables
- Queries that contain a common table expression (CTE)
- Queries that contain subqueries

In WarehousePG, GPORCA co-exists with the Postgres Planner. By default, WarehousePG uses GPORCA. If GPORCA cannot be used, then the Postgres Planner is used.

The following figure shows how GPORCA fits into the query planning architecture.




> **Note** All Postgres Planner server configuration parameters are ignored by GPORCA. However, if WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner, the planner server configuration parameters will impact the query plan generation. For a list of Postgres Planner server configuration parameters, see Query Tuning Parameters.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.2 Activating and Deactivating GPORCA

By default, WarehousePG uses GPORCA instead of the Postgres Planner. Server configuration parameters activate or deactivate GPORCA.

Although GPORCA is on by default, you can configure GPORCA usage at the system, database, session, or query level using the optimizer parameter. Refer to one of the following sections if you want to change the default behavior:

- Enabling GPORCA for a System
- Enabling GPORCA for a Database
- Enabling GPORCA for a Session or a Query

> **Note** You can deactivate the ability to activate or deactivate GPORCA with the server configuration parameter optimizer_control. For information about the server configuration parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

#### Enabling GPORCA for a System

Set the server configuration parameter optimizer for the WarehousePG cluster.

1. Log into the WarehousePG coordinator host as `gpadmin`, the WarehousePG administrator.
2. Set the values of the server configuration parameters. These WarehousePG gpconfig utility commands sets the value of the parameters to `on`:

   ```
   $ gpconfig -c optimizer -v on --masteronly
   ```

3. Restart WarehousePG. This WarehousePG gpstop utility command reloads the `postgresql.conf` files of the coordinator and segments without shutting down WarehousePG.

   ```
   gpstop -u
   ```

#### Enabling GPORCA for a Database

Set the server configuration parameter optimizer for individual WarehousePGs with the ALTER DATABASE command. For example, this command enables GPORCA for the database *test_db*.

```
> ALTER DATABASE test_db SET OPTIMIZER = ON ;
```

#### Enabling GPORCA for a Session or a Query

You can use the SET command to set optimizer server configuration parameter for a session. For example, after you use the psql utility to connect to WarehousePG, this SET command enables GPORCA:

```
> set optimizer = on ;
```

To set the parameter for a specific query, include the SET command prior to running the query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.3 Collecting Root Partition Statistics

For a partitioned table, GPORCA uses statistics of the table root partition to generate query plans. These statistics are used for determining the join order, for splitting and joining aggregate nodes, and for costing the query steps. In contrast, the Postgres Planner uses the statistics of each leaf partition.

If you run queries on partitioned tables, you should collect statistics on the root partition and periodically update those statistics to ensure that GPORCA can generate optimal query plans. If the root partition statistics are not up-to-date or do not exist, GPORCA still performs dynamic partition elimination for queries against the table. However, the query plan might not be optimal.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

#### Running ANALYZE

By default, running the `ANALYZE` command on the root partition of a partitioned table samples the leaf partition data in the table, and stores the statistics for the root partition. `ANALYZE` collects statistics on the root and leaf partitions, including HyperLogLog (HLL) statistics on the leaf partitions. `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` collects statistics only on the root partition. The server configuration parameter optimizer_analyze_root_partition controls whether the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is required to collect root statistics for the root partition of a partitioned table. See the ANALYZE command for information about collecting statistics on partitioned tables.

Keep in mind that `ANALYZE` always scans the entire table before updating the root partition statistics. If your table is very large, this operation can take a significant amount of time. `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` also uses an `ACCESS SHARE` lock that prevents certain operations, such as `TRUNCATE` and `VACUUM` operations, during runtime. For these reasons, you should schedule `ANALYZE` operations periodically, or when there are significant changes to leaf partition data.

Follow these best practices for running `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` on partitioned tables in your system:

- Run `ANALYZE <root_partition_table_name>` on a new partitioned table after adding initial data. Run `ANALYZE <leaf_partition_table_name>` on a new leaf partition or a leaf partition where data has changed. By default, running the command on a leaf partition updates the root partition statistics if the other leaf partitions have statistics.
- Update root partition statistics when you observe query performance regression in `EXPLAIN` plans against the table, or after significant changes to leaf partition data. For example, if you add a new leaf partition at some point after generating root partition statistics, consider running `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` to update root partition statistics with the new tuples inserted from the new leaf partition.
- For very large tables, run `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` only weekly, or at some interval longer than daily.
- Avoid running `ANALYZE` with no arguments, because doing so runs the command on all database tables including partitioned tables. With large databases, these global `ANALYZE` operations are difficult to monitor, and it can be difficult to predict the time needed for completion.
- Consider running multiple `ANALYZE <table_name>` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION <table_name>` operations in parallel to speed the operation of statistics collection, if your I/O throughput can support the load.
- You can also use the WarehousePG utility `analyzedb` to update table statistics. Using `analyzedb` ensures that tables that were previously analyzed are not re-analyzed if no modifications were made to the leaf partition.

#### GPORCA and Leaf Partition Statistics

Although creating and maintaining root partition statistics is crucial for GPORCA query performance with partitioned tables, maintaining leaf partition statistics is also important. If GPORCA cannot generate a plan for a query against a partitioned table, then the Postgres Planner is used and leaf partition statistics are needed to produce the optimal plan for that query.

GPORCA itself also uses leaf partition statistics for any queries that access leaf partitions directly, instead of using the root partition with predicates to eliminate partitions. For example, if you know which partitions hold necessary tuples for a query, you can directly query the leaf partition table itself; in this case GPORCA uses the leaf partition statistics.

#### Deactivating Automatic Root Partition Statistics Collection

If you do not intend to run queries on partitioned tables with GPORCA (setting the server configuration parameter optimizer to `off`), then you can deactivate the automatic collection of statistics on the root partition of the partitioned table. The server configuration parameter optimizer_analyze_root_partition controls whether the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is required to collect root statistics for the root partition of a partitioned table. The default setting for the parameter is `on`, the `ANALYZE` command can collect root partition statistics without the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword. You can deactivate automatic collection of root partition statistics by setting the parameter to `off`. When the value is `off`, you must run `ANALZYE ROOTPARTITION` to collect root partition statistics.

1. Log into the WarehousePG coordinator host as `gpadmin`, the WarehousePG administrator.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Set the values of the server configuration parameters. These WarehousePG `gpconfig` utility commands sets the value of the parameters to `off`:

```
$ gpconfig -c optimizer_analyze_root_partition -v off --masteronly
```

3. Restart WarehousePG. This WarehousePG `gpstop` utility command reloads the `postgresql.conf` files of the coordinator and segments without shutting down WarehousePG.

```
gpstop -u
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.4 Considerations when Using GPORCA

To run queries optimally with GPORCA, consider the query criteria closely.

Ensure the following criteria are met:

- The table does not contain multi-column partition keys.
- The multi-level partitioned table is a uniform multi-level partitioned table. See About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables.
- The server configuration parameter `optimizer_enable_master_only_queries` is set to `on` when running against coordinator only tables such as the system table *pg_attribute*. For information about the parameter, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

  > **Note** Enabling this parameter decreases performance of short running catalog queries. To avoid this issue, set this parameter only for a session or a query.

- Statistics have been collected on the root partition of a partitioned table.

If the partitioned table contains more than 20,000 partitions, consider a redesign of the table schema.

These server configuration parameters affect GPORCA query processing.

- `optimizer_cte_inlining_bound` controls the amount of inlining performed for common table expression (CTE) queries (queries that contain a `WHERE` clause).
- `optimizer_force_comprehensive_join_implementation` affects GPORCA's consideration of nested loop join and hash join alternatives. When the value is `false` (the default), GPORCA does not consider nested loop join alternatives when a hash join is available.
- `optimizer_force_multistage_agg` forces GPORCA to choose a multi-stage aggregate plan for a scalar distinct qualified aggregate. When the value is `off` (the default), GPORCA chooses between a one-stage and two-stage aggregate plan based on cost.
- `optimizer_force_three_stage_scalar_dqa` forces GPORCA to choose a plan with multistage aggregates when such a plan alternative is generated.
- `optimizer_join_order` sets the query optimization level for join ordering by specifying which types of join ordering alternatives to evaluate.
- `optimizer_join_order_threshold` specifies the maximum number of join children for which GPORCA uses the dynamic programming-based join ordering algorithm.
- `optimizer_nestloop_factor` controls nested loop join cost factor to apply to during query optimization.
- `optimizer_parallel_union` controls the amount of parallelization that occurs for queries that contain a `UNION` or `UNION ALL` clause. When the value is `on` , GPORCA can generate a query plan of the child operations of a `UNION` or `UNION ALL` operation run in parallel on segment instances.
- `optimizer_sort_factor` controls the cost factor that GPORCA applies to sorting operations during query optimization. The cost factor can be adjusted for queries when data skew is present.
- `gp_enable_relsize_collection` controls how GPORCA (and the Postgres Planner) handle a table without statistics. By default, GPORCA uses a default value to estimate the number of rows if statistics are not available. When this value is `on` , GPORCA uses the estimated size of a table if there are no statistics for the table.

  This parameter is ignored for a root partition of a partitioned table. If the root partition does not have statistics, GPORCA always uses the default value. You can use `ANALZYE ROOTPARTITION` to collect statistics on the root partition. See ANALYZE.

These server configuration parameters control the display and logging of information.

- `optimizer_print_missing_stats` controls the display of column information about columns with missing statistics for a query (default is `true` )
- `optimizer_print_optimization_stats` controls the logging of GPORCA query optimization metrics for a query (default is `off` )

For information about the parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

GPORCA generates minidumps to describe the optimization context for a given query. The information in the file is not in a format that can be easily used for debugging or troubleshooting. The minidump file is located under the master data directory and uses the following naming format:

`Minidump_date_time.mdp`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For information about the minidump file, see the server configuration parameter `optimizer_minidump` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

When the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command uses GPORCA, the `EXPLAIN` plan shows only the number of partitions that are being eliminated. The scanned partitions are not shown. To show the name of the scanned partitions in the segment logs set the server configuration parameter `gp_log_dynamic_partition_pruning` to `on`. This example `SET` command enables the parameter.

```
SET gp_log_dynamic_partition_pruning = on;
```

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.5 GPORCA Features and Enhancements

GPORCA, the WarehousePG next generation query optimizer, includes enhancements for specific types of queries and operations:

- Queries Against Partitioned Tables
- Queries that Contain Subqueries
- Queries that Contain Common Table Expressions
- DML Operation Enhancements with GPORCA

GPORCA also includes these optimization enhancements:

- Improved join ordering
- Join-Aggregate reordering
- Sort order optimization
- Data skew estimates included in query optimization

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

#### Queries Against Partitioned Tables

GPORCA includes these enhancements for queries against partitioned tables:

- Partition elimination is improved.
- Uniform multi-level partitioned tables are supported. For information about uniform multi-level partitioned tables, see About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables
- Query plan can contain the Partition selector operator.
- Partitions are not enumerated in EXPLAIN plans.

  For queries that involve static partition selection where the partitioning key is compared to a constant, GPORCA lists the number of partitions to be scanned in the `EXPLAIN` output under the Partition Selector operator. This example Partition Selector operator shows the filter and number of partitions selected:

  ```
  Partition Selector for Part_Table (dynamic scan id: 1)
         Filter: a > 10
         Partitions selected:  1 (out of 3)
  ```

  For queries that involve dynamic partition selection where the partitioning key is compared to a variable, the number of partitions that are scanned will be known only during query execution. The partitions selected are not shown in the `EXPLAIN` output.

- Plan size is independent of number of partitions.
- Out of memory errors caused by number of partitions are reduced.

This example CREATE TABLE command creates a range partitioned table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales(order_id int, item_id int, amount numeric(15,2),
      date date, yr_qtr int)
   PARTITION BY RANGE (yr_qtr) (start (201501) INCLUSIVE end (201504) INCLUSIVE,
   start (201601) INCLUSIVE end (201604) INCLUSIVE,
   start (201701) INCLUSIVE end (201704) INCLUSIVE,
   start (201801) INCLUSIVE end (201804) INCLUSIVE,
   start (201901) INCLUSIVE end (201904) INCLUSIVE,
   start (202001) INCLUSIVE end (202004) INCLUSIVE);
```

GPORCA improves on these types of queries against partitioned tables:

- Full table scan. Partitions are not enumerated in plans.

  ```
  SELECT * FROM sales;
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Query with a constant filter predicate. Partition elimination is performed.

```
SELECT * FROM sales WHERE yr_qtr = 201501;
```

- Range selection. Partition elimination is performed.

```
SELECT * FROM sales WHERE yr_qtr BETWEEN 201601 AND 201704 ;
```

- Joins involving partitioned tables. In this example, the partitioned dimension table *date_dim* is joined with fact table *catalog_sales*:

```
SELECT * FROM catalog_sales
   WHERE date_id IN (SELECT id FROM date_dim WHERE month=12);
```

### Queries that Contain Subqueries

GPORCA handles subqueries more efficiently. A subquery is query that is nested inside an outer query block. In the following query, the SELECT in the WHERE clause is a subquery.

```
SELECT * FROM part
  WHERE price > (SELECT avg(price) FROM part);
```

GPORCA also handles queries that contain a correlated subquery (CSQ) more efficiently. A correlated subquery is a subquery that uses values from the outer query. In the following query, the `price` column is used in both the outer query and the subquery.

```
SELECT * FROM part p1 WHERE price > (SELECT avg(price) FROM part p2 WHERE p2.brand = p1.brand);
```

GPORCA generates more efficient plans for the following types of subqueries:

- CSQ in the SELECT list.

```
SELECT *,
 (SELECT min(price) FROM part p2 WHERE p1.brand = p2.brand)
 AS foo
FROM part p1;
```

- CSQ in disjunctive (OR) filters.

```
SELECT FROM part p1 WHERE p_size > 40 OR
      p_retailprice >
      (SELECT avg(p_retailprice)
          FROM part p2
          WHERE p2.p_brand = p1.p_brand)
```

- Nested CSQ with skip level correlations

```
SELECT * FROM part p1 WHERE p1.p_partkey
IN (SELECT p_partkey FROM part p2 WHERE p2.p_retailprice =
     (SELECT min(p_retailprice)
       FROM part p3
       WHERE p3.p_brand = p1.p_brand)
);
```

> **Note** Nested CSQ with skip level correlations are not supported by the Postgres Planner.

- CSQ with aggregate and inequality. This example contains a CSQ with an inequality.

```
SELECT * FROM part p1 WHERE p1.p_retailprice =
 (SELECT min(p_retailprice) FROM part p2 WHERE p2.p_brand <> p1.p_brand);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CSQ that must return one row.

```
SELECT p_partkey,
  (SELECT p_retailprice FROM part p2 WHERE p2.p_brand = p1.p_brand )
FROM part p1;
```

### Queries that Contain Common Table Expressions

GPORCA handles queries that contain the WITH clause. The WITH clause, also known as a common table expression (CTE), generates temporary tables that exist only for the query. This example query contains a CTE.

```
WITH v AS (SELECT a, sum(b) as s FROM T where c < 10 GROUP BY a)
  SELECT *FROM  v AS v1 ,  v AS v2
  WHERE v1.a <> v2.a AND v1.s < v2.s;
```

As part of query optimization, GPORCA can push down predicates into a CTE. For example query, GPORCA pushes the equality predicates to the CTE.

```
WITH v AS (SELECT a, sum(b) as s FROM T GROUP BY a)
  SELECT *
  FROM v as v1, v as v2, v as v3
  WHERE v1.a < v2.a
    AND v1.s < v3.s
    AND v1.a = 10
    AND v2.a = 20
    AND v3.a = 30;
```

GPORCA can handle these types of CTEs:

- CTE that defines one or multiple tables. In this query, the CTE defines two tables.

```
WITH cte1 AS (SELECT a, sum(b) as s FROM T
               where c < 10 GROUP BY a),
     cte2 AS (SELECT a, s FROM cte1 where s > 1000)
  SELECT *
  FROM cte1 as v1, cte2 as v2, cte2 as v3
  WHERE v1.a < v2.a AND v1.s < v3.s;
```

- Nested CTEs.

```
WITH v AS (WITH w AS (SELECT a, b FROM foo
                      WHERE b < 5)
           SELECT w1.a, w2.b
           FROM w AS w1, w AS w2
           WHERE w1.a = w2.a AND w1.a > 2)
  SELECT v1.a, v2.a, v2.b
  FROM v as v1, v as v2
  WHERE v1.a < v2.a;
```

### DML Operation Enhancements with GPORCA

GPORCA contains enhancements for DML operations such as INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE.

- A DML node in a query plan is a query plan operator.
    - Can appear anywhere in the plan, as a regular node (top slice only for now)
    - Can have consumers

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- UPDATE operations use the query plan operator Split and supports these operations:

    - UPDATE operations on the table distribution key columns.
    - UPDATE operations on the table on the partition key column. This example plan shows the Split operator.

```
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------
Update  (cost=0.00..5.46 rows=1 width=1)
   ->  Redistribute Motion 2:2  (slice1; segments: 2)
         Hash Key: a
         ->  Result  (cost=0.00..3.23 rows=1 width=48)
               ->  Split  (cost=0.00..2.13 rows=1 width=40)
                     ->  Result  (cost=0.00..1.05 rows=1 width=40)
                           ->  Seq Scan on dmltest
```

- New query plan operator Assert is used for constraints checking.

  This example plan shows the Assert operator.

```
QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------
 Insert  (cost=0.00..4.61 rows=3 width=8)
   ->  Assert  (cost=0.00..3.37 rows=3 width=24)
         Assert Cond: (dmlsource.a > 2) IS DISTINCT FROM
false
         ->  Assert  (cost=0.00..2.25 rows=3 width=24)
               Assert Cond: NOT dmlsource.b IS NULL
               ->  Result  (cost=0.00..1.14 rows=3 width=24)
                     ->  Seq Scan on dmlsource
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.6 Changed Behavior with GPORCA

There are changes to WarehousePG behavior with the GPORCA optimizer enabled (the default) as compared to the Postgres Planner.

- UPDATE operations on distribution keys are allowed.
- UPDATE operations on partitioned keys are allowed.
- Queries against uniform partitioned tables are supported.
- Queries against partitioned tables that are altered to use an external table as a leaf child partition fall back to the Postgres Planner.
- Except for `INSERT`, DML operations directly on partition (child table) of a partitioned table are not supported.

  For the `INSERT` command, you can specify a leaf child table of the partitioned table to insert data into a partitioned table. An error is returned if the data is not valid for the specified leaf child table. Specifying a child table that is not a leaf child table is not supported.
- The command CREATE TABLE AS distributes table data randomly if the DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified and no primary or unique keys are specified.
- Non-deterministic updates not allowed. The following UPDATE command returns an error.

  ```
  update r set b =  r.b  + 1 from s where  r.a  in (select a from s);
  ```
- Statistics are required on the root table of a partitioned table. The ANALYZE command generates statistics on both root and individual partition tables (leaf child tables). See the ROOTPARTITION clause for ANALYZE command.
- Additional Result nodes in the query plan:
  - Query plan Assert operator.
  - Query plan Partition selector operator.
  - Query plan Split operator.
- When running EXPLAIN, the query plan generated by GPORCA is different than the plan generated by the Postgres Planner.
- WarehousePG adds the log file message `Planner produced plan` when GPORCA is enabled and WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner to generate the query plan.
- WarehousePG issues a warning when statistics are missing from one or more table columns. When running an SQL command with GPORCA, WarehousePG issues a warning if the command performance could be improved by collecting statistics on a column or set of columns referenced by the command. The warning is issued on the command line and information is added to the WarehousePG log file. For information about collecting statistics on table columns, see the ANALYZE command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.2.7 GPORCA Limitations

There are limitations in WarehousePG when using the default GPORCA optimizer. GPORCA and the Postgres Planner currently coexist in WarehousePG because GPORCA does not support all WarehousePG features.

This section describes the limitations.


- Unsupported SQL Query Features
- Performance Regressions


**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

### Unsupported SQL Query Features

Certain query features are not supported with the default GPORCA optimizer. When an unsupported query is run, WarehousePG logs this notice along with the query text:

```
Feature not supported by the WarehousePG Query Optimizer: UTILITY command
```

These features are unsupported when GPORCA is enabled (the default):

- Prepared statements that have parameterized values.
- Indexed expressions (an index defined as expression based on one or more columns of the table)
- SP-GiST indexing method. GPORCA supports only B-tree, bitmap, GIN, and GiST indexes. GPORCA ignores indexes created with unsupported methods.
- External parameters
- These types of partitioned tables:
  - Non-uniform partitioned tables.
  - Partitioned tables that have been altered to use an external table as a leaf child partition.

- SortMergeJoin (SMJ).
- Ordered aggregates are not supported by default. You can enable GPORCA support for ordered aggregates with the optimizer_enable_orderedagg server configuration parameter.
- Grouping sets with ordered aggregates.
- Multi-argument `DISTINCT` qualified aggregates, for example `SELECT corr(DISTINCT a, b) FROM tbl1;`, are not supported by default. You can enable GPORCA support for multi-argument distinct aggregates with the optimizer_enable_orderedagg server configuration parameter.
- These analytics extensions:
  - CUBE
  - Multiple grouping sets

- These scalar operators:
  - ROW
  - ROWCOMPARE
  - FIELDSELECT

- Aggregate functions that take set operators as input arguments.
- Multiple Distinct Qualified Aggregates, such as `SELECT count(DISTINCT a), sum(DISTINCT b) FROM foo`, are not supported by default. They can be enabled with the `optimizer_enable_multiple_distinct_aggs` Configuration Parameter.
- percentile_* window functions (ordered-set aggregate functions).
- Inverse distribution functions.
- Queries that run functions that are defined with the `ON MASTER` or `ON ALL SEGMENTS` attribute.
- Queries that contain UNICODE characters in metadata names, such as table names, and the characters are not compatible with the host system locale.
- `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands where a table name is qualified by the `ONLY` keyword.
- Per-column collation. GPORCA supports collation only when all columns in the query use the same collation. If columns in the query use different collations, then WarehousePG uses the Postgres Planner.

### Performance Regressions

The following features are known performance regressions that occur with GPORCA enabled:

- Short running queries - For GPORCA, short running queries might encounter additional overhead due to GPORCA enhancements for determining an optimal query execution plan.
- ANALYZE - For GPORCA, the ANALYZE command generates root partition statistics for partitioned tables. For the Postgres Planner, these statistics are not generated.
- DML operations - For GPORCA, DML enhancements including the support of updates on partition and distribution keys might require additional overhead.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Also, enhanced functionality of the features from previous versions could result in additional time required when GPORCA runs SQL statements with the features.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.2.8 Determining the Query Optimizer that is Used

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), you can determine if WarehousePG is using GPORCA or is falling back to the Postgres Planner.

You can examine the `EXPLAIN` query plan for the query to determine which query optimizer was used by WarehousePG to run the query:

- The optimizer is listed at the end of the query plan. For example, when GPORCA generates the query plan, the query plan ends with:

  ```
  Optimizer: GPORCA
  ```

  When WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner to generate the plan, the query plan ends with:

  ```
  Optimizer: Postgres query optimizer
  ```

- These plan items appear only in the `EXPLAIN` plan output generated by GPORCA. The items are not supported in a Postgres Planner query plan.

  - Assert operator
  - Sequence operator
  - Dynamic Index Scan
  - Dynamic Seq Scan

- When a query against a partitioned table is generated by GPORCA, the `EXPLAIN` plan displays only the number of partitions that are being eliminated is listed. The scanned partitions are not shown. The `EXPLAIN` plan generated by the Postgres Planner lists the scanned partitions.

The log file contains messages that indicate which query optimizer was used. If WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner, a message with `NOTICE` information is added to the log file that indicates the unsupported feature. Also, the label `Planner produced plan:` appears before the query in the query execution log message when WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres optimizer.

> **Note** You can configure WarehousePG to display log messages on the psql command line by setting the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `client_min_messages` to `LOG`. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about the parameter.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

#### Examples

This example shows the differences for a query that is run against partitioned tables when GPORCA is enabled.

This `CREATE TABLE` statement creates a table with single level partitions:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (trans_id int, date date,
    amount decimal(9,2), region text)
   DISTRIBUTED BY (trans_id)
   PARTITION BY RANGE (date)
      (START (date '20160101')
       INCLUSIVE END (date '20170101')
       EXCLUSIVE EVERY (INTERVAL '1 month'),
   DEFAULT PARTITION outlying_dates );
```

This query against the table is supported by GPORCA and does not generate errors in the log file:

```
select * from sales ;
```

The `EXPLAIN` plan output lists only the number of selected partitions.

```
->  Partition Selector for sales (dynamic scan id: 1)  (cost=10.00..100.00 rows=50 width=4)
      Partitions selected:  13 (out of 13)
```

If a query against a partitioned table is not supported by GPORCA. WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner. The `EXPLAIN` plan generated by the Postgres Planner lists the selected partitions. This example shows a part of the explain plan that lists some selected partitions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
->  Append  (cost=0.00..0.00 rows=26 width=53)
    ->  Seq Scan on sales2_1_prt_7_2_prt_usa sales2  (cost=0.00..0.00 rows=1 width=53)
    ->  Seq Scan on sales2_1_prt_7_2_prt_asia sales2  (cost=0.00..0.00 rows=1 width=53)
    ...
```

This example shows the log output when the WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner from GPORCA.

When this query is run, WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner.

```
explain select * from pg_class;
```

A message is added to the log file. The message contains this `NOTICE` information that indicates the reason GPORCA did not run the query:

```
NOTICE,""Feature not supported: Queries on master-only tables"
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.3 Defining Queries

WarehousePG is based on the PostgreSQL implementation of the SQL standard.

This topic describes how to construct SQL queries in WarehousePG.

- SQL Lexicon
- SQL Value Expressions

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### SQL Lexicon

SQL is a standard language for accessing databases. The language consists of elements that enable data storage, retrieval, analysis, viewing, manipulation, and so on. You use SQL commands to construct queries and commands that the WarehousePG engine understands. SQL queries consist of a sequence of commands. Commands consist of a sequence of valid tokens in correct syntax order, terminated by a semicolon ( `;` ).

For more information about SQL commands, see SQL Command Reference.

WarehousePG uses PostgreSQL's structure and syntax, with some exceptions. For more information about SQL rules and concepts in PostgreSQL, see "SQL Syntax" in the PostgreSQL documentation.

### SQL Value Expressions

SQL value expressions consist of one or more values, symbols, operators, SQL functions, and data. The expressions compare data or perform calculations and return a value as the result. Calculations include logical, arithmetic, and set operations.

The following are value expressions:

- An aggregate expression
- An array constructor
- A column reference
- A constant or literal value
- A correlated subquery
- A field selection expression
- A function call
- A new column value in an `INSERT` or `UPDATE`
- An operator invocation column reference
- A positional parameter reference, in the body of a function definition or prepared statement
- A row constructor
- A scalar subquery
- A search condition in a `WHERE` clause
- A target list of a `SELECT` command
- A type cast
- A value expression in parentheses, useful to group sub-expressions and override precedence
- A window expression

SQL constructs such as functions and operators are expressions but do not follow any general syntax rules. For more information about these constructs, see Using Functions and Operators.

#### Column References

A column reference has the form:

```
<correlation>.<columnname>
```

Here, `correlation` is the name of a table (possibly qualified with a schema name) or an alias for a table defined with a `FROM` clause or one of the keywords `NEW` or `OLD`. `NEW` and `OLD` can appear only in rewrite rules, but you can use other correlation names in any SQL statement. If the column name is unique across all tables in the query, you can omit the " `correlation.` " part of the column reference.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Positional Parameters

Positional parameters are arguments to SQL statements or functions that you reference by their positions in a series of arguments. For example, `$1` refers to the first argument, `$2` to the second argument, and so on. The values of positional parameters are set from arguments external to the SQL statement or supplied when SQL functions are invoked. Some client libraries support specifying data values separately from the SQL command, in which case parameters refer to the out-of-line data values. A parameter reference has the form:

```
$number
```

For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dept(text) RETURNS dept
    AS $$ SELECT * FROM dept WHERE name = $1 $$
    LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Here, the `$1` references the value of the first function argument whenever the function is invoked.

#### Subscripts

If an expression yields a value of an array type, you can extract a specific element of the array value as follows:

```
<expression>[<subscript>]
```

You can extract multiple adjacent elements, called an array slice, as follows (including the brackets):

```
<expression>[<lower_subscript>:<upper_subscript>]
```

Each subscript is an expression and yields an integer value.

Array expressions usually must be in parentheses, but you can omit the parentheses when the expression to be subscripted is a column reference or positional parameter. You can concatenate multiple subscripts when the original array is multidimensional. For example (including the parentheses):

```
mytable.arraycolumn[4]
```

```
mytable.two_d_column[17][34]
```

```
$1[10:42]
```

```
(arrayfunction(a,b))[42]
```

#### Field Selection

If an expression yields a value of a composite type (row type), you can extract a specific field of the row as follows:

```
<expression>.<fieldname>
```

The row expression usually must be in parentheses, but you can omit these parentheses when the expression to be selected from is a table reference or positional parameter. For example:

```
mytable.mycolumn
```

```
$1.somecolumn
```

```
(rowfunction(a,b)).col3
```

A qualified column reference is a special case of field selection syntax.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Operator Invocations

Operator invocations have the following possible syntaxes:

```
<expression operator expression>(binary infix operator)
```

```
<operator expression>(unary prefix operator)
```

```
<expression operator>(unary postfix operator)
```

Where *operator* is an operator token, one of the key words `AND`, `OR`, or `NOT`, or qualified operator name in the form:

```
OPERATOR(<schema>.<operatorname>)
```

Available operators and whether they are unary or binary depends on the operators that the system or user defines. For more information about built-in operators, see Built-in Functions and Operators.

#### Function Calls

The syntax for a function call is the name of a function (possibly qualified with a schema name), followed by its argument list enclosed in parentheses:

```
function ([expression [, expression ... ]])
```

For example, the following function call computes the square root of 2:

```
sqrt(2)
```

See Summary of Built-in Functions for lists of the built-in functions by category. You can add custom functions, too.

#### Aggregate Expressions

An aggregate expression applies an aggregate function across the rows that a query selects. An aggregate function performs a calculation on a set of values and returns a single value, such as the sum or average of the set of values. The syntax of an aggregate expression is one of the following:

- `aggregate_name(expression [ , ... ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]` — operates across all input rows for which the expected result value is non-null. `ALL` is the default.
- `aggregate_name(ALL expression [ , ... ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]` — operates identically to the first form because `ALL` is the default.
- `aggregate_name(DISTINCT expression [ , ... ] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]` — operates across all distinct non-null values of input rows.
- `aggregate_name(*) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]` — operates on all rows with values both null and non-null. Generally, this form is most useful for the `count(*)` aggregate function.

Where *aggregate_name* is a previously defined aggregate (possibly schema-qualified) and *expression* is any value expression that does not contain an aggregate expression.

For example, `count(*)` yields the total number of input rows, `count(f1)` yields the number of input rows in which `f1` is non-null, and `count(distinct f1)` yields the number of distinct non-null values of `f1`.

If `FILTER` is specified, then only the input rows for which the filter_clause evaluates to true are fed to the aggregate function; other rows are discarded. For example:

```
SELECT
    count(*) AS unfiltered,
    count(*) FILTER (WHERE i < 5) AS filtered
FROM generate_series(1,10) AS s(i);
 unfiltered | filtered
------------+----------
         10 |        4
(1 row)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For predefined aggregate functions, see Built-in Functions and Operators. You can also add custom aggregate functions.

WarehousePG provides the `MEDIAN` aggregate function, which returns the fiftieth percentile of the `PERCENTILE_CONT` result and special aggregate expressions for inverse distribution functions as follows:

```
PERCENTILE_CONT(_percentage_) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY _expression_)
```

```
PERCENTILE_DISC(_percentage_) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY _expression_)
```

Currently you can use only these two expressions with the keyword `WITHIN GROUP`.

#### Limitations of Aggregate Expressions

The following are current limitations of the aggregate expressions:

- WarehousePG does not support the following keywords: `ALL`, `DISTINCT`, and `OVER`. See Table 5 for more details.
- An aggregate expression can appear only in the result list or `HAVING` clause of a `SELECT` command. It is forbidden in other clauses, such as `WHERE`, because those clauses are logically evaluated before the results of aggregates form. This restriction applies to the query level to which the aggregate belongs.
- When an aggregate expression appears in a subquery, the aggregate is normally evaluated over the rows of the subquery. If the aggregate's arguments (and filter_clause if any) contain only outer-level variables, the aggregate belongs to the nearest such outer level and evaluates over the rows of that query. The aggregate expression as a whole is then an outer reference for the subquery in which it appears, and the aggregate expression acts as a constant over any one evaluation of that subquery. The restriction about appearing only in the result list or `HAVING` clause applies with respect to the query level at which the aggregate appears. See Scalar Subqueries and Built-in functions and operators.
- WarehousePG does not support specifying an aggregate function as an argument to another aggregate function.
- WarehousePG does not support specifying a window function as an argument to an aggregate function.

#### Window Expressions

Window expressions allow application developers to more easily compose complex online analytical processing (OLAP) queries using standard SQL commands. For example, with window expressions, users can calculate moving averages or sums over various intervals, reset aggregations and ranks as selected column values change, and express complex ratios in simple terms.

A window expression represents the application of a *window function* to a *window frame*, which is defined with an `OVER()` clause. This is comparable to the type of calculation that can be done with an aggregate function and a `GROUP BY` clause. Unlike aggregate functions, which return a single result value for each group of rows, window functions return a result value for every row, but that value is calculated with respect to the set of rows in the window frame to which the row belongs. The `OVER()` clause allows dividing the rows into *partitions* and then further restricting the window frame by specifying which rows preceding or following the current row within its partition to include in the calculation.

WarehousePG does not support specifying a window function as an argument to another window function.

The syntax of a window expression is:

```
window_function ( [expression [, ...]] ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER ( window_specification )
```

Where *`window_function`* is one of the functions listed in Window functions or a user-defined window function, *`expression`* is any value expression that does not contain a window expression, and *`window_specification`* is:

```
[window_name]
[PARTITION BY expression [, ...]]
[[ORDER BY expression [ASC | DESC | USING operator] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]
    [{RANGE | ROWS}
       { UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
       | expression PRECEDING
       | CURRENT ROW
       | BETWEEN window_frame_bound AND window_frame_bound }]]
```

and where `window_frame_bound` can be one of:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
    UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
    expression PRECEDING
    CURRENT ROW
    expression FOLLOWING
    UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING
```

A window expression can appear only in the select list of a `SELECT` command. For example:

```
SELECT count(*) OVER(PARTITION BY customer_id), * FROM sales;
```

If `FILTER` is specified, then only the input rows for which the filter_clause evaluates to true are fed to the window function; other rows are discarded. In a window expression, a `FILTER` clause can be used only with a window_function that is an aggregate function.

In a window expression, the expression must contain an `OVER` clause. The `OVER` clause specifies the window frame—the rows to be processed by the window function. This syntactically distinguishes the function from a regular or aggregate function.

In a window aggregate function that is used in a window expression, WarehousePG does not support a `DISTINCT` clause with multiple input expressions.

A window specification has the following characteristics:

- The `PARTITION BY` clause defines the window partitions to which the window function is applied. If omitted, the entire result set is treated as one partition.
- The `ORDER BY` clause defines the expression(s) for sorting rows within a window partition. The `ORDER BY` clause of a window specification is separate and distinct from the `ORDER BY` clause of a regular query expression. The `ORDER BY` clause is required for the window functions that calculate rankings, as it identifies the measure(s) for the ranking values. For OLAP aggregations, the `ORDER BY` clause is required to use window frames (the `ROWS` or `RANGE` clause).

> **Note** Columns of data types without a coherent ordering, such as `time`, are not good candidates for use in the `ORDER BY` clause of a window specification. `Time`, with or without a specified time zone, lacks a coherent ordering because addition and subtraction do not have the expected effects. For example, the following is not generally true: `x::time < x::time + '2 hour'::interval`

- The `ROWS` or `RANGE` clause defines a window frame for aggregate (non-ranking) window functions. A window frame defines a set of rows within a window partition. When a window frame is defined, the window function computes on the contents of this moving frame rather than the fixed contents of the entire window partition. Window frames are row-based ( `ROWS` ) or value-based ( `RANGE` ).

#### Window Examples

The following examples demonstrate using window functions with partitions and window frames.

##### Example 1 – Aggregate Window Function Over a Partition

The `PARTITION BY` list in the `OVER` clause divides the rows into groups, or partitions, that have the same values as the specified expressions.

This example compares employees' salaries with the average salaries for their departments:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary, avg(salary) OVER(PARTITION BY depname)
FROM empsalary;
  depname  | empno | salary |          avg
-----------+-------+--------+-----------------------
 develop   |     9 |   4500 | 5020.0000000000000000
 develop   |    10 |   5200 | 5020.0000000000000000
 develop   |    11 |   5200 | 5020.0000000000000000
 develop   |     7 |   4200 | 5020.0000000000000000
 develop   |     8 |   6000 | 5020.0000000000000000
 personnel |     5 |   3500 | 3700.0000000000000000
 personnel |     2 |   3900 | 3700.0000000000000000
 sales     |     1 |   5000 | 4866.6666666666666667
 sales     |     3 |   4800 | 4866.6666666666666667
 sales     |     4 |   4800 | 4866.6666666666666667
(10 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The first three output columns come from the table `empsalary`, and there is one output row for each row in the table. The fourth column is the average calculated on all rows that have the same `depname` value as the current row. Rows that share the same `depname` value constitute a partition, and there are three partitions in this example. The `avg` function is the same as the regular `avg` aggregate function, but the `OVER` clause causes it to be applied as a window function.

You can also put the window specification in a `WINDOW` clause and reference it in the select list. This example is equivalent to the previous query:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary, avg(salary) OVER(mywindow)
FROM empsalary
WINDOW mywindow AS (PARTITION BY depname);
```

Defining a named window is useful when the select list has multiple window functions using the same window specification.

#### Example 2 – Ranking Window Function With an ORDER BY Clause

An `ORDER BY` clause within the `OVER` clause controls the order in which rows are processed by window functions. The `ORDER BY` list for the window function does not have to match the output order of the query. This example uses the `rank()` window function to rank employees' salaries within their departments:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary,
    rank() OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC)
FROM empsalary;
  depname  | empno | salary | rank
-----------+-------+--------+------
 develop   |     8 |   6000 |    1
 develop   |    11 |   5200 |    2
 develop   |    10 |   5200 |    2
 develop   |     9 |   4500 |    4
 develop   |     7 |   4200 |    5
 personnel |     2 |   3900 |    1
 personnel |     5 |   3500 |    2
 sales     |     1 |   5000 |    1
 sales     |     4 |   4800 |    2
 sales     |     3 |   4800 |    2
(10 rows)
```

#### Example 3 – Aggregate Function over a Row Window Frame

A `RANGE` or `ROWS` clause defines the window frame—a set of rows within a partition—that the window function includes in the calculation. `ROWS` specifies a physical set of rows to process, for example all rows from the beginning of the partition to the current row.

This example calculates a running total of employee's salaries by department using the `sum()` function to total rows from the start of the partition to the current row:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary,
    sum(salary) OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary
        ROWS between UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW)
FROM empsalary ORDER BY depname, sum;
  depname  | empno | salary |  sum
-----------+-------+--------+-------
 develop   |     7 |   4200 |  4200
 develop   |     9 |   4500 |  8700
 develop   |    11 |   5200 | 13900
 develop   |    10 |   5200 | 19100
 develop   |     8 |   6000 | 25100
 personnel |     5 |   3500 |  3500
 personnel |     2 |   3900 |  7400
 sales     |     4 |   4800 |  4800
 sales     |     3 |   4800 |  9600
 sales     |     1 |   5000 | 14600
(10 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Example 4 – Aggregate Function for a Range Window Frame

`RANGE` specifies logical values based on values of the `ORDER BY` expression in the `OVER` clause. This example demonstrates the difference between `ROWS` and `RANGE`. The frame contains all rows with salary values less than or equal to the current row. Unlike the previous example, for employees with the same salary, the sum is the same and includes the salaries of all of those employees.

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary,
    sum(salary) OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary
        RANGE between UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW)
FROM empsalary ORDER BY depname, sum;
  depname  | empno | salary |  sum
-----------+-------+--------+-------
 develop   |     7 |   4200 |  4200
 develop   |     9 |   4500 |  8700
 develop   |    11 |   5200 | 19100
 develop   |    10 |   5200 | 19100
 develop   |     8 |   6000 | 25100
 personnel |     5 |   3500 |  3500
 personnel |     2 |   3900 |  7400
 sales     |     4 |   4800 |  9600
 sales     |     3 |   4800 |  9600
 sales     |     1 |   5000 | 14600
(10 rows)
```

### Type Casts

A type cast specifies a conversion from one data type to another. A cast applied to a value expression of a known type is a run-time type conversion. The cast succeeds only if a suitable type conversion is defined. This differs from the use of casts with constants. A cast applied to a string literal represents the initial assignment of a type to a literal constant value, so it succeeds for any type if the contents of the string literal are acceptable input syntax for the data type.

WarehousePG supports three types of casts applied to a value expression:

- *Explicit cast* - WarehousePG applies a cast when you explicitly specify a cast between two data types. WarehousePG accepts two equivalent syntaxes for explicit type casts:

  ```
  CAST ( expression AS type )
  expression::type
  ```

  The `CAST` syntax conforms to SQL; the syntax using `::` is historical PostgreSQL usage.

- *Assignment cast* - WarehousePG implicitly invokes a cast in assignment contexts, when assigning a value to a column of the target data type. For example, a CREATE CAST command with the `AS ASSIGNMENT` clause creates a cast that is applied implicitly in the assignment context. This example assignment cast assumes that `tbl1.f1` is a column of type `text`. The `INSERT` command is allowed because the value is implicitly cast from the `integer` to `text` type.

  ```
  INSERT INTO tbl1 (f1) VALUES (42);
  ```

- *Implicit cast* - WarehousePG implicitly invokes a cast in assignment or expression contexts. For example, a `CREATE CAST` command with the `AS IMPLICIT` clause creates an implicit cast, a cast that is applied implicitly in both the assignment and expression context. This example implicit cast assumes that `tbl1.c1` is a column of type `int`. For the calculation in the predicate, the value of `c1` is implicitly cast from `int` to a `decimal` type.

  ```
  SELECT * FROM tbl1 WHERE tbl1.c2 = (4.3 + tbl1.c1) ;
  ```

You can usually omit an explicit type cast if there is no ambiguity about the type a value expression must produce (for example, when it is assigned to a table column); the system automatically applies a type cast. WarehousePG implicitly applies casts only to casts defined with a cast context of assignment or explicit in the system catalogs. Other casts must be invoked with explicit casting syntax to prevent unexpected conversions from being applied without the user's knowledge.

You can display cast information with the `psql` meta-command `\dC`. Cast information is stored in the catalog table `pg_cast`, and type information is stored in the catalog table `pg_type`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Scalar Subqueries

A scalar subquery is a `SELECT` query in parentheses that returns exactly one row with one column. Do not use a `SELECT` query that returns multiple rows or columns as a scalar subquery. The query runs and uses the returned value in the surrounding value expression. A correlated scalar subquery contains references to the outer query block.

#### Correlated Subqueries

A correlated subquery (CSQ) is a `SELECT` query with a `WHERE` clause or target list that contains references to the parent outer clause. CSQs efficiently express results in terms of results of another query. WarehousePG supports correlated subqueries that provide compatibility with many existing applications. A CSQ is a scalar or table subquery, depending on whether it returns one or multiple rows. WarehousePG does not support correlated subqueries with skip-level correlations.

#### Correlated Subquery Examples

##### Example 1 – Scalar correlated subquery

```
SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE t1.x
           > (SELECT MAX(t2.x) FROM t2 WHERE t2.y = t1.y);
```

##### Example 2 – Correlated EXISTS subquery

```
SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE
EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM t2 WHERE t2.x = t1.x);
```

WarehousePG uses one of the following methods to run CSQs:

- Unnest the CSQ into join operations – This method is most efficient, and it is how WarehousePG runs most CSQs, including queries from the TPC-H benchmark.
- Run the CSQ on every row of the outer query – This method is relatively inefficient, and it is how WarehousePG runs queries that contain CSQs in the `SELECT` list or are connected by `OR` conditions.

The following examples illustrate how to rewrite some of these types of queries to improve performance.

##### Example 3 - CSQ in the Select List

*Original Query*

```
SELECT T1.a,
     (SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT T2.z) FROM t2 WHERE t1.x = t2.y) dt2
FROM t1;
```

Rewrite this query to perform an inner join with `t1` first and then perform a left join with `t1` again. The rewrite applies for only an equijoin in the correlated condition.

*Rewritten Query*

```
SELECT t1.a, dt2 FROM t1
       LEFT JOIN
        (SELECT t2.y AS csq_y, COUNT(DISTINCT t2.z) AS dt2
              FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.x = t2.y
              GROUP BY t1.x)
       ON (t1.x = csq_y);
```

#### Example 4 - CSQs connected by OR Clauses

*Original Query*

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM t1
WHERE
x > (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t2 WHERE t1.x = t2.x)
OR x < (SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t3 WHERE t1.y = t3.y)
```

Rewrite this query to separate it into two parts with a union on the `OR` conditions.

*Rewritten Query*

```
SELECT * FROM t1
WHERE x > (SELECT count(*) FROM t2 WHERE t1.x = t2.x)
UNION
SELECT * FROM t1
WHERE x < (SELECT count(*) FROM t3 WHERE t1.y = t3.y)
```

To view the query plan, use `EXPLAIN SELECT` or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT`. Subplan nodes in the query plan indicate that the query will run on every row of the outer query, and the query is a candidate for rewriting. For more information about these statements, see Query Profiling.

#### Array Constructors

An array constructor is an expression that builds an array value from values for its member elements. A simple array constructor consists of the key word `ARRAY`, a left square bracket `[`, one or more expressions separated by commas for the array element values, and a right square bracket `]`. For example,

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,3+4];
  array
---------
 {1,2,7}
```

The array element type is the common type of its member expressions, determined using the same rules as for `UNION` or `CASE` constructs.

You can build multidimensional array values by nesting array constructors. In the inner constructors, you can omit the keyword `ARRAY`. For example, the following two `SELECT` statements produce the same result:

```
SELECT ARRAY[ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]];
SELECT ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]];
     array
---------------
 {{1,2},{3,4}}
```

Since multidimensional arrays must be rectangular, inner constructors at the same level must produce sub-arrays of identical dimensions.

Multidimensional array constructor elements are not limited to a sub-`ARRAY` construct; they are anything that produces an array of the proper kind. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE arr(f1 int[], f2 int[]);
INSERT INTO arr VALUES (ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]],
ARRAY[[5,6],[7,8]]);
SELECT ARRAY[f1, f2, '{{9,10},{11,12}}'::int[]] FROM arr;
                     array
-----------------------------------------------
 {{{1,2},{3,4}},{{5,6},{7,8}},{{9,10},{11,12}}}
```

You can construct an array from the results of a subquery. Write the array constructor with the keyword `ARRAY` followed by a subquery in parentheses. For example:

```
SELECT ARRAY(SELECT oid FROM pg_proc WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%');
                          ?column?
------------------------------------------------------------
 {2011,1954,1948,1952,1951,1244,1950,2005,1949,1953,2006,31}
```

The subquery must return a single column. The resulting one-dimensional array has an element for each row in the subquery result, with an element type matching that of the subquery's output column. The subscripts of an array value built with `ARRAY` always begin with `1`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Row Constructors

A row constructor is an expression that builds a row value (also called a composite value) from values for its member fields. For example,

```
SELECT ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test');
```

Row constructors have the syntax `rowvalue.*`, which expands to a list of the elements of the row value, as when you use the syntax `.*` at the top level of a `SELECT` list. For example, if table `t` has columns `f1` and `f2`, the following queries are the same:

```
SELECT ROW(t.*, 42) FROM t;
SELECT ROW(t.f1, t.f2, 42) FROM t;
```

By default, the value created by a `ROW` expression has an anonymous record type. If necessary, it can be cast to a named composite type — either the row type of a table, or a composite type created with `CREATE TYPE AS`. To avoid ambiguity, you can explicitly cast the value if necessary. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE mytable(f1 int, f2 float, f3 text);
CREATE FUNCTION getf1(mytable) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT $1.f1'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

In the following query, you do not need to cast the value because there is only one `getf1()` function and therefore no ambiguity:

```
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
 getf1
-------
     1
CREATE TYPE myrowtype AS (f1 int, f2 text, f3 numeric);
CREATE FUNCTION getf1(myrowtype) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT
$1.f1' LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Now we need a cast to indicate which function to call:

```
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
ERROR:  function getf1(record) is not unique
```

```
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test')::mytable);
 getf1
-------
     1
SELECT getf1(CAST(ROW(11,'this is a test',2.5) AS
myrowtype));
 getf1
-------
    11
```

You can use row constructors to build composite values to be stored in a composite-type table column or to be passed to a function that accepts a composite parameter.

#### Expression Evaluation Rules

The order of evaluation of subexpressions is undefined. The inputs of an operator or function are not necessarily evaluated left-to-right or in any other fixed order.

If you can determine the result of an expression by evaluating only some parts of the expression, then other subexpressions might not be evaluated at all. For example, in the following expression:

```
SELECT true OR somefunc();
```

`somefunc()` would probably not be called at all. The same is true in the following expression:

```
SELECT somefunc() OR true;
```

This is not the same as the left-to-right evaluation order that Boolean operators enforce in some programming languages.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Do not use functions with side effects as part of complex expressions, especially in `WHERE` and `HAVING` clauses, because those clauses are extensively reprocessed when developing an execution plan. Boolean expressions ( `AND` / `OR` / `NOT` combinations) in those clauses can be reorganized in any manner that Boolean algebra laws allow.

Use a `CASE` construct to force evaluation order. The following example is an untrustworthy way to avoid division by zero in a `WHERE` clause:

```
SELECT ... WHERE x <> 0 AND y/x > 1.5;
```

The following example shows a trustworthy evaluation order:

```
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x <> 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false
END;
```

This `CASE` construct usage defeats optimization attempts; use it only when necessary.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.4 WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions)

The `WITH` clause provides a way to use subqueries or perform a data modifying operation in a larger `SELECT` query. You can also use the `WITH` clause in an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command.

See SELECT in a WITH Clause for information about using `SELECT` in a `WITH` clause.

See Data-Modifying Statements in a WITH clause, for information about using `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` in a `WITH` clause.

> **Note** These are limitations for using a `WITH` clause.

- For a `SELECT` command that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can contain at most a single clause that modifies table data `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` command).
- For a data-modifying command (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`) that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can only contain a `SELECT` command, the `WITH` clause cannot contain a data-modifying command.

By default, the `RECURSIVE` keyword for the `WITH` clause is enabled. `RECURSIVE` can be deactivated by setting the server configuration parameter gp_recursive_cte to `false`.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

#### SELECT in a WITH Clause

The subqueries, which are often referred to as Common Table Expressions or CTEs, can be thought of as defining temporary tables that exist just for the query. These examples show the `WITH` clause being used with a `SELECT` command. The example `WITH` clauses can be used the same way with `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`. In each case, the `WITH` clause effectively provides temporary tables that can be referred to in the main command.

A `SELECT` command in the `WITH` clause is evaluated only once per execution of the parent query, even if it is referred to more than once by the parent query or sibling `WITH` clauses. Thus, expensive calculations that are needed in multiple places can be placed within a `WITH` clause to avoid redundant work. Another possible application is to prevent unwanted multiple evaluations of functions with side-effects. However, the other side of this coin is that the optimizer is less able to push restrictions from the parent query down into a `WITH` query than an ordinary sub-query. The `WITH` query will generally be evaluated as written, without suppression of rows that the parent query might discard afterwards. However, evaluation might stop early if the references to the query demand only a limited number of rows.

One use of this feature is to break down complicated queries into simpler parts. This example query displays per-product sales totals in only the top sales regions:

```
WITH regional_sales AS (
     SELECT region, SUM(amount) AS total_sales
     FROM orders
     GROUP BY region
  ), top_regions AS (
     SELECT region
     FROM regional_sales
     WHERE total_sales > (SELECT SUM(total_sales)/10 FROM regional_sales)
  )
SELECT region,
    product,
    SUM(quantity) AS product_units,
    SUM(amount) AS product_sales
FROM orders
WHERE region IN (SELECT region FROM top_regions)
GROUP BY region, product;
```

The query could have been written without the `WITH` clause, but would have required two levels of nested sub-SELECTs. It is easier to follow with the `WITH` clause.

When the optional `RECURSIVE` keyword is enabled, the `WITH` clause can accomplish things not otherwise possible in standard SQL. Using `RECURSIVE`, a query in the `WITH` clause can refer to its own output. This is a simple example that computes the sum of integers from 1 through 100:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS (
    VALUES (1)
  UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM t WHERE n < 100
)
SELECT sum(n) FROM t;
```

The general form of a recursive `WITH` clause (a `WITH` clause that uses a the `RECURSIVE` keyword) is a *non-recursive term*, followed by a `UNION` (or `UNION ALL`), and then a *recursive term*, where only the *recursive term* can contain a reference to the query output.

```
<non_recursive_term> UNION [ ALL ] <recursive_term>
```

A recursive `WITH` query that contains a `UNION [ ALL ]` is run as follows:

1. Evaluate the non-recursive term. For `UNION` (but not `UNION ALL`), discard duplicate rows. Include all remaining rows in the result of the recursive query, and also place them in a temporary *working table*.
2. As long as the working table is not empty, repeat these steps:
    1. Evaluate the recursive term, substituting the current contents of the working table for the recursive self-reference. For `UNION` (but not `UNION ALL`), discard duplicate rows and rows that duplicate any previous result row. Include all remaining rows in the result of the recursive query, and also place them in a temporary *intermediate table*.
    2. Replace the contents of the *working table* with the contents of the *intermediate table*, then empty the *intermediate table*.

> **Note** Strictly speaking, the process is iteration not recursion, but `RECURSIVE` is the terminology chosen by the SQL standards committee.

Recursive `WITH` queries are typically used to deal with hierarchical or tree-structured data. An example is this query to find all the direct and indirect sub-parts of a product, given only a table that shows immediate inclusions:

```
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part, quantity) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part, quantity FROM parts WHERE part = 'our_product'
  UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part, p.quantity
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
  )
SELECT sub_part, SUM(quantity) as total_quantity
FROM included_parts
GROUP BY sub_part ;
```

When working with recursive `WITH` queries, you must ensure that the recursive part of the query eventually returns no tuples, or else the query loops indefinitely. In the example that computes the sum of integers, the working table contains a single row in each step, and it takes on the values from 1 through 100 in successive steps. In the 100th step, there is no output because of the `WHERE` clause, and the query terminates.

For some queries, using `UNION` instead of `UNION ALL` can ensure that the recursive part of the query eventually returns no tuples by discarding rows that duplicate previous output rows. However, often a cycle does not involve output rows that are complete duplicates: it might be sufficient to check just one or a few fields to see if the same point has been reached before. The standard method for handling such situations is to compute an array of the visited values. For example, consider the following query that searches a table graph using a link field:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth) AS (
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 1
        FROM graph g
      UNION ALL
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1
        FROM graph g, search_graph sg
        WHERE g.id = sg.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

This query loops if the link relationships contain cycles. Because the query requires a `depth` output, changing `UNION ALL` to `UNION` does not eliminate the looping. Instead the query needs to recognize whether it has reached the same row again while following a particular path of links. This modified query adds two columns, `path` and `cycle`, to the loop-prone query:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, path, cycle) AS (
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 1,
          ARRAY[g.id],
          false
        FROM graph g
      UNION ALL
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,
          path || g.id,
          g.id = ANY(path)
        FROM graph g, search_graph sg
        WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

Aside from detecting cycles, the array value of `path` is useful in its own right since it represents the path taken to reach any particular row.

In the general case where more than one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle, an array of rows can be used. For example, if we needed to compare fields `f1` and `f2`:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, path, cycle) AS (
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 1,
          ARRAY[ROW(g.f1, g.f2)],
          false
        FROM graph g
      UNION ALL
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,
          path || ROW(g.f1, g.f2),
          ROW(g.f1, g.f2) = ANY(path)
        FROM graph g, search_graph sg
        WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;
```

**Tip:** Omit the `ROW()` syntax in the case where only one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle. This uses a simple array rather than a composite-type array, gaining efficiency.

**Tip:** The recursive query evaluation algorithm produces its output in breadth-first search order. You can display the results in depth-first search order by making the outer query `ORDER BY` a path column constructed in this way.

A helpful technique for testing a query when you are not certain if it might loop indefinitely is to place a `LIMIT` in the parent query. For example, this query would loop forever without the `LIMIT` clause:

```
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS (
    SELECT 1
  UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM t
)
SELECT n FROM t LIMIT 100;
```

The technique works because the recursive `WITH` implementation evaluates only as many rows of a `WITH` query as are actually fetched by the parent query. Using this technique in production is not recommended, because other systems might work differently. Also, the technique might not work if the outer query sorts the recursive `WITH` results or join the results to another table.

### Data-Modifying Statements in a WITH clause

For a `SELECT` command, you can use the data-modifying commands `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` in a `WITH` clause. This allows you to perform several different operations in the same query.

A data-modifying statement in a `WITH` clause is run exactly once, and always to completion, independently of whether the primary query reads all (or indeed any) of the output. This is different from the rule when using `SELECT` in a `WITH` clause, the execution of a `SELECT` continues only as long as the primary query demands its output.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This simple CTE query deletes rows from `products`. The `DELETE` in the `WITH` clause deletes the specified rows from products, returning their contents by means of its `RETURNING` clause.

```
WITH deleted_rows AS (
    DELETE FROM products
    WHERE
        "date" >= '2010-10-01' AND
        "date" < '2010-11-01'
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM deleted_rows;
```

Data-modifying statements in a `WITH` clause must have `RETURNING` clauses, as shown in the previous example. It is the output of the `RETURNING` clause, not the target table of the data-modifying statement, that forms the temporary table that can be referred to by the rest of the query. If a data-modifying statement in a `WITH` lacks a `RETURNING` clause, an error is returned.

If the optional `RECURSIVE` keyword is enabled, recursive self-references in data-modifying statements are not allowed. In some cases it is possible to work around this limitation by referring to the output of a recursive `WITH`. For example, this query would remove all direct and indirect subparts of a product.

```
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part FROM parts WHERE part = 'our_product'
  UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
  )
DELETE FROM parts
  WHERE part IN (SELECT part FROM included_parts);
```

The sub-statements in a `WITH` clause are run concurrently with each other and with the main query. Therefore, when using a data-modifying statement in a `WITH`, the statement is run in a *snapshot*. The effects of the statement are not visible on the target tables. The `RETURNING` data is the only way to communicate changes between different `WITH` sub-statements and the main query. In this example, the outer `SELECT` returns the original prices before the action of the `UPDATE` in the `WITH` clause.

```
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM products;
```

In this example the outer `SELECT` returns the updated data.

```
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM t;
```

Updating the same row twice in a single statement is not supported. The effects of such a statement will not be predictable. Only one of the modifications takes place, but it is not easy (and sometimes not possible) to predict which modification occurs.

Any table used as the target of a data-modifying statement in a `WITH` clause must not have a conditional rule, or an `ALSO` rule, or an `INSTEAD` rule that expands to multiple statements.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.5 Using Functions and Operators

Description of user-defined and built-in functions and operators in WarehousePG.


- Using Functions in WarehousePG
- User-Defined Functions
- Built-in Functions and Operators
- Window Functions
- Advanced Aggregate Functions


**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### Using Functions in WarehousePG

When you invoke a function in WarehousePG, function attributes control the execution of the function. The volatility attributes (`IMMUTABLE`, `STABLE`, `VOLATILE`) and the `EXECUTE ON` attributes control two different aspects of function execution. In general, volatility indicates when the function is run, and `EXECUTE ON` indicates where it is run. The volatility attributes are PostgreSQL based attributes, the `EXECUTE ON` attributes are WarehousePG attributes.

For example, a function defined with the `IMMUTABLE` attribute can be run at query planning time, while a function with the `VOLATILE` attribute must be run for every row in the query. A function with the `EXECUTE ON MASTER` attribute runs only on the coordinator instance, and a function with the `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` attribute runs on all primary segment instances (not the coordinator).

These tables summarize what WarehousePG assumes about function execution based on the attribute.

| Function Attribute | WarehousePG Support | Description | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| IMMUTABLE | Yes | Relies only on information directly in its argument list. Given the same argument values, always returns the same result. | |
| STABLE | Yes, in most cases | Within a single table scan, returns the same result for same argument values, but results change across SQL statements. | Results depend on database lookups or parameter values. `current_timestamp` family of functions is `STABLE`; values do not change within an execution. |
| VOLATILE | Restricted | Function values can change within a single table scan. For example: `random()`, `timeofday()`. This is the default attribute. | Any function with side effects is volatile, even if its result is predictable. For example: `setval()`. |

| Function Attribute | Description | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| EXECUTE ON ANY | Indicates that the function can be run on the coordinator, or any segment instance, and it returns the same result regardless of where it runs. This is the default attribute. | WarehousePG determines where the function runs. |
| EXECUTE ON MASTER | Indicates that the function must be run on the coordinator instance. | Specify this attribute if the user-defined function runs queries to access tables. |
| EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS | Indicates that for each invocation, the function must be run on all primary segment instances, but not the coordinator. | |
| EXECUTE ON INITPLAN | Indicates that the function contains an SQL command that dispatches queries to the segment instances and requires special processing on the coordinator instance by WarehousePG when possible. | |

You can display the function volatility and `EXECUTE ON` attribute information with the psql `\df+ function` command.

Refer to the PostgreSQL Function Volatility Categories documentation for additional information about the WarehousePG function volatility classifications.

For more information about `EXECUTE ON` attributes, see CREATE FUNCTION.

In WarehousePG, data is divided up across segments — each segment is a distinct PostgreSQL database. To prevent inconsistent or unexpected results, do not run functions classified as `VOLATILE` at the segment level if they contain SQL commands or modify the database in any way. For example, functions such as `setval()` are not allowed to run on distributed data in WarehousePG because they can cause inconsistent data between segment instances.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

A function can run read-only queries on replicated tables ( `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` ) on the segments, but any SQL command that modifies data must run on the coordinator instance.

> **Note** The hidden system columns ( `ctid` , `cmin` , `cmax` , `xmin` , `xmax` , and `gp_segment_id` ) cannot be referenced in user queries on replicated tables because they have no single, unambiguous value. WarehousePG returns a `column does not exist` error for the query.

To ensure data consistency, you can safely use `VOLATILE` and `STABLE` functions in statements that are evaluated on and run from the coordinator. For example, the following statements run on the coordinator (statements without a `FROM` clause):

```
SELECT setval('myseq', 201);
SELECT foo();
```

If a statement has a `FROM` clause containing a distributed table *and* the function in the `FROM` clause returns a set of rows, the statement can run on the segments:

```
SELECT * from foo();
```

WarehousePG does not support functions that return a table reference ( `rangeFuncs` ) or functions that use the `refCursor` data type.

#### Function Volatility and Plan Caching

There is relatively little difference between the `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` function volatility categories for simple interactive queries that are planned and immediately run. It does not matter much whether a function is run once during planning or once during query execution start up. But there is a big difference when you save the plan and reuse it later. If you mislabel a function `IMMUTABLE` , WarehousePG may prematurely fold it to a constant during planning, possibly reusing a stale value during subsequent execution of the plan. You may run into this hazard when using `PREPARE` d statements, or when using languages such as PL/pgSQL that cache plans.

### User-Defined Functions

WarehousePG supports user-defined functions. See Extending SQL in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

Use the `CREATE FUNCTION` statement to register user-defined functions that are used as described in Using Functions in WarehousePG. By default, user-defined functions are declared as `VOLATILE` , so if your user-defined function is `IMMUTABLE` or `STABLE` , you must specify the correct volatility level when you register your function.

By default, user-defined functions are declared as `EXECUTE ON ANY` . A function that runs queries to access tables is supported only when the function runs on the coordinator instance, except that a function can run `SELECT` commands that access only replicated tables on the segment instances. A function that accesses hash-distributed or randomly distributed tables must be defined with the `EXECUTE ON MASTER` attribute. Otherwise, the function might return incorrect results when the function is used in a complicated query. Without the attribute, planner optimization might determine it would be beneficial to push the function invocation to segment instances.

When you create user-defined functions, avoid using fatal errors or destructive calls. WarehousePG may respond to such errors with a sudden shutdown or restart.

In WarehousePG, the shared library files for user-created functions must reside in the same library path location on every host in the WarehousePG array (masters, segments, and mirrors).

You can also create and run anonymous code blocks that are written in a WarehousePG procedural language such as PL/pgSQL. The anonymous blocks run as transient anonymous functions. For information about creating and running anonymous blocks, see the `DO` command.

### Built-in Functions and Operators

The following table lists the categories of built-in functions and operators supported by PostgreSQL. All functions and operators are supported in WarehousePG as in PostgreSQL with the exception of `STABLE` and `VOLATILE` functions, which are subject to the restrictions noted in Using Functions in WarehousePG. See the Functions and Operators section of the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about these built-in functions and operators.

WarehousePG includes JSON processing functions that manipulate values the `json` data type. For information about JSON data, see Working with JSON Data.

#### Built-in functions and operators

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions |
|---|---|---|---|
| Logical Operators | | | |
| Comparison Operators | | | |
| Mathematical Functions and Operators | random<br><br>setseed | | |
| String Functions and Operators | *All built-in conversion functions* | convert<br><br>pg_client_encoding | |
| Binary String Functions and Operators | | | |
| Bit String Functions and Operators | | | |
| Pattern Matching | | | |
| Data Type Formatting Functions | | to_char<br><br>to_timestamp | |
| Date/Time Functions and Operators | timeofday | age<br><br>current_date<br><br>current_time<br><br>current_timestamp<br><br>localtime<br><br>localtimestamp<br><br>now | |
| Enum Support Functions | | | |
| Geometric Functions and Operators | | | |
| Network Address Functions and Operators | | | |
| Sequence Manipulation Functions | nextval()<br><br>setval() | | |
| Conditional Expressions | | | |
| Array Functions and Operators | | *All array functions* | |
| Aggregate Functions | | | |
| Subquery Expressions | | | |
| Row and Array Comparisons | | | |
| Set Returning Functions | generate_series | | |
| System Information Functions | | *All session information functions*<br><br>*All access privilege inquiry functions*<br><br>*All schema visibility inquiry functions*<br><br>*All system catalog information functions*<br><br>*All comment information functions*<br><br>*All transaction ids and snapshots* | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions |
|---|---|---|---|
| System Administration Functions | set_config<br>pg_cancel_backend<br>pg_terminate_backend<br>pg_reload_conf<br>pg_rotate_logfile<br>pg_start_backup<br>pg_stop_backup<br>pg_size_pretty<br>pg_ls_dir<br>pg_read_file<br>pg_stat_file | current_setting<br>*All database object size functions* | **Note:** The function `pg_column_size` displays bytes required to store the value, possibly with TOAST compression. |
| XML Functions and function-like expressions | | cursor_to_xml(cursor refcursor, count int, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>cursor_to_xmlschema(cursor refcursor, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>database_to_xml(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>database_to_xmlschema(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>database_to_xml_and_xmlschema( nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>query_to_xml(query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>query_to_xmlschema(query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>query_to_xml_and_xmlschema( query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>schema_to_xml(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>schema_to_xmlschema( schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>schema_to_xml_and_xmlschema( schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>table_to_xml(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>table_to_xmlschema( tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>table_to_xml_and_xmlschema( tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br>xmlagg(xml)<br>xmlconcat(xml[, ...])<br>xmlelement(name name [, xmlattributes(value [AS attname] [, ... ])][, content, ...])<br>xmlexists(text, xml)<br>xmlforest(content [AS name][, ...]) | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | xml_is_well_formed(text)<br>xml_is_well_formed_document(text)<br>xml_is_well_formed_content(text)<br>xmlparse ( { DOCUMENT \| CONTENT } value)<br>xpath(text, xml)<br>xpath(text, xml, text[])<br>xpath_exists(text, xml)<br>xpath_exists(text, xml, text[])<br>xmlpi(name target [, content])<br>xmlroot(xml, version text \| no value [, standalone yes\|no\|no value])<br>xmlserialize ( { DOCUMENT \| CONTENT } value AS type )<br>xml(text)<br>text(xml)<br>xmlcomment(xml)<br>xmlconcat2(xml, xml) | |

### Window Functions

The following built-in window functions are WarehousePG extensions to the PostgreSQL database. All window functions are *immutable*. For more information about window functions, see Window Expressions.

#### Window functions

| Function | Return Type | Full Syntax | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `cume_dist()` | `double precision` | `CUME_DIST() OVER ( [PARTITION BY` expr `] ORDER BY` expr `)` | Calculates the cumulative distribution of a value in a group of values. Rows with equal values always evaluate to the same cumulative distribution value. |
| `dense_rank()` | `bigint` | `DENSE_RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY` expr `] ORDER BY` expr `)` | Computes the rank of a row in an ordered group of rows without skipping rank values. Rows with equal values are given the same rank value. |
| `first_value(` *expr* `)` | same as input expr type | `FIRST_VALUE(` expr `) OVER ( [PARTITION BY` expr `] ORDER BY` expr `[ROWS\|RANGE` frame_expr `] )` | Returns the first value in an ordered set of values. |
| `lag(` *expr* `[,` *offset* `] [,` *default* `])` | same as input *expr* type | `LAG(` *expr* `[,` *offset* `] [,` *default* `]) OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `)` | Provides access to more than one row of the same table without doing a self join. Given a series of rows returned from a query and a position of the cursor, `LAG` provides access to a row at a given physical offset prior to that position. The default `offset` is 1. *default* sets the value that is returned if the offset goes beyond the scope of the window. If *default* is not specified, the default value is null. |
| `last_value(` *expr* `)` | same as input *expr* type | `LAST_VALUE(` *expr* `) OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `[ROWS\|RANGE` *frame_expr* `] )` | Returns the last value in an ordered set of values. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Function | Return Type | Full Syntax | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `lead( expr [, offset ] [, default ])` | same as input *expr* type | `LEAD( expr [, offset ] [, expr default ]) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )` | Provides access to more than one row of the same table without doing a self join. Given a series of rows returned from a query and a position of the cursor, `lead` provides access to a row at a given physical offset after that position. If *offset* is not specified, the default offset is 1. *default* sets the value that is returned if the offset goes beyond the scope of the window. If *default* is not specified, the default value is null. |
| `ntile( exp )` | `bigint` | `NTILE( expr ) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )` | Divides an ordered data set into a number of buckets (as defined by *expr*) and assigns a bucket number to each row. |
| `percent_rank ()` | `double precision` | `PERCENT_RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )` | Calculates the rank of a hypothetical row `R` minus 1, divided by 1 less than the number of rows being evaluated (within a window partition). |
| `rank()` | `bigint` | `RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )` | Calculates the rank of a row in an ordered group of values. Rows with equal values for the ranking criteria receive the same rank. The number of tied rows are added to the rank number to calculate the next rank value. Ranks may not be consecutive numbers in this case. |
| `row_number()` | `bigint` | `ROW_NUMBER () OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )` | Assigns a unique number to each row to which it is applied (either each row in a window partition or each row of the query). |

### Advanced Aggregate Functions

The following built-in advanced aggregate functions are WarehousePG extensions of the PostgreSQL database. These functions are *immutable*.

> **Note** The WarehousePG MADlib Extension for Analytics provides additional advanced functions to perform statistical analysis and machine learning with WarehousePG data. See WarehousePG MADlib Extension for Analytics in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

| Function | Return Type | Full Syntax | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `pivot_sum (label[], label, expr)` | `int[], bigint[], float[]` | `pivot_sum( array['A1','A2'], attr, value)` | A pivot aggregation using sum to resolve duplicate entries. |
| `unnest (array[])` | set of `anyelement` | `unnest( array['one', 'row', 'per', 'item'])` | Transforms a one dimensional array into rows. Returns a set of `anyelement`, a polymorphic pseudo-type in PostgreSQL. |

#### MEDIAN (*expr*)

Return type: `timestamp, timestamptz, interval, float`

Full syntax: `MEDIAN ( expression )`

Can take a two-dimensional array as input. Treats such arrays as matrices.

Example:

```
SELECT departmzent_id, MEDIAN(salary)
  FROM employees
GROUP BY department_id;
```

#### sum(array[])

Return type: `smallint[], int[], bigint[], float[]`

Full syntax: `sum(array[[1,2],[3,4]])`

Performs matrix summation. Can take as input a two-dimensional array that is treated as a matrix.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE mymatrix (myvalue int[]);
INSERT INTO mymatrix
   VALUES (array[[1,2],[3,4]]);
INSERT INTO mymatrix
   VALUES (array[[0,1],[1,0]]);
SELECT sum(myvalue) FROM mymatrix;
 sum
---------------
 {{1,3},{4,4}}
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.6 Working with JSON Data

WarehousePG supports the `json` and `jsonb` data types that store JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) data.

WarehousePG supports JSON as specified in the RFC 7159 document and enforces data validity according to the JSON rules. There are also JSON-specific functions and operators available for the `json` and `jsonb` data types. See JSON Functions and Operators.

This section contains the following topics:


- About JSON Data
- JSON Input and Output Syntax
- Designing JSON documents
- jsonb Containment and Existence
- jsonb Indexing
- JSON Functions and Operators


**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### About JSON Data

WarehousePG supports two JSON data types: `json` and `jsonb`. They accept almost identical sets of values as input. The major difference is one of efficiency.

- The `json` data type stores an exact copy of the input text. This requires JSON processing functions to reparse `json` data on each execution. The `json` data type does not alter the input text.
    - Semantically-insignificant white space between tokens is retained, as well as the order of keys within JSON objects.
    - All key/value pairs are kept even if a JSON object contains duplicate keys. For duplicate keys, JSON processing functions consider the last value as the operative one.
- The `jsonb` data type stores a decomposed binary format of the input text. The conversion overhead makes data input slightly slower than the `json` data type. However, The JSON processing functions are significantly faster because reparsing `jsonb` data is not required. The `jsonb` data type alters the input text.
    - White space is not preserved.
    - The order of object keys is not preserved.
    - Duplicate object keys are not kept. If the input includes duplicate keys, only the last value is kept. The `jsonb` data type supports indexing. See jsonb Indexing.

In general, JSON data should be stored as the `jsonb` data type unless there are specialized needs, such as legacy assumptions about ordering of object keys.

#### About Unicode Characters in JSON Data

The RFC 7159 document permits JSON strings to contain Unicode escape sequences denoted by `\uXXXX`. However, WarehousePG allows only one character set encoding per database. It is not possible for the `json` data type to conform rigidly to the JSON specification unless the database encoding is UTF8. Attempts to include characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding will fail. Characters that can be represented in the database encoding, but not in UTF8, are allowed.

- The WarehousePG input function for the `json` data type allows Unicode escapes regardless of the database encoding and checks Unicode escapes only for syntactic correctness (a `\u` followed by four hex digits).
- The WarehousePG input function for the `jsonb` data type is more strict. It does not allow Unicode escapes for non-ASCII characters (those above `U+007F`) unless the database encoding is UTF8. It also rejects `\u0000`, which cannot be represented in the WarehousePG `text` type, and it requires that any use of Unicode surrogate pairs to designate characters outside the Unicode Basic Multilingual Plane be correct. Valid Unicode escapes, except for `\u0000`, are converted to the equivalent ASCII or UTF8 character for storage; this includes folding surrogate pairs into a single character.

> **Note** Many of the JSON processing functions described in JSON Functions and Operators convert Unicode escapes to regular characters. The functions throw an error for characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding. You should avoid mixing Unicode escapes in JSON with a non-UTF8 database encoding, if possible.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Mapping JSON Data Types to WarehousePG Data Types

When converting JSON text input into `jsonb` data, the primitive data types described by RFC 7159 are effectively mapped onto native WarehousePG data types, as shown in the following table.

| JSON primitive data type | WarehousePG data type | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| `string` | `text` | `\u0000` is not allowed. Non-ASCII Unicode escapes are allowed only if database encoding is UTF8 |
| `number` | `numeric` | `NaN` and `infinity` values are disallowed |
| `boolean` | `boolean` | Only lowercase `true` and `false` spellings are accepted |
| `null` | (none) | The JSON `null` primitive type is different than the SQL `NULL`. |

There are some minor constraints on what constitutes valid `jsonb` data that do not apply to the `json` data type, nor to JSON in the abstract, corresponding to limits on what can be represented by the underlying data type. Notably, when converting data to the `jsonb` data type, numbers that are outside the range of the WarehousePG `numeric` data type are rejected, while the `json` data type does not reject such numbers.

Such implementation-defined restrictions are permitted by RFC 7159. However, in practice such problems might occur in other implementations, as it is common to represent the JSON `number` primitive type as IEEE 754 double precision floating point (which RFC 7159 explicitly anticipates and allows for).

When using JSON as an interchange format with other systems, be aware of the possibility of losing numeric precision compared to data originally stored by WarehousePG.

Also, as noted in the previous table, there are some minor restrictions on the input format of JSON primitive types that do not apply to the corresponding WarehousePG data types.

### JSON Input and Output Syntax

The input and output syntax for the `json` data type is as specified in RFC 7159.

The following are all valid `json` expressions:

```
-- Simple scalar/primitive value
-- Primitive values can be numbers, quoted strings, true, false, or null
SELECT '5'::json;

-- Array of zero or more elements (elements need not be of same type)
SELECT '[1, 2, "foo", null]'::json;

-- Object containing pairs of keys and values
-- Note that object keys must always be quoted strings
SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active": false}'::json;

-- Arrays and objects can be nested arbitrarily
SELECT '{"foo": [true, "bar"], "tags": {"a": 1, "b": null}}'::json;
```

As previously stated, when a JSON value is input and then printed without any additional processing, the `json` data type outputs the same text that was input, while the `jsonb` data type does not preserve semantically-insignificant details such as whitespace. For example, note the differences here:

```
SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::json;
                      json
-------------------------------------------------
 {"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}
(1 row)

SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::jsonb;
                      jsonb
-------------------------------------------------
 {"bar": "baz", "active": false, "balance": 7.77}
(1 row)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

One semantically-insignificant detail worth noting is that with the `jsonb` data type, numbers will be printed according to the behavior of the underlying numeric type. In practice, this means that numbers entered with E notation will be printed without it, for example:

```
SELECT '{"reading": 1.230e-5}'::json, '{"reading": 1.230e-5}'::jsonb;
         json          |          jsonb
-----------------------+-------------------------
 {"reading": 1.230e-5} | {"reading": 0.00001230}
(1 row)
```

However, the `jsonb` data type preserves trailing fractional zeroes, as seen in previous example, even though those are semantically insignificant for purposes such as equality checks.

### Designing JSON documents

Representing data as JSON can be considerably more flexible than the traditional relational data model, which is compelling in environments where requirements are fluid. It is quite possible for both approaches to co-exist and complement each other within the same application. However, even for applications where maximal flexibility is desired, it is still recommended that JSON documents have a somewhat fixed structure. The structure is typically unenforced (though enforcing some business rules declaratively is possible), but having a predictable structure makes it easier to write queries that usefully summarize a set of JSON documents (datums) in a table.

JSON data is subject to the same concurrency-control considerations as any other data type when stored in a table. Although storing large documents is practicable, keep in mind that any update acquires a row-level lock on the whole row. Consider limiting JSON documents to a manageable size in order to decrease lock contention among updating transactions. Ideally, JSON documents should each represent an atomic datum that business rules dictate cannot reasonably be further subdivided into smaller datums that could be modified independently.

### jsonb Containment and Existence

Testing *containment* is an important capability of `jsonb`. There is no parallel set of facilities for the `json` type. Containment tests whether one `jsonb` document has contained within it another one. These examples return true except as noted:

```
-- Simple scalar/primitive values contain only the identical value:
SELECT '"foo"'::jsonb @> '"foo"'::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is contained within the one on the left:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb;

-- Order of array elements is not significant, so this is also true:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[3, 1]'::jsonb;

-- Duplicate array elements don't matter either:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 2, 2]'::jsonb;

-- The object with a single pair on the right side is contained
-- within the object on the left side:
SELECT '{"product": "WarehousePG", "version": "6.0.0", "jsonb":true}'::jsonb @> '{"version":"6.0.0"}'::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is not considered contained within the
-- array on the left, even though a similar array is nested within it:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb;  -- yields false

-- But with a layer of nesting, it is contained:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[[1, 3]]'::jsonb;

-- Similarly, containment is not reported here:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz", "zig": "zag"}}'::jsonb @> '{"bar": "baz"}'::jsonb; -- yields false

-- But with a layer of nesting, it is contained:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz", "zig": "zag"}}'::jsonb @> '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb;
```

The general principle is that the contained object must match the containing object as to structure and data contents, possibly after discarding some non-matching array elements or object key/value pairs from the containing object. For containment, the order of array elements is not significant when doing a containment match, and duplicate array elements are effectively considered only once.

As an exception to the general principle that the structures must match, an array may contain a primitive value:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
-- This array contains the primitive string value:
SELECT '["foo", "bar"]'::jsonb @> '"bar"'::jsonb;

-- This exception is not reciprocal -- non-containment is reported here:
SELECT '"bar"'::jsonb @> '["bar"]'::jsonb;  -- yields false
```

`jsonb` also has an *existence* operator, which is a variation on the theme of containment: it tests whether a string (given as a text value) appears as an object key or array element at the top level of the `jsonb` value. These examples return true except as noted:

```
-- String exists as array element:
SELECT '["foo", "bar", "baz"]'::jsonb ? 'bar';

-- String exists as object key:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"}'::jsonb ? 'foo';

-- Object values are not considered:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"}'::jsonb ? 'bar';  -- yields false

-- As with containment, existence must match at the top level:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb ? 'bar'; -- yields false

-- A string is considered to exist if it matches a primitive JSON string:
SELECT '"foo"'::jsonb ? 'foo';
```

JSON objects are better suited than arrays for testing containment or existence when there are many keys or elements involved, because unlike arrays they are internally optimized for searching, and do not need to be searched linearly.

The various containment and existence operators, along with all other JSON operators and functions are documented in JSON Functions and Operators.

Because JSON containment is nested, an appropriate query can skip explicit selection of sub-objects. As an example, suppose that we have a doc column containing objects at the top level, with most objects containing tags fields that contain arrays of sub-objects. This query finds entries in which sub-objects containing both `"term":"paris"` and `"term":"food"` appear, while ignoring any such keys outside the tags array:

```
SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
  WHERE doc @> '{"tags":[{"term":"paris"}, {"term":"food"}]}';
```

The query with this predicate could accomplish the same thing.

```
SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
  WHERE doc->'tags' @> '[{"term":"paris"}, {"term":"food"}]';
```

However, the second approach is less flexible and is often less efficient as well.

On the other hand, the JSON existence operator is not nested: it will only look for the specified key or array element at top level of the JSON value.

### jsonb Indexing

The WarehousePG `jsonb` data type, supports GIN, btree, and hash indexes.

- GIN Indexes on jsonb Data
- Btree and Hash Indexes on jsonb Data

#### GIN Indexes on jsonb Data

GIN indexes can be used to efficiently search for keys or key/value pairs occurring within a large number of `jsonb` documents (datums). Two GIN operator classes are provided, offering different performance and flexibility trade-offs.

The default GIN operator class for jsonb supports queries with the `@>`, `?`, `?&` and `?|` operators. (For details of the semantics that these operators implement, see the table in JSON operators.) An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE INDEX idxgin ON api USING gin (jdoc);
```

The non-default GIN operator class `jsonb_path_ops` supports indexing the `@>` operator only. An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

```
CREATE INDEX idxginp ON api USING gin (jdoc jsonb_path_ops);
```

Consider the example of a table that stores JSON documents retrieved from a third-party web service, with a documented schema definition. This is a typical document:

```
{
    "guid": "9c36adc1-7fb5-4d5b-83b4-90356a46061a",
    "name": "Angela Barton",
    "is_active": true,
    "company": "Magnafone",
    "address": "178 Howard Place, Gulf, Washington, 702",
    "registered": "2009-11-07T08:53:22 +08:00",
    "latitude": 19.793713,
    "longitude": 86.513373,
    "tags": [
        "enim",
        "aliquip",
        "qui"
    ]
}
```

The JSON documents are stored a table named `api`, in a `jsonb` column named `jdoc`. If a GIN index is created on this column, queries like the following can make use of the index:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "company" has value "Magnafone"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @> '{"company": "Magnafone"}';
```

However, the index could not be used for queries like the following. The operator `?` is indexable, however, the comparison is not applied directly to the indexed column `jdoc`:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains key or array element "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc -> 'tags' ? 'qui';
```

With appropriate use of expression indexes, the above query can use an index. If querying for particular items within the `tags` key is common, defining an index like this might be worthwhile:

```
CREATE INDEX idxgintags ON api USING gin ((jdoc -> 'tags'));
```

Now, the `WHERE` clause `jdoc -> 'tags' ? 'qui'` is recognized as an application of the indexable operator `?` to the indexed expression `jdoc -> 'tags'`. For information about expression indexes, see Indexes on Expressions.

Another approach to querying JSON documents is to exploit containment, for example:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains array element "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @> '{"tags": ["qui"]}';
```

A simple GIN index on the `jdoc` column can support this query. However, the index will store copies of every key and value in the `jdoc` column, whereas the expression index of the previous example stores only data found under the tags key. While the simple-index approach is far more flexible (since it supports queries about any key), targeted expression indexes are likely to be smaller and faster to search than a simple index.

Although the `jsonb_path_ops` operator class supports only queries with the `@>` operator, it has performance advantages over the default operator class `jsonb_ops`. A `jsonb_path_ops` index is usually much smaller than a `jsonb_ops` index over the same data, and the specificity of searches is better, particularly when queries contain keys that appear frequently in the data. Therefore search operations typically perform better than with the default operator class.

The technical difference between a `jsonb_ops` and a `jsonb_path_ops` GIN index is that the former creates independent index items for each key and value in the data, while the latter creates index items only for each value in the data.

> **Note** For this discussion, the term *value* includes array elements, though JSON terminology sometimes considers array elements distinct from values within objects.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Basically, each `jsonb_path_ops` index item is a hash of the value and the key(s) leading to it; for example to index `{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}`, a single index item would be created incorporating all three of `foo`, `bar`, and `baz` into the hash value. Thus a containment query looking for this structure would result in an extremely specific index search; but there is no way at all to find out whether `foo` appears as a key. On the other hand, a `jsonb_ops` index would create three index items representing `foo`, `bar`, and `baz` separately; then to do the containment query, it would look for rows containing all three of these items. While GIN indexes can perform such an `AND` search fairly efficiently, it will still be less specific and slower than the equivalent `jsonb_path_ops` search, especially if there are a very large number of rows containing any single one of the three index items.

A disadvantage of the `jsonb_path_ops` approach is that it produces no index entries for JSON structures not containing any values, such as `{"a": {}}`. If a search for documents containing such a structure is requested, it will require a full-index scan, which is quite slow. `jsonb_path_ops` is ill-suited for applications that often perform such searches.

#### Btree and Hash Indexes on jsonb Data

`jsonb` also supports `btree` and `hash` indexes. These are usually useful only when it is important to check the equality of complete JSON documents.

For completeness the `btree` ordering for `jsonb` datums is:

```
Object > Array > Boolean > Number > String > Null

Object with n pairs > object with n - 1 pairs

Array with n elements > array with n - 1 elements
```

Objects with equal numbers of pairs are compared in the order:

```
key-1, value-1, key-2 ...
```

Object keys are compared in their storage order. In particular, since shorter keys are stored before longer keys, this can lead to orderings that might not be intuitive, such as:

```
{ "aa": 1, "c": 1} > {"b": 1, "d": 1}
```

Similarly, arrays with equal numbers of elements are compared in the order:

```
element-1, element-2 ...
```

Primitive JSON values are compared using the same comparison rules as for the underlying WarehousePG data type. Strings are compared using the default database collation.

### JSON Functions and Operators

WarehousePG includes built-in functions and operators that create and manipulate JSON data.

- JSON Operators
- JSON Creation Functions
- JSON Aggregate Functions
- JSON Processing Functions

> **Note** For `json` data type values, all key/value pairs are kept even if a JSON object contains duplicate keys. For duplicate keys, JSON processing functions consider the last value as the operative one. For the `jsonb` data type, duplicate object keys are not kept. If the input includes duplicate keys, only the last value is kept. See About JSON Data.

#### JSON Operators

This table describes the operators that are available for use with the `json` and `jsonb` data types.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator | Right Operand Type | Description | Example | Example Result |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `->` | `int` | Get the JSON array element (indexed from zero). | `'[{"a":"foo"},{"b":"bar"},{"c":"baz"}]'::json->2` | `{"c":"baz"}` |
| `->` | `text` | Get the JSON object field by key. | `'{"a": {"b":"foo"}}'::json->'a'` | `{"b":"foo"}` |
| `->>` | `int` | Get the JSON array element as `text`. | `'[1,2,3]'::json->>2` | `3` |
| `->>` | `text` | Get the JSON object field as `text`. | `'{"a":1,"b":2}'::json->>'b'` | `2` |
| `#>` | `text[]` | Get the JSON object at specified path. | `'{"a": {"b":{"c": "foo"}}}'::json#>'{a,b}'` | `{"c": "foo"}` |
| `#>>` | `text[]` | Get the JSON object at specified path as `text`. | `'{"a":[1,2,3],"b":[4,5,6]}'::json#>>'{a,2}'` | `3` |

> **Note** There are parallel variants of these operators for both the `json` and `jsonb` data types. The field, element, and path extraction operators return the same data type as their left-hand input (either `json` or `jsonb`), except for those specified as returning `text`, which coerce the value to `text`. The field, element, and path extraction operators return `NULL`, rather than failing, if the JSON input does not have the right structure to match the request; for example if no such element exists.

Operators that require the `jsonb` data type as the left operand are described in the following table. Many of these operators can be indexed by `jsonb` operator classes. For a full description of `jsonb` containment and existence semantics, see jsonb Containment and Existence. For information about how these operators can be used to effectively index `jsonb` data, see jsonb Indexing.

#### jsonb Operators

| Operator | Right Operand Type | Description | Example |
|---|---|---|---|
| `@>` | `jsonb` | Does the left JSON value contain within it the right value? | `'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb @> '{"b":2}'::jsonb` |
| `<@` | `jsonb` | Is the left JSON value contained within the right value? | `'{"b":2}'::jsonb <@ '{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb` |
| `?` | `text` | Does the key/element string exist within the JSON value? | `'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb ? 'b'` |
| `?\|` | `text[]` | Do any of these key/element strings exist? | `'{"a":1, "b":2, "c":3}'::jsonb ?\| array['b', 'c']` |
| `?&` | `text[]` | Do all of these key/element strings exist? | `'["a", "b"]'::jsonb ?& array['a', 'b']` |

The standard comparison operators in the following table are available only for the `jsonb` data type, not for the `json` data type. They follow the ordering rules for B-tree operations described in jsonb Indexing.

| Operator | Description |
|---|---|
| `<` | less than |
| `>` | greater than |
| `<=` | less than or equal to |
| `>=` | greater than or equal to |
| `=` | equal |
| `<>` or `!=` | not equal |

> **Note** The `!=` operator is converted to `<>` in the parser stage. It is not possible to implement `!=` and `<>` operators that do different things.

#### JSON Creation Functions

The following describes the functions that create `json` data type values. (Currently, there are no equivalent functions for `jsonb`, but you can cast the result of one of these functions to `jsonb`.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### to_json(anyelement)

Returns the value as a JSON object. Arrays and composites are processed recursively and are converted to arrays and objects. If the input contains a cast from the type to `json`, the cast function is used to perform the conversion; otherwise, a JSON scalar value is produced. For any scalar type other than a number, a Boolean, or a null value, the text representation will be used, properly quoted and escaped so that it is a valid JSON string.

Example:

```
to_json('Fred said "Hi."'::text)
"Fred said \"Hi.\""
```

#### array_to_json(anyarray [, pretty_bool])

Returns the array as a JSON array. A multidimensional array becomes a JSON array of arrays.

Line feeds will be added between dimension-1 elements if `pretty_bool` is true.

Example:

```
array_to_json('{{1,5},{99,100}}'::int[])
[[1,5],[99,100]]
```

#### row_to_json(record [, pretty_bool])

Returns the row as a JSON object.

Line feeds will be added between level-1 elements if `pretty_bool` is true.

Example:

```
row_to_json(row(1,'foo'))
{"f1":1,"f2":"foo"}
```

#### json_build_array(VARIADIC "any")

Builds a possibly-heterogeneously-typed JSON array out of a `VARIADIC` argument list.

Example:

```
json_build_array(1,2,'3',4,5)
[1, 2, "3", 4, 5]
```

#### json_build_object(VARIADIC "any")

Builds a JSON object out of a `VARIADIC` argument list. The argument list is taken in order and converted to a set of key/value pairs.

Example:

```
json_build_object('foo',1,'bar',2)
{"foo": 1, "bar": 2}
```

#### json_object(text[])

Builds a JSON object out of a text array. The array must be either a one or a two dimensional array.

The one dimensional array must have an even number of elements. The elements are taken as key/value pairs.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For a two dimensional array, each inner array must have exactly two elements, which are taken as a key/value pair.

Example:

```
json_object('{a, 1, b, "def", c, 3.5}')
json_object('{{a, 1},{b, "def"},{c, 3.5}}')
{"a": "1", "b": "def", "c": "3.5"}
```

#### json_object(keys text[], values text[])

Builds a JSON object out of a text array. This form of `json_object` takes keys and values pairwise from two separate arrays. In all other respects it is identical to the one-argument form.

Example:

```
json_object('{a, b}', '{1,2}')
{"a": "1", "b": "2"}
```

> **Note** `array_to_json` and `row_to_json` have the same behavior as `to_json` except for offering a pretty-printing option. The behavior described for `to_json` likewise applies to each individual value converted by the other JSON creation functions.

> **Note** The hstore module contains functions that cast from `hstore` to `json`, so that `hstore` values converted via the JSON creation functions will be represented as JSON objects, not as primitive string values.

### JSON Aggregate Functions

The following functions aggregate records to an array of JSON objects and pairs of values to a JSON object.

#### json_agg(record)

Argument type: `record`

Return type: `json`

Aggregates records as a JSON array of objects.

#### json_object_agg(name, value)

Argument types: `("any", "any")`

Return type: `json`

Aggregates name/value pairs as a JSON object.

### JSON Processing Functions

This section describes the functions that are available for processing `json` and `jsonb` values.

Many of these processing functions and operators convert Unicode escapes in JSON strings to the appropriate single character. This is a not an issue if the input data type is `jsonb`, because the conversion was already done. However, for `json` data type input, this might result in an error being thrown. SeeAbout JSON Data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### json_array_length() / jsonb_array_length()

Syntax: `json_array_length(json)` / `jsonb_array_length(jsonb)`

Return type: `int`

Returns the number of elements in the outermost JSON array.

Example:

```
json_array_length('[1,2,3,{"f1":1,"f2":[5,6]},4]')
5
```

#### json_each() / jsonb_each()

Syntax: `json_each(json)` / `jsonb_each(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof key text, value json` / `setof key text, value jsonb`

Expands the outermost JSON object into a set of key/value pairs.

Example:

```
select * from json_each('{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}')
 key | value
-----+-------
 a   | "foo"
 b   | "bar"
```

#### json_each_text() / jsonb_each_text()

Syntax: `json_each_text(json)` / `jsonb_each_text(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof key text, value text`

Expands the outermost JSON object into a set of key/value pairs. The returned values will be of type `text`.

Example:

```
select * from json_each_text('{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}')
 key | value
-----+-------
 a   | foo
 b   | bar
```

#### json_extract_path() / jsonb_extract_path()

Syntax: `json_extract_path(from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[])` / `jsonb_extract_path(from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[])`

Return type: `json` / `jsonb`

Returns the JSON value pointed to by `path_elems` (equivalent to `#>` operator).

Example:

```
json_extract_path('{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}','f4')
{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### json_extract_path_text() / jsonb_extract_path_text()

Syntax: `json_extract_path_text(from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[])` / `jsonb_extract_path_text(from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[])`

Return type: `text`

Returns the JSON value pointed to by `path_elems` as text. Equivalent to `#>>` operator.

Example:

```
json_extract_path_text('{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}','f4', 'f6')
foo
```

#### json_object_keys() / jsonb_object_keys()

Syntax: `json_object_keys(json)` / `jsonb_object_keys(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof text`

Returns set of keys in the outermost JSON object.

Example:

```
json_object_keys('{"f1":"abc","f2":{"f3":"a", "f4":"b"}}')
 json_object_keys
------------------
 f1
 f2
```

#### json_populate_record() / jsonb_populate_record()

Syntax: `json_populate_record(base anyelement, from_json json)` / `jsonb_populate_record(base anyelement, from_json jsonb)`

Return type: `anyelement`

Expands the object in `from_json` to a row whose columns match the record type defined by base. See Note 1.

Example:

```
select * from json_populate_record(null::myrowtype, '{"a":1,"b":2}')
 a | b
---+---
 1 | 2
```

#### json_populate_recordset() / jsonb_populate_recordset()

Syntax: `json_populate_recordset(base anyelement, from_json json)` / `jsonb_populate_recordset(base anyelement, from_json jsonb)`

Return type: `setof anyelement`

Expands the outermost array of objects in `from_json` to a set of rows whose columns match the record type defined by base. See Note 1.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
select * from json_populate_recordset(null::myrowtype, '[{"a":1,"b":2},{"a":3,"b":4}]')
 a | b
---+---
 1 | 2
 3 | 4
```

#### json_array_elements() / jsonb_array_elements()

Syntax: `json_array_elements(json)` / `jsonb_array_elements(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof json` / `setof jsonb`

Expands a JSON array to a set of JSON values.

Example:

```
select * from json_array_elements('[1,true, [2,false]]')
   value
-----------
 1
 true
 [2,false]
```

#### json_array_elements_text() / jsonb_array_elements_text()

Syntax: `json_array_elements_text(json)` / `jsonb_array_elements_text(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof text`

Expands a JSON array to a set of `text` values.

Example:

```
select * from json_array_elements_text('["foo", "bar"]')
   value
-----------
 foo
 bar
```

#### json_typeof() / jsonb_typeof()

Syntax: `json_typeof(json)` / `jsonb_typeof(jsonb)`

Return type: `text`

Returns the type of the outermost JSON value as a text string. Possible types are `object`, `array`, `string`, `number`, `boolean`, and `null`. See Note 2.

Example:

```
json_typeof('-123.4')
number
```

#### json_to_record() / jsonb_to_record()

Syntax: `json_to_record(json)` / `jsonb_to_record(jsonb)`

Return type: `record`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Builds an arbitrary record from a JSON object. See Note 1.

As with all functions returning record, the caller must explicitly define the structure of the record with an `AS` clause.

Example:

```
select * from json_to_record('{"a":1,"b":[1,2,3],"c":"bar"}') as x(a int, b text, d text)
 a |    b    | d
---+---------+---
 1 | [1,2,3] |
```

#### json_to_recordset() / jsonb_to_recordset()

Syntax: `json_to_recordset(json)` / `jsonb_to_recordset(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof record`

Builds an arbitrary set of records from a JSON array of objects See Note 1.

As with all functions returning record, the caller must explicitly define the structure of the record with an `AS` clause.

Example:

```
select * from json_to_recordset('[{"a":1,"b":"foo"},{"a":"2","c":"bar"}]') as x(a int, b text);
 a |  b
---+-----
 1 | foo
 2 |
```

#### Notes on JSON examples

> **Note** The examples for the functions `json_populate_record()`, `json_populate_recordset()`, `json_to_record()` and `json_to_recordset()` use constants. However, the typical use would be to reference a table in the `FROM` clause and use one of its `json` or `jsonb` columns as an argument to the function. The extracted key values can then be referenced in other parts of the query. For example the value can be referenced in `WHERE` clauses and target lists. Extracting multiple values in this way can improve performance over extracting them separately with per-key operators.
>
> JSON keys are matched to identical column names in the target row type. JSON type coercion for these functions might not result in desired values for some types. JSON fields that do not appear in the target row type will be omitted from the output, and target columns that do not match any JSON field will be `NULL`.

> **Note 2** The `json_typeof` function null return value of `null` should not be confused with a SQL `NULL`. While calling `json_typeof('null'::json)` will return `null`, calling `json_typeof(NULL::json)` will return a SQL `NULL`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.7 Working with XML Data

WarehousePG supports the `xml` data type that stores XML data.

The `xml` data type checks the input values for well-formedness, providing an advantage over simply storing XML data in a text field. Additionally, support functions allow you to perform type-safe operations on this data; refer to XML Function Reference, below.

Use of this data type requires the installation to have been built with `configure --with-libxml`. This is enabled by default for WarehousePG builds.

The `xml` type can store well-formed "documents", as defined by the XML standard, as well as "content" fragments, which are defined by reference to the more permissive document node of the XQuery and XPath model. Roughly, this means that content fragments can have more than one top-level element or character node. The expression `xmlvalue IS DOCUMENT` can be used to evaluate whether a particular `xml` value is a full document or only a content fragment.

This section contains the following topics:


- Creating XML Values
- Encoding Handling
- Accessing XML Values
- Processing XML
- Mapping Tables to XML
- Using XML Functions and Expressions


**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### Creating XML Values

To produce a value of type `xml` from character data, use the function `xmlparse`:

```
xmlparse ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value)
```

For example:

```
XMLPARSE (DOCUMENT '<?xml version="1.0"?><book><title>Manual</title><chapter>...</chapter></book>')
XMLPARSE (CONTENT 'abc<foo>bar</foo><bar>foo</bar>')
```

The above method converts character strings into XML values according to the SQL standard, but you can also use WarehousePG syntax like the following:

```
xml '<foo>bar</foo>'
'<foo>bar</foo>'::xml
```

The `xml` type does not validate input values against a document type declaration (DTD), even when the input value specifies a DTD. There is also currently no built-in support for validating against other XML schema languages such as XML schema.

The inverse operation, producing a character string value from `xml`, uses the function `xmlserialize`:

```
xmlserialize ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } <value> AS <type> )
```

type can be `character`, `character varying`, or `text` (or an alias for one of those). Again, according to the SQL standard, this is the only way to convert between type `xml` and character types, but WarehousePG also allows you to simply cast the value.

When a character string value is cast to or from type `xml` without going through `XMLPARSE` or `XMLSERIALIZE`, respectively, the choice of `DOCUMENT` versus `CONTENT` is determined by the `XML OPTION` session configuration parameter, which can be set using the standard command:

```
SET XML OPTION { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

or simply like WarehousePG:

```
SET XML OPTION TO { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The default is CONTENT, so all forms of XML data are allowed.

### Encoding Handling

Be careful when dealing with multiple character encodings on the client, server, and in the XML data passed through them. When using the text mode to pass queries to the server and query results to the client (which is the normal mode), WarehousePG converts all character data passed between the client and the server, and vice versa, to the character encoding of the respective endpoint; see Character Set Support. This includes string representations of XML values, such as in the above examples. Ordinarily, this means that encoding declarations contained in XML data can become invalid, as the character data is converted to other encodings while travelling between client and server, because the embedded encoding declaration is not changed. To cope with this behavior, encoding declarations contained in character strings presented for input to the `xml` type are ignored, and content is assumed to be in the current server encoding. Consequently, for correct processing, character strings of XML data must be sent from the client in the current client encoding. It is the responsibility of the client to either convert documents to the current client encoding before sending them to the server, or to adjust the client encoding appropriately. On output, values of type `xml` will not have an encoding declaration, and clients should assume all data is in the current client encoding.

When using binary mode to pass query parameters to the server and query results back to the client, no character set conversion is performed, so the situation is different. In this case, an encoding declaration in the XML data will be observed, and if it is absent, the data will be assumed to be in UTF-8 (as required by the XML standard; note that WarehousePG does not support UTF-16). On output, data will have an encoding declaration specifying the client encoding, unless the client encoding is UTF-8, in which case it will be omitted.

> **Note** Processing XML data with WarehousePG will be less error-prone and more efficient if the XML data encoding, client encoding, and server encoding are the same. Because XML data is internally processed in UTF-8, computations will be most efficient if the server encoding is also UTF-8.

### Accessing XML Values

The `xml` data type is unusual in that it does not provide any comparison operators. This is because there is no well-defined and universally useful comparison algorithm for XML data. One consequence of this is that you cannot retrieve rows by comparing an `xml` column against a search value. XML values should therefore typically be accompanied by a separate key field such as an ID. An alternative solution for comparing XML values is to convert them to character strings first, but note that character string comparison has little to do with a useful XML comparison method.

Because there are no comparison operators for the `xml` data type, it is not possible to create an index directly on a column of this type. If speedy searches in XML data are desired, possible workarounds include casting the expression to a character string type and indexing that, or indexing an XPath expression. Of course, the actual query would have to be adjusted to search by the indexed expression.

### Processing XML

To process values of data type `xml`, WarehousePG offers the functions `xpath` and `xpath_exists`, which evaluate XPath 1.0 expressions.

```
xpath(<xpath>, <xml> [, <nsarray>])
```

The function `xpath` evaluates the XPath expression `xpath` (a text value) against the XML value `xml`. It returns an array of XML values corresponding to the node set produced by the XPath expression.

The second argument must be a well formed XML document. In particular, it must have a single root node element.

The optional third argument of the function is an array of namespace mappings. This array should be a two-dimensional text array with the length of the second axis being equal to 2 (i.e., it should be an array of arrays, each of which consists of exactly 2 elements). The first element of each array entry is the namespace name (alias), the second the namespace URI. It is not required that aliases provided in this array be the same as those being used in the XML document itself (in other words, both in the XML document and in the `xpath` function context, aliases are local).

Example:

```
SELECT xpath('/my:a/<text>()', '<my:a xmlns:my="http://example.com">test</my:a>',
             ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);

 xpath
--------
 {test}
(1 row)
```

To deal with default (anonymous) namespaces, do something like this:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT xpath('//mydefns:b/<text>()', '<a xmlns="http://example.com"><b>test</b></a>',
             ARRAY[ARRAY['mydefns', 'http://example.com']]);

 xpath
--------
 {test}
(1 row)
```

```
xpath_exists(<xpath>, <xml> [, <nsarray>])
```

The function `xpath_exists` is a specialized form of the `xpath` function. Instead of returning the individual XML values that satisfy the XPath, this function returns a Boolean indicating whether the query was satisfied or not. This function is equivalent to the standard `XMLEXISTS` predicate, except that it also offers support for a namespace mapping argument.

Example:

```
SELECT xpath_exists('/my:a/<text>()', '<my:a xmlns:my="http://example.com">test</my:a>',
                    ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);

 xpath_exists
--------------
 t
(1 row)
```

### Mapping Tables to XML

The following functions map the contents of relational tables to XML values. They can be thought of as XML export functionality:

```
table_to_xml(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
query_to_xml(query <text>, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
cursor_to_xml(cursor refcursor, count int, nulls boolean,
              tableforest boolean, targetns text)
```

The return type of each function is `xml`.

`table_to_xml` maps the content of the named table, passed as parameter `tbl`. The `regclass` type accepts strings identifying tables using the usual notation, including optional schema qualifications and double quotes. `query_to_xml` runs the query whose text is passed as parameter query and maps the result set. `cursor_to_xml` fetches the indicated number of rows from the cursor specified by the parameter cursor. This variant is recommended if large tables have to be mapped, because the result value is built up in memory by each function.

If `tableforest` is false, then the resulting XML document looks like this:

```
<tablename>
  <row>
    <columnname1>data</columnname1>
    <columnname2>data</columnname2>
  </row>

  <row>
    ...
  </row>

  ...
</tablename>
```

If `tableforest` is true, the result is an XML content fragment that looks like this:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
<tablename>
  <columnname1>data</columnname1>
  <columnname2>data</columnname2>
</tablename>

<tablename>
  ...
</tablename>

...
```

If no table name is available, that is, when mapping a query or a cursor, the string `table` is used in the first format, `row` in the second format.

The choice between these formats is up to the user. The first format is a proper XML document, which will be important in many applications. The second format tends to be more useful in the `cursor_to_xml` function if the result values are to be later reassembled into one document. The functions for producing XML content discussed above, in particular `xmlelement`, can be used to alter the results as desired.

The data values are mapped in the same way as described for the function `xmlelement`, above.

The parameter nulls determines whether null values should be included in the output. If true, null values in columns are represented as:

```
<columnname xsi:nil="true"/>
```

where `xsi` is the XML namespace prefix for XML schema Instance. An appropriate namespace declaration will be added to the result value. If false, columns containing null values are simply omitted from the output.

The parameter `targetns` specifies the desired XML namespace of the result. If no particular namespace is wanted, an empty string should be passed.

The following functions return XML schema documents describing the mappings performed by the corresponding functions above:

```
able_to_xmlschema(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
query_to_xmlschema(query <text>, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
cursor_to_xmlschema(cursor refcursor, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
```

It is essential that the same parameters are passed in order to obtain matching XML data mappings and XML schema documents.

The following functions produce XML data mappings and the corresponding XML schema in one document (or `forest`), linked together. They can be useful where self-contained and self-describing results are desired:

```
table_to_xml_and_xmlschema(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
query_to_xml_and_xmlschema(query <text>, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
```

In addition, the following functions are available to produce analogous mappings of entire schemas or the entire current database:

```
schema_to_xml(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
schema_to_xmlschema(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
schema_to_xml_and_xmlschema(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)

database_to_xml(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
database_to_xmlschema(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
database_to_xml_and_xmlschema(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)
```

Note that these potentially produce large amounts of data, which needs to be built up in memory. When requesting content mappings of large schemas or databases, consider mapping the tables separately instead, possibly even through a cursor.

The result of a schema content mapping looks like this:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
<schemaname>

table1-mapping

table2-mapping

...

</schemaname>
```

where the format of a table mapping depends on the `tableforest` parameter, as explained above.

The result of a database content mapping looks like this:

```
<dbname>

<schema1name>
  ...
</schema1name>

<schema2name>
  ...
</schema2name>

...

</dbname>
```

where the schema mapping is as above.

The example below demonstrates using the output produced by these functions, The example shows an XSLT stylesheet that converts the output of `table_to_xml_and_xmlschema` to an HTML document containing a tabular rendition of the table data. In a similar manner, the results from these functions can be converted into other XML-based formats.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
    xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
>

  <xsl:output method="xml"
      doctype-system="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd"
      doctype-public="-//W3C/DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
      indent="yes"/>

  <xsl:template match="/*">
    <xsl:variable name="schema" select="//xsd:schema"/>
    <xsl:variable name="tabletypename"
                  select="$schema/xsd:element[@name=name(current())]/@type"/>
    <xsl:variable name="rowtypename"
                  select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=$tabletypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element[@name='row']/@type"/>

    <html>
      <head>
        <title><xsl:value-of select="name(current())"/></title>
      </head>
      <body>
        <table>
          <tr>
            <xsl:for-each select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=$rowtypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element/@name">
              <th><xsl:value-of select="."/></th>
            </xsl:for-each>
          </tr>

          <xsl:for-each select="row">
            <tr>
              <xsl:for-each select="*">
                <td><xsl:value-of select="."/></td>
              </xsl:for-each>
            </tr>
          </xsl:for-each>
        </table>
      </body>
    </html>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

### XML Function Reference

The functions described in this section operate on values of type `xml`. The section XML Predicatesalso contains information about the `xml` functions and function-like expressions.

**Function:**

`xmlcomment`

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlcomment(<text>)
```

The function `xmlcomment` creates an XML value containing an XML comment with the specified text as content. The text cannot contain "--" or end with a "-" so that the resulting construct is a valid XML comment. If the argument is null, the result is null.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT xmlcomment('hello');

  xmlcomment
--------------
 <!--hello-->
```

**Function:**

`xmlconcat`

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlconcat(xml[, …])
```

The function `xmlconcat` concatenates a list of individual XML values to create a single value containing an XML content fragment. Null values are omitted; the result is only null if there are no nonnull arguments.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlconcat('<abc/>', '<bar>foo</bar>');

      xmlconcat
----------------------
 <abc/><bar>foo</bar>
```

XML declarations, if present, are combined as follows:

- If all argument values have the same XML version declaration, that version is used in the result, else no version is used.
- If all argument values have the standalone declaration value "yes", then that value is used in the result.
- If all argument values have a standalone declaration value and at least one is "no", then that is used in the result. Otherwise, the result will have no standalone declaration.
- If the result is determined to require a standalone declaration but no version declaration, a version declaration with version 1.0 will be used because XML requires an XML declaration to contain a version declaration.

Encoding declarations are ignored and removed in all cases.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlconcat('<?xml version="1.1"?><foo/>', '<?xml version="1.1" standalone="no"?><bar/>');

             xmlconcat
-----------------------------------
 <?xml version="1.1"?><foo/><bar/>
```

**Function:**

`xmlelement`

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlelement(name name [, xmlattributes(value [AS attname] [, ... ])] [, content, ...])
```

The `xmlelement` expression produces an XML element with the given name, attributes, and content.

Examples:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo);

 xmlelement
------------
 <foo/>

SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar));

    xmlelement
------------------
 <foo bar="xyz"/>

SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes(current_date as bar), 'cont', 'ent');

             xmlelement
-------------------------------------
 <foo bar="2017-01-26">content</foo>
```

Element and attribute names that are not valid XML names are escaped by replacing the offending characters by the sequence `_xHHHH_`, where HHHH is the character's Unicode codepoint in hexadecimal notation. For example:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name "foo$bar", xmlattributes('xyz' as "a&b"));

            xmlelement
----------------------------------
 <foo_x0024_bar a_x0026_b="xyz"/>
```

An explicit attribute name need not be specified if the attribute value is a column reference, in which case the column's name will be used as the attribute name by default. In other cases, the attribute must be given an explicit name. So this example is valid:

```
CREATE TABLE test (a xml, b xml);
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes(a, b)) FROM test;
```

But these are not:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes('constant'), a, b) FROM test;
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes(func(a, b))) FROM test;
```

Element content, if specified, will be formatted according to its data type. If the content is itself of type `xml`, complex XML documents can be constructed. For example:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar),
                            xmlelement(name abc),
                            xmlcomment('test'),
                            xmlelement(name xyz));

                  xmlelement
----------------------------------------------
 <foo bar="xyz"><abc/><!--test--><xyz/></foo>
```

Content of other types will be formatted into valid XML character data. This means in particular that the characters `<`, `>`, and `&` will be converted to entities. Binary data (data type `bytea`) will be represented in base64 or hex encoding, depending on the setting of the configuration parameterxmlbinary. The particular behavior for individual data types is expected to evolve in order to align the SQL and WarehousePG data types with the XML schema specification, at which point a more precise description will appear.

**Function:**

`xmlforest`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlforest(<content> [AS <name>] [, ...])
```

The `xmlforest` expression produces an XML forest (sequence) of elements using the given names and content.

Examples:

```
SELECT xmlforest('abc' AS foo, 123 AS bar);

          xmlforest
------------------------------
 <foo>abc</foo><bar>123</bar>


SELECT xmlforest(table_name, column_name)
FROM information_schema.columns
WHERE table_schema = 'pg_catalog';

                                       xmlforest
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 <table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolname</column_name>
 <table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolsuper</column_name>
```

As seen in the second example, the element name can be omitted if the content value is a column reference, in which case the column name is used by default. Otherwise, a name must be specified.

Element names that are not valid XML names are escaped as shown for `xmlelement` above. Similarly, content data is escaped to make valid XML content, unless it is already of type `xml`.

Note that XML forests are not valid XML documents if they consist of more than one element, so it might be useful to wrap `xmlforest` expressions in `xmlelement`.

**Function:**

`xmlpi`

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlpi(name <target> [, <content>])
```

The `xmlpi` expression creates an XML processing instruction. The content, if present, must not contain the character sequence `?>`.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlpi(name php, 'echo "hello world";');

            xmlpi
-----------------------------
 <?php echo "hello world";?>
```

**Function:**

`xmlroot`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Synopsis:**

```
xmlroot(<xml>, version <text> | no value [, standalone yes|no|no value])
```

The `xmlroot` expression alters the properties of the root node of an XML value. If a version is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's version declaration; if a standalone setting is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's standalone declaration.

```
SELECT xmlroot(xmlparse(document '<?xml version="1.1"?><content>abc</content>'),
               version '1.0', standalone yes);

                xmlroot
----------------------------------------
 <?xml version="1.0" standalone="yes"?>
 <content>abc</content>
```

**Function:**

`xmlagg`

```
xmlagg (<xml>)
```

The function `xmlagg` is, unlike the other functions described here, an aggregate function. It concatenates the input values to the aggregate function call, much like `xmlconcat` does, except that concatenation occurs across rows rather than across expressions in a single row. See Using Functions and Operators for additional information about aggregate functions.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE test (y int, x xml);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (1, '<foo>abc</foo>');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (2, '<bar/>');
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM test;
        xmlagg
----------------------
 <foo>abc</foo><bar/>
```

To determine the order of the concatenation, an `ORDER BY` clause may be added to the aggregate call. For example:

```
SELECT xmlagg(x ORDER BY y DESC) FROM test;
        xmlagg
----------------------
 <bar/><foo>abc</foo>
```

The following non-standard approach used to be recommended in previous versions, and may still be useful in specific cases:

```
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM (SELECT * FROM test ORDER BY y DESC) AS tab;
        xmlagg
----------------------
 <bar/><foo>abc</foo>
```

### XML Predicates

The expressions described in this section check properties of `xml` values.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Expression:**

`IS DOCUMENT`

**Synopsis:**

```
<xml> IS DOCUMENT
```

The expression `IS DOCUMENT` returns true if the argument XML value is a proper XML document, false if it is not (that is, it is a content fragment), or null if the argument is null.

**Expression:**

`XMLEXISTS`

**Synopsis:**

```
XMLEXISTS(<text> PASSING [BY REF] <xml> [BY REF])
```

The function `xmlexists` returns true if the XPath expression in the first argument returns any nodes, and false otherwise. (If either argument is null, the result is null.)

Example:

```
SELECT xmlexists('//town[<text>() = ''Toronto'']' PASSING BY REF '<towns><town>Toronto</town><town>Ottawa</town>
</towns>');

 xmlexists
------------
 t
(1 row)
```

The `BY REF` clauses have no effect in WarehousePG, but are allowed for SQL conformance and compatibility with other implementations. Per SQL standard, the first `BY REF` is required, the second is optional. Also note that the SQL standard specifies the `xmlexists` construct to take an XQuery expression as first argument, but WarehousePG currently only supports XPath, which is a subset of XQuery.

**Expression:**

`xml_is_well_formed`

**Synopsis:**

```
xml_is_well_formed(<text>)
xml_is_well_formed_document(<text>)
xml_is_well_formed_content(<text>)
```

These functions check whether a text string is well-formed XML, returning a Boolean result. `xml_is_well_formed_document` checks for a well-formed document, while `xml_is_well_formed_content` checks for well-formed content. `xml_is_well_formed` does the former if the `xmloption` configuration parameter is set to `DOCUMENT`, or the latter if it is set to `CONTENT`. This means that `xml_is_well_formed` is useful for seeing whether a simple cast to type `xml` will succeed, whereas the other two functions are useful for seeing whether the corresponding variants of `XMLPARSE` will succeed.

Examples:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SET xmloption TO DOCUMENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<>');
 xml_is_well_formed
--------------------
 f
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<abc/>');
 xml_is_well_formed
--------------------
 t
(1 row)

SET xmloption TO CONTENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('abc');
 xml_is_well_formed
--------------------
 t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://postgresql.org/stuff">bar</pg:foo>');
 xml_is_well_formed_document
-----------------------------
 t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://postgresql.org/stuff">bar</my:foo>');
 xml_is_well_formed_document
-----------------------------
 f
(1 row)
```

The last example shows that the checks include whether namespaces are correctly matched.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.8 Using Full Text Search

WarehousePG provides data types, functions, operators, index types, and configurations for querying natural language documents.

- About Full Text Search
  This topic provides an overview of WarehousePG full text search, basic text search expressions, configuring, and customizing text search. WarehousePG full text search is compared with WarehousePG Text.
- Searching Text in Database Tables
  This topic shows how to use text search operators to search database tables and how to create indexes to speed up text searches.
- Controlling Text Search
  This topic shows how to create search and query vectors, how to rank search results, and how to highlight search terms in the results of text search queries.
- Additional Text Search Features
  WarehousePG has additional functions and operators you can use to manipulate search and query vectors, and to rewrite search queries.
- Text Search Parsers
  This topic describes the types of tokens the WarehousePG text search parser produces from raw text.
- Text Search Dictionaries
  Tokens produced by the WarehousePG full text search parser are passed through a chain of dictionaries to produce a normalized term or "lexeme". Different kinds of dictionaries are available to filter and transform tokens in different ways and for different languages.
- Text Search Configuration Example
  This topic shows how to create a customized text search configuration to process document and query text.
- Testing and Debugging Text Search
  This topic introduces the WarehousePG functions you can use to test and debug a search configuration or the individual parser and dictionaries specified in a configuration.
- GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search
  This topic describes and compares the WarehousePG index types that are used for full text searching.
- psql Support
  The psql command-line utility provides a meta-command to display information about WarehousePG full text search configurations.
- Limitations
  This topic lists limitations and maximums for WarehousePG full text search objects.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.1 About Full Text Search

This topic provides an overview of WarehousePG full text search, basic text search expressions, configuring, and customizing text search. WarehousePG full text search is compared with WarehousePG Text.

This section contains the following subtopics:


- What is a Document?
- Basic Text Matching
- Configurations


Full Text Searching (or just "text search") provides the capability to identify natural-language *documents* that satisfy a *query*, and optionally to rank them by relevance to the query. The most common type of search is to find all documents containing given *query terms* and return them in order of their *similarity* to the query.

WarehousePG provides a data type `tsvector` to store preprocessed documents, and a data type `tsquery` to store processed queries (Text Search Data Types). There are many functions and operators available for these data types (Text Search Functions and Operators), the most important of which is the match operator `@@`, which we introduce in Basic Text Matching. Full text searches can be accelerated using indexes (GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search).

Notions of query and similarity are very flexible and depend on the specific application. The simplest search considers query as a set of words and similarity as the frequency of query words in the document.

WarehousePG supports the standard text matching operators `~`, `~*`, `LIKE`, and `ILIKE` for textual data types, but these operators lack many essential properties required for searching documents:

- There is no linguistic support, even for English. Regular expressions are not sufficient because they cannot easily handle derived words, e.g., `satisfies` and `satisfy`. You might miss documents that contain `satisfies`, although you probably would like to find them when searching for `satisfy`. It is possible to use OR to search for multiple derived forms, but this is tedious and error-prone (some words can have several thousand derivatives).
- They provide no ordering (ranking) of search results, which makes them ineffective when thousands of matching documents are found.
- They tend to be slow because there is no index support, so they must process all documents for every search.

Full text indexing allows documents to be preprocessed and an index saved for later rapid searching. Preprocessing includes:

- **Parsing documents into tokens.** It is useful to identify various classes of tokens, e.g., numbers, words, complex words, email addresses, so that they can be processed differently. In principle token classes depend on the specific application, but for most purposes it is adequate to use a predefined set of classes. WarehousePG uses a *parser* to perform this step. A standard parser is provided, and custom parsers can be created for specific needs.
- **Converting tokens into lexemes.** A lexeme is a string, just like a token, but it has been *normalized* so that different forms of the same word are made alike. For example, normalization almost always includes folding upper-case letters to lower-case, and often involves removal of suffixes (such as s or es in English). This allows searches to find variant forms of the same word, without tediously entering all the possible variants. Also, this step typically eliminates *stop words*, which are words that are so common that they are useless for searching. (In short, then, tokens are raw fragments of the document text, while lexemes are words that are believed useful for indexing and searching.) WarehousePG uses *dictionaries* to perform this step. Various standard dictionaries are provided, and custom ones can be created for specific needs.
- **Storing preprocessed documents optimized for searching.** For example, each document can be represented as a sorted array of normalized lexemes. Along with the lexemes it is often desirable to store positional information to use for *proximity ranking*, so that a document that contains a more "dense" region of query words is assigned a higher rank than one with scattered query words.

Dictionaries allow fine-grained control over how tokens are normalized. With appropriate dictionaries, you can:

- Define stop words that should not be indexed.
- Map synonyms to a single word using Ispell.
- Map phrases to a single word using a thesaurus.
- Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using an Ispell dictionary.
- Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using Snowball stemmer rules.

#### What is a Document?

A *document* is the unit of searching in a full text search system; for example, a magazine article or email message. The text search engine must be able to parse documents and store associations of lexemes (key words) with their parent document. Later, these associations are used to search for documents that contain query words.

For searches within WarehousePG, a document is normally a textual field within a row of a database table, or possibly a combination (concatenation) of such fields, perhaps stored in several tables or obtained dynamically. In other words, a document can be constructed from different parts for indexing and it might not be stored anywhere as a whole. For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT title || ' ' ||  author || ' ' ||  abstract || ' ' || body AS document
FROM messages
WHERE mid = 12;

SELECT m.title || ' ' || m.author || ' ' || m.abstract || ' ' || d.body AS document
FROM messages m, docs d
WHERE mid = did AND mid = 12;
```

**Note** In these example queries, `coalesce` should be used to prevent a single `NULL` attribute from causing a `NULL` result for the whole document.

Another possibility is to store the documents as simple text files in the file system. In this case, the database can be used to store the full text index and to run searches, and some unique identifier can be used to retrieve the document from the file system. However, retrieving files from outside the database requires superuser permissions or special function support, so this is usually less convenient than keeping all the data inside WarehousePG. Also, keeping everything inside the database allows easy access to document metadata to assist in indexing and display.

For text search purposes, each document must be reduced to the preprocessed `tsvector` format. Searching and ranking are performed entirely on the tsvector representation of a document — the original text need only be retrieved when the document has been selected for display to a user. We therefore often speak of the `tsvector` as being the document, but of course it is only a compact representation of the full document.

### Basic Text Matching

Full text searching in WarehousePG is based on the match operator `@@`, which returns `true` if a `tsvector` (document) matches a `tsquery` (query). It does not matter which data type is written first:

```
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector @@ 'cat & rat'::tsquery;
 ?column?
----------
 t

SELECT 'fat & cow'::tsquery @@ 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector;
 ?column?
----------
 f
```

As the above example suggests, a `tsquery` is not just raw text, any more than a `tsvector` is. A `tsquery` contains search terms, which must be already-normalized lexemes, and may combine multiple terms using AND, OR, and NOT operators. (For details see.) There are functions `to_tsquery` and `plainto_tsquery` that are helpful in converting user-written text into a proper `tsquery`, for example by normalizing words appearing in the text. Similarly, `to_tsvector` is used to parse and normalize a document string. So in practice a text search match would look more like this:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('fat cats ate fat rats') @@ to_tsquery('fat & rat');
 ?column?
----------
 t
```

Observe that this match would not succeed if written as

```
SELECT 'fat cats ate fat rats'::tsvector @@ to_tsquery('fat & rat');
 ?column?
----------
 f
```

since here no normalization of the word `rats` will occur. The elements of a `tsvector` are lexemes, which are assumed already normalized, so `rats` does not match `rat`.

The `@@` operator also supports `text` input, allowing explicit conversion of a text string to `tsvector` or `tsquery` to be skipped in simple cases. The variants available are:

```
tsvector @@ tsquery
tsquery  @@ tsvector
text @@ tsquery
text @@ text
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The first two of these we saw already. The form `text @@ tsquery` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ y`. The form `text @@ text` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ plainto_tsquery(y)`.

### Configurations

The above are all simple text search examples. As mentioned before, full text search functionality includes the ability to do many more things: skip indexing certain words (stop words), process synonyms, and use sophisticated parsing, e.g., parse based on more than just white space. This functionality is controlled by *text search configurations*. WarehousePG comes with predefined configurations for many languages, and you can easily create your own configurations. (psql's `\dF` command shows all available configurations.)

During installation an appropriate configuration is selected and default_text_search_config is set accordingly in `postgresql.conf`. If you are using the same text search configuration for the entire cluster you can use the value in `postgresql.conf`. To use different configurations throughout the cluster but the same configuration within any one database, use `ALTER DATABASE ... SET`. Otherwise, you can set `default_text_search_config` in each session.

Each text search function that depends on a configuration has an optional `regconfig` argument, so that the configuration to use can be specified explicitly. `default_text_search_config` is used only when this argument is omitted.

To make it easier to build custom text search configurations, a configuration is built up from simpler database objects. WarehousePG's text search facility provides four types of configuration-related database objects:

- *Text search parsers* break documents into tokens and classify each token (for example, as words or numbers).
- *Text search dictionaries* convert tokens to normalized form and reject stop words.
- *Text search templates* provide the functions underlying dictionaries. (A dictionary simply specifies a template and a set of parameters for the template.)
- *Text search configurations* select a parser and a set of dictionaries to use to normalize the tokens produced by the parser.

Text search parsers and templates are built from low-level C functions; therefore it requires C programming ability to develop new ones, and superuser privileges to install one into a database. (There are examples of add-on parsers and templates in the `contrib/` area of the WarehousePG distribution.) Since dictionaries and configurations just parameterize and connect together some underlying parsers and templates, no special privilege is needed to create a new dictionary or configuration. Examples of creating custom dictionaries and configurations appear later in this chapter.

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.8.2 Searching Text in Database Tables

This topic shows how to use text search operators to search database tables and how to create indexes to speed up text searches.

The examples in the previous section illustrated full text matching using simple constant strings. This section shows how to search table data, optionally using indexes.

This section contains the following subtopics:


- Searching a Table
- Creating Indexes


### Searching a Table

It is possible to do a full text search without an index. A simple query to print the `title` of each row that contains the word `friend` in its `body` field is:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ to_tsquery('english', 'friend');
```

This will also find related words such as `friends` and `friendly`, since all these are reduced to the same normalized lexeme.

The query above specifies that the `english` configuration is to be used to parse and normalize the strings. Alternatively we could omit the configuration parameters:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ to_tsquery('friend');
```

This query will use the configuration set by default_text_search_config.

A more complex example is to select the ten most recent documents that contain `create` and `table` in the `title` or `body`:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(title || ' ' || body) @@ to_tsquery('create & table')
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

For clarity we omitted the `coalesce` function calls which would be needed to find rows that contain `NULL` in one of the two fields.

Although these queries will work without an index, most applications will find this approach too slow, except perhaps for occasional ad-hoc searches. Practical use of text searching usually requires creating an index.

### Creating Indexes

We can create a GIN index (GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search) to speed up text searches:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING gin(to_tsvector('english', body));
```

Notice that the two-argument version of `to_tsvector` is used. Only text search functions that specify a configuration name can be used in expression indexes. This is because the index contents must be unaffected by default_text_search_config. If they were affected, the index contents might be inconsistent because different entries could contain `tsvector`s that were created with different text search configurations, and there would be no way to guess which was which. It would be impossible to dump and restore such an index correctly.

Because the two-argument version of `to_tsvector` was used in the index above, only a query reference that uses the two-argument version of `to_tsvector` with the same configuration name will use that index. That is, `WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ 'a & b'` can use the index, but `WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ 'a & b'` cannot. This ensures that an index will be used only with the same configuration used to create the index entries.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

It is possible to set up more complex expression indexes wherein the configuration name is specified by another column, e.g.:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING gin(to_tsvector(config_name, body));
```

where `config_name` is a column in the `pgweb` table. This allows mixed configurations in the same index while recording which configuration was used for each index entry. This would be useful, for example, if the document collection contained documents in different languages. Again, queries that are meant to use the index must be phrased to match, e.g., `WHERE to_tsvector(config_name, body) @@ 'a & b'`.

Indexes can even concatenate columns:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING gin(to_tsvector('english', title || ' ' || body));
```

Another approach is to create a separate `tsvector` column to hold the output of `to_tsvector`. This example is a concatenation of title and body, using `coalesce` to ensure that one field will still be indexed when the other is NULL:

```
ALTER TABLE pgweb ADD COLUMN textsearchable_index_col tsvector;
UPDATE pgweb SET textsearchable_index_col =
     to_tsvector('english', coalesce(title,'') || ' ' || coalesce(body,''));
```

Then we create a GIN index to speed up the search:

```
CREATE INDEX textsearch_idx ON pgweb USING gin(textsearchable_index_col);
```

Now we are ready to perform a fast full text search:

```
SELECT title FROM pgweb WHERE textsearchable_index_col @@ to_tsquery('create & table')
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC LIMIT 10;
```

One advantage of the separate-column approach over an expression index is that it is not necessary to explicitly specify the text search configuration in queries in order to make use of the index. As shown in the example above, the query can depend on `default_text_search_config`. Another advantage is that searches will be faster, since it will not be necessary to redo the `to_tsvector` calls to verify index matches. (This is more important when using a GiST index than a GIN index; see GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search.) The expression-index approach is simpler to set up, however, and it requires less disk space since the `tsvector` representation is not stored explicitly.

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.3 Controlling Text Search

This topic shows how to create search and query vectors, how to rank search results, and how to highlight search terms in the results of text search queries.

To implement full text searching there must be a function to create a `tsvector` from a document and a `tsquery` from a user query. Also, we need to return results in a useful order, so we need a function that compares documents with respect to their relevance to the query. It's also important to be able to display the results nicely. WarehousePG provides support for all of these functions.

This topic contains the following subtopics:


- Parsing Documents
- Parsing Queries
- Ranking Search Results
- Highlighting Results


#### Parsing Documents

WarehousePG provides the function `to_tsvector` for converting a document to the `tsvector` data type.

```
to_tsvector([<config> regconfig, ] <document> text) returns tsvector
```

`to_tsvector` parses a textual document into tokens, reduces the tokens to lexemes, and returns a `tsvector` which lists the lexemes together with their positions in the document. The document is processed according to the specified or default text search configuration. Here is a simple example:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'a fat  cat sat on a mat - it ate a fat rats');
                  to_tsvector
-----------------------------------------------------
 'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'rat':12 'sat':4
```

In the example above we see that the resulting tsvector does not contain the words `a`, `on`, or `it`, the word `rats` became `rat`, and the punctuation sign `-` was ignored.

The `to_tsvector` function internally calls a parser which breaks the document text into tokens and assigns a type to each token. For each token, a list of dictionaries (Text Search Dictionaries) is consulted, where the list can vary depending on the token type. The first dictionary that *recognizes* the token emits one or more normalized *lexemes* to represent the token. For example, `rats` became `rat` because one of the dictionaries recognized that the word `rats` is a plural form of `rat`. Some words are recognized as *stop words*, which causes them to be ignored since they occur too frequently to be useful in searching. In our example these are `a`, `on`, and `it`. If no dictionary in the list recognizes the token then it is also ignored. In this example that happened to the punctuation sign `-` because there are in fact no dictionaries assigned for its token type (`Space symbols`), meaning space tokens will never be indexed. The choices of parser, dictionaries and which types of tokens to index are determined by the selected text search configuration (Text Search Configuration Example). It is possible to have many different configurations in the same database, and predefined configurations are available for various languages. In our example we used the default configuration `english` for the English language.

The function `setweight` can be used to label the entries of a `tsvector` with a given *weight*, where a weight is one of the letters `A`, `B`, `C`, or `D`. This is typically used to mark entries coming from different parts of a document, such as `title` versus `body`. Later, this information can be used for ranking of search results.

Because `to_tsvector(NULL)` will return `NULL`, it is recommended to use `coalesce` whenever a field might be null. Here is the recommended method for creating a tsvector from a structured document:

```
UPDATE tt SET ti = setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(title,'')), 'A')
  || setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(keyword,'')), 'B')
  || setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(abstract,'')), 'C')
  || setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(body,'')), 'D');
```

Here we have used `setweight` to label the source of each lexeme in the finished `tsvector`, and then merged the labeled `tsvector` values using the `tsvector` concatenation operator `||`. (Additional Text Search Features gives details about these operations.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parsing Queries

WarehousePG provides the functions `to_tsquery` and `plainto_tsquery` for converting a query to the `tsquery` data type. `to_tsquery` offers access to more features than `plainto_tsquery`, but is less forgiving about its input.

```
to_tsquery([<config> regconfig, ] <querytext> text) returns tsquery
```

`to_tsquery` creates a `tsquery` value from *querytext*, which must consist of single tokens separated by the Boolean operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), and `!` (NOT). These operators can be grouped using parentheses. In other words, the input to `to_tsquery` must already follow the general rules for `tsquery` input, as described in Text Search Data Types. The difference is that while basic `tsquery` input takes the tokens at face value, `to_tsquery` normalizes each token to a lexeme using the specified or default configuration, and discards any tokens that are stop words according to the configuration. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'The & Fat & Rats');
  to_tsquery
---------------
 'fat' & 'rat'
```

As in basic `tsquery` input, weight(s) can be attached to each lexeme to restrict it to match only `tsvector` lexemes of those weight(s). For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'Fat | Rats:AB');
    to_tsquery
------------------
 'fat' | 'rat':AB
```

Also, `*` can be attached to a lexeme to specify prefix matching:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('supern:*A & star:A*B');
        to_tsquery
--------------------------
 'supern':*A & 'star':*AB
```

Such a lexeme will match any word in a `tsvector` that begins with the given string.

`to_tsquery` can also accept single-quoted phrases. This is primarily useful when the configuration includes a thesaurus dictionary that may trigger on such phrases. In the example below, a thesaurus contains the rule `supernovae stars : sn`:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('''supernovae stars'' & !crab');
  to_tsquery
---------------
 'sn' & !'crab'
```

Without quotes, `to_tsquery` will generate a syntax error for tokens that are not separated by an AND or OR operator.

```
plainto_tsquery([ <config> regconfig, ] <querytext> ext) returns tsquery
```

`plainto_tsquery` transforms unformatted text `*querytext*` to `tsquery`. The text is parsed and normalized much as for `to_tsvector`, then the `&` (AND) Boolean operator is inserted between surviving words.

Example:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats');
 plainto_tsquery
-----------------
 'fat' & 'rat'
```

Note that `plainto_tsquery` cannot recognize Boolean operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat & Rats:C');
   plainto_tsquery
---------------------
 'fat' & 'rat' & 'c'
```

Here, all the input punctuation was discarded as being space symbols.

### Ranking Search Results

Ranking attempts to measure how relevant documents are to a particular query, so that when there are many matches the most relevant ones can be shown first. WarehousePG provides two predefined ranking functions, which take into account lexical, proximity, and structural information; that is, they consider how often the query terms appear in the document, how close together the terms are in the document, and how important is the part of the document where they occur. However, the concept of relevancy is vague and very application-specific. Different applications might require additional information for ranking, e.g., document modification time. The built-in ranking functions are only examples. You can write your own ranking functions and/or combine their results with additional factors to fit your specific needs.

The two ranking functions currently available are:

- `ts_rank([ <weights> float4[], ] <vector> tsvector, <query> tsquery [, <normalization> integer ]) returns float4`

  Ranks vectors based on the frequency of their matching lexemes.

- `ts_rank_cd([ <weights> float4[], ] <vector> tsvector, <query> tsquery [, <normalization> integer ]) returns float4`

  This function computes the *cover density* ranking for the given document vector and query, as described in Clarke, Cormack, and Tudhope's "Relevance Ranking for One to Three Term Queries" in the journal "Information Processing and Management", 1999. Cover density is similar to `ts_rank` ranking except that the proximity of matching lexemes to each other is taken into consideration.

This function requires lexeme positional information to perform its calculation. Therefore, it ignores any "stripped" lexemes in the `tsvector`. If there are no unstripped lexemes in the input, the result will be zero. (See Manipulating Documents for more information about the `strip` function and positional information in `tsvector`s.)

For both these functions, the optional `<weights>` argument offers the ability to weigh word instances more or less heavily depending on how they are labeled. The weight arrays specify how heavily to weigh each category of word, in the order:

```
{D-weight, C-weight, B-weight, A-weight}
```

If no `<weights>` are provided, then these defaults are used:

```
{0.1, 0.2, 0.4, 1.0}
```

Typically weights are used to mark words from special areas of the document, like the title or an initial abstract, so they can be treated with more or less importance than words in the document body.

Since a longer document has a greater chance of containing a query term it is reasonable to take into account document size, e.g., a hundred-word document with five instances of a search word is probably more relevant than a thousand-word document with five instances. Both ranking functions take an integer `<normalization>` option that specifies whether and how a document's length should impact its rank. The integer option controls several behaviors, so it is a bit mask: you can specify one or more behaviors using `|` (for example, `2|4`).

- 0 (the default) ignores the document length
- 1 divides the rank by 1 + the logarithm of the document length
- 2 divides the rank by the document length
- 4 divides the rank by the mean harmonic distance between extents (this is implemented only by `ts_rank_cd`)
- 8 divides the rank by the number of unique words in document
- 16 divides the rank by 1 + the logarithm of the number of unique words in document
- 32 divides the rank by itself + 1

If more than one flag bit is specified, the transformations are applied in the order listed.

It is important to note that the ranking functions do not use any global information, so it is impossible to produce a fair normalization to 1% or 100% as sometimes desired. Normalization option `32 (rank/(rank+1))` can be applied to scale all ranks into the range zero to one, but of course this is just a cosmetic change; it will not affect the ordering of the search results.

Here is an example that selects only the ten highest-ranked matches:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT title, ts_rank_cd(textsearch, query) AS rank
FROM apod, to_tsquery('neutrino|(dark & matter)') query
WHERE query @@ textsearch
ORDER BY rank DESC
LIMIT 10;
                     title                     |   rank
-----------------------------------------------+----------
 Neutrinos in the Sun                          |      3.1
 The Sudbury Neutrino Detector                 |      2.4
 A MACHO View of Galactic Dark Matter          |  2.01317
 Hot Gas and Dark Matter                       |  1.91171
 The Virgo Cluster: Hot Plasma and Dark Matter |  1.90953
 Rafting for Solar Neutrinos                   |      1.9
 NGC 4650A: Strange Galaxy and Dark Matter     |  1.85774
 Hot Gas and Dark Matter                       |   1.6123
 Ice Fishing for Cosmic Neutrinos              |      1.6
 Weak Lensing Distorts the Universe            | 0.818218
```

This is the same example using normalized ranking:

```
SELECT title, ts_rank_cd(textsearch, query, 32 /* rank/(rank+1) */ ) AS rank
FROM apod, to_tsquery('neutrino|(dark & matter)') query
WHERE  query @@ textsearch
ORDER BY rank DESC
LIMIT 10;
                     title                     |        rank
-----------------------------------------------+-------------------
 Neutrinos in the Sun                          | 0.756097569485493
 The Sudbury Neutrino Detector                 | 0.705882361190954
 A MACHO View of Galactic Dark Matter          | 0.668123210574724
 Hot Gas and Dark Matter                       |  0.65655958650282
 The Virgo Cluster: Hot Plasma and Dark Matter | 0.656301290640973
 Rafting for Solar Neutrinos                   | 0.655172410958162
 NGC 4650A: Strange Galaxy and Dark Matter     | 0.650072921219637
 Hot Gas and Dark Matter                       | 0.617195790024749
 Ice Fishing for Cosmic Neutrinos              | 0.615384618911517
 Weak Lensing Distorts the Universe            | 0.450010798361481
```

Ranking can be expensive since it requires consulting the tsvector of each matching document, which can be I/O bound and therefore slow. Unfortunately, it is almost impossible to avoid since practical queries often result in large numbers of matches.

### Highlighting Results

To present search results it is ideal to show a part of each document and how it is related to the query. Usually, search engines show fragments of the document with marked search terms. WarehousePG provides a function `ts_headline` that implements this functionality.

```
ts_headline([<config> regconfig, ] <document> text, <query> tsquery [, <options> text ]) returns text
```

`ts_headline` accepts a document along with a query, and returns an excerpt from the document in which terms from the query are highlighted. The configuration to be used to parse the document can be specified by `*config*` ; if `*config*` is omitted, the `default_text_search_config` configuration is used.

If an `*options*` string is specified it must consist of a comma-separated list of one or more `*option=value*` pairs. The available options are:

- `StartSel` , `StopSel` : the strings with which to delimit query words appearing in the document, to distinguish them from other excerpted words. You must double-quote these strings if they contain spaces or commas.
- `MaxWords` , `MinWords` : these numbers determine the longest and shortest headlines to output.
- `ShortWord` : words of this length or less will be dropped at the start and end of a headline. The default value of three eliminates common English articles.
- `HighlightAll` : Boolean flag; if `true` the whole document will be used as the headline, ignoring the preceding three parameters.
- `MaxFragments` : maximum number of text excerpts or fragments to display. The default value of zero selects a non-fragment-oriented headline generation method. A value greater than zero selects fragment-based headline generation. This method finds text fragments with as many query words as possible and stretches those fragments around the query words. As a result query words are close to the middle of each fragment and have words on each side. Each fragment will be of at most `MaxWords` and words of length `ShortWord` or less are dropped at the start and end of each fragment. If not all query words are found in the document, then a single fragment of the first `MinWords` in the document will be displayed.
- `FragmentDelimiter` : When more than one fragment is displayed, the fragments will be separated by this string.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Any unspecified options receive these defaults:

```
StartSel=<b>, StopSel=</b>,
MaxWords=35, MinWords=15, ShortWord=3, HighlightAll=FALSE,
MaxFragments=0, FragmentDelimiter=" ... "
```

For example:

```
SELECT ts_headline('english',
  'The most common type of search
is to find all documents containing given query terms
and return them in order of their similarity to the
query.',
  to_tsquery('query & similarity'));
                        ts_headline
------------------------------------------------------------
 containing given <b>query</b> terms
 and return them in order of their <b>similarity</b> to the
 <b>query</b>.

SELECT ts_headline('english',
  'The most common type of search
is to find all documents containing given query terms
and return them in order of their similarity to the
query.',
  to_tsquery('query & similarity'),
  'StartSel = <, StopSel = >');
                      ts_headline
-------------------------------------------------------
 containing given <query> terms
 and return them in order of their <similarity> to the
 <query>.
```

`ts_headline` uses the original document, not a `tsvector` summary, so it can be slow and should be used with care. A typical mistake is to call `ts_headline` for *every* matching document when only ten documents are to be shown. SQL subqueries can help; here is an example:

```
SELECT id, ts_headline(body, q), rank
FROM (SELECT id, body, q, ts_rank_cd(ti, q) AS rank
      FROM apod, to_tsquery('stars') q
      WHERE ti @@ q
      ORDER BY rank DESC
      LIMIT 10) AS foo;
```

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.4 Additional Text Search Features

WarehousePG has additional functions and operators you can use to manipulate search and query vectors, and to rewrite search queries.

This section contains the following subtopics:


- Manipulating Documents
- Manipulating Queries
- Rewriting Queries
- Gathering Document Statistics


#### Manipulating Documents

Parsing Documents showed how raw textual documents can be converted into `tsvector` values. WarehousePG also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate documents that are already in `tsvector` form.

- `tsvector || tsvector`

  The `tsvector` concatenation operator returns a vector which combines the lexemes and positional information of the two vectors given as arguments. Positions and weight labels are retained during the concatenation. Positions appearing in the right-hand vector are offset by the largest position mentioned in the left-hand vector, so that the result is nearly equivalent to the result of performing `to_tsvector` on the concatenation of the two original document strings. (The equivalence is not exact, because any stop-words removed from the end of the left-hand argument will not affect the result, whereas they would have affected the positions of the lexemes in the right-hand argument if textual concatenation were used.)

One advantage of using concatenation in the vector form, rather than concatenating text before applying `to_tsvector`, is that you can use different configurations to parse different sections of the document. Also, because the `setweight` function marks all lexemes of the given vector the same way, it is necessary to parse the text and do `setweight` before concatenating if you want to label different parts of the document with different weights.

- `setweight(<vector> tsvector, <weight> "char") returns tsvector`

  `setweight` returns a copy of the input vector in which every position has been labeled with the given `<weight>`, either `A`, `B`, `C`, or `D`. (`D` is the default for new vectors and as such is not displayed on output.) These labels are retained when vectors are concatenated, allowing words from different parts of a document to be weighted differently by ranking functions.

Note that weight labels apply to **positions**, not **lexemes**. If the input vector has been stripped of positions then `setweight` does nothing.

- `length(<vector> tsvector) returns integer`

  Returns the number of lexemes stored in the vector.

- `strip(vector tsvector) returns tsvector`

  Returns a vector which lists the same lexemes as the given vector, but which lacks any position or weight information. While the returned vector is much less useful than an unstripped vector for relevance ranking, it will usually be much smaller.

#### Manipulating Queries

Parsing Queries showed how raw textual queries can be converted into `tsquery` values. WarehousePG also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate queries that are already in `tsquery` form.

- `tsquery && tsquery`

  Returns the AND-combination of the two given queries.

- `tsquery || tsquery`

  Returns the OR-combination of the two given queries.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `!! tsquery`

  Returns the negation (NOT) of the given query.

- `numnode(<query> tsquery) returns integer`

  Returns the number of nodes (lexemes plus operators) in a tsquery. This function is useful to determine if the **query** is meaningful (returns > 0), or contains only stop words (returns 0). Examples:

```
SELECT numnode(plainto_tsquery('the any'));
NOTICE:  query contains only stopword(s) or doesn't contain lexeme(s), ignored
 numnode
---------
       0

SELECT numnode('foo & bar'::tsquery);
 numnode
---------
       3
```

- `querytree(<query> tsquery) returns text`

  Returns the portion of a tsquery that can be used for searching an index. This function is useful for detecting unindexable queries, for example those containing only stop words or only negated terms. For example:

```
SELECT querytree(to_tsquery('!defined'));
 querytree
-----------
```

### Rewriting Queries

The `ts_rewrite` family of functions search a given `tsquery` for occurrences of a target subquery, and replace each occurrence with a substitute subquery. In essence this operation is a `tsquery`-specific version of substring replacement. A target and substitute combination can be thought of as a *query rewrite rule*. A collection of such rewrite rules can be a powerful search aid. For example, you can expand the search using synonyms (e.g., `new york`, `big apple`, `nyc`, `gotham`) or narrow the search to direct the user to some hot topic. There is some overlap in functionality between this feature and thesaurus dictionaries (Thesaurus Dictionary). However, you can modify a set of rewrite rules on-the-fly without reindexing, whereas updating a thesaurus requires reindexing to be effective.

- `ts_rewrite(<query> tsquery, <target> tsquery, <substitute> tsquery) returns tsquery`

  This form of `ts_rewrite` simply applies a single rewrite rule: `<target>` is replaced by `<substitute>` wherever it appears in `<query>`. For example:

```
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'a'::tsquery, 'c'::tsquery);
 ts_rewrite
------------
 'b' & 'c'
```

- `ts_rewrite(<query> tsquery, <select> text) returns tsquery`

  This form of `ts_rewrite` accepts a starting `<query>` and a SQL `<select>` command, which is given as a text string. The `<select>` must yield two columns of `tsquery` type. For each row of the `<select>` result, occurrences of the first column value (the target) are replaced by the second column value (the substitute) within the current `<query>` value. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE aliases (id int, t tsquery, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES(1, 'a', 'c');

SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases');
 ts_rewrite
------------
 'b' & 'c'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Note that when multiple rewrite rules are applied in this way, the order of application can be important; so in practice you will want the source query to `ORDER BY` some ordering key.

Let's consider a real-life astronomical example. We'll expand query `supernovae` using table-driven rewriting rules:

```
CREATE TABLE aliases (id int, t tsquery primary key, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES(1, to_tsquery('supernovae'), to_tsquery('supernovae|sn'));

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT t, s FROM aliases');
          ts_rewrite
---------------------------------
 'crab' & ( 'supernova' | 'sn' )
```

We can change the rewriting rules just by updating the table:

```
UPDATE aliases
SET s = to_tsquery('supernovae|sn & !nebulae')
WHERE t = to_tsquery('supernovae');

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT t, s FROM aliases');
                ts_rewrite
-------------------------------------------
 'crab' & ( 'supernova' | 'sn' & !'nebula' )
```

Rewriting can be slow when there are many rewriting rules, since it checks every rule for a possible match. To filter out obvious non-candidate rules we can use the containment operators for the `tsquery` type. In the example below, we select only those rules which might match the original query:

```
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery,
                 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases WHERE ''a & b''::tsquery @> t');
 ts_rewrite
------------
 'b' & 'c'
```

### Gathering Document Statistics

The function `ts_stat` is useful for checking your configuration and for finding stop-word candidates.

```
ts_stat(<sqlquery> text, [ <weights> text, ]
        OUT <word> text, OUT <ndoc> integer,
        OUT <nentry> integer) returns setof record
```

`<sqlquery>` is a text value containing an SQL query which must return a single `tsvector` column. `ts_stat` runs the query and returns statistics about each distinct lexeme (word) contained in the `tsvector` data. The columns returned are

- `<word> text` — the value of a lexeme
- `<ndoc> integer` — number of documents (`tsvector`s) the word occurred in
- `<nentry> integer` — total number of occurrences of the word

If weights is supplied, only occurrences having one of those weights are counted.

For example, to find the ten most frequent words in a document collection:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
LIMIT 10;
```

The same, but counting only word occurrences with weight `A` or `B`:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod', 'ab')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
LIMIT 10;
```

Parent topic: Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.5 Text Search Parsers

This topic describes the types of tokens the WarehousePG text search parser produces from raw text.

Text search parsers are responsible for splitting raw document text into *tokens* and identifying each token's type, where the set of possible types is defined by the parser itself. Note that a parser does not modify the text at all — it simply identifies plausible word boundaries. Because of this limited scope, there is less need for application-specific custom parsers than there is for custom dictionaries. At present WarehousePG provides just one built-in parser, which has been found to be useful for a wide range of applications.

The built-in parser is named `pg_catalog.default`. It recognizes 23 token types, shown in the following table.

| Alias | Description | Example |
|---|---|---|
| asciiword | Word, all ASCII letters | elephant |
| word | Word, all letters | mañana |
| numword | Word, letters and digits | beta1 |
| asciihword | Hyphenated word, all ASCII | up-to-date |
| hword | Hyphenated word, all letters | lógico-matemática |
| numhword | Hyphenated word, letters and digits | postgresql-beta1 |
| hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII | postgresql in the context postgresql-beta1 |
| hword_part | Hyphenated word part, all letters | lógico or matemática in the context lógico-matemática |
| hword_numpart | Hyphenated word part, letters and digits | beta1 in the context postgresql-beta1 |
| email | Email address | foo@example.com |
| protocol | Protocol head | http\:// |
| url | URL | example.com/stuff/index.html |
| host | Host | example.com |
| url_path | URL path | /stuff/index.html, in the context of a URL |
| file | File or path name | /usr/local/foo.txt, if not within a URL |
| sfloat | Scientific notation | -1.234e56 |
| float | Decimal notation | -1.234 |
| int | Signed integer | -1234 |
| uint | Unsigned integer | 1234 |
| version | Version number | 8.3.0 |
| tag | XML tag | <a href="dictionaries.html"> |
| entity | XML entity | \& |
| blank | Space symbols | (any whitespace or punctuation not otherwise recognized) |

> **Note** The parser's notion of a "letter" is determined by the database's locale setting, specifically `lc_ctype`. Words containing only the basic ASCII letters are reported as a separate token type, since it is sometimes useful to distinguish them. In most European languages, token types `word` and `asciiword` should be treated alike.

`email` does not support all valid email characters as defined by RFC 5322. Specifically, the only non-alphanumeric characters supported for email user names are period, dash, and underscore.

It is possible for the parser to produce overlapping tokens from the same piece of text. As an example, a hyphenated word will be reported both as the entire word and as each component:

```
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('foo-bar-beta1');
      alias      |               description                |     token
-----------------+------------------------------------------+---------------
 numhword        | Hyphenated word, letters and digits      | foo-bar-beta1
 hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII          | foo
 blank           | Space symbols                            | -
 hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII          | bar
 blank           | Space symbols                            | -
 hword_numpart   | Hyphenated word part, letters and digits | beta1
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This behavior is desirable since it allows searches to work for both the whole compound word and for components. Here is another instructive example:

```
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('http://example.com/stuff/index.html');
  alias   |  description  |            token
----------+---------------+------------------------------
 protocol | Protocol head | http://
 url      | URL           | example.com/stuff/index.html
 host     | Host          | example.com
 url_path | URL path      | /stuff/index.html
```

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.8.6 Text Search Dictionaries

Tokens produced by the WarehousePG full text search parser are passed through a chain of dictionaries to produce a normalized term or "lexeme". Different kinds of dictionaries are available to filter and transform tokens in different ways and for different languages.

This section contains the following subtopics:


- About Text Search Dictionaries
- Stop Words
- Simple Dictionary
- Synonym Dictionary
- Thesaurus Dictionary
- Ispell Dictionary
- SnowBall Dictionary


### About Text Search Dictionaries

Dictionaries are used to eliminate words that should not be considered in a search (*stop words*), and to *normalize* words so that different derived forms of the same word will match. A successfully normalized word is called a *lexeme*. Aside from improving search quality, normalization and removal of stop words reduces the size of the `tsvector` representation of a document, thereby improving performance. Normalization does not always have linguistic meaning and usually depends on application semantics.

Some examples of normalization:

- Linguistic - Ispell dictionaries try to reduce input words to a normalized form; stemmer dictionaries remove word endings
- URL locations can be canonicalized to make equivalent URLs match:
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/index.html`
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/`
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/../db/mw/index.html`
- Color names can be replaced by their hexadecimal values, e.g., `red`, `green`, `blue`, `magenta` -> `FF0000`, `00FF00`, `0000FF`, `FF00FF`
- If indexing numbers, we can remove some fractional digits to reduce the range of possible numbers, so for example 3.14159265359, 3.1415926, 3.14 will be the same after normalization if only two digits are kept after the decimal point.

A dictionary is a program that accepts a token as input and returns:

- an array of lexemes if the input token is known to the dictionary (notice that one token can produce more than one lexeme)
- a single lexeme with the `TSL_FILTER` flag set, to replace the original token with a new token to be passed to subsequent dictionaries (a dictionary that does this is called a *filtering dictionary*)
- an empty array if the dictionary knows the token, but it is a stop word
- `NULL` if the dictionary does not recognize the input token

WarehousePG provides predefined dictionaries for many languages. There are also several predefined templates that can be used to create new dictionaries with custom parameters. Each predefined dictionary template is described below. If no existing template is suitable, it is possible to create new ones; see the `contrib/` area of the WarehousePG distribution for examples.

A text search configuration binds a parser together with a set of dictionaries to process the parser's output tokens. For each token type that the parser can return, a separate list of dictionaries is specified by the configuration. When a token of that type is found by the parser, each dictionary in the list is consulted in turn, until some dictionary recognizes it as a known word. If it is identified as a stop word, or if no dictionary recognizes the token, it will be discarded and not indexed or searched for. Normally, the first dictionary that returns a `non-NULL` output determines the result, and any remaining dictionaries are not consulted; but a filtering dictionary can replace the given word with a modified word, which is then passed to subsequent dictionaries.

The general rule for configuring a list of dictionaries is to place first the most narrow, most specific dictionary, then the more general dictionaries, finishing with a very general dictionary, like a Snowball stemmer or `simple`, which recognizes everything. For example, for an astronomy-specific search (`astro_en` configuration) one could bind token type `asciiword` (ASCII word) to a synonym dictionary of astronomical terms, a general English dictionary and a Snowball English stemmer:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION astro_en
    ADD MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH astrosyn, english_ispell, english_stem;
```

A filtering dictionary can be placed anywhere in the list, except at the end where it'd be useless. Filtering dictionaries are useful to partially normalize words to simplify the task of later dictionaries. For example, a filtering dictionary could be used to remove accents from accented letters, as is done by the unaccent module.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Stop Words

Stop words are words that are very common, appear in almost every document, and have no discrimination value. Therefore, they can be ignored in the context of full text searching. For example, every English text contains words like a and the, so it is useless to store them in an index. However, stop words do affect the positions in `tsvector`, which in turn affect ranking:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english','in the list of stop words');
        to_tsvector
----------------------------
 'list':3 'stop':5 'word':6
```

The missing positions 1,2,4 are because of stop words. Ranks calculated for documents with and without stop words are quite different:

```
SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english','in the list of stop words'), to_tsquery('list & stop'));
 ts_rank_cd
------------
       0.05

SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english','list stop words'), to_tsquery('list & stop'));
 ts_rank_cd
------------
        0.1
```

It is up to the specific dictionary how it treats stop words. For example, `ispell` dictionaries first normalize words and then look at the list of stop words, while `Snowball` stemmers first check the list of stop words. The reason for the different behavior is an attempt to decrease noise.

### Simple Dictionary

The simple dictionary template operates by converting the input token to lower case and checking it against a file of stop words. If it is found in the file then an empty array is returned, causing the token to be discarded. If not, the lower-cased form of the word is returned as the normalized lexeme. Alternatively, the dictionary can be configured to report non-stop-words as unrecognized, allowing them to be passed on to the next dictionary in the list.

Here is an example of a dictionary definition using the simple template:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict (
    TEMPLATE = pg_catalog.simple,
    STOPWORDS = english
);
```

Here, `english` is the base name of a file of stop words. The file's full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/english.stop`, where `$SHAREDIR` means the WarehousePG installation's shared-data directory, often `/usr/edb/whpg6/share/postgresql` (use `pg_config --sharedir` to determine it if you're not sure). The file format is simply a list of words, one per line. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored, and upper case is folded to lower case, but no other processing is done on the file contents.

Now we can test our dictionary:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict','YeS');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {yes}

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict','The');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {}
```

We can also choose to return `NULL`, instead of the lower-cased word, if it is not found in the stop words file. This behavior is selected by setting the dictionary's `Accept` parameter to false. Continuing the example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict ( Accept = false );

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict','YeS');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {yes}

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict','The');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {}
```

With the default setting of `Accept = true`, it is only useful to place a simple dictionary at the end of a list of dictionaries, since it will never pass on any token to a following dictionary. Conversely, `Accept = false` is only useful when there is at least one following dictionary.

> **Caution** Most types of dictionaries rely on configuration files, such as files of stop words. These files must be stored in UTF-8 encoding. They will be translated to the actual database encoding, if that is different, when they are read into the server. Normally, a database session will read a dictionary configuration file only once, when it is first used within the session. If you modify a configuration file and want to force existing sessions to pick up the new contents, issue an `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` command on the dictionary. This can be a "dummy" update that doesn't actually change any parameter values.

### Synonym Dictionary

This dictionary template is used to create dictionaries that replace a word with a synonym. Phrases are not supported—use the thesaurus template (Thesaurus Dictionary) for that. A synonym dictionary can be used to overcome linguistic problems, for example, to prevent an English stemmer dictionary from reducing the word "Paris" to "pari". It is enough to have a `Paris paris` line in the synonym dictionary and put it before the `english_stem` dictionary. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');
   alias   |   description   | token |  dictionaries  |  dictionary  | lexemes
-----------+-----------------+-------+----------------+--------------+---------
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Paris | {english_stem} | english_stem | {pari}

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_synonym (
    TEMPLATE = synonym,
    SYNONYMS = my_synonyms
);

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword
    WITH my_synonym, english_stem;

SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');
   alias   |   description   | token |       dictionaries        | dictionary | lexemes
-----------+-----------------+-------+---------------------------+------------+---------
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Paris | {my_synonym,english_stem} | my_synonym | {paris}
```

The only parameter required by the synonym template is `SYNONYMS`, which is the base name of its configuration file — `my_synonyms` in the above example. The file's full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/my_synonyms.syn` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the WarehousePG installation's shared-data directory). The file format is just one line per word to be substituted, with the word followed by its synonym, separated by white space. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored.

The synonym template also has an optional parameter `CaseSensitive`, which defaults to `false`. When `CaseSensitive` is `false`, words in the synonym file are folded to lower case, as are input tokens. When it is `true`, words and tokens are not folded to lower case, but are compared as-is.

An asterisk (*) can be placed at the end of a synonym in the configuration file. This indicates that the synonym is a prefix. The asterisk is ignored when the entry is used in `to_tsvector()`, but when it is used in `to_tsquery()`, the result will be a query item with the prefix match marker (seeParsing Queries). For example, suppose we have these entries in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/synonym_sample.syn`:

```
postgres pgsql postgresql pgsql postgre pgsql
gogle googl
indices index*
```

Then we will get these results:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY syn (template=synonym, synonyms='synonym_sample');
mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('syn','indices');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {index}
(1 row)

mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst (copy=simple);
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH syn;
mydb=# SELECT to_tsvector('tst','indices');
 to_tsvector
-------------
 'index':1
(1 row)

mydb=# SELECT to_tsquery('tst','indices');
 to_tsquery
------------
 'index':*
(1 row)

mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector;
            tsvector
---------------------------------
 'are' 'indexes' 'useful' 'very'
(1 row)

mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector @@ to_tsquery('tst','indices');
 ?column?
----------
 t
(1 row)
```

### Thesaurus Dictionary

A thesaurus dictionary (sometimes abbreviated as TZ) is a collection of words that includes information about the relationships of words and phrases, i.e., broader terms (BT), narrower terms (NT), preferred terms, non-preferred terms, related terms, etc.

Basically a thesaurus dictionary replaces all non-preferred terms by one preferred term and, optionally, preserves the original terms for indexing as well. WarehousePG's current implementation of the thesaurus dictionary is an extension of the synonym dictionary with added *phrase* support. A thesaurus dictionary requires a configuration file of the following format:

```
# this is a comment
sample word(s) : indexed word(s)
more sample word(s) : more indexed word(s)
...
```

where the colon ( `:` ) symbol acts as a delimiter between a phrase and its replacement.

A thesaurus dictionary uses a *subdictionary* (which is specified in the dictionary's configuration) to normalize the input text before checking for phrase matches. It is only possible to select one subdictionary. An error is reported if the subdictionary fails to recognize a word. In that case, you should remove the use of the word or teach the subdictionary about it. You can place an asterisk ( `*` ) at the beginning of an indexed word to skip applying the subdictionary to it, but all sample words **must** be known to the subdictionary.

The thesaurus dictionary chooses the longest match if there are multiple phrases matching the input, and ties are broken by using the last definition.

Specific stop words recognized by the subdictionary cannot be specified; instead use `?` to mark the location where any stop word can appear. For example, assuming that `a` and `the` are stop words according to the subdictionary:

```
? one ? two : swsw
```

matches `a one the two` and `the one a two` ; both would be replaced by `swsw` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Since a thesaurus dictionary has the capability to recognize phrases it must remember its state and interact with the parser. A thesaurus dictionary uses these assignments to check if it should handle the next word or stop accumulation. The thesaurus dictionary must be configured carefully. For example, if the thesaurus dictionary is assigned to handle only the `asciiword` token, then a thesaurus dictionary definition like `one 7` will not work since token type `uint` is not assigned to the thesaurus dictionary.

> **Caution** Thesauruses are used during indexing so any change in the thesaurus dictionary's parameters requires reindexing. For most other dictionary types, small changes such as adding or removing stopwords does not force reindexing.

#### Thesaurus Configuration

To define a new thesaurus dictionary, use the `thesaurus` template. For example:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_simple (
    TEMPLATE = thesaurus,
    DictFile = mythesaurus,
    Dictionary = pg_catalog.english_stem
);
```

Here:

- `thesaurus_simple` is the new dictionary's name
- `mythesaurus` is the base name of the thesaurus configuration file. (Its full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/mythesaurus.ths`, where `$SHAREDIR` means the installation shared-data directory.)
- `pg_catalog.english_stem` is the subdictionary (here, a Snowball English stemmer) to use for thesaurus normalization. Notice that the subdictionary will have its own configuration (for example, stop words), which is not shown here.

Now it is possible to bind the thesaurus dictionary `thesaurus_simple` to the desired token types in a configuration, for example:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart
    WITH thesaurus_simple;
```

#### Thesaurus Example

Consider a simple astronomical thesaurus `thesaurus_astro`, which contains some astronomical word combinations:

```
supernovae stars : sn
crab nebulae : crab
```

Below we create a dictionary and bind some token types to an astronomical thesaurus and English stemmer:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_astro (
    TEMPLATE = thesaurus,
    DictFile = thesaurus_astro,
    Dictionary = english_stem
);

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart
    WITH thesaurus_astro, english_stem;
```

Now we can see how it works. `ts_lexize` is not very useful for testing a thesaurus, because it treats its input as a single token. Instead we can use `plainto_tsquery` and `to_tsvector`, which will break their input strings into multiple tokens:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
 plainto_tsquery
-----------------
 'supernova' & 'star'

SELECT to_tsvector('supernova star');
 to_tsvector
-------------
 'star':2 'supernova':1
```

In principle, one can use `to_tsquery` if you quote the argument:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('''supernova star''');
 to_tsquery
------------
 'supernova' & 'star'
```

Notice that `supernova star` matches `supernovae stars` in `thesaurus_astro` because we specified the `english_stem` stemmer in the `thesaurus` definition. The stemmer removed the `e` and `s`.

To index the original phrase as well as the substitute, just include it in the right-hand part of the definition:

```
supernovae stars : sn supernovae stars

SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
       plainto_tsquery
-----------------------------
 'supernova' & 'star'
```

### Ispell Dictionary

The Ispell dictionary template supports *morphological dictionaries*, which can normalize many different linguistic forms of a word into the same lexeme. For example, an English Ispell dictionary can match all declensions and conjugations of the search term `bank`, e.g., `banking`, `banked`, `banks`, `banks'`, and `bank's`.

The standard WarehousePG distribution does not include any Ispell configuration files. Dictionaries for a large number of languages are available from Ispell. Also, some more modern dictionary file formats are supported — MySpell (OO < 2.0.1) and Hunspell (OO >= 2.0.2). A large list of dictionaries is available on the OpenOffice Wiki.

To create an Ispell dictionary, use the built-in `ispell` template and specify several parameters:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = english,
    AffFile = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

Here, `DictFile`, `AffFile`, and `StopWords` specify the base names of the dictionary, affixes, and stop-words files. The stop-words file has the same format explained above for the `simple` dictionary type. The format of the other files is not specified here but is available from the above-mentioned web sites.

Ispell dictionaries usually recognize a limited set of words, so they should be followed by another broader dictionary; for example, a Snowball dictionary, which recognizes everything.

Ispell dictionaries support splitting compound words; a useful feature. Notice that the affix file should specify a special flag using the `compoundwords controlled` statement that marks dictionary words that can participate in compound formation:

```
compoundwords  controlled z
```

Here are some examples for the Norwegian language:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell', 'overbuljongterningpakkmesterassistent');
   {over,buljong,terning,pakk,mester,assistent}
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell', 'sjokoladefabrikk');
   {sjokoladefabrikk,sjokolade,fabrikk}
```

> **Note** MySpell does not support compound words. Hunspell has sophisticated support for compound words. At present, WarehousePG implements only the basic compound word operations of Hunspell.

### SnowBall Dictionary

The Snowball dictionary template is based on a project by Martin Porter, inventor of the popular Porter's stemming algorithm for the English language. Snowball now provides stemming algorithms for many languages (see the Snowball site for more information). Each algorithm understands how to reduce common variant forms of words to a base, or stem, spelling within its language. A Snowball dictionary requires a language parameter to identify which stemmer to use, and optionally can specify a stopword file name that gives a list of words to eliminate. (WarehousePG's standard stopword lists are also provided by the Snowball project.) For example, there is a built-in definition equivalent to

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_stem (
    TEMPLATE = snowball,
    Language = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

The stopword file format is the same as already explained.

A Snowball dictionary recognizes everything, whether or not it is able to simplify the word, so it should be placed at the end of the dictionary list. It is useless to have it before any other dictionary because a token will never pass through it to the next dictionary.

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.7 Text Search Configuration Example

This topic shows how to create a customized text search configuration to process document and query text.

A text search configuration specifies all options necessary to transform a document into a `tsvector` : the parser to use to break text into tokens, and the dictionaries to use to transform each token into a lexeme. Every call of `to_tsvector` or `to_tsquery` needs a text search configuration to perform its processing. The configuration parameter default_text_search_config specifies the name of the default configuration, which is the one used by text search functions if an explicit configuration parameter is omitted. It can be set in `postgresql.conf` using the `gpconfig` command-line utility, or set for an individual session using the `SET` command.

Several predefined text search configurations are available, and you can create custom configurations easily. To facilitate management of text search objects, a set of SQL commands is available, and there are several psql commands that display information about text search objects (psql Support).

As an example we will create a configuration `pg` , starting by duplicating the built-in `english` configuration:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.pg ( COPY = pg_catalog.english );
```

We will use a PostgreSQL-specific synonym list and store it in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/pg_dict.syn` . The file contents look like:

```
postgres    pg
pgsql       pg
postgresql  pg
```

We define the synonym dictionary like this:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY pg_dict (
    TEMPLATE = synonym,
    SYNONYMS = pg_dict
);
```

Next we register the Ispell dictionary `english_ispell` , which has its own configuration files:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = english,
    AffFile = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

Now we can set up the mappings for words in configuration `pg` :

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart,
                      word, hword, hword_part
    WITH pg_dict, english_ispell, english_stem;
```

We choose not to index or search some token types that the built-in configuration does handle:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
    DROP MAPPING FOR email, url, url_path, sfloat, float;
```

Now we can test our configuration:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.pg', '
PostgreSQL, the highly scalable, SQL compliant, open source object-relational
database management system, is now undergoing beta testing of the next
version of our software.
');
```

The next step is to set the session to use the new configuration, which was created in the `public` schema:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
=> \dF
   List of text search configurations
 Schema  | Name | Description
---------+------+-------------
 public  | pg   |

SET default_text_search_config = 'public.pg';
SET

SHOW default_text_search_config;
 default_text_search_config
----------------------------
 public.pg
```

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.8 Testing and Debugging Text Search

This topic introduces the WarehousePG functions you can use to test and debug a search configuration or the individual parser and dictionaries specified in a configuration.

The behavior of a custom text search configuration can easily become confusing. The functions described in this section are useful for testing text search objects. You can test a complete configuration, or test parsers and dictionaries separately.

This section contains the following subtopics:


- Configuration Testing
- Parser Testing
- Dictionary Testing


#### Configuration Testing

The function `ts_debug` allows easy testing of a text search configuration.

```
ts_debug([<config> regconfig, ] <document> text,
         OUT <alias> text,
         OUT <description> text,
         OUT <token> text,
         OUT <dictionaries> regdictionary[],
         OUT <dictionary> regdictionary,
         OUT <lexemes> text[])
         returns setof record
```

`ts_debug` displays information about every token of `*document*` as produced by the parser and processed by the configured dictionaries. It uses the configuration specified by `*config*`, or `default_text_search_config` if that argument is omitted.

`ts_debug` returns one row for each token identified in the text by the parser. The columns returned are

- `*alias* text` — short name of the token type
- `*description* text` — description of the token type
- `*token* text` — text of the token
- `*dictionaries* regdictionary[]` — the dictionaries selected by the configuration for this token type
- `*dictionary* regdictionary` — the dictionary that recognized the token, or `NULL` if none did
- `*lexemes* text[]` — the lexeme(s) produced by the dictionary that recognized the token, or `NULL` if none did; an empty array ( `{}` ) means it was recognized as a stop word

Here is a simple example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english','a fat  cat sat on a mat - it ate a fat rats');
   alias   |   description   | token |  dictionaries  |  dictionary  | lexemes
-----------+-----------------+-------+----------------+--------------+---------
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | a     | {english_stem} | english_stem | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | fat   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {fat}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | cat   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {cat}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | sat   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {sat}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | on    | {english_stem} | english_stem | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | a     | {english_stem} | english_stem | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | mat   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {mat}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 blank     | Space symbols   | -     | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | it    | {english_stem} | english_stem | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | ate   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {ate}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | a     | {english_stem} | english_stem | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | fat   | {english_stem} | english_stem | {fat}
 blank     | Space symbols   |       | {}             |              |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | rats  | {english_stem} | english_stem | {rat}
```

For a more extensive demonstration, we first create a `public.english` configuration and Ispell dictionary for the English language:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english ( COPY = pg_catalog.english );

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = english,
    AffFile = english,
    StopWords = english
);

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english
   ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH english_ispell, english_stem;
```

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.english','The Brightest supernovaes');
   alias   |   description   |    token    |         dictionaries          |   dictionary   |   lexemes
-----------+-----------------+-------------+-------------------------------+----------------+-------------
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | The         | {english_ispell,english_stem} | english_ispell | {}
 blank     | Space symbols   |             | {}                            |                |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Brightest   | {english_ispell,english_stem} | english_ispell | {bright}
 blank     | Space symbols   |             | {}                            |                |
 asciiword | Word, all ASCII | supernovaes | {english_ispell,english_stem} | english_stem   | {supernova}
```

In this example, the word `Brightest` was recognized by the parser as an `ASCII` word (alias `asciiword`). For this token type the dictionary list is `english_ispell` and `english_stem`. The word was recognized by `english_ispell`, which reduced it to the noun `bright`. The word `supernovaes` is unknown to the `english_ispell` dictionary so it was passed to the next dictionary, and, fortunately, was recognized (in fact, `english_stem` is a Snowball dictionary which recognizes everything; that is why it was placed at the end of the dictionary list).

The word `The` was recognized by the `english_ispell` dictionary as a stop word (Stop Words) and will not be indexed. The spaces are discarded too, since the configuration provides no dictionaries at all for them.

You can reduce the width of the output by explicitly specifying which columns you want to see:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT alias, token, dictionary, lexemes FROM ts_debug('public.english','The Brightest supernovaes');
  alias    |    token    |   dictionary   |    lexemes
-----------+-------------+----------------+-------------
 asciiword | The         | english_ispell | {}
 blank     |             |                |
 asciiword | Brightest   | english_ispell | {bright}
 blank     |             |                |
 asciiword | supernovaes | english_stem   | {supernova}
```

### Parser Testing

The following functions allow direct testing of a text search parser.

```
ts_parse(<parser_name> text, <document> text,
         OUT <tokid> integer, OUT <token> text) returns setof record
ts_parse(<parser_oid> oid, <document> text,
         OUT <tokid> integer, OUT <token> text) returns setof record
```

`ts_parse` parses the given document and returns a series of records, one for each token produced by parsing. Each record includes a `tokid` showing the assigned token type and a `token`, which is the text of the token. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_parse('default', '123 - a number');
 tokid | token
-------+--------
    22 | 123
    12 |
    12 | -
     1 | a
    12 |
     1 | number
```

```
ts_token_type(<parser_name> text, OUT <tokid> integer,
              OUT <alias> text, OUT <description> text) returns setof record
ts_token_type(<parser_oid> oid, OUT <tokid> integer,
              OUT <alias> text, OUT <description> text) returns setof record
```

`ts_token_type` returns a table which describes each type of token the specified parser can recognize. For each token type, the table gives the integer `tokid` that the parser uses to label a token of that type, the `alias` that names the token type in configuration commands, and a short `description`. For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM ts_token_type('default');
 tokid |      alias      |               description
-------+-----------------+------------------------------------------
     1 | asciiword       | Word, all ASCII
     2 | word            | Word, all letters
     3 | numword         | Word, letters and digits
     4 | email           | Email address
     5 | url             | URL
     6 | host            | Host
     7 | sfloat          | Scientific notation
     8 | version         | Version number
     9 | hword_numpart   | Hyphenated word part, letters and digits
    10 | hword_part      | Hyphenated word part, all letters
    11 | hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII
    12 | blank           | Space symbols
    13 | tag             | XML tag
    14 | protocol        | Protocol head
    15 | numhword        | Hyphenated word, letters and digits
    16 | asciihword      | Hyphenated word, all ASCII
    17 | hword           | Hyphenated word, all letters
    18 | url_path        | URL path
    19 | file            | File or path name
    20 | float           | Decimal notation
    21 | int             | Signed integer
    22 | uint            | Unsigned integer
    23 | entity          | XML entity
```

### Dictionary Testing

The `ts_lexize` function facilitates dictionary testing.

```
ts_lexize(*dictreg* dictionary, *token* text) returns text[]
```

`ts_lexize` returns an array of lexemes if the input `*token*` is known to the dictionary, or an empty array if the token is known to the dictionary but it is a stop word, or `NULL` if it is an unknown word.

Examples:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {star}

SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'a');
 ts_lexize
-----------
 {}
```

> **Note** The `ts_lexize` function expects a single token, not text. Here is a case where this can be confusing:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('thesaurus_astro','supernovae stars') is null;
 ?column?
----------
 t
```

The thesaurus dictionary `thesaurus_astro` does know the phrase `supernovae stars`, but `ts_lexize` fails since it does not parse the input text but treats it as a single token. Use `plainto_tsquery` or `to_tsvector` to test thesaurus dictionaries, for example:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernovae stars');
 plainto_tsquery
-----------------
 'sn'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parent topic: Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.9 GiST and GIN Indexes for Text Search

This topic describes and compares the WarehousePG index types that are used for full text searching.

There are two kinds of indexes that can be used to speed up full text searches. Indexes are not mandatory for full text searching, but in cases where a column is searched on a regular basis, an index is usually desirable.

- `CREATE INDEX <name> ON <table> USING gist(<column>);`

  Creates a GiST (Generalized Search Tree)-based index. The `<column>` can be of `tsvector` or `tsquery` type.

- `CREATE INDEX <name> ON <table> USING gin(<column>);`

  Creates a GIN (Generalized Inverted Index)-based index. The `<column>` must be of `tsvector` type.

There are substantial performance differences between the two index types, so it is important to understand their characteristics.

A GiST index is *lossy*, meaning that the index may produce false matches, and it is necessary to check the actual table row to eliminate such false matches. (WarehousePG does this automatically when needed.) GiST indexes are lossy because each document is represented in the index by a fixed-length signature. The signature is generated by hashing each word into a single bit in an n-bit string, with all these bits OR-ed together to produce an n-bit document signature. When two words hash to the same bit position there will be a false match. If all words in the query have matches (real or false) then the table row must be retrieved to see if the match is correct.

Lossiness causes performance degradation due to unnecessary fetches of table records that turn out to be false matches. Since random access to table records is slow, this limits the usefulness of GiST indexes. The likelihood of false matches depends on several factors, in particular the number of unique words, so using dictionaries to reduce this number is recommended.

GIN indexes are not lossy for standard queries, but their performance depends logarithmically on the number of unique words. (However, GIN indexes store only the words (lexemes) of `tsvector` values, and not their weight labels. Thus a table row recheck is needed when using a query that involves weights.)

In choosing which index type to use, GiST or GIN, consider these performance differences:

- GIN index lookups are about three times faster than GiST
- GIN indexes take about three times longer to build than GiST
- GIN indexes are moderately slower to update than GiST indexes, but about 10 times slower if fast-update support was deactivated (see GIN Fast Update Technique in the PostgreSQL documentation for details)
- GIN indexes are two-to-three times larger than GiST indexes

As a general rule, GIN indexes are best for static data because lookups are faster. For dynamic data, GiST indexes are faster to update. Specifically, GiST indexes are very good for dynamic data and fast if the number of unique words (lexemes) is under 100,000, while GIN indexes will handle 100,000+ lexemes better but are slower to update.

Note that GIN index build time can often be improved by increasing maintenance_work_mem, while GiST index build time is not sensitive to that parameter.

Partitioning of big collections and the proper use of GiST and GIN indexes allows the implementation of very fast searches with online update. Partitioning can be done at the database level using table inheritance, or by distributing documents over servers and collecting search results using dblink. The latter is possible because ranking functions use only local information.

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.10 psql Support

The psql command-line utility provides a meta-command to display information about WarehousePG full text search configurations.

Information about text search configuration objects can be obtained in psql using a set of commands:

```
\dF{d,p,t}[+] [PATTERN]
```

An optional `+` produces more details.

The optional parameter `PATTERN` can be the name of a text search object, optionally schema-qualified. If `PATTERN` is omitted then information about all visible objects will be displayed. `PATTERN` can be a regular expression and can provide **separate** patterns for the schema and object names. The following examples illustrate this:

```
=> \dF *fulltext*
       List of text search configurations
 Schema |  Name        | Description
--------+--------------+-------------
 public | fulltext_cfg |
```

```
=> \dF *.fulltext*
       List of text search configurations
 Schema   |  Name        | Description
----------+--------------------------
 fulltext | fulltext_cfg |
 public   | fulltext_cfg |
```

The available commands are:

- `\dF[+] [PATTERN]`

  List text search configurations (add `+` for more detail).

```
=> \dF russian
            List of text search configurations
   Schema   |  Name   |            Description
------------+---------+-----------------------------------
 pg_catalog | russian | configuration for russian language

=> \dF+ russian
Text search configuration "pg_catalog.russian"
Parser: "pg_catalog.default"
      Token      | Dictionaries
-----------------+--------------
 asciihword      | english_stem
 asciiword       | english_stem
 email           | simple
 file            | simple
 float           | simple
 host            | simple
 hword           | russian_stem
 hword_asciipart | english_stem
 hword_numpart   | simple
 hword_part      | russian_stem
 int             | simple
 numhword        | simple
 numword         | simple
 sfloat          | simple
 uint            | simple
 url             | simple
 url_path        | simple
 version         | simple
 word            | russian_stem
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `\dFd[+] [PATTERN]`

  List text search dictionaries (add `+` for more detail).

```
=> \dFd
                           List of text search dictionaries
   Schema   |      Name       |                        Description
------------+-----------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
 pg_catalog | danish_stem     | snowball stemmer for danish language
 pg_catalog | dutch_stem      | snowball stemmer for dutch language
 pg_catalog | english_stem    | snowball stemmer for english language
 pg_catalog | finnish_stem    | snowball stemmer for finnish language
 pg_catalog | french_stem     | snowball stemmer for french language
 pg_catalog | german_stem     | snowball stemmer for german language
 pg_catalog | hungarian_stem  | snowball stemmer for hungarian language
 pg_catalog | italian_stem    | snowball stemmer for italian language
 pg_catalog | norwegian_stem  | snowball stemmer for norwegian language
 pg_catalog | portuguese_stem | snowball stemmer for portuguese language
 pg_catalog | romanian_stem   | snowball stemmer for romanian language
 pg_catalog | russian_stem    | snowball stemmer for russian language
 pg_catalog | simple          | simple dictionary: just lower case and check for stopword
 pg_catalog | spanish_stem    | snowball stemmer for spanish language
 pg_catalog | swedish_stem    | snowball stemmer for swedish language
 pg_catalog | turkish_stem    | snowball stemmer for turkish language
```

- \dFp[+] [PATTERN]

  List text search parsers (add `+` for more detail).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
=> \dFp
        List of text search parsers
   Schema   |  Name   |     Description
------------+---------+---------------------
 pg_catalog | default | default word parser
=> \dFp+
    Text search parser "pg_catalog.default"
     Method      |    Function    | Description
-----------------+----------------+-------------
 Start parse     | prsd_start     |
 Get next token  | prsd_nexttoken |
 End parse       | prsd_end       |
 Get headline    | prsd_headline  |
 Get token types | prsd_lextype   |

        Token types for parser "pg_catalog.default"
   Token name    |               Description
-----------------+-----------------------------------------
 asciihword      | Hyphenated word, all ASCII
 asciiword       | Word, all ASCII
 blank           | Space symbols
 email           | Email address
 entity          | XML entity
 file            | File or path name
 float           | Decimal notation
 host            | Host
 hword           | Hyphenated word, all letters
 hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII
 hword_numpart   | Hyphenated word part, letters and digits
 hword_part      | Hyphenated word part, all letters
 int             | Signed integer
 numhword        | Hyphenated word, letters and digits
 numword         | Word, letters and digits
 protocol        | Protocol head
 sfloat          | Scientific notation
 tag             | XML tag
 uint            | Unsigned integer
 url             | URL
 url_path        | URL path
 version         | Version number
 word            | Word, all letters
(23 rows)
```

- `\dFt[+] [PATTERN]`

  List text search templates (add + for more detail).

```
=> \dFt
                            List of text search templates
   Schema   |   Name    |                        Description
------------+-----------+-----------------------------------------------------------
 pg_catalog | ispell    | ispell dictionary
 pg_catalog | simple    | simple dictionary: just lower case and check for stopword
 pg_catalog | snowball  | snowball stemmer
 pg_catalog | synonym   | synonym dictionary: replace word by its synonym
 pg_catalog | thesaurus | thesaurus dictionary: phrase by phrase substitution
```

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.8.11 Limitations

This topic lists limitations and maximums for WarehousePG full text search objects.

The current limitations of WarehousePG's text search features are:

- The `tsvector` and `tsquery` types are not supported in the distribution key for a WarehousePG table
- The length of each lexeme must be less than 2K bytes
- The length of a `tsvector` (lexemes + positions) must be less than 1 megabyte
- The number of lexemes must be less than 264
- Position values in `tsvector` must be greater than 0 and no more than 16,383
- No more than 256 positions per lexeme
- The number of nodes (lexemes + operators) in a tsquery must be less than 32,768

For comparison, the PostgreSQL 8.1 documentation contained 10,441 unique words, a total of 335,420 words, and the most frequent word "postgresql" was mentioned 6,127 times in 655 documents.

Another example — the PostgreSQL mailing list archives contained 910,989 unique words with 57,491,343 lexemes in 461,020 messages.

**Parent topic:** Using Full Text Search

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.9 Query Performance

WarehousePG dynamically eliminates irrelevant partitions in a table and optimally allocates memory for different operators in a query.These enhancements scan less data for a query, accelerate query processing, and support more concurrency.

- Dynamic Partition Elimination

  In WarehousePG, values available only when a query runs are used to dynamically prune partitions, which improves query processing speed. Enable or deactivate dynamic partition elimination by setting the server configuration parameter `gp_dynamic_partition_pruning` to `ON` or `OFF`; it is `ON` by default.

- Memory Optimizations

  WarehousePG allocates memory optimally for different operators in a query and frees and re-allocates memory during the stages of processing a query.

> **Note** WarehousePG uses GPORCA, the WarehousePG next generation query optimizer, by default. GPORCA extends the planning and optimization capabilities of the Postgres optimizer. For information about the features and limitations of GPORCA, see Overview of GPORCA.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.6.10 Managing Spill Files Generated by Queries

WarehousePG creates spill files, also known as workfiles, on disk if it does not have sufficient memory to run an SQL query in memory.

The maximum number of spill files for a given query is governed by the gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query server configuration parameter setting. The default value of 100,000 spill files is sufficient for the majority of queries.

If a query creates more than the configured number of spill files, WarehousePG returns this error:

```
ERROR: number of workfiles per query limit exceeded
```

WarehousePG may generate a large number of spill files when:

- Data skew is present in the queried data. To check for data skew, see Checking for Data Distribution Skew.
- The amount of memory allocated for the query is too low. You control the maximum amount of memory that can be used by a query with the WarehousePG server configuration parameters max_statement_mem and statement_mem, or through resource group or resource queue configuration.

You might be able to run the query successfully by changing the query, changing the data distribution, or changing the system memory configuration. The `gp_toolkit` *gp_workfile_** views display spill file usage information. You can use this information to troubleshoot and tune queries. The *gp_workfile_** views are described in Checking Query Disk Spill Space Usage.

Additional documentation resources:

- Memory Consumption Parameters identifies the memory-related spill file server configuration parameters.
- Using Resource Groups describes memory and spill considerations when resource group-based resource management is active.
- Using Resource Queues describes memory and spill considerations when resource queue-based resource management is active.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.11 Query Profiling

Examine the query plans of poorly performing queries to identify possible performance tuning opportunities.

WarehousePG devises a *query plan* for each query. Choosing the right query plan to match the query and data structure is necessary for good performance. A query plan defines how WarehousePG will run the query in the parallel execution environment.

The query optimizer uses data statistics maintained by the database to choose a query plan with the lowest possible cost. Cost is measured in disk I/O, shown as units of disk page fetches. The goal is to minimize the total execution cost for the plan.

View the plan for a given query with the `EXPLAIN` command. `EXPLAIN` shows the query optimizer's estimated cost for the query plan. For example:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM names WHERE id=22;
```

`EXPLAIN ANALYZE` runs the statement in addition to displaying its plan. This is useful for determining how close the optimizer's estimates are to reality. For example:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM names WHERE id=22;
```

> **Note** In WarehousePG, the default GPORCA optimizer co-exists with the Postgres Planner. The EXPLAIN output generated by GPORCA is different than the output generated by the Postgres Planner.

By default, WarehousePG uses GPORCA to generate an execution plan for a query when possible.

When the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command uses GPORCA, the `EXPLAIN` plan shows only the number of partitions that are being eliminated. The scanned partitions are not shown. To show name of the scanned partitions in the segment logs set the server configuration parameter `gp_log_dynamic_partition_pruning` to `on`. This example `SET` command enables the parameter.

```
SET gp_log_dynamic_partition_pruning = on;
```

For information about GPORCA, see Querying Data.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### Reading EXPLAIN Output

A query plan is a tree of nodes. Each node in the plan represents a single operation, such as a table scan, join, aggregation, or sort.

Read plans from the bottom to the top: each node feeds rows into the node directly above it. The bottom nodes of a plan are usually table scan operations: sequential, index, or bitmap index scans. If the query requires joins, aggregations, sorts, or other operations on the rows, there are additional nodes above the scan nodes to perform these operations. The topmost plan nodes are usually WarehousePG motion nodes: redistribute, explicit redistribute, broadcast, or gather motions. These operations move rows between segment instances during query processing.

The output of `EXPLAIN` has one line for each node in the plan tree and shows the basic node type and the following execution cost estimates for that plan node:

- **cost** —Measured in units of disk page fetches. 1.0 equals one sequential disk page read. The first estimate is the start-up cost of getting the first row and the second is the total cost of cost of getting all rows. The total cost assumes all rows will be retrieved, which is not always true; for example, if the query uses `LIMIT`, not all rows are retrieved.

  > **Note** The cost values generated by GPORCA and the Postgres Planner are not directly comparable. The two optimizers use different cost models, as well as different algorithms, to determine the cost of an execution plan. Nothing can or should be inferred by comparing cost values between the two optimizers.

  In addition, the cost generated for any given optimizer is valid only for comparing plan alternatives for a given single query and set of statistics. Different queries can generate plans with different costs, even when keeping the optimizer a constant.

  To summarize, the cost is essentially an internal number used by a given optimizer, and nothing should be inferred by examining only the cost value displayed in the `EXPLAIN` plans.

- **rows** —The total number of rows output by this plan node. This number is usually less than the number of rows processed or scanned by the plan node, reflecting the estimated selectivity of any `WHERE` clause conditions. Ideally, the estimate for the topmost node approximates the number of rows that the query actually returns, updates, or deletes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **width** —The total bytes of all the rows that this plan node outputs.

Note the following:

- The cost of a node includes the cost of its child nodes. The topmost plan node has the estimated total execution cost for the plan. This is the number the optimizer intends to minimize.
- The cost reflects only the aspects of plan execution that the query optimizer takes into consideration. For example, the cost does not reflect time spent transmitting result rows to the client.

#### EXPLAIN Example

The following example describes how to read an `EXPLAIN` query plan for a query:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM names WHERE name = 'Joelle';
                     QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------
Gather Motion 2:1 (slice1) (cost=0.00..20.88 rows=1 width=13)

   -> Seq Scan on 'names' (cost=0.00..20.88 rows=1 width=13)
         Filter: name::text ~~ 'Joelle'::text
```

Read the plan from the bottom to the top. To start, the query optimizer sequentially scans the *names* table. Notice the `WHERE` clause is applied as a *filter* condition. This means the scan operation checks the condition for each row it scans and outputs only the rows that satisfy the condition.

The results of the scan operation are passed to a *gather motion* operation. In WarehousePG, a gather motion is when segments send rows to the coordinator. In this example, we have two segment instances that send to one coordinator instance. This operation is working on `slice1` of the parallel query execution plan. A query plan is divided into *slices* so the segments can work on portions of the query plan in parallel.

The estimated startup cost for this plan is `00.00` (no cost) and a total cost of `20.88` disk page fetches. The optimizer estimates this query will return one row.

### Reading EXPLAIN ANALYZE Output

`EXPLAIN ANALYZE` plans and runs the statement. The `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` plan shows the actual execution cost along with the optimizer's estimates. This allows you to see if the optimizer's estimates are close to reality. `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` also shows the following:

- The total runtime (in milliseconds) in which the query ran.
- The memory used by each slice of the query plan, as well as the memory reserved for the whole query statement.
- The number of *workers* (segments) involved in a plan node operation. Only segments that return rows are counted.
- The maximum number of rows returned by the segment that produced the most rows for the operation. If multiple segments produce an equal number of rows, `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` shows the segment with the longest *<time> to end*.
- The segment id of the segment that produced the most rows for an operation.
- For relevant operations, the amount of memory ( `work_mem` ) used by the operation. If the `work_mem` was insufficient to perform the operation in memory, the plan shows the amount of data spilled to disk for the lowest-performing segment. For example:

  ```
  Work_mem used: 64K bytes avg, 64K bytes max (seg0).
  Work_mem wanted: 90K bytes avg, 90K byes max (seg0) to lessen
  workfile I/O affecting 2 workers.
  ```

- The time (in milliseconds) in which the segment that produced the most rows retrieved the first row, and the time taken for that segment to retrieve all rows. The result may omit *<time> to first row* if it is the same as the *<time> to end*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### EXPLAIN ANALYZE Examples

This example describes how to read an `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` query plan using the same query. The `bold` parts of the plan show actual timing and rows returned for each plan node, as well as memory and time statistics for the whole query.

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM names WHERE name = 'Joelle';
                     QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------
Gather Motion 2:1 (slice1; segments: 2) (cost=0.00..20.88 rows=1 width=13)
    Rows out: 1 rows at destination with 0.305 ms to first row, 0.537 ms to end, start offset by 0.289 ms.
        -> Seq Scan on names (cost=0.00..20.88 rows=1 width=13)
             Rows out: Avg 1 rows x 2 workers. Max 1 rows (seg0) with 0.255 ms to first row, 0.486 ms to end, start
offset by 0.968 ms.
                 Filter: name = 'Joelle'::text
 Slice statistics:

      (slice0) Executor memory: 135K bytes.

    (slice1) Executor memory: 151K bytes avg x 2 workers, 151K bytes max (seg0).

Statement statistics:
 Memory used: 128000K bytes
 Total runtime: 22.548 ms
```

Read the plan from the bottom to the top. The total elapsed time to run this query was *22.548* milliseconds.

The *sequential scan* operation had only one segment (*seg0*) that returned rows, and it returned just *1 row*. It took *0.255* milliseconds to find the first row and *0.486* to scan all rows. This result is close to the optimizer's estimate: the query optimizer estimated it would return one row for this query. The *gather motion* (segments sending data to the coordinator) received 1 row . The total elapsed time for this operation was *0.537* milliseconds.

#### Determining the Query Optimizer

You can view EXPLAIN output to determine if GPORCA is enabled for the query plan and whether GPORCA or the Postgres Planner generated the explain plan. The information appears at the end of the EXPLAIN output. The `Settings` line displays the setting of the server configuration parameter `OPTIMIZER` . The `Optimizer status` line displays whether GPORCA or the Postgres Planner generated the explain plan.

For these two example query plans, GPORCA is enabled, the server configuration parameter `OPTIMIZER` is `on` . For the first plan, GPORCA generated the EXPLAIN plan. For the second plan, WarehousePG fell back to the Postgres Planner to generate the query plan.

```
                      QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Aggregate  (cost=0.00..296.14 rows=1 width=8)
   ->  Gather Motion 2:1  (slice1; segments: 2)  (cost=0.00..295.10 rows=1 width=8)
         ->  Aggregate  (cost=0.00..294.10 rows=1 width=8)
               ->  Seq Scan on part  (cost=0.00..97.69 rows=100040 width=1)
 Settings:  optimizer=on
 Optimizer status: GPORCA
(5 rows)
```

```
explain select count(*) from part;

                      QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Aggregate  (cost=3519.05..3519.06 rows=1 width=8)
   ->  Gather Motion 2:1  (slice1; segments: 2)  (cost=3518.99..3519.03 rows=1 width=8)
         ->  Aggregate  (cost=3518.99..3519.00 rows=1 width=8)
               ->  Seq Scan on part  (cost=0.00..3018.79 rows=100040 width=1)
 Settings:  optimizer=on
 Optimizer status: Postgres query optimizer
(5 rows)
```

For this query, the server configuration parameter `OPTIMIZER` is `off` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
explain select count(*) from part;

                      QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Aggregate  (cost=3519.05..3519.06 rows=1 width=8)
   ->  Gather Motion 2:1  (slice1; segments: 2)  (cost=3518.99..3519.03 rows=1 width=8)
         ->  Aggregate  (cost=3518.99..3519.00 rows=1 width=8)
               ->  Seq Scan on part  (cost=0.00..3018.79 rows=100040 width=1)
 Settings: optimizer=off
 Optimizer status: Postgres query optimizer
(5 rows)
```

### Examining Query Plans to Solve Problems

If a query performs poorly, examine its query plan and ask the following questions:

- **Do operations in the plan take an exceptionally long time?** Look for an operation consumes the majority of query processing time. For example, if an index scan takes longer than expected, the index could be out-of-date and need to be reindexed. Or, adjust `enable_<operator>` parameters to see if you can force the Postgres Planner to choose a different plan by deactivating a particular query plan operator for that query.

- **Does the query planning time exceed query execution time?** When the query involves many table joins, the Postgres Planner uses a dynamic algorithm to plan the query that is in part based on the number of table joins. You can reduce the amount of time that the Postgres Planner spends planning the query by setting the `join_collapse_limit` and `from_collapse_limit` server configuration parameters to a smaller value, such as `8`. Note that while smaller values reduce planning time, they may also yield inferior query plans.

- **Are the optimizer's estimates close to reality?** Run `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and see if the number of rows the optimizer estimates is close to the number of rows the query operation actually returns. If there is a large discrepancy, collect more statistics on the relevant columns.

  See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information on the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and `ANALYZE` commands.

- **Are selective predicates applied early in the plan?** Apply the most selective filters early in the plan so fewer rows move up the plan tree. If the query plan does not correctly estimate query predicate selectivity, collect more statistics on the relevant columns. See the `ANALYZE` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information collecting statistics.You can also try reordering the `WHERE` clause of your SQL statement.

- **Does the optimizer choose the best join order?** When you have a query that joins multiple tables, make sure that the optimizer chooses the most selective join order. Joins that eliminate the largest number of rows should be done earlier in the plan so fewer rows move up the plan tree.

  If the plan is not choosing the optimal join order, set `join_collapse_limit=1` and use explicit `JOIN` syntax in your SQL statement to force the Postgres Planner to the specified join order. You can also collect more statistics on the relevant join columns.

  See the `ANALYZE` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information collecting statistics.

- **Does the optimizer selectively scan partitioned tables?** If you use table partitioning, is the optimizer selectively scanning only the child tables required to satisfy the query predicates? Scans of the parent tables should return 0 rows since the parent tables do not contain any data. See Verifying Your Partition Strategy for an example of a query plan that shows a selective partition scan.

- **Does the optimizer choose hash aggregate and hash join operations where applicable?** Hash operations are typically much faster than other types of joins or aggregations. Row comparison and sorting is done in memory rather than reading/writing from disk. To enable the query optimizer to choose hash operations, there must be sufficient memory available to hold the estimated number of rows. Try increasing work memory to improve performance for a query. If possible, run an `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` for the query to show which plan operations spilled to disk, how much work memory they used, and how much memory was required to avoid spilling to disk. For example:

  ```
  Work_mem used: 23430K bytes avg, 23430K bytes max (seg0). Work_mem wanted: 33649K bytes avg, 33649K bytes max (seg0) to lessen workfile I/O affecting 2 workers.
  ```

  The "bytes wanted" message from `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` is based on the amount of data written to work files and is not exact. The minimum `work_mem` needed can differ from the suggested value.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.12 Using WarehousePG MapReduce

MapReduce is a programming model developed by Google for processing and generating large data sets on an array of commodity servers. WarehousePG MapReduce allows programmers who are familiar with the MapReduce model to write map and reduce functions and submit them to the WarehousePG parallel engine for processing.

You configure a WarehousePG MapReduce job via a YAML-formatted configuration file, then pass the file to the WarehousePG MapReduce program, `gpmapreduce`, for execution by the WarehousePG parallel engine. The WarehousePG cluster distributes the input data, runs the program across a set of machines, handles machine failures, and manages the required inter-machine communication.

Refer to gpmapreduce for details about running the WarehousePG MapReduce program.

**Parent topic:** Querying Data

### About the WarehousePG MapReduce Configuration File

This section explains some basics of the WarehousePG MapReduce configuration file format to help you get started creating your own WarehousePG MapReduce configuration files. WarehousePG uses the YAML 1.1 document format and then implements its own schema for defining the various steps of a MapReduce job.

All WarehousePG MapReduce configuration files must first declare the version of the YAML specification they are using. After that, three dashes ( `---` ) denote the start of a document, and three dots ( `...` ) indicate the end of a document without starting a new one. (A document in this context is equivalent to a MapReduce job.) Comment lines are prefixed with a pound symbol ( `#` ). You can declare multiple WarehousePG MapReduce documents/jobs in the same file:

```
%YAML 1.1
---
# Begin Document 1
# ...
---
# Begin Document 2
# ...
```

Within a WarehousePG MapReduce document, there are three basic types of data structures or *nodes*: *scalars*, *sequences* and *mappings*.

A *scalar* is a basic string of text indented by a space. If you have a scalar input that spans multiple lines, a preceding pipe ( `|` ) denotes a *literal* style, where all line breaks are significant. Alternatively, a preceding angle bracket ( `>` ) folds a single line break to a space for subsequent lines that have the same indentation level. If a string contains characters that have reserved meaning, the string must be quoted or the special character must be escaped with a backslash ( `\` ).

```
# Read each new line literally
somekey: |   this value contains two lines
   and each line is read literally
# Treat each new line as a space
anotherkey: >
   this value contains two lines
   but is treated as one continuous line
# This quoted string contains a special character
ThirdKey: "This is a string: not a mapping"
```

A *sequence* is a list with each entry in the list on its own line denoted by a dash and a space ( `-` ). Alternatively, you can specify an inline sequence as a comma-separated list within square brackets. A sequence provides a set of data and gives it an order. When you load a list into the WarehousePG MapReduce program, the order is kept.

```
# list sequence
- this
- is
- a list
- with
- five scalar values
# inline sequence
[this, is, a list, with, five scalar values]
```

A *mapping* is used to pair up data values with identifiers called *keys*. Mappings use a colon and space ( `:` ) for each `key: value` pair, or can also be specified inline as a comma-separated list within curly braces. The *key* is used as an index for retrieving data from a mapping.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# a mapping of items
title: War and Peace
author: Leo Tolstoy
date: 1865
# same mapping written inline
{title: War and Peace, author: Leo Tolstoy, date: 1865}
```

Keys are used to associate meta information with each node and specify the expected node type (*scalar*, *sequence* or *mapping*).

The WarehousePG MapReduce program processes the nodes of a document in order and uses indentation (spaces) to determine the document hierarchy and the relationships of the nodes to one another. The use of white space is significant. White space should not be used simply for formatting purposes, and tabs should not be used at all.

Refer to gpmapreduce.yaml for detailed information about the WarehousePG MapReduce configuration file format and the keys and values supported.

### Example WarehousePG MapReduce Job

In this example, you create a MapReduce job that processes text documents and reports on the number of occurrences of certain keywords in each document. The documents and keywords are stored in separate WarehousePG tables that you create as part of the exercise.

This example MapReduce job utilizes the untrusted `plpythonu` language; as such, you must run the job as a user with WarehousePG administrative privileges.

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator host as the `gpadmin` administrative user and set up your environment. For example:

   ```
   $ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
   gpadmin@gpmaster$ . /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

2. Create a new database for the MapReduce example: For example:

   ```
   gpadmin@gpmaster$ createdb mapredex_db
   ```

3. Start the `psql` subsystem, connecting to the new database:

   ```
   gpadmin@gpmaster$ psql -d mapredex_db
   ```

4. Register the PL/Python language in the database. For example:

   ```
   mapredex_db=> CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu;
   ```

5. Create the `documents` table and add some data to the table. For example:

   ```
   CREATE TABLE documents (doc_id int, url text, data text);
   INSERT INTO documents VALUES (1, 'http:/url/1', 'this is one document in the corpus');
   INSERT INTO documents VALUES (2, 'http:/url/2', 'i am the second document in the corpus');
   INSERT INTO documents VALUES (3, 'http:/url/3', 'being third never really bothered me until now');
   INSERT INTO documents VALUES (4, 'http:/url/4', 'the document before me is the third document');
   ```

6. Create the `keywords` table and add some data to the table. For example:

   ```
   CREATE TABLE keywords (keyword_id int, keyword text);
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (1, 'the');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (2, 'document');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (3, 'me');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (4, 'being');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (5, 'now');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (6, 'corpus');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (7, 'is');
   INSERT INTO keywords VALUES (8, 'third');
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

7. Construct the MapReduce YAML configuration file. For example, open a file named `mymrjob.yaml` in the editor of your choice and copy/paste the following large text block:

```
# This example MapReduce job processes documents and looks for keywords in them.
# It takes two database tables as input:
# - documents (doc_id integer, url text, data text)
# - keywords (keyword_id integer, keyword text)#
# The documents data is searched for occurrences of keywords and returns results of
# url, data and keyword (a keyword can be multiple words, such as "high performance # computing")
%YAML 1.1
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.2

# Connect to WarehousePG using this database and role
DATABASE: mapredex_db
USER: gpadmin

# Begin definition section
DEFINE:

 # Declare the input, which selects all columns and rows from the
 # 'documents' and 'keywords' tables.
  - INPUT:
      NAME: doc
      TABLE: documents
  - INPUT:
      NAME: kw
      TABLE: keywords
  # Define the map functions to extract terms from documents and keyword
  # This example simply splits on white space, but it would be possible
  # to make use of a python library like nltk (the natural language toolkit)
  # to perform more complex tokenization and word stemming.
  - MAP:
      NAME: doc_map
      LANGUAGE: python
      FUNCTION: |
        i = 0            # the index of a word within the document
        terms = {}# a hash of terms and their indexes within the document

        # Lower-case and split the text string on space
        for term in data.lower().split():
          i = i + 1# increment i (the index)

        # Check for the term in the terms list:
        # if stem word already exists, append the i value to the array entry
        # corresponding to the term. This counts multiple occurrences of the word.
        # If stem word does not exist, add it to the dictionary with position i.
        # For example:
        # data: "a computer is a machine that manipulates data"
        # "a" [1, 4]
        # "computer" [2]
        # "machine" [3]
        # …
          if term in terms:
            terms[term] += ','+str(i)
          else:
            terms[term] = str(i)

        # Return multiple lines for each document. Each line consists of
        # the doc_id, a term and the positions in the data where the term appeared.
        # For example:
        #   (doc_id => 100, term => "a", [1,4]
        #   (doc_id => 100, term => "computer", [2]
        #    …
        for term in terms:
          yield([doc_id, term, terms[term]])
      OPTIMIZE: STRICT IMMUTABLE
      PARAMETERS:
        - doc_id integer
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
      - data text
    RETURNS:
      - doc_id integer
      - term text
      - positions text

# The map function for keywords is almost identical to the one for documents
# but it also counts of the number of terms in the keyword.
- MAP:
    NAME: kw_map
    LANGUAGE: python
    FUNCTION: |
      i = 0
      terms = {}
      for term in keyword.lower().split():
        i = i + 1
        if term in terms:
          terms[term] += ','+str(i)
        else:
          terms[term] = str(i)

      # output 4 values including i (the total count for term in terms):
      yield([keyword_id, i, term, terms[term]])
    OPTIMIZE: STRICT IMMUTABLE
    PARAMETERS:
      - keyword_id integer
      - keyword text
    RETURNS:
      - keyword_id integer
      - nterms integer
      - term text
      - positions text

# A TASK is an object that defines an entire INPUT/MAP/REDUCE stage
# within a WarehousePG MapReduce pipeline. It is like EXECUTION, but it is
# run only when called as input to other processing stages.
# Identify a task called 'doc_prep' which takes in the 'doc' INPUT defined earlier
# and runs the 'doc_map' MAP function which returns doc_id, term, [term_position]
- TASK:
    NAME: doc_prep
    SOURCE: doc
    MAP: doc_map

# Identify a task called 'kw_prep' which takes in the 'kw' INPUT defined earlier
# and runs the kw_map MAP function which returns kw_id, term, [term_position]
- TASK:
    NAME: kw_prep
    SOURCE: kw
    MAP: kw_map

# One advantage of WarehousePG MapReduce is that MapReduce tasks can be
# used as input to SQL operations and SQL can be used to process a MapReduce task.
# This INPUT defines a SQL query that joins the output of the 'doc_prep'
# TASK to that of the 'kw_prep' TASK. Matching terms are output to the 'candidate'
# list (any keyword that shares at least one term with the document).
- INPUT:
    NAME: term_join
    QUERY: |
      SELECT doc.doc_id, kw.keyword_id, kw.term, kw.nterms,
             doc.positions as doc_positions,
             kw.positions as kw_positions
        FROM doc_prep doc INNER JOIN kw_prep kw ON (doc.term = kw.term)

# In WarehousePG MapReduce, a REDUCE function is comprised of one or more functions.
# A REDUCE has an initial 'state' variable defined for each grouping key. that is
# A TRANSITION function adjusts the state for every value in a key grouping.
# If present, an optional CONSOLIDATE function combines multiple
# 'state' variables. This allows the TRANSITION function to be run locally at
# the segment-level and only redistribute the accumulated 'state' over
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# the network. If present, an optional FINALIZE function can be used to perform
# final computation on a state and emit one or more rows of output from the state.
#
# This REDUCE function is called 'term_reducer' with a TRANSITION function
# called 'term_transition' and a FINALIZE function called 'term_finalizer'
- REDUCE:
    NAME: term_reducer
    TRANSITION: term_transition
    FINALIZE: term_finalizer

- TRANSITION:
    NAME: term_transition
    LANGUAGE: python
    PARAMETERS:
      - state text
      - term text
      - nterms integer
      - doc_positions text
      - kw_positions text
    FUNCTION: |

      # 'state' has an initial value of '' and is a colon delimited set
      # of keyword positions. keyword positions are comma delimited sets of
      # integers. For example, '1,3,2:4:'
      # If there is an existing state, split it into the set of keyword positions
      # otherwise construct a set of 'nterms' keyword positions - all empty
      if state:
        kw_split = state.split(':')
      else:
        kw_split = []
        for i in range(0,nterms):
          kw_split.append('')

      # 'kw_positions' is a comma delimited field of integers indicating what
      # position a single term occurs within a given keyword.
      # Splitting based on ',' converts the string into a python list.
      # add doc_positions for the current term
      for kw_p in kw_positions.split(','):
        kw_split[int(kw_p)-1] = doc_positions

      # This section takes each element in the 'kw_split' array and strings
      # them together placing a ':' in between each element from the array.
      # For example: for the keyword "computer software computer hardware",
      # the 'kw_split' array matched up to the document data of
      # "in the business of computer software software engineers"
      # would look like: ['5', '6,7', '5', '']
      # and the outstate would look like: 5:6,7:5:
      outstate = kw_split[0]
      for s in kw_split[1:]:
        outstate = outstate + ':' + s
      return outstate

- FINALIZE:
    NAME: term_finalizer
    LANGUAGE: python
    RETURNS:
      - count integer
    MODE: MULTI
    FUNCTION: |
      if not state:
        yield 0
      kw_split = state.split(':')

      # This function does the following:
      # 1) Splits 'kw_split' on ':'
      #    for example, 1,5,7:2,8 creates '1,5,7' and '2,8'
      # 2) For each group of positions in 'kw_split', splits the set on ','
      #    to create ['1','5','7'] from Set 0: 1,5,7 and
      #    eventually ['2', '8'] from Set 1: 2,8
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
        # 3) Checks for empty strings
        # 4) Adjusts the split sets by subtracting the position of the set
        #      in the 'kw_split' array
        # ['1','5','7'] - 0 from each element = ['1','5','7']
        # ['2', '8'] - 1 from each element = ['1', '7']
        # 5) Resulting arrays after subtracting the offset in step 4 are
        #    intersected and their overlapping values kept:
        #    ['1','5','7'].intersect['1', '7'] = [1,7]
        # 6) Determines the length of the intersection, which is the number of
        # times that an entire keyword (with all its pieces) matches in the
        #    document data.
        previous = None
        for i in range(0,len(kw_split)):
          isplit = kw_split[i].split(',')
          if any(map(lambda(x): x == '', isplit)):
            yield 0
          adjusted = set(map(lambda(x): int(x)-i, isplit))
          if (previous):
            previous = adjusted.intersection(previous)
          else:
            previous = adjusted

        # return the final count
        if previous:
          yield len(previous)

   # Define the 'term_match' task which is then run as part
   # of the 'final_output' query. It takes the INPUT 'term_join' defined
   # earlier and uses the REDUCE function 'term_reducer' defined earlier
  - TASK:
      NAME: term_match
      SOURCE: term_join
      REDUCE: term_reducer
  - INPUT:
      NAME: final_output
      QUERY: |
        SELECT doc.*, kw.*, tm.count
        FROM documents doc, keywords kw, term_match tm
        WHERE doc.doc_id = tm.doc_id
          AND kw.keyword_id = tm.keyword_id
          AND tm.count > 0

# Execute this MapReduce job and send output to STDOUT
EXECUTE:
  - RUN:
      SOURCE: final_output
      TARGET: STDOUT
```

8. Save the file and exit the editor.

9. Run the MapReduce job. For example:

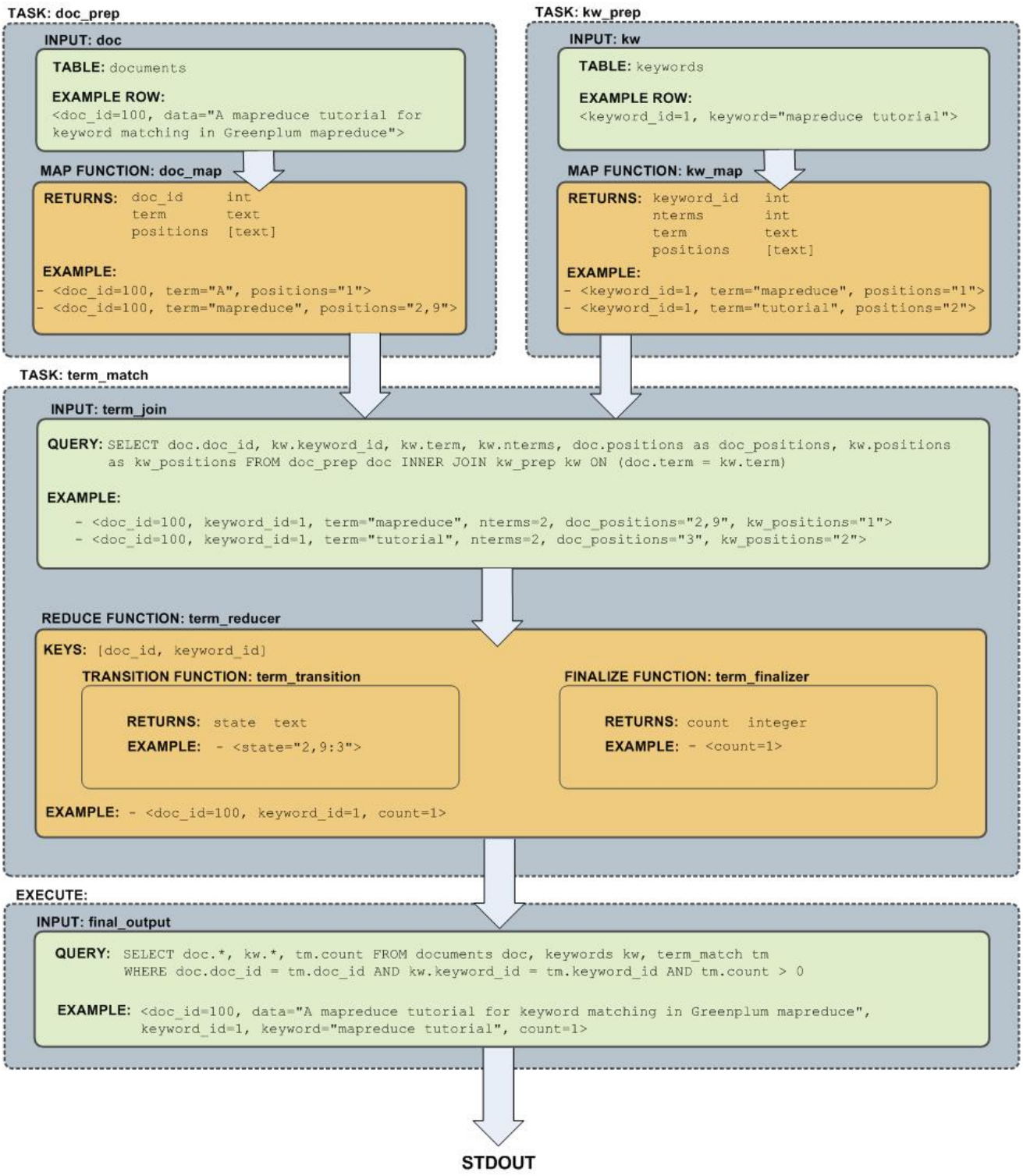
```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ gpmapreduce -f mymrjob.yaml
```

The job displays the number of occurrences of each keyword in each document to `stdout`.

#### Flow Diagram for MapReduce Example

The following diagram shows the job flow of the MapReduce job defined in the example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.6.13 About Uniform Multi-level Partitioned Tables

GPORCA supports queries on a multi-level partitioned (MLP) table if the MLP table is a uniform partitioned table. A multi-level partitioned table is a partitioned table that was created with the `SUBPARTITION` clause. A uniform partitioned table must meet these requirements.

- The partitioned table structure is uniform. Each partition node at the same level must have the same hierarchical structure.
- The partition key constraints must be consistent and uniform. At each subpartition level, the sets of constraints on the child tables created for each branch must match.

You can display information about partitioned tables in several ways, including displaying information from these sources:

- The `pg_partitions` system view contains information on the structure of a partitioned table.
- The `pg_constraint` system catalog table contains information on table constraints.
- The psql meta command \d+ tablename displays the table constraints for child leaf tables of a partitioned table.

**Parent topic:** About GPORCA

### Example

This `CREATE TABLE` command creates a uniform partitioned table.

```
CREATE TABLE mlp (id  int,  year int,  month int,  day int,
   region  text)
   DISTRIBUTED  BY (id)
    PARTITION BY RANGE ( year)
      SUBPARTITION  BY LIST (region)
        SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
          SUBPARTITION usa  VALUES ( 'usa'),
          SUBPARTITION europe  VALUES ( 'europe'),
          SUBPARTITION asia  VALUES ( 'asia'))
   (  START ( 2006)  END ( 2016) EVERY ( 5));
```

These are child tables and the partition hierarchy that are created for the table `mlp`. This hierarchy consists of one subpartition level that contains two branches.

```
mlp_1_prt_11
   mlp_1_prt_11_2_prt_usa
   mlp_1_prt_11_2_prt_europe
   mlp_1_prt_11_2_prt_asia

mlp_1_prt_21
   mlp_1_prt_21_2_prt_usa
   mlp_1_prt_21_2_prt_europe
   mlp_1_prt_21_2_prt_asia
```

The hierarchy of the table is uniform, each partition contains a set of three child tables (subpartitions). The constraints for the region subpartitions are uniform, the set of constraints on the child tables for the branch table `mlp_1_prt_11` are the same as the constraints on the child tables for the branch table `mlp_1_prt_21`.

As a quick check, this query displays the constraints for the partitions.

```
WITH tbl AS (SELECT oid, partitionlevel AS level,
             partitiontablename AS part
         FROM pg_partitions, pg_class
         WHERE tablename = 'mlp' AND partitiontablename=relname
            AND partitionlevel=1 )
  SELECT tbl.part, consrc
    FROM tbl, pg_constraint
    WHERE tbl.oid = conrelid ORDER BY consrc;
```

> **Note** You will need modify the query for more complex partitioned tables. For example, the query does not account for table names in different schemas.

The `consrc` column displays constraints on the subpartitions. The set of region constraints for the subpartitions in `mlp_1_prt_1` match the constraints for the subpartitions in `mlp_1_prt_2`. The constraints for year are inherited from the parent branch tables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
          part           |               consrc
-------------------------+-----------------------------------
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_asia  | (region = 'asia'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_asia  | (region = 'asia'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_europe | (region = 'europe'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_europe | (region = 'europe'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_usa   | (region = 'usa'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_usa   | (region = 'usa'::text)
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_asia  | ((year >= 2006) AND (year < 2011))
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_usa   | ((year >= 2006) AND (year < 2011))
 mlp_1_prt_1_2_prt_europe | ((year >= 2006) AND (year < 2011))
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_usa   | ((year >= 2011) AND (year < 2016))
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_asia  | ((year >= 2011) AND (year < 2016))
 mlp_1_prt_2_2_prt_europe | ((year >= 2011) AND (year < 2016))
(12 rows)
```

If you add a default partition to the example partitioned table with this command:

```
ALTER TABLE mlp ADD DEFAULT PARTITION def
```

The partitioned table remains a uniform partitioned table. The branch created for default partition contains three child tables and the set of constraints on the child tables match the existing sets of child table constraints.

In the above example, if you drop the subpartition `mlp_1_prt_21_2_prt_asia` and add another subpartition for the region `canada`, the constraints are no longer uniform.

```
ALTER TABLE mlp ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(2))
  DROP PARTITION asia ;

ALTER TABLE mlp ALTER PARTITION FOR (RANK(2))
  ADD PARTITION canada VALUES ('canada');
```

Also, if you add a partition `canada` under `mlp_1_prt_21`, the partitioning hierarchy is not uniform.

However, if you add the subpartition `canada` to both `mlp_1_prt_21` and `mlp_1_prt_11` the of the original partitioned table, it remains a uniform partitioned table.

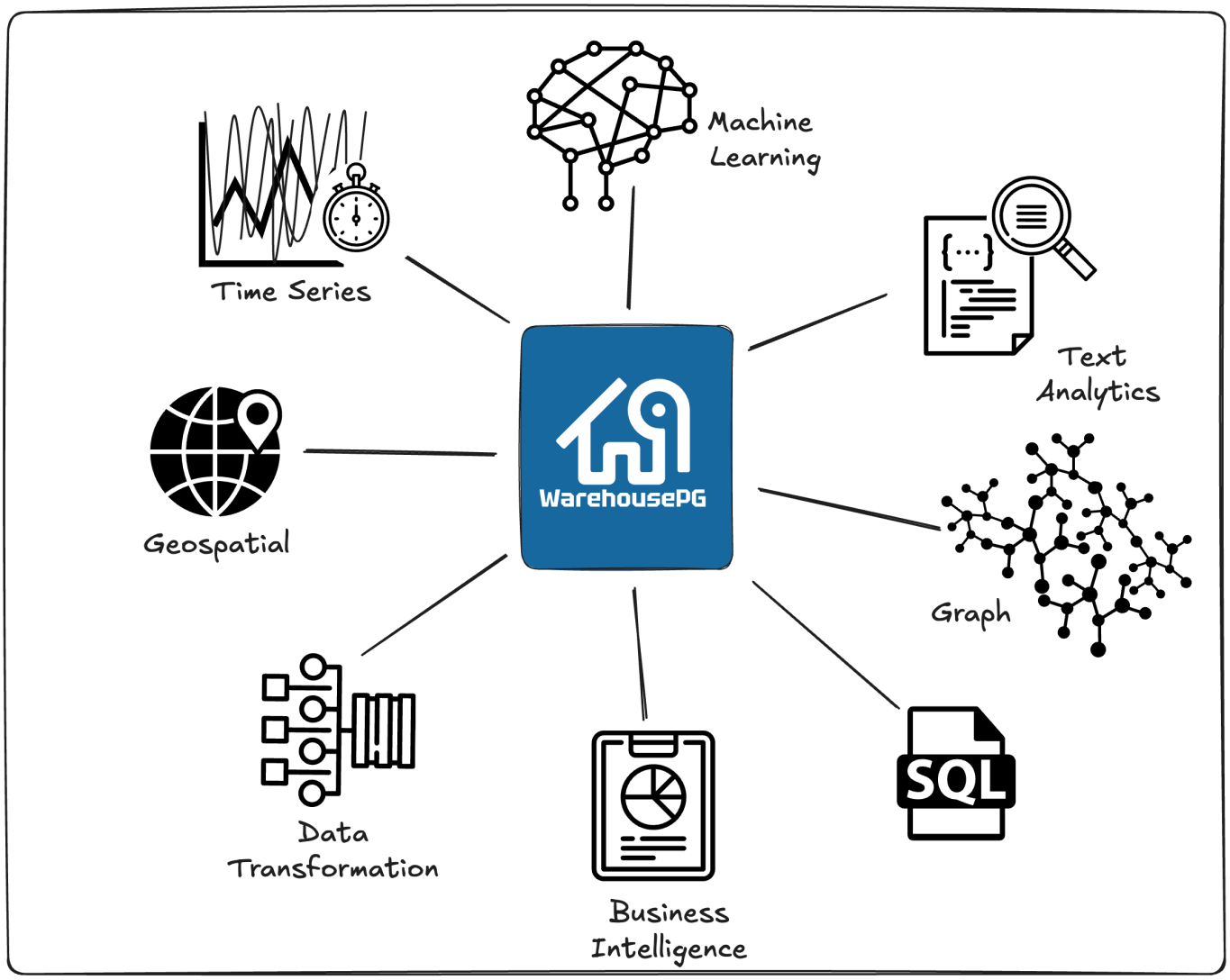
> **Note** Only the constraints on the sets of partitions at a partition level must be the same. The names of the partitions can be different.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7 Overview of WarehousePG Integrated Analytics

WarehousePG offers a unique combination of a powerful, massively parallel processing (MPP) database and advanced data analytics. This combination creates an ideal framework for data scientists, data architects and business decision makers to explore artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning, deep learning, text analytics, and geospatial analytics.

### The WarehousePG Integrated Analytics Ecosystem




The following WarehousePG analytics extensions are explored in different documentation sections, with installation and usage instructions:

#### Machine Learning and Deep Learning

The Apache MADlib extension allows WarehousePG users to run different machine learning and deep learning functions, including feature engineering, model training, evaluation and scoring.

#### Geospatial Analytics

PostGIS is a spatial database extension for PostgreSQL that allows GIS (Geographic Information Systems) objects to be stored in the database. The WarehousePG PostGIS extension includes support for GiST-based R-Tree spatial indexes and functions for analysis and processing of GIS objects.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Text Analytics

Text Analytics and Search enables processing of mass quantities of raw text data (such as social media feeds or e-mail databases) into mission-critical information that guides project and business decisions. WarehousePG Text joins the WarehousePG massively parallel-processing database server with Apache SolrCloud enterprise search. WarehousePG Text includes powerful text search as well as support for text analysis.

#### Programming Language Extensions

WarehousePG supports a variety of procedural languages that you can use for programming database analytics. Refer to the linked documentation for installation and usage instructions.

- PL/Perl
- PL/pgSQL
- PL/Python

PL/Java and PL/R are also supported but require a separate package install.

### Why WarehousePG in Integrated Analytics

The importance of advanced analytics in its various forms is growing rapidly in enterprise computing. Key enterprise data typically resides in relational and document form and it is inefficient to copy data between systems to perform analytical operations. WarehousePG is able to run both traditional and advanced analytics workloads in-database. This integrated capability greatly reduces the cost and the silos created by procuring and maintaining multiple tools and libraries.

WarehousePG advanced analytics can be used to address a wide variety of problems in many verticals including automotive, finance, manufacturing, energy, government, education, telecommunications, on-line and traditional retail.

The WarehousePG analytics capabilities allow you to:

- Analyze a multitude of data types – structured, text, geospatial, and graph – in a single environment, which can scale to petabytes and run algorithms designed for parallelism.
- Leverage existing SQL knowledge: WarehousePG can run dozens of statistical, machine learning, and graph methods, via SQL.
- Train more models in less time by taking advantage of the parallelism in the MPP architecture and in-database analytics.
- Access the data where it lives, therefore integrate data and analytics in one place. WarehousePG is infrastructure-agnostic and runs on bare metal, private cloud, and public cloud deployments.
- Use familiar and leading BI and advanced analytics software that are ODBC/JDBC compatible, or have native integrations, including SAS, IBM Cognos, SAP Analytics Solutions, Qlik, Tableau, Apache Zeppelin, and Jupyter.
- Run deep learning algorithms using popular frameworks like Keras and TensorFlow in an MPP relational database, with GPU (Graphical Processing Unit) acceleration.
- Use procedural languages to customize your analytics. WarehousePG supports development in R, Python, Java, and other standard languages allowing you to distribute execution across the entire cluster to take advantage of the scale and parallelism.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

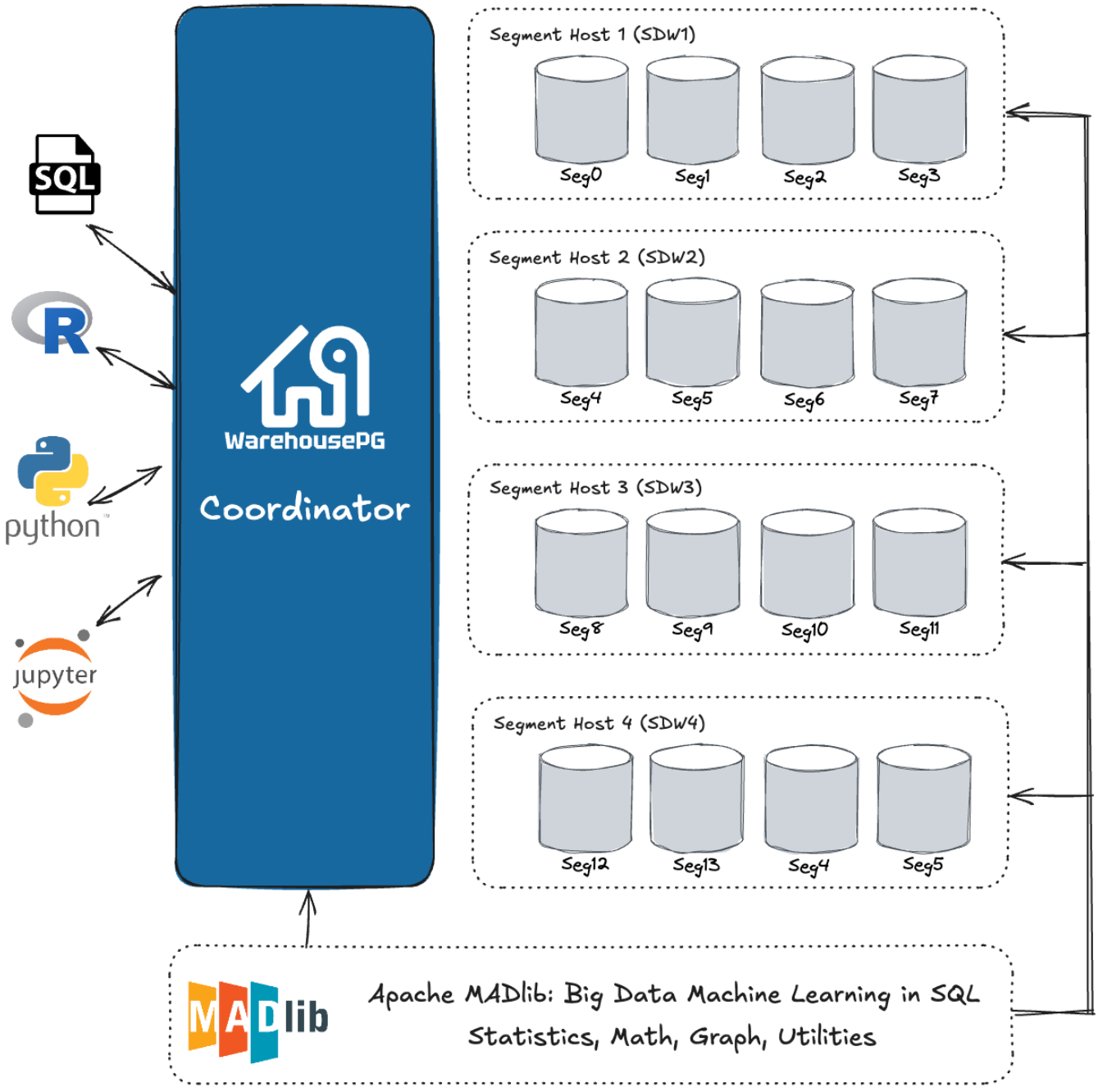
### 4.7.1 Machine Learning and Deep Learning using MADlib

Apache MADlib is an open-source library for scalable in-database analytics. The WarehousePG MADlib extension provides the ability to run machine learning and deep learning workloads in a WarehousePG.

You can install it as an extension in a WarehousePG cluster you can run data-parallel implementations of mathematical, statistical, graph, machine learning, and deep learning methods on structured and unstructured data. For WarehousePG and MADlib version compatibility, refer to MADlib FAQ.

MADlib's suite of SQL-based algorithms run at scale within a single WarehousePG engine without needing to transfer data between the database and other tools.

MADlib is part of the database fabric with no changes to the WarehousePG architecture. This makes it easy for database administrators to deploy and manage since it is not a separate daemon or separate software running outside the database.




Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Machine Learning

Apache MADlib consists of methods to support the full spectrum of data science activities. This includes data transformation and feature engineering, using methods in descriptive and inferential statistics, pivoting, sessionization and encoding categorical variables. There is also a comprehensive library of graph, supervised learning and unsupervised learning methods.

In the area of model selection, MADlib supports cross validation and the most common prediction metrics for evaluating the quality of predictions of a model. Please refer to the MADlib user guide for more information on these methods.

### Deep Learning

WarehousePG supports using Keras and TensorFlow for deep learning. You can review the supported libraries and configuration instructions on the Apache MADlib pages as well as user documentation for Keras API using the Tensorflow backend.

MADlib supports Keras with a TensorFlow backend, with or without Graphics Processing Units (GPUs). GPUs can significantly accelerate the training of deep neural networks so they are typically used for enterprise level workloads. For further GPU information, visit the MADlib wiki, https://cwiki.apache.org/confluence/display/MADLIB/Deep+Learning.

### PivotalR

MADlib can be used with PivotalR, an R client package that enables users to interact with data resident in the WarehousePG. PivotalR can be considered as a wrapper around MADlib that translates R code into SQL to run on MPP databases and is designed for users familiar with R but with data sets that are too large for R.

The R language is an open-source language that is used for statistical computing. PivotalR is an R package that enables users to interact with data resident in WarehousePG using the R client. Using PivotalR requires that MADlib is installed on the WarehousePG.

PivotalR allows R users to leverage the scalability and performance of in-database analytics without leaving the R command line. The computational work is run in-database, while the end user benefits from the familiar R interface. Compared with respective native R functions, there is an increase in scalability and a decrease in running time. Furthermore, data movement, which can take hours for very large data sets, is eliminated with PivotalR.

Key features of the PivotalR package:

- Explore and manipulate data in the database with R syntax. SQL translation is performed by PivotalR.
- Use the familiar R syntax for predictive analytics algorithms, for example linear and logistic regression. PivotalR accesses the MADlib in-database analytics function calls.
- Comprehensive documentation package with examples in standard R format accessible from an R client.
- The PivotalR package also supports access to the MADlib functionality.

For information about PivotalR, including supported MADlib functionality, see https://cwiki.apache.org/confluence/display/MADLIB/PivotalR.

The R package for PivotalR can be found at https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/PivotalR/index.html.

### Prerequisites

MADlib requires the `m4` macro processor version 1.4.13 or later. Ensure that you have access to, or superuser permissions to install, this package on each WarehousePG host.

MADlib 2.1.0 requires Python 3, which should already be installed as a dependency when you install the WarehousePG software on each WarehousePG host.

### Installing MADlib

To install MADlib on WarehousePG, you first install a compatible WarehousePG MADlib package and then install the MADlib function libraries on all databases that will use MADlib.

If you have GPUs installed on some or across all hosts in the cluster, then the segments residing on those hosts can benefit from GPU acceleration. GPUs and deep learning libraries such as Keras, TensorFlow, cudNN, and CUDA are managed separately from MADlib. For more information see the MADlib wiki instructions for deep learning and the MADlib user documentation for deep learning .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Installing the WarehousePG MADlib Package

Before you install the MADlib package, make sure that your WarehousePG is running, you have sourced `greenplum_path.sh`, and that the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` and `$GPHOME` variables are set.

1. Download the MADlib extension package.
2. Copy the MADlib package to the WarehousePG coordinator host.
3. Unpack the MADlib distribution package. For example:

   ```
   $ tar xzvf madlib-2.1.0-gp6-rhel8-x86_64.tar.gz
   ```

4. Install the software package

#### Adding MADlib Functions to a Database

After installing the MADlib package, run the `madpack` command to add MADlib functions to WarehousePG. `madpack` is in `$GPHOME/madlib/bin`.

```
$ madpack [-s <schema_name>] -p greenplum -c <user>@<host>:<port>/<database> install
```

For example, this command creates MADlib functions in the WarehousePG `testdb` running on server `cdw` on port `5432`. The `madpack` command logs in as the user `gpadmin` and prompts for password. The target schema is `madlib`.

```
$ madpack -s madlib -p greenplum -c gpadmin@cdw:5432/testdb install
```

After installing the functions, The WarehousePG `gpadmin` superuser role should grant all privileges on the target schema (in the example `madlib`) to users who will be accessing MADlib functions. Users without access to the functions will get the error `ERROR: permission denied for schema MADlib`.

The madpack `install-check` option runs test using Madlib modules to check the MADlib installation:

```
$ madpack -s madlib -p greenplum -c gpadmin@cdw:5432/testdb install-check
```

> **Note** The command `madpack -h` displays information for the utility.

### Uninstalling MADlib

When you remove MADlib support from a database, routines that you created in the database that use MADlib functionality will no longer work.

### Examples

Following are examples using the WarehousePG MADlib extension:

- Linear Regression
- Association Rules
- Naive Bayes Classification

See the MADlib documentation for additional examples.

#### Linear Regression

This example runs a linear regression on the table `regr_example`. The dependent variable data are in the `y` column and the independent variable data are in the `x1` and `x2` columns.

The following statements create the `regr_example` table and load some sample data:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS regr_example;
CREATE TABLE regr_example (
   id int,
   y int,
   x1 int,
   x2 int
);
INSERT INTO regr_example VALUES
   (1,  5, 2, 3),
   (2, 10, 7, 2),
   (3,  6, 4, 1),
   (4,  8, 3, 4);
```

The MADlib `linregr_train()` function produces a regression model from an input table containing training data. The following `SELECT` statement runs a simple multivariate regression on the `regr_example` table and saves the model in the `reg_example_model` table.

```
SELECT madlib.linregr_train (
   'regr_example',         -- source table
   'regr_example_model',   -- output model table
   'y',                    -- dependent variable
   'ARRAY[1, x1, x2]'      -- independent variables
);
```

The `madlib.linregr_train()` function can have additional arguments to set grouping columns and to calculate the heteroskedasticity of the model.

> **Note** The intercept is computed by setting one of the independent variables to a constant `1`, as shown in the preceding example.

Running this query against the `regr_example` table creates the `regr_example_model` table with one row of data:

```
SELECT * FROM regr_example_model;
-[ RECORD 1 ]------------+------------------------
coef                     | {0.111111111111127,1.14814814814815,1.01851851851852}
r2                       | 0.968612680477111
std_err                  | {1.49587911309236,0.207043331249903,0.346449758034495}
t_stats                  | {0.0742781352708591,5.54544858420156,2.93987366103776}
p_values                 | {0.952799748147436,0.113579771006374,0.208730790695278}
condition_no             | 22.650203241881
num_rows_processed       | 4
num_missing_rows_skipped | 0
variance_covariance      | {{2.23765432098598,-0.257201646090342,-0.437242798353582},
                           {-0.257201646090342,0.042866941015057,0.0342935528120456},
                           {-0.437242798353582,0.0342935528120457,0.12002743484216}}
```

The model saved in the `regr_example_model` table can be used with the MADlib linear regression prediction function, `madlib.linregr_predict()`, to view the residuals:

```
SELECT regr_example.*,
       madlib.linregr_predict ( ARRAY[1, x1, x2], m.coef ) as predict,
       y - madlib.linregr_predict ( ARRAY[1, x1, x2], m.coef ) as residual
FROM regr_example, regr_example_model m;
 id | y  | x1 | x2 |     predict      |      residual
----+----+----+----+------------------+--------------------
  1 |  5 |  2 |  3 | 5.46296296296297 | -0.462962962962971
  3 |  6 |  4 |  1 | 5.72222222222224 |  0.277777777777762
  2 | 10 |  7 |  2 | 10.1851851851852 | -0.185185185185201
  4 |  8 |  3 |  4 | 7.62962962962964 |  0.370370370370364
(4 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Association Rules

This example demonstrates the association rules data mining technique on a transactional data set. Association rule mining is a technique for discovering relationships between variables in a large data set. This example considers items in a store that are commonly purchased together. In addition to market basket analysis, association rules are also used in bioinformatics, web analytics, and other fields.

The example analyzes purchase information for seven transactions that are stored in a table with the MADlib function `MADlib.assoc_rules`. The function assumes that the data is stored in two columns with a single item and transaction ID per row. Transactions with multiple items consist of multiple rows with one row per item.

These commands create the table.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS test_data;
CREATE TABLE test_data (
   trans_id INT,
   product text
);
```

This `INSERT` command adds the data to the table.

```
INSERT INTO test_data VALUES
   (1, 'beer'),
   (1, 'diapers'),
   (1, 'chips'),
   (2, 'beer'),
   (2, 'diapers'),
   (3, 'beer'),
   (3, 'diapers'),
   (4, 'beer'),
   (4, 'chips'),
   (5, 'beer'),
   (6, 'beer'),
   (6, 'diapers'),
   (6, 'chips'),
   (7, 'beer'),
   (7, 'diapers');
```

The MADlib function `madlib.assoc_rules()` analyzes the data and determines association rules with the following characteristics.

- A support value of at least .40. Support is the ratio of transactions that contain X to all transactions.
- A confidence value of at least .75. Confidence is the ratio of transactions that contain X to transactions that contain Y. One could view this metric as the conditional probability of X given Y.

This `SELECT` command determines association rules, creates the table `assoc_rules`, and adds the statistics to the table.

```
SELECT * FROM madlib.assoc_rules (
   .40,          -- support
   .75,          -- confidence
   'trans_id',   -- transaction column
   'product',    -- product purchased column
   'test_data',  -- table name
   'public',     -- schema name
   false);       -- display processing details
```

This is the output of the `SELECT` command. There are two rules that fit the characteristics.

```
 output_schema | output_table | total_rules | total_time
---------------+--------------+-------------+-----------------
public         | assoc_rules  |           2 | 00:00:01.153283
(1 row)
```

To view the association rules, you can run this `SELECT` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT pre, post, support FROM assoc_rules
   ORDER BY support DESC;
```

This is the output. The `pre` and `post` columns are the itemsets of left and right hand sides of the association rule respectively.

```
    pre    |  post  |      support
-----------+--------+-------------------
 {diapers} | {beer} | 0.714285714285714
 {chips}   | {beer} | 0.428571428571429
(2 rows)
```

Based on the data, beer and diapers are often purchased together. To increase sales, you might consider placing beer and diapers closer together on the shelves.

#### Naive Bayes Classification

Naive Bayes analysis predicts the likelihood of an outcome of a class variable, or category, based on one or more independent variables, or attributes. The class variable is a non-numeric categorial variable, a variable that can have one of a limited number of values or categories. The class variable is represented with integers, each integer representing a category. For example, if the category can be one of "true", "false", or "unknown," the values can be represented with the integers 1, 2, or 3.

The attributes can be of numeric types and non-numeric, categorical, types. The training function has two signatures – one for the case where all attributes are numeric and another for mixed numeric and categorical types. Additional arguments for the latter identify the attributes that should be handled as numeric values. The attributes are submitted to the training function in an array.

The MADlib Naive Bayes training functions produce a features probabilities table and a class priors table, which can be used with the prediction function to provide the probability of a class for the set of attributes.

##### Naive Bayes Example 1 - Simple All-numeric Attributes

In the first example, the `class` variable is either 1 or 2 and there are three integer attributes.

1. The following commands create the input table and load sample data.

   ```
   DROP TABLE IF EXISTS class_example CASCADE;
   CREATE TABLE class_example (
      id int, class int, attributes int[]);
   INSERT INTO class_example VALUES
      (1, 1, '{1, 2, 3}'),
      (2, 1, '{1, 4, 3}'),
      (3, 2, '{0, 2, 2}'),
      (4, 1, '{1, 2, 1}'),
      (5, 2, '{1, 2, 2}'),
      (6, 2, '{0, 1, 3}');
   ```

   Actual data in production scenarios is more extensive than this example data and yields better results. Accuracy of classification improves significantly with larger training data sets.

2. Train the model with the `create_nb_prepared_data_tables()` function.

   ```
   SELECT * FROM madlib.create_nb_prepared_data_tables (
      'class_example',         -- name of the training table
      'class',                 -- name of the class (dependent) column
      'attributes',            -- name of the attributes column
      3,                       -- the number of attributes
      'example_feature_probs', -- name for the feature probabilities output table
      'example_priors'         -- name for the class priors output table
       );
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Create a table with data to classify using the model.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS class_example_topredict;
CREATE TABLE class_example_topredict (
   id int, attributes int[]);
INSERT INTO class_example_topredict VALUES
   (1, '{1, 3, 2}'),
   (2, '{4, 2, 2}'),
   (3, '{2, 1, 1}');
```

4. Create a classification view using the feature probabilities, class priors, and `class_example_topredict` tables.

```
SELECT madlib.create_nb_probs_view (
   'example_feature_probs',    -- feature probabilities output table
   'example_priors',           -- class priors output table
   'class_example_topredict',  -- table with data to classify
   'id',                       -- name of the key column
   'attributes',               -- name of the attributes column
    3,                         -- number of attributes
    'example_classified'       -- name of the view to create
    );
```

5. Display the classification results.

```
SELECT * FROM example_classified;
 key | class | nb_prob
-----+-------+---------
   1 |     1 |     0.4
   1 |     2 |     0.6
   3 |     1 |     0.5
   3 |     2 |     0.5
   2 |     1 |    0.25
   2 |     2 |    0.75
(6 rows)
```

#### Naive Bayes Example 2 – Weather and Outdoor Sports

This example calculates the probability that the user will play an outdoor sport, such as golf or tennis, based on weather conditions.

The table `weather_example` contains the example values.

The identification column for the table is `day`, an integer type.

The `play` column holds the dependent variable and has two classifications:

- 0 - No
- 1 - Yes

There are four attributes: outlook, temperature, humidity, and wind. These are categorical variables. The MADlib `create_nb_classify_view()` function expects the attributes to be provided as an array of `INTEGER`, `NUMERIC`, or `FLOAT8` values, so the attributes for this example are encoded with integers as follows:

- *outlook* may be sunny (1), overcast (2), or rain (3).
- *temperature* may be hot (1), mild (2), or cool (3).
- *humidity* may be high (1) or normal (2).
- *wind* may be strong (1) or weak (2).

The following table shows the training data, before encoding the variables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
 day | play | outlook  | temperature | humidity | wind
-----+------+----------+-------------+----------+--------
 2   | No   | Sunny    | Hot         | High     | Strong
 4   | Yes  | Rain     | Mild        | High     | Weak
 6   | No   | Rain     | Cool        | Normal   | Strong
 8   | No   | Sunny    | Mild        | High     | Weak
10   | Yes  | Rain     | Mild        | Normal   | Weak
12   | Yes  | Overcast | Mild        | High     | Strong
14   | No   | Rain     | Mild        | High     | Strong
 1   | No   | Sunny    | Hot         | High     | Weak
 3   | Yes  | Overcast | Hot         | High     | Weak
 5   | Yes  | Rain     | Cool        | Normal   | Weak
 7   | Yes  | Overcast | Cool        | Normal   | Strong
 9   | Yes  | Sunny    | Cool        | Normal   | Weak
11   | Yes  | Sunny    | Mild        | Normal   | Strong
13   | Yes  | Overcast | Hot         | Normal   | Weak
(14 rows)
```

1. Create the training table.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS weather_example;
CREATE TABLE weather_example (
   day int,
   play int,
   attrs int[]
);
INSERT INTO weather_example VALUES
   ( 2, 0, '{1,1,1,1}'), -- sunny, hot, high, strong
   ( 4, 1, '{3,2,1,2}'), -- rain, mild, high, weak
   ( 6, 0, '{3,3,2,1}'), -- rain, cool, normal, strong
   ( 8, 0, '{1,2,1,2}'), -- sunny, mild, high, weak
   (10, 1, '{3,2,2,2}'), -- rain, mild, normal, weak
   (12, 1, '{2,2,1,1}'), -- etc.
   (14, 0, '{3,2,1,1}'),
   ( 1, 0, '{1,1,1,2}'),
   ( 3, 1, '{2,1,1,2}'),
   ( 5, 1, '{3,3,2,2}'),
   ( 7, 1, '{2,3,2,1}'),
   ( 9, 1, '{1,3,2,2}'),
   (11, 1, '{1,2,2,1}'),
   (13, 1, '{2,1,2,2}');
```

2. Create the model from the training table.

```
SELECT madlib.create_nb_prepared_data_tables (
   'weather_example',  -- training source table
   'play',             -- dependent class column
   'attrs',            -- attributes column
   4,                  -- number of attributes
   'weather_probs',    -- feature probabilities output table
   'weather_priors'    -- class priors
   );
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. View the feature probabilities:

```
SELECT * FROM weather_probs;
 class | attr | value | cnt | attr_cnt
-------+------+-------+-----+----------
     1 |    3 |     2 |   6 |        2
     1 |    1 |     2 |   4 |        3
     0 |    1 |     1 |   3 |        3
     0 |    1 |     3 |   2 |        3
     0 |    3 |     1 |   4 |        2
     1 |    4 |     1 |   3 |        2
     1 |    2 |     3 |   3 |        3
     1 |    2 |     1 |   2 |        3
     0 |    2 |     2 |   2 |        3
     0 |    4 |     2 |   2 |        2
     0 |    3 |     2 |   1 |        2
     0 |    1 |     2 |   0 |        3
     1 |    1 |     1 |   2 |        3
     1 |    1 |     3 |   3 |        3
     1 |    3 |     1 |   3 |        2
     0 |    4 |     1 |   3 |        2
     0 |    2 |     3 |   1 |        3
     0 |    2 |     1 |   2 |        3
     1 |    2 |     2 |   4 |        3
     1 |    4 |     2 |   6 |        2
(20 rows)
```

4. To classify a group of records with a model, first load the data into a table. In this example, the table `t1` has four rows to classify.

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS t1;
CREATE TABLE t1 (
   id integer,
   attributes integer[]);
insert into t1 values
   (1, '{1, 2, 1, 1}'),
   (2, '{3, 3, 2, 1}'),
   (3, '{2, 1, 2, 2}'),
   (4, '{3, 1, 1, 2}');
```

5. Use the MADlib `create_nb_classify_view()` function to classify the rows in the table.

```
SELECT madlib.create_nb_classify_view (
   'weather_probs',      -- feature probabilities table
   'weather_priors',     -- classPriorsName
   't1',                 -- table containing values to classify
   'id',                 -- key column
   'attributes',         -- attributes column
   4,                    -- number of attributes
   't1_out'              -- output table name
);
```

The result is four rows, one for each record in the `t1` table.

```
SELECT * FROM t1_out ORDER BY key;
 key | nb_classification
-----+-------------------
 1 | {0}
 2 | {1}
 3 | {1}
 4 | {0}
 (4 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### References

MADlib web site is at http://madlib.apache.org/.

MADlib documentation is at http://madlib.apache.org/documentation.html.

PivotalR is a first class R package that enables users to interact with data resident in WarehousePG and MADLib using an R client.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7.2 Graph Analytics

Many modern business problems involve connections and relationships between entities, and are not solely based on discrete data. Graphs are powerful at representing complex interconnections, and graph data modeling is very effective and flexible when the number and depth of relationships increase exponentially.

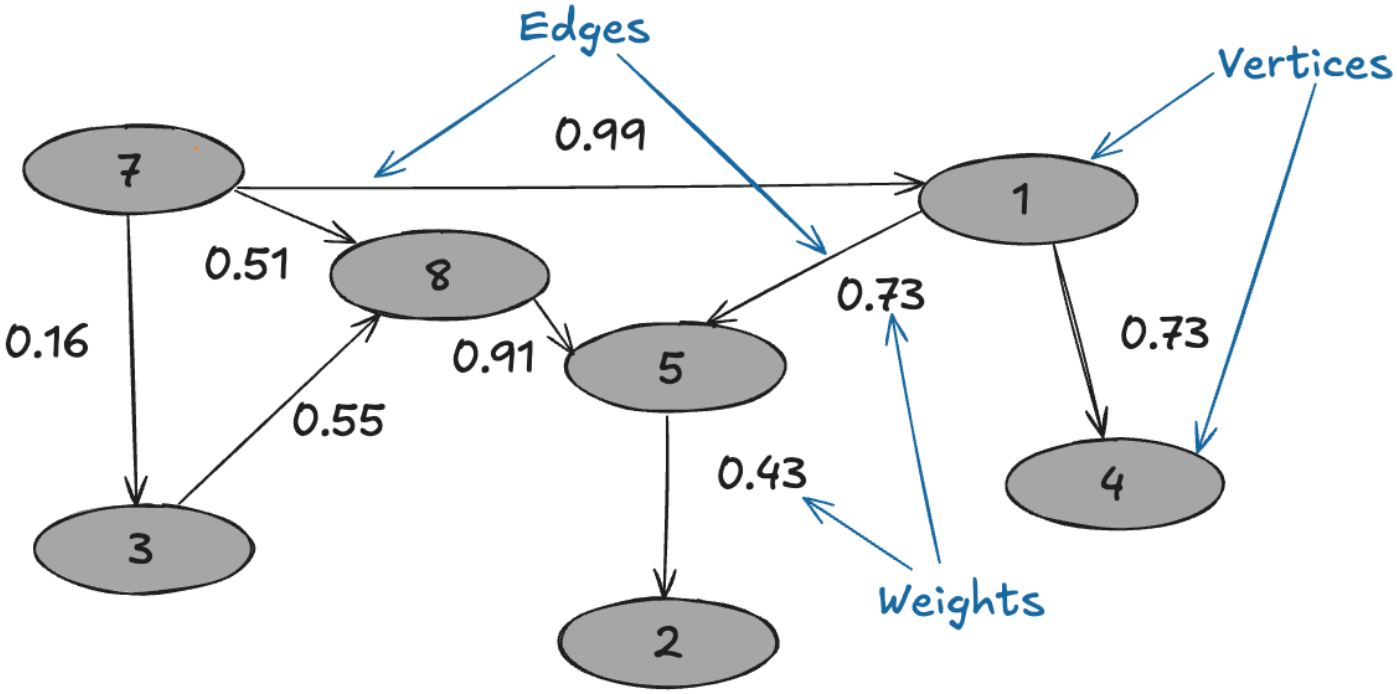
The use cases for graph analytics are diverse: social networks, transportation routes, autonomous vehicles, cyber security, criminal networks, fraud detection, health research, epidemiology, and so forth.

This chapter contains the following information:


- What is a Graph?
- Graph Analytics on WarehousePG
- Using Graph
- Graph Modules
- References


### What is a Graph?

Graphs represent the interconnections between objects (vertices) and their relationships (edges). Example objects could be people, locations, cities, computers, or components on a circuit board. Example connections could be roads, circuits, cables, or interpersonal relationships. Edges can have directions and weights, for example the distance between towns.




Graphs can be small and easily traversed - as with a small group of friends - or extremely large and complex, similar to contacts in a modern-day social network.

### Graph Analytics on WarehousePG

Efficient processing of very large graphs can be challenging. WarehousePG offers a suitable environment for this work for these key reasons:

1. Using MADlib graph functions in WarehousePG brings the graph computation close to where the data lives. Otherwise, large data sets need to be moved to a specialized graph database, requiring additional time and resources.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Specialized graph databases frequently use purpose-built languages. With WarehousePG, you can invoke graph functions using the familiar SQL interface. For example, for the PageRank graph algorithm:

```
SELECT madlib.pagerank('vertex',     -- Vertex table
              'id',                  -- Vertex id column
              'edge',                -- Edge table
              'src=src, dest=dest', -- Comma delimited string of edge arguments
              'pagerank_out',        -- Output table of PageRank
               0.5);                 -- Damping factor
SELECT * FROM pagerank_out ORDER BY pagerank DESC;
```

3. A lot of data science problems are solved using a combination of models, with graphs being just one. Regression, clustering, and other methods available in WarehousePG, make for a powerful combination.

4. WarehousePG offers great benefits of scale, taking advantage of years of query execution and optimization research focused on large data sets.

## Using Graph

### Installing Graph Modules

To use the MADlib graph modules, install the version of MADlib corresponding to your WarehousePG version.

Graph modules on MADlib support many algorithms.

### Creating a Graph in WarehousePG

To represent a graph in WarehousePG, create tables that represent the vertices, edges, and their properties.

Using SQL, create the relevant tables in the database you want to use. This example uses `testdb`:

```
gpadmin@mdw ~]$ psql
dev=# \c testdb
```

Create a table for vertices, called `vertex`, and a table for edges and their weights, called `edge`:

```
testdb=# DROP TABLE IF EXISTS vertex, edge;
testdb=# CREATE TABLE vertex(id INTEGER);
testdb=# CREATE TABLE edge(
         src INTEGER,
         dest INTEGER,
         weight FLOAT8
         );
```

Insert values related to your specific use case. For example :

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
testdb#=> INSERT INTO vertex VALUES
(0),
(1),
(2),
(3),
(4),
(5),
(6),
(7);

testdb#=> INSERT INTO edge VALUES
(0, 1, 1.0),
(0, 2, 1.0),
(0, 4, 10.0),
(1, 2, 2.0),
(1, 3, 10.0),
(2, 3, 1.0),
(2, 5, 1.0),
(2, 6, 3.0),
(3, 0, 1.0),
(4, 0, -2.0),
(5, 6, 1.0),
(6, 7, 1.0);
```

Now select the Graph Module that suits your analysis.

## Graph Modules

This section lists the graph functions supported in MADlib. They include: All Pairs Shortest Path (APSP), Breadth-First Search, Hyperlink-Induced Topic Search (HITS), PageRank and Personalized PageRank, Single Source Shortest Path (SSSP), Weakly Connected Components, and Measures. Explore each algorithm using the example `edge` and `vertex` tables already created.

### All Pairs Shortest Path (APSP)

The all pairs shortest paths (APSP) algorithm finds the length (summed weights) of the shortest paths between all pairs of vertices, such that the sum of the weights of the path edges is minimized.

The function is:

```
graph_apsp( vertex_table,
vertex_id,
edge_table,
edge_args,
out_table,
grouping_cols
)
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the All Pairs Shortest Path in the Apache MADlib documentation.

### Breadth-First Search

Given a graph and a source vertex, the breadth-first search (BFS) algorithm finds all nodes reachable from the source vertex by searching / traversing the graph in a breadth-first manner.

The function is:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
graph_bfs( vertex_table,
          vertex_id,
          edge_table,
          edge_args,
          source_vertex,
          out_table,
          max_distance,
          directed,
          grouping_cols
          )
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the Breadth-First Search in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### Hyperlink-Induced Topic Search (HITS)

The all pairs shortest paths (APSP) algorithm finds the length (summed weights) of the shortest paths between all pairs of vertices, such that the sum of the weights of the path edges is minimized.

The function is:

```
graph_apsp( vertex_table,
           vertex_id,
           edge_table,
           edge_args,
           out_table,
           grouping_cols
           )
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the Hyperlink-Induced Topic Search in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### PageRank and Personalized PageRank

Given a graph, the PageRank algorithm outputs a probability distribution representing a person's likelihood to arrive at any particular vertex while randomly traversing the graph.

MADlib graph also includes a personalized PageRank, where a notion of importance provides personalization to a query. For example, importance scores can be biased according to a specified set of graph vertices that are of interest or special in some way.

The function is:

```
pagerank( vertex_table,
          vertex_id,
          edge_table,
          edge_args,
          out_table,
          damping_factor,
          max_iter,
          threshold,
          grouping_cols,
          personalization_vertices
          )
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the PageRank in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### Single Source Shortest Path (SSSP)

Given a graph and a source vertex, the single source shortest path (SSSP) algorithm finds a path from the source vertex to every other vertex in the graph, such that the sum of the weights of the path edges is minimized.

The function is:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
graph_sssp ( vertex_table,
vertex_id,
edge_table,
edge_args,
source_vertex,
out_table,
grouping_cols
)
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the Single Source Shortest Path in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### Weakly Connected Components

Given a directed graph, a weakly connected component (WCC) is a subgraph of the original graph where all vertices are connected to each other by some path, ignoring the direction of edges.

The function is:

```
weakly_connected_components(
vertex_table,
vertex_id,
edge_table,
edge_args,
out_table,
grouping_cols
)
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the Weakly Connected Components in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### *Measures*

These algorithms relate to metrics computed on a graph and include: Average Path Length, Closeness Centrality , Graph Diameter, and In-Out Degree.

#### Average Path Length

This function computes the shortest path average between pairs of vertices. Average path length is based on "reachable target vertices", so it averages the path lengths in each connected component and ignores infinite-length paths between unconnected vertices. If the user requires the average path length of a particular component, the weakly connected components function may be used to isolate the relevant vertices.

The function is:

```
graph_avg_path_length( apsp_table,
                       output_table
                       )
```

This function uses a previously run APSP (All Pairs Shortest Path) output. For details on the parameters, with examples, see theAverage Path Length in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### Closeness Centrality

The closeness centrality algorithm helps quantify how much information passes through a given vertex. The function returns various closeness centrality measures and the k-degree for a given subset of vertices.

The function is:

```
graph_closeness( apsp_table,
output_table,
vertex_filter_expr
)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This function uses a previously run APSP (All Pairs Shortest Path) output. For details on the parameters, with examples, see theCloseness in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### Graph Diameter

Graph diameter is defined as the longest of all shortest paths in a graph. The function is:

```
graph_diameter( apsp_table,
output_table
)
```

This function uses a previously run APSP (All Pairs Shortest Path) output. For details on the parameters, with examples, see theGraph Diameter in the Apache MADlib documentation.

#### In-Out Degree

This function computes the degree of each node. The node degree is the number of edges adjacent to that node. The node in-degree is the number of edges pointing in to the node and node out-degree is the number of edges pointing out of the node.

The function is:

```
graph_vertex_degrees( vertex_table,
vertex_id,
edge_table,
edge_args,
out_table,
grouping_cols
)
```

For details on the parameters, with examples, see the In-out Degree page in the Apache MADlib documentation.

### References

MADlib on WarehousePG is at Machine Learning and Deep Learning using MADlib.

MADlib Apache web site and MADlib release notes are at http://madlib.apache.org/.

MADlib user documentation is at http://madlib.apache.org/documentation.html.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7.3 Geospatial Analytics

This chapter contains the following information:


- About PostGIS
- WarehousePG PostGIS Extension
- Enabling and Removing PostGIS Support
- Usage
- PostGIS Extension Support and Limitations


### About PostGIS

PostGIS is a spatial database extension for PostgreSQL that allows GIS (Geographic Information Systems) objects to be stored in the database. The WarehousePG PostGIS extension includes support for GiST-based R-Tree spatial indexes, and functions for analysis and processing of GIS objects.

The WarehousePG PostGIS extension supports some PostGIS optional extensions and includes support for the PostGIS `raster` data type. With the PostGIS Raster objects, PostGIS `geometry` data type offers a single set of overlay SQL functions (such as `ST_Intersects`) operating seamlessly on vector and raster geospatial data. PostGIS Raster uses the GDAL (Geospatial Data Abstraction Library) translator library for raster geospatial data formats that presents a single raster abstract data model to a calling application.

For information about WarehousePG PostGIS extension support, see PostGIS Extension Support and Limitations.

For information about PostGIS, see https://postgis.net/

For information about GDAL, see https://gdal.org/.

### WarehousePG PostGIS Extension

WarehousePG supports the following PostGIS extension versions and components:

- PostGIS 2.5.4, and components Proj 4.8.0, Geos 3.10.2, GDAL 1.11.1, Json 0.12, Expat 2.4.4
- PostGIS 2.1.5, and components Proj 4.8.0, Geos 3.4.2, GDAL 1.11.1, Json 0.12, Expat 2.1.0

For information about the supported WarehousePG extension packages and software versions, see Extensions in the Platform Requirements topic.

There are significant changes in PostGIS 2.5.4 compared with 2.1.5. For a list of new and enhanced functions in PostGIS 2.5, see the PostGIS documentation PostGIS Functions new or enhanced in 2.5 and Release 2.5.4.

This table lists the PostGIS extensions support by WarehousePG PostGIS.

**WarehousePG PostGIS Extensions**

| PostGIS Extension | WarehousePG PostGIS Notes |
|---|---|
| `postgis`<br>PostGIS and PostGIS Raster support | Supported. Both PostGIS and PostGIS Raster are enabled when the WarehousePG `postgis` extension is enabled. |
| `postgis_tiger_geocoder`<br>The US TIGER geocoder | Supported. Installed with WarehousePG PostGIS.<br>Requires the `postgis` and `fuzzystrmatch` extensions.<br>The US TIGER geocoder converts addresses (like a street address) to geographic coordinates. |
| `address_standardizer`<br>Rule-based address standardizer | Supported. Installed but not enabled with WarehousePG PostGIS.<br>Can be used with TIGER geocoder.<br>A single line address parser that takes an input address and normalizes it based on a set of rules stored in a table and helper `lex` and `gaz` tables. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| PostGIS Extension | WarehousePG PostGIS Notes |
|---|---|
| `address_standardizer_data_us` | Supported. Installed but not enabled with WarehousePG PostGIS. |
| Sample rules tables for US address data | Can be used with the address standardizer.<br>The extension contains `gaz`, `lex`, and `rules` tables for US address data. If you are using other types of tables, see PostGIS Extension Limitations. |
| `fuzzystrmatch` | Supported. This extension is bundled but not enabled with WarehousePG Database. |
| Fuzzy string matching | Required for the PostGIS TIGER geocoder. |

> **Note** The PostGIS topology extension `postgis_topology` and the PostGIS 3D and geoprocessing extension `postgis_sfcgal` are not supported by WarehousePG PostGIS and are not included in the WarehousePG PostGIS extension package.

For information about the PostGIS extensions, see the PostGIS 2.5 documentation.

For information about WarehousePG PostGIS feature support, see PostGIS Extension Support and Limitations.

## Enabling and Removing PostGIS Support

This section describes how to enable and remove PostGIS and the supported PostGIS extensions, and how to configure PostGIS Raster.

- Enabling PostGIS Support
- Enabling GDAL Raster Drivers
- Enabling Out-of-Database Rasters
- Removing PostGIS Support

### Enabling PostGIS Support

To enable PostGIS support, install the WarehousePG PostGIS extension package into the WarehousePG cluster, and then use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to enable PostGIS support for an individual database.

#### Installing the WarehousePG PostGIS Extension Package

Install WarehousePG PostGIS extension package.

After installing the package, source the `greenplum_path.sh` file and restart WarehousePG. This command restarts WarehousePG.

```
gpstop -ra
```

Installing the WarehousePG PostGIS extension package updates the WarehousePG cluster, including installing the supported PostGIS extensions to the system and updating `greenplum_path.sh` file with these lines for PostGIS Raster support.

```
export GDAL_DATA=$GPHOME/share/gdal
export POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS=0
export POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS=DISABLE_ALL
```

#### Using the CREATE EXTENSION Command

These steps enable the PostGIS extension and the extensions that are used with PostGIS.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. To enable PostGIS and PostGIS Raster in a database, run this command after logging into the database.

   ```
   CREATE EXTENSION postgis ;
   ```

   To enable PostGIS and PostGIS Raster in a specific schema, create the schema, set the `search_path` to the PostGIS schema, and then enable the `postgis` extension with the `WITH SCHEMA` clause.

   ```
   SHOW search_path ; -- display the current search_path
   CREATE SCHEMA <schema_name> ;
   SET search_path TO <schema_name> ;
   CREATE EXTENSION postgis WITH SCHEMA <schema_name> ;
   ```

   After enabling the extension, reset the `search_path` and include the PostGIS schema in the `search_path` if needed.

2. If needed, enable the PostGIS TIGER geocoder after enabling the `postgis` extension.

   To enable the PostGIS TIGER geocoder, you must enable the `fuzzystrmatch` extension before enabling `postgis_tiger_geocoder`. These two commands enable the extensions.

   ```
   CREATE EXTENSION fuzzystrmatch ;
   CREATE EXTENSION postgis_tiger_geocoder ;
   ```

3. If needed, enable the rules-based address standardizer and add rules tables for the standardizer. These commands enable the extensions.

   ```
   CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer ;
   CREATE EXTENSION address_standardizer_data_us ;
   ```

#### Enabling GDAL Raster Drivers

PostGIS uses GDAL raster drivers when processing raster data with commands such as `ST_AsJPEG()`. As the default, PostGIS deactivates all raster drivers. You enable raster drivers by setting the value of the `POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS` environment variable in the `greenplum_path.sh` file on all WarehousePG hosts.

Alternatively, you can do it at the session level by setting `postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers`. For a WarehousePG session, this example `SET` command enables three GDAL raster drivers.

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers TO 'GTiff PNG JPEG';
```

This `SET` command sets the enabled drivers to the default for a session.

```
SET postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers = default;
```

To see the list of supported GDAL raster drivers for a WarehousePG cluster, run the `raster2pgsql` utility with the `-G` option on the WarehousePG coordinator.

```
raster2pgsql -G
```

The command lists the driver long format name. The *GDAL Raster* table at https://gdal.org/drivers/raster/index.html lists the long format names and the corresponding codes that you specify as the value of the environment variable. For example, the code for the long name Portable Network Graphics is `PNG`. This example `export` line enables four GDAL raster drivers.

```
export POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS="GTiff PNG JPEG GIF"
```

The `gpstop -r` command restarts the WarehousePG cluster to use the updated settings in the `greenplum_path.sh` file.

After you have updated the `greenplum_path.sh` file on all hosts, and have restarted the WarehousePG cluster, you can display the enabled raster drivers with the `ST_GDALDrivers()` function. This `SELECT` command lists the enabled raster drivers.

```
SELECT short_name, long_name FROM ST_GDALDrivers();
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Enabling Out-of-Database Rasters

After installing PostGIS, the default setting `POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS=0` in the `greenplum_path.sh` file deactivates support for out-of-database rasters. To enable this feature, you can set the value to true (a non-zero value) on all hosts and restart the WarehousePG cluster.

You can also activate or deactivate this feature for a WarehousePG session. For example, this `SET` command enables the feature for the current session.

```
SET postgis.enable_outdb_rasters = true;
```

> **Note** When the feature is enabled, the server configuration parameter `postgis.gdal_enabled_drivers` determines the accessible raster formats.

#### Removing PostGIS Support

You use the `DROP EXTENSION` command to remove support for the PostGIS extension and the extensions that are used with PostGIS.

Removing PostGIS support from a database does not remove these PostGIS Raster environment variables from the `greenplum_path.sh` file: `GDAL_DATA`, `POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS`, `POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS`. The environment variables are removed when you uninstall the PostGIS extension package.

> **Caution** Removing PostGIS support from a database drops PostGIS database objects from the database without warning. Users accessing PostGIS objects might interfere with the dropping of PostGIS objects. See Notes.

##### Using the DROP EXTENSION Command

Depending on the extensions you enabled for PostGIS, drop support for the extensions in the database.

1. If you enabled the address standardizer and sample rules tables, these commands drop support for those extensions from the current database.

   ```
   DROP EXTENSION IF EXISTS address_standardizer_data_us;
   DROP EXTENSION IF EXISTS address_standardizer;
   ```

2. If you enabled the TIGER geocoder and the `fuzzystrmatch` extension to use the TIGER geocoder, these commands drop support for those extensions.

   ```
   DROP EXTENSION IF EXISTS postgis_tiger_geocoder;
   DROP EXTENSION IF EXISTS fuzzystrmatch;
   ```

3. Drop support for PostGIS and PostGIS Raster. This command drops support for those extensions.

   ```
   DROP EXTENSION IF EXISTS postgis;
   ```

   If you enabled support for PostGIS and specified a specific schema with the `CREATE EXTENSION` command, you can update the `search_path` and drop the PostGIS schema if required.

##### Uninstalling the WarehousePG PostGIS Extension Package

After PostGIS support has been removed from all databases in the WarehousePG cluster, you can remove the PostGIS extension package.

After removing the package, ensure that these lines for PostGIS Raster support are removed from the `greenplum_path.sh` file.

```
export GDAL_DATA=$GPHOME/share/gdal
export POSTGIS_ENABLE_OUTDB_RASTERS=0
export POSTGIS_GDAL_ENABLED_DRIVERS=DISABLE_ALL
```

Source the `greenplum_path.sh` file and restart WarehousePG. This command restarts WarehousePG.

```
gpstop -ra
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Notes

Removing PostGIS support from a database drops PostGIS objects from the database. Dropping the PostGIS objects cascades to objects that reference the PostGIS objects. Before removing PostGIS support, ensure that no users are accessing the database. Users accessing PostGIS objects might interfere with dropping PostGIS objects.

For example, this `CREATE TABLE` command creates a table with column `b` that is defined with the PostGIS `geometry` data type.

```
# CREATE TABLE test(a int, b geometry) DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;
```

This is the table definition in a database with PostGIS enabled.

```
# \d test
 Table "public.test"
 Column |   Type   | Modifiers
--------+----------+-----------
 a      | integer  |
 b      | geometry |
Distributed randomly
```

This is the table definition in a database after PostGIS support has been removed.

```
# \d test
  Table "public.test"
 Column |  Type   | Modifiers
--------+---------+-----------
 a      | integer |
Distributed randomly
```

### Usage

The following example SQL statements create non-OpenGIS tables and geometries.

```
CREATE TABLE geom_test ( gid int4, geom geometry,
  name varchar(25) );

INSERT INTO geom_test ( gid, geom, name )
  VALUES ( 1, 'POLYGON((0 0 0,0 5 0,5 5 0,5 0 0,0 0 0))', '3D Square');
INSERT INTO geom_test ( gid, geom, name )
  VALUES ( 2, 'LINESTRING(1 1 1,5 5 5,7 7 5)', '3D Line' );
INSERT INTO geom_test ( gid, geom, name )
  VALUES ( 3, 'MULTIPOINT(3 4,8 9)', '2D Aggregate Point' );

SELECT * from geom_test WHERE geom &&
  Box3D(ST_GeomFromEWKT('LINESTRING(2 2 0, 3 3 0)'));
```

The following example SQL statements create a table and add a geometry column to the table with a SRID integer value that references an entry in the `SPATIAL_REF_SYS` table. The `INSERT` statements add two geopoints to the table.

```
CREATE TABLE geotest (id INT4, name VARCHAR(32) );
SELECT AddGeometryColumn('geotest','geopoint', 4326,'POINT',2);

INSERT INTO geotest (id, name, geopoint)
  VALUES (1, 'Olympia', ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(-122.90 46.97)', 4326));
INSERT INTO geotest (id, name, geopoint)
  VALUES (2, 'Renton', ST_GeometryFromText('POINT(-122.22 47.50)', 4326));

SELECT name,ST_AsText(geopoint) FROM geotest;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Spatial Indexes

PostgreSQL provides support for GiST spatial indexing. The GiST scheme offers indexing even on large objects. It uses a system of lossy indexing in which smaller objects act as proxies for larger ones in the index. In the PostGIS indexing system, all objects use their bounding boxes as proxies in the index.

##### Building a Spatial Index

You can build a GiST index as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX indexname
  ON tablename
  USING GIST ( geometryfield );
```

### PostGIS Extension Support and Limitations

This section describes WarehousePG PostGIS extension feature support and limitations.

- Supported PostGIS Data Types
- Supported PostGIS Raster Data Types
- Supported PostGIS Index
- PostGIS Extension Limitations

In general, the WarehousePG PostGIS extension does not support the following features:

- The PostGIS topology extension `postgis_topology`
- The PostGIS 3D and geoprocessing extension `postgis_sfcgal`
- A small number of user defined functions and aggregates
- PostGIS long transactions

For the PostGIS extensions supported by WarehousePG PostGIS, see WarehousePG PostGIS Extension.

#### Supported PostGIS Data Types

WarehousePG PostGIS extension supports these PostGIS data types:

- box2d
- box3d
- geometry
- geography

For a list of PostGIS data types, operators, and functions, see thePostGIS reference documentation.

#### Supported PostGIS Raster Data Types

WarehousePG PostGIS supports these PostGIS Raster data types.

- geomval
- addbandarg
- rastbandarg
- raster
- reclassarg
- summarystats
- unionarg

For information about PostGIS Raster data Management, queries, and applications, seehttps://postgis.net/docs/manual-2.5/using_raster_dataman.html.

For a list of PostGIS Raster data types, operators, and functions, see thePostGIS Raster reference documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Supported PostGIS Index

WarehousePG PostGIS extension supports the GiST (Generalized Search Tree) index.

#### PostGIS Extension Limitations

This section lists the WarehousePG PostGIS extension limitations for user-defined functions (UDFs), data types, and aggregates.

- Data types and functions related to PostGIS topology functionality, such as TopoGeometry, are not supported by WarehousePG.
- These PostGIS aggregates are not supported by WarehousePG:
    - ST_Collect
    - ST_MakeLine

  On a WarehousePG with multiple segments, the aggregate might return different answers if it is called several times repeatedly.
- WarehousePG does not support PostGIS long transactions.

  PostGIS relies on triggers and the PostGIS table `public.authorization_table` for long transaction support. When PostGIS attempts to acquire locks for long transactions, WarehousePG reports errors citing that the function cannot access the relation, `authorization_table`.
- WarehousePG does not support type modifiers for user defined types.

  The workaround is to use the `AddGeometryColumn` function for PostGIS geometry. For example, a table with PostGIS geometry cannot be created with the following SQL command:

  ```
  CREATE TABLE geometries(id INTEGER, geom geometry(LINESTRING));
  ```

  Use the `AddGeometryColumn` function to add PostGIS geometry to a table. For example, these following SQL statements create a table and add PostGIS geometry to the table:

  ```
  CREATE TABLE geometries(id INTEGER);
  SELECT AddGeometryColumn('public', 'geometries', 'geom', 0, 'LINESTRING', 2);
  ```
- The `_postgis_index_extent` function is not supported on WarehousePG 6 due to its dependence on spatial index operations.
- The `<->` operator ( `geometry <-> geometry` ) returns the centroid/centroid distance for WarehousePG 6.
- The TIGER geocoder extension is supported. However, upgrading the TIGER geocoder extension is not supported.
- The `standardize_address()` function uses `lex`, `gaz` or `rules` tables as parameters. If you are using tables apart from `us_lex`, `us_gaz` or `us_rules`, you should create them with the distribution policy `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` to work for WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.7.4 Procedural Languages

WarehousePG supports a pluggable procedural language architecture by virtue of its PostgreSQL heritage. This allows user-defined functions to be written in languages other than SQL and C. It may be more convenient to develop analytics functions in a familiar procedural language compared to using only SQL constructs. For example, suppose you have existing Python code that you want to use on data in WarehousePG, you can wrap this code in a PL/Python function and call it from SQL.

The available WarehousePG procedural languages are typically packaged as extensions. You register a language in a database using the CREATE EXTENSION command. You remove a language from a database with DROP EXTENSION.

The WarehousePG distribution supports the following procedural languages; refer to the linked language documentation for installation and usage instructions:

- PL/Perl
- PL/pgSQL
- PL/Python

PL/Java and PL/R are also supported but require a separate package install.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.7.4.1 PL/Java Language

This section contains an overview of the WarehousePG PL/Java language.


- About PL/Java
- About WarehousePG PL/Java
- Installing Java
- Installing PL/Java
- Enabling PL/Java and Installing JAR Files
- Uninstalling PL/Java
- Writing PL/Java functions
- Using JDBC
- Exception Handling
- Savepoints
- Logging
- Security
- Some PL/Java Issues and Solutions
- Example
- References


#### About PL/Java

With the WarehousePG PL/Java extension, you can write Java methods using your favorite Java IDE and install the JAR files that contain those methods into WarehousePG.

WarehousePG PL/Java package is based on the open source PL/Java 1.5.0. WarehousePG PL/Java provides the following features.

- Ability to run PL/Java functions with Java 8 or Java 11.
- Ability to specify Java runtime.
- Standardized utilities (modeled after the SQL 2003 proposal) to install and maintain Java code in the database.
- Standardized mappings of parameters and result. Complex types as well as sets are supported.
- An embedded, high performance, JDBC driver utilizing the internal WarehousePG SPI routines.
- Metadata support for the JDBC driver. Both `DatabaseMetaData` and `ResultSetMetaData` are included.
- The ability to return a ResultSet from a query as an alternative to building a ResultSet row by row.
- Full support for savepoints and exception handling.
- The ability to use IN, INOUT, and OUT parameters.
- Two separate WarehousePG languages:
    - pljava, TRUSTED PL/Java language
    - pljavau, UNTRUSTED PL/Java language

- Transaction and Savepoint listeners enabling code execution when a transaction or savepoint is committed or rolled back.
- Integration with GNU GCJ on selected platforms.

A function in SQL will appoint a static method in a Java class. In order for the function to run, the appointed class must available on the class path specified by the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `pljava_classpath`. The PL/Java extension adds a set of functions that helps installing and maintaining the java classes. Classes are stored in normal Java archives, JAR files. A JAR file can optionally contain a deployment descriptor that in turn contains SQL commands to be run when the JAR is deployed or undeployed. The functions are modeled after the standards proposed for SQL 2003.

PL/Java implements a standardized way of passing parameters and return values. Complex types and sets are passed using the standard JDBC ResultSet class.

A JDBC driver is included in PL/Java. This driver calls WarehousePG internal SPI routines. The driver is essential since it is common for functions to make calls back to the database to fetch data. When PL/Java functions fetch data, they must use the same transactional boundaries that are used by the main function that entered PL/Java execution context.

PL/Java is optimized for performance. The Java virtual machine runs within the same process as the backend to minimize call overhead. PL/Java is designed with the objective to enable the power of Java to the database itself so that database intensive business logic can run as close to the actual data as possible.

The standard Java Native Interface (JNI) is used when bridging calls between the backend and the Java VM.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## About WarehousePG PL/Java

There are a few key differences between the implementation of PL/Java in standard PostgreSQL and WarehousePG.

### Functions

The following functions are not supported in WarehousePG. The classpath is handled differently in a distributed WarehousePG environment than in the PostgreSQL environment.

- `sqlj.install_jar`
- `sqlj.replace_jar`
- `sqlj.remove_jar`
- `sqlj.get_classpath`
- `sqlj.set_classpath`

WarehousePG uses the `pljava_classpath` server configuration parameter in place of the `sqlj.set_classpath` function.

### Server Configuration Parameters

The following server configuration parameters are used by PL/Java in WarehousePG. These parameters replace the `pljava.*` parameters that are used in the standard PostgreSQL PL/Java implementation:

- `pljava_classpath`

  A colon ( `:` ) separated list of the jar files containing the Java classes used in any PL/Java functions. The jar files must be installed in the same locations on all WarehousePG hosts. With the trusted PL/Java language handler, jar file paths must be relative to the `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java/` directory. With the untrusted language handler (javaU language tag), paths may be relative to `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java/` or absolute.

  The server configuration parameter `pljava_classpath_insecure` controls whether the server configuration parameter `pljava_classpath` can be set by a user without WarehousePG superuser privileges. When `pljava_classpath_insecure` is enabled, WarehousePG developers who are working on PL/Java functions do not have to be database superusers to change `pljava_classpath` .

  > **Caution** Enabling `pljava_classpath_insecure` exposes a security risk by giving non-administrator database users the ability to run unauthorized Java methods.

- `pljava_statement_cache_size`

  Sets the size in KB of the Most Recently Used (MRU) cache for prepared statements.

- `pljava_release_lingering_savepoints`

  If `TRUE` , lingering savepoints will be released on function exit. If `FALSE` , they will be rolled back.

- `pljava_vmoptions`

  Defines the start up options for the WarehousePG Java VM.

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about the WarehousePG server configuration parameters.

## Installing Java

PL/Java requires a Java runtime environment on each WarehousePG host. Ensure that the same Java environment is at the same location on all hosts: masters and segments. The command `java -version` displays the Java version.

The commands that you use to install Java depend on the host system operating system and Java version. This list describes how to install OpenJDK 8 or 11 (Java 8 JDK or Java 11 JDK) on RHEL/CentOS.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- RHEL 7/CentOS 7 - This `yum` command installs OpenJDK 8 or 11.

  ```
  $ sudo yum install java-<version>-openjdk-devel
  ```

  For OpenJDK 8 the version is `1.8.0`, for OpenJDK 11 the version is `11`.

- RHEL 6/CentOS 6

  - Java 8 - This `yum` command installs OpenJDK 8.

    ```
    $ sudo yum install java-1.8.0-openjdk-devel
    ```

  - Java 11 - Download the OpenJDK 11 tar file from http://jdk.java.net/archive/ and install and configure the operating system to use Java 11.

    1. This example `tar` command installs the OpenJDK 11 in `/usr/lib/jvm`.

       ```
       $ sudo tar xzf openjdk-11.0.2_linux-x64_bin.tar.gz --directory /usr/lib/jvm
       ```

    2. Run these two commands to add OpenJDK 11 to the `update-alternatives` command. The `update-alternatives` command maintains symbolic links that determine the default version of operating system commands.

       ```
       $ sudo sh -c 'for bin in /usr/lib/jvm/jdk-11.0.2/bin/*; do update-alternatives --install
       /usr/bin/$(basename $bin) $(basename $bin) $bin 100; done'
       $ sudo sh -c 'for bin in /usr/lib/jvm/jdk-11.0.2/bin/*; do update-alternatives --set $(basename $bin)
       $bin; done'
       ```

       The second command returns some `failed to read link` errors that can be ignored.

After installing OpenJDK on a RHEL or CentOS system, run this `update-alternatives` command to change the default Java. Enter the number that represents the OpenJDK version to use as the default.

```
$ sudo update-alternatives --config java
```

> **Note** When configuring host systems, you can use the gpssh utility to run bash shell commands on multiple remote hosts.

### Installing PL/Java

For WarehousePG, the PL/Java extension is available as a package.

To install and use PL/Java:

1. Specify the Java version used by PL/Java. Set the environment variables `JAVA_HOME` and `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` in the `greenplum_path.sh`.
2. Install the WarehousePG PL/Java extension.
3. Enable the language for each database where you intend to use PL/Java.
4. Install user-created JAR files containing Java methods into the same directory on all WarehousePG hosts.
5. Add the name of the JAR file to the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `pljava_classpath`. The parameter lists the installed JAR files. For information about the parameter, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Installing the WarehousePG PL/Java Extension

Before you install the PL/Java extension, make sure that your WarehousePG is running, you have sourced `greenplum_path.sh`, and that the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` and `$GPHOME` variables are set.

1. Download the PL/Java extension package then copy it to the coordinator host.

2. Install the software extension package

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Ensure that the environment variables `JAVA_HOME` and `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` are set properly in `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh` on all WarehousePG hosts.

    - Set the `JAVA_HOME` variable to the directory where your Java Runtime is installed. For example, for Oracle JRE this directory would be `/usr/java/latest`. For OpenJDK, the directory is `/usr/lib/jvm`. This example changes the environment variable to use `/usr/lib/jvm`.

      ```
      export JAVA_HOME=/usr/lib/jvm
      ```

    - Set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` to include the directory with the Java server runtime libraries. PL/Java depends on `libjvm.so` and the shared object should be in your `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`. By default, `libjvm.so` is available in `$JAVA_HOME/lib/server` with JDK 11, or in `$JAVA_HOME/jre/lib/amd64/server` with JDK 8. This example adds the JDK 11 directory to the environment variable.

      ```
      export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$GPHOME/lib:$GPHOME/ext/python/lib:$JAVA_HOME/lib/server:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
      ```

    This example gpscp command copies the file to all hosts specified in the file `gphosts_file`.

    ```
    $ gpscp -f gphosts_file $GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh
    =:$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh
    ```

4. Reload `greenplum_path.sh`.

    ```
    $ source $GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh
    ```

5. Restart WarehousePG.

    ```
    $ gpstop -r
    ```

### Enabling PL/Java and Installing JAR Files

Perform the following steps as the WarehousePG administrator `gpadmin`.

1. Enable PL/Java in a database by running the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to register the language. For example, this command enables PL/Java in the `testdb` database:

    ```
    $ psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION pljava;'
    ```

    > **Note** The PL/Java `install.sql` script, used in previous releases to register the language, is deprecated.

2. Copy your Java archives (JAR files) to the same directory on all WarehousePG hosts. This example uses the WarehousePG `gpscp` utility to copy the file `myclasses.jar` to the directory `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java/`:

    ```
    $ gpscp -f gphosts_file myclasses.jar
    =:/usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/java/
    ```

    The file `gphosts_file` contains a list of the WarehousePG hosts.

3. Set the `pljava_classpath` server configuration parameter in the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file. For this example, the parameter value is a colon (:) separated list of the JAR files. For example:

    ```
    $ gpconfig -c pljava_classpath -v 'examples.jar:myclasses.jar'
    ```

    The file `examples.jar` is installed when you install the PL/Java extension package.

    > **Note** If you install JAR files in a directory other than `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java/`, you must specify the absolute path to the JAR file. Each JAR file must be in the same location on all WarehousePG hosts. For more information about specifying the location of JAR files, see the information about the `pljava_classpath` server configuration parameter in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Reload the `postgresql.conf` file.

```
$ gpstop -u
```

5. (optional) WarehousePG provides an `examples.sql` file containing sample PL/Java functions that you can use for testing. Run the commands in this file to create the test functions (which use the Java classes in `examples.jar`).

```
$ psql -f $GPHOME/share/postgresql/pljava/examples.sql
```

### Uninstalling PL/Java

- Remove PL/Java Support for a Database
- Uninstall the Java JAR files and Software Package

#### Remove PL/Java Support for a Database

Use the `DROP EXTENSION` command to remove support for PL/Java from a database. For example, this command deactivates the PL/Java language in the `testdb` database:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'DROP EXTENSION pljava;'
```

The default command fails if any existing objects (such as functions) depend on the language. Specify the `CASCADE` option to also drop all dependent objects, including functions that you created with PL/Java.

> **Note** The PL/Java `uninstall.sql` script, used in previous releases to remove the language registration, is deprecated.

#### Uninstall the Java JAR files and Software Package

If no databases have PL/Java as a registered language, remove the Java JAR files and uninstall the WarehousePG PL/Java extension.

1. Remove the `pljava_classpath` server configuration parameter from the `postgresql.conf` file on all WarehousePG hosts. For example:

```
$ gpconfig -r pljava_classpath
```

2. Remove the JAR files from the directories where they were installed on all WarehousePG hosts. For information about JAR file installation directories, see Enabling PL/Java and Installing JAR Files.

3. Uninstall the PL/Java extension.

4. Remove any updates you made to `greenplum_path.sh` for PL/Java.

5. Reload `greenplum_path.sh` and restart the database

```
$ source $GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh
$ gpstop -r
```

### Writing PL/Java functions

Information about writing functions with PL/Java.

- SQL Declaration
- Type Mapping
- NULL Handling
- Complex Types
- Returning Complex Types
- Returning Complex Types

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Functions That Return Sets
- Returning a SETOF <scalar type>
- Returning a SETOF <complex type>

#### SQL Declaration

A Java function is declared with the name of a class and a static method on that class. The class will be resolved using the classpath that has been defined for the schema where the function is declared. If no classpath has been defined for that schema, the public schema is used. If no classpath is found there either, the class is resolved using the system classloader.

The following function can be declared to access the static method `getProperty` on `java.lang.System` class:

```
CREATE FUNCTION getsysprop(VARCHAR)
  RETURNS VARCHAR
  AS 'java.lang.System.getProperty'
  LANGUAGE java;
```

Run the following command to return the Java `user.home` property:

```
SELECT getsysprop('user.home');
```

#### Type Mapping

Scalar types are mapped in a straight forward way. This table lists the current mappings.

| PostgreSQL | Java |
|---|---|
| bool | boolean |
| char | byte |
| int2 | short |
| int4 | int |
| int8 | long |
| varchar | java.lang.String |
| text | java.lang.String |
| bytea | byte[ ] |
| date | java.sql.Date |
| time | java.sql.Time (stored value treated as local time) |
| timetz | java.sql.Time |
| timestamp | java.sql.Timestamp (stored value treated as local time) |
| timestamptz | java.sql.Timestamp |
| complex | java.sql.ResultSet |
| setof complex | java.sql.ResultSet |

All other types are mapped to java.lang.String and will utilize the standard `textin` / `textout` routines registered for respective type.

#### NULL Handling

The scalar types that map to Java primitives can not be passed as `NULL` values. To pass `NULL` values, those types can have an alternative mapping. You enable this mapping by explicitly denoting it in the method reference.

```
CREATE FUNCTION trueIfEvenOrNull(integer)
  RETURNS bool
  AS 'foo.fee.Fum.trueIfEvenOrNull(java.lang.Integer)'
  LANGUAGE java;
```

The Java code would be similar to this:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
package foo.fee;
public class Fum
{
  static boolean trueIfEvenOrNull(Integer value)
  {
    return (value == null)
      ? true
      : (value.intValue() % 2) == 0;
  }
}
```

The following two statements both yield true:

```
SELECT trueIfEvenOrNull(NULL);
SELECT trueIfEvenOrNull(4);
```

In order to return `NULL` values from a Java method, you use the object type that corresponds to the primitive (for example, you return `java.lang.Integer` instead of `int`). The PL/Java resolve mechanism finds the method regardless. Since Java cannot have different return types for methods with the same name, this does not introduce any ambiguity.

#### Complex Types

A complex type will always be passed as a read-only `java.sql.ResultSet` with exactly one row. The ResultSet is positioned on its row so a call to `next()` should not be made. The values of the complex type are retrieved using the standard getter methods of the ResultSet.

Example:

```
CREATE TYPE complexTest
  AS(base integer, incbase integer, ctime timestamptz);
CREATE FUNCTION useComplexTest(complexTest)
  RETURNS VARCHAR
  AS 'foo.fee.Fum.useComplexTest'
  IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE java;
```

In the Java class `Fum`, we add the following static method:

```
public static String useComplexTest(ResultSet complexTest)
throws SQLException
{
  int base = complexTest.getInt(1);
  int incbase = complexTest.getInt(2);
  Timestamp ctime = complexTest.getTimestamp(3);
  return "Base = \"" + base +
    "\", incbase = \"" + incbase +
    "\", ctime = \"" + ctime + "\"";
}
```

#### Returning Complex Types

Java does not stipulate any way to create a ResultSet. Hence, returning a ResultSet is not an option. The SQL-2003 draft suggests that a complex return value should be handled as an IN/OUT parameter. PL/Java implements a ResultSet that way. If you declare a function that returns a complex type, you will need to use a Java method with boolean return type with a last parameter of type `java.sql.ResultSet`. The parameter will be initialized to an empty updateable ResultSet that contains exactly one row.

Assume that the `complexTest` type in previous section has been created.

```
CREATE FUNCTION createComplexTest(int, int)
  RETURNS complexTest
  AS 'foo.fee.Fum.createComplexTest'
  IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE java;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The PL/Java method resolve will now find the following method in the `Fum` class:

```
public static boolean complexReturn(int base, int increment,
  ResultSet receiver)
throws SQLException
{
  receiver.updateInt(1, base);
  receiver.updateInt(2, base + increment);
  receiver.updateTimestamp(3, new
    Timestamp(System.currentTimeMillis()));
  return true;
}
```

The return value denotes if the receiver should be considered as a valid tuple (true) or NULL (false).

#### Functions That Return Sets

When returning result sets, you should not build a result set before returning it, because building a large result set would consume a large amount of resources. It is better to produce one row at a time. Incidentally, that is what the WarehousePG backend expects a function with SETOF return to do. You can return a SETOF a scalar type such as an `int`, `float` or `varchar`, or you can return a SETOF a complex type.

#### Returning a SETOF <scalar type>

In order to return a set of a scalar type, you need create a Java method that returns something that implements the `java.util.Iterator` interface. Here is an example of a method that returns a SETOF `varchar`:

```
CREATE FUNCTION javatest.getSystemProperties()
  RETURNS SETOF varchar
  AS 'foo.fee.Bar.getNames'
  IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE java;
```

This simple Java method returns an iterator:

```
package foo.fee;
import java.util.Iterator;

public class Bar
{
    public static Iterator getNames()
    {
        ArrayList names = new ArrayList();
        names.add("Lisa");
        names.add("Bob");
        names.add("Bill");
        names.add("Sally");
        return names.iterator();
    }
}
```

#### Returning a SETOF <complex type>

A method returning a SETOF <complex type> must use either the interface `org.postgresql.pljava.ResultSetProvider` or `org.postgresql.pljava.ResultSetHandle`. The reason for having two interfaces is that they cater for optimal handling of two distinct use cases. The former is for cases when you want to dynamically create each row that is to be returned from the SETOF function. The latter makes sense in cases where you want to return the result of a query after it runs.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Using the ResultSetProvider Interface

This interface has two methods. The boolean `assignRowValues(java.sql.ResultSet tupleBuilder, int rowNumber)` and the `void close()` method. The WarehousePG query evaluator will call the `assignRowValues` repeatedly until it returns false or until the evaluator decides that it does not need any more rows. Then it calls close.

You can use this interface the following way:

```
CREATE FUNCTION javatest.listComplexTests(int, int)
  RETURNS SETOF complexTest
  AS 'foo.fee.Fum.listComplexTest'
  IMMUTABLE LANGUAGE java;
```

The function maps to a static java method that returns an instance that implements the `ResultSetProvider` interface.

```
public class Fum implements ResultSetProvider
{
  private final int m_base;
  private final int m_increment;
  public Fum(int base, int increment)
  {
    m_base = base;
    m_increment = increment;
  }
  public boolean assignRowValues(ResultSet receiver, int
currentRow)
  throws SQLException
  {
    // Stop when we reach 12 rows.
    //
    if(currentRow >= 12)
      return false;
    receiver.updateInt(1, m_base);
    receiver.updateInt(2, m_base + m_increment * currentRow);
    receiver.updateTimestamp(3, new
Timestamp(System.currentTimeMillis()));
    return true;
  }
  public void close()
  {
   // Nothing needed in this example
  }
  public static ResultSetProvider listComplexTests(int base,
int increment)
  throws SQLException
  {
    return new Fum(base, increment);
  }
}
```

The `listComplextTests` method is called once. It may return `NULL` if no results are available or an instance of the `ResultSetProvider`. Here the Java class `Fum` implements this interface so it returns an instance of itself. The method `assignRowValues` will then be called repeatedly until it returns false. At that time, close will be called.

#### Using the ResultSetHandle Interface

This interface is similar to the `ResultSetProvider` interface in that it has a `close()` method that will be called at the end. But instead of having the evaluator call a method that builds one row at a time, this method has a method that returns a ResultSet. The query evaluator will iterate over this set and deliver the RestulSet contents, one tuple at a time, to the caller until a call to `next()` returns false or the evaluator decides that no more rows are needed.

Here is an example that runs a query using a statement that it obtained using the default connection. The SQL suitable for the deployment descriptor looks like this:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE FUNCTION javatest.listSupers()
  RETURNS SETOF pg_user
  AS 'org.postgresql.pljava.example.Users.listSupers'
  LANGUAGE java;
CREATE FUNCTION javatest.listNonSupers()
  RETURNS SETOF pg_user
  AS 'org.postgresql.pljava.example.Users.listNonSupers'
  LANGUAGE java;
```

And in the Java package `org.postgresql.pljava.example` a class `Users` is added:

```
public class Users implements ResultSetHandle
{
  private final String m_filter;
  private Statement m_statement;
  public Users(String filter)
  {
    m_filter = filter;
  }
  public ResultSet getResultSet()
  throws SQLException
  {
    m_statement =
      DriverManager.getConnection("jdbc:default:connection").cr
eateStatement();
    return m_statement.executeQuery("SELECT * FROM pg_user
       WHERE " + m_filter);
  }

  public void close()
  throws SQLException
  {
    m_statement.close();
  }

  public static ResultSetHandle listSupers()
  {
    return new Users("usesuper = true");
  }

  public static ResultSetHandle listNonSupers()
  {
    return new Users("usesuper = false");
  }
}
```

### Using JDBC

PL/Java contains a JDBC driver that maps to the PostgreSQL SPI functions. A connection that maps to the current transaction can be obtained using the following statement:

```
Connection conn =
  DriverManager.getConnection("jdbc:default:connection");
```

After obtaining a connection, you can prepare and run statements similar to other JDBC connections. These are limitations for the PL/Java JDBC driver:

- The transaction cannot be managed in any way. Thus, you cannot use methods on the connection such as:
  - `commit()`
  - `rollback()`
  - `setAutoCommit()`
  - `setTransactionIsolation()`

- Savepoints are available with some restrictions. A savepoint cannot outlive the function in which it was set and it must be rolled back or released by that same function.
- A ResultSet returned from `executeQuery()` are always `FETCH_FORWARD` and `CONCUR_READ_ONLY`.
- Metadata is only available in PL/Java 1.1 or higher.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `CallableStatement` (for stored procedures) is not implemented.
- The types `Clob` or `Blob` are not completely implemented, they need more work. The types `byte[]` and `String` can be used for `bytea` and `text` respectively.

### Exception Handling

You can catch and handle an exception in the WarehousePG backend just like any other exception. The backend ErrorData structure is exposed as a property in a class called `org.postgresql.pljava.ServerException` (derived from `java.sql.SQLException`) and the Java try/catch mechanism is synchronized with the backend mechanism.

> **Important** You will not be able to continue running backend functions until your function has returned and the error has been propagated when the backend has generated an exception unless you have used a savepoint. When a savepoint is rolled back, the exceptional condition is reset and you can continue your execution.

### Savepoints

WarehousePG savepoints are exposed using the java.sql.Connection interface. Two restrictions apply.

- A savepoint must be rolled back or released in the function where it was set.
- A savepoint must not outlive the function where it was set.

### Logging

PL/Java uses the standard Java Logger. Hence, you can write things like:

```
Logger.getAnonymousLogger().info( "Time is " + new
Date(System.currentTimeMillis()));
```

At present, the logger uses a handler that maps the current state of the WarehousePG configuration setting `log_min_messages` to a valid Logger level and that outputs all messages using the WarehousePG backend function `elog()`.

> **Note** The `log_min_messages` setting is read from the database the first time a PL/Java function in a session is run. On the Java side, the setting does not change after the first PL/Java function execution in a specific session until the WarehousePG session that is working with PL/Java is restarted.

The following mapping apply between the Logger levels and the WarehousePG backend levels.

| java.util.logging.Level | WarehousePG Level |
|---|---|
| SEVERE ERROR | ERROR |
| WARNING | WARNING |
| CONFIG | LOG |
| INFO | INFO |
| FINE | DEBUG1 |
| FINER | DEBUG2 |
| FINEST | DEBUG3 |

### Security

- Installation
- Trusted Language

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Installation

Only a database superuser can install PL/Java. The PL/Java utility functions are installed using SECURITY DEFINER so that they run with the access permissions that were granted to the creator of the functions.

#### Trusted Language

PL/Java is a *trusted* language. The trusted PL/Java language has no access to the file system as stipulated by PostgreSQL definition of a trusted language. Any database user can create and access functions in a trusted language.

PL/Java also installs a language handler for the language `javau`. This version is *not trusted* and only a superuser can create new functions that use it. Any user can call the functions.

To install both the trusted and untrusted languages, register the extension by running the `'CREATE EXTENSION pljava'` command when Enabling PL/Java and Installing JAR Files.

To install only the trusted language, register the extension by running the `'CREATE EXTENSION pljavat'` command when Enabling PL/Java and Installing JAR Files.

### Some PL/Java Issues and Solutions

When writing the PL/Java, mapping the JVM into the same process-space as the WarehousePG backend code, some concerns have been raised regarding multiple threads, exception handling, and memory management. Here are brief descriptions explaining how these issues where resolved.

- Multi-threading
- Exception Handling
- Java Garbage Collector Versus palloc() and Stack Allocation

#### Multi-threading

Java is inherently multi-threaded. The WarehousePG backend is not. There is nothing stopping a developer from utilizing multiple Threads class in the Java code. Finalizers that call out to the backend might have been spawned from a background Garbage Collection thread. Several third party Java-packages that are likely to be used make use of multiple threads. How can this model coexist with the WarehousePG backend in the same process?

##### Solution

The solution is simple. PL/Java defines a special object called the `Backend.THREADLOCK`. When PL/Java is initialized, the backend immediately grabs this objects monitor (i.e. it will synchronize on this object). When the backend calls a Java function, the monitor is released and then immediately regained when the call returns. All calls from Java out to backend code are synchronized on the same lock. This ensures that only one thread at a time can call the backend from Java, and only at a time when the backend is awaiting the return of a Java function call.

#### Exception Handling

Java makes frequent use of try/catch/finally blocks. WarehousePG sometimes use an exception mechanism that calls `longjmp` to transfer control to a known state. Such a jump would normally effectively bypass the JVM.

##### Solution

The backend now allows errors to be caught using the macros `PG_TRY/PG_CATCH` / `PG_END_TRY` and in the catch block, the error can be examined using the ErrorData structure. PL/Java implements a `java.sql.SQLException` subclass called `org.postgresql.pljava.ServerException`. The ErrorData can be retrieved and examined from that exception. A catch handler is allowed to issue a rollback to a savepoint. After a successful rollback, execution can continue.

#### Java Garbage Collector Versus palloc() and Stack Allocation

Primitive types are always be passed by value. This includes the `String` type (this is a must since Java uses double byte characters). Complex types are often wrapped in Java objects and passed by reference. For example, a Java object can contain a pointer to a palloc'ed or stack allocated memory and use native JNI calls to extract and manipulate data. Such data will become stale once a call has ended. Further attempts to access such data will at best give very unpredictable results but more likely cause a memory fault and a crash.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Solution

The PL/Java contains code that ensures that stale pointers are cleared when the MemoryContext or stack where they were allocated goes out of scope. The Java wrapper objects might live on but any attempt to use them will result in a stale native handle exception.

### Example

The following simple Java example creates a JAR file that contains a single method and runs the method.

> **Note** The example requires Java SDK to compile the Java file.

The following method returns a substring.

```
{
public static String substring(String text, int beginIndex,
  int endIndex)
    {
    return text.substring(beginIndex, endIndex);
    }
}
```

Enter the java code in a text file `example.class`.

Contents of the file `manifest.txt`:

```
Manifest-Version: 1.0
Main-Class: Example
Specification-Title: "Example"
Specification-Version: "1.0"
Created-By: 1.6.0_35-b10-428-11M3811
Build-Date: 01/20/2013 10:09 AM
```

Compile the java code:

```
javac *.java
```

Create a JAR archive named analytics.jar that contains the class file and the manifest file MANIFEST file in the JAR.

```
jar cfm analytics.jar manifest.txt *.class
```

Upload the jar file to the WarehousePG coordinator host.

Run the `gpscp` utility to copy the jar file to the WarehousePG Java directory. Use the `-f` option to specify the file that contains a list of the coordinator and segment hosts.

```
gpscp -f gphosts_file analytics.jar
=:/usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/java/
```

Use the `gpconfig` utility to set the WarehousePG `pljava_classpath` server configuration parameter. The parameter lists the installed jar files.

```
gpconfig -c pljava_classpath -v 'analytics.jar'
```

Run the `gpstop` utility with the `-u` option to reload the configuration files.

```
gpstop -u
```

From the `psql` command line, run the following command to show the installed jar files.

```
show pljava_classpath
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following SQL commands create a table and define a Java function to test the method in the jar file:

```
create table temp (a varchar) distributed randomly;
insert into temp values ('my string');
--Example function
create or replace function java_substring(varchar, int, int)
returns varchar as 'Example.substring' language java;
--Example execution
select java_substring(a, 1, 5) from temp;
```

You can place the contents in a file, `mysample.sql` and run the command from a `psql` command line:

```
> \i mysample.sql
```

The output is similar to this:

```
java_substring
----------------
 y st
(1 row)
```

### References

The PL/Java Github wiki page - https://github.com/tada/pljava/wiki.

PL/Java 1.5.0 release - https://github.com/tada/pljava/tree/REL1_5_STABLE.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7.4.2 PL/Perl Language

This chapter includes the following information:


- About WarehousePG PL/Perl
- WarehousePG PL/Perl Limitations
- Trusted/Untrusted Language
- Developing Functions with PL/Perl


### About WarehousePG PL/Perl

With the WarehousePG PL/Perl extension, you can write user-defined functions in Perl that take advantage of its advanced string manipulation operators and functions. PL/Perl provides both trusted and untrusted variants of the language.

PL/Perl is embedded in your WarehousePG distribution. WarehousePG PL/Perl requires Perl to be installed on the system of each database host.

Refer to the PostgreSQL PL/Perl documentation for additional information.

### WarehousePG PL/Perl Limitations

Limitations of the WarehousePG PL/Perl language include:

- WarehousePG does not support PL/Perl triggers.
- PL/Perl functions cannot call each other directly.
- SPI is not yet fully implemented.
- If you fetch very large data sets using `spi_exec_query()`, you should be aware that these will all go into memory. You can avoid this problem by using `spi_query()/spi_fetchrow()`. A similar problem occurs if a set-returning function passes a large set of rows back to WarehousePG via a `return` statement. Use `return_next` for each row returned to avoid this problem.
- When a session ends normally, not due to a fatal error, PL/Perl runs any `END` blocks that you have defined. No other actions are currently performed. (File handles are not automatically flushed and objects are not automatically destroyed.)

### Trusted/Untrusted Language

PL/Perl includes trusted and untrusted language variants.

The PL/Perl trusted language is named `plperl`. The trusted PL/Perl language restricts file system operations, as well as `require`, `use`, and other statements that could potentially interact with the operating system or database server process. With these restrictions in place, any WarehousePG user can create and run functions in the trusted `plperl` language.

The PL/Perl untrusted language is named `plperlu`. You cannot restrict the operation of functions you create with the `plperlu` untrusted language. Only database superusers have privileges to create untrusted PL/Perl user-defined functions. And only database superusers and other database users that are explicitly granted the permissions can run untrusted PL/Perl user-defined functions.

PL/Perl has limitations with respect to communication between interpreters and the number of interpreters running in a single process. Refer to the PostgreSQL Trusted and Untrusted PL/Perl documentation for additional information.

### Enabling and Removing PL/Perl Support

You must register the PL/Perl language with a database before you can create and run a PL/Perl user-defined function within that database. To remove PL/Perl support, you must explicitly remove the extension from each database in which it was registered. You must be a database superuser or owner to register or remove trusted languages in WarehousePGs.

> **Note** Only database superusers may register or remove support for the *untrusted* PL/Perl language `plperlu`.

Before you enable or remove PL/Perl support in a database, ensure that:

- Your WarehousePG is running.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- You have sourced `greenplum_path.sh`.
- You have set the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` and `$GPHOME` environment variables.

#### Enabling PL/Perl Support

For each database in which you want to enable PL/Perl, register the language using the SQL CREATE EXTENSION command. For example, run the following command as the `gpadmin` user to register the trusted PL/Perl language for the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION plperl;'
```

#### Removing PL/Perl Support

To remove support for PL/Perl from a database, run the SQL DROP EXTENSION command. For example, run the following command as the `gpadmin` user to remove support for the trusted PL/Perl language from the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'DROP EXTENSION plperl;'
```

The default command fails if any existing objects (such as functions) depend on the language. Specify the `CASCADE` option to also drop all dependent objects, including functions that you created with PL/Perl.

### Developing Functions with PL/Perl

You define a PL/Perl function using the standard SQL CREATE FUNCTION syntax. The body of a PL/Perl user-defined function is ordinary Perl code. The PL/Perl interpreter wraps this code inside a Perl subroutine.

You can also create an anonymous code block with PL/Perl. An anonymous code block, called with the SQL DO command, receives no arguments, and whatever value it might return is discarded. Otherwise, a PL/Perl anonymous code block behaves just like a function. Only database superusers create an anonymous code block with the untrusted `plperlu` language.

The syntax of the `CREATE FUNCTION` command requires that you write the PL/Perl function body as a string constant. While it is more convenient to use dollar-quoting, you can choose to use escape string syntax (`E''`) provided that you double any single quote marks and backslashes used in the body of the function.

PL/Perl arguments and results are handled as they are in Perl. Arguments you pass in to a PL/Perl function are accessed via the `@_` array. You return a result value with the `return` statement, or as the last expression evaluated in the function. A PL/Perl function cannot directly return a non-scalar type because you call it in a scalar context. You can return non-scalar types such as arrays, records, and sets in a PL/Perl function by returning a reference.

PL/Perl treats null argument values as "undefined". Adding the `STRICT` keyword to the `LANGUAGE` subclause instructs WarehousePG to immediately return null when any of the input arguments are null. When created as `STRICT`, the function itself need not perform null checks.

The following PL/Perl function utilizes the `STRICT` keyword to return the greater of two integers, or null if any of the inputs are null:

```
CREATE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if ($_[0] > $_[1]) { return $_[0]; }
    return $_[1];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl STRICT;

SELECT perl_max( 1, 3 );
 perl_max
----------
        3
(1 row)

SELECT perl_max( 1, null );
 perl_max
----------

(1 row)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

PL/Perl considers anything in a function argument that is not a reference to be a string, the standard WarehousePG external text representation. The argument values supplied to a PL/Perl function are simply the input arguments converted to text form (just as if they had been displayed by a `SELECT` statement). In cases where the function argument is not an ordinary numeric or text type, you must convert the WarehousePG type to a form that is more usable by Perl. Conversely, the `return` and `return_next` statements accept any string that is an acceptable input format for the function's declared return type.

Refer to the PostgreSQL PL/Perl Functions and Arguments documentation for additional information, including composite type and result set manipulation.

#### Built-in PL/Perl Functions

PL/Perl includes built-in functions to access the database, including those to prepare and perform queries and manipulate query results. The language also includes utility functions for error logging and string manipulation.

The following example creates a simple table with an integer and a text column. It creates a PL/Perl user-defined function that takes an input string argument and invokes the `spi_exec_query()` built-in function to select all columns and rows of the table. The function returns all rows in the query results where the `v` column includes the function input string.

```
CREATE TABLE test (
    i int,
    v varchar
);
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (1, 'first line');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (2, 'line2');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (3, '3rd line');
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (4, 'different');

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION return_match(varchar) RETURNS SETOF test AS $$
    # store the input argument
    $ss = $_[0];

    # run the query
    my $rv = spi_exec_query('select i, v from test;');

    # retrieve the query status
    my $status = $rv->{status};

    # retrieve the number of rows returned in the query
    my $nrows = $rv->{processed};

    # loop through all rows, comparing column v value with input argument
    foreach my $rn (0 .. $nrows - 1) {
        my $row = $rv->{rows}[$rn];
        my $textstr = $row->{v};
        if( index($textstr, $ss) != -1 ) {
            # match!  return the row.
            return_next($row);
        }
    }
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl EXECUTE ON MASTER ;

SELECT return_match( 'iff' );
 return_match
---------------
 (4,different)
(1 row)
```

Refer to the PostgreSQL PL/Perl Built-in Functions documentation for a detailed discussion of available functions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Global Values in PL/Perl

You can use the global hash map `%_SHARED` to share data, including code references, between PL/Perl function calls for the lifetime of the current session.

The following example uses `%_SHARED` to share data between the user-defined `set_var()` and `get_var()` PL/Perl functions:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION set_var(name text, val text) RETURNS text AS $$
    if ($_SHARED{$_[0]} = $_[1]) {
        return 'ok';
    } else {
        return "cannot set shared variable $_[0] to $_[1]";
    }
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_var(name text) RETURNS text AS $$
    return $_SHARED{$_[0]};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT set_var('key1', 'value1');
 set_var
---------
 ok
(1 row)

SELECT get_var('key1');
 get_var
---------
 value1
(1 row)
```

For security reasons, PL/Perl creates a separate Perl interpreter for each role. This prevents accidental or malicious interference by one user with the behavior of another user's PL/Perl functions. Each such interpreter retains its own value of the `%_SHARED` variable and other global state. Two PL/Perl functions share the same value of `%_SHARED` if and only if they are run by the same SQL role.

There are situations where you must take explicit steps to ensure that PL/Perl functions can share data in `%_SHARED`. For example, if an application runs under multiple SQL roles (via `SECURITY DEFINER` functions, use of `SET ROLE`, etc.) in a single session, make sure that functions that need to communicate are owned by the same user, and mark these functions as `SECURITY DEFINER`.

#### Notes

Additional considerations when developing PL/Perl functions:

- PL/Perl internally utilizes the UTF-8 encoding. It converts any arguments provided in other encodings to UTF-8, and converts return values from UTF-8 back to the original encoding.
- Nesting named PL/Perl subroutines retains the same dangers as in Perl.
- Only the untrusted PL/Perl language variant supports module import. Use `plperlu` with care.
- Any module that you use in a `plperlu` function must be available from the same location on all WarehousePG hosts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7.4.3 PL/Python Language

This section contains an overview of the WarehousePG PL/Python Language.


- About WarehousePG PL/Python
- Enabling and Removing PL/Python support
- Developing Functions with PL/Python
- Installing Python Modules
- Examples
- References


### About WarehousePG PL/Python

PL/Python is a loadable procedural language. With the WarehousePG PL/Python extensions, you can write WarehousePG user-defined functions in Python that take advantage of Python features and modules to quickly build robust database applications.

You can run PL/Python code blocks as anonymous code blocks. See the DO command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

The WarehousePG PL/Python extensions are installed by default with WarehousePG. Two extensions are provided:

- `plpythonu` supports developing functions using Python 2.7. WarehousePG installs a version of Python 2.7 for `plpythonu` at `$GPHOME/ext/python`.
- `plpython3u`, introduced with WarehousePG 6.22, supports developing functions using Python 3.9. WarehousePG installs a compatible Python at `$GPHOME/ext/python3.9`.

#### WarehousePG PL/Python Limitations

- WarehousePG does not support PL/Python triggers.
- PL/Python is available only as a WarehousePG untrusted language.
- Updatable cursors ( `UPDATE...WHERE CURRENT OF` and `DELETE...WHERE CURRENT OF` ) are not supported.
- Within a single WarehousePG session, all PL/Python functions must be called using either `plpythonu` or `plpython3u`. You must start a new session before you can call a function created with different PL/Python version (for example, in order to call a `plpythonu` function after calling a `plpython3u` function, or vice versa).

### Enabling and Removing PL/Python support

The PL/Python language is installed with WarehousePG. To create and run a PL/Python user-defined function (UDF) in a database, you must register the PL/Python language with the database.

#### Enabling PL/Python Support

WarehousePG installs compatible versions of Python 2.7 and 3.9 in `$GPHOME/ext`.

For each database that requires its use, register the PL/Python language with the SQL command `CREATE EXTENSION`. Separate extensions are provided for Python 2.7 and Python 3.9 support, and you can install either or both extensions to a database.

Because PL/Python is an untrusted language, only superusers can register PL/Python with a database.

For example, run this command as the `gpadmin` user to register PL/Python with Python 2.7 support in the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION plpythonu;'
```

Run this command as the `gpadmin` user to register PL/Python with Python 3.9 support:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION plpython3u;'
```

PL/Python is registered as an untrusted language.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Removing PL/Python Support

For a database that no longer requires the PL/Python language, remove support for PL/Python with the SQL command `DROP EXTENSION`. Because PL/Python is an untrusted language, only superusers can remove support for the PL/Python language from a database. For example, running this command as the `gpadmin` user removes support for PL/Python for Python 2.7 from the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'DROP EXTENSION plpythonu;'
```

Run this command as the `gpadmin` user to remove support for PL/Python for Python 3.9:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'DROP EXTENSION plpython3u;'
```

The default command fails if any existing objects (such as functions) depend on the language. Specify the `CASCADE` option to also drop all dependent objects, including functions that you created with PL/Python.

### Developing Functions with PL/Python

The body of a PL/Python user-defined function is a Python script. When the function is called, its arguments are passed as elements of the array `args[]`. Named arguments are also passed as ordinary variables to the Python script. The result is returned from the PL/Python function with `return` statement, or `yield` statement in case of a result-set statement.

PL/Python translates Python's `None` into the SQL `null` value.

#### Data Type Mapping

The WarehousePG to Python data type mapping follows.

| WarehousePG Primitive Type | Python Data Type |
|---|---|
| boolean[1] | bool |
| bytea | bytes |
| smallint, bigint, oid | int |
| real, double | float |
| numeric | decimal |
| *other primitive types* | string |
| SQL null value | None |

[1] When the UDF return type is `boolean`, the WarehousePG evaluates the return value for truth according to Python rules. That is, `0` and empty string are `false`, but notably `'f'` is `true`.

Example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION pybool_func(a int) RETURNS boolean AS $$
# container: plc_python3_shared
    if (a > 0):
        return True
    else:
        return False
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT pybool_func(-1);

 pybool_func
-------------
 f
(1 row)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Arrays and Lists

You pass SQL array values into PL/Python functions with a Python list. Similarly, PL/Python functions return SQL array values as a Python list. In the typical PL/Python usage pattern, you will specify an array with `[]`.

The following example creates a PL/Python function that returns an array of integers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION return_py_int_array()
  RETURNS int[]
AS $$
  return [1, 11, 21, 31]
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT return_py_int_array();
 return_py_int_array
---------------------
 {1,11,21,31}
(1 row)
```

PL/Python treats multi-dimensional arrays as lists of lists. You pass a multi-dimensional array to a PL/Python function using nested Python lists. When a PL/Python function returns a multi-dimensional array, the inner lists at each level must all be of the same size.

The following example creates a PL/Python function that takes a multi-dimensional array of integers as input. The function displays the type of the provided argument, and returns the multi-dimensional array:

```
CREATE FUNCTION return_multidim_py_array(x int4[])
  RETURNS int4[]
AS $$
  plpy.info(x, type(x))
  return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT * FROM return_multidim_py_array(ARRAY[[1,2,3], [4,5,6]]);
INFO:  ([[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]], <type 'list'>)
CONTEXT:  PL/Python function "return_multidim_py_type"
 return_multidim_py_array
--------------------------
 {{1,2,3},{4,5,6}}
(1 row)
```

PL/Python also accepts other Python sequences, such as tuples, as function arguments for backwards compatibility with WarehousePG versions where multi-dimensional arrays were not supported. In such cases, the Python sequences are always treated as one-dimensional arrays because they are ambiguous with composite types.

#### Composite Types

You pass composite-type arguments to a PL/Python function using Python mappings. The element names of the mapping are the attribute names of the composite types. If an attribute has the null value, its mapping value is `None`.

You can return a composite type result as a sequence type (tuple or list). You must specify a composite type as a tuple, rather than a list, when it is used in a multi-dimensional array. You cannot return an array of composite types as a list because it would be ambiguous to determine whether the list represents a composite type or another array dimension. In the typical usage pattern, you will specify composite type tuples with `()`.

In the following example, you create a composite type and a PL/Python function that returns an array of the composite type:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TYPE type_record AS (
  first text,
  second int4
);

CREATE FUNCTION composite_type_as_list()
  RETURNS type_record[]
AS $$
  return [[('first', 1), ('second', 1)], [('first', 2), ('second', 2)], [('first', 3), ('second', 3)]];
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

SELECT * FROM composite_type_as_list();
                             composite_type_as_list
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 {{"(first,1)","(second,1)"},{"(first,2)","(second,2)"},{"(first,3)","(second,3)"}}
(1 row)
```

Refer to the PostgreSQL Arrays, Lists documentation for additional information on PL/Python handling of arrays and composite types.

#### Set-Returning Functions

A Python function can return a set of scalar or composite types from any sequence type (for example: tuple, list, set).

In the following example, you create a composite type and a Python function that returns a `SETOF` of the composite type:

```
CREATE TYPE greeting AS (
  how text,
  who text
);

CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)
  RETURNS SETOF greeting
AS $$
  # return tuple containing lists as composite types
  # all other combinations work also
  return ( {"how": how, "who": "World"}, {"how": how, "who": "WarehousePG"} )
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;

select greet('hello');
       greet
-------------------
 (hello,World)
 (hello,WarehousePG)
(2 rows)
```

#### Running and Preparing SQL Queries

The PL/Python `plpy` module provides two Python functions to run an SQL query and prepare an execution plan for a query, `plpy.execute` and `plpy.prepare`. Preparing the execution plan for a query is useful if you run the query from multiple Python functions.

PL/Python also supports the `plpy.subtransaction()` function to help manage `plpy.execute` calls in an explicit subtransaction. See Explicit Subtransactions in the PostgreSQL documentation for additional information about `plpy.subtransaction()`.

##### plpy.execute

Calling `plpy.execute` with a query string and an optional limit argument causes the query to be run and the result to be returned in a Python result object. The result object emulates a list or dictionary object. The rows returned in the result object can be accessed by row number and column name. The result set row numbering starts with 0 (zero). The result object can be modified. The result object has these additional methods:

- `nrows` that returns the number of rows returned by the query.
- `status` which is the `SPI_execute()` return value.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For example, this Python statement in a PL/Python user-defined function runs a query.

```
rv = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM my_table", 5)
```

The `plpy.execute` function returns up to 5 rows from `my_table`. The result set is stored in the `rv` object. If `my_table` has a column `my_column`, it would be accessed as:

```
my_col_data = rv[i]["my_column"]
```

Since the function returns a maximum of 5 rows, the index i can be an integer between 0 and 4.

#### plpy.prepare

The function `plpy.prepare` prepares the execution plan for a query. It is called with a query string and a list of parameter types, if you have parameter references in the query. For example, this statement can be in a PL/Python user-defined function:

```
plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT last_name FROM my_users WHERE
  first_name = $1", [ "text" ])
```

The string `text` is the data type of the variable that is passed for the variable $1. After preparing a statement, you use the function `plpy.execute` to run it:

```
rv = plpy.execute(plan, [ "Fred" ], 5)
```

The third argument is the limit for the number of rows returned and is optional.

When you prepare an execution plan using the PL/Python module the plan is automatically saved. See the Postgres Server Programming Interface (SPI) documentation for information about the execution plans https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/spi.html.

To make effective use of saved plans across function calls you use one of the Python persistent storage dictionaries SD or GD.

The global dictionary SD is available to store data between function calls. This variable is private static data. The global dictionary GD is public data, available to all Python functions within a session. Use GD with care.

Each function gets its own execution environment in the Python interpreter, so that global data and function arguments from `myfunc` are not available to `myfunc2`. The exception is the data in the GD dictionary, as mentioned previously.

This example uses the SD dictionary:

```
CREATE FUNCTION usesavedplan() RETURNS trigger AS $$
  if SD.has_key("plan"):
    plan = SD["plan"]
  else:
    plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT 1")
    SD["plan"] = plan

  # rest of function

$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

#### Handling Python Errors and Messages

The Python module `plpy` implements these functions to manage errors and messages:

- `plpy.debug`
- `plpy.log`
- `plpy.info`
- `plpy.notice`
- `plpy.warning`
- `plpy.error`
- `plpy.fatal`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `plpy.debug`

The message functions `plpy.error` and `plpy.fatal` raise a Python exception which, if uncaught, propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be cancelled. The functions `raise plpy.ERROR(msg)` and `raise plpy.FATAL(msg)` are equivalent to calling `plpy.error` and `plpy.fatal`, respectively. The other message functions only generate messages of different priority levels.

Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the WarehousePG server configuration parameters `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages`. For information about the parameters see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Using the dictionary GD To Improve PL/Python Performance

In terms of performance, importing a Python module is an expensive operation and can affect performance. If you are importing the same module frequently, you can use Python global variables to load the module on the first invocation and not require importing the module on subsequent calls. The following PL/Python function uses the GD persistent storage dictionary to avoid importing a module if it has already been imported and is in the GD.

```
psql=#
   CREATE FUNCTION pytest() returns text as $$
      if 'mymodule' not in GD:
        import mymodule
        GD['mymodule'] = mymodule
    return GD['mymodule'].sumd([1,2,3])
$$;
```

### Installing Python Modules

When you install a Python module for development with PL/Python, the WarehousePG Python environment must have the module added to it across all segment hosts and mirror hosts in the cluster. When expanding WarehousePG, you must add the Python modules to the new segment hosts.

To develop with Python modules, you can use WarehousePG utilities such as `gpssh` and `gpscp` to run commands or copy files to all hosts in the WarehousePG cluster. These sections describe how to use those utilities to install and use additional Python modules:

- Verifying the Python Environment
- Installing Python pip
- Installing Python Packages for Python 2.7
- Installing Python Packages for Python 3.9
- Building and Installing Python Modules Locally
- Testing Installed Python Modules

#### Verifying the Python Environment

As part of the WarehousePG installation, the `gpadmin` user environment is configured to use Python that is installed with WarehousePG. To check the Python environment, you can use the `which` command:

```
which python
```

The command returns the location of the Python installation. All WarehousePG installations include Python 2.7 installed as `$GPHOME/ext/python` and Python 3.9 installed as `$GPHOME/ext/python3.9`:

```
which python3.9
```

When running shell commands on remote hosts with `gpssh`, specify the `-s` option to source the `greenplum_path.sh` file before running commands on the remote hosts. For example, this command should display the Python installed with WarehousePG on each host specified in the `gpdb_hosts` file.

```
gpssh -s -f gpdb_hosts which python
```

To display the list of currently installed Python 2.7 modules, run this command.

```
python -c "help('modules')"
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

You can optionally run `gpssh` in interactive mode to display Python modules on remote hosts. This example starts `gpssh` in interactive mode and lists the Python modules on the WarehousePG host `sdw1`.

```
$ gpssh -s -h sdw1
=> python -c "help('modules')"
. . .
=> exit
$
```

#### Installing Python pip

The Python utility `pip` installs Python packages that contain Python modules and other resource files from versioned archive files.

Run this command to install `pip` for Python 2.7:

```
python -m ensurepip --default-pip
```

For Python 3.9, use:

```
python3.9 -m ensurepip --default-pip
```

The command runs the `ensurepip` module to bootstrap (install and configure) the `pip` utility from the local Python installation.

You can run this command to ensure the `pip`, `setuptools` and `wheel` projects are current. Current Python projects ensure that you can install Python packages from source distributions or pre-built distributions (wheels).

```
python -m pip install --upgrade pip setuptools wheel
```

You can use `gpssh` to run the commands on the WarehousePG hosts. This example runs `gpssh` in interactive mode to install `pip` on the hosts listed in the file `gpdb_hosts`.

```
$ gpssh -s -f gpdb_hosts
=> python -m ensurepip --default-pip
[centos6-mdw1] Ignoring indexes: https://pypi.python.org/simple
[centos6-mdw1] Collecting setuptools
[centos6-mdw1] Collecting pip
[centos6-mdw1] Installing collected packages: setuptools, pip
[centos6-mdw1] Successfully installed pip-8.1.1 setuptools-20.10.1
[centos6-sdw1] Ignoring indexes: https://pypi.python.org/simple
[centos6-sdw1] Collecting setuptools
[centos6-sdw1] Collecting pip
[centos6-sdw1] Installing collected packages: setuptools, pip
[centos6-sdw1] Successfully installed pip-8.1.1 setuptools-20.10.1
=> exit
$
```

The `=>` is the inactive prompt for `gpssh`. The utility displays the output from each host. The `exit` command exits from `gpssh` interactive mode.

This `gpssh` command runs a single command on all hosts listed in the file `gpdb_hosts`.

```
gpssh -s -f gpdb_hosts python -m pip install --upgrade pip setuptools wheel
```

The utility displays the output from each host.

For more information about installing Python packages, see https://packaging.python.org/tutorials/installing-packages/.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Installing Python Packages for Python 2.7

After installing `pip`, you can install Python packages. This command installs the `numpy` and `scipy` packages for Python 2.7:

```
python -m pip install --user numpy scipy
```

For Python 3.9, use the `python3.9` command instead:

```
python3.9 -m pip install --user numpy scipy
```

The `--user` option attempts to avoid conflicts when installing Python packages.

You can use `gpssh` to run the command on the WarehousePG hosts.

For information about these and other Python packages, see References.

#### Installing Python Packages for Python 3.9

By default, `greenplum_path.sh` changes the `PYTHONPATH` and `PYTHONHOME` environment variables for use with the installed Python 2.7 environment. In order to install modules using `pip` with Python 3.9, you must first `unset` those parameters. For example to install `numpy` and `scipy` for Python 3.9:

```
gpssh -s -f gpdb_hosts
=> unset PYTHONHOME
=> unset PYTHONPATH
=> $GPHOME/ext/python3.9 -m pip install numpy scipy
```

You can optionally install Python 3.9 modules to a non-standard location by using the `--prefix` option with `pip`. For example:

```
gpssh -s -f gpdb_hosts
=> unset PYTHONHOME
=> unset PYTHONPATH
=> $GPHOME/ext/python3.9 -m pip install --prefix=/home/gpadmin/my_python numpy scipy
```

If you use this option, keep in mind that the `PYTHONPATH` environment variable setting is cleared before initializing or executing functions using `plpython3u`. If you want to use modules installed to a custom location, you must configure the paths to those modules using the WarehousePG configuration parameter `plpython3.python_path` instead of `PYTHONPATH`. For example:

```
$ psql -d testdb
testdb=# load 'plpython3';
testdb=# SET plpython3.python_path='/home/gpadmin/my_python';
```

WarehousePG uses the value of `plpython3.python_path` to set `PLPYTHONPATH` in the environment used to create or call `plpython3u` functions.

> **Note** `plpython3.python_path` is provided as part of the `plpython3u` extension, so you *must* load the extension (with `load 'plpython3';`) before you can set this configuration parameter in a session.

Ensure that you configure `plpython3.python_path` *before* you create or call `plpython3` functions in a session. If you set or change the parameter after `plpython3u` is initialized you receive the error:

```
ERROR: SET PYTHONPATH failed, the GUC value can only be changed before initializing the python interpreter.
```

To set a default value for the configuration parameter, use `gpconfig` instead:

```
gpconfig -c plpython3.python_path \
    -v "'/home/gpadmin/my_python'" \
    --skipvalidation
gpstop -u
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Building and Installing Python Modules Locally

If you are building a Python module, you must ensure that the build creates the correct executable. For example on a Linux system, the build should create a 64-bit executable.

Before building a Python module to be installed, ensure that the appropriate software to build the module is installed and properly configured. The build environment is required only on the host where you build the module.

You can use the WarehousePG utilities `gpssh` and `gpscp` to run commands on WarehousePG hosts and to copy files to the hosts.

#### Testing Installed Python Modules

You can create a simple PL/Python user-defined function (UDF) to validate that Python a module is available in the WarehousePG. This example tests the NumPy module.

This PL/Python UDF imports the NumPy module. The function returns `SUCCESS` if the module is imported, and `FAILURE` if an import error occurs.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION plpy_test(x int)
returns text
as $$
  try:
      from numpy import *
      return 'SUCCESS'
  except ImportError, e:
      return 'FAILURE'
$$ language plpythonu;
```

(If you are using Python 3.9, replace `plpythonu` with `plpython3u` in the above command.)

Create a table that contains data on each WarehousePG segment instance. Depending on the size of your WarehousePG installation, you might need to generate more data to ensure data is distributed to all segment instances.

```
CREATE TABLE DIST AS (SELECT x FROM generate_series(1,50) x ) DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY ;
```

This `SELECT` command runs the UDF on the segment hosts where data is stored in the primary segment instances.

```
SELECT gp_segment_id, plpy_test(x) AS status
  FROM dist
  GROUP BY gp_segment_id, status
  ORDER BY gp_segment_id, status;
```

The `SELECT` command returns `SUCCESS` if the UDF imported the Python module on the WarehousePG segment instance. If the `SELECT` command returns `FAILURE`, you can find the segment host of the segment instance host. The WarehousePG cluster table `gp_segment_configuration` contains information about mirroring and segment configuration. This command returns the host name for a segment ID.

```
SELECT hostname, content AS seg_ID FROM gp_segment_configuration
  WHERE content = <seg_id> ;
```

If `FAILURE` is returned, these are some possible causes:

- A problem accessing required libraries. For the NumPy example, a WarehousePG might have a problem accessing the OpenBLAS libraries or the Python libraries on a segment host.

  Make sure you get no errors when running command on the segment host as the `gpadmin` user. This `gpssh` command tests importing the numpy module on the segment host `mdw1`.

  ```
  gpssh -s -h mdw1 python -c "import numpy"
  ```

- If the Python `import` command does not return an error, environment variables might not be configured in the WarehousePG environment. For example, the WarehousePG might not have been restarted after installing the Python Package on the host system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

This PL/Python function example uses Python 3.9 and returns the value of pi using the `numpy` module:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION testpi()
  RETURNS float
AS $$
  import numpy
  return numpy.pi
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Use `SELECT` to call the function:

```
SELECT testpi();
       testpi
------------------
 3.14159265358979
(1 row)
```

This PL/Python UDF returns the maximum of two integers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
  RETURNS integer
AS $$
  if (a is None) or (b is None):
      return None
  if a > b:
     return a
  return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

You can use the `STRICT` property to perform the null handling instead of using the two conditional statements.

```
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
  RETURNS integer AS $$
return max(a,b)
$$ LANGUAGE plpythonu STRICT ;
```

You can run the user-defined function `pymax` with `SELECT` command. This example runs the UDF and shows the output.

```
SELECT ( pymax(123, 43));
column1
---------
     123
(1 row)
```

This example that returns data from an SQL query that is run against a table. These two commands create a simple table and add data to the table.

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, year int, qtr int, day int, region text)
  DISTRIBUTED BY (id) ;

INSERT INTO sales VALUES
 (1, 2014, 1,1, 'usa'),
 (2, 2002, 2,2, 'europe'),
 (3, 2014, 3,3, 'asia'),
 (4, 2014, 4,4, 'usa'),
 (5, 2014, 1,5, 'europe'),
 (6, 2014, 2,6, 'asia'),
 (7, 2002, 3,7, 'usa') ;
```

This PL/Python UDF runs a `SELECT` command that returns 5 rows from the table. The Python function returns the `REGION` value from the row specified by the input value. In the Python function, the row numbering starts from 0. Valid input for the function is an integer between 0 and 4.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION mypytest(a integer)
  RETURNS setof text
AS $$
  rv = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM sales ORDER BY id", 5)
  region =[]
  region.append(rv[a]["region"])
  return region
$$ language plpythonu EXECUTE ON MASTER;
```

Running this `SELECT` statement returns the `REGION` column value from the third row of the result set.

```
SELECT mypytest(2) ;
```

This command deletes the UDF from the database.

```
DROP FUNCTION mypytest(integer) ;
```

This example runs the PL/Python function in the previous example as an anonymous block with the `DO` command. In the example, the anonymous block retrieves the input value from a temporary table.

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE mytemp AS VALUES (2) DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;

DO $$
  temprow = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM mytemp", 1)
  myval = temprow[0]["column1"]
  rv = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM sales ORDER BY id", 5)
  region = rv[myval]["region"]
  plpy.notice("region is %s" % region)
$$ language plpythonu;
```

## References

### Technical References

For information about the Python language, see https://www.python.org/.

For information about PL/Python see the PostgreSQL documentation at https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpython.html.

For information about Python Package Index (PyPI), see https://pypi.python.org/pypi.

These are some Python modules that can be installed:

- SciPy library provides user-friendly and efficient numerical routines such as routines for numerical integration and optimization. The SciPy site includes other similar Python libraries http://www.scipy.org/index.html.
- Natural Language Toolkit (nltk) is a platform for building Python programs to work with human language data. http://www.nltk.org/. For information about installing the toolkit see http://www.nltk.org/install.html.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.7.4.4 PL/R Language

This chapter contains the following information:


- About WarehousePG PL/R
- Installing R
- Installing PL/R
- Uninstalling PL/R
- Enabling PL/R Language Support
- Examples
- Downloading and Installing R Packages
- Displaying R Library Information
- Loading R Modules at Startup
- References


#### About WarehousePG PL/R

PL/R is a procedural language. With the WarehousePG PL/R extension you can write database functions in the R programming language and use R packages that contain R functions and data sets.

For information about supported PL/R versions, see the *WarehousePG Release Notes*.

##### Installing R

For RHEL and CentOS, installing the PL/R package installs R in `$GPHOME/ext/R-<version>` and updates `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh` for WarehousePG to use R.

> **Note** You can use the gpssh utility to run bash shell commands on multiple remote hosts.

1. To install R, run these `apt` commands on all host systems.

   ```
   $ sudo apt update && sudo apt install r-base
   ```

   Installing `r-base` also installs dependent packages including `r-base-core`.

2. To configure WarehousePG to use R, add the `R_HOME` environment variable to `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh` on all hosts. This example command returns the R home directory.

   ```
   $ R RHOME
   /usr/lib/R
   ```

   Using the previous R home directory as an example, add this line to the file on all hosts.

   ```
   export R_HOME=/usr/lib/R
   ```

3. Source `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh` and restart WarehousePG. For example, run these commands on the WarehousePG coordinator host.

   ```
   $ source $GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh
   $ gpstop -r
   ```

##### Installing PL/R

The PL/R extension is available as a package.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Installing the Extension Package

Before you install the PL/R extension, make sure that your WarehousePG is running, you have sourced `greenplum_path.sh`, and that the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` and `$GPHOME` variables are set.

1. Download the PL/R extension package
2. Copy the PL/R package to the WarehousePG coordinator host.
3. Install the software extension package.
4. Source the file `$GPHOME/greenplum_path.sh`.
5. Restart WarehousePG.

```
$ gpstop -r
```

### Enabling PL/R Language Support

For each database that requires its use, register the PL/R language with the SQL command `CREATE EXTENSION`. Because PL/R is an untrusted language, only superusers can register PL/R with a database. For example, run this command as the `gpadmin` user to register the language with the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'CREATE EXTENSION plr;'
```

PL/R is registered as an untrusted language.

### Uninstalling PL/R

- Remove PL/R Support for a Database
- Uninstall the Extension Package

When you remove PL/R language support from a database, the PL/R routines that you created in the database will no longer work.

#### Remove PL/R Support for a Database

For a database that no longer requires the PL/R language, remove support for PL/R with the SQL command `DROP EXTENSION`. Because PL/R is an untrusted language, only superusers can remove support for the PL/R language from a database. For example, run this command as the `gpadmin` user to remove support for PL/R from the database named `testdb`:

```
$ psql -d testdb -c 'DROP EXTENSION plr;'
```

The default command fails if any existing objects (such as functions) depend on the language. Specify the `CASCADE` option to also drop all dependent objects, including functions that you created with PL/R.

#### Uninstall the Extension Package

If no databases have PL/R as a registered language, uninstall the WarehousePG PL/R extension.

On RHEL and CentOS systems, uninstalling the extension uninstalls the R software that was installed with the extension.

### Examples

The following are simple PL/R examples.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Example 1: Using PL/R for single row operators

This function generates an array of numbers with a normal distribution using the R function `rnorm()`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION r_norm(n integer, mean float8,
  std_dev float8) RETURNS float8[ ] AS
$$
  x<-rnorm(n,mean,std_dev)
  return(x)
$$
LANGUAGE 'plr';
```

The following `CREATE TABLE` command uses the `r_norm()` function to populate the table. The `r_norm()` function creates an array of 10 numbers.

```
CREATE TABLE test_norm_var
  AS SELECT id, r_norm(10,0,1) as x
  FROM (SELECT generate_series(1,30:: bigint) AS ID) foo
  DISTRIBUTED BY (id);
```

#### Example 2: Returning PL/R data.frames in Tabular Form

Assuming your PL/R function returns an R `data.frame` as its output, unless you want to use arrays of arrays, some work is required to see your `data.frame` from PL/R as a simple SQL table:

- Create a `TYPE` in a WarehousePG with the same dimensions as your R `data.frame:`

  ```
  CREATE TYPE t1 AS ...
  ```

- Use this `TYPE` when defining your PL/R function

  ```
  ... RETURNS SET OF t1 AS ...
  ```

Sample SQL for this is given in the next example.

#### Example 3: Hierarchical Regression using PL/R

The SQL below defines a `TYPE` and runs hierarchical regression using PL/R:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
--Create TYPE to store model results
DROP TYPE IF EXISTS wj_model_results CASCADE;
CREATE TYPE wj_model_results AS (
  cs text, coefext float, ci_95_lower float, ci_95_upper float,
  ci_90_lower float, ci_90_upper float, ci_80_lower float,
  ci_80_upper float);

--Create PL/R function to run model in R
DROP FUNCTION IF EXISTS wj_plr_RE(float [ ], text [ ]);
CREATE FUNCTION wj_plr_RE(response float [ ], cs text [ ])
RETURNS SETOF wj_model_results AS
$$
  library(arm)
  y<- log(response)
  cs<- cs
  d_temp<- data.frame(y,cs)
  m0 <- lmer (y ~ 1 + (1 | cs), data=d_temp)
  cs_unique<- sort(unique(cs))
  n_cs_unique<- length(cs_unique)
  temp_m0<- data.frame(matrix0,n_cs_unique, 7))
  for (i in 1:n_cs_unique){temp_m0[i,]<-
    c(exp(coef(m0)$cs[i,1] + c(0,-1.96,1.96,-1.65,1.65,
      -1.28,1.28)*se.ranef(m0)$cs[i]))}
  names(temp_m0)<- c("Coefest", "CI_95_Lower",
    "CI_95_Upper", "CI_90_Lower", "CI_90_Upper",
   "CI_80_Lower", "CI_80_Upper")
  temp_m0_v2<- data.frames(cs_unique, temp_m0)
  return(temp_m0_v2)
$$
LANGUAGE 'plr';

--Run modeling plr function and store model results in a
--table
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS wj_model_results_roi;
CREATE TABLE wj_model_results_roi AS SELECT *
  FROM wj_plr_RE('{1,1,1}', '{"a", "b", "c"}');
```

#### Downloading and Installing R Packages

R packages are modules that contain R functions and data sets. You can install R packages to extend R and PL/R functionality in WarehousePG.

> **Note** If you expand WarehousePG and add segment hosts, you must install the R packages in the R installation of the new hosts.

1. For an R package, identify all dependent R packages and each package web URL. The information can be found by selecting the given package from the following navigation page:

   https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html

   As an example, the page for the R package arm indicates that the package requires the following R libraries: Matrix, lattice, lme4, R2WinBUGS, coda, abind, foreign, and MASS.

   You can also try installing the package with `R CMD INSTALL` command to determine the dependent packages.

   For the R installation included with the WarehousePG PL/R extension, the required R packages are installed with the PL/R extension. However, the Matrix package requires a newer version.

2. From the command line, use the `wget` utility to download the `tar.gz` files for the arm package to the WarehousePG coordinator host:

   ```
   wget https://cran.r-project.org/src/contrib/Archive/arm/arm_1.5-03.tar.gz
   ```

   ```
   wget https://cran.r-project.org/src/contrib/Archive/Matrix/Matrix_0.9996875-1.tar.gz
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Use the gpscp utility and the `hosts_all` file to copy the `tar.gz` files to the same directory on all nodes of the WarehousePG cluster. The `hosts_all` file contains a list of all the WarehousePG segment hosts. You might require root access to do this.

```
gpscp -f hosts_all Matrix_0.9996875-1.tar.gz =:/home/gpadmin
```

```
gpscp -f /hosts_all arm_1.5-03.tar.gz =:/home/gpadmin
```

4. Use the `gpssh` utility in interactive mode to log into each WarehousePG segment host ( `gpssh -f all_hosts` ). Install the packages from the command prompt using the `R CMD INSTALL` command. Note that this may require root access. For example, this R install command installs the packages for the arm package.

```
$R_HOME/bin/R CMD INSTALL Matrix_0.9996875-1.tar.gz   arm_1.5-03.tar.gz
```

5. Ensure that the package is installed in the `$R_HOME/library` directory on all the segments (the `gpssh` can be used to install the package). For example, this `gpssh` command list the contents of the R library directory.

```
gpssh -s -f all_hosts "ls $R_HOME/library"
```

   The `gpssh` option `-s` sources the `greenplum_path.sh` file before running commands on the remote hosts.

6. Test if the R package can be loaded.

   This function performs a simple test to determine if an R package can be loaded:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION R_test_require(fname text)
RETURNS boolean AS
$BODY$
    return(require(fname,character.only=T))
$BODY$
LANGUAGE 'plr';
```

   This SQL command checks if the R package arm can be loaded:

```
SELECT R_test_require('arm');
```

#### Displaying R Library Information

You can use the R command line to display information about the installed libraries and functions on the WarehousePG host. You can also add and remove libraries from the R installation. To start the R command line on the host, log into the host as the `gadmin` user and run the script R from the directory `$GPHOME/ext/R-3.3.3/bin` .

This R function lists the available R packages from the R command line:

```
> library()
```

Display the documentation for a particular R package

```
> library(help="<package_name>")
> help(package="<package_name>")
```

Display the help file for an R function:

```
> help("<function_name>")
> ?<function_name>
```

To see what packages are installed, use the R command `installed.packages()` . This will return a matrix with a row for each package that has been installed. Below, we look at the first 5 rows of this matrix.

```
> installed.packages()
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Any package that does not appear in the installed packages matrix must be installed and loaded before its functions can be used.

An R package can be installed with `install.packages()`:

```
> install.packages("<package_name>")
> install.packages("mypkg", dependencies = TRUE, type="source")
```

Load a package from the R command line.

```
> library(" <package_name> ")
```

An R package can be removed with `remove.packages`

```
> remove.packages("<package_name>")
```

You can use the R command `-e` option to run functions from the command line. For example, this command displays help on the R package MASS.

```
$ R -e 'help("MASS")'
```

#### Loading R Modules at Startup

PL/R can automatically load saved R code during interpreter initialization. To use this feature, you create the `plr_modules` database table and then insert the R modules you want to auto-load into the table. If the table exists, PL/R will load the code it contains into the interpreter.

In a WarehousePG cluster, table rows are usually distributed so that each row exists at only one segment instance. The R interpreter at each segment instance, however, needs to load all of the modules, so a normally distributed table will not work. You must create the `plr_modules` table as a *replicated table* in the default schema so that all rows in the table are present at every segment instance. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE public.plr_modules {
  modseq int4,
  modsrc text
) DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED;
```

See https://www.joeconway.com/plr/doc/plr-module-funcs.html for more information about using the PL/R auto-load feature.

#### References

https://www.r-project.org/ - The R Project home page.

https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/PivotalR/ - The home page for PivotalR, a package that provides an R interface to operate on WarehousePG tables and views that is similar to the R data.frame. PivotalR also supports using the machine learning package MADlib directly from R.

The following links highlight key topics from the R documentation.

- R Functions and Arguments - https://www.joeconway.com/doc/plr-funcs.html
- Passing Data Values in R - https://www.joeconway.com/doc/plr-data.html
- Aggregate Functions in R - https://www.joeconway.com/doc/plr-aggregate-funcs.html

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.7.4.5 PL/pgSQL Language

This section contains an overview of the WarehousePG PL/pgSQL language.


- About WarehousePG PL/pgSQL
- PL/pgSQL Plan Caching
- PL/pgSQL Examples
- References


### About WarehousePG PL/pgSQL

WarehousePG PL/pgSQL is a loadable procedural language that is installed and registered by default with WarehousePG. You can create user-defined functions using SQL statements, functions, and operators.

With PL/pgSQL you can group a block of computation and a series of SQL queries inside the database server, thus having the power of a procedural language and the ease of use of SQL. Also, with PL/pgSQL you can use all the data types, operators and functions of WarehousePG SQL.

The PL/pgSQL language is a subset of Oracle PL/SQL. WarehousePG PL/pgSQL is based on Postgres PL/pgSQL. The Postgres PL/pgSQL documentation is at https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpgsql.html

When using PL/pgSQL functions, function attributes affect how WarehousePG creates query plans. You can specify the attribute `IMMUTABLE`, `STABLE`, or `VOLATILE` as part of the `LANGUAGE` clause to classify the type of function. For information about the creating functions and function attributes, see the`CREATE FUNCTION` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

You can run PL/SQL code blocks as anonymous code blocks. See the `DO` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### WarehousePG SQL Limitations

When using WarehousePG PL/pgSQL, limitations include

- Triggers are not supported
- Cursors are forward moving only (not scrollable)
- Updatable cursors ( `UPDATE...WHERE CURRENT OF` and `DELETE...WHERE CURRENT OF` ) are not supported.
- Parallel retrieve cursors ( `DECLARE...PARALLEL RETRIEVE` ) are not supported.

For information about WarehousePG SQL conformance, see Summary of WarehousePG Features in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### The PL/pgSQL Language

PL/pgSQL is a block-structured language. The complete text of a function definition must be a block. A block is defined as:

```
[ <label> ]
[ DECLARE
   declarations ]
BEGIN
   statements
END [ <label> ];
```

Each declaration and each statement within a block is terminated by a semicolon (;). A block that appears within another block must have a semicolon after `END`, as shown in the previous block. The `END` that concludes a function body does not require a semicolon.

A label is required only if you want to identify the block for use in an `EXIT` statement, or to qualify the names of variables declared in the block. If you provide a label after `END`, it must match the label at the block's beginning.

> **Important** Do not confuse the use of the `BEGIN` and `END` keywords for grouping statements in PL/pgSQL with the database commands for transaction control. The PL/pgSQL `BEGIN` and `END` keywords are only for grouping; they do not start or end a transaction. Functions are always run within a transaction established by an outer query — they cannot start or commit that transaction, since there would be no context for them to run in. However, a PL/pgSQL block that contains an `EXCEPTION` clause effectively forms a subtransaction that can be rolled back without affecting the outer transaction. For more about the `EXCEPTION` clause, see the PostgreSQL documentation on trapping errors at https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpgsql-control-structures.html#PLPGSQL-ERROR-TRAPPING.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Keywords are case-insensitive. Identifiers are implicitly converted to lowercase unless double-quoted, just as they are in ordinary SQL commands.

Comments work the same way in PL/pgSQL code as in ordinary SQL:

- A double dash (--) starts a comment that extends to the end of the line.
- A /* starts a block comment that extends to the matching occurrence of */.

  Block comments nest.

Any statement in the statement section of a block can be a subblock. Subblocks can be used for logical grouping or to localize variables to a small group of statements.

Variables declared in a subblock mask any similarly-named variables of outer blocks for the duration of the subblock. You can access the outer variables if you qualify their names with their block's label. For example this function declares a variable named `quantity` several times:

```
CREATE FUNCTION testfunc() RETURNS integer AS $$
<< outerblock >>
DECLARE
   quantity integer := 30;
BEGIN
   RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 30
   quantity := 50;
   --
   -- Create a subblock
   --
   DECLARE
      quantity integer := 80;
   BEGIN
      RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 80
      RAISE NOTICE 'Outer quantity here is %', outerblock.quantity;  -- Prints 50
   END;
   RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity;  -- Prints 50
   RETURN quantity;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

#### Running SQL Commands

You can run SQL commands with PL/pgSQL statements such as `EXECUTE`, `PERFORM`, and `SELECT ... INTO`. For information about the PL/pgSQL statements, see https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpgsql-statements.html.

> **Note** The PL/pgSQL statement `SELECT INTO` is not supported in the `EXECUTE` statement.

### PL/pgSQL Plan Caching

A PL/pgSQL function's volatility classification has implications on how WarehousePG caches plans that reference the function. Refer to Function Volatility and Plan Caching in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for information on plan caching considerations for WarehousePG function volatility categories.

When a PL/pgSQL function runs for the first time in a database session, the PL/pgSQL interpreter parses the function's SQL expressions and commands. The interpreter creates a prepared execution plan as each expression and SQL command is first run in the function. The PL/pgSQL interpreter reuses the execution plan for a specific expression and SQL command for the life of the database connection. While this reuse substantially reduces the total amount of time required to parse and generate plans, errors in a specific expression or command cannot be detected until run time when that part of the function is run.

WarehousePG will automatically re-plan a saved query plan if there is any schema change to any relation used in the query, or if any user-defined function used in the query is redefined. This makes the re-use of a prepared plan transparent in most cases.

The SQL commands that you use in a PL/pgSQL function must refer to the same tables and columns on every execution. You cannot use a parameter as the name of a table or a column in an SQL command.

PL/pgSQL caches a separate query plan for each combination of actual argument types in which you invoke a polymorphic function to ensure that data type differences do not cause unexpected failures.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Refer to the PostgreSQL Plan Caching documentation for a detailed discussion of plan caching considerations in the PL/pgSQL language.

### PL/pgSQL Examples

The following are examples of PL/pgSQL user-defined functions.

#### Example: Aliases for Function Parameters

Parameters passed to functions are named with identifiers such as `$1`, `$2`. Optionally, aliases can be declared for `$n` parameter names for increased readability. Either the alias or the numeric identifier can then be used to refer to the parameter value.

There are two ways to create an alias. The preferred way is to give a name to the parameter in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(subtotal real) RETURNS real AS $$
BEGIN
   RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

You can also explicitly declare an alias, using the declaration syntax:

```
name ALIAS FOR $n;
```

This example, creates the same function with the `DECLARE` syntax.

```
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(real) RETURNS real AS $$
DECLARE
    subtotal ALIAS FOR $1;
BEGIN
    RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

#### Example: Using the Data Type of a Table Column

When declaring a variable, you can use the `%TYPE` construct to specify the data type of a variable or table column. This is the syntax for declaring a variable whose type is the data type of a table column:

```
name table.column_name%TYPE;
```

You can use the `%TYPE` construct to declare variables that will hold database values. For example, suppose you have a column named `user_id` in your `users` table. To declare a variable named `my_userid` with the same data type as the `users.user_id` column:

```
my_userid users.user_id%TYPE;
```

`%TYPE` is particularly valuable in polymorphic functions, since the data types needed for internal variables may change from one call to the next. Appropriate variables can be created by applying `%TYPE` to the function's arguments or result placeholders.

#### Example: Composite Type Based on a Table Row

A variable of a composite type is called a row variable. The following syntax declares a composite variable based on table row:

```
name table_name%ROWTYPE;
```

Such a row variable can hold a whole row of a `SELECT` or `FOR` query result, so long as that query's column set matches the declared type of the variable. The individual fields of the row value are accessed using the usual dot notation, for example `rowvar.column`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parameters to a function can be composite types (complete table rows). In that case, the corresponding identifier `$n` will be a row variable, and fields can be selected from it, for `example $1.user_id`.

Only the user-defined columns of a table row are accessible in a row-type variable, not the OID or other system columns. The fields of the row type inherit the table's field size or precision for data types such as `char(n)`.

The next example function uses a row variable composite type. Before creating the function, create the table that is used by the function with this command.

```
CREATE TABLE table1 (
  f1 text,
  f2 numeric,
  f3 integer
) distributed by (f1);
```

This `INSERT` command adds data to the table.

```
INSERT INTO table1 values
 ('test1', 14.1, 3),
 ('test2', 52.5, 2),
 ('test3', 32.22, 6),
 ('test4', 12.1, 4) ;
```

This function uses a column `%TYPE` variable and `%ROWTYPE` composite variable based on `table1`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION t1_calc( name text) RETURNS integer
AS $$
DECLARE
    t1_row   table1%ROWTYPE;
    calc_int table1.f3%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO t1_row FROM table1 WHERE table1.f1 = $1 ;
    calc_int = (t1_row.f2 * t1_row.f3)::integer ;
    RETURN calc_int ;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql VOLATILE;
```

> **Note** The previous function is classified as a `VOLATILE` function because function values could change within a single table scan.

The following `SELECT` command uses the function.

```
select t1_calc( 'test1' );
```

> **Note** The example PL/pgSQL function uses `SELECT` with the `INTO` clause. It is different from the SQL command `SELECT INTO`. If you want to create a table from a `SELECT` result inside a PL/pgSQL function, use the SQL command `CREATE TABLE AS`.

#### Example: Using a Variable Number of Arguments

You can declare a PL/pgSQL function to accept variable numbers of arguments, as long as all of the optional arguments are of the same data type. You must mark the last argument of the function as `VARIADIC` and declare the argument using an array type. You can refer to a function that includes `VARIADIC` arguments as a variadic function.

For example, this variadic function returns the minimum value of a variable array of numerics:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE FUNCTION mleast (VARIADIC numeric[])
    RETURNS numeric AS $$
  DECLARE minval numeric;
  BEGIN
    SELECT min($1[i]) FROM generate_subscripts( $1, 1) g(i) INTO minval;
    RETURN minval;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
CREATE FUNCTION

SELECT mleast(10, -1, 5, 4.4);
 mleast
--------
     -1
(1 row)
```

Effectively, all of the actual arguments at or beyond the `VARIADIC` position are gathered up into a one-dimensional array.

You can pass an already-constructed array into a variadic function. This is particularly useful when you want to pass arrays between variadic functions. Specify `VARIADIC` in the function call as follows:

```
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

This prevents PL/pgSQL from expanding the function's variadic parameter into its element type.

#### Example: Using Default Argument Values

You can declare PL/pgSQL functions with default values for some or all input arguments. The default values are inserted whenever the function is called with fewer than the declared number of arguments. Because arguments can only be omitted from the end of the actual argument list, you must provide default values for all arguments after an argument defined with a default value.

For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION use_default_args(a int, b int DEFAULT 2, c int DEFAULT 3)
    RETURNS int AS $$
DECLARE
    sum int;
BEGIN
    sum := $1 + $2 + $3;
    RETURN sum;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT use_default_args(10, 20, 30);
 use_default_args
------------------
               60
(1 row)

SELECT use_default_args(10, 20);
 use_default_args
------------------
               33
(1 row)

SELECT use_default_args(10);
 use_default_args
------------------
               15
(1 row)
```

You can also use the `=` sign in place of the keyword `DEFAULT`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Example: Using Polymorphic Data Types

PL/pgSQL supports the polymorphic *anyelement*, *anyarray*, *anyenum*, and *anynonarray* types. Using these types, you can create a single PL/pgSQL function that operates on multiple data types. Refer to WarehousePG Data Types for additional information on polymorphic type support in WarehousePG.

A special parameter named `$0` is created when the return type of a PL/pgSQL function is declared as a polymorphic type. The data type of `$0` identifies the return type of the function as deduced from the actual input types.

In this example, you create a polymorphic function that returns the sum of two values:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_two_values(v1 anyelement,v2 anyelement)
    RETURNS anyelement AS $$
DECLARE
    sum ALIAS FOR $0;
BEGIN
    sum := v1 + v2;
    RETURN sum;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Run `add_two_values()` providing integer input values:

```
SELECT add_two_values(1, 2);
 add_two_values
----------------
              3
(1 row)
```

The return type of `add_two_values()` is integer, the type of the input arguments. Now execute `add_two_values()` providing float input values:

```
SELECT add_two_values (1.1, 2.2);
 add_two_values
----------------
            3.3
(1 row)
```

The return type of `add_two_values()` in this case is float.

You can also specify `VARIADIC` arguments in polymorphic functions.

#### Example: Anonymous Block

This example runs the statements in the `t1_calc()` function from a previous example as an anonymous block using the `DO` command. In the example, the anonymous block retrieves the input value from a temporary table.

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE list AS VALUES ('test1') DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;

DO $$
DECLARE
    t1_row   table1%ROWTYPE;
    calc_int table1.f3%TYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO t1_row FROM table1, list WHERE table1.f1 = list.column1 ;
    calc_int = (t1_row.f2 * t1_row.f3)::integer ;
    RAISE NOTICE 'calculated value is %', calc_int ;
END $$ LANGUAGE plpgsql ;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### References

The PostgreSQL documentation about PL/pgSQL is at https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpgsql.html

Also, see the CREATE FUNCTION command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

For a summary of built-in WarehousePG functions, see Summary of Built-in Functions in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*. For information about using WarehousePG functions see "Querying Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*

For information about porting Oracle functions, see https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/plpgsql-porting.html. For information about installing and using the Oracle compatibility functions with WarehousePG, see "Oracle Compatibility Functions" in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.8 Working with External Data

Both external and foreign tables provide access to data stored in data sources outside of WarehousePG as if the data were stored in regular database tables. You can read data from and write data to external and foreign tables.

An external table is a WarehousePG table backed with data that resides outside of the database. You create a readable external table to read data from the external data source and create a writable external table to write data to the external source. You can use external tables in SQL commands just as you would a regular database table. For example, you can `SELECT` (readable external table), `INSERT` (writable external table), and join external tables with other WarehousePG tables. External tables are most often used to load and unload database data. Refer to Defining External Tables for more information about using external tables to access external data.

PXF for WarehousePG describes using PXF and external tables to access external data sources.

A foreign table is a different kind of WarehousePG table backed with data that resides outside of the database. You can both read from and write to the same foreign table. You can similarly use foreign tables in SQL commands as described above for external tables. Refer to Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables for more information about accessing external data using foreign tables.

Web-based external tables provide access to data served by an HTTP server or an operating system process. See Creating and Using External Web Tables for more about web-based tables.

- **PXF for WarehousePG**
  Data managed by your organization may already reside in external sources such as Hadoop, object stores, and other SQL databases. The WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) provides access to this external data via built-in connectors that map an external data source to a WarehousePG table definition.

- **Defining External Tables**
  External tables enable accessing external data as if it were a regular database table. They are often used to move data into and out of a WarehousePG.

- **Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables**

- **Using the WarehousePG Parallel File Server (gpfdist)**
  The gpfdist protocol is used in a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` SQL command to access external data served by the WarehousePG `gpfdist` file server utility. When external data is served by gpfdist, all segments in the WarehousePG cluster can read or write external table data in parallel.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.1 Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables

WarehousePG implements portions of the SQL/MED specification, allowing you to access data that resides outside of WarehousePG using regular SQL queries. Such data is referred to as *foreign* or external data.

You can access foreign data with help from a *foreign-data wrapper*. A foreign-data wrapper is a library that communicates with a remote data source. This library hides the source-specific connection and data access details.

The WarehousePG distribution includes the postgres_fdw foreign data wrapper.

If none of the existing PostgreSQL or WarehousePG foreign-data wrappers suit your needs, you can write your own as described in Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper.

To access foreign data, you create a *foreign server* object, which defines how to connect to a particular remote data source according to the set of options used by its supporting foreign-data wrapper. Then you create one or more *foreign tables*, which define the structure of the remote data. A foreign table can be used in queries just like a normal table, but a foreign table has no storage in the WarehousePG server. Whenever a foreign table is accessed, WarehousePG asks the foreign-data wrapper to fetch data from, or update data in (if supported by the wrapper), the remote source.

> **Note** GPORCA does not support foreign tables, a query on a foreign table always falls back to the Postgres Planner.

Accessing remote data may require authenticating to the remote data source. This information can be provided by a *user mapping*, which can provide additional data such as a user name and password based on the current WarehousePG role.

For additional information, refer to the CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER, CREATE USER MAPPING, and CREATE FOREIGN TABLE SQL reference pages.

#### Using Foreign-Data Wrappers with WarehousePG

Most PostgreSQL foreign-data wrappers should work with WarehousePG. However, PostgreSQL foreign-data wrappers connect only through the WarehousePG coordinator by default and do not access the WarehousePG segment instances directly.

WarehousePG adds an `mpp_execute` option to FDW-related SQL commands. If the foreign-data wrapper supports it, you can specify `mpp_execute '*value*'` in the `OPTIONS` clause when you create the FDW, server, or foreign table to identify the WarehousePG host from which the foreign-data wrapper reads or writes data. Valid `*value*` s are:

- `master` (the default)—Read or write data from the coordinator host.
- `any` —Read data from either the coordinator host or any one segment, depending on which path costs less.
- `all segments` —Read or write data from all segments. If a foreign-data wrapper supports this value, for correct results it should have a policy that matches segments to data.

(A PostgreSQL foreign-data wrapper may work with the various `mpp_execute` option settings, but the results are not guaranteed to be correct. For example, a segment may not be able to connect to the foriegn server, or segments may receive overlapping results resulting in duplicate rows.)

> **Note** GPORCA does not support foreign tables, a query on a foreign table always falls back to the Postgres Planner.

**Parent topic:** Working with External Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.1.1 Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

This chapter outlines how to write a new foreign-data wrapper.

All operations on a foreign table are handled through its foreign-data wrapper (FDW), a library that consists of a set of functions that the core WarehousePG server calls. The foreign-data wrapper is responsible for fetching data from the remote data store and returning it to the WarehousePG executor. If updating foreign-data is supported, the wrapper must handle that, too.

The foreign-data wrappers included in the WarehousePG open source Github repository are good references when trying to write your own. You may want to examine the source code for the file_fdw and postgres_fdw modules in the `contrib/` directory. The CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER reference page also provides some useful details.

> **Note** The SQL standard specifies an interface for writing foreign-data wrappers. WarehousePG does not implement that API, however, because the effort to accommodate it into WarehousePG would be large, and the standard API hasn't yet gained wide adoption.

This topic includes the following sections:


- Requirements
- Known Issues and Limitations
- Header Files
- Foreign Data Wrapper Functions
- Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Functions
- Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions
- WarehousePG Considerations
- Building a Foreign Data Wrapper Extension with PGXS
- Deployment Considerations


**Parent topic:** Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables

#### Requirements

When you develop with the WarehousePG foreign-data wrapper API:

- You must develop your code on a system with the same hardware and software architecture as that of your WarehousePG hosts.
- Your code must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface. For details on C language calling conventions and dynamic loading, refer to C Language Functions in the PostgreSQL documentation.
- Symbol names in your object files must not conflict with each other nor with symbols defined in the WarehousePG server. You must rename your functions or variables if you get error messages to this effect.
- Review the foreign table introduction described in Accessing External Data with Foreign Tables.

#### Known Issues and Limitations

The WarehousePG 6 foreign-data wrapper implementation has the following known issues and limitations:

- WarehousePG supports all values of the `mpp_execute` option value for foreign table scans only. WarehousePG supports parallel write operations only when `mpp_execute` is set to `'all segments'`; WarehousePG initiates write operations through the coordinator for all other `mpp_execute` settings. See WarehousePG Considerations.

#### Header Files

The WarehousePG header files that you may use when you develop a foreign-data wrapper are located in the `greenplum-db/src/include/` directory (when developing against the WarehousePG open source github repository), or installed in the `$GPHOME/include/postgresql/server/` directory (when developing against a WarehousePG installation):

- foreign/fdwapi.h - FDW API structures and callback function signatures
- foreign/foreign.h - foreign-data wrapper helper structs and functions
- catalog/pg_foreign_table.h - foreign table definition
- catalog/pg_foreign_server.h - foreign server definition

Your FDW code may also be dependent on header files and libraries required to access the remote data store.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Foreign Data Wrapper Functions

The developer of a foreign-data wrapper must implement an SQL-invokable *handler* function, and optionally an SQL-invokable *validator* function. Both functions must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface.

The *handler* function simply returns a struct of function pointers to callback functions that will be called by the WarehousePG planner, executor, and various maintenance commands. The *handler* function must be registered with WarehousePG as taking no arguments and returning the special pseudo-type `fdw_handler`. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION NEW_fdw_handler()
  RETURNS fdw_handler
  AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

Most of the effort in writing a foreign-data wrapper is in implementing the callback functions. The FDW API callback functions, plain C functions that are not visible or callable at the SQL level, are described in Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Functions.

The *validator* function is responsible for validating options provided in `CREATE` and `ALTER` commands for its foreign-data wrapper, as well as foreign servers, user mappings, and foreign tables using the wrapper. The *validator* function must be registered as taking two arguments, a text array containing the options to be validated, and an OID representing the type of object with which the options are associated. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION NEW_fdw_validator( text[], oid )
  RETURNS void
  AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The OID argument reflects the type of the system catalog that the object would be stored in, one of `ForeignDataWrapperRelationId`, `ForeignServerRelationId`, `UserMappingRelationId`, or `ForeignTableRelationId`. If no *validator* function is supplied by a foreign data wrapper, WarehousePG does not check option validity at object creation time or object alteration time.

### Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Functions

The foreign-data wrapper API defines callback functions that WarehousePG invokes when scanning and updating foreign tables. The API also includes callbacks for performing explain and analyze operations on a foreign table.

The *handler* function of a foreign-data wrapper returns a `palloc`'d `FdwRoutine` struct containing pointers to callback functions described below. The `FdwRoutine` struct is located in the `foreign/fdwapi.h` header file, and is defined as follows:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
/*
 * FdwRoutine is the struct returned by a foreign-data wrapper's handler
 * function.  It provides pointers to the callback functions needed by the
 * planner and executor.
 *
 * More function pointers are likely to be added in the future.  Therefore
 * it's recommended that the handler initialize the struct with
 * makeNode(FdwRoutine) so that all fields are set to NULL.  This will
 * ensure that no fields are accidentally left undefined.
 */
typedef struct FdwRoutine
{
    NodeTag     type;

    /* Functions for scanning foreign tables */
    GetForeignRelSize_function GetForeignRelSize;
    GetForeignPaths_function GetForeignPaths;
    GetForeignPlan_function GetForeignPlan;
    BeginForeignScan_function BeginForeignScan;
    IterateForeignScan_function IterateForeignScan;
    ReScanForeignScan_function ReScanForeignScan;
    EndForeignScan_function EndForeignScan;

    /*
     * Remaining functions are optional.  Set the pointer to NULL for any that
     * are not provided.
     */

    /* Functions for updating foreign tables */
    AddForeignUpdateTargets_function AddForeignUpdateTargets;
    PlanForeignModify_function PlanForeignModify;
    BeginForeignModify_function BeginForeignModify;
    ExecForeignInsert_function ExecForeignInsert;
    ExecForeignUpdate_function ExecForeignUpdate;
    ExecForeignDelete_function ExecForeignDelete;
    EndForeignModify_function EndForeignModify;
    IsForeignRelUpdatable_function IsForeignRelUpdatable;

    /* Support functions for EXPLAIN */
    ExplainForeignScan_function ExplainForeignScan;
    ExplainForeignModify_function ExplainForeignModify;

    /* Support functions for ANALYZE */
    AnalyzeForeignTable_function AnalyzeForeignTable;
} FdwRoutine;
```

You must implement the scan-related functions in your foreign-data wrapper; implementing the other callback functions is optional.

Scan-related callback functions include:

| Callback Signature | Description |
|---|---|
| `void GetForeignRelSize (PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *baserel, Oid foreigntableid)` | Obtain relation size estimates for a foreign table. Called at the beginning of planning for a query on a foreign table. |
| `void GetForeignPaths (PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *baserel, Oid foreigntableid)` | Create possible access paths for a scan on a foreign table. Called during query planning.<br><br>**Note:** A WarehousePG Database-compatible FDW must call `create_foreignscan_path()` in its `GetForeignPaths()` callback function. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Callback Signature | Description |
|---|---|
| `ForeignScan * GetForeignPlan (PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *baserel, Oid foreigntableid, ForeignPath *best_path, List *tlist, List *scan_clauses)` | Create a `ForeignScan` plan node from the selected foreign access path. Called at the end of query planning. |
| `void BeginForeignScan (ForeignScanState *node, int eflags)` | Begin running a foreign scan. Called during executor startup. |
| `TupleTableSlot * IterateForeignScan (ForeignScanState *node)` | Fetch one row from the foreign source, returning it in a tuple table slot; return NULL if no more rows are available. |
| `void ReScanForeignScan (ForeignScanState *node)` | Restart the scan from the beginning. |
| `void EndForeignScan (ForeignScanState *node)` | End the scan and release resources. |

If a foreign data wrapper supports writable foreign tables, it should provide the update-related callback functions that are required by the capabilities of the FDW. Update-related callback functions include:

| Callback Signature | Description |
|---|---|
| `void AddForeignUpdateTargets (Query *parsetree, RangeTblEntry *target_rte, Relation target_relation)` | Add additional information in the foreign table that will be retrieved during an update or delete operation to identify the exact row on which to operate. |
| `List * PlanForeignModify (PlannerInfo *root, ModifyTable *plan, Index resultRelation, int subplan_index)` | Perform additional planning actions required for an insert, update, or delete operation on a foreign table, and return the information generated. |
| `void BeginForeignModify (ModifyTableState *mtstate, ResultRelInfo *rinfo, List *fdw_private, int subplan_index, int eflags)` | Begin executing a modify operation on a foreign table. Called during executor startup. |
| `TupleTableSlot * ExecForeignInsert (EState *estate, ResultRelInfo *rinfo, TupleTableSlot *slot, TupleTableSlot *planSlot)` | Insert a single tuple into the foreign table. Return a slot containing the data that was actually inserted, or NULL if no row was inserted. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Callback Signature | Description |
|---|---|
| `TupleTableSlot * ExecForeignUpdate (EState *estate, ResultRelInfo *rinfo, TupleTableSlot *slot, TupleTableSlot *planSlot)` | Update a single tuple in the foreign table. Return a slot containing the row as it was actually updated, or NULL if no row was updated. |
| `TupleTableSlot * ExecForeignDelete (EState *estate, ResultRelInfo *rinfo, TupleTableSlot *slot, TupleTableSlot *planSlot)` | Delete a single tuple from the foreign table. Return a slot containing the row that was deleted, or NULL if no row was deleted. |
| `void EndForeignModify (EState *estate, ResultRelInfo *rinfo)` | End the update and release resources. |
| `int IsForeignRelUpdatable (Relation rel)` | Report the update operations supported by the specified foreign table. |

Refer to Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines in the PostgreSQL documentation for detailed information about the inputs and outputs of the FDW callback functions.

### Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions

The FDW API exports several helper functions from the WarehousePG core server so that authors of foreign-data wrappers have easy access to attributes of FDW-related objects, such as options provided when the user creates or alters the foreign-data wrapper, server, or foreign table. To use these helper functions, you must include `foreign.h` header file in your source file:

```
#include "foreign/foreign.h"
```

The FDW API includes the helper functions listed in the table below. Refer to Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about these functions.

| Helper Signature | Description |
|---|---|
| `ForeignDataWrapper * GetForeignDataWrapper(Oid fdwid);` | Returns the `ForeignDataWrapper` object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given OID. |
| `ForeignDataWrapper * GetForeignDataWrapperByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);` | Returns the `ForeignDataWrapper` object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given name. |
| `ForeignServer * GetForeignServer(Oid serverid);` | Returns the `ForeignServer` object for the foreign server with the given OID. |
| `ForeignServer * GetForeignServerByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);` | Returns the `ForeignServer` object for the foreign server with the given name. |
| `UserMapping * GetUserMapping(Oid userid, Oid serverid);` | Returns the `UserMapping` object for the user mapping of the given role on the given server. |
| `ForeignTable * GetForeignTable(Oid relid);` | Returns the `ForeignTable` object for the foreign table with the given OID. |
| `List * GetForeignColumnOptions(Oid relid, AttrNumber attnum);` | Returns the per-column FDW options for the column with the given foreign table OID and attribute number. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### WarehousePG Considerations

A WarehousePG user can specify the `mpp_execute` option when they create or alter a foreign table, foreign server, or foreign data wrapper. A WarehousePG-compatible foreign-data wrapper examines the `mpp_execute` option value and uses it to determine where to request or send data - from the `master` (the default), `any` (coordinator or any one segment), or `all segments` (parallel read/write).

WarehousePG supports all `mpp_execute` settings for a scan.

WarehousePG supports parallel write when `mpp_execute 'all segments"` is set. For all other `mpp_execute` settings, WarehousePG executes write/update operations initiated by a foreign data wrapper on the WarehousePG coordinator node.

> **Note** When `mpp_execute 'all segments'` is set, WarehousePG creates the foreign table with a random partition policy. This enables a foreign data wrapper to write to a foreign table from all segments.

The following scan code snippet probes the `mpp_execute` value associated with a foreign table:

```
ForeignTable *table = GetForeignTable(foreigntableid);
if (table->exec_location == FTEXECLOCATION_ALL_SEGMENTS)
{
    ...
}
else if (table->exec_location == FTEXECLOCATION_ANY)
{
    ...
}
else if (table->exec_location == FTEXECLOCATION_MASTER)
{
    ...
}
```

If the foreign table was not created with an `mpp_execute` option setting, the `mpp_execute` setting of the foreign server, and then the foreign data wrapper, is probed and used. If none of the foreign-data-related objects has an `mpp_execute` setting, the default setting is `master` .

If a foreign-data wrapper supports `mpp_execute 'all'` , it will implement a policy that matches WarehousePG segments to data. So as not to duplicate data retrieved from the remote, the FDW on each segment must be able to establish which portion of the data is their responsibility. An FDW may use the segment identifier and the number of segments to help make this determination. The following code snippet demonstrates how a foreign-data wrapper may retrieve the segment number and total number of segments:

```
int segmentNumber = GpIdentity.segindex;
int totalNumberOfSegments = getgpsegmentCount();
```

### Building a Foreign Data Wrapper Extension with PGXS

You compile the foreign-data wrapper functions that you write with the FDW API into one or more shared libraries that the WarehousePG server loads on demand.

You can use the PostgreSQL build extension infrastructure (PGXS) to build the source code for your foreign-data wrapper against a WarehousePG installation. This framework automates common build rules for simple modules. If you have a more complicated use case, you will need to write your own build system.

To use the PGXS infrastructure to generate a shared library for your FDW, create a simple `Makefile` that sets PGXS-specific variables.

> **Note** Refer to Extension Building Infrastructure in the PostgreSQL documentation for information about the `Makefile` variables supported by PGXS.

For example, the following `Makefile` generates a shared library in the current working directory named `base_fdw.so` from two C source files, base_fdw_1.c and base_fdw_2.c:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
MODULE_big = base_fdw
OBJS = base_fdw_1.o base_fdw_2.o

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)

PG_CPPFLAGS = -I$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --includedir)
SHLIB_LINK = -L$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --libdir)
include $(PGXS)
```

A description of the directives used in this `Makefile` follows:

- `MODULE_big` - identifes the base name of the shared library generated by the `Makefile`
- `PG_CPPFLAGS` - adds the WarehousePG installation `include/` directory to the compiler header file search path
- `SHLIB_LINK` adds the WarehousePG installation library directory ( `$GPHOME/lib/` ) to the linker search path
- The `PG_CONFIG` and `PGXS` variable settings and the `include` statement are required and typically reside in the last three lines of the `Makefile` .

To package the foreign-data wrapper as a WarehousePG extension, you create script ( `newfdw--version.sql` ) and control ( `newfdw.control` ) files that register the FDW *handler* and *validator* functions, create the foreign data wrapper, and identify the characteristics of the FDW shared library file.

> **Note** Packaging Related Objects into an Extension in the PostgreSQL documentation describes how to package an extension.

Example foreign-data wrapper extension script file named `base_fdw--1.0.sql` :

```
CREATE FUNCTION base_fdw_handler()
  RETURNS fdw_handler
  AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION base_fdw_validator(text[], oid)
  RETURNS void
  AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER base_fdw
  HANDLER base_fdw_handler
  VALIDATOR base_fdw_validator;
```

Example FDW control file named `base_fdw.control` :

```
# base_fdw FDW extension
comment = 'base foreign-data wrapper implementation; does not do much'
default_version = '1.0'
module_pathname = '$libdir/base_fdw'
relocatable = true
```

When you add the following directives to the `Makefile` , you identify the FDW extension control file base name ( `EXTENSION` ) and SQL script ( `DATA` ):

```
EXTENSION = base_fdw
DATA = base_fdw--1.0.sql
```

Running `make install` with these directives in the `Makefile` copies the shared library and FDW SQL and control files into the specified or default locations in your WarehousePG installation ( `$GPHOME` ).

### Deployment Considerations

You must package the FDW shared library and extension files in a form suitable for deployment in a WarehousePG cluster. When you construct and deploy the package, take into consideration the following:

- The FDW shared library must be installed to the same file system location on the coordinator host and on every segment host in the WarehousePG cluster. You specify this location in the `.control` file. This location is typically the `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/` directory.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- The FDW `.sql` and `.control` files must be installed to the `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/extension/` directory on the coordinator host and on every segment host in the WarehousePG cluster.
- The `gpadmin` user must have permission to traverse the complete file system path to the FDW shared library file and extension files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.8.2 Defining External Tables

examples originalFilePath: >- https://github.com/warehouse-pg/whpg-docs/blob/main/docs/whpg/6x/admin_guide/external/external-tables/index.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

External tables enable accessing external data as if it were a regular database table. They are often used to move data into and out of a WarehousePG.

To create an external table definition, you specify the format of your input files and the location of your external data sources. For information about input file formats, see Formatting Data Files.

Use one of the following protocols to access external table data sources. You cannot mix protocols in `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statements:

- `file://` accesses external data files on segment hosts that the WarehousePG superuser ( `gpadmin` ) can access. See file:// Protocol.
- `gpfdist://` points to a directory on the file host and serves external data files to all WarehousePG segments in parallel. See gpfdist:// Protocol.
- `gpfdists://` is the secure version of `gpfdist` . See gpfdists:// Protocol.
- The `pxf://` protocol accesses object store systems (Azure, Google Cloud Storage, Minio, S3), external Hadoop systems (HDFS, Hive, HBase), and SQL databases using the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF). See pxf:// Protocol.
- `s3://` accesses files in an Amazon S3 bucket. See s3:// Protocol.

The `pxf://` and `s3://` protocols are custom data access protocols, where the `file://` , `gpfdist://` , and `gpfdists://` protocols are implemented internally in WarehousePG. The custom and internal protocols differ in these ways:

- `pxf://` and `s3://` are custom protocols that must be registered using the `CREATE EXTENSION` command ( `pxf` ) or the `CREATE PROTOCOL` command ( `s3` ). Registering the PXF extension in a database creates the `pxf` protocol. (See PXF for WarehousePG.) To use the `s3` protocol, you must configure the database and register the `s3` protocol. (See Configuring the s3 Protocol.) Internal protocols are always present and cannot be unregistered.
- When a custom protocol is registered, a row is added to the `pg_extprotocol` catalog table to specify the handler functions that implement the protocol. The protocol's shared libraries must have been installed on all WarehousePG hosts. The internal protocols are not represented in the `pg_extprotocol` table and have no additional libraries to install.
- To grant users permissions on custom protocols, you use `GRANT [SELECT | INSERT | ALL] ON PROTOCOL` . To allow (or deny) users permissions on the internal protocols, you use `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` to add the `CREATEEXTTABLE` (or `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` ) attribute to each user's role.

External tables access external files from within the database as if they are regular database tables. External tables defined with the `gpfdist` / `gpfdists` , `pxf` , and `s3` protocols utilize WarehousePG parallelism by using the resources of all WarehousePG segments to load or unload data. The `pxf` protocol leverages the parallel architecture of the Hadoop Distributed File System to access files on that system. The `s3` protocol utilizes the Amazon Web Services (AWS) capabilities.

You can query external table data directly and in parallel using SQL commands such as `SELECT` , `JOIN` , or `SORT EXTERNAL TABLE DATA` , and you can create views for external tables.

The steps for using external tables are:

1. Define the external table.

   To use the `pxf` or `s3` protocol, you must also configure WarehousePG and enable the protocol. See pxf:// Protocol or s3:// Protocol.

2. Do one of the following:

   - Start the WarehousePG file server(s) when using the `gpfdist` or `gpdists` protocols.
   - Verify the configuration for the PXF service and start the service.
   - Verify the WarehousePG configuration for the `s3` protocol.

3. Place the data files in the correct locations.

4. Query the external table with SQL commands.

WarehousePG provides readable and writable external tables:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Readable external tables for data loading. Readable external tables support:
    - Basic extraction, transformation, and loading (ETL) tasks common in data warehousing
    - Reading external table data in parallel from multiple WarehousePG segment instances, to optimize large load operations
    - Filter pushdown. If a query contains a `WHERE` clause, it may be passed to the external data source. Refer to the gp_external_enable_filter_pushdown server configuration parameter discussion for more information. Note that this feature is currently supported only with the `pxf` protocol (see pxf:// Protocol). Readable external tables allow only `SELECT` operations.
- Writable external tables for data unloading. Writable external tables support:
    - Selecting data from database tables to insert into the writable external table
    - Sending data to an application as a stream of data. For example, unload data from WarehousePG and send it to an application that connects to another database or ETL tool to load the data elsewhere
    - Receiving output from WarehousePG parallel MapReduce calculations. Writable external tables allow only `INSERT` operations.

External tables can be file-based or web-based. External tables using the `file://` protocol are read-only tables.

- Regular (file-based) external tables access static flat files. Regular external tables are rescannable: the data is static while the query runs.
- Web (web-based) external tables access dynamic data sources, either on a web server with the `http://` protocol or by running OS commands or scripts. External web tables are not rescannable: the data can change while the query runs.

WarehousePG backup and restore operations back up and restore only external and external web table *definitions*, not the data source data.

- **file:// Protocol**
  The `file://` protocol is used in a URI that specifies the location of an operating system file.
- **gpfdist:// Protocol**
  The `gpfdist://` protocol is used in a URI to reference a running `gpfdist` instance.
- **gpfdists:// Protocol**
  The `gpfdists://` protocol is a secure version of the `gpfdist:// protocol`.
- **pxf:// Protocol**
  You can use the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) `pxf://` protocol to access data residing in object store systems (Azure, Google Cloud Storage, Minio, S3), external Hadoop systems (HDFS, Hive, HBase), and SQL databases.
- **s3:// Protocol**
  The `s3` protocol is used in a URL that specifies the location of an Amazon S3 bucket and a prefix to use for reading or writing files in the bucket.
- **Using a Custom Protocol**
  A custom protocol allows you to connect WarehousePG to a data source that cannot be accessed with the `file://`, `gpfdist://`, or `pxf://` protocols.
- **Handling Errors in External Table Data**
  By default, if external table data contains an error, the command fails and no data loads into the target database table.
- **Creating and Using External Web Tables**
  External web tables allow WarehousePG to treat dynamic data sources like regular database tables. Because web table data can change as a query runs, the data is not rescannable.
- **Examples for Creating External Tables**
  These examples show how to define external data with different protocols. Each `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command can contain only one protocol.

**Parent topic:** Working with External Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.8.2.1 file:// Protocol

You can use the `file://` protocol with a WarehousePG external table to read from one or more files located on each WarehousePG segment host. The `file://` protocol does not support writing to files.

When reading, the `file://` protocol uncompresses `gzip` (`.gz`), `bzip2` (`.bz2`), and `zstd` (`.zst`) files automatically.

You must provide a URI that specifies the location of an operating system file(s). The URI includes the host name, port, and path to the file. Each file must reside on a segment host in a location accessible by the WarehousePG superuser (`gpadmin`). The host name used in the URI must match a segment host name registered in the `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog table.

The `LOCATION` clause can have multiple URIs, as shown in this example:

```
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses (
   name text, date date, amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
LOCATION ('file://host1:5432/data/expense/*.csv',
          'file://host2:5432/data/expense/*.csv',
          'file://host3:5432/data/expense/*.csv')
FORMAT 'CSV' (HEADER);
```

The number of URIs you specify in the `LOCATION` clause is the number of segment instances that will work in parallel to access the external table. For each URI, WarehousePG assigns a primary segment on the specified host to the file. For maximum parallelism when loading data, divide the data into as many equally sized files as you have primary segments. This ensures that all segments participate in the load. The number of external files per segment host cannot exceed the number of primary segment instances on that host. For example, if your array has four primary segment instances per segment host, you can place four external files on each segment host. Tables based on the `file://` protocol can only be readable tables.

The system view `pg_max_external_files` shows how many external table files are permitted per external table. This view lists the available file slots per segment host when using the `file://` protocol. The view is only applicable for the `file:// protocol`. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_max_external_files;
```

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.2 gpfdist:// Protocol

The `gpfdist://` protocol is used in a URI to reference a running `gpfdist` instance.

The gpfdist utility serves external data files from a directory on a file host to all WarehousePG segments in parallel.

`gpfdist` is located in the `$GPHOME/bin` directory on your WarehousePG coordinator host and on each segment host.

Run `gpfdist` on the host where the external data files reside. For readable external tables, `gpfdist` uncompresses `gzip` (`.gz`), `bzip2` (`.bz2`), and `zstd` (`.zst`) files automatically. For writable external tables, data is compressed using `gzip` if the target file has a `.gz` extension, `bzip` if the target file has a `.bz2` extension, or `zstd` if the target file has a `.zst` extension. You can use the wildcard character (*) or other C-style pattern matching to denote multiple files to read. The files specified are assumed to be relative to the directory that you specified when you started the `gpfdist` instance.

> **Note** Compression is not supported for readable and writeable external tables when the `gpfdist` utility runs on Windows platforms.

All primary segments access the external file(s) in parallel, subject to the number of segments set in the `gp_external_max_segments` server configuration parameter. Use multiple `gpfdist` data sources in a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement to scale the external table's scan performance.

`gpfdist` supports data transformations. You can write a transformation process to convert external data from or to a format that is not directly supported with WarehousePG external tables.

For more information about configuring `gpfdist`, see Using the WarehousePG Parallel File Server (gpfdist).

See the `gpfdist` reference documentation for more information about using `gpfdist` with external tables.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.3 gpfdists:// Protocol

The `gpfdists://` protocol is a secure version of the `gpfdist:// protocol`.

To use it, you run the gpfdist utility with the `--ssl` option. When specified in a URI, the `gpfdists://` protocol enables encrypted communication and secure identification of the file server and the WarehousePG to protect against attacks such as eavesdropping and man-in-the-middle attacks.

`gpfdists` implements SSL security in a client/server scheme with the following attributes and limitations:

- Client certificates are required.
- Multilingual certificates are not supported.
- A Certificate Revocation List (CRL) is not supported.
- The `TLSv1` protocol is used with the `TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA` encryption algorithm.
- SSL parameters cannot be changed.
- SSL renegotiation is supported.
- The SSL ignore host mismatch parameter is set to `false`.
- Private keys containing a passphrase are not supported for the `gpfdist` file server (server.key) and for the WarehousePG (client.key).
- Issuing certificates that are appropriate for the operating system in use is the user's responsibility. Generally, converting certificates as shown in https://www.sslshopper.com/ssl-converter.html is supported.

  > **Note** A server started with the `gpfdist --ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdists` protocol. A server that was started with `gpfdist` without the `--ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdist` protocol.

- The client certificate file, client.crt
- The client private key file, client.key

Use one of the following methods to invoke the `gpfdists` protocol.

- Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option and then use the `gpfdists` protocol in the `LOCATION` clause of a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement.
- Use a `gpload` YAML control file with the `SSL` option set to true. Running `gpload` starts the `gpfdist` server with the `--ssl` option, then uses the `gpfdists` protocol.

Using `gpfdists` requires that the following client certificates reside in the `$PGDATA/gpfdists` directory on each segment.

- The client certificate file, `client.crt`
- The client private key file, `client.key`
- The trusted certificate authorities, `root.crt`

For an example of loading data into an external table security, see Example 3—Multiple gpfdists instances.

The server configuration parameter verify_gpfdists_cert controls whether SSL certificate authentication is enabled when WarehousePG communicates with the `gpfdist` utility to either read data from or write data to an external data source. You can set the parameter value to `false` to deactivate authentication when testing the communication between the WarehousePG external table and the `gpfdist` utility that is serving the external data. If the value is `false`, these SSL exceptions are ignored:

- The self-signed SSL certificate that is used by `gpfdist` is not trusted by WarehousePG.
- The host name contained in the SSL certificate does not match the host name that is running `gpfdist`.

> **Caution** Deactivating SSL certificate authentication exposes a security risk by not validating the `gpfdists` SSL certificate.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.8.2.4 pxf:// Protocol

You can use the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) `pxf://` protocol to access data residing in object store systems (Azure, Google Cloud Storage, Minio, S3), external Hadoop systems (HDFS, Hive, HBase), and SQL databases.

The PXF `pxf` protocol is packaged as a WarehousePG extension. The `pxf` protocol supports reading from external data stores. You can also write text, binary, and parquet-format data with the `pxf` protocol.

When you use the `pxf` protocol to query an external data store, you specify the directory, file, or table that you want to access. PXF requests the data from the data store and delivers the relevant portions in parallel to each WarehousePG segment instance serving the query.

You must explicitly initialize and start PXF before you can use the `pxf` protocol to read or write external data. You must also enable PXF in each database in which you want to allow users to create external tables to access external data, and grant permissions on the `pxf` protocol to those WarehousePG users.

For detailed information about configuring and using PXF and the `pxf` protocol, refer to PXF for WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.5 s3:// Protocol

The `s3` protocol is used in a URL that specifies the location of an Amazon S3 bucket and a prefix to use for reading or writing files in the bucket.

Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) provides secure, durable, highly-scalable object storage. For information about Amazon S3, see Amazon S3.

You can define read-only external tables that use existing data files in the S3 bucket for table data, or writable external tables that store the data from INSERT operations to files in the S3 bucket. WarehousePG uses the S3 URL and prefix specified in the protocol URL either to select one or more files for a read-only table, or to define the location and filename format to use when uploading S3 files for `INSERT` operations to writable tables.

The `s3` protocol also supports Dell Elastic Cloud Storage (ECS), an Amazon S3 compatible service.

> **Note** The `pxf` protocol can access data in S3 and other object store systems such as Azure, Google Cloud Storage, and Minio. The `pxf` protocol can also access data in external Hadoop systems (HDFS, Hive, HBase), and SQL databases. See pxf:// Protocol.

This topic contains the sections:


- Configuring the s3 Protocol
- Using s3 External Tables
- About the s3 Protocol LOCATION URL
- About Reading and Writing S3 Data Files
- s3 Protocol AWS Server-Side Encryption Support
- s3 Protocol Proxy Support
- About Providing the S3 Authentication Credentials
- About the s3 Protocol Configuration File
- About Specifying the Configuration File Location
- s3 Protocol Limitations
- Using the gpcheckcloud Utility


#### Configuring the s3 Protocol

You must configure the `s3` protocol before you can use it. Perform these steps in each database in which you want to use the protocol:

1. Create the read and write functions for the `s3` protocol library:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION write_to_s3() RETURNS integer AS
   '$libdir/gps3ext.so', 's3_export' LANGUAGE C STABLE;
```

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION read_from_s3() RETURNS integer AS
   '$libdir/gps3ext.so', 's3_import' LANGUAGE C STABLE;
```

2. Declare the `s3` protocol and specify the read and write functions you created in the previous step:

   To allow only WarehousePG superusers to use the protocol, create it as follows:

```
CREATE PROTOCOL s3 (writefunc = write_to_s3, readfunc = read_from_s3);
```

   If you want to permit non-superusers to use the `s3` protocol, create it as a `TRUSTED` protocol and `GRANT` access to those users. For example:

```
CREATE TRUSTED PROTOCOL s3 (writefunc = write_to_s3, readfunc = read_from_s3);
GRANT ALL ON PROTOCOL s3 TO user1, user2;
```

   > **Note** The protocol name `s3` must be the same as the protocol of the URL specified for the external table that you create to access an S3 resource.

   The corresponding function is called by every WarehousePG segment instance.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Using s3 External Tables

Follow these basic steps to use the `s3` protocol with WarehousePG external tables. Each step includes links to relevant topics from which you can obtain more information. See also s3 Protocol Limitations to better understand the capabilities and limitations of s3 external tables:

1. Configure the s3 Protocol.

2. Create the `s3` protocol configuration file:

    1. Create a template `s3` protocol configuration file using the `gpcheckcloud` utility:

        ```
        gpcheckcloud -t > ./mytest_s3.config
        ```

    2. (Optional) Edit the template file to specify the `accessid` and `secret` authentication credentials required to connect to the S3 location. See About Providing the S3 Authentication Credentials and About the s3 Protocol Configuration File for information about specifying these and other `s3` protocol configuration parameters.

3. WarehousePG can access an `s3` protocol configuration file when the file is located on each segment host or when the file is served up by an `http/https` server. Identify where you plan to locate the configuration file, and note the location and configuration option (if applicable). Refer to About Specifying the Configuration File Location for more information about the location options for the file.

    If you are relying on the AWS credential file to authenticate, this file must reside at `~/.aws/credentials` on each WarehousePG segment host.

4. Use the `gpcheckcloud` utility to validate connectivity to the S3 bucket. You must specify the S3 endpoint name and bucket that you want to check.

    For example, if the `s3` protocol configuration file resides in the default location, you would run the following command:

    ```
    gpcheckcloud -c "s3://<s3-endpoint>/<s3-bucket>"
    ```

    `gpcheckcloud` attempts to connect to the S3 endpoint and lists any files in the S3 bucket, if available. A successful connection ends with the message:

    ```
    Your configuration works well.
    ```

    You can optionally use `gpcheckcloud` to validate uploading to and downloading from the S3 bucket. Refer to Using the gpcheckcloud Utility for information about this utility and other usage examples.

5. Create an s3 external table by specifying an `s3` protocol URL in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command, `LOCATION` clause.

    For read-only s3 tables, the URL defines the location and prefix used to select existing data files that comprise the s3 table. For example:

    ```
    CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE S3TBL (date text, time text, amt int)
       LOCATION('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/s3test.example.com/dataset1/normal/
    config=/home/gpadmin/aws_s3/s3.conf')
       FORMAT 'csv';
    ```

    For writable s3 tables, the protocol URL defines the S3 location in which WarehousePG writes the data files that back the table for `INSERT` operations. You can also specify a prefix that WarehousePG will add to the files that it creates. For example:

    ```
    CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE S3WRIT (LIKE S3TBL)
       LOCATION('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/s3test.example.com/dataset1/normal/
    config=/home/gpadmin/aws_s3/s3.conf')
       FORMAT 'csv';
    ```

    Refer to About the s3 Protocol LOCATION URL for more information about the `s3` protocol URL.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### About the s3 Protocol LOCATION URL

When you use the `s3` protocol, you specify an S3 file location and optional configuration file location and region parameters in the `LOCATION` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command. The syntax follows:

```
's3://<S3_endpoint>[:<port>]/<bucket_name>/[<S3_prefix>] [region=<S3_region>] [config=<config_file_location> |
config_server=<url>] [section=<section_name>]'
```

The `s3` protocol requires that you specify the S3 endpoint and S3 bucket name. Each WarehousePG segment host must have access to the S3 location. The optional S3_prefix value is used to select files for read-only S3 tables, or as a filename prefix to use when uploading files for s3 writable tables.

> **Note** The WarehousePG `s3` protocol URL must include the S3 endpoint hostname.

To specify an ECS endpoint (an Amazon S3 compatible service) in the `LOCATION` clause, you must set the `s3` protocol configuration file parameter `version` to `2`. The `version` parameter controls whether the `region` parameter is used in the `LOCATION` clause. You can also specify an Amazon S3 location when the `version` parameter is 2. For information about the `version` parameter, see About the s3 Protocol Configuration File.

> **Note** Although the S3_prefix is an optional part of the syntax, you should always include an S3 prefix for both writable and read-only s3 tables to separate datasets as part of the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE syntax.

For writable s3 tables, the `s3` protocol URL specifies the endpoint and bucket name where WarehousePG uploads data files for the table. The S3 file prefix is used for each new file uploaded to the S3 location as a result of inserting data to the table. See About Reading and Writing S3 Data Files.

For read-only s3 tables, the S3 file prefix is optional. If you specify an S3_prefix, then the `s3` protocol selects all files that start with the specified prefix as data files for the external table. The `s3` protocol does not use the slash character ( `/` ) as a delimiter, so a slash character following a prefix is treated as part of the prefix itself.

For example, consider the following 5 files that each have the S3_endpoint named `s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com` and the bucket_name `test1`:

```
s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc
s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc/
s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc/xx
s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abcdef
s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abcdefff
```

- If the S3 URL is provided as `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc`, then the `abc` prefix selects all 5 files.
- If the S3 URL is provided as `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc/`, then the `abc/` prefix selects the files `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc/` and `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc/xx`.
- If the S3 URL is provided as `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abcd`, then the `abcd` prefix selects the files `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abcdef` and `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abcdefff`

Wildcard characters are not supported in an S3_prefix; however, the S3 prefix functions as if a wildcard character immediately followed the prefix itself.

All of the files selected by the S3 URL (S3_endpoint/bucket_name/S3_prefix) are used as the source for the external table, so they must have the same format. Each file must also contain complete data rows. A data row cannot be split between files.

For information about the Amazon S3 endpoints see http://docs.aws.amazon.com/general/latest/gr/rande.html#s3_region. For information about S3 buckets and folders, see the Amazon S3 documentation https://aws.amazon.com/documentation/s3/. For information about the S3 file prefix, see the Amazon S3 documentationListing Keys Hierarchically Using a Prefix and Delimiter.

You use the `config` or `config_server` parameter to specify the location of the required `s3` protocol configuration file that contains AWS connection credentials and communication parameters as described in About Specifying the Configuration File Location.

Use the `section` parameter to specify the name of the configuration file section from which the `s3` protocol reads configuration parameters. The default `section` is named `default`. When you specify the section name in the configuration file, enclose it in brackets (for example, `[default]`).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## About Reading and Writing S3 Data Files

You can use the `s3` protocol to read and write data files on Amazon S3.

### Reading S3 Files

The S3 permissions on any file that you read must include `Open/Download` and `View` for the S3 user ID that accesses the files.

For read-only s3 tables, all of the files specified by the S3 file location (S3_endpoint/bucket_name/S3_prefix) are used as the source for the external table and must have the same format. Each file must also contain complete data rows. If the files contain an optional header row, the column names in the header row cannot contain a newline character ( `\n` ) or a carriage return ( `\r` ). Also, the column delimiter cannot be a newline character ( `\n` ) or a carriage return character ( `\r` ).

The `s3` protocol recognizes gzip and deflate compressed files and automatically decompresses the files. For gzip compression, the protocol recognizes the format of a gzip compressed file. For deflate compression, the protocol assumes a file with the `.deflate` suffix is a deflate compressed file.

Each WarehousePG segment can download one file at a time from the S3 location using several threads. To take advantage of the parallel processing performed by the WarehousePG segments, the files in the S3 location should be similar in size and the number of files should allow for multiple segments to download the data from the S3 location. For example, if the WarehousePG cluster consists of 16 segments and there was sufficient network bandwidth, creating 16 files in the S3 location allows each segment to download a file from the S3 location. In contrast, if the location contained only 1 or 2 files, only 1 or 2 segments download data.

### Writing S3 Files

Writing a file to S3 requires that the S3 user ID have `Upload/Delete` permissions.

When you initiate an `INSERT` operation on a writable s3 table, each WarehousePG segment uploads a single file to the configured S3 bucket using the filename format `<prefix><segment_id><random>.<extension>[.gz]` where:

- `<prefix>` is the prefix specified in the S3 URL.
- `<segment_id>` is the WarehousePG segment ID.
- `<random>` is a random number that is used to ensure that the filename is unique.
- `<extension>` describes the file type ( `.txt` or .csv, depending on the value you provide in the `FORMAT` clause of `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE` ). Files created by the `gpcheckcloud` utility always uses the extension .data.
- .gz is appended to the filename if compression is enabled for s3 writable tables (the default).

You can configure the buffer size and the number of threads that segments use for uploading files. See About the s3 Protocol Configuration File.

## s3 Protocol AWS Server-Side Encryption Support

WarehousePG supports server-side encryption using Amazon S3-managed keys (SSE-S3) for AWS S3 files you access with readable and writable external tables created using the `s3` protocol. SSE-S3 encrypts your object data as it writes to disk, and transparently decrypts the data for you when you access it.

> **Note** The `s3` protocol supports SSE-S3 only for Amazon Web Services S3 files. SS3-SE is not supported when accessing files in S3 compatible services.

Your S3 account permissions govern your access to all S3 bucket objects, whether the data is encrypted or not. However, you must configure your client to use S3-managed keys for accessing encrypted data.

Refer to Protecting Data Using Server-Side Encryption in the AWS documentation for additional information about AWS Server-Side Encryption.

### Configuring S3 Server-Side Encryption

`s3` protocol server-side encryption is deactivated by default. To take advantage of server-side encryption on AWS S3 objects you write using the WarehousePG `s3` protocol, you must set the `server_side_encryption` configuration parameter in your `s3` protocol configuration file to the value `sse-s3` :

```
server_side_encryption = sse-s3
```

When the configuration file you provide to a `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE` call using the `s3` protocol includes the `server_side_encryption = sse-s3` setting, WarehousePG applies encryption headers for you on all `INSERT` operations on that external table. S3 then encrypts on write the object(s) identified by the URI you provided in the `LOCATION` clause.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

S3 transparently decrypts data during read operations of encrypted files accessed via readable external tables you create using the `s3` protocol. No additional configuration is required.

For further encryption configuration granularity, you may consider creating Amazon Web Services S3 *Bucket Policy*(s), identifying the objects you want to encrypt and the write actions on those objects as described in the Protecting Data Using Server-Side Encryption with Amazon S3-Managed Encryption Keys (SSE-S3) AWS documentation.

### s3 Protocol Proxy Support

You can specify a URL that is the proxy that S3 uses to connect to a data source. S3 supports these protocols: HTTP and HTTPS. You can specify a proxy with the `s3` protocol configuration parameter `proxy` or an environment variable. If the configuration parameter is set, the environment variables are ignored.

To specify proxy with an environment variable, you set the environment variable based on the protocol: `http_proxy` or `https_proxy`. You can specify a different URL for each protocol by setting the appropriate environment variable. S3 supports these environment variables.

- `all_proxy` specifies the proxy URL that is used if an environment variable for a specific protocol is not set.
- `no_proxy` specifies a comma-separated list of hosts names that do not use the proxy specified by an environment variable.

The environment variables must be set must and must be accessible to WarehousePG on all WarehousePG hosts.

For information about the configuration parameter `proxy`, see About the s3 Protocol Configuration File.

### About Providing the S3 Authentication Credentials

The `s3` protocol obtains the S3 authentication credentials as follows:

- You specify the S3 `accessid` and `secret` parameters and their values in a named `section` of an s3 protocol configuration file. The default section from which the `s3` protocol obtains this information is named `[default]`.
- If you do not specify the `accessid` and `secret`, or these parameter values are empty, the `s3` protocol attempts to obtain the S3 authentication credentials from the `aws_access_key_id` and `aws_secret_access_key` parameters specified in a named `section` of the user's AWS credential file. The default location of this file is `~/.aws/credentials`, and the default section is named `[default]`.

### About the s3 Protocol Configuration File

An `s3` protocol configuration file contains Amazon Web Services (AWS) connection credentials and communication parameters.

The `s3` protocol configuration file is a text file that contains named sections and parameters. The default section is named `[default]`. An example configuration file follows:

```
[default]
secret = "secret"
accessid = "user access id"
threadnum = 3
chunksize = 67108864
```

You can use the WarehousePG `gpcheckcloud` utility to test the s3 protocol configuration file. See Using the gpcheckcloud Utility.

#### s3 Configuration File Parameters

- `accessid`

  Optional. AWS S3 ID to access the S3 bucket. Refer to About Providing the S3 Authentication Credentials for more information about specifying authentication credentials.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `secret`

  Optional. AWS S3 passcode for the S3 ID to access the S3 bucket. Refer to About Providing the S3 Authentication Credentials for more information about specifying authentication credentials.

- `autocompress`

  For writable s3 external tables, this parameter specifies whether to compress files (using gzip) before uploading to S3. Files are compressed by default if you do not specify this parameter.

- `chunksize`

  The buffer size that each segment thread uses for reading from or writing to the S3 server. The default is 64 MB. The minimum is 8MB and the maximum is 128MB.

When inserting data to a writable s3 table, each WarehousePG segment writes the data into its buffer (using multiple threads up to the `threadnum` value) until it is full, after which it writes the buffer to a file in the S3 bucket. This process is then repeated as necessary on each segment until the insert operation completes.

Because Amazon S3 allows a maximum of 10,000 parts for multipart uploads, the minimum `chunksize` value of 8MB supports a maximum insert size of 80GB per WarehousePG segment. The maximum `chunksize` value of 128MB supports a maximum insert size 1.28TB per segment. For writable s3 tables, you must ensure that the `chunksize` setting can support the anticipated table size of your table. See Multipart Upload Overview in the S3 documentation for more information about uploads to S3.

- `encryption`

  Use connections that are secured with Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). Default value is `true`. The values `true`, `t`, `on`, `yes`, and `y` (case insensitive) are treated as `true`. Any other value is treated as `false`.

If the port is not specified in the URL in the `LOCATION` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command, the configuration file `encryption` parameter affects the port used by the `s3` protocol (port 80 for HTTP or port 443 for HTTPS). If the port is specified, that port is used regardless of the encryption setting.

- `gpcheckcloud_newline`

  When downloading files from an S3 location, the `gpcheckcloud` utility appends a new line character to last line of a file if the last line of a file does not have an EOL (end of line) character. The default character is `\n` (newline). The value can be `\n`, `\r` (carriage return), or `\n\r` (newline/carriage return).

Adding an EOL character prevents the last line of one file from being concatenated with the first line of next file.

- `low_speed_limit`

  The upload/download speed lower limit, in bytes per second. The default speed is 10240 (10K). If the upload or download speed is slower than the limit for longer than the time specified by `low_speed_time`, then the connection is stopped and retried. After 3 retries, the `s3` protocol returns an error. A value of 0 specifies no lower limit.

- `low_speed_time`

  When the connection speed is less than `low_speed_limit`, this parameter specified the amount of time, in seconds, to wait before cancelling an upload to or a download from the S3 bucket. The default is 60 seconds. A value of 0 specifies no time limit.

- `proxy`

  Specify a URL that is the proxy that S3 uses to connect to a data source. S3 supports these protocols: HTTP and HTTPS. This is the format for the parameter.

```
proxy = <protocol>://[<user>:<password>@]<proxyhost>[:<port>]
```

If this parameter is not set or is an empty string (`proxy = ""`), S3 uses the proxy specified by the environment variable `http_proxy` or `https_proxy` (and the environment variables `all_proxy` and `no_proxy`). The environment variable that S3 uses depends on the protocol. For information about the environment variables, see s3 Protocol Proxy Support.

There can be at most one `proxy` parameter in the configuration file. The URL specified by the parameter is the proxy for all supported protocols.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `server_side_encryption`

  The S3 server-side encryption method that has been configured for the bucket. WarehousePG supports only server-side encryption with Amazon S3-managed keys, identified by the configuration parameter value `sse-s3`. Server-side encryption is deactivated ( `none` ) by default.

- `threadnum`

  The maximum number of concurrent threads a segment can create when uploading data to or downloading data from the S3 bucket. The default is 4. The minimum is 1 and the maximum is 8.

- `verifycert`

  Controls how the `s3` protocol handles authentication when establishing encrypted communication between a client and an S3 data source over HTTPS. The value is either `true` or `false`. The default value is `true`.

- `verifycert=false` - Ignores authentication errors and allows encrypted communication over HTTPS.

- `verifycert=true` - Requires valid authentication (a proper certificate) for encrypted communication over HTTPS.

Setting the value to `false` can be useful in testing and development environments to allow communication without changing certificates.

> **Caution** Setting the value to `false` exposes a security risk by ignoring invalid credentials when establishing communication between a client and a S3 data store.

- `version`

  Specifies the version of the information specified in the `LOCATION` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command. The value is either `1` or `2`. The default value is `1`.

If the value is `1`, the `LOCATION` clause supports an Amazon S3 URL, and does not contain the `region` parameter. If the value is `2`, the `LOCATION` clause supports S3 compatible services and must include the `region` parameter. The `region` parameter specifies the S3 data source region. For this S3 URL `s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/s3test.example.com/dataset1/normal/`, the AWS S3 region is `us-west-2`.

If `version` is 1 or is not specified, this is an example of the `LOCATION` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command that specifies an Amazon S3 endpoint.

```
LOCATION ('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/s3test.example.com/dataset1/normal/ config=/home/gpadmin/aws_s3/s3.conf')
```

If `version` is 2, this is an example `LOCATION` clause with the `region` parameter for an AWS S3 compatible service.

```
LOCATION ('s3://test.company.com/s3test.company/test1/normal/ region=local-test config=/home/gpadmin/aws_s3/s3.conf')
```

If `version` is 2, the `LOCATION` clause can also specify an Amazon S3 endpoint. This example specifies an Amazon S3 endpoint that uses the `region` parameter.

```
LOCATION ('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/s3test.example.com/dataset1/normal/ region=us-west-2
config=/home/gpadmin/aws_s3/s3.conf')
```

> **Note** WarehousePG can require up to `threadnum * chunksize` memory on each segment host when uploading or downloading S3 files. Consider this `s3` protocol memory requirement when you configure overall WarehousePG memory.

### About Specifying the Configuration File Location

The default location of the `s3` protocol configuration file is a file named `s3.conf` that resides in the data directory of each WarehousePG segment instance:

```
<gpseg_data_dir>/<gpseg_prefix><N>/s3/s3.conf
```

The gpseg_data_dir is the path to the WarehousePG segment data directory, the gpseg_prefix is the segment prefix, and N is the segment ID. The segment data directory, prefix, and ID are set when you initialize a WarehousePG cluster.

You may choose an alternate location for the `s3` protocol configuration file by specifying the optional `config` or `config_server` parameters in the `LOCATION` URL:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- You can simplify the configuration by using a single configuration file that resides in the same file system location on each segment host. In this scenario, you specify the `config` parameter in the `LOCATION` clause to identify the absolute path to the file. The following example specifies a location in the `gpadmin` home directory:

  ```
  LOCATION ('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/my_data config=/home/gpadmin/s3.conf')
  ```

  The `/home/gpadmin/s3.conf` file must reside on each segment host, and all segment instances on a host use the file.

- You also have the option to use an `http/https` server to serve up the configuration file. In this scenario, you specify an `http/https` server URL in the `config_server` parameter. You are responsible for configuring and starting the server, and each WarehousePG segment host must be able to access the server. The following example specifies an IP address and port for an `https` server:

  ```
  LOCATION ('s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test/my_data config_server=https://203.0.113.0:8553')
  ```

### s3 Protocol Limitations

These are `s3` protocol limitations:

- Only the S3 path-style URL is supported.

  ```
  s3://<S3_endpoint>/<bucketname>/[<S3_prefix>]
  ```

- Only the S3 endpoint is supported. The protocol does not support virtual hosting of S3 buckets (binding a domain name to an S3 bucket).

- AWS signature version 4 signing process is supported.

  For information about the S3 endpoints supported by each signing process, see http://docs.aws.amazon.com/general/latest/gr/rande.html#s3_region.

- Only a single URL and optional configuration file location and region parameters is supported in the `LOCATION` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command.

- If the `NEWLINE` parameter is not specified in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command, the newline character must be identical in all data files for specific prefix. If the newline character is different in some data files with the same prefix, read operations on the files might fail.

- For writable s3 external tables, only the `INSERT` operation is supported. `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE` operations are not supported.

- Because Amazon S3 allows a maximum of 10,000 parts for multipart uploads, the maximum `chunksize` value of 128MB supports a maximum insert size of 1.28TB per WarehousePG segment for writable s3 tables. You must ensure that the `chunksize` setting can support the anticipated table size of your table. See Multipart Upload Overview in the S3 documentation for more information about uploads to S3.

- To take advantage of the parallel processing performed by the WarehousePG segment instances, the files in the S3 location for read-only s3 tables should be similar in size and the number of files should allow for multiple segments to download the data from the S3 location. For example, if the WarehousePG cluster consists of 16 segments and there was sufficient network bandwidth, creating 16 files in the S3 location allows each segment to download a file from the S3 location. In contrast, if the location contained only 1 or 2 files, only 1 or 2 segments download data.

### Using the gpcheckcloud Utility

The WarehousePG utility `gpcheckcloud` helps users create an `s3` protocol configuration file and test a configuration file. You can specify options to test the ability to access an S3 bucket with a configuration file, and optionally upload data to or download data from files in the bucket.

If you run the utility without any options, it sends a template configuration file to `STDOUT`. You can capture the output and create an `s3` configuration file to connect to Amazon S3.

The utility is installed in the WarehousePG `$GPHOME/bin` directory.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Syntax

```
gpcheckcloud {-c | -d} "s3://<S3_endpoint>/<bucketname>/[<S3_prefix>] [config=<path_to_config_file>]"

gpcheckcloud -u <file_to_upload> "s3://<S3_endpoint>/<bucketname>/[<S3_prefix>] [config=<path_to_config_file>]"
gpcheckcloud -t

gpcheckcloud -h
```

#### Options

- `-c`

  Connect to the specified S3 location with the configuration specified in the `s3` protocol URL and return information about the files in the S3 location.

If the connection fails, the utility displays information about failures such as invalid credentials, prefix, or server address (DNS error), or server not available.

- `-d`

  Download data from the specified S3 location with the configuration specified in the `s3` protocol URL and send the output to `STDOUT`.

If files are gzip compressed or have a `.deflate` suffix to indicate deflate compression, the uncompressed data is sent to `STDOUT`.

- `-u`

  Upload a file to the S3 bucket specified in the `s3` protocol URL using the specified configuration file if available. Use this option to test compression and `chunksize` and `autocompress` settings for your configuration.

- `-t`

  Sends a template configuration file to `STDOUT`. You can capture the output and create an `s3` configuration file to connect to Amazon S3.

- `-h`

  Display `gpcheckcloud` help.

#### Examples

This example runs the utility without options to create a template `s3` configuration file `mytest_s3.config` in the current directory.

```
gpcheckcloud -t > ./mytest_s3.config
```

This example attempts to upload a local file, test-data.csv to an S3 bucket location using the `s3` configuration file `s3.mytestconf`:

```
gpcheckcloud -u ./test-data.csv "s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc config=s3.mytestconf"
```

A successful upload results in one or more files placed in the S3 bucket using the filename format `abc<segment_id><random>.data[.gz]`. See About Reading and Writing S3 Data Files.

This example attempts to connect to an S3 bucket location with the `s3` protocol configuration file `s3.mytestconf`.

```
gpcheckcloud -c "s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc config=s3.mytestconf"
```

This example attempts to connect to an S3 bucket location using the default location for the `s3` protocol configuration file ( `s3/s3.conf` in segment data directories):

```
gpcheckcloud -c "s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc"
```

Download all files from the S3 bucket location and send the output to `STDOUT`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
gpcheckcloud -d "s3://s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/test1/abc config=s3.mytestconf"
```

Parent topic: Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.6 Using a Custom Protocol

A custom protocol allows you to connect WarehousePG to a data source that cannot be accessed with the `file://`, `gpfdist://`, or `pxf://` protocols.

Creating a custom protocol requires that you implement a set of C functions with specified interfaces, declare the functions in WarehousePG, and then use the `CREATE TRUSTED PROTOCOL` command to enable the protocol in the database.

See Example Custom Data Access Protocol for an example.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.7 Handling Errors in External Table Data

By default, if external table data contains an error, the command fails and no data loads into the target database table.

Define the external table with single row error handling to enable loading correctly formatted rows and to isolate data errors in external table data. See Handling Load Errors.

The `gpfdist` file server uses the `HTTP` protocol. External table queries that use `LIMIT` end the connection after retrieving the rows, causing an HTTP socket error. If you use `LIMIT` in queries of external tables that use the `gpfdist://` or `http:// protocols`, ignore these errors – data is returned to the database as expected.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.8.2.8 Creating and Using External Web Tables

External web tables allow WarehousePG to treat dynamic data sources like regular database tables. Because web table data can change as a query runs, the data is not rescannable.

`CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE` creates a web table definition. You can define command-based or URL-based external web tables. The definition forms are distinct: you cannot mix command-based and URL-based definitions.

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

### Command-based External Web Tables

The output of a shell command or script defines command-based web table data. Specify the command in the `EXECUTE` clause of `CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE`. The data is current as of the time the command runs. The `EXECUTE` clause runs the shell command or script on the specified coordinator, and/or segment host or hosts. The command or script must reside on the hosts corresponding to the host(s) defined in the `EXECUTE` clause.

By default, the command is run on segment hosts when active segments have output rows to process. For example, if each segment host runs four primary segment instances that have output rows to process, the command runs four times per segment host. You can optionally limit the number of segment instances that run the web table command. All segments included in the web table definition in the `ON` clause run the command in parallel.

The command that you specify in the external table definition is run from the database and cannot access environment variables from `.bashrc` or `.profile`. Set environment variables in the `EXECUTE` clause. For example:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE output (output text)
    EXECUTE 'PATH=/home/gpadmin/programs; export PATH; myprogram.sh'
    FORMAT 'TEXT';
```

Scripts must be executable by the `gpadmin` user and reside in the same location on the coordinator or segment hosts.

The following command defines a web table that runs a script. The script runs on each segment host where a segment has output rows to process.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE log_output
    (linenum int, message text)
    EXECUTE '/var/load_scripts/get_log_data.sh' ON HOST
    FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

### URL-based External Web Tables

A URL-based web table accesses data from a web server using the HTTP protocol. Web table data is dynamic; the data is not rescannable.

Specify the `LOCATION` of files on a web server using `http://`. The web data file(s) must reside on a web server that WarehousePG segment hosts can access. The number of URLs specified corresponds to the number of segment instances that work in parallel to access the web table. For example, if you specify two external files to a WarehousePG cluster with eight primary segments, two of the eight segments access the web table in parallel at query runtime.

The following sample command defines a web table that gets data from several URLs.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE ext_expenses (name text,
  date date, amount float4, category text, description text)
  LOCATION (

  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/sales/file.csv',
  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/exec/file.csv',
  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/finance/file.csv',
  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/ops/file.csv',
  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/marketing/file.csv',
  'http://intranet.company.com/expenses/eng/file.csv'

   )
  FORMAT 'CSV' ( HEADER );
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9 Examples for Creating External Tables

examples/index.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

These examples show how to define external data with different protocols. Each `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command can contain only one protocol.

> **Note** When using IPv6, always enclose the numeric IP addresses in square brackets.

Start gpfdist before you create external tables with the gpfdist protocol. The following code starts the gpfdist file server program in the background on port *8081* serving files from directory /var/data/staging. The logs are saved in /home/gpadmin/log.

```
gpfdist -p 8081 -d /var/data/staging -l /home/gpadmin/log &
```

- Example 1—Single gpfdist instance on single-NIC machine
- Example 2—Multiple gpfdist instances
- Example 3—Multiple gpfdists instances
- Example 4—Single gpfdist instance with error logging
- Example 5—TEXT Format on a Hadoop Distributed File Server
- Example 6—Multiple files in CSV format with header rows
- Example 7—Readable External Web Table with Script
- Example 8—Writable External Table with gpfdist
- Example 9—Writable External Web Table with Script
- Example 10—Readable and Writable External Tables with XML Transformations

**Parent topic:** Defining External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.8.2.9.1 Example 1—Single gpfdist instance on single-NIC machine

examples/example-1-single-gpfdist-instance-on-single-nic-machine.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external table, `ext_expenses`, using the `gpfdist` protocol. The files are formatted with a pipe (|) as the column delimiter.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
    date date, amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
    LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/*')
FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.2 Example 2—Multiple gpfdist instances

examples/example-2-multiple-gpfdist-instances.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external table, *ext_expenses,* using the gpfdist protocol from all files with the *txt* extension. The column delimiter is a pipe ( | ) and NULL (' ') is a space.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt',
             'gpfdist://etlhost-2:8081/*.txt')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ') ;
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.3 Example 3—Multiple gpfdists instances

examples/example-3-multiple-gpfdists-instances.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external table, *ext_expenses,* from all files with the *txt* extension using the `gpfdists` protocol. The column delimiter is a pipe ( | ) and NULL (' ') is a space. For information about the location of security certificates, see gpfdists:// Protocol.

1. Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option.

2. Run the following command.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('gpfdists://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt',
             'gpfdists://etlhost-2:8082/*.txt')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ') ;
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.4 Example 4—Single gpfdist instance with error logging

examples/example-4-single-gpfdist-instance-with-error-logging.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Uses the gpfdist protocol to create a readable external table, `ext_expenses,` from all files with the *txt* extension. The column delimiter is a pipe ( | ) and NULL (' ') is a space.

Access to the external table is single row error isolation mode. Input data formatting errors are captured internally in WarehousePG with a description of the error. See Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log for information about investigating error rows. You can view the errors, fix the issues, and then reload the rejected data. If the error count on a segment is greater than five (the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` value), the entire external table operation fails and no rows are processed.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date, amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt',
             'gpfdist://etlhost-2:8082/*.txt')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ')
   LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 5;
```

To create the readable ext_expenses table from CSV-formatted text files:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt',
             'gpfdist://etlhost-2:8082/*.txt')
   FORMAT 'CSV' ( DELIMITER ',' )
   LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 5;
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.5 Example 5—TEXT Format on a Hadoop Distributed File Server

examples/example-5-text-format-on-a-hadoop-distributed-file-server.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external table, *ext_expenses,* using the `pxf` protocol. The column delimiter is a pipe ( | ).

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('pxf://dir/data/filename.txt?PROFILE=hdfs:text')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

Refer to HDFS for information about using the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) to access data on a Hadoop Distributed File System.

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.6 Example 6—Multiple files in CSV format with header rows

examples/example-6-multiple-files-in-csv-format-with-header-rows.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external table, *ext_expenses,* using the `file` protocol. The files are `CSV` format and have a header row.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('file://filehost/data/international/*',
             'file://filehost/data/regional/*',
             'file://filehost/data/supplement/*.csv')
   FORMAT 'CSV' (HEADER);
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.7 Example 7—Readable External Web Table with Script

examples/example-7-readable-web-external-table-with-script.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a readable external web table that runs a script once per segment host:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE log_output (linenum int,
    message text)
   EXECUTE '/var/load_scripts/get_log_data.sh' ON HOST
   FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.8 Example 8—Writable External Table with gpfdist

examples/example-8-writable-external-table-with-gpfdist.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a writable external table, *sales_out*, that uses gpfdist to write output data to the file *sales.out*. The column delimiter is a pipe ( | ) and NULL (' ') is a space. The file will be created in the directory specified when you started the gpfdist file server.

```
=# CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE sales_out (LIKE sales)
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etl1:8081/sales.out')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ')
   DISTRIBUTED BY (txn_id);
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.8.2.9.9 Example 9—Writable External Web Table with Script

examples/example-9-writable-external-web-table-with-script.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

Creates a writable external web table, `campaign_out`, that pipes output data received by the segments to an executable script, `to_adreport_etl.sh`:

```
=# CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE campaign_out
    (LIKE campaign)
    EXECUTE '/var/unload_scripts/to_adreport_etl.sh'
    FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.8.2.9.10 Example 10—Readable and Writable External Tables with XML Transformations

examples/example-10-readable-and-writable-external-tables-with-xml-transformations.md editTarget: originalFilePath

---

WarehousePG can read and write XML data to and from external tables with gpfdist. For information about setting up an XML transform, see Transforming External Data with gpfdist and gpload.

**Parent topic:** Examples for Creating External Tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.8.3 Using the WarehousePG Parallel File Server (gpfdist)

The gpfdist protocol is used in a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` SQL command to access external data served by the WarehousePG `gpfdist` file server utility. When external data is served by gpfdist, all segments in the WarehousePG cluster can read or write external table data in parallel.

This topic describes the setup and management tasks for using gpfdist with external tables.


- About gpfdist and External Tables
- About gpfdist Setup and Performance
- Controlling Segment Parallelism
- Installing gpfdist
- Starting and Stopping gpfdist
- Troubleshooting gpfdist


**Parent topic:** Working with External Data

### About gpfdist and External Tables

The `gpfdist` file server utility is located in the `$GPHOME/bin` directory on your WarehousePG coordinator host and on each segment host. When you start a `gpfdist` instance you specify a listen port and the path to a directory containing files to read or where files are to be written. For example, this command runs `gpfdist` in the background, listening on port 8801, and serving files in the `/home/gpadmin/external_files` directory:

```
$ gpfdist -p 8801 -d /home/gpadmin/external_files &
```

The `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command `LOCATION` clause connects an external table definition to one or more `gpfdist` instances. If the external table is readable, the `gpfdist` server reads data records from files from in specified directory, packs them into a block, and sends the block in a response to a WarehousePG segment's request. The segments unpack rows they receive and distribute them according to the external table's distribution policy. If the external table is a writable table, segments send blocks of rows in a request to gpfdist and gpfdist writes them to the external file.

External data files can contain rows in CSV format or any delimited text format supported by the `FORMAT` clause of the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command. In addition, `gpfdist` can be configured with a YAML-formatted file to transform external data files between a supported text format and another format, for example XML or JSON. See <ref> for an example that shows how to use `gpfdist` to read external XML files into a WarehousePG readable external table.

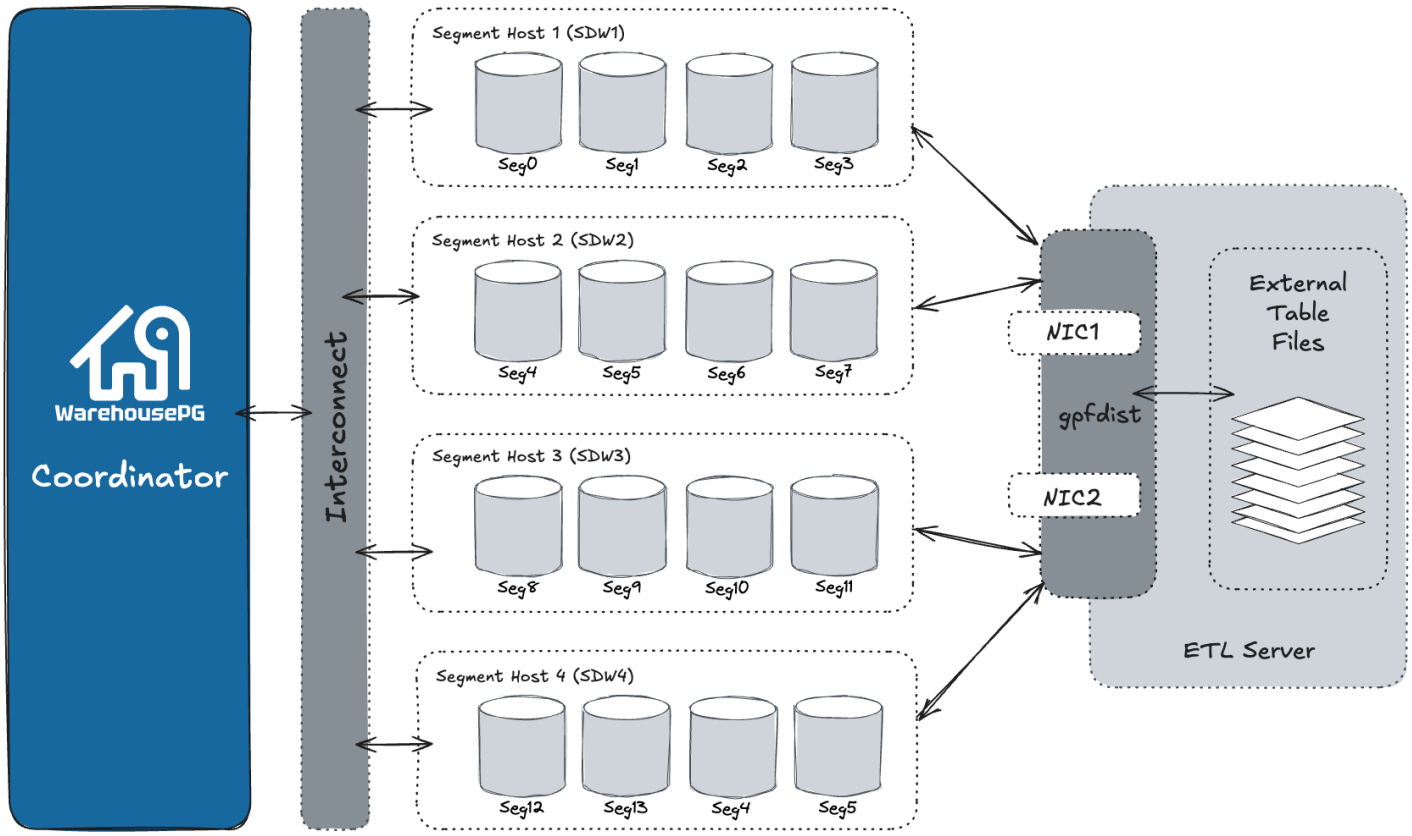
For readable external tables, `gpfdist` uncompresses `gzip` (`.gz`), `bzip2` (`.bz2`), and `zstd` (`.zst`) files automatically. You can use the wildcard character (*) or other C-style pattern matching to denote multiple files to read. External files are assumed to be relative to the directory specified when you started the `gpfdist` instance.

### About gpfdist Setup and Performance

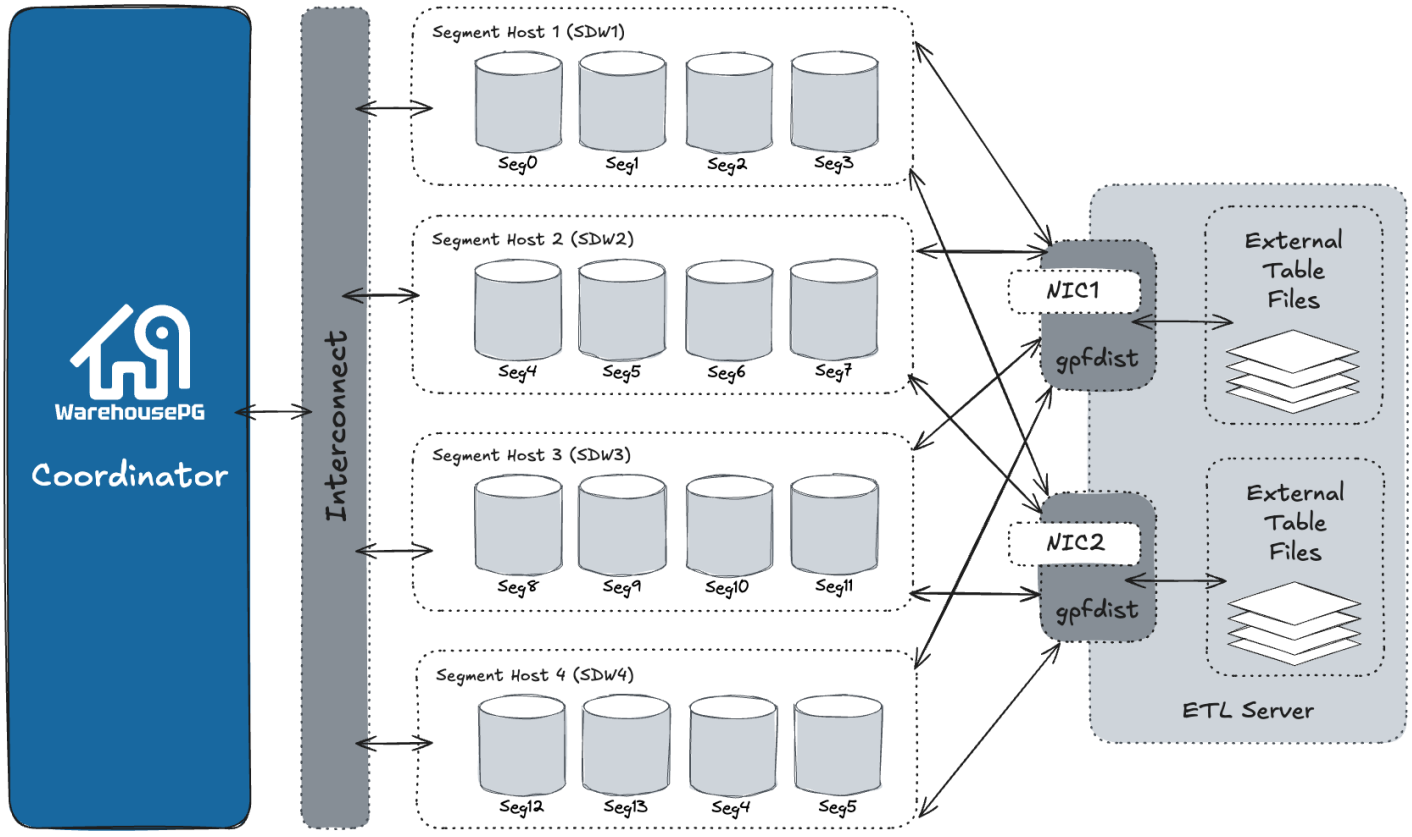
You can run `gpfdist` instances on multiple hosts and you can run multiple `gpfdist` instances on each host. This allows you to deploy `gpfdist` servers strategically so that you can attain fast data load and unload rates by utilizing all of the available network bandwidth and WarehousePG's parallelism.

- Allow network traffic to use all ETL host network interfaces simultaneously. Run one instance of gpfdist for each interface on the ETL host, then declare the host name of each NIC in the `LOCATION` clause of your external table definition (see Examples for Creating External Tables).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




- Divide external table data equally among multiple gpfdist instances on the ETL host. For example, on an ETL system with two NICs, run two gpfdist instances (one on each NIC) to optimize data load performance and divide the external table data files evenly between the two gpfdist servers.




**Note** Use pipes (|) to separate formatted text when you submit files to gpfdist. WarehousePG encloses comma-separated text strings in single or double quotes. gpfdist has to remove the quotes to parse the strings. Using pipes to separate formatted text avoids the extra step and improves performance.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Controlling Segment Parallelism

The `gp_external_max_segs` server configuration parameter controls the number of segment instances that can access a single gpfdist instance simultaneously. 64 is the default. You can set the number of segments such that some segments process external data files and some perform other database processing. Set this parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file of your coordinator instance.

### Installing gpfdist

gpfdist is installed in `$GPHOME/bin` of your WarehousePG coordinator host installation. Run gpfdist on a machine other than the WarehousePG coordinator or standby coordinator, such as on a machine devoted to ETL processing. Running gpfdist on the coordinator or standby coordinator can have a performance impact on query execution. To install gpfdist on your ETL server, get it from the *WarehousePG Clients* package and follow its installation instructions.

### Starting and Stopping gpfdist

You can start gpfdist in your current directory location or in any directory that you specify. The default port is `8080`.

From your current directory, type:

```
gpfdist &
```

From a different directory, specify the directory from which to serve files, and optionally, the HTTP port to run on.

To start gpfdist in the background and log output messages and errors to a log file:

```
$ gpfdist -d /var/load_files -p 8081 -l /home/`gpadmin`/log &
```

For multiple gpfdist instances on the same ETL host (see About gpfdist setup and performance), use a different base directory and port for each instance. For example:

```
$ gpfdist -d /var/load_files1 -p 8081 -l /home/`gpadmin`/log1 &
$ gpfdist -d /var/load_files2 -p 8082 -l /home/`gpadmin`/log2 &
```

To stop gpfdist when it is running in the background:

First find its process id:

```
$ ps -ef | grep gpfdist
```

Then stop the process, for example (where 3456 is the process ID in this example):

```
$ kill 3456
```

### Troubleshooting gpfdist

The segments access gpfdist at runtime. Ensure that the WarehousePG segment hosts have network access to gpfdist. gpfdist is a web server: test connectivity by running the following command from each host in the WarehousePG cluster (segments and coordinator):

```
$ wget http://<gpfdist_hostname>:<port>/<filename>
```

The `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` definition must have the correct host name, port, and file names for gpfdist. Specify file names and paths relative to the directory from which gpfdist serves files (the directory path specified when gpfdist started). See Examples for Creating External Tables.

If you start gpfdist on your system and IPv6 networking is deactivated, gpfdist displays this warning message when testing for an IPv6 port.

```
[WRN gpfdist.c:2050] Creating the socket failed
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If the corresponding IPv4 port is available, gpfdist uses that port and the warning for IPv6 port can be ignored. To see information about the ports that gpfdist tests, use the `-V` option.

For information about IPv6 and IPv4 networking, see your operating system documentation.

When reading or writing data with the `gpfdist` or `gfdists` protocol, the `gpfdist` utility rejects HTTP requests that do not include `X-GP-PROTO` in the request header. If `X-GP-PROTO` is not detected in the header request `gpfist` returns a 400 error in the status line of the HTTP response header: `400 invalid request (no gp-proto)`.

WarehousePG includes `X-GP-PROTO` in the HTTP request header to indicate that the request is from WarehousePG.

If the `gpfdist` utility hangs with no read or write activity occurring, you can generate a core dump the next time a hang occurs to help debug the issue. Set the environment variable `GPFDIST_WATCHDOG_TIMER` to the number of seconds of no activity to wait before `gpfdist` is forced to exit. When the environment variable is set and `gpfdist` hangs, the utility stops after the specified number of seconds, creates a core dump, and sends relevant information to the log file.

This example sets the environment variable on a Linux system so that `gpfdist` exits after 300 seconds (5 minutes) of no activity.

```
export GPFDIST_WATCHDOG_TIMER=300
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.9 Loading and Unloading Data

The topics in this section describe methods for loading and writing data into and out of a WarehousePG, and how to format data files.

WarehousePG supports high-performance parallel data loading and unloading, and for smaller amounts of data, single file, non-parallel data import and export.

WarehousePG can read from and write to several types of external data sources, including text files, Hadoop file systems, Amazon S3, and web servers.

- The `COPY` SQL command transfers data between an external text file on the coordinator host, or multiple text files on segment hosts, and a WarehousePG table.
- Readable external tables allow you to query data outside of the database directly and in parallel using SQL commands such as `SELECT`, `JOIN`, or `SORT EXTERNAL TABLE DATA`, and you can create views for external tables. External tables are often used to load external data into a regular database table using a command such as `CREATE TABLE table AS SELECT * FROM ext\_table`.
- External web tables provide access to dynamic data. They can be backed with data from URLs accessed using the HTTP protocol or by the output of an OS script running on one or more segments.
- The `gpfdist` utility is the WarehousePG parallel file distribution program. It is an HTTP server that is used with external tables to allow WarehousePG segments to load external data in parallel, from multiple file systems. You can run multiple instances of `gpfdist` on different hosts and network interfaces and access them in parallel.
- The `gpload` utility automates the steps of a load task using `gpfdist` and a YAML-formatted control file.
- You can create readable and writable external tables with the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF), and use these tables to load data into, or offload data from, WarehousePG. For information about using PXF, refer to PXF for WarehousePG.

The method you choose to load data depends on the characteristics of the source data—its location, size, format, and any transformations required.

In the simplest case, the `COPY` SQL command loads data into a table from a text file that is accessible to the WarehousePG coordinator instance. This requires no setup and provides good performance for smaller amounts of data. With the `COPY` command, the data copied into or out of the database passes between a single file on the coordinator host and the database. This limits the total size of the dataset to the capacity of the file system where the external file resides and limits the data transfer to a single file write stream.

More efficient data loading options for large datasets take advantage of the WarehousePG MPP architecture, using the WarehousePG segments to load data in parallel. These methods allow data to load simultaneously from multiple file systems, through multiple NICs, on multiple hosts, achieving very high data transfer rates. External tables allow you to access external files from within the database as if they are regular database tables. When used with `gpfdist`, the WarehousePG parallel file distribution program, external tables provide full parallelism by using the resources of all WarehousePG segments to load or unload data.

WarehousePG leverages the parallel architecture of the Hadoop Distributed File System to access files on that system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.1 Loading Data Using an External Table

Use SQL commands such as `INSERT` and `SELECT` to query a readable external table, the same way that you query a regular database table. For example, to load travel expense data from an external table, `ext_expenses`, into a database table, `expenses_travel`:

```
=# INSERT INTO expenses_travel
    SELECT * from ext_expenses where category='travel';
```

To load all data into a new database table:

```
=# CREATE TABLE expenses AS SELECT * from ext_expenses;
```

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.2 Loading and Writing Non-HDFS Custom Data

WarehousePG supports `TEXT` and `CSV` formats for importing and exporting data through external tables. You can load and save data in other formats by defining a custom format or custom protocol or by setting up a transformation with the `gpfdist` parallel file server.

- Using a Custom Format
- Using a Custom Protocol

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.2.1 Using a Custom Format

You specify a custom data format in the `FORMAT` clause of `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE`.

```
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=format_function, key1=val1,...keyn=valn)
```

Where the `'CUSTOM'` keyword indicates that the data has a custom format and `formatter` specifies the function to use to format the data, followed by comma-separated parameters to the formatter function.

WarehousePG provides functions for formatting fixed-width data, but you must author the formatter functions for variable-width data. The steps are as follows.

1. Author and compile input and output functions as a shared library.
2. Specify the shared library function with `CREATE FUNCTION` in WarehousePG.
3. Use the `formatter` parameter of `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE`'s `FORMAT` clause to call the function.

- Importing and Exporting Fixed Width Data
- Examples: Read Fixed-Width Data

**Parent topic:** Loading and Writing Non-HDFS Custom Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.2.1.1 Importing and Exporting Fixed Width Data

Each column/field in fixed-width text data contains a certain number of character positions. Use a WarehousePG custom format for fixed-width data by specifying the built-in formatter functions `fixedwith_in` (read) and `fixedwidth_out` (write).

The following example creates an external table that specifies the `file` protocol and references a directory. When the external table is `SELECT`ed, WarehousePG invokes the `fixedwidth_in` formatter function to format the data.

```
CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE students (
    name varchar(20), address varchar(30), age int)
LOCATION ('file://<host>/file/path/')
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=fixedwidth_in, name='20', address='30', age='4');
```

The following options specify how to import fixed width data.

- Read all the data.

  To load all of the fields on a line of fixed-width data, you must load them in their physical order. You must specify `<field_name>=<field_lenth>` for each field; you cannot specify a starting and ending position. The field names that you specify in the `FORMAT` options must match the order in which you define the columns in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command.

- Set options for blank and null characters.

  Trailing blanks are trimmed by default. To keep trailing blanks, use the `preserve_blanks=on` option. You can reset the trailing blanks option back to the default by specifying the `preserve_blanks=off` option.

  Use the `null='null_string_value'` option to specify a value for null characters.

- If you specify `preserve_blanks=on`, you must also define a value for null characters.

- If you specify `preserve_blanks=off`, null is not defined, and the field contains only blanks, WarehousePG writes a null to the table. If null is defined, WarehousePG writes an empty string to the table.

  Use the `line_delim='line_ending'` option to specify the line ending character. The following examples cover most cases. The `E` specifies an escape string constant.

  ```
  line_delim=E'\n'
  line_delim=E'\r'
  line_delim=E'\r\n'
  line_delim='abc'
  ```

**Parent topic:** Using a Custom Format

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.2.1.2 Examples of Reading Fixed-Width Data

The following examples show how to read fixed-width data.

**Example 1 – Loading a table with all fields defined**

```
CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE students (
name varchar(20), address varchar(30), age int)
LOCATION ('file://<host>/file/path/')
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=fixedwidth_in,
         name=20, address=30, age=4);
```

**Example 2 – Loading a table with PRESERVED_BLANKS on**

```
CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE students (
name varchar(20), address varchar(30), age int)
LOCATION ('gpfdist://<host>:<portNum>/file/path/')
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=fixedwidth_in,
         name=20, address=30, age=4,
        preserve_blanks='on',null='NULL');
```

**Example 3 – Loading data with no line delimiter**

```
CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE students (
name varchar(20), address varchar(30), age int)
LOCATION ('file://<host>/file/path/')
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=fixedwidth_in,
         name='20', address='30', age='4', line_delim='?@')
```

**Example 4 – Create a writable external table with a \r\n line delimiter**

```
CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE students_out (
name varchar(20), address varchar(30), age int)
LOCATION ('gpfdist://<host>:<portNum>/file/path/students_out.txt')
FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=fixedwidth_out,
        name=20, address=30, age=4, line_delim=E'\r\n');
```

**Parent topic:** Using a Custom Format

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.2.2 Using a Custom Protocol

WarehousePG provides protocols such as gpfdist, `http`, and `file` for accessing data over a network, or you can author a custom protocol. You can use the standard data formats, `TEXT` and `CSV`, or a custom data format with custom protocols.

You can create a custom protocol whenever the available built-in protocols do not suffice for a particular need. For example, you could connect WarehousePG in parallel to another system directly, and stream data from one to the other without the need to materialize the data on disk or use an intermediate process such as gpfdist. You must be a superuser to create and register a custom protocol.

1. Author the send, receive, and (optionally) validator functions in C, with a predefined API. These functions are compiled and registered with the WarehousePG. For an example custom protocol, see Example Custom Data Access Protocol.

2. After writing and compiling the read and write functions into a shared object (.so), declare a database function that points to the .so file and function names.

   The following examples use the compiled import and export code.

   ```
   CREATE FUNCTION myread() RETURNS integer
   as '$libdir/gpextprotocol.so', 'myprot_import'
   LANGUAGE C STABLE;
   CREATE FUNCTION mywrite() RETURNS integer
   as '$libdir/gpextprotocol.so', 'myprot_export'
   LANGUAGE C STABLE;
   ```

   The format of the optional validator function is:

   ```
   CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION myvalidate() RETURNS void
   AS '$libdir/gpextprotocol.so', 'myprot_validate'
   LANGUAGE C STABLE;
   ```

3. Create a protocol that accesses these functions. `Validatorfunc` is optional.

   ```
   CREATE TRUSTED PROTOCOL myprot(
   writefunc='mywrite',
   readfunc='myread',
   validatorfunc='myvalidate');
   ```

4. Grant access to any other users, as necessary.

   ```
   GRANT ALL ON PROTOCOL myprot TO otheruser;
   ```

5. Use the protocol in readable or writable external tables.

   ```
   CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_sales(LIKE sales)
   LOCATION ('myprot://<meta>/<meta>/…')
   FORMAT 'TEXT';
   CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_sales(LIKE sales)
   LOCATION('myprot://<meta>/<meta>/…')
   FORMAT 'TEXT';
   ```

Declare custom protocols with the SQL command `CREATE TRUSTED PROTOCOL`, then use the `GRANT` command to grant access to your users. For example:

- Allow a user to create a readable external table with a trusted protocol

  ```
  GRANT SELECT ON PROTOCOL <protocol name> TO <user name>;
  ```

- Allow a user to create a writable external table with a trusted protocol

  ```
  GRANT INSERT ON PROTOCOL <protocol name> TO <user name>;
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Allow a user to create readable and writable external tables with a trusted protocol

```
GRANT ALL ON PROTOCOL <protocol name> TO <user name>;
```

**Parent topic:** Loading and Writing Non-HDFS Custom Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.3 Handling Load Errors

Readable external tables are most commonly used to select data to load into regular database tables. You use the `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT` or `INSERT INTO` commands to query the external table data. By default, if the data contains an error, the entire command fails and the data is not loaded into the target database table.

The `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` clause allows you to isolate format errors in external table data and to continue loading correctly formatted rows. Use `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` to set an error threshold, specifying the reject limit `count` as number of `ROWS` (the default) or as a `PERCENT` of total rows (1-100).

The entire external table operation is cancelled, and no rows are processed, if the number of error rows reaches the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT`. The limit of error rows is per-segment, not per entire operation. The operation processes all good rows, and it discards and optionally logs formatting errors for erroneous rows, if the number of error rows does not reach the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT`.

The `LOG ERRORS` clause allows you to keep error rows for further examination. For information about the `LOG ERRORS` clause, see the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

When you set `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT`, WarehousePG scans the external data in single row error isolation mode. Single row error isolation mode applies to external data rows with format errors such as extra or missing attributes, attributes of a wrong data type, or invalid client encoding sequences. WarehousePG does not check constraint errors, but you can filter constraint errors by limiting the `SELECT` from an external table at runtime. For example, to eliminate duplicate key errors:

```
=# INSERT INTO table_with_pkeys
    SELECT DISTINCT * FROM external_table;
```

> **Note** When loading data with the `COPY` command or an external table, the value of the server configuration parameter `gp_initial_bad_row_limit` limits the initial number of rows that are processed that are not formatted properly. The default is to stop processing if the first 1000 rows contain formatting errors. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about the parameter.

- Define an External Table with Single Row Error Isolation
- Capture Row Formatting Errors and Declare a Reject Limit
- Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log
- Moving Data between Tables

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.3.1 Define an External Table with Single Row Error Isolation

The following example logs errors internally in WarehousePG and sets an error threshold of 10 errors.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ( name text,
   date date,  amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/*',
             'gpfdist://etlhost-2:8082/*')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|')
   LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 10
     ROWS;
```

Use the built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log('external_table')` to read the error log data. This example command displays the log errors for *ext_expenses*:

```
SELECT gp_read_error_log('ext_expenses');
```

For information about the format of the error log, see Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log.

The built-in SQL function `gp_truncate_error_log('external_table')` deletes the error data. This example deletes the error log data created from the previous external table example :

```
SELECT gp_truncate_error_log('ext_expenses');
```

**Parent topic:** Handling Load Errors

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.3.2 Capture Row Formatting Errors and Declare a Reject Limit

The following SQL fragment captures formatting errors internally in WarehousePG and declares a reject limit of 10 rows.

```
LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 10 ROWS
```

Use the built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log()` to read the error log data. For information about viewing log errors, see Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log.

**Parent topic:** Handling Load Errors

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.3.3 Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log

If you use single row error isolation (see Define an External Table with Single Row Error Isolation or Running COPY in Single Row Error Isolation Mode), any rows with formatting errors are logged internally by WarehousePG.

WarehousePG captures the following error information in a table format:

| column | type | description |
|---|---|---|
| cmdtime | timestamptz | Timestamp when the error occurred. |
| relname | text | The name of the external table or the target table of a `COPY` command. |
| filename | text | The name of the load file that contains the error. |
| linenum | int | If `COPY` was used, the line number in the load file where the error occurred. For external tables using file:// protocol or gpfdist:// protocol and CSV format, the file name and line number is logged. |
| bytenum | int | For external tables with the gpfdist:// protocol and data in TEXT format: the byte offset in the load file where the error occurred. gpfdist parses TEXT files in blocks, so logging a line number is not possible. CSV files are parsed a line at a time so line number tracking is possible for CSV files. |
| errmsg | text | The error message text. |
| rawdata | text | The raw data of the rejected row. |
| rawbytes | bytea | In cases where there is a database encoding error (the client encoding used cannot be converted to a server-side encoding), it is not possible to log the encoding error as *rawdata*. Instead the raw bytes are stored and you will see the octal code for any non seven bit ASCII characters. |

You can use the WarehousePG built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log()` to display formatting errors that are logged internally. For example, this command displays the error log information for the table *ext_expenses*:

```
SELECT gp_read_error_log('ext_expenses');
```

For information about managing formatting errors that are logged internally, see the command `COPY` or `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

**Parent topic:** Handling Load Errors

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.3.4 Moving Data between Tables

You can use `CREATE TABLE AS` or `INSERT...SELECT` to load external and external web table data into another (non-external) database table, and the data will be loaded in parallel according to the external or external web table definition.

If an external table file or external web table data source has an error, one of the following will happen, depending on the isolation mode used:

- **Tables without error isolation mode**: any operation that reads from that table fails. Loading from external and external web tables without error isolation mode is an all or nothing operation.
- **Tables with error isolation mode**: the entire file will be loaded, except for the problematic rows (subject to the configured REJECT_LIMIT)

**Parent topic:** Handling Load Errors

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.4 Loading Data with gpload

The WarehousePG `gpload` utility loads data using readable external tables and the WarehousePG parallel file server (gpfdist or `gpfdists`). It handles parallel file-based external table setup and allows users to configure their data format, external table definition, and gpfdist or `gpfdists` setup in a single configuration file.

> **Note** `gpfdist` and `gpload` are compatible only with the WarehousePG major version in which they are shipped.

> **Note** `MERGE` and `UPDATE` operations are not supported if the target table column name is a reserved keyword, has capital letters, or includes any character that requires quotes (" ") to identify the column.

#### To use gpload

1. Ensure that your environment is set up to run `gpload`. Some dependent files from your WarehousePG installation are required, such as gpfdist and Python, as well as network access to the WarehousePG segment hosts.

   See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for details.

2. Create your load control file. This is a YAML-formatted file that specifies the WarehousePG connection information, gpfdist configuration information, external table options, and data format.

   See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for details.

   For example:

```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
DATABASE: ops
USER: gpadmin
HOST: mdw-1
PORT: 5432
GPLOAD:
   INPUT:
    - SOURCE:
         LOCAL_HOSTNAME:
           - etl1-1
           - etl1-2
           - etl1-3
           - etl1-4
         PORT: 8081
         FILE:
           - /var/load/data/*
    - COLUMNS:
           - name: text
           - amount: float4
           - category: text
           - descr: text
           - date: date
    - FORMAT: text
    - DELIMITER: '|'
    - ERROR_LIMIT: 25
    - LOG_ERRORS: true
   OUTPUT:
    - TABLE: payables.expenses
    - MODE: INSERT
   PRELOAD:
    - REUSE_TABLES: true
SQL:
   - BEFORE: "INSERT INTO audit VALUES('start', current_timestamp)"
   - AFTER: "INSERT INTO audit VALUES('end', current_timestamp)"
```

3. Run `gpload`, passing in the load control file. For example:

```
gpload -f my_load.yml
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parent topic: Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.9.5 Transforming External Data with gpfdist and gpload

The `gpfdist` parallel file server allows you to set up transformations that enable WarehousePG external tables to read and write files in formats that are not supported with the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command's `FORMAT` clause. An *input* transformation reads a file in the foreign data format and outputs rows to `gpfdist` in the CSV or other text format specified in the external table's `FORMAT` clause. An *output* transformation receives rows from `gpfdist` in text format and converts them to the foreign data format.

> **Note** `gpfdist` and `gpload` are compatible only with the WarehousePG major version in which they are shipped.

This topic describes the tasks to set up data transformations that work with `gpfdist` to read or write external data files with formats that WarehousePG does not support.


- About gpfdist Transformations
- Determine the Transformation Schema
- Write a Transformation
- Write the gpfdist Configuration File
- Transfer the Data
- Configuration File Format
- XML Transformation Examples


**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

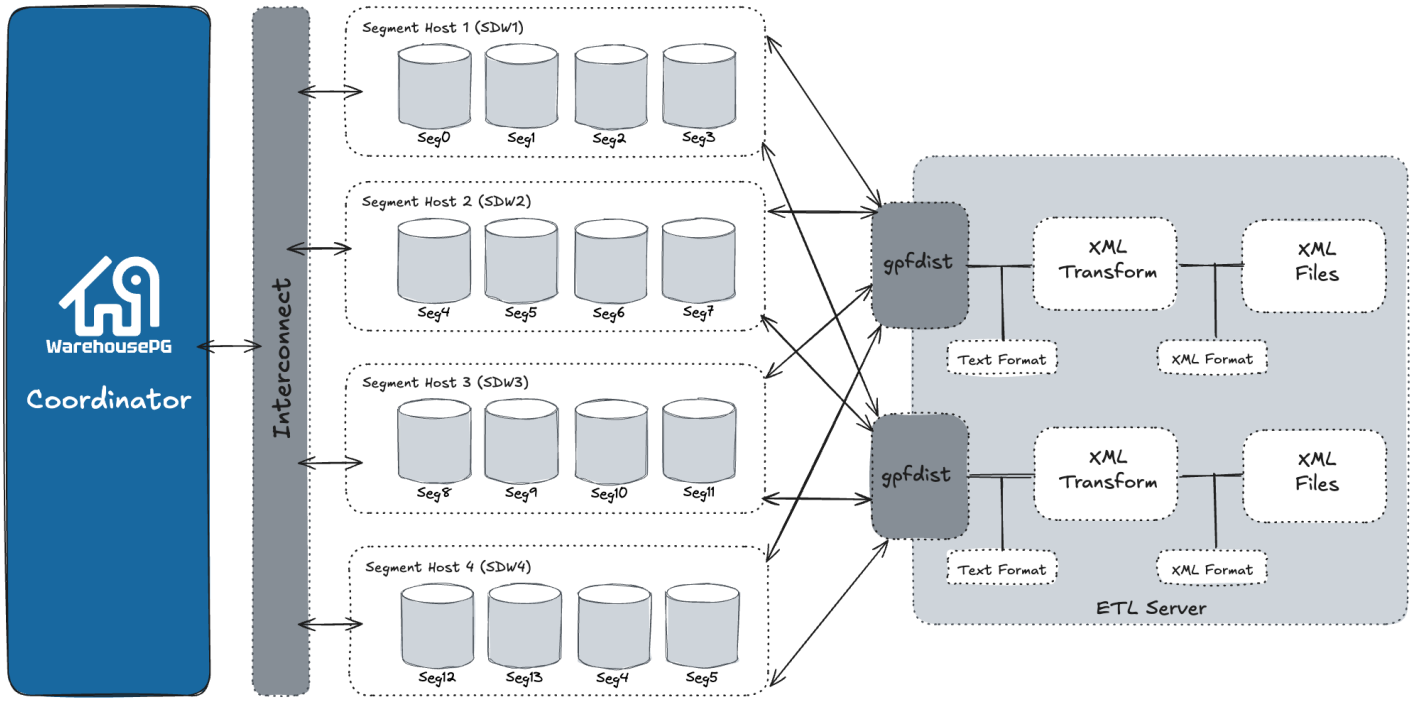
### About gpfdist Transformations

To set up a transformation for a data format, you provide an executable command that `gpfdist` can call with the name of the file containing data. For example, you could write a shell script that runs an XSLT transformation on an XML file to output rows with columns delimited with a vertical bar ( `|` ) character and rows delimited with linefeeds.

Transformations are configured in a YAML-formatted configuration file passed to `gpfdist` on the command line.

If you want to load the external data into a table in the WarehousePG, you can use the `gpload` utility to automate the tasks to create an external table, run `gpfdist`, and load the transformed data into the database table.

Accessing data in external XML files from within the database is a common example requiring transformation. The following diagram shows *gpfdist* performing a transformation on XML files on an ETL server.




Following are the high-level steps to set up a `gpfdist` transformation for external data files. The process is illustrated with an XML example.

1. Determine the transformation schema.
2. Write a transformation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Write the gpfdist configuration file.
4. Transfer the data.

### Determine the Transformation Schema

To prepare for the transformation project:

1. Determine the goal of the project, such as indexing data, analyzing data, combining data, and so on.
2. Examine the source files and note the file structure and element names.
3. Choose the elements to import and decide if any other limits are appropriate.

For example, the following XML file, *prices.xml*, is a simple XML file that contains price records. Each price record contains two fields: an item number and a price.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>
<prices>
  <pricerecord>
    <itemnumber>708421</itemnumber>
    <price>19.99</price>
  </pricerecord>
  <pricerecord>
    <itemnumber>708466</itemnumber>
    <price>59.25</price>
  </pricerecord>
  <pricerecord>
    <itemnumber>711121</itemnumber>
    <price>24.99</price>
  </pricerecord>
</prices>
```

The goal of this transformation is to import all the data into a WarehousePG readable external table with an integer `itemnumber` column and a decimal `price` column.

### Write a Transformation

The transformation specifies what to extract from the data. You can use any authoring environment and language appropriate for your project. For XML transformations choose from technologies such as XSLT, Joost (STX), Java, Python, or Perl, based on the goals and scope of the project.

In the price example, the next step is to transform the XML data into a two-column delimited text format.

```
708421|19.99
708466|59.25
711121|24.99
```

The following STX transform, called *input_transform.stx*, performs the data transformation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<stx:transform version="1.0"
   xmlns:stx="http://stx.sourceforge.net/2002/ns"
   pass-through="none">
  <!-- declare variables -->
  <stx:variable name="itemnumber"/>
  <stx:variable name="price"/>
  <!-- match and output prices as columns delimited by | -->
  <stx:template match="/prices/pricerecord">
    <stx:process-children/>
    <stx:value-of select="$itemnumber"/>
<stx:text>|</stx:text>
    <stx:value-of select="$price"/>      <stx:text>
</stx:text>
  </stx:template>
  <stx:template match="itemnumber">
    <stx:assign name="itemnumber" select="."/>
  </stx:template>
  <stx:template match="price">
    <stx:assign name="price" select="."/>
  </stx:template>
</stx:transform>
```

This STX transform declares two temporary variables, `itemnumber` and `price`, and the following rules.

1. When an element that satisfies the XPath expression `/prices/pricerecord` is found, examine the child elements and generate output that contains the value of the `itemnumber` variable, a `|` character, the value of the price variable, and a newline.
2. When an `<itemnumber>` element is found, store the content of that element in the variable `itemnumber`.
3. When a <price> element is found, store the content of that element in the variable `price`.

### Write the gpfdist Configuration File

The gpfdist configuration is specified as a YAML 1.1 document. It contains rules that gpfdist uses to select a transformation to apply when loading or extracting data.

This example gpfdist configuration contains the following items that are required for the *prices.xml* transformation scenario:

- the `config.yaml` file defining `TRANSFORMATIONS`
- the `input_transform.sh` wrapper script, referenced in the `config.yaml` file
- the `input_transform.stx` joost transformation, called from `input_transform.sh`

Aside from the ordinary YAML rules, such as starting the document with three dashes (`---`), a gpfdist configuration must conform to the following restrictions:

1. A `VERSION` setting must be present with the value `1.0.0.1`.
2. A `TRANSFORMATIONS` setting must be present and contain one or more mappings.
3. Each mapping in the `TRANSFORMATION` must contain:
    - a `TYPE` with the value 'input' or 'output'
    - a `COMMAND` indicating how the transformation is run.
4. Each mapping in the `TRANSFORMATION` can contain optional `CONTENT`, `SAFE`, and `STDERR` settings.

The following gpfdist configuration, called `config.yaml`, applies to the prices example. The initial indentation on each line is significant and reflects the hierarchical nature of the specification. The transformation name `prices_input` in the following example will be referenced later when creating the table in SQL.

```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
TRANSFORMATIONS:
  prices_input:
    TYPE:     input
    COMMAND:  /bin/bash input_transform.sh %filename%
```

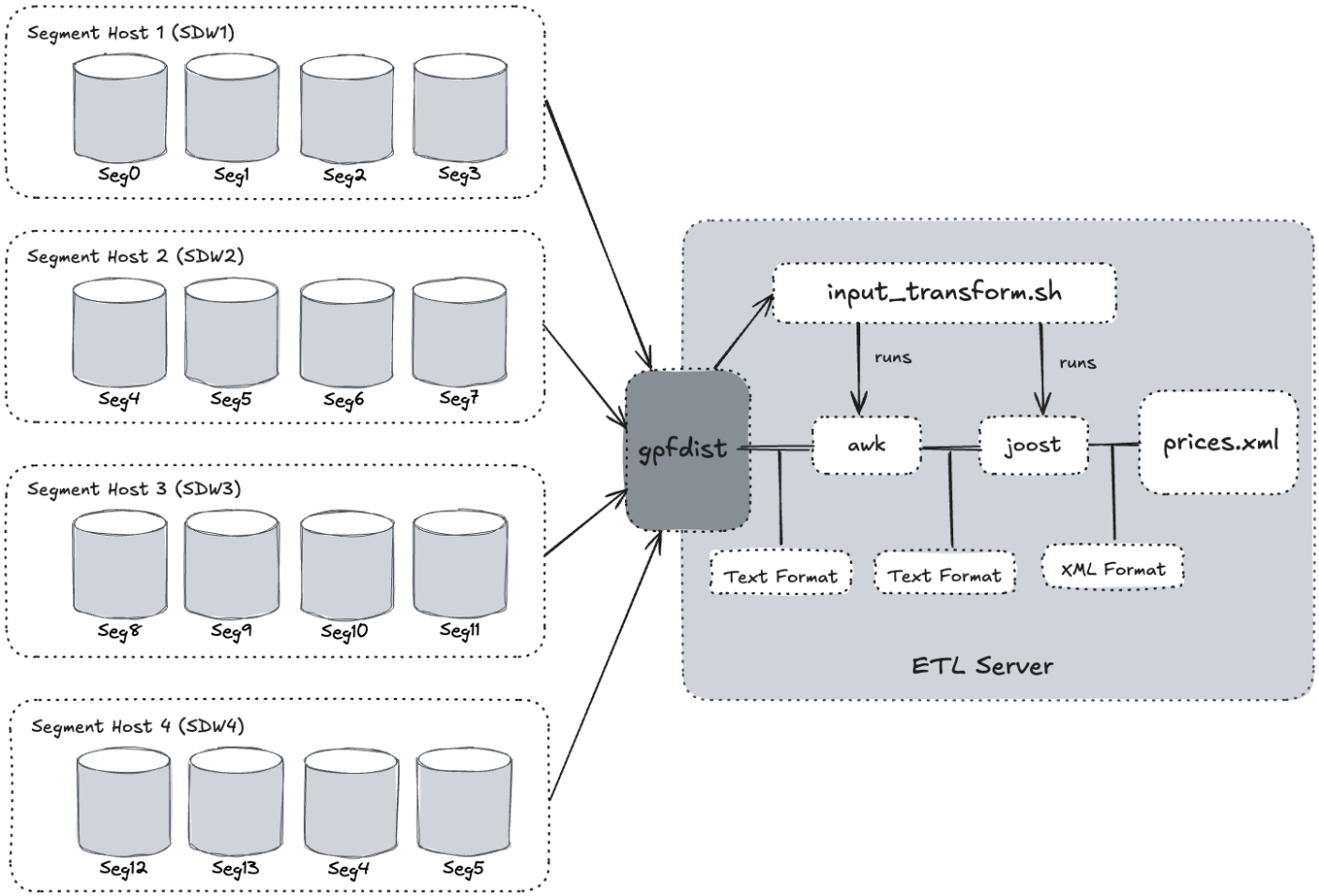
The `COMMAND` setting uses a wrapper script called `input_transform.sh` with a `%filename%` placeholder. When gpfdist runs the `prices_input` transform, it invokes `input_transform.sh` with `/bin/bash` and replaces the `%filename%` placeholder with the path to the input file to transform. The wrapper script called `input_transform.sh` contains the logic to invoke the STX transformation and return the output.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If Joost is used, the Joost STX engine must be installed.

```
#!/bin/bash
# input_transform.sh - sample input transformation,
# demonstrating use of Java and Joost STX to convert XML into
# text to load into WarehousePG.
# java arguments:
#   -jar joost.jar         joost STX engine
#   -nodecl                  don't generate a <?xml?> declaration
#   $1                        filename to process
#   input_transform.stx    the STX transformation
#
# the AWK step eliminates a blank line joost emits at the end
java \
    -jar joost.jar \
    -nodecl \
    $1 \
    input_transform.stx \
 | awk 'NF>0'
```

The `input_transform.sh` file uses the Joost STX engine with the AWK interpreter. The following diagram shows the process flow as gpfdist runs the transformation.




### Transfer the Data

Create the target database tables with SQL statements based on the appropriate schema.

There are no special requirements for WarehousePG tables that hold loaded data. In the prices example, the following command creates the `prices` table, where the data is to be loaded.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE prices (
  itemnumber integer,
  price       decimal
)
DISTRIBUTED BY (itemnumber);
```

Next, use one of the following approaches to transform the data with gpfdist.

- `gpload` supports only input transformations, but in many cases is easier to implement.
- `gpfdist` with `INSERT INTO SELECT FROM` supports both input and output transformations, but exposes details that `gpload` automates for you.

#### Transforming with gpload

The WarehousePG `gpload` utility orchestrates a data load operation using the `gpfdist` parallel file server and a YAML-formatted configuration file. `gpload` automates these tasks:

- Creates a readable external table in the database.
- Starts `gpfdist` instances with the configuration file that contains the transformation.
- Runs `INSERT INTO table\_name SELECT FROM external\_table` to load the data.
- Removes the external table definition.

Transforming data with `gpload` requires that the settings `TRANSFORM` and `TRANSFORM_CONFIG` appear in the `INPUT` section of the `gpload` control file.

For more information about the syntax and placement of these settings in the `gpload` control file, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

- `TRANSFORM_CONFIG` specifies the name of the gpfdist configuration file.
- The `TRANSFORM` setting indicates the name of the transformation that is described in the file named in `TRANSFORM_CONFIG`.

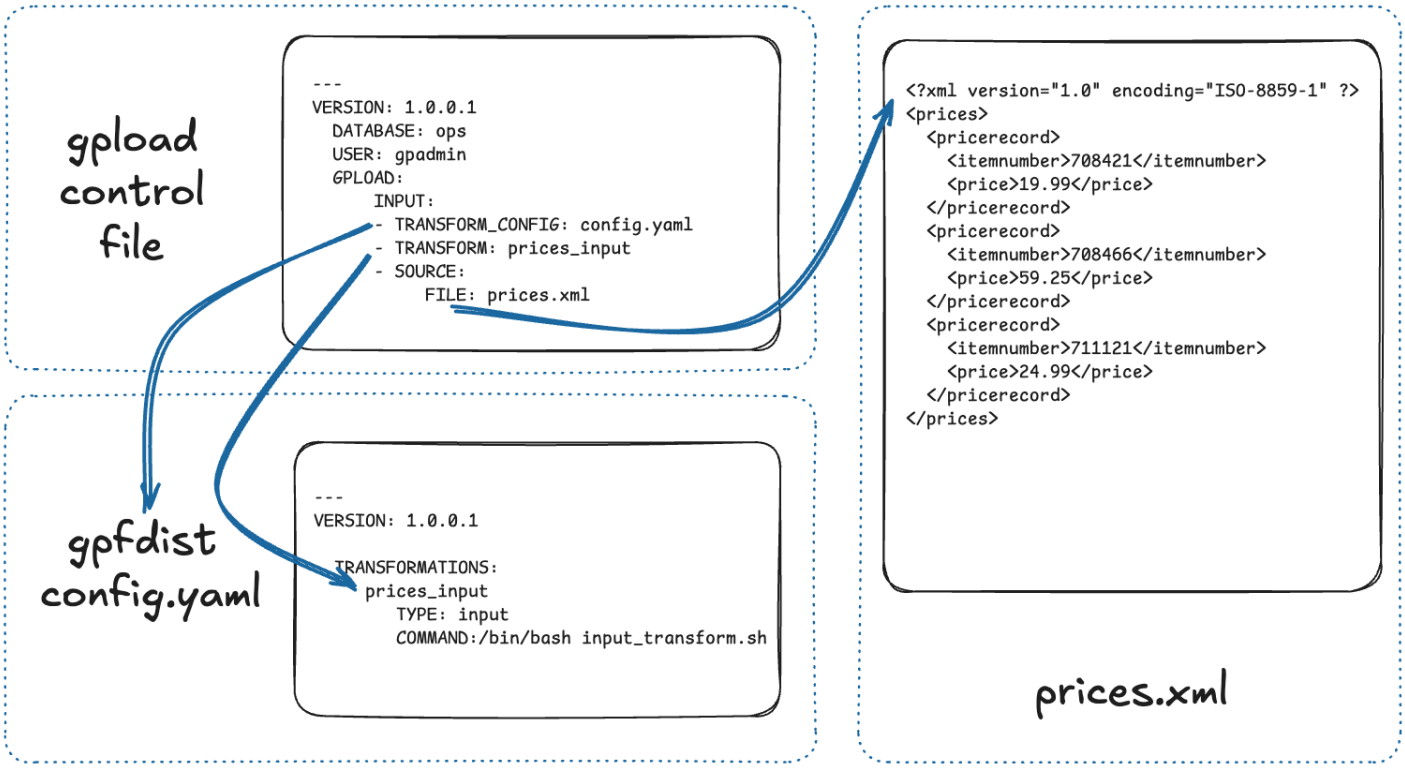
```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
DATABASE: ops
USER: gpadmin
GPLOAD:
  INPUT:
    - TRANSFORM_CONFIG: config.yaml
    - TRANSFORM: prices_input
    - SOURCE:
        FILE: prices.xml
```

The transformation name must appear in two places: in the `TRANSFORM` setting of the gpfdist configuration file and in the `TRANSFORMATIONS` section of the file named in the `TRANSFORM_CONFIG` section.

In the `gpload` control file, the optional parameter `MAX_LINE_LENGTH` specifies the maximum length of a line in the XML transformation data that is passed to `gpload`.

The following diagram shows the relationships between the `gpload` control file, the gpfdist configuration file, and the XML data file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




#### Transforming with gpfdist and INSERT INTO SELECT FROM

With this load method, you perform each of the tasks that `gpload` automates. You start `gpfdist`, create an external table, load the data, and clean up by dropping the table and stopping `gpfdist`.

Specify the transformation in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` definition's `LOCATION` clause. For example, the transform is shown in bold in the following command. (Run gpfdist first, using the command `gpfdist -c config.yaml`).

```
CREATE READABLE EXTERNAL TABLE prices_readable (LIKE prices)
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://hostname:8080/prices.xml#transform=prices_input')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|')
   LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 10;
```

In the command above, change `hostname` to your hostname. `prices_input` comes from the `gpfdist` configuration file.

The following query then loads the data into the `prices` table.

```
INSERT INTO prices SELECT * FROM prices_readable;
```

#### Configuration File Format

The gpfdist configuration file uses the YAML 1.1 document format and implements a schema for defining the transformation parameters. The configuration file must be a valid YAML document.

The gpfdist program processes the document in order and uses indentation (spaces) to determine the document hierarchy and relationships of the sections to one another. The use of white space is significant. Do not use white space for formatting and do not use tabs.

The following is the basic structure of a configuration file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
---
VERSION:   1.0.0.1
TRANSFORMATIONS:
  transformation_name1:
    TYPE:      input | output
    COMMAND:   command
    CONTENT:   data | paths
    SAFE:      posix-regex
    STDERR:    server | console
  transformation_name2:
    TYPE:      input | output
    COMMAND:   command
...
```

- VERSION

  Required. The version of the gpfdist configuration file schema. The current version is 1.0.0.1.

- TRANSFORMATIONS

  Required. Begins the transformation specification section. A configuration file must have at least one transformation. When gpfdist receives a transformation request, it looks in this section for an entry with the matching transformation name.

- TYPE

  Required. Specifies the direction of transformation. Values are `input` or `output`.

- `input`: gpfdist treats the standard output of the transformation process as a stream of records to load into WarehousePG.

- `output`: gpfdist treats the standard input of the transformation process as a stream of records from WarehousePG to transform and write to the appropriate output.

- COMMAND

  Required. Specifies the command gpfdist will run to perform the transformation.

For input transformations, gpfdist invokes the command specified in the `CONTENT` setting. The command is expected to open the underlying file(s) as appropriate and produce one line of `TEXT` for each row to load into WarehousePG. The input transform determines whether the entire content should be converted to one row or to multiple rows.

For output transformations, gpfdist invokes this command as specified in the `CONTENT` setting. The output command is expected to open and write to the underlying file(s) as appropriate. The output transformation determines the final placement of the converted output.

- CONTENT

  Optional. The values are `data` and `paths`. The default value is `data`.

- When `CONTENT` specifies `data`, the text `%filename%` in the `COMMAND` section is replaced by the path to the file to read or write.

- When `CONTENT` specifies `paths`, the text `%filename%` in the `COMMAND` section is replaced by the path to the temporary file that contains the list of files to read or write.

The following is an example of a `COMMAND` section showing the text `%filename%` that is replaced.

```
COMMAND: /bin/bash input_transform.sh %filename%
```

- SAFE

  Optional. A `POSIX` regular expression that the paths must match to be passed to the transformation. Specify `SAFE` when there is a concern about injection or improper interpretation of paths passed to the command. The default is no restriction on paths.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- STDERR

  Optional. The values are `server` and `console`.

This setting specifies how to handle standard error output from the transformation. The default, `server`, specifies that gpfdist will capture the standard error output from the transformation in a temporary file and send the first 8k of that file to WarehousePG as an error message. The error message will appear as an SQL error. `Console` specifies that gpfdist does not redirect or transmit the standard error output from the transformation.

### XML Transformation Examples

The following examples demonstrate the complete process for different types of XML data and STX transformations. Files and detailed instructions associated with these examples are in the GitHub repo `https://github.com/warehouse-pg/warehouse-pg` in the gpMgmt/demo/gpfdist_transform directory. Read the README file in the *Before You Begin* section before you run the examples. The README file explains how to download the example data file used in the examples.

#### Command-based External Web Tables

The output of a shell command or script defines command-based web table data. Specify the command in the `EXECUTE` clause of `CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE`. The data is current as of the time the command runs. The `EXECUTE` clause runs the shell command or script on the specified coordinator, and/or segment host or hosts. The command or script must reside on the hosts corresponding to the host(s) defined in the `EXECUTE` clause.

By default, the command is run on segment hosts when active segments have output rows to process. For example, if each segment host runs four primary segment instances that have output rows to process, the command runs four times per segment host. You can optionally limit the number of segment instances that run the web table command. All segments included in the web table definition in the `ON` clause run the command in parallel.

The command that you specify in the external table definition runs from the database and cannot access environment variables from `.bashrc` or `.profile`. Set environment variables in the `EXECUTE` clause. For example:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE output (output text)
    EXECUTE 'PATH=/home/gpadmin/programs; export PATH; myprogram.sh'
    FORMAT 'TEXT';
```

Scripts must be executable by the `gpadmin` user and reside in the same location on the coordinator or segment hosts.

The following command defines a web table that runs a script. The script runs on each segment host where a segment has output rows to process.

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE log_output
    (linenum int, message text)
    EXECUTE '/var/load_scripts/get_log_data.sh' ON HOST
    FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

#### IRS MeF XML Files (In demo Directory)

This example demonstrates loading a sample IRS Modernized eFile tax return using a Joost STX transformation. The data is in the form of a complex XML file.

The U.S. Internal Revenue Service (IRS) made a significant commitment to XML and specifies its use in its Modernized e-File (MeF) system. In MeF, each tax return is an XML document with a deep hierarchical structure that closely reflects the particular form of the underlying tax code.

XML, XML Schema and stylesheets play a role in their data representation and business workflow. The actual XML data is extracted from a ZIP file attached to a MIME "transmission file" message. For more information about MeF, see Modernized e-File (Overview) on the IRS web site.

The sample XML document, *RET990EZ_2006.xml*, is about 350KB in size with two elements:

- ReturnHeader
- ReturnData

The <returnheader> element contains general details about the tax return such as the taxpayer's name, the tax year of the return, and the preparer. The <returndata> element contains multiple sections with specific details about the tax return and associated schedules.

The following is an abridged sample of the XML file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<Return returnVersion="2006v2.0"
   xmlns="https://www.irs.gov/efile"
   xmlns:efile="https://www.irs.gov/efile"
   xsi:schemaLocation="https://www.irs.gov/efile"
   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
   <ReturnHeader binaryAttachmentCount="1">
     <ReturnId>AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA</ReturnId>
     <Timestamp>1999-05-30T12:01:01+05:01</Timestamp>
     <ReturnType>990EZ</ReturnType>
     <TaxPeriodBeginDate>2005-01-01</TaxPeriodBeginDate>
     <TaxPeriodEndDate>2005-12-31</TaxPeriodEndDate>
     <Filer>
       <EIN>011248772</EIN>
       ... more data ...
     </Filer>
     <Preparer>
       <Name>Percy Polar</Name>
       ... more data ...
     </Preparer>
     <TaxYear>2005</TaxYear>
   </ReturnHeader>
   ... more data ..
```

The goal is to import all the data into a WarehousePG. First, convert the XML document into text with newlines "escaped", with two columns: `ReturnId` and a single column on the end for the entire MeF tax return. For example:

```
AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA|<Return returnVersion="2006v2.0"...
```

Load the data into WarehousePG.

#### WITSML™ Files (In demo Directory)

This example demonstrates loading sample data describing an oil rig using a Joost STX transformation. The data is in the form of a complex XML file downloaded from energistics.org.

The Wellsite Information Transfer Standard Markup Language (WITSML™) is an oil industry initiative to provide open, non-proprietary, standard interfaces for technology and software to share information among oil companies, service companies, drilling contractors, application vendors, and regulatory agencies. For more information about WITSML™, see https://www.energistics.org/.

The oil rig information consists of a top level `<rigs>` element with multiple child elements such as `<documentInfo>, <rig>`, and so on. The following excerpt from the file shows the type of information in the `<rig>` tag.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet href="../stylesheets/rig.xsl" type="text/xsl" media="screen"?>
<rigs
 xmlns="https://www.energistics.org/schemas/131"
 xmlns:xsi="https://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
 xsi:schemaLocation="https://www.energistics.org/schemas/131 ../obj_rig.xsd"
 version="1.3.1.1">
 <documentInfo>
 ... misc data ...
 </documentInfo>
 <rig uidWell="W-12" uidWellbore="B-01" uid="xr31">
     <nameWell>6507/7-A-42</nameWell>
     <nameWellbore>A-42</nameWellbore>
     <name>Deep Drill #5</name>
     <owner>Deep Drilling Co.</owner>
     <typeRig>floater</typeRig>
     <manufacturer>Fitsui Engineering</manufacturer>
     <yearEntService>1980</yearEntService>
     <classRig>ABS Class A1 M CSDU AMS ACCU</classRig>
     <approvals>DNV</approvals>
 ... more data ...
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The goal is to import the information for this rig into WarehousePG.

The sample document, *rig.xml*, is about 11KB in size. The input does not contain tabs so the relevant information can be converted into records delimited with a pipe (|).

```
W-12|6507/7-A-42|xr31|Deep Drill #5|Deep Drilling Co.|John Doe|John.Doe@example.com|
```

With the columns:

- `well_uid text` , -- e.g. W-12
- `well_name text` , -- e.g. 6507/7-A-42
- `rig_uid text` , -- e.g. xr31
- `rig_name text` , -- e.g. Deep Drill #5
- `rig_owner text` , -- e.g. Deep Drilling Co.
- `rig_contact text` , -- e.g. John Doe
- `rig_email text` , -- e.g. John.Doe@example.com
- `doc xml`

Then, load the data into WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.9.6 Loading Data with COPY

`COPY FROM` copies data from a file or standard input into a table and appends the data to the table contents. `COPY` is non-parallel: data is loaded in a single process using the WarehousePG coordinator instance. Using `COPY` is only recommended for very small data files.

The `COPY` source file must be accessible to the `postgres` process on the coordinator host. Specify the `COPY` source file name relative to the data directory on the coordinator host, or specify an absolute path.

WarehousePG copies data from `STDIN` or `STDOUT` using the connection between the client and the coordinator server.

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

### Loading From a File

The `COPY` command asks the `postgres` backend to open the specified file, read it and append it to the table. In order to be able to read the file, the backend needs to have read permissions on the file, and the file name must be specified using an absolute path on the coordinator host, or a relative path to the coordinator data directory.

```
COPY <table_name> FROM </path/to/filename>;
```

### Loading From STDIN

To avoid the problem of copying the data file to the coordinator host before loading the data, `COPY FROM STDIN` uses the Standard Input channel and feeds data directly into the `postgres` backend. After the `COPY FROM STDIN` command started, the backend will accept lines of data until a single line only contains a backslash-period (\.).

```
COPY <table_name> FROM <STDIN>;
```

### Loading Data Using \copy in psql

Do not confuse the psql `\copy` command with the `COPY` SQL command. The `\copy` invokes a regular `COPY FROM STDIN` and sends the data from the psql client to the backend. Therefore any file must reside on the host where the psql client runs, and must be accessible to the user which runs the client.

To avoid the problem of copying the data file to the coordinator host before loading the data, `COPY FROM STDIN` uses the Standard Input channel and feeds data directly into the `postgres` backend. After the `COPY FROM STDIN` command started, the backend will accept lines of data until a single line only contains a backslash-period (\.). psql is wrapping all of this into the handy `\copy` command.

```
\copy <table_name> FROM <filename>;
```

### Input Format

`COPY FROM` accepts a `FORMAT` parameter, which specifies the format of the input data. The possible values are `TEXT`, `CSV` (Comma Separated Values), and `BINARY`.

```
COPY <table_name> FROM </path/to/filename> WITH (FORMAT csv);
```

The `FORMAT csv` will read comma-separated values. The `FORMAT text` by default uses tabulators to separate the values, the `DELIMITER` option specifies a different character as value delimiter.

```
COPY <table_name> FROM </path/to/filename> WITH (FORMAT text, DELIMITER '|');
```

By default, the default client encoding is used, this can be changed with the `ENCODING` option. This is useful if data is coming from another operating system.

```
COPY <table_name> FROM </path/to/filename> WITH (ENCODING 'latin1');
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.7 Running COPY in Single Row Error Isolation Mode

By default, `COPY` stops an operation at the first error: if the data contains an error, the operation fails and no data loads. If you run `COPY FROM` in *single row error isolation mode*, WarehousePG skips rows that contain format errors and loads properly formatted rows. Single row error isolation mode applies only to rows in the input file that contain format errors. If the data contains a constraint error such as violation of a `NOT NULL`, `CHECK`, or `UNIQUE` constraint, the operation fails and no data loads.

Specifying `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` runs the `COPY` operation in single row error isolation mode. Specify the acceptable number of error rows on each segment, after which the entire `COPY FROM` operation fails and no rows load. The error row count is for each WarehousePG segment, not for the entire load operation.

If the `COPY` operation does not reach the error limit, WarehousePG loads all correctly-formatted rows and discards the error rows. Use the `LOG ERRORS` clause to capture data formatting errors internally in WarehousePG. For example:

```
=> COPY country FROM '/data/gpdb/country_data'
   WITH DELIMITER '|' LOG ERRORS
   SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 10 ROWS;
```

See Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log for information about investigating error rows.

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.8 Optimizing Data Load and Query Performance

Use the following tips to help optimize your data load and subsequent query performance.

- Drop indexes before loading data into existing tables.

  Creating an index on pre-existing data is faster than updating it incrementally as each row is loaded. You can temporarily increase the `maintenance_work_mem` server configuration parameter to help speed up `CREATE INDEX` commands, though load performance is affected. Drop and recreate indexes only when there are no active users on the system.

- Create indexes last when loading data into new tables. Create the table, load the data, and create any required indexes.

- Run `ANALYZE` after loading data. If you significantly altered the data in a table, run `ANALYZE` or `VACUUM ANALYZE` to update table statistics for the query optimizer. Current statistics ensure that the optimizer makes the best decisions during query planning and avoids poor performance due to inaccurate or nonexistent statistics.

- Run `VACUUM` after load errors. If the load operation does not run in single row error isolation mode, the operation stops at the first error. The target table contains the rows loaded before the error occurred. You cannot access these rows, but they occupy disk space. Use the `VACUUM` command to recover the wasted space.

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.9.9 Unloading Data from WarehousePG

A writable external table allows you to select rows from other database tables and output the rows to files, named pipes, to applications, or as output targets for WarehousePG parallel MapReduce calculations. You can define file-based and web-based writable external tables.

This topic describes how to unload data from WarehousePG using parallel unload (writable external tables) and non-parallel unload ( `COPY` ).

- Defining a File-Based Writable External Table
- Defining a Command-Based Writable External Web Table
- Unloading Data Using a Writable External Table
- Unloading Data Using COPY

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.9.1 Defining a File-Based Writable External Table

Writable external tables that output data to files can use the WarehousePG parallel file server program, gpfdist, or the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF), WarehousePG's interface to Hadoop.

Use the `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE` command to define the external table and specify the location and format of the output files. See Using the WarehousePG Parallel File Server (gpfdist) for instructions on setting up gpfdist for use with an external table and PXF for WarehousePG for instructions on setting up PXF for use with an external table

- With a writable external table using the gpfdist protocol, the WarehousePG segments send their data to gpfdist, which writes the data to the named file. gpfdist must run on a host that the WarehousePG segments can access over the network. gpfdist points to a file location on the output host and writes data received from the WarehousePG segments to the file. To divide the output data among multiple files, list multiple gpfdist URIs in your writable external table definition.
- A writable external web table sends data to an application as a stream of data. For example, unload data from WarehousePG and send it to an application that connects to another database or ETL tool to load the data elsewhere. Writable external web tables use the `EXECUTE` clause to specify a shell command, script, or application to run on the segment hosts and accept an input stream of data. See Defining a Command-Based Writable External Web Table for more information about using `EXECUTE` commands in a writable external table definition.

You can optionally declare a distribution policy for your writable external tables. By default, writable external tables use a random distribution policy. If the source table you are exporting data from has a hash distribution policy, defining the same distribution key column(s) for the writable external table improves unload performance by eliminating the requirement to move rows over the interconnect. If you unload data from a particular table, you can use the `LIKE` clause to copy the column definitions and distribution policy from the source table.

- **Example 1—WarehousePG file server (gpfdist)**
- **Example 2—Hadoop file server (pxf)**

**Parent topic:** Unloading Data from WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.9.1.1 Example 1 - WarehousePG file server (gpfdist)

```
=# CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE unload_expenses
   ( LIKE expenses )
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etlhost-1:8081/expenses1.out',
             'gpfdist://etlhost-2:8081/expenses2.out')
 FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER ',')
 DISTRIBUTED BY (exp_id);
```

**Parent topic:** Defining a File-Based Writable External Table

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.9.1.2 Example 2—Hadoop file server (pxf)

```
=# CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE unload_expenses
   ( LIKE expenses )
   LOCATION ('pxf://dir/path?PROFILE=hdfs:text')
 FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER ',')
 DISTRIBUTED BY (exp_id);
```

You specify an HDFS directory for a writable external table that you create with the `pxf` protocol.

**Parent topic:** Defining a File-Based Writable External Table

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.9.2 Defining a Command-Based Writable External Web Table

You can define writable external web tables to send output rows to an application or script. The application must accept an input stream, reside in the same location on all of the WarehousePG segment hosts, and be executable by the `gpadmin` user. All segments in the WarehousePG cluster run the application or script, whether or not a segment has output rows to process.

Use `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE` to define the external table and specify the application or script to run on the segment hosts. Commands run from within the database and cannot access environment variables (such as `$PATH`). Set environment variables in the `EXECUTE` clause of your writable external table definition. For example:

```
=# CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE output (output text)
    EXECUTE 'export PATH=$PATH:/home/`gpadmin`
            /programs;
    myprogram.sh'
    FORMAT 'TEXT'
    DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;
```

The following WarehousePG variables are available for use in OS commands run by a web or writable external table. Set these variables as environment variables in the shell that runs the command(s). They can be used to identify a set of requests made by an external table statement across the WarehousePG array of hosts and segment instances.

| Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| $GP_CID | Command count of the transaction running the external table statement. |
| $GP_DATABASE | The database in which the external table definition resides. |
| $GP_DATE | The date on which the external table command ran. |
| $GP_MASTER_HOST | The host name of the WarehousePG coordinator host from which the external table statement was dispatched. |
| $GP_MASTER_PORT | The port number of the WarehousePG coordinator instance from which the external table statement was dispatched. |
| $GP_QUERY_STRING | The SQL command (DML or SQL query) run by WarehousePG. |
| $GP_SEG_DATADIR | The location of the data directory of the segment instance running the external table command. |
| $GP_SEG_PG_CONF | The location of the `postgresql.conf` file of the segment instance running the external table command. |
| $GP_SEG_PORT | The port number of the segment instance running the external table command. |
| $GP_SEGMENT_COUNT | The total number of primary segment instances in the WarehousePG cluster. |
| $GP_SEGMENT_ID | The ID number of the segment instance running the external table command (same as `content` in `gp_segment_configuration`). |
| $GP_SESSION_ID | The database session identifier number associated with the external table statement. |
| $GP_SN | Serial number of the external table scan node in the query plan of the external table statement. |
| $GP_TIME | The time the external table command was run. |
| $GP_USER | The database user running the external table statement. |
| $GP_XID | The transaction ID of the external table statement. |

- Deactivating EXECUTE for Web or Writable External Tables

**Parent topic:** Unloading Data from WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.9.2.1 Deactivating EXECUTE for Web or Writable External Tables

There is a security risk associated with allowing external tables to run OS commands or scripts. To deactivate the use of `EXECUTE` in web and writable external table definitions, set the `gp_external_enable_exec` server configuration parameter to off in your coordinator postgresql.conf file:

```
gp_external_enable_exec = off
```

> **Note** You must restart the database in order for changes to the `gp_external_enable_exec` server configuration parameter to take effect.

**Parent topic:** Defining a Command-Based Writable External Web Table

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.9.3 Unloading Data Using a Writable External Table

Writable external tables allow only `INSERT` operations. You must grant `INSERT` permission on a table to enable access to users who are not the table owner or a superuser. For example:

```
GRANT INSERT ON writable_ext_table TO admin;
```

To unload data using a writable external table, select the data from the source table(s) and insert it into the writable external table. The resulting rows are output to the writable external table. For example:

```
INSERT INTO writable_ext_table SELECT * FROM regular_table;
```

**Parent topic:** Unloading Data from WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.9.4 Unloading Data Using COPY

`COPY TO` copies data from a table to a file (or standard input) on the WarehousePG coordinator host using a single process on the WarehousePG coordinator instance. Use `COPY` to output a table's entire contents, or filter the output using a `SELECT` statement. For example:

```
COPY (SELECT * FROM country WHERE country_name LIKE 'A%')
TO '/home/gpadmin/a_list_countries.out';
```

**Parent topic:** Unloading Data from WarehousePG

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.9.10 Formatting Data Files

When you use the WarehousePG tools for loading and unloading data, you must specify how your data is formatted. `COPY`, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE`, and `gpload` have clauses that allow you to specify how your data is formatted. Data can be delimited text ( `TEXT` ) or comma separated values ( `CSV` ) format. External data must be formatted correctly to be read by WarehousePG. This topic explains the format of data files expected by WarehousePG.

- Formatting Rows
- Formatting Columns
- Representing NULL Values
- Escaping
- Character Encoding

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.1 Formatting Rows

WarehousePG expects rows of data to be separated by the `LF` character (Line feed, `0x0A`), `CR` (Carriage return, `0x0D`), or `CR` followed by `LF` (`CR+LF`, `0x0D 0x0A`). `LF` is the standard newline representation on UNIX or UNIX-like operating systems. Operating systems such as Windows or Mac OS X use `CR` or `CR+LF`. All of these representations of a newline are supported by WarehousePG as a row delimiter. For more information, see Importing and Exporting Fixed Width Data.

**Parent topic:** Formatting Data Files

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.2 Formatting Columns

The default column or field delimiter is the horizontal `TAB` character ( `0x09` ) for text files and the comma character ( `0x2C` ) for CSV files. You can declare a single character delimiter using the `DELIMITER` clause of `COPY` , `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `gpload` when you define your data format. The delimiter character must appear between any two data value fields. Do not place a delimiter at the beginning or end of a row. For example, if the pipe character ( | ) is your delimiter:

```
data value 1|data value 2|data value 3
```

The following command shows the use of the pipe character as a column delimiter:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_table (name text, date date)
LOCATION ('gpfdist://<hostname>/filename.txt)
FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

**Parent topic:** Formatting Data Files

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.3 Representing NULL Values

`NULL` represents an unknown piece of data in a column or field. Within your data files you can designate a string to represent null values. The default string is `\N` (backslash-N) in `TEXT` mode, or an empty value with no quotations in `CSV` mode. You can also declare a different string using the `NULL` clause of `COPY`, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `gpload` when defining your data format. For example, you can use an empty string if you do not want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. When using the WarehousePG loading tools, any data item that matches the designated null string is considered a null value.

**Parent topic:** Formatting Data Files

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.4 Escaping

There are two reserved characters that have special meaning to WarehousePG:

- The designated delimiter character separates columns or fields in the data file.
- The newline character designates a new row in the data file.

If your data contains either of these characters, you must escape the character so that WarehousePG treats it as data and not as a field separator or new row. By default, the escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files and a double quote (") for csv-formatted files.

- Escaping in Text Formatted Files
- Escaping in CSV Formatted Files

**Parent topic:** Formatting Data Files

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.4.1 Escaping in Text Formatted Files

By default, the escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files. You can declare a different escape character in the `ESCAPE` clause of `COPY`, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `gpload`. If your escape character appears in your data, use it to escape itself.

For example, suppose you have a table with three columns and you want to load the following three fields:

- `backslash = \`
- `vertical bar = |`
- `exclamation point = !`

Your designated delimiter character is `|` (pipe character), and your designated escape character is `\` (backslash). The formatted row in your data file looks like this:

```
backslash = \\ | vertical bar = \| | exclamation point = !
```

Notice how the backslash character that is part of the data is escaped with another backslash character, and the pipe character that is part of the data is escaped with a backslash character.

You can use the escape character to escape octal and hexadecimal sequences. The escaped value is converted to the equivalent character when loaded into WarehousePG. For example, to load the ampersand character ( `&` ), use the escape character to escape its equivalent hexadecimal ( `\0x26` ) or octal ( `\046` ) representation.

You can deactivate escaping in `TEXT` -formatted files using the `ESCAPE` clause of `COPY`, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `gpload` as follows:

```
ESCAPE 'OFF'
```

This is useful for input data that contains many backslash characters, such as web log data.

**Parent topic:** Escaping

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.4.2 Escaping in CSV Formatted Files

By default, the escape character is a `"` (double quote) for CSV-formatted files. If you want to use a different escape character, use the `ESCAPE` clause of `COPY`, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `gpload` to declare a different escape character. In cases where your selected escape character is present in your data, you can use it to escape itself.

For example, suppose you have a table with three columns and you want to load the following three fields:

- `Free trip to A,B`
- `5.89`
- `Special rate "1.79"`

Your designated delimiter character is `,` (comma), and your designated escape character is `"` (double quote). The formatted row in your data file looks like this:

```
"Free trip to A,B","5.89","Special rate ""1.79"""
```

The data value with a comma character that is part of the data is enclosed in double quotes. The double quotes that are part of the data are escaped with a double quote even though the field value is enclosed in double quotes.

Embedding the entire field inside a set of double quotes guarantees preservation of leading and trailing whitespace characters:

```
"Free trip to A,B ","5.89 ","Special rate ""1.79"" "
```

> **Note** In CSV mode, all characters are significant. A quoted value surrounded by white space, or any characters other than `DELIMITER`, includes those characters. This can cause errors if you import data from a system that pads CSV lines with white space to some fixed width. In this case, preprocess the CSV file to remove the trailing white space before importing the data into WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** Escaping

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.10.5 Character Encoding

Character encoding systems consist of a code that pairs each character from a character set with something else, such as a sequence of numbers or octets, to facilitate data transmission and storage. WarehousePG supports a variety of character sets, including single-byte character sets such as the ISO 8859 series and multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended UNIX Code), UTF-8, and Mule internal code. The server-side character set is defined during database initialization, UTF-8 is the default and can be changed. Clients can use all supported character sets transparently, but a few are not supported for use within the server as a server-side encoding. When loading or inserting data into WarehousePG, WarehousePG transparently converts the data from the specified client encoding into the server encoding. When sending data back to the client, WarehousePG converts the data from the server character encoding into the specified client encoding.

Data files must be in a character encoding recognized by WarehousePG. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for the supported character sets.Data files that contain invalid or unsupported encoding sequences encounter errors when loading into WarehousePG.

> **Note** On data files generated on a Microsoft Windows operating system, run the `dos2unix` system command to remove any Windows-only characters before loading into WarehousePG.

> **Note** If you *change* the `ENCODING` value in an existing `gpload` control file, you must manually drop any external tables that were creating using the previous `ENCODING` configuration. `gpload` does not drop and recreate external tables to use the new `ENCODING` if `REUSE_TABLES` is set to `true`.

**Parent topic:** Formatting Data Files

#### Changing the Client-Side Character Encoding

The client-side character encoding can be changed for a session by setting the server configuration parameter `client_encoding`

```
SET client_encoding TO 'latin1';
```

Change the client-side character encoding back to the default value:

```
RESET client_encoding;
```

Show the current client-side character encoding setting:

```
SHOW client_encoding;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 4.9.11 Example Custom Data Access Protocol

The following is the API for the WarehousePG custom data access protocol. The example protocol implementationgpextprotocal.c is written in C and shows how the API can be used. For information about accessing a custom data access protocol, see Using a Custom Protocol.

```
/* ---- Read/Write function API ------*/
CALLED_AS_EXTPROTOCOL(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_GET_URL(fcinfo)(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATABUF(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATALEN(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_GET_SCANQUALS(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_GET_USER_CTX(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_IS_LAST_CALL(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_SET_LAST_CALL(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_SET_USER_CTX(fcinfo, p)

/* ------ Validator function API ------*/
CALLED_AS_EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_URL_LIST(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_NUM_URLS(fcinfo)
EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_NTH_URL(fcinfo, n)
EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_DIRECTION(fcinfo)
```

#### Notes

The protocol corresponds to the example described inUsing a Custom Protocol. The source code file name and shared object are `gpextprotocol.c` and `gpextprotocol.so`.

The protocol has the following properties:

- The name defined for the protocol is `myprot`.
- The protocol has the following simple form: the protocol name and a path, separated by `://`.

  `myprot://` `path`
- Three functions are implemented:
  - `myprot_import()` a read function
  - `myprot_export()` a write function
  - `myprot_validate_urls()` a validation function These functions are referenced in the `CREATE PROTOCOL` statement when the protocol is created and declared in the database.

The example implementation gpextprotocal.c uses `fopen()` and `fread()` to simulate a simple protocol that reads local files. In practice, however, the protocol would implement functionality such as a remote connection to some process over the network.

- Installing the External Table Protocol

**Parent topic:** Loading and Unloading Data

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.11.1 Installing the External Table Protocol

To use the example external table protocol, you use the C compiler `cc` to compile and link the source code to create a shared object that can be dynamically loaded by WarehousePG. The commands to compile and link the source code on a Linux system are similar to this:

```
cc -fpic -c gpextprotocal.c cc -shared -o gpextprotocal.so gpextprotocal.o
```

The option `-fpic` specifies creating position-independent code (PIC) and the `-c` option compiles the source code without linking and creates an object file. The object file needs to be created as position-independent code (PIC) so that it can be loaded at any arbitrary location in memory by WarehousePG.

The flag `-shared` specifies creating a shared object (shared library) and the `-o` option specifies the shared object file name `gpextprotocal.so`. Refer to the GCC manual for more information on the `cc` options.

The header files that are declared as include files in `gpextprotocal.c` are located in subdirectories of `$GPHOME/include/postgresql/.`

For more information on compiling and linking dynamically-loaded functions and examples of compiling C source code to create a shared library on other operating systems, see the PostgreSQL documentation at https://www.postgresql.org/docs/9.4/xfunc-c.html#DFUNC.

The manual pages for the C compiler `cc` and the link editor `ld` for your operating system also contain information on compiling and linking source code on your system.

The compiled code (shared object file) for the custom protocol must be placed in the same location on every host in your WarehousePG array (coordinator and all segments). This location must also be in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so that the server can locate the files. It is recommended to locate shared libraries either relative to `$libdir` (which is located at `$GPHOME/lib`) or through the dynamic library path (set by the `dynamic_library_path` server configuration parameter) on all coordinator segment instances in the WarehousePG array. You can use the WarehousePG utilities gpssh and `gpscp` to update segments.

- gpextprotocal.c

**Parent topic:** Example Custom Data Access Protocol

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### 4.9.11.1.1 gpextprotocal.c

```
#include "postgres.h"
#include "fmgr.h"
#include "funcapi.h"
#include "access/extprotocol.h"
#include "catalog/pg_proc.h"
#include "utils/array.h"
#include "utils/builtins.h"
#include "utils/memutils.h"

/* Our chosen URI format. We can change it however needed */
typedef struct DemoUri
{
   char     *protocol;
   char     *path;
}  DemoUri;
static DemoUri *ParseDemoUri(const char *uri_str);
static void FreeDemoUri(DemoUri* uri);

/* Do the module magic dance */
PG_MODULE_MAGIC;
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(demoprot_export);
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(demoprot_import);
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(demoprot_validate_urls);

Datum demoprot_export(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS);
Datum demoprot_import(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS);
Datum demoprot_validate_urls(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS);

/* A user context that persists across calls. Can be
declared in any other way */
typedef struct {
  char    *url;
  char    *filename;
  FILE    *file;
} extprotocol_t;
/*
* The read function - Import data into GPDB.
*/
Datum
myprot_import(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
  extprotocol_t   *myData;
  char            *data;
  int             datlen;
  size_t          nread = 0;

  /* Must be called via the external table format manager */
  if (!CALLED_AS_EXTPROTOCOL(fcinfo))
    elog(ERROR, "myprot_import: not called by external
       protocol manager");

  /* Get our internal description of the protocol */
  myData = (extprotocol_t *) EXTPROTOCOL_GET_USER_CTX(fcinfo);

  if(EXTPROTOCOL_IS_LAST_CALL(fcinfo))
  {
    /* we're done receiving data. close our connection */
    if(myData && myData->file)
      if(fclose(myData->file))
        ereport(ERROR,
          (errcode_for_file_access(),
           errmsg("could not close file \"%s\": %m",
               myData->filename)));

    PG_RETURN_INT32(0);
  }
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
  if (myData == NULL)
  {
    /* first call. do any desired init */

    const char    *p_name = "myprot";
    DemoUri       *parsed_url;
    char          *url = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_URL(fcinfo);
    myData        = palloc(sizeof(extprotocol_t));

    myData->url   = pstrdup(url);
    parsed_url    = ParseDemoUri(myData->url);
    myData->filename = pstrdup(parsed_url->path);

    if(strcasecmp(parsed_url->protocol, p_name) != 0)
      elog(ERROR, "internal error: myprot called with a
          different protocol (%s)",
            parsed_url->protocol);

    FreeDemoUri(parsed_url);

    /* open the destination file (or connect to remote server in
       other cases) */
    myData->file = fopen(myData->filename, "r");

    if (myData->file == NULL)
      ereport(ERROR,
          (errcode_for_file_access(),
           errmsg("myprot_import: could not open file \"%s\"
             for reading: %m",
             myData->filename),
           errOmitLocation(true)));

    EXTPROTOCOL_SET_USER_CTX(fcinfo, myData);
  }
  /* ========================================
   *          DO THE IMPORT
   * ======================================== */
  data    = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATABUF(fcinfo);
  datlen  = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATALEN(fcinfo);

  /* read some bytes (with fread in this example, but normally
     in some other method over the network) */
  if(datlen > 0)
  {
    nread = fread(data, 1, datlen, myData->file);
    if (ferror(myData->file))
      ereport(ERROR,
        (errcode_for_file_access(),
          errmsg("myprot_import: could not write to file
            \"%s\": %m",
            myData->filename)));
  }
  PG_RETURN_INT32((int)nread);
}
/*
 * Write function - Export data out of GPDB
 */
Datum
myprot_export(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
  extprotocol_t  *myData;
  char           *data;
  int            datlen;
  size_t         wrote = 0;

  /* Must be called via the external table format manager */
  if (!CALLED_AS_EXTPROTOCOL(fcinfo))
    elog(ERROR, "myprot_export: not called by external
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
       protocol manager");

  /* Get our internal description of the protocol */
  myData = (extprotocol_t *) EXTPROTOCOL_GET_USER_CTX(fcinfo);
  if(EXTPROTOCOL_IS_LAST_CALL(fcinfo))
  {
    /* we're done sending data. close our connection */
    if(myData && myData->file)
      if(fclose(myData->file))
        ereport(ERROR,
            (errcode_for_file_access(),
              errmsg("could not close file \"%s\": %m",
                 myData->filename)));

    PG_RETURN_INT32(0);
  }
  if (myData == NULL)
  {
    /* first call. do any desired init */
    const char *p_name = "myprot";
    DemoUri    *parsed_url;
    char       *url = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_URL(fcinfo);

    myData           = palloc(sizeof(extprotocol_t));

    myData->url      = pstrdup(url);
    parsed_url       = ParseDemoUri(myData->url);
    myData->filename = pstrdup(parsed_url->path);

    if(strcasecmp(parsed_url->protocol, p_name) != 0)
      elog(ERROR, "internal error: myprot called with a
         different protocol (%s)",
         parsed_url->protocol);

    FreeDemoUri(parsed_url);

    /* open the destination file (or connect to remote server in
    other cases) */
    myData->file = fopen(myData->filename, "a");
    if (myData->file == NULL)
      ereport(ERROR,
        (errcode_for_file_access(),
           errmsg("myprot_export: could not open file \"%s\"
             for writing: %m",
             myData->filename),
         errOmitLocation(true)));

    EXTPROTOCOL_SET_USER_CTX(fcinfo, myData);
  }
  /* ========================================
   *      DO THE EXPORT
   * ======================================== */
  data   = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATABUF(fcinfo);
  datlen   = EXTPROTOCOL_GET_DATALEN(fcinfo);

  if(datlen > 0)
  {
    wrote = fwrite(data, 1, datlen, myData->file);

    if (ferror(myData->file))
      ereport(ERROR,
        (errcode_for_file_access(),
         errmsg("myprot_import: could not read from file
            \"%s\": %m",
            myData->filename)));
  }
  PG_RETURN_INT32((int)wrote);
}
Datum
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
myprot_validate_urls(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
  List         *urls;
  int          nurls;
  int          i;
  ValidatorDirection  direction;

  /* Must be called via the external table format manager */
  if (!CALLED_AS_EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR(fcinfo))
    elog(ERROR, "myprot_validate_urls: not called by external
       protocol manager");

  nurls       = EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_NUM_URLS(fcinfo);
  urls        = EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_URL_LIST(fcinfo);
  direction   = EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_DIRECTION(fcinfo);
  /*
   * Dumb example 1: search each url for a substring
   * we don't want to be used in a url. in this example
   * it's 'secured_directory'.
   */
  for (i = 1 ; i <= nurls ; i++)
  {
    char *url = EXTPROTOCOL_VALIDATOR_GET_NTH_URL(fcinfo, i);

    if (strstr(url, "secured_directory") != 0)
    {
      ereport(ERROR,
       (errcode(ERRCODE_PROTOCOL_VIOLATION),
          errmsg("using 'secured_directory' in a url
            isn't allowed ")));
    }
  }
  /*
   * Dumb example 2: set a limit on the number of urls
   * used. In this example we limit readable external
   * tables that use our protocol to 2 urls max.
   */
  if(direction == EXT_VALIDATE_READ && nurls > 2)
  {
    ereport(ERROR,
      (errcode(ERRCODE_PROTOCOL_VIOLATION),
        errmsg("more than 2 urls aren't allowed in this protocol ")));
  }
  PG_RETURN_VOID();
}
/* --- utility functions --- */
static
DemoUri *ParseDemoUri(const char *uri_str)
{
  DemoUri *uri = (DemoUri *) palloc0(sizeof(DemoUri));
  int     protocol_len;

   uri->path = NULL;
   uri->protocol = NULL;
  /*
   * parse protocol
   */
  char *post_protocol = strstr(uri_str, "://");

  if(!post_protocol)
  {
    ereport(ERROR,
      (errcode(ERRCODE_SYNTAX_ERROR),
       errmsg("invalid protocol URI \'%s\'", uri_str),
       errOmitLocation(true)));
  }

  protocol_len = post_protocol - uri_str;
  uri->protocol = (char *)palloc0(protocol_len + 1);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
  strncpy(uri->protocol, uri_str, protocol_len);

  /* make sure there is more to the uri string */
  if (strlen(uri_str) <= protocol_len)
    ereport(ERROR,
      (errcode(ERRCODE_SYNTAX_ERROR),
       errmsg("invalid myprot URI \'%s\' : missing path",
         uri_str),
       errOmitLocation(true)));

  /* parse path */
  uri->path = pstrdup(uri_str + protocol_len + strlen("://"));

  return uri;
}
static
void FreeDemoUri(DemoUri *uri)
{
  if (uri->path)
    pfree(uri->path);
  if (uri->protocol)
    pfree(uri->protocol);

  pfree(uri);
}
```

**Parent topic:** Installing the External Table Protocol

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10 Managing Performance

The topics in this section cover WarehousePG performance management, including how to monitor performance and how to configure workloads to prioritize resource utilization.

- Defining Database Performance
  Managing system performance includes measuring performance, identifying the causes of performance problems, and applying the tools and techniques available to you to remedy the problems.
- Common Causes of Performance Issues
  This section explains the troubleshooting processes for common performance issues and potential solutions to these issues.
- WarehousePG Memory Overview
  Memory is a key resource for a WarehousePG cluster and, when used efficiently, can ensure high performance and throughput. This topic describes how segment host memory is allocated between segments and the options available to administrators to configure memory.
- Managing Resources
  WarehousePG provides features to help you prioritize and allocate resources to queries according to business requirements and to prevent queries from starting when resources are unavailable.
- Investigating a Performance Problem
  This section provides guidelines for identifying and troubleshooting performance problems in a WarehousePG cluster.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.1 Defining Database Performance

Managing system performance includes measuring performance, identifying the causes of performance problems, and applying the tools and techniques available to you to remedy the problems.

WarehousePG measures database performance based on the rate at which the database management system (DBMS) supplies information to requesters.

**Parent topic:** Managing Performance

### Understanding the Performance Factors

Several key performance factors influence database performance. Understanding these factors helps identify performance opportunities and avoid problems:

- System Resources
- Workload
- Throughput
- Contention
- Optimization

#### System Resources

Database performance relies heavily on disk I/O and memory usage. To accurately set performance expectations, you need to know the baseline performance of the hardware on which your DBMS is deployed. Performance of hardware components such as CPUs, hard disks, disk controllers, RAM, and network interfaces will significantly affect how fast your database performs.

> **Note** If you use endpoint security software on your WarehousePG hosts, it may affect your database performance and stability. SeeAbout Endpoint Security Sofware for more information.

#### Workload

The workload equals the total demand from the DBMS, and it varies over time. The total workload is a combination of user queries, applications, batch jobs, transactions, and system commands directed through the DBMS at any given time. For example, it can increase when month-end reports are run or decrease on weekends when most users are out of the office. Workload strongly influences database performance. Knowing your workload and peak demand times helps you plan for the most efficient use of your system resources and enables processing the largest possible workload.

#### Throughput

A system's throughput defines its overall capability to process data. DBMS throughput is measured in queries per second, transactions per second, or average response times. DBMS throughput is closely related to the processing capacity of the underlying systems (disk I/O, CPU speed, memory bandwidth, and so on), so it is important to know the throughput capacity of your hardware when setting DBMS throughput goals.

#### Contention

Contention is the condition in which two or more components of the workload attempt to use the system in a conflicting way — for example, multiple queries that try to update the same piece of data at the same time or multiple large workloads that compete for system resources. As contention increases, throughput decreases.

#### Optimization

DBMS optimizations can affect the overall system performance. SQL formulation, database configuration parameters, table design, data distribution, and so on enable the database query optimizer to create the most efficient access plans.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Determining Acceptable Performance

When approaching a performance tuning initiative, you should know your system's expected level of performance and define measurable performance requirements so you can accurately evaluate your system's performance. Consider the following when setting performance goals:


- Baseline Hardware Performance
- Performance Benchmarks


### Baseline Hardware Performance

Most database performance problems are caused not by the database, but by the underlying systems on which the database runs. I/O bottlenecks, memory problems, and network issues can notably degrade database performance. Knowing the baseline capabilities of your hardware and operating system (OS) will help you identify and troubleshoot hardware-related problems before you explore database-level or query-level tuning initiatives.

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about running the `gpcheckperf` utility to validate hardware and network performance.

### Performance Benchmarks

To maintain good performance or fix performance issues, you should know the capabilities of your DBMS on a defined workload. A benchmark is a predefined workload that produces a known result set. Periodically run the same benchmark tests to help identify system-related performance degradation over time. Use benchmarks to compare workloads and identify queries or applications that need optimization.

Many third-party organizations, such as the Transaction Processing Performance Council (TPC), provide benchmark tools for the database industry. TPC provides TPC-H, a decision support system that examines large volumes of data, runs queries with a high degree of complexity, and gives answers to critical business questions. For more information about TPC-H, go to:

http://www.tpc.org/tpch

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.2 Distribution and Skew

WarehousePG relies on even distribution of data across segments.

In an MPP shared nothing environment, overall response time for a query is measured by the completion time for all segments. The system is only as fast as the slowest segment. If the data is skewed, segments with more data will take more time to complete, so every segment must have an approximately equal number of rows and perform approximately the same amount of processing. Poor performance and out of memory conditions may result if one segment has significantly more data to process than other segments.

Optimal distributions are critical when joining large tables together. To perform a join, matching rows must be located together on the same segment. If data is not distributed on the same join column, the rows needed from one of the tables are dynamically redistributed to the other segments. In some cases a broadcast motion, in which each segment sends its individual rows to all other segments, is performed rather than a redistribution motion, where each segment rehashes the data and sends the rows to the appropriate segments according to the hash key.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Administrator Guide

### Local (Co-located) Joins

Using a hash distribution that evenly distributes table rows across all segments and results in local joins can provide substantial performance gains. When joined rows are on the same segment, much of the processing can be accomplished within the segment instance. These are called *local* or *co-located* joins. Local joins minimize data movement; each segment operates independently of the other segments, without network traffic or communications between segments.

To achieve local joins for large tables commonly joined together, distribute the tables on the same column. Local joins require that both sides of a join be distributed on the same columns (and in the same order) *and* that all columns in the distribution clause are used when joining tables. The distribution columns must also be the same data type—although some values with different data types may appear to have the same representation, they are stored differently and hash to different values, so they are stored on different segments.

### Data Skew

Data skew may be caused by uneven data distribution due to the wrong choice of distribution keys or single tuple table insert or copy operations. Present at the table level, data skew, is often the root cause of poor query performance and out of memory conditions. Skewed data affects scan (read) performance, but it also affects all other query execution operations, for instance, joins and group by operations.

It is very important to *validate* distributions to *ensure* that data is evenly distributed after the initial load. It is equally important to *continue* to validate distributions after incremental loads.

The following query shows the number of rows per segment as well as the variance from the minimum and maximum numbers of rows:

```
SELECT 'Example Table' AS "Table Name",
    max(c) AS "Max Seg Rows", min(c) AS "Min Seg Rows",
    (max(c)-min(c))*100.0/max(c) AS "Percentage Difference Between Max & Min"
FROM (SELECT count(*) c, gp_segment_id FROM facts GROUP BY 2) AS a;
```

The `gp_toolkit` schema has two views that you can use to check for skew.

- The `gp_toolkit.gp_skew_coefficients` view shows data distribution skew by calculating the coefficient of variation (CV) for the data stored on each segment. The `skccoeff` column shows the coefficient of variation (CV), which is calculated as the standard deviation divided by the average. It takes into account both the average and variability around the average of a data series. The lower the value, the better. Higher values indicate greater data skew.
- The `gp_toolkit.gp_skew_idle_fractions` view shows data distribution skew by calculating the percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan, which is an indicator of computational skew. The `siffraction` column shows the percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan. This is an indicator of uneven data distribution or query processing skew. For example, a value of 0.1 indicates 10% skew, a value of 0.5 indicates 50% skew, and so on. Tables that have more than10% skew should have their distribution policies evaluated.

#### Considerations for Replicated Tables

When you create a replicated table (with the `CREATE TABLE` clause `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED`), WarehousePG distributes every table row to every segment instance. Replicated table data is evenly distributed because every segment has the same rows. A query that uses the `gp_segment_id` system column on a replicated table to verify evenly distributed data, will fail because WarehousePG does not allow queries to reference replicated tables' system columns.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Processing Skew

Processing skew results when a disproportionate amount of data flows to, and is processed by, one or a few segments. It is often the culprit behind WarehousePG performance and stability issues. It can happen with operations such join, sort, aggregation, and various OLAP operations. Processing skew happens in flight while a query is running and is not as easy to detect as data skew.

If single segments are failing, that is, not all segments on a host, it may be a processing skew issue. Identifying processing skew is currently a manual process. First look for spill files. If there is skew, but not enough to cause spill, it will not become a performance issue. If you determine skew exists, then find the query responsible for the skew.

The remedy for processing skew in almost all cases is to rewrite the query. Creating temporary tables can eliminate skew. Temporary tables can be randomly distributed to force a two-stage aggregation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.3 Common Causes of Performance Issues

This section explains the troubleshooting processes for common performance issues and potential solutions to these issues.

**Parent topic:** Managing Performance

### Identifying Hardware and Segment Failures

The performance of WarehousePG depends on the hardware and IT infrastructure on which it runs. WarehousePG is comprised of several servers (hosts) acting together as one cohesive system (array); as a first step in diagnosing performance problems, ensure that all WarehousePG segments are online. WarehousePG's performance will be as fast as the slowest host in the array. Problems with CPU utilization, memory management, I/O processing, or network load affect performance. Common hardware-related issues are:

- **Disk Failure** – Although a single disk failure should not dramatically affect database performance if you are using RAID, disk resynchronization does consume resources on the host with failed disks. The `gpcheckperf` utility can help identify segment hosts that have disk I/O issues.

- **Host Failure** – When a host is offline, the segments on that host are nonoperational. This means other hosts in the array must perform twice their usual workload because they are running the primary segments and multiple mirrors. If mirrors are not enabled, service is interrupted. Service is temporarily interrupted to recover failed segments. The `gpstate` utility helps identify failed segments.

- **Network Failure** – Failure of a network interface card, a switch, or DNS server can bring down segments. If host names or IP addresses cannot be resolved within your WarehousePG cluster, these manifest themselves as interconnect errors in WarehousePG. The `gpcheckperf` utility helps identify segment hosts that have network issues.

- **Disk Capacity** – Disk capacity on your segment hosts should never exceed 70 percent full. WarehousePG needs some free space for runtime processing. To reclaim disk space that deleted rows occupy, run `VACUUM` after loads or updates.The *gp_toolkit* administrative schema has many views for checking the size of distributed database objects.

  See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about checking database object sizes and disk space.

### Managing Workload

A database system has a limited CPU capacity, memory, and disk I/O resources. When multiple workloads compete for access to these resources, database performance degrades. Resource management maximizes system throughput while meeting varied business requirements. WarehousePG provides resource queues and resource groups to help you manage these system resources.

Resource queues and resource groups limit resource usage and the total number of concurrent queries running in the particular queue or group. By assigning database roles to the appropriate queue or group, administrators can control concurrent user queries and prevent system overload. For more information about resource queues and resource groups, including selecting the appropriate scheme for your WarehousePG environment, see Managing Resources.

WarehousePG administrators should run maintenance workloads such as data loads and `VACUUM ANALYZE` operations after business hours. Do not compete with database users for system resources; perform administrative tasks at low-usage times.

### Avoiding Contention

Contention arises when multiple users or workloads try to use the system in a conflicting way; for example, contention occurs when two transactions try to update a table simultaneously. A transaction that seeks a table-level or row-level lock will wait indefinitely for conflicting locks to be released. Applications should not hold transactions open for long periods of time, for example, while waiting for user input.

### Maintaining Database Statistics

WarehousePG uses a cost-based query optimizer that relies on database statistics. Accurate statistics allow the query optimizer to better estimate the number of rows retrieved by a query to choose the most efficient query plan. Without database statistics, the query optimizer cannot estimate how many records will be returned. The optimizer does not assume it has sufficient memory to perform certain operations such as aggregations, so it takes the most conservative action and does these operations by reading and writing from disk. This is significantly slower than doing them in memory. ANALYZE collects statistics about the database that the query optimizer needs.

> **Note** When running an SQL command with GPORCA, WarehousePG issues a warning if the command performance could be improved by collecting statistics on a column or set of columns referenced by the command. The warning is issued on the command line and information is added to the WarehousePG log file. For information about collecting statistics on table columns, see the ANALYZE command in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Identifying Statistics Problems in Query Plans

Before you interpret a query plan for a query using EXPLAIN or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`, familiarize yourself with the data to help identify possible statistics problems. Check the plan for the following indicators of inaccurate statistics:

- **Are the optimizer's estimates close to reality?** Run `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and see if the number of rows the optimizer estimated is close to the number of rows the query operation returned.
- **Are selective predicates applied early in the plan?** The most selective filters should be applied early in the plan so fewer rows move up the plan tree.
- **Is the optimizer choosing the best join order?** When you have a query that joins multiple tables, make sure the optimizer chooses the most selective join order. Joins that eliminate the largest number of rows should be done earlier in the plan so fewer rows move up the plan tree.

See Query Profiling for more information about reading query plans.

#### Tuning Statistics Collection

The following configuration parameters control the amount of data sampled for statistics collection:

- `default_statistics_target`

These parameters control statistics sampling at the system level. It is better to sample only increased statistics for columns used most frequently in query predicates. You can adjust statistics for a particular column using the command:

`ALTER TABLE...SET STATISTICS`

For example:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ALTER COLUMN region SET STATISTICS 50;
```

This is equivalent to changing `default_statistics_target` for a particular column. Subsequent `ANALYZE` operations will then gather more statistics data for that column and produce better query plans as a result.

### Optimizing Data Distribution

When you create a table in WarehousePG, you must declare a distribution key that allows for even data distribution across all segments in the system. Because the segments work on a query in parallel, WarehousePG will always be as fast as the slowest segment. If the data is unbalanced, the segments that have more data will return their results slower and therefore slow down the entire system.

### Optimizing Your Database Design

Many performance issues can be improved by database design. Examine your database design and consider the following:

- Does the schema reflect the way the data is accessed?
- Can larger tables be broken down into partitions?
- Are you using the smallest data type possible to store column values?
- Are columns used to join tables of the same datatype?
- Are your indexes being used?

#### WarehousePG Maximum Limits

To help optimize database design, review the maximum limits that WarehousePG supports:

| Dimension | Limit |
|---|---|
| Database Size | Unlimited |
| Table Size | Unlimited, 128 TB per partition per segment |
| Row Size | 1.6 TB (1600 columns * 1 GB) |
| Field Size | 1 GB |
| Rows per Table | 281474976710656 (2^48) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Dimension | Limit |
|---|---|
| Columns per Table/View | 1600 |
| Indexes per Table | Unlimited |
| Columns per Index | 32 |
| Table-level Constraints per Table | Unlimited |
| Table Name Length | 63 Bytes (Limited by *name* data type) |

Dimensions listed as unlimited are not intrinsically limited by WarehousePG. However, they are limited in practice to available disk space and memory/swap space. Performance may degrade when these values are unusually large.

> **Note** There is a maximum limit on the number of objects (tables, indexes, and views, but not rows) that may exist at one time. This limit is 4294967296 (2^32).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.4 WarehousePG Memory Overview

Memory is a key resource for a WarehousePG cluster and, when used efficiently, can ensure high performance and throughput. This topic describes how segment host memory is allocated between segments and the options available to administrators to configure memory.

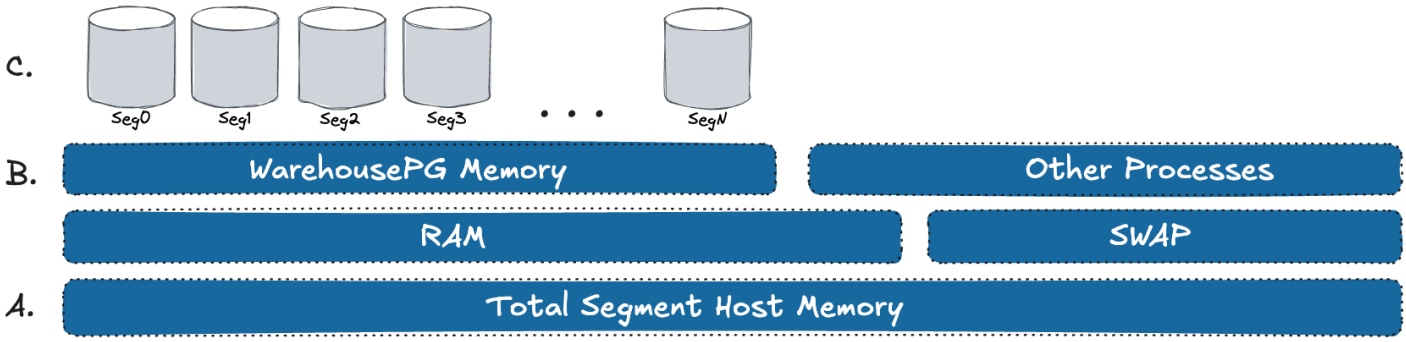
A WarehousePG segment host runs multiple PostgreSQL instances, all sharing the host's memory. The segments have an identical configuration and they consume similar amounts of memory, CPU, and disk IO simultaneously, while working on queries in parallel.

For best query throughput, the memory configuration should be managed carefully. There are memory configuration options at every level in WarehousePG, from operating system parameters, to managing resources with resource queues and resource groups, to setting the amount of memory allocated to an individual query.

### Segment Host Memory

On a WarehousePG segment host, the available host memory is shared among all the processes running on the computer, including the operating system, WarehousePG segment instances, and other application processes. Administrators must determine what WarehousePG and non-WarehousePG processes share the hosts' memory and configure the system to use the memory efficiently. It is equally important to monitor memory usage regularly to detect any changes in the way host memory is consumed by WarehousePG or other processes.

The following figure illustrates how memory is consumed on a WarehousePG segment host when resource queue-based resource management is active.




Beginning at the bottom of the illustration, the line labeled *A* represents the total host memory. The line directly above line *A* shows that the total host memory comprises both physical RAM and swap space.

The line labelled *B* shows that the total memory available must be shared by WarehousePG and all other processes on the host. Non-WarehousePG processes include the operating system and any other applications, for example system monitoring agents. Some applications may use a significant portion of memory and, as a result, you may have to adjust the number of segments per WarehousePG host or the amount of memory per segment.

The segments (*C*) each get an equal share of the WarehousePG Memory (*B*).

Within a segment, the currently active resource management scheme, *Resource Queues* or *Resource Groups*, governs how memory is allocated to run a SQL statement. These constructs allow you to translate business requirements into execution policies in your WarehousePG cluster and to guard against queries that could degrade performance. For an overview of resource groups and resource queues, refer to Managing Resources.

### Options for Configuring Segment Host Memory

Host memory is the total memory shared by all applications on the segment host. You can configure the amount of host memory using any of the following methods:

- Add more RAM to the nodes to increase the physical memory.
- Allocate swap space to increase the size of virtual memory.
- Set the kernel parameters vm.overcommit_memory and vm.overcommit_ratio to configure how the operating system handles large memory allocation requests.

The physical RAM and OS configuration are usually managed by the platform team and system administrators. See the WarehousePG Installation Guide for the recommended kernel parameters and for how to set the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file parameters.

The amount of memory to reserve for the operating system and other processes is workload dependent. The minimum recommendation for operating system memory is 32GB, but if there is much concurrency in WarehousePG, increasing to 64GB of reserved memory may be required. The largest user of operating system memory is SLAB, which increases as WarehousePG concurrency and the number of sockets used increases.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The `vm.overcommit_memory` kernel parameter should always be set to 2, the only safe value for WarehousePG.

The `vm.overcommit_ratio` kernel parameter sets the percentage of RAM that is used for application processes, the remainder reserved for the operating system. The default for Red Hat is 50 (50%). Setting this parameter too high may result in insufficient memory reserved for the operating system, which can cause segment host failure or database failure. Leaving the setting at the default of 50 is generally safe, but conservative. Setting the value too low reduces the amount of concurrency and the complexity of queries you can run at the same time by reducing the amount of memory available to WarehousePG. When increasing `vm.overcommit_ratio`, it is important to remember to always reserve some memory for operating system activities.

#### Configuring vm.overcommit_ratio when Resource Group-Based Resource Management is Active

When resource group-based resource management is active, tune the operating system `vm.overcommit_ratio` as necessary. If your memory utilization is too low, increase the value; if your memory or swap usage is too high, decrease the setting.

#### Configuring vm.overcommit_ratio when Resource Queue-Based Resource Management is Active

To calculate a safe value for `vm.overcommit_ratio` when resource queue-based resource management is active, first determine the total memory available to WarehousePG processes, `gp_vmem_rq`.

- If the total system memory is less than 256 GB, use this formula:

  ```
  gp_vmem_rq = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.7
  ```

- If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB, use this formula:

  ```
  gp_vmem_rq = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.17
  ```

where `SWAP` is the swap space on the host in GB, and `RAM` is the number of GB of RAM installed on the host.

When resource queue-based resource management is active, use `gp_vmem_rq` to calculate the `vm.overcommit_ratio` value with this formula:

```
vm.overcommit_ratio = (RAM – 0.026 * gp_vmem_rq) / RAM
```

### Configuring WarehousePG Memory

WarehousePG Memory is the amount of memory available to all WarehousePG segment instances.

When you set up the WarehousePG cluster, you determine the number of primary segments to run per host and the amount of memory to allocate for each segment. Depending on the CPU cores, amount of physical RAM, and workload characteristics, the number of segments is usually a value between 4 and 8. With segment mirroring enabled, it is important to allocate memory for the maximum number of primary segments running on a host during a failure. For example, if you use the default grouping mirror configuration, a segment host failure doubles the number of acting primaries on the host that has the failed host's mirrors. Mirror configurations that spread each host's mirrors over multiple other hosts can lower the maximum, allowing more memory to be allocated for each segment. For example, if you use a block mirroring configuration with 4 hosts per block and 8 primary segments per host, a single host failure would cause other hosts in the block to have a maximum of 11 active primaries, compared to 16 for the default grouping mirror configuration.

#### Configuring Segment Memory when Resource Group-Based Resource Management is Active

When resource group-based resource management is active, the amount of memory allocated to each segment on a segment host is the memory available to WarehousePG multiplied by the gp_resource_group_memory_limit server configuration parameter and divided by the number of active primary segments on the host. Use the following formula to calculate segment memory when using resource groups for resource management.

```
rg_perseg_mem = ((RAM * (vm.overcommit_ratio / 100) + SWAP) * gp_resource_group_memory_limit) /
num_active_primary_segments
```

Resource groups expose additional configuration parameters that enable you to further control and refine the amount of memory allocated for queries.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Configuring Segment Memory when Resource Queue-Based Resource Management is Active

When resource queue-based resource management is active, the gp_vmem_protect_limit server configuration parameter value identifies the amount of memory to allocate to each segment. This value is estimated by calculating the memory available for all WarehousePG processes and dividing by the maximum number of primary segments during a failure. If gp_vmem_protect_limit is set too high, queries can fail. Use the following formula to calculate a safe value for gp_vmem_protect_limit; provide the `gp_vmem_rq` value that you calculated earlier.

```
gp_vmem_protect_limit = gp_vmem_rq / max_acting_primary_segments
```

where `max_acting_primary_segments` is the maximum number of primary segments that could be running on a host when mirror segments are activated due to a host or segment failure.

> **Note** The gp_vmem_protect_limit setting is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active in WarehousePG. WarehousePG ignores this configuration parameter when resource group-based resource management is active.

Resource queues expose additional configuration parameters that enable you to further control and refine the amount of memory allocated for queries.

### Example Memory Configuration Calculations

This section provides example memory calculations for resource queues and resource groups for a WarehousePG cluster with the following specifications:

- Total RAM = 256GB
- Swap = 64GB
- 8 primary segments and 8 mirror segments per host, in blocks of 4 hosts
- Maximum number of primaries per host during failure is 11

#### Resource Group Example

When resource group-based resource management is active in WarehousePG, the usable memory available on a host is a function of the amount of RAM and swap space configured for the system, as well as the `vm.overcommit_ratio` system parameter setting:

```
total_node_usable_memory = RAM * (vm.overcommit_ratio / 100) + Swap
                         = 256GB * (50/100) + 64GB
                         = 192GB
```

Assuming the default `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` value (.7), the memory allocated to a WarehousePG host with the example configuration is:

```
total_gp_memory = total_node_usable_memory * gp_resource_group_memory_limit
                = 192GB * .7
                = 134.4GB
```

The memory available to a WarehousePG segment on a segment host is a function of the memory reserved for WarehousePG on the host and the number of active primary segments on the host. On cluster startup:

```
gp_seg_memory = total_gp_memory / number_of_active_primary_segments
              = 134.4GB / 8
              = 16.8GB
```

Note that when 3 mirror segments switch to primary segments, the per-segment memory is still 16.8GB. Total memory usage on the segment host may approach:

```
total_gp_memory_with_primaries = 16.8GB * 11 = 184.8GB
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Resource Queue Example

The `vm.overcommit_ratio` calculation for the example system when resource queue-based resource management is active in WarehousePG follows:

```
gp_vmem_rq = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.7
        = ((64 + 256) – (7.5 + 0.05 * 256)) / 1.7
        = 176

vm.overcommit_ratio = (RAM – (0.026 * gp_vmem_rq)) / RAM
                    = (256 – (0.026 * 176)) / 256
                    = .982
```

You would set `vm.overcommit_ratio` of the example system to 98.

The `gp_vmem_protect_limit` calculation when resource queue-based resource management is active in WarehousePG:

```
gp_vmem_protect_limit = gp_vmem_rq / maximum_acting_primary_segments
                      = 176 / 11
                      = 16GB
                      = 16384MB
```

You would set the `gp_vmem_protect_limit` server configuration parameter on the example system to 16384.

**Parent topic:** Managing Performance

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.5 Managing Resources

WarehousePG provides features to help you prioritize and allocate resources to queries according to business requirements and to prevent queries from starting when resources are unavailable.

You can use resource management features to limit the number of concurrent queries, the amount of memory used to run a query, and the relative amount of CPU devoted to processing a query. WarehousePG provides two schemes to manage resources - Resource Queues and Resource Groups.

Either the resource queue or the resource group management scheme can be active in WarehousePG; both schemes cannot be active at the same time.

Resource queues are enabled by default when you install your WarehousePG cluster. While you can create and assign resource groups when resource queues are active, you must explicitly enable resource groups to start using that management scheme.

The following table summarizes some of the differences between Resource Queues and Resource Groups.

| Metric | Resource Queues | Resource Groups |
|---|---|---|
| Concurrency | Managed at the query level | Managed at the transaction level |
| CPU | Specify query priority | Specify percentage of CPU resources; uses Linux Control Groups |
| Memory | Managed at the queue and operator level; users can over-subscribe | Managed at the transaction level, with enhanced allocation and tracking; users cannot over-subscribe |
| Memory Isolation | None | Memory is isolated between resource groups and between transactions within the same resource group |
| Users | Limits are applied only to non-admin users | Limits are applied to `SUPERUSER` and non-admin users alike |
| Queueing | Queue only when no slot available | Queue when no slot is available or not enough available memory |
| Query Failure | Query may fail immediately if not enough memory | Query may fail after reaching transaction fixed memory limit when no shared resource group memory exists and the transaction requests more memory |
| Limit Bypass | Limits are not enforced for `SUPERUSER` roles and certain operators and functions | Limits are not enforced on `SET`, `RESET`, and `SHOW` commands |
| External Components | None | Manage external component CPU and memory resources |

- Using Resource Groups
- Using Resource Queues

**Parent topic:** Managing Performance

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.5.1 Using Resource Groups

You use resource groups to set and enforce CPU, memory, and concurrent transaction limits in WarehousePG. After you define a resource group, you can then assign the group to one or more WarehousePG roles, or to an external component, in order to control the resources used by those roles or components.

When you assign a resource group to a role (a role-based resource group), the resource limits that you define for the group apply to all of the roles to which you assign the group. For example, the memory limit for a resource group identifies the maximum memory usage for all running transactions submitted by WarehousePG users in all roles to which you assign the group.

Similarly, when you assign a resource group to an external component, the group limits apply to all running instances of the component. For example, if you create a resource group for an external component, the memory limit that you define for the group specifies the maximum memory usage for all running instances of that component to which you assign the group.

**Parent topic:** Managing Resources

### Understanding Role and Component Resource Groups

WarehousePG supports two types of resource groups: groups that manage resources for roles, and groups that manage resources for external components.

The most common application for resource groups is to manage the number of active queries that different roles may run concurrently in your WarehousePG cluster. You can also manage the amount of CPU and memory resources that WarehousePG allocates to each query.

Resource groups for roles use Linux control groups (cgroups) for CPU resource management. WarehousePG tracks virtual memory internally for these resource groups using a memory auditor referred to as `vmtracker`.

When the user runs a query, WarehousePG evaluates the query against a set of limits defined for the resource group. WarehousePG runs the query immediately if the group's resource limits have not yet been reached and the query does not cause the group to exceed the concurrent transaction limit. If these conditions are not met, WarehousePG queues the query. For example, if the maximum number of concurrent transactions for the resource group has already been reached, a subsequent query is queued and must wait until other queries complete before it runs. WarehousePG may also run a pending query when the resource group's concurrency and memory limits are altered to large enough values.

Within a resource group for roles, transactions are evaluated on a first in, first out basis. WarehousePG periodically assesses the active workload of the system, reallocating resources and starting/queuing jobs as necessary.

You can also use resource groups to manage the CPU and memory resources of external components. Resource groups for external components use Linux cgroups to manage both the total CPU and total memory resources for the component.

> **Note** Containerized deployments of WarehousePG might create a hierarchical set of nested cgroups to manage host system resources. The nesting of cgroups affects the WarehousePG resource group limits for CPU percentage, CPU cores, and memory (except for WarehousePG external components). The WarehousePG resource group system resource limit is based on the quota for the parent group.

For example, WarehousePG is running in a cgroup demo, and the WarehousePG cgroup is nested in the cgroup demo. If the cgroup demo is configured with a CPU limit of 60% of system CPU resources and the WarehousePG resource group CPU limit is set 90%, the WarehousePG limit of host system CPU resources is 54% (0.6 x 0.9).

Nested cgroups do not affect memory limits for WarehousePG external components. Memory limits for external components can only be managed if the cgroup that is used to manage WarehousePG resources is not nested, the cgroup is configured as a top-level cgroup.

For information about configuring cgroups for use by resource groups, see Configuring and Using Resource Groups.

### Resource Group Attributes and Limits

When you create a resource group, you:

- Specify the type of resource group by identifying how memory for the group is audited.
- Provide a set of limits that determine the amount of CPU and memory resources available to the group.

Resource group attributes and limits:

| Limit Type | Description |
|---|---|

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Limit Type | Description |
|---|---|
| MEMORY_AUDITOR | The memory auditor in use for the resource group. `vmtracker` (the default) is required if you want to assign the resource group to roles. Specify `cgroup` to assign the resource group to an external component. |
| CONCURRENCY | The maximum number of concurrent transactions, including active and idle transactions, that are permitted in the resource group. |
| CPU_RATE_LIMIT | The percentage of CPU resources available to this resource group. |
| CPUSET | The CPU cores to reserve for this resource group on the coordinator and segment hosts. |
| MEMORY_LIMIT | The percentage of reserved memory resources available to this resource group. |
| MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA | The percentage of reserved memory to share across transactions submitted in this resource group. |
| MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO | The memory usage threshold for memory-intensive transactions. When a transaction reaches this threshold, it spills to disk. |

> **Note** Resource limits are not enforced on `SET`, `RESET`, and `SHOW` commands.

### Memory Auditor

The `MEMORY_AUDITOR` attribute specifies the type of resource group by identifying the memory auditor for the group. A resource group that specifies the `vmtracker` `MEMORY_AUDITOR` identifies a resource group for roles. A resource group specifying the `cgroup` `MEMORY_AUDITOR` identifies a resource group for external components.

The default `MEMORY_AUDITOR` is `vmtracker`.

The `MEMORY_AUDITOR` that you specify for a resource group determines if and how WarehousePG uses the limit attributes to manage CPU and memory resources:

| Limit Type | Resource Group for Roles | Resource Group for External Components |
|---|---|---|
| CONCURRENCY | Yes | No; must be zero (0) |
| CPU_RATE_LIMIT | Yes | Yes |
| CPUSET | Yes | Yes |
| MEMORY_LIMIT | Yes | Yes |
| MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA | Yes | Component-specific |
| MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO | Yes | Component-specific |

> **Note** For queries managed by resource groups that are configured to use the `vmtracker` memory auditor, WarehousePG supports the automatic termination of queries based on the amount of memory the queries are using. See the server configuration parameter runaway_detector_activation_percent.

### Transaction Concurrency Limit

The `CONCURRENCY` limit controls the maximum number of concurrent transactions permitted for a resource group for roles.

> **Note** The `CONCURRENCY` limit is not applicable to resource groups for external components and must be set to zero (0) for such groups.

Each resource group for roles is logically divided into a fixed number of slots equal to the `CONCURRENCY` limit. WarehousePG allocates these slots an equal, fixed percentage of memory resources.

The default `CONCURRENCY` limit value for a resource group for roles is 20.

WarehousePG queues any transactions submitted after the resource group reaches its `CONCURRENCY` limit. When a running transaction completes, WarehousePG un-queues and runs the earliest queued transaction if sufficient memory resources exist.

You can set the server configuration parameter gp_resource_group_bypass to bypass a resource group concurrency limit.

You can set the server configuration parameter gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout to specify the amount of time a transaction remains in the queue before WarehousePG cancels the transaction. The default timeout is zero, WarehousePG queues transactions indefinitely.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CPU Limits

You configure the share of CPU resources to reserve for a resource group on the coordinator and segment hosts by assigning specific CPU core(s) to the group, or by identifying the percentage of segment CPU resources to allocate to the group. WarehousePG uses the `CPUSET` and `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` resource group limits to identify the CPU resource allocation mode. You must specify only one of these limits when you configure a resource group.

You may employ both modes of CPU resource allocation simultaneously in your WarehousePG cluster. You may also change the CPU resource allocation mode for a resource group at runtime.

The gp_resource_group_cpu_limit server configuration parameter identifies the maximum percentage of system CPU resources to allocate to resource groups on each WarehousePG host. This limit governs the maximum CPU usage of all resource groups on the coordinator or on a segment host regardless of the CPU allocation mode configured for the group. The remaining unreserved CPU resources are used for the OS kernel and the WarehousePG auxiliary daemon processes. The default `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit` value is .9 (90%).

> **Note** The default `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit` value may not leave sufficient CPU resources if you are running other workloads on your WarehousePG cluster nodes, so be sure to adjust this server configuration parameter accordingly.

> **Caution** Avoid setting `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit` to a value higher than .9. Doing so may result in high workload queries taking near all CPU resources, potentially starving WarehousePG auxiliary processes.

#### Assigning CPU Resources by Core

You identify the CPU cores that you want to reserve for a resource group with the `CPUSET` property. The CPU cores that you specify must be available in the system and cannot overlap with any CPU cores that you reserved for other resource groups. (Although WarehousePG uses the cores that you assign to a resource group exclusively for that group, note that those CPU cores may also be used by non-WarehousePG processes in the system.)

Specify CPU cores separately for the coordinator host and segment hosts, separated by a semicolon. Use a comma-separated list of single core numbers or number intervals when you configure cores for `CPUSET`. You must enclose the core numbers/intervals in single quotes, for example, '1;1,3-4' uses core 1 on the coordinator host, and cores 1, 3, and 4 on segment hosts.

When you assign CPU cores to `CPUSET` groups, consider the following:

- A resource group that you create with `CPUSET` uses the specified cores exclusively. If there are no running queries in the group, the reserved cores are idle and cannot be used by queries in other resource groups. Consider minimizing the number of `CPUSET` groups to avoid wasting system CPU resources.
- Consider keeping CPU core 0 unassigned. CPU core 0 is used as a fallback mechanism in the following cases:
  - `admin_group` and `default_group` require at least one CPU core. When all CPU cores are reserved, WarehousePG assigns CPU core 0 to these default groups. In this situation, the resource group to which you assigned CPU core 0 shares the core with `admin_group` and `default_group`.
  - If you restart your WarehousePG cluster with one node replacement and the node does not have enough cores to service all `CPUSET` resource groups, the groups are automatically assigned CPU core 0 to avoid system start failure.

- Use the lowest possible core numbers when you assign cores to resource groups. If you replace a WarehousePG node and the new node has fewer CPU cores than the original, or if you back up the database and want to restore it on a cluster with nodes with fewer CPU cores, the operation may fail. For example, if your WarehousePG cluster has 16 cores, assigning cores 1-7 is optimal. If you create a resource group and assign CPU core 9 to this group, database restore to an 8 core node will fail.

Resource groups that you configure with `CPUSET` have a higher priority on CPU resources. The maximum CPU resource usage percentage for all resource groups configured with `CPUSET` on a segment host is the number of CPU cores reserved divided by the number of all CPU cores, multiplied by 100.

When you configure `CPUSET` for a resource group, WarehousePG deactivates `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` for the group and sets the value to -1.

> **Note** You must configure `CPUSET` for a resource group *after* you have enabled resource group-based resource management for your WarehousePG cluster.

#### Assigning CPU Resources by Percentage

The WarehousePG node CPU percentage is divided equally among each segment on the WarehousePG node. Each resource group that you configure with a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` reserves the specified percentage of the segment CPU for resource management.

The minimum `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` percentage you can specify for a resource group is 1, the maximum is 100.

The sum of `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`s specified for all resource groups that you define in your WarehousePG cluster must not exceed 100.

The maximum CPU resource usage for all resource groups configured with a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` on a segment host is the minimum of:

- The number of non-reserved CPU cores divided by the number of all CPU cores, multiplied by 100, and

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- The `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit` value.

When you configure `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` for a resource group, WarehousePG deactivates `CPUSET` for the group and sets the value to -1.

There are two different ways of assigning CPU resources by percentage, determined by the value of the configuration parameter `gp_resource_group_cpu_ceiling_enforcement`:

#### Elastic mode

This mode is active when `gp_resource_group_cpu_ceiling_enforcement` is set to `false` (default). It is elastic in that WarehousePG may allocate the CPU resources of an idle resource group to a busier one(s). In such situations, CPU resources are re-allocated to the previously idle resource group when that resource group next becomes active. If multiple resource groups are busy, they are allocated the CPU resources of any idle resource groups based on the ratio of their `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`s. For example, a resource group created with a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` of 40 will be allocated twice as much extra CPU resource as a resource group that you create with a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` of 20.

#### Ceiling Enforcement mode

This mode is active when `gp_resource_group_cpu_ceiling_enforcement` is set to `true`. The resource group is enforced to not use more CPU resources than the defined value `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`, avoiding the use of the CPU burst feature.

### Memory Limits

> **Caution** Beginning in version 6.21.0, the Resource Groups implementation was changed to calculate segment memory using `gp_segment_configuration.hostname` instead of `gp_segment_configuration.address`. This implementation can result in a lower memory limit value compared to the earlier code, for deployments where each host uses multiple IP addresses. In some cases, this change in behavior could lead to Out Of Memory errors when upgrading from an earlier version. Version 6.23.4 introduces a configuration parameter, `gp_count_host_segments_using_address`, that can be enabled to calculate of segment memory using `gp_segment_configuration.address` if Out Of Memory errors are encountered after an upgrade. This parameter is disabled by default. This parameter will not be provided in WarehousePG Version 7 because resource group memory calculation will no longer be dependent on the segments per host value.

When resource groups are enabled, memory usage is managed at the WarehousePG node, segment, and resource group levels. You can also manage memory at the transaction level with a resource group for roles.

The gp_resource_group_memory_limit server configuration parameter identifies the maximum percentage of system memory resources to allocate to resource groups on each WarehousePG segment host. The default `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` value is .7 (70%).

The memory resource available on a WarehousePG node is further divided equally among each segment on the node. When resource group-based resource management is active, the amount of memory allocated to each segment on a segment host is the memory available to WarehousePG multiplied by the `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` server configuration parameter and divided by the number of active primary segments on the host:

```
rg_perseg_mem = ((RAM * (vm.overcommit_ratio / 100) + SWAP) * gp_resource_group_memory_limit) /
num_active_primary_segments
```

Each resource group may reserve a percentage of the segment memory for resource management. You identify this percentage via the `MEMORY_LIMIT` value that you specify when you create the resource group. The minimum `MEMORY_LIMIT` percentage you can specify for a resource group is 0, the maximum is 100. When `MEMORY_LIMIT` is 0, WarehousePG reserves no memory for the resource group, but uses resource group global shared memory to fulfill all memory requests in the group. Refer to Global Shared Memory for more information about resource group global shared memory.

The sum of `MEMORY_LIMIT`s specified for all resource groups that you define in your WarehousePG cluster must not exceed 100.

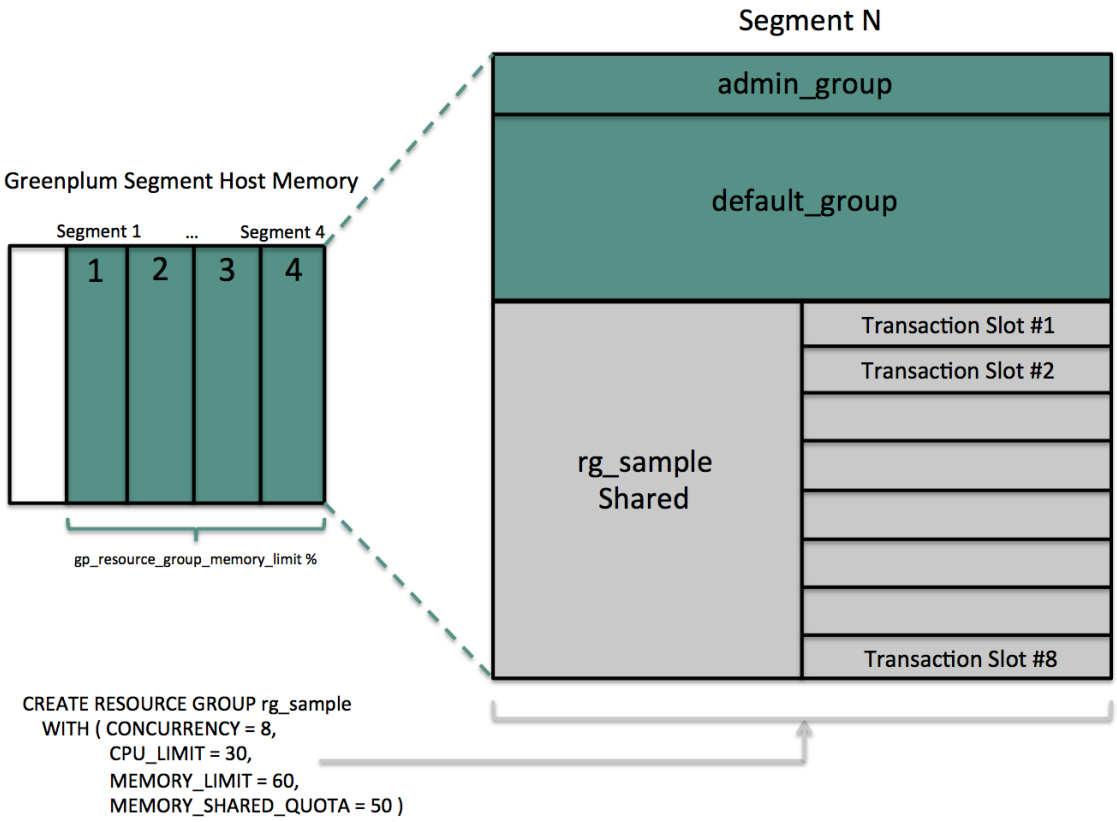
#### Additional Memory Limits for Role-based Resource Groups

If resource group memory is reserved for roles (non-zero `MEMORY_LIMIT`), the memory is further divided into fixed and shared components. The `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` value that you specify when you create the resource group identifies the percentage of reserved resource group memory that may be shared among the currently running transactions. This memory is allotted on a first-come, first-served basis. A running transaction may use none, some, or all of the `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA`.

The minimum `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` that you can specify is 0, the maximum is 100. The default `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` is 80.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

As mentioned previously, `CONCURRENCY` identifies the maximum number of concurrently running transactions permitted in a resource group for roles. If fixed memory is reserved by a resource group (non-zero `MEMORY_LIMIT`), it is divided into `CONCURRENCY` number of transaction slots. Each slot is allocated a fixed, equal amount of the resource group memory. WarehousePG guarantees this fixed memory to each transaction.




When a query's memory usage exceeds the fixed per-transaction memory usage amount, WarehousePG allocates available resource group shared memory to the query. The maximum amount of resource group memory available to a specific transaction slot is the sum of the transaction's fixed memory and the full resource group shared memory allotment.

#### Global Shared Memory

The sum of the `MEMORY_LIMIT`s configured for all resource groups (including the default `admin_group` and `default_group` groups) identifies the percentage of reserved resource group memory. If this sum is less than 100, WarehousePG allocates any unreserved memory to a resource group global shared memory pool.

Resource group global shared memory is available only to resource groups that you configure with the `vmtracker` memory auditor.

When available, WarehousePG allocates global shared memory to a transaction after first allocating slot and resource group shared memory (if applicable). WarehousePG allocates resource group global shared memory to transactions on a first-come first-served basis.

> **Note** WarehousePG tracks, but does not actively monitor, transaction memory usage in resource groups. If the memory usage for a resource group exceeds its fixed memory allotment, a transaction in the resource group fails when *all* of these conditions are met:

- No available resource group shared memory exists.
- No available global shared memory exists.
- The transaction requests additional memory.

WarehousePG uses resource group memory more efficiently when you leave some memory (for example, 10-20%) unallocated for the global shared memory pool. The availability of global shared memory also helps to mitigate the failure of memory-consuming or unpredicted queries.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Query Operator Memory

Most query operators are non-memory-intensive; that is, during processing, WarehousePG can hold their data in allocated memory. When memory-intensive query operators such as join and sort process more data than can be held in memory, data is spilled to disk.

The gp_resqroup_memory_policy server configuration parameter governs the memory allocation and distribution algorithm for all query operators. WarehousePG supports `eager-free` (the default) and `auto` memory policies for resource groups. When you specify the `auto` policy, WarehousePG uses resource group memory limits to distribute memory across query operators, allocating a fixed size of memory to non-memory-intensive operators and the rest to memory-intensive operators. When the `eager_free` policy is in place, WarehousePG distributes memory among operators more optimally by re-allocating memory released by operators that have completed their processing to operators in a later query stage.

`MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` identifies the memory usage threshold for memory-intensive operators in a transaction. When this threshold is reached, a transaction spills to disk. WarehousePG uses the `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` to determine the initial memory to allocate to a transaction.

You can specify an integer percentage value from 0 to 100 inclusive for `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO`. The default `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` is 0.

When `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` is 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter value to control initial query operator memory.

> **Note** When you set `MEMORY_LIMIT` to 0, `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` must also be set to 0.

You can selectively set the `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` on a per-query basis at the session level with the memory_spill_ratio server configuration parameter.

#### About How WarehousePG Allocates Transaction Memory

The query planner pre-computes the maximum amount of memory that each node in the plan tree can use. When resource group-based resource management is active and the `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` for the resource group is non-zero, the following formula roughly specifies the maximum amount of memory that WarehousePG allocates to a transaction:

```
query_mem = (rg_perseg_mem * memory_limit) * memory_spill_ratio / concurrency
```

Where `memory_limit`, `memory_spill_ratio`, and `concurrency` are specified by the resource group under which the transaction runs.

By default, WarehousePG calculates the maximum amount of segment host memory allocated to a transaction based on the `rg_perseg_mem` and the number of primary segments configured on the *coordinator host*.

> **Note** If the memory configuration on your WarehousePG coordinator and segment hosts differ, you may encounter out-of-memory conditions or underutilization of resources with the default configuration.

If the hardware configuration of your coordinator and segment hosts differ, set the gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem server configuration parameter to `true`; this prompts WarehousePG to recalculate the maximum per-query memory allotment on each segment host based on the `rg_perseg_mem` and the number of primary segments configured on *that segment host*.

#### memory_spill_ratio and Low Memory Queries

A low `statement_mem` setting (for example, in the 10MB range) has been shown to increase the performance of queries with low memory requirements. Use the `memory_spill_ratio` and `statement_mem` server configuration parameters to override the setting on a per-query basis. For example:

```
SET memory_spill_ratio=0;
SET statement_mem='10 MB';
```

### About Using Reserved Resource Group Memory vs. Using Resource Group Global Shared Memory

When you do not reserve memory for a resource group (`MEMORY_LIMIT` and `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` are set to 0):

- It increases the size of the resource group global shared memory pool.
- The resource group functions similarly to a resource queue, using the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter value to control initial query operator memory.
- Any query submitted in the resource group competes for resource group global shared memory on a first-come, first-served basis with queries running in other groups.
- There is no guarantee that WarehousePG will be able to allocate memory for a query running in the resource group. The risk of a query in the group encountering an out of memory (OOM) condition increases when there are many concurrent queries consuming memory from the resource group global shared memory pool at the same time.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

To reduce the risk of OOM for a query running in an important resource group, consider reserving some fixed memory for the group. While reserving fixed memory for a group reduces the size of the resource group global shared memory pool, this may be a fair tradeoff to reduce the risk of encountering an OOM condition in a query running in a critical resource group.

#### Other Memory Considerations

Resource groups for roles track all WarehousePG memory allocated via the `palloc()` function. Memory that you allocate using the Linux `malloc()` function is not managed by these resource groups. To ensure that resource groups for roles are accurately tracking memory usage, avoid using `malloc()` to allocate large amounts of memory in custom WarehousePG user-defined functions.

### Configuring and Using Resource Groups

#### Prerequisites

WarehousePG resource groups use Linux Control Groups (cgroups) to manage CPU resources. WarehousePG also uses cgroups to manage memory for resource groups for external components. With cgroups, WarehousePG isolates the CPU and external component memory usage of your WarehousePG processes from other processes on the node. This allows WarehousePG to support CPU and external component memory usage restrictions on a per-resource-group basis.

> **Note** Redhat 8.x/9.x supports two versions of cgroups: cgroup v1 and cgroup v2. WarehousePG only supports cgroup v1. Follow the steps below to make sure that your system is mounting the `cgroups-v1` filesystem at startup.

For detailed information about cgroups, refer to the Control Groups documentation for your Linux distribution.

Complete the following tasks on each node in your WarehousePG cluster to set up cgroups for use with resource groups:

1. If you are using Redhat 8.x/9.x, make sure that you configured the system to mount the `cgroups-v1` filesystem by default during system boot by running the following command:

   ```
   stat -fc %T /sys/fs/cgroup/
   ```

   For cgroup v1, the output is `tmpfs`.
   If your output is `cgroup2fs`, configure the system to mount `cgroups-v1` by default during system boot by the `systemd` system and service manager:

   ```
   grubby --update-kernel=/boot/vmlinuz-$(uname -r) --args="systemd.unified_cgroup_hierarchy=0
   systemd.legacy_systemd_cgroup_controller"
   ```

   To add the same parameters to all kernel boot entries:

   ```
   grubby --update-kernel=ALL --args="systemd.unified_cgroup_hierarchy=0 systemd.legacy_systemd_cgroup_controller"
   ```

   Reboot the system for the changes to take effect.

2. Create the required cgroup hierarchies on each WarehousePG node. Since the hierarchies are cleaned when the operating system rebooted, a service is applied to recreate them automatically on boot. Follow the below steps based on your operating system version.

##### Redhat/CentOS 7.x/8.x

These operating systems include the `libcgroup-tools` package.

1. Locate the cgroups configuration file `/etc/cgconfig.conf`. You must be the superuser or have `sudo` access to edit this file:

   ```
   vi /etc/cgconfig.conf
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Add the following configuration information to the file:

```
group gpdb {
     perm {
         task {
             uid = gpadmin;
             gid = gpadmin;
         }
         admin {
             uid = gpadmin;
             gid = gpadmin;
         }
     }
     cpu {
     }
     cpuacct {
     }
     cpuset {
     }
     memory {
     }
}
```

   This content configures CPU, CPU accounting, CPU core set, and memory control groups managed by the `gpadmin` user. WarehousePG uses the memory control group only for those resource groups created with the `cgroup` `MEMORY_AUDITOR`.

3. Start the cgroups service on each WarehousePG node. You must be the superuser or have `sudo` access to run the command:

```
cgconfigparser -l /etc/cgconfig.conf
```

4. To automatically recreate WarehousePG required cgroup hierarchies and parameters when your system is restarted, configure your system to enable the Linux cgroup service daemon `cgconfig.service` at node start-up. To ensure the configuration is persistent after reboot, run the following commands as user root:

```
systemctl enable cgconfig.service
```

   To start the service immediately (without having to reboot) enter:

```
systemctl start cgconfig.service
```

5. Identify the `cgroup` directory mount point for the node:

```
grep cgroup /proc/mounts
```

   The first line of output identifies the `cgroup` mount point.

6. Verify that you set up the WarehousePG cgroups configuration correctly by running the following commands. Replace <cgroup_mount_point> with the mount point that you identified in the previous step:

```
ls -l <cgroup_mount_point>/cpu/gpdb
ls -l <cgroup_mount_point>/cpuacct/gpdb
ls -l <cgroup_mount_point>/cpuset/gpdb
ls -l <cgroup_mount_point>/memory/gpdb
```

   If these directories exist and are owned by `gpadmin:gpadmin`, you have successfully configured cgroups for WarehousePG CPU resource management.

#### Redhat 9.x

If you are using Redhat 9.x, the `libcgroup` and `libcgroup-tools` packages are not available with the operating system. In this scenario, you must manually create a service that automatically recreates the cgroup hierarchies after a system boot. Add the following bash script for systemd so it runs automatically during system startup. Perform the following steps as user root:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Create `greenplum-cgroup-v1-config.service`

```
vim /etc/systemd/system/greenplum-cgroup-v1-config.service
```

2. Write the following content into `greenplum-cgroup-v1-config.service`. If the user is not `gpadmin`, replace it with the appropriate user.

```
[Unit]
Description=Greenplum Cgroup v1 Configuration

[Service]
Type=oneshot
RemainAfterExit=yes
WorkingDirectory=/sys/fs/cgroup
# set up hierarchies only if cgroup v1 mounted
ExecCondition=bash -c '[ xcgroupfs = x$(stat -fc "%%T" /sys/fs/cgroup/memory) ] || exit 1'
ExecStart=bash -ec '\
    for controller in cpu cpuacct cpuset memory;do \
        [ -e $controller/gpdb ] || mkdir $controller/gpdb; \
        chown -R gpadmin:gpadmin $controller/gpdb; \
    done'

[Install]
WantedBy=basic.target
```

3. Reload systemd daemon and enable the service:

```
systemctl daemon-reload
systemctl enable greenplum-cgroup-v1-config.service
```

**Procedure**

To use resource groups in your WarehousePG cluster, you:

1. Enable resource groups for your WarehousePG cluster.
2. Create resource groups.
3. Assign the resource groups to one or more roles.
4. Use resource management system views to monitor and manage the resource groups.

### Enabling Resource Groups

When you install WarehousePG, resource queues are enabled by default. To use resource groups instead of resource queues, you must set thegp_resource_manager server configuration parameter.

1. Set the `gp_resource_manager` server configuration parameter to the value `"group"`:

```
gpconfig -s gp_resource_manager
gpconfig -c gp_resource_manager -v "group"
```

2. Restart WarehousePG:

```
gpstop
gpstart
```

Once enabled, any transaction submitted by a role is directed to the resource group assigned to the role, and is governed by that resource group's concurrency, memory, and CPU limits. Similarly, CPU and memory usage by an external component is governed by the CPU and memory limits configured for the resource group assigned to the component.

WarehousePG creates two default resource groups for roles named `admin_group` and `default_group`. When you enable resources groups, any role that was not explicitly assigned a resource group is assigned the default group for the role's capability. `SUPERUSER` roles are assigned the `admin_group`, non-admin roles are assigned the group named `default_group`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The default resource groups `admin_group` and `default_group` are created with the following resource limits:

| Limit Type | admin_group | default_group |
|---|---|---|
| CONCURRENCY | 10 | 20 |
| CPU_RATE_LIMIT | 10 | 30 |
| CPUSET | -1 | -1 |
| MEMORY_LIMIT | 10 | 0 |
| MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA | 80 | 80 |
| MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO | 0 | 0 |
| MEMORY_AUDITOR | vmtracker | vmtracker |

Keep in mind that the `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` and `MEMORY_LIMIT` values for the default resource groups `admin_group` and `default_group` contribute to the total percentages on a segment host. You may find that you need to adjust these limits for `admin_group` and/or `default_group` as you create and add new resource groups to your WarehousePG deployment.

### Creating Resource Groups

*When you create a resource group for a role*, you provide a name and a CPU resource allocation mode. You can optionally provide a concurrent transaction limit and memory limit, shared quota, and spill ratio values. Use the CREATE RESOURCE GROUP command to create a new resource group.

When you create a resource group for a role, you must provide a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` or `CPUSET` limit value. These limits identify the percentage of WarehousePG CPU resources to allocate to this resource group. You may specify a `MEMORY_LIMIT` to reserve a fixed amount of memory for the resource group. If you specify a `MEMORY_LIMIT` of 0, WarehousePG uses global shared memory to fulfill all memory requirements for the resource group.

For example, to create a resource group named *rgroup1* with a CPU limit of 20, a memory limit of 25, and a memory spill ratio of 20:

```
=# CREATE RESOURCE GROUP rgroup1 WITH (CPU_RATE_LIMIT=20, MEMORY_LIMIT=25, MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO=20);
```

The CPU limit of 20 is shared by every role to which `rgroup1` is assigned. Similarly, the memory limit of 25 is shared by every role to which `rgroup1` is assigned. `rgroup1` utilizes the default `MEMORY_AUDITOR` `vmtracker` and the default `CONCURRENCY` setting of 20.

*When you create a resource group for an external component*, you must provide `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` or `CPUSET` and `MEMORY_LIMIT` limit values. You must also provide the `MEMORY_AUDITOR` and explicitly set `CONCURRENCY` to zero (0). For example, to create a resource group named *rgroup_extcomp* for which you reserve CPU core 1 on coordinator and segment hosts, and assign a memory limit of 15:

```
=# CREATE RESOURCE GROUP rgroup_extcomp WITH (MEMORY_AUDITOR=cgroup, CONCURRENCY=0,
     CPUSET='1;1', MEMORY_LIMIT=15);
```

The ALTER RESOURCE GROUP command updates the limits of a resource group. To change the limits of a resource group, specify the new values that you want for the group. For example:

```
=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rg_role_light SET CONCURRENCY 7;
=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP exec SET MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO 25;
=# ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup1 SET CPUSET '1;2,4';
```

> **Note** You cannot set or alter the `CONCURRENCY` value for the `admin_group` to zero (0).

The DROP RESOURCE GROUP command drops a resource group. To drop a resource group for a role, the group cannot be assigned to any role, nor can there be any transactions active or waiting in the resource group. Dropping a resource group for an external component in which there are running instances terminates the running instances.

To drop a resource group:

```
=# DROP RESOURCE GROUP exec;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Configuring Automatic Query Termination Based on Memory Usage

When resource groups have a global shared memory pool, the server configuration parameter runaway_detector_activation_percent sets the percent of utilized global shared memory that triggers the termination of queries that are managed by resource groups that are configured to use the `vmtracker` memory auditor, such as `admin_group` and `default_group`.

Resource groups have a global shared memory pool when the sum of the `MEMORY_LIMIT` attribute values configured for all resource groups is less than 100. For example, if you have 3 resource groups configured with `MEMORY_LIMIT` values of 10 , 20, and 30, then global shared memory is 40% = 100% - (10% + 20% + 30%).

For information about global shared memory, see Global Shared Memory.

### Assigning a Resource Group to a Role

When you create a resource group with the default `MEMORY_AUDITOR` `vmtracker`, the group is available for assignment to one or more roles (users). You assign a resource group to a database role using the `RESOURCE GROUP` clause of the CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE commands. If you do not specify a resource group for a role, the role is assigned the default group for the role's capability. `SUPERUSER` roles are assigned the `admin_group`, non-admin roles are assigned the group named `default_group`.

Use the `ALTER ROLE` or `CREATE ROLE` commands to assign a resource group to a role. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE bill RESOURCE GROUP rg_light;
=# CREATE ROLE mary RESOURCE GROUP exec;
```

You can assign a resource group to one or more roles. If you have defined a role hierarchy, assigning a resource group to a parent role does not propagate down to the members of that role group.

> **Note** You cannot assign a resource group that you create for an external component to a role.

If you wish to remove a resource group assignment from a role and assign the role the default group, change the role's group name assignment to `NONE`. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE mary RESOURCE GROUP NONE;
```

### Monitoring Resource Group Status

Monitoring the status of your resource groups and queries may involve the following tasks:

- Viewing Resource Group Limits
- Viewing Resource Group Query Status and CPU/Memory Usage
- Viewing the Resource Group Assigned to a Role
- Viewing a Resource Group's Running and Pending Queries
- Cancelling a Running or Queued Transaction in a Resource Group

#### Viewing Resource Group Limits

The gp_resgroup_config `gp_toolkit` system view displays the current limits for a resource group. To view the limits of all resource groups:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config;
```

#### Viewing Resource Group Query Status and CPU/Memory Usage

The gp_resgroup_status `gp_toolkit` system view enables you to view the status and activity of a resource group. The view displays the number of running and queued transactions. It also displays the real-time CPU and memory usage of the resource group. To view this information:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Viewing Resource Group CPU/Memory Usage Per Host

The gp_resgroup_status_per_host `gp_toolkit` system view enables you to view the real-time CPU and memory usage of a resource group on a per-host basis. To view this information:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status_per_host;
```

#### Viewing Resource Group CPU/Memory Usage Per Segment

The gp_resgroup_status_per_segment `gp_toolkit` system view enables you to view the real-time CPU and memory usage of a resource group on a per-segment, per-host basis. To view this information:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status_per_segment;
```

#### Viewing the Resource Group Assigned to a Role

To view the resource group-to-role assignments, perform the following query on the pg_roles and pg_resgroup system catalog tables:

```
=# SELECT rolname, rsgname FROM pg_roles, pg_resgroup
     WHERE pg_roles.rolresgroup=pg_resgroup.oid;
```

#### Viewing a Resource Group's Running and Pending Queries

To view a resource group's running queries, pending queries, and how long the pending queries have been queued, examine the pg_stat_activity system catalog table:

```
=# SELECT query, waiting, rsgname, rsgqueueduration
     FROM pg_stat_activity;
```

`pg_stat_activity` displays information about the user/role that initiated a query. A query that uses an external component is composed of two parts: the query operator that runs in WarehousePG and the function that runs in the external component. WarehousePG processes the query operators under the resource group assigned to the role that initiated the query. A function running in an external component instance runs under the resource group assigned to that component. The latter is not represented in the `pg_stat_activity` view; WarehousePG does not have any insight into how external components manage memory in running instances.

#### Cancelling a Running or Queued Transaction in a Resource Group

There may be cases when you want to cancel a running or queued transaction in a resource group. For example, you may want to remove a query that is waiting in the resource group queue but has not yet been run. Or, you may want to stop a running query that is taking too long to run, or one that is sitting idle in a transaction and taking up resource group transaction slots that are needed by other users.

By default, transactions can remain queued in a resource group indefinitely. If you want WarehousePG to cancel a queued transaction after a specific amount of time, set the server configuration parameter gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout. When this parameter is set to a value (milliseconds) greater than 0, WarehousePG cancels any queued transaction when it has waited longer than the configured timeout.

To manually cancel a running or queued transaction, you must first determine the process id (pid) associated with the transaction. Once you have obtained the process id, you can invoke `pg_cancel_backend()` to end that process, as shown below.

For example, to view the process information associated with all statements currently active or waiting in all resource groups, run the following query. If the query returns no results, then there are no running or queued transactions in any resource group.

```
=# SELECT rolname, g.rsgname, pid, waiting, state, query, datname
     FROM pg_roles, gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status g, pg_stat_activity
     WHERE pg_roles.rolresgroup=g.groupid
        AND pg_stat_activity.usename=pg_roles.rolname;
```

Sample partial query output:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
 rolname | rsgname  | pid     | waiting | state  |          query           | datname
---------+----------+---------+---------+--------+------------------------ -+---------
  sammy  | rg_light |  31861  |    f    | idle   | SELECT * FROM mytesttbl; | testdb
  billy  | rg_light |  31905  |    t    | active | SELECT * FROM topten;    | testdb
```

Use this output to identify the process id (`pid`) of the transaction you want to cancel, and then cancel the process. For example, to cancel the pending query identified in the sample output above:

```
=# SELECT pg_cancel_backend(31905);
```

You can provide an optional message in a second argument to `pg_cancel_backend()` to indicate to the user why the process was cancelled.

> **Note** Do not use an operating system `KILL` command to cancel any WarehousePG process.

### Moving a Query to a Different Resource Group

A user with WarehousePG superuser privileges can run the `gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_move_query()` function to move a running query from one resource group to another, without stopping the query. Use this function to expedite a long-running query by moving it to a resource group with a higher resource allotment or availability.

> **Note** You can move only an active or running query to a new resource group. You cannot move a queued or pending query that is in an idle state due to concurrency or memory limits.

`pg_resgroup_move_query()` requires the process id (pid) of the running query, as well as the name of the resource group to which you want to move the query. The signature of the function follows:

```
pg_resgroup_move_query( pid int4, group_name text );
```

You can obtain the pid of a running query from the `pg_stat_activity` system view as described in Cancelling a Running or Queued Transaction in a Resource Group. Use the `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status` view to list the name, id, and status of each resource group.

When you invoke `pg_resgroup_move_query()`, the query is subject to the limits configured for the destination resource group:

- If the group has already reached its concurrent task limit, WarehousePG queues the query until a slot opens or for `gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout` milliseconds if set.
- If the group has a free slot, `pg_resgroup_move_query()` tries to give slot control away to the target process for up to `gp_resource_group_move_timeout` milliseconds. If target process can't handle movement request until `gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout` exceeds, WarehousePG returns the error: `target process failed to move to a new group`.
- If `pg_resgroup_move_query()` was cancelled, but target process already got all slot control, then segment's processes will not be moved to new group. Such inconsistent state will be fixed by the end of transaction or by the any next command dispatched by target process inside same transaction.
- If the destination resource group does not have enough memory available to service the query's current memory requirements, WarehousePG returns the error: `group <group_name> doesn't have enough memory ...`. In this situation, you may choose to increase the group shared memory allotted to the destination resource group, or perhaps wait a period of time for running queries to complete and then invoke the function again.

After WarehousePG moves the query, there is no way to guarantee that a query currently running in the destination resource group does not exceed the group memory quota. In this situation, one or more running queries in the destination group may fail, including the moved query. Reserve enough resource group global shared memory to minimize the potential for this scenario to occur.

`pg_resgroup_move_query()` moves only the specified query to the destination resource group. WarehousePG assigns subsequent queries that you submit in the session to the original resource group.

Successful return of `pg_resgroup_move_query()` doesn't mean target process was successfully moved. Process movement is asynchronous. The current resource group can be checked via `pg_stat_activity` system view.

**Note:** WarehousePG version 6.8 introduced support for moving a query to a different resource group.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- If you upgraded from a previous WarehousePG 6.x installation, you must manually register the supporting functions for this feature, and grant access to the functions as follows:

```
CREATE FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_check_move_query(IN session_id int, IN groupid oid, OUT session_mem int, OUT
available_mem int)
RETURNS SETOF record
AS 'gp_resource_group', 'pg_resgroup_check_move_query'
VOLATILE LANGUAGE C;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_check_move_query(int, oid, OUT int, OUT int) TO public;

CREATE FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_move_query(session_id int4, groupid text)
RETURNS bool
AS 'gp_resource_group', 'pg_resgroup_move_query'
VOLATILE LANGUAGE C;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_move_query(int4, text) TO public;
```

- If you register the supporting functions and then you downgrade your WarehousePG installation to version 6.7.x or older, manually drop these functions as follows:

```
DROP FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_check_move_query(IN int, IN oid, OUT int, OUT int);
DROP FUNCTION gp_toolkit.pg_resgroup_move_query(int4, text);
```

### Resource Group Frequently Asked Questions

#### CPU

- **Why is CPU usage lower than the `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` configured for the resource group?**

  You may run into this situation when a low number of queries and slices are running in the resource group, and these processes are not utilizing all of the cores on the system.

- **Why is CPU usage for the resource group higher than the configured `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`?**

  This situation can occur in the following circumstances:

  - A resource group may utilize more CPU than its `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` when other resource groups are idle. In this situation, WarehousePG allocates the CPU resource of an idle resource group to a busier one. This resource group feature is called CPU burst.
  - The operating system CPU scheduler may cause CPU usage to spike, then drop down. If you believe this might be occurring, calculate the average CPU usage within a given period of time (for example, 5 seconds) and use that average to determine if CPU usage is higher than the configured limit.

#### Memory

- **Why did my query return an "out of memory" error?**

  A transaction submitted in a resource group fails and exits when memory usage exceeds its fixed memory allotment, no available resource group shared memory exists, and the transaction requests more memory.

- **Why did my query return a "memory limit reached" error?**

  WarehousePG automatically adjusts transaction and group memory to the new settings when you use `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` to change a resource group's memory and/or concurrency limits. An "out of memory" error may occur if you recently altered resource group attributes and there is no longer a sufficient amount of memory available for a currently running query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Why does the actual memory usage of my resource group exceed the amount configured for the group?**

  The actual memory usage of a resource group may exceed the configured amount when one or more queries running in the group is allocated memory from the global shared memory pool. (If no global shared memory is available, queries fail and do not impact the memory resources of other resource groups.)

  When global shared memory is available, memory usage may also exceed the configured amount when a transaction spills to disk. WarehousePG statements continue to request memory when they start to spill to disk because:

  - Spilling to disk requires extra memory to work.
  - Other operators may continue to request memory.
    Memory usage grows in spill situations; when global shared memory is available, the resource group may eventually use up to 200-300% of its configured group memory limit.

Concurrency

- **Why is the number of running transactions lower than the `CONCURRENCY` limit configured for the resource group?**

  WarehousePG considers memory availability before running a transaction, and will queue the transaction if there is not enough memory available to serve it. If you use `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` to increase the `CONCURRENCY` limit for a resource group but do not also adjust memory limits, currently running transactions may be consuming all allotted memory resources for the group. When in this state, WarehousePG queues subsequent transactions in the resource group.

- **Why is the number of running transactions in the resource group higher than the configured `CONCURRENCY` limit?**

  The resource group may be running `SET` and `SHOW` commands, which bypass resource group transaction checks.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

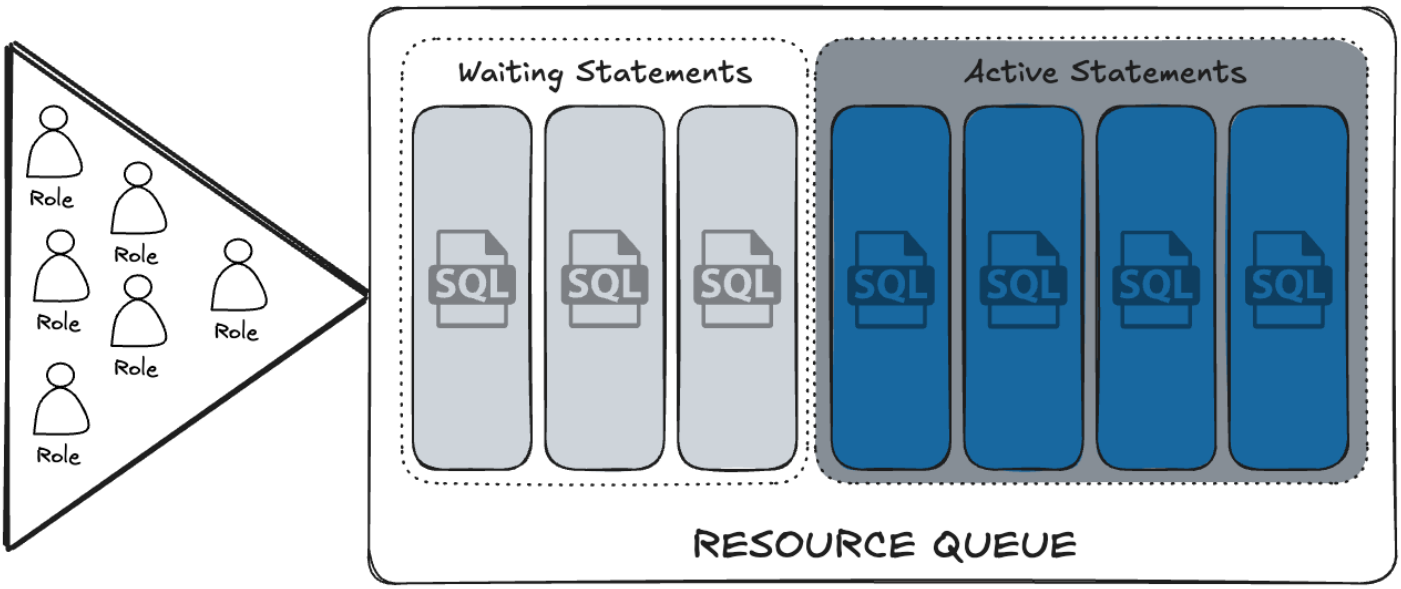
### 4.10.5.2 Using Resource Queues

Use WarehousePG resource queues to prioritize and allocate resources to queries according to business requirements and to prevent queries from starting when resources are unavailable.

Resource queues are one tool to manage the degree of concurrency in a WarehousePG cluster. Resource queues are database objects that you create with the `CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` SQL statement. You can use them to manage the number of active queries that may run concurrently, the amount of memory each type of query is allocated, and the relative priority of queries. Resource queues can also guard against queries that would consume too many resources and degrade overall system performance.

Each database role is associated with a single resource queue; multiple roles can share the same resource queue. Roles are assigned to resource queues using the `RESOURCE QUEUE` phrase of the `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` statements. If a resource queue is not specified, the role is associated with the default resource queue, `pg_default`.

When the user submits a query for execution, the query is evaluated against the resource queue's limits. If the query does not cause the queue to exceed its resource limits, then that query will run immediately. If the query causes the queue to exceed its limits (for example, if the maximum number of active statement slots are currently in use), then the query must wait until queue resources are free before it can run. Queries are evaluated on a first in, first out basis. If query prioritization is enabled, the active workload on the system is periodically assessed and processing resources are reallocated according to query priority (see How Priorities Work). Roles with the `SUPERUSER` attribute are exempt from resource queue limits. Superuser queries always run immediately regardless of limits imposed by their assigned resource queue.




Resource queues define classes of queries with similar resource requirements. Administrators should create resource queues for the various types of workloads in their organization. For example, you could create resource queues for the following classes of queries, corresponding to different service level agreements:

- ETL queries
- Reporting queries
- Executive queries

A resource queue has the following characteristics:

- `MEMORY_LIMIT`

  The amount of memory used by all the queries in the queue (per segment). For example, setting MEMORY_LIMIT to 2GB on the ETL queue allows ETL queries to use up to 2GB of memory in each segment.

- `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS`

  The number of *slots* for a queue; the maximum concurrency level for a queue. When all slots are used, new queries must wait. Each query uses an equal amount of memory by default.

For example, the `pg_default` resource queue has ACTIVE_STATEMENTS = 20.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `PRIORITY`

  The relative CPU usage for queries. This may be one of the following levels: `LOW`, `MEDIUM`, `HIGH`, `MAX`. The default level is `MEDIUM`. The query prioritization mechanism monitors the CPU usage of all the queries running in the system, and adjusts the CPU usage for each to conform to its priority level. For example, you could set `MAX` priority to the `executive` resource queue and `MEDIUM` to other queues to ensure that executive queries receive a greater share of CPU.

- `MAX_COST`

  Query plan cost limit.

The WarehousePG optimizer assigns a numeric cost to each query. If the cost exceeds the `MAX_COST` value set for the resource queue, the query is rejected as too expensive.

> **Note** GPORCA and the Postgres Planner utilize different query costing models and may compute different costs for the same query. The WarehousePG resource queue resource management scheme neither differentiates nor aligns costs between GPORCA and the Postgres Planner; it uses the literal cost value returned from the optimizer to throttle queries.

When resource queue-based resource management is active, use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` limits for resource queues rather than configuring cost-based limits. Even when using GPORCA, WarehousePG may fall back to using the Postgres Planner for certain queries, so using cost-based limits can lead to unexpected results.

The default configuration for a WarehousePG cluster has a single default resource queue named `pg_default`. The `pg_default` resource queue has an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` setting of 20, no `MEMORY_LIMIT`, medium `PRIORITY`, and no set `MAX_COST`. This means that all queries are accepted and run immediately, at the same priority and with no memory limitations; however, only twenty queries may run concurrently.

The number of concurrent queries a resource queue allows depends on whether the `MEMORY_LIMIT` parameter is set:

- If no `MEMORY_LIMIT` is set for a resource queue, the amount of memory allocated per query is the value of the statement_mem server configuration parameter. The maximum memory the resource queue can use is the product of `statement_mem` and `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS`.
- When a `MEMORY_LIMIT` is set on a resource queue, the number of queries that the queue can run concurrently is limited by the queue's available memory.

A query admitted to the system is allocated an amount of memory and a query plan tree is generated for it. Each node of the tree is an operator, such as a sort or hash join. Each operator is a separate execution thread and is allocated a fraction of the overall statement memory, at minimum 100KB. If the plan has a large number of operators, the minimum memory required for operators can exceed the available memory and the query will be rejected with an insufficient memory error. Operators determine if they can complete their tasks in the memory allocated, or if they must spill data to disk, in work files. The mechanism that allocates and controls the amount of memory used by each operator is called *memory quota*.

Not all SQL statements submitted through a resource queue are evaluated against the queue limits. By default only `SELECT`, `SELECT INTO`, `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, and `DECLARE CURSOR` statements are evaluated. If the server configuration parameter `resource_select_only` is set to *off*, then `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` statements will be evaluated as well.

Also, an SQL statement that is run during the execution of an `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command is excluded from resource queues.

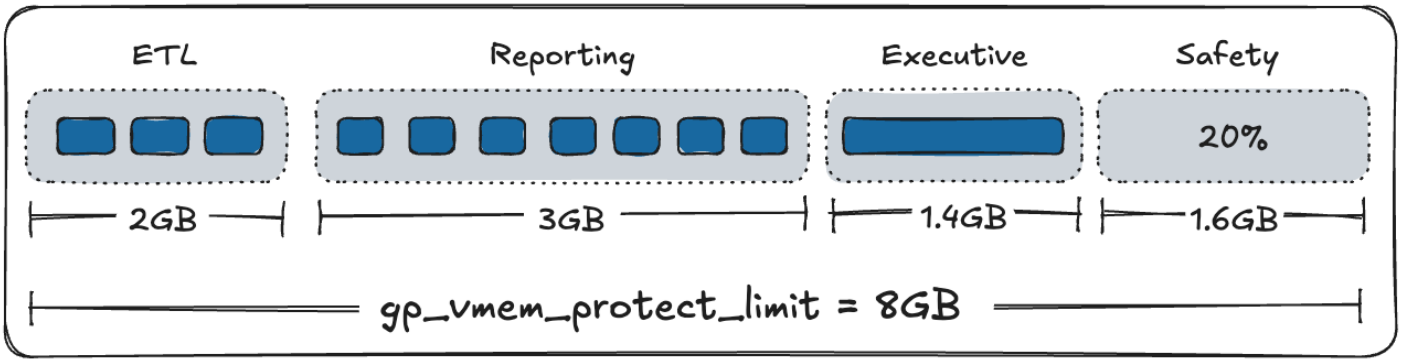
**Parent topic:** Managing Resources

### Resource Queue Example

The default resource queue, `pg_default`, allows a maximum of 20 active queries and allocates the same amount of memory to each. This is generally not adequate resource control for production systems. To ensure that the system meets performance expectations, you can define classes of queries and assign them to resource queues configured to run them with the concurrency, memory, and CPU resources best suited for that class of query.

The following illustration shows an example resource queue configuration for a WarehousePG cluster with `gp_vmem_protect_limit` set to 8GB:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




This example has three classes of queries with different characteristics and service level agreements (SLAs). Three resource queues are configured for them. A portion of the segment memory is reserved as a safety margin.

| Resource Queue Name | Active Statements | Memory Limit | Memory per Query |
|---|---|---|---|
| ETL | 3 | 2GB | 667MB |
| Reporting | 7 | 3GB | 429MB |
| Executive | 1 | 1.4GB | 1.4GB |

The total memory allocated to the queues is 6.4GB, or 80% of the total segment memory defined by the `gp_vmem_protect_limit` server configuration parameter. Allowing a safety margin of 20% accommodates some operators and queries that are known to use more memory than they are allocated by the resource queue.

See the `CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` and `CREATE/ALTER ROLE` statements in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for help with command syntax and detailed reference information.

### How Memory Limits Work

Setting `MEMORY_LIMIT` on a resource queue sets the maximum amount of memory that all active queries submitted through the queue can consume for a segment instance. The amount of memory allotted to a query is the queue memory limit divided by the active statement limit. (Use the memory limits in conjunction with statement-based queues rather than cost-based queues.) For example, if a queue has a memory limit of 2000MB and an active statement limit of 10, each query submitted through the queue is allotted 200MB of memory by default. The default memory allotment can be overridden on a per-query basis using the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter (up to the queue memory limit). Once a query has started running, it holds its allotted memory in the queue until it completes, even if during execution it actually consumes less than its allotted amount of memory.

You can use the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter to override memory limits set by the current resource queue. At the session level, you can increase `statement_mem` up to the resource queue's `MEMORY_LIMIT`. This will allow an individual query to use all of the memory allocated for the entire queue without affecting other resource queues.

The value of `statement_mem` is capped using the `max_statement_mem` configuration parameter (a superuser parameter). For a query in a resource queue with `MEMORY_LIMIT` set, the maximum value for `statement_mem` is `min(MEMORY_LIMIT, max_statement_mem)`. When a query is admitted, the memory allocated to it is subtracted from `MEMORY_LIMIT`. If `MEMORY_LIMIT` is exhausted, new queries in the same resource queue must wait. This happens even if `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` has not yet been reached. Note that this can happen only when `statement_mem` is used to override the memory allocated by the resource queue.

For example, consider a resource queue named `adhoc` with the following settings:

- `MEMORY_LIMIT` is 1.5GB
- `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` is 3

By default each statement submitted to the queue is allocated 500MB of memory. Now consider the following series of events:

1. User `ADHOC_1` submits query `Q1`, overriding `STATEMENT_MEM` to 800MB. The `Q1` statement is admitted into the system.
2. User `ADHOC_2` submits query `Q2`, using the default 500MB.
3. With `Q1` and `Q2` still running, user `ADHOC3` submits query `Q3`, using the default 500MB.

Queries `Q1` and `Q2` have used 1300MB of the queue's 1500MB. Therefore, `Q3` must wait for `Q1` or `Q2` to complete before it can run.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If `MEMORY_LIMIT` is not set on a queue, queries are admitted until all of the `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` slots are in use, and each query can set an arbitrarily high `statement_mem`. This could lead to a resource queue using unbounded amounts of memory.

For more information on configuring memory limits on a resource queue, and other memory utilization controls, see Creating Queues with Memory Limits.

#### statement_mem and Low Memory Queries

A low `statement_mem` setting (for example, in the 1-3MB range) has been shown to increase the performance of queries with low memory requirements. Use the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter to override the setting on a per-query basis. For example:

```
SET statement_mem='2MB';
```

### How Priorities Work

The `PRIORITY` setting for a resource queue differs from the `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` settings, which determine whether a query will be admitted to the queue and eventually run. The `PRIORITY` setting applies to queries after they become active. Active queries share available CPU resources as determined by the priority settings for its resource queue. When a statement from a high-priority queue enters the group of actively running statements, it may claim a greater share of the available CPU, reducing the share allocated to already-running statements in queues with a lesser priority setting.

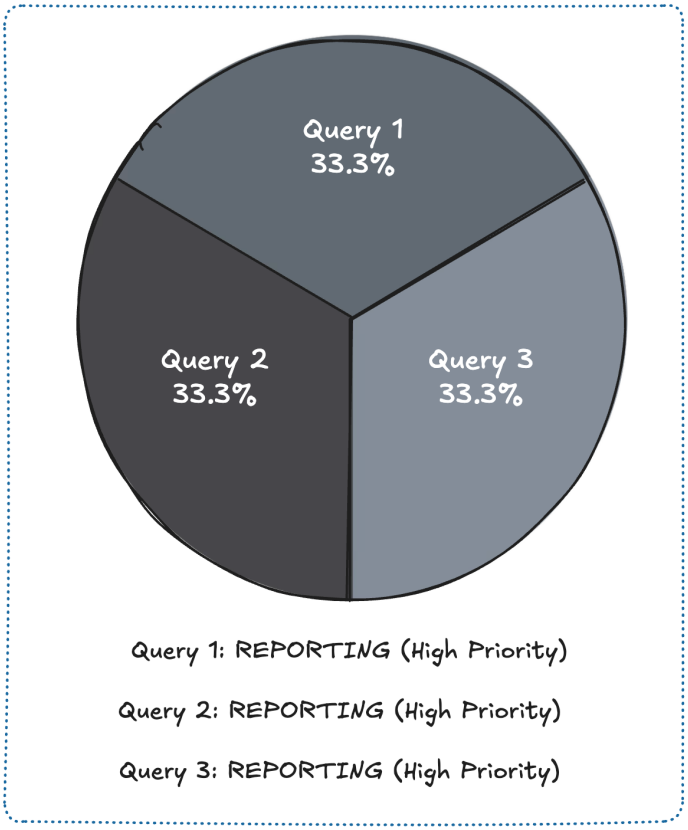
The comparative size or complexity of the queries does not affect the allotment of CPU. If a simple, low-cost query is running simultaneously with a large, complex query, and their priority settings are the same, they will be allocated the same share of available CPU resources. When a new query becomes active, the CPU shares will be recalculated, but queries of equal priority will still have equal amounts of CPU.

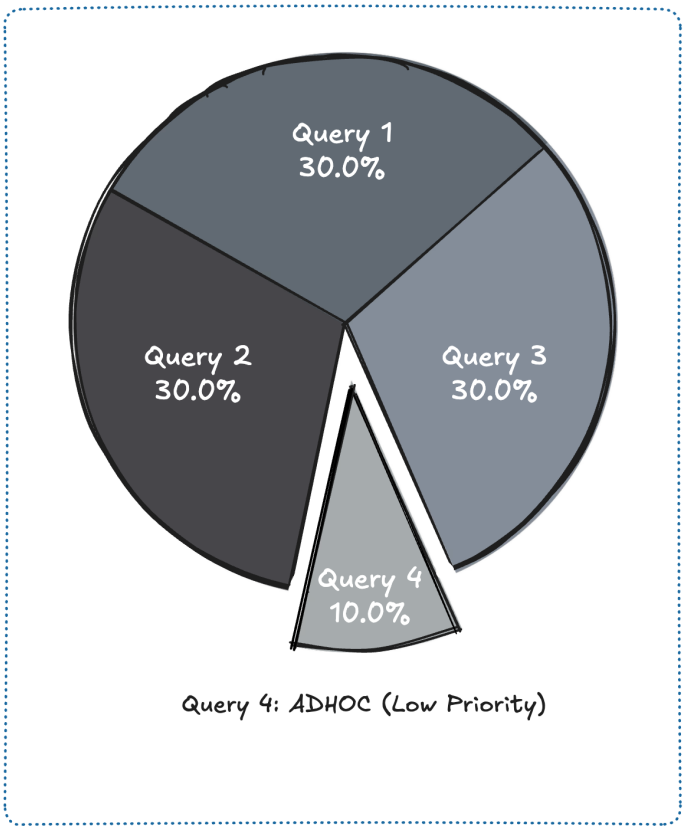
For example, an administrator creates three resource queues: *adhoc* for ongoing queries submitted by business analysts, *reporting* for scheduled reporting jobs, and *executive* for queries submitted by executive user roles. The administrator wants to ensure that scheduled reporting jobs are not heavily affected by unpredictable resource demands from ad-hoc analyst queries. Also, the administrator wants to make sure that queries submitted by executive roles are allotted a significant share of CPU. Accordingly, the resource queue priorities are set as shown:

- *adhoc* — Low priority
- *reporting* — High priority
- *executive* — Maximum priority

At runtime, the CPU share of active statements is determined by these priority settings. If queries 1 and 2 from the reporting queue are running simultaneously, they have equal shares of CPU. When an ad-hoc query becomes active, it claims a smaller share of CPU. The exact share used by the reporting queries is adjusted, but remains equal due to their equal priority setting:

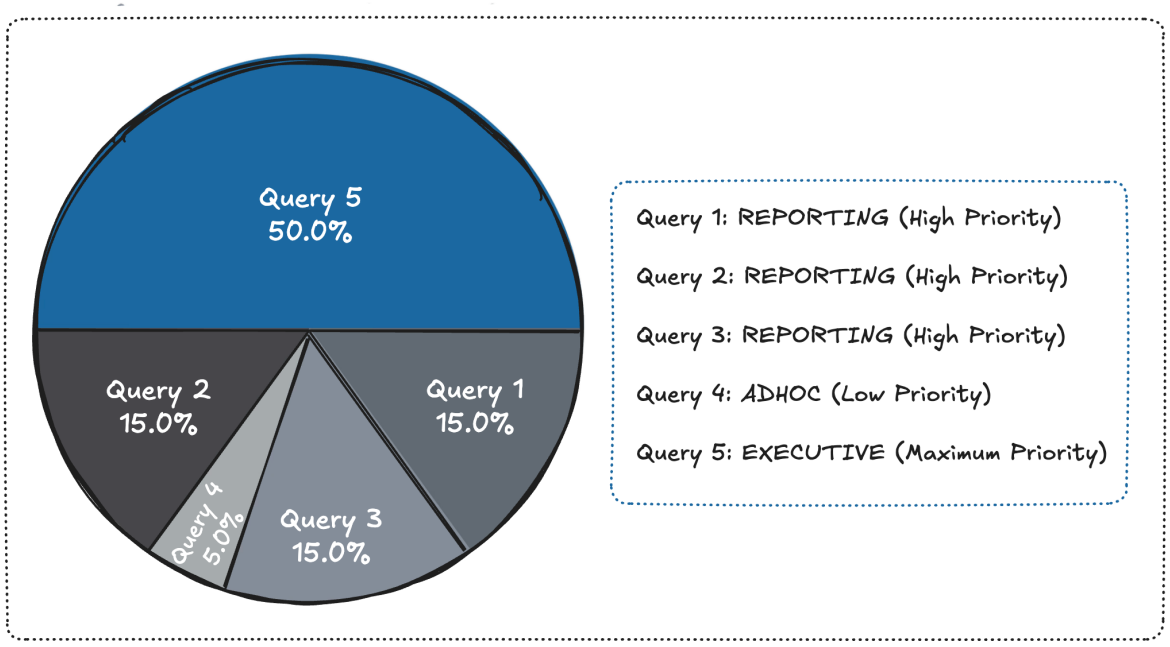
Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




**Note** The percentages shown in these illustrations are approximate. CPU usage between high, low and maximum priority queues is not always calculated in precisely these proportions.

When an executive query enters the group of running statements, CPU usage is adjusted to account for its maximum priority setting. It may be a simple query compared to the analyst and reporting queries, but until it is completed, it will claim the largest share of CPU.




For more information about commands to set priorities, see Setting Priority Levels.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Steps to Enable Resource Management

Enabling and using resource management in WarehousePG involves the following high-level tasks:

1. Configure resource management. See Configuring Resource Management.
2. Create the resource queues and set limits on them. See Creating Resource Queues and Modifying Resource Queues.
3. Assign a queue to one or more user roles. See Assigning Roles (Users) to a Resource Queue.
4. Use the resource management system views to monitor and manage the resource queues. SeeChecking Resource Queue Status.

### Configuring Resource Management

Resource scheduling is enabled by default when you install WarehousePG, and is required for all roles. The default resource queue, `pg_default`, has an active statement limit of 20, no memory limit, and a medium priority setting. Create resource queues for the various types of workloads.

#### To configure resource management

1. The following parameters are for the general configuration of resource queues:

    - `max_resource_queues` - Sets the maximum number of resource queues.
    - `max_resource_portals_per_transaction` - Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open cursors allowed per transaction. Note that an open cursor will hold an active query slot in a resource queue.
    - `resource_select_only` - If set to *on*, then `SELECT`, `SELECT INTO`, `CREATE TABLE AS``SELECT`, and `DECLARE CURSOR` commands are evaluated. If set to *off* `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands will be evaluated as well.
    - `resource_cleanup_gangs_on_wait` - Cleans up idle segment worker processes before taking a slot in the resource queue.
    - `stats_queue_level` - Enables statistics collection on resource queue usage, which can then be viewed by querying the pg_stat_resqueues system view.

2. The following parameters are related to memory utilization:

    - `gp_resqueue_memory_policy` - Enables WarehousePG memory management features.

      In WarehousePG 6 and later, the distribution algorithm `eager_free` takes advantage of the fact that not all operators run at the same time. The query plan is divided into stages and WarehousePG eagerly frees memory allocated to a previous stage at the end of that stage's execution, then allocates the eagerly freed memory to the new stage.

      When set to `none`, the eager_free algorithm is not used. When set to `auto`, query memory usage is controlled by `statement_mem` and resource queue memory limits.

    - `statement_mem` and `max_statement_mem` - Used to allocate memory to a particular query at runtime (override the default allocation assigned by the resource queue). `max_statement_mem` is set by database superusers to prevent regular database users from over-allocation.

    - `gp_vmem_protect_limit` - Sets the upper boundary that all query processes can consume and should not exceed the amount of physical memory of a segment host. When a segment host reaches this limit during query execution, the queries that cause the limit to be exceeded will be cancelled.

    - `gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout` and `gp_vmem_protect_segworker_cache_limit` - used to free memory on segment hosts held by idle database processes. Administrators may want to adjust these settings on systems with lots of concurrency.

    - `shared_buffers` - Sets the amount of memory a WarehousePG server instance uses for shared memory buffers. This setting must be at least 128 kilobytes and at least 16 kilobytes times `max_connections`. The value must not exceed the operating system shared memory maximum allocation request size, `shmmax` on Linux. See the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for recommended OS memory settings for your platform.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. The following parameters are related to query prioritization. Note that the following parameters are all *local* parameters, meaning they must be set in the `postgresql.conf` files of the coordinator and all segments:

    - `gp_resqueue_priority` - The query prioritization feature is enabled by default.

    - `gp_resqueue_priority_sweeper_interval` - Sets the interval at which CPU usage is recalculated for all active statements. The default value for this parameter should be sufficient for typical database operations.

    - `gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment` - Specifies the number of CPU cores allocated per segment instance on a segment host. If the segment is configured with primary-mirror segment instance pairs, use the number of primary segment instances on the host in the calculation. The default value is 4 for the coordinator and segment hosts.

      Each WarehousePG host checks its own `postgresql.conf` file for the value of this parameter. This parameter also affects the coordinator host, where it should be set to a value reflecting the higher ratio of CPU cores. For example, on a cluster that has 10 CPU cores per segment host and 4 primary segments per host, you would specify the following values for `gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment`:

        - 10 on the coordinator and standby coordinator hosts. Typically, only a single coordinator segment instance runs on the coordinator host.
        - 2.5 on each segment host (10 cores divided by 4 primary segments).
          If the parameter value is not set correctly, either the CPU might not be fully utilized, or query prioritization might not work as expected. For example, if the WarehousePG cluster has fewer than one segment instance per CPU core on your segment hosts, make sure that you adjust this value accordingly.

      Actual CPU core utilization is based on the ability of WarehousePG to parallelize a query and the resources required to run the query.

      > **Note** Include any CPU core that is available to the operating system in the number of CPU cores, including virtual CPU cores.

4. If you wish to view or change any of the resource management parameter values, you can use the `gpconfig` utility.

5. For example, to see the setting of a particular parameter:

    ```
    $ gpconfig --show gp_vmem_protect_limit
    ```

6. For example, to set one value on all segment instances and a different value on the coordinator:

    ```
    $ gpconfig -c gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment -v 2 -m 8
    ```

7. Restart WarehousePG to make the configuration changes effective:

    ```
    $ gpstop -r
    ```

### Creating Resource Queues

Creating a resource queue involves giving it a name, setting an active query limit, and optionally a query priority on the resource queue. Use the `CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` command to create new resource queues.

#### Creating Queues with an Active Query Limit

Resource queues with an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` setting limit the number of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. For example, to create a resource queue named *adhoc* with an active query limit of three:

```
=# CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE adhoc WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=3);
```

This means that for all roles assigned to the *adhoc* resource queue, only three active queries can be running on the system at any given time. If this queue has three queries running, and a fourth query is submitted by a role in that queue, that query must wait until a slot is free before it can run.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Creating Queues with Memory Limits

Resource queues with a `MEMORY_LIMIT` setting control the amount of memory for all the queries submitted through the queue. The total memory should not exceed the physical memory available per-segment. Set `MEMORY_LIMIT` to 90% of memory available on a per-segment basis. For example, if a host has 48 GB of physical memory and 6 segment instances, then the memory available per segment instance is 8 GB. You can calculate the recommended `MEMORY_LIMIT` for a single queue as 0.90*8=7.2 GB. If there are multiple queues created on the system, their total memory limits must also add up to 7.2 GB.

When used in conjunction with `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS`, the default amount of memory allotted per query is: `MEMORY_LIMIT``/``ACTIVE_STATEMENTS`. When used in conjunction with `MAX_COST`, the default amount of memory allotted per query is: `MEMORY_LIMIT * (query_cost / MAX_COST)`. Use `MEMORY_LIMIT` in conjunction with `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` rather than with `MAX_COST`.

For example, to create a resource queue with an active query limit of 10 and a total memory limit of 2000MB (each query will be allocated 200MB of segment host memory at execution time):

```
=# CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=20,
MEMORY_LIMIT='2000MB');
```

The default memory allotment can be overridden on a per-query basis using the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter, provided that `MEMORY_LIMIT` or `max_statement_mem` is not exceeded. For example, to allocate more memory to a particular query:

```
=> SET statement_mem='2GB';
=> SELECT * FROM my_big_table WHERE column='value' ORDER BY id;
=> RESET statement_mem;
```

As a general guideline, `MEMORY_LIMIT` for all of your resource queues should not exceed the amount of physical memory of a segment host. If workloads are staggered over multiple queues, it may be OK to oversubscribe memory allocations, keeping in mind that queries may be cancelled during execution if the segment host memory limit (`gp_vmem_protect_limit`) is exceeded.

#### Setting Priority Levels

To control a resource queue's consumption of available CPU resources, an administrator can assign an appropriate priority level. When high concurrency causes contention for CPU resources, queries and statements associated with a high-priority resource queue will claim a larger share of available CPU than lower priority queries and statements.

Priority settings are created or altered using the `WITH` parameter of the commands `CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` and `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE`. For example, to specify priority settings for the *adhoc* and *reporting* queues, an administrator would use the following commands:

```
=# ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE adhoc WITH (PRIORITY=LOW);
=# ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE reporting WITH (PRIORITY=HIGH);
```

To create the *executive* queue with maximum priority, an administrator would use the following command:

```
=# CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE executive WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=3, PRIORITY=MAX);
```

When the query prioritization feature is enabled, resource queues are given a `MEDIUM` priority by default if not explicitly assigned. For more information on how priority settings are evaluated at runtime, see How Priorities Work.

> **Important** In order for resource queue priority levels to be enforced on the active query workload, you must enable the query prioritization feature by setting the associated server configuration parameters. See Configuring Resource Management.

### Assigning Roles (Users) to a Resource Queue

Once a resource queue is created, you must assign roles (users) to their appropriate resource queue. If roles are not explicitly assigned to a resource queue, they will go to the default resource queue, `pg_default`. The default resource queue has an active statement limit of 20, no cost limit, and a medium priority setting.

Use the `ALTER ROLE` or `CREATE ROLE` commands to assign a role to a resource queue. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE `name` RESOURCE QUEUE `queue_name`;
=# CREATE ROLE `name` WITH LOGIN RESOURCE QUEUE `queue_name`;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

A role can only be assigned to one resource queue at any given time, so you can use the `ALTER ROLE` command to initially assign or change a role's resource queue.

Resource queues must be assigned on a user-by-user basis. If you have a role hierarchy (for example, a group-level role) then assigning a resource queue to the group does not propagate down to the users in that group.

Superusers are always exempt from resource queue limits. Superuser queries will always run regardless of the limits set on their assigned queue.

#### Removing a Role from a Resource Queue

All users *must* be assigned to a resource queue. If not explicitly assigned to a particular queue, users will go into the default resource queue, `pg_default`. If you wish to remove a role from a resource queue and put them in the default queue, change the role's queue assignment to `none`. For example:

```
=# ALTER ROLE `role_name` RESOURCE QUEUE none;
```

### Modifying Resource Queues

After a resource queue has been created, you can change or reset the queue limits using the `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` command. You can remove a resource queue using the `DROP RESOURCE QUEUE` command. To change the roles (users) assigned to a resource queue,Assigning Roles (Users) to a Resource Queue.

#### Altering a Resource Queue

The `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` command changes the limits of a resource queue. To change the limits of a resource queue, specify the new values you want for the queue. For example:

```
=# ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <adhoc> WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=5);
=# ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <exec> WITH (PRIORITY=MAX);
```

To reset active statements or memory limit to no limit, enter a value of `-1`. To reset the maximum query cost to no limit, enter a value of `-1.0`. For example:

```
=# ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <adhoc> WITH (MAX_COST=-1.0, MEMORY_LIMIT='2GB');
```

You can use the `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` command to change the priority of queries associated with a resource queue. For example, to set a queue to the minimum priority level:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <webuser> WITH (PRIORITY=MIN);
```

#### Dropping a Resource Queue

The `DROP RESOURCE QUEUE` command drops a resource queue. To drop a resource queue, the queue cannot have any roles assigned to it, nor can it have any statements waiting in the queue. See Removing a Role from a Resource Queue and Clearing a Waiting Statement From a Resource Queue for instructions on emptying a resource queue. To drop a resource queue:

```
=# DROP RESOURCE QUEUE <name>;
```

### Checking Resource Queue Status

Checking resource queue status involves the following tasks:

- Viewing Queued Statements and Resource Queue Status
- Viewing Resource Queue Statistics
- Viewing the Roles Assigned to a Resource Queue
- Viewing the Waiting Queries for a Resource Queue
- Clearing a Waiting Statement From a Resource Queue
- Viewing the Priority of Active Statements
- Resetting the Priority of an Active Statement

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Viewing Queued Statements and Resource Queue Status

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status` view allows administrators to see status and activity for a resource queue. It shows how many queries are waiting to run and how many queries are currently active in the system from a particular resource queue. To see the resource queues created in the system, their limit attributes, and their current status:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status;
```

#### Viewing Resource Queue Statistics

If you want to track statistics and performance of resource queues over time, you can enable statistics collecting for resource queues. This is done by setting the following server configuration parameter in your coordinator `postgresql.conf` file:

```
stats_queue_level = on
```

Once this is enabled, you can use the `pg_stat_resqueues` system view to see the statistics collected on resource queue usage. Note that enabling this feature does incur slight performance overhead, as each query submitted through a resource queue must be tracked. It may be useful to enable statistics collecting on resource queues for initial diagnostics and administrative planning, and then deactivate the feature for continued use.

See the Statistics Collector section in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about collecting statistics in WarehousePG.

#### Viewing the Roles Assigned to a Resource Queue

To see the roles assigned to a resource queue, perform the following query of the `pg_roles` and `gp_toolkit.``gp_resqueue_status` system catalog tables:

```
=# SELECT rolname, rsqname FROM pg_roles,
         gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status
   WHERE pg_roles.rolresqueue=gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status.queueid;
```

You may want to create a view of this query to simplify future inquiries. For example:

```
=# CREATE VIEW role2queue AS
   SELECT rolname, rsqname FROM pg_roles, pg_resqueue
   WHERE pg_roles.rolresqueue=gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status.queueid;
```

Then you can just query the view:

```
=# SELECT * FROM role2queue;
```

#### Viewing the Waiting Queries for a Resource Queue

When a slot is in use for a resource queue, it is recorded in the `pg_locks` system catalog table. This is where you can see all of the currently active and waiting queries for all resource queues. To check that statements are being queued (even statements that are not waiting), you can also use the `gp_toolkit`.gp_locks_on_resqueue view. For example:

```
=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_locks_on_resqueue WHERE lorwaiting='true';
```

If this query returns no results, then that means there are currently no statements waiting in a resource queue.

#### Clearing a Waiting Statement From a Resource Queue

In some cases, you may want to clear a waiting statement from a resource queue. For example, you may want to remove a query that is waiting in the queue but has not been run yet. You may also want to stop a query that has been started if it is taking too long to run, or if it is sitting idle in a transaction and taking up resource queue slots that are needed by other users. To do this, you must first identify the statement you want to clear, determine its process id (pid), and then, use `pg_cancel_backend` with the process id to end that process, as shown below. An optional message to the process can be passed as the second parameter, to indicate to the user why the process was cancelled.

For example, to see process information about all statements currently active or waiting in all resource queues, run the following query:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
=# SELECT rolname, rsqname, pg_locks.pid as pid, granted, state,
          query, datname
   FROM pg_roles, gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status, pg_locks,
        pg_stat_activity
   WHERE pg_roles.rolresqueue=pg_locks.objid
   AND pg_locks.objid=gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status.queueid
   AND pg_stat_activity.pid=pg_locks.pid
   AND pg_stat_activity.usename=pg_roles.rolname;
```

If this query returns no results, then that means there are currently no statements in a resource queue. A sample of a resource queue with two statements in it looks something like this:

```
rolname | rsqname |  pid  | granted | state  |         query          | datname
--------+---------+-------+---------+--------+------------------------+---------
  sammy | webuser | 31861 | t       | idle   | SELECT * FROM testtbl; | namesdb
  daria | webuser | 31905 | f       | active | SELECT * FROM topten;  | namesdb
```

Use this output to identify the process id (pid) of the statement you want to clear from the resource queue. To clear the statement, you would then open a terminal window (as the `gpadmin` database superuser or as root) on the coordinator host and cancel the corresponding process. For example:

```
=# pg_cancel_backend(31905)
```

> **Important** Do not use the operating system `KILL` command.

#### Viewing the Priority of Active Statements

The *gp_toolkit* administrative schema has a view called *gp_resq_priority_statement*, which lists all statements currently being run and provides the priority, session ID, and other information.

This view is only available through the `gp_toolkit` administrative schema. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information.

#### Resetting the Priority of an Active Statement

Superusers can adjust the priority of a statement currently being run using the built-in function `gp_adjust_priority(session_id, statement_count, priority)`. Using this function, superusers can raise or lower the priority of any query. For example:

```
=# SELECT gp_adjust_priority(752, 24905, 'HIGH')
```

To obtain the session ID and statement count parameters required by this function, superusers can use the `gp_toolkit` administrative schema view, *gp_resq_priority_statement*. From the view, use these values for the function parameters.

- The value of the `rqpsession` column for the `session_id` parameter
- The value of the `rqpcommand` column for the `statement_count` parameter
- The value of `rqppriority` column is the current priority. You can specify a string value of `MAX`, `HIGH`, `MEDIUM`, or `LOW` as the `priority`.

> **Note** The `gp_adjust_priority()` function affects only the specified statement. Subsequent statements in the same resource queue are run using the queue's normally assigned priority.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.10.6 Investigating a Performance Problem

This section provides guidelines for identifying and troubleshooting performance problems in a WarehousePG cluster.

This topic lists steps you can take to help identify the cause of a performance problem. If the problem affects a particular workload or query, you can focus on tuning that particular workload. If the performance problem is system-wide, then hardware problems, system failures, or resource contention may be the cause.

**Parent topic:** Managing Performance

### Checking System State

Use the `gpstate` utility to identify failed segments. A WarehousePG cluster will incur performance degradation when segment instances are down because other hosts must pick up the processing responsibilities of the down segments.

Failed segments can indicate a hardware failure, such as a failed disk drive or network card. WarehousePG provides the hardware verification tool `gpcheckperf` to help identify the segment hosts with hardware issues.

### Checking Database Activity

- Checking for Active Sessions (Workload)
- Checking for Locks (Contention)
- Checking Query Status and System Utilization

#### Checking for Active Sessions (Workload)

The *pg_stat_activity* system catalog view shows one row per server process; it shows the database OID, database name, process ID, user OID, user name, current query, time at which the current query began execution, time at which the process was started, client address, and port number. To obtain the most information about the current system workload, query this view as the database superuser. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_stat_activity;
```

Note that the information does not update instantaneously.

#### Checking for Locks (Contention)

The *pg_locks* system catalog view allows you to see information about outstanding locks. If a transaction is holding a lock on an object, any other queries must wait for that lock to be released before they can continue. This may appear to the user as if a query is hanging.

Examine *pg_locks* for ungranted locks to help identify contention between database client sessions. *pg_locks* provides a global view of all locks in the database system, not only those relevant to the current database. You can join its relation column against `pg_class.oid` to identify locked relations (such as tables), but this works correctly only for relations in the current database. You can join the `pid` column to the `pg_stat_activity.pid` to see more information about the session holding or waiting to hold a lock. For example:

```
SELECT locktype, database, c.relname, l.relation,
l.transactionid, l.pid, l.mode, l.granted,
a.query
       FROM pg_locks l, pg_class c, pg_stat_activity a
       WHERE l.relation=c.oid AND l.pid=a.pid
       ORDER BY c.relname;
```

If you use resource groups, queries that are waiting will also show in *pg_locks*. To see how many queries are waiting to run in a resource group, use the *gp_resgroup_status* system catalog view. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status;
```

Similarly, if you use resource queues, queries that are waiting in a queue also show in *pg_locks*. To see how many queries are waiting to run from a resource queue, use the *gp_resqueue_status* system catalog view. For example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status;
```

#### Checking Query Status and System Utilization

You can use system monitoring utilities such as `ps`, `top`, `iostat`, `vmstat`, `netstat` and so on to monitor database activity on the hosts in your WarehousePG array. These tools can help identify WarehousePG processes ( `postgres` processes) currently running on the system and the most resource intensive tasks with regards to CPU, memory, disk I/O, or network activity. Look at these system statistics to identify queries that degrade database performance by overloading the system and consuming excessive resources. WarehousePG's management tool `gpssh` allows you to run these system monitoring commands on several hosts simultaneously.

You can create and use the WarehousePG *session_level_memory_consumption* view that provides information about the current memory utilization and idle time for sessions that are running queries on WarehousePG. For information about the view, see Viewing Session Memory Usage Information.

You can enable a dedicated database, `gpperfmon`, in which data collection agents running on each segment host save query and system utilization metrics. Refer to the `gpperfmon_install` management utility reference in the *WarehousePG Management Utility Reference Guide* for help creating the `gpperfmon` database and managing the agents. See documentation for the tables and views in the `gpperfmon` database in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

### Troubleshooting Problem Queries

If a query performs poorly, look at its query plan to help identify problems. The `EXPLAIN` command shows the query plan for a given query. See Query Profiling for more information about reading query plans and identifying problems.

When an out of memory event occurs during query execution, the WarehousePG memory accounting framework reports detailed memory consumption of every query running at the time of the event. The information is written to the WarehousePG segment logs.

### Investigating Error Messages

WarehousePG log messages are written to files in the `log` directory within the coordinator's or segment's data directory. Because the coordinator log file contains the most information, you should always check it first. Log files roll over daily and use the naming convention: `gpdb- *YYYY - MM - DD_hhmmss.csv*`. To locate the log files on the coordinator host:

```
$ cd $MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/log
```

Log lines have the format of:

```
<timestamp> | <user> | <database> | <statement_id> | <con#><cmd#>
|:-<LOG_LEVEL>: <log_message>
```

You may want to focus your search for `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `FATAL` or `PANIC` log level messages. You can use the WarehousePG utility `gplogfilter` to search through WarehousePG log files. For example, when you run the following command on the coordinator host, it checks for problem log messages in the standard logging locations:

```
$ gplogfilter -t
```

To search for related log entries in the segment log files, you can run `gplogfilter` on the segment hosts using `gpssh`. You can identify corresponding log entries by the `*statement_id*` or `*con #*` (session identifier). For example, to search for log messages in the segment log files containing the string `con6` and save output to a file:

```
gpssh -f seg_hosts_file -e 'source
/usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh ; gplogfilter -f
con6 /gpdata/*/log/gpdb*.csv' > seglog.out
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 4.11 Backing Up and Restoring Databases

The `gpbackup` and `gprestore` documentation has moved to the WarehousePG Backup and Restore section.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 5 WarehousePG Best Practices

A best practice is a method or technique that has consistently shown results superior to those achieved with other means. Best practices are found through experience and are proven to reliably lead to a desired result. Best practices are a commitment to use any product correctly and optimally, by leveraging all the knowledge and expertise available to ensure success.

This document does not teach you how to use WarehousePG features. Links are provided to other relevant parts of the WarehousePG documentation for information on how to use and implement specific WarehousePG features. This document addresses the most important best practices to follow when designing, implementing, and using WarehousePG.

It is not the intent of this document to cover the entire product or compendium of features, but rather to provide a summary of *what matters most* in WarehousePG. This document does not address *edge* use cases. While edge use cases can further leverage and benefit from WarehousePG features, they require a proficient knowledge and expertise with these features, as well as a deep understanding of your environment, including SQL access, query execution, concurrency, workload, and other factors.

By mastering these best practices, you will increase the success of your WarehousePG clusters in the areas of maintenance, support, performance, and scalability.

- Best Practices Summary
  A summary of best practices for WarehousePG.
- System Configuration
  Requirements and best practices for system administrators who are configuring WarehousePG cluster hosts.
- Schema Design
  Best practices for designing WarehousePG schemas.
- Memory and Resource Management with Resource Groups
  Managing WarehousePG resources with resource groups.
- Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues
  Avoid memory errors and manage WarehousePG resources.
- System Monitoring and Maintenance
  Best practices for regular maintenance that will ensure WarehousePG high availability and optimal performance.
- Loading Data
  Description of the different ways to add data to WarehousePG.
- Security
  Best practices to ensure the highest level of system security.
- Encrypting Data and Database Connections
  Best practices for implementing encryption and managing keys.
- Tuning SQL Queries
  The WarehousePG cost-based optimizer evaluates many strategies for running a query and chooses the least costly method.
- High Availability
  WarehousePG supports highly available, fault-tolerant database services when you enable and properly configure WarehousePG high availability features. To guarantee a required level of service, each component must have a standby ready to take its place if it should fail.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.1 Best Practices Summary

A summary of best practices for WarehousePG.

### Data Model

WarehousePG is an analytical MPP shared-nothing database. This model is significantly different from a highly normalized/transactional SMP database. Because of this, the following best practices are recommended.

- WarehousePG performs best with a denormalized schema design suited for MPP analytical processing for example, Star or Snowflake schema, with large fact tables and smaller dimension tables.
- Use the same data types for columns used in joins between tables.

See Schema Design.

### Heap vs. Append-Optimized Storage

- Use heap storage for tables and partitions that will receive iterative batch and singleton `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `INSERT` operations.
- Use heap storage for tables and partitions that will receive concurrent `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `INSERT` operations.
- Use append-optimized storage for tables and partitions that are updated infrequently after the initial load and have subsequent inserts only performed in large batch operations.
- Avoid performing singleton `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` operations on append-optimized tables.
- Avoid performing concurrent batch `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations on append-optimized tables. Concurrent batch `INSERT` operations are acceptable.

See Heap Storage or Append-Optimized Storage.

### Row vs. Column Oriented Storage

- Use row-oriented storage for workloads with iterative transactions where updates are required and frequent inserts are performed.
- Use row-oriented storage when selects against the table are wide.
- Use row-oriented storage for general purpose or mixed workloads.
- Use column-oriented storage where selects are narrow and aggregations of data are computed over a small number of columns.
- Use column-oriented storage for tables that have single columns that are regularly updated without modifying other columns in the row.

See Row or Column Orientation.

### Compression

- Use compression on large append-optimized and partitioned tables to improve I/O across the system.
- Set the column compression settings at the level where the data resides.
- Balance higher levels of compression with the time and CPU cycles needed to compress and uncompress data.

See Compression.

### Distributions

- Explicitly define a column or random distribution for all tables. Do not use the default.
- Use a single column that will distribute data across all segments evenly.
- Do not distribute on columns that will be used in the `WHERE` clause of a query.
- Do not distribute on dates or timestamps.
- Never distribute and partition tables on the same column.
- Achieve local joins to significantly improve performance by distributing on the same column for large tables commonly joined together.
- To ensure there is no data skew, validate that data is evenly distributed after the initial load and after incremental loads.

See Distributions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Resource Queue Memory Management

- Set `vm.overcommit_memory` to 2.
- Do not configure the OS to use huge pages.
- Use `gp_vmem_protect_limit` to set the maximum memory that the instance can allocate for *all* work being done in each segment database.
- You can use `gp_vmem_protect_limit` by calculating:
    - `gp_vmem` – the total memory available to WarehousePG
        - If the total system memory is less than 256 GB, use this formula:

          ```
          gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.7
          ```

        - If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB, use this formula:

          ```
          gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.17
          ```

      where `SWAP` is the host's swap space in GB, and `RAM` is the host's RAM in GB.
    - `max_acting_primary_segments` – the maximum number of primary segments that could be running on a host when mirror segments are activated due to a host or segment failure.
    - `gp_vmem_protect_limit`

      ```
      gp_vmem_protect_limit = gp_vmem / acting_primary_segments
      ```

      Convert to MB to set the value of the configuration parameter.
- In a scenario where a large number of workfiles are generated calculate the `gp_vmem` factor with this formula to account for the workfiles.
    - If the total system memory is less than 256 GB:

      ```
      gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM – (300KB *
            total_#_workfiles))) / 1.7
      ```

    - If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB:

      ```
      gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM – (300KB *
            total_#_workfiles))) / 1.17
      ```

- Never set `gp_vmem_protect_limit` too high or larger than the physical RAM on the system.
- Use the calculated `gp_vmem` value to calculate the setting for the `vm.overcommit_ratio` operating system parameter:

  ```
  vm.overcommit_ratio = (RAM – 0.026 * gp_vmem) / RAM
  ```

- Use `statement_mem` to allocate memory used for a query per segment db.
- Use resource queues to set both the numbers of active queries ( `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` ) and the amount of memory ( `MEMORY_LIMIT` ) that can be utilized by queries in the queue.
- Associate all users with a resource queue. Do not use the default queue.
- Set `PRIORITY` to match the real needs of the queue for the workload and time of day. Avoid using MAX priority.
- Ensure that resource queue memory allocations do not exceed the setting for `gp_vmem_protect_limit` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Dynamically update resource queue settings to match daily operations flow.

See Setting the WarehousePG Recommended OS Parameters and Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues.

### Partitioning

- Partition large tables only. Do not partition small tables.
- Use partitioning only if partition elimination (partition pruning) can be achieved based on the query criteria.
- Choose range partitioning over list partitioning.
- Partition the table based on a commonly-used column, such as a date column.
- Never partition and distribute tables on the same column.
- Do not use default partitions.
- Do not use multi-level partitioning; create fewer partitions with more data in each partition.
- Validate that queries are selectively scanning partitioned tables (partitions are being eliminated) by examining the query `EXPLAIN` plan.
- Do not create too many partitions with column-oriented storage because of the total number of physical files on every segment: `physical files = segments x columns x partitions`

See Partitioning.

### Indexes

- In general indexes are not needed in WarehousePG.
- Create an index on a single column of a columnar table for drill-through purposes for high cardinality tables that require queries with high selectivity.
- Do not index columns that are frequently updated.
- Consider dropping indexes before loading data into a table. After the load, re-create the indexes for the table.
- Create selective B-tree indexes.
- Do not create bitmap indexes on columns that are updated.
- Avoid using bitmap indexes for unique columns, very high or very low cardinality data. Bitmap indexes perform best when the column has a low cardinality—100 to 100,000 distinct values.
- Do not use bitmap indexes for transactional workloads.
- In general do not index partitioned tables. If indexes are needed, the index columns must be different than the partition columns.

See Indexes.

### Resource Queues

- Use resource queues to manage the workload on the cluster.
- Associate all roles with a user-defined resource queue.
- Use the `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` parameter to limit the number of active queries that members of the particular queue can run concurrently.
- Use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` parameter to control the total amount of memory that queries running through the queue can utilize.
- Alter resource queues dynamically to match the workload and time of day.

See Configuring Resource Queues.

### Monitoring and Maintenance

- Implement the "Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Run `gpcheckperf` at install time and periodically thereafter, saving the output to compare system performance over time.
- Use all the tools at your disposal to understand how your system behaves under different loads.
- Examine any unusual event to determine the cause.
- Monitor query activity on the system by running explain plans periodically to ensure the queries are running optimally.
- Review plans to determine whether index are being used and partition elimination is occurring as expected.
- Know the location and content of system log files and monitor them on a regular basis, not just when problems arise.

See System Monitoring and Maintenance, Query Profiling and Monitoring WarehousePG Log Files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ANALYZE

- Determine if analyzing the database is actually needed. Analyzing is not needed if `gp_autostats_mode` is set to `on_no_stats` (the default) and the table is not partitioned.
- Use `analyzedb` in preference to `ANALYZE` when dealing with large sets of tables, as it does not require analyzing the entire database. The `analyzedb` utility updates statistics data for the specified tables incrementally and concurrently. For append optimized tables, `analyzedb` updates statistics incrementally only if the statistics are not current. For heap tables, statistics are always updated. `ANALYZE` does not update the table metadata that the `analyzedb` utility uses to determine whether table statistics are up to date.
- Selectively run `ANALYZE` at the table level when needed.
- Always run `ANALYZE` after `INSERT`, `UPDATE`. and `DELETE` operations that significantly changes the underlying data.
- Always run `ANALYZE` after `CREATE INDEX` operations.
- If `ANALYZE` on very large tables takes too long, run `ANALYZE` only on the columns used in a join condition, `WHERE` clause, `SORT`, `GROUP BY`, or `HAVING` clause.
- When dealing with large sets of tables, use `analyzedb` instead of `ANALYZE.`
- Run `analyzedb` on the root partition any time that you add a new partition(s) to a partitioned table. This operation both analyzes the child leaf partitions in parallel and merges any updated statistics into the root partition.

See Updating Statistics with ANALYZE.

### Vacuum

- Run `VACUUM` after large `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations.
- Do not run `VACUUM FULL`. Instead run a `CREATE TABLE...AS` operation, then rename and drop the original table.
- Frequently run `VACUUM` on the system catalogs to avoid catalog bloat and the need to run `VACUUM FULL` on catalog tables.
- Never issue a `kill` command against `VACUUM` on catalog tables.

See Managing Bloat in a Database.

### Loading

- Maximize the parallelism as the number of segments increase.
- Spread the data evenly across as many ETL nodes as possible.
    - Split very large data files into equal parts and spread the data across as many file systems as possible.
    - Run two `gpfdist` instances per file system.
    - Run `gpfdist` on as many interfaces as possible.
    - Use `gp_external_max_segs` to control the number of segments that will request data from the `gpfdist` process.
    - Always keep `gp_external_max_segs` and the number of `gpfdist` processes an even factor.

- Always drop indexes before loading into existing tables and re-create the index after loading.
- Run `VACUUM` after load errors to recover space.

See Loading Data.

### Security

- Secure the `gpadmin` user id and only allow essential system administrators access to it.
- Administrators should only log in to WarehousePG as `gpadmin` when performing certain system maintenance tasks (such as upgrade or expansion).
- Limit users who have the `SUPERUSER` role attribute. Roles that are superusers bypass all access privilege checks in WarehousePG, as well as resource queuing. Only system administrators should be given superuser rights. See "Altering Role Attributes" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Database users should never log on as `gpadmin`, and ETL or production workloads should never run as `gpadmin`.
- Assign a distinct WarehousePG role to each user, application, or service that logs in.
- For applications or web services, consider creating a distinct role for each application or service.
- Use groups to manage access privileges.
- Protect the root password.
- Enforce a strong password password policy for operating system passwords.
- Ensure that important operating system files are protected.

See Security.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Encryption

- Encrypting and decrypting data has a performance cost; only encrypt data that requires encryption.
- Do performance testing before implementing any encryption solution in a production system.
- Server certificates in a production WarehousePG cluster should be signed by a certificate authority (CA) so that clients can authenticate the server. The CA may be local if all clients are local to the organization.
- Client connections to WarehousePG should use SSL encryption whenever the connection goes through an insecure link.
- A symmetric encryption scheme, where the same key is used to both encrypt and decrypt, has better performance than an asymmetric scheme and should be used when the key can be shared safely.
- Use cryptographic functions to encrypt data on disk. The data is encrypted and decrypted in the database process, so it is important to secure the client connection with SSL to avoid transmitting unencrypted data.
- Use the gpfdists protocol to secure ETL data as it is loaded into or unloaded from the database.

See Encrypting Data and Database Connections

### High Availability

> **Note** The following guidelines apply to actual hardware deployments, but not to public cloud-based infrastructure, where high availability solutions may already exist.

- Use a hardware RAID storage solution with 8 to 24 disks.
- Use RAID 1, 5, or 6 so that the disk array can tolerate a failed disk.
- Configure a hot spare in the disk array to allow rebuild to begin automatically when disk failure is detected.
- Protect against failure of the entire disk array and degradation during rebuilds by mirroring the RAID volume.
- Monitor disk utilization regularly and add additional space when needed.
- Monitor segment skew to ensure that data is distributed evenly and storage is consumed evenly at all segments.
- Set up a standby coordinator instance to take over if the primary coordinator fails.
- Plan how to switch clients to the new coordinator instance when a failure occurs, for example, by updating the coordinator address in DNS.
- Set up monitoring to send notifications in a system monitoring application or by email when the primary fails.
- Set up mirrors for all segments.
- Locate primary segments and their mirrors on different hosts to protect against host failure.
- Recover failed segments promptly, using the `gprecoverseg` utility, to restore redundancy and return the system to optimal balance.
- Consider a Dual Cluster configuration to provide an additional level of redundancy and additional query processing throughput.
- Backup WarehousePGs regularly unless the data is easily restored from sources.
- If backups are saved to local cluster storage, move the files to a safe, off-cluster location when the backup is complete.
- If backups are saved to NFS mounts, use a scale-out NFS solution such as Dell PowerScale (Isilon) to prevent IO bottlenecks.

See High Availability.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.2 System Configuration

Requirements and best practices for system administrators who are configuring WarehousePG cluster hosts.

Configuration of the WarehousePG cluster is usually performed as root.

### Configuring the Timezone

WarehousePG selects a timezone to use from a set of internally stored PostgreSQL timezones. The available PostgreSQL timezones are taken from the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) Time Zone Database, and WarehousePG updates its list of available timezones as necessary when the IANA database changes for PostgreSQL.

WarehousePG selects the timezone by matching a PostgreSQL timezone with the user specified time zone, or the host system time zone if no time zone is configured. For example, when selecting a default timezone, WarehousePG uses an algorithm to select a PostgreSQL timezone based on the host system timezone files. If the system timezone includes leap second information, WarehousePG cannot match the system timezone with a PostgreSQL timezone. In this case, WarehousePG calculates a "best match" with a PostgreSQL timezone based on information from the host system.

As a best practice, configure WarehousePG and the host systems to use a known, supported timezone. This sets the timezone for the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances, and prevents WarehousePG from recalculating a "best match" timezone each time the cluster is restarted, using the current system timezone and WarehousePG timezone files (which may have been updated from the IANA database since the last restart). Use the `gpconfig` utility to show and set the WarehousePG timezone. For example, these commands show the WarehousePG timezone and set the timezone to `US/Pacific`.

```
# gpconfig -s TimeZone
# gpconfig -c TimeZone -v 'US/Pacific'
```

You must restart WarehousePG after changing the timezone. The command `gpstop -ra` restarts WarehousePG. The catalog view `pg_timezone_names` provides WarehousePG timezone information.

### File System

XFS is the file system used for WarehousePG data directories. Use the mount options described in Configure Operating System.

### Port Configuration

See the recommended OS parameter settings in the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for further details.

Set up `ip_local_port_range` so it does not conflict with the WarehousePG port ranges. For example, setting this range in `/etc/sysctl.conf`:

```
net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 10000  65535
```

you could set the WarehousePG base port numbers to these values.

```
PORT_BASE = 6000
MIRROR_PORT_BASE = 7000
```

See the Recommended OS Parameters Settings in the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for further details.

### I/O Configuration

Set the blockdev read-ahead size to 16384 on the devices that contain data directories. This command sets the read-ahead size for `/dev/sdb`.

```
# /sbin/blockdev --setra 16384 /dev/sdb
```

This command returns the read-ahead size for `/dev/sdb`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# /sbin/blockdev --getra /dev/sdb
16384
```

See the Recommended OS Parameters Settings in the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for further details.

The deadline IO scheduler should be set for all data directory devices.

```
 # cat /sys/block/sdb/queue/scheduler
 noop anticipatory [deadline] cfq
```

The maximum number of OS files and processes should be increased in the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file.

```
* soft  nofile 524288
* hard  nofile 524288
* soft  nproc 131072
* hard  nproc 131072
```

### OS Memory Configuration

The Linux sysctl `vm.overcommit_memory` and `vm.overcommit_ratio` variables affect how the operating system manages memory allocation. See the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file parameters guidelines in the *WarehousePG Datatabase Installation Guide* for further details.

`vm.overcommit_memory` determines the method the OS uses for determining how much memory can be allocated to processes. This should be always set to 2, which is the only safe setting for the database.

> **Note** For information on configuration of overcommit memory, refer to:

- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory_overcommitment
- https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/vm/overcommit-accounting

`vm.overcommit_ratio` is the percent of RAM that is used for application processes. The default is 50 on Red Hat Enterprise Linux. See Resource Queue Segment Memory Configuration for a formula to calculate an optimal value.

Do not enable huge pages in the operating system.

See also Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues.

### Shared Memory Settings

WarehousePG uses shared memory to communicate between `postgres` processes that are part of the same `postgres` instance. The following shared memory settings should be set in `sysctl` and are rarely modified. See the `sysctl.conf` file parameters in the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for further details.

```
kernel.shmmax = 810810728448
kernel.shmmni = 4096
kernel.shmall = 197951838
```

See Setting the WarehousePG Recommended OS Parameters for more details.

### Number of Segments per Host

Determining the number of segments to run on each segment host has immense impact on overall system performance. The segments share the host's CPU cores, memory, and NICs with each other and with other processes running on the host. Over-estimating the number of segments a server can accommodate is a common cause of suboptimal performance.

The factors that must be considered when choosing how many segments to run per host include the following:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Number of cores
- Amount of physical RAM installed in the server
- Number of NICs
- Amount of storage attached to server
- Mixture of primary and mirror segments
- ETL processes that will run on the hosts
- Non-WarehousePG processes running on the hosts

### Resource Queue Segment Memory Configuration

The `gp_vmem_protect_limit` server configuration parameter specifies the amount of memory that all active postgres processes for a single segment can consume at any given time. Queries that exceed this amount will fail. Use the following calculations to estimate a safe value for `gp_vmem_protect_limit`.

1. Calculate `gp_vmem`, the host memory available to WarehousePG.
    - If the total system memory is less than 256 GB, use this formula:

      ```
      gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.7
      ```

    - If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB, use this formula:

      ```
      gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.17
      ```

    where `SWAP` is the host's swap space in GB and `RAM` is the RAM installed on the host in GB.

2. Calculate `max_acting_primary_segments`. This is the maximum number of primary segments that can be running on a host when mirror segments are activated due to a segment or host failure on another host in the cluster. With mirrors arranged in a 4-host block with 8 primary segments per host, for example, a single segment host failure would activate two or three mirror segments on each remaining host in the failed host's block. The `max_acting_primary_segments` value for this configuration is 11 (8 primary segments plus 3 mirrors activated on failure).

3. Calculate `gp_vmem_protect_limit` by dividing the total WarehousePG memory by the maximum number of acting primaries:

    ```
    gp_vmem_protect_limit = gp_vmem / max_acting_primary_segments
    ```

    Convert to megabytes to find the value to set for the `gp_vmem_protect_limit` system configuration parameter.

For scenarios where a large number of workfiles are generated, adjust the calculation for `gp_vmem` to account for the workfiles.

- If the total system memory is less than 256 GB:

  ```
  gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM – (300KB * total_#_workfiles))) / 1.7
  ```

- If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB:

  ```
  gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM – (300KB * total_#_workfiles))) / 1.17
  ```

For information about monitoring and managing workfile usage, see the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

You can calculate the value of the `vm.overcommit_ratio` operating system parameter from the value of `gp_vmem`:

```
vm.overcommit_ratio = (RAM – 0.026 * gp_vmem) / RAM
```

See OS Memory Configuration for more about about `vm.overcommit_ratio`.

See also Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Resource Queue Statement Memory Configuration

The `statement_mem` server configuration parameter is the amount of memory to be allocated to any single query in a segment database. If a statement requires additional memory it will spill to disk. Calculate the value for `statement_mem` with the following formula:

```
(gp_vmem_protect_limit * .9) / max_expected_concurrent_queries
```

For example, for 40 concurrent queries with `gp_vmem_protect_limit` set to 8GB (8192MB), the calculation for `statement_mem` would be:

```
(8192MB * .9) / 40 = 184MB
```

Each query would be allowed 184MB of memory before it must spill to disk.

To increase `statement_mem` safely you must either increase `gp_vmem_protect_limit` or reduce the number of concurrent queries. To increase `gp_vmem_protect_limit`, you must add physical RAM and/or swap space, or reduce the number of segments per host.

Note that adding segment hosts to the cluster cannot help out-of-memory errors unless you use the additional hosts to decrease the number of segments per host.

Spill files are created when there is not enough memory to fit all the mapper output, usually when 80% of the buffer space is occupied.

Also, see Resource Management for best practices for managing query memory using resource queues.

### Resource Queue Spill File Configuration

WarehousePG creates *spill files* (also called *workfiles*) on disk if a query is allocated insufficient memory to run in memory. A single query can create no more than 100,000 spill files, by default, which is sufficient for the majority of queries.

You can control the maximum number of spill files created per query and per segment with the configuration parameter `gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query`. Set the parameter to 0 to allow queries to create an unlimited number of spill files. Limiting the number of spill files permitted prevents run-away queries from disrupting the system.

A query could generate a large number of spill files if not enough memory is allocated to it or if data skew is present in the queried data. If a query creates more than the specified number of spill files, WarehousePG returns this error:

```
ERROR: number of workfiles per query limit exceeded
```

Before raising the `gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query`, try reducing the number of spill files by changing the query, changing the data distribution, or changing the memory configuration.

The `gp_toolkit` schema includes views that allow you to see information about all the queries that are currently using spill files. This information can be used for troubleshooting and for tuning queries:

- The `gp_workfile_entries` view contains one row for each operator using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time. See How to Read Explain Plans for information about operators.
- The `gp_workfile_usage_per_query` view contains one row for each query using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time.
- The `gp_workfile_usage_per_segment` view contains one row for each segment. Each row displays the total amount of disk space used for workfiles on the segment at the current time.

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for descriptions of the columns in these views.

The `gp_workfile_compression` configuration parameter specifies whether the spill files are compressed. It is `off` by default. Enabling compression can improve performance when spill files are used.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.3 Schema Design

Best practices for designing WarehousePG schemas.

WarehousePG is an analytical, shared-nothing database, which is much different than a highly normalized, transactional SMP database. WarehousePG performs best with a denormalized schema design suited for MPP analytical processing, a star or snowflake schema, with large centralized fact tables connected to multiple smaller dimension tables.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

### Data Types

#### Use Types Consistently

Use the same data types for columns used in joins between tables. If the data types differ, WarehousePG must dynamically convert the data type of one of the columns so the data values can be compared correctly. With this in mind, you may need to increase the data type size to facilitate joins to other common objects.

#### Choose Data Types that Use the Least Space

You can increase database capacity and improve query execution by choosing the most efficient data types to store your data.

Use `TEXT` or `VARCHAR` rather than `CHAR`. There are no performance differences among the character data types, but using `TEXT` or `VARCHAR` can decrease the storage space used.

Use the smallest numeric data type that will accommodate your data. Using `BIGINT` for data that fits in `INT` or `SMALLINT` wastes storage space.

### Storage Model

WarehousePG provides an array of storage options when creating tables. It is very important to know when to use heap storage versus append-optimized (AO) storage, and when to use row-oriented storage versus column-oriented storage. The correct selection of heap versus AO and row versus column is extremely important for large fact tables, but less important for small dimension tables.

The best practices for determining the storage model are:

1. Design and build an insert-only model, truncating a daily partition before load.
2. For large partitioned fact tables, evaluate and use optimal storage options for different partitions. One storage option is not always right for the entire partitioned table. For example, some partitions can be row-oriented while others are column-oriented.
3. When using column-oriented storage, every column is a separate file on *every* WarehousePG segment. For tables with a large number of columns consider columnar storage for data often accessed (hot) and row-oriented storage for data not often accessed (cold).
4. Storage options should be set at the partition level.
5. Compress large tables to improve I/O performance and to make space in the cluster.

#### Heap Storage or Append-Optimized Storage

Heap storage is the default model, and is the model PostgreSQL uses for all database tables. Use heap storage for tables and partitions that will receive iterative `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and singleton `INSERT` operations. Use heap storage for tables and partitions that will receive concurrent `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `INSERT` operations.

Use append-optimized storage for tables and partitions that are updated infrequently after the initial load and have subsequent inserts performed only in batch operations. Avoid performing singleton `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` operations on append-optimized tables. Concurrent batch `INSERT` operations are acceptable, but *never* perform concurrent batch `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations.

The append-optimized storage model is inappropriate for frequently updated tables, because space occupied by rows that are updated and deleted in append-optimized tables is not recovered and reused as efficiently as with heap tables. Append-optimized storage is intended for large tables that are loaded once, updated infrequently, and queried frequently for analytical query processing.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Row or Column Orientation

Row orientation is the traditional way to store database tuples. The columns that comprise a row are stored on disk contiguously, so that an entire row can be read from disk in a single I/O.

Column orientation stores column values together on disk. A separate file is created for each column. If the table is partitioned, a separate file is created for each column and partition. When a query accesses only a small number of columns in a column-oriented table with many columns, the cost of I/O is substantially reduced compared to a row-oriented table; any columns not referenced do not have to be retrieved from disk.

Row-oriented storage is recommended for transactional type workloads with iterative transactions where updates are required and frequent inserts are performed. Use row-oriented storage when selects against the table are wide, where many columns of a single row are needed in a query. If the majority of columns in the `SELECT` list or `WHERE` clause is selected in queries, use row-oriented storage. Use row-oriented storage for general purpose or mixed workloads, as it offers the best combination of flexibility and performance.

Column-oriented storage is optimized for read operations but it is not optimized for write operations; column values for a row must be written to different places on disk. Column-oriented tables can offer optimal query performance on large tables with many columns where only a small subset of columns are accessed by the queries.

Another benefit of column orientation is that a collection of values of the same data type can be stored together in less space than a collection of mixed type values, so column-oriented tables use less disk space (and consequently less disk I/O) than row-oriented tables. Column-oriented tables also compress better than row-oriented tables.

Use column-oriented storage for data warehouse analytic workloads where selects are narrow or aggregations of data are computed over a small number of columns. Use column-oriented storage for tables that have single columns that are regularly updated without modifying other columns in the row. Reading a complete row in a wide columnar table requires more time than reading the same row from a row-oriented table. It is important to understand that each column is a separate physical file on *every* segment in WarehousePG.

### Compression

WarehousePG offers a variety of options to compress append-optimized tables and partitions. Use compression to improve I/O across the system by allowing more data to be read with each disk read operation. The best practice is to set the column compression settings at the partition level.

Note that new partitions added to a partitioned table do not automatically inherit compression defined at the table level; you must *specifically* define compression when you add new partitions.

Run-length encoding (RLE) compression provides the best levels of compression. Higher levels of compression usually result in more compact storage on disk, but require additional time and CPU cycles when compressing data on writes and uncompressing on reads. Sorting data, in combination with the various compression options, can achieve the highest level of compression.

Data compression should never be used for data that is stored on a compressed file system.

Test different compression types and ordering methods to determine the best compression for your specific data. For example, you might start zstd compression at level 8 or 9 and adjust for best results. RLE compression works best with files that contain repetitive data.

### Distributions

An optimal distribution that results in evenly distributed data is the most important factor in WarehousePG. In an MPP shared nothing environment overall response time for a query is measured by the completion time for all segments. The system is only as fast as the slowest segment. If the data is skewed, segments with more data will take more time to complete, so every segment must have an approximately equal number of rows and perform approximately the same amount of processing. Poor performance and out of memory conditions may result if one segment has significantly more data to process than other segments.

Consider the following best practices when deciding on a distribution strategy:

- Explicitly define a column or random distribution for all tables. Do not use the default.
- Ideally, use a single column that will distribute data across all segments evenly.
- Do not distribute on columns that will be used in the `WHERE` clause of a query.
- Do not distribute on dates or timestamps.
- The distribution key column data should contain unique values or very high cardinality.
- If a single column cannot achieve an even distribution, use a multi-column distribution key with a maximum of two columns. Additional column values do not typically yield a more even distribution and they require additional time in the hashing process.
- If a two-column distribution key cannot achieve an even distribution of data, use a random distribution. Multi-column distribution keys in most cases require motion operations to join tables, so they offer no advantages over a random distribution.

WarehousePG random distribution is not round-robin, so there is no guarantee of an equal number of records on each segment. Random distributions typically fall within a target range of less than ten percent variation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Optimal distributions are critical when joining large tables together. To perform a join, matching rows must be located together on the same segment. If data is not distributed on the same join column, the rows needed from one of the tables are dynamically redistributed to the other segments. In some cases a broadcast motion, in which each segment sends its individual rows to all other segments, is performed rather than a redistribution motion, where each segment rehashes the data and sends the rows to the appropriate segments according to the hash key.

#### Local (Co-located) Joins

Using a hash distribution that evenly distributes table rows across all segments and results in local joins can provide substantial performance gains. When joined rows are on the same segment, much of the processing can be accomplished within the segment instance. These are called *local* or *co-located* joins. Local joins minimize data movement; each segment operates independently of the other segments, without network traffic or communications between segments.

To achieve local joins for large tables commonly joined together, distribute the tables on the same column. Local joins require that both sides of a join be distributed on the same columns (and in the same order) *and* that all columns in the distribution clause are used when joining tables. The distribution columns must also be the same data type—although some values with different data types may appear to have the same representation, they are stored differently and hash to different values, so they are stored on different segments.

#### Data Skew

Data skew is often the root cause of poor query performance and out of memory conditions. Skewed data affects scan (read) performance, but it also affects all other query execution operations, for instance, joins and group by operations.

It is very important to *validate* distributions to *ensure* that data is evenly distributed after the initial load. It is equally important to *continue* to validate distributions after incremental loads.

The following query shows the number of rows per segment as well as the variance from the minimum and maximum numbers of rows:

```
SELECT 'Example Table' AS "Table Name",
    max(c) AS "Max Seg Rows", min(c) AS "Min Seg Rows",
    (max(c)-min(c))*100.0/max(c) AS "Percentage Difference Between Max & Min"
FROM (SELECT count(*) c, gp_segment_id FROM facts GROUP BY 2) AS a;
```

The `gp_toolkit` schema has two views that you can use to check for skew.

- The `gp_toolkit.gp_skew_coefficients` view shows data distribution skew by calculating the coefficient of variation (CV) for the data stored on each segment. The `skccoeff` column shows the coefficient of variation (CV), which is calculated as the standard deviation divided by the average. It takes into account both the average and variability around the average of a data series. The lower the value, the better. Higher values indicate greater data skew.
- The `gp_toolkit.gp_skew_idle_fractions` view shows data distribution skew by calculating the percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan, which is an indicator of computational skew. The `siffraction` column shows the percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan. This is an indicator of uneven data distribution or query processing skew. For example, a value of 0.1 indicates 10% skew, a value of 0.5 indicates 50% skew, and so on. Tables that have more than10% skew should have their distribution policies evaluated.

#### Processing Skew

Processing skew results when a disproportionate amount of data flows to, and is processed by, one or a few segments. It is often the culprit behind WarehousePG performance and stability issues. It can happen with operations such join, sort, aggregation, and various OLAP operations. Processing skew happens in flight while a query is running and is not as easy to detect as data skew, which is caused by uneven data distribution due to the wrong choice of distribution keys. Data skew is present at the table level, so it can be easily detected and avoided by choosing optimal distribution keys.

If single segments are failing, that is, not all segments on a host, it may be a processing skew issue. Identifying processing skew is currently a manual process. First look for spill files. If there is skew, but not enough to cause spill, it will not become a performance issue. If you determine skew exists, then find the query responsible for the skew.

The remedy for processing skew in almost all cases is to rewrite the query. Creating temporary tables can eliminate skew. Temporary tables can be randomly distributed to force a two-stage aggregation.

### Partitioning

A good partitioning strategy reduces the amount of data to be scanned by reading only the partitions needed to satisfy a query.

Each partition is a separate physical file or set of files (in the case of column-oriented tables) on *every* segment. Just as reading a complete row in a wide columnar table requires more time than reading the same row from a heap table, *reading all partitions in a partitioned table requires more time than reading the same data from a non-partitioned table*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Following are partitioning best practices:

- Partition large tables only, do not partition small tables.
- Use partitioning on large tables *only* when partition elimination (partition pruning) can be achieved based on query criteria and is accomplished by partitioning the table based on the query predicate. Whenever possible, use range partitioning instead of list partitioning.
- The query planner can selectively scan partitioned tables only when the query contains a direct and simple restriction of the table using immutable operators, such as `=`, `<`, `<=`, `>`, `>=`, and `<>`.
- Selective scanning recognizes `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions, but does not recognize `VOLATILE` functions within a query. For example, `WHERE` clauses such as

  ```
  date > CURRENT_DATE
  ```

  cause the query planner to selectively scan partitioned tables, but a `WHERE` clause such as

  ```
  time > TIMEOFDAY
  ```

  does not. It is important to validate that queries are selectively scanning partitioned tables (partitions are being eliminated) by examining the query `EXPLAIN` plan.
- Do not use default partitions. The default partition is always scanned but, more importantly, in many environments they tend to overfill resulting in poor performance.
- *Never* partition and distribute tables on the same column.
- Do not use multi-level partitioning. While sub-partitioning is supported, it is not recommended because typically subpartitions contain little or no data. It is a myth that performance increases as the number of partitions or subpartitions increases; the administrative overhead of maintaining many partitions and subpartitions will outweigh any performance benefits. For performance, scalability and manageability, balance partition scan performance with the number of overall partitions.
- Beware of using too many partitions with column-oriented storage.
- Consider workload concurrency and the average number of partitions opened and scanned for all concurrent queries.

#### Number of Partition and Columnar Storage Files

The only hard limit for the number of files WarehousePG supports is the operating system's open file limit. It is important, however, to consider the total number of files in the cluster, the number of files on every segment, and the total number of files on a host. In an MPP shared nothing environment, every node operates independently of other nodes. Each node is constrained by its disk, CPU, and memory. CPU and I/O constraints are not common with WarehousePG, but memory is often a limiting factor because the query execution model optimizes query performance in memory.

The optimal number of files per segment also varies based on the number of segments on the node, the size of the cluster, SQL access, concurrency, workload, and skew. There are generally six to eight segments per host, but large clusters should have fewer segments per host. When using partitioning and columnar storage it is important to balance the total number of files in the cluster, but it is *more* important to consider the number of files per segment and the total number of files on a node.

Example with 64GB Memory per Node

- Number of nodes: 16
- Number of segments per node: 8
- Average number of files per segment: 10,000

The total number of files per node is `8*10,000 = 80,000` and the total number of files for the cluster is `8*16*10,000 = 1,280,000`. The number of files increases quickly as the number of partitions and the number of columns increase.

As a general best practice, limit the total number of files per node to under 100,000. As the previous example shows, the optimal number of files per segment and total number of files per node depends on the hardware configuration for the nodes (primarily memory), size of the cluster, SQL access, concurrency, workload and skew.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Indexes

Indexes are not generally needed in WarehousePG. Most analytical queries operate on large volumes of data, while indexes are intended for locating single rows or small numbers of rows of data. In WarehousePG, a sequential scan is an efficient method to read data as each segment contains an equal portion of the data and all segments work in parallel to read the data.

If adding an index does not produce performance gains, drop it. Verify that every index you create is used by the optimizer.

For queries with high selectivity, indexes may improve query performance. Create an index on a single column of a columnar table for drill through purposes for high cardinality columns that are required for highly selective queries.

Do not index columns that are frequently updated. Creating an index on a column that is frequently updated increases the number of writes required on updates.

Indexes on expressions should be used only if the expression is used frequently in queries.

An index with a predicate creates a partial index that can be used to select a small number of rows from large tables.

Avoid overlapping indexes. Indexes that have the same leading column are redundant.

Indexes can improve performance on compressed append-optimized tables for queries that return a targeted set of rows. For compressed data, an index access method means only the necessary pages are uncompressed.

Create selective B-tree indexes. Index selectivity is a ratio of the number of distinct values a column has divided by the number of rows in a table. For example, if a table has 1000 rows and a column has 800 distinct values, the selectivity of the index is 0.8, which is considered good.

As a general rule, drop indexes before loading data into a table. The load will run an order of magnitude faster than loading data into a table with indexes. After the load, re-create the indexes.

Bitmap indexes are suited for querying and not updating. Bitmap indexes perform best when the column has a low cardinality—100 to 100,000 distinct values. Do not use bitmap indexes for unique columns, very high, or very low cardinality data. Do not use bitmap indexes for transactional workloads.

If indexes are needed on partitioned tables, the index columns must be different than the partition columns. A benefit of indexing partitioned tables is that because the b-tree performance degrades exponentially as the size of the b-tree grows, creating indexes on partitioned tables creates smaller b-trees that perform better than with non-partitioned tables.

### Column Sequence and Byte Alignment

For optimum performance lay out the columns of a table to achieve data type byte alignment. Lay out the columns in heap tables in the following order:

1. Distribution and partition columns
2. Fixed numeric types
3. Variable data types

Lay out the data types from largest to smallest, so that `BIGINT` and `TIMESTAMP` come before `INT` and `DATE`, and all of these types come before `TEXT`, `VARCHAR`, or `NUMERIC(x,y)`. For example, 8-byte types first (`BIGINT`, `TIMESTAMP`), 4-byte types next (`INT`, `DATE`), 2-byte types next (`SMALLINT`), and variable data type last (`VARCHAR`).

Instead of defining columns in this sequence:

`Int`, `Bigint`, `Timestamp`, `Bigint`, `Timestamp`, `Int` (distribution key), `Date` (partition key), `Bigint`, `Smallint`

define the columns in this sequence:

`Int` (distribution key), `Date` (partition key), `Bigint`, `Bigint`, `Timestamp`, `Bigint`, `Timestamp`, `Int`, `Smallint`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.4 Memory and Resource Management with Resource Groups

Managing WarehousePG resources with resource groups.

Memory, CPU, and concurrent transaction management have a significant impact on performance in a WarehousePG cluster. Resource groups are a newer resource management scheme that enforce memory, CPU, and concurrent transaction limits in WarehousePG.


- Configuring Memory for WarehousePG
- Memory Considerations when using Resource Groups
- Configuring Resource Groups
- Low Memory Queries
- Administrative Utilities and admin_group Concurrency


### Configuring Memory for WarehousePG

While it is not always possible to increase system memory, you can avoid many out-of-memory conditions by configuring resource groups to manage expected workloads.

The following operating system and WarehousePG memory settings are significant when you manage WarehousePG resources with resource groups:

- **vm.overcommit_memory**

  This Linux kernel parameter, set in `/etc/sysctl.conf`, identifies the method that the operating system uses to determine how much memory can be allocated to processes. `vm.overcommit_memory` must always be set to 2 for WarehousePG clusters.

- **vm.overcommit_ratio**

  This Linux kernel parameter, set in `/etc/sysctl.conf`, identifies the percentage of RAM that is used for application processes; the remainder is reserved for the operating system. Tune the setting as necessary. If your memory utilization is too low, increase the value; if your memory or swap usage is too high, decrease the setting.

- **gp_resource_group_memory_limit**

  The percentage of system memory to allocate to WarehousePG. The default value is .7 (70%).

- **gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem**

  By default, WarehousePG calculates the maximum per-query memory allotment for all hosts using the memory configuration of, and the number of primary segments configured on, the coordinator host.

  > **Note** The default behavior may lead to out of memory issues and underutilization of resources when the hardware configuration of the coordinator and segment hosts differ.

  If the hardware configuration of your coordinator and segment hosts differ, set the `gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem` server configuration parameter to `true`; this prompts WarehousePG to recalculate the maximum per-query memory allotment on each segment host based on the memory and the number of primary segments configured on that segment host.

- **gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query**

  Set `gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query` to limit the maximum number of temporary spill files (workfiles) allowed per query. Spill files are created when a query requires more memory than it is allocated. When the limit is exceeded the query is terminated. The default is zero, which allows an unlimited number of spill files and may fill up the file system.

- **gp_workfile_compression**

  If there are numerous spill files then set `gp_workfile_compression` to compress the spill files. Compressing spill files may help to avoid overloading the disk subsystem with IO operations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **memory_spill_ratio**

  Set `memory_spill_ratio` to increase or decrease the amount of query operator memory WarehousePG allots to a query. When `memory_spill_ratio` is larger than 0, it represents the percentage of resource group memory to allot to query operators. If concurrency is high, this memory amount may be small even when `memory_spill_ratio` is set to the max value of 100. When you set `memory_spill_ratio` to 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` setting to determine the initial amount of query operator memory to allot.

- **statement_mem**

  When `memory_spill_ratio` is 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` setting to determine the amount of memory to allocate to a query.

Other considerations:

- Do not configure the operating system to use huge pages. See the Recommended OS Parameters Settings in the *WarehousePG Installation Guide*.
- When you configure resource group memory, consider memory requirements for mirror segments that become primary segments during a failure to ensure that database operations can continue when primary segments or segment hosts fail.

### Memory Considerations when using Resource Groups

Available memory for resource groups may be limited on systems that use low or no swap space, and that use the default `vm.overcommit_ratio` and `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` settings. To ensure that WarehousePG has a reasonable per-segment-host memory limit, you may be required to increase one or more of the following configuration settings:

1. The swap size on the system.
2. The system's `vm.overcommit_ratio` setting.
3. The resource group `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` setting.

### Configuring Resource Groups

WarehousePG resource groups provide a powerful mechanism for managing the workload of the cluster. Consider these general guidelines when you configure resource groups for your system:

- A transaction submitted by any WarehousePG role with `SUPERUSER` privileges runs under the default resource group named `admin_group`. Keep this in mind when scheduling and running WarehousePG administration utilities.
- Ensure that you assign each non-admin role a resource group. If you do not assign a resource group to a role, queries submitted by the role are handled by the default resource group named `default_group`.
- Use the `CONCURRENCY` resource group parameter to limit the number of active queries that members of a particular resource group can run concurrently.
- Use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` parameters to control the maximum amount of memory that queries running in the resource group can consume.
- WarehousePG assigns unreserved memory (100 - (sum of all resource group `MEMORY_LIMIT`s) to a global shared memory pool. This memory is available to all queries on a first-come, first-served basis.
- Alter resource groups dynamically to match the real requirements of the group for the workload and the time of day.
- Use the `gp_toolkit` views to examine resource group resource usage and to monitor how the groups are working.

### Low Memory Queries

A low `statement_mem` setting (for example, in the 10MB range) has been shown to increase the performance of queries with low memory requirements. Use the `memory_spill_ratio` and `statement_mem` server configuration parameters to override the setting on a per-query basis. For example:

```
SET memory_spill_ratio=0;
SET statement_mem='10 MB';
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Administrative Utilities and admin_group Concurrency

The default resource group for database transactions initiated by WarehousePG `SUPERUSER` s is the group named `admin_group`. The default `CONCURRENCY` value for the `admin_group` resource group is 10.

Certain WarehousePG administrative utilities may use more than one `CONCURRENCY` slot at runtime, such as `gpbackup` that you invoke with the `--jobs` option. If the utility(s) you run require more concurrent transactions than that configured for `admin_group`, consider temporarily increasing the group's `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `CONCURRENCY` values to meet the utility's requirement, making sure to return these parameters back to their original settings when the utility completes.

> **Note** Memory allocation changes that you initiate with `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` may not take affect immediately due to resource consumption by currently running queries. Be sure to alter resource group parameters in advance of your maintenance window.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.5 Memory and Resource Management with Resource Queues

Avoid memory errors and manage WarehousePG resources.

> **Note** Resource groups are a newer resource management scheme that enforces memory, CPU, and concurrent transaction limits in WarehousePG. TheManaging Resources topic provides a comparison of the resource queue and the resource group management schemes. Refer to Using Resource Groups for configuration and usage information for this resource management scheme.

Memory management has a significant impact on performance in a WarehousePG cluster. The default settings are suitable for most environments. Do not change the default settings until you understand the memory characteristics and usage on your system.

- Resolving Out of Memory Errors
- Low Memory Queries
- Configuring Memory for WarehousePG
- Configuring Resource Queues

### Resolving Out of Memory Errors

An out of memory error message identifies the WarehousePG segment, host, and process that experienced the out of memory error. For example:

```
Out of memory (seg27 host.example.com pid=47093)
VM Protect failed to allocate 4096 bytes, 0 MB available
```

Some common causes of out-of-memory conditions in WarehousePG are:

- Insufficient system memory (RAM) available on the cluster
- Improperly configured memory parameters
- Data skew at the segment level
- Operational skew at the query level

Following are possible solutions to out of memory conditions:

- Tune the query to require less memory
- Reduce query concurrency using a resource queue
- Validate the `gp_vmem_protect_limit` configuration parameter at the database level. See calculations for the maximum safe setting in Configuring Memory for WarehousePG.
- Set the memory quota on a resource queue to limit the memory used by queries run within the resource queue
- Use a session setting to reduce the `statement_mem` used by specific queries
- Decrease `statement_mem` at the database level
- Decrease the number of segments per host in the WarehousePG cluster. This solution requires a re-initializing WarehousePG and reloading your data.
- Increase memory on the host, if possible. (Additional hardware may be required.)

Adding segment hosts to the cluster will not in itself alleviate out of memory problems. The memory used by each query is determined by the `statement_mem` parameter and it is set when the query is invoked. However, if adding more hosts allows decreasing the number of segments per host, then the amount of memory allocated in `gp_vmem_protect_limit` can be raised.

### Low Memory Queries

A low `statement_mem` setting (for example, in the 1-3MB range) has been shown to increase the performance of queries with low memory requirements. Use the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter to override the setting on a per-query basis. For example:

```
SET statement_mem='2MB';
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Configuring Memory for WarehousePG

Most out of memory conditions can be avoided if memory is thoughtfully managed.

It is not always possible to increase system memory, but you can prevent out-of-memory conditions by configuring memory use correctly and setting up resource queues to manage expected workloads.

It is important to include memory requirements for mirror segments that become primary segments during a failure to ensure that the cluster can continue when primary segments or segment hosts fail.

The following are recommended operating system and WarehousePG memory settings:

- Do not configure the OS to use huge pages.
- **vm.overcommit_memory**

  This is a Linux kernel parameter, set in `/etc/sysctl.conf` and it should always be set to 2. It determines the method the OS uses for determining how much memory can be allocated to processes and 2 is the only safe setting for WarehousePG. Please review the sysctl parameters in the WarehousePG Installation Guide.
- **vm.overcommit_ratio**

  This is a Linux kernel parameter, set in `/etc/sysctl.conf`. It is the percentage of RAM that is used for application processes. The remainder is reserved for the operating system. The default on Red Hat is 50.

  Setting `vm.overcommit_ratio` too high may result in not enough memory being reserved for the operating system, which can result in segment host failure or database failure. Setting the value too low reduces the amount of concurrency and query complexity that can be run by reducing the amount of memory available to WarehousePG. When increasing the setting it is important to remember to always reserve some memory for operating system activities.

  See WarehousePG Memory Overview for instructions to calculate a value for `vm.overcommit_ratio`.
- **gp_vmem_protect_limit**

  Use `gp_vmem_protect_limit` to set the maximum memory that the instance can allocate for *all* work being done in each segment database. Never set this value larger than the physical RAM on the system. If `gp_vmem_protect_limit` is too high, it is possible for memory to become exhausted on the system and normal operations may fail, causing segment failures. If `gp_vmem_protect_limit` is set to a safe lower value, true memory exhaustion on the system is prevented; queries may fail for hitting the limit, but system disruption and segment failures are avoided, which is the desired behavior.

  See Resource Queue Segment Memory Configuration for instructions to calculate a safe value for `gp_vmem_protect_limit`.
- **runaway_detector_activation_percent**

  Runaway Query Termination prevents out of memory conditions. The `runaway_detector_activation_percent` system parameter controls the percentage of `gp_vmem_protect_limit` memory utilized that triggers termination of queries. It is set on by default at 90%. If the percentage of `gp_vmem_protect_limit` memory that is utilized for a segment exceeds the specified value, WarehousePG terminates queries based on memory usage, beginning with the query consuming the largest amount of memory. Queries are terminated until the utilized percentage of `gp_vmem_protect_limit` is below the specified percentage.
- **statement_mem**

  Use `statement_mem` to allocate memory used for a query per segment database. If additional memory is required it will spill to disk. Set the optimal value for `statement_mem` as follows:

  ```
  (vmprotect * .9) / max_expected_concurrent_queries
  ```

  The default value of `statement_mem` is 125MB. For example, on a system that is configured with 8 segments per host, a query uses 1GB of memory on each segment server (8 segments ⨯ 125MB) with the default `statement_mem` setting. Set `statement_mem` at the session level for specific queries that require additional memory to complete. This setting works well to manage query memory on clusters with low concurrency. For clusters with high concurrency also use resource queues to provide additional control on what and how much is running on the system.
- **gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query**

  Set `gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query` to limit the maximum number of temporary spill files (workfiles) allowed per query. Spill files are created when a query requires more memory than it is allocated. When the limit is exceeded the query is terminated. The default is zero, which allows an unlimited number of spill files and may fill up the file system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **gp_workfile_compression**

  If there are numerous spill files then set `gp_workfile_compression` to compress the spill files. Compressing spill files may help to avoid overloading the disk subsystem with IO operations.

### Configuring Resource Queues

WarehousePG resource queues provide a powerful mechanism for managing the workload of the cluster. Queues can be used to limit both the numbers of active queries and the amount of memory that can be used by queries in the queue. When a query is submitted to WarehousePG, it is added to a resource queue, which determines if the query should be accepted and when the resources are available to run it.

- Associate all roles with an administrator-defined resource queue.

  Each login user (role) is associated with a single resource queue; any query the user submits is handled by the associated resource queue. If a queue is not explicitly assigned the user's queries are handed by the default queue, `pg_default`.

- Do not run queries with the gpadmin role or other superuser roles.

  Superusers are exempt from resource queue limits, therefore superuser queries always run regardless of the limits set on their assigned queue.

- Use the `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` resource queue parameter to limit the number of active queries that members of a particular queue can run concurrently.

- Use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` parameter to control the total amount of memory that queries running through the queue can utilize. By combining the `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` and `MEMORY_LIMIT` attributes an administrator can fully control the activity emitted from a given resource queue.

  The allocation works as follows: Suppose a resource queue, `sample_queue`, has `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` set to 10 and `MEMORY_LIMIT` set to 2000MB. This limits the queue to approximately 2 gigabytes of memory per segment. For a cluster with 8 segments per server, the total usage per server is 16 GB for `sample_queue` (2GB * 8 segments/server). If a segment server has 64GB of RAM, there could be no more than four of this type of resource queue on the system before there is a chance of running out of memory (4 queues * 16GB per queue).

  Note that by using `STATEMENT_MEM`, individual queries running in the queue can allocate more than their "share" of memory, thus reducing the memory available for other queries in the queue.

- Resource queue priorities can be used to align workloads with desired outcomes. Queues with `MAX` priority throttle activity in all other queues until the `MAX` queue completes running all queries.

- Alter resource queues dynamically to match the real requirements of the queue for the workload and time of day. You can script an operational flow that changes based on the time of day and type of usage of the system and add `crontab` entries to run the scripts.

- Use gptoolkit to view resource queue usage and to understand how the queues are working.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.6 System Monitoring and Maintenance

Best practices for regular maintenance that will ensure WarehousePG high availability and optimal performance.

- Updating Statistics with ANALYZE
- Managing Bloat in a Database
- Monitoring WarehousePG Log Files

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

### Monitoring

WarehousePG includes utilities that are useful for monitoring the system.

The `gp_toolkit` schema contains several views that can be accessed using SQL commands to query system catalogs, log files, and operating environment for system status information.

The `gp_stats_missing` view shows tables that do not have statistics and require `ANALYZE` to be run.

For additional information on `gpstate` and `gpcheckperf` refer to the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*. For information about the `gp_toolkit` schema, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### gpstate

The `gpstate` utility program displays the status of the WarehousePG cluster, including which segments are down, coordinator and segment configuration information (hosts, data directories, etc.), the ports used by the system, and mapping of primary segments to their corresponding mirror segments.

Run `gpstate -Q` to get a list of segments that are marked "down" in the coordinator system catalog.

To get detailed status information for the WarehousePG cluster, run `gpstate -s` .

#### gpcheckperf

The `gpcheckperf` utility tests baseline hardware performance for a list of hosts. The results can help identify hardware issues. It performs the following checks:

- disk I/O test – measures I/O performance by writing and reading a large file using the `dd` operating system command. It reports read and write rates in megabytes per second.
- memory bandwidth test – measures sustainable memory bandwidth in megabytes per second using the STREAM benchmark.
- network performance test – runs the `gpnetbench` network benchmark program (optionally `netperf)` to test network performance. The test is run in one of three modes: parallel pair test ( `-r N` ), serial pair test ( `-r n` ), or full-matrix test ( `-r M)` . The minimum, maximum, average, and median transfer rates are reported in megabytes per second.

To obtain valid numbers from `gpcheckperf` , the database system must be stopped. The numbers from `gpcheckperf` can be inaccurate even if the system is up and running with no query activity.

`gpcheckperf` requires a trusted host setup between the hosts involved in the performance test. It calls `gpssh` and `gpscp` , so these utilities must also be in your `PATH` . Specify the hosts to check individually ( `-h *host1* -h *host2* ...` ) or with `-f *hosts_file*` , where `*hosts_file*` is a text file containing a list of the hosts to check. If you have more than one subnet, create a separate host file for each subnet so that you can test the subnets separately.

By default, `gpcheckperf` runs the disk I/O test, the memory test, and a serial pair network performance test. With the disk I/O test, you must use the `-d` option to specify the file systems you want to test. The following command tests disk I/O and memory bandwidth on hosts listed in the `subnet_1_hosts` file:

```
$ gpcheckperf -f subnet_1_hosts -d /data1 -d /data2 -r ds
```

The `-r` option selects the tests to run: disk I/O ( `d` ), memory bandwidth ( `s` ), network parallel pair ( `N` ), network serial pair test ( `n` ), network full-matrix test ( `M` ). Only one network mode can be selected per execution. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for the detailed `gpcheckperf` reference.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Monitoring with Operating System Utilities

The following Linux/UNIX utilities can be used to assess host performance:

- `iostat` allows you to monitor disk activity on segment hosts.
- `top` displays a dynamic view of operating system processes.
- `vmstat` displays memory usage statistics.

You can use `gpssh` to run utilities on multiple hosts.

#### Best Practices

- Implement the "Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Run `gpcheckperf` at install time and periodically thereafter, saving the output to compare system performance over time.
- Use all the tools at your disposal to understand how your system behaves under different loads.
- Examine any unusual event to determine the cause.
- Monitor query activity on the system by running explain plans periodically to ensure the queries are running optimally.
- Review plans to determine whether index are being used and partition elimination is occurring as expected.

#### Additional Information

- `gpcheckperf` reference in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.
- "Recommended Monitoring and Maintenance Tasks" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Sustainable Memory Bandwidth in Current High Performance Computers. John D. McCalpin. Oct 12, 1995.
- www.netperf.org to use `netperf`, netperf must be installed on each host you test. See `gpcheckperf` reference for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.6.1 Updating Statistics with ANALYZE

The most important prerequisite for good query performance is to begin with accurate statistics for the tables. Updating statistics with the `ANALYZE` statement enables the query planner to generate optimal query plans. When a table is analyzed, information about the data is stored in the system catalog tables. If the stored information is out of date, the planner can generate inefficient plans.

### Generating Statistics Selectively

Running ANALYZE with no arguments updates statistics for all tables in the database. This can be a very long-running process and it is not recommended. You should `ANALYZE` tables selectively when data has changed or use the analyzedb utility.

Running `ANALYZE` on a large table can take a long time. If it is not feasible to run `ANALYZE` on all columns of a very large table, you can generate statistics for selected columns only using `ANALYZE table(column, ...)`. Be sure to include columns used in joins, `WHERE` clauses, `SORT` clauses, `GROUP BY` clauses, or `HAVING` clauses.

For a partitioned table, you can run `ANALYZE` on just partitions that have changed, for example, if you add a new partition. Note that for partitioned tables, you can run `ANALYZE` on the parent (main) table, or on the leaf nodes—the partition files where data and statistics are actually stored. The intermediate files for sub-partitioned tables store no data or statistics, so running `ANALYZE` on them does not work. You can find the names of the partition tables in the `pg_partitions` system catalog:

```
SELECT partitiontablename from pg_partitions WHERE tablename='parent_table';
```

### Improving Statistics Quality

There is a trade-off between the amount of time it takes to generate statistics and the quality, or accuracy, of the statistics.

To allow large tables to be analyzed in a reasonable amount of time, `ANALYZE` takes a random sample of the table contents, rather than examining every row. To increase the number of sample values for all table columns adjust the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter. The target value ranges from 1 to 1000; the default target value is 100. The `default_statistics_target` variable applies to all columns by default, and specifies the number of values that are stored in the list of common values. A larger target may improve the quality of the query planner's estimates, especially for columns with irregular data patterns. `default_statistics_target` can be set at the coordinator/session level and requires a reload.

### When to Run ANALYZE

Run `ANALYZE`:

- after loading data,
- after `CREATE INDEX` operations,
- and after `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` operations that significantly change the underlying data.

`ANALYZE` requires only a read lock on the table, so it may be run in parallel with other database activity, but do not run `ANALYZE` while performing loads, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `CREATE INDEX` operations.

### Configuring Automatic Statistics Collection

The `gp_autostats_mode` configuration parameter, together with the `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold` parameter, determines when an automatic analyze operation is triggered. When automatic statistics collection is triggered, the planner adds an `ANALYZE` step to the query.

By default, `gp_autostats_mode` is `on_no_stats`, which triggers statistics collection for `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `INSERT`, or `COPY` operations invoked by the table owner on any table that has no existing statistics.

Setting `gp_autostats_mode` to `on_change` triggers statistics collection only when the number of rows affected exceeds the threshold defined by `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold`, which has a default value of 2147483647. The following operations invoked on a table by its owner can trigger automatic statistics collection with `on_change`: `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `INSERT`, and `COPY`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Setting the `gp_autostats_allow_nonowner` server configuration parameter to `true` also instructs WarehousePG to trigger automatic statistics collection on a table when:

- `gp_autostats_mode=on_change` and the table is modified by a non-owner.
- `gp_autostats_mode=on_no_stats` and the first user to `INSERT` or `COPY` into the table is a non-owner.

Setting `gp_autostats_mode` to `none` deactivates automatics statistics collection.

For partitioned tables, automatic statistics collection is not triggered if data is inserted from the top-level parent table of a partitioned table. But automatic statistics collection *is* triggered if data is inserted directly in a leaf table (where the data is stored) of the partitioned table.

**Parent topic:** System Monitoring and Maintenance

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.6.2 Managing Bloat in a Database

Database bloat occurs in heap tables, append-optimized tables, indexes, and system catalogs and affects database performance and disk usage. You can detect database bloat and remove it from the database.


- About Bloat
- Detecting Bloat
- Removing Bloat from Database Tables
- Removing Bloat from Append-Optimized Tables
- Removing Bloat from Indexes
- Removing Bloat from System Catalogs


### About Bloat

Database bloat is disk space that was used by a table or index and is available for reuse by the database but has not been reclaimed. Bloat is created when updating tables or indexes.

Because WarehousePG heap tables use the PostgreSQL Multiversion Concurrency Control (MVCC) storage implementation, a deleted or updated row is logically deleted from the database, but a non-visible image of the row remains in the table. These deleted rows, also called expired rows, are tracked in a free space map. Running `VACUUM` marks the expired rows as free space that is available for reuse by subsequent inserts.

It is normal for tables that have frequent updates to have a small or moderate amount of expired rows and free space that will be reused as new data is added. But when the table is allowed to grow so large that active data occupies just a small fraction of the space, the table has become significantly bloated. Bloated tables require more disk storage and additional I/O that can slow down query execution.

> **Important**
>
> It is very important to run `VACUUM` on individual tables after large `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations to avoid the necessity of ever running `VACUUM FULL`.

Running the `VACUUM` command regularly on tables prevents them from growing too large. If the table does become significantly bloated, the `VACUUM FULL` command must be used to compact the table data.

If the free space map is not large enough to accommodate all of the expired rows, the `VACUUM` command is unable to reclaim space for expired rows that overflowed the free space map. The disk space may only be recovered by running `VACUUM FULL`, which locks the table, creates a new table, copies the table data to the new table, and then drops old table. This is an expensive operation that can take an exceptional amount of time to complete with a large table.

> **Caution** `VACUUM FULL` acquires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on tables. You should not run `VACUUM FULL`. If you run `VACUUM FULL` on tables, run it during a time when users and applications do not require access to the tables, such as during a time of low activity, or during a maintenance window.

### Detecting Bloat

The statistics collected by the `ANALYZE` statement can be used to calculate the expected number of disk pages required to store a table. The difference between the expected number of pages and the actual number of pages is a measure of bloat. The `gp_toolkit` schema provides the gp_bloat_diag view that identifies table bloat by comparing the ratio of expected to actual pages. To use it, make sure statistics are up to date for all of the tables in the database, then run the following SQL:

```
gpadmin=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_diag;
 bdirelid | bdinspname | bdirelname | bdirelpages | bdiexppages |                bdidiag
----------+------------+------------+-------------+-------------+----------------------------------------
    21488 | public     | t1         |          97 |           1 | significant amount of bloat suspected
(1 row)
```

The results include only tables with moderate or significant bloat. Moderate bloat is reported when the ratio of actual to expected pages is greater than four and less than ten. Significant bloat is reported when the ratio is greater than ten.

The `gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_expected_pages` view lists the actual number of used pages and expected number of used pages for each database object.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
gpadmin=# SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_expected_pages LIMIT 5;
 btdrelid | btdrelpages | btdexppages
----------+-------------+-------------
    10789 |           1 |           1
    10794 |           1 |           1
    10799 |           1 |           1
     5004 |           1 |           1
     7175 |           1 |           1
(5 rows)
```

The `btdrelid` is the object ID of the table. The `btdrelpages` column reports the number of pages the table uses; the `btdexppages` column is the number of pages expected. Again, the numbers reported are based on the table statistics, so be sure to run `ANALYZE` on tables that have changed.

### Removing Bloat from Database Tables

The `VACUUM` command adds expired rows to the free space map so that the space can be reused. When `VACUUM` is run regularly on a table that is frequently updated, the space occupied by the expired rows can be promptly reused, preventing the table file from growing larger. It is also important to run `VACUUM` before the free space map is filled. For heavily updated tables, you may need to run `VACUUM` at least once a day to prevent the table from becoming bloated.

> **Caution** When a table is significantly bloated, it is better to run `VACUUM` before running `ANALYZE`. Analyzing a severely bloated table can generate poor statistics if the sample contains empty pages, so it is good practice to vacuum a bloated table before analyzing it.

When a table accumulates significant bloat, running the `VACUUM` command is insufficient. For small tables, running `VACUUM FULL <table_name>` can reclaim space used by rows that overflowed the free space map and reduce the size of the table file. However, a `VACUUM FULL` statement is an expensive operation that requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock and may take an exceptionally long and unpredictable amount of time to finish for large tables. You should run `VACUUM FULL` on tables during a time when users and applications do not require access to the tables being vacuumed, such as during a time of low activity, or during a maintenance window.

### Removing Bloat from Append-Optimized Tables

Append-optimized tables are handled much differently than heap tables. Although append-optimized tables allow update, insert, and delete operations, these operations are not optimized and are not recommended with append-optimized tables. If you heed this advice and use append-optimized for *load-once/read-many* workloads, `VACUUM` on an append-optimized table runs almost instantaneously.

If you do run `UPDATE` or `DELETE` commands on an append-optimized table, expired rows are tracked in an auxiliary bitmap instead of the free space map. `VACUUM` is the only way to recover the space. Running `VACUUM` on an append-optimized table with expired rows compacts a table by rewriting the entire table without the expired rows. However, no action is performed if the percentage of expired rows in the table exceeds the value of the `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` configuration parameter, which is 10 (10%) by default. The threshold is checked on each segment, so it is possible that a `VACUUM` statement will compact an append-only table on some segments and not others. Compacting append-only tables can be deactivated by setting the `gp_appendonly_compaction` parameter to `no`.

### Removing Bloat from Indexes

The `VACUUM` command only recovers space from tables. To recover the space from indexes, recreate them using the `REINDEX` command.

To rebuild all indexes on a table run `REINDEX *table_name*;`. To rebuild a particular index, run `REINDEX *index_name*;`. `REINDEX` sets the `reltuples` and `relpages` to 0 (zero) for the index, To update those statistics, run `ANALYZE` on the table after reindexing.

### Removing Bloat from System Catalogs

WarehousePG cluster catalog tables are heap tables and can become bloated over time. As database objects are created, altered, or dropped, expired rows are left in the system catalogs. Using `gpload` to load data contributes to the bloat since `gpload` creates and drops external tables. (Rather than use `gpload`, it is recommended to use `gpfdist` to load data.)

Bloat in the system catalogs increases the time require to scan the tables, for example, when creating explain plans. System catalogs are scanned frequently and if they become bloated, overall system performance is degraded.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

It is recommended to run `VACUUM` on system catalog tables nightly and at least weekly. At the same time, running `REINDEX SYSTEM` on system catalog tables removes bloat from the indexes. Alternatively, you can reindex system tables using the `reindexdb` utility with the `-s` (`--system`) option. After removing catalog bloat, run `ANALYZE` to update catalog table statistics.

These are WarehousePG cluster catalog maintenance steps.

1. Perform a `REINDEX` on the system catalog tables to rebuild the system catalog indexes. This removes bloat in the indexes and improves `VACUUM` performance.

   > **Note** When performing `REINDEX` on the system catalog tables, locking will occur on the tables and might have an impact on currently running queries. You can schedule the `REINDEX` operation during a period of low activity to avoid disrupting ongoing business operations.

2. Perform a `VACUUM` on system catalog tables.

3. Perform an `ANALYZE` on the system catalog tables to update the table statistics.

If you are performing system catalog maintenance during a maintenance period and you need to stop a process due to time constraints, run the WarehousePG function `pg_cancel_backend(<PID>)` to safely stop a WarehousePG process.

The following script runs `REINDEX`, `VACUUM`, and `ANALYZE` on the system catalogs.

```
#!/bin/bash
DBNAME="<database_name>"
SYSTABLES="' pg_catalog.' || relname || ';' from pg_class a, pg_namespace b \
where a.relnamespace=b.oid and b.nspname='pg_catalog' and a.relkind='r'"

reindexdb -s -d $DBNAME
psql -tc "SELECT 'VACUUM' || $SYSTABLES" $DBNAME | psql -a $DBNAME
analyzedb -a -s pg_catalog -d $DBNAME
```

If the system catalogs become significantly bloated, you must run `VACUUM FULL` during a scheduled downtime period. During this period, stop all catalog activity on the system; `VACUUM FULL` takes `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` locks against the system catalog. Running `VACUUM` regularly on system catalog tables can prevent the need for this more costly procedure.

These are steps for intensive system catalog maintenance.

1. Stop all catalog activity on the WarehousePG cluster.
2. Perform a `VACUUM FULL` on the system catalog tables. See the following Note.
3. Perform an `ANALYZE` on the system catalog tables to update the catalog table statistics.

> **Note** The system catalog table `pg_attribute` is usually the largest catalog table. If the `pg_attribute` table is significantly bloated, a `VACUUM FULL` operation on the table might require a significant amount of time and might need to be performed separately. The presence of both of these conditions indicate a significantly bloated `pg_attribute` table that might require a long `VACUUM FULL` time:

- The `pg_attribute` table contains a large number of records.
- The diagnostic message for `pg_attribute` is `significant amount of bloat` in the `gp_toolkit.gp_bloat_diag` view.

**Parent topic:** System Monitoring and Maintenance

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 5.6.3 Monitoring WarehousePG Log Files

Know the location and content of system log files and monitor them on a regular basis and not just when problems arise.

The following table shows the locations of the various WarehousePG log files. In file paths:

- `$GPADMIN_HOME` refers to the home directory of the `gpadmin` operating system user.
- `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` refers to the coordinator data directory on the WarehousePG coordinator host.
- `$GPDATA_DIR` refers to a data directory on the WarehousePG segment host.
- `host` identifies the WarehousePG segment host name.
- `segprefix` identifies the segment prefix.
- `N` identifies the segment instance number.
- `date` is a date in the format `YYYYMMDD`.

| Path | Description |
|---|---|
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/*` | Many different types of log files, directory on each server. `$GPADMIN_HOME` is the default location for the `gpAdminLogs/` directory. You can specify a different location when you run an administrative utility command. |
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/gpinitsystem_date.log` | system initialization log |
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/gpstart_date.log` | start log |
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/gpstop_date.log` | stop log |
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/gpsegstart.py_host:gpadmin_date.log` | segment host start log |
| `$GPADMIN_HOME/gpAdminLogs/gpsegstop.py_host:gpadmin_date.log` | segment host stop log |
| `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/log/startup.log`, `$GPDATA_DIR/segprefixN/log/startup.log` | segment instance start log |
| `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/log/*.csv`, `$GPDATA_DIR/segprefixN/log/*.csv` | coordinator and segment database logs |
| `$GPDATA_DIR/mirror/segprefixN/log/*.csv` | mirror segment database logs |
| `$GPDATA_DIR/primary/segprefixN/log/*.csv` | primary segment database logs |
| `/var/log/messages` | Global Linux system messages |

Use `gplogfilter -t` (`--trouble`) first to search the coordinator log for messages beginning with `ERROR:`, `FATAL:`, or `PANIC:`. Messages beginning with `WARNING` may also provide useful information.

To search log files on the segment hosts, use the WarehousePG `gplogfilter` utility with `gpssh` to connect to segment hosts from the coordinator host. You can identify corresponding log entries in segment logs by the `statement_id`.

WarehousePG can be configured to rotate database logs based on the size and/or age of the current log file. The `log_rotation_size` configuration parameter sets the size of an individual log file that triggers rotation. When the current log file size is equal to or greater than this size, the file is closed and a new log file is created. The `log_rotation_age` configuration parameter specifies the age of the current log file that triggers rotation. When the specified time has elapsed since the current log file was created, a new log file is created. The default `log_rotation_age`, 1d, creates a new log file 24 hours after the current log file was created.

**Parent topic:** System Monitoring and Maintenance

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.7 Loading Data

Description of the different ways to add data to WarehousePG.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

### INSERT Statement with Column Values

A singleton `INSERT` statement with values adds a single row to a table. The row flows through the coordinator and is distributed to a segment. This is the slowest method and is not suitable for loading large amounts of data.

### COPY Statement

The PostgreSQL `COPY` statement copies data from an external file into a database table. It can insert multiple rows more efficiently than an `INSERT` statement, but the rows are still passed through the coordinator. All of the data is copied in one command; it is not a parallel process.

Data input to the `COPY` command is from a file or the standard input. For example:

```
COPY table FROM '/data/mydata.csv' WITH CSV HEADER;
```

Use `COPY` to add relatively small sets of data, for example dimension tables with up to ten thousand rows, or one-time data loads.

Use `COPY` when scripting a process that loads small amounts of data, less than 10 thousand rows.

Since COPY is a single command, there is no need to deactivate autocommit when you use this method to populate a table.

You can run multiple concurrent `COPY` commands to improve performance.

### External Tables

External tables provide access to data in sources outside of WarehousePG. They can be accessed with `SELECT` statements and are commonly used with the Extract, Load, Transform (ELT) pattern, a variant of the Extract, Transform, Load (ETL) pattern that takes advantage of WarehousePG's fast parallel data loading capability.

With ETL, data is extracted from its source, transformed outside of the database using external transformation tools, such as Informatica or Datastage, and then loaded into the database.

With ELT, WarehousePG external tables provide access to data in external sources, which could be read-only files (for example, text, CSV, or XML files), Web servers, Hadoop file systems, executable OS programs, or the WarehousePG `gpfdist` file server, described in the next section. External tables support SQL operations such as select, sort, and join so the data can be loaded and transformed simultaneously, or loaded into a *load table* and transformed in the database into target tables.

The external table is defined with a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement, which has a `LOCATION` clause to define the location of the data and a `FORMAT` clause to define the formatting of the source data so that the system can parse the input data. Files use the `file://` protocol, and must reside on a segment host in a location accessible by the WarehousePG superuser. The data can be spread out among the segment hosts with no more than one file per primary segment on each host. The number of files listed in the `LOCATION` clause is the number of segments that will read the external table in parallel.

### External Tables with Gpfdist

The fastest way to load large fact tables is to use external tables with `gpfdist`. `gpfdist` is a file server program using an HTTP protocol that serves external data files to WarehousePG segments in parallel. A `gpfdist` instance can serve 200 MB/second and many `gpfdist` processes can run simultaneously, each serving up a portion of the data to be loaded. When you begin the load using a statement such as `INSERT INTO <table> SELECT * FROM <external_table>`, the `INSERT` statement is parsed by the coordinator and distributed to the primary segments. The segments connect to the `gpfdist` servers and retrieve the data in parallel, parse and validate the data, calculate a hash from the distribution key data and, based on the hash key, send the row to its destination segment. By default, each `gpfdist` instance will accept up to 64 connections from segments. With many segments and `gpfdist` servers participating in the load, data can be loaded at very high rates.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Primary segments access external files in parallel when using `gpfdist` up to the value of `gp_external_max_segs`. When optimizing `gpfdist` performance, maximize the parallelism as the number of segments increase. Spread the data evenly across as many ETL nodes as possible. Split very large data files into equal parts and spread the data across as many file systems as possible.

Run two `gpfdist` instances per file system. `gpfdist` tends to be CPU bound on the segment nodes when loading. But if, for example, there are eight racks of segment nodes, there is lot of available CPU on the segments to drive more `gpfdist` processes. Run `gpfdist` on as many interfaces as possible. Be aware of bonded NICs and be sure to start enough `gpfdist` instances to work them.

It is important to keep the work even across all these resources. The load is as fast as the slowest node. Skew in the load file layout will cause the overall load to bottleneck on that resource.

The `gp_external_max_segs` configuration parameter controls the number of segments each `gpfdist` process serves. The default is 64. You can set a different value in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file on the coordinator. Always keep `gp_external_max_segs` and the number of `gpfdist` processes an even factor; that is, the `gp_external_max_segs` value should be a multiple of the number of `gpfdist` processes. For example, if there are 12 segments and 4 `gpfdist` processes, the planner round robins the segment connections as follows:

```
Segment 1  - gpfdist 1
Segment 2  - gpfdist 2
Segment 3  - gpfdist 3
Segment 4  - gpfdist 4
Segment 5  - gpfdist 1
Segment 6  - gpfdist 2
Segment 7  - gpfdist 3
Segment 8  - gpfdist 4
Segment 9  - gpfdist 1
Segment 10 - gpfdist 2
Segment 11 - gpfdist 3
Segment 12 - gpfdist 4
```

Drop indexes before loading into existing tables and re-create the index after loading. Creating an index on pre-existing data is faster than updating it incrementally as each row is loaded.

Run `ANALYZE` on the table after loading. Deactivate automatic statistics collection during loading by setting `gp_autostats_mode` to `NONE`. Run `VACUUM` after load errors to recover space.

Performing small, high frequency data loads into heavily partitioned column-oriented tables can have a high impact on the system because of the number of physical files accessed per time interval.

### Gpload

`gpload` is a data loading utility that acts as an interface to the WarehousePG external table parallel loading feature.

Beware of using `gpload` as it can cause catalog bloat by creating and dropping external tables. Use `gpfdist` instead, since it provides the best performance.

`gpload` runs a load using a specification defined in a YAML-formatted control file. It performs the following operations:

- Invokes `gpfdist` processes
- Creates a temporary external table definition based on the source data defined
- Runs an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `MERGE` operation to load the source data into the target table in the database
- Drops the temporary external table
- Cleans up `gpfdist` processes

The load is accomplished in a single transaction.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Best Practices

- Drop any indexes on an existing table before loading data and recreate the indexes after loading. Newly creating an index is faster than updating an index incrementally as each row is loaded.
- Deactivate automatic statistics collection during loading by setting the `gp_autostats_mode` configuration parameter to `NONE`.
- External tables are not intended for frequent or ad hoc access.
- When using `gpfdist`, maximize network bandwidth by running one `gpfdist` instance for each NIC on the ETL server. Divide the source data evenly between the `gpfdist` instances.
- When using `gpload`, run as many simultaneous `gpload` instances as resources allow. Take advantage of the CPU, memory, and networking resources available to increase the amount of data that can be transferred from ETL servers to the WarehousePG.
- Use the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` clause of the `COPY` statement to set a limit for the number or percentage of rows that can have errors before the `COPY FROM` command is cancelled. The reject limit is per segment; when any one segment exceeds the limit, the command is cancelled and no rows are added. Use the `LOG ERRORS` clause to save error rows. If a row has errors in the formatting—for example missing or extra values, or incorrect data types—WarehousePG stores the error information and row internally. Use the `gp_read_error_log()` built-in SQL function to access this stored information.
- If the load has errors, run `VACUUM` on the table to recover space.
- After you load data into a table, run `VACUUM` on heap tables, including system catalogs, and `ANALYZE` on all tables. It is not necessary to run `VACUUM` on append-optimized tables. If the table is partitioned, you can vacuum and analyze just the partitions affected by the data load. These steps clean up any rows from prematurely ended loads, deletes, or updates and update statistics for the table.
- Recheck for segment skew in the table after loading a large amount of data. You can use a query like the following to check for skew:

```
SELECT gp_segment_id, count(*)
FROM schema.table
GROUP BY gp_segment_id ORDER BY 2;
```

- By default, `gpfdist` assumes a maximum record size of 32K. To load data records larger than 32K, you must increase the maximum row size parameter by specifying the `-m <*bytes*>` option on the `gpfdist` command line. If you use `gpload`, set the `MAX_LINE_LENGTH` parameter in the `gpload` control file.

> **Note** Integrations with Informatica Power Exchange are currently limited to the default 32K record length.

#### Additional Information

See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for detailed instructions for loading data using `gpfdist` and `gpload`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.8 Identifying and Mitigating Heap Table Performance Issues

**Symptom**:

The first scan of tuples after bulk data load, modification, or deletion jobs on heap tables are running slow or hanging.

**Potential Cause**:

When a workload involves a bulk load, modification, or deletion of data in a heap table, the first scan post-operation may generate a large amount of WAL data when checksums are enabled ( `data_check_sums=true` ) or hint bits are logged ( `wal_log_hints=true` ), leading to slow or hung jobs.

Affected workloads include: restoring from a backup, loading data with `COPY` , cluster expansion, `CTAS` / `INSERT` / `UPDATE` / `DELETE` operations, and `ALTER TABLE` operations that modify tuples.

**Explanation**:

WarehousePG uses hint bits to mark tuples as created and/or deleted by transactions. Hint bits, when set, can help in determining visibility of tuples without expensive `pg_clog` and `pg_subtrans` commit log lookups.

Hint bits are updated for every tuple on the first scan of the tuple after its creation or deletion. Because hint bits are checked and set on a per-tuple basis, even a read can result in heavy writes. When data checksums are enabled for heap tables (the default), hint bit updates are always WAL-logged.

**Solution**:

If you have restored or loaded a complete database comprised primarily of heap tables, you may choose to run `VACUUM` against the entire database.

Alternatively, if you can identify the individual tables affected, you have two options:

1. Schedule and take a maintenance window and run `VACUUM` on the specific tables that have been loaded, updated, or deleted in bulk. This operation should scan all of the tuples and set and WAL-log the hint bits, taking the performance hit up-front.

2. Run `SELECT count(*) FROM <table-name>` on each table. This operation similarly scans all of the tuples and sets and WAL-logs the hint bits.

All subsequent scans as part of regular workloads on the tables should not be required to generate hints or their accompanying full page image WAL records.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.9 Security

Best practices to ensure the highest level of system security.

### Basic Security Best Practices

- Secure the `gpadmin` system user. WarehousePG requires a UNIX user id to install and initialize the WarehousePG cluster. This system user is referred to as `gpadmin` in the WarehousePG documentation. The `gpadmin` user is the default database superuser in WarehousePG, as well as the file system owner of the WarehousePG installation and its underlying data files. The default administrator account is fundamental to the design of WarehousePG. The system cannot run without it, and there is no way to limit the access of the `gpadmin` user id. This `gpadmin` user can bypass all security features of WarehousePG. Anyone who logs on to a WarehousePG host with this user id can read, alter, or delete any data, including system catalog data and database access rights. Therefore, it is very important to secure the `gpadmin` user id and only allow essential system administrators access to it. Administrators should only log in to WarehousePG as `gpadmin` when performing certain system maintenance tasks (such as upgrade or expansion). Database users should never log on as `gpadmin`, and ETL or production workloads should never run as `gpadmin`.
- Assign a distinct role to each user who logs in. For logging and auditing purposes, each user who is allowed to log in to WarehousePG should be given their own database role. For applications or web services, consider creating a distinct role for each application or service. See "Creating New Roles (Users)" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Use groups to manage access privileges. See "Creating Groups (Role Membership)" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.
- Limit users who have the `SUPERUSER` role attribute. Roles that are superusers bypass all access privilege checks in WarehousePG, as well as resource queuing. Only system administrators should be given superuser rights. See "Altering Role Attributes" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Password Strength Guidelines

To protect the network from intrusion, system administrators should verify the passwords used within an organization are strong ones. The following recommendations can strengthen a password:

- Minimum password length recommendation: At least 9 characters. MD5 passwords should be 15 characters or longer.
- Mix upper and lower case letters.
- Mix letters and numbers.
- Include non-alphanumeric characters.
- Pick a password you can remember.

The following are recommendations for password cracker software that you can use to determine the strength of a password.

- John The Ripper. A fast and flexible password cracking program. It allows the use of multiple word lists and is capable of brute-force password cracking. It is available online at http://www.openwall.com/john/.
- Crack. Perhaps the most well-known password cracking software, Crack is also very fast, though not as easy to use as John The Ripper. It can be found online at http://www.crypticide.com/alecm/security/crack/c50-faq.html.

The security of the entire system depends on the strength of the root password. This password should be at least 12 characters long and include a mix of capitalized letters, lowercase letters, special characters, and numbers. It should not be based on any dictionary word.

Password expiration parameters should be configured. The following commands must be run as `root` or using `sudo`.

Ensure the following line exists within the file `/etc/libuser.conf` under the `[import]` section.

```
login_defs = /etc/login.defs
```

Ensure no lines in the `[userdefaults]` section begin with the following text, as these words override settings from `/etc/login.defs`:

- `LU_SHADOWMAX`
- `LU_SHADOWMIN`
- `LU_SHADOWWARNING`

Ensure the following command produces no output. Any accounts listed by running this command should be locked.

```
grep "^+:" /etc/passwd /etc/shadow /etc/group
```

> **Caution** Change your passwords after initial setup.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
cd /etc
chown root:root passwd shadow group gshadow
chmod 644 passwd group
chmod 400 shadow gshadow
```

Find all the files that are world-writable and that do not have their sticky bits set.

```
find / -xdev -type d \( -perm -0002 -a ! -perm -1000 \) -print
```

Set the sticky bit ( `# chmod +t {dir}` ) for all the directories that result from running the previous command.

Find all the files that are world-writable and fix each file listed.

```
find / -xdev -type f -perm -0002 -print
```

Set the right permissions ( `# chmod o-w {file}` ) for all the files generated by running the aforementioned command.

Find all the files that do not belong to a valid user or group and either assign an owner or remove the file, as appropriate.

```
find / -xdev \( -nouser -o -nogroup \) -print
```

Find all the directories that are world-writable and ensure they are owned by either root or a system account (assuming only system accounts have a User ID lower than 500). If the command generates any output, verify the assignment is correct or reassign it to root.

```
find / -xdev -type d -perm -0002 -uid +500 -print
```

Authentication settings such as password quality, password expiration policy, password reuse, password retry attempts, and more can be configured using the Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) framework. PAM looks in the directory `/etc/pam.d` for application-specific configuration information. Running `authconfig` or `system-config-authentication` will re-write the PAM configuration files, destroying any manually made changes and replacing them with system defaults.

The default `pam_cracklib` PAM module provides strength checking for passwords. To configure `pam_cracklib` to require at least one uppercase character, lowercase character, digit, and special character, as recommended by the U.S. Department of Defense guidelines, edit the file `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the following parameters in the line corresponding to password requisite `pam_cracklib.so try_first_pass` .

```
retry=3:
dcredit=-1. Require at least one digit
ucredit=-1. Require at least one upper case character
ocredit=-1. Require at least one special character
lcredit=-1. Require at least one lower case character
minlen=14. Require a minimum password length of 14.
```

For example:

```
password required pam_cracklib.so try_first_pass retry=3\minlen=14 dcredit=-1 ucredit=-1 ocredit=-1 lcredit=-1
```

These parameters can be set to reflect your security policy requirements. Note that the password restrictions are not applicable to the root password.

The `pam_tally2` PAM module provides the capability to lock out user accounts after a specified number of failed login attempts. To enforce password lockout, edit the file `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the following lines:

- The first of the auth lines should include:

  ```
  auth required pam_tally2.so deny=5 onerr=fail unlock_time=900
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- The first of the account lines should include:

```
account required pam_tally2.so
```

Here, the deny parameter is set to limit the number of retries to 5 and the `unlock_time` has been set to 900 seconds to keep the account locked for 900 seconds before it is unlocked. These parameters may be configured appropriately to reflect your security policy requirements. A locked account can be manually unlocked using the `pam_tally2` utility:

```
/sbin/pam_tally2 --user {username} --reset
```

You can use PAM to limit the reuse of recent passwords. The remember option for the `pam_unix` module can be set to remember the recent passwords and prevent their reuse. To accomplish this, edit the appropriate line in `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the remember option.

For example:

```
password sufficient pam_unix.so [ … existing_options …]
remember=5
```

You can set the number of previous passwords to remember to appropriately reflect your security policy requirements.

```
cd /etc
chown root:root passwd shadow group gshadow
chmod 644 passwd group
chmod 400 shadow gshadow
```

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.10 Encrypting Data and Database Connections

Best practices for implementing encryption and managing keys.

Encryption can be used to protect data in a WarehousePG cluster in the following ways:

- Connections between clients and the master database can be encrypted with SSL. This is enabled by setting the `ssl` server configuration parameter to `on` and editing the `pg_hba.conf` file. See "Encrypting Client/Server Connections" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for information about enabling SSL in WarehousePG.
- WarehousePG allows SSL encryption of data in transit between the WarehousePG parallel file distribution server, `gpfdist`, and segment hosts. See Encrypting gpfdist Connections for more information.
- Network communications between hosts in the WarehousePG cluster can be encrypted using IPsec. An authenticated, encrypted VPN is established between every pair of hosts in the cluster. Check your operating system documentation for IPsec support, or consider a third-party solution such as that provided by Zettaset.
- The `pgcrypto` module of encryption/decryption functions protects data at rest in the database. Encryption at the column level protects sensitive information, such as passwords, Social Security numbers, or credit card numbers. See Encrypting Data in Tables using PGP for an example.

### Best Practices

- Encryption ensures that data can be seen only by users who have the key required to decrypt the data.
- Encrypting and decrypting data has a performance cost; only encrypt data that requires encryption.
- Do performance testing before implementing any encryption solution in a production system.
- Server certificates in a production WarehousePG cluster should be signed by a certificate authority (CA) so that clients can authenticate the server. The CA may be local if all clients are local to the organization.
- Client connections to WarehousePG should use SSL encryption whenever the connection goes through an insecure link.
- A symmetric encryption scheme, where the same key is used to both encrypt and decrypt, has better performance than an asymmetric scheme and should be used when the key can be shared safely.
- Use functions from the pgcrypto module to encrypt data on disk. The data is encrypted and decrypted in the database process, so it is important to secure the client connection with SSL to avoid transmitting unencrypted data.
- Use the gpfdists protocol to secure ETL data as it is loaded into or unloaded from the database. SeeEncrypting gpfdist Connections.

### Key Management

Whether you are using symmetric (single private key) or asymmetric (public and private key) cryptography, it is important to store the coordinator or private key securely. There are many options for storing encryption keys, for example, on a file system, key vault, encrypted USB, trusted platform module (TPM), or hardware security module (HSM).

Consider the following questions when planning for key management:

- Where will the keys be stored?
- When should keys expire?
- How are keys protected?
- How are keys accessed?
- How can keys be recovered and revoked?

The Open Web Application Security Project (OWASP) provides a very comprehensive guide to securing encryption keys.

### Encrypting Data at Rest with pgcrypto

The pgcrypto module for WarehousePG provides functions for encrypting data at rest in the database. Administrators can encrypt columns with sensitive information, such as social security numbers or credit card numbers, to provide an extra layer of protection. Database data stored in encrypted form cannot be read by users who do not have the encryption key, and the data cannot be read directly from disk.

pgcrypto is installed by default when you install WarehousePG. You must explicitly enable pgcrypto in each database in which you want to use the module.

pgcrypto allows PGP encryption using symmetric and asymmetric encryption. Symmetric encryption encrypts and decrypts data using the same key and is faster than asymmetric encryption. It is the preferred method in an environment where exchanging secret keys is not an issue. With asymmetric encryption, a public key is used to encrypt data and a private key is used to decrypt data. This is slower then symmetric encryption and it requires a stronger key.

Using pgcrypto always comes at the cost of performance and maintainability. It is important to use encryption only with the data that requires it. Also, keep in mind that you cannot search encrypted data by indexing the data.

Before you implement in-database encryption, consider the following PGP limitations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- No support for signing. That also means that it is not checked whether the encryption sub-key belongs to the coordinator key.
- No support for encryption key as coordinator key. This practice is generally discouraged, so this limitation should not be a problem.
- No support for several subkeys. This may seem like a problem, as this is common practice. On the other hand, you should not use your regular GPG/PGP keys with pgcrypto, but create new ones, as the usage scenario is rather different.

WarehousePG is compiled with zlib by default; this allows PGP encryption functions to compress data before encrypting. When compiled with OpenSSL, more algorithms will be available.

Because pgcrypto functions run inside the database server, the data and passwords move between pgcrypto and the client application in clear-text. For optimal security, you should connect locally or use SSL connections and you should trust both the system and database administrators.

pgcrypto configures itself according to the findings of the main PostgreSQL configure script.

When compiled with `zlib`, pgcrypto encryption functions are able to compress data before encrypting.

Pgcrypto has various levels of encryption ranging from basic to advanced built-in functions. The following table shows the supported encryption algorithms.

| Value Functionality | Built-in | With OpenSSL |
|---|---|---|
| MD5 | yes | yes |
| SHA1 | yes | yes |
| SHA224/256/384/512 | yes | yes [^1] |
| Other digest algorithms | no | yes [^2] |
| Blowfish | yes | yes |
| AES | yes | yes [^3] |
| DES/3DES/CAST5 | no | yes |
| Raw Encryption | yes | yes |
| PGP Symmetric-Key | yes | yes |
| PGP Public Key | yes | yes |

[^1]: SHA2 algorithms were added to OpenSSL in version 0.9.8. For older versions, pgcrypto will use built-in code

[^2]: Any digest algorithm OpenSSL supports is automatically picked up. This is not possible with ciphers, which need to be supported explicitly.

[^3]: AES is included in OpenSSL since version 0.9.7. For older versions, pgcrypto will use built-in code.

### Creating PGP Keys

To use PGP asymmetric encryption in WarehousePG, you must first create public and private keys and install them.

This section assumes you are installing WarehousePG on a Linux machine with the Gnu Privacy Guard ( `gpg` ) command line tool. Download and install Gnu Privacy Guard (GPG) for your operating system from https://www.gnupg.org/download/. On the GnuPG website you will find installers for popular Linux distributions and links for Windows and Mac OS X installers.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. As root, run the following command and choose option 1 from the menu:

```
# gpg --gen-key
gpg (GnuPG) 2.0.14; Copyright (C) 2009 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.

gpg: directory `/root/.gnupg' created
gpg: new configuration file `/root/.gnupg/gpg.conf' created
gpg: WARNING: options in `/root/.gnupg/gpg.conf' are not yet active during this run
gpg: keyring `/root/.gnupg/secring.gpg' created
gpg: keyring `/root/.gnupg/pubring.gpg' created
Please select what kind of key you want:
 (1) RSA and RSA (default)
 (2) DSA and Elgamal
 (3) DSA (sign only)
 (4) RSA (sign only)
Your selection? 1
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Respond to the prompts and follow the instructions, as shown in this example:

```
RSA keys may be between 1024 and 4096 bits long.
What keysize do you want? (2048) Press enter to accept default key size
Requested keysize is 2048 bits
Please specify how long the key should be valid.
 0 = key does not expire
 <n> = key expires in n days
 <n>w = key expires in n weeks
 <n>m = key expires in n months
 <n>y = key expires in n years
 Key is valid for? (0) 365
Key expires at Wed 13 Jan 2016 10:35:39 AM PST
Is this correct? (y/N) y

GnuPG needs to construct a user ID to identify your key.

Real name: John Doe
Email address: jdoe@email.com
Comment:
You selected this USER-ID:
 "John Doe <jdoe@email.com>"

Change (N)ame, (C)omment, (E)mail or (O)kay/(Q)uit? O
You need a Passphrase to protect your secret key.
(For this demo the passphrase is blank.)
can't connect to `/root/.gnupg/S.gpg-agent': No such file or directory
You don't want a passphrase - this is probably a *bad* idea!
I will do it anyway.  You can change your passphrase at any time,
using this program with the option "--edit-key".

We need to generate a lot of random bytes. It is a good idea to perform
some other action (type on the keyboard, move the mouse, utilize the
disks) during the prime generation; this gives the random number
generator a better chance to gain enough entropy.
We need to generate a lot of random bytes. It is a good idea to perform
some other action (type on the keyboard, move the mouse, utilize the
disks) during the prime generation; this gives the random number
generator a better chance to gain enough entropy.
gpg: /root/.gnupg/trustdb.gpg: trustdb created
gpg: key 2027CC30 marked as ultimately trusted
public and secret key created and signed.

gpg:  checking the trustdbgpg:
      3 marginal(s) needed, 1 complete(s) needed, PGP trust model
gpg:  depth: 0  valid:   1  signed:   0  trust: 0-, 0q, 0n, 0m, 0f, 1u
gpg:  next trustdb check due at 2016-01-13
pub   2048R/2027CC30 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
      Key fingerprint = 7EDA 6AD0 F5E0 400F 4D45   3259 077D 725E 2027 CC30
uid                  John Doe <jdoe@email.com>
sub   2048R/4FD2EFBB 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
```

3. List the PGP keys by entering the following command:

```
gpg --list-secret-keys
/root/.gnupg/secring.gpg
------------------------
sec   2048R/2027CC30 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
uid                  John Doe <jdoe@email.com>
ssb   2048R/4FD2EFBB 2015-01-13
```

2027CC30 is the public key and will be used to *encrypt* data in the database. 4FD2EFBB is the private (secret) key and will be used to *decrypt* data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Export the keys using the following commands:

```
# gpg -a --export 4FD2EFBB > public.key
# gpg -a --export-secret-keys 2027CC30 > secret.key
```

See the pgcrypto documentation for more information about PGP encryption functions.

### Encrypting Data in Tables using PGP

This section shows how to encrypt data inserted into a column using the PGP keys you generated.

1. Dump the contents of the `public.key` file and then copy it to the clipboard:

```
# cat public.key
-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
. . .
WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8Hkk8qb5x/
HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlGWE8pvgEx
/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojDyC65KJci
Pv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=XZ8J
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
```

2. Enable the `pgcrypto` extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto;
```

3. Create a table called `userssn` and insert some sensitive data, social security numbers for Bob and Alice, in this example. Paste the public.key contents after "dearmor(".

```
CREATE TABLE userssn( ssn_id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
    username varchar(100), ssn bytea);

INSERT INTO userssn(username, ssn)
SELECT robotccs.username, pgp_pub_encrypt(robotccs.ssn, keys.pubkey) AS
ssn
FROM (
VALUES ('Alice', '123-45-6788'), ('Bob', '123-45-6799'))
AS robotccs(username, ssn)
CROSS JOIN (SELECT dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.22 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBGCb7NQBCADfCoMFIbjb6dup8eJHgTpo8TILiIubqhqASHqUPe/v3eI+p9W8
mZbTZo+EUFCJmFZx8RWw0s0t4DG3fzBQOv5y2oBEu9sg3ofgFkK6TaQV7ueZfifx
S1DxQE8kWEFrGsB13VJlLMMLPr4tdjtaYOdn5b+3N4/8GOJALn2CeWrP8lIXaget
. . .
T9dl2HhMOatlVhBUOcYrqSBEWgwtQbX36hFzhp1tNCDOvtDpsfLNHJr8vIpXAeyz
juW0/vEgrAtSK8P2/kmRsmNM/LJIbCBHD+tTSTHZ194+QYUc1KYXW4NV5LLW08MY
skETyovyVDFYEpTMVrRKJYLROhEBv8cqYgKq1XtcIH8eiwJIZ0L1L/1Cw7Z/BpRT
WbrwmhXTpqi+/Vdm7q9gPFoAfw/ur44hJGsc13bQxdmluTigSN2f+qf9RzA=
=xdQf
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----')  as pubkey) AS keys;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Verify that the `ssn` column is encrypted.

```
test_db=# select * from userssn;
ssn_id   | 1
username | Alice
ssn      | \301\300L\003\235M%_O\322\357\273\001\010\000\272\227\010\341\216\360\217C\020\261)_\367
[\227\034\313:C\354d<\337\006Q\351('\2330\031lX\263Qf\341\262\200\3015\235\036AK\242fL+\315g\322
7u\270*\304\361\355\220\021\330"\200%\264\274}R\213\377\363\235\366\030\023)\364!\331\303\237t\277=
f \015\004\242\231\263\225%\032\271a\001\035\277\021\375X\232\304\305/\340\334\0131\325\344[~\362\0
37-\251\336\303\340\377_\011\275\301/MY\334\343\245\244\372y\257S\374\230\346\277\373W\346\230\276\
017fi\226Q\307\012\326\3646\000\326\005:E\364W\252=zz\010(:\343Y\237\257iqU\0326\350=v0\362\327\350\
315G^\027:K_9\254\362\354\215<\001\304\357\331\355\323,\302\213Fe\265\315\232\367\254\245%(\\\373
4\254\230\331\356\006B\257\333\326H\022\013\353\216F?\023\220\370\035vH5/\227\344b\322\227\026\362=\
42\033\322<\001}\243\224;)\030zqX\214\340\221\035\275U\345\327\214\032\351\223c\2442\345\304K\016\
011\214\307\227\237\270\026`R\205\205a~1\263\236[\037C\260\031\205\374\245\317\033k|\366\253\037
---------+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
ssn_id   | 2
username | Bob
ssn      | \301\300L\003\235M%_O\322\357\273\001\007\377t>\345\343,\200\256\272\300\012\033M4\265\032L
L[v\262k\244\2435\264\232B\357\370d9\375\011\002\327\235<\246\210b\030\012\337@\226Z\361\246\032\00
7`\012c\353]\355d7\360T\335\314\367\370;X\371\350*\231\212\260B\010#RQ0\223\253c7\0132b\355\242\233\34
1\000\370\370\366\013\022\357\005i\202~\005\\z\301o\012\230Z\014\362\244\324&\243g\351\362\325\375
\213\032\226$\2751\256XR\346k\266\030\234\267\201vUh\004\250\337A\231\223u\247\366/i\022\275\276\350\2
20\316\306|\203+\010\261;\232\254tp\255\243\261\373Rq;\316w\357\006\207\374U\333\365\365\245hg\031\005
\322\347ea\220\015l\212g\337\264\336b\263\004\311\210.4\340G+\221\274D\035\375\2216\241`\346a0\273wE\2
12\342y^\202\262|A7\202t\240\333p\345G\373\253\243oCO\011\360\247\211\014\024{\272\271\322<\001\267
\347\240\005\213\0078\036\210\307$\317\322\311\222\035\354\006<\266\264\004\376\251q\256\220(+\030\
3270\013c\327\272\212%\363\033\252\322\337\354\276\225\232\201\212^\304\210\2269@\3230\370{
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Extract the public.key ID from the database:

```
SELECT pgp_key_id(dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
. . .
WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8Hkk8qb5x/
HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlGWE8pvgEx
/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojDyC65KJci
Pv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=XZ8J
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----'));

pgp_key_id | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
```

This shows that the PGP key ID used to encrypt the `ssn` column is 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB. It is recommended to perform this step whenever a new key is created and then store the ID for tracking.

You can use this key to see which key pair was used to encrypt the data:

```
SELECT username, pgp_key_id(ssn) As key_used
FROM userssn;
username | Bob
key_used | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
---------+-----------------
username | Alice
key_used | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
```

> **Note** Different keys may have the same ID. This is rare, but is a normal event. The client application should try to decrypt with each one to see which fits — like handling `ANYKEY`. See pgp_key_id() in the pgcrypto documentation.

6. Decrypt the data using the private key.

```
SELECT username, pgp_pub_decrypt(ssn, keys.privkey)
                AS decrypted_ssn FROM userssn
                CROSS JOIN
                (SELECT dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PRIVATE KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

lQOYBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
. . .
QNPSvz62WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8H
kk8qb5x/HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlG
WE8pvgEx/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojD
yC65KJciPv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=fa+6
-----END PGP PRIVATE KEY BLOCK-----') AS privkey) AS keys;

username | decrypted_ssn
----------+---------------
 Alice    | 123-45-6788
 Bob      | 123-45-6799
(2 rows)
```

If you created a key with passphrase, you may have to enter it here. However for the purpose of this example, the passphrase is blank.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Encrypting gpfdist Connections

The `gpfdists` protocol is a secure version of the `gpfdist` protocol that securely identifies the file server and the WarehousePG and encrypts the communications between them. Using `gpfdists` protects against eavesdropping and man-in-the-middle attacks.

The `gpfdists` protocol implements client/server SSL security with the following notable features:

- Client certificates are required.
- Multilingual certificates are not supported.
- A Certificate Revocation List (CRL) is not supported.
- The TLSv1 protocol is used with the `TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA` encryption algorithm. These SSL parameters cannot be changed.
- SSL renegotiation is supported.
- The SSL ignore host mismatch parameter is set to false.
- Private keys containing a passphrase are not supported for the `gpfdist` file server (server.key) or for the WarehousePG (client.key).
- It is the user's responsibility to issue certificates that are appropriate for the operating system in use. Generally, converting certificates to the required format is supported, for example using the SSL Converter at https://www.sslshopper.com/ssl-converter.html.

A `gpfdist` server started with the `--ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdists` protocol. A `gpfdist` server started without the `--ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdist` protocol. For more detail about `gpfdist` refer to the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

There are two ways to enable the `gpfdists` protocol:

- Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option and then use the `gpfdists` protocol in the `LOCATION` clause of a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement.
- Use a YAML control file with the SSL option set to true and run `gpload`. Running `gpload` starts the `gpfdist` server with the `--ssl` option and then uses the `gpfdists` protocol.

When using gpfdists, the following client certificates must be located in the `$PGDATA/gpfdists` directory on each segment:

- The client certificate file, `client.crt`
- The client private key file, `client.key`
- The trusted certificate authorities, `root.crt`

> **Important** Do not protect the private key with a passphrase. The server does not prompt for a passphrase for the private key, and loading data fails with an error if one is required.

When using `gpload` with SSL you specify the location of the server certificates in the YAML control file. When using `gpfdist` with SSL, you specify the location of the server certificates with the --ssl option.

The following example shows how to securely load data into an external table. The example creates a readable external table named `ext_expenses` from all files with the `txt` extension, using the `gpfdists` protocol. The files are formatted with a pipe ( `|` ) as the column delimiter and an empty space as null.

1. Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option on the segment hosts.

2. Log into the database and run the following command:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses
   ( name text, date date, amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
LOCATION ('gpfdists://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt', 'gpfdists://etlhost-2:8082/*.txt')
FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ') ;
```

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.11 Tuning SQL Queries

The WarehousePG cost-based optimizer evaluates many strategies for running a query and chooses the least costly method.

Like other RDBMS optimizers, the WarehousePG optimizer takes into account factors such as the number of rows in tables to be joined, availability of indexes, and cardinality of column data when calculating the costs of alternative execution plans. The optimizer also accounts for the location of the data, preferring to perform as much of the work as possible on the segments and to minimize the amount of data that must be transmitted between segments to complete the query.

When a query runs slower than you expect, you can view the plan the optimizer selected as well as the cost it calculated for each step of the plan. This will help you determine which steps are consuming the most resources and then modify the query or the schema to provide the optimizer with more efficient alternatives. You use the SQL `EXPLAIN` statement to view the plan for a query.

The optimizer produces plans based on statistics generated for tables. It is important to have accurate statistics to produce the best plan. See Updating Statistics with ANALYZE in this guide for information about updating statistics.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

### How to Generate Explain Plans

The `EXPLAIN` and `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` statements are useful tools to identify opportunities to improve query performance. `EXPLAIN` displays the query plan and estimated costs for a query, but does not run the query. `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` runs the query in addition to displaying the query plan. `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` discards any output from the `SELECT` statement; however, other operations in the statement are performed (for example, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`). To use `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` on a DML statement without letting the command affect the data, explicitly use `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` in a transaction (`BEGIN; EXPLAIN ANALYZE ...; ROLLBACK;`).

`EXPLAIN ANALYZE` runs the statement in addition to displaying the plan with additional information as follows:

- Total elapsed time (in milliseconds) to run the query
- Number of workers (segments) involved in a plan node operation
- Maximum number of rows returned by the segment (and its segment ID) that produced the most rows for an operation
- The memory used by the operation
- Time (in milliseconds) it took to retrieve the first row from the segment that produced the most rows, and the total time taken to retrieve all rows from that segment.

### How to Read Explain Plans

An explain plan is a report detailing the steps the WarehousePG optimizer has determined it will follow to run a query. The plan is a tree of nodes, read from bottom to top, with each node passing its result to the node directly above. Each node represents a step in the plan, and one line for each node identifies the operation performed in that step—for example, a scan, join, aggregation, or sort operation. The node also identifies the method used to perform the operation. The method for a scan operation, for example, may be a sequential scan or an index scan. A join operation may perform a hash join or nested loop join.

Following is an explain plan for a simple query. This query finds the number of rows in the contributions table stored at each segment.

```
gpadmin=# EXPLAIN SELECT gp_segment_id, count(*)
                  FROM contributions
                  GROUP BY gp_segment_id;
                                  QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Gather Motion 2:1  (slice2; segments: 2)  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=2 width=12)
   ->  GroupAggregate  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=1 width=12)
         Group By: gp_segment_id
         ->  Sort  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=1 width=12)
               Sort Key: gp_segment_id
               ->  Redistribute Motion 2:2  (slice1; segments: 2)  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=1 width=12)
                     Hash Key: gp_segment_id
                     ->  Result  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=1 width=12)
                           ->  GroupAggregate  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=1 width=12)
                                 Group By: gp_segment_id
                                 ->  Sort  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=7 width=4)
                                       Sort Key: gp_segment_id
                                       ->  Seq Scan on table1  (cost=0.00..431.00 rows=7 width=4)
 Optimizer status: GPORCA
(14 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This plan has eight nodes – Seq Scan, Sort, GroupAggregate, Result, Redistribute Motion, Sort, GroupAggregate, and finally Gather Motion. Each node contains three cost estimates: cost (in sequential page reads), the number of rows, and the width of the rows.

The cost is a two-part estimate. A cost of 1.0 is equal to one sequential disk page read. The first part of the estimate is the start-up cost, which is the cost of getting the first row. The second estimate is the total cost, the cost of getting all of the rows.

The rows estimate is the number of rows output by the plan node. The number may be lower than the actual number of rows processed or scanned by the plan node, reflecting the estimated selectivity of `WHERE` clause conditions. The total cost assumes that all rows will be retrieved, which may not always be the case (for example, if you use a `LIMIT` clause).

The width estimate is the total width, in bytes, of all the columns output by the plan node.

The cost estimates in a node include the costs of all its child nodes, so the top-most node of the plan, usually a Gather Motion, has the estimated total execution costs for the plan. This is this number that the query planner seeks to minimize.

Scan operators scan through rows in a table to find a set of rows. There are different scan operators for different types of storage. They include the following:

- Seq Scan on tables — scans all rows in the table.
- Index Scan — traverses an index to fetch the rows from the table.
- Bitmap Heap Scan — gathers pointers to rows in a table from an index and sorts by location on disk. (The operator is called a Bitmap Heap Scan, even for append-only tables.)
- Dynamic Seq Scan — chooses partitions to scan using a partition selection function.

Join operators include the following:

- Hash Join – builds a hash table from the smaller table with the join column(s) as hash key. Then scans the larger table, calculating the hash key for the join column(s) and probing the hash table to find the rows with the same hash key. Hash joins are typically the fastest joins in WarehousePG. The Hash Cond in the explain plan identifies the columns that are joined.
- Nested Loop – iterates through rows in the larger dataset, scanning the rows in the smaller dataset on each iteration. The Nested Loop join requires the broadcast of one of the tables so that all rows in one table can be compared to all rows in the other table. It performs well for small tables or tables that are limited by using an index. It is also used for Cartesian joins and range joins. There are performance implications when using a Nested Loop join with large tables. For plan nodes that contain a Nested Loop join operator, validate the SQL and ensure that the results are what is intended. Set the `enable_nestloop` server configuration parameter to OFF (default) to favor Hash Join.
- Merge Join – sorts both datasets and merges them together. A merge join is fast for pre-ordered data, but is very rare in the real world. To favor Merge Joins over Hash Joins, set the `enable_mergejoin` system configuration parameter to ON.

Some query plan nodes specify motion operations. Motion operations move rows between segments when required to process the query. The node identifies the method used to perform the motion operation. Motion operators include the following:

- Broadcast motion – each segment sends its own, individual rows to all other segments so that every segment instance has a complete local copy of the table. A Broadcast motion may not be as optimal as a Redistribute motion, so the optimizer typically only selects a Broadcast motion for small tables. A Broadcast motion is not acceptable for large tables. In the case where data was not distributed on the join key, a dynamic redistribution of the needed rows from one of the tables to another segment is performed.
- Redistribute motion – each segment rehashes the data and sends the rows to the appropriate segments according to hash key.
- Gather motion – result data from all segments is assembled into a single stream. This is the final operation for most query plans.

Other operators that occur in query plans include the following:

- Materialize – the planner materializes a subselect once so it does not have to repeat the work for each top-level row.
- InitPlan – a pre-query, used in dynamic partition elimination, performed when the values the planner needs to identify partitions to scan are unknown until execution time.
- Sort – sort rows in preparation for another operation requiring ordered rows, such as an Aggregation or Merge Join.
- Group By – groups rows by one or more columns.
- Group/Hash Aggregate – aggregates rows using a hash.
- Append – concatenates data sets, for example when combining rows scanned from partitions in a partitioned table.
- Filter – selects rows using criteria from a `WHERE` clause.
- Limit – limits the number of rows returned.

### Optimizing WarehousePG Queries

This topic describes WarehousePG features and programming practices that can be used to enhance system performance in some situations.

To analyze query plans, first identify the plan nodes where the estimated cost to perform the operation is very high. Determine if the estimated number of rows and cost seems reasonable relative to the number of rows for the operation performed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If using partitioning, validate that partition elimination is achieved. To achieve partition elimination the query predicate (`WHERE` clause) must be the same as the partitioning criteria. Also, the `WHERE` clause must not contain an explicit value and cannot contain a subquery.

Review the execution order of the query plan tree. Review the estimated number of rows. You want the execution order to build on the smaller tables or hash join result and probe with larger tables. Optimally, the largest table is used for the final join or probe to reduce the number of rows being passed up the tree to the topmost plan nodes. If the analysis reveals that the order of execution builds and/or probes is not optimal ensure that database statistics are up to date. Running `ANALYZE` will likely address this and produce an optimal query plan.

Look for evidence of computational skew. Computational skew occurs during query execution when execution of operators such as Hash Aggregate and Hash Join cause uneven execution on the segments. More CPU and memory are used on some segments than others, resulting in less than optimal execution. The cause could be joins, sorts, or aggregations on columns that have low cardinality or non-uniform distributions. You can detect computational skew in the output of the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` statement for a query. Each node includes a count of the maximum rows processed by any one segment and the average rows processed by all segments. If the maximum row count is much higher than the average, at least one segment has performed much more work than the others and computational skew should be suspected for that operator.

Identify plan nodes where a Sort or Aggregate operation is performed. Hidden inside an Aggregate operation is a Sort. If the Sort or Aggregate operation involves a large number of rows, there is an opportunity to improve query performance. A HashAggregate operation is preferred over Sort and Aggregate operations when a large number of rows are required to be sorted. Usually a Sort operation is chosen by the optimizer due to the SQL construct; that is, due to the way the SQL is written. Most Sort operations can be replaced with a HashAggregate if the query is rewritten. To favor a HashAggregate operation over a Sort and Aggregate operation ensure that the `enable_groupagg` server configuration parameter is set to `ON`.

When an explain plan shows a broadcast motion with a large number of rows, you should attempt to eliminate the broadcast motion. One way to do this is to use the `gp_segments_for_planner` server configuration parameter to increase the cost estimate of the motion so that alternatives are favored. The `gp_segments_for_planner` variable tells the query planner how many primary segments to use in its calculations. The default value is zero, which tells the planner to use the actual number of primary segments in estimates. Increasing the number of primary segments increases the cost of the motion, thereby favoring a redistribute motion over a broadcast motion. For example, setting `gp_segments_for_planner = 100000` tells the planner that there are 100,000 segments. Conversely, to influence the optimizer to broadcast a table and not redistribute it, set `gp_segments_for_planner` to a low number, for example 2.

#### WarehousePG Grouping Extensions

WarehousePG aggregation extensions to the `GROUP BY` clause can perform some common calculations in the database more efficiently than in application or procedure code:

- `GROUP BY ROLLUP(*col1*, *col2*, *col3*)`
- `GROUP BY CUBE(*col1*, *col2*, *col3*)`
- `GROUP BY GROUPING SETS((*col1*, *col2*), (*col1*, *col3*))`

A `ROLLUP` grouping creates aggregate subtotals that roll up from the most detailed level to a grand total, following a list of grouping columns (or expressions). `ROLLUP` takes an ordered list of grouping columns, calculates the standard aggregate values specified in the `GROUP BY` clause, then creates progressively higher-level subtotals, moving from right to left through the list. Finally, it creates a grand total.

A `CUBE` grouping creates subtotals for all of the possible combinations of the given list of grouping columns (or expressions). In multidimensional analysis terms, `CUBE` generates all the subtotals that could be calculated for a data cube with the specified dimensions.

> **Note** WarehousePG supports specifying a maximum of 12 `CUBE` grouping columns.

You can selectively specify the set of groups that you want to create using a `GROUPING SETS` expression. This allows precise specification across multiple dimensions without computing a whole `ROLLUP` or `CUBE`.

Refer to the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for details of these clauses.

#### Window Functions

Window functions apply an aggregation or ranking function over partitions of the result set—for example, `sum(population) over (partition by city)`. Window functions are powerful and, because they do all of the work in the database, they have performance advantages over front-end tools that produce similar results by retrieving detail rows from the database and reprocessing them.

- The `row_number()` window function produces row numbers for the rows in a partition, for example, `row_number() over (order by id)`.
- When a query plan indicates that a table is scanned in more than one operation, you may be able to use window functions to reduce the number of scans.
- It is often possible to eliminate self joins by using window functions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 5.12 High Availability

WarehousePG supports highly available, fault-tolerant database services when you enable and properly configure WarehousePG high availability features. To guarantee a required level of service, each component must have a standby ready to take its place if it should fail.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Best Practices

### Disk Storage

With the WarehousePG "shared-nothing" MPP architecture, the coordinator host and segment hosts each have their own dedicated memory and disk storage, and each master or segment instance has its own independent data directory. A larger number of disks improves I/O throughput when using RAID 5 (or 6) because striping increases parallel disk I/O. The RAID controller can continue to function with a failed disk because it saves parity data on each disk in a way that it can reconstruct the data on any failed member of the array. If a hot spare is configured (or an operator replaces the failed disk with a new one) the controller rebuilds the failed disk automatically.

RAID 1 exactly mirrors disks, so if a disk fails, a replacement is immediately available with performance equivalent to that before the failure. With RAID 5 each I/O for data on the failed array member must be reconstructed from data on the remaining active drives until the replacement disk is rebuilt, so there is a temporary performance degradation. If the WarehousePG coordinator and segments are mirrored, you can switch any affected WarehousePG instances to their mirrors during the rebuild to maintain acceptable performance.

A RAID disk array can still be a single point of failure, for example, if the entire RAID volume fails. At the hardware level, you can protect against a disk array failure by mirroring the array, using either host operating system mirroring or RAID controller mirroring, if supported.

It is important to regularly monitor available disk space on each segment host. Query the `gp_disk_free` external table in the `gptoolkit` schema to view disk space available on the segments. This view runs the Linux `df` command. Be sure to check that there is sufficient disk space before performing operations that consume large amounts of disk, such as copying a large table.

See `gp_toolkit.gp_disk_free` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Best Practices

- Use a hardware RAID storage solution with 8 to 24 disks.
- Use RAID 1, 5, or 6 so that the disk array can tolerate a failed disk.
- Configure a hot spare in the disk array to allow rebuild to begin automatically when disk failure is detected.
- Protect against failure of the entire disk array and degradation during rebuilds by mirroring the RAID volume.
- Monitor disk utilization regularly and add additional space when needed.
- Monitor segment skew to ensure that data is distributed evenly and storage is consumed evenly at all segments.

### Coordinator Mirroring

The WarehousePG coordinator instance is clients' single point of access to the system. The coordinator instance stores the global system catalog, the set of system tables that store metadata about the database instance, but no user data. If an unmirrored coordinator instance fails or becomes inaccessible, the WarehousePG instance is effectively off-line, since the entry point to the system has been lost. For this reason, a standby coordinator must be ready to take over if the primary coordinator fails.

Coordinator mirroring uses two processes, a sender on the active coordinator host and a receiver on the mirror host, to synchronize the mirror with the coordinator. As changes are applied to the coordinator system catalogs, the active coordinator streams its write-ahead log (WAL) to the mirror so that each transaction applied on the coordinator is applied on the mirror.

The mirror is a *warm standby*. If the primary coordinator fails, switching to the standby requires an administrative user to run the `gpactivatestandby` utility on the standby host so that it begins to accept client connections. Clients must reconnect to the new coordinator and will lose any work that was not committed when the primary failed.

See "Enabling High Availability Features" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more information.

#### Best Practices

- Set up a standby coordinator instance—a *mirror*—to take over if the primary coordinator fails.
- The standby can be on the same host or on a different host, but it is best practice to place it on a different host from the primary coordinator to protect against host failure.
- Plan how to switch clients to the new coordinator instance when a failure occurs, for example, by updating the coordinator address in DNS.
- Set up monitoring to send notifications in a system monitoring application or by email when the primary fails.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Segment Mirroring

WarehousePG segment instances each store and manage a portion of the database data, with coordination from the coordinator instance. If any unmirrored segment fails, the database may have to be shutdown and recovered, and transactions occurring after the most recent backup could be lost. Mirroring segments is, therefore, an essential element of a high availability solution.

A segment mirror is a hot standby for a primary segment. WarehousePG detects when a segment is unavailable and automatically activates the mirror. During normal operation, when the primary segment instance is active, data is replicated from the primary to the mirror in two ways:

- The transaction commit log is replicated from the primary to the mirror before the transaction is committed. This ensures that if the mirror is activated, the changes made by the last successful transaction at the primary are present at the mirror. When the mirror is activated, transactions in the log are applied to tables in the mirror.
- Second, segment mirroring uses physical file replication to update heap tables. WarehousePG Server stores table data on disk as fixed-size blocks packed with tuples. To optimize disk I/O, blocks are cached in memory until the cache fills and some blocks must be evicted to make room for newly updated blocks. When a block is evicted from the cache it is written to disk and replicated over the network to the mirror. Because of the caching mechanism, table updates at the mirror can lag behind the primary. However, because the transaction log is also replicated, the mirror remains consistent with the primary. If the mirror is activated, the activation process updates the tables with any unapplied changes in the transaction commit log.

When the acting primary is unable to access its mirror, replication stops and state of the primary changes to "Change Tracking." The primary saves changes that have not been replicated to the mirror in a system table to be replicated to the mirror when it is back on-line.

The coordinator automatically detects segment failures and activates the mirror. Transactions in progress at the time of failure are restarted using the new primary. Depending on how mirrors are deployed on the hosts, the database system may be unbalanced until the original primary segment is recovered. For example, if each segment host has four primary segments and four mirror segments, and a mirror is activated on one host, that host will have five active primary segments. Queries are not complete until the last segment has finished its work, so performance can be degraded until the balance is restored by recovering the original primary.

Administrators perform the recovery while WarehousePG is up and running by running the `gprecoverseg` utility. This utility locates the failed segments, verifies they are valid, and compares the transactional state with the currently active segment to determine changes made while the segment was offline. `gprecoverseg` synchronizes the changed database files with the active segment and brings the segment back online.

It is important to reserve enough memory and CPU resources on segment hosts to allow for increased activity from mirrors that assume the primary role during a failure. The formulas provided in Configuring Memory for WarehousePG for configuring segment host memory include a factor for the maximum number of primary hosts on any one segment during a failure. The arrangement of mirrors on the segment hosts affects this factor and how the system will respond during a failure. See Segment Mirroring Configurations for a discussion of segment mirroring options.

#### Best Practices

- Set up mirrors for all segments.
- Locate primary segments and their mirrors on different hosts to protect against host failure.
- Mirrors can be on a separate set of hosts or co-located on hosts with primary segments.
- Set up monitoring to send notifications in a system monitoring application or by email when a primary segment fails.
- Recover failed segments promptly, using the `gprecoverseg` utility, to restore redundancy and return the system to optimal balance.

### Dual Clusters

For some use cases, an additional level of redundancy can be provided by maintaining two WarehousePG clusters that store the same data. The decision to implement dual clusters should be made with business requirements in mind.

There are two recommended methods for keeping the data synchronized in a dual cluster configuration. The first method is called Dual ETL. ETL (extract, transform, and load) is the common data warehousing process of cleansing, transforming, validating, and loading data into a data warehouse. With Dual ETL, the ETL processes are performed twice, in parallel on each cluster, and validated each time. Dual ETL provides for a complete standby cluster with the same data. It also provides the capability to query the data on both clusters, doubling the processing throughput. The application can take advantage of both clusters as needed and also ensure that the ETL is successful and validated on both sides.

The second mechanism for maintaining dual clusters is backup and restore. The data is backedup on the primary cluster, then the backup is replicated to and restored on the second cluster. The backup and restore mechanism has higher latency than Dual ETL, but requires less application logic to be developed. Backup and restore is ideal for use cases where data modifications and ETL are done daily or less frequently.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Best Practices

- Consider a Dual Cluster configuration to provide an additional level of redundancy and additional query processing throughput.

### Backup and Restore

Backups are recommended for WarehousePG databases unless the data in the database can be easily and cleanly regenerated from source data. Backups protect from operational, software, or hardware errors.

The `gpbackup` utility makes backups in parallel across the segments, so that backups scale as the cluster grows in hardware size.

A backup strategy must consider where the backups will be written and where they will be stored. Backups can be taken to the local cluster disks, but they should not be stored there permanently. If the database and its backup are on the same storage, they can be lost simultaneously. The backup also occupies space that could be used for database storage or operations. After performing a local backup, the files should be copied to a safe, off-cluster location.

An alternative is to back up directly to an NFS mount. If each host in the cluster has an NFS mount, the backups can be written directly to NFS storage. A scale-out NFS solution is recommended to ensure that backups do not bottleneck on the IO throughput of the NFS device. Dell PowerScale (Isilon) is an example of this type of solution and can scale alongside the WarehousePG cluster.

#### Best Practices

- Back up WarehousePGs regularly unless the data is easily restored from sources.
- Use the `gpbackup` command to specify only the schema and tables that you want backed up.
- `gpbackup` places `SHARED ACCESS` locks on the set of tables to back up. Backups with fewer tables are more efficient for selectively restoring schemas and tables, since `gprestore` does not have to search through the entire database.
- If backups are saved to local cluster storage, move the files to a safe, off-cluster location when the backup is complete. Backup files and database files that reside on the same storage can be lost simultaneously.
- If backups are saved to NFS mounts, use a scale-out NFS solution such as Dell PowerScale (Isilon) to prevent IO bottlenecks.

### Detecting Failed Coordinator and Segment Instances

Recovering from system failures requires intervention from a system administrator, even when the system detects a failure and activates a standby for the failed component. In each case, the failed component must be replaced or recovered to restore full redundancy. Until the failed component is recovered, the active component lacks a standby, and the system may not be performing optimally. For these reasons, it is important to perform recovery operations promptly. Constant system monitoring ensures that administrators are aware of failures that demand their attention.

The WarehousePG server `ftsprobe` subprocess handles fault detection. `ftsprobe` connects to and scans all segments and database processes at intervals that you can configure with the `gp_fts_probe_interval` configuration parameter. If `ftsprobe` cannot connect to a segment, it marks the segment “down” in the WarehousePG cluster catalog. The segment remains down until an administrator runs the `gprecoverseg` recovery utility.

#### Best Practices

- Run the `gpstate` utility to see the overall state of the WarehousePG cluster.

#### Additional Information

*WarehousePG Administrator Guide*:

- Monitoring a WarehousePG cluster
- Recovering from Segment Failures

*WarehousePG Utility Guide*:

- gpstate - view state of the WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- gprecoverseg - recover a failed segment
- gpactivatestandby - make the standby coordinator the active coordinator

RDBMS MIB Specification

### Segment Mirroring Configurations

Segment mirroring allows database queries to fail over to a backup segment if the primary segment fails or becomes unavailable.

A primary segment and its mirror must be on different hosts to ensure high availability. Each host in a WarehousePG cluster has the same number of primary segments and mirror segments. Multi-homed hosts should have the same numbers of primary and mirror segments on each interface. This ensures that segment hosts and network resources are equally loaded when all primary segments are operational and brings the most resources to bear on query processing.

When a segment becomes unavailable, its mirror segment on another host becomes the active primary and processing continues. The additional load on the host creates skew and degrades performance, but should allow the system to continue. A database query is not complete until all segments return results, so a single host with an additional active primary segment has the same effect as adding an additional primary segment to every host in the cluster.

The least amount of performance degradation in a failover scenario occurs when no host has more than one mirror assuming the primary role. If multiple segments or hosts fail, the amount of degradation is determined by the host or hosts with the largest number of mirrors assuming the primary role. Spreading a host's mirrors across the remaining hosts minimizes degradation when any single host fails.

It is important, too, to consider the cluster's tolerance for multiple host failures and how to maintain a mirror configuration when expanding the cluster by adding hosts. There is no mirror configuration that is ideal for every situation.

You can allow WarehousePG to arrange mirrors on the hosts in the cluster using one of two standard configurations, or you can design your own mirroring configuration.

The two standard mirroring arrangements are *group mirroring* and *spread mirroring*:

- **Group mirroring** — Each host mirrors another host's primary segments. This is the default for gpinitsystem and gpaddmirrors.
- **Spread mirroring** — Mirrors are spread across the available hosts. This requires that the number of hosts in the cluster is greater than the number of segments per host.

You can design a custom mirroring configuration and use the WarehousePG `gpaddmirrors` or gpmovemirrors utilities to set up the configuration.

*Block mirroring* is a custom mirror configuration that divides hosts in the cluster into equally sized blocks and distributes mirrors evenly to hosts within the block. If a primary segment fails, its mirror on another host within the same block becomes the active primary. If a segment host fails, mirror segments on each of the other hosts in the block become active.

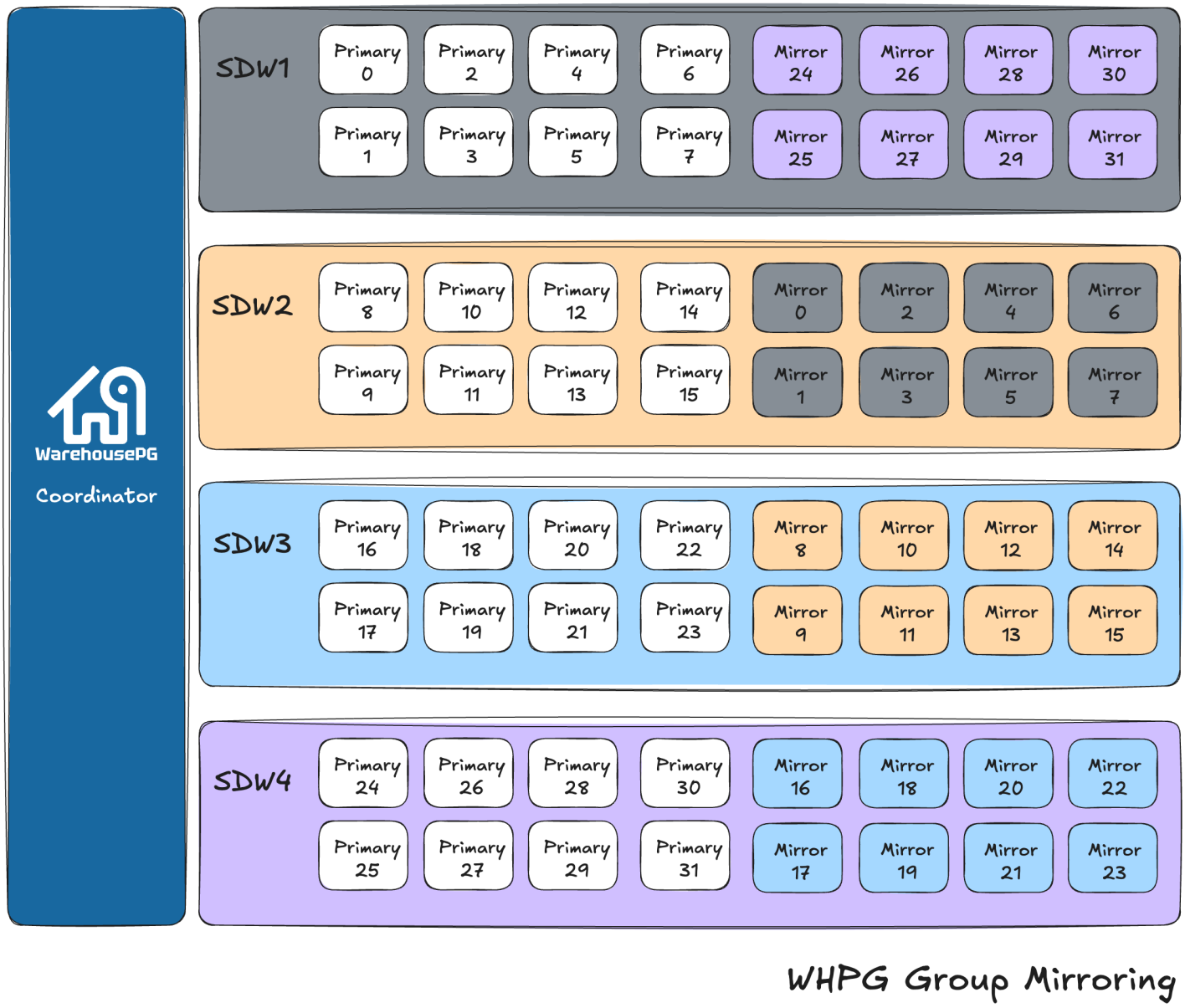
The following sections compare the group, spread, and block mirroring configurations.

#### Group Mirroring

Group mirroring is easiest to set up and is the default WarehousePG mirroring configuration. It is least expensive to expand, since it can be done by adding as few as two hosts. There is no need to move mirrors after expansion to maintain a consistent mirror configuration.

The following diagram shows a group mirroring configuration with eight primary segments on four hosts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




WHPG Group Mirroring

Unless both the primary and mirror of the same segment instance fail, up to half of your hosts can fail and the cluster will continue to run as long as resources (CPU, memory, and IO) are sufficient to meet the needs.

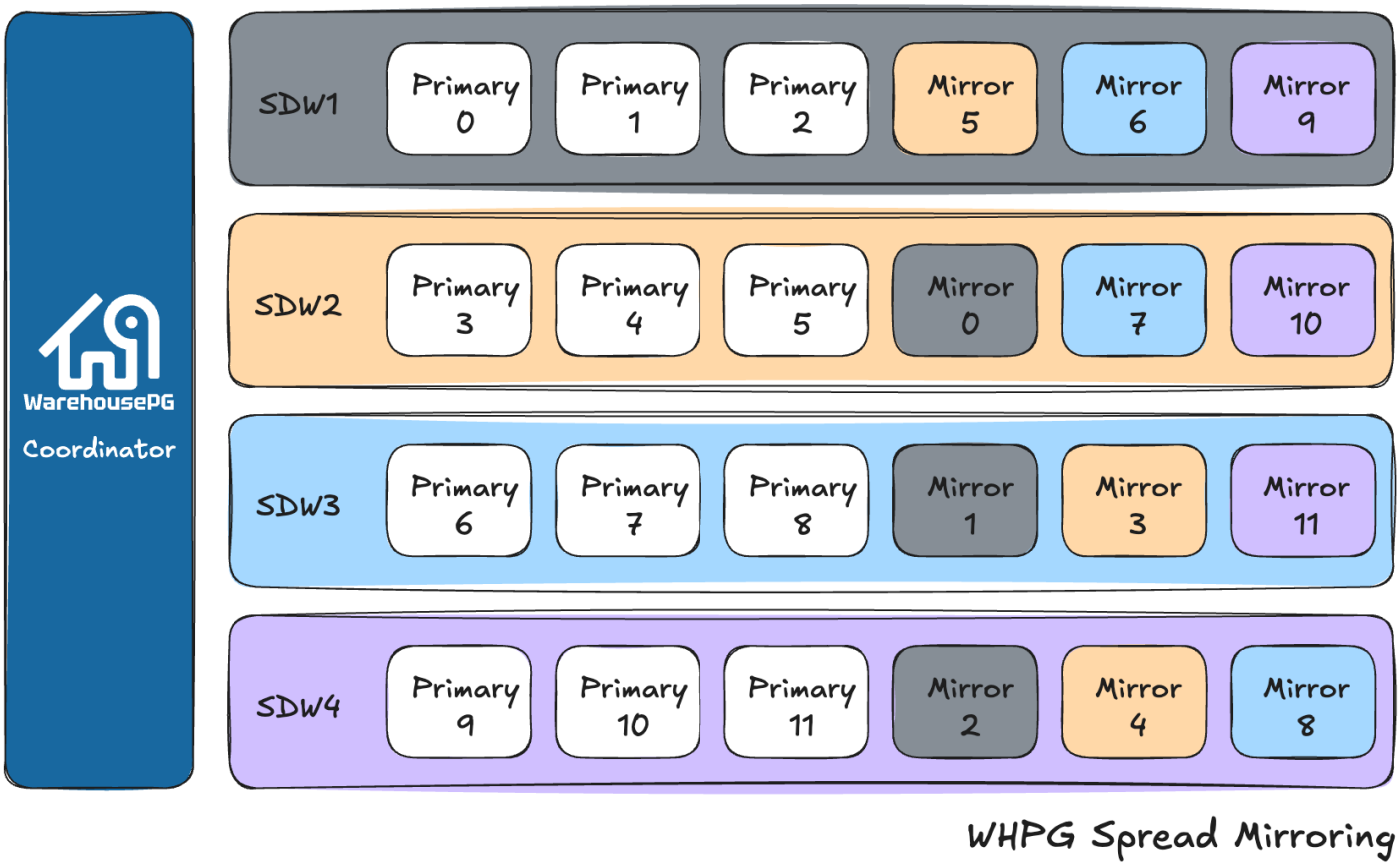
Any host failure will degrade performance by half or more because the host with the mirrors will have twice the number of active primaries. If your resource utilization is normally greater than 50%, you will have to adjust your workload until the failed host is recovered or replaced. If you normally run at less than 50% resource utilization the cluster can continue to operate at a degraded level of performance until the failure is corrected.

#### Spread Mirroring

With spread mirroring, mirrors for each host's primary segments are spread across as many hosts as there are segments per host. Spread mirroring is easy to set up when the cluster is initialized, but requires that the cluster have at least one more host than there are segments per host.

The following diagram shows the spread mirroring configuration for a cluster with three primaries on four hosts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




Expanding a cluster with spread mirroring requires more planning and may take more time. You must either add a set of hosts equal to the number of primaries per host plus one, or you can add two nodes in a group mirroring configuration and, when the expansion is complete, move mirrors to recreate the spread mirror configuration.

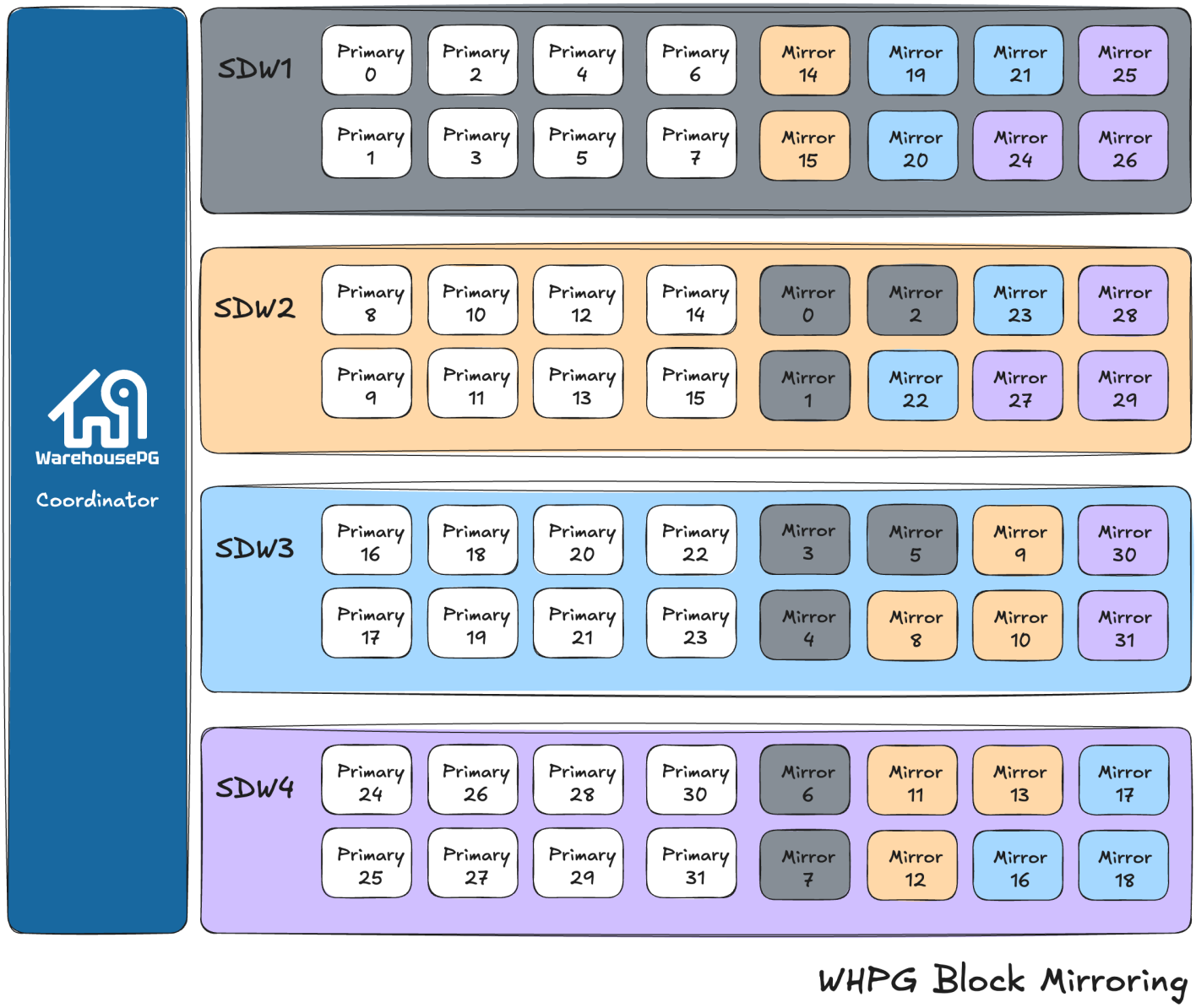
Spread mirroring has the least performance impact for a single failed host because each host's mirrors are spread across the maximum number of hosts. Load is increased by 1/*Nth*, where *N* is the number of primaries per host. Spread mirroring is, however, the most likely configuration to have a catastrophic failure if two or more hosts fail simultaneously.

#### Block Mirroring

With block mirroring, nodes are divided into blocks, for example a block of four or eight hosts, and the mirrors for segments on each host are placed on other hosts within the block. Depending on the number of hosts in the block and the number of primary segments per host, each host maintains more than one mirror for each other host's segments.

The following diagram shows a single block mirroring configuration for a block of four hosts, each with eight primary segments:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.




If there are eight hosts, an additional four-host block is added with the mirrors for primary segments 32 through 63 set up in the same pattern.

A cluster with block mirroring is easy to expand because each block is a self-contained primary mirror group. The cluster is expanded by adding one or more blocks. There is no need to move mirrors after expansion to maintain a consistent mirror setup. This configuration is able to survive multiple host failures as long as the failed hosts are in different blocks.

Because each host in a block has multiple mirror instances for each other host in the block, block mirroring has a higher performance impact for host failures than spread mirroring, but a lower impact than group mirroring. The expected performance impact varies by block size and primary segments per node. As with group mirroring, if the resources are available, performance will be negatively impacted but the cluster will remain available. If resources are insufficient to accommodate the added load you must reduce the workload until the failed node is replaced.

#### Implementing Block Mirroring

Block mirroring is not one of the automatic options WarehousePG offers when you set up or expand a cluster. To use it, you must create your own configuration.

For a new WarehousePG cluster, you can initialize the cluster without mirrors, and then run `gpaddmirrors -i mirror_config_file` with a custom mirror configuration file to create the mirrors for each block. You must create the file system locations for the mirror segments before you run `gpaddmirrors`. See the `gpaddmirrors` reference page in the *WarehousePG Management Utility Guide* for details.

If you expand a system that has block mirroring or you want to implement block mirroring at the same time you expand a cluster, it is recommended that you complete the expansion first, using the default grouping mirror configuration, and then use the `gpmovemirrors` utility to move mirrors into the block configuration.

To implement block mirroring with an existing system that has a different mirroring scheme, you must first determine the desired location for each mirror according to your block configuration, and then determine which of the existing mirrors must be relocated. Follow these steps:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

1. Run the following query to find the current locations of the primary and mirror segments:

   ```
   SELECT dbid, content, role, port, hostname, datadir FROM gp_segment_configuration WHERE content > -1 ;
   ```

   The `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog table contains the current segment configuration.

2. Create a list with the current mirror location and the desired block mirroring location, then remove any mirrors from the list that are already on the correct host.

3. Create an input file for the `gpmovemirrors` utility with an entry for each mirror that must be moved.

   The `gpmovemirrors` input file has the following format:

   ```
   old_address|port|data_dir new_address|port|data_dir
   ```

   Where `old_address` is the host name or IP address of the segment host, port is the communication port, and `data_dir` is the segment instance data directory.

   The following example `gpmovemirrors` input file specifies three mirror segments to move.

   ```
   sdw2|50001|/data2/mirror/gpseg1 sdw3|50001|/data/mirror/gpseg1
   sdw2|50001|/data2/mirror/gpseg2 sdw4|50001|/data/mirror/gpseg2
   sdw3|50001|/data2/mirror/gpseg3 sdw1|50001|/data/mirror/gpseg3
   ```

4. Run `gpmovemirrors` with a command like the following:

   ```
   gpmovemirrors -i mirror_config_file
   ```

The `gpmovemirrors` utility validates the input file, calls `gprecoverseg` to relocate each specified mirror, and removes the original mirror. It creates a backout configuration file which can be used as input to `gpmovemirrors` to undo the changes that were made. The backout file has the same name as the input file, with the suffix `_backout_timestamp` added.

See the *WarehousePG Management Utility Reference* for complete information about the `gpmovemirrors` utility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 6 WarehousePG Reference Guide

Reference information for WarehousePG clusters including SQL commands, system catalogs, environment variables, server configuration parameters, character set support, datatypes, and WarehousePG extensions.


- SQL Commands
- Data Types
- Summary of Built-in Functions
- Additional Supplied Modules
- Character Set Support
- Server Configuration Parameters
- System Catalogs
- The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema
- The gpperfmon Database
- Server Programmatic Interfaces
- SQL Features, Reserved and Key Words, and Compliance
- Objects Removed in WarehousePG 6


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1 SQL Commands

The following SQL commands are available in WarehousePG:

- ABORT
- ALTER AGGREGATE
- ALTER COLLATION
- ALTER CONVERSION
- ALTER DATABASE
- ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
- ALTER DOMAIN
- ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE
- ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- ALTER FOREIGN TABLE
- ALTER FUNCTION
- ALTER GROUP
- ALTER INDEX
- ALTER LANGUAGE
- ALTER OPERATOR
- ALTER OPERATOR CLASS
- ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY
- ALTER PROTOCOL
- ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
- ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE
- ALTER ROLE
- ALTER RULE
- ALTER SCHEMA
- ALTER SEQUENCE
- ALTER SERVER
- ALTER TABLE
- ALTER TABLESPACE
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- ALTER TYPE
- ALTER USER
- ALTER USER MAPPING
- ALTER VIEW
- ANALYZE
- BEGIN
- CHECKPOINT
- CLOSE
- CLUSTER
- COMMENT
- COMMIT
- COPY
- CREATE AGGREGATE
- CREATE CAST
- CREATE COLLATION
- CREATE CONVERSION
- CREATE DATABASE
- CREATE DOMAIN
- CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE
- CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
- CREATE FUNCTION
- CREATE GROUP
- CREATE INDEX
- CREATE LANGUAGE
- CREATE OPERATOR
- CREATE OPERATOR CLASS
- CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY
- CREATE PROTOCOL

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CREATE RESOURCE GROUP
- CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE
- CREATE ROLE
- CREATE RULE
- CREATE SCHEMA
- CREATE SEQUENCE
- CREATE SERVER
- CREATE TABLE
- CREATE TABLE AS
- CREATE TABLESPACE
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- CREATE TYPE
- CREATE USER
- CREATE USER MAPPING
- CREATE VIEW
- DEALLOCATE
- DECLARE
- DELETE
- DISCARD
- DO
- DROP AGGREGATE
- DROP CAST
- DROP COLLATION
- DROP CONVERSION
- DROP DATABASE
- DROP DOMAIN
- DROP EXTERNAL TABLE
- DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DROP FOREIGN TABLE
- DROP FUNCTION
- DROP GROUP
- DROP INDEX
- DROP LANGUAGE
- DROP OPERATOR
- DROP OPERATOR CLASS
- DROP OPERATOR FAMILY
- DROP OWNED
- DROP PROTOCOL
- DROP RESOURCE GROUP
- DROP RESOURCE QUEUE
- DROP ROLE
- DROP RULE
- DROP SCHEMA
- DROP SEQUENCE
- DROP SERVER
- DROP TABLE
- DROP TABLESPACE
- DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- DROP TYPE
- DROP USER
- DROP USER MAPPING
- DROP VIEW
- END
- EXECUTE
- EXPLAIN
- FETCH

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- GRANT
- INSERT
- LISTEN
- LOAD
- LOCK
- MOVE
- NOTIFY
- PREPARE
- REASSIGN OWNED
- REINDEX
- RELEASE SAVEPOINT
- RESET
- RETRIEVE
- REVOKE
- ROLLBACK
- ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT
- SAVEPOINT
- SELECT
- SELECT INTO
- SET
- SET CONSTRAINTS
- SET ROLE
- SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
- SET TRANSACTION
- SHOW
- START TRANSACTION
- TRUNCATE
- UNLISTEN
- UPDATE
- VACUUM
- VALUES

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- SQL Syntax Summary
- ABORT
- ALTER AGGREGATE
- ALTER COLLATION
- ALTER CONVERSION
- ALTER DATABASE
- ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
- ALTER DOMAIN
- ALTER EXTENSION
- ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE
- ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- ALTER FOREIGN TABLE
- ALTER FUNCTION
- ALTER GROUP
- ALTER INDEX
- ALTER LANGUAGE
- ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW
- ALTER OPERATOR
- ALTER OPERATOR CLASS
- ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY
- ALTER PROTOCOL
- ALTER RESOURCE GROUP
- ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE
- ALTER ROLE
- ALTER SCHEMA
- ALTER SEQUENCE
- ALTER SERVER
- ALTER TABLE
- ALTER TABLESPACE
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY


Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- ALTER TRIGGER
- ALTER TYPE
- ALTER USER
- ALTER USER MAPPING
- ALTER VIEW
- ANALYZE
- BEGIN
- CHECKPOINT
- CLOSE
- CLUSTER
- COMMENT
- COMMIT
- COPY
- CREATE AGGREGATE
- CREATE CAST
- CREATE COLLATION
- CREATE CONVERSION
- CREATE DATABASE
- CREATE DOMAIN
- CREATE EXTENSION
- CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE
- CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- CREATE FOREIGN TABLE
- CREATE FUNCTION
- CREATE GROUP
- CREATE INDEX
- CREATE LANGUAGE
- CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW
- CREATE OPERATOR

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CREATE OPERATOR CLASS
- CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY
- CREATE PROTOCOL
- CREATE RESOURCE GROUP
- CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE
- CREATE ROLE
- CREATE RULE
- CREATE SCHEMA
- CREATE SEQUENCE
- CREATE SERVER
- CREATE TABLE
- CREATE TABLE AS
- CREATE TABLESPACE
- CREATE TRIGGER
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- CREATE TYPE
- CREATE USER
- CREATE USER MAPPING
- CREATE VIEW
- DEALLOCATE
- DECLARE
- DELETE
- DISCARD
- DO
- DROP AGGREGATE
- DROP CAST
- DROP COLLATION
- DROP CONVERSION

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DROP DATABASE
- DROP DOMAIN
- DROP EXTENSION
- DROP EXTERNAL TABLE
- DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER
- DROP FOREIGN TABLE
- DROP FUNCTION
- DROP GROUP
- DROP INDEX
- DROP LANGUAGE
- DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW
- DROP OPERATOR
- DROP OPERATOR CLASS
- DROP OPERATOR FAMILY
- DROP OWNED
- DROP PROTOCOL
- DROP RESOURCE GROUP
- DROP RESOURCE QUEUE
- DROP ROLE
- DROP RULE
- DROP SCHEMA
- DROP SEQUENCE
- DROP SERVER
- DROP TABLE
- DROP TABLESPACE
- DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION
- DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
- DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER
- DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE
- DROP TRIGGER
- DROP TYPE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DROP USER
- DROP USER MAPPING
- DROP VIEW
- END
- EXECUTE
- EXPLAIN
- FETCH
- GRANT
- INSERT
- LOAD
- LOCK
- MOVE
- PREPARE
- REASSIGN OWNED
- REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW
- REINDEX
- RELEASE SAVEPOINT
- RESET
- RETRIEVE
- REVOKE
- ROLLBACK
- ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT
- SAVEPOINT
- SELECT
- SELECT INTO
- SET
- SET CONSTRAINTS
- SET ROLE
- SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
- SET TRANSACTION
- SHOW

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- START TRANSACTION
- TRUNCATE
- UPDATE
- VACUUM
- VALUES

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.1 ABORT

Terminates the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
ABORT [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

### Description

`ABORT` rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded. This command is identical in behavior to the standard SQL command ROLLBACK, and is present only for historical reasons.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional key words. They have no effect.

### Notes

Use `COMMIT` to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing `ABORT` when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message.

### Compatibility

This command is a WarehousePG extension present for historical reasons. `ROLLBACK` is the equivalent standard SQL command.

### See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.2 ALTER AGGREGATE

Changes the definition of an aggregate function

### Synopsis

```
ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> )  RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

where aggregate_signature is:

```
* |
[ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

### Description

`ALTER AGGREGATE` changes the definition of an aggregate function.

You must own the aggregate function to use `ALTER AGGREGATE`. To change the schema of an aggregate function, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the aggregate function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the aggregate function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any aggregate function anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: `IN` or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is `IN`.

- argname

  The name of an argument. Note that `ALTER AGGREGATE` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function's identity.

- argtype

  An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write `*` in place of the list of input data types. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write `ORDER BY` between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

- new_name

  The new name of the aggregate function.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the aggregate function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the aggregate function.

### Notes

The recommended syntax for referencing an ordered-set aggregate is to write `ORDER BY` between the direct and aggregated argument specifications, in the same style as in CREATE AGGREGATE. However, it will also work to omit `ORDER BY` and just run the direct and aggregated argument specifications into a single list. In this abbreviated form, if `VARIADIC "any"` was used in both the direct and aggregated argument lists, write `VARIADIC "any"` only once.

### Examples

To rename the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer` to `my_average`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) RENAME TO my_average;
```

To change the owner of the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer` to `joe`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) OWNER TO joe;
```

To move the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer` into schema `myschema`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) SET SCHEMA myschema;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER AGGREGATE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE AGGREGATE, DROP AGGREGATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.3 ALTER COLLATION

Changes the definition of a collation.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER COLLATION <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER COLLATION <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER COLLATION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing collation.

- new_name

  The new name of the collation.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the collation.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the collation.

### Description

You must own the collation to use `ALTER COLLATION`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the collation's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the collation. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any collation anyway.)

### Examples

To rename the collation de_DE to `german`:

```
ALTER COLLATION "de_DE" RENAME TO german;
```

To change the owner of the collation `en_US` to `joe`:

```
ALTER COLLATION "en_US" OWNER TO joe;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER COLLATION` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE COLLATION, DROP COLLATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.4 ALTER CONVERSION

Changes the definition of a conversion.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER CONVERSION <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER CONVERSION <name> OWNER TO <newowner>

ALTER CONVERSION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER CONVERSION` changes the definition of a conversion.

You must own the conversion to use `ALTER CONVERSION`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the conversion's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the conversion. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any conversion anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing conversion.

- newname

  The new name of the conversion.

- newowner

  The new owner of the conversion.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the conversion.

### Examples

To rename the conversion `iso_8859_1_to_utf8` to `latin1_to_unicode`:

```
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 RENAME TO
latin1_to_unicode;
```

To change the owner of the conversion `iso_8859_1_to_utf8` to `joe`:

```
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 OWNER TO joe;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER CONVERSION` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE CONVERSION, DROP CONVERSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.5 ALTER DATABASE

Changes the attributes of a database.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER DATABASE <name> [ WITH CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit> ]

ALTER DATABASE <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER DATABASE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER DATABASE <name> SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace>

ALTER DATABASE <name> SET <parameter> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT }
ALTER DATABASE <name> SET <parameter> FROM CURRENT
ALTER DATABASE <name> RESET <parameter>
ALTER DATABASE <name> RESET ALL
```

### Description

`ALTER DATABASE` changes the attributes of a database.

The first form changes the allowed connection limit for a database. Only the database owner or a superuser can change this setting.

The second form changes the name of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can rename a database; non-superuser owners must also have the `CREATEDB` privilege. You cannot rename the current database. Connect to a different database first.

The third form changes the owner of the database. To alter the owner, you must own the database and also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and you must have the `CREATEDB` privilege. (Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.)

The fourth form changes the default tablespace of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can do this; you must also have create privilege for the new tablespace. This command physically moves any tables or indexes in the database's old default tablespace to the new tablespace. Note that tables and indexes in non-default tablespaces are not affected.

The remaining forms change the session default for a configuration parameter for a WarehousePG. Whenever a new session is subsequently started in that database, the specified value becomes the session default value. The database-specific default overrides whatever setting is present in the server configuration file ( `postgresql.conf` ). Only the database owner or a superuser can change the session defaults for a database. Certain parameters cannot be set this way, or can only be set by a superuser.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the database whose attributes are to be altered.

- connlimit

  The maximum number of concurrent connections possible. The default of -1 means there is no limitation.

- parameter value

  Set this database's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If value is `DEFAULT` or, equivalently, `RESET` is used, the database-specific setting is removed, so the system-wide default setting will be inherited in new sessions. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all database-specific settings. See Server Configuration Parameters for information about all user-settable configuration parameters.

- newname

  The new name of the database.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the database.

- new_tablespace

  The new default tablespace of the database.

### Notes

It is also possible to set a configuration parameter session default for a specific role (user) rather than to a database. Role-specific settings override database-specific ones if there is a conflict. See `ALTER ROLE`.

### Examples

To set the default schema search path for the `mydatabase` database:

```
ALTER DATABASE mydatabase SET search_path TO myschema,
public, pg_catalog;
```

### Compatibility

The `ALTER DATABASE` statement is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE DATABASE, DROP DATABASE, SET, CREATE TABLESPACE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.6 ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

Changes default access privileges.

#### Synopsis

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
    [ FOR { ROLE | USER } <target_role> [, ...] ]
    [ IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] ]
    <abbreviated_grant_or_revoke>

where <abbreviated_grant_or_revoke> is one of:

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FUNCTIONS
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FUNCTIONS
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Description

`ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` allows you to set the privileges that will be applied to objects created in the future. (It does not affect privileges assigned to already-existing objects.) Currently, only the privileges for tables (including views and foreign tables), sequences, functions, and types (including domains) can be altered.

You can change default privileges only for objects that will be created by yourself or by roles that you are a member of. The privileges can be set globally (i.e., for all objects created in the current database), or just for objects created in specified schemas. Default privileges that are specified per-schema are added to whatever the global default privileges are for the particular object type.

As explained under GRANT, the default privileges for any object type normally grant all grantable permissions to the object owner, and may grant some privileges to `PUBLIC` as well. However, this behavior can be changed by altering the global default privileges with `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES`.

### Parameters

- target_role

  The name of an existing role of which the current role is a member. If `FOR ROLE` is omitted, the current role is assumed.

- schema_name

  The name of an existing schema. If specified, the default privileges are altered for objects later created in that schema. If `IN SCHEMA` is omitted, the global default privileges are altered.

- role_name

  The name of an existing role to grant or revoke privileges for. This parameter, and all the other parameters in abbreviated_grant_or_revoke, act as described under GRANT or REVOKE, except that one is setting permissions for a whole class of objects rather than specific named objects.

### Notes

Use psql's `\ddp` command to obtain information about existing assignments of default privileges. The meaning of the privilege values is the same as explained for `\dp` under GRANT.

If you wish to drop a role for which the default privileges have been altered, it is necessary to reverse the changes in its default privileges or use `DROP OWNED BY` to get rid of the default privileges entry for the role.

### Examples

Grant SELECT privilege to everyone for all tables (and views) you subsequently create in schema `myschema`, and allow role `webuser` to INSERT into them too:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT SELECT ON TABLES TO PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT INSERT ON TABLES TO webuser;
```

Undo the above, so that subsequently-created tables won't have any more permissions than normal:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE SELECT ON TABLES FROM PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE INSERT ON TABLES FROM webuser;
```

Remove the public EXECUTE permission that is normally granted on functions, for all functions subsequently created by role `admin`:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES FOR ROLE admin REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTIONS FROM PUBLIC;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

GRANT, REVOKE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.7 ALTER DOMAIN

Changes the definition of a domain.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER DOMAIN <name> { SET DEFAULT <expression> | DROP DEFAULT }

ALTER DOMAIN <name> { SET | DROP } NOT NULL

ALTER DOMAIN <name> ADD <domain_constraint> [ NOT VALID ]

ALTER DOMAIN <name> DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] <constraint_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]

ALTER DOMAIN <name> RENAME CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> TO <new_constraint_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> VALIDATE CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER DOMAIN` changes the definition of an existing domain. There are several sub-forms:

- **SET/DROP DEFAULT** — These forms set or remove the default value for a domain. Note that defaults only apply to subsequent `INSERT` commands. They do not affect rows already in a table using the domain.
- **SET/DROP NOT NULL** — These forms change whether a domain is marked to allow `NULL` values or to reject `NULL` values. You may only `SET NOT NULL` when the columns using the domain contain no null values.
- **ADD domain_constraint [ NOT VALID ]** — This form adds a new constraint to a domain using the same syntax as `CREATE DOMAIN`. When a new constraint is added to a domain, all columns using that domain will be checked against the newly added constraint. These checks can be suppressed by adding the new constraint using the `NOT VALID` option; the constraint can later be made valid using `ALTER DOMAIN ... VALIDATE CONSTRAINT`. Newly inserted or updated rows are always checked against all constraints, even those marked `NOT VALID`. `NOT VALID` is only accepted for `CHECK` constraints.
- **DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]** — This form drops constraints on a domain. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.
- **RENAME CONSTRAINT** — This form changes the name of a constraint on a domain.
- **VALIDATE CONSTRAINT** — This form validates a constraint previously added as `NOT VALID`, that is, verify that all data in columns using the domain satisfy the specified constraint.
- **OWNER** — This form changes the owner of the domain to the specified user.
- **RENAME** — This form changes the name of the domain.
- **SET SCHEMA** — This form changes the schema of the domain. Any constraints associated with the domain are moved into the new schema as well.

You must own the domain to use `ALTER DOMAIN`. To change the schema of a domain, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the domain's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the domain. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any domain anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing domain to alter.

- domain_constraint

  New domain constraint for the domain.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- constraint_name

  Name of an existing constraint to drop or rename.

- NOT VALID

  Do not verify existing column data for constraint validity.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the constraint.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

- new_name

  The new name for the domain.

- new_constraint_name

  The new name for the constraint.

- new_owner

  The user name of the new owner of the domain.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the domain.

### Examples

To add a `NOT NULL` constraint to a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET NOT NULL;
```

To remove a `NOT NULL` constraint from a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP NOT NULL;
```

To add a check constraint to a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK (char_length(VALUE) = 5);
```

To remove a check constraint from a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

To rename a check constraint on a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;
```

To move the domain into a different schema:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET SCHEMA customers;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`ALTER DOMAIN` conforms to the SQL standard, except for the `OWNER`, `RENAME`, `SET SCHEMA`, and `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` variants, which are WarehousePG extensions. The `NOT VALID` clause of the `ADD CONSTRAINT` variant is also a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE DOMAIN, DROP DOMAIN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.8 ALTER EXTENSION

Change the definition of an extension that is registered in a WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER EXTENSION <name> UPDATE [ TO <new_version> ]
ALTER EXTENSION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER EXTENSION <name> ADD <member_object>
ALTER EXTENSION <name> DROP <member_object>

where <member_object> is:

  ACCESS METHOD <object_name> |
  AGGREGATE <aggregate_name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) |
  CAST (<source_type> AS <target_type>) |
  COLLATION <object_name> |
  CONVERSION <object_name> |
  DOMAIN <object_name> |
  EVENT TRIGGER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN TABLE <object_name> |
  FUNCTION <function_name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [, ...] ] ) |
  MATERIALIZED VIEW <object_name> |
  OPERATOR <operator_name> (<left_type>, <right_type>) |
  OPERATOR CLASS <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  OPERATOR FAMILY <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <object_name> |
  SCHEMA <object_name> |
  SEQUENCE <object_name> |
  SERVER <object_name> |
  TABLE <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH PARSER <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <object_name> |
  TRANSFORM FOR <type_name> LANGUAGE <lang_name> |
  TYPE <object_name> |
  VIEW <object_name>

and <aggregate_signature> is:

* |
[ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

### Description

`ALTER EXTENSION` changes the definition of an installed extension. These are the subforms:

- UPDATE

  This form updates the extension to a newer version. The extension must supply a suitable update script (or series of scripts) that can modify the currently-installed version into the requested version.

- SET SCHEMA

  This form moves the extension member objects into another schema. The extension must be *relocatable*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ADD member_object

  This form adds an existing object to the extension. This is useful in extension update scripts. The added object is treated as a member of the extension. The object can only be dropped by dropping the extension.

- DROP member_object

  This form removes a member object from the extension. This is mainly useful in extension update scripts. The object is not dropped, only disassociated from the extension.

See Packaging Related Objects into an Extension for more information about these operations.

You must own the extension to use `ALTER EXTENSION`. The `ADD` and `DROP` forms also require ownership of the object that is being added or dropped.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an installed extension.

- new_version

  The new version of the extension. The new_version can be either an identifier or a string literal. If not specified, the command attempts to update to the default version in the extension control file.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the extension.

- object_name

- aggregate_name

- function_name

- operator_name

  The name of an object to be added to or removed from the extension. Names of tables, aggregates, domains, foreign tables, functions, operators, operator classes, operator families, sequences, text search objects, types, and views can be schema-qualified.

- source_type

  The name of the source data type of the cast.

- target_type

  The name of the target data type of the cast.

- argmode

  The mode of a function or aggregate argument: `IN`, `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. The default is `IN`.

  The command ignores the `OUT` arguments. Only the input arguments are required to determine the function identity. It is sufficient to list the `IN`, `INOUT`, and `VARIADIC` arguments.

- argname

  The name of a function or aggregate argument.

  The command ignores argument names, since only the argument data types are required to determine the function identity.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- argtype

  The data type of a function or aggregate argument.

- left_type

- right_type

  The data types of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified) . Specify `NONE` for the missing argument of a prefix or postfix operator.

- PROCEDURAL

  This is a noise word.

- type_name

  The name of the data type of the transform.

- lang_name

  The name of the language of the transform.

### Examples

To update the hstore extension to version 2.0:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore UPDATE TO '2.0';
```

To change the schema of the `hstore` extension to `utils`:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore SET SCHEMA utils;
```

To add an existing function to the `hstore` extension:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore ADD FUNCTION populate_record(anyelement, hstore);
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER EXTENSION` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.9 ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE

Changes the definition of an external table.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE <name> <action> [, ... ]
```

where action is one of:

```
  ADD [COLUMN] <new_column> <type>
  DROP [COLUMN] <column> [RESTRICT|CASCADE]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column> TYPE <type>
  OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

### Description

`ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` changes the definition of an existing external table. These are the supported `ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` actions:

- **ADD COLUMN** — Adds a new column to the external table definition.
- **DROP COLUMN** — Drops a column from the external table definition. If you drop readable external table columns, it only changes the table definition in WarehousePG. The `CASCADE` keyword is required if anything outside the table depends on the column, such as a view that references the column.
- **ALTER COLUMN TYPE** — Changes the data type of a table column.
- **OWNER** — Changes the owner of the external table to the specified user.

Use the ALTER TABLE command to perform these actions on an external table.

- Set (change) the table schema.
- Rename the table.
- Rename a table column.

You must own the external table to use `ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE`. To change the schema of an external table, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the external table's schema. A superuser has these privileges automatically.

Changes to the external table definition with either `ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` do not affect the external data.

The `ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` and `ALTER TABLE` commands cannot modify the type external table (read, write, web), the table `FORMAT` information, or the location of the external data. To modify this information, you must drop and recreate the external table definition.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing external table definition to alter.

- column

  Name of an existing column.

- new_column

  Name of a new column.

- type

  Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- new_owner

  The role name of the new owner of the external table.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column, such as a view that references the column.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

### Examples

Add a new column to an external table definition:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses ADD COLUMN manager text;
```

Change the owner of an external table:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE ext_data OWNER TO jojo;
```

Change the data type of an external table:

```
ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE ext_leads ALTER COLUMN acct_code TYPE integer
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` is a WarehousePG extension. There is no `ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE` statement in the SQL standard or regular PostgreSQL.

### See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, DROP EXTERNAL TABLE, ALTER TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.10 ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Changes the definition of a foreign-data wrapper.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name>
    [ HANDLER <handler_function> | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR <validator_function> | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] ) ]

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

### Description

`ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` changes the definition of a foreign-data wrapper. The first form of the command changes the support functions or generic options of the foreign-data wrapper. WarehousePG requires at least one clause. The second and third forms of the command change the owner or name of the foreign-data wrapper.

Only superusers can alter foreign-data wrappers. Additionally, only superusers can own foreign-data wrappers

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

- HANDLER handler_function

  Specifies a new handler function for the foreign-data wrapper.

- NO HANDLER

  Specifies that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a handler function.

  > **Note** You cannot access a foreign table that uses a foreign-data wrapper with no handler.

- VALIDATOR validator_function

  Specifies a new validator function for the foreign-data wrapper.

  Options to the foreign-data wrapper, servers, and user mappings may become invalid when you change the validator function. You must make sure that these options are correct before using the modified foreign-data wrapper. Note that WarehousePG checks any options specified in this `ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` command using the new validator.

- NO VALIDATOR

  Specifies that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a validator function.

- OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

  Change the foreign-data wrapper's options. `ADD` , `SET` , and `DROP` specify the action to perform. If no operation is explicitly specified, the default operation is `ADD` . Option names must be unique. WarehousePG validates names and values using the foreign-data wrapper's validator function, if any.

- OWNER TO new_owner

  Specifies the new owner of the foreign-data wrapper. Only superusers can own foreign-data wrappers.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- RENAME TO new_name

  Specifies the new name of the foreign-data wrapper.

### Examples

Change the definition of a foreign-data wrapper named `dbi` by adding a new option named `foo`, and removing the option named `bar`:

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi OPTIONS (ADD foo '1', DROP 'bar');
```

Change the validator function for a foreign-data wrapper named `dbi` to `bob.myvalidator`:

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi VALIDATOR bob.myvalidator;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), with the exception that the `HANDLER`, `VALIDATOR`, `OWNER TO`, and `RENAME TO` clauses are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.11 ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

Changes the definition of a foreign table.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    <action> [, ... ]
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

where action is one of:

```
    ADD [ COLUMN ] <column_name> <column_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ <column_constraint> [ ... ] ]
    DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] <column_name> [ RESTRICT | CASCADE ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <data_type>
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET DEFAULT <expression>
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> DROP DEFAULT
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET STATISTICS <integer>
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET ( <attribute_option> = <value> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> RESET ( <attribute_option> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ])
    DISABLE TRIGGER [ <trigger_name> | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE TRIGGER [ <trigger_name> | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE REPLICA TRIGGER <trigger_name>
    ENABLE ALWAYS TRIGGER <trigger_name>
    OWNER TO <new_owner>
    OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] )
```

### Description

`ALTER FOREIGN TABLE` changes the definition of an existing foreign table. There are several subforms of the command:

- ADD COLUMN

  This form adds a new column to the foreign table, using the same syntax as CREATE FOREIGN TABLE. Unlike the case when you add a column to a regular table, nothing happens to the underlying storage: this action simply declares that some new column is now accessible through the foreign table.

- DROP COLUMN [ IF EXISTS ]

  This form drops a column from a foreign table. You must specify `CASCADE` if any objects outside of the table depend on the column; for example, views. If you specify `IF EXISTS` and the column does not exist, no error is thrown. WarehousePG issues a notice instead.

- IF EXISTS

  If you specify `IF EXISTS` and the foreign table does not exist, no error is thrown. WarehousePG issues a notice instead.

- SET DATA TYPE

  This form changes the type of a column of a foreign table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- SET/DROP DEFAULT

  These forms set or remove the default value for a column. Default values apply only in subsequent `INSERT` or `UPDATE` commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

- SET/DROP NOT NULL

  Mark a column as allowing, or not allowing, null values.

- SET STATISTICS

  This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent `ANALYZE` operations. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

- SET ( attribute_option = value [, ...] ] )

- RESET ( attribute_option [, ... ] )

  This form sets or resets per-attribute options. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

- DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER

  These forms configure the firing of trigger(s) belonging to the foreign table. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

- OWNER

  This form changes the owner of the foreign table to the specified user.

- RENAME

  The `RENAME` forms change the name of a foreign table or the name of an individual column in a foreign table.

- SET SCHEMA

  This form moves the foreign table into another schema.

- OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

  Change options for the foreign table. `ADD` , `SET` , and `DROP` specify the action to perform. If no operation is explicitly specified, the default operation is `ADD` . Option names must be unique. WarehousePG validates names and values using the server's foreign-data wrapper.

You can combine all of the actions except `RENAME` and `SET SCHEMA` into a list of multiple alterations for WarehousePG to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command.

You must own the table to use `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE` . To change the schema of a foreign table, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the table's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the table. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any table anyway.) To add a column or to alter a column type, you must also have `USAGE` privilege on the data type.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing foreign table to alter.

- column_name

  The name of a new or existing column.

- new_column_name

  The new name for an existing column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- new_name

  The new name for the foreign table.

- data_type

  The data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column (for example, views referencing the column).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the column if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

- trigger_name

  Name of a single trigger to deactivate or enable.

- ALL

  Deactivate or activate all triggers belonging to the foreign table. (This requires superuser privilege if any of the triggers are internally generated triggers. The core system does not add such triggers to foreign tables, but add-on code could do so.)

- USER

  Deactivate or activate all triggers belonging to the foreign table except for internally generated triggers.

- new_owner

  The user name of the new owner of the foreign table.

- new_schema

  The name of the schema to which the foreign table will be moved.

### Notes

The key word `COLUMN` is noise and can be omitted.

Consistency with the foreign server is not checked when a column is added or removed with `ADD COLUMN` or `DROP COLUMN`, a `NOT NULL` constraint is added, or a column type is changed with `SET DATA TYPE`. It is your responsibility to ensure that the table definition matches the remote side.

Refer to CREATE FOREIGN TABLE for a further description of valid parameters.

### Examples

To mark a column as not-null:

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;
```

To change the options of a foreign table:

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE myschema.distributors
    OPTIONS (ADD opt1 'value', SET opt2 'value2', DROP opt3 'value3');
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

The forms `ADD`, `DROP`, and `SET DATA TYPE` conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are WarehousePG extensions of the SQL standard. The ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE` command is also a WarehousePG extension.

You can use `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE ... DROP COLUMN` to drop the only column of a foreign table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column foreign tables.

### See Also

ALTER TABLE, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, DROP FOREIGN TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.12 ALTER FUNCTION

Changes the definition of a function.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   <action> [, ... ] [RESTRICT]

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

where action is one of:

```
{CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT | STRICT}
{IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF}
{[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER | [EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER}
EXECUTE ON { ANY | MASTER | ALL SEGMENTS | INITPLAN }
COST <execution_cost>
SET <configuration_parameter> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT }
SET <configuration_parameter> FROM CURRENT
RESET <configuration_parameter>
RESET ALL
```

### Description

`ALTER FUNCTION` changes the definition of a function.

You must own the function to use `ALTER FUNCTION`. To change a function's schema, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any function anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: either `IN`, `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is `IN`. Note that `ALTER FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to `OUT` arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the `IN`, `INOUT`, and `VARIADIC` arguments.

- argname

  The name of an argument. Note that `ALTER FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- argtype

  The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

- new_name

  The new name of the function.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the function. Note that if the function is marked `SECURITY DEFINER`, it will subsequently run as the new owner.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the function.

- CALLED ON NULL INPUT

- RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT

- STRICT

  `CALLED ON NULL INPUT` changes the function so that it will be invoked when some or all of its arguments are null. `RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT` or `STRICT` changes the function so that it is not invoked if any of its arguments are null; instead, a null result is assumed automatically. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

- IMMUTABLE

- STABLE

- VOLATILE

  Change the volatility of the function to the specified setting. See CREATE FUNCTION for details.

- [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER

- [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

  Change whether the function is a security definer or not. The key word `EXTERNAL` is ignored for SQL conformance. See `CREATE FUNCTION` for more information about this capability.

- LEAKPROOF

  Change whether the function is considered leakproof or not. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information about this capability.

- EXECUTE ON ANY

- EXECUTE ON MASTER

- EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- EXECUTE ON INITPLAN

  The `EXECUTE ON` attributes specify where (coordinator or segment instance) a function runs when it is invoked during the query execution process.

  `EXECUTE ON ANY` (the default) indicates that the function can be run on the coordinator, or any segment instance, and it returns the same result regardless of where it is run. WarehousePG determines where the function runs.

  `EXECUTE ON MASTER` indicates that the function must run only on the coordinator instance.

  `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` indicates that the function must run on all primary segment instances, but not the coordinator, for each invocation. The overall result of the function is the `UNION ALL` of the results from all segment instances.

  `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` indicates that the function contains an SQL command that dispatches queries to the segment instances and requires special processing on the coordinator instance by WarehousePG when possible.

  For more information about the `EXECUTE ON` attributes, see CREATE FUNCTION.

- COST execution_cost

  Change the estimated execution cost of the function. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

- configuration_parameter

- value

  Set or change the value of a configuration parameter when the function is called. If value is `DEFAULT` or, equivalently, `RESET` is used, the function-local setting is removed, and the function runs with the value present in its environment. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all function-local settings. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `ALTER FUNCTION` is run as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

- RESTRICT

  Ignored for conformance with the SQL standard.

### Notes

WarehousePG has limitations on the use of functions defined as `STABLE` or `VOLATILE`. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

### Examples

To rename the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `square_root`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) RENAME TO square_root;
```

To change the owner of the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `joe`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) OWNER TO joe;
```

To change the schema of the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `math`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) SET SCHEMA math;
```

To adjust the search path that is automatically set for a function:

```
ALTER FUNCTION check_password(text) RESET search_path;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the `ALTER FUNCTION` statement in the SQL standard. The standard allows more properties of a function to be modified, but does not provide the ability to rename a function, make a function a security definer, or change the owner, schema, or volatility of a function. The standard also requires the `RESTRICT` key word, which is optional in WarehousePG.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, DROP FUNCTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.13 ALTER GROUP

Changes a role name or membership.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER GROUP <groupname> ADD USER <username> [, ... ]

ALTER GROUP <groupname> DROP USER <username> [, ... ]

ALTER GROUP <groupname> RENAME TO <newname>
```

### Description

`ALTER GROUP` changes the attributes of a user group. This is an obsolete command, though still accepted for backwards compatibility, because users and groups are superseded by the more general concept of roles. See ALTER ROLE for more information.

The first two variants add users to a group or remove them from a group. Any role can play the part of groupname or username. The preferred method for accomplishing these tasks is to use GRANT and REVOKE.

### Parameters

- groupname

  The name of the group (role) to modify.

- username

  Users (roles) that are to be added to or removed from the group. The users (roles) must already exist.

- newname

  The new name of the group (role).

### Examples

To add users to a group:

```
ALTER GROUP staff ADD USER karl, john;
```

To remove a user from a group:

```
ALTER GROUP workers DROP USER beth;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER GROUP` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER ROLE, GRANT, REVOKE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.14 ALTER INDEX

Changes the definition of an index.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET ( <storage_parameter> = <value> [, ...] )

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RESET ( <storage_parameter>  [, ...] )

ALTER INDEX ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
  SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]
```

### Description

`ALTER INDEX` changes the definition of an existing index. There are several subforms:

- **RENAME** — Changes the name of the index. There is no effect on the stored data.
- **SET TABLESPACE** — Changes the index's tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the index to the new tablespace. To change the tablespace of an index, you must own the index and have `CREATE` privilege on the new tablespace. All indexes in the current database in a tablespace can be moved by using the `ALL IN TABLESPACE` form, which will lock all indexes to be moved and then move each one. This form also supports `OWNED BY`, which will only move indexes owned by the roles specified. If the `NOWAIT` option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs will not be moved by this command, use `ALTER DATABASE` or explicit `ALTER INDEX` invocations instead if desired. See also `CREATE TABLESPACE`.
- **IF EXISTS** — Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.
- **SET** — Changes the index-method-specific storage parameters for the index. The built-in index methods all accept a single parameter: fillfactor. The fillfactor for an index is a percentage that determines how full the index method will try to pack index pages. Index contents will not be modified immediately by this command. Use `REINDEX` to rebuild the index to get the desired effects.
- **RESET** — Resets storage parameters for the index to their defaults. The built-in index methods all accept a single parameter: fillfactor. As with `SET`, a `REINDEX` may be needed to update the index entirely.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing index to alter.

- new_name

  New name for the index.

- tablespace_name

  The tablespace to which the index will be moved.

- storage_parameter

  The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter.

- value

  The new value for an index-method-specific storage parameter. This might be a number or a word depending on the parameter.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

These operations are also possible using `ALTER TABLE`.

Changing any part of a system catalog index is not permitted.

### Examples

To rename an existing index:

```
ALTER INDEX distributors RENAME TO suppliers;
```

To move an index to a different tablespace:

```
ALTER INDEX distributors SET TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

To change an index's fill factor (assuming that the index method supports it):

```
ALTER INDEX distributors SET (fillfactor = 75);
REINDEX INDEX distributors;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER INDEX` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE INDEX, REINDEX, ALTER TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.15 ALTER LANGUAGE

Changes the name of a procedural language.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER LANGUAGE <name> RENAME TO <newname>
ALTER LANGUAGE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

### Description

`ALTER LANGUAGE` changes the definition of a procedural language for a specific database. Definition changes supported include renaming the language or assigning a new owner. You must be superuser or the owner of the language to use `ALTER LANGUAGE`.

### Parameters

- name

  Name of a language.

- newname

  The new name of the language.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the language.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER LANGUAGE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE LANGUAGE, DROP LANGUAGE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.16 ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW

Changes the definition of a materialized view.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> <action> [, ... ]
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]

where <action> is one of:

    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET STATISTICS <integer>
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET ( <attribute_option> = <value> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> RESET ( <attribute_option> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN }
    CLUSTER ON <index_name>
    SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
    SET ( <storage_paramete>r = <value> [, ... ] )
    RESET ( <storage_parameter> [, ... ] )
    OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

### Description

`ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW` changes various auxiliary properties of an existing materialized view.

You must own the materialized view to use `ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW`. To change a materialized view's schema, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the materialized view's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the materialized view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view anyway.)

The statement subforms and actions available for `ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW` are a subset of those available for `ALTER TABLE`, and have the same meaning when used for materialized views. See the descriptions for ALTER TABLE for details.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing materialized view.

- column_name

  Name of a new or existing column.

- new_column_name

  New name for an existing column.

- new_owner

  The user name of the new owner of the materialized view.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- new_name

  The new name for the materialized view.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the materialized view.

### Examples

To rename the materialized view foo to bar:

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.17 ALTER OPERATOR

Changes the definition of an operator.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR <name> ( {<left_type> | NONE} , {<right_type> | NONE} )
   OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR <name> ( {<left_type> | NONE} , {<right_type> | NONE} )
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER OPERATOR` changes the definition of an operator. The only currently available functionality is to change the owner of the operator.

You must own the operator to use `ALTER OPERATOR`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the operator's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the operator. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

- left_type

  The data type of the operator's left operand; write `NONE` if the operator has no left operand.

- right_type

  The data type of the operator's right operand; write `NONE` if the operator has no right operand.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the operator.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the operator.

### Examples

Change the owner of a custom operator `a @@ b` for type `text`:

```
ALTER OPERATOR @@ (text, text) OWNER TO joe;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER OPERATOR` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE OPERATOR, DROP OPERATOR

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.18 ALTER OPERATOR CLASS

Changes the definition of an operator class.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER OPERATOR CLASS` changes the definition of an operator class.

You must own the operator class to use `ALTER OPERATOR CLASS`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the operator class's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the operator class. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator class anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

- index_method

  The name of the index method this operator class is for.

- new_name

  The new name of the operator class.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the operator class

- new_schema

  The new schema for the operator class.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.19 ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY

Changes the definition of an operator family.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> ADD
  {  OPERATOR <strategy_number> <operator_name> ( <op_type>, <op_type> ) [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY <sort_family_name>
]
    | FUNCTION <support_number> [ ( <op_type> [ , <op_type> ] ) ] <funcname> ( <argument_type> [, ...] )
  } [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> DROP
  {  OPERATOR <strategy_number> ( <op_type>, <op_type> )
    | FUNCTION <support_number> [ ( <op_type> [ , <op_type> ] )
  } [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` changes the definition of an operator family. You can add operators and support functions to the family, remove them from the family, or change the family's name or owner.

When operators and support functions are added to a family with `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY`, they are not part of any specific operator class within the family, but are just "loose" within the family. This indicates that these operators and functions are compatible with the family's semantics, but are not required for correct functioning of any specific index. (Operators and functions that are so required should be declared as part of an operator class, instead; see CREATE OPERATOR CLASS.) You can drop loose members of a family from the family at any time, but members of an operator class cannot be dropped without dropping the whole class and any indexes that depend on it. Typically, single-data-type operators and functions are part of operator classes because they are needed to support an index on that specific data type, while cross-data-type operators and functions are made loose members of the family.

You must be a superuser to use `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY`. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

`ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` does not presently check whether the operator family definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator family.

`OPERATOR` and `FUNCTION` clauses can appear in any order.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.

- index_method

  The name of the index method this operator family is for.

- strategy_number

  The index method's strategy number for an operator associated with the operator family.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- operator_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator family.

- op_type

  In an `OPERATOR` clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or `NONE` to signify a left-unary or right-unary operator. Unlike the comparable syntax in `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, the operand data types must always be specified. In an `ADD FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function. For B-tree comparison functions it is not necessary to specify op_type since the function's input data type(s) are always the correct ones to use. For B-tree sort support functions and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN operator classes, it is necessary to specify the operand data type(s) the function is to be used with.

- sort_family_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing `btree` operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

  If neither `FOR SEARCH` nor `FOR ORDER BY` is specified, `FOR SEARCH` is the default.

- support_number

  The index method's support procedure number for a function associated with the operator family.

- funcname

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support procedure for the operator family.

- argument_types

  The parameter data type(s) of the function.

- new_name

  The new name of the operator family.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the operator family.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the operator family.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` statement in the SQL standard.

### Notes

Notice that the `DROP` syntax only specifies the "slot" in the operator family, by strategy or support number and input data type(s). The name of the operator or function occupying the slot is not mentioned. Also, for `DROP FUNCTION` the type(s) to specify are the input data type(s) the function is intended to support; for `GiST`, `SP_GiST`, and `GIN` indexes this might have nothing to do with the actual input argument types of the function.

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator family is tantamount to granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator family.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. A SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Before WarehousePG 6.0, the `OPERATOR` clause could include a `RECHECK` option. This option is no longer supported. WarehousePG now determines whether an index operator is "lossy" on-the-fly at run time. This allows more efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

### Examples

The following example command adds cross-data-type operators and support functions to an operator family that already contains B-tree operator classes for data types int4 and int2.:

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree ADD

  -- int4 vs int2
  OPERATOR 1 < (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 3 = (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 4 >= (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 5 > (int4, int2) ,
  FUNCTION 1 btint42cmp(int4, int2) ,

  -- int2 vs int4
  OPERATOR 1 < (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 2 <= (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 3 = (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 4 >= (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 5 > (int2, int4) ,
  FUNCTION 1 btint24cmp(int2, int4) ;
```

To remove these entries:

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree DROP

  -- int4 vs int2
  OPERATOR 1 (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 2 (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 3 (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 4 (int4, int2) ,
  OPERATOR 5 (int4, int2) ,
  FUNCTION 1 (int4, int2) ,

  -- int2 vs int4
  OPERATOR 1 (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 2 (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 3 (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 4 (int2, int4) ,
  OPERATOR 5 (int2, int4) ,
  FUNCTION 1 (int2, int4) ;
```

### See Also

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.20 ALTER PROTOCOL

Changes the definition of a protocol.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER PROTOCOL <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER PROTOCOL <name> OWNER TO <newowner>
```

### Description

`ALTER PROTOCOL` changes the definition of a protocol. Only the protocol name or owner can be altered.

You must own the protocol to use `ALTER PROTOCOL`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on schema of the conversion.

These restrictions are in place to ensure that altering the owner only makes changes that could by made by dropping and recreating the protocol. Note that a superuser can alter ownership of any protocol.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing protocol.

- newname

  The new name of the protocol.

- newowner

  The new owner of the protocol.

### Examples

To rename the conversion `GPDBauth` to `GPDB_authentication`:

```
ALTER PROTOCOL GPDBauth RENAME TO GPDB_authentication;
```

To change the owner of the conversion `GPDB_authentication` to `joe`:

```
ALTER PROTOCOL GPDB_authentication OWNER TO joe;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER PROTOCOL` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, CREATE PROTOCOL, DROP PROTOCOL

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.21 ALTER RESOURCE GROUP

Changes the limits of a resource group.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP <name> SET <group_attribute> <value>
```

where group_attribute is one of:

```
CONCURRENCY <integer>
CPU_RATE_LIMIT <integer>
CPUSET <master_cores>;<segment_cores>
MEMORY_LIMIT <integer>
MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA <integer>
MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO <integer>
```

### Description

`ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` changes the limits of a resource group. Only a superuser can alter a resource group.

You can set or reset the concurrency limit of a resource group that you create for roles to control the maximum number of active concurrent statements in that group. You can also reset the memory or CPU resources of a resource group to control the amount of memory or CPU resources that all queries submitted through the group can consume on each segment host.

When you alter the CPU resource management mode or limit of a resource group, the new mode or limit is immediately applied.

When you alter a memory limit of a resource group that you create for roles, the new resource limit is immediately applied if current resource usage is less than or equal to the new value and there are no running transactions in the resource group. If the current resource usage exceeds the new memory limit value, or if there are running transactions in other resource groups that hold some of the resource, then WarehousePG defers assigning the new limit until resource usage falls within the range of the new value.

When you increase the memory limit of a resource group that you create for external components, the new resource limit is phased in as system memory resources become available. If you decrease the memory limit of a resource group that you create for external components, the behavior is component-specific and may cause queries running under that component to fail with an out of memory error.

You can alter one limit type in a single `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` call.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the resource group to alter.

- CONCURRENCY integer

  The maximum number of concurrent transactions, including active and idle transactions, that are permitted for resource groups that you assign to roles. Any transactions submitted after the `CONCURRENCY` value limit is reached are queued. When a running transaction completes, the earliest queued transaction is run.

  The `CONCURRENCY` value must be an integer in the range [0 .. `max_connections` ]. The default `CONCURRENCY` value for a resource group that you create for roles is 20.

  > **Note** You cannot set the `CONCURRENCY` value for the `admin_group` to zero (0).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CPU_RATE_LIMIT integer

  The percentage of CPU resources to allocate to this resource group. The minimum CPU percentage for a resource group is 1. The maximum is 100. The sum of the `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`s of all resource groups defined in the WarehousePG cluster must not exceed 100.

  If you alter the `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` of a resource group in which you previously configured a `CPUSET`, `CPUSET` is deactivated, the reserved CPU cores are returned to WarehousePG, and `CPUSET` is set to -1.

- CPUSET <master_cores>;<segment_cores>

  The CPU cores to reserve for this resource group on the coordinator host and segment hosts. The CPU cores that you specify in must be available in the system and cannot overlap with any CPU cores that you specify for other resource groups.

  Specify cores as a comma-separated list of single core numbers or core intervals. Define the coordinator host cores first, followed by segment host cores, and separate the two with a semicolon. You must enclose the full core configuration in single quotes. For example, '1;1,3-4' configures core 1 for the coordinator host, and cores 1, 3, and 4 for the segment hosts.

  If you alter the `CPUSET` value of a resource group for which you previously configured a `CPU_RATE_LIMIT`, `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` is deactivated, the reserved CPU resources are returned to WarehousePG, and `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` is set to -1.

  You can alter `CPUSET` for a resource group only after you have enabled resource group-based resource management for your WarehousePG cluster.

- MEMORY_LIMIT integer

  The percentage of WarehousePG memory resources to reserve for this resource group. The minimum memory percentage for a resource group is 0. The maximum is 100. The default value is 0.

  When `MEMORY_LIMIT` is 0, WarehousePG reserves no memory for the resource group, but uses global shared memory to fulfill all memory requests in the group. If `MEMORY_LIMIT` is 0, `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` must also be 0.

  The sum of the `MEMORY_LIMIT`s of all resource groups defined in the WarehousePG cluster must not exceed 100. If this sum is less than 100, WarehousePG allocates any unreserved memory to a resource group global shared memory pool.

- MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA integer

  The percentage of memory resources to share among transactions in the resource group. The minimum memory shared quota percentage for a resource group is 0. The maximum is 100. The default `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` value is 80.

- MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO integer

  The memory usage threshold for memory-intensive operators in a transaction. You can specify an integer percentage value from 0 to 100 inclusive. The default `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` value is 0. When `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` is 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter value to control initial query operator memory.

### Notes

Use CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE to assign a specific resource group to a role (user).

You cannot submit an `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` command in an explicit transaction or sub-transaction.

### Examples

Change the active transaction limit for a resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup1 SET CONCURRENCY 13;
```

Update the CPU limit for a resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup2 SET CPU_RATE_LIMIT 45;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Update the memory limit for a resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup3 SET MEMORY_LIMIT 30;
```

Update the memory spill ratio for a resource group:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup4 SET MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO 25;
```

Reserve CPU core 1 for a resource group on the coordinator host and all segment hosts:

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP rgroup5 SET CPUSET '1;1';
```

### Compatibility

The `ALTER RESOURCE GROUP` statement is a WarehousePG extension. This command does not exist in standard PostgreSQL.

### See Also

CREATE RESOURCE GROUP, DROP RESOURCE GROUP, CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.22 ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE

Changes the limits of a resource queue.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <name> WITH ( <queue_attribute>=<value> [, ... ] )
```

where queue_attribute is:

```
   ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=<integer>
   MEMORY_LIMIT='<memory_units>'
   MAX_COST=<float>
   COST_OVERCOMMIT={TRUE|FALSE}
   MIN_COST=<float>
   PRIORITY={MIN|LOW|MEDIUM|HIGH|MAX}
```

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <name> WITHOUT ( <queue_attribute> [, ... ] )
```

where queue_attribute is:

```
   ACTIVE_STATEMENTS
   MEMORY_LIMIT
   MAX_COST
   COST_OVERCOMMIT
   MIN_COST
```

> **Note** A resource queue must have either an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` or a `MAX_COST` value. Do not remove both these `queue_attributes` from a resource queue.

### Description

`ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` changes the limits of a resource queue. Only a superuser can alter a resource queue. A resource queue must have either an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` or a `MAX_COST` value (or it can have both). You can also set or reset priority for a resource queue to control the relative share of available CPU resources used by queries associated with the queue, or memory limit of a resource queue to control the amount of memory that all queries submitted through the queue can consume on a segment host.

`ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE WITHOUT` removes the specified limits on a resource that were previously set. A resource queue must have either an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` or a `MAX_COST` value. Do not remove both these `queue_attributes` from a resource queue.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the resource queue whose limits are to be altered.

- ACTIVE_STATEMENTS integer

  The number of active statements submitted from users in this resource queue allowed on the system at any one time. The value for `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` should be an integer greater than 0. To reset `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` to have no limit, enter a value of `-1`.

- MEMORY_LIMIT 'memory_units'

  Sets the total memory quota for all statements submitted from users in this resource queue. Memory units can be specified in kB, MB or GB. The minimum memory quota for a resource queue is 10MB. There is no maximum; however the upper boundary at query execution time is limited by the physical memory of a segment host. The default value is no limit ( `-1` ).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- MAX_COST float

  The total query optimizer cost of statements submitted from users in this resource queue allowed on the system at any one time. The value for `MAX_COST` is specified as a floating point number (for example 100.0) or can also be specified as an exponent (for example 1e+2). To reset `MAX_COST` to have no limit, enter a value of `-1.0`.

- COST_OVERCOMMIT boolean

  If a resource queue is limited based on query cost, then the administrator can allow cost overcommit (`COST_OVERCOMMIT=TRUE`, the default). This means that a query that exceeds the allowed cost threshold will be allowed to run but only when the system is idle. If `COST_OVERCOMMIT=FALSE` is specified, queries that exceed the cost limit will always be rejected and never allowed to run.

- MIN_COST float

  Queries with a cost under this limit will not be queued and run immediately. Cost is measured in units of disk page fetches; 1.0 equals one sequential disk page read. The value for `MIN_COST` is specified as a floating point number (for example 100.0) or can also be specified as an exponent (for example 1e+2). To reset `MIN_COST` to have no limit, enter a value of `-1.0`.

- PRIORITY={MIN|LOW|MEDIUM|HIGH|MAX}

  Sets the priority of queries associated with a resource queue. Queries or statements in queues with higher priority levels will receive a larger share of available CPU resources in case of contention. Queries in low-priority queues may be delayed while higher priority queries are run.

### Notes

GPORCA and the Postgres planner utilize different query costing models and may compute different costs for the same query. The WarehousePG resource queue resource management scheme neither differentiates nor aligns costs between GPORCA and the Postgres Planner; it uses the literal cost value returned from the optimizer to throttle queries.

When resource queue-based resource management is active, use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` limits for resource queues rather than configuring cost-based limits. Even when using GPORCA, WarehousePG may fall back to using the Postgres Planner for certain queries, so using cost-based limits can lead to unexpected results.

### Examples

Change the active query limit for a resource queue:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=20);
```

Change the memory limit for a resource queue:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (MEMORY_LIMIT='2GB');
```

Reset the maximum and minimum query cost limit for a resource queue to no limit:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (MAX_COST=-1.0,
  MIN_COST= -1.0);
```

Reset the query cost limit for a resource queue to 310 (or 30000000000.0) and do not allow overcommit:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (MAX_COST=3e+10,
  COST_OVERCOMMIT=FALSE);
```

Reset the priority of queries associated with a resource queue to the minimum level:

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (PRIORITY=MIN);
```

Remove the `MAX_COST` and `MEMORY_LIMIT` limits from a resource queue:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITHOUT (MAX_COST, MEMORY_LIMIT);
```

### Compatibility

The `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` statement is a WarehousePG extension. This command does not exist in standard PostgreSQL.

### See Also

CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE, DROP RESOURCE QUEUE, CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.23 ALTER ROLE

Changes a database role (user or group).

### Synopsis

```
ALTER ROLE <name> [ [ WITH ] <option> [ ... ] ]

where <option> can be:

    SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
  | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
  | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
  | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE  [ ( attribute='value' [, ...] )
     where attributes and values are:
       type='readable'|'writable'
       protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
  | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
  | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
  | REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
  | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
  | [ ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '<password>'
  | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'

ALTER ROLE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] SET <configuration_parameter> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT
}
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] SET <configuration_parameter> FROM CURRENT
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] RESET <configuration_parameter>
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] RESET ALL
ALTER ROLE <name> RESOURCE QUEUE {<queue_name> | NONE}
ALTER ROLE <name> RESOURCE GROUP {<group_name> | NONE}
```

### Description

`ALTER ROLE` changes the attributes of a WarehousePG role. There are several variants of this command.

- **WITH option**

  Changes many of the role attributes that can be specified in CREATE ROLE. (All of the possible attributes are covered, execept that there are no options for adding or removing memberships; use GRANT and REVOKE for that.) Attributes not mentioned in the command retain their previous settings. Database superusers can change any of these settings for any role. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can change any of these settings, but only for non-superuser and non-replication roles. Ordinary roles can only change their own password.

- **RENAME**

  Changes the name of the role. Database superusers can rename any role. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can rename non-superuser roles. The current session user cannot be renamed (connect as a different user to rename a role). Because MD5-encrypted passwords use the role name as cryptographic salt, renaming a role clears its password if the password is MD5-encrypted.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- SET | RESET

  Changes a role's session default for a specified configuration parameter, either for all databases or, when the `IN DATABASE` clause is specified, only for sessions in the named database. If `ALL` is specified instead of a role name, this changes the setting for all roles. Using `ALL` with `IN DATABASE` is effectively the same as using the command `ALTER DATABASE...SET...`.

  Whenever the role subsequently starts a new session, the specified value becomes the session default, overriding whatever setting is present in the server configuration file ( `postgresql.conf` ) or has been received from the `postgres` command line. This only happens at login time; running SET ROLE or SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION does not cause new configuration values to be set.

  Database-specific settings attached to a role override settings for all databases. Settings for specific databases or specific roles override settings for all roles.

  For a role without `LOGIN` privilege, session defaults have no effect. Ordinary roles can change their own session defaults. Superusers can change anyone's session defaults. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can change defaults for non-superuser roles. Ordinary roles can only set defaults for themselves. Certain configuration variables cannot be set this way, or can only be set if a superuser issues the command. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about all user-settable configuration parameters. Only superusers can change a setting for all roles in all databases.

- RESOURCE QUEUE

  Assigns the role to a resource queue. The role would then be subject to the limits assigned to the resource queue when issuing queries. Specify `NONE` to assign the role to the default resource queue. A role can only belong to one resource queue. For a role without `LOGIN` privilege, resource queues have no effect. See CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE for more information.

- RESOURCE GROUP

  Assigns a resource group to the role. The role would then be subject to the concurrent transaction, memory, and CPU limits configured for the resource group. You can assign a single resource group to one or more roles. You cannot assign a resource group that you create for an external component to a role. See CREATE RESOURCE GROUP for additional information.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the role whose attributes are to be altered.

- new_name

  The new name of the role.

- database_name

  The name of the database in which to set the configuration parameter.

- config_parameter=value

  Set this role's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If value is `DEFAULT` or if `RESET` is used, the role-specific parameter setting is removed, so the role will inherit the system-wide default setting in new sessions. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all role-specific settings. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the session's current value of the parameter as the role-specific value. If `IN DATABASE` is specified, the configuration parameter is set or removed for the given role and database only. Whenever the role subsequently starts a new session, the specified value becomes the session default, overriding whatever setting is present in `postgresql.conf` or has been received from the `postgres` command line.

  Role-specific variable settings take effect only at login; `SET ROLE` and SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION do not process role-specific variable settings.

  See Server Configuration Parameters for information about user-settable configuration parameters.

- group_name

  The name of the resource group to assign to this role. Specifying the group_name `NONE` removes the role's current resource group assignment and assigns a default resource group based on the role's capability. `SUPERUSER` roles are assigned the `admin_group` resource group, while the `default_group` resource group is assigned to non-admin roles.

  You cannot assign a resource group that you create for an external component to a role.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- queue_name

  The name of the resource queue to which the user-level role is to be assigned. Only roles with `LOGIN` privilege can be assigned to a resource queue. To unassign a role from a resource queue and put it in the default resource queue, specify `NONE`. A role can only belong to one resource queue.

- SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
- CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
- CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
- CREATEUSER | NOCREATEUSER

  `CREATEUSER` and `NOCREATEUSER` are obsolete, but still accepted, spellings of `SUPERUSER` and `NOSUPERUSER`. Note that they are not equivalent to the `CREATEROLE and` `NOCREATEROLE` clauses.

- CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE [(attribute='value')]

  If `CREATEEXTTABLE` is specified, the role being defined is allowed to create external tables. The default `type` is `readable` and the default `protocol` is `gpfdist` if not specified. `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` (the default) denies the role the ability to create external tables. Note that external tables that use the `file` or `execute` protocols can only be created by superusers.

- INHERIT | NOINHERIT
- LOGIN | NOLOGIN
- REPLICATION
- NOREPLICATION
- CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
- PASSWORD password
- ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED
- VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'

  These clauses alter role attributes originally set by CREATE ROLE.

- DENY deny_point

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DENY BETWEEN deny_point AND deny_point

  The `DENY` and `DENY BETWEEN` keywords set time-based constraints that are enforced at login. `DENY` sets a day or a day and time to deny access. `DENY BETWEEN` sets an interval during which access is denied. Both use the parameter deny_point that has following format:

  ```
  DAY day [ TIME 'time' ]
  ```

  The two parts of the `deny_point` parameter use the following formats:

  For day:

  ```
  {'Sunday' | 'Monday' | 'Tuesday' |'Wednesday' | 'Thursday' | 'Friday' |
  'Saturday' | 0-6 }
  ```

  For `time:`

  ```
  { 00-23 : 00-59 | 01-12 : 00-59 { AM | PM }}
  ```

  The `DENY BETWEEN` clause uses two deny_point parameters which must indicate day and time.

  ```
  DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>
  ```

  For example:

  ```
  ALTER USER user1 DENY BETWEEN day 'Sunday' time '00:00' AND day 'Monday' time '00:00';
  ```

  For more information about time-based constraints and examples, see "Managing Roles and Privileges" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

- DROP DENY FOR deny_point

  The `DROP DENY FOR` clause removes a time-based constraint from the role. It uses the deny_point parameter described above.

  For more information about time-based constraints and examples, see "Managing Roles and Privileges" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Notes

Use CREATE ROLE to add new roles, and DROP ROLE to remove a role.

Use GRANT and REVOKE for adding and removing role memberships.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password will be transmitted to the server in clear text, and it might also be logged in the client's command history or the server log. The `psql` command-line client contains a meta-command `\password` that can be used to change a role's password without exposing the clear text password.

It is also possible to tie a session default to a specific database rather than to a role; see ALTER DATABASE. If there is a conflict, database-role-specific settings override role-specific ones, which in turn override database-specific ones.

### Examples

Change the password for a role:

```
ALTER ROLE daria WITH PASSWORD 'passwd123';
```

Remove a role's password:

```
ALTER ROLE daria WITH PASSWORD NULL;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Change a password expiration date:

```
ALTER ROLE scott VALID UNTIL 'May 4 12:00:00 2015 +1';
```

Make a password valid forever:

```
ALTER ROLE luke VALID UNTIL 'infinity';
```

Give a role the ability to create other roles and new databases:

```
ALTER ROLE joelle CREATEROLE CREATEDB;
```

Give a role a non-default setting of the `maintenance_work_mem` parameter:

```
ALTER ROLE admin SET maintenance_work_mem = 100000;
```

Give a role a non-default, database-specific setting of the `client_min_messages` parameter:

```
ALTER ROLE fred IN DATABASE devel SET client_min_messages = DEBUG;
```

Assign a role to a resource queue:

```
ALTER ROLE sammy RESOURCE QUEUE poweruser;
```

Give a role permission to create writable external tables:

```
ALTER ROLE load CREATEEXTTABLE (type='writable');
```

Alter a role so it does not allow login access on Sundays:

```
ALTER ROLE user3 DENY DAY 'Sunday';
```

Alter a role to remove the constraint that does not allow login access on Sundays:

```
ALTER ROLE user3 DROP DENY FOR DAY 'Sunday';
```

Assign a new resource group to a role:

```
ALTER ROLE parttime_user RESOURCE GROUP rg_light;
```

### Compatibility

The `ALTER ROLE` statement is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, ALTER DATABASE, SET, CREATE RESOURCE GROUP, CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE, GRANT, REVOKE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.24 ALTER SCHEMA

Changes the definition of a schema.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER SCHEMA <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER SCHEMA <name> OWNER TO <newowner>
```

### Description

`ALTER SCHEMA` changes the definition of a schema.

You must own the schema to use `ALTER SCHEMA`. To rename a schema you must also have the `CREATE` privilege for the database. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and you must have the `CREATE` privilege for the database. Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an existing schema.

- newname

  The new name of the schema. The new name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system schemas.

- newowner

  The new owner of the schema.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER SCHEMA` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE SCHEMA, DROP SCHEMA

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.25 ALTER SEQUENCE

Changes the definition of a sequence generator.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [INCREMENT [ BY ] <increment>]
     [MINVALUE <minvalue> | NO MINVALUE]
     [MAXVALUE <maxvalue> | NO MAXVALUE]
     [START [ WITH ] <start> ]
     [RESTART [ [ WITH ] <restart>] ]
     [CACHE <cache>] [[ NO ] CYCLE]
     [OWNED BY {<table.column> | NONE}]

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER SEQUENCE` changes the parameters of an existing sequence generator. Any parameters not specifically set in the `ALTER SEQUENCE` command retain their prior settings.

You must own the sequence to use `ALTER SEQUENCE`. To change a sequence's schema, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.

To alter the owner, you must be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the sequence's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the sequence. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any sequence anyway.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence to be altered.

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- increment

  The clause `INCREMENT BY increment` is optional. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. If unspecified, the old increment value will be maintained.

- minvalue

- NO MINVALUE

  The optional clause `MINVALUE minvalue` determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If `NO MINVALUE` is specified, the defaults of 1 and -263-1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current minimum value will be maintained.

- maxvalue

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- NO MAXVALUE

  The optional clause `MAXVALUE maxvalue` determines the maximum value for the sequence. If `NO MAXVALUE` is specified, the defaults are 263-1 and -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current maximum value will be maintained.

- start

  The optional clause START WITH start changes the recorded start value of the sequence. This has no effect on the*current* sequence value; it simply sets the value that future `ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART` commands will use.

- restart

  The optional clause `RESTART [ WITH restart ]` changes the current value of the sequence. This is equivalent to calling the `setval(sequence, start\_val, is\_called)` function with `is\_called = false`. The specified value will be returned by the next call of the `nextval(sequence)` function. Writing `RESTART` with no restart value is equivalent to supplying the start value that was recorded by `CREATE SEQUENCE` or last set by `ALTER SEQUENCE START WITH`.

- new_owner

  The user name of the new owner of the sequence.

- cache

  The clause `CACHE cache` enables sequence numbers to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is 1 (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., no cache). If unspecified, the old cache value will be maintained.

- CYCLE

  The optional `CYCLE` key word may be used to enable the sequence to wrap around when the maxvalue or minvalue has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the respective minvalue or maxvalue.

- NO CYCLE

  If the optional `NO CYCLE` key word is specified, any calls to `nextval()` after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If neither `CYCLE` or `NO CYCLE` are specified, the old cycle behavior will be maintained.

- OWNED BY table.column

- OWNED BY NONE

  The `OWNED BY` option causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. If specified, this association replaces any previously specified association for the sequence. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. Specifying `OWNED BY NONE` removes any existing table column association.

- new_name

  The new name for the sequence.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the sequence.

### Notes

To avoid blocking of concurrent transactions that obtain numbers from the same sequence, `ALTER SEQUENCE`'s effects on the sequence generation parameters are never rolled back; those changes take effect immediately and are not reversible. However, the `OWNED BY`, `OWNER TO`, `RENAME TO`, and `SET SCHEMA` clauses are ordinary catalog updates and can be rolled back.

`ALTER SEQUENCE` will not immediately affect `nextval()` results in sessions, other than the current one, that have preallocated (cached) sequence values. They will use up all cached values prior to noticing the changed sequence generation parameters. The current session will be affected immediately.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For historical reasons, `ALTER TABLE` can be used with sequences too; but the only variants of `ALTER TABLE` that are allowed with sequences are equivalent to the forms shown above.

### Examples

Restart a sequence called `serial` at `105`:

```
ALTER SEQUENCE serial RESTART WITH 105;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER SEQUENCE` conforms to the SQL standard, except for the `START WITH`, `OWNED BY`, `OWNER TO`, `RENAME TO`, and `SET SCHEMA` clauses, which are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

CREATE SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE, ALTER TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.26 ALTER SERVER

Changes the definition of a foreign server.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER SERVER <server_name> [ VERSION '<new_version>' ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] ) ]

ALTER SERVER <server_name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER SERVER <server_name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

### Description

`ALTER SERVER` changes the definition of a foreign server. The first form of the command changes the version string or the generic options of the server. WarehousePG requires at least one clause. The second and third forms of the command change the owner or the name of the server.

To alter the server, you must be the owner of the server. To alter the owner you must:

- Own the server.
- Be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role.
- Have `USAGE` privilege on the server's foreign-data wrapper.

Superusers automatically satisfy all of these criteria.

### Parameters

- server_name

  The name of an existing server.

- new_version

  The new server version.

- OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

  Change the server's options. `ADD` , `SET` , and `DROP` specify the action to perform. If no operation is explicitly specified, the default operation is `ADD` . Option names must be unique. WarehousePG validates names and values using the server's foreign-data wrapper library.

- OWNER TO new_owner

  Specifies the new owner of the foreign server.

- RENAME TO new_name

  Specifies the new name of the foreign server.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Change the definition of a server named `foo` by adding connection options:

```
ALTER SERVER foo OPTIONS (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb');
```

Change the option named `host` for a server named `foo`, and set the server version:

```
ALTER SERVER foo VERSION '9.1' OPTIONS (SET host 'baz');
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The `OWNER TO` and `RENAME` forms are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

CREATE SERVER, DROP SERVER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.27 ALTER TABLE

Changes the definition of a table.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name>
    <action> [, ... ]

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name>
    RENAME [COLUMN] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] <name>
    RENAME CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> TO <new_constraint_name>

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>

ALTER TABLE ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name> SET
     WITH (REORGANIZE=true|false)
   | DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column_name> [<opclass>]} [, ... ] )
   | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY
   | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

ALTER TABLE <name>
   [ ALTER PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>))
   | FOR (<value>) } [...] ] <partition_action>

where <action> is one of:

  ADD [COLUMN] <column_name data_type> [ DEFAULT <default_expr> ]
      [<column_constraint> [ ... ]]
      [ COLLATE <collation> ]
      [ ENCODING ( <storage_parameter> [,...] ) ]
  DROP [COLUMN] [IF EXISTS] <column_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <type> [COLLATE <collation>] [USING <expression>]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> SET DEFAULT <expression>
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> DROP DEFAULT
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> SET STATISTICS <integer>
  ALTER [COLUMN] column SET ( <attribute_option> = <value> [, ... ] )
  ALTER [COLUMN] column RESET ( <attribute_option> [, ... ] )
  ADD <table_constraint> [NOT VALID]
  ADD <table_constraint_using_index>
  VALIDATE CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>
  DROP CONSTRAINT [IF EXISTS] <constraint_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]
  DISABLE TRIGGER [<trigger_name> | ALL | USER]
  ENABLE TRIGGER [<trigger_name> | ALL | USER]
  CLUSTER ON <index_name>
  SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
  SET WITHOUT OIDS
  SET (<storage_parameter> = <value>)
  RESET (<storage_parameter> [, ... ])
  INHERIT <parent_table>
  NO INHERIT <parent_table>
  OF `type_name`
  NOT OF
  OWNER TO <new_owner>
  SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace>
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

where table_constraint_using_index is:

```
  [ CONSTRAINT constraint\_name ]
  { UNIQUE | PRIMARY KEY } USING INDEX index\_name
  [ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

where partition_action is one of:

```
  ALTER DEFAULT PARTITION
  DROP DEFAULT PARTITION [IF EXISTS]
  DROP PARTITION [IF EXISTS] { <partition_name> |
      FOR (RANK(<number>)) | FOR (<value>) } [CASCADE]
  TRUNCATE DEFAULT PARTITION
  TRUNCATE PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>)) |
      FOR (<value>) }
  RENAME DEFAULT PARTITION TO <new_partition_name>
  RENAME PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>)) |
      FOR (<value>) } TO <new_partition_name>
  ADD DEFAULT PARTITION <name> [ ( <subpartition_spec> ) ]
  ADD PARTITION [<partition_name>] <partition_element>
     [ ( <subpartition_spec> ) ]
  EXCHANGE PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>)) |
       FOR (<value>) } WITH TABLE <table_name>
        [ WITH | WITHOUT VALIDATION ]
  EXCHANGE DEFAULT PARTITION WITH TABLE <table_name>
   [ WITH | WITHOUT VALIDATION ]
  SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (<subpartition_spec>)
  SPLIT DEFAULT PARTITION
    {  AT (<list_value>)
     | START([<datatype>] <range_value>) [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
        END([<datatype>] <range_value>) [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE] }
    [ INTO ( PARTITION <new_partition_name>,
             PARTITION <default_partition_name> ) ]
  SPLIT PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>)) |
     FOR (<value>) } AT (<value>)
     [ INTO (PARTITION <partition_name>, PARTITION <partition_name>)]
```

where partition_element is:

```
    VALUES (<list_value> [,...] )
  | START ([<datatype>] '<start_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE] ]
  | END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
[ WITH ( <partition_storage_parameter>=<value> [, ... ] ) ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
```

where subpartition_spec is:

```
<subpartition_element> [, ...]
```

and subpartition_element is:

```
   DEFAULT SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>
  | [SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>] VALUES (<list_value> [,...] )
  | [SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>]
     START ([<datatype>] '<start_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE] ]
     [ EVERY ( [<number | datatype>] '<interval_value>') ]
  | [SUBPARTITION <subpartition_name>]
     END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ EVERY ( [<number | datatype>] '<interval_value>') ]
[ WITH ( <partition_storage_parameter>=<value> [, ... ] ) ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

where storage_parameter is:

```
  appendoptimized={true | false}
  blocksize={8192-2097152}
  orientation={COLUMN|ROW}
  compresstype={ZLIB|ZSTD|RLE_TYPE|NONE}
  compresslevel={0-9}
  fillfactor={10-100}
  analyze_hll_non_part_table={true | false }
  [oids=FALSE]
```

### Description

`ALTER TABLE` changes the definition of an existing table. There are several subforms:

- **ADD COLUMN** — Adds a new column to the table, using the same syntax as CREATE TABLE. The `ENCODING` clause is valid only for append-optimized, column-oriented tables.

  When you add a column to an append-optimized, column-oriented table, WarehousePG sets each data compression parameter for the column ( `compresstype` , `compresslevel` , and `blocksize` ) based on the following setting, in order of preference.

  1. The compression parameter setting specified in the `ALTER TABLE` command `ENCODING` clause.
  2. If the server configuration parameter gp_add_column_inherits_table_setting is `on` , use the table's data compression parameters specified in the `WITH` clause when the table was created. The default server configuration parameter default is `off` , the `WITH` clause parameters are ignored.
  3. The compression parameter setting specified in the server configuration parameter gp_default_storage_option.
  4. The default compression parameter value. For append-optimized and hash tables, `ADD COLUMN` requires a table rewrite. For information about table rewrites performed by `ALTER TABLE` , see Notes.

- **DROP COLUMN [IF EXISTS]** — Drops a column from a table. Note that if you drop table columns that are being used as the WarehousePG distribution key, the distribution policy for the table will be changed to `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` . Indexes and table constraints involving the column are automatically dropped as well. You need to say `CASCADE` if anything outside the table depends on the column (such as views). If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the column does not exist, no error is thrown; a notice is issued instead.

- **IF EXISTS** — Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- **SET DATA TYPE** — This form changes the data type of a column of a table. Note that you cannot alter column data types that are being used as distribution or partitioning keys. Indexes and simple table constraints involving the column will be automatically converted to use the new column type by reparsing the originally supplied expression. The optional `COLLATE` clause specifies a collation for the new column; if omitted, the collation is the default for the new column type. The optional `USING` clause specifies how to compute the new column value from the old. If omitted, the default conversion is the same as an assignment cast from old data type to new. A `USING` clause must be provided if there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type.

  > **Note** GPORCA supports collation only when all columns in the query use the same collation. If columns in the query use different collations, then WarehousePG uses the Postgres Planner.

  Changing a column data type requires a table rewrite. For information about table rewrites performed by `ALTER TABLE` , see Notes.

- **SET/DROP DEFAULT** — Sets or removes the default value for a column. Default values only apply in subsequent `INSERT` or `UPDATE` commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

- **SET/DROP NOT NULL** — Changes whether a column is marked to allow null values or to reject null values. You can only use `SET NOT NULL` when the column contains no null values.

- **SET STATISTICS** — Sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent `ANALYZE` operations. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000, or set to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target ( `default_statistics_target` ). When set to 0, no statistics are collected.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ])**

  **RESET ( attribute_option [, ...] )**— Sets or resets per-attribute options. Currently, the only defined per-attribute options are `n_distinct` and `n_distinct_inherited`, which override the number-of-distinct-values estimates made by subsequent ANALYZE operations. `n_distinct` affects the statistics for the table itself, while `n_distinct_inherited` affects the statistics gathered for the table plus its inheritance children. When set to a positive value, `ANALYZE` will assume that the column contains exactly the specified number of distinct non-null values. When set to a negative value, which must be greater than or equal to -1, `ANALYZE` will assume that the number of distinct non-null values in the column is linear in the size of the table; the exact count is to be computed by multiplying the estimated table size by the absolute value of the given number. For example, a value of -1 implies that all values in the column are distinct, while a value of -0.5 implies that each value appears twice on the average. This can be useful when the size of the table changes over time, since the multiplication by the number of rows in the table is not performed until query planning time. Specify a value of 0 to revert to estimating the number of distinct values normally.

- **ADD table_constraint [NOT VALID]** — Adds a new constraint to a table (not just a partition) using the same syntax as `CREATE TABLE`. The `NOT VALID` option is currently only allowed for foreign key and `CHECK` constraints. If the constraint is marked `NOT VALID`, WarehousePG skips the potentially-lengthy initial check to verify that all rows in the table satisfy the constraint. The constraint will still be enforced against subsequent inserts or updates (that is, they'll fail unless there is a matching row in the referenced table, in the case of foreign keys; and they'll fail unless the new row matches the specified check constraints). But the database will not assume that the constraint holds for all rows in the table, until it is validated by using the `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` option. Constraint checks are skipped at create table time, so the CREATE TABLE syntax does not include this option.

- **VALIDATE CONSTRAINT** — This form validates a foreign key constraint that was previously created as `NOT VALID`, by scanning the table to ensure there are no rows for which the constraint is not satisfied. Nothing happens if the constraint is already marked valid. The advantage of separating validation from initial creation of the constraint is that validation requires a lesser lock on the table than constraint creation does.

- **ADD table_constraint_using_index** — Adds a new `PRIMARY KEY` or `UNIQUE` constraint to a table based on an existing unique index. All the columns of the index will be included in the constraint. The index cannot have expression columns nor be a partial index. Also, it must be a b-tree index with default sort ordering. These restrictions ensure that the index is equivalent to one that would be built by a regular `ADD PRIMARY KEY` or `ADD UNIQUE` command.

  Adding a `PRIMARY KEY` or `UNIQUE` constraint to a table based on an existing unique index is not supported on a partitioned table.

  If `PRIMARY KEY` is specified, and the index's columns are not already marked `NOT NULL`, then this command will attempt to do `ALTER COLUMN SET NOT NULL` against each such column. That requires a full table scan to verify the column(s) contain no nulls. In all other cases, this is a fast operation.

  If a constraint name is provided then the index will be renamed to match the constraint name. Otherwise the constraint will be named the same as the index.

  After this command is run, the index is "owned" by the constraint, in the same way as if the index had been built by a regular `ADD PRIMARY KEY` or `ADD UNIQUE` command. In particular, dropping the constraint will make the index disappear too.

- **DROP CONSTRAINT [IF EXISTS]** — Drops the specified constraint on a table. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

- **DISABLE/ENABLE TRIGGER** — Deactivates or activates trigger(s) belonging to the table. A deactivated trigger is still known to the system, but is not run when its triggering event occurs. For a deferred trigger, the enable status is checked when the event occurs, not when the trigger function is actually run. One may deactivate or activate a single trigger specified by name, or all triggers on the table, or only user-created triggers. Deactivating or activating constraint triggers requires superuser privileges.

  > **Note** triggers are not supported in WarehousePG. Triggers in general have very limited functionality due to the parallelism of WarehousePG.

- **CLUSTER ON/SET WITHOUT CLUSTER** — Selects or removes the default index for future `CLUSTER` operations. It does not actually re-cluster the table. Note that `CLUSTER` is not the recommended way to physically reorder a table in WarehousePG because it takes so long. It is better to recreate the table with CREATE TABLE AS and order it by the index column(s).

  > **Note** `CLUSTER ON` is not supported on append-optimized tables.

- **SET WITHOUT OIDS** — Removes the OID system column from the table.

  You cannot create OIDS on a partitioned or column-oriented table (an error is displayed). This syntax is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

  > **Caution** On large tables, such as those in a typical WarehousePG database system, using OIDs for table rows can cause the 32-bit counter to wrap-around. After the counter wraps around, OIDs can no longer be assumed to be unique, which not only makes them useless to user applications, but can also cause problems in the WarehousePG database system catalog tables. In addition, excluding OIDs from a table reduces the space required to store the table on disk by 4 bytes per row, slightly improving performance.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **SET ( FILLFACTOR = value) / RESET (FILLFACTOR)** — Changes the fillfactor for the table. The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller fillfactor is specified, `INSERT` operations pack table pages only to the indicated percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives `UPDATE` a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate. Note that the table contents will not be modified immediately by this command. You will need to rewrite the table to get the desired effects. That can be done with VACUUM or one of the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that forces a table rewrite. For information about the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that perform a table rewrite, see Notes.

- **SET DISTRIBUTED** — Changes the distribution policy of a table. Changing a hash distribution policy, or changing to or from a replicated policy, will cause the table data to be physically redistributed on disk, which can be resource intensive. *WarehousePG does not permit changing the distribution policy of a writable external table.*

- **INHERIT parent_table / NO INHERIT parent_table** — Adds or removes the target table as a child of the specified parent table. Queries against the parent will include records of its child table. To be added as a child, the target table must already contain all the same columns as the parent (it could have additional columns, too). The columns must have matching data types, and if they have `NOT NULL` constraints in the parent then they must also have `NOT NULL` constraints in the child. There must also be matching child-table constraints for all `CHECK` constraints of the parent, except those marked non-inheritable (that is, created with `ALTER TABLE ... ADD CONSTRAINT ... NO INHERIT`) in the parent, which are ignored; all child-table constraints matched must not be marked non-inheritable. Currently `UNIQUE`, `PRIMARY KEY`, and `FOREIGN KEY` constraints are not considered, but this may change in the future.

- OF type_name — This form links the table to a composite type as though `CREATE TABLE OF` had formed it. The table's list of column names and types must precisely match that of the composite type; the presence of an `oid` system column is permitted to differ. The table must not inherit from any other table. These restrictions ensure that `CREATE TABLE OF` would permit an equivalent table definition.

- **NOT OF** — This form dissociates a typed table from its type.

- **OWNER** — Changes the owner of the table, sequence, or view to the specified user.

- **SET TABLESPACE** — Changes the table's tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the table to the new tablespace. Indexes on the table, if any, are not moved; but they can be moved separately with additional `SET TABLESPACE` commands. All tables in the current database in a tablespace can be moved by using the `ALL IN TABLESPACE` form, which will lock all tables to be moved first and then move each one. This form also supports `OWNED BY`, which will only move tables owned by the roles specified. If the `NOWAIT` option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs are not moved by this command, use `ALTER DATABASE` or explicit `ALTER TABLE` invocations instead if desired. The `information_schema` relations are not considered part of the system catalogs and will be moved. See also `CREATE TABLESPACE`. If changing the tablespace of a partitioned table, all child table partitions will also be moved to the new tablespace.

- **RENAME** — Changes the name of a table (or an index, sequence, view, or materialized view), the name of an individual column in a table, or the name of a constraint of the table. There is no effect on the stored data. Note that WarehousePG distribution key columns cannot be renamed.

- **SET SCHEMA** — Moves the table into another schema. Associated indexes, constraints, and sequences owned by table columns are moved as well.

- **ALTER PARTITION | DROP PARTITION | RENAME PARTITION | TRUNCATE PARTITION | ADD PARTITION | SPLIT PARTITION | EXCHANGE PARTITION | SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE**— Changes the structure of a partitioned table. In most cases, you must go through the parent table to alter one of its child table partitions.

> **Note** If you add a partition to a table that has subpartition encodings, the new partition inherits the storage directives for the subpartitions. For more information about the precedence of compression settings, see Using Compression.

All the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that act on a single table, except `RENAME` and `SET SCHEMA`, can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply together. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command. This is particularly useful with large tables, since only one pass over the table need be made.

You must own the table to use `ALTER TABLE`. To change the schema or tablespace of a table, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema or tablespace. To add the table as a new child of a parent table, you must own the parent table as well. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the table's schema. To add a column or alter a column type or use the `OF` clause, you must also have `USAGE` privilege on the data type. A superuser has these privileges automatically.

> **Note** Memory usage increases significantly when a table has many partitions, if a table has compression, or if the blocksize for a table is large. If the number of relations associated with the table is large, this condition can force an operation on the table to use more memory. For example, if the table is a CO table and has a large number of columns, each column is a relation. An operation like `ALTER TABLE ALTER COLUMN` opens all the columns in the table allocates associated buffers. If a CO table has 40 columns and 100 partitions, and the columns are compressed and the blocksize is 2 MB (with a system factor of 3), the system attempts to allocate 24 GB, that is (40 ×100) × (2 ×3) MB or 24 GB.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- ONLY

  Only perform the operation on the table name specified. If the `ONLY` keyword is not used, the operation will be performed on the named table and any child table partitions associated with that table.

  > **Note** Adding or dropping a column, or changing a column's type, in a parent or descendant table only is not permitted. The parent table and its descendents must always have the same columns and types.

- name

  The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing table to alter. If `ONLY` is specified, only that table is altered. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are updated.

  > **Note** Constraints can only be added to an entire table, not to a partition. Because of that restriction, the name parameter can only contain a table name, not a partition name.

- column_name

  Name of a new or existing column. Note that WarehousePG distribution key columns must be treated with special care. Altering or dropping these columns can change the distribution policy for the table.

- new_column_name

  New name for an existing column.

- new_name

  New name for the table.

- type

  Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column. If changing the data type of a WarehousePG distribution key column, you are only allowed to change it to a compatible type (for example, `text` to `varchar` is OK, but `text` to `int` is not).

- table_constraint

  New table constraint for the table. Note that foreign key constraints are currently not supported in WarehousePG. Also a table is only allowed one unique constraint and the uniqueness must be within the WarehousePG distribution key.

- constraint_name

  Name of an existing constraint to drop.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column or constraint (for example, views referencing the column).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

- trigger_name

  Name of a single trigger to deactivate or enable. Note that WarehousePG does not support triggers.

- ALL

  Deactivate or activate all triggers belonging to the table including constraint related triggers. This requires superuser privilege if any of the triggers are internally generated constraint triggers such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- USER

  Deactivate or activate all triggers belonging to the table except for internally generated constraint triggers such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints.

- index_name

  The index name on which the table should be marked for clustering. Note that `CLUSTER` is not the recommended way to physically reorder a table in WarehousePG because it takes so long. It is better to recreate the table with CREATE TABLE AS and order it by the index column(s).

- FILLFACTOR

  Set the fillfactor percentage for a table.

  The fillfactor option is valid only for heap tables ( `appendoptimized=false` ).

- value

  The new value for the `FILLFACTOR` parameter, which is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 is the default.

- DISTRIBUTED BY ({column_name [opclass]}) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

  Specifies the distribution policy for a table. Changing a hash distribution policy causes the table data to be physically redistributed, which can be resource intensive. If you declare the same hash distribution policy or change from hash to random distribution, data will not be redistributed unless you declare `SET WITH (REORGANIZE=true)` .

  Changing to or from a replicated distribution policy causes the table data to be redistributed.

- analyze_hll_non_part_table=true|false

  Use `analyze_hll_non_part_table=true` to force collection of HLL statistics even if the table is not part of a partitioned table. The default is false.

- reorganize=true|false

  Use `REORGANIZE=true` when the hash distribution policy has not changed or when you have changed from a hash to a random distribution, and you want to redistribute the data anyways.

- parent_table

  A parent table to associate or de-associate with this table.

- new_owner

  The role name of the new owner of the table.

- new_tablespace

  The name of the tablespace to which the table will be moved.

- new_schema

  The name of the schema to which the table will be moved.

- parent_table_name

  When altering a partitioned table, the name of the top-level parent table.

- ALTER [DEFAULT] PARTITION

  If altering a partition deeper than the first level of partitions, use `ALTER PARTITION` clauses to specify which subpartition in the hierarchy you want to alter. For each partition level in the table hierarchy that is above the target partition, specify the partition that is related to the target partition in an `ALTER PARTITION` clause.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DROP [DEFAULT] PARTITION

  Drops the specified partition. If the partition has subpartitions, the subpartitions are automatically dropped as well.

- TRUNCATE [DEFAULT] PARTITION

  Truncates the specified partition. If the partition has subpartitions, the subpartitions are automatically truncated as well.

- RENAME [DEFAULT] PARTITION

  Changes the partition name of a partition (not the relation name). Partitioned tables are created using the naming convention: `<`parentname`>_<`level`>_prt_<`partition_name`>`.

- ADD DEFAULT PARTITION

  Adds a default partition to an existing partition design. When data does not match to an existing partition, it is inserted into the default partition. Partition designs that do not have a default partition will reject incoming rows that do not match to an existing partition. Default partitions must be given a name.

- ADD PARTITION

  partition_element - Using the existing partition type of the table (range or list), defines the boundaries of new partition you are adding.

  name - A name for this new partition.

  **VALUES** - For list partitions, defines the value(s) that the partition will contain.

  **START** - For range partitions, defines the starting range value for the partition. By default, start values are `INCLUSIVE`. For example, if you declared a start date of '`2016-01-01`', then the partition would contain all dates greater than or equal to '`2016-01-01`'. Typically the data type of the `START` expression is the same type as the partition key column. If that is not the case, then you must explicitly cast to the intended data type.

  **END** - For range partitions, defines the ending range value for the partition. By default, end values are `EXCLUSIVE`. For example, if you declared an end date of '`2016-02-01`', then the partition would contain all dates less than but not equal to '`2016-02-01`'. Typically the data type of the `END` expression is the same type as the partition key column. If that is not the case, then you must explicitly cast to the intended data type.

  **WITH** - Sets the table storage options for a partition. For example, you may want older partitions to be append-optimized tables and newer partitions to be regular heap tables. See CREATE TABLE for a description of the storage options.

  **TABLESPACE** - The name of the tablespace in which the partition is to be created.

  subpartition_spec - Only allowed on partition designs that were created without a subpartition template. Declares a subpartition specification for the new partition you are adding. If the partitioned table was originally defined using a subpartition template, then the template will be used to generate the subpartitions automatically.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- EXCHANGE [DEFAULT] PARTITION

  Exchanges another table into the partition hierarchy into the place of an existing partition. In a multi-level partition design, you can only exchange the lowest level partitions (those that contain data).

  The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_enable_exchange_default_partition` controls availability of the `EXCHANGE DEFAULT PARTITION` clause. The default value for the parameter is `off`. The clause is not available and WarehousePG returns an error if the clause is specified in an `ALTER TABLE` command.

  For information about the parameter, see Server Configuration Parameters.

  > **Caution** Before you exchange the default partition, you must ensure the data in the table to be exchanged, the new default partition, is valid for the default partition. For example, the data in the new default partition must not contain data that would be valid in other leaf child partitions of the partitioned table. Otherwise, queries against the partitioned table with the exchanged default partition that are run by GPORCA might return incorrect results.

  **WITH TABLE** table_name - The name of the table you are swapping into the partition design. You can exchange a table where the table data is stored in the database. For example, the table is created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. The table must have the same number of columns, column order, column names, column types, and distribution policy as the parent table.

  With the `EXCHANGE PARTITION` clause, you can also exchange a readable external table (created with the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command) into the partition hierarchy in the place of an existing leaf child partition. If you specify a readable external table, you must also specify the `WITHOUT VALIDATION` clause to skip table validation against the `CHECK` constraint of the partition you are exchanging.

  Exchanging a leaf child partition with an external table is not supported if the partitioned table contains a column with a check constraint or a `NOT NULL` constraint.

  You cannot exchange a partition with a replicated table. Exchanging a partition with a partitioned table or a child partition of a partitioned table is not supported.

  **WITH | WITHOUT VALIDATION** - Validates that the data in the table matches the `CHECK` constraint of the partition you are exchanging. The default is to validate the data against the `CHECK` constraint.

  > **Caution** If you specify the `WITHOUT VALIDATION` clause, you must ensure that the data in table that you are exchanging for an existing child leaf partition is valid against the `CHECK` constraints on the partition. Otherwise, queries against the partitioned table might return incorrect results.

- SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE

  Modifies the subpartition template for an existing partition. After a new subpartition template is set, all new partitions added will have the new subpartition design (existing partitions are not modified).

- SPLIT DEFAULT PARTITION

  Splits a default partition. In a multi-level partition, only a range partition can be split, not a list partition, and you can only split the lowest level default partitions (those that contain data). Splitting a default partition creates a new partition containing the values specified and leaves the default partition containing any values that do not match to an existing partition.

  **AT** - For list partitioned tables, specifies a single list value that should be used as the criteria for the split.

  **START** - For range partitioned tables, specifies a starting value for the new partition.

  **END** - For range partitioned tables, specifies an ending value for the new partition.

  **INTO** - Allows you to specify a name for the new partition. When using the `INTO` clause to split a default partition, the second partition name specified should always be that of the existing default partition. If you do not know the name of the default partition, you can look it up using the pg_partitions view.

- SPLIT PARTITION

  Splits an existing partition into two partitions. In a multi-level partition, only a range partition can be split, not a list partition, and you can only split the lowest level partitions (those that contain data).

  **AT** - Specifies a single value that should be used as the criteria for the split. The partition will be divided into two new partitions with the split value specified being the starting range for the latter partition.

  **INTO** - Allows you to specify names for the two new partitions created by the split.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- partition_name

  The given name of a partition. The given partition name is the `partitionname` column value in the *pg_partitions* system view.

- FOR (RANK(number))

  For range partitions, the rank of the partition in the range.

- FOR ('value')

  Specifies a partition by declaring a value that falls within the partition boundary specification. If the value declared with `FOR` matches to both a partition and one of its subpartitions (for example, if the value is a date and the table is partitioned by month and then by day), then `FOR` will operate on the first level where a match is found (for example, the monthly partition). If your intent is to operate on a subpartition, you must declare so as follows: `ALTER TABLE name ALTER PARTITION FOR ('2016-10-01') DROP PARTITION FOR ('2016-10-01');`

### Notes

The table name specified in the `ALTER TABLE` command cannot be the name of a partition within a table.

Take special care when altering or dropping columns that are part of the WarehousePG distribution key as this can change the distribution policy for the table.

WarehousePG does not currently support foreign key constraints. For a unique constraint to be enforced in WarehousePG, the table must be hash-distributed (not `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`), and all of the distribution key columns must be the same as the initial columns of the unique constraint columns.

Adding a `CHECK` or `NOT NULL` constraint requires scanning the table to verify that existing rows meet the constraint, but does not require a table rewrite.

This table lists the `ALTER TABLE` operations that require a table rewrite when performed on tables defined with the specified type of table storage.

| Operation (See Note) | Append-Optimized, Column-Oriented | Append-Optimized | Heap |
|---|---|---|---|
| `ALTER COLUMN TYPE` | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| `ADD COLUMN` | No | Yes | Yes |

> **Note** Dropping a system `oid` column also requires a table rewrite.

When a column is added with `ADD COLUMN`, all existing rows in the table are initialized with the column's default value, or `NULL` if no `DEFAULT` clause is specified. Adding a column with a non-null default or changing the type of an existing column will require the entire table and indexes to be rewritten. As an exception, if the `USING` clause does not change the column contents and the old type is either binary coercible to the new type or an unconstrained domain over the new type, a table rewrite is not needed, but any indexes on the affected columns must still be rebuilt. Table and/or index rebuilds may take a significant amount of time for a large table; and will temporarily require as much as double the disk space.

> **Important** The forms of `ALTER TABLE` that perform a table rewrite on an append-optimized table are not MVCC-safe. After a table rewrite, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions if they are using a snapshot taken before the rewrite occurred. See MVCC Caveats for more details.

You can specify multiple changes in a single `ALTER TABLE` command, which will be done in a single pass over the table.

The `DROP COLUMN` form does not physically remove the column, but simply makes it invisible to SQL operations. Subsequent insert and update operations in the table will store a null value for the column. Thus, dropping a column is quick but it will not immediately reduce the on-disk size of your table, as the space occupied by the dropped column is not reclaimed. The space will be reclaimed over time as existing rows are updated. If you drop the system `oid` column, however, the table is rewritten immediately.

To force immediate reclamation of space occupied by a dropped column, you can run one of the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that performs a rewrite of the whole table. This results in reconstructing each row with the dropped column replaced by a null value.

The `USING` option of `SET DATA TYPE` can actually specify any expression involving the old values of the row; that is, it can refer to other columns as well as the one being converted. This allows very general conversions to be done with the `SET DATA TYPE` syntax. Because of this flexibility, the `USING` expression is not applied to the column's default value (if any); the result might not be a constant expression as required for a default. This means that when there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type, `SET DATA TYPE` might fail to convert the default even though a `USING` clause is supplied. In such cases, drop the default with `DROP DEFAULT`, perform the `ALTER TYPE`, and then use `SET DEFAULT` to add a suitable new default. Similar considerations apply to indexes and constraints involving the column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If a table is partitioned or has any descendant tables, it is not permitted to add, rename, or change the type of a column, or rename an inherited constraint in the parent table without doing the same to the descendants. This ensures that the descendants always have columns matching the parent.

To see the structure of a partitioned table, you can use the view pg_partitions. This view can help identify the particular partitions you may want to alter.

A recursive `DROP COLUMN` operation will remove a descendant table's column only if the descendant does not inherit that column from any other parents and never had an independent definition of the column. A nonrecursive `DROP COLUMN` (`ALTER TABLE ONLY ... DROP COLUMN`) never removes any descendant columns, but instead marks them as independently defined rather than inherited.

The `TRIGGER`, `CLUSTER`, `OWNER`, and `TABLESPACE` actions never recurse to descendant tables; that is, they always act as though `ONLY` were specified. Adding a constraint recurses only for `CHECK` constraints that are not marked `NO INHERIT`.

These `ALTER PARTITION` operations are supported if no data is changed on a partitioned table that contains a leaf child partition that has been exchanged to use an external table. Otherwise, an error is returned.

- Adding or dropping a column.
- Changing the data type of column.

These `ALTER PARTITION` operations are not supported for a partitioned table that contains a leaf child partition that has been exchanged to use an external table:

- Setting a subpartition template.
- Altering the partition properties.
- Creating a default partition.
- Setting a distribution policy.
- Setting or dropping a `NOT NULL` constraint of column.
- Adding or dropping constraints.
- Splitting an external partition.

Changing any part of a system catalog table is not permitted.

### Examples

Add a column to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD COLUMN address varchar(30);
```

Rename an existing column:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME COLUMN address TO city;
```

Rename an existing table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME TO suppliers;
```

Add a not-null constraint to a column:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;
```

Rename an existing constraint:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;
```

Add a check constraint to a table and all of its children:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK
(char_length(zipcode) = 5);
```

To add a check constraint only to a table and not to its children:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK (char_length(zipcode) = 5) NO INHERIT;
```

(The check constraint will not be inherited by future children, either.)

Remove a check constraint from a table and all of its children:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

Remove a check constraint from one table only:

```
ALTER TABLE ONLY distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

(The check constraint remains in place for any child tables that inherit `distributors`.)

Move a table to a different schema:

```
ALTER TABLE myschema.distributors SET SCHEMA yourschema;
```

Change the distribution policy of a table to replicated:

```
ALTER TABLE myschema.distributors SET DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED;
```

Add a new partition to a partitioned table:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD PARTITION
            START (date '2017-02-01') INCLUSIVE
            END (date '2017-03-01') EXCLUSIVE;
```

Add a default partition to an existing partition design:

```
ALTER TABLE sales ADD DEFAULT PARTITION other;
```

Rename a partition:

```
ALTER TABLE sales RENAME PARTITION FOR ('2016-01-01') TO
jan08;
```

Drop the first (oldest) partition in a range sequence:

```
ALTER TABLE sales DROP PARTITION FOR (RANK(1));
```

Exchange a table into your partition design:

```
ALTER TABLE sales EXCHANGE PARTITION FOR ('2016-01-01') WITH
TABLE jan08;
```

Split the default partition (where the existing default partition's name is `other`) to add a new monthly partition for January 2017:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT DEFAULT PARTITION
START ('2017-01-01') INCLUSIVE
END ('2017-02-01') EXCLUSIVE
INTO (PARTITION jan09, PARTITION other);
```

Split a monthly partition into two with the first partition containing dates January 1-15 and the second partition containing dates January 16-31:

```
ALTER TABLE sales SPLIT PARTITION FOR ('2016-01-01')
AT ('2016-01-16')
INTO (PARTITION jan081to15, PARTITION jan0816to31);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For a multi-level partitioned table that consists of three levels, year, quarter, and region, exchange a leaf partition `region` with the table `region_new`.

```
ALTER TABLE sales ALTER PARTITION year_1 ALTER PARTITION quarter_4 EXCHANGE PARTITION region WITH TABLE region_new ;
```

In the previous command, the two `ALTER PARTITION` clauses identify which `region` partition to exchange. Both clauses are required to identify the specific partition to exchange.

### Compatibility

The forms `ADD` (without `USING INDEX`), `DROP`, `SET DEFAULT`, and `SET DATA TYPE` (without `USING`) conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are WarehousePG extensions of the SQL standard. Also, the ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single `ALTER TABLE` command is an extension.

`ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN` can be used to drop the only column of a table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column tables.

### See Also

CREATE TABLE, DROP TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.28 ALTER TABLESPACE

Changes the definition of a tablespace.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLESPACE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> SET ( <tablespace_option> = <value> [, ... ] )

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> RESET ( <tablespace_option> [, ... ] )
```

### Description

`ALTER TABLESPACE` changes the definition of a tablespace.

You must own the tablespace to use `ALTER TABLESPACE`. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role. (Note that superusers have these privileges automatically.)

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an existing tablespace.

- new_name

  The new name of the tablespace. The new name cannot begin with `pg_` or `gp_` (reserved for system tablespaces).

- new_owner

  The new owner of the tablespace.

- tablespace_option

  A tablespace parameter to set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are seq_page_cost and random_page_cost. Setting either value for a particular tablespace will override the planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see seq_page_cost, random_page_cost). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

### Examples

Rename tablespace `index_space` to `fast_raid`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space RENAME TO fast_raid;
```

Change the owner of tablespace `index_space`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space OWNER TO mary;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TABLESPACE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TABLESPACE, DROP TABLESPACE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.29 ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Changes the definition of a text search configuration.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING FOR <token_type> [, ... ] WITH <dictionary_name> [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING REPLACE <old_dictionary> WITH <new_dictionary>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING FOR <token_type> [, ... ] REPLACE <old_dictionary> WITH <new_dictionary>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    DROP MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] FOR <token_type> [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` changes the definition of a text search configuration. You can modify its mappings from token types to dictionaries, or change the configuration's name or owner.

You must be the owner of the configuration to use `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION`.

### Parameters

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

- `token\_type`

  The name of a token type that is emitted by the configuration's parser.

- `dictionary\_name`

  The name of a text search dictionary to be consulted for the specified token type(s). If multiple dictionaries are listed, they are consulted in the specified order.

- `old\_dictionary`

  The name of a text search dictionary to be replaced in the mapping.

- `new\_dictionary`

  The name of a text search dictionary to be substituted for old_dictionary.

- `new\_name`

  The new name of the text search configuration.

- new_owner

  The new owner of the text search configuration.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `new\_schema`

  The new schema for the text search configuration.

The `ADD MAPPING FOR` form installs a list of dictionaries to be consulted for the specified token type(s); it is an error if there is already a mapping for any of the token types. The `ALTER MAPPING FOR` form does the same, but first removing any existing mapping for those token types. The `ALTER MAPPING REPLACE` forms substitute new_dictionary for old_dictionary anywhere the latter appears. This is done for only the specified token types when `FOR` appears, or for all mappings of the configuration when it doesn't. The `DROP MAPPING` form removes all dictionaries for the specified token type(s), causing tokens of those types to be ignored by the text search configuration. It is an error if there is no mapping for the token types, unless `IF EXISTS` appears.

### Examples

The following example replaces the `english` dictionary with the `swedish` dictionary anywhere that `english` is used within `my_config`.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config
  ALTER MAPPING REPLACE english WITH swedish;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.30 ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Changes the definition of a text search dictionary.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> (
    <option> [ = <value> ] [, ... ]
)
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` changes the definition of a text search dictionary. You can change the dictionary's template-specific options, or change the dictionary's name or owner.

You must be the owner of the dictionary to use `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY`.

### Parameters

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

- `option`

  The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

- `value`

  The new value to use for a template-specific option. If the equal sign and value are omitted, then any previous setting for the option is removed from the dictionary, allowing the default to be used.

- `new\_name`

  The new name of the text search dictionary.

- `new\_owner`

  The new owner of the text search dictionary.

- `new\_schema`

  The new schema for the text search dictionary.

Template-specific options can appear in any order.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

The following example command changes the stopword list for a Snowball-based dictionary. Other parameters remain unchanged.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( StopWords = newrussian );
```

The following example command changes the language option to `dutch`, and removes the stopword option entirely.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( language = dutch, StopWords );
```

The following example command "updates" the dictionary's definition without actually changing anything.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( dummy );
```

(The reason this works is that the option removal code doesn't complain if there is no such option.) This trick is useful when changing configuration files for the dictionary: the ALTER will force existing database sessions to re-read the configuration files, which otherwise they would never do if they had read them earlier.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.31 ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Changes the definition of a text search parser.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER` changes the definition of a text search parser. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the parser's name.

You must be a superuser to use `ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER`.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

- new_name

  The new name of the text search parser.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the text search parser.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER, DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.32 ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Changes the definition of a text search template.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

### Description

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` changes the definition of a text search parser. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the parser's name.

You must be a superuser to use `ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE`.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

- new_name

  The new name of the text search template.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the text search template.

### Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.33 ALTER TYPE

Changes the definition of a data type.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TYPE <name> <action> [, ... ]
ALTER TYPE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TYPE <name> RENAME ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> TO <new_attribute_name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
ALTER TYPE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TYPE <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER TYPE <name> ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <new_enum_value> [ { BEFORE | AFTER } <existing_enum_value> ]
ALTER TYPE <name> SET DEFAULT ENCODING ( <storage_directive> )

where <action> is one of:

  ADD ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
  DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ] <attribute_name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
  ALTER ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

where storage_directive is:

```
   COMPRESSTYPE={ZLIB | ZSTD | RLE_TYPE | NONE}
   COMPRESSLEVEL={0-19}
   BLOCKSIZE={8192-2097152}
```

### Description

`ALTER TYPE` changes the definition of an existing type. There are several subforms:

- `ADD ATTRIBUTE` — Adds a new attribute to a composite type, using the same syntax as `CREATE TYPE`.
- `DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ]` — Drops an attribute from a composite type. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the attribute does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.
- `SET DATA TYPE` — Changes the type of an attribute of a composite type.
- `OWNER` — Changes the owner of the type.
- `RENAME` — Changes the name of the type or the name of an individual attribute of a composite type.
- `SET SCHEMA` — Moves the type into another schema.
- `ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] [ BEFORE | AFTER ]` — Adds a new value to an enum type. The new value's place in the enum's ordering can be specified as being `BEFORE` or `AFTER` one of the existing values. Otherwise, the new item is added at the end of the list of values.

  If `IF NOT EXISTS` is specified, it is not an error if the type already contains the new value; a notice is issued but no other action is taken. Otherwise, an error will occur if the new value is already present.
- `CASCADE` — Automatically propagate the operation to typed tables of the type being altered, and their descendants.
- `RESTRICT` — Refuse the operation if the type being altered is the type of a typed table. This is the default.

The `ADD ATTRIBUTE`, `DROP ATTRIBUTE`, and `ALTER ATTRIBUTE` actions can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several attributes and/or alter the type of several attributes in a single command.

You can change the name, the owner, and the schema of a type. You can also add or update storage options for a scalar type.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support adding storage options for row or composite types.

You must own the type to use `ALTER TYPE`. To change the schema of a type, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the type's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything that could be done by dropping and recreating the type. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any type.) To add an attribute or alter an attribute type, you must also have `USAGE` privilege on the data type.

`ALTER TYPE ... ADD VALUE` (the form that adds a new value to an enum type) cannot be run inside a transaction block.

Comparisons involving an added enum value will sometimes be slower than comparisons involving only original members of the enum type. This will usually only occur if `BEFORE` or `AFTER` is used to set the new value's sort position somewhere other than at the end of the list. However, sometimes it will happen even though the new value is added at the end (this occurs if the OID counter "wrapped around" since the original creation of the enum type). The slowdown is usually insignificant; but if it matters, optimal performance can be regained by dropping and recreating the enum type, or by dumping and reloading the database.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing type to alter.

- new_name

  The new name for the type.

- new_owner

  The user name of the new owner of the type.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the type.

- attribute_name

  The name of the attribute to add, alter, or drop.

- new_attribute_name

  The new name of the attribute to be renamed.

- data_type

  The data type of the attribute to add, or the new type of the attribute to alter.

- new_enum_value

  The new value to be added to an enum type's list of values. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

- existing_enum_value

  The existing enum value that the new value should be added immediately before or after in the enum type's sort ordering. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- storage_directive

  Identifies default storage options for the type when specified in a table column definition. Options include `COMPRESSTYPE`, `COMPRESSLEVEL`, and `BLOCKSIZE`.

  **COMPRESSTYPE** — Set to `ZLIB` (the default), `ZSTD` or `RLE_TYPE` to specify the type of compression used.

  **COMPRESSLEVEL** — For Zstd compression, set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 19 (highest compression ratio). For zlib compression, the valid range is from 1 to 9. For `RLE_TYPE`, the compression level can be set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 6 (highest compression ratio). The default compression level is 1.

  **BLOCKSIZE** — Set to the size, in bytes, for each block in the column. The `BLOCKSIZE` must be between 8192 and 2097152 bytes, and be a multiple of 8192. The default block size is 32768.

  > **Note** storage_directives defined at the table- or column-level override the default storage options defined for a type.

### Examples

To rename the data type named `electronic_mail`:

```
ALTER TYPE electronic_mail RENAME TO email;
```

To change the owner of the user-defined type `email` to `joe`:

```
ALTER TYPE email OWNER TO joe;
```

To change the schema of the user-defined type `email` to `customers`:

```
ALTER TYPE email SET SCHEMA customers;
```

To set or alter the compression type and compression level of the user-defined type named `int33`:

```
ALTER TYPE int33 SET DEFAULT ENCODING (compresstype=zlib, compresslevel=7);
```

To add a new attribute to a type:

```
ALTER TYPE compfoo ADD ATTRIBUTE f3 int;
```

To add a new value to an enum type in a particular sort position:

```
ALTER TYPE colors ADD VALUE 'orange' AFTER 'red';
```

### Compatibility

The variants to add and drop attributes are part of the SQL standard; the other variants are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

CREATE TYPE, DROP TYPE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.34 ALTER USER

Changes the definition of a database role (user).

### Synopsis

```
ALTER USER <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER USER <name> SET <config_parameter> {TO | =} {<value> | DEFAULT}

ALTER USER <name> RESET <config_parameter>

ALTER USER <name> RESOURCE QUEUE {<queue_name> | NONE}

ALTER USER <name> RESOURCE GROUP {<group_name> | NONE}

ALTER USER <name> [ [WITH] <option> [ ... ] ]
```

where option can be:

```
      SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
    | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
    | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
    | CREATEUSER | NOCREATEUSER
    | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE
      [ ( <attribute>='<value>'[, ...] ) ]
           where <attributes> and <value> are:
           type='readable'|'writable'
           protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
    | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
    | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
    | REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
    | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
    | [ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED] PASSWORD '<password>'
    | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'
    | [ DENY <deny_point> ]
    | [ DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>]
    | [ DROP DENY FOR <deny_point> ]
```

### Description

`ALTER USER` is an alias for `ALTER ROLE`. See ALTER ROLE for more information.

### Compatibility

The `ALTER USER` statement is a WarehousePG extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

### See Also

ALTER ROLE, CREATE USER, DROP USER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.35 ALTER USER MAPPING

Changes the definition of a user mapping for a foreign server.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
    OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] )
```

### Description

`ALTER USER MAPPING` changes the definition of a user mapping for a foreign server.

The owner of a foreign server can alter user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user granted `USAGE` privilege on the server can alter a user mapping for their own user name.

### Parameters

- username

  User name of the mapping. `CURRENT_USER` and `USER` match the name of the current user. `PUBLIC` is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

- servername

  Server name of the user mapping.

- OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )

  Change options for the user mapping. The new options override any previously specified options. `ADD`, `SET`, and `DROP` specify the action to perform. If no operation is explicitly specified, the default operation is `ADD`. Option names must be unique. WarehousePG validates names and values using the server's foreign-data wrapper.

### Examples

Change the password for user mapping `bob`, server `foo`:

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (SET password 'public');
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER USER MAPPING` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). There is a subtle syntax issue: The standard omits the `FOR` key word. Since both `CREATE USER MAPPING` and `DROP USER MAPPING` use `FOR` in analogous positions, WarehousePG diverges from the standard here in the interest of consistency and interoperability.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.36 ALTER VIEW

Changes properties of a view.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET DEFAULT <expression>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> DROP DEFAULT

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET ( <view_option_name> [= <view_option_value>] [, ... ] )

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RESET ( <view_option_name> [, ... ] )
```

### Description

`ALTER VIEW` changes various auxiliary properties of a view. (If you want to modify the view's defining query, use `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW`.

To run this command you must be the owner of the view. To change a view's schema you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must also be a direct or indirect member of the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the view's schema. These restrictions enforce that altering the owner does not do anything you could not do by dropping and recreating the view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing view.

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- `SET` / `DROP DEFAULT`

  These forms set or remove the default value for a column. A view column's default value is substituted into any `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command whose target is the view, before applying any rules or triggers for the view. The view's default will therefore take precedence over any default values from underlying relations.

- new_owner

  The new owner for the view.

- new_name

  The new name of the view.

- new_schema

  The new schema for the view.

- `SET ( view\_option\_name [= view\_option\_value] [, ... ] )`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `RESET ( view\_option\_name [, ... ] )`

  Sets or resets a view option. Currently supported options are:

  - `check_option` (string)

    Changes the check option of the view. The value must be `local` or `cascaded`.

  - `security_barrier` (boolean)

    Changes the security-barrier property of the view. The value must be a Boolean value, such as `true` or `false`.

### Notes

For historical reasons, `ALTER TABLE` can be used with views, too; however, the only variants of `ALTER TABLE` that are allowed with views are equivalent to the statements shown above.

Rename the view `myview` to `newview`:

```
ALTER VIEW myview RENAME TO newview;
```

### Examples

To rename the view `foo` to `bar`:

```
ALTER VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;
```

To attach a default column value to an updatable view:

```
CREATE TABLE base_table (id int, ts timestamptz);
CREATE VIEW a_view AS SELECT * FROM base_table;
ALTER VIEW a_view ALTER COLUMN ts SET DEFAULT now();
INSERT INTO base_table(id) VALUES(1);  -- ts will receive a NULL
INSERT INTO a_view(id) VALUES(2);  -- ts will receive the current time
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER VIEW` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE VIEW, DROP VIEW in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.37 ANALYZE

Collects statistics about a database.

### Synopsis

```
ANALYZE [VERBOSE] [<table> [ (<column> [, ...] ) ]]

ANALYZE [VERBOSE] {<root_partition_table_name>|<leaf_partition_table_name>} [ (<column> [, ...] )]

ANALYZE [VERBOSE] ROOTPARTITION {ALL | <root_partition_table_name> [ (<column> [, ...] )]}
```

### Description

`ANALYZE` collects statistics about the contents of tables in the database, and stores the results in the system table*pg_statistic*. Subsequently, WarehousePG uses these statistics to help determine the most efficient execution plans for queries. For information about the table statistics that are collected, see Notes.

With no parameter, `ANALYZE` collects statistics for every table in the current database. You can specify a table name to collect statistics for a single table. You can specify a set of column names in a specific table, in which case the statistics only for those columns from that table are collected.

`ANALYZE` does not collect statistics on external tables.

For partitioned tables, `ANALYZE` collects additional statistics, HyperLogLog (HLL) statistics, on the leaf child partitions. HLL statistics are used are used to derive number of distinct values (NDV) for queries against partitioned tables.

- When aggregating NDV estimates across multiple leaf child partitions, HLL statistics generate a more accurate NDV estimates than the standard table statistics.
- When updating HLL statistics, `ANALYZE` operations are required only on leaf child partitions that have changed. For example, `ANALYZE` is required if the leaf child partition data has changed, or if the leaf child partition has been exchanged with another table. For more information about updating partitioned table statistics, see Notes.

> **Important** If you intend to run queries on partitioned tables with GPORCA enabled (the default), then you must collect statistics on the root partition of the partitioned table with the `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` command. For information about collecting statistics on partitioned tables and when the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is required, see Notes. For information about GPORCA, seeOverview of GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

> **Note** You can also use the WarehousePG utility `analyzedb` to update table statistics. The `analyzedb` utility can update statistics for multiple tables concurrently. The utility can also check table statistics and update statistics only if the statistics are not current or do not exist. For information about the utility, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

### Parameters

- { root_partition_table_name | leaf_partition_table_name } [ (column [, ...] ) ]

  Collect statistics for partitioned tables including HLL statistics. HLL statistics are collected only on leaf child partitions.

  `ANALYZE root\_partition\_table\_name` , collects statistics on all leaf child partitions and the root partition.

  `ANALYZE leaf\_partition\_table\_name` , collects statistics on the leaf child partition.

  By default, if you specify a leaf child partition, and all other leaf child partitions have statistics, `ANALYZE` updates the root partition statistics. If not all leaf child partitions have statistics, `ANALYZE` logs information about the leaf child partitions that do not have statistics. For information about when root partition statistics are collected, see Notes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ROOTPARTITION [ALL]

  Collect statistics only on the root partition of partitioned tables based on the data in the partitioned table. If possible, `ANALYZE` uses leaf child partition statistics to generate root partition statistics. Otherwise, `ANALYZE` collects the statistics by sampling leaf child partition data. Statistics are not collected on the leaf child partitions, the data is only sampled. HLL statistics are not collected.

  For information about when the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is required, see Notes.

  When you specify `ROOTPARTITION`, you must specify either `ALL` or the name of a partitioned table.

  If you specify `ALL` with `ROOTPARTITION`, WarehousePG collects statistics for the root partition of all partitioned tables in the database. If there are no partitioned tables in the database, a message stating that there are no partitioned tables is returned. For tables that are not partitioned tables, statistics are not collected.

  If you specify a table name with `ROOTPARTITION` and the table is not a partitioned table, no statistics are collected for the table and a warning message is returned.

  The `ROOTPARTITION` clause is not valid with `VACUUM ANALYZE`. The command `VACUUM ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` returns an error.

  The time to run `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` is similar to the time to analyze a non-partitioned table with the same data since `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` only samples the leaf child partition data.

  For the partitioned table *sales_curr_yr*, this example command collects statistics only on the root partition of the partitioned table. `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION sales_curr_yr;`

  This example `ANALYZE` command collects statistics on the root partition of all the partitioned tables in the database.

  ```
  ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION ALL;
  ```

- VERBOSE

  Enables display of progress messages. When specified, `ANALYZE` emits this information

  - The table that is being processed.
  - The query that is run to generate the sample table.
  - The column for which statistics is being computed.
  - The queries that are issued to collect the different statistics for a single column.
  - The statistics that are collected.

- table

  The name (possibly schema-qualified) of a specific table to analyze. If omitted, all regular tables (but not foreign tables) in the current database are analyzed.

- column

  The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns.

### Notes

Foreign tables are analyzed only when explicitly selected. Not all foreign data wrappers support `ANALYZE`. If the table's wrapper does not support `ANALYZE`, the command prints a warning and does nothing.

It is a good idea to run `ANALYZE` periodically, or just after making major changes in the contents of a table. Accurate statistics helps WarehousePG choose the most appropriate query plan, and thereby improve the speed of query processing. A common strategy for read-mostly databases is to run VACUUM and `ANALYZE` once a day during a low-usage time of day. (This will not be sufficient if there is heavy update activity.) You can check for tables with missing statistics using the `gp_stats_missing` view, which is in the `gp_toolkit` schema:

```
SELECT * from gp_toolkit.gp_stats_missing;
```

`ANALYZE` requires `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the target table. This lock conflicts with these locks: `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If you run `ANALYZE` on a table that does not contain data, statistics are not collected for the table. For example, if you perform a `TRUNCATE` operation on a table that has statistics, and then run `ANALYZE` on the table, the statistics do not change.

For a partitioned table, specifying which portion of the table to analyze, the root partition or subpartitions (leaf child partition tables) can be useful if the partitioned table has a large number of partitions that have been analyzed and only a few leaf child partitions have changed.

> **Note** When you create a partitioned table with the `CREATE TABLE` command, WarehousePG creates the table that you specify (the root partition or parent table), and also creates a hierarchy of tables based on the partition hierarchy that you specified (the child tables).

- When you run `ANALYZE` on the root partitioned table, statistics are collected for all the leaf child partitions. Leaf child partitions are the lowest-level tables in the hierarchy of child tables created by WarehousePG for use by the partitioned table.

- When you run `ANALYZE` on a leaf child partition, statistics are collected only for that leaf child partition and the root partition. If data in the leaf partition has changed (for example, you made significant updates to the leaf child partition data or you exchanged the leaf child partition), then you can run ANALYZE on the leaf child partition to collect table statistics. By default, if all other leaf child partitions have statistics, the command updates the root partition statistics.

  For example, if you collected statistics on a partitioned table with a large number partitions and then updated data in only a few leaf child partitions, you can run `ANALYZE` only on those partitions to update statistics on the partitions and the statistics on the root partition.

- When you run `ANALYZE` on a child table that is not a leaf child partition, statistics are not collected.

  For example, you can create a partitioned table with partitions for the years 2006 to 2016 and subpartitions for each month in each year. If you run `ANALYZE` on the child table for the year 2013 no statistics are collected. If you run `ANALYZE` on the leaf child partition for March of 2013, statistics are collected only for that leaf child partition.

For a partitioned table that contains a leaf child partition that has been exchanged to use an external table, `ANALYZE` does not collect statistics for the external table partition:

- If `ANALYZE` is run on an external table partition, the partition is not analyzed.
- If `ANALYZE` or `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` is run on the root partition, external table partitions are not sampled and root table statistics do not include external table partition.
- If the `VERBOSE` clause is specified, an informational message is displayed: `skipping external table`.

The WarehousePG server configuration parameter optimizer_analyze_root_partition affects when statistics are collected on the root partition of a partitioned table. If the parameter is `on` (the default), the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is not required to collect statistics on the root partition when you run `ANALYZE`. Root partition statistics are collected when you run `ANALYZE` on the root partition, or when you run `ANALYZE` on a child leaf partition of the partitioned table and the other child leaf partitions have statistics. If the parameter is `off`, you must run `ANALZYE ROOTPARTITION` to collect root partition statistics.

The statistics collected by `ANALYZE` usually include a list of some of the most common values in each column and a histogram showing the approximate data distribution in each column. One or both of these may be omitted if `ANALYZE` deems them uninteresting (for example, in a unique-key column, there are no common values) or if the column data type does not support the appropriate operators.

For large tables, `ANALYZE` takes a random sample of the table contents, rather than examining every row. This allows even very large tables to be analyzed in a small amount of time. Note, however, that the statistics are only approximate, and will change slightly each time `ANALYZE` is run, even if the actual table contents did not change. This may result in small changes in the planner's estimated costs shown by `EXPLAIN`. In rare situations, this non-determinism will cause the query optimizer to choose a different query plan between runs of `ANALYZE`. To avoid this, raise the amount of statistics collected by `ANALYZE` by adjusting the default_statistics_target configuration parameter, or on a column-by-column basis by setting the per-column statistics target with `ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET (n_distinct ...)` (see `ALTER TABLE`). The target value sets the maximum number of entries in the most-common-value list and the maximum number of bins in the histogram. The default target value is 100, but this can be adjusted up or down to trade off accuracy of planner estimates against the time taken for `ANALYZE` and the amount of space occupied in `pg_statistic`. In particular, setting the statistics target to zero deactivates collection of statistics for that column. It may be useful to do that for columns that are never used as part of the `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, or `ORDER BY` clauses of queries, since the planner will have no use for statistics on such columns.

The largest statistics target among the columns being analyzed determines the number of table rows sampled to prepare the statistics. Increasing the target causes a proportional increase in the time and space needed to do `ANALYZE`.

One of the values estimated by `ANALYZE` is the number of distinct values that appear in each column. Because only a subset of the rows are examined, this estimate can sometimes be quite inaccurate, even with the largest possible statistics target. If this inaccuracy leads to bad query plans, a more accurate value can be determined manually and then installed with `ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET STATISTICS DISTINCT` (see ALTER TABLE).

When WarehousePG performs an `ANALYZE` operation to collect statistics for a table and detects that all the sampled table data pages are empty (do not contain valid data), WarehousePG displays a message that a `VACUUM FULL` operation should be performed. If the sampled pages are empty, the table statistics will be inaccurate. Pages become empty after a large number of changes to the table, for example deleting a large number of rows. A `VACUUM FULL` operation removes the empty pages and allows an `ANALYZE` operation to collect accurate statistics.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If there are no statistics for the table, the server configuration parameter gp_enable_relsize_collection controls whether the Postgres Planner uses a default statistics file or estimates the size of a table using the `pg_relation_size` function. By default, the Postgres Planner uses the default statistics file to estimate the number of rows if statistics are not available.

### Examples

Collect statistics for the table `mytable`:

```
ANALYZE mytable;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `ANALYZE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TABLE, EXPLAIN, VACUUM, analyzedb.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.38 BEGIN

Starts a transaction block.

### Synopsis

```
BEGIN [WORK | TRANSACTION] [<transaction_mode>]
```

where transaction_mode is:

```
   ISOLATION LEVEL {READ UNCOMMITTED | READ COMMITTED | REPEATABLE READ | SERIALIZABLE}
   READ WRITE | READ ONLY
   [ NOT ] DEFERRABLE
```

### Description

`BEGIN` initiates a transaction block, that is, all statements after a `BEGIN` command will be run in a single transaction until an explicit `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` is given. By default (without `BEGIN`), WarehousePG runs transactions in autocommit mode, that is, each statement is run in its own transaction and a commit is implicitly performed at the end of the statement (if execution was successful, otherwise a rollback is done).

Statements are run more quickly in a transaction block, because transaction start/commit requires significant CPU and disk activity. Execution of multiple statements inside a transaction is also useful to ensure consistency when making several related changes: other sessions will be unable to see the intermediate states wherein not all the related updates have been done.

If the isolation level, read/write mode, or deferrable mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was run.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional key words. They have no effect.
- SERIALIZABLE
- READ COMMITTED

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- READ UNCOMMITTED

  The SQL standard defines four transaction isolation levels: `READ UNCOMMITTED`, `READ COMMITTED`, `REPEATABLE READ`, and `SERIALIZABLE`.

  `READ UNCOMMITTED` allows transactions to see changes made by uncomitted concurrent transactions. This is not possible in WarehousePG, so `READ UNCOMMITTED` is treated the same as `READ COMMITTED`.

  `READ COMMITTED`, the default isolation level in WarehousePG, guarantees that a statement can only see rows committed before it began. The same statement run twice in a transaction can produce different results if another concurrent transaction commits after the statement is run the first time.

  The `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level guarantees that a transaction can only see rows committed before it began. `REPEATABLE READ` is the strictest transaction isolation level WarehousePG supports. Applications that use the `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

  The `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level guarantees that running multiple concurrent transactions produces the same effects as running the same transactions one at a time. If you specify `SERIALIZABLE`, WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`.

  Specifying `DEFERRABLE` has no effect in WarehousePG, but the syntax is supported for compatibility with PostgreSQL. A transaction can only be deferred if it is `READ ONLY` and `SERIALIZABLE`, and WarehousePG does not support `SERIALIAZABLE` transactions.

### Notes

START TRANSACTION has the same functionality as `BEGIN`.

Use COMMIT or ROLLBACK to terminate a transaction block.

Issuing `BEGIN` when already inside a transaction block will provoke a warning message. The state of the transaction is not affected. To nest transactions within a transaction block, use savepoints (see `SAVEPOINT`).

### Examples

To begin a transaction block:

```
BEGIN;
```

To begin a transaction block with the repeatable read isolation level:

```
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
```

### Compatibility

`BEGIN` is a WarehousePG language extension. It is equivalent to the SQL-standard command START TRANSACTION.

`DEFERRABLE` transaction_mode is a WarehousePG language extension.

Incidentally, the `BEGIN` key word is used for a different purpose in embedded SQL. You are advised to be careful about the transaction semantics when porting database applications.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

COMMIT, ROLLBACK, START TRANSACTION, SAVEPOINT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.39 CHECKPOINT

Forces a transaction log checkpoint.

### Synopsis

```
CHECKPOINT
```

### Description

A checkpoint is a point in the transaction log sequence at which all data files have been updated to reflect the information in the log. All data files will be flushed to disk.

The `CHECKPOINT` command forces an immediate checkpoint when the command is issued, without waiting for a regular checkpoint scheduled by the system. `CHECKPOINT` is not intended for use during normal operation.

If run during recovery, the `CHECKPOINT` command will force a restartpoint rather than writing a new checkpoint.

Only superusers may call `CHECKPOINT`.

### Compatibility

The `CHECKPOINT` command is a WarehousePG extension.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.40 CLOSE

Closes a cursor.

### Synopsis

```
CLOSE <cursor_name>
```

### Description

`CLOSE` frees the resources associated with an open cursor. After the cursor is closed, no subsequent operations are allowed on it. A cursor should be closed when it is no longer needed.

Every non-holdable open cursor is implicitly closed when a transaction is terminated by `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`. A holdable cursor is implicitly closed if the transaction that created it is prematurely ended via `ROLLBACK`. If the creating transaction successfully commits, the holdable cursor remains open until an explicit `CLOSE` is run, or the client disconnects.

### Parameters

- cursor_name

  The name of an open cursor to close.

### Notes

WarehousePG does not have an explicit `OPEN` cursor statement. A cursor is considered open when it is declared. Use the `DECLARE` statement to declare (and open) a cursor.

You can see all available cursors by querying the pg_cursors system view.

If a cursor is closed after a savepoint which is later rolled back, the `CLOSE` is not rolled back; that is the cursor remains closed.

### Examples

Close the cursor `portala`:

```
CLOSE portala;
```

### Compatibility

`CLOSE` is fully conforming with the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

DECLARE, FETCH, MOVE, RETRIEVE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.41 CLUSTER

Physically reorders a heap storage table on disk according to an index. Not a recommended operation in WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
CLUSTER <indexname> ON <tablename>

CLUSTER [VERBOSE] <tablename> [ USING index_name ]

CLUSTER [VERBOSE]
```

### Description

`CLUSTER` orders a heap storage table based on an index. `CLUSTER` is not supported on append-optmized storage tables. Clustering an index means that the records are physically ordered on disk according to the index information. If the records you need are distributed randomly on disk, then the database has to seek across the disk to get the records requested. If those records are stored more closely together, then the fetching from disk is more sequential. A good example for a clustered index is on a date column where the data is ordered sequentially by date. A query against a specific date range will result in an ordered fetch from the disk, which leverages faster sequential access.

Clustering is a one-time operation: when the table is subsequently updated, the changes are not clustered. That is, no attempt is made to store new or updated rows according to their index order. If you wish, you can periodically recluster by issuing the command again. Setting the table's `FILLFACTOR` storage parameter to less than 100% can aid in preserving cluster ordering during updates, because updated rows are kept on the same page if enough space is available there.

When a table is clustered using this command, WarehousePG remembers on which index it was clustered. The form `CLUSTER` tablename reclusters the table on the same index that it was clustered before. You can use the `CLUSTER` or `SET WITHOUT CLUSTER` forms of ALTER TABLE to set the index to use for future cluster operations, or to clear any previous setting. `CLUSTER` without any parameter reclusters all previously clustered tables in the current database that the calling user owns, or all tables if called by a superuser. This form of `CLUSTER` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

When a table is being clustered, an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock is acquired on it. This prevents any other database operations (both reads and writes) from operating on the table until the `CLUSTER` is finished.

### Parameters

- indexname

  The name of an index.

- `VERBOSE`

  Prints a progress report as each table is clustered.

- tablename

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a table.

### Notes

In cases where you are accessing single rows randomly within a table, the actual order of the data in the table is unimportant. However, if you tend to access some data more than others, and there is an index that groups them together, you will benefit from using `CLUSTER`. If you are requesting a range of indexed values from a table, or a single indexed value that has multiple rows that match, `CLUSTER` will help because once the index identifies the table page for the first row that matches, all other rows that match are probably already on the same table page, and so you save disk accesses and speed up the query.

`CLUSTER` can re-sort the table using either an index scan on the specified index, or (if the index is a b-tree) a sequential scan followed by sorting. It will attempt to choose the method that will be faster, based on planner cost parameters and available statistical information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

When an index scan is used, a temporary copy of the table is created that contains the table data in the index order. Temporary copies of each index on the table are created as well. Therefore, you need free space on disk at least equal to the sum of the table size and the index sizes.

When a sequential scan and sort is used, a temporary sort file is also created, so that the peak temporary space requirement is as much as double the table size, plus the index sizes. This method is often faster than the index scan method, but if the disk space requirement is intolerable, you can deactivate this choice by temporarily setting the enable_sort configuration parameter to `off`.

It is advisable to set maintenance_work_mem configuration parameter to a reasonably large value (but not more than the amount of RAM you can dedicate to the `CLUSTER` operation) before clustering.

Because the query optimizer records statistics about the ordering of tables, it is advisable to run `ANALYZE` on the newly clustered table. Otherwise, the planner may make poor choices of query plans.

Because `CLUSTER` remembers which indexes are clustered, you can cluster the tables you want clustered manually the first time, then set up a periodic maintenance script that runs `CLUSTER` without any parameters, so that the desired tables are periodically reclustered.

> **Note** `CLUSTER` is not supported with append-optimized tables.

### Examples

Cluster the table `employees` on the basis of its index `emp_ind`:

```
CLUSTER emp_ind ON emp;
```

Cluster a large table by recreating it and loading it in the correct index order:

```
CREATE TABLE newtable AS SELECT * FROM table ORDER BY column;
DROP table;
ALTER TABLE newtable RENAME TO table;
CREATE INDEX column_ix ON table (column);
VACUUM ANALYZE table;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `CLUSTER` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE TABLE AS, CREATE INDEX

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.42 COMMENT

Defines or changes the comment of an object.

### Synopsis

```
COMMENT ON
{ TABLE <object_name> |
  COLUMN <relation_name.column_name> |
  AGGREGATE <agg_name> (<agg_signature>) |
  CAST (<source_type> AS <target_type>) |
  COLLATION <object_name>
  CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ON <table_name> |
  CONVERSION <object_name> |
  DATABASE <object_name> |
  DOMAIN <object_name> |
  EXTENSION <object_name> |
  FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN TABLE <object_name> |
  FUNCTION <func_name> ([[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...]]) |
  INDEX <object_name> |
  LARGE OBJECT <large_object_oid> |
  MATERIALIZED VIEW <object_name> |
  OPERATOR <operator_name> (<left_type>, <right_type>) |
  OPERATOR CLASS <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  [PROCEDURAL] LANGUAGE <object_name> |
  RESOURCE GROUP <object_name> |
  RESOURCE QUEUE <object_name> |
  ROLE <object_name> |
  RULE <rule_name> ON <table_name> |
  SCHEMA <object_name> |
  SEQUENCE <object_name> |
  SERVER <object_name> |
  TABLESPACE <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH PARSER <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <object_name> |
  TRIGGER <trigger_name> ON <table_name> |
  TYPE <object_name> |
  VIEW <object_name> }
IS '<text>'
```

where agg_signature is:

```
* |
[ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

### Description

`COMMENT` stores a comment about a database object. Only one comment string is stored for each object. To remove a comment, write `NULL` in place of the text string. Comments are automatically dropped when the object is dropped.

For most kinds of object, only the object's owner can set the comment. Roles don't have owners, so the rule for `COMMENT ON ROLE` is that you must be superuser to comment on a superuser role, or have the `CREATEROLE` privilege to comment on non-superuser roles. Of course, a superuser can comment on anything.

Comments can be easily retrieved with the psql meta-commands `\dd`, `\d+`, and `\l+`. Other user interfaces to retrieve comments can be built atop the same built-in functions that psql uses, namely `obj_description`, `col_description`, and `shobj_description`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- object_name
- relation_name.column_name
- agg_name
- constraint_name
- func_name
- operator_name
- rule_name
- trigger_name

  The name of the object to be commented. Names of tables, aggregates, collations, conversions, domains, foreign tables, functions, indexes, operators, operator classes, operator families, sequences, text search objects, types, views, and materialized views can be schema-qualified. When commenting on a column, relation_name must refer to a table, view, materialized view, composite type, or foreign table.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support triggers.

- source_type

  The name of the source data type of the cast.

- target_type

  The name of the target data type of the cast.

- argmode

  The mode of a function or aggregate argument: either `IN`, `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is `IN`. Note that `COMMENT` does not actually pay any attention to `OUT` arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the `IN`, `INOUT`, and `VARIADIC` arguments.

- argname

  The name of a function or aggregate argument. Note that `COMMENT ON FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

- argtype

  The data type of a function or aggregate argument.

- large_object_oid

  The OID of the large object.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- left_type
- right_type

  The data type(s) of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified). Write `NONE` for the missing argument of a prefix or postfix operator.

- PROCEDURAL

  This is a noise word.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- text

  The new comment, written as a string literal; or `NULL` to drop the comment.

### Notes

There is presently no security mechanism for viewing comments: any user connected to a database can see all the comments for objects in that database. For shared objects such as databases, roles, and tablespaces, comments are stored globally so any user connected to any database in the cluster can see all the comments for shared objects. Therefore, do not put security-critical information in comments.

### Examples

Attach a comment to the table `mytable`:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS 'This is my table.';
```

Remove it again:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS NULL;
```

Some more examples:

```
COMMENT ON AGGREGATE my_aggregate (double precision) IS 'Computes sample variance';
COMMENT ON CAST (text AS int4) IS 'Allow casts from text to int4';
COMMENT ON COLLATION "fr_CA" IS 'Canadian French';
COMMENT ON COLUMN my_table.my_column IS 'Employee ID number';
COMMENT ON CONVERSION my_conv IS 'Conversion to UTF8';
COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT bar_col_cons ON bar IS 'Constrains column col';
COMMENT ON DATABASE my_database IS 'Development Database';
COMMENT ON DOMAIN my_domain IS 'Email Address Domain';
COMMENT ON EXTENSION hstore IS 'implements the hstore data type';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper IS 'my foreign data wrapper';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN TABLE my_foreign_table IS 'Employee Information in other database';
COMMENT ON FUNCTION my_function (timestamp) IS 'Returns Roman Numeral';
COMMENT ON INDEX my_index IS 'Enforces uniqueness on employee ID';
COMMENT ON LANGUAGE plpython IS 'Python support for stored procedures';
COMMENT ON LARGE OBJECT 346344 IS 'Planning document';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR ^ (text, text) IS 'Performs intersection of two texts';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR - (NONE, integer) IS 'Unary minus';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR CLASS int4ops USING btree IS '4 byte integer operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree IS 'all integer operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON ROLE my_role IS 'Administration group for finance tables';
COMMENT ON RULE my_rule ON my_table IS 'Logs updates of employee records';
COMMENT ON SCHEMA my_schema IS 'Departmental data';
COMMENT ON SEQUENCE my_sequence IS 'Used to generate primary keys';
COMMENT ON SERVER myserver IS 'my foreign server';
COMMENT ON TABLE my_schema.my_table IS 'Employee Information';
COMMENT ON TABLESPACE my_tablespace IS 'Tablespace for indexes';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config IS 'Special word filtering';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY swedish IS 'Snowball stemmer for Swedish language';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser IS 'Splits text into words';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE snowball IS 'Snowball stemmer';
COMMENT ON TRIGGER my_trigger ON my_table IS 'Used for RI';
COMMENT ON TYPE complex IS 'Complex number data type';
COMMENT ON VIEW my_view IS 'View of departmental costs';
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `COMMENT` statement in the SQL standard.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.43 COMMIT

Commits the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
COMMIT [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

### Description

`COMMIT` commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional key words. They have no effect.

### Notes

Use ROLLBACK to prematurely end a transaction.

Issuing `COMMIT` when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message.

### Examples

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

```
COMMIT;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard only specifies the two forms `COMMIT` and `COMMIT WORK`. Otherwise, this command is fully conforming.

### See Also

BEGIN, END, START TRANSACTION, ROLLBACK

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.44 COPY

Copies data between a file and a table.

### Synopsis

```
COPY <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])]
     FROM {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDIN}
     [ [ WITH ] ( <option> [, ...] ) ]
     [ ON SEGMENT ]

COPY { <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])] | (<query>)}
     TO {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDOUT}
     [ [ WITH ] ( <option> [, ...] ) ]
     [ ON SEGMENT ]
```

where option can be one of:

```
FORMAT <format_name>
OIDS [ <boolean> ]
FREEZE [ <boolean> ]
DELIMITER '<delimiter_character>'
NULL '<null string>'
HEADER [ <boolean> ]
QUOTE '<quote_character>'
ESCAPE '<escape_character>'
FORCE_QUOTE { ( <column_name> [, ...] ) | * }
FORCE_NOT_NULL ( <column_name> [, ...] )
FORCE_NULL ( <column_name> [, ...] )
ENCODING '<encoding_name>'
FILL MISSING FIELDS
LOG ERRORS [ SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count> [ ROWS | PERCENT ] ]
IGNORE EXTERNAL PARTITIONS
```

### Description

`COPY` moves data between WarehousePG tables and standard file-system files. `COPY TO` copies the contents of a table to a file (or multiple files based on the segment ID if copying `ON SEGMENT`), while `COPY FROM` copies data from a file to a table (appending the data to whatever is in the table already). `COPY TO` can also copy the results of a `SELECT` query.

If a list of columns is specified, `COPY` will only copy the data in the specified columns to or from the file. If there are any columns in the table that are not in the column list, `COPY FROM` will insert the default values for those columns.

`COPY` with a file name instructs the WarehousePG coordinator host to directly read from or write to a file. The file must be accessible to the coordinator host and the name must be specified from the viewpoint of the coordinator host.

When `COPY` is used with the `ON SEGMENT` clause, the `COPY TO` causes segments to create individual segment-oriented files, which remain on the segment hosts. The filename argument for `ON SEGMENT` takes the string literal `<SEGID>` (required) and uses either the absolute path or the `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` string literal. When the `COPY` operation is run, the segment IDs and the paths of the segment data directories are substituted for the string literal values.

Using `COPY TO` with a replicated table (`DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED`) as source creates a file with rows from a single segment so that the target file contains no duplicate rows. Using `COPY TO` with the `ON SEGMENT` clause with a replicated table as source creates target files on segment hosts containing all table rows.

The `ON SEGMENT` clause allows you to copy table data to files on segment hosts for use in operations such as migrating data between clusters or performing a backup. Segment data created by the `ON SEGMENT` clause can be restored by tools such as `gpfdist`, which is useful for high speed data loading.

> **Caution** Use of the `ON SEGMENT` clause is recommended for expert users only.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

When `PROGRAM` is specified, the server runs the given command and reads from the standard output of the program, or writes to the standard input of the program. The command must be specified from the viewpoint of the server, and be executable by the `gpadmin` user.

When `STDIN` or `STDOUT` is specified, data is transmitted via the connection between the client and the coordinator. `STDIN` and `STDOUT` cannot be used with the `ON SEGMENT` clause.

If `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` is used, then a `COPY FROM` operation will operate in single row error isolation mode. In this release, single row error isolation mode only applies to rows in the input file with format errors — for example, extra or missing attributes, attributes of a wrong data type, or invalid client encoding sequences. Constraint errors such as violation of a `NOT NULL`, `CHECK`, or `UNIQUE` constraint will still be handled in 'all-or-nothing' input mode. The user can specify the number of error rows acceptable (on a per-segment basis), after which the entire `COPY FROM` operation will be cancelled and no rows will be loaded. The count of error rows is per-segment, not per entire load operation. If the per-segment reject limit is not reached, then all rows not containing an error will be loaded and any error rows discarded. To keep error rows for further examination, specify the `LOG ERRORS` clause to capture error log information. The error information and the row is stored internally in WarehousePG.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, a `COPY` command returns a command tag of the form, where count is the number of rows copied:

```
COPY <count>
```

If running a `COPY FROM` command in single row error isolation mode, the following notice message will be returned if any rows were not loaded due to format errors, where count is the number of rows rejected:

```
NOTICE: Rejected <count> badly formatted rows.
```

### Parameters

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

- column_name

  An optional list of columns to be copied. If no column list is specified, all columns of the table will be copied.

  When copying in text format, the default, a row of data in a column of type `bytea` can be up to 256MB.

- query

  A `SELECT` or `VALUES` command whose results are to be copied. Note that parentheses are required around the query.

- filename

  The path name of the input or output file. An input file name can be an absolute or relative path, but an output file name must be an absolute path. Windows users might need to use an `E''` string and double any backslashes used in the path name.

- PROGRAM 'command'

  Specify a command to run. In `COPY FROM`, the input is read from standard output of the command, and in `COPY TO`, the output is written to the standard input of the command. The command must be specified from the viewpoint of the WarehousePG coordinator host system, and must be executable by the WarehousePG administrator user ( `gpadmin` ).

  The command is invoked by a shell. When passing arguments to the shell, strip or escape any special characters that have a special meaning for the shell. For security reasons, it is best to use a fixed command string, or at least avoid passing any user input in the string.

  When `ON SEGMENT` is specified, the command must be executable on all WarehousePG primary segment hosts by the WarehousePG administrator user ( `gpadmin` ). The command is run by each WarehousePG segment instance. The `<SEGID>` is required in the command.

  See the `ON SEGMENT` clause for information about command syntax requirements and the data that is copied when the clause is specified.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- STDIN

  Specifies that input comes from the client application. The `ON SEGMENT` clause is not supported with `STDIN`.

- STDOUT

  Specifies that output goes to the client application. The `ON SEGMENT` clause is not supported with `STDOUT`.

- boolean

  Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to deactivate it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

- FORMAT

  Selects the data format to be read or written: `text`, `csv` (Comma Separated Values), or `binary`. The default is `text`.

- OIDS

  Specifies copying the OID for each row. (An error is raised if OIDS is specified for a table that does not have OIDs, or in the case of copying a query.)

- FREEZE

  Requests copying the data with rows already frozen, just as they would be after running the `VACUUM FREEZE` command. This is intended as a performance option for initial data loading. Rows will be frozen only if the table being loaded has been created or truncated in the current subtransaction, there are no cursors open, and there are no older snapshots held by this transaction.

  Note that all other sessions will immediately be able to see the data once it has been successfully loaded. This violates the normal rules of MVCC visibility and users specifying this option should be aware of the potential problems this might cause.

- DELIMITER

  Specifies the character that separates columns within each row (line) of the file. The default is a tab character in `text` format, a comma in `CSV` format. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format.

- NULL

  Specifies the string that represents a null value. The default is `\N` (backslash-N) in `text` format, and an unquoted empty string in `CSV` format. You might prefer an empty string even in `text` format for cases where you don't want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format.

  > **Note** When using `COPY FROM`, any data item that matches this string will be stored as a null value, so you should make sure that you use the same string as you used with `COPY TO`.

- HEADER

  Specifies that a file contains a header line with the names of each column in the file. On output, the first line contains the column names from the table, and on input, the first line is ignored. This option is allowed only when using `CSV` format.

- QUOTE

  Specifies the quoting character to be used when a data value is quoted. The default is double-quote. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using `CSV` format.

- ESCAPE

  Specifies the character that should appear before a data character that matches the `QUOTE` value. The default is the same as the `QUOTE` value (so that the quoting character is doubled if it appears in the data). This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using `CSV` format.

- FORCE_QUOTE

  Forces quoting to be used for all non-`NULL` values in each specified column. `NULL` output is never quoted. If `*` is specified, non-`NULL` values will be quoted in all columns. This option is allowed only in `COPY TO`, and only when using `CSV` format.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FORCE_NOT_NULL

  Do not match the specified columns' values against the null string. In the default case where the null string is empty, this means that empty values will be read as zero-length strings rather than nulls, even when they are not quoted. This option is allowed only in `COPY FROM`, and only when using `CSV` format.

- FORCE_NULL

  Match the specified columns' values against the null string, even if it has been quoted, and if a match is found set the value to `NULL`. In the default case where the null string is empty, this converts a quoted empty string into `NULL`. This option is allowed only in `COPY FROM`, and only when using `CSV` format.

- ENCODING

  Specifies that the file is encoded in the encoding_name. If this option is omitted, the current client encoding is used. See the Notes below for more details.

- ON SEGMENT

  Specify individual, segment data files on the segment hosts. Each file contains the table data that is managed by the primary segment instance. For example, when copying data to files from a table with a `COPY TO...ON SEGMENT` command, the command creates a file on the segment host for each segment instance on the host. Each file contains the table data that is managed by the segment instance.

  The `COPY` command does not copy data from or to mirror segment instances and segment data files.

  The keywords `STDIN` and `STDOUT` are not supported with `ON SEGMENT`.

  The `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` and `<SEGID>` string literals are used to specify an absolute path and file name with the following syntax:

  ```
  COPY <table> [TO|FROM] '<SEG_DATA_DIR>/<gpdumpname><SEGID>_<suffix>' ON SEGMENT;
  ```

  - <SEG_DATA_DIR>

    The string literal representing the absolute path of the segment instance data directory for `ON SEGMENT` copying. The angle brackets ( `<` and `>` ) are part of the string literal used to specify the path. `COPY` replaces the string literal with the segment path(s) when `COPY` is run. An absolute path can be used in place of the `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` string literal.

  - \\

    The string literal representing the content ID number of the segment instance to be copied when copying `ON SEGMENT`. `<SEGID>` is a required part of the file name when `ON SEGMENT` is specified. The angle brackets are part of the string literal used to specify the file name.

    With `COPY TO`, the string literal is replaced by the content ID of the segment instance when the `COPY` command is run.

    With `COPY FROM`, specify the segment instance content ID in the name of the file and place that file on the segment instance host. There must be a file for each primary segment instance on each host. When the `COPY FROM` command is run, the data is copied from the file to the segment instance.

  When the `PROGRAM command` clause is specified, the `<SEGID>` string literal is required in the command, the `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` string literal is optional. See Examples.

  For a `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT` command, the table distribution policy is checked when data is copied into the table. By default, an error is returned if a data row violates the table distribution policy. You can deactivate the distribution policy check with the server configuration parameter `gp_enable_segment_copy_checking`. See Notes.

- NEWLINE

  Specifies the newline used in your data files — `LF` (Line feed, 0x0A), `CR` (Carriage return, 0x0D), or `CRLF` (Carriage return plus line feed, 0x0D 0x0A). If not specified, a WarehousePG segment will detect the newline type by looking at the first row of data it receives and using the first newline type encountered.

- CSV

  Selects Comma Separated Value (CSV) mode. See CSV Format.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FILL MISSING FIELDS

  In `COPY FROM` more for both `TEXT` and `CSV`, specifying `FILL MISSING FIELDS` will set missing trailing field values to `NULL` (instead of reporting an error) when a row of data has missing data fields at the end of a line or row. Blank rows, fields with a `NOT NULL` constraint, and trailing delimiters on a line will still report an error.

- LOG ERRORS

  This is an optional clause that can precede a `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` clause to capture error log information about rows with formatting errors.

  Error log information is stored internally and is accessed with the WarehousePG built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log()`.

  See Notes for information about the error log information and built-in functions for viewing and managing error log information.

- SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT count [ROWS | PERCENT]

  Runs a `COPY FROM` operation in single row error isolation mode. If the input rows have format errors they will be discarded provided that the reject limit count is not reached on any WarehousePG segment instance during the load operation. The reject limit count can be specified as number of rows (the default) or percentage of total rows (1-100). If `PERCENT` is used, each segment starts calculating the bad row percentage only after the number of rows specified by the parameter `gp_reject_percent_threshold` has been processed. The default for `gp_reject_percent_threshold` is 300 rows. Constraint errors such as violation of a `NOT NULL`, `CHECK`, or `UNIQUE` constraint will still be handled in 'all-or-nothing' input mode. If the limit is not reached, all good rows will be loaded and any error rows discarded.

  > **Note** WarehousePG limits the initial number of rows that can contain formatting errors if the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` is not triggered first or is not specified. If the first 1000 rows are rejected, the `COPY` operation is stopped and rolled back.

The limit for the number of initial rejected rows can be changed with the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_initial_bad_row_limit`. See Server Configuration Parameters for information about the parameter.

- IGNORE EXTERNAL PARTITIONS

  When copying data from partitioned tables, data are not copied from leaf child partitions that are external tables. A message is added to the log file when data are not copied.

  If this clause is not specified and WarehousePG attempts to copy data from a leaf child partition that is an external table, an error is returned.

  See the next section "Notes" for information about specifying an SQL query to copy data from leaf child partitions that are external tables.

### Notes

`COPY` can only be used with tables, not with external tables or views. However, you can write `COPY (SELECT * FROM viewname) TO ...`

`COPY` only deals with the specific table named; it does not copy data to or from child tables. Thus for example `COPY table TO` shows the same data as `SELECT * FROM ONLY` table``. But `COPY (SELECT * FROM table) TO ...` can be used to dump all of the data in an inheritance hierarchy.

Similarly, to copy data from a partitioned table with a leaf child partition that is an external table, use an SQL query to select the data to copy. For example, if the table `my_sales` contains a leaf child partition that is an external table, this command `COPY my_sales TO stdout` returns an error. This command sends the data to `stdout`:

```
COPY (SELECT * from my_sales ) TO stdout
```

The `BINARY` keyword causes all data to be stored/read as binary format rather than as text. It is somewhat faster than the normal text mode, but a binary-format file is less portable across machine architectures and WarehousePG versions. Also, you cannot run `COPY FROM` in single row error isolation mode if the data is in binary format.

You must have `SELECT` privilege on the table whose values are read by `COPY TO`, and `INSERT` privilege on the table into which values are inserted by `COPY FROM`. It is sufficient to have column privileges on the columns listed in the command.

Files named in a `COPY` command are read or written directly by the database server, not by the client application. Therefore, they must reside on or be accessible to the WarehousePG coordinator host machine, not the client. They must be accessible to and readable or writable by the WarehousePG cluster user (the user ID the server runs as), not the client. Only database superusers are permitted to name files with `COPY`, because this allows reading or writing any file that the server has privileges to access.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`COPY FROM` will invoke any triggers and check constraints on the destination table. However, it will not invoke rewrite rules. Note that in this release, violations of constraints are not evaluated for single row error isolation mode.

`COPY` input and output is affected by `DateStyle`. To ensure portability to other WarehousePG installations that might use non-default `DateStyle` settings, `DateStyle` should be set to ISO before using `COPY TO`. It is also a good idea to avoid dumping data with IntervalStyle set to `sql_standard`, because negative interval values might be misinterpreted by a server that has a different setting for IntervalStyle.

Input data is interpreted according to `ENCODING` option or the current client encoding, and output data is encoded in `ENCODING` or the current client encoding, even if the data does not pass through the client but is read from or written to a file directly by the server.

When copying XML data from a file in text mode, the server configuration parameter xmloption affects the validation of the XML data that is copied. If the value is `content` (the default), XML data is validated as an XML content fragment. If the parameter value is `document`, XML data is validated as an XML document. If the XML data is not valid, `COPY` returns an error.

By default, `COPY` stops operation at the first error. This should not lead to problems in the event of a `COPY TO`, but the target table will already have received earlier rows in a `COPY FROM`. These rows will not be visible or accessible, but they still occupy disk space. This may amount to a considerable amount of wasted disk space if the failure happened well into a large `COPY FROM` operation. You may wish to invoke `VACUUM` to recover the wasted space. Another option would be to use single row error isolation mode to filter out error rows while still loading good rows.

`FORCE_NULL` and `FORCE_NOT_NULL` can be used simultaneously on the same column. This results in converting quoted null strings to null values and unquoted null strings to empty strings.

When a `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT` command is run, the server configuration parameter `gp_enable_segment_copy_checking` controls whether the table distribution policy (from the table `DISTRIBUTED` clause) is checked when data is copied into the table. The default is to check the distribution policy. An error is returned if the row of data violates the distribution policy for the segment instance. For information about the parameter, see Server Configuration Parameters.

Data from a table that is generated by a `COPY TO...ON SEGMENT` command can be used to restore table data with `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT`. However, data restored to the segments is distributed according to the table distribution policy at the time the files were generated with the `COPY TO` command. The `COPY` command might return table distribution policy errors, if you attempt to restore table data and the table distribution policy was changed after the `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT` was run.

> **Note** If you run `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT` and the server configuration parameter `gp_enable_segment_copy_checking` is `false`, manual redistribution of table data might be required. See the `ALTER TABLE` clause `WITH REORGANIZE`.

When you specify the `LOG ERRORS` clause, WarehousePG captures errors that occur while reading the external table data. You can view and manage the captured error log data.

- Use the built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log('table\_name')`. It requires `SELECT` privilege on table_name. This example displays the error log information for data loaded into table `ext_expenses` with a `COPY` command:

  ```
  SELECT * from gp_read_error_log('ext_expenses');
  ```

  For information about the error log format, see Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  The function returns `FALSE` if table_name does not exist.

- If error log data exists for the specified table, the new error log data is appended to existing error log data. The error log information is not replicated to mirror segments.

- Use the built-in SQL function `gp_truncate_error_log('table\_name')` to delete the error log data for table_name. It requires the table owner privilege This example deletes the error log information captured when moving data into the table `ext_expenses`:

  ```
  SELECT gp_truncate_error_log('ext_expenses');
  ```

  The function returns `FALSE` if table_name does not exist.

  Specify the `*` wildcard character to delete error log information for existing tables in the current database. Specify the string `*.*` to delete all database error log information, including error log information that was not deleted due to previous database issues. If * is specified, database owner privilege is required. If `*.*` is specified, operating system super-user privilege is required.

When a WarehousePG user who is not a superuser runs a `COPY` command, the command can be controlled by a resource queue. The resource queue must be configured with the `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` parameter that specifies a maximum limit on the number of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. WarehousePG does not apply a cost value or memory value to a `COPY` command, resource queues with only cost or memory limits do not affect the running of `COPY` commands.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

A non-superuser can run only these types of `COPY` commands:

- `COPY FROM` command where the source is `stdin`
- `COPY TO` command where the destination is `stdout`

For information about resource queues, see "Resource Management with Resource Queues" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

## File Formats

File formats supported by `COPY`.

### Text Format

When the `text` format is used, the data read or written is a text file with one line per table row. Columns in a row are separated by the delimiter_character (tab by default). The column values themselves are strings generated by the output function, or acceptable to the input function, of each attribute's data type. The specified null string is used in place of columns that are null. `COPY FROM` will raise an error if any line of the input file contains more or fewer columns than are expected. If `OIDS` is specified, the OID is read or written as the first column, preceding the user data columns.

The data file has two reserved characters that have special meaning to `COPY`:

- The designated delimiter character (tab by default), which is used to separate fields in the data file.
- A UNIX-style line feed (`\n` or `0x0a`), which is used to designate a new row in the data file. It is strongly recommended that applications generating `COPY` data convert data line feeds to UNIX-style line feeds rather than Microsoft Windows style carriage return line feeds (`\r\n` or `0x0a 0x0d`).

If your data contains either of these characters, you must escape the character so `COPY` treats it as data and not as a field separator or new row.

By default, the escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files and a `"` (double quote) for csv-formatted files. If you want to use a different escape character, you can do so using the `ESCAPE AS` clause. Make sure to choose an escape character that is not used anywhere in your data file as an actual data value. You can also deactivate escaping in text-formatted files by using `ESCAPE 'OFF'`.

For example, suppose you have a table with three columns and you want to load the following three fields using `COPY`.

- percentage sign = %
- vertical bar = |

- backslash = \

Your designated delimiter_character is `|` (pipe character), and your designated escape character is `*` (asterisk). The formatted row in your data file would look like this:

```
percentage sign = % | vertical bar = *| | backslash = \
```

Notice how the pipe character that is part of the data has been escaped using the asterisk character (*). Also notice that we do not need to escape the backslash since we are using an alternative escape character.

The following characters must be preceded by the escape character if they appear as part of a column value: the escape character itself, newline, carriage return, and the current delimiter character. You can specify a different escape character using the `ESCAPE AS` clause.

### CSV Format

This format option is used for importing and exporting the Comma Separated Value (CSV) file format used by many other programs, such as spreadsheets. Instead of the escaping rules used by WarehousePG standard text format, it produces and recognizes the common CSV escaping mechanism.

The values in each record are separated by the `DELIMITER` character. If the value contains the delimiter character, the `QUOTE` character, the `ESCAPE` character (which is double quote by default), the `NULL` string, a carriage return, or line feed character, then the whole value is prefixed and suffixed by the `QUOTE` character. You can also use `FORCE_QUOTE` to force quotes when outputting non-`NULL` values in specific columns.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The CSV format has no standard way to distinguish a `NULL` value from an empty string. WarehousePG `COPY` handles this by quoting. A `NULL` is output as the `NULL` parameter string and is not quoted, while a non-`NULL` value matching the `NULL` string is quoted. For example, with the default settings, a `NULL` is written as an unquoted empty string, while an empty string data value is written with double quotes (`""`). Reading values follows similar rules. You can use `FORCE_NOT_NULL` to prevent `NULL` input comparisons for specific columns. You can also use `FORCE_NULL` to convert quoted null string data values to `NULL`.

Because backslash is not a special character in the `CSV` format, `\.`, the end-of-data marker, could also appear as a data value. To avoid any misinterpretation, a `\.` data value appearing as a lone entry on a line is automatically quoted on output, and on input, if quoted, is not interpreted as the end-of-data marker. If you are loading a file created by another application that has a single unquoted column and might have a value of `\.`, you might need to quote that value in the input file.

> **Note** In `CSV` format, all characters are significant. A quoted value surrounded by white space, or any characters other than `DELIMITER`, will include those characters. This can cause errors if you import data from a system that pads CSV lines with white space out to some fixed width. If such a situation arises you might need to preprocess the CSV file to remove the trailing white space, before importing the data into WarehousePG.

`CSV` format will both recognize and produce CSV files with quoted values containing embedded carriage returns and line feeds. Thus the files are not strictly one line per table row like text-format files

> **Note** Many programs produce strange and occasionally perverse CSV files, so the file format is more a convention than a standard. Thus you might encounter some files that cannot be imported using this mechanism, and `COPY` might produce files that other programs cannot process.

#### Binary Format

The `binary` format option causes all data to be stored/read as binary format rather than as text. It is somewhat faster than the text and `CSV` formats, but a binary-format file is less portable across machine architectures and WarehousePG versions. Also, the binary format is very data type specific; for example it will not work to output binary data from a `smallint` column and read it into an `integer` column, even though that would work fine in text format.

The binary file format consists of a file header, zero or more tuples containing the row data, and a file trailer. Headers and data are in network byte order.

- **File Header** — The file header consists of 15 bytes of fixed fields, followed by a variable-length header extension area. The fixed fields are:
  - **Signature** — 11-byte sequence PGCOPY\n\377\r\n\0 — note that the zero byte is a required part of the signature. (The signature is designed to allow easy identification of files that have been munged by a non-8-bit-clean transfer. This signature will be changed by end-of-line-translation filters, dropped zero bytes, dropped high bits, or parity changes.)
  - **Flags field** — 32-bit integer bit mask to denote important aspects of the file format. Bits are numbered from 0 (LSB) to 31 (MSB). Note that this field is stored in network byte order (most significant byte first), as are all the integer fields used in the file format. Bits 16-31 are reserved to denote critical file format issues; a reader should cancel if it finds an unexpected bit set in this range. Bits 0-15 are reserved to signal backwards-compatible format issues; a reader should simply ignore any unexpected bits set in this range. Currently only one flag is defined, and the rest must be zero (Bit 16: 1 if data has OIDs, 0 if not).
  - **Header extension area length** — 32-bit integer, length in bytes of remainder of header, not including self. Currently, this is zero, and the first tuple follows immediately. Future changes to the format might allow additional data to be present in the header. A reader should silently skip over any header extension data it does not know what to do with. The header extension area is envisioned to contain a sequence of self-identifying chunks. The flags field is not intended to tell readers what is in the extension area. Specific design of header extension contents is left for a later release.

- **Tuples** — Each tuple begins with a 16-bit integer count of the number of fields in the tuple. (Presently, all tuples in a table will have the same count, but that might not always be true.) Then, repeated for each field in the tuple, there is a 32-bit length word followed by that many bytes of field data. (The length word does not include itself, and can be zero.) As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL field value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

  There is no alignment padding or any other extra data between fields.

  Presently, all data values in a binary-format file are assumed to be in binary format (format code one). It is anticipated that a future extension may add a header field that allows per-column format codes to be specified.

  If OIDs are included in the file, the OID field immediately follows the field-count word. It is a normal field except that it is not included in the field-count. In particular it has a length word — this will allow handling of 4-byte vs. 8-byte OIDs without too much pain, and will allow OIDs to be shown as null if that ever proves desirable.

- **File Trailer** — The file trailer consists of a 16-bit integer word containing `-1`. This is easily distinguished from a tuple's field-count word. A reader should report an error if a field-count word is neither `-1` nor the expected number of columns. This provides an extra check against somehow getting out of sync with the data.

### Examples

Copy a table to the client using the vertical bar (|) as the field delimiter:

```
COPY country TO STDOUT (DELIMITER '|');
```

Copy data from a file into the `country` table:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
COPY country FROM '/home/usr1/sql/country_data';
```

Copy into a file just the countries whose names start with 'A':

```
COPY (SELECT * FROM country WHERE country_name LIKE 'A%') TO
'/home/usr1/sql/a_list_countries.copy';
```

Copy data from a file into the `sales` table using single row error isolation mode and log errors:

```
COPY sales FROM '/home/usr1/sql/sales_data' LOG ERRORS
   SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 10 ROWS;
```

To copy segment data for later use, use the `ON SEGMENT` clause. Use of the `COPY TO ON SEGMENT` command takes the form:

```
COPY <table> TO '<SEG_DATA_DIR>/<gpdumpname><SEGID>_<suffix>' ON SEGMENT;
```

The `<SEGID>` is required. However, you can substitute an absolute path for the `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` string literal in the path.

When you pass in the string literal `<SEG_DATA_DIR>` and `<SEGID>` to `COPY`, `COPY` will fill in the appropriate values when the operation is run.

For example, if you have `mytable` with the segments and mirror segments like this:

```
contentid | dbid | file segment location
    0     |  1   | /home/usr1/data1/gpsegdir0
    0     |  3   | /home/usr1/data_mirror1/gpsegdir0
    1     |  4   | /home/usr1/data2/gpsegdir1
    1     |  2   | /home/usr1/data_mirror2/gpsegdir1
```

running the command:

```
COPY mytable TO '<SEG_DATA_DIR>/gpbackup<SEGID>.txt' ON SEGMENT;
```

would result in the following files:

```
/home/usr1/data1/gpsegdir0/gpbackup0.txt
/home/usr1/data2/gpsegdir1/gpbackup1.txt
```

The content ID in the first column is the identifier inserted into the file path (for example, `gpsegdir0/gpbackup0.txt` above) Files are created on the segment hosts, rather than on the coordinator, as they would be in a standard `COPY` operation. No data files are created for the mirror segments when using `ON SEGMENT` copying.

If an absolute path is specified, instead of `<SEG_DATA_DIR>`, such as in the statement

```
COPY mytable TO '/tmp/gpdir/gpbackup_<SEGID>.txt' ON SEGMENT;
```

files would be placed in `/tmp/gpdir` on every segment. The `gpfdist` tool can also be used to restore data files generated with `COPY TO` with the `ON SEGMENT` option if redistribution is necessary.

> **Note** Tools such as `gpfdist` can be used to restore data. The backup/restore tools will not work with files that were manually generated with `COPY TO ON SEGMENT`.

This example uses a `SELECT` statement to copy data to files on each segment:

```
COPY (SELECT * FROM testtbl) TO '/tmp/mytst<SEGID>' ON SEGMENT;
```

This example copies the data from the `lineitem` table and uses the `PROGRAM` clause to add the data to the `/tmp/lineitem_program.csv` file with `cat` utility. The file is placed on the WarehousePG coordinator.

```
COPY LINEITEM TO PROGRAM 'cat > /tmp/lineitem.csv' CSV;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This example uses the `PROGRAM` and `ON SEGMENT` clauses to copy data to files on the segment hosts. On the segment hosts, the `COPY` command replaces `<SEGID>` with the segment content ID to create a file for each segment instance on the segment host.

```
COPY LINEITEM TO PROGRAM 'cat > /tmp/lineitem_program<SEGID>.csv' ON SEGMENT CSV;
```

This example uses the `PROGRAM` and `ON SEGMENT` clauses to copy data from files on the segment hosts. The `COPY` command replaces `<SEGID>` with the segment content ID when copying data from the files. On the segment hosts, there must be a file for each segment instance where the file name contains the segment content ID on the segment host.

```
COPY LINEITEM_4 FROM PROGRAM 'cat /tmp/lineitem_program<SEGID>.csv' ON SEGMENT CSV;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `COPY` statement in the SQL standard.

The following syntax was used in earlier versions of WarehousePG and is still supported:

```
COPY <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])] FROM {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDIN}
     [ [WITH]
       [ON SEGMENT]
       [BINARY]
       [OIDS]
       [HEADER]
       [DELIMITER [ AS ] '<delimiter_character>']
       [NULL [ AS ] '<null string>']
       [ESCAPE [ AS ] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
       [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
       [CSV [QUOTE [ AS ] '<quote>']
            [FORCE NOT NULL <column_name> [, ...]]
       [FILL MISSING FIELDS]
       [[LOG ERRORS]
       SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count> [ROWS | PERCENT] ]

COPY { <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])] | (<query>)} TO {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDOUT}
      [ [WITH]
        [ON SEGMENT]
        [BINARY]
        [OIDS]
        [HEADER]
        [DELIMITER [ AS ] 'delimiter_character']
        [NULL [ AS ] 'null string']
        [ESCAPE [ AS ] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
        [CSV [QUOTE [ AS ] 'quote']
             [FORCE QUOTE <column_name> [, ...]] | * ]
      [IGNORE EXTERNAL PARTITIONS ]
```

Note that in this syntax, `BINARY` and `CSV` are treated as independent keywords, not as arguments of a FORMAT option.

### See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.45 CREATE AGGREGATE

Defines a new aggregate function.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE AGGREGATE <name> ( [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , MSFUNC = <msfunc> ]
    [ , MINVFUNC = <minvfunc> ]
    [ , MSTYPE = <mstate_data_type> ]
    [ , MSSPACE = <mstate_data_size> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC = <mffunc> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , MINITCOND = <minitial_condition> ]
    [ , SORTOP = <sort_operator> ]
  )

  CREATE AGGREGATE <name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ]
      ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , HYPOTHETICAL ]
  )

  or the old syntax

  CREATE AGGREGATE <name> (
    BASETYPE = <base_type>,
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , MSFUNC = <msfunc> ]
    [ , MINVFUNC = <minvfunc> ]
    [ , MSTYPE = <mstate_data_type> ]
    [ , MSSPACE = <mstate_data_size> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC = <mffunc> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , MINITCOND = <minitial_condition> ]
    [ , SORTOP = <sort_operator> ]
  )
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Description

`CREATE AGGREGATE` defines a new aggregate function. Some basic and commonly-used aggregate functions such as `count`, `min`, `max`, `sum`, `avg` and so on are already provided in WarehousePG. If you define new types or need an aggregate function not already provided, you can use `CREATE AGGREGATE` to provide the desired features.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE AGGREGATE myschema.myagg ...`) then the aggregate function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

An aggregate function is identified by its name and input data types. Two aggregate functions in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different input types. The name and input data types of an aggregate function must also be distinct from the name and input data types of every ordinary function in the same schema. This behavior is identical to overloading of ordinary function names. See CREATE FUNCTION.

A simple aggregate function is made from one, two, or three ordinary functions (which must be `IMMUTABLE` functions):

- a state transition function statefunc
- an optional final calculation function ffunc
- an optional combine function combinefunc

These functions are used as follows:

```
<statefunc>( internal-state, next-data-values ) ---> next-internal-state
<ffunc>( internal-state ) ---> aggregate-value
<combinefunc>( internal-state, internal-state ) ---> next-internal-state
```

WarehousePG creates a temporary variable of data type state_data_type to hold the current internal state of the aggregate function. At each input row, the aggregate argument values are calculated and the state transition function is invoked with the current state value and the new argument values to calculate a new internal state value. After all the rows have been processed, the final function is invoked once to calculate the aggregate return value. If there is no final function then the ending state value is returned as-is.

> **Note** If you write a user-defined aggregate in C, and you declare the state value (state_data_type) as type `internal`, there is a risk of an out-of-memory error occurring. If `internal` state values are not properly managed and a query acquires too much memory for state values, an out-of-memory error could occur. To prevent this, use `mpool_alloc(mpool, size)` to have WarehousePG manage and allocate memory for non-temporary state values, that is, state values that have a lifespan for the entire aggregation. The argument `mpool` of the `mpool_alloc()` function is `aggstate->hhashtable->group_buf`. For an example, see the implementation of the numeric data type aggregates in `src/backend/utils/adt/numeric.c` in the WarehousePG open source code.

You can specify `combinefunc` as a method for optimizing aggregate execution. By specifying `combinefunc`, the aggregate can be run in parallel on segments first and then on the coordinator. When a two-level execution is performed, the `statefunc` is run on the segments to generate partial aggregate results, and `combinefunc` is run on the coordinator to aggregate the partial results from segments. If single-level aggregation is performed, all the rows are sent to the coordinator and the `statefunc` is applied to the rows.

Single-level aggregation and two-level aggregation are equivalent execution strategies. Either type of aggregation can be implemented in a query plan. When you implement the functions `combinefunc` and `statefunc`, you must ensure that the invocation of the `statefunc` on the segment instances followed by `combinefunc` on the coordinator produce the same result as single-level aggregation that sends all the rows to the coordinator and then applies only the `statefunc` to the rows.

An aggregate function can provide an optional initial condition, an initial value for the internal state value. This is specified and stored in the database as a value of type `text`, but it must be a valid external representation of a constant of the state value data type. If it is not supplied then the state value starts out `NULL`.

If `statefunc` is declared `STRICT`, then it cannot be called with `NULL` inputs. With such a transition function, aggregate execution behaves as follows. Rows with any null input values are ignored (the function is not called and the previous state value is retained). If the initial state value is `NULL`, then at the first row with all non-null input values, the first argument value replaces the state value, and the transition function is invoked at subsequent rows with all non-null input values. This is useful for implementing aggregates like `max`. Note that this behavior is only available when state_data_type is the same as the first arg_data_type. When these types are different, you must supply a non-null initial condition or use a nonstrict transition function.

If statefunc is not declared `STRICT`, then it will be called unconditionally at each input row, and must deal with `NULL` inputs and `NULL` state values for itself. This allows the aggregate author to have full control over the aggregate's handling of `NULL` values.

If the final function (`ffunc`) is declared `STRICT`, then it will not be called when the ending state value is `NULL`; instead a `NULL` result will be returned automatically. (This is the normal behavior of `STRICT` functions.) In any case the final function has the option of returning a `NULL` value. For example, the final function for `avg` returns `NULL` when it sees there were zero input rows.

Sometimes it is useful to declare the final function as taking not just the state value, but extra parameters corresponding to the aggregate's input values. The main reason for doing this is if the final function is polymorphic and the state value's data type would be inadequate to pin down the result type. These extra parameters are always passed as `NULL` (and so the final function must not be strict when the `FINALFUNC_EXTRA` option is used), but nonetheless they are valid parameters. The final function could for example make use of `get_fn_expr_argtype` to identify the actual argument type in the current call.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

An aggregate can optionally support *moving-aggregate mode*, as described in Moving-Aggregate Mode in the PostgreSQL documentation. This requires specifying the `msfunc`, `minvfunc`, and `mstype` functions, and optionally the `mspace`, `mfinalfunc`, `mfinalfunc\_extra`, and `minitcond` functions. Except for `minvfunc`, these functions work like the corresponding simple-aggregate functions without `m`; they define a separate implementation of the aggregate that includes an inverse transition function.

The syntax with `ORDER BY` in the parameter list creates a special type of aggregate called an *ordered-set aggregate*; or if `HYPOTHETICAL` is specified, then a *hypothetical-set aggregate* is created. These aggregates operate over groups of sorted values in order-dependent ways, so that specification of an input sort order is an essential part of a call. Also, they can have *direct* arguments, which are arguments that are evaluated only once per aggregation rather than once per input row. Hypothetical-set aggregates are a subclass of ordered-set aggregates in which some of the direct arguments are required to match, in number and data types, the aggregated argument columns. This allows the values of those direct arguments to be added to the collection of aggregate-input rows as an additional "hypothetical" row.

Single argument aggregate functions, such as `min` or `max`, can sometimes be optimized by looking into an index instead of scanning every input row. If this aggregate can be so optimized, indicate it by specifying a *sort operator*. The basic requirement is that the aggregate must yield the first element in the sort ordering induced by the operator; in other words:

```
SELECT <agg>(<col>) FROM <tab>;
```

must be equivalent to:

```
SELECT <col> FROM <tab> ORDER BY <col> USING <sortop> LIMIT 1;
```

Further assumptions are that the aggregate function ignores `NULL` inputs, and that it delivers a `NULL` result if and only if there were no non-null inputs. Ordinarily, a data type's `<` operator is the proper sort operator for `MIN`, and `>` is the proper sort operator for `MAX`. Note that the optimization will never actually take effect unless the specified operator is the "less than" or "greater than" strategy member of a B-tree index operator class.

To be able to create an aggregate function, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the argument types, the state type(s), and the return type, as well as `EXECUTE` privilege on the transition and final functions.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the aggregate function to create.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: `IN` or `VARIADIC`. (Aggregate functions do not support `OUT` arguments.) If omitted, the default is `IN`. Only the last argument can be marked `VARIADIC`.

- argname

  The name of an argument. This is currently only useful for documentation purposes. If omitted, the argument has no name.

- arg_data_type

  An input data type on which this aggregate function operates. To create a zero-argument aggregate function, write `*` in place of the list of argument specifications. (An example of such an aggregate is `count(*)`.)

- base_type

  In the old syntax for `CREATE AGGREGATE`, the input data type is specified by a `basetype` parameter rather than being written next to the aggregate name. Note that this syntax allows only one input parameter. To define a zero-argument aggregate function with this syntax, specify the `basetype` as `"ANY"` (not `*`). Ordered-set aggregates cannot be defined with the old syntax.

- statefunc

  The name of the state transition function to be called for each input row. For a normal N-argument aggregate function, the state transition function `statefunc` must take N+1 arguments, the first being of type state_data_type and the rest matching the declared input data types of the aggregate. The function must return a value of type state_data_type. This function takes the current state value and the current input data values, and returns the next state value.

  For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the state transition function statefunc receives only the current state value and the aggregated arguments, not the direct arguments. Otherwise it is the same.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- state_data_type

  The data type for the aggregate's state value.

- state_data_size

  The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value. If this parameter is omitted or is zero, a default estimate is used based on the state_data_type. The planner uses this value to estimate the memory required for a grouped aggregate query. Large values of this parameter discourage use of hash aggregation.

- ffunc

  The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate result after all input rows have been traversed. The function must take a single argument of type state_data_type. The return data type of the aggregate is defined as the return type of this function. If `ffunc` is not specified, then the ending state value is used as the aggregate result, and the return type is state_data_type.

  For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the final function receives not only the final state value, but also the values of all the direct arguments.

  If `FINALFUNC_EXTRA` is specified, then in addition to the final state value and any direct arguments, the final function receives extra NULL values corresponding to the aggregate's regular (aggregated) arguments. This is mainly useful to allow correct resolution of the aggregate result type when a polymorphic aggregate is being defined.

- combinefunc

  The name of a combine function. This is a function of two arguments, both of type state_data_type. It must return a value of state_data_type. A combine function takes two transition state values and returns a new transition state value representing the combined aggregation. In WarehousePG, if the result of the aggregate function is computed in a segmented fashion, the combine function is invoked on the individual internal states in order to combine them into an ending internal state.

  Note that this function is also called in hash aggregate mode within a segment. Therefore, if you call this aggregate function without a combine function, hash aggregate is never chosen. Since hash aggregate is efficient, consider defining a combine function whenever possible.

- serialfunc

  An aggregate function whose state_data_type is `internal` can participate in parallel aggregation only if it has a serialfunc function, which must serialize the aggregate state into a `bytea` value for transmission to another process. This function must take a single argument of type `internal` and return type `bytea`. A corresponding deserialfunc is also required.

- deserialfunc

  Deserialize a previously serialized aggregate state back into state_data_type. This function must take two arguments of types `bytea` and `internal`, and produce a result of type `internal`.

**Note** The second, `internal` argument is unused, but is required for type safety reasons.

- initial_condition

  The initial setting for the state value. This must be a string constant in the form accepted for the data type state_data_type. If not specified, the state value starts out null.

- msfunc

  The name of the forward state transition function to be called for each input row in moving-aggregate mode. This is exactly like the regular transition function, except that its first argument and result are of type mstate_data_type, which might be different from state_data_type.

- minvfunc

  The name of the inverse state transition function to be used in moving-aggregate mode. This function has the same argument and result types as msfunc, but it is used to remove a value from the current aggregate state, rather than add a value to it. The inverse transition function must have the same strictness attribute as the forward state transition function.

- mstate_data_type

  The data type for the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- mstate_data_size

  The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as state_data_size.

- mffunc

  The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate's result after all input rows have been traversed, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as ffunc, except that its first argument's type is mstate_data_type and extra dummy arguments are specified by writing `MFINALFUNC_EXTRA`. The aggregate result type determined by mffunc or mstate_data_type must match that determined by the aggregate's regular implementation.

- minitial_condition

  The initial setting for the state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as initial_condition.

- sort_operator

  The associated sort operator for a `MIN`- or `MAX`-like aggregate. This is just an operator name (possibly schema-qualified). The operator is assumed to have the same input data types as the aggregate (which must be a single-argument normal aggregate).

- HYPOTHETICAL

  For ordered-set aggregates only, this flag specifies that the aggregate arguments are to be processed according to the requirements for hypothetical-set aggregates: that is, the last few direct arguments must match the data types of the aggregated ( `WITHIN GROUP` ) arguments. The `HYPOTHETICAL` flag has no effect on run-time behavior, only on parse-time resolution of the data types and collations of the aggregate's arguments.

### Notes

The ordinary functions used to define a new aggregate function must be defined first. Note that in this release of WarehousePG, it is required that the statefunc, ffunc, and combinefunc functions used to create the aggregate are defined as `IMMUTABLE`.

If the value of the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_enable_multiphase_agg` is `off`, only single-level aggregation is performed.

Any compiled code (shared library files) for custom functions must be placed in the same location on every host in your WarehousePG array (coordinator and all segments). This location must also be in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so that the server can locate the files.

In previous versions of WarehousePG, there was a concept of ordered aggregates. Since version 6, any aggregate can be called as an ordered aggregate, using the syntax:

```
name ( arg [ , ... ] [ORDER BY sortspec [ , ...]] )
```

The `ORDERED` keyword is accepted for backwards compatibility, but is ignored.

In previous versions of WarehousePG, the `COMBINEFUNC` option was called `PREFUNC`. It is still accepted for backwards compatibility, as a synonym for `COMBINEFUNC`.

### Example

The following simple example creates an aggregate function that computes the sum of two columns.

Before creating the aggregate function, create two functions that are used as the `statefunc` and `combinefunc` functions of the aggregate function.

This function is specified as the `statefunc` function in the aggregate function.

```
CREATE FUNCTION mysfunc_accum(numeric, numeric, numeric)
  RETURNS numeric
   AS 'select $1 + $2 + $3'
   LANGUAGE SQL
   IMMUTABLE
   RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This function is specified as the `combinefunc` function in the aggregate function.

```
CREATE FUNCTION mycombine_accum(numeric, numeric )
  RETURNS numeric
   AS 'select $1 + $2'
   LANGUAGE SQL
   IMMUTABLE
   RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT;
```

This `CREATE AGGREGATE` command creates the aggregate function that adds two columns.

```
CREATE AGGREGATE agg_prefunc(numeric, numeric) (
   SFUNC = mysfunc_accum,
   STYPE = numeric,
   COMBINEFUNC = mycombine_accum,
   INITCOND = 0 );
```

The following commands create a table, adds some rows, and runs the aggregate function.

```
create table t1 (a int, b int) DISTRIBUTED BY (a);
insert into t1 values
   (10, 1),
   (20, 2),
   (30, 3);
select agg_prefunc(a, b) from t1;
```

This `EXPLAIN` command shows two phase aggregation.

```
explain select agg_prefunc(a, b) from t1;

QUERY PLAN
------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Aggregate (cost=1.10..1.11 rows=1 width=32)
 -> Gather Motion 2:1 (slice1; segments: 2) (cost=1.04..1.08 rows=1
      width=32)
     -> Aggregate (cost=1.04..1.05 rows=1 width=32)
       -> Seq Scan on t1 (cost=0.00..1.03 rows=2 width=8)
 Optimizer: GPORCA
 (5 rows)
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE AGGREGATE` is a WarehousePG language extension. The SQL standard does not provide for user-defined aggregate functions.

### See Also

ALTER AGGREGATE, DROP AGGREGATE, CREATE FUNCTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.46 CREATE CAST

Defines a new cast.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITH FUNCTION <funcname> (<argtype> [, ...])
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]

CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITHOUT FUNCTION
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]

CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITH INOUT
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]
```

### Description

`CREATE CAST` defines a new cast. A cast specifies how to perform a conversion between two data types. For example,

```
SELECT CAST(42 AS float8);
```

converts the integer constant `42` to type `float8` by invoking a previously specified function, in this case `float8(int4)`. If no suitable cast has been defined, the conversion fails.

Two types may be binary coercible, which means that the types can be converted into one another without invoking any function. This requires that corresponding values use the same internal representation. For instance, the types `text` and `varchar` are binary coercible in both directions. Binary coercibility is not necessarily a symmetric relationship. For example, the cast from `xml` to `text` can be performed for free in the present implementation, but the reverse direction requires a function that performs at least a syntax check. (Two types that are binary coercible both ways are also referred to as binary compatible.)

You can define a cast as an *I/O conversion cast* by using the `WITH INOUT` syntax. An I/O conversion cast is performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type. In many common cases, this feature avoids the need to write a separate cast function for conversion. An I/O conversion cast acts the same as a regular function-based cast; only the implementation is different.

By default, a cast can be invoked only by an explicit cast request, that is an explicit `CAST(x AS` typename `)` or `x:: typename` construct.

If the cast is marked `AS ASSIGNMENT` then it can be invoked implicitly when assigning a value to a column of the target data type. For example, supposing that `foo.f1` is a column of type `text`, then:

```
INSERT INTO foo (f1) VALUES (42);
```

will be allowed if the cast from type `integer` to type `text` is marked `AS ASSIGNMENT`, otherwise not. The term *assignment cast* is typically used to describe this kind of cast.

If the cast is marked `AS IMPLICIT` then it can be invoked implicitly in any context, whether assignment or internally in an expression. The term *implicit cast* is typically used to describe this kind of cast. For example, consider this query:

```
SELECT 2 + 4.0;
```

The parser initially marks the constants as being of type `integer` and `numeric`, respectively. There is no `integer + numeric` operator in the system catalogs, but there is a `numeric + numeric` operator. This query succeeds if a cast from `integer` to `numeric` exists (it does) and is marked `AS IMPLICIT`, which in fact it is. The parser applies only the implicit cast and resolves the query as if it had been written as the following:

```
SELECT CAST ( 2 AS numeric ) + 4.0;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The catalogs also provide a cast from `numeric` to `integer`. If that cast were marked `AS IMPLICIT`, which it is not, then the parser would be faced with choosing between the above interpretation and the alternative of casting the `numeric` constant to `integer` and applying the `integer + integer` operator. Lacking any knowledge of which choice to prefer, the parser would give up and declare the query ambiguous. The fact that only one of the two casts is implicit is the way in which we teach the parser to prefer resolution of a mixed `numeric`-and-`integer` expression as `numeric`; the parser has no built-in knowledge about that.

It is wise to be conservative about marking casts as implicit. An overabundance of implicit casting paths can cause WarehousePG to choose surprising interpretations of commands, or to be unable to resolve commands at all because there are multiple possible interpretations. A good general rule is to make a cast implicitly invokable only for information-preserving transformations between types in the same general type category. For example, the cast from `int2` to `int4` can reasonably be implicit, but the cast from `float8` to `int4` should probably be assignment-only. Cross-type-category casts, such as `text` to `int4`, are best made explicit-only.

> **Note** Sometimes it is necessary for usability or standards-compliance reasons to provide multiple implicit casts among a set of types, resulting in ambiguity that cannot be avoided as described above. The parser uses a fallback heuristic based on type categories and preferred types that helps to provide desired behavior in such cases. See CREATE TYPE for more information.

To be able to create a cast, you must own the source or the target data type and have `USAGE` privilege on the other type. To create a binary-coercible cast, you must be superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous binary-coercible cast conversion can easily crash the server.)

### Parameters

- sourcetype

  The name of the source data type of the cast.

- targettype

  The name of the target data type of the cast.

- funcname(argtype [, ...])

  The function used to perform the cast. The function name may be schema-qualified. If it is not, WarehousePG looks for the function in the schema search path. The function's result data type must match the target type of the cast.

  Cast implementation functions may have one to three arguments. The first argument type must be identical to or binary-coercible from the cast's source type. The second argument, if present, must be type `integer`; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or `-1` if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type `boolean`; it receives `true` if the cast is an explicit cast, `false` otherwise. The SQL specification demands different behaviors for explicit and implicit casts in some cases. This argument is supplied for functions that must implement such casts. It is not recommended that you design your own data types this way.

  The return type of a cast function must be identical to or binary-coercible to the cast's target type.

  Ordinarily a cast must have different source and target data types. However, you are permitted to declare a cast with identical source and target types if it has a cast implementation function that takes more than one argument. This is used to represent type-specific length coercion functions in the system catalogs. The named function is used to coerce a value of the type to the type modifier value given by its second argument.

  When a cast has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, the cast converts from one type to another and applies a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

  A cast to or from a domain type currently has no effect. Casting to or from a domain uses the casts associated with its underlying type.

- WITHOUT FUNCTION

  Indicates that the source type is binary-coercible to the target type, so no function is required to perform the cast.

- WITH INOUT

  Indicates that the cast is an I/O conversion cast, performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type.

- AS ASSIGNMENT

  Indicates that the cast may be invoked implicitly in assignment contexts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- AS IMPLICIT

  Indicates that the cast may be invoked implicitly in any context.

### Notes

Note that in this release of WarehousePG, user-defined functions used in a user-defined cast must be defined as `IMMUTABLE`. Any compiled code (shared library files) for custom functions must be placed in the same location on every host in your WarehousePG array (coordinator and all segments). This location must also be in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so that the server can locate the files.

Remember that if you want to be able to convert types both ways you need to declare casts both ways explicitly.

It is normally not necessary to create casts between user-defined types and the standard string types (`text`, `varchar`, and `char(*n*)`, as well as user-defined types that are defined to be in the string category). WarehousePG provides automatic I/O conversion casts for these. The automatic casts to string types are treated as assignment casts, while the automatic casts from string types are explicit-only. You can override this behavior by declaring your own cast to replace an automatic cast, but usually the only reason to do so is if you want the conversion to be more easily invokable than the standard assignment-only or explicit-only setting. Another possible reason is that you want the conversion to behave differently from the type's I/O function - think twice before doing this. (A small number of the built-in types do indeed have different behaviors for conversions, mostly because of requirements of the SQL standard.)

It is recommended that you follow the convention of naming cast implementation functions after the target data type, as the built-in cast implementation functions are named. Many users are used to being able to cast data types using a function-style notation, that is `typename(x)`.

There are two cases in which a function-call construct is treated as a cast request without having matched it to an actual function. If a function call `*name\(x\)*` does not exactly match any existing function, but `*name*` is the name of a data type and `pg_cast` provides a binary-coercible cast to this type from the type of `*x*`, then the call will be construed as a binary-coercible cast. WarehousePG makes this exception so that binary-coercible casts can be invoked using functional syntax, even though they lack any function. Likewise, if there is no `pg_cast` entry but the cast would be to or from a string type, the call is construed as an I/O conversion cast. This exception allows I/O conversion casts to be invoked using functional syntax.

There is an exception to the exception above: I/O conversion casts from composite types to string types cannot be invoked using functional syntax, but must be written in explicit cast syntax (either `CAST` or :: notation). This exception exists because after the introduction of automatically-provided I/O conversion casts, it was found to be too easy to accidentally invoke such a cast when you intended a function or column reference.

### Examples

To create an assignment cast from type `bigint` to type `int4` using the function `int4(bigint)` (This cast is already predefined in the system.):

```
CREATE CAST (bigint AS int4) WITH FUNCTION int4(bigint) AS ASSIGNMENT;
```

### Compatibility

The `CREATE CAST` command conforms to the SQL standard, except that SQL does not make provisions for binary-coercible types or extra arguments to implementation functions. `AS IMPLICIT` is a WarehousePG extension, too.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, CREATE TYPE, DROP CAST

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.47 CREATE COLLATION

Defines a new collation using the specified operating system locale settings, or by copying an existing collation.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE COLLATION <name> (
    [ LOCALE = <locale>, ]
    [ LC_COLLATE = <lc_collate>, ]
    [ LC_CTYPE = <lc_ctype> ])

CREATE COLLATION <name> FROM <existing_collation>
```

### Description

To be able to create a collation, you must have `CREATE` privilege on the destination schema.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the collation is defined in the current schema. The collation name must be unique within that schema. (The system catalogs can contain collations with the same name for other encodings, but these are ignored if the database encoding does not match.)

- locale

  This is a shortcut for setting `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` at once. If you specify this, you cannot specify either of those parameters.

- lc_collate

  Use the specified operating system locale for the `LC_COLLATE` locale category. The locale must be applicable to the current database encoding. (See CREATE DATABASE for the precise rules.)

- lc_ctype

  Use the specified operating system locale for the `LC_CTYPE` locale category. The locale must be applicable to the current database encoding. (See CREATE DATABASE for the precise rules.)

- existing_collation

  The name of an existing collation to copy. The new collation will have the same properties as the existing one, but it will be an independent object.

### Notes

To be able to create a collation, you must have `CREATE` privilege on the destination schema.

Use `DROP COLLATION` to remove user-defined collations.

See Collation Support in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about collation support in WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

To create a collation from the operating system locale `fr_FR.utf8` (assuming the current database encoding is `UTF8`):

```
CREATE COLLATION french (LOCALE = 'fr_FR.utf8');
```

To create a collation from an existing collation:

```
CREATE COLLATION german FROM "de_DE";
```

This can be convenient to be able to use operating-system-independent collation names in applications.

### Compatibility

There is a `CREATE COLLATION` statement in the SQL standard, but it is limited to copying an existing collation. The syntax to create a new collation is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER COLLATION, DROP COLLATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.48 CREATE CONVERSION

Defines a new encoding conversion.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [DEFAULT] CONVERSION <name> FOR <source_encoding> TO
     <dest_encoding> FROM <funcname>
```

### Description

`CREATE CONVERSION` defines a new conversion between character set encodings. Conversion names may be used in the convert function to specify a particular encoding conversion. Also, conversions that are marked `DEFAULT` can be used for automatic encoding conversion between client and server. For this purpose, two conversions, from encoding A to B and from encoding B to A, must be defined.

To create a conversion, you must have `EXECUTE` privilege on the function and `CREATE` privilege on the destination schema.

### Parameters

- DEFAULT

  Indicates that this conversion is the default for this particular source to destination encoding. There should be only one default encoding in a schema for the encoding pair.

- name

  The name of the conversion. The conversion name may be schema-qualified. If it is not, the conversion is defined in the current schema. The conversion name must be unique within a schema.

- source_encoding

  The source encoding name.

- dest_encoding

  The destination encoding name.

- funcname

  The function used to perform the conversion. The function name may be schema-qualified. If it is not, the function will be looked up in the path. The function must have the following signature:

  ```
  conv_proc(
      integer,  -- source encoding ID
      integer,  -- destination encoding ID
      cstring,  -- source string (null terminated C string)
      internal, -- destination (fill with a null terminated C string)
      integer   -- source string length
  ) RETURNS void;
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

Note that in this release of WarehousePG, user-defined functions used in a user-defined conversion must be defined as `IMMUTABLE`. Any compiled code (shared library files) for custom functions must be placed in the same location on every host in your WarehousePG cluster (master and all segments). This location must also be in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so that the server can locate the files.

### Examples

To create a conversion from encoding `UTF8` to `LATIN1` using `myfunc`:

```
CREATE CONVERSION myconv FOR 'UTF8' TO 'LATIN1' FROM myfunc;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE CONVERSION` statement in the SQL standard, but there is a `CREATE TRANSLATION` statement that is very similar in purpose and syntax.

### See Also

ALTER CONVERSION, CREATE FUNCTION, DROP CONVERSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.49 CREATE DATABASE

Creates a new database.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE DATABASE name [ [WITH] [OWNER [=] <user_name>]
                     [TEMPLATE [=] <template>]
                     [ENCODING [=] <encoding>]
                     [LC_COLLATE [=] <lc_collate>]
                     [LC_CTYPE [=] <lc_ctype>]
                     [TABLESPACE [=] <tablespace>]
                     [CONNECTION LIMIT [=] connlimit ] ]
```

### Description

`CREATE DATABASE` creates a new database. To create a database, you must be a superuser or have the special `CREATEDB` privilege.

The creator becomes the owner of the new database by default. Superusers can create databases owned by other users by using the `OWNER` clause. They can even create databases owned by users with no special privileges. Non-superusers with `CREATEDB` privilege can only create databases owned by themselves.

By default, the new database will be created by cloning the standard system database `template1`. A different template can be specified by writing `TEMPLATE name`. In particular, by writing `TEMPLATE template0`, you can create a clean database containing only the standard objects predefined by WarehousePG. This is useful if you wish to avoid copying any installation-local objects that may have been added to `template1`.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of a database to create.

- user_name

  The name of the database user who will own the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the default owner (the user running the command).

- template

  The name of the template from which to create the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the default template (template1).

- encoding

  Character set encoding to use in the new database. Specify a string constant (such as `'SQL_ASCII'`), an integer encoding number, or `DEFAULT` to use the default encoding. For more information, see Character Set Support.

- lc_collate

  The collation order (`LC_COLLATE`) to use in the new database. This affects the sort order applied to strings, e.g. in queries with `ORDER BY`, as well as the order used in indexes on text columns. The default is to use the collation order of the template database. See the Notes section for additional restrictions.

- lc_ctype

  The character classification (`LC_CTYPE`) to use in the new database. This affects the categorization of characters, e.g. lower, upper and digit. The default is to use the character classification of the template database. See below for additional restrictions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- tablespace

  The name of the tablespace that will be associated with the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the template database's tablespace. This tablespace will be the default tablespace used for objects created in this database.

- connlimit

  The maximum number of concurrent connections possible. The default of -1 means there is no limitation.

### Notes

`CREATE DATABASE` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

When you copy a database by specifying its name as the template, no other sessions can be connected to the template database while it is being copied. New connections to the template database are locked out until `CREATE DATABASE` completes.

The `CONNECTION LIMIT` is not enforced against superusers.

The character set encoding specified for the new database must be compatible with the chosen locale settings (`LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`). If the locale is `C` (or equivalently `POSIX`), then all encodings are allowed, but for other locale settings there is only one encoding that will work properly. `CREATE DATABASE` will allow superusers to specify `SQL_ASCII` encoding regardless of the locale settings, but this choice is deprecated and may result in misbehavior of character-string functions if data that is not encoding-compatible with the locale is stored in the database.

The encoding and locale settings must match those of the template database, except when `template0` is used as template. This is because `COLLATE` and `CTYPE` affect the ordering in indexes, so that any indexes copied from the template database would be invalid in the new database with different settings. `template0`, however, is known to not contain any data or indexes that would be affected.

### Examples

To create a new database:

```
CREATE DATABASE gpdb;
```

To create a database `sales` owned by user `salesapp` with a default tablespace of `salesspace`:

```
CREATE DATABASE sales OWNER salesapp TABLESPACE salesspace;
```

To create a database `music` which supports the ISO-8859-1 character set:

```
CREATE DATABASE music ENCODING 'LATIN1' TEMPLATE template0;
```

In this example, the `TEMPLATE template0` clause would only be required if `template1`'s encoding is not ISO-8859-1. Note that changing encoding might require selecting new `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings as well.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE DATABASE` statement in the SQL standard. Databases are equivalent to catalogs, whose creation is implementation-defined.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER DATABASE, DROP DATABASE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.50 CREATE DOMAIN

Defines a new domain.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE DOMAIN <name> [AS] <data_type> [DEFAULT <expression>]
       [ COLLATE <collation> ]
       [ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>
       | NOT NULL | NULL
       | CHECK (<expression>) [...]]
```

### Description

`CREATE DOMAIN` creates a new domain. A domain is essentially a data type with optional constraints (restrictions on the allowed set of values). The user who defines a domain becomes its owner. The domain name must be unique among the data types and domains existing in its schema.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE DOMAIN myschema.mydomain ...`) then the domain is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

Domains are useful for abstracting common constraints on fields into a single location for maintenance. For example, several tables might contain email address columns, all requiring the same `CHECK` constraint to verify the address syntax. It is easier to define a domain rather than setting up a column constraint for each table that has an email column.

To be able to create a domain, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the underlying type.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a domain to be created.

- data_type

  The underlying data type of the domain. This may include array specifiers.

- DEFAULT expression

  Specifies a default value for columns of the domain data type. The value is any variable-free expression (but subqueries are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the domain. If no default value is specified, then the default value is the null value. The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If a default value is defined for a particular column, it overrides any default associated with the domain. In turn, the domain default overrides any default value associated with the underlying data type.

- COLLATE collation

  An optional collation for the domain. If no collation is specified, the underlying data type's default collation is used. The underlying type must be collatable if `COLLATE` is specified.

- CONSTRAINT constraint_name

  An optional name for a constraint. If not specified, the system generates a name.

- NOT NULL

  Values of this domain are normally prevented from being null. However, it is still possible for a domain with this constraint to take a null value if it is assigned a matching domain type that has become null, e.g. via a left outer join, or a command such as `INSERT INTO tab (domcol) VALUES ((SELECT domcol FROM tab WHERE false))`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- NULL

  Values of this domain are allowed to be null. This is the default. This clause is only intended for compatibility with nonstandard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

- CHECK (expression)

  `CHECK` clauses specify integrity constraints or tests which values of the domain must satisfy. Each constraint must be an expression producing a Boolean result. It should use the key word `VALUE` to refer to the value being tested. Currently, `CHECK` expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than `VALUE`.

### Examples

Create the `us_zip_code` data type. A regular expression test is used to verify that the value looks like a valid US zip code.

```
CREATE DOMAIN us_zip_code AS TEXT CHECK
       ( VALUE ~ '^\d{5}$' OR VALUE ~ '^\d{5}-\d{4}$' );
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE DOMAIN` conforms to the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER DOMAIN, DROP DOMAIN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.51 CREATE EXTENSION

Registers an extension in a WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE EXTENSION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <extension_name>
  [ WITH ] [ SCHEMA <schema_name> ]
           [ VERSION <version> ]
           [ FROM <old_version> ]
           [ CASCADE ]
```

### Description

`CREATE EXTENSION` loads a new extension into the current database. There must not be an extension of the same name already loaded.

Loading an extension essentially amounts to running the extension script file. The script typically creates new SQL objects such as functions, data types, operators and index support methods. The `CREATE EXTENSION` command also records the identities of all the created objects, so that they can be dropped again if `DROP EXTENSION` is issued.

Loading an extension requires the same privileges that would be required to create the component extension objects. For most extensions this means superuser or database owner privileges are required. The user who runs `CREATE EXTENSION` becomes the owner of the extension for purposes of later privilege checks, as well as the owner of any objects created by the extension script.

### Parameters

- IF NOT EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if an extension with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. There is no guarantee that the existing extension is similar to the extension that would have been installed.

- extension_name

  The name of the extension to be installed. The name must be unique within the database. An extension is created from the details in the extension control file `SHAREDIR/extension/extension\_name.control`.

  SHAREDIR is the installation shared-data directory, for example `/usr/edb/whpg6/share/postgresql`. The command `pg_config --sharedir` displays the directory.

- SCHEMA schema_name

  The name of the schema in which to install the extension objects. This assumes that the extension allows its contents to be relocated. The named schema must already exist. If not specified, and the extension control file does not specify a schema, the current default object creation schema is used.

  If the extension specifies a schema parameter in its control file, then that schema cannot be overridden with a `SCHEMA` clause. Normally, an error is raised if a `SCHEMA` clause is given and it conflicts with the extension schema parameter. However, if the `CASCADE` clause is also given, then schema_name is ignored when it conflicts. The given schema_name is used for the installation of any needed extensions that do not a specify schema in their control files.

  The extension itself is not within any schema. Extensions have unqualified names that must be unique within the database. But objects belonging to the extension can be within a schema.

- VERSION version

  The version of the extension to install. This can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. The default version is value that is specified in the extension control file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FROM old_version

  Specify `FROM old\_version` only if you are attempting to install an extension that replaces an *old-style* module that is a collection of objects that is not packaged into an extension. If specified, `CREATE EXTENSION` runs an alternative installation script that absorbs the existing objects into the extension, instead of creating new objects. Ensure that `SCHEMA` clause specifies the schema containing these pre-existing objects.

  The value to use for old_version is determined by the extension author, and might vary if there is more than one version of the old-style module that can be upgraded into an extension. For the standard additional modules supplied with pre-9.1 PostgreSQL, specify `unpackaged` for the old_version when updating a module to extension style.

- CASCADE

  Automatically install dependent extensions are not already installed. Dependent extensions are checked recursively and those dependencies are also installed automatically. If the SCHEMA clause is specified, the schema applies to the extension and all dependent extensions that are installed. Other options that are specified are not applied to the automatically-installed dependent extensions. In particular, default versions are always selected when installing dependent extensions.

### Notes

The extensions currently available for loading can be identified from the *pg_available_extensions* or *pg_available_extension_versions* system views.

Before you use `CREATE EXTENSION` to load an extension into a database, the supporting extension files must be installed including an extension control file and at least one least one SQL script file. The support files must be installed in the same location on all WarehousePG hosts. For information about creating new extensions, see PostgreSQL information about Packaging Related Objects into an Extension.

### Compatibility

`CREATE EXTENSION` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.52 CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

Defines a new external table.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [READABLE] EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION ('file://<seghost>[:<port>]/<path>/<file>' [, ...])
       | ('gpfdist://<filehost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
           [, ...]
       | ('gpfdists://<filehost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
           [, ...])
       | ('pxf://<path-to-data>?PROFILE=<profile_name>[&SERVER=<server_name>][&<custom-option>=<value>[...]]'))
       | ('s3://<S3_endpoint>[:<port>]/<bucket_name>/[<S3_prefix>] [region=<S3-region>] [config=<config_file> |
config_server=<url>]')
     [ON MASTER]
     FORMAT 'TEXT'
           [( [HEADER]
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>' | 'OFF']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
              [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
              [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
          | 'CSV'
           [( [HEADER]
              [QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [FORCE NOT NULL <column> [, ...]]
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>']
              [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
              [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
          | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter_specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<encoding>' ]
      [ [LOG ERRORS [PERSISTENTLY]] SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count>
      [ROWS | PERCENT] ]

CREATE [READABLE] EXTERNAL WEB [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
   ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
      LOCATION ('http://<webhost>[:<port>]/<path>/<file>' [, ...])
    | EXECUTE '<command>' [ON ALL
                          | MASTER
                          | <number_of_segments>
                          | HOST ['<segment_hostname>']
                          | SEGMENT <segment_id> ]
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
            [( [HEADER]
               [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>' | 'OFF']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
               [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
               [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
          | 'CSV'
           [( [HEADER]
              [QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [FORCE NOT NULL <column> [, ...]]
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>']
              [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
              [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
          | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
     [ ENCODING '<encoding>' ]
     [ [LOG ERRORS [PERSISTENTLY]] SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count>
       [ROWS | PERCENT] ]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION('gpfdist://<outputhost>[:<port>]/<filename>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
          [, ...])
      | ('gpfdists://<outputhost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
          [, ...])
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
                [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
          | 'CSV'
                [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
                [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]

           | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<write_encoding>' ]
    [ DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column> [<opclass>]}, [ ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY ]

CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION('s3://<S3_endpoint>[:<port>]/<bucket_name>/[<S3_prefix>] [region=<S3-region>] [config=<config_file> |
config_server=<url>]')
      [ON MASTER]
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
                [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
          | 'CSV'
                [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
                [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]

CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table> )
    EXECUTE '<command>'
    FORMAT 'TEXT'
                [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
          | 'CSV'
                [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
                [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
                [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
                [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
                [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]
           | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<write_encoding>' ]
    [ DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column> [<opclass>]}, [ ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY ]
```

### Description

`CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE` creates a new readable external table definition in WarehousePG. Readable external tables are typically used for fast, parallel data loading. Once an external table is defined, you can query its data directly (and in parallel) using SQL commands. For example, you can select, join, or sort external table data. You can also create views for external tables. DML operations ( `UPDATE`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE`) are not allowed on readable external tables, and you cannot create indexes on readable external tables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE` creates a new writable external table definition in WarehousePG. Writable external tables are typically used for unloading data from the database into a set of files or named pipes. Writable external web tables can also be used to output data to an executable program. Writable external tables can also be used as output targets for WarehousePG parallel MapReduce calculations. Once a writable external table is defined, data can be selected from database tables and inserted into the writable external table. Writable external tables only allow `INSERT` operations – `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE` are not allowed.

The main difference between regular external tables and external web tables is their data sources. Regular readable external tables access static flat files, whereas external web tables access dynamic data sources – either on a web server or by running OS commands or scripts.

See Working with External Data for detailed information about working with external tables.

### Parameters

- READABLE | WRITABLE

  Specifies the type of external table, readable being the default. Readable external tables are used for loading data into WarehousePG. Writable external tables are used for unloading data.

- WEB

  Creates a readable or writable external web table definition in WarehousePG. There are two forms of readable external web tables – those that access files via the `http://` protocol or those that access data by running OS commands. Writable external web tables output data to an executable program that can accept an input stream of data. External web tables are not rescannable during query execution.

  The `s3` protocol does not support external web tables. You can, however, create an external web table that runs a third-party tool to read data from or write data to S3 directly.

- TEMPORARY | TEMP

  If specified, creates a temporary readable or writable external table definition in WarehousePG. Temporary external tables exist in a special schema; you cannot specify a schema name when you create the table. Temporary external tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session.

  An existing permanent table with the same name is not visible to the current session while the temporary table exists, unless you reference the permanent table with its schema-qualified name.

- table_name

  The name of the new external table.

- column_name

  The name of a column to create in the external table definition. Unlike regular tables, external tables do not have column constraints or default values, so do not specify those.

- LIKE other_table

  The `LIKE` clause specifies a table from which the new external table automatically copies all column names, data types and WarehousePG distribution policy. If the original table specifies any column constraints or default column values, those will not be copied over to the new external table definition.

- data_type

  The data type of the column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- LOCATION ('protocol://[host[:port]]/path/file' [, ...])

  If you use the `pxf` protocol to access an external data source, refer to PXF for WarehousePG for information about the `pxf` protocol.

  If you use the `s3` protocol to read or write to S3, refer to s3:// Protocol for additional information about the `s3` protocol `LOCATION` clause syntax.

  For readable external tables, specifies the URI of the external data source(s) to be used to populate the external table or web table. Regular readable external tables allow the `gpfdist` or `file` protocols. External web tables allow the `http` protocol. If `port` is omitted, port `8080` is assumed for `http` and `gpfdist` protocols. If using the `gpfdist` protocol, the `path` is relative to the directory from which `gpfdist` is serving files (the directory specified when you started the `gpfdist` program). Also, `gpfdist` can use wildcards or other C-style pattern matching (for example, a whitespace character is `[[:space:]]`) to denote multiple files in a directory. For example:

  ```
  'gpfdist://filehost:8081/*'
  'gpfdist://masterhost/my_load_file'
  'file://seghost1/dbfast1/external/myfile.txt'
  'http://intranet.example.com/finance/expenses.csv'
  ```

  For writable external tables, specifies the URI location of the `gpfdist` process or S3 protocol that will collect data output from the WarehousePG segments and write it to one or more named files. For `gpfdist` the `path` is relative to the directory from which `gpfdist` is serving files (the directory specified when you started the `gpfdist` program). If multiple `gpfdist` locations are listed, the segments sending data will be evenly divided across the available output locations. For example:

  ```
  'gpfdist://outputhost:8081/data1.out',
  'gpfdist://outputhost:8081/data2.out'
  ```

  With two `gpfdist` locations listed as in the above example, half of the segments would send their output data to the `data1.out` file and the other half to the `data2.out` file.

  With the option `#transform=trans\_name`, you can specify a transform to apply when loading or extracting data. The trans_name is the name of the transform in the YAML configuration file you specify with the you run the `gpfdist` utility. For information about specifying a transform, see `gpfdist` in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

- ON MASTER

  Restricts all table-related operations to the WarehousePG coordinator segment. Permitted only on readable and writable external tables created with the `s3` or custom protocols. The `gpfdist`, `gpfdists`, `pxf`, and `file` protocols do not support `ON MASTER`.

  > **Note** Be aware of potential resource impacts when reading from or writing to external tables you create with the `ON MASTER` clause. You may encounter performance issues when you restrict table operations solely to the WarehousePG coordinator segment.

- EXECUTE 'command' [ON ...]

  Allowed for readable external web tables or writable external tables only. For readable external web tables, specifies the OS command to be run by the segment instances. The command can be a single OS command or a script. The `ON` clause is used to specify which segment instances will run the given command.

  - ON ALL is the default. The command will be run by every active (primary) segment instance on all segment hosts in the WarehousePG cluster. If the command runs a script, that script must reside in the same location on all of the segment hosts and be executable by the WarehousePG superuser ( `gpadmin` ).
  - ON MASTER runs the command on the coordinator host only.

  ```
  > **Note** Logging is not supported for external web tables when the `ON MASTER` clause is specified.
  ```

  - ON number means the command will be run by the specified number of segments. The particular segments are chosen randomly at runtime by the WarehousePG cluster. If the command runs a script, that script must reside in the same location on all of the segment hosts and be executable by the WarehousePG superuser ( `gpadmin` ).
  - HOST means the command will be run by one segment on each segment host (once per segment host), regardless of the number of active segment instances per host.
  - HOST segment_hostname means the command will be run by all active (primary) segment instances on the specified segment host.
  - SEGMENT segment_id means the command will be run only once by the specified segment. You can determine a segment instance's ID by looking at the content number in the system catalog table gp_segment_configuration. The content ID of the WarehousePG coordinator is always `-1`.

  For writable external tables, the command specified in the `EXECUTE` clause must be prepared to have data piped into it. All segments run the command, whether or not they have data to send, so you cannot specify an `ON` clause for a writable external table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FORMAT 'TEXT | CSV' (options)

  When the `FORMAT` clause identfies delimited text ( `TEXT` ) or comma separated values ( `CSV` ) format, formatting options are similar to those available with the PostgreSQL COPY command. If the data in the file does not use the default column delimiter, escape character, null string and so on, you must specify the additional formatting options so that the data in the external file is read correctly by WarehousePG. For information about using a custom format, see "Loading and Unloading Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  If you use the `pxf` protocol to access an external data source, refer to PXF for WarehousePG for information about using PXF.

- FORMAT 'CUSTOM' (formatter=formatter_specification)

  Specifies a custom data format. The formatter_specification specifies the function to use to format the data, followed by comma-separated parameters to the formatter function. The length of the formatter specification, the string including `Formatter=` , can be up to approximately 50K bytes.

  If you use the `pxf` protocol to access an external data source, refer to PXF for WarehousePG for information about using PXF.

  For general information about using a custom format, see "Loading and Unloading Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

- DELIMITER

  Specifies a single ASCII character that separates columns within each row (line) of data. The default is a tab character in `TEXT` mode, a comma in `CSV` mode. In `TEXT` mode for readable external tables, the delimiter can be set to `OFF` for special use cases in which unstructured data is loaded into a single-column table.

  For the `s3` protocol, the delimiter cannot be a newline character ( `\n` ) or a carriage return character ( `\r` ).

- NULL

  Specifies the string that represents a `NULL` value. The default is `\N` (backslash-N) in `TEXT` mode, and an empty value with no quotations in `CSV` mode. You might prefer an empty string even in `TEXT` mode for cases where you do not want to distinguish `NULL` values from empty strings. When using external and web tables, any data item that matches this string will be considered a `NULL` value.

  As an example for the `text` format, this `FORMAT` clause can be used to specify that the string of two single quotes ( `''` ) is a `NULL` value.

  ```
  FORMAT 'text' (delimiter ',' null '\'\'\'\'' )
  ```

- ESCAPE

  Specifies the single character that is used for C escape sequences (such as `\n` , `\t` , `\100` , and so on) and for escaping data characters that might otherwise be taken as row or column delimiters. Make sure to choose an escape character that is not used anywhere in your actual column data. The default escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files and a `"` (double quote) for csv-formatted files, however it is possible to specify another character to represent an escape. It is also possible to deactivate escaping in text-formatted files by specifying the value `'OFF'` as the escape value. This is very useful for data such as text-formatted web log data that has many embedded backslashes that are not intended to be escapes.

- NEWLINE

  Specifies the newline used in your data files – `LF` (Line feed, 0x0A), `CR` (Carriage return, 0x0D), or `CRLF` (Carriage return plus line feed, 0x0D 0x0A). If not specified, a WarehousePG segment will detect the newline type by looking at the first row of data it receives and using the first newline type encountered.

- HEADER

  For readable external tables, specifies that the first line in the data file(s) is a header row (contains the names of the table columns) and should not be included as data for the table. If using multiple data source files, all files must have a header row.

  For the `s3` protocol, the column names in the header row cannot contain a newline character ( `\n` ) or a carriage return ( `\r` ).

  The `pxf` protocol does not support the `HEADER` formatting option.

- QUOTE

  Specifies the quotation character for `CSV` mode. The default is double-quote ( `"` ).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FORCE NOT NULL

  In `CSV` mode, processes each specified column as though it were quoted and hence not a `NULL` value. For the default null string in `CSV` mode (nothing between two delimiters), this causes missing values to be evaluated as zero-length strings.

- FORCE QUOTE

  In `CSV` mode for writable external tables, forces quoting to be used for all non-`NULL` values in each specified column. If `*` is specified then non-`NULL` values will be quoted in all columns. `NULL` output is never quoted.

- FILL MISSING FIELDS

  In both `TEXT` and `CSV` mode for readable external tables, specifying `FILL MISSING FIELDS` will set missing trailing field values to `NULL` (instead of reporting an error) when a row of data has missing data fields at the end of a line or row. Blank rows, fields with a `NOT NULL` constraint, and trailing delimiters on a line will still report an error.

- ENCODING 'encoding'

  Character set encoding to use for the external table. Specify a string constant (such as `'SQL_ASCII'`), an integer encoding number, or `DEFAULT` to use the default server encoding. See Character Set Support.

- LOG ERRORS [PERSISTENTLY]

  This is an optional clause that can precede a `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` clause to log information about rows with formatting errors. The error log data is stored internally. If error log data exists for a specified external table, new data is appended to existing error log data. The error log data is not replicated to mirror segments.

  The data is deleted when the external table is dropped unless you specify the keyword `PERSISTENTLY`. If the keyword is specified, the log data persists after the external table is dropped.

  The error log data is accessed with the WarehousePG built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log()`, or with the SQL function `gp_read_persistent_error_log()` if the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword is specified.

  If you use the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword, you must install the functions that manage the persistent error log information.

  See Notes for information about the error log information and built-in functions for viewing and managing error log information.

- SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT count [ROWS | PERCENT]

  Runs a `COPY FROM` operation in single row error isolation mode. If the input rows have format errors they will be discarded provided that the reject limit count is not reached on any WarehousePG segment instance during the load operation. The reject limit count can be specified as number of rows (the default) or percentage of total rows (1-100). If `PERCENT` is used, each segment starts calculating the bad row percentage only after the number of rows specified by the parameter `gp_reject_percent_threshold` has been processed. The default for `gp_reject_percent_threshold` is 300 rows. Constraint errors such as violation of a `NOT NULL`, `CHECK`, or `UNIQUE` constraint will still be handled in "all-or-nothing" input mode. If the limit is not reached, all good rows will be loaded and any error rows discarded.

  > **Note** When reading an external table, WarehousePG limits the initial number of rows that can contain formatting errors if the `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` is not triggered first or is not specified. If the first 1000 rows are rejected, the `COPY` operation is stopped and rolled back.

The limit for the number of initial rejected rows can be changed with the WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_initial_bad_row_limit`. See Server Configuration Parameters for information about the parameter.

- DISTRIBUTED BY ({column [opclass]}, [ ... ] )

- DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY

  Used to declare the WarehousePG distribution policy for a writable external table. By default, writable external tables are distributed randomly. If the source table you are exporting data from has a hash distribution policy, defining the same distribution key column(s) and operator class(es), `oplcass`, for the writable external table will improve unload performance by eliminating the need to move rows over the interconnect. When you issue an unload command such as `INSERT INTO wex\_table SELECT * FROM source\_table`, the rows that are unloaded can be sent directly from the segments to the output location if the two tables have the same hash distribution policy.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Start the `gpfdist` file server program in the background on port `8081` serving files from directory `/var/data/staging`:

```
gpfdist -p 8081 -d /var/data/staging -l /home/<gpadmin>/log &
```

Create a readable external table named `ext_customer` using the `gpfdist` protocol and any text formatted files (`*.txt`) found in the `gpfdist` directory. The files are formatted with a pipe (`|`) as the column delimiter and an empty space as `NULL`. Also access the external table in single row error isolation mode:

```
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_customer
   (id int, name text, sponsor text)
   LOCATION ( 'gpfdist://filehost:8081/*.txt' )
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ')
   LOG ERRORS SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT 5;
```

Create the same readable external table definition as above, but with CSV formatted files:

```
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_customer
   (id int, name text, sponsor text)
   LOCATION ( 'gpfdist://filehost:8081/*.csv' )
   FORMAT 'CSV' ( DELIMITER ',' );
```

Create a readable external table named `ext_expenses` using the `file` protocol and several CSV formatted files that have a header row:

```
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses (name text, date date,
amount float4, category text, description text)
LOCATION (
'file://seghost1/dbfast/external/expenses1.csv',
'file://seghost1/dbfast/external/expenses2.csv',
'file://seghost2/dbfast/external/expenses3.csv',
'file://seghost2/dbfast/external/expenses4.csv',
'file://seghost3/dbfast/external/expenses5.csv',
'file://seghost3/dbfast/external/expenses6.csv'
)
FORMAT 'CSV' ( HEADER );
```

Create a readable external web table that runs a script once per segment host:

```
CREATE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE log_output (linenum int, message
text)  EXECUTE '/var/load_scripts/get_log_data.sh' ON HOST
 FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

Create a writable external table named `sales_out` that uses `gpfdist` to write output data to a file named `sales.out`. The files are formatted with a pipe (`|`) as the column delimiter and an empty space as `NULL`.

```
CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL TABLE sales_out (LIKE sales)
   LOCATION ('gpfdist://etl1:8081/sales.out')
   FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ')
   DISTRIBUTED BY (txn_id);
```

Create a writable external web table that pipes output data received by the segments to an executable script named `to_adreport_etl.sh`:

```
CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB TABLE campaign_out
(LIKE campaign)
 EXECUTE '/var/unload_scripts/to_adreport_etl.sh'
 FORMAT 'TEXT' (DELIMITER '|');
```

Use the writable external table defined above to unload selected data:

```
INSERT INTO campaign_out SELECT * FROM campaign WHERE
customer_id=123;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

When you specify the `LOG ERRORS` clause, WarehousePG captures errors that occur while reading the external table data. For information about the error log format, see Viewing Bad Rows in the Error Log.

You can view and manage the captured error log data. The functions to manage log data depend on whether the data is persistent (the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword is used with the `LOG ERRORS` clause).

- Functions that manage non-persistent error log data from external tables that were defined without the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword.
    - The built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log('table\_name')` displays error log information for an external table. This example displays the error log data from the external table `ext_expenses`.

      ```
      SELECT * from gp_read_error_log('ext_expenses');
      ```

      The function returns no data if you created the external table with the `LOG ERRORS PERSISTENTLY` clause, or if the external table does not exist.
    - The built-in SQL function `gp_truncate_error_log('table\_name')` deletes the error log data for table_name. This example deletes the error log data captured from the external table `ext_expenses`:

      ```
      SELECT gp_truncate_error_log('ext_expenses');
      ```

      Dropping the table also deletes the table's log data. The function does not truncate log data if the external table is defined with the `LOG ERRORS PERSISTENTLY` clause.

      The function returns `FALSE` if the table does not exist.
- Functions that manage persistent error log data from external tables that were defined with the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword.

  > **Note** The functions that manage persistent error log data from external tables are defined in the file `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/contrib/gpexterrorhandle.sql`. The functions must be installed in the databases that use persistent error log data from an external table. This `psql` command installs the functions into the database `testdb`.

  ```
  psql -d test -U gpadmin -f $GPHOME/share/postgresql/contrib/gpexterrorhandle.sql
  ```

    - The SQL function `gp_read_persistent_error_log('table\_name')` displays persistent log data for an external table.

      The function returns no data if you created the external table without the `PERSISTENTLY` keyword. The function returns persistent log data for an external table even after the table has been dropped.
    - The SQL function `gp_truncate_persistent_error_log('table\_name')` truncates persistent log data for a table.

      For persistent log data, you must manually delete the data. Dropping the external table does not delete persistent log data.
- These items apply to both non-persistent and persistent error log data and the related functions.
    - The `gp_read_*` functions require `SELECT` privilege on the table.
    - The `gp_truncate_*` functions require owner privilege on the table.
    - You can use the `*` wildcard character to delete error log information for existing tables in the current database. Specify the string `*.*` to delete all database error log information, including error log information that was not deleted due to previous database issues. If `*` is specified, database owner privilege is required. If `*.*` is specified, operating system super-user privilege is required. Non-persistent and persistent error log data must be deleted with their respective `gp_truncate_*` functions.

When multiple WarehousePG external tables are defined with the `gpfdist`, `gpfdists`, or `file` protocol and access the same named pipe a Linux system, WarehousePG restricts access to the named pipe to a single reader. An error is returned if a second reader attempts to access the named pipe.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` is a WarehousePG extension. The SQL standard makes no provisions for external tables.

### See Also

CREATE TABLE AS, CREATE TABLE, COPY, SELECT INTO, INSERT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.53 CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Defines a new foreign-data wrapper.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name>
    [ HANDLER <handler_function> | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR <validator_function> | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ] <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

### Description

`CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` creates a new foreign-data wrapper in the current database. The user who defines the foreign-data wrapper becomes its owner.

Only superusers can create foreign-data wrappers.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the foreign-data wrapper to create. The name must be unique within the database.

- HANDLER handler_function

  The name of a previously registered function that WarehousePG calls to retrieve the execution functions for foreign tables. hander_function must take no arguments, and its return type must be `fdw_handler`.

  It is possible to create a foreign-data wrapper with no handler function, but you can only declare, not access, foreign tables using such a wrapper.

- VALIDATOR validator_function

  The name of a previously registered function that WarehousePG calls to check the options provided to the foreign-data wrapper. This function also checks the options for foreign servers, user mappings, and foreign tables that use the foreign-data wrapper. If no validator function or `NO VALIDATOR` is specified, WarehousePG does not check options at creation time. (Depending upon the implementation, foreign-data wrappers may ignore or reject invalid options at runtime.)

  validator_function must take two arguments: one of type `text[]`, which contains the array of options as stored in the system catalogs, and one of type `oid`, which identifies the OID of the system catalog containing the options.

  The return type is ignored; validator_function should report invalid options using the `ereport(ERROR)` function.

- OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

  The options for the new foreign-data wrapper. Option names must be unique. The option names and values are foreign-data wrapper-specific and are validated using the foreign-data wrappers' validator_function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' }

  An option that identifies the host from which the foreign-data wrapper reads or writes data:

  - `master` (the default)—Read or write data from the coordinator host.
  - `any` —Read data from either the coordinator host or any one segment, depending on which path costs less.
  - `all segments` —Read or write data from all segments. To support this option value, the foreign-data wrapper must have a policy that matches the segments to data.

  > **Note** WarehousePG supports parallel writes to foreign tables only when you set `mpp_execute 'all segments'`.

  Support for the foreign-data wrapper `mpp_execute` option, and the specific modes, is foreign-data wrapper-specific.

  The `mpp_execute` option can be specified in multiple commands: `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`, and `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`. The foreign table setting takes precedence over the foreign server setting, followed by the foreign-data wrapper setting.

### Notes

The foreign-data wrapper functionality is still under development. Optimization of queries is primitive (and mostly left to the wrapper).

### Examples

Create a useless foreign-data wrapper named `dummy`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dummy;
```

Create a foreign-data wrapper named `file` with a handler function named `file_fdw_handler`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file HANDLER file_fdw_handler;
```

Create a foreign-data wrapper named `mywrapper` that includes an option:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper OPTIONS (debug 'true');
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), with the exception that the `HANDLER` and `VALIDATOR` clauses are extensions, and the standard clauses `LIBRARY` and `LANGUAGE` are not implemented in WarehousePG.

Note, however, that the SQL/MED functionality as a whole is not yet conforming.

### See Also

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER, CREATE USER MAPPING

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.54 CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

Defines a new foreign table.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <table_name> ( [
    <column_name> <data_type> [ OPTIONS ( <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ] [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ <column_constraint>
[ ... ] ]
      [, ... ]
] )
    SERVER <server_name>
  [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ] <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

where column_constraint is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ]
{ NOT NULL |
  NULL |
  DEFAULT <default_expr> }
```

### Description

`CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` creates a new foreign table in the current database. The user who creates the foreign table becomes its owner.

If you schema-qualify the table name (for example, `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE myschema.mytable ...`), WarehousePG creates the table in the specified schema. Otherwise, the foreign table is created in the current schema. The name of the foreign table must be distinct from the name of any other foreign table, table, sequence, index, or view in the same schema.

Because `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the foreign table, foreign tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

To create a foreign table, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the foreign server, as well as `USAGE` privilege on all column types used in the table.

### Parameters

- IF NOT EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. WarehousePG issues a notice in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the one that would have been created.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the foreign table to create.

- column_name

  The name of a column to create in the new foreign table.

- data_type

  The data type of the column, including array specifiers.

- NOT NULL

  The column is not allowed to contain null values.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- NULL

  The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

  This clause is provided only for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

- DEFAULT default_expr

  The `DEFAULT` clause assigns a default value for the column whose definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression; WarehousePG does not allow subqueries and cross-references to other columns in the current table. The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

  WarehousePG uses the default expression in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

- server_name

  The name of an existing server to use for the foreign table. For details on defining a server, see CREATE SERVER.

- OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

  The options for the new foreign table or one of its columns. While option names must be unique, a table option and a column option may have the same name. The option names and values are foreign-data wrapper-specific. WarehousePG validates the options and values using the foreign-data wrapper's validator_function.

- mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' }

  A WarehousePG-specific option that identifies the host from which the foreign-data wrapper reads or writes data:

  - `master` (the default)—Read or write data from the coordinator host.
  - `any` —Read data from either the coordinator host or any one segment, depending on which path costs less.
  - `all segments` —Read or write data from all segments. To support this option value, the foreign-data wrapper must have a policy that matches the segments to data.

  > **Note** WarehousePG supports parallel writes to foreign tables only when you set `mpp_execute 'all segments'`.

  Support for the foreign table `mpp_execute` option, and the specific modes, is foreign-data wrapper-specific.

  The `mpp_execute` option can be specified in multiple commands: `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`, and `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`. The foreign table setting takes precedence over the foreign server setting, followed by the foreign-data wrapper setting.

### Notes

The WarehousePG Query Optimizer, GPORCA, does not support foreign tables. A query on a foreign table always falls back to the Postgres Planner.

### Examples

Create a foreign table named `films` with the server named `film_server`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE films (
    code        char(5) NOT NULL,
    title       varchar(40) NOT NULL,
    did         integer NOT NULL,
    date_prod   date,
    kind        varchar(10),
    len         interval hour to minute
)
SERVER film_server;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` largely conforms to the SQL standard; however, much as with CREATE TABLE, WarehousePG permits `NULL` constraints and zero-column foreign tables. The ability to specify a default value is a WarehousePG extension, as is the `mpp_execute` option.

### See Also

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, DROP FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE SERVER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.55 CREATE FUNCTION

Defines a new function.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] FUNCTION <name>
    ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [ { DEFAULT | = } <default_expr> ] [, ...] ] )
      [ RETURNS <rettype>
        | RETURNS TABLE ( <column_name> <column_type> [, ...] ) ]
    { LANGUAGE <langname>
    | WINDOW
    | IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE | [NOT] LEAKPROOF
    | CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT | STRICT
    | NO SQL | CONTAINS SQL | READS SQL DATA | MODIFIES SQL
    | [EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER | [EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER
    | EXECUTE ON { ANY | MASTER | ALL SEGMENTS | INITPLAN }
    | COST <execution_cost>
    | SET <configuration_parameter> { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
    | AS '<definition>'
    | AS '<obj_file>', '<link_symbol>' } ...
    [ WITH ({ DESCRIBE = describe_function
           } [, ...] ) ]
```

### Description

`CREATE FUNCTION` defines a new function. `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` either creates a new function, or replaces an existing definition.

The name of the new function must not match any existing function with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, functions of different argument types may share a name (overloading).

To update the definition of an existing function, use `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a function this way (this would actually create a new, distinct function). Also, `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` will not let you change the return type of an existing function. To do that, you must drop and recreate the function. When using `OUT` parameters, that means you cannot change the types of any `OUT` parameters except by dropping the function. If you drop and then recreate a function, you will have to drop existing objects (rules, views, triggers, and so on) that refer to the old function. Use `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` to change a function definition without breaking objects that refer to the function.

The user that creates the function becomes the owner of the function.

To be able to create a function, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the argument types and the return type.

For more information about creating functions, see the User Defined Functions section of the PostgreSQL documentation.

#### Limited Use of VOLATILE and STABLE Functions

To prevent data from becoming out-of-sync across the segments in WarehousePG, any function classified as `STABLE` or `VOLATILE` cannot be run at the segment level if it contains SQL or modifies the database in any way. For example, functions such as `random()` or `timeofday()` are not allowed to run on distributed data in WarehousePG because they could potentially cause inconsistent data between the segment instances.

To ensure data consistency, `VOLATILE` and `STABLE` functions can safely be used in statements that are evaluated on and run from the coordinator. For example, the following statements are always run on the coordinator (statements without a `FROM` clause):

```
SELECT setval('myseq', 201);
SELECT foo();
```

In cases where a statement has a `FROM` clause containing a distributed table and the function used in the `FROM` clause simply returns a set of rows, execution may be allowed on the segments:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT * FROM foo();
```

One exception to this rule are functions that return a table reference ( `rangeFuncs` ) or functions that use the `refCursor` data type. Note that you cannot return a `refcursor` from any kind of function in WarehousePG.

#### Function Volatility and EXECUTE ON Attributes

Volatility attributes ( `IMMUTABLE` , `STABLE` , `VOLATILE` ) and `EXECUTE ON` attributes specify two different aspects of function execution. In general, volatility indicates when the function is run, and `EXECUTE ON` indicates where it is run.

For example, a function defined with the `IMMUTABLE` attribute can be run at query planning time, while a function with the `VOLATILE` attribute must be run for every row in the query. A function with the `EXECUTE ON MASTER` attribute is run only on the coordinator segment and a function with the `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` attribute is run on all primary segment instances (not the coordinator).

See Using Functions and Operators in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

#### Functions And Replicated Tables

A user-defined function that runs only `SELECT` commands on replicated tables can run on segments. Replicated tables, created with the `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` clause, store all of their rows on every segment. It is safe for a function to read them on the segments, but updates to replicated tables must run on the coordinator instance.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the function to create.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: either `IN` , `OUT` , `INOUT` , or `VARIADIC` . If omitted, the default is `IN` . Only `OUT` arguments can follow an argument declared as `VARIADIC` . Also, `OUT` and `INOUT` arguments cannot be used together with the `RETURNS TABLE` notation.

- argname

  The name of an argument. Some languages (currently only SQL and PL/pgSQL) let you use the name in the function body. For other languages the name of an input argument is just extra documentation, so far as the function itself is concerned; but you can use input argument names when calling a function to improve readability. In any case, the name of an output argument is significant, since it defines the column name in the result row type. (If you omit the name for an output argument, the system will choose a default column name.)

- argtype

  The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. The argument types may be base, composite, or domain types, or may reference the type of a table column.

  Depending on the implementation language it may also be allowed to specify pseudotypes such as `cstring` . Pseudotypes indicate that the actual argument type is either incompletely specified, or outside the set of ordinary SQL data types.

  The type of a column is referenced by writing `tablename.columnname%TYPE` . Using this feature can sometimes help make a function independent of changes to the definition of a table.

- default_expr

  An expression to be used as the default value if the parameter is not specified. The expression must be coercible to the argument type of the parameter. Only `IN` and `INOUT` parameters can have a default value. Each input parameter in the argument list that follows a parameter with a default value must have a default value as well.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- rettype

  The return data type (optionally schema-qualified). The return type can be a base, composite, or domain type, or may reference the type of a table column. Depending on the implementation language it may also be allowed to specify pseudotypes such as `cstring`. If the function is not supposed to return a value, specify `void` as the return type.

  When there are `OUT` or `INOUT` parameters, the `RETURNS` clause may be omitted. If present, it must agree with the result type implied by the output parameters: `RECORD` if there are multiple output parameters, or the same type as the single output parameter.

  The `SETOF` modifier indicates that the function will return a set of items, rather than a single item.

  The type of a column is referenced by writing `tablename.columnname%TYPE`.

- column_name

  The name of an output column in the `RETURNS TABLE` syntax. This is effectively another way of declaring a named `OUT` parameter, except that `RETURNS TABLE` also implies `RETURNS SETOF`.

- column_type

  The data type of an output column in the `RETURNS TABLE` syntax.

- langname

  The name of the language that the function is implemented in. May be `SQL`, `C`, `internal`, or the name of a user-defined procedural language. See CREATE LANGUAGE for the procedural languages supported in WarehousePG. For backward compatibility, the name may be enclosed by single quotes.

- WINDOW

  `WINDOW` indicates that the function is a window function rather than a plain function. This is currently only useful for functions written in C. The `WINDOW` attribute cannot be changed when replacing an existing function definition.

- IMMUTABLE

- STABLE

- VOLATILE

- LEAKPROOF

  These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the function. At most one choice may be specified. If none of these appear, `VOLATILE` is the default assumption. Since WarehousePG currently has limited use of `VOLATILE` functions, if a function is truly `IMMUTABLE`, you must declare it as so to be able to use it without restrictions.

  `IMMUTABLE` indicates that the function cannot modify the database and always returns the same result when given the same argument values. It does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If this option is given, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

  `STABLE` indicates that the function cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for functions whose results depend on database lookups, parameter values (such as the current time zone), and so on. Also note that the current_timestamp family of functions qualify as stable, since their values do not change within a transaction.

  `VOLATILE` indicates that the function value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Relatively few database functions are volatile in this sense; some examples are `random()`, `timeofday()`. But note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away; an example is `setval()`.

  `LEAKPROOF` indicates that the function has no side effects. It reveals no information about its arguments other than by its return value. For example, a function that throws an error message for some argument values but not others, or that includes the argument values in any error message, is not leakproof. The query planner may push leakproof functions (but not others) into views created with the `security_barrier` option. See CREATE VIEW and CREATE RULE. This option can only be set by the superuser.

- CALLED ON NULL INPUT

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
- STRICT

  `CALLED ON NULL INPUT` (the default) indicates that the function will be called normally when some of its arguments are null. It is then the function author's responsibility to check for null values if necessary and respond appropriately. `RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT` or `STRICT` indicates that the function always returns null whenever any of its arguments are null. If this parameter is specified, the function is not run when there are null arguments; instead a null result is assumed automatically.

- NO SQL
- CONTAINS SQL
- READS SQL DATA
- MODIFIES SQL

  These attributes inform the query optimizer about whether or not the function contains SQL statements and whether, if it does, those statements read and/or write data.

  `NO SQL` indicates that the function does not contain SQL statements.

  `CONTAINS SQL` indicates that the function contains SQL statements, none of which either read or write data.

  `READS SQL DATA` indicates that the function contains SQL statements that read data but none that modify data.

  `MODIFIES SQL` indicates that the function contains statements that may write data.

- [EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER
- [EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER

  `SECURITY INVOKER` (the default) indicates that the function is to be run with the privileges of the user that calls it. `SECURITY DEFINER` specifies that the function is to be run with the privileges of the user that created it. The key word `EXTERNAL` is allowed for SQL conformance, but it is optional since, unlike in SQL, this feature applies to all functions not just external ones.

- EXECUTE ON ANY
- EXECUTE ON MASTER
- EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- EXECUTE ON INITPLAN

  The `EXECUTE ON` attributes specify where (coordinator or segment instance) a function runs when it is invoked during the query execution process.

  `EXECUTE ON ANY` (the default) indicates that the function can be run on the coordinator, or any segment instance, and it returns the same result regardless of where it is run. WarehousePG determines where the function runs.

  `EXECUTE ON MASTER` indicates that the function must run only on the coordinator instance.

  `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` indicates that the function must run on all primary segment instances, but not the coordinator, for each invocation. The overall result of the function is the `UNION ALL` of the results from all segment instances.

  `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` indicates that the function contains an SQL command that dispatches queries to the segment instances and requires special processing on the coordinator instance by WarehousePG when possible.

  > **Note** `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` is only supported in functions that are used in the `FROM` clause of a `CREATE TABLE AS` or `INSERT` command such as the `get_data()` function in these commands.

  ```
  CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM get_data();

  INSERT INTO t1 SELECT * FROM get_data();
  ```

  WarehousePG does not support the `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` attribute in a function that is used in the `WITH` clause of a query, a CTE (common table expression). For example, specifying `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` in function `get_data()` in this CTE is not supported.

  ```
  WITH tbl_a AS (SELECT * FROM get_data() )
     SELECT * from tbl_a
     UNION
     SELECT * FROM tbl_b;
  ```

  For information about using `EXECUTE ON` attributes, see Notes.

- COST execution_cost

  A positive number identifying the estimated execution cost for the function, in cpu_operator_cost units. If the function returns a set, execution_cost identifies the cost per returned row. If the cost is not specified, C-language and internal functions default to 1 unit, while functions in other languages default to 100 units. The planner tries to evaluate the function less often when you specify larger execution_cost values.

- configuration_parameter

- value

  The `SET` clause applies a value to a session configuration parameter when the function is entered. The configuration parameter is restored to its prior value when the function exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `CREATE FUNCTION` is run as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

- definition

  A string constant defining the function; the meaning depends on the language. It may be an internal function name, the path to an object file, an SQL command, or text in a procedural language.

- obj_file, link_symbol

  This form of the `AS` clause is used for dynamically loadable C language functions when the function name in the C language source code is not the same as the name of the SQL function. The string obj_file is the name of the file containing the dynamically loadable object, and link_symbol is the name of the function in the C language source code. If the link symbol is omitted, it is assumed to be the same as the name of the SQL function being defined. The C names of all functions must be different, so you must give overloaded SQL functions different C names (for example, use the argument types as part of the C names). It is recommended to locate shared libraries either relative to `$libdir` (which is located at `$GPHOME/lib`) or through the dynamic library path (set by the `dynamic_library_path` server configuration parameter). This simplifies version upgrades if the new installation is at a different location.

- describe_function

  The name of a callback function to run when a query that calls this function is parsed. The callback function returns a tuple descriptor that indicates the result type.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

Any compiled code (shared library files) for custom functions must be placed in the same location on every host in your WarehousePG array (coordinator and all segments). This location must also be in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` so that the server can locate the files. It is recommended to locate shared libraries either relative to `$libdir` (which is located at `$GPHOME/lib`) or through the dynamic library path (set by the `dynamic_library_path` server configuration parameter) on all coordinator segment instances in the WarehousePG cluster.

The full SQL type syntax is allowed for input arguments and return value. However, some details of the type specification (such as the precision field for type numeric) are the responsibility of the underlying function implementation and are not recognized or enforced by the `CREATE FUNCTION` command.

WarehousePG allows function overloading. The same name can be used for several different functions so long as they have distinct input argument types. However, the C names of all functions must be different, so you must give overloaded C functions different C names (for example, use the argument types as part of the C names).

Two functions are considered the same if they have the same names and input argument types, ignoring any `OUT` parameters. Thus for example these declarations conflict:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, out text) ...
```

Functions that have different argument type lists are not considered to conflict at creation time, but if argument defaults are provided, they might conflict in use. For example, consider:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, int default 42) ...
```

The call `foo(10)`, will fail due to the ambiguity about which function should be called.

When repeated `CREATE FUNCTION` calls refer to the same object file, the file is only loaded once. To unload and reload the file, use the `LOAD` command.

You must have the `USAGE` privilege on a language to be able to define a function using that language.

It is often helpful to use dollar quoting to write the function definition string, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the function definition must be escaped by doubling them. A dollar-quoted string constant consists of a dollar sign (`$`), an optional tag of zero or more characters, another dollar sign, an arbitrary sequence of characters that makes up the string content, a dollar sign, the same tag that began this dollar quote, and a dollar sign. Inside the dollar-quoted string, single quotes, backslashes, or any character can be used without escaping. The string content is always written literally. For example, here are two different ways to specify the string "Dianne's horse" using dollar quoting:

```
$$Dianne's horse$$
$SomeTag$Dianne's horse$SomeTag$
```

If a `SET` clause is attached to a function, the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command run inside the function for the same variable are restricted to the function; the configuration parameter's prior value is still restored when the function exits. However, an ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `CREATE FUNCTION SET` clause, much as it would for a previous `SET LOCAL` command. The effects of such a command will persist after the function exits, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

If a function with a `VARIADIC` argument is declared as `STRICT`, the strictness check tests that the variadic array as a whole is non-null. PL/pgSQL will still call the function if the array has null elements.

When replacing an existing function with `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`, there are restrictions on changing parameter names. You cannot change the name already assigned to any input parameter (although you can add names to parameters that had none before). If there is more than one output parameter, you cannot change the names of the output parameters, because that would change the column names of the anonymous composite type that describes the function's result. These restrictions are made to ensure that existing calls of the function do not stop working when it is replaced.

#### Using Functions with Queries on Distributed Data

In some cases, WarehousePG does not support using functions in a query where the data in a table specified in the `FROM` clause is distributed over WarehousePG segments. As an example, this SQL query contains the function `func()`:

```
SELECT func(a) FROM table1;
```

The function is not supported for use in the query if all of the following conditions are met:

- The data of table `table1` is distributed over WarehousePG segments.
- The function `func()` reads or modifies data from distributed tables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- The function `func()` returns more than one row or takes an argument (`a`) that comes from `table1`.

If any of the conditions are not met, the function is supported. Specifically, the function is supported if any of the following conditions apply:

- The function `func()` does not access data from distributed tables, or accesses data that is only on the WarehousePG coordinator.
- The table `table1` is a coordinator only table.
- The function `func()` returns only one row and only takes input arguments that are constant values. The function is supported if it can be changed to require no input arguments.

#### Using EXECUTE ON attributes

Most functions that run queries to access tables can only run on the coordinator. However, functions that run only `SELECT` queries on replicated tables can run on segments. If the function accesses a hash-distributed table or a randomly distributed table, the function should be defined with the `EXECUTE ON MASTER` attribute. Otherwise, the function might return incorrect results when the function is used in a complicated query. Without the attribute, planner optimization might determine it would be beneficial to push the function invocation to segment instances.

These are limitations for functions defined with the `EXECUTE ON MASTER` or `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` attribute:

- The function must be a set-returning function.
- The function cannot be in the `FROM` clause of a query.
- The function cannot be in the `SELECT` list of a query with a `FROM` clause.
- A query that includes the function falls back from GPORCA to the Postgres Planner.

The attribute `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` indicates that the function contains an SQL command that dispatches queries to the segment instances and requires special processing on the coordinator instance by WarehousePG. When possible, WarehousePG handles the function on the coordinator instance in the following manner.

1. First, WarehousePG runs the function as part of an InitPlan node on the coordinator instance and holds the function output temporarily.
2. Then, in the MainPlan of the query plan, the function is called in an EntryDB (a special query executor (QE) that runs on the coordinator instance) and WarehousePG returns the data that was captured when the function was run as part of the InitPlan node. The function is not run in the MainPlan.

This simple example uses the function `get_data()` in a CTAS command to create a table using data from the table `country`. The function contains a `SELECT` command that retrieves data from the table `country` and uses the `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` attribute.

```
CREATE TABLE country(
  c_id integer, c_name text, region int)
  DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;

INSERT INTO country VALUES (11,'INDIA', 1 ), (22,'CANADA', 2), (33,'USA', 3);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_data()
  RETURNS TABLE (
   c_id integer, c_name text
   )
AS $$
  SELECT
    c.c_id, c.c_name
  FROM
    country c;
$$
LANGUAGE SQL EXECUTE ON INITPLAN;

CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM get_data() DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;
```

If you view the query plan of the CTAS command with `EXPLAIN ANALYZE VERBOSE`, the plan shows that the function is run as part of an InitPlan node, and one of the listed slices is labeled as `entry db`. The query plan of a simple CTAS command without the function does not have an InitPlan node or an `entry db` slice.

If the function did not contain the `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` attribute, the CTAS command returns the error `function cannot execute on a QE slice`.

When a function uses the `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` attribute, a command that uses the function such as `CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM get_data()` gathers the results of the function onto the coordinator segment and then redistributes the results to segment instances when inserting the data. If the function returns a large amount of data, the coordinator might become a bottleneck when gathering and redistributing data. Performance might improve if you rewrite the function to run the CTAS command in the user defined function and use the table name as an input parameter. In this example, the function runs a CTAS command and does not require the `EXECUTE ON INITPLAN` attribute. Running the `SELECT` command creates the table `t1` using the function that runs the CTAS command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_ctas(_tbl text) RETURNS VOID AS
$$
BEGIN
  EXECUTE format('CREATE TABLE %s AS SELECT c.c_id, c.c_name FROM country c DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY', _tbl);
END
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT my_ctas('t1');
```

### Examples

A very simple addition function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add(integer, integer) RETURNS integer
    AS 'select $1 + $2;'
    LANGUAGE SQL
    IMMUTABLE
    RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT;
```

Increment an integer, making use of an argument name, in PL/pgSQL:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION increment(i integer) RETURNS
integer AS $$
        BEGIN
                RETURN i + 1;
        END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Increase the default segment host memory per query for a PL/pgSQL function:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION function_with_query() RETURNS
SETOF text AS $$
        BEGIN
                RETURN QUERY
                EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM large_table;
        END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql
SET statement_mem='256MB';
```

Use polymorphic types to return an `ENUM` array:

```
CREATE TYPE rainbow AS ENUM('red','orange','yellow','green','blue','indigo','violet');
CREATE FUNCTION return_enum_as_array( anyenum, anyelement, anyelement )
    RETURNS TABLE (ae anyenum, aa anyarray) AS $$
    SELECT $1, array[$2, $3]
$$ LANGUAGE SQL STABLE;

SELECT * FROM return_enum_as_array('red'::rainbow, 'green'::rainbow, 'blue'::rainbow);
```

Return a record containing multiple output parameters:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dup(in int, out f1 int, out f2 text)
    AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
    LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);
```

You can do the same thing more verbosely with an explicitly named composite type:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TYPE dup_result AS (f1 int, f2 text);
CREATE FUNCTION dup(int) RETURNS dup_result
    AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
    LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);
```

Another way to return multiple columns is to use a `TABLE` function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dup(int) RETURNS TABLE(f1 int, f2 text)
    AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
    LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(4);
```

This function is defined with the `EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS` to run on all primary segment instances. The `SELECT` command runs the function that returns the time it was run on each segment instance.

```
CREATE FUNCTION run_on_segs (text) returns setof text as $$
  begin
    return next ($1 || ' - ' || now()::text );
  end;
 $$ language plpgsql VOLATILE EXECUTE ON ALL SEGMENTS;

SELECT run_on_segs('my test');
```

This function looks up a part name in the parts table. The parts table is replicated, so the function can run on the coordinator or on the primary segments.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_part_name(partno int) RETURNS text AS
$$
DECLARE
   result text := ' ';
BEGIN
    SELECT part_name INTO result FROM parts WHERE part_id = partno;
    RETURN result;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

If you run `SELECT get_part_name(100);` at the coordinator the function runs on the coordinator. (The coordinator instance directs the query to a single primary segment.) If orders is a distributed table and you run the following query, the `get_part_name()` function runs on the primary segments.

```
`SELECT order_id, get_part_name(orders.part_no) FROM orders;`
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE FUNCTION` is defined in SQL:1999 and later. The WarehousePG version is similar but not fully compatible. The attributes are not portable, neither are the different available languages.

For compatibility with some other database systems, argmode can be written either before or after argname. But only the first way is standard-compliant.

For parameter defaults, the SQL standard specifies only the syntax with the `DEFAULT` key word. The syntax with `=` is used in T-SQL and Firebird.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER FUNCTION, DROP FUNCTION, LOAD

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.56 CREATE GROUP

Defines a new database role.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE GROUP <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

where option can be:

```
      SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
    | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
    | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
    | CREATEUSER | NOCREATEUSER
    | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE
      [ ( <attribute>='<value>'[, ...] ) ]
           where <attributes> and <value> are:
           type='readable'|'writable'
           protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
    | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
    | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
    | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
    | [ ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '<password>'
    | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'
    | IN ROLE <rolename> [, ...]
    | ROLE <rolename> [, ...]
    | ADMIN <rolename> [, ...]
    | RESOURCE QUEUE <queue_name>
    | RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>
    | [ DENY <deny_point> ]
    | [ DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>]
```

### Description

`CREATE GROUP` is an alias for CREATE ROLE.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE GROUP` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.57 CREATE INDEX

Defines a new index.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [UNIQUE] INDEX [<name>] ON <table_name> [USING <method>]
       ( {<column_name> | (<expression>)} [COLLATE <parameter>] [<opclass>] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [,
...] )
       [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> = <value> [, ... ] ) ]
       [ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
       [ WHERE <predicate> ]
```

### Description

`CREATE INDEX` constructs an index on the specified column(s) of the specified table or materialized view. Indexes are primarily used to enhance database performance (though inappropriate use can result in slower performance).

The key field(s) for the index are specified as column names, or alternatively as expressions written in parentheses. Multiple fields can be specified if the index method supports multicolumn indexes.

An index field can be an expression computed from the values of one or more columns of the table row. This feature can be used to obtain fast access to data based on some transformation of the basic data. For example, an index computed on `upper(col)` would allow the clause `WHERE upper(col) = 'JIM'` to use an index.

WarehousePG provides the index methods B-tree, bitmap, GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN. Users can also define their own index methods, but that is fairly complicated.

When the `WHERE` clause is present, a partial index is created. A partial index is an index that contains entries for only a portion of a table, usually a portion that is more useful for indexing than the rest of the table. For example, if you have a table that contains both billed and unbilled orders where the unbilled orders take up a small fraction of the total table and yet is most often selected, you can improve performance by creating an index on just that portion.

The expression used in the `WHERE` clause may refer only to columns of the underlying table, but it can use all columns, not just the ones being indexed. Subqueries and aggregate expressions are also forbidden in `WHERE`. The same restrictions apply to index fields that are expressions.

All functions and operators used in an index definition must be immutable. Their results must depend only on their arguments and never on any outside influence (such as the contents of another table or a parameter value). This restriction ensures that the behavior of the index is well-defined. To use a user-defined function in an index expression or `WHERE` clause, remember to mark the function `IMMUTABLE` when you create it.

### Parameters

- UNIQUE

  Checks for duplicate values in the table when the index is created and each time data is added. Duplicate entries will generate an error. Unique indexes only apply to B-tree indexes. In WarehousePG, unique indexes are allowed only if the columns of the index key are the same as (or a superset of) the WarehousePG distribution key. On partitioned tables, a unique index is only supported within an individual partition - not across all partitions.

- name

  The name of the index to be created. The index is always created in the same schema as its parent table. If the name is omitted, WarehousePG chooses a suitable name based on the parent table's name and the indexed column name(s).

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be indexed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- method

  The name of the index method to be used. Choices are `btree`, `bitmap`, `gist`, `spgist`, and `gin`. The default method is `btree`.

  Currently, only the B-tree, GiST, and GIN index methods support multicolumn indexes. Up to 32 fields can be specified by default. Only B-tree currently supports unique indexes.

  GPORCA supports only B-tree, bitmap, GiST, and GIN indexes. GPORCA ignores indexes created with unsupported indexing methods.

- column_name

  The name of a column of the table on which to create the index. Only the B-tree, bitmap, GiST, and GIN index methods support multicolumn indexes.

- expression

  An expression based on one or more columns of the table. The expression usually must be written with surrounding parentheses, as shown in the syntax. However, the parentheses may be omitted if the expression has the form of a function call.

- collation

  The name of the collation to use for the index. By default, the index uses the collation declared for the column to be indexed or the result collation of the expression to be indexed. Indexes with non-default collations can be useful for queries that involve expressions using non-default collations.

- opclass

  The name of an operator class. The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on four-byte integers would use the `int4_ops` class (this operator class includes comparison functions for four-byte integers). In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main point of having operator classes is that for some data types, there could be more than one meaningful ordering. For example, a complex-number data type could be sorted by either absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when making an index.

- ASC

  Specifies ascending sort order (which is the default).

- DESC

  Specifies descending sort order.

- NULLS FIRST

  Specifies that nulls sort before non-nulls. This is the default when `DESC` is specified.

- NULLS LAST

  Specifies that nulls sort after non-nulls. This is the default when `DESC` is not specified.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- storage_parameter

  The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter. Each index method has its own set of allowed storage parameters.

  `FILLFACTOR` - B-tree, bitmap, GiST, and SP-GiST index methods all accept this parameter. The `FILLFACTOR` for an index is a percentage that determines how full the index method will try to pack index pages. For B-trees, leaf pages are filled to this percentage during initial index build, and also when extending the index at the right (adding new largest key values). If pages subsequently become completely full, they will be split, leading to gradual degradation in the index's efficiency. B-trees use a default fillfactor of 90, but any integer value from 10 to 100 can be selected. If the table is static then fillfactor 100 is best to minimize the index's physical size, but for heavily updated tables a smaller fillfactor is better to minimize the need for page splits. The other index methods use fillfactor in different but roughly analogous ways; the default fillfactor varies between methods.

  `BUFFERING` - In addition to `FILLFACTOR`, GiST indexes additionally accept the `BUFFERING` parameter. `BUFFERING` determines whether WarehousePG builds the index using the buffering build technique described in GiST buffering build in the PostgreSQL documentation. With `OFF` it is deactivated, with `ON` it is enabled, and with `AUTO` it is initially deactivated, but turned on on-the-fly once the index size reaches effective-cache-size. The default is `AUTO`.

  `FASTUPDATE` - The GIN index method accepts the `FASTUPDATE` storage parameter. `FASTUPDATE` is a Boolean parameter that deactivates or enables the GIN index fast update technique. A value of ON enables fast update (the default), and OFF deactivates it. See GIN fast update technique in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

  > **Note** Turning `FASTUPDATE` off via `ALTER INDEX` prevents future insertions from going into the list of pending index entries, but does not in itself flush previous entries. You might want to VACUUM the table afterward to ensure the pending list is emptied.

- tablespace_name

  The tablespace in which to create the index. If not specified, the default tablespace is used, ortemp_tablespaces for indexes on temporary tables.

- predicate

  The constraint expression for a partial index.

### Notes

An *operator class* can be specified for each column of an index. The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on four-byte integers would use the int4_ops class; this operator class includes comparison functions for four-byte integers. In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main point of having operator classes is that for some data types, there could be more than one meaningful ordering. For example, we might want to sort a complex-number data type either by absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when making an index.

For index methods that support ordered scans (currently, only B-tree), the optional clauses `ASC`, `DESC`, `NULLS FIRST`, and/or `NULLS LAST` can be specified to modify the sort ordering of the index. Since an ordered index can be scanned either forward or backward, it is not normally useful to create a single-column `DESC` index — that sort ordering is already available with a regular index. The value of these options is that multicolumn indexes can be created that match the sort ordering requested by a mixed-ordering query, such as `SELECT ... ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC`. The `NULLS` options are useful if you need to support "nulls sort low" behavior, rather than the default "nulls sort high", in queries that depend on indexes to avoid sorting steps.

For most index methods, the speed of creating an index is dependent on the setting of `maintenance_work_mem`. Larger values will reduce the time needed for index creation, so long as you don't make it larger than the amount of memory really available, which would drive the machine into swapping.

When an index is created on a partitioned table, the index is propagated to all the child tables created by WarehousePG. Creating an index on a table that is created by WarehousePG for use by a partitioned table is not supported.

`UNIQUE` indexes are allowed only if the index columns are the same as (or a superset of) the WarehousePG distribution key columns.

`UNIQUE` indexes are not allowed on append-optimized tables.

A `UNIQUE` index can be created on a partitioned table. However, uniqueness is enforced only within a partition; uniqueness is not enforced between partitions. For example, for a partitioned table with partitions that are based on year and a subpartitions that are based on quarter, uniqueness is enforced only on each individual quarter partition. Uniqueness is not enforced between quarter partitions

Indexes are not used for `IS NULL` clauses by default. The best way to use indexes in such cases is to create a partial index using an `IS NULL` predicate.

`bitmap` indexes perform best for columns that have between 100 and 100,000 distinct values. For a column with more than 100,000 distinct values, the performance and space efficiency of a bitmap index decline. The size of a bitmap index is proportional to the number of rows in the table times the number of distinct values in the indexed column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Columns with fewer than 100 distinct values usually do not benefit much from any type of index. For example, a gender column with only two distinct values for male and female would not be a good candidate for an index.

Prior releases of WarehousePG also had an R-tree index method. This method has been removed because it had no significant advantages over the GiST method. If `USING rtree` is specified, `CREATE INDEX` will interpret it as `USING gist`.

For more information on the GiST index type, refer to the PostgreSQL documentation.

The use of hash indexes has been deactivated in WarehousePG.

### Examples

To create a B-tree index on the column `title` in the table `films`:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title);
```

To create a bitmap index on the column `gender` in the table `employee`:

```
CREATE INDEX gender_bmp_idx ON employee USING bitmap
(gender);
```

To create an index on the expression `lower(title)`, allowing efficient case-insensitive searches:

```
CREATE INDEX ON films ((lower(title)));
```

(In this example we have chosen to omit the index name, so the system will choose a name, typically `films_lower_idx`.)

To create an index with non-default collation:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx_german ON films (title COLLATE "de_DE");
```

To create an index with non-default fill factor:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) WITH
(fillfactor = 70);
```

To create a GIN index with fast updates deactivated:

```
CREATE INDEX gin_idx ON documents_table USING gin (locations) WITH (fastupdate = off);
```

To create an index on the column `code` in the table `films` and have the index reside in the tablespace `indexspace`:

```
CREATE INDEX code_idx ON films(code) TABLESPACE indexspace;
```

To create a GiST index on a point attribute so that we can efficiently use box operators on the result of the conversion function:

```
CREATE INDEX pointloc ON points USING gist (box(location,location));
SELECT * FROM points WHERE box(location,location) && '(0,0),(1,1)'::box;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`CREATE INDEX` is a WarehousePG language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

WarehousePG does not support the concurrent creation of indexes ( `CONCURRENTLY` keyword not supported).

### See Also

ALTER INDEX, DROP INDEX, CREATE TABLE, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.58 CREATE LANGUAGE

Defines a new procedural language.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <name>

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <name>
    HANDLER <call_handler> [ INLINE <inline_handler> ]
   [ VALIDATOR <valfunction> ]
```

### Description

`CREATE LANGUAGE` registers a new procedural language with a WarehousePG. Subsequently, functions and trigger procedures can be defined in this new language.

> **Note** Procedural languages for WarehousePG have been made into "extensions," and should therefore be installed with CREATE EXTENSION, not `CREATE LANGUAGE`. Using `CREATE LANGUAGE` directly should be restricted to extension installation scripts. If you have a "bare" language in your database, perhaps as a result of an upgrade, you can convert it to an extension using `CREATE EXTENSION langname FROM unpackaged`.

Superusers can register a new language with a WarehousePG. A database owner can also register within that database any language listed in the `pg_pltemplate` catalog in which the `tmpldbacreate` field is true. The default configuration allows only trusted languages to be registered by database owners. The creator of a language becomes its owner and can later drop it, rename it, or assign ownership to a new owner.

`CREATE OR REPLACE LANGUAGE` will either create a new language, or replace an existing definition. If the language already exists, its parameters are updated according to the values specified or taken from pg_pltemplate, but the language's ownership and permissions settings do not change, and any existing functions written in the language are assumed to still be valid. In addition to the normal privilege requirements for creating a language, the user must be superuser or owner of the existing language. The `REPLACE` case is mainly meant to be used to ensure that the language exists. If the language has a pg_pltemplate entry then `REPLACE` will not actually change anything about an existing definition, except in the unusual case where the pg_pltemplate entry has been modified since the language was created.

`CREATE LANGUAGE` effectively associates the language name with handler function(s) that are responsible for running functions written in that language. For a function written in a procedural language (a language other than C or SQL), the database server has no built-in knowledge about how to interpret the function's source code. The task is passed to a special handler that knows the details of the language. The handler could either do all the work of parsing, syntax analysis, execution, and so on or it could serve as a bridge between WarehousePG and an existing implementation of a programming language. The handler itself is a C language function compiled into a shared object and loaded on demand, just like any other C function. Therese procedural language packages are included in the standard WarehousePG distribution: PL/pgSQL, PL/Perl, and PL/Python. Language handlers have also been added for PL/Java and PL/R, but those languages are not pre-installed with WarehousePG. See the topic on Procedural Languages in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information on developing functions using these procedural languages.

There are two forms of the `CREATE LANGUAGE` command. In the first form, the user specifies the name of the desired language and the WarehousePG server uses the `pg_pltemplate` system catalog to determine the correct parameters. In the second form, the user specifies the language parameters as well as the language name. You can use the second form to create a language that is not defined in `pg_pltemplate`.

When the server finds an entry in the `pg_pltemplate` catalog for the given language name, it will use the catalog data even if the command includes language parameters. This behavior simplifies loading of old dump files, which are likely to contain out-of-date information about language support functions.

### Parameters

- TRUSTED

  `TRUSTED` specifies that the language does not grant access to data that the user would not otherwise have. If this key word is omitted when registering the language, only users with the WarehousePG superuser privilege can use this language to create new functions.

- PROCEDURAL

  This is a noise word.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- name

  The name of the new procedural language. The name must be unique among the languages in the database. Built-in support is included for `plpgsql`, `plperl`, and `plpythonu`. The languages `plpgsql` (PL/pgSQL) and `plpythonu` (PL/Python) are installed by default in WarehousePG.

- HANDLER call_handler

  Ignored if the server has an entry for the specified language name in `pg_pltemplate`. The name of a previously registered function that will be called to run the procedural language functions. The call handler for a procedural language must be written in a compiled language such as C with version 1 call convention and registered with WarehousePG as a function taking no arguments and returning the `language_handler` type, a placeholder type that is simply used to identify the function as a call handler.

- INLINE inline_handler

  The name of a previously registered function that is called to run an anonymous code block in this language that is created with the DO command. If an `inline_handler` function is not specified, the language does not support anonymous code blocks. The handler function must take one argument of type `internal`, which is the DO command internal representation. The function typically return `void`. The return value of the handler is ignored.

- VALIDATOR valfunction

  Ignored if the server has an entry for the specified language name in `pg_pltemplate`. The name of a previously registered function that will be called to run the procedural language functions. The call handler for a procedural language must be written in a compiled language such as C with version 1 call convention and registered with WarehousePG as a function taking no arguments and returning the `language_handler` type, a placeholder type that is simply used to identify the function as a call handler.

### Notes

The PL/pgSQL language is already registered in all databases by default. The PL/Python language extension is installed but not registered.

The system catalog `pg_language` records information about the currently installed languages.

To create functions in a procedural language, a user must have the `USAGE` privilege for the language. By default, `USAGE` is granted to `PUBLIC` (everyone) for trusted languages. This may be revoked if desired.

Procedural languages are local to individual databases. You create and drop languages for individual databases.

The call handler function and the validator function (if any) must already exist if the server does not have an entry for the language in `pg_pltemplate`. But when there is an entry, the functions need not already exist; they will be automatically defined if not present in the database.

Any shared library that implements a language must be located in the same `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` location on all segment hosts in your WarehousePG array.

### Examples

The preferred way of creating any of the standard procedural languages is to use `CREATE EXTENSION` instead of `CREATE LANGUAGE`. For example:

```
CREATE EXTENSION plperl;
```

For a language not known in the `pg_pltemplate` catalog:

```
CREATE FUNCTION plsample_call_handler() RETURNS
language_handler
    AS '$libdir/plsample'
    LANGUAGE C;
CREATE LANGUAGE plsample
    HANDLER plsample_call_handler;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`CREATE LANGUAGE` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER LANGUAGE, CREATE EXTENSION, CREATE FUNCTION, DROP EXTENSION, DROP LANGUAGE, GRANT DO

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.59 CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

Defines a new materialized view.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW <table_name>
    [ (<column_name> [, ...] ) ]
    [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [= <value>] [, ... ] ) ]
    [ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
    AS <query>
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
    [DISTRIBUTED {| BY <column> [<opclass>], [ ... ] | RANDOMLY | REPLICATED }]
```

### Description

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` defines a materialized view of a query. The query is run and used to populate the view at the time the command is issued (unless `WITH NO DATA` is used) and can be refreshed using `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW`.

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` is similar to `CREATE TABLE AS`, except that it also remembers the query used to initialize the view, so that it can be refreshed later upon demand. To refresh materialized view data, use the `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` command. A materialized view has many of the same properties as a table, but there is no support for temporary materialized views or automatic generation of OIDs.

### Parameters

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to be created.

- column_name

  The name of a column in the materialized view. The column names are assigned based on position. The first column name is assigned to the first column of the query result, and so on. If a column name is not provided, it is taken from the output column names of the query.

- WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )

  This clause specifies optional storage parameters for the materialized view. All parameters supported for `CREATE TABLE` are also supported for `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` with the exception of OIDS. See CREATE TABLE for more information.

- TABLESPACE tablespace_name

  The tablespace_name is the name of the tablespace in which the new materialized view is to be created. If not specified, server configuration parameter default_tablespace is consulted.

- query

  A SELECT or VALUES command. This query will run within a security-restricted operation; in particular, calls to functions that themselves create temporary tables will fail.

- WITH [ NO ] DATA

  This clause specifies whether or not the materialized view should be populated with data at creation time. `WITH DATA` is the default, populate the materialized view. For `WITH NO DATA`, the materialized view is not populated with data, is flagged as unscannable, and cannot be queried until `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` is used to populate the materialized view. An error is returned if a query attempts to access an unscannable materialized view.

- DISTRIBUTED BY (column [opclass], [ ... ] )

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY
- DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

  Used to declare the WarehousePG distribution policy for the materialized view data. For information about a table distribution policy, see CREATE TABLE.

### Notes

Materialized views are read only. The system will not allow an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` on a materialized view. Use `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` to update the materialized view data.

If you want the data to be ordered upon generation, you must use an `ORDER BY` clause in the materialized view query. However, if a materialized view query contains an `ORDER BY` or `SORT` clause, the data is not guaranteed to be ordered or sorted if `SELECT` is performed on the materialized view.

### Examples

Create a view consisting of all comedy films:

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW comedies AS SELECT * FROM films
WHERE kind = 'comedy';
```

This will create a view containing the columns that are in the `film` table at the time of view creation. Though `*` was used to create the materialized view, columns added later to the table will not be part of the view.

Create a view that gets the top ten ranked baby names:

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW topten AS SELECT name, rank, gender, year FROM
names, rank WHERE rank < '11' AND names.id=rank.id;
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

SELECT, VALUES, CREATE VIEW, ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.60 CREATE OPERATOR

Defines a new operator.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR <name> (
       PROCEDURE = <funcname>
       [, LEFTARG = <lefttype>] [, RIGHTARG = <righttype>]
       [, COMMUTATOR = <com_op>] [, NEGATOR = <neg_op>]
       [, RESTRICT = <res_proc>] [, JOIN = <join_proc>]
       [, HASHES] [, MERGES] )
```

### Description

`CREATE OPERATOR` defines a new operator. The user who defines an operator becomes its owner.

The operator name is a sequence of up to `NAMEDATALEN`-1 (63 by default) characters from the following list: `+ - * / < > = ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?`

There are a few restrictions on your choice of name:

- `--` and `/*` cannot appear anywhere in an operator name, since they will be taken as the start of a comment.
- A multicharacter operator name cannot end in `+` or `-`, unless the name also contains at least one of these characters: `~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?`

For example, `@-` is an allowed operator name, but `*-` is not. This restriction allows WarehousePG to parse SQL-compliant commands without requiring spaces between tokens.

The use of `=>` as an operator name is deprecated. It may be disallowed altogether in a future release.

The operator `!=` is mapped to `<>` on input, so these two names are always equivalent.

At least one of `LEFTARG` and `RIGHTARG` must be defined. For binary operators, both must be defined. For right unary operators, only `LEFTARG` should be defined, while for left unary operators only `RIGHTARG` should be defined.

The funcname procedure must have been previously defined using `CREATE FUNCTION`, must be `IMMUTABLE`, and must be defined to accept the correct number of arguments (either one or two) of the indicated types.

The other clauses specify optional operator optimization clauses. These clauses should be provided whenever appropriate to speed up queries that use the operator. But if you provide them, you must be sure that they are correct. Incorrect use of an optimization clause can result in server process crashes, subtly wrong output, or other unexpected results. You can always leave out an optimization clause if you are not sure about it.

To be able to create an operator, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the argument types and the return type, as well as `EXECUTE` privilege on the underlying function. If a commutator or negator operator is specified, you must own these operators.

### Parameters

- name

  The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the operator to be defined. Two operators in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different data types.

- funcname

  The function used to implement this operator (must be an `IMMUTABLE` function).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- lefttype

  The data type of the operator's left operand, if any. This option would be omitted for a left-unary operator.

- righttype

  The data type of the operator's right operand, if any. This option would be omitted for a right-unary operator.

- com_op

  The optional `COMMUTATOR` clause names an operator that is the commutator of the operator being defined. We say that operator A is the commutator of operator B if (x A y) equals (y B x) for all possible input values x, y. Notice that B is also the commutator of A. For example, operators `<` and `>` for a particular data type are usually each others commutators, and operator + is usually commutative with itself. But operator `-` is usually not commutative with anything. The left operand type of a commutable operator is the same as the right operand type of its commutator, and vice versa. So the name of the commutator operator is all that needs to be provided in the `COMMUTATOR` clause.

- neg_op

  The optional `NEGATOR` clause names an operator that is the negator of the operator being defined. We say that operator A is the negator of operator B if both return Boolean results and (x A y) equals NOT (x B y) for all possible inputs x, y. Notice that B is also the negator of A. For example, `<` and `>=` are a negator pair for most data types. An operator's negator must have the same left and/or right operand types as the operator to be defined, so only the operator name need be given in the `NEGATOR` clause.

- res_proc

  The optional `RESTRICT` names a restriction selectivity estimation function for the operator. Note that this is a function name, not an operator name. `RESTRICT` clauses only make sense for binary operators that return `boolean`. The idea behind a restriction selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a table will satisfy a `WHERE`-clause condition of the form:

```
column OP constant
```

for the current operator and a particular constant value. This assists the optimizer by giving it some idea of how many rows will be eliminated by `WHERE` clauses that have this form.

You can usually just use one of the following system standard estimator functions for many of your own operators:

- `eqsel` for `=`
- `neqsel` for `<>`
- `scalarltsel` for `<` or `<=`
- `scalargtsel` for `>` or `>=`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- join_proc

  The optional `JOIN` clause names a join selectivity estimation function for the operator. Note that this is a function name, not an operator name. `JOIN` clauses only make sense for binary operators that return `boolean`. The idea behind a join selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a pair of tables will satisfy a `WHERE`-clause condition of the form

  ```
  table1.column1 OP table2.column2
  ```

  for the current operator. This helps the optimizer by letting it figure out which of several possible join sequences is likely to take the least work.

  You can usually just use one of the following system standard join selectivity estimator functions for many of your own operators:

  - `eqjoinsel` for `=`
  - `neqjoinsel` for `<>`
  - `scalarltjoinsel` for `<` or `<=`
  - `scalargtjoinsel` for `>` or `>=`
  - `areajoinsel` for 2D area-based comparisons
  - `positionjoinsel` for 2D position-based comparisons
  - `contjoinsel` for 2D containment-based comparisons

- HASHES

  The optional `HASHES` clause tells the system that it is permissible to use the hash join method for a join based on this operator. `HASHES` only makes sense for a binary operator that returns `boolean`. The hash join operator can only return true for pairs of left and right values that hash to the same hash code. If two values are put in different hash buckets, the join will never compare them, implicitly assuming that the result of the join operator must be false. Because of this, it never makes sense to specify `HASHES` for operators that do not represent equality.

  In most cases, it is only practical to support hashing for operators that take the same data type on both sides. However, you can design compatible hash functions for two or more data types, which are functions that will generate the same hash codes for "equal" values, even if the values are differently represented.

  To be marked `HASHES`, the join operator must appear in a hash index operator class. Attempts to use the operator in hash joins will fail at run time if no such operator class exists. The system needs the operator class to find the data-type-specific hash function for the operator's input data type. You must also supply a suitable hash function before you can create the operator class. Exercise care when preparing a hash function, as there are machine-dependent ways in which it could fail to function correctly. For example, on machines that meet the IEEE floating-point standard, negative zero and positive zero are different values (different bit patterns) but are defined to compare as equal. If a float value could contain a negative zero, define it to generate the same hash value as positive zero.

  A hash-joinable operator must have a commutator (itself, if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if they are different) that appears in the same operator family. Otherwise, planner errors can occur when the operator is used. For better optimization, a hash operator family that supports multiple data types should provide equality operators for every combination of the data types.

  > **Note** The function underlying a hash-joinable operator must be marked immutable or stable; an operator marked as volatile will not be used. If a hash-joinable operator has an underlying function that is marked strict, the function must also be complete, returning true or false, and not null, for any two non-null inputs.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- MERGES

  The `MERGES` clause, if present, tells the system that it is permissible to use the merge-join method for a join based on this operator. `MERGES` only makes sense for a binary operator that returns `boolean`, and in practice the operator must represent equality for some data type or pair of data types.

  Merge join is based on the idea of sorting the left- and right-hand tables into order and then scanning them in parallel. This means both data types must be capable of being fully ordered, and the join operator must be one that can only succeed for pairs of values that fall at equivalent places in the sort order. In practice, this means that the join operator must behave like an equality operator. However, you can merge-join two distinct data types so long as they are logically compatible. For example, the `smallint-versus-integer` equality operator is merge-joinable. Only sorting operators that bring both data types into a logically compatible sequence are needed.

  To be marked `MERGES`, the join operator must appear as an equality member of a btree index operator family. This is not enforced when you create the operator, because the referencing operator family does not exist until later. However, the operator will not actually be used for merge joins unless a matching operator family can be found. The `MERGE` flag thus acts as a suggestion to the planner to look for a matching operator family.

  A merge-joinable operator must have a commutator that appears in the same operator family. This would be itself, if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if the data types are different. Without an appropriate commutator, planner errors can occur when the operator is used. Also, although not strictly required, a btree operator family that supports multiple data types should be able to provide equality operators for every combination of the data types; this allows better optimization.

  > **Note** `SORT1`, `SORT2`, `LTCMP`, and `GTCMP` were formerly used to specify the names of sort operators associated with a merge-joinable operator. Information about associated operators is now found by looking at B-tree operator families; specifying any of these operators will be ignored, except that it will implicitly set `MERGES` to true.

### Notes

Any functions used to implement the operator must be defined as `IMMUTABLE`.

It is not possible to specify an operator's lexical precedence in `CREATE OPERATOR`, because the parser's precedence behavior is hard-wired. See Operator Precedence in the PostgreSQL documentation for precedence details.

Use DROP OPERATOR to delete user-defined operators from a database. Use ALTER OPERATOR to modify operators in a database.

### Examples

Here is an example of creating an operator for adding two complex numbers, assuming we have already created the definition of type `complex`. First define the function that does the work, then define the operator:

```
CREATE FUNCTION complex_add(complex, complex)
    RETURNS complex
    AS 'filename', 'complex_add'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
CREATE OPERATOR + (
    leftarg = complex,
    rightarg = complex,
    procedure = complex_add,
    commutator = +
);
```

To use this operator in a query:

```
SELECT (a + b) AS c FROM test_complex;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`CREATE OPERATOR` is a WarehousePG language extension. The SQL standard does not provide for user-defined operators.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, CREATE TYPE, ALTER OPERATOR, DROP OPERATOR

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.61 CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

Defines a new operator class.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS <name> [DEFAULT] FOR TYPE <data_type>
  USING <index_method> [ FAMILY <family_name> ] AS
  { OPERATOR <strategy_number> <operator_name> [ ( <op_type>, <op_type> ) ] [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY
<sort_family_name> ]
  | FUNCTION <support_number> <funcname> (<argument_type> [, ...] )
  | STORAGE <storage_type>
  } [, ... ]
```

### Description

`CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` creates a new operator class. An operator class defines how a particular data type can be used with an index. The operator class specifies that certain operators will fill particular roles or strategies for this data type and this index method. The operator class also specifies the support procedures to be used by the index method when the operator class is selected for an index column. All the operators and functions used by an operator class must be defined before the operator class is created. Any functions used to implement the operator class must be defined as `IMMUTABLE`.

`CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` does not presently check whether the operator class definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator class.

You must be a superuser to create an operator class.

### Parameters

- name

  The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the operator class to be defined. Two operator classes in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

- DEFAULT

  Makes the operator class the default operator class for its data type. At most one operator class can be the default for a specific data type and index method.

- data_type

  The column data type that this operator class is for.

- index_method

  The name of the index method this operator class is for. Choices are `btree`, `bitmap`, and `gist`.

- family_name

  The name of the existing operator family to add this operator class to. If not specified, a family named the same as the operator class is used (creating it, if it doesn't already exist).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- strategy_number

  The operators associated with an operator class are identified by *strategy numbers*, which serve to identify the semantics of each operator within the context of its operator class. For example, B-trees impose a strict ordering on keys, lesser to greater, and so operators like *less than* and *greater than or equal to* are interesting with respect to a B-tree. These strategies can be thought of as generalized operators. Each operator class specifies which actual operator corresponds to each strategy for a particular data type and interpretation of the index semantics. The corresponding strategy numbers for each index method are as follows:

| Operation | Strategy Number |
|---|---|
| less than | 1 |
| less than or equal | 2 |
| equal | 3 |
| greater than or equal | 4 |
| greater than | 5 |

| Operation | Strategy Number |
|---|---|
| strictly left of | 1 |
| does not extend to right of | 2 |
| overlaps | 3 |
| does not extend to left of | 4 |
| strictly right of | 5 |
| same | 6 |
| contains | 7 |
| contained by | 8 |
| does not extend above | 9 |
| strictly below | 10 |
| strictly above | 11 |
| does not extend below | 12 |

- sort_family_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing `btree` operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

  If neither `FOR SEARCH` nor `FOR ORDER BY` is specified, `FOR SEARCH` is the default.

- operator_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator class.

- op_type

  In an `OPERATOR` clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or `NONE` to signify a left-unary or right-unary operator. The operand data types can be omitted in the normal case where they are the same as the operator class's data type.

  In a `FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function (for B-tree comparison functions and hash functions) or the class's data type (for B-tree sort support functions and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN operator classes). These defaults are correct, and so op_type need not be specified in `FUNCTION` clauses, except for the case of a B-tree sort support function that is meant to support cross-data-type comparisons.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- support_number

  Index methods require additional support routines in order to work. These operations are administrative routines used internally by the index methods. As with strategies, the operator class identifies which specific functions should play each of these roles for a given data type and semantic interpretation. The index method defines the set of functions it needs, and the operator class identifies the correct functions to use by assigning them to the *support function numbers* as follows:

| Function | Support Number |
|---|---|
| Compare two keys and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second. | 1 |

| Function | Support Number |
|---|---|
| consistent - determine whether key satisfies the query qualifier. | 1 |
| union - compute union of a set of keys. | 2 |
| compress - compute a compressed representation of a key or value to be indexed. | 3 |
| decompress - compute a decompressed representation of a compressed key. | 4 |
| penalty - compute penalty for inserting new key into subtree with given subtree's key. | 5 |
| picksplit - determine which entries of a page are to be moved to the new page and compute the union keys for resulting pages. | 6 |
| equal - compare two keys and return true if they are equal. | 7 |

- funcname

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support procedure for the operator class.

- argument_types

  The parameter data type(s) of the function.

- storage_type

  The data type actually stored in the index. Normally this is the same as the column data type, but some index methods (currently GiST and GIN) allow it to be different. The `STORAGE` clause must be omitted unless the index method allows a different type to be used.

### Notes

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator class is the same as granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator class.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. A SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.

Any functions used to implement the operator class must be defined as `IMMUTABLE`.

Before WarehousePG 6.0, the `OPERATOR` clause could include a `RECHECK` option. This option is no longer supported. WarehousePG now determines whether an index operator is "lossy" on-the-fly at run time. This allows more efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

### Examples

The following example command defines a GiST index operator class for the data type `_int4` (array of int4). See the `intarray` contrib module for the complete example.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS gist__int_ops
    DEFAULT FOR TYPE _int4 USING gist AS
        OPERATOR 3 &&,
        OPERATOR 6 = (anyarray, anyarray),
        OPERATOR 7 @>,
        OPERATOR 8 <@,
        OPERATOR 20 @@ (_int4, query_int),
        FUNCTION 1 g_int_consistent (internal, _int4, int, oid, internal),
        FUNCTION 2 g_int_union (internal, internal),
        FUNCTION 3 g_int_compress (internal),
        FUNCTION 4 g_int_decompress (internal),
        FUNCTION 5 g_int_penalty (internal, internal, internal),
        FUNCTION 6 g_int_picksplit (internal, internal),
        FUNCTION 7 g_int_same (_int4, _int4, internal);
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` is a WarehousePG extension. There is no `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE FUNCTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.62 CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY

Defines a new operator family.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY <name>  USING <index_method>
```

### Description

`CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY` creates a new operator family. An operator family defines a collection of related operator classes, and perhaps some additional operators and support functions that are compatible with these operator classes but not essential for the functioning of any individual index. (Operators and functions that are essential to indexes should be grouped within the relevant operator class, rather than being "loose" in the operator family. Typically, single-data-type operators are bound to operator classes, while cross-data-type operators can be loose in an operator family containing operator classes for both data types.)

The new operator family is initially empty. It should be populated by issuing subsequent `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` commands to add contained operator classes, and optionally `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` commands to add "loose" operators and their corresponding support functions.

If a schema name is given then the operator family is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Two operator families in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

The user who defines an operator family becomes its owner. Presently, the creating user must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

### Parameters

- name

  The (optionally schema-qualified) name of the operator family to be defined. The name can be schema-qualified.

- index_method

  The name of the index method this operator family is for.

### Compatibility

`CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY` is a WarehousePG extension. There is no `CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE FUNCTION, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.63 CREATE PROTOCOL

Registers a custom data access protocol that can be specified when defining a WarehousePG external table.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [TRUSTED] PROTOCOL <name> (
   [readfunc='<read_call_handler>'] [, writefunc='<write_call_handler>']
   [, validatorfunc='<validate_handler>' ])
```

### Description

`CREATE PROTOCOL` associates a data access protocol name with call handlers that are responsible for reading from and writing data to an external data source. You must be a superuser to create a protocol.

The `CREATE PROTOCOL` command must specify either a read call handler or a write call handler. The call handlers specified in the `CREATE PROTOCOL` command must be defined in the database.

The protocol name can be specified in a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command.

For information about creating and enabling a custom data access protocol, see "Example Custom Data Access Protocol" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Parameters

- TRUSTED

  If not specified, only superusers and the protocol owner can create external tables using the protocol. If specified, superusers and the protocol owner can `GRANT` permissions on the protocol to other database roles.

- name

  The name of the data access protocol. The protocol name is case sensitive. The name must be unique among the protocols in the database.

- readfunc= 'read_call_handler'

  The name of a previously registered function that WarehousePG calls to read data from an external data source. The command must specify either a read call handler or a write call handler.

- writefunc= 'write_call_handler'

  The name of a previously registered function that WarehousePG calls to write data to an external data source. The command must specify either a read call handler or a write call handler.

- validatorfunc='validate_handler'

  An optional validator function that validates the URL specified in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command.

### Notes

WarehousePG handles external tables of type `file`, `gpfdist`, and `gpfdists` internally. See s3:// Protocol for information about enabling the `S3` protocol. Refer to PXF for WarehousePG for information about using the `pxf` protocol.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Any shared library that implements a data access protocol must be located in the same location on all WarehousePG segment hosts. For example, the shared library can be in a location specified by the operating system environment variable `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` on all hosts. You can also specify the location when you define the handler function. For example, when you define the `s3` protocol in the `CREATE PROTOCOL` command, you specify `$libdir/gps3ext.so` as the location of the shared object, where `$libdir` is located at `$GPHOME/lib`.

### Compatibility

`CREATE PROTOCOL` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER PROTOCOL, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, DROP PROTOCOL, GRANT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.64 CREATE RESOURCE GROUP

Defines a new resource group.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP <name> WITH (<group_attribute>=<value> [, ... ])
```

where group_attribute is:

```
CPU_RATE_LIMIT=<integer> | CPUSET=<master_cores>;<segment_cores>
[ MEMORY_LIMIT=<integer> ]
[ CONCURRENCY=<integer> ]
[ MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA=<integer> ]
[ MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO=<integer> ]
[ MEMORY_AUDITOR= {vmtracker | cgroup} ]
```

### Description

Creates a new resource group for WarehousePG resource management. You can create resource groups to manage resources for roles or to manage the resources of a WarehousePG external component.

A resource group that you create to manage a user role identifies concurrent transaction, memory, and CPU limits for the role when resource groups are enabled. You may assign such resource groups to one or more roles.

A resource group that you create to manage the resources of a WarehousePG external component identifies the memory and CPU limits for the component when resource groups are enabled. These resource groups use cgroups for both CPU and memory management. Assignment of resource groups to external components is component-specific. You cannot assign a resource group that you create for external components to a role, nor can you assign a resource group that you create for roles to an external component.

You must have `SUPERUSER` privileges to create a resource group. The maximum number of resource groups allowed in your WarehousePG cluster is 100.

WarehousePG pre-defines two default resource groups: `admin_group` and `default_group`. These group names, as well as the group name `none`, are reserved.

To set appropriate limits for resource groups, the WarehousePG administrator must be familiar with the queries typically run on the system, as well as the users/roles running those queries and the external components they may be using.

After creating a resource group for a role, assign the group to one or more roles using the ALTER ROLE or CREATE ROLE commands.

After you create a resource group to manage the CPU and memory resources of an external component, configure the external component to use the resource group.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the resource group.

- CONCURRENCY integer

  The maximum number of concurrent transactions, including active and idle transactions, that are permitted for this resource group. The `CONCURRENCY` value must be an integer in the range [0 .. `max_connections`]. The default `CONCURRENCY` value for resource groups defined for roles is 20.

  You must set `CONCURRENCY` to zero (0) for resource groups that you create for external components.

  > **Note** You cannot set the `CONCURRENCY` value for the `admin_group` to zero (0).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CPU_RATE_LIMIT integer
- CPUSET <coordinator_cores>;<segment_cores>

  Required. You must specify only one of `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` or `CPUSET` when you create a resource group.

  `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` is the percentage of CPU resources to allocate to this resource group. The minimum CPU percentage you can specify for a resource group is 1. The maximum is 100. The sum of the `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` values specified for all resource groups defined in the WarehousePG cluster must be less than or equal to 100.

  `CPUSET` identifies the CPU cores to reserve for this resource group on the coordinator host and on segment hosts. The CPU cores that you specify must be available in the system and cannot overlap with any CPU cores that you specify for other resource groups.

  Specify cores as a comma-separated list of single core numbers or core number intervals. Define the coordinator host cores first, followed by segment host cores, and separate the two with a semicolon. You must enclose the full core configuration in single quotes. For example, '1;1,3-4' configures core 1 for the coordinator host, and cores 1, 3, and 4 for the segment hosts.

  > **Note** You can configure `CPUSET` for a resource group only after you have enabled resource group-based resource management for your WarehousePG cluster.

- MEMORY_LIMIT integer

  The total percentage of WarehousePG memory resources to reserve for this resource group. The minimum memory percentage you can specify for a resource group is 0. The maximum is 100. The default value is 0.

  When you specify a `MEMORY_LIMIT` of 0, WarehousePG reserves no memory for the resource group, but uses global shared memory to fulfill all memory requests in the group. If `MEMORY_LIMIT` is 0, `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` must also be 0.

  The sum of the `MEMORY_LIMIT` values specified for all resource groups defined in the WarehousePG cluster must be less than or equal to 100.

- MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA integer

  The quota of shared memory in the resource group. Resource groups with a `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` threshold set aside a percentage of memory allotted to the resource group to share across transactions. This shared memory is allocated on a first-come, first-served basis as available. A transaction may use none, some, or all of this memory. The minimum memory shared quota percentage you can specify for a resource group is 0. The maximum is 100. The default `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` value is 80.

- MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO integer

  The memory usage threshold for memory-intensive operators in a transaction. When this threshold is reached, a transaction spills to disk. You can specify an integer percentage value from 0 to 100 inclusive. The default `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` value is 0. When `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` is 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter value to control initial query operator memory.

- MEMORY_AUDITOR {vmtracker | cgroup}

  The memory auditor for the resource group. WarehousePG employs virtual memory tracking for role resources and cgroup memory tracking for resources used by external components. The default `MEMORY_AUDITOR` is `vmtracker`. When you create a resource group with `vmtracker` memory auditing, WarehousePG tracks that resource group's memory internally.

  When you create a resource group specifying the `cgroup` `MEMORY_AUDITOR`, WarehousePG defers the accounting of memory used by that resource group to cgroups. `CONCURRENCY` must be zero (0) for a resource group that you create for external components. You cannot assign a resource group that you create for external components to a WarehousePG role.

### Notes

You cannot submit a `CREATE RESOURCE GROUP` command in an explicit transaction or sub-transaction.

Use the `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config` system view to display the limit settings of all resource groups:

```
SELECT * FROM gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Create a resource group with CPU and memory limit percentages of 35:

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP rgroup1 WITH (CPU_RATE_LIMIT=35, MEMORY_LIMIT=35);
```

Create a resource group with a concurrent transaction limit of 20, a memory limit of 15, and a CPU limit of 25:

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP rgroup2 WITH (CONCURRENCY=20,
  MEMORY_LIMIT=15, CPU_RATE_LIMIT=25);
```

Create a resource group to manage an external component's resources specifying a memory limit of 10, and a CPU limit of 10:

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP extcomp_run1 WITH (MEMORY_LIMIT=10, CPU_RATE_LIMIT=10,
  CONCURRENCY=0, MEMORY_AUDITOR=cgroup);
```

Create a resource group with a memory limit percentage of 11 to which you assign CPU core 1 on the coordinator host, and cores 1 to 3 on segment hosts:

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP rgroup3 WITH (CPUSET='1;1-3', MEMORY_LIMIT=11);
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE RESOURCE GROUP` is a WarehousePG extension. There is no provision for resource groups or resource management in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER ROLE, CREATE ROLE, ALTER RESOURCE GROUP, DROP RESOURCE GROUP

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.65 CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE

Defines a new resource queue.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE <name> WITH (<queue_attribute>=<value> [, ... ])
```

where queue_attribute is:

```
    ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=<integer>
        [ MAX_COST=<float >[COST_OVERCOMMIT={TRUE|FALSE}] ]
        [ MIN_COST=<float >]
        [ PRIORITY={MIN|LOW|MEDIUM|HIGH|MAX} ]
        [ MEMORY_LIMIT='<memory_units>' ]

  | MAX_COST=float [ COST_OVERCOMMIT={TRUE|FALSE} ]
        [ ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=<integer >]
        [ MIN_COST=<float >]
        [ PRIORITY={MIN|LOW|MEDIUM|HIGH|MAX} ]
        [ MEMORY_LIMIT='<memory_units>' ]
```

### Description

Creates a new resource queue for WarehousePG resource management. A resource queue must have either an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` or a `MAX_COST` value (or it can have both). Only a superuser can create a resource queue.

Resource queues with an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` threshold set a maximum limit on the number of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. It controls the number of active queries that are allowed to run at the same time. The value for `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` should be an integer greater than 0.

Resource queues with a `MAX_COST` threshold set a maximum limit on the total cost of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. Cost is measured in the *estimated total cost* for the query as determined by the query planner (as shown in the `EXPLAIN` output for a query). Therefore, an administrator must be familiar with the queries typically run on the system in order to set an appropriate cost threshold for a queue. Cost is measured in units of disk page fetches; 1.0 equals one sequential disk page read. The value for `MAX_COST` is specified as a floating point number (for example 100.0) or can also be specified as an exponent (for example 1e+2). If a resource queue is limited based on a cost threshold, then the administrator can allow `COST_OVERCOMMIT=TRUE` (the default). This means that a query that exceeds the allowed cost threshold will be allowed to run but only when the system is idle. If `COST_OVERCOMMIT=FALSE` is specified, queries that exceed the cost limit will always be rejected and never allowed to run. Specifying a value for `MIN_COST` allows the administrator to define a cost for small queries that will be exempt from resource queueing.

> **Note** GPORCA and the Postgres Planner utilize different query costing models and may compute different costs for the same query. The WarehousePG resource queue resource management scheme neither differentiates nor aligns costs between GPORCA and the Postgres Planner; it uses the literal cost value returned from the optimizer to throttle queries.

When resource queue-based resource management is active, use the `MEMORY_LIMIT` and `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` limits for resource queues rather than configuring cost-based limits. Even when using GPORCA, WarehousePG may fall back to using the Postgres Planner for certain queries, so using cost-based limits can lead to unexpected results.

If a value is not defined for `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` or `MAX_COST`, it is set to `-1` by default (meaning no limit). After defining a resource queue, you must assign roles to the queue using the ALTER ROLE or CREATE ROLE command.

You can optionally assign a `PRIORITY` to a resource queue to control the relative share of available CPU resources used by queries associated with the queue in relation to other resource queues. If a value is not defined for `PRIORITY`, queries associated with the queue have a default priority of `MEDIUM`.

Resource queues with an optional `MEMORY_LIMIT` threshold set a maximum limit on the amount of memory that all queries submitted through a resource queue can consume on a segment host. This determines the total amount of memory that all worker processes of a query can consume on a segment host during query execution. WarehousePG recommends that `MEMORY_LIMIT` be used in conjunction with `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` rather than with `MAX_COST`. The default amount of memory allotted per query on statement-based queues is: `MEMORY_LIMIT / ACTIVE_STATEMENTS`. The default amount of memory allotted per query on cost-based queues is: `MEMORY_LIMIT * (query_cost / MAX_COST)`.

The default memory allotment can be overridden on a per-query basis using the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter, provided that `MEMORY_LIMIT` or `max_statement_mem` is not exceeded. For example, to allocate more memory to a particular query:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
=> SET statement_mem='2GB';
=> SELECT * FROM my_big_table WHERE column='value' ORDER BY id;
=> RESET statement_mem;
```

The `MEMORY_LIMIT` value for all of your resource queues should not exceed the amount of physical memory of a segment host. If workloads are staggered over multiple queues, memory allocations can be oversubscribed. However, queries can be cancelled during execution if the segment host memory limit specified in `gp_vmem_protect_limit` is exceeded.

For information about `statement_mem`, `max_statement`, and `gp_vmem_protect_limit`, see Server Configuration Parameters.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the resource queue.

- ACTIVE_STATEMENTS integer

  Resource queues with an `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` threshold limit the number of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. It controls the number of active queries that are allowed to run at the same time. The value for `ACTIVE_STATEMENTS` should be an integer greater than 0.

- MEMORY_LIMIT 'memory_units'

  Sets the total memory quota for all statements submitted from users in this resource queue. Memory units can be specified in kB, MB or GB. The minimum memory quota for a resource queue is 10MB. There is no maximum, however the upper boundary at query execution time is limited by the physical memory of a segment host. The default is no limit (`-1`).

- MAX_COST float

  Resource queues with a `MAX_COST` threshold set a maximum limit on the total cost of queries that can be run by roles assigned to that queue. Cost is measured in the *estimated total cost* for the query as determined by the WarehousePG query optimizer (as shown in the `EXPLAIN` output for a query). Therefore, an administrator must be familiar with the queries typically run on the system in order to set an appropriate cost threshold for a queue. Cost is measured in units of disk page fetches; 1.0 equals one sequential disk page read. The value for `MAX_COST` is specified as a floating point number (for example 100.0) or can also be specified as an exponent (for example 1e+2).

- COST_OVERCOMMIT boolean

  If a resource queue is limited based on `MAX_COST`, then the administrator can allow `COST_OVERCOMMIT` (the default). This means that a query that exceeds the allowed cost threshold will be allowed to run but only when the system is idle. If `COST_OVERCOMMIT=FALSE` is specified, queries that exceed the cost limit will always be rejected and never allowed to run.

- MIN_COST float

  The minimum query cost limit of what is considered a small query. Queries with a cost under this limit will not be queued and run immediately. Cost is measured in the *estimated total cost* for the query as determined by the query planner (as shown in the `EXPLAIN` output for a query). Therefore, an administrator must be familiar with the queries typically run on the system in order to set an appropriate cost for what is considered a small query. Cost is measured in units of disk page fetches; 1.0 equals one sequential disk page read. The value for `MIN_COST` is specified as a floating point number (for example 100.0) or can also be specified as an exponent (for example 1e+2).

- PRIORITY={MIN|LOW|MEDIUM|HIGH|MAX}

  Sets the priority of queries associated with a resource queue. Queries or statements in queues with higher priority levels will receive a larger share of available CPU resources in case of contention. Queries in low-priority queues may be delayed while higher priority queries are run. If no priority is specified, queries associated with the queue have a priority of `MEDIUM`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

Use the `gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status` system view to see the limit settings and current status of a resource queue:

```
SELECT * from gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status WHERE
  rsqname='queue_name';
```

There is also another system view named `pg_stat_resqueues` which shows statistical metrics for a resource queue over time. To use this view, however, you must enable the `stats_queue_level` server configuration parameter. See "Managing Workload and Resources" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more information about using resource queues.

`CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` cannot be run within a transaction.

Also, an SQL statement that is run during the execution time of an `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command is excluded from resource queues.

### Examples

Create a resource queue with an active query limit of 20:

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=20);
```

Create a resource queue with an active query limit of 20 and a total memory limit of 2000MB (each query will be allocated 100MB of segment host memory at execution time):

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=20,
  MEMORY_LIMIT='2000MB');
```

Create a resource queue with a query cost limit of 3000.0:

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (MAX_COST=3000.0);
```

Create a resource queue with a query cost limit of 310 (or 30000000000.0) and do not allow overcommit. Allow small queries with a cost under 500 to run immediately:

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (MAX_COST=3e+10,
  COST_OVERCOMMIT=FALSE, MIN_COST=500.0);
```

Create a resource queue with both an active query limit and a query cost limit:

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=30,
  MAX_COST=5000.00);
```

Create a resource queue with an active query limit of 5 and a maximum priority setting:

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE myqueue WITH (ACTIVE_STATEMENTS=5,
  PRIORITY=MAX);
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` is a WarehousePG extension. There is no provision for resource queues or resource management in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER ROLE, CREATE ROLE, ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE, DROP RESOURCE QUEUE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.66 CREATE ROLE

Defines a new database role (user or group).

### Synopsis

```
CREATE ROLE <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

where option can be:

```
      SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
    | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
    | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
    | CREATEUSER | NOCREATEUSER
    | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE
      [ ( <attribute>='<value>'[, ...] ) ]
           where <attributes> and <value> are:
           type='readable'|'writable'
           protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
    | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
    | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
    | REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
    | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
    | [ ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '<password>'
    | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'
    | IN ROLE <rolename> [, ...]
    | ROLE <rolename> [, ...]
    | ADMIN <rolename> [, ...]
    | USER <rolename> [, ...]
    | SYSID <uid> [, ...]
    | RESOURCE QUEUE <queue_name>
    | RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>
    | [ DENY <deny_point> ]
    | [ DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>]
```

### Description

`CREATE ROLE` adds a new role to a WarehousePG cluster. A role is an entity that can own database objects and have database privileges. A role can be considered a user, a group, or both depending on how it is used. You must have `CREATEROLE` privilege or be a database superuser to use this command.

Note that roles are defined at the system-level and are valid for all databases in your WarehousePG cluster.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the new role.

- SUPERUSER

- NOSUPERUSER

  If `SUPERUSER` is specified, the role being defined will be a superuser, who can override all access restrictions within the database. Superuser status is dangerous and should be used only when really needed. You must yourself be a superuser to create a new superuser. `NOSUPERUSER` is the default.

- CREATEDB

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- NOCREATEDB

  If `CREATEDB` is specified, the role being defined will be allowed to create new databases. `NOCREATEDB` (the default) will deny a role the ability to create databases.

- CREATEROLE

- NOCREATEROLE

  If `CREATEROLE` is specified, the role being defined will be allowed to create new roles, alter other roles, and drop other roles. `NOCREATEROLE` (the default) will deny a role the ability to create roles or modify roles other than their own.

- CREATEUSER

- NOCREATEUSER

  These clauses are obsolete, but still accepted, spellings of `SUPERUSER` and `NOSUPERUSER`. Note that they are not equivalent to the `CREATEROLE` and `NOCREATEROLE` clauses.

- CREATEEXTTABLE

- NOCREATEEXTTABLE

  If `CREATEEXTTABLE` is specified, the role being defined is allowed to create external tables. The default `type` is `readable` and the default `protocol` is `gpfdist`, if not specified. Valid types are `gpfdist`, `gpfdists`, `http`, and `https`. `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` (the default type) denies the role the ability to create external tables. Note that external tables that use the `file` or `execute` protocols can only be created by superusers.

  Use the `GRANT...ON PROTOCOL` command to allow users to create and use external tables with a custom protocol type, including the `s3` and `pxf` protocols included with WarehousePG.

- INHERIT

- NOINHERIT

  If specified, `INHERIT` (the default) allows the role to use whatever database privileges have been granted to all roles it is directly or indirectly a member of. With `NOINHERIT`, membership in another role only grants the ability to `SET ROLE` to that other role.

- LOGIN

- NOLOGIN

  If specified, `LOGIN` allows a role to log in to a database. A role having the `LOGIN` attribute can be thought of as a user. Roles with `NOLOGIN` are useful for managing database privileges, and can be thought of as groups. If not specified, `NOLOGIN` is the default, except when `CREATE ROLE` is invoked through its alternative spelling CREATE USER.

- REPLICATION

- NOREPLICATION

  These clauses determine whether a role is allowed to initiate streaming replication or put the system in and out of backup mode. A role having the `REPLICATION` attribute is a very highly privileged role, and should only be used on roles actually used for replication. If not specified, `NOREPLICATION` is the default .

- CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit

  The number maximum of concurrent connections this role can make. The default of -1 means there is no limitation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- PASSWORD password

  Sets the user password for roles with the `LOGIN` attribute. If you do not plan to use password authentication you can omit this option. If no password is specified, the password will be set to null and password authentication will always fail for that user. A null password can optionally be written explicitly as `PASSWORD NULL`.

  Specifying an empty string will also set the password to null, but that was not the case before WarehousePG version 6.21. In earlier versions, an empty string could be used, or not, depending on the authentication method and the exact version, and libpq would refuse to use it in any case. To avoid the ambiguity, specifying an empty string should be avoided.

  The `ENCRYPTED` and `UNENCRYPTED` key words control whether the password is stored encrypted in the system catalogs. (If neither is specified, the default behavior is determined by the configuration parameter `password_encryption`.) If the presented password string is already in MD5-encrypted or SCRAM-encrypted format, then it is stored encrypted as-is, regardless of whether `ENCRYPTED` or `UNENCRYPTED` is specified (since the system cannot decrypt the specified encrypted password string). This allows reloading of encrypted passwords during dump/restore.

  Note that older clients might lack support for the SCRAM authentication mechanism.

- VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'

  The VALID UNTIL clause sets a date and time after which the role's password is no longer valid. If this clause is omitted the password will never expire.

- IN ROLE rolename

  Adds the new role as a member of the named roles. Note that there is no option to add the new role as an administrator; use a separate `GRANT` command to do that.

- ROLE rolename

  Adds the named roles as members of this role, making this new role a group.

- ADMIN rolename

  The `ADMIN` clause is like `ROLE`, but the named roles are added to the new role `WITH ADMIN OPTION`, giving them the right to grant membership in this role to others.

- RESOURCE GROUP group_name

  The name of the resource group to assign to the new role. The role will be subject to the concurrent transaction, memory, and CPU limits configured for the resource group. You can assign a single resource group to one or more roles.

  If you do not specify a resource group for a new role, the role is automatically assigned the default resource group for the role's capability, `admin_group` for `SUPERUSER` roles, `default_group` for non-admin roles.

  You can assign the `admin_group` resource group to any role having the `SUPERUSER` attribute.

  You can assign the `default_group` resource group to any role.

  You cannot assign a resource group that you create for an external component to a role.

- RESOURCE QUEUE queue_name

  The name of the resource queue to which the new user-level role is to be assigned. Only roles with `LOGIN` privilege can be assigned to a resource queue. The special keyword `NONE` means that the role is assigned to the default resource queue. A role can only belong to one resource queue.

  Roles with the `SUPERUSER` attribute are exempt from resource queue limits. For a superuser role, queries always run immediately regardless of limits imposed by an assigned resource queue.

- DENY deny_point

- DENY BETWEEN deny_point AND deny_point

  The `DENY` and `DENY BETWEEN` keywords set time-based constraints that are enforced at login. `DENY` sets a day or a day and time to deny access. `DENY BETWEEN` sets an interval during which access is denied. Both use the parameter deny_point that has the following format:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
DAY day [ TIME 'time' ]
```

The two parts of the `deny_point` parameter use the following formats:

For `day`:

```
{'Sunday' | 'Monday' | 'Tuesday' |'Wednesday' | 'Thursday' | 'Friday' |
'Saturday' | 0-6 }
```

For `time`:

```
{ 00-23 : 00-59 | 01-12 : 00-59 { AM | PM }}
```

The `DENY BETWEEN` clause uses two deny_point parameters:

```
DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>
```

For more information and examples about time-based constraints, see "Managing Roles and Privileges" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Notes

The preferred way to add and remove role members (manage groups) is to use GRANT and REVOKE.

The `VALID UNTIL` clause defines an expiration time for a password only, not for the role. The expiration time is not enforced when logging in using a non-password-based authentication method.

The `INHERIT` attribute governs inheritance of grantable privileges (access privileges for database objects and role memberships). It does not apply to the special role attributes set by `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE`. For example, being a member of a role with `CREATEDB` privilege does not immediately grant the ability to create databases, even if `INHERIT` is set. These privileges/attributes are never inherited: `SUPERUSER`, `CREATEDB`, `CREATEROLE`, `CREATEEXTTABLE`, `LOGIN`, `RESOURCE GROUP`, and `RESOURCE QUEUE`. The attributes must be set on each user-level role.

The `INHERIT` attribute is the default for reasons of backwards compatibility. In prior releases of WarehousePG, users always had access to all privileges of groups they were members of. However, `NOINHERIT` provides a closer match to the semantics specified in the SQL standard.

Be careful with the `CREATEROLE` privilege. There is no concept of inheritance for the privileges of a `CREATEROLE`-role. That means that even if a role does not have a certain privilege but is allowed to create other roles, it can easily create another role with different privileges than its own (except for creating roles with superuser privileges). For example, if a role has the `CREATEROLE` privilege but not the `CREATEDB` privilege, it can create a new role with the `CREATEDB` privilege. Therefore, regard roles that have the `CREATEROLE` privilege as almost-superuser-roles.

The `CONNECTION LIMIT` option is never enforced for superusers.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password will be transmitted to the server in clear-text, and it might also be logged in the client's command history or the server log. The client program `createuser`, however, transmits the password encrypted. Also, psql contains a command `\password` that can be used to safely change the password later.

### Examples

Create a role that can log in, but don't give it a password:

```
CREATE ROLE jonathan LOGIN;
```

Create a role that belongs to a resource queue:

```
CREATE ROLE jonathan LOGIN RESOURCE QUEUE poweruser;
```

Create a role with a password that is valid until the end of 2016 (`CREATE USER` is the same as `CREATE ROLE` except that it implies `LOGIN`):

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE USER joelle WITH PASSWORD 'jw8s0F4' VALID UNTIL '2017-01-01';
```

Create a role that can create databases and manage other roles:

```
CREATE ROLE admin WITH CREATEDB CREATEROLE;
```

Create a role that does not allow login access on Sundays:

```
CREATE ROLE user3 DENY DAY 'Sunday';
```

Create a role that can create readable and writable external tables of type 'gpfdist':

```
CREATE ROLE jan WITH CREATEEXTTABLE(type='readable', protocol='gpfdist')
   CREATEEXTTABLE(type='writable', protocol='gpfdist');
```

Create a role, assigning a resource group:

```
CREATE ROLE bill RESOURCE GROUP rg_light;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard defines the concepts of users and roles, but it regards them as distinct concepts and leaves all commands defining users to be specified by the database implementation. In WarehousePG users and roles are unified into a single type of object. Roles therefore have many more optional attributes than they do in the standard.

`CREATE ROLE` is in the SQL standard, but the standard only requires the syntax:

```
CREATE ROLE <name> [WITH ADMIN <rolename>]
```

Allowing multiple initial administrators, and all the other options of `CREATE ROLE`, are WarehousePG extensions.

The behavior specified by the SQL standard is most closely approximated by giving users the `NOINHERIT` attribute, while roles are given the `INHERIT` attribute.

### See Also

SET ROLE, ALTER ROLE, DROP ROLE, GRANT, REVOKE, CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE CREATE RESOURCE GROUP

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.67 CREATE RULE

Defines a new rewrite rule.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] RULE <name> AS ON <event>
  TO <table_name> [WHERE <condition>]
  DO [ALSO | INSTEAD] { NOTHING | <command> | (<command>; <command>
  ...) }
```

where `<event>` can be one of:

```
  SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE
```

### Description

`CREATE RULE` defines a new rule applying to a specified table or view. `CREATE OR REPLACE RULE` will either create a new rule, or replace an existing rule of the same name for the same table.

The WarehousePG rule system allows one to define an alternate action to be performed on insertions, updates, or deletions in database tables. A rule causes additional or alternate commands to be run when a given command on a given table is run. An `INSTEAD` rule can replace a given command by another, or cause a command to not be run at all. Rules can be used to implement SQL views as well. It is important to realize that a rule is really a command transformation mechanism, or command macro. The transformation happens before the execution of the command starts. It does not operate independently for each physical row as does a trigger.

`ON SELECT` rules must be unconditional `INSTEAD` rules and must have actions that consist of a single `SELECT` command. Thus, an `ON SELECT` rule effectively turns the table into a view, whose visible contents are the rows returned by the rule's `SELECT` command rather than whatever had been stored in the table (if anything). It is considered better style to write a `CREATE VIEW` command than to create a real table and define an `ON SELECT` rule for it.

You can create the illusion of an updatable view by defining `ON INSERT`, `ON UPDATE`, and `ON DELETE` rules (or any subset of those that is sufficient for your purposes) to replace update actions on the view with appropriate updates on other tables. If you want to support `INSERT RETURNING` and so on, be sure to put a suitable `RETURNING` clause into each of these rules.

There is a catch if you try to use conditional rules for complex view updates: there *must* be an unconditional `INSTEAD` rule for each action you wish to allow on the view. If the rule is conditional, or is not `INSTEAD`, then the system will still reject attempts to perform the update action, because it thinks it might end up trying to perform the action on the dummy table of the view in some cases. If you want to handle all of the useful cases in conditional rules, add an unconditional `DO INSTEAD NOTHING` rule to ensure that the system understands it will never be called on to update the dummy table. Then make the conditional rules non-`INSTEAD`; in the cases where they are applied, they add to the default `INSTEAD NOTHING` action. (This method does not currently work to support `RETURNING` queries, however.)

> **Note** A view that is simple enough to be automatically updatable (see CREATE VIEW) does not require a user-created rule in order to be updatable. While you can create an explicit rule anyway, the automatic update transformation will generally outperform an explicit rule.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of a rule to create. This must be distinct from the name of any other rule for the same table. Multiple rules on the same table and same event type are applied in alphabetical name order.

- event

  The event is one of `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`. Note that an `INSERT` containing an `ON CONFLICT` clause cannot be used on tables that have either `INSERT` or `UPDATE` rules. Consider using an updatable view instead.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view the rule applies to.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- condition

  Any SQL conditional expression (returning `boolean`). The condition expression can not refer to any tables except `NEW` and `OLD`, and can not contain aggregate functions.

- INSTEAD

  `INSTEAD NOTHING` indicates that the commands should be run *instead of* the original command.

- ALSO

  `ALSO` indicates that the commands should be run *in addition* to the original command. If neither `ALSO` nor `INSTEAD` is specified, `ALSO` is the default.

- command

  The command or commands that make up the rule action. Valid commands are `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `NOTIFY`.

### Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create or change rules for it.

In a rule for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` on a view, you can add a `RETURNING` clause that emits the view's columns. This clause will be used to compute the outputs if the rule is triggered by an `INSERT RETURNING`, `UPDATE RETURNING`, or `DELETE RETURNING` command respectively. When the rule is triggered by a command without `RETURNING`, the rule's `RETURNING` clause will be ignored. The current implementation allows only unconditional `INSTEAD` rules to contain `RETURNING`; furthermore there can be at most one `RETURNING` clause among all the rules for the same event. (This ensures that there is only one candidate `RETURNING` clause to be used to compute the results.) `RETURNING` queries on the view will be rejected if there is no `RETURNING` clause in any available rule.

It is very important to take care to avoid circular rules. For example, though each of the following two rule definitions are accepted by WarehousePG, the `SELECT` command would cause WarehousePG to report an error because of recursive expansion of a rule:

```
CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS
    ON SELECT TO t1
    DO INSTEAD
        SELECT * FROM t2;

CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS
    ON SELECT TO t2
    DO INSTEAD
        SELECT * FROM t1;

SELECT * FROM t1;
```

Presently, if a rule action contains a `NOTIFY` command, the `NOTIFY` command will be executed unconditionally, that is, the `NOTIFY` will be issued even if there are not any rows that the rule should apply to. For example, in:

```
CREATE RULE notify_me AS ON UPDATE TO mytable DO ALSO NOTIFY mytable;

UPDATE mytable SET name = 'foo' WHERE id = 42;
```

one `NOTIFY` event will be sent during the `UPDATE`, whether or not there are any rows that match the condition id = 42. This is an implementation restriction that might be fixed in future releases.

### Compatibility

`CREATE RULE` is a WarehousePG language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER RULE, DROP RULE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.68 CREATE SCHEMA

Defines a new schema.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE SCHEMA <schema_name> [AUTHORIZATION <username>]
   [<schema_element> [ ... ]]

CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION <rolename> [<schema_element> [ ... ]]

CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS <schema_name> [ AUTHORIZATION <user_name> ]

CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS AUTHORIZATION <user_name>
```

### Description

`CREATE SCHEMA` enters a new schema into the current database. The schema name must be distinct from the name of any existing schema in the current database.

A schema is essentially a namespace: it contains named objects (tables, data types, functions, and operators) whose names may duplicate those of other objects existing in other schemas. Named objects are accessed either by qualifying their names with the schema name as a prefix, or by setting a search path that includes the desired schema(s). A `CREATE` command specifying an unqualified object name creates the object in the current schema (the one at the front of the search path, which can be determined with the function `current_schema`).

Optionally, `CREATE SCHEMA` can include subcommands to create objects within the new schema. The subcommands are treated essentially the same as separate commands issued after creating the schema, except that if the `AUTHORIZATION` clause is used, all the created objects will be owned by that role.

### Parameters

- schema_name

  The name of a schema to be created. If this is omitted, the user name is used as the schema name. The name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system catalog schemas.

- user_name

  The name of the role who will own the schema. If omitted, defaults to the role running the command. Only superusers may create schemas owned by roles other than themselves.

- schema_element

  An SQL statement defining an object to be created within the schema. Currently, only `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE VIEW`, `CREATE INDEX`, `CREATE SEQUENCE`, `CREATE TRIGGER` and `GRANT` are accepted as clauses within `CREATE SCHEMA`. Other kinds of objects may be created in separate commands after the schema is created.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support triggers.

- `IF NOT EXISTS`

  Do nothing (except issuing a notice) if a schema with the same name already exists. schema_element subcommands cannot be included when this option is used.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

To create a schema, the invoking user must have the `CREATE` privilege for the current database or be a superuser.

### Examples

Create a schema:

```
CREATE SCHEMA myschema;
```

Create a schema for role `joe` (the schema will also be named `joe`):

```
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION joe;
```

Create a schema named `test` that will be owned by user `joe`, unless there already is a schema named `test`. (It does not matter whether `joe` owns the pre-existing schema.)

```
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS test AUTHORIZATION joe;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard allows a `DEFAULT CHARACTER SET` clause in `CREATE SCHEMA`, as well as more subcommand types than are presently accepted by WarehousePG.

The SQL standard specifies that the subcommands in `CREATE SCHEMA` may appear in any order. The present WarehousePG implementation does not handle all cases of forward references in subcommands; it may sometimes be necessary to reorder the subcommands in order to avoid forward references.

According to the SQL standard, the owner of a schema always owns all objects within it. WarehousePG allows schemas to contain objects owned by users other than the schema owner. This can happen only if the schema owner grants the `CREATE` privilege on the schema to someone else, or a superuser chooses to create objects in it.

The `IF NOT EXISTS` option is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER SCHEMA, DROP SCHEMA

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.69 CREATE SEQUENCE

Defines a new sequence generator.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [TEMPORARY | TEMP] SEQUENCE <name>
       [INCREMENT [BY] <value>]
       [MINVALUE <minvalue> | NO MINVALUE]
       [MAXVALUE <maxvalue> | NO MAXVALUE]
       [START [ WITH ] <start>]
       [CACHE <cache>]
       [[NO] CYCLE]
       [OWNED BY { <table>.<column> | NONE }]
```

### Description

`CREATE SEQUENCE` creates a new sequence number generator. This involves creating and initializing a new special single-row table. The generator will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given, then the sequence is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary sequences exist in a special schema, so a schema name may not be given when creating a temporary sequence. The sequence name must be distinct from the name of any other sequence, table, index, view, or foreign table in the same schema.

After a sequence is created, you use the `nextval()` function to operate on the sequence. For example, to insert a row into a table that gets the next value of a sequence:

```
INSERT INTO distributors VALUES (nextval('myserial'), 'acme');
```

You can also use the function `setval()` to operate on a sequence, but only for queries that do not operate on distributed data. For example, the following query is allowed because it resets the sequence counter value for the sequence generator process on the coordinator:

```
SELECT setval('myserial', 201);
```

But the following query will be rejected in WarehousePG because it operates on distributed data:

```
INSERT INTO product VALUES (setval('myserial', 201), 'gizmo');
```

In a regular (non-distributed) database, functions that operate on the sequence go to the local sequence table to get values as they are needed. In WarehousePG, however, keep in mind that each segment is its own distinct database process. Therefore the segments need a single point of truth to go for sequence values so that all segments get incremented correctly and the sequence moves forward in the right order. A sequence server process runs on the coordinator and is the point-of-truth for a sequence in a WarehousePG distributed database. Segments get sequence values at runtime from the coordinator.

Because of this distributed sequence design, there are some limitations on the functions that operate on a sequence in WarehousePG:

- `lastval()` and `currval()` functions are not supported.
- `setval()` can only be used to set the value of the sequence generator on the coordinator, it cannot be used in subqueries to update records on distributed table data.
- `nextval()` sometimes grabs a block of values from the coordinator for a segment to use, depending on the query. So values may sometimes be skipped in the sequence if all of the block turns out not to be needed at the segment level. Note that a regular PostgreSQL database does this too, so this is not something unique to WarehousePG.

Although you cannot update a sequence directly, you can use a query like:

```
SELECT * FROM <sequence_name>;
```

to examine the parameters and current state of a sequence. In particular, the last_value field of the sequence shows the last value allocated by any session.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- TEMPORARY | TEMP

  If specified, the sequence object is created only for this session, and is automatically dropped on session exit. Existing permanent sequences with the same name are not visible (in this session) while the temporary sequence exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the sequence to be created.

- increment

  Specifies which value is added to the current sequence value to create a new value. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. The default value is 1.

- minvalue

- NO MINVALUE

  Determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If this clause is not supplied or `NO MINVALUE` is specified, then defaults will be used. The defaults are 1 and -263-1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively.

- maxvalue

- NO MAXVALUE

  Determines the maximum value for the sequence. If this clause is not supplied or `NO MAXVALUE` is specified, then default values will be used. The defaults are 263-1 and -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively.

- start

  Allows the sequence to begin anywhere. The default starting value is minvalue for ascending sequences and maxvalue for descending ones.

- cache

  Specifies how many sequence numbers are to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum (and default) value is 1 (no cache).

- CYCLE

- NO CYCLE

  Allows the sequence to wrap around when the maxvalue (for ascending) or minvalue (for descending) has been reached. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the minvalue (for ascending) or maxvalue (for descending). If `NO CYCLE` is specified, any calls to `nextval()` after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If not specified, `NO CYCLE` is the default.

- OWNED BY table.column

- OWNED BY NONE

  Causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. `OWNED BY NONE`, the default, specifies that there is no such association.

### Notes

Sequences are based on bigint arithmetic, so the range cannot exceed the range of an eight-byte integer (-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807).

Although multiple sessions are guaranteed to allocate distinct sequence values, the values may be generated out of sequence when all the sessions are considered. For example, session A might reserve values 1..10 and return `nextval=1`, then session B might reserve values 11..20 and return `nextval=11` before session A has generated nextval=2. Thus, you should only assume that the `nextval()` values are all distinct, not that they are generated purely sequentially. Also, last_value will reflect the latest

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

value reserved by any session, whether or not it has yet been returned by `nextval()`.

### Examples

Create a sequence named myseq:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE myseq START 101;
```

Insert a row into a table that gets the next value of the sequence named idseq:

```
INSERT INTO distributors VALUES (nextval('idseq'), 'acme');
```

Reset the sequence counter value on the coordinator:

```
SELECT setval('myseq', 201);
```

Illegal use of `setval()` in WarehousePG (setting sequence values on distributed data):

```
INSERT INTO product VALUES (setval('myseq', 201), 'gizmo');
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE SEQUENCE` conforms to the SQL standard, with the following exceptions:

- The `AS data\_type` expression specified in the SQL standard is not supported.
- Obtaining the next value is done using the `nextval()` function instead of the `NEXT VALUE FOR` expression specified in the SQL standard.
- The `OWNED BY` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.70 CREATE SERVER

Defines a new foreign server.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE SERVER <server_name> [ TYPE '<server_type>' ] [ VERSION '<server_version>' ]
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name>
    [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ]
                [ num_segments '<num>' [, ] ]
                [ <option> '<value>' [, ... ]] ) ]
```

### Description

`CREATE SERVER` defines a new foreign server. The user who defines the server becomes its owner.

A foreign server typically encapsulates connection information that a foreign-data wrapper uses to access an external data source. Additional user-specific connection information may be specified by means of user mappings.

Creating a server requires the `USAGE` privilege on the foreign-data wrapper specified.

### Parameters

- server_name

  The name of the foreign server to create. The server name must be unique within the database.

- server_type

  Optional server type, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

- server_version

  Optional server version, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

- fdw_name

  Name of the foreign-data wrapper that manages the server.

- OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

  The options for the new foreign server. The options typically define the connection details of the server, but the actual names and values are dependent upon the server's foreign-data wrapper.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' }

  A WarehousePG-specific option that identifies the host from which the foreign-data wrapper reads or writes data:

  - `master` (the default)—Read or write data from the coordinator host.
  - `any` —Read data from either the coordinator host or any one segment, depending on which path costs less.
  - `all segments` —Read or write data from all segments. To support this option value, the foreign-data wrapper should have a policy that matches the segments to data.

    > **Note** WarehousePG supports parallel writes to foreign tables only when you set `mpp_execute 'all segments'`.

  Support for the foreign server `mpp_execute` option, and the specific modes, is foreign-data wrapper-specific.

  The `mpp_execute` option can be specified in multiple commands: `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`, and `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`. The foreign table setting takes precedence over the foreign server setting, followed by the foreign-data wrapper setting.

- num_segments 'num'

  When `mpp_execute` is set to `'all segments'`, the WarehousePG-specific `num_segments` option identifies the number of query executors that WarehousePG spawns on the source WarehousePG cluster. If you do not provide a value, num defaults to the number of segments in the source cluster.

  Support for the foreign server `num_segments` option is foreign-data wrapper-specific.

### Notes

When using the dblink module (see dblink), you can use the foreign server name as an argument of the `dblink_connect()` function to provide the connection parameters. You must have the `USAGE` privilege on the foreign server to use it in this manner.

### Examples

Create a foreign server named `myserver` that uses the foreign-data wrapper named `pgsql` and includes connection options:

```
CREATE SERVER myserver FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER pgsql
    OPTIONS (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb', port '5432');
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

### See Also

ALTER SERVER, DROP SERVER, CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE USER MAPPING

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.71 CREATE TABLE

Defines a new table.

> **Note** Referential integrity syntax (foreign key constraints) is accepted but not enforced.

#### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ [GLOBAL | LOCAL] {TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS]
  <table_name> (
  [ { <column_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [<column_constraint> [ ... ] ]
[ ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [, ...] ) ]
    | <table_constraint>
    | LIKE <source_table> [ <like_option> ... ] }
    | [ <column_reference_storage_directive> [, ...]
    [, ... ]
] )
[ INHERITS ( <parent_table> [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [=<value>] [, ... ] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
[ DISTRIBUTED BY (<column> [<opclass>], [ ... ] )
       | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED ]

{ --partitioned table using SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
[ PARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column>)
  {  [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column1>)
       SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ( <template_spec> ) ]
          [ SUBPARTITION BY partition_type (<column2>)
            SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ( <template_spec> ) ]
              [...]  }
  ( <partition_spec> ) ]
} |

{ -- partitioned table without SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
[ PARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column>)
   [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column1>) ]
      [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column2>) ]
         [...]
  ( <partition_spec>
     [ ( <subpartition_spec_column1>
          [ ( <subpartition_spec_column2>
               [...] ) ] ) ],
  [ <partition_spec>
     [ ( <subpartition_spec_column1>
        [ ( <subpartition_spec_column2>
             [...] ) ] ) ], ]
    [...]
  ) ]
}

CREATE [ [GLOBAL | LOCAL] {TEMPORARY | TEMP} | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS]
   <table_name>
    OF <type_name> [ (
  { <column_name> WITH OPTIONS [ <column_constraint> [ ... ] ]
    | <table_constraint> }
    [, ... ]
) ]
[ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [=<value>] [, ... ] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
```

where column_constraint is:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
[ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>]
{ NOT NULL
  | NULL
  | CHECK  ( <expression> ) [ NO INHERIT ]
  | DEFAULT <default_expr>
  | UNIQUE <index_parameters>
  | PRIMARY KEY <index_parameters>
  | REFERENCES <reftable> [ ( refcolumn ) ]
      [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]
      [ ON DELETE <key_action> ] [ ON UPDATE <key_action> ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

and table_constraint is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ]
{ CHECK ( <expression> ) [ NO INHERIT ]
  | UNIQUE ( <column_name> [, ... ] ) <index_parameters>
  | PRIMARY KEY ( <column_name> [, ... ] ) <index_parameters>
  | FOREIGN KEY ( <column_name> [, ... ] )
      REFERENCES <reftable> [ ( <refcolumn> [, ... ] ) ]
      [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]
      [ ON DELETE <key_action> ] [ ON UPDATE <key_action> ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

and *like_option* is:

```
{INCLUDING|EXCLUDING} {DEFAULTS|CONSTRAINTS|INDEXES|STORAGE|COMMENTS|ALL}
```

and index_parameters in `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints are:

```
[ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [=<value>] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING INDEX TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
```

and storage_directive for a column is:

```
   compresstype={ZLIB|ZSTD|RLE_TYPE|NONE}
    [compresslevel={0-9}]
    [blocksize={8192-2097152} ]
```

and storage_parameter for the table is:

```
   appendoptimized={TRUE|FALSE}
   blocksize={8192-2097152}
   orientation={COLUMN|ROW}
   checksum={TRUE|FALSE}
   compresstype={ZLIB|ZSTD|RLE_TYPE|NONE}
   compresslevel={0-9}
   fillfactor={10-100}
   analyze_hll_non_part_table={TRUE|FALSE}
   [oids=FALSE]
```

and key_action is:

```
    ON DELETE
  | ON UPDATE
  | NO ACTION
  | RESTRICT
  | CASCADE
  | SET NULL
  | SET DEFAULT
```

and partition_type is:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
    LIST | RANGE
```

and partition_specification is:

```
<partition_element> [, ...]
```

and partition_element is:

```
   DEFAULT PARTITION <name>
  | [PARTITION <name>] VALUES (<list_value> [,...] )
  | [PARTITION <name>]
     START ([<datatype>] '<start_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE] ]
     [ EVERY ([<datatype>] [<number | >INTERVAL] '<interval_value>') ]
  | [PARTITION <name>]
     END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ EVERY ([<datatype>] [<number | >INTERVAL] '<interval_value>') ]
[ WITH ( <partition_storage_parameter>=<value> [, ... ] ) ]
[ <column_reference_storage_directive> [, ...] ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
```

where subpartition_spec or template_spec is:

```
<subpartition_element> [, ...]
```

and subpartition_element is:

```
   DEFAULT SUBPARTITION <name>
  | [SUBPARTITION <name>] VALUES (<list_value> [,...] )
  | [SUBPARTITION <name>]
     START ([<datatype>] '<start_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE] ]
     [ EVERY ([<datatype>] [<number | >INTERVAL] '<interval_value>') ]
  | [SUBPARTITION <name>]
     END ([<datatype>] '<end_value>') [INCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE]
     [ EVERY ([<datatype>] [<number | >INTERVAL] '<interval_value>') ]
[ WITH ( <partition_storage_parameter>=<value> [, ... ] ) ]
[ <column_reference_storage_directive> [, ...] ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
```

where storage_parameter for a partition is:

```
   appendoptimized={TRUE|FALSE}
   blocksize={8192-2097152}
   orientation={COLUMN|ROW}
   checksum={TRUE|FALSE}
   compresstype={ZLIB|ZSTD|RLE_TYPE|NONE}
   compresslevel={1-19}
   fillfactor={10-100}
   [oids=FALSE]
```

### Description

`CREATE TABLE` creates an initially empty table in the current database. The user who issues the command owns the table.

To be able to create a table, you must have `USAGE` privilege on all column types or the type in the `OF` clause, respectively.

If you specify a schema name, WarehousePG creates the table in the specified schema. Otherwise WarehousePG creates the table in the current schema. Temporary tables exist in a special schema, so you cannot specify a schema name when creating a temporary table. Table names must be distinct from the name of any other table, external table, sequence, index, view, or foreign table in the same schema.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`CREATE TABLE` also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the table. Therefore, tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

The optional constraint clauses specify conditions that new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. A constraint is an SQL object that helps define the set of valid values in the table in various ways. Constraints apply to tables, not to partitions. You cannot add a constraint to a partition or subpartition.

Referential integrity constraints (foreign keys) are accepted but not enforced. The information is kept in the system catalogs but is otherwise ignored.

There are two ways to define constraints: table constraints and column constraints. A column constraint is defined as part of a column definition. A table constraint definition is not tied to a particular column, and it can encompass more than one column. Every column constraint can also be written as a table constraint; a column constraint is only a notational convenience for use when the constraint only affects one column.

When creating a table, there is an additional clause to declare the WarehousePG distribution policy. If a `DISTRIBUTED BY`, `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`, or `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` clause is not supplied, then WarehousePG assigns a hash distribution policy to the table using either the `PRIMARY KEY` (if the table has one) or the first column of the table as the distribution key. Columns of geometric or user-defined data types are not eligible as WarehousePG distribution key columns. If a table does not have a column of an eligible data type, the rows are distributed based on a round-robin or random distribution. To ensure an even distribution of data in your WarehousePG cluster, you want to choose a distribution key that is unique for each record, or if that is not possible, then choose `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`.

If the `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` clause is supplied, WarehousePG distributes all rows of the table to all segments in the WarehousePG cluster. This option can be used in cases where user-defined functions must run on the segments, and the functions require access to all rows of the table. Replicated functions can also be used to improve query performance by preventing broadcast motions for the table. The `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` clause cannot be used with the `PARTITION BY` clause or the `INHERITS` clause. A replicated table also cannot be inherited by another table. The hidden system columns (`ctid`, `cmin`, `cmax`, `xmin`, `xmax`, and `gp_segment_id`) cannot be referenced in user queries on replicated tables because they have no single, unambiguous value. WarehousePG returns a `column does not exist` error for the query.

The `PARTITION BY` clause allows you to divide the table into multiple sub-tables (or parts) that, taken together, make up the parent table and share its schema. Though the sub-tables exist as independent tables, the WarehousePG restricts their use in important ways. Internally, partitioning is implemented as a special form of inheritance. Each child table partition is created with a distinct `CHECK` constraint which limits the data the table can contain, based on some defining criteria. The `CHECK` constraints are also used by the query optimizer to determine which table partitions to scan in order to satisfy a given query predicate. These partition constraints are managed automatically by the WarehousePG.

### Parameters

- GLOBAL | LOCAL

  These keywords are present for SQL standard compatibility, but have no effect in WarehousePG and are deprecated.

- TEMPORARY | TEMP

  If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Temporary tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session, or optionally at the end of the current transaction (see `ON COMMIT`). Existing permanent tables with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary table exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. Any indexes created on a temporary table are automatically temporary as well.

- UNLOGGED

  If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Data written to unlogged tables is not written to the write-ahead (WAL) log, which makes them considerably faster than ordinary tables. However, the contents of an unlogged table are not replicated to mirror segment instances. Also an unlogged table is not crash-safe. After a segment instance crash or unclean shutdown, the data for the unlogged table on that segment is truncated. Any indexes created on an unlogged table are automatically unlogged as well.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

- OF type_name

  Creates a typed table, which takes its structure from the specified composite type (name optionally schema-qualified). A typed table is tied to its type; for example the table will be dropped if the type is dropped (with `DROP TYPE ... CASCADE`).

  When a typed table is created, the data types of the columns are determined by the underlying composite type and are not specified by the `CREATE TABLE` command. But the `CREATE TABLE` command can add defaults and constraints to the table and can specify storage parameters.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- column_name

  The name of a column to be created in the new table.

- data_type

  The data type of the column. This may include array specifiers.

  For table columns that contain textual data, Specify the data type `VARCHAR` or `TEXT`. Specifying the data type `CHAR` is not recommended. In WarehousePG, the data types `VARCHAR` or `TEXT` handles padding added to the data (space characters added after the last non-space character) as significant characters, the data type `CHAR` does not. See Notes.

- COLLATE collation

  The `COLLATE` clause assigns a collation to the column (which must be of a collatable data type). If not specified, the column data type's default collation is used.

  > **Note** GPORCA supports collation only when all columns in the query use the same collation. If columns in the query use different collations, then WarehousePG uses the Postgres Planner.

- DEFAULT default_expr

  The `DEFAULT` clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (subqueries and cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column. The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

- ENCODING ( storage_directive [, ...] )

  For a column, the optional `ENCODING` clause specifies the type of compression and block size for the column data. See storage_options for `compresstype`, `compresslevel`, and `blocksize` values.

  The clause is valid only for append-optimized, column-oriented tables.

  Column compression settings are inherited from the table level to the partition level to the subpartition level. The lowest-level settings have priority.

- INHERITS ( parent_table [, ...])

  The optional `INHERITS` clause specifies a list of tables from which the new table automatically inherits all columns. Use of `INHERITS` creates a persistent relationship between the new child table and its parent table(s). Schema modifications to the parent(s) normally propagate to children as well, and by default the data of the child table is included in scans of the parent(s).

  In WarehousePG, the `INHERITS` clause is not used when creating partitioned tables. Although the concept of inheritance is used in partition hierarchies, the inheritance structure of a partitioned table is created using the PARTITION BY clause.

  If the same column name exists in more than one parent table, an error is reported unless the data types of the columns match in each of the parent tables. If there is no conflict, then the duplicate columns are merged to form a single column in the new table. If the column name list of the new table contains a column name that is also inherited, the data type must likewise match the inherited column(s), and the column definitions are merged into one. If the new table explicitly specifies a default value for the column, this default overrides any defaults from inherited declarations of the column. Otherwise, any parents that specify default values for the column must all specify the same default, or an error will be reported.

  `CHECK` constraints are merged in essentially the same way as columns: if multiple parent tables or the new table definition contain identically-named `constraints`, these constraints must all have the same check expression, or an error will be reported. Constraints having the same name and expression will be merged into one copy. A constraint marked `NO INHERIT` in a parent will not be considered. Notice that an unnamed `CHECK` constraint in the new table will never be merged, since a unique name will always be chosen for it.

  Column `STORAGE` settings are also copied from parent tables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- LIKE source_table like_option `...` ]

  The `LIKE` clause specifies a table from which the new table automatically copies all column names, their data types, not-null constraints, and distribution policy. Unlike `INHERITS`, the new table and original table are completely decoupled after creation is complete.

  > **Note** Storage properties like append-optimized or partition structure are not copied.

  Default expressions for the copied column definitions will only be copied if `INCLUDING DEFAULTS` is specified. The default behavior is to exclude default expressions, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having null defaults.

  Not-null constraints are always copied to the new table. `CHECK` constraints will be copied only if `INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS` is specified. No distinction is made between column constraints and table constraints.

  Indexes, `PRIMARY KEY`, and `UNIQUE` constraints on the original table will be created on the new table only if the `INCLUDING INDEXES` clause is specified. Names for the new indexes and constraints are chosen according to the default rules, regardless of how the originals were named. (This behavior avoids possible duplicate-name failures for the new indexes.)

  Any indexes on the original table will not be created on the new table, unless the `INCLUDING INDEXES` clause is specified.

  `STORAGE` settings for the copied column definitions will be copied only if `INCLUDING STORAGE` is specified. The default behavior is to exclude `STORAGE` settings, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having type-specific default settings.

  Comments for the copied columns, constraints, and indexes will be copied only if `INCLUDING COMMENTS` is specified. The default behavior is to exclude comments, resulting in the copied columns and constraints in the new table having no comments.

  `INCLUDING ALL` is an abbreviated form of `INCLUDING DEFAULTS INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS INCLUDING INDEXES INCLUDING STORAGE INCLUDING COMMENTS`.

  Note that unlike `INHERITS`, columns and constraints copied by `LIKE` are not merged with similarly named columns and constraints. If the same name is specified explicitly or in another `LIKE` clause, an error is signaled.

  The `LIKE` clause can also be used to copy columns from views, foreign tables, or composite types. Inapplicable options (e.g., `INCLUDING INDEXES` from a view) are ignored.

- CONSTRAINT constraint_name

  An optional name for a column or table constraint. If the constraint is violated, the constraint name is present in error messages, so constraint names like column must be positive can be used to communicate helpful constraint information to client applications. (Double-quotes are needed to specify constraint names that contain spaces.) If a constraint name is not specified, the system generates a name.

  > **Note** The specified constraint_name is used for the constraint, but a system-generated unique name is used for the index name. In some prior releases, the provided name was used for both the constraint name and the index name.

- NULL | NOT NULL

  Specifies if the column is or is not allowed to contain null values. `NULL` is the default.

- CHECK (expression) [ NO INHERIT ]

  The `CHECK` clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. Expressions evaluating to `TRUE` or `UNKNOWN` succeed. Should any row of an insert or update operation produce a `FALSE` result an error exception is raised and the insert or update does not alter the database. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column's value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint can reference multiple columns.

  A constraint marked with `NO INHERIT` will not propagate to child tables.

  Currently, `CHECK` expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row.

- UNIQUE ( column_constraint )

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- UNIQUE ( column_name [, ... ] ) ( table_constraint )

  The `UNIQUE` constraint specifies that a group of one or more columns of a table may contain only unique values. The behavior of the unique table constraint is the same as that for column constraints, with the additional capability to span multiple columns. For the purpose of a unique constraint, null values are not considered equal. The column(s) that are unique must contain all the columns of the WarehousePG distribution key. In addition, the `<key>` must contain all the columns in the partition key if the table is partitioned. Note that a `<key>` constraint in a partitioned table is not the same as a simple `UNIQUE INDEX`.

  For information about unique constraint management and limitations, see Notes.

- PRIMARY KEY ( column constraint )

- PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) ( table constraint )

  The `PRIMARY KEY` constraint specifies that a column or columns of a table may contain only unique (non-duplicate), non-null values. Only one primary key can be specified for a table, whether as a column constraint or a table constraint.

  For a table to have a primary key, it must be hash distributed (not randomly distributed), and the primary key, the column(s) that are unique, must contain all the columns of the WarehousePG distribution key. In addition, the `<key>` must contain all the columns in the partition key if the table is partitioned. Note that a `<key>` constraint in a partitioned table is not the same as a simple `UNIQUE INDEX`.

  `PRIMARY KEY` enforces the same data constraints as a combination of `UNIQUE` and `NOT NULL`, but identifying a set of columns as the primary key also provides metadata about the design of the schema, since a primary key implies that other tables can rely on this set of columns as a unique identifier for rows.

  For information about primary key management and limitations, see Notes.

- REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ]

- [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]

- [ON DELETE | ON UPDATE] [key_action]

- FOREIGN KEY (column_name [, ...])

  The `REFERENCES` and `FOREIGN KEY` clauses specify referential integrity constraints (foreign key constraints). WarehousePG accepts referential integrity constraints as specified in PostgreSQL syntax but does not enforce them. See the PostgreSQL documentation for information about referential integrity constraints.

- DEFERRABLE

- NOT DEFERRABLE

  The `[NOT] DEFERRABLE` clause controls whether the constraint can be deferred. A constraint that is not deferrable will be checked immediately after every command. Checking of constraints that are deferrable can be postponed until the end of the transaction (using the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command). `NOT DEFERRABLE` is the default. Currently, only `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints are deferrable. `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints are not deferrable. `REFERENCES` (foreign key) constraints accept this clause but are not enforced.

- INITIALLY IMMEDIATE

- INITIALLY DEFERRED

  If a constraint is deferrable, this clause specifies the default time to check the constraint. If the constraint is `INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`, it is checked after each statement. This is the default. If the constraint is `INITIALLY DEFERRED`, it is checked only at the end of the transaction. The constraint check time can be altered with the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- WITH ( storage_parameter=value )

  The `WITH` clause can specify storage parameters for tables, and for indexes associated with a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY` constraint. Note that you can also set storage parameters on a particular partition or subpartition by declaring the `WITH` clause in the partition specification. The lowest-level settings have priority.

  The defaults for some of the table storage options can be specified with the server configuration parameter `gp_default_storage_options`. For information about setting default storage options, see Notes.

  The following storage options are available:

  **appendoptimized** — Set to `TRUE` to create the table as an append-optimized table. If `FALSE` or not declared, the table will be created as a regular heap-storage table.

  **blocksize** — Set to the size, in bytes, for each block in a table. The `blocksize` must be between 8192 and 2097152 bytes, and be a multiple of 8192. The default is 32768. The `blocksize` option is valid only if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  **orientation** — Set to `column` for column-oriented storage, or `row` (the default) for row-oriented storage. This option is only valid if `appendoptimized=TRUE`. Heap-storage tables can only be row-oriented.

  **checksum** — This option is valid only for append-optimized tables ( `appendoptimized=TRUE` ). The value `TRUE` is the default and enables CRC checksum validation for append-optimized tables. The checksum is calculated during block creation and is stored on disk. Checksum validation is performed during block reads. If the checksum calculated during the read does not match the stored checksum, the transaction is cancelled. If you set the value to `FALSE` to deactivate checksum validation, checking the table data for on-disk corruption will not be performed.

  **compresstype** — Set to `ZLIB` (the default), `ZSTD`, or `RLE_TYPE` to specify the type of compression used. The value `NONE` deactivates compression. Zstd provides for both speed or a good compression ratio, tunable with the `compresslevel` option. Zlib is provided for backwards-compatibility. Zstd outperforms this compression type on usual workloads. The `compresstype` option is only valid if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  The value `RLE_TYPE`, which is supported only if `orientation` = `column` is specified, enables the run-length encoding (RLE) compression algorithm. RLE compresses data better than the Zstd or zlib compression algorithms when the same data value occurs in many consecutive rows.

  For columns of type `BIGINT`, `INTEGER`, `DATE`, `TIME`, or `TIMESTAMP`, delta compression is also applied if the `compresstype` option is set to `RLE_TYPE` compression. The delta compression algorithm is based on the delta between column values in consecutive rows and is designed to improve compression when data is loaded in sorted order or the compression is applied to column data that is in sorted order.

  For information about using table compression, see Choosing the Table Storage Model in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  **compresslevel** — For Zstd compression of append-optimized tables, set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 19 (highest compression ratio). For zlib compression, the valid range is from 1 to 9. If not declared, the default is 1. For `RLE_TYPE`, the compression level can be an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 4 (highest compression ratio).

  The `compresslevel` option is valid only if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  **fillfactor** — The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller fillfactor is specified, `INSERT` operations pack table pages only to the indicated percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives `UPDATE` a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

  The fillfactor option is valid only for heap tables ( `appendoptimized=FALSE` ).

  **analyze_hll_non_part_table** — Set this storage parameter to `true` to force collection of HLL statistics even if the table is not part of a partitioned table. This is useful if the table will be exchanged or added to a partitioned table, so that the table does not need to be re-analyzed. The default is `false`.

  **oids=FALSE** — This setting is the default, and it ensures that rows do not have object identifiers assigned to them. On large tables, such as those in a typical WarehousePG database system, using OIDs for table rows can cause wrap-around of the 32-bit OID counter. Once the counter wraps around, OIDs can no longer be assumed to be unique, which not only makes them useless to user applications, but can also cause problems in the WarehousePG database system catalog tables. In addition, excluding OIDs from a table reduces the space required to store the table on disk by 4 bytes per row, slightly improving performance. You cannot create OIDS on a partitioned or column-oriented table (an error is displayed). This syntax is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ON COMMIT

  The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using `ON COMMIT`. The three options are:

  **PRESERVE ROWS** - No special action is taken at the ends of transactions for temporary tables. This is the default behavior.

  **DELETE ROWS** - All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic `TRUNCATE` is done at each commit.

  **DROP** - The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block.

- TABLESPACE tablespace

  The name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, the database's default tablespace is used, ortemp_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

- USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace

  This clause allows selection of the tablespace in which the index associated with a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint will be created. If not specified, the database's default tablespace is used, or temp_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

- DISTRIBUTED BY (column [opclass], [ ... ] )

- DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY

- DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

  Used to declare the WarehousePG distribution policy for the table. `DISTRIBUTED BY` uses hash distribution with one or more columns declared as the distribution key. For the most even data distribution, the distribution key should be the primary key of the table or a unique column (or set of columns). If that is not possible, then you may choose `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`, which will send the data round-robin to the segment instances. Additionally, an operator class, `opclass`, can be specified, to use a non-default hash function.

  The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_create_table_random_default_distribution` controls the default table distribution policy if the DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified when you create a table. WarehousePG follows these rules to create a table if a distribution policy is not specified.

  If the value of the parameter is `off` (the default), WarehousePG chooses the table distribution key based on the command:

  - If a `LIKE` or `INHERITS` clause is specified, then WarehousePG copies the distribution key from the source or parent table.
  - If a `PRIMARY KEY` or `UNIQUE` constraints are specified, then WarehousePG chooses the largest subset of all the key columns as the distribution key.
  - If neither constraints nor a `LIKE` or `INHERITS` clause is specified, then WarehousePG chooses the first suitable column as the distribution key. (Columns with geometric or user-defined data types are not eligible as WarehousePG distribution key columns.)

  If the value of the parameter is set to `on`, WarehousePG follows these rules:

  - If PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE columns are not specified, the distribution of the table is random (DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY). Table distribution is random even if the table creation command contains the LIKE or INHERITS clause.
  - If PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE columns are specified, a DISTRIBUTED BY clause must also be specified. If a DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified as part of the table creation command, the command fails.

  For more information about setting the default table distribution policy, see `gp_create_table_random_default_distribution`.

  The `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` clause replicates the entire table to all WarehousePG segment instances. It can be used when it is necessary to run user-defined functions on segments when the functions require access to all rows in the table, or to improve query performance by preventing broadcast motions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- PARTITION BY

  Declares one or more columns by which to partition the table.

  When creating a partitioned table, WarehousePG creates the root partitioned table (the root partition) with the specified table name. WarehousePG also creates a hierarchy of tables, child tables, that are the subpartitions based on the partitioning options that you specify. The WarehousePG *pg_partition** system views contain information about the subpartition tables.

  For each partition level (each hierarchy level of tables), a partitioned table can have a maximum of 32,767 partitions.

  > **Note** WarehousePG stores partitioned table data in the leaf child tables, the lowest-level tables in the hierarchy of child tables for use by the partitioned table.

  partition_type

  Declares partition type: `LIST` (list of values) or `RANGE` (a numeric or date range).

- partition_specification

  Declares the individual partitions to create. Each partition can be defined individually or, for range partitions, you can use the `EVERY` clause (with a `START` and optional `END` clause) to define an increment pattern to use to create the individual partitions.

  `DEFAULT PARTITION name` — Declares a default partition. When data does not match to an existing partition, it is inserted into the default partition. Partition designs that do not have a default partition will reject incoming rows that do not match to an existing partition.

  `PARTITION name` — Declares a name to use for the partition. Partitions are created using the following naming convention: `parentname_level\#_prt_givenname`.

  `VALUES` — For list partitions, defines the value(s) that the partition will contain.

  `START` — For range partitions, defines the starting range value for the partition. By default, start values are `INCLUSIVE`. For example, if you declared a start date of '`2016-01-01`', then the partition would contain all dates greater than or equal to '`2016-01-01`'. Typically the data type of the `START` expression is the same type as the partition key column. If that is not the case, then you must explicitly cast to the intended data type.

  `END` — For range partitions, defines the ending range value for the partition. By default, end values are `EXCLUSIVE`. For example, if you declared an end date of '`2016-02-01`', then the partition would contain all dates less than but not equal to '`2016-02-01`'. Typically the data type of the `END` expression is the same type as the partition key column. If that is not the case, then you must explicitly cast to the intended data type.

  `EVERY` — For range partitions, defines how to increment the values from `START` to `END` to create individual partitions. Typically the data type of the `EVERY` expression is the same type as the partition key column. If that is not the case, then you must explicitly cast to the intended data type.

  `WITH` — Sets the table storage options for a partition. For example, you may want older partitions to be append-optimized tables and newer partitions to be regular heap tables.

  `TABLESPACE` — The name of the tablespace in which the partition is to be created.

- SUBPARTITION BY

  Declares one or more columns by which to subpartition the first-level partitions of the table. The format of the subpartition specification is similar to that of a partition specification described above.

- SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE

  Instead of declaring each subpartition definition individually for each partition, you can optionally declare a subpartition template to be used to create the subpartitions (lower level child tables). This subpartition specification would then apply to all parent partitions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

- In WarehousePG (a Postgres-based system) the data types `VARCHAR` or `TEXT` handle padding added to the textual data (space characters added after the last non-space character) as significant characters; the data type `CHAR` does not.

  In WarehousePG, values of type `CHAR(n)` are padded with trailing spaces to the specified width n. The values are stored and displayed with the spaces. However, the padding spaces are treated as semantically insignificant. When the values are distributed, the trailing spaces are disregarded. The trailing spaces are also treated as semantically insignificant when comparing two values of data type `CHAR`, and the trailing spaces are removed when converting a character value to one of the other string types.

- Using OIDs in new applications is not recommended. This syntax is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release. As an alternative, use a `SERIAL` or other sequence generator as the table's primary key. However, if your application does make use of OIDs to identify specific rows of a table, it is recommended to create a unique constraint on the OID column of that table, to ensure that OIDs in the table will indeed uniquely identify rows even after counter wrap-around. Avoid assuming that OIDs are unique across tables; if you need a database-wide unique identifier, use the combination of table OID and row OID for that purpose.

- WarehousePG has some special conditions for primary key and unique constraints with regards to columns that are the *distribution key* in a WarehousePG table. For a unique constraint to be enforced in WarehousePG, the table must be hash-distributed (not `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`), and the constraint columns must be the same as (or a superset of) the table's distribution key columns.

  Replicated tables (`DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED`) can have both `PRIMARY KEY` and `UNIQUE` column constraints.

  A primary key constraint is simply a combination of a unique constraint and a not-null constraint.

  WarehousePG automatically creates a `UNIQUE` index for each `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint to enforce uniqueness. Thus, it is not necessary to create an index explicitly for primary key columns. `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints are not allowed on append-optimized tables because the `UNIQUE` indexes that are created by the constraints are not allowed on append-optimized tables.

  Foreign key constraints are not supported in WarehousePG.

  For inherited tables, unique constraints, primary key constraints, indexes and table privileges are *not* inherited in the current implementation.

- For append-optimized tables, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` are not allowed in a repeatable read or serializable transaction and will cause the transaction to end prematurely. `DECLARE...FOR UPDATE`, and triggers are not supported with append-optimized tables. `CLUSTER` on append-optimized tables is only supported over B-tree indexes.

- To insert data into a partitioned table, you specify the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. You also can specify a leaf child table of the partitioned table in an `INSERT` command. An error is returned if the data is not valid for the specified leaf child table. Specifying a child table that is not a leaf child table in the `INSERT` command is not supported. Execution of other DML commands such as `UPDATE` and `DELETE` on any child table of a partitioned table is not supported. These commands must be run on the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command.

- The default values for these table storage options can be specified with the server configuration parameter `gp_default_storage_option`.

  - appendoptimized
  - blocksize
  - checksum
  - compresstype
  - compresslevel
  - orientation The defaults can be set for the system, a database, or a user. For information about setting storage options, see the server configuration parameter gp_default_storage_options.

> **Important** The current Postgres Planner allows list partitions with multi-column (composite) partition keys. GPORCA does not support composite keys, so using composite partition keys is not recommended.

### Examples

Create a table named `rank` in the schema named `baby` and distribute the data using the columns `rank`, `gender`, and `year`:

```
CREATE TABLE baby.rank (id int, rank int, year smallint,
gender char(1), count int ) DISTRIBUTED BY (rank, gender,
year);
```

Create table films and table distributors (the primary key will be used as the WarehousePG distribution key by default):

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE films (
code        char(5) CONSTRAINT firstkey PRIMARY KEY,
title       varchar(40) NOT NULL,
did         integer NOT NULL,
date_prod   date,
kind        varchar(10),
len         interval hour to minute
);

CREATE TABLE distributors (
did    integer PRIMARY KEY DEFAULT nextval('serial'),
name   varchar(40) NOT NULL CHECK (name <> '')
);
```

Create a gzip-compressed, append-optimized table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (txn_id int, qty int, date date)
WITH (appendoptimized=true, compresslevel=5)
DISTRIBUTED BY (txn_id);
```

Create a simple, single level partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, year int, qtr int, c_rank int, code char(1), region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY LIST (code)
( PARTITION sales VALUES ('S'),
  PARTITION returns VALUES ('R')
);
```

Create a three level partitioned table that defines subpartitions without the `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` clause:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, year int, qtr int, c_rank int, code char(1), region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY LIST (code)
  SUBPARTITION BY RANGE (c_rank)
    SUBPARTITION by LIST (region)

( PARTITION sales VALUES ('S')
   ( SUBPARTITION cr1 START (1) END (2)
      ( SUBPARTITION ca VALUES ('CA') ),
      SUBPARTITION cr2 START (3) END (4)
        ( SUBPARTITION ca VALUES ('CA') ) ),

 PARTITION returns VALUES ('R')
   ( SUBPARTITION cr1 START (1) END (2)
      ( SUBPARTITION ca VALUES ('CA') ),
     SUBPARTITION cr2 START (3) END (4)
        ( SUBPARTITION ca VALUES ('CA') ) )
);
```

Create the same partitioned table as the previous table using the `SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE` clause:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TABLE sales1 (id int, year int, qtr int, c_rank int, code char(1), region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY LIST (code)

   SUBPARTITION BY RANGE (c_rank)
     SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
     SUBPARTITION cr1 START (1) END (2),
     SUBPARTITION cr2 START (3) END (4) )

     SUBPARTITION BY LIST (region)
       SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
       SUBPARTITION ca VALUES ('CA') )

( PARTITION sales VALUES ('S'),
  PARTITION  returns VALUES ('R')
);
```

Create a three level partitioned table using subpartition templates and default partitions at each level:

```
CREATE TABLE sales (id int, year int, qtr int, c_rank int, code char(1), region text)
DISTRIBUTED BY (id)
PARTITION BY RANGE (year)

  SUBPARTITION BY RANGE (qtr)
    SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
    START (1) END (5) EVERY (1),
    DEFAULT SUBPARTITION bad_qtr )

    SUBPARTITION BY LIST (region)
      SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE (
      SUBPARTITION usa VALUES ('usa'),
      SUBPARTITION europe VALUES ('europe'),
      SUBPARTITION asia VALUES ('asia'),
      DEFAULT SUBPARTITION other_regions)

( START (2009) END (2011) EVERY (1),
  DEFAULT PARTITION outlying_years);
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE TABLE` command conforms to the SQL standard, with the following exceptions:

- **Temporary Tables** — In the SQL standard, temporary tables are defined just once and automatically exist (starting with empty contents) in every session that needs them. WarehousePG instead requires each session to issue its own `CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE` command for each temporary table to be used. This allows different sessions to use the same temporary table name for different purposes, whereas the standard's approach constrains all instances of a given temporary table name to have the same table structure.

  The standard's distinction between global and local temporary tables is not in WarehousePG. WarehousePG will accept the `GLOBAL` and `LOCAL` keywords in a temporary table declaration, but they have no effect and are deprecated.

  If the `ON COMMIT` clause is omitted, the SQL standard specifies that the default behavior as `ON COMMIT DELETE ROWS`. However, the default behavior in WarehousePG is `ON COMMIT PRESERVE ROWS`. The `ON COMMIT DROP` option does not exist in the SQL standard.

- **Column Check Constraints** — The SQL standard says that `CHECK` column constraints may only refer to the column they apply to; only `CHECK` table constraints may refer to multiple columns. WarehousePG does not enforce this restriction; it treats column and table check constraints alike.

- **NULL Constraint** — The `NULL` constraint is a WarehousePG extension to the SQL standard that is included for compatibility with some other database systems (and for symmetry with the `NOT NULL` constraint). Since it is the default for any column, its presence is not required.

- **Inheritance** — Multiple inheritance via the `INHERITS` clause is a WarehousePG language extension. SQL:1999 and later define single inheritance using a different syntax and different semantics. SQL:1999-style inheritance is not yet supported by WarehousePG.

- **Partitioning** — Table partitioning via the `PARTITION BY` clause is a WarehousePG language extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **Zero-column tables** — WarehousePG allows a table of no columns to be created (for example, `CREATE TABLE foo();`). This is an extension from the SQL standard, which does not allow zero-column tables. Zero-column tables are not in themselves very useful, but disallowing them creates odd special cases for `ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN`, so WarehousePG decided to ignore this spec restriction.

- **LIKE** — While a `LIKE` clause exists in the SQL standard, many of the options that WarehousePG accepts for it are not in the standard, and some of the standard's options are not implemented by WarehousePG.

- **WITH clause** — The `WITH` clause is a WarehousePG extension; neither storage parameters nor OIDs are in the standard.

- **Tablespaces** — The WarehousePG concept of tablespaces is not part of the SQL standard. The clauses `TABLESPACE` and `USING INDEX TABLESPACE` are extensions.

- **Data Distribution** — The WarehousePG concept of a parallel or distributed database is not part of the SQL standard. The `DISTRIBUTED` clauses are extensions.

## See Also

ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, CREATE TABLE AS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.72 CREATE TABLE AS

Defines a new table from the results of a query.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE <table_name>
        [ (<column_name> [, ...] ) ]
        [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [= <value>] [, ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
        [ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
        [ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
        AS <query>
        [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
        [ DISTRIBUTED BY (column [, ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED ]
```

where storage_parameter is:

```
   appendoptimized={TRUE|FALSE}
   blocksize={8192-2097152}
   orientation={COLUMN|ROW}
   compresstype={ZLIB|ZSTD|RLE_TYPE|NONE}
   compresslevel={1-19 | 1}
   fillfactor={10-100}
   [oids=FALSE]
```

### Description

`CREATE TABLE AS` creates a table and fills it with data computed by a SELECT command. The table columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the `SELECT`, however you can override the column names by giving an explicit list of new column names.

`CREATE TABLE AS` creates a new table and evaluates the query just once to fill the new table initially. The new table will not track subsequent changes to the source tables of the query.

### Parameters

- GLOBAL | LOCAL

  Ignored for compatibility. These keywords are deprecated; refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

- TEMPORARY | TEMP

  If specified, the new table is created as a temporary table. Temporary tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session, or optionally at the end of the current transaction (see `ON COMMIT`). Existing permanent tables with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary table exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. Any indexes created on a temporary table are automatically temporary as well.

- UNLOGGED

  If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Data written to unlogged tables is not written to the write-ahead (WAL) log, which makes them considerably faster than ordinary tables. However, the contents of an unlogged table are not replicated to mirror segment instances. Also an unlogged table is not crash-safe. After a segment instance crash or unclean shutdown, the data for the unlogged table on that segment is truncated. Any indexes created on an unlogged table are automatically unlogged as well.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the new table to be created.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- column_name

  The name of a column in the new table. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

- WITH ( storage_parameter=value )

  The `WITH` clause can be used to set storage options for the table or its indexes. Note that you can also set different storage parameters on a particular partition or subpartition by declaring the `WITH` clause in the partition specification. The following storage options are available:

  **appendoptimized** — Set to `TRUE` to create the table as an append-optimized table. If `FALSE` or not declared, the table will be created as a regular heap-storage table.

  **blocksize** — Set to the size, in bytes for each block in a table. The `blocksize` must be between 8192 and 2097152 bytes, and be a multiple of 8192. The default is 32768. The `blocksize` option is valid only if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  **orientation** — Set to `column` for column-oriented storage, or `row` (the default) for row-oriented storage. This option is only valid if `appendoptimized=TRUE`. Heap-storage tables can only be row-oriented.

  **compresstype** — Set to `ZLIB` (the default), `ZSTD`, or `RLE_TYPE` to specify the type of compression used. The value `NONE` deactivates compression. Zstd provides for both speed or a good compression ratio, tunable with the `compresslevel` option. Zlib is provided for backwards-compatibility. Zstd outperforms this compression type on usual workloads. The `compresstype` option is valid only if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  The value `RLE_TYPE`, which is supported only if `orientation` = `column` is specified, enables the run-length encoding (RLE) compression algorithm. RLE compresses data better than the Zstd or zlib compression algorithms when the same data value occurs in many consecutive rows.

  For columns of type `BIGINT`, `INTEGER`, `DATE`, `TIME`, or `TIMESTAMP`, delta compression is also applied if the `compresstype` option is set to `RLE_TYPE` compression. The delta compression algorithm is based on the delta between column values in consecutive rows and is designed to improve compression when data is loaded in sorted order or the compression is applied to column data that is in sorted order.

  For information about using table compression, see Choosing the Table Storage Model in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  **compresslevel** — For Zstd compression of append-optimized tables, set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 19 (highest compression ratio). For zlib compression, the valid range is from 1 to 9. If not declared, the default is 1. The `compresslevel` option is valid only if `appendoptimized=TRUE`.

  **fillfactor** — See CREATE INDEX for more information about this index storage parameter.

  **oids=FALSE** — This setting is the default, and it ensures that rows do not have object identifiers assigned to them. On large tables, such as those in a typical WarehousePG database system, using OIDs for table rows can cause wrap-around of the 32-bit OID counter. Once the counter wraps around, OIDs can no longer be assumed to be unique, which not only makes them useless to user applications, but can also cause problems in the WarehousePG database system catalog tables. In addition, excluding OIDs from a table reduces the space required to store the table on disk by 4 bytes per row, slightly improving performance. You cannot create OIDS on a partitioned or column-oriented table (an error is displayed). This syntax is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

- ON COMMIT

  The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using `ON COMMIT`. The three options are:

  PRESERVE ROWS — No special action is taken at the ends of transactions for temporary tables. This is the default behavior.

  DELETE ROWS — All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic `TRUNCATE` is done at each commit.

  DROP — The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block.

- TABLESPACE tablespace_name

  The tablespace_name parameter is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, the database's default tablespace is used, or temp_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

- AS query

  A SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES command, or an EXECUTE command that runs a prepared `SELECT` or `VALUES` query.

- DISTRIBUTED BY ({column [opclass]}, [ ... ] )

- DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

  Used to declare the WarehousePG distribution policy for the table. `DISTRIBUTED BY` uses hash distribution with one or more columns declared as the distribution key. For the most even data distribution, the distribution key should be the primary key of the table or a unique column (or set of columns). If that is not possible, then you may choose `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`, which will send the data round-robin to the segment instances.

  `DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED` replicates all rows in the table to all WarehousePG segments. It cannot be used with partitioned tables or with tables that inhert from other tables.

  The WarehousePG server configuration parameter `gp_create_table_random_default_distribution` controls the default table distribution policy if the DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified when you create a table. WarehousePG follows these rules to create a table if a distribution policy is not specified.

  - If the Postgres Planner creates the table, and the value of the parameter is `off`, the table distribution policy is determined based on the command.
  - If the Postgres Planner creates the table, and the value of the parameter is `on`, the table distribution policy is random.
  - If GPORCA creates the table, the table distribution policy is random. The parameter value has no effect.

  For more information about setting the default table distribution policy, see `gp_create_table_random_default_distribution`. For information about the Postgres Planner and GPORCA, see Querying Data in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Notes

This command is functionally similar to SELECT INTO, but it is preferred since it is less likely to be confused with other uses of the `SELECT INTO` syntax. Furthermore, `CREATE TABLE AS` offers a superset of the functionality offered by `SELECT INTO`.

`CREATE TABLE AS` can be used for fast data loading from external table data sources. See CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE.

### Examples

Create a new table `films_recent` consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`:

```
CREATE TABLE films_recent AS SELECT * FROM films WHERE
date_prod >= '2007-01-01';
```

Create a new temporary table `films_recent`, consisting of only recent entries from the table films, using a prepared statement. The new table will be dropped at commit:

```
PREPARE recentfilms(date) AS SELECT * FROM films WHERE
date_prod > $1;
CREATE TEMP TABLE films_recent ON COMMIT DROP AS
EXECUTE recentfilms('2007-01-01');
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE TABLE AS` conforms to the SQL standard, with the following exceptions:

- The standard requires parentheses around the subquery clause; in WarehousePG, these parentheses are optional.
- The standard defines a `WITH [NO] DATA` clause; this is not currently implemented by WarehousePG. The behavior provided by WarehousePG is equivalent to the standard's `WITH DATA` case. `WITH NO DATA` can be simulated by appending `LIMIT 0` to the query.
- WarehousePG handles temporary tables differently from the standard; see `CREATE TABLE` for details.
- The `WITH` clause is a WarehousePG extension; neither storage parameters nor `OIDs` are in the standard. The syntax for creating OID system columns is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.
- The WarehousePG concept of tablespaces is not part of the standard. The `TABLESPACE` clause is an extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, EXECUTE, SELECT, SELECT INTO, VALUES

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.73 CREATE TABLESPACE

Defines a new tablespace.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>
   [OWNER <user_name>]
   LOCATION '<directory>'
   [WITH (content<ID_1>='<directory>'[, content<ID_2>='<directory>' ... ] [, <tablespace_option = value [, ... ] ])]
```

### Description

`CREATE TABLESPACE` registers and configures a new tablespace for your WarehousePG cluster. The tablespace name must be distinct from the name of any existing tablespace in the system. A tablespace is a WarehousePG cluster object (a global object), you can use a tablespace from any database if you have appropriate privileges.

A tablespace allows superusers to define an alternative host file system location where the data files containing database objects (such as tables and indexes) reside.

A user with appropriate privileges can pass a tablespace name to CREATE DATABASE, CREATE TABLE, or CREATE INDEX to have the data files for these objects stored within the specified tablespace.

In WarehousePG, the file system location must exist on all hosts including the hosts running the coordinator, standby mirror, each primary segment, and each mirror segment.

### Parameters

- tablespace_name

  The name of a tablespace to be created. The name cannot begin with `pg_` or `gp_`, as such names are reserved for system tablespaces.

- user_name

  The name of the user who will own the tablespace. If omitted, defaults to the user running the command. Only superusers can create tablespaces, but they can assign ownership of tablespaces to non-superusers.

- LOCATION 'directory'

  The absolute path to the directory (host system file location) that will be the root directory for the tablespace. When registering a tablepace, the directory should be empty and must be owned by the WarehousePG cluster user. The directory must be specified by an absolute path name of no more than 100 characters. (The location is used to create a symlink target in the pg_tblspc directory, and symlink targets are truncated to 100 characters when sending to `tar` from utilities such as `pg_basebackup`.)

  For each segment instance, you can specify a different directory for the tablespace in the `WITH` clause.

- contentID_i='directory_i'

  The value ID_i is the content ID for the segment instance. directory_i is the absolute path to the host system file location that the segment instance uses as the root directory for the tablespace. You cannot specify the content ID of the coordinator instance ( `-1` ). You can specify the same directory for multiple segments.

  If a segment instance is not listed in the `WITH` clause, WarehousePG uses the tablespace directory specified in the `LOCATION` clause.

  The restrictions identified for the `LOCATION` directory also hold for directory_i.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- tablespace_option

  A tablespace parameter to set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are seq_page_cost and random_page_cost. Setting either value for a particular tablespace will override the planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see seq_page_cost, random_page_cost). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

### Notes

Because `CREATE TABLESPACE` creates symbolic links from the `pg_tblspc` directory in the coordinator and segment instance data directory to the directories specified in the command, WarehousePG supports tablespaces only on systems that support symbolic links.

`CREATE TABLESPACE` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

When creating tablespaces, ensure that file system locations have sufficient I/O speed and available disk space.

`CREATE TABLESPACE` creates symbolic links from the `pg_tblspc` directory in the coordinator and segment instance data directory to the directories specified in the command.

The system catalog table `pg_tablespace` stores tablespace information. This command displays the tablespace OID values, names, and owner.

```
SELECT oid, spcname, spcowner FROM pg_tablespace;
```

The WarehousePG built-in function `gp_tablespace_location(tablespace\_oid)` displays the tablespace host system file locations for all segment instances. This command lists the segment database IDs and host system file locations for the tablespace with OID `16385`.

```
SELECT * FROM gp_tablespace_location(16385)
```

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support different tablespace locations for a primary-mirror pair with the same content ID. It is only possible to configure different locations for different content IDs. Do not modify symbolic links under the `pg_tblspc` directory so that primary-mirror pairs point to different file locations; this will lead to erroneous behavior.

### Examples

Create a new tablespace and specify the file system location for the coordinator and all segment instances:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE mytblspace LOCATION '/gpdbtspc/mytestspace';
```

Create a new tablespace and specify a location for segment instances with content ID 0 and 1. For the coordinator and segment instances not listed in the `WITH` clause, the file system location for the tablespace is specified in the `LOCATION` clause.

```
CREATE TABLESPACE mytblspace LOCATION '/gpdbtspc/mytestspace' WITH (content0='/temp/mytest', content1='/temp/mytest');
```

The example specifies the same location for the two segment instances. You can a specify different location for each segment.

### Compatibility

`CREATE TABLESPACE` is a WarehousePG extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE DATABASE, CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, DROP TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.74 CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Defines a new text search configuration.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> (
    PARSER = <parser_name> |
    COPY = <source_config>
)
```

### Description

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` creates a new text search configuration. A text search configuration specifies a text search parser that can divide a string into tokens, plus dictionaries that can be used to determine which tokens are of interest for searching.

If only the parser is specified, then the new text search configuration initially has no mappings from token types to dictionaries, and therefore will ignore all words. Subsequent `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` commands must be used to create mappings to make the configuration useful. Alternatively, an existing text search configuration can be copied.

If a schema name is given then the text search configuration is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search configuration becomes its owner.

Refer to Using Full Text Search for further information.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the text search configuration to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- parser_name

  The name of the text search parser to use for this configuration.

- source_config

  The name of an existing text search configuration to copy.

### Notes

The `PARSER` and `COPY` options are mutually exclusive, because when an existing configuration is copied, its parser selection is copied too.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.75 CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Defines a new text search dictionary.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> (
    TEMPLATE = <template>
    [, <option> = <value> [, ... ]]
)
```

### Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY creates a new text search dictionary. A text search dictionary specifies a way of recognizing interesting or uninteresting words for searching. A dictionary depends on a text search template, which specifies the functions that actually perform the work. Typically the dictionary provides some options that control the detailed behavior of the template's functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search dictionary is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search dictionary becomes its owner.

Refer to Using Full Text Search for further information.

### Parameters

- `name`

  The name of the text search dictionary to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- `template`

  The name of the text search template that will define the basic behavior of this dictionary.

- `option`

  The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

- `value`

  The value to use for a template-specific option. If the value is not a simple identifier or number, it must be quoted (but you can always quote it, if you wish).

The options can appear in any order.

### Examples

The following example command creates a Snowball-based dictionary with a nonstandard list of stop words.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_russian (
    template = snowball,
    language = russian,
    stopwords = myrussian
);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.76 CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Defines a new text search parser.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER name (
    START = start_function ,
    GETTOKEN = gettoken_function ,
    END = end_function ,
    LEXTYPES = lextypes_function
    [, HEADLINE = headline_function ]
)
```

### Description

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER` creates a new text search parser. A text search parser defines a method for splitting a text string into tokens and assigning types (categories) to the tokens. A parser is not particularly useful by itself, but must be bound into a text search configuration along with some text search dictionaries to be used for searching.

If a schema name is given then the text search parser is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use `CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER`. (This restriction is made because an erroneous text search parser definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

Refer to Using Full Text Search for further information.

### Parameters

- `name`

  The name of the text search parser to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- `start\_function`

  The name of the start function for the parser.

- `gettoken\_function`

  The name of the get-next-token function for the parser.

- `end\_function`

  The name of the end function for the parser.

- `lextypes\_function`

  The name of the lextypes function for the parser (a function that returns information about the set of token types it produces).

- `headline\_function`

  The name of the headline function for the parser (a function that summarizes a set of tokens).

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the argument list for each type of function is predetermined. All except the headline function are required.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the one shown above.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.77 CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Defines a new text search template.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> (
    [ INIT = <init_function> , ]
    LEXIZE = <lexize_function>
)
```

### Description

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` creates a new text search template. Text search templates define the functions that implement text search dictionaries. A template is not useful by itself, but must be instantiated as a dictionary to be used. The dictionary typically specifies parameters to be given to the template functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search template is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use `CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE`. This restriction is made because an erroneous text search template definition could confuse or even crash the server. The reason for separating templates from dictionaries is that a template encapsulates the "unsafe" aspects of defining a dictionary. The parameters that can be set when defining a dictionary are safe for unprivileged users to set, and so creating a dictionary need not be a privileged operation.

Refer to Using Full Text Search for further information.

### Parameters

- `name`

  The name of the text search template to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

- `init\_function`

  The name of the init function for the template.

- `lexize\_function`

  The name of the lexize function for the template.

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the argument list for each type of function is predetermined. The lexize function is required, but the init function is optional.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the order shown above.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.78 CREATE TYPE

Defines a new data type.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TYPE <name> AS
    ( <attribute_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE <name> AS ENUM
    ( [ '<label>' [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE <name> AS RANGE (
    SUBTYPE = <subtype>
    [ , SUBTYPE_OPCLASS = <subtype_operator_class> ]
    [ , COLLATION = <collation> ]
    [ , CANONICAL = <canonical_function> ]
    [ , SUBTYPE_DIFF = <subtype_diff_function> ]
)

CREATE TYPE <name> (
    INPUT = <input_function>,
    OUTPUT = <output_function>
    [, RECEIVE = <receive_function>]
    [, SEND = <send_function>]
    [, TYPMOD_IN = <type_modifier_input_function> ]
    [, TYPMOD_OUT = <type_modifier_output_function> ]
    [, INTERNALLENGTH = {<internallength> | VARIABLE}]
    [, PASSEDBYVALUE]
    [, ALIGNMENT = <alignment>]
    [, STORAGE = <storage>]
    [, LIKE = <like_type>
    [, CATEGORY = <category>]
    [, PREFERRED = <preferred>]
    [, DEFAULT = <default>]
    [, ELEMENT = <element>]
    [, DELIMITER = <delimiter>]
    [, COLLATABLE = <collatable>]
    [, COMPRESSTYPE = <compression_type>]
    [, COMPRESSLEVEL = <compression_level>]
    [, BLOCKSIZE = <blocksize>] )

CREATE TYPE <name>
```

### Description

`CREATE TYPE` registers a new data type for use in the current database. The user who defines a type becomes its owner.

If a schema name is given then the type is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The type name must be distinct from the name of any existing type or domain in the same schema. The type name must also be distinct from the name of any existing table in the same schema.

There are five forms of `CREATE TYPE`, as shown in the syntax synopsis above. They respectively create a *composite type*, an *enum type*, a *range type*, a *base type*, or a *shell type*. The first four of these are discussed in turn below. A shell type is simply a placeholder for a type to be defined later; it is created by issuing `CREATE TYPE` with no parameters except for the type name. Shell types are needed as forward references when creating range types and base types, as discussed in those sections.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Composite Types

The first form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a composite type. The composite type is specified by a list of attribute names and data types. An attribute's collation can be specified too, if its data type is collatable. A composite type is essentially the same as the row type of a table, but using `CREATE TYPE` avoids the need to create an actual table when all that is wanted is to define a type. A stand-alone composite type is useful, for example, as the argument or return type of a function.

To be able to create a composite type, you must have `USAGE` privilege on all attribute types.

#### Enumerated Types

The second form of `CREATE TYPE` creates an enumerated ( `ENUM` ) type, as described in Enumerated Types in the PostgreSQL documentation. `ENUM` types take a list of quoted labels, each of which must be less than `NAMEDATALEN` bytes long (64 in a standard build).

It is possible to create an enumerated type with zero labels, but such a type cannot be used to hold values before at least one label is added using ALTER TYPE.

#### Range Types

The third form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new range type, as described in Range Types.

The range type's subtype can be any type with an associated b-tree operator class (to determine the ordering of values for the range type). Normally the subtype's default b-tree operator class is used to determine ordering; to use a non-default operator class, specify its name with subtype_opclass. If the subtype is collatable, and you want to use a non-default collation in the range's ordering, specify the desired collation with the collation option.

The optional canonical function must take one argument of the range type being defined, and return a value of the same type. This is used to convert range values to a canonical form, when applicable. See Section Defining New Range Types for more information. Creating a canonical function is a bit tricky, since it must be defined before the range type can be declared. To do this, you must first create a shell type, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command `CREATE TYPE name` , with no additional parameters. Then the function can be declared using the shell type as argument and result, and finally the range type can be declared using the same name. This automatically replaces the shell type entry with a valid range type.

The optional `<subtype_diff>` function must take two values of the subtype type as argument, and return a double precision value representing the difference between the two given values. While this is optional, providing it allows much greater efficiency of GiST indexes on columns of the range type. See Defining New Range Types for more information.

#### Base Types

The fourth form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new base type (scalar type). You must be a superuser to create a new base type. The parameters may appear in any order, not only that shown in the syntax, and most are optional. You must register two or more functions (using `CREATE FUNCTION` ) before defining the type. The support functions input_function and output_function are required, while the functions receive_function, send_function, type_modifier_input_function, type_modifier_output_function, and analyze_function are optional. Generally these functions have to be coded in C or another low-level language. In WarehousePG, any function used to implement a data type must be defined as `IMMUTABLE` .

The input_function converts the type's external textual representation to the internal representation used by the operators and functions defined for the type. output_function performs the reverse transformation. The input function may be declared as taking one argument of type `cstring` , or as taking three arguments of types `cstring` , `oid` , `integer` . The first argument is the input text as a C string, the second argument is the type's own OID (except for array types, which instead receive their element type's OID), and the third is the `typmod` of the destination column, if known ( `-1` will be passed if not). The input function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, an input function should be declared `STRICT` ; if it is not, it will be called with a `NULL` first parameter when reading a `NULL` input value. The function must still return `NULL` in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain input functions, which may need to reject `NULL` inputs.) The output function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The output function must return type `cstring` . Output functions are not invoked for `NULL` values.

The optional receive_function converts the type's external binary representation to the internal representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary input. The binary representation should be chosen to be cheap to convert to internal form, while being reasonably portable. (For example, the standard integer data types use network byte order as the external binary representation, while the internal representation is in the machine's native byte order.) The receive function should perform adequate checking to ensure that the value is valid. The receive function may be declared as taking one argument of type `internal` , or as taking three arguments of types `internal` , `oid` , `integer` . The first argument is a pointer to a `StringInfo` buffer holding the received byte string; the optional arguments are the same as for the text input function. The receive function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, a receive function should be declared `STRICT` ; if it is not, it will be called with a `NULL` first parameter when reading a NULL input value. The function must still return `NULL` in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain receive functions, which may need to reject `NULL` inputs.) Similarly, the optional send_function converts from the internal representation to the external binary representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary output. The send function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The send function must return type `bytea` . Send functions are not invoked for `NULL` values.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The optional type_modifier_input_function and type_modifier_output_function are required if the type supports modifiers. Modifiers are optional constraints attached to a type declaration, such as `char(5)` or `numeric(30,2)`. While WarehousePG allows user-defined types to take one or more simple constants or identifiers as modifiers, this information must fit into a single non-negative integer value for storage in the system catalogs. WarehousePG passes the declared modifier(s) to the type_modifier_input_function in the form of a `cstring` array. The modifier input function must check the values for validity, throwing an error if they are incorrect. If the values are correct, the modifier input function returns a single non-negative integer value that WarehousePG stores as the column `typmod`. Type modifiers are rejected if the type was not defined with a type_modifier_input_function. The type_modifier_output_function converts the internal integer `typmod` value back to the correct form for user display. The modifier output function must return a `cstring` value that is the exact string to append to the type name. For example, `numeric`'s function might return `(30,2)`. The type_modifier_output_function is optional. When not specified, the default display format is the stored `typmod` integer value enclosed in parentheses.

You should at this point be wondering how the input and output functions can be declared to have results or arguments of the new type, when they have to be created before the new type can be created. The answer is that the type should first be defined as a shell type, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command `CREATE TYPE name`, with no additional parameters. Then the I/O functions can be defined referencing the shell type. Finally, `CREATE TYPE` with a full definition replaces the shell entry with a complete, valid type definition, after which the new type can be used normally.

The like_type parameter provides an alternative method for specifying the basic representation properties of a data type: copy them from some existing type. The values `internallength`, `passedbyvalue`, `alignment`, and `storage` are copied from the named type. (It is possible, though usually undesirable, to override some of these values by specifying them along with the `LIKE` clause.) Specifying representation this way is especially useful when the low-level implementation of the new type "piggybacks" on an existing type in some fashion.

While the details of the new type's internal representation are only known to the I/O functions and other functions you create to work with the type, there are several properties of the internal representation that must be declared to WarehousePG. Foremost of these is internallength. Base data types can be fixed-length, in which case internallength is a positive integer, or variable length, indicated by setting internallength to `VARIABLE`. (Internally, this is represented by setting `typlen` to `-1`.) The internal representation of all variable-length types must start with a 4-byte integer giving the total length of this value of the type.

The optional flag `PASSEDBYVALUE` indicates that values of this data type are passed by value, rather than by reference. You may not pass by value types whose internal representation is larger than the size of the `Datum` type (4 bytes on most machines, 8 bytes on a few).

The alignment parameter specifies the storage alignment required for the data type. The allowed values equate to alignment on 1, 2, 4, or 8 byte boundaries. Note that variable-length types must have an alignment of at least 4, since they necessarily contain an `int4` as their first component.

The storage parameter allows selection of storage strategies for variable-length data types. (Only `plain` is allowed for fixed-length types.) `plain` specifies that data of the type will always be stored in-line and not compressed. `extended` specifies that the system will first try to compress a long data value, and will move the value out of the main table row if it's still too long. `external` allows the value to be moved out of the main table, but the system will not try to compress it. `main` allows compression, but discourages moving the value out of the main table. (Data items with this storage strategy may still be moved out of the main table if there is no other way to make a row fit, but they will be kept in the main table preferentially over `extended` and `external` items.)

A default value may be specified, in case a user wants columns of the data type to default to something other than the null value. Specify the default with the `DEFAULT` key word. (Such a default may be overridden by an explicit `DEFAULT` clause attached to a particular column.)

To indicate that a type is an array, specify the type of the array elements using the `ELEMENT` key word. For example, to define an array of 4-byte integers (int4), specify `ELEMENT = int4`. More details about array types appear below.

The *category* and *preferred* parameters can be used to help control which implicit cast WarehousePG applies in ambiguous situations. Each data type belongs to a category named by a single ASCII character, and each type is either "preferred" or not within its category. The parser will prefer casting to preferred types (but only from other types within the same category) when this rule helps resolve overloaded functions or operators. For types that have no implicit casts to or from any other types, it is sufficient to retain the default settings. However, for a group of related types that have implicit casts, it is often helpful to mark them all as belonging to a category and select one or two of the "most general" types as being preferred within the category. The *category* parameter is especially useful when you add a user-defined type to an existing built-in category, such as the numeric or string types. It is also possible to create new entirely-user-defined type categories. Select any ASCII character other than an upper-case letter to name such a category.

To indicate the delimiter to be used between values in the external representation of arrays of this type, `delimiter` can be set to a specific character. The default delimiter is the comma (,). Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element type, not the array type itself.

If the optional Boolean parameter collatable is true, column definitions and expressions of the type may carry collation information through use of the `COLLATE` clause. It is up to the implementations of the functions operating on the type to actually make use of the collation information; this does not happen automatically merely by marking the type collatable.

#### Array Types

Whenever a user-defined type is created, WarehousePG automatically creates an associated array type, whose name consists of the element type's name prepended with an underscore, and truncated if necessary to keep it less than `NAMEDATALEN` bytes long. (If the name so generated collides with an existing type name, the process is repeated until a non-colliding name is found.) This implicitly-created array type is variable length and uses the built-in input and output functions `array_in` and `array_out`. The array type tracks any changes in its element type's owner or schema, and is dropped if the element type is.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

You might reasonably ask why there is an `ELEMENT` option, if the system makes the correct array type automatically. The only case where it's useful to use `ELEMENT` is when you are making a fixed-length type that happens to be internally an array of a number of identical things, and you want to allow these things to be accessed directly by subscripting, in addition to whatever operations you plan to provide for the type as a whole. For example, type `point` is represented as just two floating-point numbers, each can be accessed using `point[0]` and `point[1]`. Note that this facility only works for fixed-length types whose internal form is exactly a sequence of identical fixed-length fields. A subscriptable variable-length type must have the generalized internal representation used by `array_in` and `array_out`. For historical reasons (i.e., this is clearly wrong but it's far too late to change it), subscripting of fixed-length array types starts from zero, rather than from one as for variable-length arrays.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a type to be created.

- attribute_name

  The name of an attribute (column) for the composite type.

- data_type

  The name of an existing data type to become a column of the composite type.

- collation

  The name of an existing collation to be associated with a column of a composite type, or with a range type.

- label

  A string literal representing the textual label associated with one value of an enum type.

- subtype

  The name of the element type that the range type will represent ranges of.

- subtype_operator_class

  The name of a b-tree operator class for the subtype.

- canonical_function

  The name of the canonicalization function for the range type.

- subtype_diff_function

  The name of a difference function for the subtype.

- input_function

  The name of a function that converts data from the type's external textual form to its internal form.

- output_function

  The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external textual form.

- receive_function

  The name of a function that converts data from the type's external binary form to its internal form.

- send_function

  The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external binary form.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- type_modifier_input_function

  The name of a function that converts an array of modifier(s) for the type to internal form.

- type_modifier_output_function

  The name of a function that converts the internal form of the type's modifier(s) to external textual form.

- internallength

  A numeric constant that specifies the length in bytes of the new type's internal representation. The default assumption is that it is variable-length.

- alignment

  The storage alignment requirement of the data type. Must be one of `char`, `int2`, `int4`, or `double`. The default is `int4`.

- storage

  The storage strategy for the data type. Must be one of `plain`, `external`, `extended`, or `main`. The default is `plain`.

- like_type

  The name of an existing data type that the new type will have the same representation as. The values internallength, passedbyvalue, alignment, and storage, are copied from that type, unless overridden by explicit specification elsewhere in this `CREATE TYPE` command.

- category

  The category code (a single ASCII character) for this type. The default is '`U`', signifying a user-defined type. You can find the other standard category codes in `pg_type` Category Codes. You may also assign unused ASCII characters to custom categories that you create.

- preferred

  `true` if this type is a preferred type within its type category, else `false`. The default value is `false`. Be careful when you create a new preferred type within an existing type category; this could cause surprising behaviour changes.

- default

  The default value for the data type. If this is omitted, the default is null.

- element

  The type being created is an array; this specifies the type of the array elements.

- delimiter

  The delimiter character to be used between values in arrays made of this type.

- collatable

  True if this type's operations can use collation information. The default is false.

- compression_type

  Set to `ZLIB` (the default), `ZSTD`, or `RLE_TYPE` to specify the type of compression used in columns of this type.

- compression_level

  For Zstd compression, set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 19 (highest compression ratio). For zlib compression, the valid range is from 1 to 9. For `RLE_TYPE`, the compression level can be set to an integer value from 1 (fastest compression) to 6 (highest compression ratio). The default compression level is 1.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- blocksize

  Set to the size, in bytes, for each block in the column. The `BLOCKSIZE` must be between 8192 and 2097152 bytes, and be a multiple of 8192. The default block size is 32768.

### Notes

User-defined type names cannot begin with the underscore character (_) and can only be 62 characters long (or in general `NAMEDATALEN - 2`, rather than the `NAMEDATALEN - 1` characters allowed for other names). Type names beginning with underscore are reserved for internally-created array type names.

WarehousePG does not support adding storage options for row or composite types.

Storage options defined at the table- and column- level override the default storage options defined for a scalar type.

Because there are no restrictions on use of a data type once it's been created, creating a base type or range type is tantamount to granting public execute permission on the functions mentioned in the type definition. (The creator of the type is therefore required to own these functions.) This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in a type definition. But you might want to think twice before designing a type in a way that would require 'secret' information to be used while converting it to or from external form.

### Examples

This example creates a composite type and uses it in a function definition:

```
CREATE TYPE compfoo AS (f1 int, f2 text);

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo() RETURNS SETOF compfoo AS $$
    SELECT fooid, fooname FROM foo
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

This example creates the enumerated type `mood` and uses it in a table definition.

```
CREATE TYPE mood AS ENUM ('sad', 'ok', 'happy');
CREATE TABLE person (
    name text,
    current_mood mood
);
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Moe', 'happy');
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood = 'happy';
 name | current_mood
------+--------------
 Moe  | happy
(1 row)
```

This example creates a range type:

```
CREATE TYPE float8_range AS RANGE (subtype = float8, subtype_diff = float8mi);
```

This example creates the base data type `box` and then uses the type in a table definition:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TYPE box;

CREATE FUNCTION my_box_in_function(cstring) RETURNS box AS
... ;

CREATE FUNCTION my_box_out_function(box) RETURNS cstring AS
... ;

CREATE TYPE box (
    INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function
);

CREATE TABLE myboxes (
    id integer,
    description box
);
```

If the internal structure of `box` were an array of four `float4` elements, we might instead use:

```
CREATE TYPE box (
    INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function,
    ELEMENT = float4
);
```

which would allow a box value's component numbers to be accessed by subscripting. Otherwise the type behaves the same as before.

This example creates a large object type and uses it in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE bigobj (
    INPUT = lo_filein, OUTPUT = lo_fileout,
    INTERNALLENGTH = VARIABLE
);

CREATE TABLE big_objs (
    id integer,
    obj bigobj
    );
```

### Compatibility

The first form of the `CREATE TYPE` command, which creates a composite type, conforms to the SQL standard. The other forms are WarehousePG extensions. The `CREATE TYPE` statement in the SQL standard also defines other forms that are not implemented in WarehousePG.

The ability to create a composite type with zero attributes is a WarehousePG-specific deviation from the standard (analogous to the same case in `CREATE TABLE`).

### See Also

ALTER TYPE, CREATE DOMAIN, CREATE FUNCTION, DROP TYPE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.79 CREATE USER

Defines a new database role with the `LOGIN` privilege by default.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE USER <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

where option can be:

```
      SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
    | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
    | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
    | CREATEUSER | NOCREATEUSER
    | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE
      [ ( <attribute>='<value>'[, ...] ) ]
           where <attributes> and <value> are:
           type='readable'|'writable'
           protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
    | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
    | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
    | REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
    | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
    | [ ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '<password>'
    | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'
    | IN ROLE <role_name> [, ...]
    | IN GROUP <role_name>
    | ROLE <role_name> [, ...]
    | ADMIN <role_name> [, ...]
    | USER <role_name> [, ...]
    | SYSID <uid>
    | RESOURCE QUEUE <queue_name>
    | RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>
    | [ DENY <deny_point> ]
    | [ DENY BETWEEN <deny_point> AND <deny_point>]
```

### Description

`CREATE USER` is an alias for CREATE ROLE.

The only difference between `CREATE ROLE` and `CREATE USER` is that `LOGIN` is assumed by default with `CREATE USER`, whereas `NOLOGIN` is assumed by default with `CREATE ROLE`.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE USER` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.80 CREATE USER MAPPING

Defines a new mapping of a user to a foreign server.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
    [ OPTIONS ( <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

### Description

`CREATE USER MAPPING` defines a mapping of a user to a foreign server. You must be the owner of the server to define user mappings for it.

### Parameters

- username

  The name of an existing user that is mapped to the foreign server. `CURRENT_USER` and `USER` match the name of the current user. `PUBLIC` is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

- servername

  The name of an existing server for which WarehousePG is to create the user mapping.

- OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] )

  The options for the new user mapping. The options typically define the actual user name and password of the mapping. Option names must be unique. The option names and values are specific to the server's foreign-data wrapper.

### Examples

Create a user mapping for user `bob`, server `foo`:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (user 'bob', password 'secret');
```

### Compatibility

`CREATE USER MAPPING` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

### See Also

ALTER USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING, CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, CREATE SERVER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.81 CREATE VIEW

Defines a new view.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] [TEMP | TEMPORARY] [RECURSIVE] VIEW <name> [ ( <column_name> [, ...] ) ]
    [ WITH ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] ) ]
    AS <query>
    [ WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION ]
```

### Description

`CREATE VIEW` defines a view of a query. The view is not physically materialized. Instead, the query is run every time the view is referenced in a query.

`CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is similar, but if a view of the same name already exists, it is replaced. The new query must generate the same columns that were generated by the existing view query (that is, the same column names in the same order, and with the same data types), but it may add additional columns to the end of the list. The calculations giving rise to the output columns may be completely different.

If a schema name is given then the view is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary views exist in a special schema, so a schema name may not be given when creating a temporary view. The name of the view must be distinct from the name of any other view, table, sequence, index or foreign table in the same schema.

### Parameters

- TEMPORARY | TEMP

  If specified, the view is created as a temporary view. Temporary views are automatically dropped at the end of the current session. Existing permanent relations with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary view exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. If any of the tables referenced by the view are temporary, the view is created as a temporary view (whether `TEMPORARY` is specified or not).

- RECURSIVE

  Creates a recursive view. The syntax

  ```
  CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW [ <schema> . ] <view_name> (<column_names>) AS SELECT <...>;
  ```

  is equivalent to

  ```
  CREATE VIEW [ <schema> . ] <view_name> AS WITH RECURSIVE <view_name> (<column_names>) AS (SELECT <...>) SELECT
  <column_names> FROM <view_name>;
  ```

  A view column name list must be specified for a recursive view.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a view to be created.

- column_name

  An optional list of names to be used for columns of the view. If not given, the column names are deduced from the query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- WITH ( `view_option_name` [= `view_option_value` ] [, ... ] )

  This clause specifies optional parameters for a view; the following parameters are supported:

  - `check_option` (string)

    This parameter may be either `local` or `cascaded`, and is equivalent to specifying `WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION` (see below). This option can be changed on existing views using ALTER VIEW.

  - `security_barrier` (boolean)

    This should be used if the view is intended to provide row-level security.

- query

  A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the columns and rows of the view.

### Notes

Views in WarehousePG are read only. The system will not allow an insert, update, or delete on a view. You can get the effect of an updatable view by creating rewrite rules on the view into appropriate actions on other tables. For more information see `CREATE RULE`.

Be careful that the names and data types of the view's columns will be assigned the way you want. For example:

```
CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT 'Hello World';
```

is bad form in two ways: the column name defaults to `?column?`, and the column data type defaults to `unknown`. If you want a string literal in a view's result, use something like:

```
CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT text 'Hello World' AS hello;
```

Access to tables referenced in the view is determined by permissions of the view owner not the current user (even if the current user is a superuser). This can be confusing in the case of superusers, since superusers typically have access to all objects. In the case of a view, even superusers must be explicitly granted access to tables referenced in the view if they are not the owner of the view.

However, functions called in the view are treated the same as if they had been called directly from the query using the view. Therefore the user of a view must have permissions to call any functions used by the view.

If you create a view with an `ORDER BY` clause, the `ORDER BY` clause is ignored when you do a `SELECT` from the view.

When `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is used on an existing view, only the view's defining `SELECT` rule is changed. Other view properties, including ownership, permissions, and non- `SELECT` rules, remain unchanged. You must own the view to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

### Examples

Create a view consisting of all comedy films:

```
CREATE VIEW comedies AS SELECT * FROM films
WHERE kind = 'comedy';
```

This will create a view containing the columns that are in the `film` table at the time of view creation. Though `*` was used to create the view, columns added later to the table will not be part of the view.

Create a view that gets the top ten ranked baby names:

```
CREATE VIEW topten AS SELECT name, rank, gender, year FROM
names, rank WHERE rank < '11' AND names.id=rank.id;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Create a recursive view consisting of the numbers from 1 to 100:

```
CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW public.nums_1_100 (n) AS
    VALUES (1)
UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM nums_1_100 WHERE n < 100;
```

Notice that although the recursive view's name is schema-qualified in this `CREATE VIEW` command, its internal self-reference is not schema-qualified. This is because the implicitly-created CTE's name cannot be schema-qualified.

### Compatibility

The SQL standard specifies some additional capabilities for the `CREATE VIEW` statement that are not in WarehousePG. The optional clauses for the full SQL command in the standard are:

- **CHECK OPTION** — This option has to do with updatable views. All `INSERT` and `UPDATE` commands on the view will be checked to ensure data satisfy the view-defining condition (that is, the new data would be visible through the view). If they do not, the update will be rejected.
- **LOCAL** — Check for integrity on this view.
- **CASCADED** — Check for integrity on this view and on any dependent view. `CASCADED` is assumed if neither `CASCADED` nor `LOCAL` is specified.

`CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is a WarehousePG language extension. So is the concept of a temporary view.

### See Also

SELECT, DROP VIEW, CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.82 DEALLOCATE

Deallocates a prepared statement.

### Synopsis

```
DEALLOCATE [PREPARE] <name>
```

### Description

`DEALLOCATE` is used to deallocate a previously prepared SQL statement. If you do not explicitly deallocate a prepared statement, it is deallocated when the session ends.

For more information on prepared statements, see PREPARE.

### Parameters

- PREPARE

  Optional key word which is ignored.

- name

  The name of the prepared statement to deallocate.

### Examples

Deallocated the previously prepared statement named `insert_names`:

```
DEALLOCATE insert_names;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a `DEALLOCATE` statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL.

### See Also

EXECUTE, PREPARE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.83 DECLARE

Defines a cursor.

### Synopsis

```
DECLARE <name> [BINARY] [INSENSITIVE] [NO SCROLL] [PARALLEL RETRIEVE] CURSOR
     [{WITH | WITHOUT} HOLD]
     FOR <query> [FOR READ ONLY]
```

### Description

`DECLARE` allows a user to create a cursor, which can be used to retrieve a small number of rows at a time out of a larger query. Cursors can return data either in text or in binary format using FETCH.

> **Note** This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different, see PL/pgSQL.

Normal cursors return data in text format, the same as a `SELECT` would produce. Since data is stored natively in binary format, the system must do a conversion to produce the text format. Once the information comes back in text form, the client application may need to convert it to a binary format to manipulate it. In addition, data in the text format is often larger in size than in the binary format. Binary cursors return the data in a binary representation that may be more easily manipulated. Nevertheless, if you intend to display the data as text anyway, retrieving it in text form will save you some effort on the client side.

As an example, if a query returns a value of one from an integer column, you would get a string of 1 with a default cursor whereas with a binary cursor you would get a 4-byte field containing the internal representation of the value (in big-endian byte order).

Binary cursors should be used carefully. Many applications, including psql, are not prepared to handle binary cursors and expect data to come back in the text format.

> **Note** When the client application uses the 'extended query' protocol to issue a `FETCH` command, the Bind protocol message specifies whether data is to be retrieved in text or binary format. This choice overrides the way that the cursor is defined. The concept of a binary cursor as such is thus obsolete when using extended query protocol — any cursor can be treated as either text or binary.

A cursor can be specified in the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause of the UPDATE or DELETE statement to update or delete table data. The `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement can only be run on the server, for example in an interactive psql session or a script. Language extensions such as PL/pgSQL do not have support for updatable cursors.

#### Parallel Retrieve Cursors

WarehousePG supports a special type of cursor, a parallel retrieve cursor. You can use a parallel retrieve cursor to retrieve query results, in parallel, directly from the WarehousePG segments, bypassing the WarehousePG coordinator segment.

Parallel retrieve cursors do not support the `WITH HOLD` clause. WarehousePG ignores the `BINARY` clause when you declare a parallel retrieve cursor.

You open a special retrieve session to each parallel retrieve cursor endpoint, and use the RETRIEVE command to retrieve the query results from a parallel retrieve cursor.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the cursor to be created.

- BINARY

  Causes the cursor to return data in binary rather than in text format.

  > **Note** WarehousePG ignores the `BINARY` clause when you declare a `PARALLEL RETRIEVE` cursor.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- INSENSITIVE

  Indicates that data retrieved from the cursor should be unaffected by updates to the tables underlying the cursor while the cursor exists. In WarehousePG, all cursors are insensitive. This key word currently has no effect and is present for compatibility with the SQL standard.

- NO SCROLL

  A cursor cannot be used to retrieve rows in a nonsequential fashion. This is the default behavior in WarehousePG, since scrollable cursors (`SCROLL`) are not supported.

- PARALLEL RETRIEVE

  Declare a parallel retrieve cursor. A parallel retrieve cursor is a special type of cursor that you can use to retrieve results directly from WarehousePG segments, in parallel.

- WITH HOLD

- WITHOUT HOLD

  `WITH HOLD` specifies that the cursor may continue to be used after the transaction that created it successfully commits. `WITHOUT HOLD` specifies that the cursor cannot be used outside of the transaction that created it. `WITHOUT HOLD` is the default.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support declaring a `PARALLEL RETRIEVE` cursor with the `WITH HOLD` clause. `WITH HOLD` also cannot not be specified when the `query` includes a `FOR UPDATE` or `FOR SHARE` clause.

- query

  A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

  If the cursor is used in the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause of the UPDATE or DELETE command, the `SELECT` command must satisfy the following conditions:

  - Cannot reference a view or external table.

  - References only one table.

    The table must be updatable. For example, the following are not updatable: table functions, set-returning functions, append-only tables, columnar tables.

  - Cannot contain any of the following: - A grouping clause - A set operation such as `UNION ALL` or `UNION DISTINCT` - A sorting clause - A windowing clause - A join or a self-join

    Specifying the `FOR UPDATE` clause in the `SELECT` command prevents other sessions from changing the rows between the time they are fetched and the time they are updated. Without the `FOR UPDATE` clause, a subsequent use of the `UPDATE` or `DELETE` command with the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause has no effect if the row was changed since the cursor was created.

    > **Note** Specifying the `FOR UPDATE` clause in the `SELECT` command locks the entire table, not just the selected rows.

- FOR READ ONLY

  `FOR READ ONLY` indicates that the cursor is used in a read-only mode.

### Notes

Unless `WITH HOLD` is specified, the cursor created by this command can only be used within the current transaction. Thus, `DECLARE` without `WITH HOLD` is useless outside a transaction block: the cursor would survive only to the completion of the statement. Therefore WarehousePG reports an error if this command is used outside a transaction block. Use `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` (or `ROLLBACK`) to define a transaction block.

If `WITH HOLD` is specified and the transaction that created the cursor successfully commits, the cursor can continue to be accessed by subsequent transactions in the same session. (But if the creating transaction ends prematurely, the cursor is removed.) A cursor created with `WITH HOLD` is closed when an explicit `CLOSE` command is issued on it, or the session ends. In the current implementation, the rows represented by a held cursor are copied into a temporary file or memory area so that they remain available for subsequent transactions.

If you create a cursor with the `DECLARE` command in a transaction, you cannot use the `SET` command in the transaction until you close the cursor with the `CLOSE` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Scrollable cursors are not currently supported in WarehousePG. You can only use `FETCH` or `RETRIEVE` to move the cursor position forward, not backwards.

`DECLARE...FOR UPDATE` is not supported with append-optimized tables.

You can see all available cursors by querying the pg_cursors system view.

### Examples

Declare a cursor:

```
DECLARE mycursor CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM mytable;
```

Declare a parallel retrieve cursor for the same query:

```
DECLARE myprcursor PARALLEL RETRIEVE CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM mytable;
```

### Compatibility

SQL standard allows cursors only in embedded SQL and in modules. WarehousePG permits cursors to be used interactively.

WarehousePG does not implement an `OPEN` statement for cursors. A cursor is considered to be open when it is declared.

The SQL standard allows cursors to move both forward and backward. All WarehousePG cursors are forward moving only (not scrollable).

Binary cursors are a WarehousePG extension.

The SQL standard makes no provisions for parallel retrieve cursors.

### See Also

CLOSE, DELETE, FETCH, MOVE, RETRIEVE, SELECT, UPDATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.84 DELETE

Deletes rows from a table.

### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
DELETE FROM [ONLY] <table> [[AS] <alias>]
      [USING <usinglist>]
      [WHERE <condition> | WHERE CURRENT OF <cursor_name>]
      [RETURNING * | <output_expression> [[AS] <output_name>] [, …]]
```

### Description

`DELETE` deletes rows that satisfy the `WHERE` clause from the specified table. If the `WHERE` clause is absent, the effect is to delete all rows in the table. The result is a valid, but empty table.

By default, `DELETE` will delete rows in the specified table and all its child tables. If you wish to delete only from the specific table mentioned, you must use the `ONLY` clause.

There are two ways to delete rows in a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the `USING` clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

If the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause is specified, the row that is deleted is the one most recently fetched from the specified cursor.

The `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause is not supported with replicated tables.

The optional `RETURNING` clause causes `DELETE` to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually deleted. Any expression using the table's columns, and/or columns of other tables mentioned in `USING`, can be computed. The syntax of the `RETURNING` list is identical to that of the output list of `SELECT`.

> **Note** The `RETURNING` clause is not supported when deleting from append-optimized tables.

You must have the `DELETE` privilege on the table to delete from it.

> **Note** As the default, WarehousePG acquires an `EXCLUSIVE` lock on tables for `DELETE` operations on heap tables. When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled, the lock mode for `DELETE` operations on heap tables is `ROW EXCLUSIVE`. See Global Deadlock Detector.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, a `DELETE` command returns a command tag of the form

```
DELETE <count>
```

The count is the number of rows deleted. If count is 0, no rows were deleted by the query (this is not considered an error).

If the `DELETE` command contains a `RETURNING` clause, the result will be similar to that of a `SELECT` statement containing the columns and values defined in the `RETURNING` list, computed over the row(s) deleted by the command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- with_query

  The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the `DELETE` query.

  For a `DELETE` command that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can only contain `SELECT` statements, the `WITH` clause cannot contain a data-modifying command ( `INSERT` , `UPDATE` , or `DELETE` ).

  See WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) and SELECT for details.

- ONLY

  If specified, delete rows from the named table only. When not specified, any tables inheriting from the named table are also processed.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

- alias

  A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given `DELETE FROM foo AS f` , the remainder of the `DELETE` statement must refer to this table as `f` not `foo` .

- usinglist

  A list of table expressions, allowing columns from other tables to appear in the `WHERE` condition. This is similar to the list of tables that can be specified in the `FROM` Clause of a SELECT statement; for example, an alias for the table name can be specified. Do not repeat the target table in the `usinglist` , unless you wish to set up a self-join.

- condition

  An expression returning a value of type `boolean` , which determines the rows that are to be deleted.

- cursor_name

  The name of the cursor to use in a `WHERE CURRENT OF` condition. The row to be deleted is the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a simple non-grouping query on the `DELETE` target table.

  `WHERE CURRENT OF` cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition.

  The `DELETE...WHERE CURRENT OF` cursor statement can only be run on the server, for example in an interactive psql session or a script. Language extensions such as PL/pgSQL do not have support for updatable cursors.

  See DECLARE for more information about creating cursors.

- output_expression

  An expression to be computed and returned by the `DELETE` command after each row is deleted. The expression can use any column names of the table or table(s) listed in `USING` . Write * to return all columns.

- output_name

  A name to use for a returned column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

WarehousePG lets you reference columns of other tables in the `WHERE` condition by specifying the other tables in the `USING` clause. For example, to the name `Hannah` from the `rank` table, one might do:

```
DELETE FROM rank USING names WHERE names.id = rank.id AND
name = 'Hannah';
```

What is essentially happening here is a join between `rank` and `names`, with all successfully joined rows being marked for deletion. This syntax is not standard. However, this join style is usually easier to write and faster to run than a more standard sub-select style, such as:

```
DELETE FROM rank WHERE id IN (SELECT id FROM names WHERE name
= 'Hannah');
```

Execution of `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands directly on a specific partition (child table) of a partitioned table is not supported. Instead, these commands must be run on the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command.

For a partitioned table, all the child tables are locked during the `DELETE` operation when the Global Deadlock Detector is not enabled (the default). Only some of the leaf child tables are locked when the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled. For information about the Global Deadlock Detector, see Global Deadlock Detector.

### Examples

Delete all films but musicals:

```
DELETE FROM films WHERE kind <> 'Musical';
```

Clear the table films:

```
DELETE FROM films;
```

Delete completed tasks, returning full details of the deleted rows:

```
DELETE FROM tasks WHERE status = 'DONE' RETURNING *;
```

Delete using a join:

```
DELETE FROM rank USING names WHERE names.id = rank.id AND
name = 'Hannah';
```

### Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `USING` and `RETURNING` clauses are WarehousePG extensions, as is the ability to use `WITH` with `DELETE`.

### See Also

DECLARE, TRUNCATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.85 DISCARD

Discards the session state.

### Synopsis

```
DISCARD { ALL | PLANS | TEMPORARY | TEMP }
```

### Description

`DISCARD` releases internal resources associated with a database session. This command is useful for partially or fully resetting the session's state. There are several subcommands to release different types of resources. `DISCARD ALL` is not supported by WarehousePG.

### Parameters

- PLANS

  Releases all cached query plans, forcing re-planning to occur the next time the associated prepared statement is used.

- SEQUENCES

  Discards all cached sequence-related state, including any preallocated sequence values that have not yet been returned by `nextval()`. (See `CREATE SEQUENCE` for a description of preallocated sequence values.)

- TEMPORARY/TEMP

  Drops all temporary tables created in the current session.

- ALL

  Releases all temporary resources associated with the current session and resets the session to its initial state.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support `DISCARD ALL` and returns a notice message if you attempt to run the command.

  As an alternative, you can the run following commands to release temporary session resources:

  ```
  SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT;
  RESET ALL;
  DEALLOCATE ALL;
  CLOSE ALL;
  SELECT pg_advisory_unlock_all();
  DISCARD PLANS;
  DISCARD SEQUENCES;
  DISCARD TEMP;
  ```

### Compatibility

`DISCARD` is a WarehousePG extension.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.86 DO

Runs anonymous code block as a transient anonymous function.

### Synopsis

```
DO [ LANGUAGE <lang_name> ] <code>
```

### Description

`DO` Runs an anonymous code block, or in other words a transient anonymous function in a procedural language.

The code block is treated as though it were the body of a function with no parameters, returning void. It is parsed and run a single time.

The optional `LANGUAGE` clause can appear either before or after the code block.

Anonymous blocks are procedural language structures that provide the capability to create and run procedural code on the fly without persistently storing the code as database objects in the system catalogs. The concept of anonymous blocks is similar to UNIX shell scripts, which enable several manually entered commands to be grouped and run as one step. As the name implies, anonymous blocks do not have a name, and for this reason they cannot be referenced from other objects. Although built dynamically, anonymous blocks can be easily stored as scripts in the operating system files for repetitive execution.

Anonymous blocks are standard procedural language blocks. They carry the syntax and obey the rules that apply to the procedural language, including declaration and scope of variables, execution, exception handling, and language usage.

The compilation and execution of anonymous blocks are combined in one step, while a user-defined function needs to be re-defined before use each time its definition changes.

### Parameters

- code

  The procedural language code to be run. This must be specified as a string literal, just as with the `CREATE FUNCTION` command. Use of a dollar-quoted literal is recommended. Optional keywords have no effect. These procedural languages are supported: PL/pgSQL ( `plpgsql` ), PL/Python ( `plpythonu` ), and PL/Perl ( `plperl` and `plperlu` ).

- lang_name

  The name of the procedural language that the code is written in. The default is `plpgsql` . The language must be installed on the WarehousePG cluster and registered in the database.

### Notes

The PL/pgSQL language is installed on the WarehousePG cluster and is registered in a user created database. The PL/Python and PL/Perl languages are installed by default, but not registered. Other languages are not installed or registered. The system catalog `pg_language` contains information about the registered languages in a database.

The user must have `USAGE` privilege for the procedural language, or must be a superuser if the language is untrusted. This is the same privilege requirement as for creating a function in the language.

Anonymous blocks do not support function volatility or `EXECUTE ON` attributes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

This PL/pgSQL example grants all privileges on all views in schema *public* to role `webuser`:

```
DO $$DECLARE r record;
BEGIN
    FOR r IN SELECT table_schema, table_name FROM information_schema.tables
             WHERE table_type = 'VIEW' AND table_schema = 'public'
    LOOP
        EXECUTE 'GRANT ALL ON ' || quote_ident(r.table_schema) || '.' || quote_ident(r.table_name) || ' TO webuser';
    END LOOP;
END$$;
```

This PL/pgSQL example determines if a WarehousePG user is a superuser. In the example, the anonymous block retrieves the input value from a temporary table.

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE list AS VALUES ('gpadmin') DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY;

DO $$
DECLARE
  name TEXT := 'gpadmin' ;
  superuser TEXT := '' ;
  t1_row   pg_authid%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
  SELECT * INTO t1_row FROM pg_authid, list
     WHERE pg_authid.rolname = name ;
  IF t1_row.rolsuper = 'f' THEN
    superuser := 'not ';
  END IF ;
  RAISE NOTICE 'user % is %a superuser', t1_row.rolname, superuser ;
END $$ LANGUAGE plpgsql ;
```

> **Note** The example PL/pgSQL uses `SELECT` with the `INTO` clause. It is different from the SQL command `SELECT INTO`.

### Compatibility

There is no `DO` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE LANGUAGE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.87 DROP AGGREGATE

Removes an aggregate function.

### Synopsis

```
DROP AGGREGATE [IF EXISTS] <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

where aggregate_signature is:

```
* |
[ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

### Description

`DROP AGGREGATE` will delete an existing aggregate function. To run this command the current user must be the owner of the aggregate function.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the aggregate does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: `IN` or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is `IN`.

- argname

  The name of an argument. Note that `DROP AGGREGATE` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function's identity.

- argtype

  An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write `*` in place of the list of input data types. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write `ORDER BY` between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the aggregate function.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the aggregate function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

Alternative syntaxes for referencing ordered-set aggregates are described under `ALTER AGGREGATE`.

### Examples

To remove the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer`:

```
DROP AGGREGATE myavg(integer);
```

To remove the hypothetical-set aggregate function `myrank`, which takes an arbitrary list of ordering columns and a matching list of direct arguments:

```
DROP AGGREGATE myrank(VARIADIC "any" ORDER BY VARIADIC "any");
```

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP AGGREGATE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER AGGREGATE, CREATE AGGREGATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.88 DROP CAST

Removes a cast.

### Synopsis

```
DROP CAST [IF EXISTS] (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP CAST` will delete a previously defined cast. To be able to drop a cast, you must own the source or the target data type. These are the same privileges that are required to create a cast.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the cast does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- sourcetype

  The name of the source data type of the cast.

- targettype

  The name of the target data type of the cast.

- CASCADE

- RESTRICT

  These keywords have no effect since there are no dependencies on casts.

### Examples

To drop the cast from type `text` to type `int`:

```
DROP CAST (text AS int);
```

### Compatibility

There `DROP CAST` command conforms to the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

CREATE CAST

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.89 DROP COLLATION

Removes a previously defined collation.

### Synopsis

```
DROP COLLATION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Parameters

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the collation does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified.

- `CASCADE`

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the collation.

- `RESTRICT`

  Refuse to drop the collation if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Notes

`DROP COLLATION` removes a previously defined collation. To be able to drop a collation, you must own the collation.

### Examples

To drop the collation named `german`:

```
DROP COLLATION german;
```

### Compatibility

The `DROP COLLATION` command conforms to the SQL standard, apart from the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER COLLATION, CREATE COLLATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.90 DROP CONVERSION

Removes a conversion.

### Synopsis

```
DROP CONVERSION [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP CONVERSION` removes a previously defined conversion. To be able to drop a conversion, you must own the conversion.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the conversion does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the conversion. The conversion name may be schema-qualified.

- CASCADE

- RESTRICT

  These keywords have no effect since there are no dependencies on conversions.

### Examples

Drop the conversion named `myname`:

```
DROP CONVERSION myname;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP CONVERSION` statement in the SQL standard. The standard has `CREATE TRANSLATION` and `DROP TRANSLATION` statements that are similar to the WarehousePG `CREATE CONVERSION` and `DROP CONVERSION` statements.

### See Also

ALTER CONVERSION, CREATE CONVERSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.91 DROP DATABASE

Removes a database.

### Synopsis

```
DROP DATABASE [IF EXISTS] <name>
```

### Description

`DROP DATABASE` drops a database. It removes the catalog entries for the database and deletes the directory containing the data. It can only be run by the database owner. Also, it cannot be run while you or anyone else are connected to the target database. (Connect to `postgres` or any other database to issue this command.)

> **Caution** `DROP DATABASE` cannot be undone. Use it with care!

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the database to remove.

### Notes

`DROP DATABASE` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

This command cannot be run while connected to the target database. Thus, it might be more convenient to use the program `dropdb` instead, which is a wrapper around this command.

### Examples

Drop the database named `testdb`:

```
DROP DATABASE testdb;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP DATABASE` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER DATABASE, CREATE DATABASE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.92 DROP DOMAIN

Removes a domain.

### Synopsis

```
DROP DOMAIN [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]  [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP DOMAIN` removes a previously defined domain. You must be the owner of a domain to drop it.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the domain does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing domain.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the domain (such as table columns).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the domain if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Drop the domain named `zipcode`:

```
DROP DOMAIN zipcode;
```

### Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except for the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER DOMAIN, CREATE DOMAIN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.93 DROP EXTENSION

Removes an extension from a WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
DROP EXTENSION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP EXTENSION` removes extensions from the database. Dropping an extension causes its component objects to be dropped as well.

> **Note** The required supporting extension files what were installed to create the extension are not deleted. The files must be manually removed from the WarehousePG hosts.

You must own the extension to use `DROP EXTENSION`.

This command fails if any of the extension objects are in use in the database. For example, if a table is defined with columns of the extension type. Add the `CASCADE` option to forcibly remove those dependent objects.

> **Important** Before issuing a `DROP EXTENSION` with the `CASCADE` keyword, you should be aware of all object that depend on the extension to avoid unintended consequences.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the extension does not exist. A notice is issued.

- name

  The name of an installed extension.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the extension, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects. See the PostgreSQL information about Dependency Tracking.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop an extension if any objects depend on it, other than the extension member objects. This is the default.

### Compatibility

`DROP EXTENSION` is a WarehousePG extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE EXTENSION, ALTER EXTENSION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.94 DROP EXTERNAL TABLE

Removes an external table definition.

### Synopsis

```
DROP EXTERNAL [WEB] TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP EXTERNAL TABLE` drops an existing external table definition from the database system. The external data sources or files are not deleted. To run this command you must be the owner of the external table.

### Parameters

- WEB

  Optional keyword for dropping external web tables.

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the external table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing external table.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the external table (such as views).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the external table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the external table named `staging` if it exists:

```
DROP EXTERNAL TABLE IF EXISTS staging;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP EXTERNAL TABLE` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.95 DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Removes a foreign-data wrapper.

### Synopsis

```
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` removes an existing foreign-data wrapper from the current database. A foreign-data wrapper may be removed only by its owner.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the foreign-data wrapper does not exist. WarehousePG issues a notice in this case.

- name

  The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign-data wrapper (such as servers).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the foreign-data wrapper if any object depends on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Drop the foreign-data wrapper named `dbi`:

```
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The `IF EXISTS` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.96 DROP FOREIGN TABLE

Removes a foreign table.

### Synopsis

```
DROP FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP FOREIGN TABLE` removes an existing foreign table. Only the owner of a foreign table can remove it.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the foreign table does not exist. WarehousePG issues a notice in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the foreign table to drop.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign table (such as views).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the foreign table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Drop the foreign tables named `films` and `distributors`:

```
DROP FOREIGN TABLE films, distributors;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP FOREIGN TABLE` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), except that the standard only allows one foreign table to be dropped per command. The `IF EXISTS` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.97 DROP FUNCTION

Removes a function.

### Synopsis

```
DROP FUNCTION [IF EXISTS] name ( [ [argmode] [argname] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP FUNCTION` removes the definition of an existing function. To run this command the user must be the owner of the function. The argument types to the function must be specified, since several different functions may exist with the same name and different argument lists.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the function does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function.

- argmode

  The mode of an argument: either `IN`, `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that `DROP FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to `OUT` arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the `IN`, `INOUT`, and `VARIADIC` arguments.

- argname

  The name of an argument. Note that `DROP FUNCTION` does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

- argtype

  The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the function such as operators.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Drop the square root function:

```
DROP FUNCTION sqrt(integer);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

A `DROP FUNCTION` statement is defined in the SQL standard, but it is not compatible with this command.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, ALTER FUNCTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.98 DROP GROUP

Removes a database role.

### Synopsis

```
DROP GROUP [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

### Description

`DROP GROUP` is an alias for `DROP ROLE`. See DROP ROLE for more information.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP GROUP` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

DROP ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.99 DROP INDEX

Removes an index.

### Synopsis

```
DROP INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP INDEX` drops an existing index from the database system. To run this command you must be the owner of the index.

### Parameters

- CONCURRENTLY

  Drop the index without locking out concurrent selects, inserts, updates, and deletes on the index's table. A normal `DROP INDEX` acquires an exclusive lock on the table, blocking other accesses until the index drop can be completed. With this option, the command instead waits until conflicting transactions have completed.

  There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option. Only one index name can be specified, and the `CASCADE` option is not supported. (Thus, an index that supports a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint cannot be dropped this way.) Also, regular `DROP INDEX` commands can be performed within a transaction block, but `DROP INDEX CONCURRENTLY` cannot.

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing index.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the index.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the index if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the index `title_idx` :

```
DROP INDEX title_idx;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`DROP INDEX` is a WarehousePG language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER INDEX, CREATE INDEX, REINDEX

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.100 DROP LANGUAGE

Removes a procedural language.

### Synopsis

```
DROP [PROCEDURAL] LANGUAGE [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP LANGUAGE` will remove the definition of the previously registered procedural language. You must be a superuser or owner of the language to drop a language.

### Parameters

- PROCEDURAL

  Optional keyword - has no effect.

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the language does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of an existing procedural language. For backward compatibility, the name may be enclosed by single quotes.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the language (such as functions written in that language).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the language if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the procedural language `plsample`:

```
DROP LANGUAGE plsample;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP LANGUAGE` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER LANGUAGE, CREATE LANGUAGE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.101 DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW

Removes a materialized view.

### Synopsis

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW` drops an existing materialized view. To run this command, you must be the owner of the materialized view.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the materialized view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a materialized view to be dropped.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the materialized view (such as other materialized views, or regular views).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the materialized view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

This command removes the materialized view called `order_summary`.

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.102 DROP OPERATOR

Removes an operator.

### Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR [IF EXISTS] <name> ( {<lefttype> | NONE} ,
    {<righttype> | NONE} ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP OPERATOR` drops an existing operator from the database system. To run this command you must be the owner of the operator.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the operator does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

- lefttype

  The data type of the operator's left operand; write `NONE` if the operator has no left operand.

- righttype

  The data type of the operator's right operand; write `NONE` if the operator has no right operand.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the operator if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the power operator `a^b` for type `integer`:

```
DROP OPERATOR ^ (integer, integer);
```

Remove the left unary bitwise complement operator `~b` for type `bit`:

```
DROP OPERATOR ~ (none, bit);
```

Remove the right unary factorial operator `x!` for type `bigint`:

```
DROP OPERATOR ! (bigint, none);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP OPERATOR` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER OPERATOR, CREATE OPERATOR

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.103 DROP OPERATOR CLASS

Removes an operator class.

### Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR CLASS [IF EXISTS] <name> USING <index_method> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP OPERATOR` drops an existing operator class. To run this command you must be the owner of the operator class.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the operator class does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

- index_method

  The name of the index access method the operator class is for.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator class.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the operator class if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the B-tree operator class `widget_ops`:

```
DROP OPERATOR CLASS widget_ops USING btree;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use the operator class. Add `CASCADE` to drop such indexes along with the operator class.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.104 DROP OPERATOR FAMILY

Removes an operator family.

### Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY [IF EXISTS] <name> USING <index_method> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP OPERATOR FAMILY` drops an existing operator family. To run this command you must be the owner of the operator family.

`DROP OPERATOR FAMILY` includes dropping any operator classes contained in the family, but it does not drop any of the operators or functions referenced by the family. If there are any indexes depending on operator classes within the family, you will need to specify `CASCADE` for the drop to complete.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the operator family does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.

- index_method

  The name of the index access method the operator family is for.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator family.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the operator family if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the B-tree operator family `float_ops`:

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY float_ops USING btree;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use the operator family. Add `CASCADE` to drop such indexes along with the operator family.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP OPERATOR FAMILY` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.105 DROP OWNED

Removes database objects owned by a database role.

### Synopsis

```
DROP OWNED BY <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP OWNED` drops all the objects in the current database that are owned by one of the specified roles. Any privileges granted to the given roles on objects in the current database or on shared objects (databases, tablespaces) will also be revoked.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of a role whose objects will be dropped, and whose privileges will be revoked.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the affected objects.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the objects owned by a role if any other database objects depend on one of the affected objects. This is the default.

### Notes

`DROP OWNED` is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because `DROP OWNED` only affects the objects in the current database, it is usually necessary to run this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

Using the `CASCADE` option may make the command recurse to objects owned by other users.

The `REASSIGN OWNED` command is an alternative that reassigns the ownership of all the database objects owned by one or more roles. However, `REASSIGN OWNED` does not deal with privileges for other objects.

### Examples

Remove any database objects owned by the role named `sally`:

```
DROP OWNED BY sally;
```

### Compatibility

The `DROP OWNED` command is a WarehousePG extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

See Also

REASSIGN OWNED, DROP ROLE

Parent topic: SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.106 DROP PROTOCOL

Removes a external table data access protocol from a database.

### Synopsis

```
DROP PROTOCOL [IF EXISTS] <name>
```

### Description

`DROP PROTOCOL` removes the specified protocol from a database. A protocol name can be specified in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command to read data from or write data to an external data source.

You must be a superuser or the protocol owner to drop a protocol.

> **Caution** If you drop a data access prococol, external tables that have been defined with the protocol will no longer be able to access the external data source.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the protocol does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of an existing data access protocol.

### Notes

If you drop a data access protocol, the call handlers that defined in the database that are associated with the protocol are not dropped. You must drop the functions manually.

Shared libraries that were used by the protocol should also be removed from the WarehousePG hosts.

### Compatibility

`DROP PROTOCOL` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, CREATE PROTOCOL

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.107 DROP RESOURCE GROUP

Removes a resource group.

### Synopsis

```
DROP RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>
```

### Description

This command removes a resource group from WarehousePG. Only a superuser can drop a resource group. When you drop a resource group, the memory and CPU resources reserved by the group are returned to WarehousePG.

To drop a role resource group, the group cannot be assigned to any roles, nor can it have any statements pending or running in the group. If you drop a resource group that you created for an external component, the behavior is determined by the external component.

You cannot drop the pre-defined `admin_group` and `default_group` resource groups.

### Parameters

- group_name

  The name of the resource group to remove.

### Notes

You cannot submit a `DROP RESOURCE GROUP` command in an explicit transaction or sub-transaction.

Use ALTER ROLE to remove a resource group assigned to a specific user/role.

Perform the following query to view all of the currently active queries for all resource groups:

```
SELECT usename, query, waiting, pid,
    rsgid, rsgname, rsgqueueduration
  FROM pg_stat_activity;
```

To view the resource group assignments, perform the following query on the `pg_roles` and `pg_resgroup` system catalog tables:

```
SELECT rolname, rsgname
  FROM pg_roles, pg_resgroup
  WHERE pg_roles.rolresgroup=pg_resgroup.oid;
```

### Examples

Remove the resource group assigned to a role. This operation then assigns the default resource group `default_group` to the role:

```
ALTER ROLE bob RESOURCE GROUP NONE;
```

Remove the resource group named `adhoc`:

```
DROP RESOURCE GROUP adhoc;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

The `DROP RESOURCE GROUP` statement is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER RESOURCE GROUP, CREATE RESOURCE GROUP, ALTER ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.108 DROP RESOURCE QUEUE

Removes a resource queue.

### Synopsis

```
DROP RESOURCE QUEUE <queue_name>
```

### Description

This command removes a resource queue from WarehousePG. To drop a resource queue, the queue cannot have any roles assigned to it, nor can it have any statements waiting in the queue. Only a superuser can drop a resource queue.

### Parameters

- queue_name

  The name of a resource queue to remove.

### Notes

Use ALTER ROLE to remove a user from a resource queue.

To see all the currently active queries for all resource queues, perform the following query of the `pg_locks` table joined with the `pg_roles` and `pg_resqueue` tables:

```
SELECT rolname, rsqname, locktype, objid, pid,
mode, granted FROM pg_roles, pg_resqueue, pg_locks WHERE
pg_roles.rolresqueue=pg_locks.objid AND
pg_locks.objid=pg_resqueue.oid;
```

To see the roles assigned to a resource queue, perform the following query of the `pg_roles` and `pg_resqueue` system catalog tables:

```
SELECT rolname, rsqname FROM pg_roles, pg_resqueue WHERE
pg_roles.rolresqueue=pg_resqueue.oid;
```

### Examples

Remove a role from a resource queue (and move the role to the default resource queue, `pg_default`):

```
ALTER ROLE bob RESOURCE QUEUE NONE;
```

Remove the resource queue named `adhoc`:

```
DROP RESOURCE QUEUE adhoc;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

The `DROP RESOURCE QUEUE` statement is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE, CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE, ALTER ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.109 DROP ROLE

Removes a database role.

### Synopsis

```
DROP ROLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

### Description

`DROP ROLE` removes the specified role(s). To drop a superuser role, you must be a superuser yourself. To drop non-superuser roles, you must have `CREATEROLE` privilege.

A role cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database; an error will be raised if so. Before dropping the role, you must drop all the objects it owns (or reassign their ownership) and revoke any privileges the role has been granted on other objects. The REASSIGN OWNED and DROP OWNED commands can be useful for this purpose.

However, it is not necessary to remove role memberships involving the role; `DROP ROLE` automatically revokes any memberships of the target role in other roles, and of other roles in the target role. The other roles are not dropped nor otherwise affected.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the role does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the role to remove.

### Examples

Remove the roles named `sally` and `bob`:

```
DROP ROLE sally, bob;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard defines `DROP ROLE`, but it allows only one role to be dropped at a time, and it specifies different privilege requirements than WarehousePG uses.

### See Also

REASSIGN OWNED, DROP OWNED, CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE, SET ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.110 DROP RULE

Removes a rewrite rule.

### Synopsis

```
DROP RULE [IF EXISTS] <name> ON <table_name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP RULE` drops a rewrite rule from a table or view.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the rule does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the rule to remove.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the rule.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the rule if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the rewrite rule `sales_2006` on the table `sales`:

```
DROP RULE sales_2006 ON sales;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP RULE` is a WarehousePG language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER RULE, CREATE RULE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.111 DROP SCHEMA

Removes a schema.

### Synopsis

```
DROP SCHEMA [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP SCHEMA` removes schemas from the database. A schema can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. Note that the owner can drop the schema (and thereby all contained objects) even if they do not own some of the objects within the schema.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the schema does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the schema to remove.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drops any objects contained in the schema (tables, functions, etc.).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the schema if it contains any objects. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the schema `mystuff` from the database, along with everything it contains:

```
DROP SCHEMA mystuff CASCADE;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP SCHEMA` is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one schema to be dropped per command. Also, the `IF EXISTS` option is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE SCHEMA, ALTER SCHEMA

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.112 DROP SEQUENCE

Removes a sequence.

### Synopsis

```
DROP SEQUENCE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP SEQUENCE` removes a sequence generator table. You must own the sequence to drop it (or be a superuser).

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the sequence to remove.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the sequence.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the sequence if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the sequence `myserial`:

```
DROP SEQUENCE myserial;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP SEQUENCE` is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one sequence to be dropped per command. Also, the `IF EXISTS` option is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

ALTER SEQUENCE, CREATE SEQUENCE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.113 DROP SERVER

Removes a foreign server descriptor.

### Synopsis

```
DROP SERVER [ IF EXISTS ] <servername> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP SERVER` removes an existing foreign server descriptor. The user running this command must be the owner of the server.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the server does not exist. WarehousePG issues a notice in this case.

- servername

  The name of an existing server.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the server (such as user mappings).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the server if any object depends on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Drop the server named `foo` if it exists:

```
DROP SERVER IF EXISTS foo;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The `IF EXISTS` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE SERVER, ALTER SERVER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.114 DROP TABLE

Removes a table.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP TABLE` removes tables from the database. Only the table owner, the schema owner, and superuser can drop a table. To empty a table of rows without removing the table definition, use `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE`.

`DROP TABLE` always removes any indexes, rules, triggers, and constraints that exist for the target table. However, to drop a table that is referenced by a view, `CASCADE` must be specified. `CASCADE` will remove a dependent view entirely.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to remove.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the table (such as views).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the table `mytable`:

```
DROP TABLE mytable;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP TABLE` is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one table to be dropped per command. Also, the `IF EXISTS` option is a WarehousePG extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE, TRUNCATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.115 DROP TABLESPACE

Removes a tablespace.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TABLESPACE [IF EXISTS] <tablespace_name>
```

### Description

`DROP TABLESPACE` removes a tablespace from the system.

A tablespace can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. The tablespace must be empty of all database objects before it can be dropped. It is possible that objects in other databases may still reside in the tablespace even if no objects in the current database are using the tablespace. Also, if the tablespace is listed in the temp_tablespaces setting of any active session, `DROP TABLESPACE` might fail due to temporary files residing in the tablespace.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the tablespace does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- tablespace_name

  The name of the tablespace to remove.

### Notes

Run `DROP TABLESPACE` during a period of low activity to avoid issues due to concurrent creation of tables and temporary objects. When a tablespace is dropped, there is a small window in which a table could be created in the tablespace that is currently being dropped. If this occurs, WarehousePG returns a warning. This is an example of the `DROP TABLESPACE` warning.

```
testdb=# DROP TABLESPACE mytest;
WARNING:  tablespace with oid "16415" is not empty  (seg1 192.168.8.145:25433 pid=29023)
WARNING:  tablespace with oid "16415" is not empty  (seg0 192.168.8.145:25432 pid=29022)
WARNING:  tablespace with oid "16415" is not empty
DROP TABLESPACE
```

The table data in the tablespace directory is not dropped. You can use the ALTER TABLE command to change the tablespace defined for the table and move the data to an existing tablespace.

### Examples

Remove the tablespace `mystuff`:

```
DROP TABLESPACE mystuff;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

`DROP TABLESPACE` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.116 DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Removes a text search configuration.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` drops an existing text search configuration. To run this command you must be the owner of the configuration.

### Parameters

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the text search configuration does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

- `CASCADE`

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search configuration.

- `RESTRICT`

  Refuse to drop the text search configuration if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the text search configuration my_english:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_english;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that reference the configuration in `to_tsvector` calls. Add `CASCADE` to drop such indexes along with the text search configuration.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.117 DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Removes a text search dictionary.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` drops an existing text search dictionary. To run this command you must be the owner of the dictionary.

### Parameters

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the text search dictionary does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

- `CASCADE`

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search dictionary.

- `RESTRICT`

  Refuse to drop the text search dictionary if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the text search dictionary `english`:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the dictionary. Add `CASCADE` to drop such configurations along with the dictionary.

### Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.118 DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Remove a text search parser.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER` drops an existing text search parser. You must be a superuser to use this command.

### Parameters

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the text search parser does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

- `CASCADE`

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search parser.

- `RESTRICT`

  Refuse to drop the text search parser if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the text search parser `my_parser`:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the parser. Add `CASCADE` to drop such configurations along with the parser.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.119 DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Removes a text search template.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

### Description

`DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` drops an existing text search template. You must be a superuser to use this command.

You must be a superuser to use `ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE`.

### Parameters

- `IF EXISTS`

  Do not throw an error if the text search template does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- `name`

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

- `CASCADE`

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search template.

- `RESTRICT`

  Refuse to drop the text search template if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.120 DROP TYPE

Removes a data type.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TYPE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP TYPE` will remove a user-defined data type. Only the owner of a type can remove it.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the type does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the data type to remove.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the type (such as table columns, functions, operators).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the type if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the data type `box`;

```
DROP TYPE box;
```

### Compatibility

This command is similar to the corresponding command in the SQL standard, apart from the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a WarehousePG extension. But note that much of the `CREATE TYPE` command and the data type extension mechanisms in WarehousePG differ from the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER TYPE, CREATE TYPE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.121 DROP USER

Removes a database role.

### Synopsis

```
DROP USER [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

### Description

`DROP USER` is an alias for DROP ROLE. See DROP ROLE for more information.

### Compatibility

There is no `DROP USER` statement in the SQL standard. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

### See Also

DROP ROLE, CREATE USER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.122 DROP USER MAPPING

Removes a user mapping for a foreign server.

### Synopsis

```
DROP USER MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
```

### Description

`DROP USER MAPPING` removes an existing user mapping from a foreign server. To run this command, the current user must be the owner of the server containing the mapping.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the user mapping does not exist. WarehousePG issues a notice in this case.

- username

  User name of the mapping. `CURRENT_USER` and `USER` match the name of the current user. `PUBLIC` is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

- servername

  Server name of the user mapping.

### Examples

Drop the user mapping named `bob`, server `foo` if it exists:

```
DROP USER MAPPING IF EXISTS FOR bob SERVER foo;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The `IF EXISTS` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, ALTER USER MAPPING

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.123 DROP VIEW

Removes a view.

### Synopsis

```
DROP VIEW [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP VIEW` will remove an existing view. Only the owner of a view can remove it.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the view to remove.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the view (such as other views).

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the view `topten`:

```
DROP VIEW topten;
```

### Compatibility

`DROP VIEW` is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one view to be dropped per command. Also, the `IF EXISTS` option is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE VIEW, ALTER VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.124 END

Commits the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
END [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

### Description

`END` commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs. This command is a WarehousePG extension that is equivalent to COMMIT.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional keywords. They have no effect.

### Examples

Commit the current transaction:

```
END;
```

### Compatibility

`END` is a WarehousePG extension that provides functionality equivalent to COMMIT, which is specified in the SQL standard.

### See Also

BEGIN, ROLLBACK, COMMIT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.125 EXECUTE

Runs a prepared SQL statement.

### Synopsis

```
EXECUTE <name> [ (<parameter> [, ...] ) ]
```

### Description

`EXECUTE` is used to run a previously prepared statement. Since prepared statements only exist for the duration of a session, the prepared statement must have been created by a `PREPARE` statement run earlier in the current session.

If the `PREPARE` statement that created the statement specified some parameters, a compatible set of parameters must be passed to the `EXECUTE` statement, or else an error is raised. Note that (unlike functions) prepared statements are not overloaded based on the type or number of their parameters; the name of a prepared statement must be unique within a database session.

For more information on the creation and usage of prepared statements, see `PREPARE`.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of the prepared statement to run.

- parameter

  The actual value of a parameter to the prepared statement. This must be an expression yielding a value that is compatible with the data type of this parameter, as was determined when the prepared statement was created.

### Examples

Create a prepared statement for an `INSERT` statement, and then run it:

```
PREPARE fooplan (int, text, bool, numeric) AS INSERT INTO
foo VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
EXECUTE fooplan(1, 'Hunter Valley', 't', 200.00);
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard includes an `EXECUTE` statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL. This version of the `EXECUTE` statement also uses a somewhat different syntax.

### See Also

DEALLOCATE, PREPARE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.126 EXPLAIN

Shows the query plan of a statement.

### Synopsis

```
EXPLAIN [ ( <option> [, ...] ) ] <statement>
EXPLAIN [ANALYZE] [VERBOSE] <statement>
```

where option can be one of:

```
    ANALYZE [ <boolean> ]
    VERBOSE [ <boolean> ]
    COSTS [ <boolean> ]
    BUFFERS [ <boolean> ]
    TIMING [ <boolean> ]
    FORMAT { TEXT | XML | JSON | YAML }
```

### Description

`EXPLAIN` displays the query plan that the WarehousePG or Postgres Planner generates for the supplied statement. Query plans are a tree plan of nodes. Each node in the plan represents a single operation, such as table scan, join, aggregation or a sort.

Plans should be read from the bottom up as each node feeds rows into the node directly above it. The bottom nodes of a plan are usually table scan operations (sequential, index or bitmap index scans). If the query requires joins, aggregations, or sorts (or other operations on the raw rows) then there will be additional nodes above the scan nodes to perform these operations. The topmost plan nodes are usually the WarehousePG motion nodes (redistribute, explicit redistribute, broadcast, or gather motions). These are the operations responsible for moving rows between the segment instances during query processing.

The output of `EXPLAIN` has one line for each node in the plan tree, showing the basic node type plus the following cost estimates that the planner made for the execution of that plan node:

- **cost** — the planner's guess at how long it will take to run the statement (measured in cost units that are arbitrary, but conventionally mean disk page fetches). Two cost numbers are shown: the start-up cost before the first row can be returned, and the total cost to return all the rows. Note that the total cost assumes that all rows will be retrieved, which may not always be the case (if using `LIMIT` for example).
- **rows** — the total number of rows output by this plan node. This is usually less than the actual number of rows processed or scanned by the plan node, reflecting the estimated selectivity of any `WHERE` clause conditions. Ideally the top-level nodes estimate will approximate the number of rows actually returned, updated, or deleted by the query.
- **width** — total bytes of all the rows output by this plan node.

It is important to note that the cost of an upper-level node includes the cost of all its child nodes. The topmost node of the plan has the estimated total execution cost for the plan. This is this number that the planner seeks to minimize. It is also important to realize that the cost only reflects things that the query optimizer cares about. In particular, the cost does not consider the time spent transmitting result rows to the client.

`EXPLAIN ANALYZE` causes the statement to be actually run, not only planned. The `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` plan shows the actual results along with the planner's estimates. This is useful for seeing whether the planner's estimates are close to reality. In addition to the information shown in the `EXPLAIN` plan, `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` will show the following additional information:

- The total elapsed time (in milliseconds) that it took to run the query.
- The number of *workers* (segments) involved in a plan node operation. Only segments that return rows are counted.
- The maximum number of rows returned by the segment that produced the most rows for an operation. If multiple segments produce an equal number of rows, the one with the longest *time to end* is the one chosen.
- The segment id number of the segment that produced the most rows for an operation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- For relevant operations, the work_mem used by the operation. If `work_mem` was not sufficient to perform the operation in memory, the plan will show how much data was spilled to disk and how many passes over the data were required for the lowest performing segment. For example:

```
Work_mem used: 64K bytes avg, 64K bytes max (seg0).
Work_mem wanted: 90K bytes avg, 90K bytes max (seg0) to abate workfile
I/O affecting 2 workers.
[seg0] pass 0: 488 groups made from 488 rows; 263 rows written to
workfile
[seg0] pass 1: 263 groups made from 263 rows
```

- The time (in milliseconds) it took to retrieve the first row from the segment that produced the most rows, and the total time taken to retrieve all rows from that segment. The *<time> to first row* may be omitted if it is the same as the *<time> to end*.

> **Important** Keep in mind that the statement is actually run when `ANALYZE` is used. Although `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` will discard any output that a `SELECT` would return, other side effects of the statement will happen as usual. If you wish to use `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` on a DML statement without letting the command affect your data, use this approach:

```
BEGIN;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE ...;
ROLLBACK;
```

Only the `ANALYZE` and `VERBOSE` options can be specified, and only in that order, without surrounding the option list in parentheses.

### Parameters

- ANALYZE

  Carry out the command and show the actual run times and other statistics. This parameter defaults to `FALSE` if you omit it; specify `ANALYZE true` to enable it.

- VERBOSE

  Display additional information regarding the plan. Specifically, include the output column list for each node in the plan tree, schema-qualify table and function names, always label variables in expressions with their range table alias, and always print the name of each trigger for which statistics are displayed. This parameter defaults to `FALSE` if you omit it; specify `VERBOSE true` to enable it.

- COSTS

  Include information on the estimated startup and total cost of each plan node, as well as the estimated number of rows and the estimated width of each row. This parameter defaults to `TRUE` if you omit it; specify `COSTS false` to deactivate it.

- BUFFERS

  Include information on buffer usage. This parameter may be specified only when `ANALYZE` is also specified. If omitted, the default value is `false`, buffer usage information is not included.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support specifying `BUFFERS [true]` for distributed queries; ignore any displayed buffer usage information.

- TIMING

  Include actual startup time and time spent in each node in the output. The overhead of repeatedly reading the system clock can slow down the query significantly on some systems, so it may be useful to set this parameter to `FALSE` when only actual row counts, and not exact times, are needed. Run time of the entire statement is always measured, even when node-level timing is turned off with this option. This parameter may only be used when `ANALYZE` is also enabled. It defaults to `TRUE`.

- FORMAT

  Specify the output format, which can be `TEXT`, `XML`, `JSON`, or `YAML`. Non-text output contains the same information as the text output format, but is easier for programs to parse. This parameter defaults to `TEXT`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- boolean

  Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to deactivate it. The boolean value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

- statement

  Any `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `VALUES`, `EXECUTE`, `DECLARE`, or `CREATE TABLE AS` statement, whose execution plan you wish to see.

### Notes

In order to allow the query optimizer to make reasonably informed decisions when optimizing queries, the `ANALYZE` statement should be run to record statistics about the distribution of data within the table. If you have not done this (or if the statistical distribution of the data in the table has changed significantly since the last time `ANALYZE` was run), the estimated costs are unlikely to conform to the real properties of the query, and consequently an inferior query plan may be chosen.

An SQL statement that is run during the execution of an `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command is excluded from WarehousePG resource queues.

For more information about query profiling, see "Query Profiling" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. For more information about resource queues, see "Resource Management with Resource Queues" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Examples

To illustrate how to read an `EXPLAIN` query plan, consider the following example for a very simple query:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM names WHERE name = 'Joelle';
                                QUERY PLAN
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 Gather Motion 3:1  (slice1; segments: 3)  (cost=0.00..431.27 rows=1 width=58)
   ->  Seq Scan on names  (cost=0.00..431.27 rows=1 width=58)
         Filter: (name = 'Joelle'::text)
 Optimizer: Pivotal Optimizer (GPORCA) version 3.23.0
(4 rows)
```

If we read the plan from the bottom up, the query optimizer starts by doing a sequential scan of the `names` table. Notice that the `WHERE` clause is being applied as a *filter* condition. This means that the scan operation checks the condition for each row it scans, and outputs only the ones that pass the condition.

The results of the scan operation are passed up to a *gather motion* operation. In WarehousePG, a gather motion is when segments send rows up to the coordinator. In this case we have 3 segment instances sending to 1 coordinator instance (3:1). This operation is working on `slice1` of the parallel query execution plan. In WarehousePG a query plan is divided into *slices* so that portions of the query plan can be worked on in parallel by the segments.

The estimated startup cost for this plan is `00.00` (no cost) and a total cost of `431.27`. The planner is estimating that this query will return one row.

Here is the same query, with cost estimates suppressed:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS FALSE) SELECT * FROM names WHERE name = 'Joelle';
               QUERY PLAN
----------------------------------------
 Gather Motion 3:1  (slice1; segments: 3)
   ->  Seq Scan on names
         Filter: (name = 'Joelle'::text)
 Optimizer: Pivotal Optimizer (GPORCA) version 3.23.0
(4 rows)
```

Here is the same query, with JSON formatting:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT JSON) SELECT * FROM names WHERE name = 'Joelle';
                  QUERY PLAN
-----------------------------------------------
 [                                           +
   {                                         +
     "Plan": {                               +
       "Node Type": "Gather Motion",         +
       "Senders": 3,                         +
       "Receivers": 1,                       +
       "Slice": 1,                           +
       "Segments": 3,                        +
       "Gang Type": "primary reader",        +
       "Startup Cost": 0.00,                 +
       "Total Cost": 431.27,                 +
       "Plan Rows": 1,                       +
       "Plan Width": 58,                     +
       "Plans": [                            +
         {                                   +
           "Node Type": "Seq Scan",          +
           "Parent Relationship": "Outer",   +
           "Slice": 1,                       +
           "Segments": 3,                    +
           "Gang Type": "primary reader",    +
           "Relation Name": "names",         +
           "Alias": "names",                 +
           "Startup Cost": 0.00,             +
           "Total Cost": 431.27,             +
           "Plan Rows": 1,                   +
           "Plan Width": 58,                 +
           "Filter": "(name = 'Joelle'::text)"+
         }                                   +
       ]                                     +
     },                                      +
     "Settings": {                           +
       "Optimizer": "Pivotal Optimizer (GPORCA) version 3.23.0"      +
     }                                       +
   }                                         +
 ]
(1 row)
```

If there is an index and we use a query with an indexable `WHERE` condition, `EXPLAIN` might show a different plan. This query generates a plan with an index scan, with YAML formatting:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT YAML) SELECT * FROM NAMES WHERE LOCATION='Sydney, Australia';
                          QUERY PLAN
---------------------------------------------------------------
 - Plan:                                                      +
     Node Type: "Gather Motion"                               +
     Senders: 3                                               +
     Receivers: 1                                             +
     Slice: 1                                                 +
     Segments: 3                                              +
     Gang Type: "primary reader"                              +
     Startup Cost: 0.00                                       +
     Total Cost: 10.81                                        +
     Plan Rows: 10000                                         +
     Plan Width: 70                                           +
     Plans:                                                   +
       - Node Type: "Index Scan"                              +
         Parent Relationship: "Outer"                         +
         Slice: 1                                             +
         Segments: 3                                          +
         Gang Type: "primary reader"                          +
         Scan Direction: "Forward"                            +
         Index Name: "names_idx_loc"                          +
         Relation Name: "names"                               +
         Alias: "names"                                       +
         Startup Cost: 0.00                                   +
         Total Cost: 7.77                                     +
         Plan Rows: 10000                                     +
         Plan Width: 70                                       +
         Index Cond: "(location = 'Sydney, Australia'::text)"+
   Settings:                                                  +
     Optimizer: "Pivotal Optimizer (GPORCA) version 3.23.0"
(1 row)
```

### Compatibility

There is no `EXPLAIN` statement defined in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ANALYZE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.127 FETCH

Retrieves rows from a query using a cursor.

### Synopsis

```
FETCH [ <forward_direction> { FROM | IN } ] <cursor_name>
```

where forward_direction can be empty or one of:

```
    NEXT
    FIRST
    ABSOLUTE <count>
    RELATIVE <count>
    <count>
    ALL
    FORWARD
    FORWARD <count>
    FORWARD ALL
```

### Description

`FETCH` retrieves rows using a previously-created cursor.

> **Note** You cannot `FETCH` from a `PARALLEL RETRIEVE CURSOR`, you must RETRIEVE the rows from it.

> **Note** This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different. See PL/pgSQL function.

A cursor has an associated position, which is used by `FETCH`. The cursor position can be before the first row of the query result, on any particular row of the result, or after the last row of the result. When created, a cursor is positioned before the first row. After fetching some rows, the cursor is positioned on the row most recently retrieved. If `FETCH` runs off the end of the available rows then the cursor is left positioned after the last row. `FETCH ALL` will always leave the cursor positioned after the last row.

The forms `NEXT`, `FIRST`, `ABSOLUTE`, `RELATIVE` fetch a single row after moving the cursor appropriately. If there is no such row, an empty result is returned, and the cursor is left positioned before the first row or after the last row as appropriate.

The forms using `FORWARD` retrieve the indicated number of rows moving in the forward direction, leaving the cursor positioned on the last-returned row (or after all rows, if the count exceeds the number of rows available). Note that it is not possible to move a cursor position backwards in WarehousePG, since scrollable cursors are not supported. You can only move a cursor forward in position using `FETCH`.

`RELATIVE 0` and `FORWARD 0` request fetching the current row without moving the cursor, that is, re-fetching the most recently fetched row. This will succeed unless the cursor is positioned before the first row or after the last row, in which case no row is returned.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, a `FETCH` command returns a command tag of the form

```
FETCH <count>
```

The count is the number of rows fetched (possibly zero). Note that in `psql`, the command tag will not actually be displayed, since `psql` displays the fetched rows instead.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- forward_direction

  Defines the fetch direction and number of rows to fetch. Only forward fetches are allowed in WarehousePG. It can be one of the following:

- NEXT

  Fetch the next row. This is the default if direction is omitted.

- FIRST

  Fetch the first row of the query (same as `ABSOLUTE 1`). Only allowed if it is the first `FETCH` operation using this cursor.

- ABSOLUTE count

  Fetch the specified row of the query. Position after last row if count is out of range. Only allowed if the row specified by count moves the cursor position forward.

- RELATIVE count

  Fetch the specified row of the query count rows ahead of the current cursor position. `RELATIVE 0` re-fetches the current row, if any. Only allowed if count moves the cursor position forward.

- count

  Fetch the next count number of rows (same as `FORWARD count`).

- ALL

  Fetch all remaining rows (same as `FORWARD ALL`).

- FORWARD

  Fetch the next row (same as `NEXT`).

- FORWARD count

  Fetch the next count number of rows. `FORWARD 0` re-fetches the current row.

- FORWARD ALL

  Fetch all remaining rows.

- cursor_name

  The name of an open cursor.

### Notes

WarehousePG does not support scrollable cursors, so you can only use `FETCH` to move the cursor position forward.

`ABSOLUTE` fetches are not any faster than navigating to the desired row with a relative move: the underlying implementation must traverse all the intermediate rows anyway.

`DECLARE` is used to define a cursor. Use `MOVE` to change cursor position without retrieving data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

-- Start the transaction:

```
BEGIN;
```

-- Set up a cursor:

```
DECLARE mycursor CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;
```

-- Fetch the first 5 rows in the cursor `mycursor`:

```
FETCH FORWARD 5 FROM mycursor;
 code  |          title          | did | date_prod  |   kind   |  len
-------+-------------------------+-----+------------+----------+-------
 BL101 | The Third Man           | 101 | 1949-12-23 | Drama    | 01:44
 BL102 | The African Queen       | 101 | 1951-08-11 | Romantic | 01:43
 JL201 | Une Femme est une Femme | 102 | 1961-03-12 | Romantic | 01:25
 P_301 | Vertigo                 | 103 | 1958-11-14 | Action   | 02:08
 P_302 | Becket                  | 103 | 1964-02-03 | Drama    | 02:28
```

-- Close the cursor and end the transaction:

```
CLOSE mycursor;
COMMIT;
```

Change the `kind` column of the table `films` in the row at the `c_films` cursor's current position:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE CURRENT OF c_films;
```

### Compatibility

SQL standard allows cursors only in embedded SQL and in modules. WarehousePG permits cursors to be used interactively.

The variant of `FETCH` described here returns the data as if it were a `SELECT` result rather than placing it in host variables. Other than this point, `FETCH` is fully upward-compatible with the SQL standard.

The `FETCH` forms involving `FORWARD`, as well as the forms `FETCH` count and `FETCH ALL`, in which `FORWARD` is implicit, are WarehousePG extensions. `BACKWARD` is not supported.

The SQL standard allows only `FROM` preceding the cursor name; the option to use `IN`, or to leave them out altogether, is an extension.

### See Also

DECLARE, CLOSE, MOVE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.128 GRANT

Defines access privileges.

### Synopsis

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
GRANT { {SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | REFERENCES |
TRIGGER | TRUNCATE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { [TABLE] <table_name> [, ...]
         | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( <column_name> [, ...] )
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( <column_name> [, ...] ) }
    ON [ TABLE ] <table_name> [, ...]
    TO { <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { {USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE} [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { SEQUENCE <sequence_name> [, ...]
         | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { {CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP} [, ...] | ALL
[PRIVILEGES] }
    ON DATABASE <database_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DOMAIN <domain_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN SERVER <server_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { FUNCTION <function_name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [, ...]
] ) [, ...]
        | ALL FUNCTIONS IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON LANGUAGE <lang_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC}  [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { CREATE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPE <type_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT <parent_role> [, ...]
    TO <member_role> [, ...] [WITH ADMIN OPTION]

GRANT { SELECT | INSERT | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON PROTOCOL <protocolname>
    TO <username>
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Description

WarehousePG unifies the concepts of users and groups into a single kind of entity called a role. It is therefore not necessary to use the keyword `GROUP` to identify whether a grantee is a user or a group. `GROUP` is still allowed in the command, but it is a noise word.

The `GRANT` command has two basic variants: one that grants privileges on a database object (table, column, view, foreign table, sequence, database, foreign-data wrapper, foreign server, function, procedural language, schema, or tablespace), and one that grants membership in a role.

#### GRANT on Database Objects

This variant of the `GRANT` command gives specific privileges on a database object to one or more roles. These privileges are added to those already granted, if any.

There is also an option to grant privileges on all objects of the same type within one or more schemas. This functionality is currently supported only for tables, sequences, and functions (but note that `ALL TABLES` is considered to include views and foreign tables).

The keyword `PUBLIC` indicates that the privileges are to be granted to all roles, including those that may be created later. `PUBLIC` may be thought of as an implicitly defined group-level role that always includes all roles. Any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to `PUBLIC`.

If `WITH GRANT OPTION` is specified, the recipient of the privilege may in turn grant it to others. Without a grant option, the recipient cannot do that. Grant options cannot be granted to `PUBLIC`.

There is no need to grant privileges to the owner of an object (usually the role that created it), as the owner has all privileges by default. (The owner could, however, choose to revoke some of their own privileges for safety.)

The right to drop an object, or to alter its definition in any way is not treated as a grantable privilege; it is inherent in the owner, and cannot be granted or revoked. (However, a similar effect can be obtained by granting or revoking membership in the role that owns the object; see below.) The owner implicitly has all grant options for the object, too.

WarehousePG grants default privileges on some types of objects to `PUBLIC`. No privileges are granted to `PUBLIC` by default on tables, table columns, sequences, foreign-data wrappers, foreign servers, large objects, schemas, or tablespaces. For other types of objects, the default privileges granted to `PUBLIC` are as follows:

- `CONNECT` and `TEMPORARY` (create temporary tables) privileges for databases,
- `EXECUTE` privilege for functions, and
- `USAGE` privilege for languages and data types (including domains).

The object owner can, of course, `REVOKE` both default and expressly granted privileges. (For maximum security, issue the `REVOKE` in the same transaction that creates the object; then there is no window in which another user can use the object.)

#### GRANT on Roles

This variant of the `GRANT` command grants membership in a role to one or more other roles. Membership in a role is significant because it conveys the privileges granted to a role to each of its members.

If `WITH ADMIN OPTION` is specified, the member may in turn grant membership in the role to others, and revoke membership in the role as well. Without the admin option, ordinary users cannot do that. A role is not considered to hold `WITH ADMIN OPTION` on itself, but it may grant or revoke membership in itself from a database session where the session user matches the role. Database superusers can grant or revoke membership in any role to anyone. Roles having `CREATEROLE` privilege can grant or revoke membership in any role that is not a superuser.

Unlike the case with privileges, membership in a role cannot be granted to `PUBLIC`.

#### GRANT on Protocols

You can also use the `GRANT` command to specify which users can access a trusted protocol. (If the protocol is not trusted, you cannot give any other user permission to use it to read or write data.)

- To allow a user to create a readable external table with a trusted protocol:

```
GRANT SELECT ON PROTOCOL <protocolname> TO <username>
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- To allow a user to create a writable external table with a trusted protocol:

```
GRANT INSERT ON PROTOCOL <protocolname> TO <username>
```

- To allow a user to create both readable and writable external table with a trusted protocol:

```
GRANT ALL ON PROTOCOL <protocolname> TO <username>
```

You can also use this command to grant users permissions to create and use `s3` and `pxf` external tables. However, external tables of type `http`, `https`, `gpfdist`, and `gpfdists`, are implemented internally in WarehousePG instead of as custom protocols. For these types, use the `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` command to set the `CREATEEXTTABLE` or `NOCREATEEXTTABLE` attribute for each user. See CREATE ROLE for syntax and examples.

### Parameters

- SELECT

  Allows `SELECT` from any column, or the specific columns listed, of the specified table, view, or sequence. Also allows the use of `COPY TO`. This privilege is also needed to reference existing column values in `UPDATE` or `DELETE`.

- INSERT

  Allows `INSERT` of a new row into the specified table. If specific columns are listed, only those columns may be assigned to in the `INSERT` command (other columns will receive default values). Also allows `COPY FROM`.

- UPDATE

  Allows `UPDATE` of any column, or the specific columns listed, of the specified table. `SELECT ... FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT ... FOR SHARE` also require this privilege on at least one column, (as well as the `SELECT` privilege). For sequences, this privilege allows the use of the `nextval()` and `setval()` functions.

- DELETE

  Allows `DELETE` of a row from the specified table.

- REFERENCES

  This keyword is accepted, although foreign key constraints are currently not supported in WarehousePG. To create a foreign key constraint, it is necessary to have this privilege on both the referencing and referenced columns. The privilege may be granted for all columns of a table, or just specific columns.

- TRIGGER

  Allows the creation of a trigger on the specified table.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support triggers.

- TRUNCATE

  Allows `TRUNCATE` of all rows from the specified table.

- CREATE

  For databases, allows new schemas to be created within the database.

  For schemas, allows new objects to be created within the schema. To rename an existing object, you must own the object and have this privilege for the containing schema.

  For tablespaces, allows tables and indexes to be created within the tablespace, and allows databases to be created that have the tablespace as their default tablespace. (Note that revoking this privilege will not alter the placement of existing objects.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- CONNECT

  Allows the user to connect to the specified database. This privilege is checked at connection startup (in addition to checking any restrictions imposed by `pg_hba.conf`).

- TEMPORARY

- TEMP

  Allows temporary tables to be created while using the database.

- EXECUTE

  Allows the use of the specified function and the use of any operators that are implemented on top of the function. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to functions. (This syntax works for aggregate functions, as well.)

- USAGE

  For procedural languages, allows the use of the specified language for the creation of functions in that language. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to procedural languages.

  For schemas, allows access to objects contained in the specified schema (assuming that the objects' own privilege requirements are also met). Essentially this allows the grantee to look up objects within the schema.

  For sequences, this privilege allows the use of the `currval()` and `nextval()` function.

  For types and domains, this privilege allows the use of the type or domain in the creation of tables, functions, and other schema objects. (Note that it does not control general "usage" of the type, such as values of the type appearing in queries. It only prevents objects from being created that depend on the type. The main purpose of the privilege is controlling which users create dependencies on a type, which could prevent the owner from changing the type later.)

  For foreign-data wrappers, this privilege enables the grantee to create new servers using that foreign-data wrapper.

  For servers, this privilege enables the grantee to create foreign tables using the server, and also to create, alter, or drop their own user's user mappings associated with that server.

- ALL PRIVILEGES

  Grant all of the available privileges at once. The `PRIVILEGES` key word is optional in WarehousePG, though it is required by strict SQL.

- PUBLIC

  A special group-level role that denotes that the privileges are to be granted to all roles, including those that may be created later.

- WITH GRANT OPTION

  The recipient of the privilege may in turn grant it to others.

- WITH ADMIN OPTION

  The member of a role may in turn grant membership in the role to others.

### Notes

A user may perform `SELECT`, `INSERT`, and so forth, on a column if they hold that privilege for either the specific column or the whole table. Granting the privilege at the table level and then revoking it for one column does not do what you might wish: the table-level grant is unaffected by a column-level operation.

Database superusers can access all objects regardless of object privilege settings. One exception to this rule is view objects. Access to tables referenced in the view is determined by permissions of the view owner not the current user (even if the current user is a superuser).

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. In particular, privileges granted via such a command will appear to have been granted by the object owner. For role membership, the membership appears to have been granted by the containing role itself.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`GRANT` and `REVOKE` can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION` on the object. In this case the privileges will be recorded as having been granted by the role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION`.

Granting permission on a table does not automatically extend permissions to any sequences used by the table, including sequences tied to `SERIAL` columns. Permissions on a sequence must be set separately.

The `GRANT` command cannot be used to set privileges for the protocols `file`, `gpfdist`, or `gpfdists`. These protocols are implemented internally in WarehousePG. Instead, use the CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE command to set the `CREATEEXTTABLE` attribute for the role.

Use `psql`'s `\dp` meta-command to obtain information about existing privileges for tables and columns. There are other `\d` meta-commands that you can use to display the privileges of non-table objects.

### Examples

Grant insert privilege to all roles on table `mytable`:

```
GRANT INSERT ON mytable TO PUBLIC;
```

Grant all available privileges to role `sally` on the view `topten`. Note that while the above will indeed grant all privileges if run by a superuser or the owner of `topten`, when run by someone else it will only grant those permissions for which the granting role has grant options.

```
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON topten TO sally;
```

Grant membership in role `admins` to user `joe`:

```
GRANT admins TO joe;
```

### Compatibility

The `PRIVILEGES` key word is required in the SQL standard, but optional in WarehousePG. The SQL standard does not support setting the privileges on more than one object per command.

WarehousePG allows an object owner to revoke their own ordinary privileges: for example, a table owner can make the table read-only to theirself by revoking their own `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE` privileges. This is not possible according to the SQL standard. WarehousePG treats the owner's privileges as having been granted by the owner to the owner; therefore they can revoke them too. In the SQL standard, the owner's privileges are granted by an assumed *system* entity.

The SQL standard provides for a `USAGE` privilege on other kinds of objects: character sets, collations, translations.

In the SQL standard, sequences only have a `USAGE` privilege, which controls the use of the `NEXT VALUE FOR` expression, which is equivalent to the function `nextval` in WarehousePG. The sequence privileges `SELECT` and `UPDATE` are WarehousePG extensions. The application of the sequence `USAGE` privilege to the `currval` function is also a WarehousePG extension (as is the function itself).

Privileges on databases, tablespaces, schemas, and languages are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

REVOKE, CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.129 INSERT

Creates new rows in a table.

### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
INSERT INTO <table> [( <column> [, ...] )]
   {DEFAULT VALUES | VALUES ( {<expression> | DEFAULT} [, ...] ) [, ...] | <query>}
   [RETURNING * | <output_expression> [[AS] <output_name>] [, ...]]
```

### Description

`INSERT` inserts new rows into a table. One can insert one or more rows specified by value expressions, or zero or more rows resulting from a query.

The target column names may be listed in any order. If no list of column names is given at all, the default is the columns of the table in their declared order. The values supplied by the `VALUES` clause or query are associated with the explicit or implicit column list left-to-right.

Each column not present in the explicit or implicit column list will be filled with a default value, either its declared default value or null if there is no default.

If the expression for any column is not of the correct data type, automatic type conversion will be attempted.

The optional `RETURNING` clause causes `INSERT` to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually inserted. This is primarily useful for obtaining values that were supplied by defaults, such as a serial sequence number. However, any expression using the table's columns is allowed. The syntax of the `RETURNING` list is identical to that of the output list of `SELECT`.

You must have `INSERT` privilege on a table in order to insert into it. When a column list is specified, you need `INSERT` privilege only on the listed columns. Use of the `RETURNING` clause requires `SELECT` privilege on all columns mentioned in `RETURNING`. If you provide a query to insert rows from a query, you must have `SELECT` privilege on any table or column referenced in the query.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, an `INSERT` command returns a command tag of the form:

```
INSERT <oid> <count>
```

The count is the number of rows inserted. If count is exactly one, and the target table has OIDs, then oid is the OID assigned to the inserted row. Otherwise OID is zero.

### Parameters

- with_query

  The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the `INSERT` query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For an `INSERT` command that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can only contain `SELECT` statements, the `WITH` clause cannot contain a data-modifying command ( `INSERT` , `UPDATE` , or `DELETE` ).

It is possible for the query ( `SELECT` statement) to also contain a `WITH` clause. In such a case both sets of with_query can be referenced within the `INSERT` query, but the second one takes precedence since it is more closely nested.

See WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) and SELECT for details.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

- column

  The name of a column in table. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. (Inserting into only some fields of a composite column leaves the other fields null.)

- DEFAULT VALUES

  All columns will be filled with their default values.

- expression

  An expression or value to assign to the corresponding column.

- DEFAULT

  The corresponding column will be filled with its default value.

- query

  A query ( `SELECT` statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. Refer to the `SELECT` statement for a description of the syntax.

- output_expression

  An expression to be computed and returned by the `INSERT` command after each row is inserted. The expression can use any column names of the table. Write * to return all columns of the inserted row(s).

- output_name

  A name to use for a returned column.

### Notes

To insert data into a partitioned table, you specify the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command. You also can specify a leaf child table of the partitioned table in an `INSERT` command. An error is returned if the data is not valid for the specified leaf child table. Specifying a child table that is not a leaf child table in the `INSERT` command is not supported. Execution of other DML commands such as `UPDATE` and `DELETE` on any child table of a partitioned table is not supported. These commands must be run on the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command.

For a partitioned table, all the child tables are locked during the `INSERT` operation when the Global Deadlock Detector is not enabled (the default). Only some of the leaf child tables are locked when the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled. For information about the Global Deadlock Detector, see Global Deadlock Detector.

For append-optimized tables, WarehousePG supports a maximum of 127 concurrent `INSERT` transactions into a single append-optimized table.

For writable S3 external tables, the `INSERT` operation uploads to one or more files in the configured S3 bucket, as described in s3:// Protocol. Pressing `Ctrl-c` cancels the `INSERT` and stops uploading to S3.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Insert a single row into table `films`:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES ('UA502', 'Bananas', 105,
'1971-07-13', 'Comedy', '82 minutes');
```

In this example, the `length` column is omitted and therefore it will have the default value:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind) VALUES
('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

This example uses the `DEFAULT` clause for the `date_prod` column rather than specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES ('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT,
'Comedy', '82 minutes');
```

To insert a row consisting entirely of default values:

```
INSERT INTO films DEFAULT VALUES;
```

To insert multiple rows using the multirow `VALUES` syntax:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind) VALUES
    ('B6717', 'Tampopo', 110, '1985-02-10', 'Comedy'),
    ('HG120', 'The Dinner Game', 140, DEFAULT, 'Comedy');
```

This example inserts some rows into table `films` from a table `tmp_films` with the same column layout as `films`:

```
INSERT INTO films SELECT * FROM tmp_films WHERE date_prod <
'2004-05-07';
```

Insert a single row into table distributors, returning the sequence number generated by the DEFAULT clause:

```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (DEFAULT, 'XYZ Widgets')
   RETURNING did;
```

### Compatibility

`INSERT` conforms to the SQL standard. The case in which a column name list is omitted, but not all the columns are filled from the `VALUES` clause or query, is disallowed by the standard.

Possible limitations of the query clause are documented under `SELECT`.

### See Also

COPY, SELECT, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, s3:// Protocol

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.130 LISTEN

Listens for a notification.

### Synopsis

```
LISTEN <channel>
```

### Description

`LISTEN` registers the current session as a listener on the notification channel named <channel>. If the current session is already registered as a listener for this notification channel, nothing is done.

Whenever the command `NOTIFY <channel>` is invoked, either by this session or another one connected to the same database, all the sessions currently listening on that notification channel are notified, and each will in turn notify its connected client application.

A session can be unregistered for a given notification channel with the `UNLISTEN` command. A session's listen registrations are automatically cleared when the session ends.

The method a client application must use to detect notification events depends on which PostgreSQL application programming interface it uses. With the `libpq` library, the application issues `LISTEN` as an ordinary SQL command, and then must periodically call the function `PQnotifies()` to find out whether any notification events have been received. Other interfaces such as `libpgtcl` provide higher-level methods for handling notify events; indeed, with `libpgtcl` the application programmer should not even issue `LISTEN` or `UNLISTEN` directly. See the documentation for the interface you are using for more details.

NOTIFY contains a more extensive discussion of the use of `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`.

### Parameters

- channel

  The name of a notification channel (any identifier).

### Notes

`LISTEN` takes effect at transaction commit. If `LISTEN` or `UNLISTEN` is executed within a transaction that later rolls back, the set of notification channels being listened to is unchanged.

A transaction that has executed `LISTEN` cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

### Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from `psql`:

```
LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `LISTEN` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

NOTIFY, UNLISTEN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.131 LOAD

Loads or reloads a shared library file.

### Synopsis

```
LOAD '<filename>'
```

### Description

This command loads a shared library file into the WarehousePG server address space. If the file had been loaded previously, it is first unloaded. This command is primarily useful to unload and reload a shared library file that has been changed since the server first loaded it. To make use of the shared library, function(s) in it need to be declared using the `CREATE FUNCTION` command.

The file name is specified in the same way as for shared library names in `CREATE FUNCTION`; in particular, one may rely on a search path and automatic addition of the system's standard shared library file name extension.

Note that in WarehousePG the shared library file (`.so` file) must reside in the same path location on every host in the WarehousePG array (masters, segments, and mirrors).

Only database superusers can load shared library files.

### Parameters

- filename

  The path and file name of a shared library file. This file must exist in the same location on all hosts in your WarehousePG array.

### Examples

Load a shared library file:

```
LOAD '/usr/edb/whpg6/lib/myfuncs.so';
```

### Compatibility

`LOAD` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.132 LOCK

Locks a table.

### Synopsis

```
LOCK [TABLE] [ONLY] name [ * ] [, ...] [IN <lockmode> MODE] [NOWAIT] [MASTER ONLY]
```

where lockmode is one of:

```
    ACCESS SHARE | ROW SHARE | ROW EXCLUSIVE | SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE
  | SHARE | SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE | ACCESS EXCLUSIVE
```

### Description

`LOCK TABLE` obtains a table-level lock, waiting if necessary for any conflicting locks to be released. If `NOWAIT` is specified, `LOCK TABLE` does not wait to acquire the desired lock: if it cannot be acquired immediately, the command is stopped and an error is emitted. Once obtained, the lock is held for the remainder of the current transaction. There is no `UNLOCK TABLE` command; locks are always released at transaction end.

When acquiring locks automatically for commands that reference tables, WarehousePG always uses the least restrictive lock mode possible. `LOCK TABLE` provides for cases when you might need more restrictive locking. For example, suppose an application runs a transaction at the *Read Committed* isolation level and needs to ensure that data in a table remains stable for the duration of the transaction. To achieve this you could obtain `SHARE` lock mode over the table before querying. This will prevent concurrent data changes and ensure subsequent reads of the table see a stable view of committed data, because `SHARE` lock mode conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock acquired by writers, and your `LOCK TABLE name IN SHARE MODE` statement will wait until any concurrent holders of `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode locks commit or roll back. Thus, once you obtain the lock, there are no uncommitted writes outstanding; furthermore none can begin until you release the lock.

To achieve a similar effect when running a transaction at the `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` isolation level, you have to run the `LOCK TABLE` statement before running any `SELECT` or data modification statement. A `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` transaction's view of data will be frozen when its first `SELECT` or data modification statement begins. A `LOCK TABLE` later in the transaction will still prevent concurrent writes — but it won't ensure that what the transaction reads corresponds to the latest committed values.

If a transaction of this sort is going to change the data in the table, then it should use `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock mode instead of `SHARE` mode. This ensures that only one transaction of this type runs at a time. Without this, a deadlock is possible: two transactions might both acquire `SHARE` mode, and then be unable to also acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode to actually perform their updates. Note that a transaction's own locks never conflict, so a transaction can acquire `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode when it holds `SHARE` mode — but not if anyone else holds `SHARE` mode. To avoid deadlocks, make sure all transactions acquire locks on the same objects in the same order, and if multiple lock modes are involved for a single object, then transactions should always acquire the most restrictive mode first.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to lock. If `ONLY` is specified, only that table is locked. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are locked. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

  If multiple tables are given, tables are locked one-by-one in the order specified in the `LOCK TABLE` command.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- lockmode

  The lock mode specifies which locks this lock conflicts with. If no lock mode is specified, then `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`, the most restrictive mode, is used. Lock modes are as follows:

  - ACCESS SHARE — Conflicts with the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock mode only. The `SELECT` command acquires a lock of this mode on referenced tables. In general, any query that only reads a table and does not modify it will acquire this lock mode.
  - ROW SHARE — Conflicts with the `EXCLUSIVE` and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. The `SELECT FOR SHARE` command automatically acquires a lock of this mode on the target table(s) (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other tables that are referenced but not selected `FOR SHARE`).
  - ROW EXCLUSIVE — Conflicts with the `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. The commands `INSERT` and `COPY` automatically acquire this lock mode on the target table (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other referenced tables) See Note.
  - SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE — Conflicts with the `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent schema changes and `VACUUM` runs. Acquired by `VACUUM` (without `FULL`) on heap tables and `ANALYZE`.
  - SHARE — Conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent data changes. Acquired automatically by `CREATE INDEX`.
  - SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE — Conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This lock mode is not automatically acquired by any WarehousePG command.
  - EXCLUSIVE — Conflicts with the `ROW SHARE`, `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode allows only concurrent `ACCESS SHARE` locks, i.e., only reads from the table can proceed in parallel with a transaction holding this lock mode. This lock mode is automatically acquired for `UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `DELETE` in WarehousePG (which is more restrictive locking than in regular PostgreSQL). See Note.
  - ACCESS EXCLUSIVE — Conflicts with locks of all modes ( `ACCESS SHARE`, `ROW SHARE`, `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE``ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`). This mode guarantees that the holder is the only transaction accessing the table in any way. Acquired automatically by the `ALTER TABLE`, `DROP TABLE`, `TRUNCATE`, `REINDEX`, `CLUSTER`, and `VACUUM FULL` commands. This is the default lock mode for `LOCK TABLE` statements that do not specify a mode explicitly. This lock is also briefly acquired by `VACUUM` (without `FULL`) on append-optimized tables during processing.

  > **Note** By default WarehousePG acquires the more restrictive `EXCLUSIVE` lock (rather than `ROW EXCLUSIVE` in PostgreSQL) for `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` operations on heap tables. When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled the lock mode for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations on heap tables is `ROW EXCLUSIVE`. See Global Deadlock Detector. WarehousePG always holds a table-level lock with `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` statements.

- NOWAIT

  Specifies that `LOCK TABLE` should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released: if the specified lock(s) cannot be acquired immediately without waiting, the transaction is cancelled.

- MASTER ONLY

  Specifies that when a `LOCK TABLE` command is issued, WarehousePG will lock tables on the coordinator only, rather than on the coordinator and all of the segments. This is particularly useful for metadata-only operations.

  > **Note** This option is only supported in `ACCESS SHARE MODE`.

## Notes

`LOCK TABLE ... IN ACCESS SHARE MODE` requires `SELECT` privileges on the target table. All other forms of `LOCK` require table-level `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` privileges.

`LOCK TABLE` is useless outside of a transaction block: the lock would be held only to the completion of the `LOCK` statement. Therefore, WarehousePG reports an error if `LOCK` is used outside of a transaction block. Use `BEGIN` and `END` to define a transaction block.

`LOCK TABLE` only deals with table-level locks, and so the mode names involving `ROW` are all misnomers. These mode names should generally be read as indicating the intention of the user to acquire row-level locks within the locked table. Also, `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode is a shareable table lock. Keep in mind that all the lock modes have identical semantics so far as `LOCK TABLE` is concerned, differing only in the rules about which modes conflict with which. For information on how to acquire an actual row-level lock, see the `FOR UPDATE/FOR SHARE` clause in the SELECT reference documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Obtain a `SHARE` lock on the `films` table when going to perform inserts into the `films_user_comments` table:

```
BEGIN WORK;
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE MODE;
SELECT id FROM films
    WHERE name = 'Star Wars: Episode I - The Phantom Menace';
-- Do ROLLBACK if record was not returned
INSERT INTO films_user_comments VALUES
    (_id_, 'GREAT! I was waiting for it for so long!');
COMMIT WORK;
```

Take a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on a table when performing a delete operation:

```
BEGIN WORK;
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE;
DELETE FROM films_user_comments WHERE id IN
    (SELECT id FROM films WHERE rating < 5);
DELETE FROM films WHERE rating < 5;
COMMIT WORK;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `LOCK TABLE` in the SQL standard, which instead uses `SET TRANSACTION` to specify concurrency levels on transactions. WarehousePG supports that too.

Except for `ACCESS SHARE`, `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`, and `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock modes, the WarehousePG lock modes and the `LOCK TABLE` syntax are compatible with those present in Oracle.

### See Also

BEGIN, SET TRANSACTION, SELECT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.133 MOVE

Positions a cursor.

### Synopsis

```
MOVE [ <forward_direction> [ FROM | IN ] ] <cursor_name>
```

where forward_direction can be empty or one of:

```
    NEXT
    FIRST
    LAST
    ABSOLUTE <count>
    RELATIVE <count>
    <count>
    ALL
    FORWARD
    FORWARD <count>
    FORWARD ALL
```

### Description

`MOVE` repositions a cursor without retrieving any data. `MOVE` works exactly like the FETCH command, except it only positions the cursor and does not return rows.

> **Note** You cannot `MOVE` a `PARALLEL RETRIEVE CURSOR`.

It is not possible to move a cursor position backwards in WarehousePG, since scrollable cursors are not supported. You can only move a cursor forward in position using `MOVE`.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, a `MOVE` command returns a command tag of the form

```
MOVE <count>
```

The count is the number of rows that a `FETCH` command with the same parameters would have returned (possibly zero).

### Parameters

- forward_direction

  The parameters for the `MOVE` command are identical to those of the `FETCH` command; refer to FETCH for details on syntax and usage.

- cursor_name

  The name of an open cursor.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

-- Start the transaction:

```
BEGIN;
```

-- Set up a cursor:

```
DECLARE mycursor CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;
```

-- Move forward 5 rows in the cursor `mycursor`:

```
MOVE FORWARD 5 IN mycursor;
MOVE 5
```

-- Fetch the next row after that (row 6):

```
FETCH 1 FROM mycursor;
 code  | title  | did | date_prod  |  kind  |  len
-------+--------+-----+------------+--------+-------
 P_303 | 48 Hrs | 103 | 1982-10-22 | Action | 01:37
(1 row)
```

-- Close the cursor and end the transaction:

```
CLOSE mycursor;
COMMIT;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `MOVE` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

DECLARE, FETCH, CLOSE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.134 NOTIFY

Generates a notification.

### Synopsis

```
NOTIFY <channel> [ , <payload> ]
```

### Description

The `NOTIFY` command sends a notification event together with an optional “payload” string to each client application that has previously executed `LISTEN <channel>` for the specified channel name in the current database. Notifications are visible to all users.

NOTIFY provides a simple interprocess communication mechanism for a collection of processes accessing the same WarehousePG. A payload string can be sent along with the notification, and higher-level mechanisms for passing structured data can be built by using tables in the database to pass additional data from notifier to listener(s).

The information passed to the client for a notification event includes the notification channel name, the notifying session's server process PID, and the payload string, which is an empty string if it has not been specified.

It is up to the database designer to define the channel names that will be used in a given database and what each one means. Commonly, the channel name is the same as the name of some table in the database, and the notify event essentially means, “I changed this table, take a look at it to see what's new”. But no such association is enforced by the `NOTIFY` and `LISTEN` commands. For example, a database designer could use several different channel names to signal different sorts of changes to a single table. Alternatively, the payload string could be used to differentiate various cases.

When `NOTIFY` is used to signal the occurrence of changes to a particular table, a useful programming technique is to put the `NOTIFY` in a statement trigger that is triggered by table updates. In this way, notification happens automatically when the table is changed, and the application programmer cannot accidentally forget to do it.

NOTIFY interacts with SQL transactions in some important ways. Firstly, if a `NOTIFY` is executed inside a transaction, the notify events are not delivered until and unless the transaction is committed. This is appropriate, since if the transaction is aborted, all the commands within it have had no effect, including NOTIFY. But it can be disconcerting if one is expecting the notification events to be delivered immediately. Secondly, if a listening session receives a notification signal while it is within a transaction, the notification event will not be delivered to its connected client until just after the transaction is completed (either committed or aborted). Again, the reasoning is that if a notification were delivered within a transaction that was later aborted, one would want the notification to be undone somehow — but the server cannot “take back” a notification once it has sent it to the client. So notification events are only delivered between transactions. The upshot of this is that applications using `NOTIFY` for real-time signaling should try to keep their transactions short.

If the same channel name is signaled multiple times from the same transaction with identical payload strings, the database server can decide to deliver a single notification only. On the other hand, notifications with distinct payload strings will always be delivered as distinct notifications. Similarly, notifications from different transactions will never get folded into one notification. Except for dropping later instances of duplicate notifications, `NOTIFY` guarantees that notifications from the same transaction get delivered in the order they were sent. It is also guaranteed that messages from different transactions are delivered in the order in which the transactions committed.

It is common for a client that executes `NOTIFY` to be listening on the same notification channel itself. In that case it will get back a notification event, just like all the other listening sessions. Depending on the application logic, this could result in useless work, for example, reading a database table to find the same updates that that session just wrote out. It is possible to avoid such extra work by noticing whether the notifying session's server process PID (supplied in the notification event message) is the same as one's own session's PID (available from libpq). When they are the same, the notification event is one's own work bouncing back, and can be ignored.

### Parameters

- channel

  The name of a notification channel (any identifier).

- payload

  The “payload” string to be communicated along with the notification. This must be specified as a simple string literal. In the default configuration it must be shorter than 8000 bytes. (If binary data or large amounts of information need to be communicated, it's best to put it in a database table and send the key of the record.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

There is a queue that holds notifications that have been sent but not yet processed by all listening sessions. If this queue becomes full, transactions calling `NOTIFY` will fail at commit. The queue is quite large (8GB in a standard installation) and should be sufficiently sized for almost every use case. However, no cleanup can take place if a session executes `LISTEN` and then enters a transaction for a very long time. Once the queue is half full you will see warnings in the log file pointing you to the session that is preventing cleanup. In this case you should make sure that this session ends its current transaction so that cleanup can proceed.

The function `pg_notification_queue_usage()` returns the fraction of the queue that is currently occupied by pending notifications.

A transaction that has executed `NOTIFY` cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

#### pg_notify

To send a notification you can also use the function `pg_notify(text, text)`. The function takes the channel name as the first argument and the payload as the second. The function is much easier to use than the `NOTIFY` command if you need to work with non-constant channel names and payloads.

### Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from `psql`:

```
LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.

LISTEN foo;
SELECT pg_notify('fo' || 'o', 'pay' || 'load');
Asynchronous notification "foo" with payload "payload" received from server process with PID 14728.
```

### Compatibility

There is no `NOTIFY` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

LISTEN, UNLISTEN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.135 PREPARE

Prepare a statement for execution.

### Synopsis

```
PREPARE <name> [ (<datatype> [, ...] ) ] AS <statement>
```

### Description

`PREPARE` creates a prepared statement. A prepared statement is a server-side object that can be used to optimize performance. When the `PREPARE` statement is run, the specified statement is parsed, analyzed, and rewritten. When an `EXECUTE` command is subsequently issued, the prepared statement is planned and run. This division of labor avoids repetitive parse analysis work, while allowing the execution plan to depend on the specific parameter values supplied.

Prepared statements can take parameters, values that are substituted into the statement when it is run. When creating the prepared statement, refer to parameters by position, using `$1`, `$2`, etc. A corresponding list of parameter data types can optionally be specified. When a parameter's data type is not specified or is declared as unknown, the type is inferred from the context in which the parameter is first used (if possible). When running the statement, specify the actual values for these parameters in the `EXECUTE` statement.

Prepared statements only last for the duration of the current database session. When the session ends, the prepared statement is forgotten, so it must be recreated before being used again. This also means that a single prepared statement cannot be used by multiple simultaneous database clients; however, each client can create their own prepared statement to use. Prepared statements can be manually cleaned up using the DEALLOCATE command.

Prepared statements have the largest performance advantage when a single session is being used to run a large number of similar statements. The performance difference will be particularly significant if the statements are complex to plan or rewrite, for example, if the query involves a join of many tables or requires the application of several rules. If the statement is relatively simple to plan and rewrite but relatively expensive to run, the performance advantage of prepared statements will be less noticeable.

### Parameters

- name

  An arbitrary name given to this particular prepared statement. It must be unique within a single session and is subsequently used to run or deallocate a previously prepared statement.

- datatype

  The data type of a parameter to the prepared statement. If the data type of a particular parameter is unspecified or is specified as unknown, it will be inferred from the context in which the parameter is first used. To refer to the parameters in the prepared statement itself, use `$1`, `$2`, etc.

- statement

  Any `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `VALUES` statement.

### Notes

A prepared statement can be run with either a *generic plan* or a *custom plan*. A generic plan is the same across all executions, while a custom plan is generated for a specific execution using the parameter values given in that call. Use of a generic plan avoids planning overhead, but in some situations a custom plan will be much more efficient to run because the planner can make use of knowledge of the parameter values. If the prepared statement has no parameters, a generic plan is always used.

By default (with the default value, `auto`, for the server configuration parameter plan_cache_mode), the server automatically chooses whether to use a generic or custom plan for a prepared statement that has parameters. The current rule for this is that the first five executions are done with custom plans and the average estimated cost of those plans is calculated. Then a generic plan is created and its estimated cost is compared to the average custom-plan cost. Subsequent executions use the generic plan if its cost is not so much higher than the average custom-plan cost as to make repeated replanning seem preferable.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This heuristic can be overridden, forcing the server to use either generic or custom plans, by setting `plan_cache_mode` to `force_generic_plan` or `force_custom_plan` respectively. This setting is primarily useful if the generic plan's cost estimate is badly off for some reason, allowing it to be chosen even though its actual cost is much more than that of a custom plan.

To examine the query plan WarehousePG is using for a prepared statement, use EXPLAIN, for example:

```
EXPLAIN EXECUTE <name>(<parameter_values>);
```

If a generic plan is in use, it will contain parameter symbols `$n`, while a custom plan will have the supplied parameter values substituted into it.

For more information on query planning and the statistics collected by WarehousePG for that purpose, see the `ANALYZE` documentation.

Although the main point of a prepared statement is to avoid repeated parse analysis and planning of the statement, WarehousePG will force re-analysis and re-planning of the statement before using it whenever database objects used in the statement have undergone definitional (DDL) changes since the previous use of the prepared statement. Also, if the value of `search_path` changes from one use to the next, the statement will be re-parsed using the new search_path. (This latter behavior is new as of WarehousePG 6.) These rules make use of a prepared statement semantically almost equivalent to re-submitting the same query text over and over, but with a performance benefit if no object definitions are changed, especially if the best plan remains the same across uses. An example of a case where the semantic equivalence is not perfect is that if the statement refers to a table by an unqualified name, and then a new table of the same name is created in a schema appearing earlier in the `search_path`, no automatic re-parse will occur since no object used in the statement changed. However, if some other change forces a re-parse, the new table will be referenced in subsequent uses.

You can see all prepared statements available in the session by querying the `pg_prepared_statements` system view.

### Examples

Create a prepared statement for an `INSERT` statement, and then run it:

```
PREPARE fooplan (int, text, bool, numeric) AS INSERT INTO
foo VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
EXECUTE fooplan(1, 'Hunter Valley', 't', 200.00);
```

Create a prepared statement for a `SELECT` statement, and then run it. Note that the data type of the second parameter is not specified, so it is inferred from the context in which `$2` is used:

```
PREPARE usrrptplan (int) AS SELECT * FROM users u, logs l
WHERE u.usrid=$1 AND u.usrid=l.usrid AND l.date = $2;
EXECUTE usrrptplan(1, current_date);
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a `PREPARE` statement, but it can only be used in embedded SQL, and it uses a different syntax.

### See Also

EXECUTE, DEALLOCATE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.136 REASSIGN OWNED

Changes the ownership of database objects owned by a database role.

### Synopsis

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY <old_role> [, ...] TO <new_role>
```

### Description

`REASSIGN OWNED` changes the ownership of database objects owned by any of the old_roles to new_role.

### Parameters

- old_role

  The name of a role. The ownership of all the objects in the current database, and of all shared objects (databases, tablespaces), owned by this role will be reassigned to new_role.

- new_role

  The name of the role that will be made the new owner of the affected objects.

### Notes

`REASSIGN OWNED` is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because `REASSIGN OWNED` does not affect objects in other databases, it is usually necessary to run this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

`REASSIGN OWNED` requires privileges on both the source role(s) and the target role.

The `DROP OWNED` command is an alternative that simply drops all of the database objects owned by one or more roles. `DROP OWNED` requires privileges only on the source role(s).

The `REASSIGN OWNED` command does not affect any privileges granted to the old_roles on objects that are not owned by them. Likewise, it does not affect default privileges created with `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES`. Use `DROP OWNED` to revoke such privileges.

### Examples

Reassign any database objects owned by the role named `sally` and `bob` to `admin`:

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY sally, bob TO admin;
```

### Compatibility

The `REASSIGN OWNED` command is a WarehousePG extension.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

DROP OWNED, DROP ROLE, ALTER DATABASE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.137 REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

Replaces the contents of a materialized view.

### Synopsis

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW [ CONCURRENTLY ] <name>
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

### Description

`REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` completely replaces the contents of a materialized view. The old contents are discarded. To run this command you must be the owner of the materialized view. With the default, `WITH DATA`, the materialized view query is run to provide the new data, and the materialized view is left in a scannable state. If `WITH NO DATA` is specified, no new data is generated and the materialized view is left in an unscannable state. A query returns an error if the query attempts to access the materialized view.

### Parameters

- CONCURRENTLY

  Refresh the materialized view without locking out concurrent selects on the materialized view. Without this option, a refresh that affects a lot of rows tends to use fewer resources and completes more quickly, but could block other connections which are trying to read from the materialized view. This option might be faster in cases where a small number of rows are affected.

  This option is only allowed if there is at least one `UNIQUE` index on the materialized view which uses only column names and includes all rows; that is, it must not index on any expressions nor include a `WHERE` clause.

  This option cannot be used when the materialized view is not already populated, and it cannot be used with the `WITH NO DATA` clause.

  Even with this option, only one `REFRESH` at a time may run against any one materialized view.

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to refresh.

- WITH [ NO ] DATA

  `WITH DATA` is the default and specifies that the materialized view query is run to provide new data, and the materialized view is left in a scannable state. If `WITH NO DATA` is specified, no new data is generated and the materialized view is left in an unscannable state. An error is returned if a query attempts to access an unscannable materialized view.

  `WITH NO DATA` cannot be used with `CONCURRENTLY`.

### Notes

While the default index for future CLUSTER operations is retained, `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` does not order the generated rows based on this property. If you want the data to be ordered upon generation, you must use an `ORDER BY` clause in the materialized view query. However, if a materialized view query contains an `ORDER BY` or `SORT` clause, the data is not guaranteed to be ordered or sorted if `SELECT` is performed on the materialized view.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

This command replaces the contents of the materialized view `order_summary` using the query from the materialized view's definition, and leaves it in a scannable state.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;
```

This command frees storage associated with the materialized view `annual_statistics_basis` and leaves it in an unscannable state.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW annual_statistics_basis WITH NO DATA;
```

### Compatibility

`REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.138 REINDEX

Rebuilds indexes.

### Synopsis

```
REINDEX {INDEX | TABLE | DATABASE | SYSTEM} <name>
```

### Description

`REINDEX` rebuilds an index using the data stored in the index's table, replacing the old copy of the index. There are several scenarios in which to use `REINDEX`:

- An index has become bloated, that is, it contains many empty or nearly-empty pages. This can occur with B-tree indexes in WarehousePG under certain uncommon access patterns. `REINDEX` provides a way to reduce the space consumption of the index by writing a new version of the index without the dead pages.
- You have altered the `FILLFACTOR` storage parameter for an index, and wish to ensure that the change has taken full effect.

### Parameters

- INDEX

  Recreate the specified index.

- TABLE

  Recreate all indexes of the specified table. If the table has a secondary TOAST table, that is reindexed as well.

- DATABASE

  Recreate all indexes within the current database. Indexes on shared system catalogs are also processed. This form of `REINDEX` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

- SYSTEM

  Recreate all indexes on system catalogs within the current database. Indexes on shared system catalogs are included. Indexes on user tables are not processed. This form of `REINDEX` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

- name

  The name of the specific index, table, or database to be reindexed. Index and table names may be schema-qualified. Presently, `REINDEX DATABASE` and `REINDEX SYSTEM` can only reindex the current database, so their parameter must match the current database's name.

### Notes

`REINDEX` causes locking of system catalog tables, which could affect currently running queries. To avoid disrupting ongoing business operations, schedule the `REINDEX` operation during a period of low activity.

`REINDEX` is similar to a drop and recreate of the index in that the index contents are rebuilt from scratch. However, the locking considerations are rather different. `REINDEX` locks out writes but not reads of the index's parent table. It also takes an exclusive lock on the specific index being processed, which will block reads that attempt to use that index. In contrast, `DROP INDEX` momentarily takes an exclusive lock on the parent table, blocking both writes and reads. The subsequent `CREATE INDEX` locks out writes but not reads; since the index is not there, no read will attempt to use it, meaning that there will be no blocking but reads may be forced into expensive sequential scans.

Reindexing a single index or table requires being the owner of that index or table. Reindexing a database requires being the owner of the database (note that the owner can therefore rebuild indexes of tables owned by other users). Of course, superusers can always reindex anything.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`REINDEX` does not update the `reltuples` and `relpages` statistics for the index. To update those statistics, run `ANALYZE` on the table after reindexing.

### Examples

Rebuild a single index:

```
REINDEX INDEX my_index;
```

Rebuild all the indexes on the table `my_table`:

```
REINDEX TABLE my_table;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `REINDEX` command in the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE INDEX, DROP INDEX, VACUUM

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.139 RELEASE SAVEPOINT

Destroys a previously defined savepoint.

### Synopsis

```
RELEASE [SAVEPOINT] <savepoint_name>
```

### Description

`RELEASE SAVEPOINT` destroys a savepoint previously defined in the current transaction.

Destroying a savepoint makes it unavailable as a rollback point, but it has no other user visible behavior. It does not undo the effects of commands run after the savepoint was established. (To do that, see ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT.) Destroying a savepoint when it is no longer needed may allow the system to reclaim some resources earlier than transaction end.

`RELEASE SAVEPOINT` also destroys all savepoints that were established *after* the named savepoint was established.

### Parameters

- savepoint_name

  The name of the savepoint to destroy.

### Examples

To establish and later destroy a savepoint:

```
BEGIN;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);
    RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

### Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard. The standard specifies that the key word `SAVEPOINT` is mandatory, but WarehousePG allows it to be omitted.

### See Also

BEGIN, SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT, COMMIT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.140 RESET

Restores the value of a system configuration parameter to the default value.

### Synopsis

```
RESET <configuration_parameter>

RESET ALL
```

### Description

`RESET` restores system configuration parameters to their default values. `RESET` is an alternative spelling for `SET configuration\_parameter TO DEFAULT`.

The default value is defined as the value that the parameter would have had, had no `SET` ever been issued for it in the current session. The actual source of this value might be a compiled-in default, the coordinator `postgresql.conf` configuration file, command-line options, or per-database or per-user default settings. See Server Configuration Parameters for more information.

### Parameters

- configuration_parameter

  The name of a system configuration parameter. See Server Configuration Parameters for details.

- ALL

  Resets all settable configuration parameters to their default values.

### Examples

Set the `statement_mem` configuration parameter to its default value:

```
RESET statement_mem;
```

### Compatibility

`RESET` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

SET

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.141 RETRIEVE

Retrieves rows from a query using a parallel retrieve cursor.

### Synopsis

```
RETRIEVE { <count> | ALL } FROM ENDPOINT <endpoint_name>
```

### Description

`RETRIEVE` retrieves rows using a previously-created parallel retrieve cursor. You retrieve the rows in individual retrieve sessions, separate direct connections to individual segment endpoints that will serve the results for each individual segment. When you initiate a retrieve session, you must specify gp_retrieve_conn=true on the connection request. Because a retrieve session is independent of the parallel retrieve cursors or their corresponding endpoints, you can `RETRIEVE` from multiple endpoints in the same retrieve session.

A parallel retrieve cursor has an associated position, which is used by `RETRIEVE`. The cursor position can be before the first row of the query result, on any particular row of the result, or after the last row of the result.

When it is created, a parallel retrieve cursor is positioned before the first row. After retrieving some rows, the cursor is positioned on the row most recently retrieved.

If `RETRIEVE` runs off the end of the available rows then the cursor is left positioned after the last row.

`RETRIEVE ALL` always leaves the parallel retrieve cursor positioned after the last row.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support scrollable cursors; you can only move a cursor forward in position using the `RETRIEVE` command.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, a `RETRIEVE` command returns the fetched rows (possibly empty) and a count of the number of rows fetched (possibly zero).

### Parameters

- count

  Retrieve the next count number of rows. count must be a positive number.

- ALL

  Retrieve all remaining rows.

- endpoint_name

  The name of the endpoint from which to retrieve the rows.

### Notes

Use `DECLARE ... PARALLEL RETRIEVE CURSOR` to define a parallel retrieve cursor.

Parallel retrieve cursors do not support `FETCH` or `MOVE` operations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

-- Start the transaction:

```
BEGIN;
```

-- Create a parallel retrieve cursor:

```
DECLARE mycursor PARALLEL RETRIEVE CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;
```

-- List the cursor endpoints:

```
SELECT * FROM gp_endpoints WHERE cursorname='mycursor';
```

-- Note the hostname, port, auth_token, and name associated with each endpoint.

-- In another terminal window, initiate a retrieve session using a hostname, port, and auth_token returned from the previous query. For example:

```
PGPASSWORD=d3825fc07e56bee5fcd2b1d0b600c85e PGOPTIONS='-c gp_retrieve_conn=true' psql -d testdb -h sdw3 -p 6001;
```

-- Fetch all rows from an endpoint (for example, the endpoint named `prc10000001100000005`):

```
RETRIEVE ALL FROM ENDPOINT prc10000001100000005;
```

-- Exit the retrieve session

-- Back in the original session, close the cursor and end the transaction:

```
CLOSE mycursor;
COMMIT;
```

### Compatibility

`RETRIEVE` is a WarehousePG extension. The SQL standard makes no provisions for parallel retrieve cursors.

### See Also

DECLARE, CLOSE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.142 REVOKE

Removes access privileges.

#### Synopsis

```
REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE
       | REFERENCES | TRIGGER | TRUNCATE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }

       ON { [TABLE] <table_name> [, ...]
            | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ] { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE
       | REFERENCES } ( <column_name> [, ...] )
       [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( <column_name> [, ...] ) }
       ON [ TABLE ] <table_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ]  <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE} [,...]
       | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON { SEQUENCE <sequence_name> [, ...]
            | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {CREATE | CONNECT
       | TEMPORARY | TEMP} [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON DATABASE <database_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON DOMAIN <domain_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]


REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON FOREIGN SERVER <server_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] {EXECUTE | ALL [PRIVILEGES]}
       ON { FUNCTION <funcname> ( [[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype>
                              [, ...]] ) [, ...]
            | ALL FUNCTIONS IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] {USAGE | ALL [PRIVILEGES]}
       ON LANGUAGE <langname> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ]  <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {CREATE | USAGE} [, ...]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
       | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { CREATE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON TABLESPACE <tablespacename> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON TYPE <type_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ADMIN OPTION FOR] <parent_role> [, ...]
       FROM [ GROUP ] <member_role> [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`REVOKE` command revokes previously granted privileges from one or more roles. The key word `PUBLIC` refers to the implicitly defined group of all roles.

See the description of the GRANT command for the meaning of the privilege types.

Note that any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to `PUBLIC`. Thus, for example, revoking `SELECT` privilege from `PUBLIC` does not necessarily mean that all roles have lost `SELECT` privilege on the object: those who have it granted directly or via another role will still have it. Similarly, revoking `SELECT` from a user might not prevent that user from using `SELECT` if `PUBLIC` or another membership role still has `SELECT` rights.

If `GRANT OPTION FOR` is specified, only the grant option for the privilege is revoked, not the privilege itself. Otherwise, both the privilege and the grant option are revoked.

If a role holds a privilege with grant option and has granted it to other roles then the privileges held by those other roles are called dependent privileges. If the privilege or the grant option held by the first role is being revoked and dependent privileges exist, those dependent privileges are also revoked if `CASCADE` is specified, else the revoke action will fail. This recursive revocation only affects privileges that were granted through a chain of roles that is traceable to the role that is the subject of this `REVOKE` command. Thus, the affected roles may effectively keep the privilege if it was also granted through other roles.

When you revoke privileges on a table, WarehousePG revokes the corresponding column privileges (if any) on each column of the table, as well. On the other hand, if a role has been granted privileges on a table, then revoking the same privileges from individual columns will have no effect.

When revoking membership in a role, `GRANT OPTION` is instead called `ADMIN OPTION`, but the behavior is similar.

### Parameters

See GRANT.

### Notes

A user may revoke only those privileges directly granted by that user. If, for example, user A grants a privilege with grant option to user B, and user B has in turn granted it to user C, then user A cannot revoke the privilege directly from C. Instead, user A could revoke the grant option from user B and use the `CASCADE` option so that the privilege is in turn revoked from user C. For another example, if both A and B grant the same privilege to C, A can revoke their own grant but not B's grant, so C effectively still has the privilege.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to `REVOKE` privileges on the object, the command fails outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command proceeds, but it will revoke only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The `REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES` forms issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since WarehousePG always treats the owner as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, WarehousePG performs the command as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. Since all privileges ultimately come from the object owner (possibly indirectly via chains of grant options), it is possible for a superuser to revoke all privileges, but this might require use of `CASCADE` as stated above.

`REVOKE` may also be invoked by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION` on the object. In this case, WarehousePG performs the command as though it were issued by the containing role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION`. For example, if table `t1` is owned by role `g1`, of which role `u1` is a member, then `u1` can revoke privileges on `t1` that are recorded as being granted by `g1`. This includes grants made by `u1` as well as by other members of role `g1`.

If the role that runs `REVOKE` holds privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be used to perform the command. In such cases it is best practice to use `SET ROLE` to become the specific role as which you want to do the `REVOKE`. Failure to do so may lead to revoking privileges other than the ones you intended, or not revoking any privileges at all.

Use `psql`'s `\dp` meta-command to obtain information about existing privileges for tables and columns. There are other `\d` meta-commands that you can use to display the privileges of non-table objects.

### Examples

Revoke insert privilege for the public on table `films`:

```
REVOKE INSERT ON films FROM PUBLIC;
```

Revoke all privileges from role `sally` on view `topten`. Note that this actually means revoke all privileges that the current role granted (if not a superuser).

```
REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON topten FROM sally;
```

Revoke membership in role `admins` from user `joe`:

```
REVOKE admins FROM joe;
```

### Compatibility

The compatibility notes of the GRANT command also apply to `REVOKE`.

Either `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` is required according to the standard, but WarehousePG assumes `RESTRICT` by default.

### See Also

GRANT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.143 ROLLBACK

Stops the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

### Description

`ROLLBACK` rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional key words. They have no effect.

### Notes

Use `COMMIT` to successfully end the current transaction.

Issuing `ROLLBACK` when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message.

### Examples

To discard all changes made in the current transaction:

```
ROLLBACK;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard only specifies the two forms `ROLLBACK` and `ROLLBACK WORK`. Otherwise, this command is fully conforming.

### See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.144 ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

Rolls back the current transaction to a savepoint.

### Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [WORK | TRANSACTION] TO [SAVEPOINT] <savepoint_name>
```

### Description

This command will roll back all commands that were run after the savepoint was established. The savepoint remains valid and can be rolled back to again later, if needed.

`ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT` implicitly destroys all savepoints that were established after the named savepoint.

### Parameters

- WORK
- TRANSACTION

  Optional key words. They have no effect.

- savepoint_name

  The name of a savepoint to roll back to.

### Notes

Use `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` to destroy a savepoint without discarding the effects of commands run after it was established.

Specifying a savepoint name that has not been established is an error.

Cursors have somewhat non-transactional behavior with respect to savepoints. Any cursor that is opened inside a savepoint will be closed when the savepoint is rolled back. If a previously opened cursor is affected by a `FETCH` command inside a savepoint that is later rolled back, the cursor remains at the position that `FETCH` left it pointing to (that is, cursor motion caused by `FETCH` is not rolled back). Closing a cursor is not undone by rolling back, either. However, other side-effects caused by the cursor's query (such as side-effects of volatile functions called by the query) are rolled back if they occur during a savepoint that is later rolled back. A cursor whose execution causes a transaction to end prematurely is put in a cannot-execute state, so while the transaction can be restored using `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`, the cursor can no longer be used.

### Examples

To undo the effects of the commands run after `my_savepoint` was established:

```
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

Cursor positions are not affected by a savepoint rollback:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
BEGIN;
DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT 1 UNION SELECT 2;
SAVEPOINT foo;
FETCH 1 FROM foo;
column
----------
        1
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT foo;
FETCH 1 FROM foo;
column
----------
        2
COMMIT;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard specifies that the key word `SAVEPOINT` is mandatory, but WarehousePG (and Oracle) allow it to be omitted. SQL allows only `WORK`, not `TRANSACTION`, as a noise word after `ROLLBACK`. Also, SQL has an optional clause `AND [NO] CHAIN` which is not currently supported by WarehousePG. Otherwise, this command conforms to the SQL standard.

### See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, SAVEPOINT, RELEASE SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.145 SAVEPOINT

Defines a new savepoint within the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

### Description

`SAVEPOINT` establishes a new savepoint within the current transaction.

A savepoint is a special mark inside a transaction that allows all commands that are run after it was established to be rolled back, restoring the transaction state to what it was at the time of the savepoint.

### Parameters

- savepoint_name

  The name of the new savepoint.

### Notes

Use ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT to rollback to a savepoint. Use RELEASE SAVEPOINT to destroy a savepoint, keeping the effects of commands run after it was established.

Savepoints can only be established when inside a transaction block. There can be multiple savepoints defined within a transaction.

### Examples

To establish a savepoint and later undo the effects of all commands run after it was established:

```
BEGIN;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (1);
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (2);
    ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert the values 1 and 3, but not 2.

To establish and later destroy a savepoint:

```
BEGIN;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);
    RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

SQL requires a savepoint to be destroyed automatically when another savepoint with the same name is established. In WarehousePG, the old savepoint is kept, though only the more recent one will be used when rolling back or releasing. (Releasing the newer savepoint will cause the older one to again become accessible to ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT and RELEASE SAVEPOINT.) Otherwise, `SAVEPOINT` is fully SQL conforming.

### See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, RELEASE SAVEPOINT, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.146 SELECT

Retrieves rows from a table or view.

#### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
SELECT [ALL | DISTINCT [ON (<expression> [, ...])]]
  * | <expression >[[AS] <output_name>] [, ...]
  [FROM <from_item> [, ...]]
  [WHERE <condition>]
  [GROUP BY <grouping_element> [, ...]]
  [HAVING <condition> [, ...]]
  [WINDOW <window_name> AS (<window_definition>) [, ...] ]
  [{UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT} [ALL | DISTINCT] <select>]
  [ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]]
  [LIMIT {<count> | ALL}]
  [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
  [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ <count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY]
  [FOR {UPDATE | NO KEY UPDATE | SHARE | KEY SHARE} [OF <table_name> [, ...]] [NOWAIT] [...]]

TABLE { [ ONLY ] <table_name> [ * ] | <with_query_name> }
```

where with_query: is:

```
  <with_query_name> [( <column_name> [, ...] )] AS ( <select> | <values> | <insert> | <update> | delete )
```

where from_item can be one of:

```
[ONLY] <table_name> [ * ] [ [ AS ] <alias> [ ( <column_alias> [, ...] ) ] ]
( <select> ) [ AS ] <alias> [( <column_alias> [, ...] ) ]
with\_query\_name [ [ AS ] <alias> [ ( <column_alias> [, ...] ) ] ]
<function_name> ( [ <argument> [, ...] ] )
            [ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] <alias> [ ( <column_alias> [, ...] ) ] ]
<function_name> ( [ <argument> [, ...] ] ) [ AS ] <alias> ( <column_definition> [, ...] )
<function_name> ( [ <argument> [, ...] ] ) AS ( <column_definition> [, ...] )
ROWS FROM( function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) [ AS ( column_definition [, ...] ) ] [, ...] )
            [ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] <alias> [ ( <column_alias> [, ...] ) ] ]
<from_item> [ NATURAL ] <join_type> <from_item>
          [ ON <join_condition> | USING ( <join_column> [, ...] ) ]
```

where grouping_element can be one of:

```
  ()
  <expression>
  ROLLUP (<expression> [,...])
  CUBE (<expression> [,...])
  GROUPING SETS ((<grouping_element> [, ...]))
```

where window_definition is:

```
  [<existing_window_name>]
  [PARTITION BY <expression> [, ...]]
  [ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>]
    [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]]
  [{ RANGE | ROWS} <frame_start>
     | {RANGE | ROWS} BETWEEN <frame_start> AND <frame_end>
```

where frame_start and frame_end can be one of:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
<value> PRECEDING
CURRENT ROW
<value> FOLLOWING
UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING
```

[2]When a locking clause is specified (the `FOR` clause), the Global Deadlock Detector affects how table rows are locked. See item 12 in Description and see "The Locking Clause" later in this section.

### Description

`SELECT` retrieves rows from zero or more tables. The general processing of `SELECT` is as follows:

1. All queries in the `WITH` clause are computed. These effectively serve as temporary tables that can be referenced in the `FROM` list.
2. All elements in the `FROM` list are computed. (Each element in the `FROM` list is a real or virtual table.) If more than one element is specified in the `FROM` list, they are cross-joined together.
3. If the `WHERE` clause is specified, all rows that do not satisfy the condition are eliminated from the output.
4. If the `GROUP BY` clause is specified, or if there are aggregate function calls, the output is combined into groups of rows that match on one or more values, and the results of aggregate functions are computed. If the `HAVING` clause is present, it eliminates groups that do not satisfy the given condition.
5. The actual output rows are computed using the `SELECT` output expressions for each selected row or row group.
6. `SELECT DISTINCT` eliminates duplicate rows from the result. `SELECT DISTINCT ON` eliminates rows that match on all the specified expressions. `SELECT ALL` (the default) will return all candidate rows, including duplicates.
7. If a window expression is specified (and optional `WINDOW` clause), the output is organized according to the positional (row) or value-based (range) window frame.
8. The actual output rows are computed using the `SELECT` output expressions for each selected row.
9. Using the operators `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, and `EXCEPT`, the output of more than one `SELECT` statement can be combined to form a single result set. The `UNION` operator returns all rows that are in one or both of the result sets. The `INTERSECT` operator returns all rows that are strictly in both result sets. The `EXCEPT` operator returns the rows that are in the first result set but not in the second. In all three cases, duplicate rows are eliminated unless `ALL` is specified. The noise word `DISTINCT` can be added to explicitly specify eliminating duplicate rows. Notice that `DISTINCT` is the default behavior here, even though `ALL` is the default for `SELECT` itself.
10. If the `ORDER BY` clause is specified, the returned rows are sorted in the specified order. If `ORDER BY` is not given, the rows are returned in whatever order the system finds fastest to produce.
11. If the `LIMIT` (or `FETCH FIRST`) or `OFFSET` clause is specified, the `SELECT` statement only returns a subset of the result rows.
12. If `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` is specified, the `SELECT` statement locks the entire table against concurrent updates.

You must have `SELECT` privilege on each column used in a `SELECT` command. The use of `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` requires `UPDATE` privilege as well (for at least one column of each table so selected).

### Parameters

#### The WITH Clause

The optional `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the primary query. The subqueries effectively act as temporary tables or views for the duration of the primary query. Each subquery can be a `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statement. When writing a data-modifying statement (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`) in `WITH`, it is usual to include a `RETURNING` clause. It is the output of `RETURNING`, *not* the underlying table that the statement modifies, that forms the temporary table that is read by the primary query. If `RETURNING` is omitted, the statement is still run, but it produces no output so it cannot be referenced as a table by the primary query.

For a `SELECT` command that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can contain at most a single clause that modifies table data (`INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` command).

A with_query_name without schema qualification must be specified for each query in the `WITH` clause. Optionally, a list of column names can be specified; if the list of column names is omitted, the names are inferred from the subquery. The primary query and the `WITH` queries are all (notionally) run at the same time.

If `RECURSIVE` is specified, it allows a `SELECT` subquery to reference itself by name. Such a subquery has the general form

```
<non_recursive_term> UNION [ALL | DISTINCT] <recursive_term>
```

where the recursive self-reference appears on the right-hand side of the `UNION`. Only one recursive self-reference is permitted per query. Recursive data-modifying statements are not supported, but you can use the results of a recursive `SELECT` query in a data-modifying statement.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If the `RECURSIVE` keyword is specified, the `WITH` queries need not be ordered: a query can reference another query that is later in the list. However, circular references, or mutual recursion, are not supported.

Without the `RECURSIVE` keyword, `WITH` queries can only reference sibling `WITH` queries that are earlier in the `WITH` list.

`WITH RECURSIVE` limitations. These items are not supported:

- A recursive `WITH` clause that contains the following in the recursive_term.
  - Subqueries with a self-reference
  - `DISTINCT` clause
  - `GROUP BY` clause
  - A window function

- A recursive `WITH` clause where the with_query_name is a part of a set operation.

Following is an example of the set operation limitation. This query returns an error because the set operation `UNION` contains a reference to the table `foo`.

```
WITH RECURSIVE foo(i) AS (
    SELECT 1
  UNION ALL
    SELECT i+1 FROM (SELECT * FROM foo UNION SELECT 0) bar
)
SELECT * FROM foo LIMIT 5;
```

This recursive CTE is allowed because the set operation `UNION` does not have a reference to the CTE `foo`.

```
WITH RECURSIVE foo(i) AS (
    SELECT 1
  UNION ALL
    SELECT i+1 FROM (SELECT * FROM bar UNION SELECT 0) bar, foo
    WHERE foo.i = bar.a
)
SELECT * FROM foo LIMIT 5;
```

A key property of `WITH` queries is that they are evaluated only once per execution of the primary query, even if the primary query refers to them more than once. In particular, data-modifying statements are guaranteed to be run once and only once, regardless of whether the primary query reads all or any of their output.

The primary query and the `WITH` queries are all (notionally) run at the same time. This implies that the effects of a data-modifying statement in `WITH` cannot be seen from other parts of the query, other than by reading its `RETURNING` output. If two such data-modifying statements attempt to modify the same row, the results are unspecified.

See WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for additional information.

#### The SELECT List

The `SELECT` list (between the key words `SELECT` and `FROM`) specifies expressions that form the output rows of the `SELECT` statement. The expressions can (and usually do) refer to columns computed in the `FROM` clause.

An expression in the `SELECT` list can be a constant value, a column reference, an operator invocation, a function call, an aggregate expression, a window expression, a scalar subquery, and so on. A number of constructs can be classified as an expression but do not follow any general syntax rules. These generally have the semantics of a function or operator. For information about SQL value expressions and function calls, see "Querying Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Just as in a table, every output column of a `SELECT` has a name. In a simple `SELECT` this name is just used to label the column for display, but when the `SELECT` is a sub-query of a larger query, the name is seen by the larger query as the column name of the virtual table produced by the sub-query. To specify the name to use for an output column, write `AS` output_name after the column's expression. (You can omit `AS`, but only if the desired output name does not match any SQL keyword. For protection against possible future keyword additions, you can always either write `AS` or double-quote the output name.) If you do not specify a column name, WarehousePG chooses a name is automatically. If the column's expression is a simple column reference then the chosen name is the same as that column's name. In more complex cases, a function or type name may be used, or the system may fall back on a generated name such as `?column?` or `columnN`.

An output column's name can be used to refer to the column's value in `ORDER BY` and `GROUP BY` clauses, but not in the `WHERE` or `HAVING` clauses; there you must write out the expression instead.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Instead of an expression, `*` can be written in the output list as a shorthand for all the columns of the selected rows. Also, you can write `table\_name.*` as a shorthand for the columns coming from just that table. In these cases it is not possible to specify new names with `AS`; the output column names will be the same as the table columns' names.

#### The DISTINCT Clause

If `SELECT DISTINCT` is specified, all duplicate rows are removed from the result set (one row is kept from each group of duplicates). `SELECT ALL` specifies the opposite: all rows are kept; that is the default.

`SELECT DISTINCT ON ( expression [, ...] )` keeps only the first row of each set of rows where the given expressions evaluate to equal. The `DISTINCT ON` expressions are interpreted using the same rules as for `ORDER BY` (see above). Note that the "first row" of each set is unpredictable unless `ORDER BY` is used to ensure that the desired row appears first. For example:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ON (location) location, time, report
    FROM weather_reports
    ORDER BY location, time DESC;
```

retrieves the most recent weather report for each location. But if we had not used `ORDER BY` to force descending order of time values for each location, we'd have gotten a report from an unpredictable time for each location.

The `DISTINCT ON` expression(s) must match the leftmost `ORDER BY` expression(s). The `ORDER BY` clause will normally contain additional expression(s) that determine the desired precedence of rows within each `DISTINCT ON` group.

#### The FROM Clause

The `FROM` clause specifies one or more source tables for the `SELECT`. If multiple sources are specified, the result is the Cartesian product (cross join) of all the sources. But usually qualification conditions are added (via `WHERE`) to restrict the returned rows to a small subset of the Cartesian product. The `FROM` clause can contain the following elements:

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table or view. If `ONLY` is specified, only that table is scanned. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are scanned.

- alias

  A substitute name for the `FROM` item containing the alias. An alias is used for brevity or to eliminate ambiguity for self-joins (where the same table is scanned multiple times). When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table or function; for example given `FROM foo AS f`, the remainder of the `SELECT` must refer to this `FROM` item as `f` not `foo`. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more columns of the table.

- select

  A sub-`SELECT` can appear in the `FROM` clause. This acts as though its output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single `SELECT` command. Note that the sub-`SELECT` must be surrounded by parentheses, and an alias must be provided for it. A VALUES command can also be used here. See "Non-standard Clauses" in the Compatibility section for limitations of using correlated sub-selects in WarehousePG.

- with_query_name

  A with_query is referenced in the `FROM` clause by specifying its with_query_name, just as though the name were a table name. The with_query_name cannot contain a schema qualifier. An alias can be provided in the same way as for a table.

  The with_query hides a table of the same name for the purposes of the primary query. If necessary, you can refer to a table of the same name by qualifying the table name with the schema.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- function_name

  Function calls can appear in the `FROM` clause. (This is especially useful for functions that return result sets, but any function can be used.) This acts as though its output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single `SELECT` command. An alias may also be used. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more attributes of the function's composite return type. If the function has been defined as returning the record data type, then an alias or the key word `AS` must be present, followed by a column definition list in the form `( column_name data_type [, ... ] )`. The column definition list must match the actual number and types of columns returned by the function.

- join_type

  One of:

  - **[INNER] JOIN**
  - **LEFT [OUTER] JOIN**
  - **RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN**
  - **FULL [OUTER] JOIN**
  - **CROSS JOIN**

  For the `INNER` and `OUTER` join types, a join condition must be specified, namely exactly one of `NATURAL`, `ON join\_condition`, or `USING ( join\_column [, ...])`. See below for the meaning. For `CROSS JOIN`, none of these clauses may appear.

  A JOIN clause combines two `FROM` items, which for convenience we will refer to as "tables", though in reality they can be any type of `FROM` item. Use parentheses if necessary to determine the order of nesting. In the absence of parentheses, `JOIN`s nest left-to-right. In any case `JOIN` binds more tightly than the commas separating `FROM`-list items.

  `CROSS JOIN` and `INNER JOIN` produce a simple Cartesian product, the same result as you get from listing the two tables at the top level of `FROM`, but restricted by the join condition (if any). `CROSS JOIN` is equivalent to `INNER JOIN ON``(TRUE)`, that is, no rows are removed by qualification. These join types are just a notational convenience, since they do nothing you could not do with plain `FROM` and `WHERE`.

  `LEFT OUTER JOIN` returns all rows in the qualified Cartesian product (i.e., all combined rows that pass its join condition), plus one copy of each row in the left-hand table for which there was no right-hand row that passed the join condition. This left-hand row is extended to the full width of the joined table by inserting null values for the right-hand columns. Note that only the `JOIN` clause's own condition is considered while deciding which rows have matches. Outer conditions are applied afterwards.

  Conversely, `RIGHT OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left). This is just a notational convenience, since you could convert it to a `LEFT OUTER JOIN` by switching the left and right tables.

  `FULL OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched left-hand row (extended with nulls on the right), plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left).

- ON join_condition

  join_condition is an expression resulting in a value of type `boolean` (similar to a `WHERE` clause) that specifies which rows in a join are considered to match.

- USING (join_column [, ...])

  A clause of the form `USING ( a, b, ... )` is shorthand for `ON left_table.a = right_table.a AND left_table.b = right_table.b ...`. Also, `USING` implies that only one of each pair of equivalent columns will be included in the join output, not both.

- NATURAL

  `NATURAL` is shorthand for a `USING` list that mentions all columns in the two tables that have the same names. If there are no common column names, `NATURAL` is equivalent to `ON TRUE`.

#### The WHERE Clause

The optional `WHERE` clause has the general form:

```
WHERE <condition>
```

where condition is any expression that evaluates to a result of type `boolean`. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will be eliminated from the output. A row satisfies the condition if it returns true when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### The GROUP BY Clause

The optional `GROUP BY` clause has the general form:

```
GROUP BY <grouping_element >[, ...]
```

where grouping_element can be one of:

```
()
<expression>
ROLLUP (<expression> [,...])
CUBE (<expression> [,...])
GROUPING SETS ((<grouping_element> [, ...]))
```

`GROUP BY` will condense into a single row all selected rows that share the same values for the grouped expressions. expression can be an input column name, or the name or ordinal number of an output column ( `SELECT` list item), or an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values. In case of ambiguity, a `GROUP BY` name will be interpreted as an input-column name rather than an output column name.

Aggregate functions, if any are used, are computed across all rows making up each group, producing a separate value for each group. (If there are aggregate functions but no `GROUP BY` clause, the query is treated as having a single group comprising all the selected rows.) The set of rows fed to each aggregate function can be further filtered by attaching a `FILTER` clause to the aggregate function call. When a `FILTER` clause is present, only those rows matching it are included in the input to that aggregate function. See Aggregate Expressions.

When `GROUP BY` is present, or any aggregate functions are present, it is not valid for the `SELECT` list expressions to refer to ungrouped columns except within aggregate functions or when the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouped columns, since there would otherwise be more than one possible value to return for an ungrouped column. A functional dependency exists if the grouped columns (or a subset thereof) are the primary key of the table containing the ungrouped column.

Keep in mind that all aggregate functions are evaluated before evaluating any "scalar" expressions in the `HAVING` clause or `SELECT` list. This means that, for example, a `CASE` expression cannot be used to skip evaluation of an aggregate function; see Expression Evaluation Rules.

WarehousePG has the following additional OLAP grouping extensions (often referred to as *supergroups*):

- ROLLUP

  A `ROLLUP` grouping is an extension to the `GROUP BY` clause that creates aggregate subtotals that roll up from the most detailed level to a grand total, following a list of grouping columns (or expressions). `ROLLUP` takes an ordered list of grouping columns, calculates the standard aggregate values specified in the `GROUP BY` clause, then creates progressively higher-level subtotals, moving from right to left through the list. Finally, it creates a grand total. A `ROLLUP` grouping can be thought of as a series of grouping sets. For example:

  ```
  GROUP BY ROLLUP (a,b,c)
  ```

  is equivalent to:

  ```
  GROUP BY GROUPING SETS( (a,b,c), (a,b), (a), () )
  ```

  Notice that the n elements of a `ROLLUP` translate to n+1 grouping sets. Also, the order in which the grouping expressions are specified is significant in a `ROLLUP` .

- CUBE

  A `CUBE` grouping is an extension to the `GROUP BY` clause that creates subtotals for all of the possible combinations of the given list of grouping columns (or expressions). In terms of multidimensional analysis, `CUBE` generates all the subtotals that could be calculated for a data cube with the specified dimensions. For example:

  ```
  GROUP BY CUBE (a,b,c)
  ```

  is equivalent to:

  ```
  GROUP BY GROUPING SETS( (a,b,c), (a,b), (a,c), (b,c), (a),
  (b), (c), () )
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Notice that n elements of a `CUBE` translate to 2n grouping sets. Consider using `CUBE` in any situation requiring cross-tabular reports. `CUBE` is typically most suitable in queries that use columns from multiple dimensions rather than columns representing different levels of a single dimension. For instance, a commonly requested cross-tabulation might need subtotals for all the combinations of month, state, and product.

> **Note** WarehousePG supports specifying a maximum of 12 `CUBE` grouping columns.

- GROUPING SETS

  You can selectively specify the set of groups that you want to create using a `GROUPING SETS` expression within a `GROUP BY` clause. This allows precise specification across multiple dimensions without computing a whole `ROLLUP` or `CUBE`. For example:

```
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS( (a,c), (a,b) )
```

If using the grouping extension clauses `ROLLUP`, `CUBE`, or `GROUPING SETS`, two challenges arise. First, how do you determine which result rows are subtotals, and then the exact level of aggregation for a given subtotal. Or, how do you differentiate between result rows that contain both stored `NULL` values and "NULL" values created by the `ROLLUP` or `CUBE`. Secondly, when duplicate grouping sets are specified in the `GROUP BY` clause, how do you determine which result rows are duplicates? There are two additional grouping functions you can use in the `SELECT` list to help with this:

- **grouping(column [, ...])** — The `grouping` function can be applied to one or more grouping attributes to distinguish super-aggregated rows from regular grouped rows. This can be helpful in distinguishing a "NULL" representing the set of all values in a super-aggregated row from a `NULL` value in a regular row. Each argument in this function produces a bit — either `1` or `0`, where `1` means the result row is super-aggregated, and `0` means the result row is from a regular grouping. The `grouping` function returns an integer by treating these bits as a binary number and then converting it to a base-10 integer.
- **group_id()** — For grouping extension queries that contain duplicate grouping sets, the `group_id` function is used to identify duplicate rows in the output. All *unique* grouping set output rows will have a group_id value of 0. For each duplicate grouping set detected, the `group_id` function assigns a group_id number greater than 0. All output rows in a particular duplicate grouping set are identified by the same group_id number.

#### The WINDOW Clause

The optional `WINDOW` clause specifies the behavior of window functions appearing in the query's `SELECT` list or `ORDER BY` clause. These functions can reference the `WINDOW` clause entries by name in their `OVER` clauses. A `WINDOW` clause entry does not have to be referenced anywhere, however; if it is not used in the query it is simply ignored. It is possible to use window functions without any `WINDOW` clause at all, since a window function call can specify its window definition directly in its `OVER` clause. However, the `WINDOW` clause saves typing when the same window definition is needed for more than one window function.

For example:

```
SELECT vendor, rank() OVER (mywindow) FROM sale
GROUP BY vendor
WINDOW mywindow AS (ORDER BY sum(prc*qty));
```

A `WINDOW` clause has this general form:

```
WINDOW <window_name> AS (<window_definition>)
```

where window_name is a name that can be referenced from `OVER` clauses or subsequent window definitions, and window_definition is:

```
[<existing_window_name>]
[PARTITION BY <expression> [, ...]]
[ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...] ]
[<frame_clause>]
```

- existing_window_name

  If an `existing\_window\_name` is specified it must refer to an earlier entry in the `WINDOW` list; the new window copies its partitioning clause from that entry, as well as its ordering clause if any. The new window cannot specify its own `PARTITION BY` clause, and it can specify `ORDER BY` only if the copied window does not have one. The new window always uses its own frame clause; the copied window must not specify a frame clause.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- PARTITION BY

  The `PARTITION BY` clause organizes the result set into logical groups based on the unique values of the specified expression. The elements of the `PARTITION BY` clause are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of a `GROUP BY` clause, except that they are always simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column. Another difference is that these expressions can contain aggregate function calls, which are not allowed in a regular `GROUP BY` clause. They are allowed here because windowing occurs after grouping and aggregation. When used with window functions, the functions are applied to each partition independently. For example, if you follow `PARTITION BY` with a column name, the result set is partitioned by the distinct values of that column. If omitted, the entire result set is considered one partition.

  Similarly, the elements of the `ORDER BY` list are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of an `ORDER BY` clause, except that the expressions are always taken as simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column.

- ORDER BY

  The elements of the `ORDER BY` clause define how to sort the rows in each partition of the result set. If omitted, rows are returned in whatever order is most efficient and may vary. > **Note** Columns of data types that lack a coherent ordering, such as `time` , are not good candidates for use in the `ORDER BY` clause of a window specification. Time, with or without time zone, lacks a coherent ordering because addition and subtraction do not have the expected effects. For example, the following is not generally true: `x::time < x::time + '2 hour'::interval`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- frame_clause

  The optional `frame\_clause` defines the *window frame* for window functions that depend on the frame (not all do). The window frame is a set of related rows for each row of the query (called the *current row*). The `frame\_clause` can be one of

  ```
  { RANGE | ROWS } <frame_start>
  { RANGE | ROWS } BETWEEN <frame_start> AND <frame_end>
  ```

  where `frame\_start` and `frame\_end` can be one of

  - `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`
  - `value PRECEDING`
  - `CURRENT ROW`
  - `value FOLLOWING`
  - `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING`

  If `frame\_end` is omitted it defaults to `CURRENT ROW`. Restrictions are that `frame\_start` cannot be `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING`, `frame\_end` cannot be `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`, and the `frame\_end` choice cannot appear earlier in the above list than the `frame\_start` choice — for example `RANGE BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND value PRECEDING` is not allowed.

  The default framing option is `RANGE UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`, which is the same as `RANGE BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW`; it sets the frame to be all rows from the partition start up through the current row's last peer (a row that `ORDER BY` considers equivalent to the current row, or all rows if there is no `ORDER BY`). In general, `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` means that the frame starts with the first row of the partition, and similarly `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` means that the frame ends with the last row of the partition (regardless of `RANGE` or `ROWS` mode). In `ROWS` mode, `CURRENT ROW` means that the frame starts or ends with the current row; but in `RANGE` mode it means that the frame starts or ends with the current row's first or last peer in the `ORDER BY` ordering. The value `PRECEDING` and value `FOLLOWING` cases are currently only allowed in `ROWS` mode. They indicate that the frame starts or ends with the row that many rows before or after the current row. value must be an integer expression not containing any variables, aggregate functions, or window functions. The value must not be null or negative; but it can be zero, which selects the current row itself.

  Beware that the `ROWS` options can produce unpredictable results if the `ORDER BY` ordering does not order the rows uniquely. The `RANGE` options are designed to ensure that rows that are peers in the `ORDER BY` ordering are treated alike; all peer rows will be in the same frame.

  Use either a `ROWS` or `RANGE` clause to express the bounds of the window. The window bound can be one, many, or all rows of a partition. You can express the bound of the window either in terms of a range of data values offset from the value in the current row ( `RANGE` ), or in terms of the number of rows offset from the current row ( `ROWS` ). When using the `RANGE` clause, you must also use an `ORDER BY` clause. This is because the calculation performed to produce the window requires that the values be sorted. Additionally, the `ORDER BY` clause cannot contain more than one expression, and the expression must result in either a date or a numeric value. When using the `ROWS` or `RANGE` clauses, if you specify only a starting row, the current row is used as the last row in the window.

  **PRECEDING** — The `PRECEDING` clause defines the first row of the window using the current row as a reference point. The starting row is expressed in terms of the number of rows preceding the current row. For example, in the case of `ROWS` framing, `5 PRECEDING` sets the window to start with the fifth row preceding the current row. In the case of `RANGE` framing, it sets the window to start with the first row whose ordering column value precedes that of the current row by 5 in the given order. If the specified order is ascending by date, this will be the first row within 5 days before the current row. `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` sets the first row in the window to be the first row in the partition.

  **BETWEEN** — The `BETWEEN` clause defines the first and last row of the window, using the current row as a reference point. First and last rows are expressed in terms of the number of rows preceding and following the current row, respectively. For example, `BETWEEN 3 PRECEDING AND 5 FOLLOWING` sets the window to start with the third row preceding the current row, and end with the fifth row following the current row. Use `BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` to set the first and last rows in the window to be the first and last row in the partition, respectively. This is equivalent to the default behavior if no `ROW` or `RANGE` clause is specified.

  **FOLLOWING** — The `FOLLOWING` clause defines the last row of the window using the current row as a reference point. The last row is expressed in terms of the number of rows following the current row. For example, in the case of `ROWS` framing, `5 FOLLOWING` sets the window to end with the fifth row following the current row. In the case of `RANGE` framing, it sets the window to end with the last row whose ordering column value follows that of the current row by 5 in the given order. If the specified order is ascending by date, this will be the last row within 5 days after the current row. Use `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` to set the last row in the window to be the last row in the partition.

  If you do not specify a `ROW` or a `RANGE` clause, the window bound starts with the first row in the partition ( `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` ) and ends with the current row ( `CURRENT ROW` ) if `ORDER BY` is used. If an `ORDER BY` is not specified, the window starts with the first row in the partition ( `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` ) and ends with last row in the partition ( `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` ).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### The HAVING Clause

The optional `HAVING` clause has the general form:

```
HAVING <condition>
```

where condition is the same as specified for the `WHERE` clause. `HAVING` eliminates group rows that do not satisfy the condition. `HAVING` is different from `WHERE`: `WHERE` filters individual rows before the application of `GROUP BY`, while `HAVING` filters group rows created by `GROUP BY`. Each column referenced in condition must unambiguously reference a grouping column, unless the reference appears within an aggregate function or the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouping columns.

The presence of `HAVING` turns a query into a grouped query even if there is no `GROUP BY` clause. This is the same as what happens when the query contains aggregate functions but no `GROUP BY` clause. All the selected rows are considered to form a single group, and the `SELECT` list and `HAVING` clause can only reference table columns from within aggregate functions. Such a query will emit a single row if the `HAVING` condition is true, zero rows if it is not true.

#### The UNION Clause

The `UNION` clause has this general form:

```
<select_statement> UNION [ALL | DISTINCT] <select_statement>
```

where select_statement is any `SELECT` statement without an `ORDER BY`, `LIMIT`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` clause. (`ORDER BY` and `LIMIT` can be attached to a subquery expression if it is enclosed in parentheses. Without parentheses, these clauses will be taken to apply to the result of the `UNION`, not to its right-hand input expression.)

The `UNION` operator computes the set union of the rows returned by the involved `SELECT` statements. A row is in the set union of two result sets if it appears in at least one of the result sets. The two `SELECT` statements that represent the direct operands of the `UNION` must produce the same number of columns, and corresponding columns must be of compatible data types.

The result of `UNION` does not contain any duplicate rows unless the `ALL` option is specified. `ALL` prevents elimination of duplicates. (Therefore, `UNION ALL` is usually significantly quicker than `UNION`; use `ALL` when you can.) `DISTINCT` can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple `UNION` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless otherwise indicated by parentheses.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified either for a `UNION` result or for any input of a `UNION`.

#### The INTERSECT Clause

The `INTERSECT` clause has this general form:

```
<select_statement> INTERSECT [ALL | DISTINCT] <select_statement>
```

where select_statement is any SELECT statement without an `ORDER BY`, `LIMIT`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` clause.

The `INTERSECT` operator computes the set intersection of the rows returned by the involved `SELECT` statements. A row is in the intersection of two result sets if it appears in both result sets.

The result of `INTERSECT` does not contain any duplicate rows unless the `ALL` option is specified. With `ALL`, a row that has m duplicates in the left table and n duplicates in the right table will appear min(m, n) times in the result set. `DISTINCT` can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple `INTERSECT` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. `INTERSECT` binds more tightly than `UNION`. That is, `A UNION B INTERSECT C` will be read as `A UNION (B INTERSECT C)`.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified either for an `INTERSECT` result or for any input of an `INTERSECT`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### The EXCEPT Clause

The `EXCEPT` clause has this general form:

```
<select_statement> EXCEPT [ALL | DISTINCT] <select_statement>
```

where select_statement is any `SELECT` statement without an `ORDER BY`, `LIMIT`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` clause.

The `EXCEPT` operator computes the set of rows that are in the result of the left `SELECT` statement but not in the result of the right one.

The result of `EXCEPT` does not contain any duplicate rows unless the `ALL` option is specified. With `ALL`, a row that has m duplicates in the left table and n duplicates in the right table will appear max(m-n,0) times in the result set. `DISTINCT` can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple `EXCEPT` operators in the same `SELECT` statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. `EXCEPT` binds at the same level as `UNION`.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified either for an `EXCEPT` result or for any input of an `EXCEPT`.

#### The ORDER BY Clause

The optional `ORDER BY` clause has this general form:

```
ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [,...]
```

where expression can be the name or ordinal number of an output column (`SELECT` list item), or it can be an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values.

The `ORDER BY` clause causes the result rows to be sorted according to the specified expressions. If two rows are equal according to the left-most expression, they are compared according to the next expression and so on. If they are equal according to all specified expressions, they are returned in an implementation-dependent order.

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the output column. This feature makes it possible to define an ordering on the basis of a column that does not have a unique name. This is never absolutely necessary because it is always possible to assign a name to an output column using the `AS` clause.

It is also possible to use arbitrary expressions in the `ORDER BY` clause, including columns that do not appear in the `SELECT` output list. Thus the following statement is valid:

```
SELECT name FROM distributors ORDER BY code;
```

A limitation of this feature is that an `ORDER BY` clause applying to the result of a `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, or `EXCEPT` clause may only specify an output column name or number, not an expression.

If an `ORDER BY` expression is a simple name that matches both an output column name and an input column name, `ORDER BY` will interpret it as the output column name. This is the opposite of the choice that `GROUP BY` will make in the same situation. This inconsistency is made to be compatible with the SQL standard.

Optionally one may add the key word `ASC` (ascending) or `DESC` (descending) after any expression in the `ORDER BY` clause. If not specified, `ASC` is assumed by default. Alternatively, a specific ordering operator name may be specified in the `USING` clause. `ASC` is usually equivalent to `USING <` and `DESC` is usually equivalent to `USING >`. (But the creator of a user-defined data type can define exactly what the default sort ordering is, and it might correspond to operators with other names.)

If `NULLS LAST` is specified, null values sort after all non-null values; if `NULLS FIRST` is specified, null values sort before all non-null values. If neither is specified, the default behavior is `NULLS LAST` when `ASC` is specified or implied, and `NULLS FIRST` when `DESC` is specified (thus, the default is to act as though nulls are larger than non-nulls). When `USING` is specified, the default nulls ordering depends upon whether the operator is a less-than or greater-than operator.

Note that ordering options apply only to the expression they follow; for example `ORDER BY x, y DESC` does not mean the same thing as `ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC`.

Character-string data is sorted according to the locale-specific collation order that was established when the database was created.

Character-string data is sorted according to the collation that applies to the column being sorted. That can be overridden as needed by including a `COLLATE` clause in the expression, for example `ORDER BY mycolumn COLLATE "en_US"`. For information about defining collations, see CREATE COLLATION.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### The LIMIT Clause

The `LIMIT` clause consists of two independent sub-clauses:

```
LIMIT {<count> | ALL}
OFFSET <start>
```

where count specifies the maximum number of rows to return, while start specifies the number of rows to skip before starting to return rows. When both are specified, start rows are skipped before starting to count the `count` rows to be returned.

If the `count` expression evaluates to NULL, it is treated as `LIMIT ALL`, that is, no limit. If `start` evaluates to NULL, it is treated the same as `OFFSET 0`.

SQL:2008 introduced a different syntax to achieve the same result, which WarehousePG also supports. It is:

```
OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ]
            FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ <count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY
```

In this syntax, the start or count value is required by the standard to be a literal constant, a parameter, or a variable name; as a WarehousePG extension, other expressions are allowed, but will generally need to be enclosed in parentheses to avoid ambiguity. If count is omitted in a `FETCH` clause, it defaults to `1`. `ROW` and `ROWS` as well as `FIRST` and `NEXT` are noise words that don't influence the effects of these clauses. According to the standard, the `OFFSET` clause must come before the `FETCH` clause if both are present; but WarehousePG allows either order.

When using `LIMIT`, it is a good idea to use an `ORDER BY` clause that constrains the result rows into a unique order. Otherwise you will get an unpredictable subset of the query's rows — you may be asking for the tenth through twentieth rows, but tenth through twentieth in what ordering? You don't know what ordering unless you specify `ORDER BY`.

The query optimizer takes `LIMIT` into account when generating a query plan, so you are very likely to get different plans (yielding different row orders) depending on what you use for `LIMIT` and `OFFSET`. Thus, using different `LIMIT/OFFSET` values to select different subsets of a query result will give inconsistent results unless you enforce a predictable result ordering with `ORDER BY`. This is not a defect; it is an inherent consequence of the fact that SQL does not promise to deliver the results of a query in any particular order unless `ORDER BY` is used to constrain the order.

#### The Locking Clause

`FOR UPDATE`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` and `FOR KEY SHARE` are *locking clauses*; they affect how `SELECT` locks rows as they are obtained from the table.

The locking clause has the general form

```
FOR <lock_strength> [OF <table_name> [ , ... ] ] [ NOWAIT ]
```

where lock_strength can be one of

- `FOR UPDATE` - Locks the table with an `EXCLUSIVE` lock.
- `FOR NO KEY UPDATE` - Locks the table with an `EXCLUSIVE` lock.
- `FOR SHARE` - Locks the table with a `ROW SHARE` lock.
- `FOR KEY SHARE` - Locks the table with a `ROW SHARE` lock.

> **Note** By default WarehousePG acquires the more restrictive `EXCLUSIVE` lock (rather than `ROW EXCLUSIVE` in PostgreSQL) for `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` operations on heap tables. When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled the lock mode for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations on heap tables is `ROW EXCLUSIVE`. See Global Deadlock Detector. WarehousePG always holds a table-level lock with `SELECT...FOR UPDATE` statements.

For more information on each row-level lock mode, refer to Explicit Locking in the PostgreSQL documentation.

To prevent the operation from waiting for other transactions to commit, use the `NOWAIT` option. With `NOWAIT`, the statement reports an error, rather than waiting, if a selected row cannot be locked immediately. Note that `NOWAIT` only affects whether the `SELECT` statement waits to obtain row-level locks. A required table-level lock is always taken in the ordinary way. For example, a `SELECT FOR UPDATE NOWAIT` statement will always wait for the required table-level lock; it behaves as if `NOWAIT` was omitted. You can use `LOCK` with the `NOWAIT` option first, if you need to acquire the table-level lock without waiting.

If specific tables are named in a locking clause, then only rows coming from those tables are locked; any other tables used in the `SELECT` are simply read as usual. A locking clause without a table list affects all tables used in the statement. If a locking clause is applied to a view or sub-query, it affects all tables used in the view or sub-query. However, these clauses do not apply to `WITH` queries referenced by the primary query. If you want row locking to occur within a `WITH` query, specify a locking clause within the `WITH` query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Multiple locking clauses can be written if it is necessary to specify different locking behavior for different tables. If the same table is mentioned (or implicitly affected) by both more than one locking clause, then it is processed as if it was only specified by the strongest one. Similarly, a table is processed as `NOWAIT` if that is specified in any of the clauses affecting it.

The locking clauses cannot be used in contexts where returned rows cannot be clearly identified with individual table rows; for example they cannot be used with aggregation.

When a locking clause appears at the top level of a `SELECT` query, the rows that are locked are exactly those that are returned by the query; in the case of a join query, the rows locked are those that contribute to returned join rows. In addition, rows that satisfied the query conditions as of the query snapshot will be locked, although they will not be returned if they were updated after the snapshot and no longer satisfy the query conditions. If a `LIMIT` is used, locking stops once enough rows have been returned to satisfy the limit (but note that rows skipped over by `OFFSET` will get locked). Similarly, if a locking clause is used in a cursor's query, only rows actually fetched or stepped past by the cursor will be locked.

When locking clause appears in a sub-`SELECT`, the rows locked are those returned to the outer query by the sub-query. This might involve fewer rows than inspection of the sub-query alone would suggest, since conditions from the outer query might be used to optimize execution of the sub-query. For example,

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss WHERE col1 = 5;
```

will lock only rows having `col1 = 5`, even though that condition is not textually within the sub-query.

It is possible for a `SELECT` command running at the `READ COMMITTED` transaction isolation level and using `ORDER BY` and a locking clause to return rows out of order. This is because `ORDER BY` is applied first. The command sorts the result, but might then block trying to obtain a lock on one or more of the rows. Once the `SELECT` unblocks, some of the ordering column values might have been modified, leading to those rows appearing to be out of order (though they are in order in terms of the original column values). This can be worked around at need by placing the `FOR UPDATE/SHARE` clause in a sub-query, for example

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss ORDER BY column1;
```

Note that this will result in locking all rows of `mytable`, whereas `FOR UPDATE` at the top level would lock only the actually returned rows. This can make for a significant performance difference, particularly if the `ORDER BY` is combined with `LIMIT` or other restrictions. So this technique is recommended only if concurrent updates of the ordering columns are expected and a strictly sorted result is required.

At the `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level this would cause a serialization failure (with a `SQLSTATE` of `40001`), so there is no possibility of receiving rows out of order under these isolation levels.

### The TABLE Command

The command

```
TABLE <name>
```

is completely equivalent to

```
SELECT * FROM <name>
```

It can be used as a top-level command or as a space-saving syntax variant in parts of complex queries.

### Examples

To join the table `films` with the table `distributors`:

```
SELECT f.title, f.did, d.name, f.date_prod, f.kind FROM
distributors d, films f WHERE f.did = d.did
```

To sum the column `length` of all films and group the results by `kind`:

```
SELECT kind, sum(length) AS total FROM films GROUP BY kind;
```

To sum the column `length` of all films, group the results by `kind` and show those group totals that are less than 5 hours:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT kind, sum(length) AS total FROM films GROUP BY kind
HAVING sum(length) < interval '5 hours';
```

Calculate the subtotals and grand totals of all sales for movie `kind` and `distributor`.

```
SELECT kind, distributor, sum(prc*qty) FROM sales
GROUP BY ROLLUP(kind, distributor)
ORDER BY 1,2,3;
```

Calculate the rank of movie distributors based on total sales:

```
SELECT distributor, sum(prc*qty),
       rank() OVER (ORDER BY sum(prc*qty) DESC)
FROM sale
GROUP BY distributor ORDER BY 2 DESC;
```

The following two examples are identical ways of sorting the individual results according to the contents of the second column (`name`):

```
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY name;
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY 2;
```

The next example shows how to obtain the union of the tables `distributors` and `actors`, restricting the results to those that begin with the letter `W` in each table. Only distinct rows are wanted, so the key word `ALL` is omitted:

```
SELECT distributors.name FROM distributors WHERE
distributors.name LIKE 'W%' UNION SELECT actors.name FROM
actors WHERE actors.name LIKE 'W%';
```

This example shows how to use a function in the `FROM` clause, both with and without a column definition list:

```
CREATE FUNCTION distributors(int) RETURNS SETOF distributors
AS $$ SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1; $$ LANGUAGE
SQL;
SELECT * FROM distributors(111);

CREATE FUNCTION distributors_2(int) RETURNS SETOF record AS
$$ SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1; $$ LANGUAGE
SQL;
SELECT * FROM distributors_2(111) AS (dist_id int, dist_name
text);
```

This example uses a simple `WITH` clause:

```
WITH test AS (
  SELECT random() as x FROM generate_series(1, 3)
  )
SELECT * FROM test
UNION ALL
SELECT * FROM test;
```

This example uses the `WITH` clause to display per-product sales totals in only the top sales regions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
WITH regional_sales AS
    SELECT region, SUM(amount) AS total_sales
    FROM orders
    GROUP BY region
  ), top_regions AS (
    SELECT region
    FROM regional_sales
    WHERE total_sales > (SELECT SUM(total_sales) FROM
       regional_sales)
  )
SELECT region, product, SUM(quantity) AS product_units,
   SUM(amount) AS product_sales
FROM orders
WHERE region IN (SELECT region FROM top_regions)
GROUP BY region, product;
```

The example could have been written without the `WITH` clause but would have required two levels of nested sub- `SELECT` statements.

This example uses the `WITH RECURSIVE` clause to find all subordinates (direct or indirect) of the employee Mary, and their level of indirectness, from a table that shows only direct subordinates:

```
WITH RECURSIVE employee_recursive(distance, employee_name, manager_name) AS (
    SELECT 1, employee_name, manager_name
    FROM employee
    WHERE manager_name = 'Mary'
  UNION ALL
    SELECT er.distance + 1, e.employee_name, e.manager_name
    FROM employee_recursive er, employee e
    WHERE er.employee_name = e.manager_name
  )
SELECT distance, employee_name FROM employee_recursive;
```

The typical form of recursive queries: an initial condition, followed by `UNION [ALL]`, followed by the recursive part of the query. Be sure that the recursive part of the query will eventually return no tuples, or else the query will loop indefinitely. See WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more examples.

## Compatibility

The `SELECT` statement is compatible with the SQL standard, but there are some extensions and some missing features.

### Omitted FROM Clauses

WarehousePG allows one to omit the `FROM` clause. It has a straightforward use to compute the results of simple expressions. For example:

```
SELECT 2+2;
```

Some other SQL databases cannot do this except by introducing a dummy one-row table from which to do the `SELECT`.

Note that if a `FROM` clause is not specified, the query cannot reference any database tables. For example, the following query is invalid:

```
SELECT distributors.* WHERE distributors.name = 'Westward';
```

In earlier releases, setting a server configuration parameter, add_missing_from, to true allowed WarehousePG to add an implicit entry to the query's `FROM` clause for each table referenced by the query. This is no longer allowed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Omitting the AS Key Word

In the SQL standard, the optional key word `AS` can be omitted before an output column name whenever the new column name is a valid column name (that is, not the same as any reserved keyword). WarehousePG is slightly more restrictive: `AS` is required if the new column name matches any keyword at all, reserved or not. Recommended practice is to use `AS` or double-quote output column names, to prevent any possible conflict against future keyword additions.

In `FROM` items, both the standard and WarehousePG allow `AS` to be omitted before an alias that is an unreserved keyword. But this is impractical for output column names, because of syntactic ambiguities.

#### ONLY and Inheritance

The SQL standard requires parentheses around the table name when writing `ONLY`, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM ONLY (tab1), ONLY (tab2) WHERE ...
```

WarehousePG considers these parentheses to be optional.

WarehousePG allows a trailing `*` to be written to explicitly specify the non-`ONLY` behavior of including child tables. The standard does not allow this.

(These points apply equally to all SQL commands supporting the `ONLY` option.)

#### Namespace Available to GROUP BY and ORDER BY

In the SQL-92 standard, an `ORDER BY` clause may only use output column names or numbers, while a `GROUP BY` clause may only use expressions based on input column names. WarehousePG extends each of these clauses to allow the other choice as well (but it uses the standard's interpretation if there is ambiguity). WarehousePG also allows both clauses to specify arbitrary expressions. Note that names appearing in an expression are always taken as input-column names, not as output column names.

SQL:1999 and later use a slightly different definition which is not entirely upward compatible with SQL-92. In most cases, however, WarehousePG interprets an `ORDER BY` or `GROUP BY` expression the same way SQL:1999 does.

#### Functional Dependencies

WarehousePG recognizes functional dependency (allowing columns to be omitted from `GROUP BY`) only when a table's primary key is included in the `GROUP BY` list. The SQL standard specifies additional conditions that should be recognized.

#### LIMIT and OFFSET

The clauses `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` are WarehousePG-specific syntax, also used by MySQL. The SQL:2008 standard has introduced the clauses `OFFSET .. FETCH {FIRST|NEXT} ...` for the same functionality, as shown above. This syntax is also used by IBM DB2. (Applications for Oracle frequently use a workaround involving the automatically generated `rownum` column, which is not available in WarehousePG, to implement the effects of these clauses.)

#### FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, and FOR KEY SHARE

Although `FOR UPDATE` appears in the SQL standard, the standard allows it only as an option of `DECLARE CURSOR`. WarehousePG allows it in any `SELECT` query as well as in sub-`SELECT`s, but this is an extension. The `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, and `FOR KEY SHARE` variants, as well as the `NOWAIT` option, do not appear in the standard.

#### Data-Modifying Statements in WITH

WarehousePG allows `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` to be used as `WITH` queries. This is not found in the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Nonstandard Clauses

The clause `DISTINCT ON` is not defined in the SQL standard.

#### Limited Use of STABLE and VOLATILE Functions

To prevent data from becoming out-of-sync across the segments in WarehousePG, any function classified as `STABLE` or `VOLATILE` cannot be run at the segment database level if it contains SQL or modifies the database in any way. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

### See Also

EXPLAIN

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.147 SELECT INTO

Defines a new table from the results of a query.

### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
SELECT [ALL | DISTINCT [ON ( <expression> [, ...] )]]
    * | <expression> [AS <output_name>] [, ...]
    INTO [TEMPORARY | TEMP | UNLOGGED ] [TABLE] <new_table>
    [FROM <from_item> [, ...]]
    [WHERE <condition>]
    [GROUP BY <expression> [, ...]]
    [HAVING <condition> [, ...]]
    [{UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT} [ALL | DISTINCT ] <select>]
    [ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]]
    [LIMIT {<count> | ALL}]
    [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
    [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ <count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
    [FOR {UPDATE | SHARE} [OF <table_name> [, ...]] [NOWAIT]
    [...]]
```

### Description

`SELECT INTO` creates a new table and fills it with data computed by a query. The data is not returned to the client, as it is with a normal `SELECT`. The new table's columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the `SELECT`.

### Parameters

The majority of parameters for `SELECT INTO` are the same as SELECT.

- TEMPORARY
- TEMP

  If specified, the table is created as a temporary table.

- UNLOGGED

  If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Data written to unlogged tables is not written to the write-ahead (WAL) log, which makes them considerably faster than ordinary tables. However, the contents of an unlogged table are not replicated to mirror segment instances. Also an unlogged table is not crash-safe. After a segment instance crash or unclean shutdown, the data for the unlogged table on that segment is truncated. Any indexes created on an unlogged table are automatically unlogged as well.

- new_table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

### Examples

Create a new table `films_recent` consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`:

```
SELECT * INTO films_recent FROM films WHERE date_prod >=
'2016-01-01';
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

The SQL standard uses `SELECT INTO` to represent selecting values into scalar variables of a host program, rather than creating a new table. The WarehousePG usage of `SELECT INTO` to represent table creation is historical. It is best to use CREATE TABLE AS for this purpose in new applications.

### See Also

SELECT, CREATE TABLE AS

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.148 SET

Changes the value of a WarehousePG configuration parameter.

### Synopsis

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] <configuration_parameter> {TO | =} <value> |
    '<value>' | DEFAULT}

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] TIME ZONE {<timezone> | LOCAL | DEFAULT}
```

### Description

The `SET` command changes server configuration parameters. Any configuration parameter classified as a session parameter can be changed on-the-fly with `SET`. `SET` affects only the value used by the current session.

If `SET` or `SET SESSION` is issued within a transaction that is later cancelled, the effects of the `SET` command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another `SET`.

The effects of `SET LOCAL` last only till the end of the current transaction, whether committed or not. A special case is `SET` followed by `SET LOCAL` within a single transaction: the `SET LOCAL` value will be seen until the end of the transaction, but afterwards (if the transaction is committed) the `SET` value will take effect.

If `SET LOCAL` is used within a function that includes a `SET` option for the same configuration parameter (see CREATE FUNCTION), the effects of the `SET LOCAL` command disappear at function exit; the value in effect when the function was called is restored anyway. This allows `SET LOCAL` to be used for dynamic or repeated changes of a parameter within a function, while retaining the convenience of using the `SET` option to save and restore the caller's value. Note that a regular `SET` command overrides any surrounding function's `SET` option; its effects persist unless rolled back.

If you create a cursor with the `DECLARE` command in a transaction, you cannot use the `SET` command in the transaction until you close the cursor with the `CLOSE` command.

See Server Configuration Parameters for information about server parameters.

### Parameters

- SESSION

  Specifies that the command takes effect for the current session. This is the default.

- LOCAL

  Specifies that the command takes effect for only the current transaction. After `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, the session-level setting takes effect again. Note that `SET LOCAL` will appear to have no effect if it is run outside of a transaction.

- configuration_parameter

  The name of a WarehousePG configuration parameter. Only parameters classified as *session* can be changed with `SET`. See Server Configuration Parameters for details.

- value

  New value of parameter. Values can be specified as string constants, identifiers, numbers, or comma-separated lists of these. `DEFAULT` can be used to specify resetting the parameter to its default value. If specifying memory sizing or time units, enclose the value in single quotes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- TIME ZONE

  `SET TIME ZONE` value is an alias for `SET timezone TO value`. The syntax `SET TIME ZONE` allows special syntax for the time zone specification. Here are examples of valid values:

  `'PST8PDT'`

  `'Europe/Rome'`

  `-7` (time zone 7 hours west from UTC)

  `INTERVAL '-08:00' HOUR TO MINUTE` (time zone 8 hours west from UTC).

- LOCAL

- DEFAULT

  Set the time zone to your local time zone (that is, server's default value of timezone). See theTime zone section of the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about time zones in WarehousePG.

### Examples

Set the schema search path:

```
SET search_path TO my_schema, public;
```

Increase the segment host memory per query to 200 MB:

```
SET statement_mem TO '200MB';
```

Set the style of date to traditional POSTGRES with "day before month" input convention:

```
SET datestyle TO postgres, dmy;
```

Set the time zone for San Mateo, California (Pacific Time):

```
SET TIME ZONE 'PST8PDT';
```

Set the time zone for Italy:

```
SET TIME ZONE 'Europe/Rome';
```

### Compatibility

`SET TIME ZONE` extends syntax defined in the SQL standard. The standard allows only numeric time zone offsets while WarehousePG allows more flexible time-zone specifications. All other `SET` features are WarehousePG extensions.

### See Also

RESET, SHOW

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.149 SET CONSTRAINTS

Sets constraint check timing for the current transaction.

> **Note** Referential integrity syntax (foreign key constraints) is accepted but not enforced.

### Synopsis

```
SET CONSTRAINTS { ALL | <name> [, ...] } { DEFERRED | IMMEDIATE }
```

### Description

`SET CONSTRAINTS` sets the behavior of constraint checking within the current transaction. `IMMEDIATE` constraints are checked at the end of each statement. `DEFERRED` constraints are not checked until transaction commit. Each constraint has its own `IMMEDIATE` or `DEFERRED` mode.

Upon creation, a constraint is given one of three characteristics: `DEFERRABLE INITIALLY DEFERRED`, `DEFERRABLE INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`, or `NOT DEFERRABLE`. The third class is always `IMMEDIATE` and is not affected by the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command. The first two classes start every transaction in the indicated mode, but their behavior can be changed within a transaction by `SET CONSTRAINTS`.

`SET CONSTRAINTS` with a list of constraint names changes the mode of just those constraints (which must all be deferrable). Each constraint name can be schema-qualified. The current schema search path is used to find the first matching name if no schema name is specified. `SET CONSTRAINTS ALL` changes the mode of all deferrable constraints.

When `SET CONSTRAINTS` changes the mode of a constraint from `DEFERRED` to `IMMEDIATE`, the new mode takes effect retroactively: any outstanding data modifications that would have been checked at the end of the transaction are instead checked during the execution of the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command. If any such constraint is violated, the `SET CONSTRAINTS` fails (and does not change the constraint mode). Thus, `SET CONSTRAINTS` can be used to force checking of constraints to occur at a specific point in a transaction.

Currently, only `UNIQUE`, `PRIMARY KEY`, `REFERENCES` (foreign key), and `EXCLUDE` constraints are affected by this setting. `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints are always checked immediately when a row is inserted or modified (*not* at the end of the statement). Uniqueness and exclusion constraints that have not been declared `DEFERRABLE` are also checked immediately.

The firing of triggers that are declared as "constraint triggers" is also controlled by this setting — they fire at the same time that the associated constraint should be checked.

### Notes

Because WarehousePG does not require constraint names to be unique within a schema (but only per-table), it is possible that there is more than one match for a specified constraint name. In this case `SET CONSTRAINTS` will act on all matches. For a non-schema-qualified name, once a match or matches have been found in some schema in the search path, schemas appearing later in the path are not searched.

This command only alters the behavior of constraints within the current transaction. Issuing this outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

### Compatibility

This command complies with the behavior defined in the SQL standard, except for the limitation that, in WarehousePG, it does not apply to `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints. Also, WarehousePG checks non-deferrable uniqueness constraints immediately, not at end of statement as the standard would suggest.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.150 SET ROLE

Sets the current role identifier of the current session.

### Synopsis

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] ROLE <rolename>

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] ROLE NONE

RESET ROLE
```

### Description

This command sets the current role identifier of the current SQL-session context to be rolename. The role name may be written as either an identifier or a string literal. After `SET ROLE`, permissions checking for SQL commands is carried out as though the named role were the one that had logged in originally.

The specified rolename must be a role that the current session user is a member of. If the session user is a superuser, any role can be selected.

The `NONE` and `RESET` forms reset the current role identifier to be the current session role identifier. These forms may be run by any user.

### Parameters

- SESSION

  Specifies that the command takes effect for the current session. This is the default.

- LOCAL

  Specifies that the command takes effect for only the current transaction. After `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, the session-level setting takes effect again. Note that `SET LOCAL` will appear to have no effect if it is run outside of a transaction.

- rolename

  The name of a role to use for permissions checking in this session.

- NONE

- RESET

  Reset the current role identifier to be the current session role identifier (that of the role used to log in).

### Notes

Using this command, it is possible to either add privileges or restrict privileges. If the session user role has the `INHERITS` attribute, then it automatically has all the privileges of every role that it could `SET ROLE` to; in this case `SET ROLE` effectively drops all the privileges assigned directly to the session user and to the other roles it is a member of, leaving only the privileges available to the named role. On the other hand, if the session user role has the `NOINHERITS` attribute, `SET ROLE` drops the privileges assigned directly to the session user and instead acquires the privileges available to the named role.

In particular, when a superuser chooses to `SET ROLE` to a non-superuser role, they lose their superuser privileges.

`SET ROLE` has effects comparable to `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`, but the privilege checks involved are quite different. Also, `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` determines which roles are allowable for later `SET ROLE` commands, whereas changing roles with `SET ROLE` does not change the set of roles allowed to a later `SET ROLE`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`SET ROLE` does not process session variables specified by the role's `ALTER ROLE` settings; the session variables are only processed during login.

### Examples

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
 session_user | current_user
--------------+--------------
 peter        | peter

SET ROLE 'paul';

SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
 session_user | current_user
--------------+--------------
 peter        | paul
```

### Compatibility

WarehousePG allows identifier syntax (rolename), while the SQL standard requires the role name to be written as a string literal. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; WarehousePG does not make this restriction. The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers are a WarehousePG extension, as is the `RESET` syntax.

### See Also

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.151 SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

Sets the session role identifier and the current role identifier of the current session.

### Synopsis

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] SESSION AUTHORIZATION <rolename>

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT

RESET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
```

### Description

This command sets the session role identifier and the current role identifier of the current SQL-session context to be rolename. The role name may be written as either an identifier or a string literal. Using this command, it is possible, for example, to temporarily become an unprivileged user and later switch back to being a superuser.

The session role identifier is initially set to be the (possibly authenticated) role name provided by the client. The current role identifier is normally equal to the session user identifier, but may change temporarily in the context of `setuid` functions and similar mechanisms; it can also be changed by SET ROLE. The current user identifier is relevant for permission checking.

The session user identifier may be changed only if the initial session user (the authenticated user) had the superuser privilege. Otherwise, the command is accepted only if it specifies the authenticated user name.

The `DEFAULT` and `RESET` forms reset the session and current user identifiers to be the originally authenticated user name. These forms may be run by any user.

### Parameters

- SESSION

  Specifies that the command takes effect for the current session. This is the default.

- LOCAL

  Specifies that the command takes effect for only the current transaction. After `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, the session-level setting takes effect again. Note that `SET LOCAL` will appear to have no effect if it is run outside of a transaction.

- rolename

  The name of the role to assume.

- NONE

- RESET

  Reset the session and current role identifiers to be that of the role used to log in.

### Examples

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
 session_user | current_user
--------------+--------------
 peter        | peter

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION 'paul';

SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
 session_user | current_user
--------------+--------------
 paul         | paul
```

### Compatibility

The SQL standard allows some other expressions to appear in place of the literal rolename, but these options are not important in practice. WarehousePG allows identifier syntax (rolename), which SQL does not. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; WarehousePG does not make this restriction. The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers are a WarehousePG extension, as is the `RESET` syntax.

### See Also

SET ROLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.152 SET TRANSACTION

Sets the characteristics of the current transaction.

### Synopsis

```
SET TRANSACTION [<transaction_mode>] [READ ONLY | READ WRITE]

SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT <snapshot_id>

SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION <transaction_mode>
     [READ ONLY | READ WRITE]
     [NOT] DEFERRABLE
```

where transaction_mode is one of:

```
   ISOLATION LEVEL {SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READ COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED}
```

and snapshot_id is the id of the existing transaction whose snapshot you want this transaction to run with.

### Description

The `SET TRANSACTION` command sets the characteristics of the current transaction. It has no effect on any subsequent transactions.

The available transaction characteristics are the transaction isolation level, the transaction access mode (read/write or read-only), and the deferrable mode.

> **Note** Deferrable transactions require the transaction to be serializable. WarehousePG does not support serializable transactions, so including the `DEFERRABLE` clause has no effect.

The isolation level of a transaction determines what data the transaction can see when other transactions are running concurrently.

- **READ COMMITTED** — A statement can only see rows committed before it began. This is the default.
- **REPEATABLE READ** — All statements in the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement run in the transaction.

The SQL standard defines two additional levels, `READ UNCOMMITTED` and `SERIALIZABLE`. In WarehousePG `READ UNCOMMITTED` is treated as `READ COMMITTED`. If you specify `SERIALIZABLE`, WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`.

The transaction isolation level cannot be changed after the first query or data-modification statement (`SELECT`, `INSERT`, `DELETE`, `UPDATE`, `FETCH`, or `COPY`) of a transaction has been run.

The transaction access mode determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default. When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `COPY FROM` if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all `CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP` commands; `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `TRUNCATE`; and `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and `EXECUTE` if the command they would run is among those listed. This is a high-level notion of read-only that does not prevent all writes to disk.

The `DEFERRABLE` transaction property has no effect unless the transaction is also `SERIALIZABLE` and `READ ONLY`. When all of these properties are set on a transaction, the transaction may block when first acquiring its snapshot, after which it is able to run without the normal overhead of a `SERIALIZABLE` transaction and without any risk of contributing to or being cancelled by a serialization failure. Because WarehousePG does not support serializable transactions, the `DEFERRABLE` transaction property has no effect in WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Parameters

- SNAPSHOT

  Allows a new transaction to run with the same snapshot as an existing transaction. You pass the id of the existing transaction to the `SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT` command. You must first call the `pg_export_snapshot` function to obtain the existing transaction's id.

- SESSION CHARACTERISTICS

  Sets the default transaction characteristics for subsequent transactions of a session.

- READ UNCOMMITTED

- READ COMMITTED

- REPEATABLE READ

- SERIALIZABLE

  The SQL standard defines four transaction isolation levels: `READ UNCOMMITTED`, `READ COMMITTED`, `REPEATABLE READ`, and `SERIALIZABLE`.

  `READ UNCOMMITTED` allows transactions to see changes made by uncomitted concurrent transactions. This is not possible in WarehousePG, so `READ UNCOMMITTED` is treated the same as `READ COMMITTED`.

  `READ COMMITTED`, the default isolation level in WarehousePG, guarantees that a statement can only see rows committed before it began. The same statement run twice in a transaction can produce different results if another concurrent transaction commits after the statement is run the first time.

  The `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level guarantees that a transaction can only see rows committed before it began. `REPEATABLE READ` is the strictest transaction isolation level WarehousePG supports. Applications that use the `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

  The `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level guarantees that all statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was run in this transaction. If a pattern of reads and writes among concurrent serializable transactions would create a situation which could not have occurred for any serial (one-at-a-time) execution of those transactions, one of the transactions will be rolled back with a `serialization_failure` error. WarehousePG does not fully support `SERIALIZABLE` as defined by the standard, so if you specify `SERIALIZABLE`, WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`. See Compatibility for more information about transaction serializability in WarehousePG.

- READ WRITE

- READ ONLY

  Determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default. When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `COPY FROM` if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all `CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP` commands; `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `TRUNCATE`; and `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and `EXECUTE` if the command they would run is among those listed.

- [NOT] DEFERRABLE

  The `DEFERRABLE` transaction property has no effect in WarehousePG because `SERIALIZABLE` transactions are not supported. If `DEFERRABLE` is specified and the transaction is also `SERIALIZABLE` and `READ ONLY`, the transaction may block when first acquiring its snapshot, after which it is able to run without the normal overhead of a `SERIALIZABLE` transaction and without any risk of contributing to or being cancelled by a serialization failure. This mode is well suited for long-running reports or backups.

### Notes

If `SET TRANSACTION` is run without a prior `START TRANSACTION` or `BEGIN`, a warning is issued and the command has no effect.

It is possible to dispense with `SET TRANSACTION` by instead specifying the desired transaction modes in `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION`.

The session default transaction modes can also be set by setting the configuration parameters default_transaction_isolation, default_transaction_read_only, and default_transaction_deferrable.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Set the transaction isolation level for the current transaction:

```
BEGIN;
SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
```

### Compatibility

Both commands are defined in the SQL standard. `SERIALIZABLE` is the default transaction isolation level in the standard. In WarehousePG the default is `READ COMMITTED`. Due to lack of predicate locking, WarehousePG does not fully support the `SERIALIZABLE` level, so it falls back to the `REPEATABLE READ` level when `SERIAL` is specified. Essentially, a predicate-locking system prevents phantom reads by restricting what is written, whereas a multi-version concurrency control model (MVCC) as used in WarehousePG prevents them by restricting what is read.

PostgreSQL provides a true serializable isolation level, called serializable snapshot isolation (SSI), which monitors concurrent transactions and rolls back transactions that could introduce serialization anomalies. WarehousePG does not implement this isolation mode.

In the SQL standard, there is one other transaction characteristic that can be set with these commands: the size of the diagnostics area. This concept is specific to embedded SQL, and therefore is not implemented in the WarehousePG server.

The `DEFERRABLE` transaction mode is a WarehousePG language extension.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive transaction_modes, but for historical reasons WarehousePG allows the commas to be omitted.

### See Also

BEGIN, LOCK

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.153 SHOW

Shows the value of a system configuration parameter.

### Synopsis

```
SHOW <configuration_parameter>

SHOW ALL
```

### Description

`SHOW` displays the current settings of WarehousePG cluster configuration parameters. You can set these parameters with the `SET` statement, or by editing the `postgresql.conf` configuration file of the WarehousePG coordinator. Note that some parameters viewable by `SHOW` are read-only — their values can be viewed but not set. See the WarehousePG Reference Guide for details.

### Parameters

- configuration_parameter

  The name of a system configuration parameter.

- ALL

  Shows the current value of all configuration parameters.

### Examples

Show the current setting of the parameter `DateStyle`:

```
SHOW DateStyle;
 DateStyle
-----------
 ISO, MDY
(1 row)
```

Show the current setting of the parameter geqo:

```
SHOW geqo;
 geqo
------
 off
(1 row)
```

Show the current setting of all parameters:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SHOW ALL;
       name       | setting |                  description
------------------+---------+-----------------------------------------------------
 application_name | psql    | Sets the application name to be reported in sta...
       .
       .
       .
 xmlbinary        | base64  | Sets how binary values are to be encoded in XML.
 xmloption        | content | Sets whether XML data in implicit parsing and s...
(331 rows)
```

### Compatibility

`SHOW` is a WarehousePG extension.

### See Also

SET, RESET

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.154 START TRANSACTION

Starts a transaction block.

### Synopsis

```
START TRANSACTION [<transaction_mode>] [READ WRITE | READ ONLY]
```

where transaction_mode is:

```
   ISOLATION LEVEL {SERIALIZABLE | READ COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED}
```

### Description

`START TRANSACTION` begins a new transaction block. If the isolation level or read/write mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was run. This is the same as the `BEGIN` command.

### Parameters

- READ UNCOMMITTED
- READ COMMITTED
- REPEATABLE READ
- SERIALIZABLE

  The SQL standard defines four transaction isolation levels: `READ UNCOMMITTED`, `READ COMMITTED`, `REPEATABLE READ`, and `SERIALIZABLE`.

  `READ UNCOMMITTED` allows transactions to see changes made by uncomitted concurrent transactions. This is not possible in WarehousePG, so `READ UNCOMMITTED` is treated the same as `READ COMMITTED`.

  `READ COMMITTED`, the default isolation level in WarehousePG, guarantees that a statement can only see rows committed before it began. The same statement run twice in a transaction can produce different results if another concurrent transaction commits after the statement is run the first time.

  The `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level guarantees that a transaction can only see rows committed before it began. `REPEATABLE READ` is the strictest transaction isolation level WarehousePG supports. Applications that use the `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

  The `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level guarantees that running multiple concurrent transactions produces the same effects as running the same transactions one at a time. If you specify `SERIALIZABLE`, WarehousePG falls back to `REPEATABLE READ`.

- READ WRITE
- READ ONLY

  Determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default. When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `COPY FROM` if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all `CREATE`, `ALTER`, and `DROP` commands; `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `TRUNCATE`; and `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` and `EXECUTE` if the command they would run is among those listed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

To begin a transaction block:

```
START TRANSACTION;
```

### Compatibility

In the standard, it is not necessary to issue `START TRANSACTION` to start a transaction block: any SQL command implicitly begins a block. WarehousePG behavior can be seen as implicitly issuing a `COMMIT` after each command that does not follow `START TRANSACTION` (or `BEGIN`), and it is therefore often called 'autocommit'. Other relational database systems may offer an autocommit feature as a convenience.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive transaction_modes, but for historical reasons WarehousePG allows the commas to be omitted.

See also the compatibility section of SET TRANSACTION.

### See Also

BEGIN, SET TRANSACTION

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.155 TRUNCATE

Empties a table of all rows.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not enforce referential integrity syntax (foreign key constraints). As of version 6.12 `TRUNCATE` truncates a table that is referenced in a foreign key constraint even if the `CASCADE` option is omitted.

### Synopsis

```
TRUNCATE [TABLE] [ONLY] <name> [ * ] [, ...]
    [ RESTART IDENTITY | CONTINUE IDENTITY ] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`TRUNCATE` quickly removes all rows from a table or set of tables. It has the same effect as an unqualified DELETE on each table, but since it does not actually scan the tables it is faster. This is most useful on large tables.

You must have the `TRUNCATE` privilege on the table to truncate table rows.

`TRUNCATE` acquires an access exclusive lock on the tables it operates on, which blocks all other concurrent operations on the table. When `RESTART IDENTITY` is specified, any sequences that are to be restarted are likewise locked exclusively. If concurrent access to a table is required, then the `DELETE` command should be used instead.

### Parameters

- name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a table to truncate. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, only that table is truncated. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are truncated. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

- CASCADE

  Because this key word applies to foreign key references (which are not supported in WarehousePG) it has no effect.

- RESTART IDENTITY

  Automatically restart sequences owned by columns of the truncated table(s).

- CONTINUE IDENTITY

  Do not change the values of sequences. This is the default.

- RESTRICT

  Because this key word applies to foreign key references (which are not supported in WarehousePG) it has no effect.

### Notes

`TRUNCATE` will not run any user-defined `ON DELETE` triggers that might exist for the tables.

`TRUNCATE` will not truncate any tables that inherit from the named table. Only the named table is truncated, not its child tables.

`TRUNCATE` will not truncate any sub-tables of a partitioned table. If you specify a sub-table of a partitioned table, `TRUNCATE` will not remove rows from the sub-table and its child tables.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`TRUNCATE` is not MVCC-safe. After truncation, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the truncation occurred.

`TRUNCATE` is transaction-safe with respect to the data in the tables: the truncation will be safely rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit.

`TRUNCATE` acquires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on each table it operates on, which blocks all other concurrent operations on the table. If concurrent access to a table is required, then the `DELETE` command should be used instead.

When `RESTART IDENTITY` is specified, the implied `ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART` operations are also done transactionally; that is, they will be rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit. This is unlike the normal behavior of `ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART`. Be aware that if any additional sequence operations are done on the restarted sequences before the transaction rolls back, the effects of these operations on the sequences will be rolled back, but not their effects on `currval()`; that is, after the transaction `currval()` will continue to reflect the last sequence value obtained inside the failed transaction, even though the sequence itself may no longer be consistent with that. This is similar to the usual behavior of `currval()` after a failed transaction.

### Examples

Empty the tables `films` and `distributors`:

```
TRUNCATE films, distributors;
```

The same, and also reset any associated sequence generators:

```
TRUNCATE films, distributors RESTART IDENTITY;
```

### Compatibility

The SQL:2008 standard includes a `TRUNCATE` command with the syntax `TRUNCATE TABLE tablename`. The clauses `CONTINUE IDENTITY` / `RESTART IDENTITY` also appear in that standard, but have slightly different though related meanings. Some of the concurrency behavior of this command is left implementation-defined by the standard, so the above notes should be considered and compared with other implementations if necessary.

### See Also

DELETE, DROP TABLE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.156 UNLISTEN

Stops listening for a notification.

### Synopsis

```
UNLISTEN { <channel> | * }
```

### Description

`UNLISTEN` is used to remove an existing registration for `NOTIFY` events. `UNLISTEN` cancels any existing registration of the current WarehousePG session as a listener on the notification channel named channel. The special wildcard `*` cancels all listener registrations for the current session.

NOTIFY contains a more extensive discussion of the use of `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`.

### Parameters

- channel

  The name of a notification channel (any identifier).

-

: All current listen registrations for this session are cleared.

### Notes

You can unlisten something you were not listening for; no warning or error will appear.

At the end of each session, `UNLISTEN *` is automatically executed.

A transaction that has executed `UNLISTEN` cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

### Examples

To make a registration:

```
LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process with PID 8448.
```

Once `UNLISTEN` has been executed, further `NOTIFY` messages will be ignored:

```
UNLISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
-- no NOTIFY event is received
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Compatibility

There is no `UNLISTEN` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

LISTEN, NOTIFY

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.157 UPDATE

Updates rows of a table.

### Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
UPDATE [ONLY] <table> [[AS] <alias>]
   SET {<column> = {<expression> | DEFAULT} |
   (<column> [, ...]) = ({<expression> | DEFAULT} [, ...])} [, ...]
   [FROM <fromlist>]
   [WHERE <condition >| WHERE CURRENT OF <cursor_name> ]
```

### Description

`UPDATE` changes the values of the specified columns in all rows that satisfy the condition. Only the columns to be modified need be mentioned in the `SET` clause; columns not explicitly modified retain their previous values.

By default, `UPDATE` will update rows in the specified table and all its subtables. If you wish to only update the specific table mentioned, you must use the `ONLY` clause.

There are two ways to modify a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the `FROM` clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

If the `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause is specified, the row that is updated is the one most recently fetched from the specified cursor.

The `WHERE CURRENT OF` clause is not supported with replicated tables.

You must have the `UPDATE` privilege on the table, or at least on the column(s) that are listed to be updated. You must also have the `SELECT` privilege on any column whose values are read in the expressions or condition.

> **Note** As the default, WarehousePG acquires an `EXCLUSIVE` lock on tables for `UPDATE` operations on heap tables. When the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled, the lock mode for `UPDATE` operations on heap tables is `ROW EXCLUSIVE`. See Global Deadlock Detector.

#### Outputs

On successful completion, an `UPDATE` command returns a command tag of the form:

```
UPDATE <count>
```

where count is the number of rows updated. If count is 0, no rows matched the condition (this is not considered an error).

### Parameters

- with_query

  The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the `UPDATE` query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For an `UPDATE` command that includes a `WITH` clause, the clause can only contain `SELECT` commands, the `WITH` clause cannot contain a data-modifying command ( `INSERT` , `UPDATE` , or `DELETE` ).

It is possible for the query ( `SELECT` statement) to also contain a `WITH` clause. In such a case both sets of with_query can be referenced within the `UPDATE` query, but the second one takes precedence since it is more closely nested.

See WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) and SELECT for details.

- ONLY

  If specified, update rows from the named table only. When not specified, any tables inheriting from the named table are also processed.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

- alias

  A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given `UPDATE foo AS f` , the remainder of the `UPDATE` statement must refer to this table as `f` not `foo` .

- column

  The name of a column in table. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. Do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column.

- expression

  An expression to assign to the column. The expression may use the old values of this and other columns in the table.

- DEFAULT

  Set the column to its default value (which will be NULL if no specific default expression has been assigned to it).

- fromlist

  A list of table expressions, allowing columns from other tables to appear in the `WHERE` condition and the update expressions. This is similar to the list of tables that can be specified in the `FROM` clause of a `SELECT` statement. Note that the target table must not appear in the fromlist, unless you intend a self-join (in which case it must appear with an alias in the fromlist).

- condition

  An expression that returns a value of type boolean. Only rows for which this expression returns true will be updated.

- cursor_name

  The name of the cursor to use in a `WHERE CURRENT OF` condition. The row to be updated is the one most recently fetched from the cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the `UPDATE` command target table. See DECLARE for more information about creating cursors.

  `WHERE CURRENT OF` cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition.

  Note that `WHERE CURRENT OF` cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition. The `UPDATE...WHERE CURRENT OF` statement can only be run on the server, for example in an interactive psql session or a script. Language extensions such as PL/pgSQL do not have support for updatable cursors.

  See DECLARE for more information about creating cursors.

- output_expression

  An expression to be computed and returned by the `UPDATE` command after each row is updated. The expression may use any column names of the table or table(s) listed in `FROM` . Write `*` to return all columns.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- output_name

  A name to use for a returned column.

### Notes

`SET` is not allowed on the WarehousePG distribution key columns of a table.

When a `FROM` clause is present, what essentially happens is that the target table is joined to the tables mentioned in the from list, and each output row of the join represents an update operation for the target table. When using `FROM` you should ensure that the join produces at most one output row for each row to be modified. In other words, a target row should not join to more than one row from the other table(s). If it does, then only one of the join rows will be used to update the target row, but which one will be used is not readily predictable.

Because of this indeterminacy, referencing other tables only within sub-selects is safer, though often harder to read and slower than using a join.

Running `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands directly on a specific partition (child table) of a partitioned table is not supported. Instead, run these commands on the root partitioned table, the table created with the `CREATE TABLE` command.

For a partitioned table, all the child tables are locked during the `UPDATE` operation when the Global Deadlock Detector is not enabled (the default). Only some of the leaf child tables are locked when the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled. For information about the Global Deadlock Detector, see Global Deadlock Detector.

### Examples

Change the word `Drama` to `Dramatic` in the column `kind` of the table `films`:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE kind = 'Drama';
```

Adjust temperature entries and reset precipitation to its default value in one row of the table `weather`:

```
UPDATE weather SET temp_lo = temp_lo+1, temp_hi =
temp_lo+15, prcp = DEFAULT
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2016-07-03';
```

Use the alternative column-list syntax to do the same update:

```
UPDATE weather SET (temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp) = (temp_lo+1,
temp_lo+15, DEFAULT)
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2016-07-03';
```

Increment the sales count of the salesperson who manages the account for Acme Corporation, using the `FROM` clause syntax (assuming both tables being joined are distributed in WarehousePG on the `id` column):

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 FROM
accounts
WHERE accounts.name = 'Acme Corporation'
AND employees.id = accounts.id;
```

Perform the same operation, using a sub-select in the `WHERE` clause:

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 WHERE id =
  (SELECT id FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Acme Corporation');
```

Attempt to insert a new stock item along with the quantity of stock. If the item already exists, instead update the stock count of the existing item. To do this without failing the entire transaction, use savepoints.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
BEGIN;
-- other operations
SAVEPOINT sp1;
INSERT INTO wines VALUES('Chateau Lafite 2003', '24');
-- Assume the above fails because of a unique key violation,
-- so now we issue these commands:
ROLLBACK TO sp1;
UPDATE wines SET stock = stock + 24 WHERE winename = 'Chateau
Lafite 2003';
-- continue with other operations, and eventually
COMMIT;
```

### Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `FROM` clause is a WarehousePG extension.

According to the standard, the column-list syntax should allow a list of columns to be assigned from a single row-valued expression, such as a sub-select:

```
UPDATE accounts SET (contact_last_name, contact_first_name) =
    (SELECT last_name, first_name FROM salesmen
     WHERE salesmen.id = accounts.sales_id);
```

This is not currently implemented — the source must be a list of independent expressions.

Some other database systems offer a `FROM` option in which the target table is supposed to be listed again within `FROM`. That is not how WarehousePG interprets `FROM`. Be careful when porting applications that use this extension.

### See Also

DECLARE, DELETE, SELECT, INSERT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.158 VACUUM

Garbage-collects and optionally analyzes a database.

### Synopsis

```
VACUUM [({ FULL | FREEZE | VERBOSE | ANALYZE } [, ...])] [<table> [(<column> [, ...] )]]

VACUUM [FULL] [FREEZE] [VERBOSE] [<table>]

VACUUM [FULL] [FREEZE] [VERBOSE] ANALYZE
               [<table> [(<column> [, ...] )]]
```

### Description

`VACUUM` reclaims storage occupied by deleted tuples. In normal WarehousePG operation, tuples that are deleted or obsoleted by an update are not physically removed from their table; they remain present on disk until a `VACUUM` is done. Therefore it is necessary to do `VACUUM` periodically, especially on frequently-updated tables.

With no parameter, `VACUUM` processes every table in the current database. With a parameter, `VACUUM` processes only that table.

`VACUUM ANALYZE` performs a `VACUUM` and then an `ANALYZE` for each selected table. This is a handy combination form for routine maintenance scripts. See ANALYZE for more details about its processing.

`VACUUM` (without `FULL`) marks deleted and obsoleted data in tables and indexes for future reuse and reclaims space for re-use only if the space is at the end of the table and an exclusive table lock can be easily obtained. Unused space at the start or middle of a table remains as is. With heap tables, this form of the command can operate in parallel with normal reading and writing of the table, as an exclusive lock is not obtained. However, extra space is not returned to the operating system (in most cases); it's just kept available for re-use within the same table. `VACUUM FULL` rewrites the entire contents of the table into a new disk file with no extra space, allowing unused space to be returned to the operating system. This form is much slower and requires an exclusive lock on each table while it is being processed.

With append-optimized tables, `VACUUM` compacts a table by first vacuuming the indexes, then compacting each segment file in turn, and finally vacuuming auxiliary relations and updating statistics. On each segment, visible rows are copied from the current segment file to a new segment file, and then the current segment file is scheduled to be dropped and the new segment file is made available. Plain `VACUUM` of an append-optimized table allows scans, inserts, deletes, and updates of the table while a segment file is compacted. However, an Access Exclusive lock is taken briefly to drop the current segment file and activate the new segment file.

`VACUUM FULL` does more extensive processing, including moving of tuples across blocks to try to compact the table to the minimum number of disk blocks. This form is much slower and requires an Access Exclusive lock on each table while it is being processed. The Access Exclusive lock guarantees that the holder is the only transaction accessing the table in any way.

When the option list is surrounded by parentheses, the options can be written in any order. Without parentheses, options must be specified in exactly the order shown above. The parenthesized syntax was added in WarehousePG 6.0; the unparenthesized syntax is deprecated.

> **Important** For information on the use of `VACUUM`, `VACUUM FULL`, and `VACUUM ANALYZE`, see Notes.

#### Outputs

When `VERBOSE` is specified, `VACUUM` emits progress messages to indicate which table is currently being processed. Various statistics about the tables are printed as well.

### Parameters

- FULL

  Selects a full vacuum, which may reclaim more space, but takes much longer and exclusively locks the table. This method also requires extra disk space, since it writes a new copy of the table and doesn't release the old copy until the operation is complete. Usually this should only be used when a significant amount of space needs to be reclaimed from within the table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FREEZE

  Specifying `FREEZE` is equivalent to performing `VACUUM` with the `vacuum_freeze_min_age` server configuration parameter set to zero. See Server Configuration Parameters for information about `vacuum_freeze_min_age`.

- VERBOSE

  Prints a detailed vacuum activity report for each table.

- ANALYZE

  Updates statistics used by the planner to determine the most efficient way to run a query.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a specific table to vacuum. Defaults to all tables in the current database.

- column

  The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns. If a column list is specified, `ANALYZE` is implied.

### Notes

`VACUUM` cannot be run inside a transaction block.

Vacuum active databases frequently (at least nightly), in order to remove expired rows. After adding or deleting a large number of rows, running the `VACUUM ANALYZE` command for the affected table might be useful. This updates the system catalogs with the results of all recent changes, and allows the WarehousePG query optimizer to make better choices in planning queries.

> **Important** PostgreSQL has a separate optional server process called the *autovacuum daemon*, whose purpose is to automate the execution of `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands. WarehousePG enables the autovacuum daemon to perform `VACUUM` operations only on the WarehousePG template database `template0`. Autovacuum is enabled for `template0` because connections are not allowed to `template0`. The autovacuum daemon performs `VACUUM` operations on `template0` to manage transaction IDs (XIDs) and help avoid transaction ID wraparound issues in `template0`.

Manual `VACUUM` operations must be performed in user-defined databases to manage transaction IDs (XIDs) in those databases.

`VACUUM` causes a substantial increase in I/O traffic, which can cause poor performance for other active sessions. Therefore, it is advisable to vacuum the database at low usage times.

`VACUUM` commands skip external and foreign tables.

`VACUUM FULL` reclaims all expired row space, however it requires an exclusive lock on each table being processed, is a very expensive operation, and might take a long time to complete on large, distributed WarehousePG tables. Perform `VACUUM FULL` operations during database maintenance periods.

The `FULL` option is not recommended for routine use, but might be useful in special cases. An example is when you have deleted or updated most of the rows in a table and would like the table to physically shrink to occupy less disk space and allow faster table scans. `VACUUM FULL` will usually shrink the table more than a plain `VACUUM` would.

As an alternative to `VACUUM FULL`, you can re-create the table with a `CREATE TABLE AS` statement and drop the old table.

For append-optimized tables, `VACUUM` requires enough available disk space to accommodate the new segment file during the `VACUUM` process. If the ratio of hidden rows to total rows in a segment file is less than a threshold value (10, by default), the segment file is not compacted. The threshold value can be configured with the `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` server configuration parameter. `VACUUM FULL` ignores the threshold and rewrites the segment file regardless of the ratio. `VACUUM` can be deactivated for append-optimized tables using the `gp_appendonly_compaction` server configuration parameter. See Server Configuration Parameters for information about the server configuration parameters.

If a concurrent serializable transaction is detected when an append-optimized table is being vacuumed, the current and subsequent segment files are not compacted. If a segment file has been compacted but a concurrent serializable transaction is detected in the transaction that drops the original segment file, the drop is skipped. This could leave one or two segment files in an "awaiting drop" state after the vacuum has completed.

For more information about concurrency control in WarehousePG, see "Routine System Maintenance Tasks" in *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

To clean a single table `onek`, analyze it for the optimizer and print a detailed vacuum activity report:

```
VACUUM (VERBOSE, ANALYZE) onek;
```

Vacuum all tables in the current database:

```
VACUUM;
```

Vacuum a specific table only:

```
VACUUM (VERBOSE, ANALYZE) mytable;
```

Vacuum all tables in the current database and collect statistics for the query optimizer:

```
VACUUM ANALYZE;
```

### Compatibility

There is no `VACUUM` statement in the SQL standard.

### See Also

ANALYZE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.159 VALUES

Computes a set of rows.

### Synopsis

```
VALUES ( <expression> [, ...] ) [, ...]
   [ORDER BY <sort_expression> [ ASC | DESC | USING <operator> ] [, ...] ]
   [LIMIT { <count> | ALL } ]
   [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
   [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [<count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
```

### Description

`VALUES` computes a row value or set of row values specified by value expressions. It is most commonly used to generate a "constant table" within a larger command, but it can be used on its own.

When more than one row is specified, all the rows must have the same number of elements. The data types of the resulting table's columns are determined by combining the explicit or inferred types of the expressions appearing in that column, using the same rules as for `UNION`.

Within larger commands, `VALUES` is syntactically allowed anywhere that `SELECT` is. Because it is treated like a `SELECT` by the grammar, it is possible to use the `ORDER BY`, `LIMIT` (or equivalent `FETCH FIRST`), and `OFFSET` clauses with a `VALUES` command.

### Parameters

- expression

  A constant or expression to compute and insert at the indicated place in the resulting table (set of rows). In a `VALUES` list appearing at the top level of an `INSERT`, an expression can be replaced by `DEFAULT` to indicate that the destination column's default value should be inserted. `DEFAULT` cannot be used when `VALUES` appears in other contexts.

- sort_expression

  An expression or integer constant indicating how to sort the result rows. This expression may refer to the columns of the `VALUES` result as `column1`, `column2`, etc. For more details, see "The ORDER BY Clause" in the parameters for SELECT.

- operator

  A sorting operator. For more details, see "The ORDER BY Clause" in the parameters forSELECT.

- LIMIT count

- OFFSET start

  The maximum number of rows to return. For more details, see "The LIMIT Clause" in the parameters forSELECT.

### Notes

`VALUES` lists with very large numbers of rows should be avoided, as you may encounter out-of-memory failures or poor performance. `VALUES` appearing within `INSERT` is a special case (because the desired column types are known from the `INSERT`'s target table, and need not be inferred by scanning the `VALUES` list), so it can handle larger lists than are practical in other contexts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

A bare `VALUES` command:

```
VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');
```

This will return a table of two columns and three rows. It is effectively equivalent to:

```
SELECT 1 AS column1, 'one' AS column2
UNION ALL
SELECT 2, 'two'
UNION ALL
SELECT 3, 'three';
```

More usually, `VALUES` is used within a larger SQL command. The most common use is in `INSERT`:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
    VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

In the context of `INSERT`, entries of a `VALUES` list can be `DEFAULT` to indicate that the column default should be used here instead of specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
    ('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT, 'Comedy', '82
minutes'),
    ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, DEFAULT, 'Drama', DEFAULT);
```

`VALUES` can also be used where a sub-`SELECT` might be written, for example in a `FROM` clause:

```
SELECT f.* FROM films f, (VALUES('MGM', 'Horror'), ('UA',
'Sci-Fi')) AS t (studio, kind) WHERE f.studio = t.studio AND
f.kind = t.kind;
UPDATE employees SET salary = salary * v.increase FROM
(VALUES(1, 200000, 1.2), (2, 400000, 1.4)) AS v (depno,
target, increase) WHERE employees.depno = v.depno AND
employees.sales >= v.target;
```

Note that an `AS` clause is required when `VALUES` is used in a `FROM` clause, just as is true for `SELECT`. It is not required that the `AS` clause specify names for all the columns, but it is good practice to do so. The default column names for `VALUES` are `column1`, `column2`, etc. in WarehousePG, but these names might be different in other database systems.

When `VALUES` is used in `INSERT`, the values are all automatically coerced to the data type of the corresponding destination column. When it is used in other contexts, it may be necessary to specify the correct data type. If the entries are all quoted literal constants, coercing the first is sufficient to determine the assumed type for all:

```
SELECT * FROM machines WHERE ip_address IN
(VALUES('192.168.0.1'::inet), ('192.168.0.10'),
('192.0.2.43'));
```

> **Note** For simple `IN` tests, it is better to rely on the list-of-scalars form of `IN` than to write a `VALUES` query as shown above. The list of scalars method requires less writing and is often more efficient.

### Compatibility

`VALUES` conforms to the SQL standard. `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` are WarehousePG extensions; see also under SELECT.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

INSERT, SELECT

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.160 ALTER RULE

Changes the definition of a rule.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER RULE name ON table\_name RENAME TO new\_name
```

### Description

`ALTER RULE` changes properties of an existing rule. Currently, the only available action is to change the rule's name.

To use `ALTER RULE`, you must own the table or view that the rule applies to.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an existing rule to alter.

- table_name

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

- new_name

  The new name for the rule.

### Compatibility

`ALTER RULE` is a WarehousePG language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

### See Also

CREATE RULE, DROP RULE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.161 ALTER TRIGGER

Changes the definition of a trigger.

### Synopsis

```
ALTER TRIGGER <name> ON <table> RENAME TO <newname>
```

### Description

`ALTER TRIGGER` changes properties of an existing trigger. The `RENAME` clause changes the name of the given trigger without otherwise changing the trigger definition. You must own the table on which the trigger acts to be allowed to change its properties.

### Parameters

- name

  The name of an existing trigger to alter.

- table

  The name of the table on which this trigger acts.

- newname

  The new name for the trigger.

### Notes

The ability to temporarily activate or deactivate a trigger is provided by ALTER TABLE, not by `ALTER TRIGGER`, because `ALTER TRIGGER` has no convenient way to express the option of activating or deactivating all of a table's triggers at once.

Note that WarehousePG has limited support of triggers in this release. See CREATE TRIGGER for more information.

### Examples

To rename an existing trigger:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_stamp ON emp RENAME TO emp_track_chgs;
```

### Compatibility

`ALTER TRIGGER` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER TABLE, CREATE TRIGGER, DROP TRIGGER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.162 CREATE TRIGGER

Defines a new trigger. User-defined triggers are not supported in WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
CREATE TRIGGER <name> {BEFORE | AFTER} {<event> [OR ...]}
       ON <table> [ FOR [EACH] {ROW | STATEMENT} ]
       EXECUTE PROCEDURE <funcname> ( <arguments> )
```

### Description

`CREATE TRIGGER` creates a new trigger. The trigger will be associated with the specified table and will run the specified function when certain events occur. If multiple triggers of the same kind are defined for the same event, they will be fired in alphabetical order by name.

> *Important* Due to the distributed nature of a WarehousePG cluster, the use of triggers on data is very limited in WarehousePG. The function used in the trigger must be `IMMUTABLE`, meaning it cannot use information not directly present in its argument list. The function specified in the trigger also cannot run any SQL or modify distributed database objects in any way. Given that triggers are most often used to alter tables (for example, update these other rows when this row is updated), these limitations offer very little practical use of triggers in WarehousePG. For that reason, WarehousePG does not support the use of user-defined triggers in WarehousePG. Triggers cannot be used on append-optimized tables. Event Triggers, which capture only DDL events, *are* supported in WarehousePG. See the PostgreSQL documentation for Event Triggers for additional information.

SELECT does not modify any rows so you can not create `SELECT` triggers. Rules and views are more appropriate in such cases.

### Parameters

- name

  The name to give the new trigger. This must be distinct from the name of any other trigger for the same table.

- BEFORE AFTER

  Determines whether the function is called before or after the event. If the trigger fires before the event, the trigger may skip the operation for the current row, or change the row being inserted (for `INSERT` and `UPDATE` operations only). If the trigger fires after the event, all changes, including the last insertion, update, or deletion, are visible to the trigger.

- event

  Specifies the event that will fire the trigger (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`). Multiple events can be specified using OR.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table the trigger is for.

- FOR EACH ROW

- FOR EACH STATEMENT

  This specifies whether the trigger procedure should be fired once for every row affected by the trigger event, or just once per SQL statement. If neither is specified, `FOR EACH STATEMENT` is the default. A trigger that is marked `FOR EACH ROW` is called once for every row that the operation modifies. In contrast, a trigger that is marked `FOR EACH STATEMENT` only runs once for any given operation, regardless of how many rows it modifies.

- funcname

  A user-supplied function that is declared as `IMMUTABLE`, taking no arguments, and returning type `trigger`, which is run when the trigger fires. This function must not run SQL or modify the database in any way.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- arguments

  An optional comma-separated list of arguments to be provided to the function when the trigger is run. The arguments are literal string constants. Simple names and numeric constants may be written here, too, but they will all be converted to strings. Please check the description of the implementation language of the trigger function about how the trigger arguments are accessible within the function; it may be different from normal function arguments.

### Notes

To create a trigger on a table, the user must have the `TRIGGER` privilege on the table.

### Examples

Declare the trigger function and then a trigger:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sendmail() RETURNS trigger AS
'$GPHOME/lib/emailtrig.so' LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE;

CREATE TRIGGER t_sendmail AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE
ON mytable FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE PROCEDURE sendmail();
```

### Compatibility

The `CREATE TRIGGER` statement in WarehousePG implements a subset of the SQL standard. The following functionality is currently missing:

- WarehousePG has strict limitations on the function that is called by a trigger, which makes the use of triggers very limited in WarehousePG. For this reason, triggers are not officially supported in WarehousePG.
- SQL allows triggers to fire on updates to specific columns (e.g., `AFTER UPDATE OF col1, col2`).
- SQL allows you to define aliases for the 'old' and 'new' rows or tables for use in the definition of the triggered action (e.g., `CREATE TRIGGER ... ON tablename REFERENCING OLD ROW AS somename NEW ROW AS othername ...`). Since WarehousePG allows trigger procedures to be written in any number of user-defined languages, access to the data is handled in a language-specific way.
- WarehousePG only allows the execution of a user-defined function for the triggered action. The standard allows the execution of a number of other SQL commands, such as `CREATE TABLE` as the triggered action. This limitation is not hard to work around by creating a user-defined function that runs the desired commands.
- SQL specifies that multiple triggers should be fired in time-of-creation order. WarehousePG uses name order, which was judged to be more convenient.
- SQL specifies that `BEFORE DELETE` triggers on cascaded deletes fire after the cascaded `DELETE` completes. The WarehousePG behavior is for `BEFORE DELETE` to always fire before the delete action, even a cascading one. This is considered more consistent.
- The ability to specify multiple actions for a single trigger using `OR` is a WarehousePG extension of the SQL standard.

### See Also

CREATE FUNCTION, ALTER TRIGGER, DROP TRIGGER, CREATE RULE

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.1.163 DROP TRIGGER

Removes a trigger.

### Synopsis

```
DROP TRIGGER [IF EXISTS] <name> ON <table> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

### Description

`DROP TRIGGER` will remove an existing trigger definition. To run this command, the current user must be the owner of the table for which the trigger is defined.

### Parameters

- IF EXISTS

  Do not throw an error if the trigger does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- name

  The name of the trigger to remove.

- table

  The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table for which the trigger is defined.

- CASCADE

  Automatically drop objects that depend on the trigger.

- RESTRICT

  Refuse to drop the trigger if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

### Examples

Remove the trigger `sendmail` on table `expenses`;

```
DROP TRIGGER sendmail ON expenses;
```

### Compatibility

The `DROP TRIGGER` statement in WarehousePG is not compatible with the SQL standard. In the SQL standard, trigger names are not local to tables, so the command is simply `DROP TRIGGER name`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

ALTER TRIGGER, CREATE TRIGGER

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.1.164 SQL Syntax Summary

Terminates the current transaction.

```
ABORT [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

See ABORT for more information.

#### ALTER AGGREGATE

Changes the definition of an aggregate function

```
ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> )  RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER AGGREGATE <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER AGGREGATE for more information.

#### ALTER COLLATION

Changes the definition of a collation.

```
ALTER COLLATION <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER COLLATION <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER COLLATION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER COLLATION for more information.

#### ALTER CONVERSION

Changes the definition of a conversion.

```
ALTER CONVERSION <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER CONVERSION <name> OWNER TO <newowner>

ALTER CONVERSION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER CONVERSION for more information.

#### ALTER DATABASE

Changes the attributes of a database.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER DATABASE <name> [ WITH CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit> ]

ALTER DATABASE <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER DATABASE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER DATABASE <name> SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace>

ALTER DATABASE <name> SET <parameter> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT }
ALTER DATABASE <name> SET <parameter> FROM CURRENT
ALTER DATABASE <name> RESET <parameter>
ALTER DATABASE <name> RESET ALL
```

See ALTER DATABASE for more information.

### ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

Changes default access privileges.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
    [ FOR { ROLE | USER } <target_role> [, ...] ]
    [ IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] ]
    <abbreviated_grant_or_revoke>

where <abbreviated_grant_or_revoke> is one of:

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FUNCTIONS
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPES
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES | TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FUNCTIONS
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES for more information.

### ALTER DOMAIN

Changes the definition of a domain.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER DOMAIN <name> { SET DEFAULT <expression> | DROP DEFAULT }

ALTER DOMAIN <name> { SET | DROP } NOT NULL

ALTER DOMAIN <name> ADD <domain_constraint> [ NOT VALID ]

ALTER DOMAIN <name> DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] <constraint_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]

ALTER DOMAIN <name> RENAME CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> TO <new_constraint_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> VALIDATE CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER DOMAIN <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER DOMAIN for more information.

### ALTER EXTENSION

Change the definition of an extension that is registered in a WarehousePG.

```
ALTER EXTENSION <name> UPDATE [ TO <new_version> ]
ALTER EXTENSION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER EXTENSION <name> ADD <member_object>
ALTER EXTENSION <name> DROP <member_object>

where <member_object> is:

  ACCESS METHOD <object_name> |
  AGGREGATE <aggregate_name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) |
  CAST (<source_type> AS <target_type>) |
  COLLATION <object_name> |
  CONVERSION <object_name> |
  DOMAIN <object_name> |
  EVENT TRIGGER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN TABLE <object_name> |
  FUNCTION <function_name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [, ...] ] ) |
  MATERIALIZED VIEW <object_name> |
  OPERATOR <operator_name> (<left_type>, <right_type>) |
  OPERATOR CLASS <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  OPERATOR FAMILY <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <object_name> |
  SCHEMA <object_name> |
  SEQUENCE <object_name> |
  SERVER <object_name> |
  TABLE <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH PARSER <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <object_name> |
  TRANSFORM FOR <type_name> LANGUAGE <lang_name> |
  TYPE <object_name> |
  VIEW <object_name>

and <aggregate_signature> is:

* |
[ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] |
[ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [ , ... ]
```

See ALTER EXTENSION for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE

Changes the definition of an external table.

```
ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE <name> <action> [, ... ]
```

where action is one of:

```
  ADD [COLUMN] <new_column> <type>
  DROP [COLUMN] <column> [RESTRICT|CASCADE]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column> TYPE <type>
  OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

See ALTER EXTERNAL TABLE for more information.

### ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Changes the definition of a foreign-data wrapper.

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name>
    [ HANDLER <handler_function> | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR <validator_function> | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] ) ]

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

See ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER for more information.

### ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

Changes the definition of a foreign table.

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    <action> [, ... ]
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER FOREIGN TABLE for more information.

### ALTER FUNCTION

Changes the definition of a function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   <action> [, ... ] [RESTRICT]

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER FUNCTION <name> ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...] ] )
   SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER FUNCTION for more information.

### ALTER GROUP

Changes a role name or membership.

```
ALTER GROUP <groupname> ADD USER <username> [, ... ]

ALTER GROUP <groupname> DROP USER <username> [, ... ]

ALTER GROUP <groupname> RENAME TO <newname>
```

See ALTER GROUP for more information.

### ALTER INDEX

Changes the definition of an index.

```
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET TABLESPACE <tablespace_name>

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET ( <storage_parameter> = <value> [, ...] )

ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RESET ( <storage_parameter>  [, ...] )

ALTER INDEX ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
  SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]
```

See ALTER INDEX for more information.

### ALTER LANGUAGE

Changes the name of a procedural language.

```
ALTER LANGUAGE <name> RENAME TO <newname>
ALTER LANGUAGE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

See ALTER LANGUAGE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW

Changes the definition of a materialized view.

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> <action> [, ... ]
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]

where <action> is one of:

    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET STATISTICS <integer>
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET ( <attribute_option> = <value> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> RESET ( <attribute_option> [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN }
    CLUSTER ON <index_name>
    SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
    SET ( <storage_paramete>r = <value> [, ... ] )
    RESET ( <storage_parameter> [, ... ] )
    OWNER TO <new_owner>
```

See ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW for more information.

### ALTER OPERATOR

Changes the definition of an operator.

```
ALTER OPERATOR <name> ( {<left_type> | NONE} , {<right_type> | NONE} )
   OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR <name> ( {<left_type> | NONE} , {<right_type> | NONE} )
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER OPERATOR for more information.

### ALTER OPERATOR CLASS

Changes the definition of an operator class.

```
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS <name> USING <index_method> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER OPERATOR CLASS for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY

Changes the definition of an operator family.

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> ADD
  {  OPERATOR <strategy_number> <operator_name> ( <op_type>, <op_type> ) [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY <sort_family_name>
]
    | FUNCTION <support_number> [ ( <op_type> [ , <op_type> ] ) ] <funcname> ( <argument_type> [, ...] )
  } [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> DROP
  {  OPERATOR <strategy_number> ( <op_type>, <op_type> )
    | FUNCTION <support_number> [ ( <op_type> [ , <op_type> ] )
  } [, ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY <name> USING <index_method> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY for more information.

### ALTER PROTOCOL

Changes the definition of a protocol.

```
ALTER PROTOCOL <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER PROTOCOL <name> OWNER TO <newowner>
```

See ALTER PROTOCOL for more information.

### ALTER RESOURCE GROUP

Changes the limits of a resource group.

```
ALTER RESOURCE GROUP <name> SET <group_attribute> <value>
```

See ALTER RESOURCE GROUP for more information.

### ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE

Changes the limits of a resource queue.

```
ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE <name> WITH ( <queue_attribute>=<value> [, ... ] )
```

See ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER ROLE

Changes a database role (user or group).

```
ALTER ROLE <name> [ [ WITH ] <option> [ ... ] ]

where <option> can be:

    SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
  | CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
  | CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
  | CREATEEXTTABLE | NOCREATEEXTTABLE  [ ( attribute='value' [, ...] )
     where attributes and values are:
       type='readable'|'writable'
       protocol='gpfdist'|'http'
  | INHERIT | NOINHERIT
  | LOGIN | NOLOGIN
  | REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
  | CONNECTION LIMIT <connlimit>
  | [ ENCRYPTED | UNENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '<password>'
  | VALID UNTIL '<timestamp>'

ALTER ROLE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] SET <configuration_parameter> { TO | = } { <value> | DEFAULT
}
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] SET <configuration_parameter> FROM CURRENT
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] RESET <configuration_parameter>
ALTER ROLE { <name> | ALL } [ IN DATABASE <database_name> ] RESET ALL
ALTER ROLE <name> RESOURCE QUEUE {<queue_name> | NONE}
ALTER ROLE <name> RESOURCE GROUP {<group_name> | NONE}
```

See ALTER ROLE for more information.

### ALTER RULE

Changes the definition of a rule.

```
ALTER RULE name ON table\_name RENAME TO new\_name
```

See ALTER RULE for more information.

### ALTER SCHEMA

Changes the definition of a schema.

```
ALTER SCHEMA <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER SCHEMA <name> OWNER TO <newowner>
```

See ALTER SCHEMA for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER SEQUENCE

Changes the definition of a sequence generator.

```
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [INCREMENT [ BY ] <increment>]
     [MINVALUE <minvalue> | NO MINVALUE]
     [MAXVALUE <maxvalue> | NO MAXVALUE]
     [START [ WITH ] <start> ]
     [RESTART [ [ WITH ] <restart>] ]
     [CACHE <cache>] [[ NO ] CYCLE]
     [OWNED BY {<table.column> | NONE}]

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER SEQUENCE for more information.

### ALTER SERVER

Changes the definition of a foreign server.

```
ALTER SERVER <server_name> [ VERSION '<new_version>' ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] ) ]

ALTER SERVER <server_name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER SERVER <server_name> RENAME TO <new_name>
```

See ALTER SERVER for more information.

### ALTER TABLE

Changes the definition of a table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name>
    <action> [, ... ]

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name>
    RENAME [COLUMN] <column_name> TO <new_column_name>

ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] <name>
    RENAME CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> TO <new_constraint_name>

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name>
    RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name>
    SET SCHEMA <new_schema>

ALTER TABLE ALL IN TABLESPACE <name> [ OWNED BY <role_name> [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace> [ NOWAIT ]

ALTER TABLE [IF EXISTS] [ONLY] <name> SET
     WITH (REORGANIZE=true|false)
   | DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column_name> [<opclass>]} [, ... ] )
   | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY
   | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED

ALTER TABLE <name>
   [ ALTER PARTITION { <partition_name> | FOR (RANK(<number>))
   | FOR (<value>) } [...] ] <partition_action>

where <action> is one of:

  ADD [COLUMN] <column_name data_type> [ DEFAULT <default_expr> ]
      [<column_constraint> [ ... ]]
      [ COLLATE <collation> ]
      [ ENCODING ( <storage_parameter> [,...] ) ]
  DROP [COLUMN] [IF EXISTS] <column_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <type> [COLLATE <collation>] [USING <expression>]
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> SET DEFAULT <expression>
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> DROP DEFAULT
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
  ALTER [COLUMN] <column_name> SET STATISTICS <integer>
  ALTER [COLUMN] column SET ( <attribute_option> = <value> [, ... ] )
  ALTER [COLUMN] column RESET ( <attribute_option> [, ... ] )
  ADD <table_constraint> [NOT VALID]
  ADD <table_constraint_using_index>
  VALIDATE CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>
  DROP CONSTRAINT [IF EXISTS] <constraint_name> [RESTRICT | CASCADE]
  DISABLE TRIGGER [<trigger_name> | ALL | USER]
  ENABLE TRIGGER [<trigger_name> | ALL | USER]
  CLUSTER ON <index_name>
  SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
  SET WITHOUT OIDS
  SET (<storage_parameter> = <value>)
  RESET (<storage_parameter> [, ... ])
  INHERIT <parent_table>
  NO INHERIT <parent_table>
  OF `type_name`
  NOT OF
  OWNER TO <new_owner>
  SET TABLESPACE <new_tablespace>
```

See ALTER TABLE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER TABLESPACE

Changes the definition of a tablespace.

```
ALTER TABLESPACE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> SET ( <tablespace_option> = <value> [, ... ] )

ALTER TABLESPACE <name> RESET ( <tablespace_option> [, ... ] )
```

See ALTER TABLESPACE for more information.

### ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Changes the definition of a text search configuration.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING FOR <token_type> [, ... ] WITH <dictionary_name> [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING REPLACE <old_dictionary> WITH <new_dictionary>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    ALTER MAPPING FOR <token_type> [, ... ] REPLACE <old_dictionary> WITH <new_dictionary>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name>
    DROP MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] FOR <token_type> [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION for more information.

### ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Changes the definition of a text search dictionary.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> (
    <option> [ = <value> ] [, ... ]
)
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY for more information.

### ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Changes the definition of a text search parser.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Changes the definition of a text search template.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
```

See ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE for more information.

### ALTER TYPE

Changes the definition of a data type.

```
ALTER TYPE <name> <action> [, ... ]
ALTER TYPE <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>
ALTER TYPE <name> RENAME ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> TO <new_attribute_name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
ALTER TYPE <name> RENAME TO <new_name>
ALTER TYPE <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>
ALTER TYPE <name> ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <new_enum_value> [ { BEFORE | AFTER } <existing_enum_value> ]
ALTER TYPE <name> SET DEFAULT ENCODING ( <storage_directive> )

where <action> is one of:

  ADD ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
  DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ] <attribute_name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
  ALTER ATTRIBUTE <attribute_name> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See ALTER TYPE for more information.

### ALTER USER

Changes the definition of a database role (user).

```
ALTER USER <name> RENAME TO <newname>

ALTER USER <name> SET <config_parameter> {TO | =} {<value> | DEFAULT}

ALTER USER <name> RESET <config_parameter>

ALTER USER <name> RESOURCE QUEUE {<queue_name> | NONE}

ALTER USER <name> RESOURCE GROUP {<group_name> | NONE}

ALTER USER <name> [ [WITH] <option> [ ... ] ]
```

See ALTER USER for more information.

### ALTER USER MAPPING

Changes the definition of a user mapping for a foreign server.

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
    OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] <option> ['<value>'] [, ... ] )
```

See ALTER USER MAPPING for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ALTER VIEW

Changes properties of a view.

```
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> SET DEFAULT <expression>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> ALTER [ COLUMN ] <column_name> DROP DEFAULT

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> OWNER TO <new_owner>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RENAME TO <new_name>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET SCHEMA <new_schema>

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> SET ( <view_option_name> [= <view_option_value>] [, ... ] )

ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> RESET ( <view_option_name> [, ... ] )
```

See ALTER VIEW for more information.

### ANALYZE

Collects statistics about a database.

```
ANALYZE [VERBOSE] [<table> [ (<column> [, ...] ) ]]

ANALYZE [VERBOSE] {<root_partition_table_name>|<leaf_partition_table_name>} [ (<column> [, ...] )]

ANALYZE [VERBOSE] ROOTPARTITION {ALL | <root_partition_table_name> [ (<column> [, ...] )]}
```

See ANALYZE for more information.

### BEGIN

Starts a transaction block.

```
BEGIN [WORK | TRANSACTION] [<transaction_mode>]
```

See BEGIN for more information.

### CHECKPOINT

Forces a transaction log checkpoint.

```
CHECKPOINT
```

See CHECKPOINT for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CLOSE

Closes a cursor.

```
CLOSE <cursor_name>
```

See CLOSE for more information.

### CLUSTER

Physically reorders a heap storage table on disk according to an index. Not a recommended operation in WarehousePG.

```
CLUSTER <indexname> ON <tablename>

CLUSTER [VERBOSE] <tablename> [ USING index_name ]

CLUSTER [VERBOSE]
```

See CLUSTER for more information.

### COMMENT

Defines or changes the comment of an object.

```
COMMENT ON
{ TABLE <object_name> |
  COLUMN <relation_name.column_name> |
  AGGREGATE <agg_name> (<agg_signature>) |
  CAST (<source_type> AS <target_type>) |
  COLLATION <object_name>
  CONSTRAINT <constraint_name> ON <table_name> |
  CONVERSION <object_name> |
  DATABASE <object_name> |
  DOMAIN <object_name> |
  EXTENSION <object_name> |
  FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <object_name> |
  FOREIGN TABLE <object_name> |
  FUNCTION <func_name> ([[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [, ...]]) |
  INDEX <object_name> |
  LARGE OBJECT <large_object_oid> |
  MATERIALIZED VIEW <object_name> |
  OPERATOR <operator_name> (<left_type>, <right_type>) |
  OPERATOR CLASS <object_name> USING <index_method> |
  [PROCEDURAL] LANGUAGE <object_name> |
  RESOURCE GROUP <object_name> |
  RESOURCE QUEUE <object_name> |
  ROLE <object_name> |
  RULE <rule_name> ON <table_name> |
  SCHEMA <object_name> |
  SEQUENCE <object_name> |
  SERVER <object_name> |
  TABLESPACE <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH PARSER <object_name> |
  TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <object_name> |
  TRIGGER <trigger_name> ON <table_name> |
  TYPE <object_name> |
  VIEW <object_name> }
IS '<text>'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

See COMMENT for more information.

### COMMIT

Commits the current transaction.

```
COMMIT [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

See COMMIT for more information.

### COPY

Copies data between a file and a table.

```
COPY <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])]
     FROM {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDIN}
     [ [ WITH ] ( <option> [, ...] ) ]
     [ ON SEGMENT ]

COPY { <table_name> [(<column_name> [, ...])] | (<query>)}
     TO {'<filename>' | PROGRAM '<command>' | STDOUT}
     [ [ WITH ] ( <option> [, ...] ) ]
     [ ON SEGMENT ]
```

See COPY for more information.

### CREATE AGGREGATE

Defines a new aggregate function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE AGGREGATE <name> ( [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , MSFUNC = <msfunc> ]
    [ , MINVFUNC = <minvfunc> ]
    [ , MSTYPE = <mstate_data_type> ]
    [ , MSSPACE = <mstate_data_size> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC = <mffunc> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , MINITCOND = <minitial_condition> ]
    [ , SORTOP = <sort_operator> ]
  )

  CREATE AGGREGATE <name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ]
      ORDER BY [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <arg_data_type> [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , HYPOTHETICAL ]
  )

  or the old syntax

  CREATE AGGREGATE <name> (
    BASETYPE = <base_type>,
    SFUNC = <statefunc>,
    STYPE = <state_data_type>
    [ , SSPACE = <state_data_size> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = <ffunc> ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = <combinefunc> ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = <serialfunc> ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = <deserialfunc> ]
    [ , INITCOND = <initial_condition> ]
    [ , MSFUNC = <msfunc> ]
    [ , MINVFUNC = <minvfunc> ]
    [ , MSTYPE = <mstate_data_type> ]
    [ , MSSPACE = <mstate_data_size> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC = <mffunc> ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , MINITCOND = <minitial_condition> ]
    [ , SORTOP = <sort_operator> ]
  )
```

See CREATE AGGREGATE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE CAST

Defines a new cast.

```
CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITH FUNCTION <funcname> (<argtype> [, ...])
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]

CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITHOUT FUNCTION
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]

CREATE CAST (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>)
       WITH INOUT
       [AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT]
```

See CREATE CAST for more information.

### CREATE COLLATION

Defines a new collation using the specified operating system locale settings, or by copying an existing collation.

```
CREATE COLLATION <name> (
    [ LOCALE = <locale>, ]
    [ LC_COLLATE = <lc_collate>, ]
    [ LC_CTYPE = <lc_ctype> ])

CREATE COLLATION <name> FROM <existing_collation>
```

See CREATE COLLATION for more information.

### CREATE CONVERSION

Defines a new encoding conversion.

```
CREATE [DEFAULT] CONVERSION <name> FOR <source_encoding> TO
     <dest_encoding> FROM <funcname>
```

See CREATE CONVERSION for more information.

### CREATE DATABASE

Creates a new database.

```
CREATE DATABASE name [ [WITH] [OWNER [=] <user_name>]
                     [TEMPLATE [=] <template>]
                     [ENCODING [=] <encoding>]
                     [LC_COLLATE [=] <lc_collate>]
                     [LC_CTYPE [=] <lc_ctype>]
                     [TABLESPACE [=] <tablespace>]
                     [CONNECTION LIMIT [=] connlimit ] ]
```

See CREATE DATABASE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE DOMAIN

Defines a new domain.

```
CREATE DOMAIN <name> [AS] <data_type> [DEFAULT <expression>]
       [ COLLATE <collation> ]
       [ CONSTRAINT <constraint_name>
       | NOT NULL | NULL
       | CHECK (<expression>) [...]]
```

See CREATE DOMAIN for more information.

### CREATE EXTENSION

Registers an extension in a WarehousePG.

```
CREATE EXTENSION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <extension_name>
  [ WITH ] [ SCHEMA <schema_name> ]
           [ VERSION <version> ]
           [ FROM <old_version> ]
           [ CASCADE ]
```

See CREATE EXTENSION for more information.

### CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

Defines a new external table.

```
CREATE [READABLE] EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION ('file://<seghost>[:<port>]/<path>/<file>' [, ...])
       | ('gpfdist://<filehost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
           [, ...]
       | ('gpfdists://<filehost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
           [, ...])
       | ('pxf://<path-to-data>?PROFILE=<profile_name>[&SERVER=<server_name>][&<custom-option>=<value>[...]]'))
       | ('s3://<S3_endpoint>[:<port>]/<bucket_name>/[<S3_prefix>] [region=<S3-region>] [config=<config_file> |
config_server=<url>]')
     [ON MASTER]
     FORMAT 'TEXT'
           [( [HEADER]
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>' | 'OFF']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
              [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
              [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
         | 'CSV'
           [( [HEADER]
              [QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [FORCE NOT NULL <column> [, ...]]
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>']
              [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
              [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
         | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter_specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<encoding>' ]
      [ [LOG ERRORS [PERSISTENTLY]] SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count>
      [ROWS | PERCENT] ]

CREATE [READABLE] EXTERNAL WEB [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
   ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
      LOCATION ('http://<webhost>[:<port>]/<path>/<file>' [, ...])
    | EXECUTE '<command>' [ON ALL
                          | MASTER
                          | <number_of_segments>
                          | HOST ['<segment_hostname>']
                          | SEGMENT <segment_id> ]
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
            [( [HEADER]
               [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>' | 'OFF']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF']
               [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
               [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
           | 'CSV'
            [( [HEADER]
               [QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
               [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [FORCE NOT NULL <column> [, ...]]
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>']
               [NEWLINE [ AS ] 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF']
               [FILL MISSING FIELDS] )]
          | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
     [ ENCODING '<encoding>' ]
     [ [LOG ERRORS [PERSISTENTLY]] SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT <count>
       [ROWS | PERCENT] ]

CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION('gpfdist://<outputhost>[:<port>]/<filename>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
          [, ...])
      | ('gpfdists://<outputhost>[:<port>]/<file_pattern>[#transform=<trans_name>]'
          [, ...])
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
               [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
          | 'CSV'
               [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
               [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]

           | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<write_encoding>' ]
    [ DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column> [<opclass>]}, [ ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY ]

CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table >)
     LOCATION('s3://<S3_endpoint>[:<port>]/<bucket_name>/[<S3_prefix>] [region=<S3-region>] [config=<config_file> |
config_server=<url>]')
      [ON MASTER]
      FORMAT 'TEXT'
               [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
          | 'CSV'
               [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
               [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
               [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
               [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
               [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]

CREATE WRITABLE EXTERNAL WEB [TEMPORARY | TEMP] TABLE <table_name>
    ( <column_name> <data_type> [, ...] | LIKE <other_table> )
    EXECUTE '<command>' [ON ALL]
    FORMAT 'TEXT'
               [( [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>' | 'OFF'] )]
         | 'CSV'
              [([QUOTE [AS] '<quote>']
              [DELIMITER [AS] '<delimiter>']
              [NULL [AS] '<null string>']
              [FORCE QUOTE <column> [, ...]] | * ]
              [ESCAPE [AS] '<escape>'] )]
          | 'CUSTOM' (Formatter=<<formatter specifications>>)
    [ ENCODING '<write_encoding>' ]
    [ DISTRIBUTED BY ({<column> [<opclass>]}, [ ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY ]
```

See CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE for more information.

### CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Defines a new foreign-data wrapper.

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <name>
    [ HANDLER <handler_function> | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR <validator_function> | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ] <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

See CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER for more information.

### CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

Defines a new foreign table.

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] <table_name> ( [
    <column_name> <data_type> [ OPTIONS ( <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ] [ COLLATE <collation> ] [ <column_constraint>
[ ... ] ]
      [, ... ]
] )
    SERVER <server_name>
  [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ] <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

See CREATE FOREIGN TABLE for more information.

### CREATE FUNCTION

Defines a new function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] FUNCTION <name>
    ( [ [<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype> [ { DEFAULT | = } <default_expr> ] [, ...] ] )
      [ RETURNS <rettype>
        | RETURNS TABLE ( <column_name> <column_type> [, ...] ) ]
    { LANGUAGE <langname>
    | WINDOW
    | IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE | [NOT] LEAKPROOF
    | CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT | STRICT
    | NO SQL | CONTAINS SQL | READS SQL DATA | MODIFIES SQL
    | [EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER | [EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER
    | EXECUTE ON { ANY | MASTER | ALL SEGMENTS | INITPLAN }
    | COST <execution_cost>
    | SET <configuration_parameter> { TO <value> | = <value> | FROM CURRENT }
    | AS '<definition>'
    | AS '<obj_file>', '<link_symbol>' } ...
    [ WITH ({ DESCRIBE = describe_function
           } [, ...] ) ]
```

See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

### CREATE GROUP

Defines a new database role.

```
CREATE GROUP <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

See CREATE GROUP for more information.

### CREATE INDEX

Defines a new index.

```
CREATE [UNIQUE] INDEX [<name>] ON <table_name> [USING <method>]
       ( {<column_name> | (<expression>)} [COLLATE <parameter>] [<opclass>] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [,
...] )
       [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> = <value> [, ... ] ) ]
       [ TABLESPACE <tablespace> ]
       [ WHERE <predicate> ]
```

See CREATE INDEX for more information.

### CREATE LANGUAGE

Defines a new procedural language.

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <name>

CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE <name>
    HANDLER <call_handler> [ INLINE <inline_handler> ]
   [ VALIDATOR <valfunction> ]
```

See CREATE LANGUAGE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

Defines a new materialized view.

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW <table_name>
    [ (<column_name> [, ...] ) ]
    [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [= <value>] [, ... ] ) ]
    [ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
    AS <query>
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
    [DISTRIBUTED {| BY <column> [<opclass>], [ ... ] | RANDOMLY | REPLICATED }]
```

See CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW for more information.

### CREATE OPERATOR

Defines a new operator.

```
CREATE OPERATOR <name> (
       PROCEDURE = <funcname>
       [, LEFTARG = <lefttype>] [, RIGHTARG = <righttype>]
       [, COMMUTATOR = <com_op>] [, NEGATOR = <neg_op>]
       [, RESTRICT = <res_proc>] [, JOIN = <join_proc>]
       [, HASHES] [, MERGES] )
```

See CREATE OPERATOR for more information.

### CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

Defines a new operator class.

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS <name> [DEFAULT] FOR TYPE <data_type>
  USING <index_method> [ FAMILY <family_name> ] AS
  { OPERATOR <strategy_number> <operator_name> [ ( <op_type>, <op_type> ) ] [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY
<sort_family_name> ]
  | FUNCTION <support_number> <funcname> (<argument_type> [, ...] )
  | STORAGE <storage_type>
  } [, ... ]
```

See CREATE OPERATOR CLASS for more information.

### CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY

Defines a new operator family.

```
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY <name>  USING <index_method>
```

See CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE PROTOCOL

Registers a custom data access protocol that can be specified when defining a WarehousePG external table.

```
CREATE [TRUSTED] PROTOCOL <name> (
   [readfunc='<read_call_handler>'] [, writefunc='<write_call_handler>']
   [, validatorfunc='<validate_handler>' ])
```

See CREATE PROTOCOL for more information.

### CREATE RESOURCE GROUP

Defines a new resource group.

```
CREATE RESOURCE GROUP <name> WITH (<group_attribute>=<value> [, ... ])
```

See CREATE RESOURCE GROUP for more information.

### CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE

Defines a new resource queue.

```
CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE <name> WITH (<queue_attribute>=<value> [, ... ])
```

See CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE for more information.

### CREATE ROLE

Defines a new database role (user or group).

```
CREATE ROLE <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

See CREATE ROLE for more information.

### CREATE RULE

Defines a new rewrite rule.

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] RULE <name> AS ON <event>
  TO <table_name> [WHERE <condition>]
  DO [ALSO | INSTEAD] { NOTHING | <command> | (<command>; <command>
  ...) }
```

See CREATE RULE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE SCHEMA

Defines a new schema.

```
CREATE SCHEMA <schema_name> [AUTHORIZATION <username>]
   [<schema_element> [ ... ]]

CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION <rolename> [<schema_element> [ ... ]]

CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS <schema_name> [ AUTHORIZATION <user_name> ]

CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS AUTHORIZATION <user_name>
```

See CREATE SCHEMA for more information.

### CREATE SEQUENCE

Defines a new sequence generator.

```
CREATE [TEMPORARY | TEMP] SEQUENCE <name>
       [INCREMENT [BY] <value>]
       [MINVALUE <minvalue> | NO MINVALUE]
       [MAXVALUE <maxvalue> | NO MAXVALUE]
       [START [ WITH ] <start>]
       [CACHE <cache>]
       [[NO] CYCLE]
       [OWNED BY { <table>.<column> | NONE }]
```

See CREATE SEQUENCE for more information.

### CREATE SERVER

Defines a new foreign server.

```
CREATE SERVER <server_name> [ TYPE '<server_type>' ] [ VERSION '<server_version>' ]
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name>
    [ OPTIONS ( [ mpp_execute { 'master' | 'any' | 'all segments' } [, ] ]
                [ num_segments '<num>' [, ] ]
                [ <option> '<value>' [, ... ]] ) ]
```

See CREATE SERVER for more information.

### CREATE TABLE

Defines a new table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE [ [GLOBAL | LOCAL] {TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS]
  <table_name> (
  [ { <column_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [<column_constraint> [ ... ] ]
[ ENCODING ( <storage_directive> [, ...] ) ]
    | <table_constraint>
    | LIKE <source_table> [ <like_option> ... ] }
    | [ <column_reference_storage_directive> [, ...]
    [, ... ]
] )
[ INHERITS ( <parent_table> [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [=<value>] [, ... ] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
[ DISTRIBUTED BY (<column> [<opclass>], [ ... ] )
       | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED ]

{ --partitioned table using SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
[ PARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column>)
  {  [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column1>)
       SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ( <template_spec> ) ]
          [ SUBPARTITION BY partition_type (<column2>)
            SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE ( <template_spec> ) ]
              [...]  }
  ( <partition_spec> ) ]
} |

{ **-- partitioned table without SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE
**[ PARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column>)
   [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column1>) ]
      [ SUBPARTITION BY <partition_type> (<column2>) ]
         [...]
  ( <partition_spec>
     [ ( <subpartition_spec_column1>
          [ ( <subpartition_spec_column2>
               [...] ) ] ) ],
  [ <partition_spec>
     [ ( <subpartition_spec_column1>
        [ ( <subpartition_spec_column2>
             [...] ) ] ) ], ]
    [...]
  ) ]
}

CREATE [ [GLOBAL | LOCAL] {TEMPORARY | TEMP} | UNLOGGED ] TABLE [IF NOT EXISTS]
   <table_name>
    OF <type_name> [ (
  { <column_name> WITH OPTIONS [ <column_constraint> [ ... ] ]
    | <table_constraint> }
    [, ... ]
) ]
[ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [=<value>] [, ... ] ) ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
```

See CREATE TABLE for more information.

### CREATE TABLE AS

Defines a new table from the results of a query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE <table_name>
        [ (<column_name> [, ...] ) ]
        [ WITH ( <storage_parameter> [= <value>] [, ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
        [ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
        [ TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> ]
        AS <query>
        [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
        [ DISTRIBUTED BY (column [, ... ] ) | DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY | DISTRIBUTED REPLICATED ]
```

See CREATE TABLE AS for more information.

### CREATE TABLESPACE

Defines a new tablespace.

```
CREATE TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> [OWNER <username>]  LOCATION '</path/to/dir>'
   [WITH (content<ID_1>='</path/to/dir1>'[, content<ID_2>='</path/to/dir2>' ... ])]
```

See CREATE TABLESPACE for more information.

### CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Defines a new text search configuration.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION <name> (
    PARSER = <parser_name> |
    COPY = <source_config>
)
```

See CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION for more information.

### CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Defines a new text search dictionary.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY <name> (
    TEMPLATE = <template>
    [, <option> = <value> [, ... ]]
)
```

See CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY for more information.

### CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Defines a new text search parser.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER name (
    START = start_function ,
    GETTOKEN = gettoken_function ,
    END = end_function ,
    LEXTYPES = lextypes_function
    [, HEADLINE = headline_function ]
)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

See CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER for more information.

### CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Defines a new text search template.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE <name> (
    [ INIT = <init_function> , ]
    LEXIZE = <lexize_function>
)
```

See CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE for more information.

### CREATE TYPE

Defines a new data type.

```
CREATE TYPE <name> AS
    ( <attribute_name> <data_type> [ COLLATE <collation> ] [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE <name> AS ENUM
    ( [ '<label>' [, ... ] ] )

CREATE TYPE <name> AS RANGE (
    SUBTYPE = <subtype>
    [ , SUBTYPE_OPCLASS = <subtype_operator_class> ]
    [ , COLLATION = <collation> ]
    [ , CANONICAL = <canonical_function> ]
    [ , SUBTYPE_DIFF = <subtype_diff_function> ]
)

CREATE TYPE <name> (
    INPUT = <input_function>,
    OUTPUT = <output_function>
    [, RECEIVE = <receive_function>]
    [, SEND = <send_function>]
    [, TYPMOD_IN = <type_modifier_input_function> ]
    [, TYPMOD_OUT = <type_modifier_output_function> ]
    [, INTERNALLENGTH = {<internallength> | VARIABLE}]
    [, PASSEDBYVALUE]
    [, ALIGNMENT = <alignment>]
    [, STORAGE = <storage>]
    [, LIKE = <like_type>
    [, CATEGORY = <category>]
    [, PREFERRED = <preferred>]
    [, DEFAULT = <default>]
    [, ELEMENT = <element>]
    [, DELIMITER = <delimiter>]
    [, COLLATABLE = <collatable>]
    [, COMPRESSTYPE = <compression_type>]
    [, COMPRESSLEVEL = <compression_level>]
    [, BLOCKSIZE = <blocksize>] )

CREATE TYPE <name>
```

See CREATE TYPE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### CREATE USER

Defines a new database role with the `LOGIN` privilege by default.

```
CREATE USER <name> [[WITH] <option> [ ... ]]
```

See CREATE USER for more information.

### CREATE USER MAPPING

Defines a new mapping of a user to a foreign server.

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
    [ OPTIONS ( <option> '<value>' [, ... ] ) ]
```

See CREATE USER MAPPING for more information.

### CREATE VIEW

Defines a new view.

```
CREATE [OR REPLACE] [TEMP | TEMPORARY] [RECURSIVE] VIEW <name> [ ( <column_name> [, ...] ) ]
    [ WITH ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] ) ]
    AS <query>
    [ WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION ]
```

See CREATE VIEW for more information.

### DEALLOCATE

Deallocates a prepared statement.

```
DEALLOCATE [PREPARE] <name>
```

See DEALLOCATE for more information.

### DECLARE

Defines a cursor.

```
DECLARE <name> [BINARY] [INSENSITIVE] [NO SCROLL] [PARALLEL RETRIEVE] CURSOR
     [{WITH | WITHOUT} HOLD]
     FOR <query> [FOR READ ONLY]
```

See DECLARE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DELETE

Deletes rows from a table.

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
DELETE FROM [ONLY] <table> [[AS] <alias>]
      [USING <usinglist>]
      [WHERE <condition> | WHERE CURRENT OF <cursor_name>]
      [RETURNING * | <output_expression> [[AS] <output_name>] [, …]]
```

See DELETE for more information.

### DISCARD

Discards the session state.

```
DISCARD { ALL | PLANS | TEMPORARY | TEMP }
```

See DISCARD for more information.

### DROP AGGREGATE

Removes an aggregate function.

```
DROP AGGREGATE [IF EXISTS] <name> ( <aggregate_signature> ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP AGGREGATE for more information.

### DO

Runs anonymous code block as a transient anonymous function.

```
DO [ LANGUAGE <lang_name> ] <code>
```

See DO for more information.

### DROP CAST

Removes a cast.

```
DROP CAST [IF EXISTS] (<sourcetype> AS <targettype>) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP CAST for more information.

### DROP COLLATION

Removes a previously defined collation.

```
DROP COLLATION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP COLLATION for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP CONVERSION

Removes a conversion.

```
DROP CONVERSION [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP CONVERSION for more information.

### DROP DATABASE

Removes a database.

```
DROP DATABASE [IF EXISTS] <name>
```

See DROP DATABASE for more information.

### DROP DOMAIN

Removes a domain.

```
DROP DOMAIN [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]  [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP DOMAIN for more information.

### DROP EXTENSION

Removes an extension from a WarehousePG.

```
DROP EXTENSION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP EXTENSION for more information.

### DROP EXTERNAL TABLE

Removes an external table definition.

```
DROP EXTERNAL [WEB] TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP EXTERNAL TABLE for more information.

### DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

Removes a foreign-data wrapper.

```
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP FOREIGN TABLE

Removes a foreign table.

```
DROP FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP FOREIGN TABLE for more information.

### DROP FUNCTION

Removes a function.

```
DROP FUNCTION [IF EXISTS] name ( [ [argmode] [argname] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP FUNCTION for more information.

### DROP GROUP

Removes a database role.

```
DROP GROUP [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

See DROP GROUP for more information.

### DROP INDEX

Removes an index.

```
DROP INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP INDEX for more information.

### DROP LANGUAGE

Removes a procedural language.

```
DROP [PROCEDURAL] LANGUAGE [IF EXISTS] <name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP LANGUAGE for more information.

### DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW

Removes a materialized view.

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP OPERATOR

Removes an operator.

```
DROP OPERATOR [IF EXISTS] <name> ( {<lefttype> | NONE} ,
    {<righttype> | NONE} ) [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP OPERATOR for more information.

### DROP OPERATOR CLASS

Removes an operator class.

```
DROP OPERATOR CLASS [IF EXISTS] <name> USING <index_method> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP OPERATOR CLASS for more information.

### DROP OPERATOR FAMILY

Removes an operator family.

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY [IF EXISTS] <name> USING <index_method> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP OPERATOR FAMILY for more information.

### DROP OWNED

Removes database objects owned by a database role.

```
DROP OWNED BY <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP OWNED for more information.

### DROP PROTOCOL

Removes a external table data access protocol from a database.

```
DROP PROTOCOL [IF EXISTS] <name>
```

See DROP PROTOCOL for more information.

### DROP RESOURCE GROUP

Removes a resource group.

```
DROP RESOURCE GROUP <group_name>
```

See DROP RESOURCE GROUP for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP RESOURCE QUEUE

Removes a resource queue.

```
DROP RESOURCE QUEUE <queue_name>
```

See DROP RESOURCE QUEUE for more information.

### DROP ROLE

Removes a database role.

```
DROP ROLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

See DROP ROLE for more information.

### DROP RULE

Removes a rewrite rule.

```
DROP RULE [IF EXISTS] <name> ON <table_name> [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP RULE for more information.

### DROP SCHEMA

Removes a schema.

```
DROP SCHEMA [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP SCHEMA for more information.

### DROP SEQUENCE

Removes a sequence.

```
DROP SEQUENCE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP SEQUENCE for more information.

### DROP SERVER

Removes a foreign server descriptor.

```
DROP SERVER [ IF EXISTS ] <servername> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP SERVER for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP TABLE

Removes a table.

```
DROP TABLE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP TABLE for more information.

### DROP TABLESPACE

Removes a tablespace.

```
DROP TABLESPACE [IF EXISTS] <tablespacename>
```

See DROP TABLESPACE for more information.

### DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

Removes a text search configuration.

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION for more information.

### DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

Removes a text search dictionary.

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY for more information.

### DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

Remove a text search parser.

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER for more information.

### DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

Removes a text search template.

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE [ IF EXISTS ] <name> [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

See DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### DROP TYPE

Removes a data type.

```
DROP TYPE [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP TYPE for more information.

### DROP USER

Removes a database role.

```
DROP USER [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...]
```

See DROP USER for more information.

### DROP USER MAPPING

Removes a user mapping for a foreign server.

```
DROP USER MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] { <username> | USER | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }
    SERVER <servername>
```

See DROP USER MAPPING for more information.

### DROP VIEW

Removes a view.

```
DROP VIEW [IF EXISTS] <name> [, ...] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See DROP VIEW for more information.

### END

Commits the current transaction.

```
END [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

See END for more information.

### EXECUTE

Runs a prepared SQL statement.

```
EXECUTE <name> [ (<parameter> [, ...] ) ]
```

See EXECUTE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### EXPLAIN

Shows the query plan of a statement.

```
EXPLAIN [ ( <option> [, ...] ) ] <statement>
EXPLAIN [ANALYZE] [VERBOSE] <statement>
```

See EXPLAIN for more information.

### FETCH

Retrieves rows from a query using a cursor.

```
FETCH [ <forward_direction> { FROM | IN } ] <cursor_name>
```

See FETCH for more information.

### GRANT

Defines access privileges.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
GRANT { {SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | REFERENCES |
TRIGGER | TRUNCATE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { [TABLE] <table_name> [, ...]
         | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( <column_name> [, ...] )
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( <column_name> [, ...] ) }
    ON [ TABLE ] <table_name> [, ...]
    TO { <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { {USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE} [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { SEQUENCE <sequence_name> [, ...]
         | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { {CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP} [, ...] | ALL
[PRIVILEGES] }
    ON DATABASE <database_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DOMAIN <domain_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN SERVER <server_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON { FUNCTION <function_name> ( [ [ <argmode> ] [ <argname> ] <argtype> [, ...]
] ) [, ...]
        | ALL FUNCTIONS IN SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...] }
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON LANGUAGE <lang_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC}  [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { CREATE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON TABLESPACE <tablespace_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPE <type_name> [, ...]
    TO { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]

GRANT <parent_role> [, ...]
    TO <member_role> [, ...] [WITH ADMIN OPTION]

GRANT { SELECT | INSERT | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
    ON PROTOCOL <protocolname>
    TO <username>
```

See GRANT for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### INSERT

Creates new rows in a table.

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
INSERT INTO <table> [( <column> [, ...] )]
   {DEFAULT VALUES | VALUES ( {<expression> | DEFAULT} [, ...] ) [, ...] | <query>}
   [RETURNING * | <output_expression> [[AS] <output_name>] [, ...]]
```

See INSERT for more information.

### LOAD

Loads or reloads a shared library file.

```
LOAD '<filename>'
```

See LOAD for more information.

### LOCK

Locks a table.

```
LOCK [TABLE] [ONLY] name [ * ] [, ...] [IN <lockmode> MODE] [NOWAIT]
```

See LOCK for more information.

### MOVE

Positions a cursor.

```
MOVE [ <forward_direction> [ FROM | IN ] ] <cursor_name>
```

See MOVE for more information.

### PREPARE

Prepare a statement for execution.

```
PREPARE <name> [ (<datatype> [, ...] ) ] AS <statement>
```

See PREPARE for more information.

### REASSIGN OWNED

Changes the ownership of database objects owned by a database role.

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY <old_role> [, ...] TO <new_role>
```

See REASSIGN OWNED for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

Replaces the contents of a materialized view.

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW [ CONCURRENTLY ] <name>
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

See REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW for more information.

### REINDEX

Rebuilds indexes.

```
REINDEX {INDEX | TABLE | DATABASE | SYSTEM} <name>
```

See REINDEX for more information.

### RELEASE SAVEPOINT

Destroys a previously defined savepoint.

```
RELEASE [SAVEPOINT] <savepoint_name>
```

See RELEASE SAVEPOINT for more information.

### RESET

Restores the value of a system configuration parameter to the default value.

```
RESET <configuration_parameter>

RESET ALL
```

See RESET for more information.

### RETRIEVE

Retrieves rows from a query using a parallel retrieve cursor.

```
RETRIEVE { <count> | ALL } FROM ENDPOINT <endpoint_name>
```

See RETRIEVE for more information.

### REVOKE

Removes access privileges.

```
REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE
       | REFERENCES | TRIGGER | TRUNCATE } [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }

       ON { [TABLE] <table_name> [, ...]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
            | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ] { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE
       | REFERENCES } ( <column_name> [, ...] )
       [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( <column_name> [, ...] ) }
       ON [ TABLE ] <table_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ]  <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE} [,...]
       | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON { SEQUENCE <sequence_name> [, ...]
            | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {CREATE | CONNECT
       | TEMPORARY | TEMP} [, ...] | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON DATABASE <database_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON DOMAIN <domain_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]


REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER <fdw_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON FOREIGN SERVER <server_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] {EXECUTE | ALL [PRIVILEGES]}
       ON { FUNCTION <funcname> ( [[<argmode>] [<argname>] <argtype>
                              [, ...]] ) [, ...]
            | ALL FUNCTIONS IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] {USAGE | ALL [PRIVILEGES]}
       ON LANGUAGE <langname> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ]  <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { {CREATE | USAGE} [, ...]
       | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON SCHEMA <schema_name> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC} [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [GRANT OPTION FOR] { CREATE | ALL [PRIVILEGES] }
       ON TABLESPACE <tablespacename> [, ...]
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
       { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
       ON TYPE <type_name> [, ...]
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
       FROM { [ GROUP ] <role_name> | PUBLIC } [, ...]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ADMIN OPTION FOR] <parent_role> [, ...]
       FROM [ GROUP ] <member_role> [, ...]
       [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See REVOKE for more information.

### ROLLBACK

Stops the current transaction.

```
ROLLBACK [WORK | TRANSACTION]
```

See ROLLBACK for more information.

### ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

Rolls back the current transaction to a savepoint.

```
ROLLBACK [WORK | TRANSACTION] TO [SAVEPOINT] <savepoint_name>
```

See ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT for more information.

### SAVEPOINT

Defines a new savepoint within the current transaction.

```
SAVEPOINT <savepoint_name>
```

See SAVEPOINT for more information.

### SELECT

Retrieves rows from a table or view.

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
SELECT [ALL | DISTINCT [ON (<expression> [, ...])]]
  * | <expression >[[AS] <output_name>] [, ...]
  [FROM <from_item> [, ...]]
  [WHERE <condition>]
  [GROUP BY <grouping_element> [, ...]]
  [HAVING <condition> [, ...]]
  [WINDOW <window_name> AS (<window_definition>) [, ...] ]
  [{UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT} [ALL | DISTINCT] <select>]
  [ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]]
  [LIMIT {<count> | ALL}]
  [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
  [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ <count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY]
  [FOR {UPDATE | NO KEY UPDATE | SHARE | KEY SHARE} [OF <table_name> [, ...]] [NOWAIT] [...]]

TABLE { [ ONLY ] <table_name> [ * ] | <with_query_name> }
```

See SELECT for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### SELECT INTO

Defines a new table from the results of a query.

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
SELECT [ALL | DISTINCT [ON ( <expression> [, ...] )]]
    * | <expression> [AS <output_name>] [, ...]
    INTO [TEMPORARY | TEMP | UNLOGGED ] [TABLE] <new_table>
    [FROM <from_item> [, ...]]
    [WHERE <condition>]
    [GROUP BY <expression> [, ...]]
    [HAVING <condition> [, ...]]
    [{UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT} [ALL | DISTINCT ] <select>]
    [ORDER BY <expression> [ASC | DESC | USING <operator>] [NULLS {FIRST | LAST}] [, ...]]
    [LIMIT {<count> | ALL}]
    [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
    [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ <count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
    [FOR {UPDATE | SHARE} [OF <table_name> [, ...]] [NOWAIT]
    [...]]
```

See SELECT INTO for more information.

### SET

Changes the value of a WarehousePG configuration parameter.

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] <configuration_parameter> {TO | =} <value> |
    '<value>' | DEFAULT}

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] TIME ZONE {<timezone> | LOCAL | DEFAULT}
```

See SET for more information.

### SET CONSTRAINTS

Sets constraint check timing for the current transaction.

```
SET CONSTRAINTS { ALL | <name> [, ...] } { DEFERRED | IMMEDIATE }
```

See SET CONSTRAINTS for more information.

### SET ROLE

Sets the current role identifier of the current session.

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] ROLE <rolename>

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] ROLE NONE

RESET ROLE
```

See SET ROLE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

Sets the session role identifier and the current role identifier of the current session.

```
SET [SESSION | LOCAL] SESSION AUTHORIZATION <rolename>

SET [SESSION | LOCAL] SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT

RESET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
```

See SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION for more information.

### SET TRANSACTION

Sets the characteristics of the current transaction.

```
SET TRANSACTION [<transaction_mode>] [READ ONLY | READ WRITE]

SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT <snapshot_id>

SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION <transaction_mode>
     [READ ONLY | READ WRITE]
     [NOT] DEFERRABLE
```

See SET TRANSACTION for more information.

### SHOW

Shows the value of a system configuration parameter.

```
SHOW <configuration_parameter>

SHOW ALL
```

See SHOW for more information.

### START TRANSACTION

Starts a transaction block.

```
START TRANSACTION [<transaction_mode>] [READ WRITE | READ ONLY]
```

See START TRANSACTION for more information.

### TRUNCATE

Empties a table of all rows.

```
TRUNCATE [TABLE] [ONLY] <name> [ * ] [, ...]
    [ RESTART IDENTITY | CONTINUE IDENTITY ] [CASCADE | RESTRICT]
```

See TRUNCATE for more information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### UPDATE

Updates rows of a table.

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] <with_query> [, ...] ]
UPDATE [ONLY] <table> [[AS] <alias>]
   SET {<column> = {<expression> | DEFAULT} |
   (<column> [, ...]) = ({<expression> | DEFAULT} [, ...])} [, ...]
   [FROM <fromlist>]
   [WHERE <condition >| WHERE CURRENT OF <cursor_name> ]
```

See UPDATE for more information.

### VACUUM

Garbage-collects and optionally analyzes a database.

```
VACUUM [({ FULL | FREEZE | VERBOSE | ANALYZE } [, ...])] [<table> [(<column> [, ...] )]]

VACUUM [FULL] [FREEZE] [VERBOSE] [<table>]

VACUUM [FULL] [FREEZE] [VERBOSE] ANALYZE
              [<table> [(<column> [, ...] )]]
```

See VACUUM for more information.

### VALUES

Computes a set of rows.

```
VALUES ( <expression> [, ...] ) [, ...]
   [ORDER BY <sort_expression> [ ASC | DESC | USING <operator> ] [, ...] ]
   [LIMIT { <count> | ALL } ]
   [OFFSET <start> [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
   [FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [<count> ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
```

See VALUES for more information.

**Parent topic:** SQL Commands

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.2 Data Types

WarehousePG has a rich set of native data types available to users. Users may also define new data types using the `CREATE TYPE` command. This reference shows all of the built-in data types. In addition to the types listed here, there are also some internally used data types, such as *oid* (object identifier), but those are not documented in this guide.

Additional modules that you register may also install new data types. The `hstore` module, for example, introduces a new data type and associated functions for working with key-value pairs. See hstore. The `citext` module adds a case-insensitive text data type. See citext.

The following data types are specified by SQL: *bit*, *bit varying*, *boolean*, *character varying, varchar*, *character*, *char*, *date*, *double precision*, *integer*, *interval*, *numeric*, *decimal*, *real*, *smallint*, *time* (with or without time zone), and *timestamp* (with or without time zone).

Each data type has an external representation determined by its input and output functions. Many of the built-in types have obvious external formats. However, several types are either unique to PostgreSQL (and WarehousePG), such as geometric paths, or have several possibilities for formats, such as the date and time types. Some of the input and output functions are not invertible. That is, the result of an output function may lose accuracy when compared to the original input.

| Name | Alias | Size | Range | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| bigint | int8 | 8 bytes | -9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807 | large range integer |
| bigserial | serial8 | 8 bytes | 1 to 9223372036854775807 | large autoincrementing integer |
| bit [ (n) ] | | *n* bits | bit string constant | fixed-length bit string |
| bit varying [ (n) ][1] | varbit | actual number of bits | bit string constant | variable-length bit string |
| boolean | bool | 1 byte | true/false, t/f, yes/no, y/n, 1/0 | logical boolean (true/false) |
| box | | 32 bytes | ((x1,y1),(x2,y2)) | rectangular box in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| bytea[1] | | 1 byte + *binary string* | sequence of octets | variable-length binary string |
| character [ (n) ][1] | char [ (n) ] | 1 byte + *n* | strings up to *n* characters in length | fixed-length, blank padded |
| character varying [ (n) ][1] | varchar [ (n) ] | 1 byte + *string size* | strings up to *n* characters in length | variable-length with limit |
| cidr | | 12 or 24 bytes | | IPv4 and IPv6 networks |
| circle | | 24 bytes | <(x,y),r> (center and radius) | circle in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| date | | 4 bytes | 4713 BC - 294,277 AD | calendar date (year, month, day) |
| decimal [ (p, s) ][1] | numeric [ (p, s) ] | variable | no limit | user-specified precision, exact |
| double precision | float8<br>float | 8 bytes | 15 decimal digits precision | variable-precision, inexact |
| inet | | 12 or 24 bytes | | IPv4 and IPv6 hosts and networks |
| integer | int, int4 | 4 bytes | -2147483648 to +2147483647 | usual choice for integer |
| interval [ fields ] [ (p) ] | | 16 bytes | -178000000 years to 178000000 years | time span |
| json | | 1 byte + json size | json of any length | variable unlimited length |
| jsonb | | 1 byte + binary string | json of any length in a decomposed binary format | variable unlimited length |
| lseg | | 32 bytes | ((x1,y1),(x2,y2)) | line segment in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| macaddr | | 6 bytes | | MAC addresses |
| money | | 8 bytes | -92233720368547758.08 to +92233720368547758.07 | currency amount |
| path[1] | | 16+16n bytes | [(x1,y1),...] | geometric path in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| point | | 16 bytes | (x,y) | geometric point in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| polygon | | 40+16n bytes | ((x1,y1),...) | closed geometric path in the plane - not allowed in distribution key columns. |
| real | float4 | 4 bytes | 6 decimal digits precision | variable-precision, inexact |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Name | Alias | Size | Range | Description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| serial | serial4 | 4 bytes | 1 to 2147483647 | autoincrementing integer |
| smallint | int2 | 2 bytes | -32768 to +32767 | small range integer |
| text[1] | | 1 byte + *string size* | strings of any length | variable unlimited length |
| time [ (p) ] [ without time zone ] | | 8 bytes | 00:00:00[.000000] - 24:00:00[.000000] | time of day only |
| time [ (p) ] with time zone | timetz | 12 bytes | 00:00:00+1359 - 24:00:00-1359 | time of day only, with time zone |
| timestamp [ (p) ] [ without time zone ] | | 8 bytes | 4713 BC - 294,277 AD | both date and time |
| timestamp [ (p) ] with time zone | timestamptz | 8 bytes | 4713 BC - 294,277 AD | both date and time, with time zone |
| uuid | | 16 bytes | | Universally Unique Identifiers according to RFC 4122, ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005 |
| xml[1] | | 1 byte + *xml size* | xml of any length | variable unlimited length |
| txid_snapshot | | | | user-level transaction ID snapshot |

- Date/Time Types
- Pseudo-Types
- Text Search Data Types
- Range Types

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

[1] For variable length data types, if the data is greater than or equal to 127 bytes, the storage overhead is 4 bytes instead of 1.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.2.1 Date/Time Types

WarehousePG supports the full set of SQL date and time types, shown in the table that follows. The operations available on these data types are described in Date/Time Functions and Operators in the PostgreSQL documentation. Dates are counted according to the Gregorian calendar, even in years before that calendar was introduced (see History of Units in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information).

| Name | Storage Size | Description | Low Value | High Value | Resolution |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| timestamp [ (p) ] [ without time zone ] | 8 bytes | both date and time (no time zone) | 4713 BC | 294276 AD | 1 microsecond / 14 digits |
| timestamp [ (p) ] with time zone | 8 bytes | both date and time, with time zone | 4713 BC | 294276 AD | 1 microsecond / 14 digits |
| date | 4 bytes | date (no time of day) | 4713 BC | 5874897 AD | 1 day |
| time [ (p) ] [ without time zone ] | 8 bytes | time of day (no date) | 00:00:00 | 24:00:00 | 1 microsecond / 14 digits |
| time [ (p) ] with time zone | 12 bytes | times of day only, with time zone | 00:00:00+1459 | 24:00:00-1459 | 1 microsecond / 14 digits |
| interval [ fields ] [ (p) ] | 16 bytes | time interval | -178000000 years | 178000000 years | 1 microsecond / 14 digits |

> **Note** The SQL standard requires that writing just `timestamp` be equivalent to `timestamp without time zone`, and WarehousePG honors that behavior. `timestamptz` is accepted as an abbreviation for `timestamp with time zone`; this is a PostgreSQL extension.

`time`, `timestamp`, and `interval` accept an optional precision value p which specifies the number of fractional digits retained in the seconds field. By default, there is no explicit bound on precision. The allowed range of p is from 0 to 6 for the `timestamp` and `interval` types.

> **Note** When `timestamp` values are stored as eight-byte integers (currently the default), microsecond precision is available over the full range of values. When `timestamp` values are stored as double precision floating-point numbers instead (a deprecated compile-time option), the effective limit of precision might be less than 6. `timestamp` values are stored as seconds before or after midnight 2000-01-01. When `timestamp` values are implemented using floating-point numbers, microsecond precision is achieved for dates within a few years of 2000-01-01, but the precision degrades for dates further away. Note that using floating-point datetimes allows a larger range of `timestamp` values to be represented than shown above: from 4713 BC up to 5874897 AD.

The same compile-time option also determines whether `time` and `interval` values are stored as floating-point numbers or eight-byte integers. In the floating-point case, large `interval` values degrade in precision as the size of the interval increases.

For the `time` types, the allowed range of p is from 0 to 6 when eight-byte integer storage is used, or from 0 to 10 when floating-point storage is used.

The `interval` type has an additional option, which is to restrict the set of stored fields by writing one of these phrases:

```
YEAR
MONTH
DAY
HOUR
MINUTE
SECOND
YEAR TO MONTH
DAY TO HOUR
DAY TO MINUTE
DAY TO SECOND
HOUR TO MINUTE
HOUR TO SECOND
MINUTE TO SECOND
```

Note that if both fields and p are specified, the fields must include `SECOND`, since the precision applies only to the seconds.

The type `time with time zone` is defined by the SQL standard, but the definition exhibits properties which lead to questionable usefulness. In most cases, a combination of `date`, `time`, `timestamp without time zone`, and `timestamp with time zone` should provide a complete range of date/time functionality required by any application.

The types `abstime` and `reltime` are lower precision types which are used internally. You are discouraged from using these types in applications; these internal types might disappear in a future release.

WarehousePG 6 and later releases do not automatically cast text from the deprecated timestamp format `YYYYMMDDHH24MISS`. The format could not be parsed unambiguously in previous WarehousePG releases.

For example, this command returns an error in WarehousePG 6. In previous releases, a timestamp is returned.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
# select to_timestamp('20190905140000');
```

In WarehousePG 6, this command returns a timestamp.

```
# select to_timestamp('20190905140000','YYYYMMDDHH24MISS');
```

### Date/Time Input

Date and time input is accepted in almost any reasonable format, including ISO 8601, SQL-compatible, traditional POSTGRES, and others. For some formats, ordering of day, month, and year in date input is ambiguous and there is support for specifying the expected ordering of these fields. Set the DateStyle parameter to `MDY` to select month-day-year interpretation, `DMY` to select day-month-year interpretation, or `YMD` to select year-month-day interpretation.

WarehousePG is more flexible in handling date/time input than the SQL standard requires. See Appendix B. Date/Time Support in the PostgreSQL documentation for the exact parsing rules of date/time input and for the recognized text fields including months, days of the week, and time zones.

Remember that any date or time literal input needs to be enclosed in single quotes, like text strings. SQL requires the following syntax

```
<type> [ (<p>) ] '<value>'
```

where p is an optional precision specification giving the number of fractional digits in the seconds field. Precision can be specified for `time` , `timestamp` , and `interval` types. The allowed values are mentioned above. If no precision is specified in a constant specification, it defaults to the precision of the literal value.

### Dates

This table shows some possible inputs for the `date` type.

#### Date Input

| Example | Description |
|---|---|
| 1999-01-08 | ISO 8601; January 8 in any mode (recommended format) |
| January 8, 1999 | unambiguous in any datestyle input mode |
| 1/8/1999 | January 8 in `MDY` mode; August 1 in `DMY` mode |
| 1/18/1999 | January 18 in `MDY` mode; rejected in other modes |
| 01/02/03 | January 2, 2003 in `MDY` mode; February 1, 2003 in `DMY` mode; February 3, 2001 in `YMD` mode |
| 1999-Jan-08 | January 8 in any mode |
| Jan-08-1999 | January 8 in any mode |
| 08-Jan-1999 | January 8 in any mode |
| 99-Jan-08 | January 8 in `YMD` mode, else error |
| 08-Jan-99 | January 8, except error in `YMD` mode |
| Jan-08-99 | January 8, except error in `YMD` mode |
| 19990108 | ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode |
| 990108 | ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode |
| 1999.008 | year and day of year |
| J2451187 | Julian date |
| January 8, 99 BC | year 99 BC |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Times

The time-of-day types are `time [ (p) ] without time zone` and `time [ (p) ] with time zone`. `time` alone is equivalent to `time without time zone`.

Valid input for these types consists of a time of day followed by an optional time zone. (See Time Input and Time Zone Input.) If a time zone is specified in the input for `time without time zone`, it is silently ignored. You can also specify a date but it will be ignored, except when you use a time zone name that involves a daylight-savings rule, such as `America/New_York`. In this case specifying the date is required in order to determine whether standard or daylight-savings time applies. The appropriate time zone offset is recorded in the `time with time zone` value.

#### Time Input

| Example | Description |
|---|---|
| `04:05:06.789` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05:06` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05` | ISO 8601 |
| `040506` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05 AM` | same as 04:05; AM does not affect value |
| `04:05 PM` | same as 16:05; input hour must be <= 12 |
| `04:05:06.789-8` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05:06-08:00` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05-08:00` | ISO 8601 |
| `040506-08` | ISO 8601 |
| `04:05:06 PST` | time zone specified by abbreviation |
| `2003-04-12 04:05:06 America/New_York` | time zone specified by full name |

#### Time Zone Input

| Example | Description |
|---|---|
| `PST` | Abbreviation (for Pacific Standard Time) |
| `America/New_York` | Full time zone name |
| `PST8PDT` | POSIX-style time zone specification |
| `-8:00` | ISO-8601 offset for PST |
| `-800` | ISO-8601 offset for PST |
| `-8` | ISO-8601 offset for PST |
| `zulu` | Military abbreviation for UTC |
| `z` | Short form of `zulu` |

Refer to Time Zones for more information on how to specify time zones.

### Time Stamps

Valid input for the time stamp types consists of the concatenation of a date and a time, followed by an optional time zone, followed by an optional `AD` or `BC`. (Alternatively, `AD`/`BC` can appear before the time zone, but this is not the preferred ordering.) Thus: `1999-01-08 04:05:06` and: `1999-01-08 04:05:06 -8:00` are valid values, which follow the ISO 8601 standard. In addition, the common format: `January 8 04:05:06 1999 PST` is supported.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The SQL standard differentiates `timestamp without time zone` and `timestamp with time zone` literals by the presence of a `+` or `-` symbol and time zone offset after the time. Hence, according to the standard, `TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54'` is a `timestamp without time zone`, while `TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'` is a `timestamp with time zone`. WarehousePG never examines the content of a literal string before determining its type, and therefore will treat both of the above as `timestamp without time zone`. To ensure that a literal is treated as `timestamp with time zone`, give it the correct explicit type: `TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'` In a literal that has been determined to be `timestamp without time zone`, WarehousePG will silently ignore any time zone indication. That is, the resulting value is derived from the date/time fields in the input value, and is not adjusted for time zone.

For `timestamp with time zone`, the internally stored value is always in UTC (Universal Coordinated Time, traditionally known as Greenwich Mean Time, GMT). An input value that has an explicit time zone specified is converted to UTC using the appropriate offset for that time zone. If no time zone is stated in the input string, then it is assumed to be in the time zone indicated by the system's `TimeZone` parameter, and is converted to UTC using the offset for the timezone zone.

When a `timestamp with time zone` value is output, it is always converted from UTC to the current timezone zone, and displayed as local time in that zone. To see the time in another time zone, either change timezone or use the `AT TIME ZONE` construct (see AT TIME ZONE in the PostgreSQL documentation).

Conversions between `timestamp without time zone` and `timestamp with time zone` normally assume that the `timestamp without time zone` value should be taken or given as timezone local time. A different time zone can be specified for the conversion using `AT TIME ZONE`.

### Special Values

WarehousePG supports several special date/time input values for convenience, as shown in Special Date/Time Inputs. The values `infinity` and `-infinity` are specially represented inside the system and will be displayed unchanged; but the others are simply notational shorthands that will be converted to ordinary date/time values when read. (In particular, `now` and related strings are converted to a specific time value as soon as they are read.) All of these values need to be enclosed in single quotes when used as constants in SQL commands.

#### Special Date/Time Inputs

| Input String | Valid Types | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `epoch` | `date`, `timestamp` | 1970-01-01 00:00:00+00 (Unix system time zero) |
| `infinity` | `date`, `timestamp` | later than all other time stamps |
| `-infinity` | `date`, `timestamp` | earlier than all other time stamps |
| `now` | `date`, `time`, `timestamp` | current transaction's start time |
| `today` | `date`, `timestamp` | midnight today |
| `tomorrow` | `date`, `timestamp` | midnight tomorrow |
| `yesterday` | `date`, `timestamp` | midnight yesterday |
| `allballs` | `time` | 00:00:00.00 UTC |

The following SQL-compatible functions can also be used to obtain the current time value for the corresponding data type: `CURRENT_DATE`, `CURRENT_TIME`, `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, `LOCALTIME`, `LOCALTIMESTAMP`. The latter four accept an optional subsecond precision specification. (See Current Date/Time in the PostgreSQL documentation.) Note that these are SQL functions and are *not* recognized in data input strings.

### Date/Time Output

The output format of the date/time types can be set to one of the four styles ISO 8601, SQL (Ingres), traditional POSTGRES (Unix `date` format), or German. The default is the ISO format. (The SQL standard requires the use of the ISO 8601 format. The name of the `SQL` output format is a historical accident.) Date/Time Output Styles shows examples of each output style. The output of the `date` and `time` types is generally only the date or time part in accordance with the given examples. However, the POSTGRES style outputs date-only values in ISO format.

#### Date/Time Output Styles

| Style Specification | Description | Example |
|---|---|---|
| `ISO` | ISO 8601, SQL standard | `1997-12-17 07:37:16-08` |
| `SQL` | traditional style | `12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST` |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Style Specification | Description | Example |
|---|---|---|
| `Postgres` | original style | `Wed Dec 17 07:37:16 1997 PST` |
| `German` | regional style | `17.12.1997 07:37:16.00 PST` |

> **Note** ISO 8601 specifies the use of uppercase letter `T` to separate the date and time. WarehousePG accepts that format on input, but on output it uses a space rather than `T`, as shown above. This is for readability and for consistency with RFC 3339 as well as some other database systems.

In the SQL and POSTGRES styles, day appears before month if DMY field ordering has been specified, otherwise month appears before day. (See Date Input for how this setting also affects interpretation of input values.) Date Order Conventions shows examples.

**Date Order Conventions**

| datestyle Setting | Input Ordering | Example Output |
|---|---|---|
| `SQL, DMY` | day/month/year | `17/12/1997 15:37:16.00 CET` |
| `SQL, MDY` | month/day/year | `12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST` |
| `Postgres, DMY` | day/month/year | `Wed 17 Dec 07:37:16 1997 PST` |

The date/time style can be selected by the user using the `SET datestyle` command, the `DateStyle` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file, or the `PGDATESTYLE` environment variable on the server or client.

The formatting function `to_char` (see Data Type Formatting Functions) is also available as a more flexible way to format date/time output.

### Time Zones

Time zones, and time-zone conventions, are influenced by political decisions, not just earth geometry. Time zones around the world became somewhat standardized during the 1900s, but continue to be prone to arbitrary changes, particularly with respect to daylight-savings rules. WarehousePG uses the widely-used IANA (Olson) time zone database for information about historical time zone rules. For times in the future, the assumption is that the latest known rules for a given time zone will continue to be observed indefinitely far into the future.

WarehousePG endeavors to be compatible with the SQL standard definitions for typical usage. However, the SQL standard has an odd mix of date and time types and capabilities. Two obvious problems are:

1. Although the `date` type cannot have an associated time zone, the `time` type can. Time zones in the real world have little meaning unless associated with a date as well as a time, since the offset can vary through the year with daylight-saving time boundaries.
2. The default time zone is specified as a constant numeric offset from UTC. It is therefore impossible to adapt to daylight-saving time when doing date/time arithmetic across DST boundaries.

To address these difficulties, we recommend using date/time types that contain both date and time when using time zones. We do *not* recommend using the type `time with time zone` (though it is supported by WarehousePG for legacy applications and for compliance with the SQL standard). WarehousePG assumes your local time zone for any type containing only date or time.

All timezone-aware dates and times are stored internally in UTC. They are converted to local time in the zone specified by the `TimeZone` configuration parameter before being displayed to the client.

WarehousePG allows you to specify time zones in three different forms:

1. A full time zone name, for example `America/New_York`. The recognized time zone names are listed in the `pg_timezone_names` view. WarehousePG uses the widely-used IANA time zone data for this purpose, so the same time zone names are also recognized by other software.
2. A time zone abbreviation, for example `PST`. Such a specification merely defines a particular offset from UTC, in contrast to full time zone names which can imply a set of daylight savings transition-date rules as well. The recognized abbreviations are listed in the `pg_timezone_abbrevs` view. You cannot set the configuration parameters TimeZone or log_timezone to a time zone abbreviation, but you can use abbreviations in date/time input values and with the `AT TIME ZONE` operator.
3. In addition to the timezone names and abbreviations, WarehousePG will accept POSIX-style time zone specifications of the form STDoffset or STDoffsetDST, where STD is a zone abbreviation, offset is a numeric offset in hours west from UTC, and DST is an optional daylight-savings zone abbreviation, assumed to stand for one hour ahead of the given offset. For example, if `EST5EDT` were not already a recognized zone name, it would be accepted and would be functionally equivalent to United States East Coast time. In this syntax, a zone abbreviation can be a string of letters, or an arbitrary string surrounded by angle brackets ( `<>` ). When a daylight-savings zone abbreviation is present, it is assumed to be used according to the same daylight-savings transition rules used in the IANA time zone database's entry. In a standard WarehousePG installation, is the same as `US/Eastern`, so that POSIX-style time zone specifications follow USA daylight-savings rules. If needed, you can adjust this behavior by replacing the file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

In short, this is the difference between abbreviations and full names: abbreviations represent a specific offset from UTC, whereas many of the full names imply a local daylight-savings time rule, and so have two possible UTC offsets. As an example, `2014-06-04 12:00 America/New_York` represents noon local time in New York, which for this particular date was Eastern Daylight Time (UTC-4). So `2014-06-04 12:00 EDT` specifies that same time instant. But `2014-06-04 12:00 EST` specifies noon Eastern Standard Time (UTC-5), regardless of whether daylight savings was nominally in effect on that date.

To complicate matters, some jurisdictions have used the same timezone abbreviation to mean different UTC offsets at different times; for example, in Moscow `MSK` has meant UTC+3 in some years and UTC+4 in others. WarehousePG interprets such abbreviations according to whatever they meant (or had most recently meant) on the specified date; but, as with the `EST` example above, this is not necessarily the same as local civil time on that date.

One should be wary that the POSIX-style time zone feature can lead to silently accepting bogus input, since there is no check on the reasonableness of the zone abbreviations. For example, `SET TIMEZONE TO FOOBAR0` will work, leaving the system effectively using a rather peculiar abbreviation for UTC. Another issue to keep in mind is that in POSIX time zone names, positive offsets are used for locations of Greenwich. Everywhere else, WarehousePG follows the ISO-8601 convention that positive timezone offsets are of Greenwich.

In all cases, timezone names and abbreviations are recognized case-insensitively.

Neither timezone names nor abbreviations are hard-wired into the server; they are obtained from configuration files (see Configuring Localization Settings).

The `TimeZone` configuration parameter can be set in the file , or in any of the other standard ways for setting configuration parameters. There are also some special ways to set it:

1. The SQL command `SET TIME ZONE` sets the time zone for the session. This is an alternative spelling of `SET TIMEZONE TO` with a more SQL-spec-compatible syntax.
2. The `PGTZ` environment variable is used by `libpq` clients to send a `SET TIME ZONE` command to the server upon connection.

### Interval Input

`interval` values can be written using the following verbose syntax:

```
<@> <quantity> <unit> <quantity> <unit>... <direction>
```

where quantity is a number (possibly signed); unit is `microsecond`, `millisecond`, `second`, `minute`, `hour`, `day`, `week`, `month`, `year`, `decade`, `century`, `millennium`, or abbreviations or plurals of these units; direction can be `ago` or empty. The at sign ( `@` ) is optional noise. The amounts of the different units are implicitly added with appropriate sign accounting. `ago` negates all the fields. This syntax is also used for interval output, if IntervalStyle is set to `postgres_verbose`.

Quantities of days, hours, minutes, and seconds can be specified without explicit unit markings. For example, `'1 12:59:10'` is read the same as `'1 day 12 hours 59 min 10 sec'`. Also, a combination of years and months can be specified with a dash; for example `'200-10'` is read the same as `'200 years 10 months'`. (These shorter forms are in fact the only ones allowed by the SQL standard, and are used for output when IntervalStyle is set to `sql_standard`.)

Interval values can also be written as ISO 8601 time intervals, using either the `format with designators` of the standard's section 4.4.3.2 or the `alternative format` of section 4.4.3.3. The format with designators looks like this:

```
P <quantity> <unit> <quantity> <unit> ...  T  <quantity> <unit> ...
```

The string must start with a `P`, and may include a `T` that introduces the time-of-day units. The available unit abbreviations are given in ISO 8601 Interval Unit Abbreviations. Units may be omitted, and may be specified in any order, but units smaller than a day must appear after `T`. In particular, the meaning of `M` depends on whether it is before or after `T`.

#### ISO 8601 Interval Unit Abbreviations

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Y | Years |
| M | Months (in the date part) |
| W | Weeks |
| D | Days |
| H | Hours |
| M | Minutes (in the time part) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Abbreviation | Meaning |
|---|---|
| S | Seconds |

In the alternative format:

```
P  <years>-<months>-<days>   T <hours>:<minutes>:<seconds>
```

the string must begin with `P`, and a `T` separates the date and time parts of the interval. The values are given as numbers similar to ISO 8601 dates.

When writing an interval constant with a fields specification, or when assigning a string to an interval column that was defined with a fields specification, the interpretation of unmarked quantities depends on the fields. For example `INTERVAL '1' YEAR` is read as 1 year, whereas `INTERVAL '1'` means 1 second. Also, field values `to the right` of the least significant field allowed by the fields specification are silently discarded. For example, writing `INTERVAL '1 day 2:03:04' HOUR TO MINUTE` results in dropping the seconds field, but not the day field.

According to the SQL standard all fields of an interval value must have the same sign, so a leading negative sign applies to all fields; for example the negative sign in the interval literal `'-1 2:03:04'` applies to both the days and hour/minute/second parts. WarehousePG allows the fields to have different signs, and traditionally treats each field in the textual representation as independently signed, so that the hour/minute/second part is considered positive in this example. If IntervalStyle is set to `sql_standard` then a leading sign is considered to apply to all fields (but only if no additional signs appear). Otherwise the traditional WarehousePG interpretation is used. To avoid ambiguity, it's recommended to attach an explicit sign to each field if any field is negative.

In the verbose input format, and in some fields of the more compact input formats, field values can have fractional parts; for example `'1.5 week'` or `'01:02:03.45'`. Such input is converted to the appropriate number of months, days, and seconds for storage. When this would result in a fractional number of months or days, the fraction is added to the lower-order fields using the conversion factors 1 month = 30 days and 1 day = 24 hours. For example, `'1.5 month'` becomes 1 month and 15 days. Only seconds will ever be shown as fractional on output.

This table shows some examples of valid `interval` input.

| Example | Description |
|---|---|
| 1-2 | SQL standard format: 1 year 2 months |
| 3 4:05:06 | SQL standard format: 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds |
| 1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds | Traditional Postgres format: 1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds |
| P1Y2M3DT4H5M6S | ISO 8601 `format with designators`: same meaning as above |
| P0001-02-03T04:05:06 | ISO 8601 `alternative format`: same meaning as above |

Internally `interval` values are stored as months, days, and seconds. This is done because the number of days in a month varies, and a day can have 23 or 25 hours if a daylight savings time adjustment is involved. The months and days fields are integers while the seconds field can store fractions. Because intervals are usually created from constant strings or `timestamp` subtraction, this storage method works well in most cases, but can cause unexpected results: `SELECT EXTRACT(hours from '80 minutes'::interval); date_part ----------- 1 SELECT EXTRACT(days from '80 hours'::interval); date_part ----------- 0` Functions `justify_days` and `justify_hours` are available for adjusting days and hours that overflow their normal ranges.

### Interval Output

The output format of the interval type can be set to one of the four styles `sql_standard`, `postgres`, `postgres_verbose`, or `iso_8601`, using the command `SET intervalstyle`. The default is the `postgres` format. Interval Output Style Examples shows examples of each output style.

The `sql_standard` style produces output that conforms to the SQL standard's specification for interval literal strings, if the interval value meets the standard's restrictions (either year-month only or day-time only, with no mixing of positive and negative components). Otherwise the output looks like a standard year-month literal string followed by a day-time literal string, with explicit signs added to disambiguate mixed-sign intervals.

The output of the `postgres` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the DateStyle parameter was set to `ISO`.

The output of the `postgres_verbose` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the DateStyle parameter was set to non-`ISO` output.

The output of the `iso_8601` style matches the `format with designators` described in section 4.4.3.2 of the ISO 8601 standard.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Interval Output Style Examples

| Style Specification | Year-Month Interval | Day-Time Interval | Mixed Interval |
|---|---|---|---|
| `sql_standard` | 1-2 | 3 4:05:06 | -1-2 +3 -4:05:06 |
| `postgres` | 1 year 2 mons | 3 days 04:05:06 | -1 year -2 mons +3 days -04:05:06 |
| `postgres_verbose` | @ 1 year 2 mons | @ 3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs | @ 1 year 2 mons -3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs ago |
| `iso_8601` | P1Y2M | P3DT4H5M6S | P-1Y-2M3DT-4H-5M-6S |

**Parent topic:** Data Types

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.2.2 Pseudo-Types

WarehousePG supports special-purpose data type entries that are collectively called *pseudo-types*. A pseudo-type cannot be used as a column data type, but it can be used to declare a function's argument or result type. Each of the available pseudo-types is useful in situations where a function's behavior does not correspond to simply taking or returning a value of a specific SQL data type.

Functions coded in procedural languages can use pseudo-types only as allowed by their implementation languages. The procedural languages all forbid use of a pseudo-type as an argument type, and allow only *void* and *record* as a result type.

A function with the pseudo-type *record* as a return data type returns an unspecified row type. The *record* represents an array of possibly-anonymous composite types. Since composite datums carry their own type identification, no extra knowledge is needed at the array level.

The pseudo-type *void* indicates that a function returns no value.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support triggers and the pseudo-type *trigger*.

The types *anyelement*, *anyarray*, *anynonarray*, and *anyenum* are pseudo-types called polymorphic types. Some procedural languages also support polymorphic functions using the types *anyarray*, *anyelement*, *anyenum*, and *anynonarray*.

The pseudo-type *anytable* is a WarehousePG type that specifies a table expression—an expression that computes a table. WarehousePG allows this type only as an argument to a user-defined function. See Table Value Expressions for more about the *anytable* pseudo-type.

For more information about pseudo-types, see the PostgreSQL documentation about Pseudo-Types.

**Parent topic:** Data Types

### Polymorphic Types

Four pseudo-types of special interest are *anyelement*, *anyarray*, *anynonarray*, and *anyenum*, which are collectively called *polymorphic* types. Any function declared using these types is said to be a polymorphic function. A polymorphic function can operate on many different data types, with the specific data types being determined by the data types actually passed to it at runtime.

Polymorphic arguments and results are tied to each other and are resolved to a specific data type when a query calling a polymorphic function is parsed. Each position (either argument or return value) declared as *anyelement* is allowed to have any specific actual data type, but in any given call they must all be the same actual type. Each position declared as *anyarray* can have any array data type, but similarly they must all be the same type. If there are positions declared *anyarray* and others declared *anyelement*, the actual array type in the *anyarray* positions must be an array whose elements are the same type appearing in the *anyelement* positions. *anynonarray* is treated exactly the same as *anyelement*, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must not be an array type. *anyenum* is treated exactly the same as *anyelement*, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must be an `enum` type.

When more than one argument position is declared with a polymorphic type, the net effect is that only certain combinations of actual argument types are allowed. For example, a function declared as `equal(*anyelement*, *anyelement*)` takes any two input values, so long as they are of the same data type.

When the return value of a function is declared as a polymorphic type, there must be at least one argument position that is also polymorphic, and the actual data type supplied as the argument determines the actual result type for that call. For example, if there were not already an array subscripting mechanism, one could define a function that implements subscripting as `subscript(*anyarray*, integer) returns *anyelement*`. This declaration constrains the actual first argument to be an array type, and allows the parser to infer the correct result type from the actual first argument's type. Another example is that a function declared as `myfunc(*anyarray*) returns *anyenum*` will only accept arrays of `enum` types.

Note that *anynonarray* and *anyenum* do not represent separate type variables; they are the same type as *anyelement*, just with an additional constraint. For example, declaring a function as `myfunc(*anyelement*, *anyenum*)` is equivalent to declaring it as `myfunc(*anyenum*, *anyenum*)`: both actual arguments must be the same `enum` type.

A variadic function (one taking a variable number of arguments) is polymorphic when its last parameter is declared as `VARIADIC *anyarray*`. For purposes of argument matching and determining the actual result type, such a function behaves the same as if you had declared the appropriate number of *anynonarray* parameters.

For more information about polymorphic types, see the PostgreSQL documentation about Polymorphic Arguments and Return Types.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Table Value Expressions

The *anytable* pseudo-type declares a function argument that is a table value expression. The notation for a table value expression is a `SELECT` statement enclosed in a `TABLE()` function. You can specify a distribution policy for the table by adding `SCATTER RANDOMLY`, or a `SCATTER BY` clause with a column list to specify the distribution key.

The `SELECT` statement is run when the function is called and the result rows are distributed to segments so that each segment runs the function with a subset of the result table.

For example, this table expression selects three columns from a table named `customer` and sets the distribution key to the first column:

```
TABLE(SELECT cust_key, name, address FROM customer SCATTER BY 1)
```

The `SELECT` statement may include joins on multiple base tables, `WHERE` clauses, aggregates, and any other valid query syntax.

The *anytable* type is only permitted in functions implemented in the C or C++ languages. The body of the function can access the table using the WarehousePG Server Programming Interface (SPI) or the WarehousePG Partner Connector (GPPC) API.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.2.3 Text Search Data Types

WarehousePG provides two data types that are designed to support full text search, which is the activity of searching through a collection of natural-language *documents* to locate those that best match a *query*. The `tsvector` type represents a document in a form optimized for text search; the `tsquery` type similarly represents a text query. Using Full Text Search provides a detailed explanation of this facility, and Text Search Functions and Operators summarizes the related functions and operators.

The `tsvector` and `tsquery` types cannot be part of the distribution key of a WarehousePG table.

**Parent topic:** Data Types

### tsvector

A `tsvector` value is a sorted list of distinct *lexemes*, which are words that have been *normalized* to merge different variants of the same word (see Using Full Text Search for details). Sorting and duplicate-elimination are done automatically during input, as shown in this example:

```
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector;
                      tsvector
----------------------------------------------------
 'a' 'and' 'ate' 'cat' 'fat' 'mat' 'on' 'rat' 'sat'
```

To represent lexemes containing whitespace or punctuation, surround them with quotes:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme '    ' contains spaces$$::tsvector;
                tsvector
-------------------------------------------
 '    ' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'spaces' 'the'
```

(We use dollar-quoted string literals in this example and the next one to avoid the confusion of having to double quote marks within the literals.) Embedded quotes and backslashes must be doubled:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme 'Joe''s' contains a quote$$::tsvector;
                   tsvector
------------------------------------------------
 'Joe''s' 'a' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'quote' 'the'
```

Optionally, integer *positions* can be attached to lexemes:

```
SELECT 'a:1 fat:2 cat:3 sat:4 on:5 a:6 mat:7 and:8 ate:9 a:10 fat:11 rat:12'::tsvector;
                                tsvector
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
 'a':1,6,10 'and':8 'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'on':5 'rat':12 'sat':4
```

A position normally indicates the source word's location in the document. Positional information can be used for *proximity ranking*. Position values can range from 1 to 16383; larger numbers are silently set to 16383. Duplicate positions for the same lexeme are discarded.

Lexemes that have positions can further be labeled with a *weight*, which can be `A`, `B`, `C`, or `D`. `D` is the default and hence is not shown on output:

```
SELECT 'a:1A fat:2B,4C cat:5D'::tsvector;
          tsvector
----------------------------
 'a':1A 'cat':5 'fat':2B,4C
```

Weights are typically used to reflect document structure, for example by marking title words differently from body words. Text search ranking functions can assign different priorities to the different weight markers.

It is important to understand that the `tsvector` type itself does not perform any normalization; it assumes the words it is given are normalized appropriately for the application. For example,

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
select 'The Fat Rats'::tsvector;
      tsvector
--------------------
 'Fat' 'Rats' 'The'
```

For most English-text-searching applications the above words would be considered non-normalized, but tsvector doesn't care. Raw document text should usually be passed through `to_tsvector` to normalize the words appropriately for searching:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats');
   to_tsvector
-----------------
 'fat':2 'rat':3
```

#### tsquery

A `tsquery` value stores lexemes that are to be searched for, and combines them honoring the Boolean operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), and `!` (NOT). Parentheses can be used to enforce grouping of the operators:

```
SELECT 'fat & rat'::tsquery;
    tsquery
---------------
 'fat' & 'rat'

SELECT 'fat & (rat | cat)'::tsquery;
          tsquery
---------------------------
 'fat' & ( 'rat' | 'cat' )

SELECT 'fat & rat & ! cat'::tsquery;
       tsquery
------------------------
 'fat' & 'rat' & !'cat'
```

In the absence of parentheses, `!` (NOT) binds most tightly, and `&` (AND) binds more tightly than `|` (OR).

Optionally, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with one or more weight letters, which restricts them to match only `tsvector` lexemes with matching weights:

```
SELECT 'fat:ab & cat'::tsquery;
    tsquery
------------------
 'fat':AB & 'cat'
```

Also, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with * to specify prefix matching:

```
SELECT 'super:*'::tsquery;
  tsquery
-----------
 'super':*
```

This query will match any word in a `tsvector` that begins with "super". Note that prefixes are first processed by text search configurations, which means this comparison returns true:

```
SELECT to_tsvector( 'postgraduate' ) @@ to_tsquery( 'postgres:*' );
 ?column?
----------
 t
(1 row)
```

because `postgres` gets stemmed to `postgr`:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
SELECT to_tsquery('postgres:*');
 to_tsquery
------------
 'postgr':*
(1 row)
```

which then matches `postgraduate`.

Quoting rules for lexemes are the same as described previously for lexemes in `tsvector`; and, as with `tsvector`, any required normalization of words must be done before converting to the `tsquery` type. The `to_tsquery` function is convenient for performing such normalization:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('Fat:ab & Cats');
    to_tsquery
------------------
 'fat':AB & 'cat'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.2.4 Range Types

Range types are data types representing a range of values of some element type (called the range's subtype). For instance, ranges of `timestamp` might be used to represent the ranges of time that a meeting room is reserved. In this case the data type is `tsrange` (short for “timestamp range”), and `timestamp` is the subtype. The subtype must have a total order so that it is well-defined whether element values are within, before, or after a range of values.

Range types are useful because they represent many element values in a single range value, and because concepts such as overlapping ranges can be expressed clearly. The use of time and date ranges for scheduling purposes is the clearest example; but price ranges, measurement ranges from an instrument, and so forth can also be useful.

**Parent topic:** Data Types

### Built-in Range Types

WarehousePG comes with the following built-in range types:

- `int4range` -- Range of `integer`
- `int8range` -- Range of `bigint`
- `numrange` -- Range of `numeric`
- `tsrange` -- Range of `timestamp without time zone`
- `tstzrange` -- Range of `timestamp with time zone`
- `daterange` -- Range of `date`

In addition, you can define your own range types; see CREATE TYPE for more information.

### Examples

```
CREATE TABLE reservation (room int, during tsrange);
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES
    (1108, '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30)');

-- Containment
SELECT int4range(10, 20) @> 3;

-- Overlaps
SELECT numrange(11.1, 22.2) && numrange(20.0, 30.0);

-- Extract the upper bound
SELECT upper(int8range(15, 25));

-- Compute the intersection
SELECT int4range(10, 20) * int4range(15, 25);

-- Is the range empty?
SELECT isempty(numrange(1, 5));
```

See Range Functions and Operators for complete lists of operators and functions on range types.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Inclusive and Exclusive Bounds

Every non-empty range has two bounds, the lower bound and the upper bound. All points between these values are included in the range. An inclusive bound means that the boundary point itself is included in the range as well, while an exclusive bound means that the boundary point is not included in the range.

In the text form of a range, an inclusive lower bound is represented by `[` while an exclusive lower bound is represented by `(` . Likewise, an inclusive upper bound is represented by `]` , while an exclusive upper bound is represented by `)` . (See Range Functions and Operators for more details.)

The functions `lower_inc` and `upper_inc` test the inclusivity of the lower and upper bounds of a range value, respectively.

### Infinite (Unbounded) Ranges

The lower bound of a range can be omitted, meaning that all points less than the upper bound are included in the range. Likewise, if the upper bound of the range is omitted, then all points greater than the lower bound are included in the range. If both lower and upper bounds are omitted, all values of the element type are considered to be in the range.

This is equivalent to considering that the lower bound is "minus infinity", or the upper bound is "plus infinity", respectively. But note that these infinite values are never values of the range's element type, and can never be part of the range. (So there is no such thing as an inclusive infinite bound -- if you try to write one, it will automatically be converted to an exclusive bound.)

Also, some element types have a notion of "infinity", but that is just another value so far as the range type mechanisms are concerned. For example, in timestamp ranges, `[today,]` means the same thing as `[today,)` . But `[today,infinity]` means something different from `[today,infinity)` -- the latter excludes the special `timestamp` value `infinity` .

The functions `lower_inf` and `upper_inf` test for infinite lower and upper bounds of a range, respectively.

### Range Input/Output

The input for a range value must follow one of the following patterns:

```
(<lower-bound>,<upper-bound>)
(<lower-bound>,<upper-bound>]
[<lower-bound>,<upper-bound>)
[<lower-bound>,<upper-bound>]
empty
```

The parentheses or brackets indicate whether the lower and upper bounds are exclusive or inclusive, as described previously. Notice that the final pattern is `empty` , which represents an empty range (a range that contains no points).

The lower-bound may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no lower bound. Likewise, upper-bound may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no upper bound.

Each bound value can be quoted using `"` (double quote) characters. This is necessary if the bound value contains parentheses, brackets, commas, double quotes, or backslashes, since these characters would otherwise be taken as part of the range syntax. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted bound value, precede it with a backslash. (Also, a pair of double quotes within a double-quoted bound value is taken to represent a double quote character, analogously to the rules for single quotes in SQL literal strings.) Alternatively, you can avoid quoting and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as range syntax. Also, to write a bound value that is an empty string, write `""` , since writing nothing means an infinite bound.

Whitespace is allowed before and after the range value, but any whitespace between the parentheses or brackets is taken as part of the lower or upper bound value. (Depending on the element type, it might or might not be significant.)

Examples:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
-- includes 3, does not include 7, and does include all points in between
SELECT '[3,7)'::int4range;

-- does not include either 3 or 7, but includes all points in between
SELECT '(3,7)'::int4range;

-- includes only the single point 4
SELECT '[4,4]'::int4range;

-- includes no points (and will be normalized to 'empty')
SELECT '[4,4)'::int4range;
```

### Constructing Ranges

Each range type has a constructor function with the same name as the range type. Using the constructor function is frequently more convenient than writing a range literal constant, since it avoids the need for extra quoting of the bound values. The constructor function accepts two or three arguments. The two-argument form constructs a range in standard form (lower bound inclusive, upper bound exclusive), while the three-argument form constructs a range with bounds of the form specified by the third argument. The third argument must be one of the strings `()` , `(]` , `[)` , or `[]` . For example:

```
-- The full form is: lower bound, upper bound, and text argument indicating
-- inclusivity/exclusivity of bounds.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0, '(]');

-- If the third argument is omitted, '[)' is assumed.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0);

-- Although '(]' is specified here, on display the value will be converted to
-- canonical form, since int8range is a discrete range type (see below).
SELECT int8range(1, 14, '(]');

-- Using NULL for either bound causes the range to be unbounded on that side.
SELECT numrange(NULL, 2.2);
```

### Discrete Range Types

A discrete range is one whose element type has a well-defined “step”, such as `integer` or `date` . In these types two elements can be said to be adjacent, when there are no valid values between them. This contrasts with continuous ranges, where it's always (or almost always) possible to identify other element values between two given values. For example, a range over the `numeric` type is continuous, as is a range over `timestamp` . (Even though `timestamp` has limited precision, and so could theoretically be treated as discrete, it's better to consider it continuous since the step size is normally not of interest.)

Another way to think about a discrete range type is that there is a clear idea of a “next” or “previous” value for each element value. Knowing that, it is possible to convert between inclusive and exclusive representations of a range's bounds, by choosing the next or previous element value instead of the one originally given. For example, in an integer range type `[4,8]` and `(3,9)` denote the same set of values; but this would not be so for a range over numeric.

A discrete range type should have a *canonicalization* function that is aware of the desired step size for the element type. The canonicalization function is charged with converting equivalent values of the range type to have identical representations, in particular consistently inclusive or exclusive bounds. If a canonicalization function is not specified, then ranges with different formatting will always be treated as unequal, even though they might represent the same set of values in reality.

The built-in range types `int4range` , `int8range` , and `daterange` all use a canonical form that includes the lower bound and excludes the upper bound; that is, `[)` . User-defined range types can use other conventions, however.

### Defining New Range Types

Users can define their own range types. The most common reason to do this is to use ranges over subtypes not provided among the built-in range types. For example, to define a new range type of subtype `float8` :

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE TYPE floatrange AS RANGE (
    subtype = float8,
    subtype_diff = float8mi
);

SELECT '[1.234, 5.678]'::floatrange;
```

Because `float8` has no meaningful "step", we do not define a canonicalization function in this example.

Defining your own range type also allows you to specify a different subtype B-tree operator class or collation to use, so as to change the sort ordering that determines which values fall into a given range.

If the subtype is considered to have discrete rather than continuous values, the CREATE TYPE command should specify a `canonical` function. The canonicalization function takes an input range value, and must return an equivalent range value that may have different bounds and formatting. The canonical output for two ranges that represent the same set of values, for example the integer ranges `[1, 7]` and `[1, 8)`, must be identical. It doesn't matter which representation you choose to be the canonical one, so long as two equivalent values with different formattings are always mapped to the same value with the same formatting. In addition to adjusting the inclusive/exclusive bounds format, a canonicalization function might round off boundary values, in case the desired step size is larger than what the subtype is capable of storing. For instance, a range type over `timestamp` could be defined to have a step size of an hour, in which case the canonicalization function would need to round off bounds that weren't a multiple of an hour, or perhaps throw an error instead.

In addition, any range type that is meant to be used with GiST or SP-GiST indexes should define a subtype difference, or `subtype_diff`, function. (The index will still work without `subtype_diff`, but it is likely to be considerably less efficient than if a difference function is provided.) The subtype difference function takes two input values of the subtype, and returns their difference (i.e., X minus Y) represented as a `float8` value. In our example above, the function `float8mi` that underlies the regular `float8` minus operator can be used; but for any other subtype, some type conversion would be necessary. Some creative thought about how to represent differences as numbers might be needed, too. To the greatest extent possible, the `subtype_diff` function should agree with the sort ordering implied by the selected operator class and collation; that is, its result should be positive whenever its first argument is greater than its second according to the sort ordering.

A less-oversimplified example of a `subtype_diff` function is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION time_subtype_diff(x time, y time) RETURNS float8 AS
'SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM (x - y))' LANGUAGE sql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE TYPE timerange AS RANGE (
    subtype = time,
    subtype_diff = time_subtype_diff
);

SELECT '[11:10, 23:00]'::timerange;
```

See CREATE TYPE for more information about creating range types.

### Indexing

GiST and SP-GiST indexes can be created for table columns of range types. For instance, to create a GiST index:

```
CREATE INDEX reservation_idx ON reservation USING GIST (during);
```

A GiST or SP-GiST index can accelerate queries involving these range operators: `=`, `&&`, `<@`, `@>`, `<<`, `>>`, `-|-`, `&<`, and `&>` (see Range Functions and Operators for more information).

In addition, B-tree and hash indexes can be created for table columns of range types. For these index types, basically the only useful range operation is equality. There is a B-tree sort ordering defined for range values, with corresponding `<` and `>` operators, but the ordering is rather arbitrary and not usually useful in the real world. Range types' B-tree and hash support is primarily meant to allow sorting and hashing internally in queries, rather than creation of actual indexes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.3 Summary of Built-in Functions

WarehousePG supports built-in functions and operators including analytic functions and window functions that can be used in window expressions. For information about using built-in WarehousePG functions see, "Using Functions and Operators" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.


- WarehousePG Function Types
- Built-in Functions and Operators
- JSON Functions and Operators
- Window Functions
- Advanced Aggregate Functions
- Text Search Functions and Operators
- Range Functions and Operators


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

### WarehousePG Function Types

WarehousePG evaluates functions and operators used in SQL expressions. Some functions and operators are only allowed to run on the coordinator since they could lead to inconsistencies in WarehousePG segment instances. The following describes the WarehousePG function types.

`IMMUTABLE`

WarehousePG support: Yes

Relies only on information directly in its argument list. Given the same argument values, always returns the same result.

`STABLE`

WarehousePG support: Yes, in most cases

Within a single table scan, returns the same result for same argument values, but results change across SQL statements.

Results depend on database lookups or parameter values. The `current_timestamp` family of functions is `STABLE`, and values don't change within an execution.

`VOLATILE`

WarehousePG support: Restricted

Function values can change within a single table scan. For example, `random()` and `timeofday()`.

Any function with side effects is volatile, even if its result is predictable. For example, `setval()`.

In WarehousePG, data is divided up across segments — each segment is a distinct PostgreSQL database. To prevent inconsistent or unexpected results, do not run functions classified as `VOLATILE` at the segment level if they contain SQL commands or modify the database in any way. For example, functions such as `setval()` are not allowed to run on distributed data in WarehousePG because they can cause inconsistent data between segment instances.

To ensure data consistency, you can safely use `VOLATILE` and `STABLE` functions in statements that are evaluated on and run from the coordinator. For example, the following statements run on the coordinator (statements without a `FROM` clause):

```
SELECT setval('myseq', 201);
SELECT foo();
```

If a statement has a `FROM` clause containing a distributed table *and* the function in the `FROM` clause returns a set of rows, the statement can run on the segments:

```
SELECT * from foo();
```

WarehousePG does not support functions that return a table reference ( `rangeFuncs` ) or functions that use the `refCursor` datatype.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Built-in Functions and Operators

The following table lists the categories of built-in functions and operators supported by PostgreSQL. All functions and operators are supported in WarehousePG as in PostgreSQL with the exception of `STABLE` and `VOLATILE` functions, which are subject to the restrictions noted in WarehousePG Function Types. See the Functions and Operators section of the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about these built-in functions and operators.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions |
|---|---|---|---|
| Logical Operators | | | |
| Comparison Operators | | | |
| Mathematical Functions and Operators | random<br><br>setseed | | |
| String Functions and Operators | *All built-in conversion functions* | convert<br><br>pg_client_encoding | |
| Binary String Functions and Operators | | | |
| Bit String Functions and Operators | | | |
| Pattern Matching | | | |
| Data Type Formatting Functions | | to_char<br><br>to_timestamp | |
| Date/Time Functions and Operators | timeofday | age<br><br>current_date<br><br>current_time<br><br>current_timestamp<br><br>localtime<br><br>localtimestamp<br><br>now | |
| Enum Support Functions | | | |
| Geometric Functions and Operators | | | |
| Network Address Functions and Operators | | | |
| Sequence Manipulation Functions | nextval()<br><br>setval() | | |
| Conditional Expressions | | | |
| Array Functions and Operators | | *All array functions* | |
| Aggregate Functions | | | |
| Subquery Expressions | | | |
| Row and Array Comparisons | | | |
| Set Returning Functions | generate_series | | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions |
|---|---|---|---|
| System Information Functions | | *All session information functions*<br>*All access privilege inquiry functions*<br>*All schema visibility inquiry functions*<br>*All system catalog information functions*<br>*All comment information functions*<br>*All transaction ids and snapshots* | |
| System Administration Functions | set_config<br>pg_cancel_backend<br>pg_reload_conf<br>pg_rotate_logfile<br>pg_start_backup<br>pg_stop_backup<br>pg_size_pretty<br>pg_ls_dir<br>pg_read_file<br>pg_stat_file | current_setting<br>*All database object size functions* | > **Note** The function `pg_column_size` displays bytes required to store the value, possibly with TOAST compression. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Operator/Function Category | VOLATILE Functions | STABLE Functions | Restrictions | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| XML Functions and function-like expressions | | cursor_to_xml(cursor refcursor, count int, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>cursor_to_xmlschema(cursor refcursor, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>database_to_xml(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>database_to_xmlschema(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>database_to_xml_and_xmlschema(nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>query_to_xml(query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>query_to_xmlschema(query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>query_to_xml_and_xmlschema(query text, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>schema_to_xml(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>schema_to_xmlschema(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>schema_to_xml_and_xmlschema(schema name, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>table_to_xml(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>table_to_xmlschema(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>table_to_xml_and_xmlschema(tbl regclass, nulls boolean, tableforest boolean, targetns text)<br><br>xmlagg(xml)<br><br>xmlconcat(xml[, ...])<br><br>xmlelement(name name [, xmlattributes(value [AS attname] [, ... ])] [, content, ...])<br><br>xmlexists(text, xml)<br><br>xmlforest(content [AS name] [, ...])<br><br>xml_is_well_formed(text)<br><br>xml_is_well_formed_document(text)<br><br>xml_is_well_formed_content(text)<br><br>xmlparse ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value)<br><br>xpath(text, xml)<br><br>xpath(text, xml, text[])<br><br>xpath_exists(text, xml)<br><br>xpath_exists(text, xml, text[])<br><br>xmlpi(name target [, content])<br><br>xmlroot(xml, version text | no value [, standalone yes | no | no value])<br><br>xmlserialize ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value AS type ) | xml(text)<br><br>text(xml)<br><br>xmlcomment(xml)<br><br>xmlconcat2(xml, xml) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### JSON Functions and Operators

WarehousePG includes built-in functions and operators that create and manipulate JSON data.

- JSON Operators
- JSON Creation Functions
- JSON Aggregate Functions
- JSON Processing Functions

> **Note** For `json` data type values, all key/value pairs are kept even if a JSON object contains duplicate keys. For duplicate keys, JSON processing functions consider the last value as the operative one. For the `jsonb` data type, duplicate object keys are not kept. If the input includes duplicate keys, only the last value is kept. See About JSON Datain the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

#### JSON Operators

The following operators are available for use with the `json` and `jsonb` data types.

`->` **(int)**

Right operand type: `int`

Get the JSON array element (indexed from zero).

Example:

```
'[{"a":"foo"},{"b":"bar"},{"c":"baz"}]'::json->2
{"c":"baz"}
```

`->` **(text)**

Right operand type: `text`

Get the JSON object field by key.

Example:

```
'{"a": {"b":"foo"}}'::json->'a'
{"b":"foo"}
```

`->>` **(int)**

Right operand type: `int`

Get the JSON array element as `text`.

Example:

```
'[1,2,3]'::json->>2
3
```

`->>` **(text)**

Right operand type: `text`

Get the JSON object field as `text`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Example:

```
'{"a":1,"b":2}'::json->>'b'
2
```

`#>`

Right operand type: `text[]`

Get the JSON object at specified path.

Example:

```
'{"a": {"b":{"c": "foo"}}}'::json#>'{a,b}'
{"c": "foo"}
```

`#>>`

Right operand type: `text[]`

Get the JSON object at specified path as `text`.

Example:

```
'{"a":[1,2,3],"b":[4,5,6]}'::json#>>'{a,2}'
3
```

> **Note** There are parallel variants of these operators for both the `json` and `jsonb` data types. The field, element, and path extraction operators return the same data type as their left-hand input (either `json` or `jsonb`), except for those specified as returning `text`, which coerce the value to `text`. The field, element, and path extraction operators return `NULL`, rather than failing, if the JSON input does not have the right structure to match the request; for example if no such element exists.

Operators that require the `jsonb` data type as the left operand are described next. Many of these operators can be indexed by `jsonb` operator classes. For a full description of `jsonb` containment and existence semantics, see jsonb Containment and Existencein the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. For information about how these operators can be used to effectively index `jsonb` data, see jsonb Indexingin the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

`@>`

Right operand type: `jsonb`

Does the left JSON value contain within it the right value?

Example:

```
'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb @> '{"b":2}'::jsonb
```

`<@`

Right operand type: `jsonb`

Is the left JSON value contained within the right value?

Example:

```
'{"b":2}'::jsonb <@ '{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`?`

Right operand type: `text`

Does the key/element string exist within the JSON value?

Example:

```
'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb ? 'b'
```

`?|`

Right operand type: `text[]`

Do any of these key/element strings exist?

Example:

```
'{"a":1, "b":2, "c":3}'::jsonb ?| array['b', 'c']
```

`?&`

Right operand type: `text[]`

Do all of these key/element strings exist?

Example:

```
'["a", "b"]'::jsonb ?& array['a', 'b']
```

The following standard comparison operators are available only for the `jsonb` data type, not for the `json` data type. They follow the ordering rules for B-tree operations described in jsonb Indexingin the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

- `<` (less than)
- `>` (greater than)
- `<=` (less than or equal to)
- `>=` (greater than or equal to)
- `=` (equal)
- `<>` or `!=` (not equal)

> **Note** The `!=` operator is converted to `<>` in the parser stage. It is not possible to implement `!=` and `<>` operators that do different things.

#### JSON Creation Functions

The following functions create `json` data type values. (Currently, there are no equivalent functions for `jsonb`, but you can cast the result of one of these functions to `jsonb`.)

`to_json(anyelement)`

Returns the value as a JSON object. Arrays and composites are processed recursively and are converted to arrays and objects. If the input contains a cast from the type to `json`, the cast function is used to perform the conversion. Otherwise, a JSON scalar value is produced. For any scalar type other than a number, a Boolean, or a null value, the text representation is used, properly quoted and escaped so that it is a valid JSON string.

Example:

```
to_json('Fred said "Hi."'::text)
"Fred said \"Hi.\""
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`array_to_json(anyarray [, pretty_bool])`

Returns the array as a JSON array. A multidimensional array becomes a JSON array of arrays. Line feeds are added between dimension-1 elements if `pretty_bool` is true.

Example:

```
array_to_json('{ {1,5},{99,100}}'::int[])
[[1,5],[99,100]]
```

`row_to_json(record [, pretty_bool])`

Returns the row as a JSON object. Line feeds are added between level-1 elements if `pretty_bool` is true.

Example:

```
row_to_json(row(1,'foo'))
{"f1":1,"f2":"foo"}
```

`json_build_array(VARIADIC "any")`

Builds a possibly heterogeneously typed JSON array out of a `VARIADIC` argument list.

Example:

```
json_build_array(1,2,'3',4,5)
[1, 2, "3", 4, 5]
```

`json_build_object(VARIADIC "any")`

Builds a JSON object out of a `VARIADIC` argument list. The argument list is taken in order and converted to a set of key/value pairs.

Example:

```
json_build_object('foo',1,'bar',2)
{"foo": 1, "bar": 2}
```

`json_object(text[])`

Builds a JSON object out of a text array. The array must be either a one or a two dimensional array.

The one dimensional array must have an even number of elements. The elements are taken as key/value pairs.

For a two dimensional array, each inner array must have exactly two elements, which are taken as a key/value pair.

Example:

```
json_object('{a, 1, b, "def", c, 3.5}')
json_object('{ {a, 1},{b, "def"},{c, 3.5}}')
{"a": "1", "b": "def", "c": "3.5"}
```

`json_object(keys text[], values text[])`

Builds a JSON object out of a text array. This form of `json_object` takes keys and values pairwise from two separate arrays. In all other respects it is identical to the one-argument form.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
json_object('{a, b}', '{1,2}')
{"a": "1", "b": "2"}
```

> **Note** `array_to_json` and `row_to_json` have the same behavior as `to_json` except for offering a pretty-printing option. The behavior described for `to_json` likewise applies to each individual value converted by the other JSON creation functions.

> **Note** The hstore extension has a cast from `hstore` to `json`, so that `hstore` values converted via the JSON creation functions will be represented as JSON objects, not as primitive string values.

#### JSON Aggregate Functions

The following functions aggregate records to an array of JSON objects and pairs of values to a JSON object.

`json_agg(record)`

Argument types: `record`

Return type: `json`

Aggregates records as a JSON array of objects.

`json_object_agg(name, value)`

Argument types: `("any", "any")`

Return type: `json`

Aggregates name/value pairs as a JSON object.

#### JSON Processing Functions

This section describes the functions that are available for processing `json` and `jsonb` values.

Many of these processing functions and operators convert Unicode escapes in JSON strings to the appropriate single character. This is a not an issue if the input data type is `jsonb`, because the conversion was already done. However, for `json` data type input, this might result in an error being thrown. SeeAbout JSON Data.

`json_array_length() / jsonb_array_length()`

Syntax: `json_array_length(json)` / `jsonb_array_length(jsonb)`

Return type: `int`

Returns the number of elements in the outermost JSON array.

Example:

```
json_array_length('[1,2,3,{"f1":1,"f2":[5,6]},4]')
5
```

`json_each() / jsonb_each()`

Syntax: `json_each(json)` / `jsonb_each(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof key text, value json` / `setof key text, value jsonb`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Expands the outermost JSON object into a set of key/value pairs.

Example:

```
select * from json_each('{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}')
key | value
-----+-------
a   | "foo"
b   | "bar"
```

`json_each_text() / jsonb_each_text()`

Syntax: `json_each_text(json)` / `jsonb_each_text(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof key text, value text`

Expands the outermost JSON object into a set of key/value pairs. The returned values will be of type `text`.

Example:

```
select * from json_each_text('{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}')
key | value
-----+-------
a   | foo
b   | bar
```

`json_extract_path() / jsonb_extract_path()`

Syntax: `json_extract_path(from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[])` / `jsonb_extract_path(from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[])`

Return type: `json` / `jsonb`

Returns the JSON value pointed to by `path_elems` (equivalent to `#>` operator).

Example:

```
json_extract_path('{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}','f4')
{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}
```

`json_extract_path_text() / jsonb_extract_path_text()`

Syntax: `json_extract_path_text(from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[])` / `jsonb_extract_path_text(from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[])`

Return type: `text`

Returns the JSON value pointed to by `path_elems` as text. Equivalent to `#>>` operator.

Example:

```
json_extract_path_text('{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}','f4', 'f6')
foo
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`json_object_keys() / jsonb_object_keys()`

Syntax: `json_object_keys(json)` / `jsonb_object_keys(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof text`

Returns set of keys in the outermost JSON object.

Example:

```
json_object_keys('{"f1":"abc","f2":{"f3":"a", "f4":"b"}}')
json_object_keys
------------------
f1
f2
```

`json_populate_record() / jsonb_populate_record()`

Syntax: `json_populate_record(base anyelement, from_json json)` / `jsonb_populate_record(base anyelement, from_json jsonb)`

Return type: `anyelement`

Expands the object in `from_json` to a row whose columns match the record type defined by base. See Note 1.

Example:

```
select * from json_populate_record(null::myrowtype, '{"a":1,"b":2}')
a | b
---+---
1 | 2
```

`json_populate_recordset() / jsonb_populate_recordset()`

Syntax: `json_populate_recordset(base anyelement, from_json json)` / `jsonb_populate_recordset(base anyelement, from_json jsonb)`

Return type: `setof anyelement`

Expands the outermost array of objects in `from_json` to a set of rows whose columns match the record type defined by base. See Note 1.

Example:

```
select * from json_populate_recordset(null::myrowtype, '[{"a":1,"b":2},{"a":3,"b":4}]')
a | b
---+---
1 | 2
3 | 4
```

`json_array_elements() / jsonb_array_elements()`

Syntax: `json_array_elements(json)` / `jsonb_array_elements(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof json` / `setof jsonb`

Expands a JSON array to a set of JSON values.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
select * from json_array_elements('[1,true, [2,false]]')
value
-----------
1
true
[2,false]
```

`json_array_elements_text() / jsonb_array_elements_text()`

Syntax: `json_array_elements_text(json)` / `jsonb_array_elements_text(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof text`

Expands a JSON array to a set of `text` values.

Example:

```
select * from json_array_elements_text('["foo", "bar"]')
value
-----------
foo
bar
```

`json_typeof() / jsonb_typeof()`

Syntax: `json_typeof(json)` / `jsonb_typeof(jsonb)`

Return type: `text`

Returns the type of the outermost JSON value as a text string. Possible types are `object`, `array`, `string`, `number`, `boolean`, and `null`. See Note.

Example:

```
json_typeof('-123.4')
number
```

`json_to_record() / jsonb_to_record()`

Syntax: `json_to_record(json)` / `jsonb_to_record(jsonb)`

Return type: `record`

Builds an arbitrary record from a JSON object. See Note 1.

As with all functions returning record, the caller must explicitly define the structure of the record with an `AS` clause.

Example:

```
select * from json_to_record('{"a":1,"b":[1,2,3],"c":"bar"}') as x(a int, b text, d text)
a |    b    | d
---+---------+---
1 | [1,2,3] |
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`json_to_recordset() / jsonb_to_recordset()`

Syntax: `json_to_recordset(json)` / `jsonb_to_recordset(jsonb)`

Return type: `setof record`

Builds an arbitrary set of records from a JSON array of objects See Note 1.

As with all functions returning record, the caller must explicitly define the structure of the record with an `AS` clause.

Example:

```
select * from json_to_recordset('[{"a":1,"b":"foo"},{"a":"2","c":"bar"}]') as x(a int, b text);
a |  b
---+-----
1 | foo
2 |
```

#### Note on JSON processing functions examples

> **Note** The examples for the functions `json_populate_record()`, `json_populate_recordset()`, `json_to_record()` and `json_to_recordset()` use constants. However, the typical use would be to reference a table in the `FROM` clause and use one of its `json` or `jsonb` columns as an argument to the function. The extracted key values can then be referenced in other parts of the query. For example the value can be referenced in `WHERE` clauses and target lists. Extracting multiple values in this way can improve performance over extracting them separately with per-key operators.

> JSON keys are matched to identical column names in the target row type. JSON type coercion for these functions might not result in desired values for some types. JSON fields that do not appear in the target row type will be omitted from the output, and target columns that do not match any JSON field will be `NULL`.

> The `json_typeof` function null return value of `null` should not be confused with a SQL `NULL`. While calling `json_typeof('null'::json)` will return `null`, calling `json_typeof(NULL::json)` will return a SQL `NULL`.

### Window Functions

The following are WarehousePG built-in window functions. All window functions are *immutable*. For more information about window functions, see "Window Expressions" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

`cume_dist()`

Return type: `double precision`

Full syntax: `CUME_DIST() OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `)`

Calculates the cumulative distribution of a value in a group of values. Rows with equal values always evaluate to the same cumulative distribution value.

`dense_rank()`

Return type: `bigint`

Full syntax: `DENSE_RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `)`

Computes the rank of a row in an ordered group of rows without skipping rank values. Rows with equal values are given the same rank value.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`first_value( expr )`

Return type: same as input *expr* type

Full syntax: `FIRST_VALUE( expr ) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr [ROWS | RANGE frame_expr ] )`

Returns the first value in an ordered set of values.

`lag( expr [, offset ] [, default ])`

Return type: same as input *expr* type

Full syntax: `LAG( expr [, offset ] [, default ]) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )`

Provides access to more than one row of the same table without doing a self join. Given a series of rows returned from a query and a position of the cursor, `LAG` provides access to a row at a given physical offset prior to that position. The default `offset` is `1`. *default* sets the value that is returned if the offset goes beyond the scope of the window. If *default* is not specified, the default value is null.

`last_value( expr )`

Return type: same as input *expr* type

Full syntax: `LAST_VALUE( expr ) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr [ROWS | RANGE frame_expr ] )`

Returns the last value in an ordered set of values.

`lead( expr [, offset ] [, default ])`

Return type: same as input *expr* type

Full syntax: `LEAD( expr [, offset ] [, default ]) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )`

Provides access to more than one row of the same table without doing a self join. Given a series of rows returned from a query and a position of the cursor, `lead` provides access to a row at a given physical offset after that position. If *offset* is not specified, the default offset is `1`. *default* sets the value that is returned if the offset goes beyond the scope of the window. If *default* is not specified, the default value is null.

`ntile( expr )`

Return type: `bigint`

Full syntax: `NTILE( expr ) OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )`

Divides an ordered data set into a number of buckets (as defined by *expr*) and assigns a bucket number to each row.

`percent_rank()`

Return type: `double precision`

Full syntax: `PERCENT_RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY expr ] ORDER BY expr )`

Calculates the rank of a hypothetical row `R` minus 1, divided by 1 less than the number of rows being evaluated (within a window partition).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`rank()`

Return type: `bigint`

Full syntax: `RANK () OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `)`

Calculates the rank of a row in an ordered group of values. Rows with equal values for the ranking criteria receive the same rank. The number of tied rows are added to the rank number to calculate the next rank value. Ranks may not be consecutive numbers in this case.

`row_number()`

Return type: `bigint`

Full syntax: `ROW_NUMBER () OVER ( [PARTITION BY` *expr* `] ORDER BY` *expr* `)`

Assigns a unique number to each row to which it is applied (either each row in a window partition or each row of the query).

### Advanced Aggregate Functions

The following built-in advanced analytic functions are WarehousePG extensions of the PostgreSQL database. Analytic functions are *immutable*.

> **Note** The WarehousePG MADlib Extension for Analytics provides additional advanced functions to perform statistical analysis and machine learning with WarehousePG data. See MADlib Extension for Analytics.

`pivot_sum (label[], label, expr)`

Return type: `int[], bigint[], float[]`

Full syntax: `pivot_sum( array['A1','A2'], attr, value)`

A pivot aggregation using sum to resolve duplicate entries.

`unnest (array[])`

Return type: set of `anyelement`

Full syntax: `unnest( array['one', 'row', 'per', 'item'])`

Transforms a one dimensional array into rows. Returns a set of `anyelement`, a polymorphic pseudotype in PostgreSQL.

`MEDIAN (` ***expr*** `)`

Return type: `timestamp, timestamptz, interval, float`

Full syntax: `MEDIAN (` *expression* `)`

Can take a two-dimensional array as input. Treats such arrays as matrices.

Example:

```
SELECT department_id, MEDIAN(salary)
FROM employees
GROUP BY department_id;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`PERCENTILE_CONT ( expr ) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY expr [DESC/ASC])`

Return type: `timestamp, timestamptz, interval, float`

Full syntax: `PERCENTILE_CONT( percentage ) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY expression )`

Performs an inverse distribution function that assumes a continuous distribution model. It takes a percentile value and a sort specification and returns the same datatype as the numeric datatype of the argument. This returned value is a computed result after performing linear interpolation. Null are ignored in this calculation.

Example:

```
SELECT department_id,
PERCENTILE_CONT (0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY salary DESC)
"Median_cont";
FROM employees GROUP BY department_id;
```

`PERCENTILE_DISC ( expr ) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY expr [DESC/ASC])`

Return type: `timestamp, timestamptz, interval, float`

Full syntax: `PERCENTILE_DISC( percentage ) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY expression )`

Performs an inverse distribution function that assumes a discrete distribution model. It takes a percentile value and a sort specification. This returned value is an element from the set. Null are ignored in this calculation.

Example:

```
SELECT department_id,
PERCENTILE_DISC (0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY salary DESC)
"Median_desc";
FROM employees GROUP BY department_id;
```

`sum(array[])`

Return type: `smallint[]int[], bigint[], float[]`

Full syntax: `sum(array[[1,2],[3,4]])`

Performs matrix summation. Can take as input a two-dimensional array that is treated as a matrix.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE mymatrix (myvalue int[]);
INSERT INTO mymatrix VALUES (array[[1,2],[3,4]]);
INSERT INTO mymatrix VALUES (array[[0,1],[1,0]]);
SELECT sum(myvalue) FROM mymatrix;
sum
---------------
{{1,3},{4,4}}
```

### Text Search Functions and Operators

The following sections summarize the functions and operators that are provided for full text searching. See Using Full Text Search for a detailed explanation of WarehousePG's text search facility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`@@`

`tsvector` matches `tsquery`?

Example:

```
to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@ to_tsquery('cat & rat')
t
```

`@@@`

Deprecated synonym for `@@`.

Example:

```
to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@@ to_tsquery('cat & rat')
t
```

`||` **(tsvector)**

Concatenates `tsvector`s.

Example:

```
'a:1 b:2'::tsvector || 'c:1 d:2 b:3'::tsvector
'a':1 'b':2,5 'c':3 'd':4
```

`&&`

ANDs `tsquery`s together.

Example:

```
'fat | rat'::tsquery && 'cat'::tsquery
( 'fat' | 'rat' ) & 'cat'
```

`||` **(tsquery)**

ORs `tsquery`s together.

Example:

```
'fat | rat'::tsquery || 'cat'::tsquery
( 'fat' | 'rat' ) | 'cat'
```

`!!`

Negates a `tsquery`.

Example:

```
!! 'cat'::tsquery
!'cat'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`@>` **(tsquery)**

Does one `tsquery` contain another?

Example:

```
'cat'::tsquery @> 'cat & rat'::tsquery
f
```

`<@` **(tsquery)**

Is one `tsquery` contained in another?

Example:

```
'cat'::tsquery <@ 'cat & rat'::tsquery
t
```

> **Note** The `tsquery` containment operators consider only the lexemes listed in the two queries, ignoring the combining operators.

In addition to the operators described above, the ordinary B-tree comparison operators (=, <, etc) are defined for types `tsvector` and `tsquery`. These are not very useful for text searching but allow, for example, unique indexes to be built on columns of these types.

`get_current_ts_config()`

Return type: `regconfig`

Get default text search configuration.

Example:

```
get_current_ts_config()
english
```

`length(tsvector)`

Return type: `integer`

Number of lexemes in tsvector.

Example:

```
length('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector)
3
```

`numnode(tsquery)`

Return type: `integer`

Number of lexemes plus operators in tsquery.

Example:

```
numnode('(fat & rat) | cat'::tsquery)
5
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`plainto_tsquery([ config regconfig , ] querytext)`

Return type: `tsquery`

Produce tsquery ignoring punctuation.

Example:

```
plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats')
'fat' & 'rat'
```

`querytree(query tsquery)`

Return type: `text`

Get indexable part of a tsquery.

Example:

```
querytree('foo & ! bar'::tsquery)
'foo'
```

`setweight(tsvector, "char")`

Return type: `tsvector`

Assign weight to each element of tsvector.

Example:

```
setweight('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5B'::tsvector, 'A')
'cat':3A 'fat':2A,4A 'rat':5A
```

`strip(tsvector)`

Return type: `tsvector`

Remove positions and weights from tsvector.

Example:

```
strip('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector)
'cat' 'fat' 'rat'
```

`to_tsquery([ config regconfig , ] query text)`

Return type: `tsquery`

Normalize words and convert to tsquery.

Example:

```
to_tsquery('english', 'The & Fat & Rats')
'fat' & 'rat'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`to_tsvector([ config regconfig , ] documenttext)`

Return type: `tsvector`

Reduce document text to tsvector.

Example:

```
to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats')
'fat':2 'rat':3
```

`ts_headline([ config regconfig, ] documenttext, query tsquery [, options text ])`

Return type: `text`

Display a query match.

Example:

```
ts_headline('x y z', 'z'::tsquery)
x y <b>z</b>
```

`ts_rank([ weights float4[], ] vector tsvector,query tsquery [, normalization integer ])`

Return type: `float4`

Rank document for query.

Example:

```
ts_rank(textsearch, query)
0.818
```

`ts_rank_cd([ weights float4[], ] vectortsvector, query tsquery [, normalizationinteger ])`

Return type: `float4`

Rank document for query using cover density.

Example:

```
ts_rank_cd('{0.1, 0.2, 0.4, 1.0}', textsearch, query)
2.01317
```

`ts_rewrite(query tsquery, target tsquery,substitute tsquery)`

Return type: `tsquery`

Replace target with substitute within query.

Example:

```
ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'a'::tsquery, 'foo | bar'::tsquery)
'b' & ( 'foo' | 'bar' )
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`ts_rewrite(query tsquery, select text)`

Return type: `tsquery`

Replace using targets and substitutes from a SELECT command.

Example:

```
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases')
'b' & ( 'foo' | 'bar' )
```

`tsvector_update_trigger()`

Return type: `trigger`

Trigger function for automatic tsvector column update.

Example:

```
CREATE TRIGGER ... tsvector_update_trigger(tsvcol, 'pg_catalog.swedish', title, body)
```

`tsvector_update_trigger_column()`

Return type: `trigger`

Trigger function for automatic tsvector column update.

Example:

```
CREATE TRIGGER ... tsvector_update_trigger_column(tsvcol, configcol, title, body)
```

> **Note** All the text search functions that accept an optional `regconfig` argument will use the configuration specified by default_text_search_config when that argument is omitted.

The following functions are listed separately because they are not usually used in everyday text searching operations. They are helpful for development and debugging of new text search configurations.

`ts_debug([ config regconfig, ] document text, OUT alias text, OUT description text, OUT token text, OUT dictionaries regdictionary[], OUT dictionary regdictionary, OUT lexemes text[])`

Return type: `setof record`

Test a configuration.

Example:

```
ts_debug('english', 'The Brightest supernovaes')
(asciiword,"Word, all ASCII",The,{english_stem},english_stem,{}) ...
```

`ts_lexize( dict regdictionary, token text)`

Return type: `text[]`

Test a dictionary.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars')
{star}
```

`ts_parse( parser_name text, document text, OUT tokid integer, OUT token text)`

Return type: `setof record`

Test a parser.

Example:

```
ts_parse('default', 'foo - bar')
(1,foo) ...
```

`ts_parse( parser_oid oid, document text, OUT tokid integer, OUT token text)`

Return type: `setof record`

Test a parser.

Example:

```
ts_parse(3722, 'foo - bar')
(1,foo) ...
```

`ts_token_type( parser_name text, OUT tokid integer, OUT alias text, OUT description text)`

Return type: `setof record`

Get token types defined by parser.

Example:

```
ts_token_type('default')
(1,asciiword,"Word, all ASCII") ...
```

`ts_token_type( parser_oid oid, OUT tokid integer, OUT alias text, OUT description text)`

Return type: `setof record`

Get token types defined by parser.

Example:

```
ts_token_type(3722)
(1,asciiword,"Word, all ASCII") ...
```

`ts_stat( sqlquery text, [ weights text, ] OUT word text, OUT ndocinteger , OUT nentry integer)`

Return type: `setof record`

Get statistics of a tsvector column.

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ts_stat('SELECT vector from apod')
(foo,10,15) ...
```

### Range Functions and Operators

See Range Types for an overview of range types.

The following operators are available for range types.

`=`

Equal.

Example:

```
int4range(1,5) = '[1,4]'::int4range
t
```

`<>`

Not equal.

Example:

```
numrange(1.1,2.2) <> numrange(1.1,2.3)
t
```

`<`

Less than.

Example:

```
int4range(1,10) < int4range(2,3)
t
```

`>`

Greater than.

Example:

```
int4range(1,10) > int4range(1,5)
t
```

`<=`

Less than or equal.

Example:

```
numrange(1.1,2.2) <= numrange(1.1,2.2)
t
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`>=`

Greater than or equal.

Example:

```
numrange(1.1,2.2) >= numrange(1.1,2.0)
t
```

`@>` **(contains range)**

Example:

```
int4range(2,4) @> int4range(2,3)
t
```

`@>` **(contains element)**

Example:

```
'[2011-01-01,2011-03-01)'::tsrange @> '2011-01-10'::timestamp
t
```

`<@` **(range is contained by)**

Example:

```
int4range(2,4) <@ int4range(1,7)
t
```

`<@` **(element is contained by)**

Example:

```
42 <@ int4range(1,7)
f
```

`&&` **(overlap)**

Overlap, meaning the ranges have points in common.

Example:

```
int8range(3,7) && int8range(4,12)
t
```

`<<` **(strictly left of)**

Example:

```
int8range(1,10) << int8range(100,110)
t
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`>>` **(strictly right of)**

Example:

```
int8range(50,60) >> int8range(20,30)
t
```

`&<` **(does not extend to the right of)**

Example:

```
int8range(1,20) &< int8range(18,20)
t
```

`&>` **(does not extend to the left of)**

Example:

```
int8range(7,20) &> int8range(5,10)
t
```

`-|-` **(is adjacent to)**

Example:

```
numrange(1.1,2.2) -|- numrange(2.2,3.3)
t
```

`+` **(union)**

Example:

```
numrange(5,15) + numrange(10,20)
[5,20)
```

`*` **(intersection)**

Example:

```
int8range(5,15) * int8range(10,20)
[10,15)
```

`-` **(difference)**

Example:

```
int8range(5,15) - int8range(10,20)
[5,10)
```

The simple comparison operators `<`, `>`, `<=`, and `>=` compare the lower bounds first, and only if those are equal, compare the upper bounds. These comparisons are not usually very useful for ranges, but are provided to allow B-tree indexes to be constructed on ranges.

The left-of/right-of/adjacent operators always return false when an empty range is involved; that is, an empty range is not considered to be either before or after any other range.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The union and difference operators will fail if the resulting range would need to contain two disjoint sub-ranges, as such a range cannot be represented.

The following functions are available for use with range types.

`lower(anyrange)`

Return type: range's element type

Lower bound of range.

Example:

```
lower(numrange(1.1,2.2))
1.1
```

`upper(anyrange)`

Return type: range's element type

Upper bound of range.

Example:

```
upper(numrange(1.1,2.2))
2.2
```

`isempty(anyrange)`

Return type: `boolean`

Is the range empty?

Example:

```
isempty(numrange(1.1,2.2))
false
```

`lower_inc(anyrange)`

Return type: `boolean`

Is the lower bound inclusive?

Example:

```
lower_inc(numrange(1.1,2.2))
true
```

`upper_inc(anyrange)`

Return type: `boolean`

Is the upper bound inclusive?

Example:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
upper_inc(numrange(1.1,2.2))
false
```

`lower_inf(anyrange)`

Return type: `boolean`

Is the lower bound infinite?

Example:

```
lower_inf('(,)'::daterange)
true
```

`upper_inf(anyrange)`

Return type: `boolean`

Is the upper bound infinite?

Example:

```
upper_inf('(,)'::daterange)
true
```

`range_merge(anyrange, anyrange)`

Return type: `anyrange`

The smallest range which includes both of the given ranges.

Example:

```
range_merge('[1,2)'::int4range, '[3,4)'::int4range)
[1,4)
```

The `lower` and `upper` functions return null if the range is empty or the requested bound is infinite. The `lower_inc`, `upper_inc`, `lower_inf`, and `upper_inf` functions all return false for an empty range.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.4 Additional modules

WarehousePG ships with a large set of modules and supports additional separately installed packages. They fall into four categories:

- Bundled modules ship with WarehousePG and don't require a separate package install. See the reference page for the full list and WHPG 6.x/7.x compatibility.
- Additional extensions are packages that require a separate install on each host before you can enable them. See the reference page for the full list and WHPG 6/7.3/7.4/7.5 compatibility.
- Procedural languages extend WarehousePG with additional programming languages for writing functions and stored procedures.
- External components are separately installed tools that integrate with WarehousePG but aren't database extensions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.4.1 Procedural languages

Procedural languages extend WarehousePG with additional programming languages for writing functions and stored procedures.

PL/pgSQL, PL/Perl, and PL/Python ship with WarehousePG and don't require a separate package install. Enable them with `CREATE EXTENSION` in the target database.

The following procedural languages require a separate package install on each host before enabling:

- PL/Container - Provides sandboxed execution environments using Docker containers for PL/Python and PL/R functions.
- PL/Java - Enables writing functions in the Java programming language.
- PL/R - Enables writing functions in the R programming language.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.4.2 External components

External components are separately installed tools that extend WarehousePG's capabilities beyond the database itself.

- WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) - Provides connectors for accessing data stored in external sources such as object storage and Hadoop.
- whpg-backup - Provides parallel backup and restore for WarehousePG clusters.
- whpg-backup-s3-plugin - Adds Amazon S3 support to whpg-backup.
- WarehousePG Enterprise Manager - Provides a web-based management and monitoring interface for WarehousePG clusters.
- FlowServer for WarehousePG - Provides workflow orchestration and scheduling for WarehousePG.
- WarehousePG Copy - Provides high-performance data loading and unloading for WarehousePG.
- WarehousePG Disaster Recovery - Provides physical backups, point-in-time recovery, and warm standby for WarehousePG clusters.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.5 Character Set Support

The character set support in WarehousePG allows you to store text in a variety of character sets, including single-byte character sets such as the ISO 8859 series and multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended Unix Code), UTF-8, and Mule internal code. All supported character sets can be used transparently by clients, but a few are not supported for use within the server (that is, as a server-side encoding)[1]. The default character set is selected while initializing your WarehousePG array using `gpinitsystem`. It can be overridden when you create a database, so you can have multiple databases each with a different character set.

| Name | Description | Language | Server? | Bytes/Char | Aliases |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BIG5 | Big Five | Traditional Chinese | No | 1-2 | WIN950, Windows950 |
| EUC_CN | Extended UNIX Code-CN | Simplified Chinese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_JP | Extended UNIX Code-JP | Japanese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_KR | Extended UNIX Code-KR | Korean | Yes | 1-3 | |
| EUC_TW | Extended UNIX Code-TW | Traditional Chinese, Taiwanese | Yes | 1-3 | |
| GB18030 | National Standard | Chinese | No | 1-2 | |
| GBK | Extended National Standard | Simplified Chinese | No | 1-2 | WIN936, Windows936 |
| ISO_8859_5 | ISO 8859-5, ECMA 113 | Latin/Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_6 | ISO 8859-6, ECMA 114 | Latin/Arabic | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_7 | ISO 8859-7, ECMA 118 | Latin/Greek | Yes | 1 | |
| ISO_8859_8 | ISO 8859-8, ECMA 121 | Latin/Hebrew | Yes | 1 | |
| JOHAB | JOHA | Korean (Hangul) | Yes | 1-3 | |
| KOI8 | KOI8-R(U) | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | KOI8R |
| LATIN1 | ISO 8859-1, ECMA 94 | Western European | Yes | 1 | ISO88591 |
| LATIN2 | ISO 8859-2, ECMA 94 | Central European | Yes | 1 | ISO88592 |
| LATIN3 | ISO 8859-3, ECMA 94 | South European | Yes | 1 | ISO88593 |
| LATIN4 | ISO 8859-4, ECMA 94 | North European | Yes | 1 | ISO88594 |
| LATIN5 | ISO 8859-9, ECMA 128 | Turkish | Yes | 1 | ISO88599 |
| LATIN6 | ISO 8859-10, ECMA 144 | Nordic | Yes | 1 | ISO885910 |
| LATIN7 | ISO 8859-13 | Baltic | Yes | 1 | ISO885913 |
| LATIN8 | ISO 8859-14 | Celtic | Yes | 1 | ISO885914 |
| LATIN9 | ISO 8859-15 | LATIN1 with Euro and accents | Yes | 1 | ISO885915 |
| LATIN10 | ISO 8859-16, ASRO SR 14111 | Romanian | Yes | 1 | ISO885916 |
| MULE_INTERNAL | Mule internal code | Multilingual Emacs | Yes | 1-4 | |
| SJIS | Shift JIS | Japanese | No | 1-2 | Mskanji, ShiftJIS, WIN932, Windows932 |
| SQL_ASCII | unspecified[2] | any | No | 1 | |
| UHC | Unified Hangul Code | Korean | No | 1-2 | WIN949, Windows949 |
| UTF8 | Unicode, 8-bit | all | Yes | 1-4 | Unicode |
| WIN866 | Windows CP866 | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | ALT |
| WIN874 | Windows CP874 | Thai | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1250 | Windows CP1250 | Central European | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1251 | Windows CP1251 | Cyrillic | Yes | 1 | WIN |
| WIN1252 | Windows CP1252 | Western European | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1253 | Windows CP1253 | Greek | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1254 | Windows CP1254 | Turkish | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1255 | Windows CP1255 | Hebrew | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1256 | Windows CP1256 | Arabic | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1257 | Windows CP1257 | Baltic | Yes | 1 | |
| WIN1258 | Windows CP1258 | Vietnamese | Yes | 1 | ABC, TCVN, TCVN5712, VSCII |

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Setting the Character Set

`gpinitsystem` defines the default character set for a WarehousePG cluster by reading the setting of the `ENCODING` parameter in the `gp_init_config` file at initialization time. The default character set is `UNICODE` or `UTF8`.

You can create a database with a different character set besides what is used as the system-wide default. For example:

```
=> CREATE DATABASE korean WITH ENCODING 'EUC_KR';
```

> **Important** Although you can specify any encoding you want for a database, it is unwise to choose an encoding that is not what is expected by the locale you have selected. The `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings imply a particular encoding, and locale-dependent operations (such as sorting) are likely to misinterpret data that is in an incompatible encoding.

Since these locale settings are frozen by `gpinitsystem`, the apparent flexibility to use different encodings in different databases is more theoretical than real.

One way to use multiple encodings safely is to set the locale to `C` or `POSIX` during initialization time, thus deactivating any real locale awareness.

### Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client

WarehousePG supports automatic character set conversion between server and client for certain character set combinations. The conversion information is stored in the coordinator *pg_conversion* system catalog table. WarehousePG comes with some predefined conversions or you can create a new conversion using the SQL command `CREATE CONVERSION`.

| Server Character Set | Available Client Character Sets |
|---|---|
| BIG5 | not supported as a server encoding |
| EUC_CN | EUC_CN, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| EUC_JP | EUC_JP, MULE_INTERNAL, SJIS, UTF8 |
| EUC_KR | EUC_KR, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| EUC_TW | EUC_TW, BIG5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| GB18030 | not supported as a server encoding |
| GBK | not supported as a server encoding |
| ISO_8859_5 | ISO_8859_5, KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251 |
| ISO_8859_6 | ISO_8859_6, UTF8 |
| ISO_8859_7 | ISO_8859_7, UTF8 |
| ISO_8859_8 | ISO_8859_8, UTF8 |
| JOHAB | JOHAB, UTF8 |
| KOI8 | KOI8, ISO_8859_5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251 |
| LATIN1 | LATIN1, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN2 | LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1250 |
| LATIN3 | LATIN3, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN4 | LATIN4, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| LATIN5 | LATIN5, UTF8 |
| LATIN6 | LATIN6, UTF8 |
| LATIN7 | LATIN7, UTF8 |
| LATIN8 | LATIN8, UTF8 |
| LATIN9 | LATIN9, UTF8 |
| LATIN10 | LATIN10, UTF8 |
| MULE_INTERNAL | MULE_INTERNAL, BIG5, EUC_CN, EUC_JP, EUC_KR, EUC_TW, ISO_8859_5, KOI8, LATIN1 to LATIN4, SJIS, WIN866, WIN1250, WIN1251 |
| SJIS | not supported as a server encoding |
| SQL_ASCII | not supported as a server encoding |
| UHC | not supported as a server encoding |
| UTF8 | all supported encodings |
| WIN866 | WIN866 |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Server Character Set | Available Client Character Sets |
|---|---|
| ISO_8859_5 | KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1251 |
| WIN874 | WIN874, UTF8 |
| WIN1250 | WIN1250, LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8 |
| WIN1251 | WIN1251, ISO_8859_5, KOI8, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866 |
| WIN1252 | WIN1252, UTF8 |
| WIN1253 | WIN1253, UTF8 |
| WIN1254 | WIN1254, UTF8 |
| WIN1255 | WIN1255, UTF8 |
| WIN1256 | WIN1256, UTF8 |
| WIN1257 | WIN1257, UTF8 |
| WIN1258 | WIN1258, UTF8 |

To enable automatic character set conversion, you have to tell WarehousePG the character set (encoding) you would like to use in the client. There are several ways to accomplish this:

- Using the `\encoding` command in `psql`, which allows you to change client encoding on the fly.
- Using `SET client_encoding TO`.

  To set the client encoding, use the following SQL command:

  ```
  => SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO '<value>';
  ```

  To query the current client encoding:

  ```
  => SHOW client_encoding;
  ```

  To return to the default encoding:

  ```
  => RESET client_encoding;
  ```

- Using the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable. When `PGCLIENTENCODING` is defined in the client's environment, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)
- Setting the configuration parameter `client_encoding`. If `client_encoding` is set in the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to WarehousePG is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

If the conversion of a particular character is not possible (suppose you chose `EUC_JP` for the server and `LATIN1` for the client, then some Japanese characters do not have a representation in `LATIN1`) then an error is reported.

If the client character set is defined as `SQL_ASCII`, encoding conversion is deactivated, regardless of the server's character set. The use of `SQL_ASCII` is unwise unless you are working with all-ASCII data. `SQL_ASCII` is not supported as a server encoding.

[1]Not all APIs support all the listed character sets. For example, the JDBC driver does not support MULE_INTERNAL, LATIN6, LATIN8, and LATIN10.[2]The SQL_ASCII setting behaves considerably differently from the other settings. Byte values 0-127 are interpreted according to the ASCII standard, while byte values 128-255 are taken as uninterpreted characters. If you are working with any non-ASCII data, it is unwise to use the SQL_ASCII setting as a client encoding. SQL_ASCII is not supported as a server encoding.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.6 Server Configuration Parameters

There are many WarehousePG server configuration parameters that affect the behavior of the WarehousePG cluster. Many of these configuration parameters have the same names, settings, and behaviors as in a regular PostgreSQL database system.

- Parameter Types and Values describes the parameter data types and values.
- Setting Parameters describes limitations on who can change them and where or when they can be set.
- Parameter Categories organizes parameters by functionality.
- Configuration Parameters lists the parameter descriptions in alphabetic order.

### Parameter Types and Values

All parameter names are case-insensitive. Every parameter takes a value of one of the following types: `Boolean`, `integer`, `floating point`, `enum`, or `string`.

Boolean values may be specified as `ON`, `OFF`, `TRUE`, `FALSE`, `YES`, `NO`, `1`, `0` (all case-insensitive).

Enum-type parameters are specified in the same manner as string parameters, but are restricted to a limited set of values. Enum parameter values are case-insensitive.

Some settings specify a memory size or time value. Each of these has an implicit unit, which is either kilobytes, blocks (typically eight kilobytes), milliseconds, seconds, or minutes. Valid memory size units are `kB` (kilobytes), `MB` (megabytes), and `GB` (gigabytes). Valid time units are `ms` (milliseconds), `s` (seconds), `min` (minutes), `h` (hours), and `d` (days). Note that the multiplier for memory units is 1024, not 1000. A valid time expression contains a number and a unit. When specifying a memory or time unit using the `SET` command, enclose the value in quotes. For example:

```
SET statement_mem TO '200MB';
```

> **Note** There is no space between the value and the unit names.

### Setting Parameters

Many of the configuration parameters have limitations on who can change them and where or when they can be set. For example, to change certain parameters, you must be a WarehousePG superuser. Other parameters require a restart of the system for the changes to take effect. A parameter that is classified as *session* can be set at the system level (in the `postgresql.conf` file), at the database-level (using `ALTER DATABASE`), at the role-level (using `ALTER ROLE`), at the database- and role-level (`ALTER ROLE...IN DATABASE...SET`, or at the session-level (using `SET`). System parameters can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file.

In WarehousePG, the coordinator and each segment instance has its own `postgresql.conf` file (located in their respective data directories). Some parameters are considered *local* parameters, meaning that each segment instance looks to its own `postgresql.conf` file to get the value of that parameter. You must set local parameters on every instance in the system (coordinator and segments). Others parameters are considered *coordinator* parameters. Coordinator parameters need only be set at the coordinator instance.

This table describes the values in the Settable Classifications column of the table in the description of a server configuration parameter.

| Set Classification | Description |
|---|---|
| coordinator or local | A *coordinator* parameter only needs to be set in the `postgresql.conf` file of the WarehousePG coordinator instance. The value for this parameter is then either passed to (or ignored by) the segments at run time.<br><br>A local parameter must be set in the `postgresql.conf` file of the coordinator AND each segment instance. Each segment instance looks to its own configuration to get the value for the parameter. Local parameters always requires a system restart for changes to take effect. |
| session or system | *Session* parameters can be changed on the fly within a database session, and can have a hierarchy of settings: at the system level (`postgresql.conf`), at the database level (`ALTER DATABASE...SET`), at the role level (`ALTER ROLE...SET`), at the database and role level (`ALTER ROLE...IN DATABASE...SET`), or at the session level (`SET`). If the parameter is set at multiple levels, then the most granular setting takes precedence (for example, session overrides database and role, database and role overrides role, role overrides database, and database overrides system).<br><br>A *system* parameter can only be changed via the `postgresql.conf` file(s). |
| restart or reload | When changing parameter values in the postgresql.conf file(s), some require a *restart* of WarehousePG for the change to take effect. Other parameter values can be refreshed by just reloading the server configuration file (using `gpstop -u`), and do not require stopping the system. |
| superuser | These session parameters can only be set by a database superuser. Regular database users cannot set this parameter. |
| read only | These parameters are not settable by database users or superusers. The current value of the parameter can be shown but not altered. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.6.1 Parameter Categories

Configuration parameters affect categories of server behaviors, such as resource consumption, query tuning, and authentication. The following topics describe WarehousePG configuration parameter categories.


- Connection and Authentication Parameters
- System Resource Consumption Parameters
- GPORCA Parameters
- Query Tuning Parameters
- Error Reporting and Logging Parameters
- System Monitoring Parameters
- Runtime Statistics Collection Parameters
- Automatic Statistics Collection Parameters
- Client Connection Default Parameters
- Lock Management Parameters
- Resource Management Parameters (Resource Queues)
- Resource Management Parameters (Resource Groups)
- External Table Parameters
- Database Table Parameters
- Past Version Compatibility Parameters
- WarehousePG Array Configuration Parameters
- WarehousePG Mirroring Parameters for Coordinator and Segments
- WarehousePG PL/Java Parameters


### Connection and Authentication Parameters

These parameters control how clients connect and authenticate to WarehousePG.

#### Connection Parameters

- client_connection_check_interval
- gp_connection_send_timeout
- gp_dispatch_keepalives_count
- gp_dispatch_keepalives_idle
- gp_dispatch_keepalives_interval
- gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout
- listen_addresses
- max_connections
- max_prepared_transactions
- superuser_reserved_connections
- tcp_keepalives_count
- tcp_keepalives_idle
- tcp_keepalives_interval
- unix_socket_directories
- unix_socket_group
- unix_socket_permissions

#### Security and Authentication Parameters

- authentication_timeout
- db_user_namespace
- krb_caseins_users
- krb_server_keyfile
- password_encryption
- password_hash_algorithm
- ssl
- ssl_ciphers

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## System Resource Consumption Parameters

These parameters set the limits for system resources consumed by WarehousePG.

### Memory Consumption Parameters

These parameters control system memory usage.

- gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout
- gp_resource_group_memory_limit (resource group-based resource management)
- gp_vmem_protect_limit (resource queue-based resource management)
- gp_vmem_protect_segworker_cache_limit
- gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query
- gp_workfile_limit_per_query
- gp_workfile_limit_per_segment
- maintenance_work_mem
- max_stack_depth
- shared_buffers
- temp_buffers
- work_mem

### OS Resource Parameters

- max_files_per_process
- shared_preload_libraries

### Cost-Based Vacuum Delay Parameters

> **Caution** Do not use cost-based vacuum delay because it runs asynchronously among the segment instances. The vacuum cost limit and delay is invoked at the segment level without taking into account the state of the entire WarehousePG array

You can configure the execution cost of `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands to reduce the I/O impact on concurrent database activity. When the accumulated cost of I/O operations reaches the limit, the process performing the operation sleeps for a while, Then resets the counter and continues execution

- vacuum_cost_delay
- vacuum_cost_limit
- vacuum_cost_page_dirty
- vacuum_cost_page_hit
- vacuum_cost_page_miss

### Transaction ID Management Parameters

- xid_stop_limit
- xid_warn_limit

### Other Parameters

- gp_max_parallel_cursors

## GPORCA Parameters

These parameters control the usage of GPORCA by WarehousePG. For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

- gp_enable_relsize_collection
- optimizer
- optimizer_analyze_root_partition
- optimizer_array_expansion_threshold
- optimizer_control
- optimizer_cost_model
- optimizer_cte_inlining_bound
- optimizer_dpe_stats

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- optimizer_discard_redistribute_hashjoin
- optimizer_enable_associativity
- optimizer_enable_dml
- optimizer_enable_indexonlyscan
- optimizer_enable_master_only_queries
- optimizer_enable_multiple_distinct_aggs
- optimizer_enable_orderedagg
- optimizer_enable_replicated_table
- optimizer_force_agg_skew_avoidance
- optimizer_force_comprehensive_join_implementation
- optimizer_force_multistage_agg
- optimizer_force_three_stage_scalar_dqa
- optimizer_join_arity_for_associativity_commutativity
- optimizer_join_order
- optimizer_join_order_threshold
- optimizer_mdcache_size
- optimizer_metadata_caching
- optimizer_parallel_union
- optimizer_penalize_broadcast_threshold
- optimizer_penalize_skew
- optimizer_print_missing_stats
- optimizer_print_optimization_stats
- optimizer_skew_factor
- optimizer_sort_factor
- optimizer_use_gpdb_allocators
- optimizer_xform_bind_threshold

### Query Tuning Parameters

These parameters control aspects of SQL query processing such as query operators and operator settings and statistics sampling.

#### Postgres Planner Control Parameters

The following parameters control the types of plan operations the Postgres Planner can use. Enable or deactivate plan operations to force the Postgres Planner to choose a different plan. This is useful for testing and comparing query performance using different plan types.

- enable_bitmapscan
- enable_groupagg
- enable_hashagg
- enable_hashjoin
- enable_indexscan
- enable_mergejoin
- enable_nestloop
- enable_seqscan
- enable_sort
- enable_tidscan
- gp_eager_two_phase_agg
- gp_enable_agg_distinct
- gp_enable_agg_distinct_pruning
- gp_enable_direct_dispatch
- gp_enable_fast_sri
- gp_enable_groupext_distinct_gather
- gp_enable_groupext_distinct_pruning
- gp_enable_multiphase_agg
- gp_enable_predicate_propagation
- gp_enable_preunique
- gp_enable_relsize_collection
- gp_enable_sort_distinct
- gp_enable_sort_limit
- gp_keep_partition_children_locks

#### Postgres Planner Costing Parameters

> **Caution** Do not adjust these query costing parameters. They are tuned to reflect WarehousePG hardware configurations and typical workloads. All of these parameters are related. Changing one without changing the others can have adverse affects on performance.

- cpu_index_tuple_cost
- cpu_operator_cost

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- cpu_tuple_cost
- cursor_tuple_fraction
- effective_cache_size
- gp_motion_cost_per_row
- gp_segments_for_planner
- random_page_cost
- seq_page_cost

#### Database Statistics Sampling Parameters

These parameters adjust the amount of data sampled by an `ANALYZE` operation. Adjusting these parameters affects statistics collection system-wide. You can configure statistics collection on particular tables and columns by using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` clause.

- default_statistics_target

#### Sort Operator Configuration Parameters

- gp_enable_sort_distinct
- gp_enable_sort_limit

#### Aggregate Operator Configuration Parameters

- gp_enable_agg_distinct
- gp_enable_agg_distinct_pruning
- gp_enable_multiphase_agg
- gp_enable_preunique
- gp_enable_groupext_distinct_gather
- gp_enable_groupext_distinct_pruning
- gp_workfile_compression

#### Join Operator Configuration Parameters

- join_collapse_limit
- gp_adjust_selectivity_for_outerjoins
- gp_hashjoin_tuples_per_bucket
- gp_statistics_use_fkeys
- gp_workfile_compression

#### Other Postgres Planner Configuration Parameters

- from_collapse_limit
- gp_enable_predicate_propagation
- gp_max_plan_size
- gp_statistics_pullup_from_child_partition

#### Query Plan Execution

Control the query plan execution.

- gp_max_slices
- plan_cache_mode

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Error Reporting and Logging Parameters

These configuration parameters control WarehousePG logging.

#### Log Rotation

- log_rotation_age
- log_rotation_size
- log_truncate_on_rotation

#### When to Log

- client_min_messages
- gp_interconnect_debug_retry_interval
- log_error_verbosity
- log_file_mode
- log_min_duration_statement
- log_min_error_statement
- log_min_messages
- optimizer_minidump

#### What to Log

- debug_pretty_print
- debug_print_parse
- debug_print_plan
- debug_print_prelim_plan
- debug_print_rewritten
- debug_print_slice_table
- gp_log_format
- gp_log_interconnect
- gp_log_resqueue_priority_sleep_time
- log_autostats
- log_connections
- log_disconnections
- log_dispatch_stats
- log_duration
- log_executor_stats
- log_hostname
- gp_log_endpoints
- gp_log_interconnect
- gp_print_create_gang_time
- log_parser_stats
- log_planner_stats
- log_statement
- log_statement_stats
- log_timezone
- gp_debug_linger
- gp_reraise_signal

### System Monitoring Parameters

These configuration parameters control WarehousePG data collection and notifications related to database monitoring.

#### WarehousePG Performance Database

The following parameters configure the data collection agents that populate the `gpperfmon` database.

- gp_enable_gpperfmon
- gp_gpperfmon_send_interval
- gpperfmon_log_alert_level
- gpperfmon_port

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Runtime Statistics Collection Parameters

These parameters control the server statistics collection feature. When statistics collection is enabled, you can access the statistics data using the *pg_stat* family of system catalog views.

- stats_queue_level
- track_activities
- track_counts
- update_process_title

### Automatic Statistics Collection Parameters

When automatic statistics collection is enabled, you can run `ANALYZE` automatically in the same transaction as an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `COPY` or `CREATE TABLE...AS SELECT` statement when a certain threshold of rows is affected ( `on_change` ), or when a newly generated table has no statistics ( `on_no_stats` ). To enable this feature, set the following server configuration parameters in your WarehousePG coordinator `postgresql.conf` file and restart WarehousePG:

- gp_autostats_allow_nonowner
- gp_autostats_mode
- gp_autostats_mode_in_functions
- gp_autostats_on_change_threshold
- log_autostats

> **Caution** Depending on the specific nature of your database operations, automatic statistics collection can have a negative performance impact. Carefully evaluate whether the default setting of `on_no_stats` is appropriate for your system.

### Client Connection Default Parameters

These configuration parameters set defaults that are used for client connections.

#### Statement Behavior Parameters

- check_function_bodies
- default_tablespace
- default_transaction_deferrable
- default_transaction_isolation
- default_transaction_read_only
- search_path
- statement_timeout
- temp_tablespaces
- vacuum_freeze_min_age

#### Locale and Formatting Parameters

- client_encoding
- DateStyle
- extra_float_digits
- IntervalStyle
- lc_collate
- lc_ctype
- lc_messages
- lc_monetary
- lc_numeric
- lc_time
- TimeZone

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Other Client Default Parameters

- dynamic_library_path
- explain_pretty_print
- local_preload_libraries

### Lock Management Parameters

These configuration parameters set limits for locks and deadlocks.

- deadlock_timeout
- [gp_enable global_deadlock_detector](guc-list.html#gp_enable global_deadlock_detector)
- gp_global_deadlock_detector_period
- lock_timeout
- max_locks_per_transaction

### Resource Management Parameters (Resource Queues)

The following configuration parameters configure the WarehousePG resource management feature (resource queues), query prioritization, memory utilization and concurrency control.

- gp_log_resqueue_priority_sleep_time
- gp_resqueue_memory_policy
- gp_resqueue_priority
- gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment
- gp_resqueue_priority_sweeper_interval
- gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout
- gp_vmem_protect_limit
- gp_vmem_protect_segworker_cache_limit
- max_resource_queues
- max_resource_portals_per_transaction
- max_statement_mem
- resource_cleanup_gangs_on_wait
- resource_select_only
- runaway_detector_activation_percent
- statement_mem
- stats_queue_level
- vmem_process_interrupt

### Resource Management Parameters (Resource Groups)

The following parameters configure the WarehousePG resource group workload management feature.

- gp_count_host_segments_using_address
- gp_resgroup_memory_policy
- gp_resource_group_bypass
- gp_resource_group_bypass_catalog_query
- gp_resource_group_cpu_ceiling_enforcement
- gp_resource_group_cpu_limit
- gp_resource_group_cpu_priority
- gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem
- gp_resource_group_memory_limit
- gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout
- gp_resource_manager
- gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout
- gp_vmem_protect_segworker_cache_limit
- max_statement_mem
- memory_spill_ratio
- runaway_detector_activation_percent
- statement_mem
- vmem_process_interrupt

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### External Table Parameters

The following parameters configure the external tables feature of WarehousePG.

- gp_external_enable_exec
- gp_external_enable_filter_pushdown
- gp_external_max_segs
- gp_initial_bad_row_limit
- gp_reject_percent_threshold
- gpfdist_retry_timeout
- readable_external_table_timeout
- writable_external_table_bufsize
- verify_gpfdists_cert

### Database Table Parameters

The following parameter configures default option settings for WarehousePG tables.

- gp_create_table_random_default_distribution
- gp_default_storage_options
- gp_enable_exchange_default_partition
- gp_enable_segment_copy_checking
- gp_use_legacy_hashops

#### Append-Optimized Table Parameters

The following parameters configure the append-optimized tables feature of WarehousePG.

- max_appendonly_tables
- gp_add_column_inherits_table_setting [gp_appendonly_compaction](guc-list.html#gp_add_column_inherits_table_setting](guc-list.html) [gp_appendonly_compaction)
- gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold
- validate_previous_free_tid

### Past Version Compatibility Parameters

The following parameters provide compatibility with older PostgreSQL and WarehousePG versions. You do not need to change these parameters in WarehousePG.

#### PostgreSQL

- array_nulls
- backslash_quote
- escape_string_warning
- quote_all_identifiers
- standard_conforming_strings
- transform_null_equals

#### WarehousePG

- enable_implicit_timeformat_YYYYMMDDHH24MISS
- gp_ignore_error_table

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## WarehousePG Array Configuration Parameters

The parameters in this topic control the configuration of the WarehousePG array and its components: segments, coordinator, distributed transaction manager, coordinator mirror, and interconnect.

### Interconnect Configuration Parameters

- gp_interconnect_address_type
- gp_interconnect_cursor_ic_table_size
- gp_interconnect_fc_method
- gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses
- gp_interconnect_queue_depth
- gp_interconnect_setup_timeout
- gp_interconnect_snd_queue_depth
- gp_interconnect_transmit_timeout
- gp_interconnect_type
- gp_max_packet_size

> **Note** WarehousePG supports only the UDPIFC (default) and TCP interconnect types.

### Dispatch Configuration Parameters

- gp_cached_segworkers_threshold
- gp_enable_direct_dispatch
- gp_segment_connect_timeout
- gp_set_proc_affinity

### Fault Operation Parameters

- gp_set_read_only
- gp_fts_probe_interval
- gp_fts_probe_retries
- gp_fts_probe_timeout
- gp_fts_replication_attempt_count
- gp_log_fts

### Distributed Transaction Management Parameters

- gp_max_local_distributed_cache
- dtx_phase2_retry_count

### Read-Only Parameters

- gp_command_count
- gp_content
- gp_dbid
- gp_retrieve_conn
- gp_session_id
- gp_session_role
- gp_server_version
- gp_server_version_num

## WarehousePG Mirroring Parameters for Coordinator and Segments

These parameters control the configuration of the replication between WarehousePG primary coordinator and standby coordinator.

- max_slot_wal_keep_size
- repl_catchup_within_range
- replication_timeout
- wait_for_replication_threshold
- wal_keep_segments
- wal_receiver_status_interval

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- wal_sender_archiving_status_interval

### WarehousePG PL/Java Parameters

The parameters in this topic control the configuration of the WarehousePG PL/Java language.

- pljava_classpath
- pljava_classpath_insecure
- pljava_statement_cache_size
- pljava_release_lingering_savepoints
- pljava_vmoptions

### XML Data Parameters

The parameters in this topic control the configuration of the WarehousePG XML data type.

- xmlbinary
- xmloption

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.6.2 Configuration Parameters

Descriptions of the WarehousePG server configuration parameters listed alphabetically.

### application_name

Sets the application name for a client session. For example, if connecting via `psql`, this will be set to `psql`. Setting an application name allows it to be reported in log messages and statistics views.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | | coordinator, session, reload |

### array_nulls

This controls whether the array input parser recognizes unquoted NULL as specifying a null array element. By default, this is on, allowing array values containing null values to be entered. WarehousePG versions before 3.0 did not support null values in arrays, and therefore would treat NULL as specifying a normal array element with the string value 'NULL'.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### authentication_timeout

Maximum time to complete client authentication. This prevents hung clients from occupying a connection indefinitely.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 1min | local, system, restart |

### backslash_quote

This controls whether a quote mark can be represented by \' in a string literal. The preferred, SQL-standard way to represent a quote mark is by doubling it (') but PostgreSQL has historically also accepted \'. However, use of \' creates security risks because in some client character set encodings, there are multibyte characters in which the last byte is numerically equivalent to ASCII \.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| on (allow \' always)<br>off (reject always)<br>safe_encoding (allow only if client encoding does not allow ASCII \ within a multibyte character) | safe_encoding | coordinator, session, reload |

### block_size

Reports the size of a disk block.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of bytes | 32768 | read only |

### bonjour_name

Specifies the Bonjour broadcast name. By default, the computer name is used, specified as an empty string. This option is ignored if the server was not compiled with Bonjour support.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | unset | coordinator, system, restart |

### check_function_bodies

When set to off, deactivates validation of the function body string during `CREATE FUNCTION`. Deactivating validation is occasionally useful to avoid problems such as forward references when restoring function definitions from a dump.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### client_connection_check_interval

Sets the time interval between optional checks that the client is still connected, while running queries. 0 deactivates connection checks.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of milliseconds | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### client_encoding

Sets the client-side encoding (character set). The default is to use the same as the database encoding. See Supported Character Sets in the PostgreSQL documentation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| character set | UTF8 | coordinator, session, reload |

### client_min_messages

Controls which message levels are sent to the client. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| DEBUG5 | | |
| DEBUG4 | | |
| DEBUG3 | | |
| DEBUG2 | | |
| DEBUG1 | | |
| LOG | NOTICE | coordinator, session, reload |
| NOTICE | | |
| WARNING | | |
| ERROR | | |
| FATAL | | |
| PANIC | | |

`INFO` level messages are always sent to the client.

### cpu_index_tuple_cost

For the Postgres Planner, sets the estimate of the cost of processing each index row during an index scan. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 0.005 | coordinator, session, reload |

### cpu_operator_cost

For the Postgres Planner, sets the estimate of the cost of processing each operator in a WHERE clause. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 0.0025 | coordinator, session, reload |

### cpu_tuple_cost

For the Postgres Planner, Sets the estimate of the cost of processing each row during a query. This is measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 0.01 | coordinator, session, reload |

### cursor_tuple_fraction

Tells the Postgres Planner how many rows are expected to be fetched in a cursor query, thereby allowing the Postgres Planner to use this information to optimize the query plan. The default of 1 means all rows will be fetched.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 1 | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### data_checksums

Reports whether checksums are enabled for heap data storage in the database system. Checksums for heap data are enabled or deactivated when the database system is initialized and cannot be changed.

Heap data pages store heap tables, catalog tables, indexes, and database metadata. Append-optimized storage has built-in checksum support that is unrelated to this parameter.

WarehousePG uses checksums to prevent loading data corrupted in the file system into memory managed by database processes. When heap data checksums are enabled, WarehousePG computes and stores checksums on heap data pages when they are written to disk. When a page is retrieved from disk, the checksum is verified. If the verification fails, an error is generated and the page is not permitted to load into managed memory.

If the `ignore_checksum_failure` configuration parameter has been set to on, a failed checksum verification generates a warning, but the page is allowed to be loaded into managed memory. If the page is then updated, it is flushed to disk and replicated to the mirror. This can cause data corruption to propagate to the mirror and prevent a complete recovery. Because of the potential for data loss, the `ignore_checksum_failure` parameter should only be enabled when needed to recover data. See ignore_checksum_failure for more information.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | read only |

### DateStyle

Sets the display format for date and time values, as well as the rules for interpreting ambiguous date input values. This variable contains two independent components: the output format specification and the input/output specification for year/month/day ordering.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <format>, <date style><br>where:<br><format> is ISO, Postgres, SQL, or German<br><date style> is DMY, MDY, or YMD | ISO, MDY | coordinator, session, reload |

### db_user_namespace

This enables per-database user names. If on, you should create users as *username@dbname*. To create ordinary global users, simply append @ when specifying the user name in the client.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, restart |

### deadlock_timeout

The time to wait on a lock before checking to see if there is a deadlock condition. On a heavily loaded server you might want to raise this value. Ideally the setting should exceed your typical transaction time, so as to improve the odds that a lock will be released before the waiter decides to check for deadlock.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 1s | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### debug_assertions

Turns on various assertion checks.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, restart |

### debug_pretty_print

Indents debug output to produce a more readable but much longer output format. *client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### debug_print_parse

For each query run, prints the resulting parse tree.*client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### debug_print_plan

For each query run, prints the WarehousePG parallel query execution plan.*client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### debug_print_prelim_plan

For each query run, prints the preliminary query plan.*client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### debug_print_rewritten

For each query run, prints the query rewriter output.*client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### debug_print_slice_table

For each query run, prints the WarehousePG query slice plan. *client_min_messages* or *log_min_messages* must be DEBUG1 or lower.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### default_statistics_target

Sets the default statistics sampling target (the number of values that are stored in the list of common values) for table columns that have not had a column-specific target set via `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`. Larger values may improve the quality of the Postgres Planner estimates.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 > Integer > 10000 | 100 | coordinator, session, reload |

### default_tablespace

The default tablespace in which to create objects (tables and indexes) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| name of a tablespace | unset | coordinator, session, reload |

### default_text_search_config

Selects the text search configuration that is used by those variants of the text search functions that do not have an explicit argument specifying the configuration. See Using Full Text Search for further information. The built-in default is `pg_catalog.simple`, but `initdb` will initialize the configuration file with a setting that corresponds to the chosen `lc_ctype` locale, if a configuration matching that locale can be identified.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| The name of a text search configuration. | `pg_catalog.simple` | coordinator, session, reload |

### default_transaction_deferrable

When running at the `SERIALIZABLE` isolation level, a deferrable read-only SQL transaction may be delayed before it is allowed to proceed. However, once it begins running it does not incur any of the overhead required to ensure serializability; so serialization code will have no reason to force it to abort because of concurrent updates, making this option suitable for long-running read-only transactions.

This parameter controls the default deferrable status of each new transaction. It currently has no effect on read-write transactions or those operating at isolation levels lower than `SERIALIZABLE`. The default is `off`.

> **Note** Setting `default_transaction_deferrable` to `on` has no effect in WarehousePG. Only read-only, `SERIALIZABLE` transactions can be deferred. However, WarehousePG does not support the `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level. See SET TRANSACTION.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### default_transaction_isolation

Controls the default isolation level of each new transaction. WarehousePG treats `read uncommitted` the same as `read committed`, and treats `serializable` the same as `repeatable read`.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| read committed<br>read uncommitted<br>repeatable read<br>serializable | read committed | coordinator, session, reload |

### default_transaction_read_only

Controls the default read-only status of each new transaction. A read-only SQL transaction cannot alter non-temporary tables.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### dtx_phase2_retry_count

The maximum number of retries attempted by WarehousePG during the second phase of a two phase commit. When one or more segments cannot successfully complete the commit phase, the coordinator retries the commit a maximum of `dtx_phase2_retry_count` times. If the commit continues to fail on the last retry attempt, the coordinator generates a PANIC.

When the network is unstable, the coordinator may be unable to connect to one or more segments; increasing the number of two phase commit retries may improve high availability of WarehousePG when the coordinator encounters transient network issues.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - `INT_MAX` | 10 | coordinator, system, restart |

### dynamic_library_path

If a dynamically loadable module needs to be opened and the file name specified in the `CREATE FUNCTION` or `LOAD` command does not have a directory component (i.e. the name does not contain a slash), the system will search this path for the required file. The compiled-in PostgreSQL package library directory is substituted for $libdir. This is where the modules provided by the standard PostgreSQL distribution are installed.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| a list of absolute directory paths separated by colons | $libdir | local, system, reload |

### effective_cache_size

Sets the assumption about the effective size of the disk cache that is available to a single query for the Postgres Planner. This is factored into estimates of the cost of using an index; a higher value makes it more likely index scans will be used, a lower value makes it more likely sequential scans will be used. When setting this parameter, you should consider both WarehousePG's shared buffers and the portion of the kernel's disk cache that will be used for data files (though some data might exist in both places). Take also into account the expected number of concurrent queries on different tables, since they will have to share the available space. This parameter has no effect on the size of shared memory allocated by a WarehousePG server instance, nor does it reserve kernel disk cache; it is used only for estimation purposes.

Set this parameter to a number of block_size blocks (default 32K) with no units; for example, `262144` for 8GB. You can also directly specify the size of the effective cache; for example, `'1GB'` specifies a size of 32768 blocks. The `gpconfig` utility and `SHOW` command display the effective cache size value in units such as 'GB', 'MB', or 'kB'.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1 - INT_MAX *or* number and unit | 524288 (16GB) | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_bitmapscan

Activates or deactivates the use of bitmap-scan plan types by the Postgres Planner. Note that this is different than a Bitmap Index Scan. A Bitmap Scan means that indexes will be dynamically converted to bitmaps in memory when appropriate, giving faster index performance on complex queries against very large tables. It is used when there are multiple predicates on different indexed columns. Each bitmap per column can be compared to create a final list of selected tuples.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_groupagg

Activates or deactivates the use of group aggregation plan types by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_hashagg

Activates or deactivates the use of hash aggregation plan types by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_hashjoin

Activates or deactivates the use of hash-join plan types by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_implicit_timeformat_YYYYMMDDHH24MISS

Activates or deactivates the deprecated implicit conversion of a string with the *YYYYMMDDHH24MISS* timestamp format to a valid date/time type.

The default value is `off`. When this parameter is set to `on`, WarehousePG converts a string with the timestamp format *YYYYMMDDHH24MISS* into a valid date/time type. You may require this conversion when loading data from WarehousePG 5.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### enable_indexscan

Activates or deactivates the use of index-scan plan types by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_mergejoin

Activates or deactivates the use of merge-join plan types by the Postgres Planner. Merge join is based on the idea of sorting the left- and right-hand tables into order and then scanning them in parallel. So, both data types must be capable of being fully ordered, and the join operator must be one that can only succeed for pairs of values that fall at the 'same place' in the sort order. In practice this means that the join operator must behave like equality.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_nestloop

Activates or deactivates the use of nested-loop join plans by the Postgres Planner. It's not possible to suppress nested-loop joins entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the Postgres Planner from using one if there are other methods available.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_seqscan

Activates or deactivates the use of sequential scan plan types by the Postgres Planner. It's not possible to suppress sequential scans entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the Postgres Planner from using one if there are other methods available.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_sort

Activates or deactivates the use of explicit sort steps by the Postgres Planner. It's not possible to suppress explicit sorts entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the Postgres Planner from using one if there are other methods available.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### enable_tidscan

Activates or deactivates the use of tuple identifier (TID) scan plan types by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### escape_string_warning

When on, a warning is issued if a backslash (\) appears in an ordinary string literal ('...' syntax). Escape string syntax (E'...') should be used for escapes, because in future versions, ordinary strings will have the SQL standard-conforming behavior of treating backslashes literally.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### explain_pretty_print

Determines whether EXPLAIN VERBOSE uses the indented or non-indented format for displaying detailed query-tree dumps.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### extra_float_digits

Adjusts the number of digits displayed for floating-point values, including float4, float8, and geometric data types. The parameter value is added to the standard number of digits. The value can be set as high as 3, to include partially-significant digits; this is especially useful for dumping float data that needs to be restored exactly. Or it can be set negative to suppress unwanted digits.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer (-15 to 3) | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### from_collapse_limit

The Postgres Planner will merge sub-queries into upper queries if the resulting FROM list would have no more than this many items. Smaller values reduce planning time but may yield inferior query plans.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1-*n* | 20 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_add_column_inherits_table_setting

When adding a column to an append-optimized, column-oriented table with the ALTER TABLE command, this parameter controls whether the table's data compression parameters for a column ( `compresstype` , `compresslevel` , and `blocksize` ) can be inherited from the table values. The default is `off` , the table's data compression settings are not considered when adding a column to the table. If the value is `on` , the table's settings are considered.

When you create an append-optimized column-oriented table, you can set the table's data compression parameters `compresstype` , `compresslevel` , and `blocksize` for the table in the `WITH` clause. When you add a column, WarehousePG sets each data compression parameter based on one of the following settings, in order of preference.

1. The data compression setting specified in the `ALTER TABLE` command `ENCODING` clause.
2. If this server configuration parameter is set to `on` , the table's data compression setting specified in the `WITH` clause when the table was created. Otherwise, the table's data compression setting is ignored.
3. The data compression setting specified in the server configuration parameter gp_default_storage_options.
4. The default data compression setting.

You must specify `--skipvalidation` when modifying this parameter as it is a restricted configuration parameter. Use extreme caution when setting configuration parameters with this option. For example:

```
gpconfig --skipvalidation -c gp_add_column_inherits_table_setting -v on
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For information about the data storage compression parameters, see CREATE TABLE.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_adjust_selectivity_for_outerjoins

Enables the selectivity of NULL tests over outer joins.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_appendonly_compaction

Enables compacting segment files during `VACUUM` commands. When deactivated, `VACUUM` only truncates the segment files to the EOF value, as is the current behavior. The administrator may want to deactivate compaction in high I/O load situations or low space situations.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold

Specifies the threshold ratio (as a percentage) of hidden rows to total rows that triggers compaction of the segment file when VACUUM is run without the FULL option (a lazy vacuum). If the ratio of hidden rows in a segment file on a segment is less than this threshold, the segment file is not compacted, and a log message is issued.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer (%) | 10 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_autostats_allow_nonowner

The `gp_autostats_allow_nonowner` server configuration parameter determines whether or not to allow WarehousePG to trigger automatic statistics collection when a table is modified by a non-owner.

The default value is `false`; WarehousePG does not trigger automatic statistics collection on a table that is updated by a non-owner.

When set to `true`, WarehousePG will also trigger automatic statistics collection on a table when:

- `gp_autostats_mode=on_change` and the table is modified by a non-owner.
- `gp_autostats_mode=on_no_stats` and the first user to `INSERT` or `COPY` into the table is a non-owner.

The `gp_autostats_allow_nonowner` configuration parameter can be changed only by a superuser.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_autostats_mode

Specifies the mode for triggering automatic statistics collection with `ANALYZE`. The `on_no_stats` option triggers statistics collection for `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `INSERT`, or `COPY` operations on any table that has no existing statistics.

The `on_change` option triggers statistics collection only when the number of rows affected exceeds the threshold defined by `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold`. Operations that can trigger automatic statistics collection with `on_change` are:

`CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`

`UPDATE`

`DELETE`

`INSERT`

`COPY`

Default is `on_no_stats`.

> **Note** For partitioned tables, automatic statistics collection is not triggered if data is inserted from the top-level parent table of a partitioned table.

Automatic statistics collection is triggered if data is inserted directly in a leaf table (where the data is stored) of the partitioned table. Statistics are collected only on the leaf table.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| none | | |
| on_change | on_no_ stats | coordinator, session, reload |
| on_no_stats | | |

### gp_autostats_mode_in_functions

Specifies the mode for triggering automatic statistics collection with `ANALYZE` for statements in procedural language functions. The `none` option deactivates statistics collection. The `on_no_stats` option triggers statistics collection for `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, `INSERT`, or `COPY` operations that are run in functions on any table that has no existing statistics.

The `on_change` option triggers statistics collection only when the number of rows affected exceeds the threshold defined by `gp_autostats_on_change_threshold`. Operations in functions that can trigger automatic statistics collection with `on_change` are:

`CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`

`UPDATE`

`DELETE`

`INSERT`

`COPY`

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| none | | |
| on_change | none | coordinator, session, reload |
| on_no_stats | | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_autostats_on_change_threshold

Specifies the threshold for automatic statistics collection when `gp_autostats_mode` is set to `on_change`. When a triggering table operation affects a number of rows exceeding this threshold, `ANALYZE` is added and statistics are collected for the table.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 2147483647 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_cached_segworkers_threshold

When a user starts a session with WarehousePG and issues a query, the system creates groups or 'gangs' of worker processes on each segment to do the work. After the work is done, the segment worker processes are destroyed except for a cached number which is set by this parameter. A lower setting conserves system resources on the segment hosts, but a higher setting may improve performance for power-users that want to issue many complex queries in a row.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 5 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_command_count

Shows how many commands the coordinator has received from the client. Note that a single SQLcommand might actually involve more than one command internally, so the counter may increment by more than one for a single query. This counter also is shared by all of the segment processes working on the command.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 1 | read only |

### gp_connection_send_timeout

Timeout for sending data to unresponsive WarehousePG user clients during query processing. A value of 0 deactivates the timeout, WarehousePG waits indefinitely for a client. When the timeout is reached, the query is cancelled with this message:

```
Could not send data to client: Connection timed out.
```

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of seconds | 3600 (1 hour) | coordinator, system, reload |

### gp_content

The local content id if a segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_count_host_segments_using_address

Beginning in version 6.21.0, the Resource Groups implementation was changed to calculate segment memory using `gp_segment_configuration.hostname` instead of `gp_segment_configuration.address`. This implementation can result in a lower memory limit value compared to the earlier code, for deployments where each host uses multiple IP addresses. In some cases, this change in behavior could lead to Out Of Memory errors when upgrading from an earlier version. Version 6.23.4 introduces a configuration parameter, `gp_count_host_segments_using_address`, that can be enabled to calculate of segment memory using `gp_segment_configuration.address` if Out Of Memory errors are encountered after an upgrade. This parameter is disabled by default. This parameter will not be provided in WarehousePG Version 7 because resource group memory calculation will no longer be dependent on the segments per host value.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_create_table_random_default_distribution

Controls table creation when a WarehousePG table is created with a CREATE TABLE or CREATE TABLE AS command that does not contain a DISTRIBUTED BY clause.

For CREATE TABLE, if the value of the parameter is `off` (the default), and the table creation command does not contain a DISTRIBUTED BY clause, WarehousePG chooses the table distribution key based on the command:

- If a `LIKE` or `INHERITS` clause is specified, then WarehousePG copies the distribution key from the source or parent table.
- If a `PRIMARY KEY` or `UNIQUE` constraints are specified, then WarehousePG chooses the largest subset of all the key columns as the distribution key.
- If neither constraints nor a `LIKE` or `INHERITS` clause is specified, then WarehousePG chooses the first suitable column as the distribution key. (Columns with geometric or user-defined data types are not eligible as WarehousePG distribution key columns.)

If the value of the parameter is set to `on`, WarehousePG follows these rules to create a table when the DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified:

- If PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE columns are not specified, the distribution of the table is random (DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY). Table distribution is random even if the table creation command contains the LIKE or INHERITS clause.
- If PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE columns are specified, a DISTRIBUTED BY clause must also be specified. If a DISTRIBUTED BY clause is not specified as part of the table creation command, the command fails.

For a CREATE TABLE AS command that does not contain a distribution clause:

- If the Postgres Planner creates the table, and the value of the parameter is `off`, the table distribution policy is determined based on the command.
- If the Postgres Planner creates the table, and the value of the parameter is `on`, the table distribution policy is random.
- If GPORCA creates the table, the table distribution policy is random. The parameter value has no affect.

For information about the Postgres Planner and GPORCA, see "Querying Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_dbid

The local content dbid of a segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_debug_linger

Number of seconds for a WarehousePG process to linger after a fatal internal error.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_default_storage_options

Set the default values for the following table storage options when a table is created with the `CREATE TABLE` command.

- appendoptimized

  > **Note** You use the `appendoptimized=value` syntax to specify the append-optimized table storage type. `appendoptimized` is a thin alias for the `appendonly` legacy storage option. WarehousePG stores `appendonly` in the catalog, and displays the same when listing the storage options for append-optimized tables.

- blocksize
- checksum
- compresstype
- compresslevel
- orientation

Specify multiple storage option values as a comma separated list.

You can set the storage options with this parameter instead of specifying the table storage options in the `WITH` of the `CREATE TABLE` command. The table storage options that are specified with the `CREATE TABLE` command override the values specified by this parameter.

Not all combinations of storage option values are valid. If the specified storage options are not valid, an error is returned. See the `CREATE TABLE` command for information about table storage options.

The defaults can be set for a database and user. If the server configuration parameter is set at different levels, this the order of precedence, from highest to lowest, of the table storage values when a user logs into a database and creates a table:

1. The values specified in a `CREATE TABLE` command with the `WITH` clause or `ENCODING` clause
2. The value of `gp_default_storage_options` that set for the user with the `ALTER ROLE...SET` command
3. The value of `gp_default_storage_options` that is set for the database with the `ALTER DATABASE...SET` command
4. The value of `gp_default_storage_options` that is set for the WarehousePG cluster with the `gpconfig` utility

The parameter value is not cumulative. For example, if the parameter specifies the `appendoptimized` and `compresstype` options for a database and a user logs in and sets the parameter to specify the value for the `orientation` option, the `appendoptimized`, and `compresstype` values set at the database level are ignored.

This example `ALTER DATABASE` command sets the default `orientation` and `compresstype` table storage options for the database `mytest`.

```
ALTER DATABASE mytest SET gp_default_storage_options = 'orientation=column, compresstype=rle_type'
```

To create an append-optimized table in the `mytest` database with column-oriented table and RLE compression. The user needs to specify only `appendoptimized=TRUE` in the `WITH` clause.

This example `gpconfig` utility command sets the default storage option for a WarehousePG cluster. If you set the defaults for multiple table storage options, the value must be enclosed in single quotes.

```
gpconfig -c 'gp_default_storage_options' -v 'appendoptimized=true, orientation=column'
```

This example `gpconfig` utility command shows the value of the parameter. The parameter value must be consistent across the WarehousePG coordinator and all segments.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
gpconfig -s 'gp_default_storage_options'
```

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| `appendoptimized` = `TRUE` or `FALSE`<br>`blocksize` = integer between 8192 and 2097152<br>`checksum` = `TRUE` or `FALSE`<br>`compresstype` = `ZLIB` or `ZSTD` or `RLE_TYPE` or `NONE`<br>`compresslevel` = integer between 0 and 19<br>`orientation` = `ROW` | `COLUMN` | `appendoptimized` = `FALSE`<br>`blocksize` = `32768`<br>`checksum` = `TRUE`<br>`compresstype` = `none`<br>`compresslevel` = `0`<br>`orientation` = `ROW` | master, session, reload |

### gp_dispatch_keepalives_count

Maximum number of TCP keepalive retransmits from a WarehousePG Query Dispatcher to its Query Executors. It controls the number of consecutive keepalive retransmits that can be lost before a connection between a Query Dispatcher and a Query Executor is considered dead.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 to 127 | 0 (it uses the system default) | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_dispatch_keepalives_idle

Time in seconds between issuing TCP keepalives from a WarehousePG Query Dispatcher to its Query Executors.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 to 32767 | 0 (it uses the system default) | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_dispatch_keepalives_interval

Time in seconds between TCP keepalive retransmits from a WarehousePG Query Dispatcher to its Query Executors.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 to 32767 | 0 (it uses the system default) | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_dynamic_partition_pruning

Enables plans that can dynamically eliminate the scanning of partitions.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_eager_two_phase_agg

Activates or deactivates two-phase aggregation for the Postgres Planner.

The default value is `off`; the Planner chooses the best aggregate path for a query based on the cost. When set to `on`, the Planner adds a deactivation cost to each of the first stage aggregate paths, which in turn forces the Planner to generate and choose a multi-stage aggregate path.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_agg_distinct

Activates or deactivates two-phase aggregation to compute a single distinct-qualified aggregate. This applies only to subqueries that include a single distinct-qualified aggregate function.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_agg_distinct_pruning

Activates or deactivates three-phase aggregation and join to compute distinct-qualified aggregates. This applies only to subqueries that include one or more distinct-qualified aggregate functions.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_direct_dispatch

Activates or deactivates the dispatching of targeted query plans for queries that access data on a single segment. When on, queries that target rows on a single segment will only have their query plan dispatched to that segment (rather than to all segments). This significantly reduces the response time of qualifying queries as there is no interconnect setup involved. Direct dispatch does require more CPU utilization on the coordinator.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_exchange_default_partition

Controls availability of the `EXCHANGE DEFAULT PARTITION` clause for `ALTER TABLE`. The default value for the parameter is `off`. The clause is not available and WarehousePG returns an error if the clause is specified in an `ALTER TABLE` command.

If the value is `on`, WarehousePG returns a warning stating that exchanging the default partition might result in incorrect results due to invalid data in the default partition.

> **Caution** Before you exchange the default partition, you must ensure the data in the table to be exchanged, the new default partition, is valid for the default partition. For example, the data in the new default partition must not contain data that would be valid in other leaf child partitions of the partitioned table. Otherwise, queries against the partitioned table with the exchanged default partition that are run by GPORCA might return incorrect results.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_enable_fast_sri

When set to `on`, the Postgres Planner plans single row inserts so that they are sent directly to the correct segment instance (no motion operation required). This significantly improves performance of single-row-insert statements.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_global_deadlock_detector

Controls whether the WarehousePG Global Deadlock Detector is enabled to manage concurrent `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations on heap tables to improve performance. See DML: Inserting, Updating and Deletingin the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. The default is `off`, the Global Deadlock Detector is deactivated.

If the Global Deadlock Detector is deactivated (the default), WarehousePG runs concurrent update and delete operations on a heap table serially.

If the Global Deadlock Detector is enabled, concurrent updates are permitted and the Global Deadlock Detector determines when a deadlock exists, and breaks the deadlock by cancelling one or more backend processes associated with the youngest transaction(s) involved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_enable_gpperfmon

Activates or deactivates the data collection agents that populate the `gpperfmon` database.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, restart |

### gp_enable_groupext_distinct_gather

Activates or deactivates gathering data to a single node to compute distinct-qualified aggregates on grouping extension queries. When this parameter and `gp_enable_groupext_distinct_pruning` are both enabled, the Postgres Planner uses the cheaper plan.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_groupext_distinct_pruning

Activates or deactivates three-phase aggregation and join to compute distinct-qualified aggregates on grouping extension queries. Usually, enabling this parameter generates a cheaper query plan that the Postgres Planner will use in preference to existing plan.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_enable_multiphase_agg

Activates or deactivates the use of two or three-stage parallel aggregation plans Postgres Planner. This approach applies to any subquery with aggregation. If `gp_enable_multiphase_agg` is off, then `gp_enable_agg_distinct` and `gp_enable_agg_distinct_pruning` are deactivated.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_predicate_propagation

When enabled, the Postgres Planner applies query predicates to both table expressions in cases where the tables are joined on their distribution key column(s). Filtering both tables prior to doing the join (when possible) is more efficient.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_preunique

Enables two-phase duplicate removal for `SELECT DISTINCT` queries (not `SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT)` ). When enabled, it adds an extra `SORT DISTINCT` set of plan nodes before motioning. In cases where the distinct operation greatly reduces the number of rows, this extra `SORT DISTINCT` is much cheaper than the cost of sending the rows across the Interconnect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_relsize_collection

Enables GPORCA and the Postgres Planner to use the estimated size of a table ( `pg_relation_size` function) if there are no statistics for the table. By default, GPORCA and the planner use a default value to estimate the number of rows if statistics are not available. The default behavior improves query optimization time and reduces resource queue usage in heavy workloads, but can lead to suboptimal plans.

This parameter is ignored for a root partition of a partitioned table. When GPORCA is enabled and the root partition does not have statistics, GPORCA always uses the default value. You can use `ANALZYE ROOTPARTITION` to collect statistics on the root partition. See ANALYZE.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_segment_copy_checking

Controls whether the distribution policy for a table (from the table `DISTRIBUTED` clause) is checked when data is copied into the table with the `COPY FROM...ON SEGMENT` command. If true, an error is returned if a row of data violates the distribution policy for a segment instance. The default is `true` .

If the value is `false` , the distribution policy is not checked. The data added to the table might violate the table distribution policy for the segment instance. Manual redistribution of table data might be required. See the `ALTER TABLE` clause `WITH REORGANIZE` .

The parameter can be set for a database system or a session. The parameter cannot be set for a specific database.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_enable_sort_distinct

Enable duplicates to be removed while sorting.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_enable_sort_limit

Enable `LIMIT` operation to be performed while sorting. Sorts more efficiently when the plan requires the first *limit_number* of rows at most.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_external_enable_exec

Activates or deactivates the use of external tables that run OS commands or scripts on the segment hosts ( `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE EXECUTE` syntax). Must be enabled if using the MapReduce features.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_external_max_segs

Sets the number of segments that will scan external table data during an external table operation, the purpose being not to overload the system with scanning data and take away resources from other concurrent operations. This only applies to external tables that use the `gpfdist://` protocol to access external table data.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 64 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_external_enable_filter_pushdown

Enable filter pushdown when reading data from external tables. If pushdown fails, a query is run without pushing filters to the external data source (instead, WarehousePG applies the same constraints to the result). See Defining External Tables for more information.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_fts_probe_interval

Specifies the polling interval for the fault detection process ( `ftsprobe` ). The `ftsprobe` process will take approximately this amount of time to detect a segment failure.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 10 - 3600 seconds | 1min | coordinator, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_fts_probe_retries

Specifies the number of times the fault detection process ( `ftsprobe` ) attempts to connect to a segment before reporting segment failure.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 5 | coordinator, system, reload |

### gp_fts_probe_timeout

Specifies the allowed timeout for the fault detection process ( `ftsprobe` ) to establish a connection to a segment before declaring it down.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 10 - 3600 seconds | 20 secs | coordinator, system, reload |

### gp_fts_replication_attempt_count

Specifies the maximum number of times that WarehousePG attempts to establish a primary-mirror replication connection. When this count is exceeded, the fault detection process ( `ftsprobe` ) stops retrying and marks the mirror down.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 100 | 10 | coordinator, system, reload |

### gp_global_deadlock_detector_period

Specifies the executing interval (in seconds) of the global deadlock detector background worker process.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 5 - `INT_MAX` secs | 120 secs | coordinator, system, reload |

### gp_keep_partition_children_locks

If turned on, maintains the relation locks on all append-optimized leaf partitions involved in a query until the end of a transaction. Turning this parameter on can help avoid relatively rare visibility issues in queries, such as `read beyond eof` when running concurrently with lazy `VACUUM` (s) directly on the leaves.

> **Note** Turning `gp_keep_partition_children_locks` on implies that an additional lock will be held for each append-optimized child in each partition hierarchy involved in a query, until the end of transaction. You may require to increase the value of `max_locks_per_transaction` .

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_log_endpoints

Controls the amount of parallel retrieve cursor endpoint detail that WarehousePG writes to the server log file.

The default value is `false` , WarehousePG does not log endpoint details to the log file. When set to `true` , WarehousePG writes endpoint detail information to the log file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_log_fts

Controls the amount of detail the fault detection process ( `ftsprobe` ) writes to the log file.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| OFF<br>TERSE<br>VERBOSE<br>DEBUG | TERSE | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_log_interconnect

Controls the amount of information that is written to the log file about communication between WarehousePG segment instance worker processes. The default value is `terse` . The log information is written to both the coordinator and segment instance logs.

Increasing the amount of logging could affect performance and increase disk space usage.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| off<br>terse<br>verbose<br>debug | terse | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_log_gang

Controls the amount of information that is written to the log file about query worker process creation and query management. The default value is `OFF` , do not log information.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| OFF<br>TERSE<br>VERBOSE<br>DEBUG | OFF | coordinator, session, restart |

### gp_log_resqueue_priority_sleep_time

Controls the logging of per-statement sleep time when resource queue-based resource management is active. You can use this information for analysis of sleep time for queries.

The default value is `false` , do not log the statement sleep time. When set to `true` , WarehousePG:

- Logs the current amount of sleep time for a running query every two minutes.
- Logs the total of sleep time duration for a query at the end of a query.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The information is written to the server log.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_log_suboverflowed_statements

Controls whether WarehousePG logs statements that cause subtransaction overflow. See Checking for and Terminating Overflowed Backends.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### gp_gpperfmon_send_interval

Sets the frequency that the WarehousePG server processes send query execution updates to the data collection agent processes used to populate the `gpperfmon` database. Query operations executed during this interval are sent through UDP to the segment monitor agents. If you find that an excessive number of UDP packets are dropped during long-running, complex queries, you may consider increasing this value.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 1sec | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### gpfdist_retry_timeout

Controls the time (in seconds) that WarehousePG waits before returning an error when WarehousePG is attempting to connect or write to agpfdist server and `gpfdist` does not respond. The default value is 300 (5 minutes). A value of 0 deactivates the timeout.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - `INT_MAX` (2147483647) | 300 | local, session, reload |

### gpperfmon_log_alert_level

Controls which message levels are written to the `gpperfmon` log. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent to the log.

> **Note** If the `gpperfmon` database is installed and is monitoring the database, the default value is warning.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| none | | |
| warning | | |
| error | none | local, session, reload |
| fatal | | |
| panic | | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_hashjoin_tuples_per_bucket

Sets the target density of the hash table used by HashJoin operations. A smaller value will tend to produce larger hash tables, which can increase join performance.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 5 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_ignore_error_table

Controls WarehousePG behavior when the deprecated `INTO ERROR TABLE` clause is specified in a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `COPY` command.

> **Note** The `INTO ERROR TABLE` clause was deprecated and removed in WarehousePG 5. In WarehousePG 7, this parameter will be removed as well, causing all `INTO ERROR TABLE` invocations be yield a syntax error.

The default value is `false`, WarehousePG returns an error if the `INTO ERROR TABLE` clause is specified in a command.

If the value is `true`, WarehousePG ignores the clause, issues a warning, and runs the command without the `INTO ERROR TABLE` clause. In WarehousePG 6.x and later, you access the error log information with built-in SQL functions. See the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE or COPY command.

You can set this value to `true` to avoid the WarehousePG error when you run applications that run `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` or `COPY` commands that include the unsupported `INTO ERROR TABLE` clause.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_initial_bad_row_limit

For the parameter value *n*, WarehousePG stops processing input rows when you import data with the `COPY` command or from an external table if the first *n* rows processed contain formatting errors. If a valid row is processed within the first *n* rows, WarehousePG continues processing input rows.

Setting the value to 0 deactivates this limit.

The `SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` clause can also be specified for the `COPY` command or the external table definition to limit the number of rejected rows.

`INT_MAX` is the largest value that can be stored as an integer on your system.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 0 - `INT_MAX` | 1000 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_address_type

Specifies the type of address binding strategy WarehousePG uses for communication between segment host sockets. There are two types: `unicast` and `wildcard`. The default is `wildcard`.

- When this parameter is set to `unicast`, WarehousePG uses the `gp_segment_configuration.address` field to perform address binding. This reduces port usage on segment hosts and prevents interconnect traffic from being routed through unintended (and possibly slower) network interfaces.
- When this parameter is set to `wildcard`, WarehousePG uses a wildcard address for binding, enabling the use of any network interface compliant with routing rules.

> **Note** In some cases, inter-segment communication using the unicast strategy may not be possible. One example is if the source segment's address field and the destination segment's address field are on different subnets and/or existing routing rules do not allow for such communication. In these cases, you must configure this parameter to use a wildcard address for address binding.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| wildcard,unicast | wildcard | local, system, reload |

### gp_interconnect_cursor_ic_table_size

Specifies the size of the Cursor History Table for UDP interconnect. Although it is not usually necessary, you may increase it if running a user-defined function which contains many concurrent cursor queries hangs. The default value is 128.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 128-102400 | 128 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_debug_retry_interval

Specifies the interval, in seconds, to log WarehousePG interconnect debugging messages when the server configuration parameter gp_log_interconnect is set to `DEBUG`. The default is 10 seconds.

The log messages contain information about the interconnect communication between WarehousePG segment instance worker processes. The information can be helpful when debugging network issues between segment instances.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1 =< Integer < 4096 | 10 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_fc_method

Specifies the flow control method used for the default WarehousePG UDPIFC interconnect.

For capacity based flow control, senders do not send packets when receivers do not have the capacity.

Loss based flow control is based on capacity based flow control, and also tunes the sending speed according to packet losses.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| CAPACITY<br>LOSS | LOSS | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses

Sets the proxy ports that WarehousePG uses when the server configuration parameter gp_interconnect_type is set to `proxy`. Otherwise, this parameter is ignored. The default value is an empty string ("").

When the `gp_interconnect_type` parameter is set to `proxy`, You must specify a proxy port for the coordinator, standby coordinator, and all primary and mirror segment instances in this format:

```
<db_id>:<cont_id>:<seg_address>:<port>[, ... ]
```

For the coordinator, standby coordinator, and segment instance, the first three fields, db_id, cont_id, and seg_address can be found in thegp_segment_configuration catalog table. The fourth field, port, is the proxy port for the WarehousePG coordinator or a segment instance.

- db_id is the `dbid` column in the catalog table.
- cont_id is the `content` column in the catalog table.
- seg_address is the IP address or hostname corresponding to tge `address` column in the catalog table.
- port is the TCP/IP port for the segment instance proxy that you specify.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

> **Important** If a segment instance hostname is bound to a different IP address at runtime, you must run `gpstop -U` to re-load the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` value.

You must specify the value as a single-quoted string. This `gpconfig` command sets the value for `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` as a single-quoted string. The WarehousePG cluster consists of a coordinator and a single segment instance.

```
gpconfig --skipvalidation -c gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses -v "'1:-1:192.168.180.50:35432,2:0:192.168.180.54:35000'"
```

For an example of setting `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses`, see Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string (maximum length - 16384 bytes) | | local, system, reload |

### gp_interconnect_queue_depth

Sets the amount of data per-peer to be queued by the WarehousePG interconnect on receivers (when data is received but no space is available to receive it the data will be dropped, and the transmitter will need to resend it) for the default UDPIFC interconnect. Increasing the depth from its default value will cause the system to use more memory, but may increase performance. It is reasonable to set this value between 1 and 10. Queries with data skew potentially perform better with an increased queue depth. Increasing this may radically increase the amount of memory used by the system.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1-2048 | 4 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_setup_timeout

Specifies the amount of time, in seconds, that WarehousePG waits for the interconnect to complete setup before it times out.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 7200 seconds | 7200 seconds (2 hours) | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_snd_queue_depth

Sets the amount of data per-peer to be queued by the default UDPIFC interconnect on senders. Increasing the depth from its default value will cause the system to use more memory, but may increase performance. Reasonable values for this parameter are between 1 and 4. Increasing the value might radically increase the amount of memory used by the system.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1 - 4096 | 2 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_interconnect_transmit_timeout

Specifies the amount of time, in seconds, that WarehousePG waits for network transmission of interconnect traffic to complete before it times out.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1 - 7200 seconds | 3600 seconds (1 hour) | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_interconnect_type

Sets the networking protocol used for WarehousePG interconnect traffic. UDPIFC specifies using UDP with flow control for interconnect traffic, and is the only value supported.

UDPIFC (the default) specifies using UDP with flow control for interconnect traffic. Specify the interconnect flow control method with gp_interconnect_fc_method.

With TCP as the interconnect protocol, WarehousePG has an upper limit of 1000 segment instances - less than that if the query workload involves complex, multi-slice queries.

The `PROXY` value specifies using the TCP protocol, and when running queries, using a proxy for WarehousePG interconnect communication between the coordinator instance and segment instances and between two segment instances. When this parameter is set to `PROXY`, you must specify the proxy ports for the coordinator and segment instances with the server configuration parameter gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses. For information about configuring and using proxies with the WarehousePG interconnect, see Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| UDPIFC, TCP, PROXY | UDPIFC | local, session, reload |

### gp_log_format

Specifies the format of the server log files. If using *gp_toolkit* administrative schema, the log files must be in CSV format.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| csv<br>text | csv | local, system, restart |

### gp_max_local_distributed_cache

Sets the maximum number of distributed transaction log entries to cache in the backend process memory of a segment instance.

The log entries contain information about the state of rows that are being accessed by an SQL statement. The information is used to determine which rows are visible to an SQL transaction when running multiple simultaneous SQL statements in an MVCC environment. Caching distributed transaction log entries locally improves transaction processing speed by improving performance of the row visibility determination process.

The default value is optimal for a wide variety of SQL processing environments.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 1024 | local, system, restart |

### gp_max_packet_size

Sets the tuple-serialization chunk size for the WarehousePG interconnect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 512-65536 | 8192 | coordinator, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_max_parallel_cursors

Specifies the maximum number of active parallel retrieve cursors allowed on a WarehousePG cluster. A parallel retrieve cursor is considered active after it has been `DECLARE` d, but before it is `CLOSE` d or returns an error.

The default value is `-1`; there is no limit on the number of open parallel retrieve cursors that may be concurrently active in the cluster (up to the maximum value of 1024).

You must be a superuser to change the `gp_max_parallel_cursors` setting.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| -1 - 1024 | -1 | coordinator, superuser, session, reload |

### gp_max_plan_size

Specifies the total maximum uncompressed size of a query execution plan multiplied by the number of Motion operators (slices) in the plan. If the size of the query plan exceeds the value, the query is cancelled and an error is returned. A value of 0 means that the size of the plan is not monitored.

You can specify a value in `kB`, `MB`, or `GB`. The default unit is `kB`. For example, a value of `200` is 200kB. A value of `1GB` is the same as `1024MB` or `1048576kB`.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 0 | coordinator, superuser, session, reload |

### gp_max_slices

Specifies the maximum number of slices (portions of a query plan that are run on segment instances) that can be generated by a query. If the query generates more than the specified number of slices, WarehousePG returns an error and does not run the query. The default value is `0`, no maximum value.

Running a query that generates a large number of slices might affect WarehousePG performance. For example, a query that contains `UNION` or `UNION ALL` operators over several complex views can generate a large number of slices. You can run `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` on the query to view slice statistics for the query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - INT_MAX | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_motion_cost_per_row

Sets the Postgres Planner cost estimate for a Motion operator to transfer a row from one segment to another, measured as a fraction of the cost of a sequential page fetch. If 0, then the value used is two times the value of *cpu_tuple_cost*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_print_create_gang_time

When a user starts a session with WarehousePG and issues a query, the system creates groups or 'gangs' of worker processes on each segment to do the work. `gp_print_create_gang_time` controls the display of additional information about gang creation, including gang reuse status and the shortest and longest connection establishment time to the segment.

The default value is `false`, WarehousePG does not display the additional gang creation information.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_recursive_cte

Controls the availability of the `RECURSIVE` keyword in the `WITH` clause of a `SELECT [INTO]` command, or a `DELETE`, `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command. The keyword allows a subquery in the `WITH` clause of a command to reference itself. The default value is `true`, the `RECURSIVE` keyword is allowed in the `WITH` clause of a command.

For information about the `RECURSIVE` keyword, see the SELECT command and WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions).

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

> **Note** This parameter was previously named `gp_recursive_cte_prototype`, but has been renamed to reflect the current status of the implementation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, restart |

### gp_reject_percent_threshold

For single row error handling on COPY and external table SELECTs, sets the number of rows processed before SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT *n* PERCENT starts calculating.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1-*n* | 300 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_reraise_signal

If enabled, will attempt to dump core if a fatal server error occurs.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_resgroup_memory_policy

> **Note** The `gp_resgroup_memory_policy` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Used by a resource group to manage memory allocation to query operators.

When set to `auto`, WarehousePG uses resource group memory limits to distribute memory across query operators, allocating a fixed size of memory to non-memory-intensive operators and the rest to memory-intensive operators.

When you specify `eager_free`, WarehousePG distributes memory among operators more optimally by re-allocating memory released by operators that have completed their processing to operators in a later query stage.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| auto, eager_free | eager_free | local, system, superuser, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_resource_group_bypass

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_bypass` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Activates or deactivates the enforcement of resource group concurrent transaction limits on WarehousePG resources. The default value is `false`, which enforces resource group transaction limits. Resource groups manage resources such as CPU, memory, and the number of concurrent transactions that are used by queries and external components.

You can set this parameter to `true` to bypass resource group concurrent transaction limitations so that a query can run immediately. For example, you can set the parameter to `true` for a session to run a system catalog query or a similar query that requires a minimal amount of resources.

When you set this parameter to `true` and a run a query, the query runs in this environment:

- The query runs inside a resource group. The resource group assignment for the query does not change.
- The query memory quota is approximately 10 MB per query. The memory is allocated from resource group shared memory or global shared memory. The query fails if there is not enough shared memory available to fulfill the memory allocation request.

This parameter can be set for a session. The parameter cannot be set within a transaction or a function.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | local, session, reload |

### gp_resource_group_bypass_catalog_query

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_bypass_catalog_query` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

The default value for this configuration parameter is `false`, WarehousePG's resource group scheduler enforces resource group limits on catalog queries. Note that when `false` and the database has reached the maximum amount of concurrent transactions, the scheduler can block queries that exclusively read from system catalogs.

When set to `true` WarehousePG's resource group scheduler bypasses all queries that fulfill both of the following criteria:

- They read exclusively from system catalogs
- They contain in their query text `pg_catalog` schema tables only

> **Note** If a query contains a mix of `pg_catalog` and any other schema tables the scheduler will **not** bypass the query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | local, session, reload |

### gp_resource_group_cpu_ceiling_enforcement

Enables the Ceiling Enforcement mode when assigning CPU resources by Percentage. When deactivated, the Elastic mode will be used.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_resource_group_cpu_limit

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Identifies the maximum percentage of system CPU resources to allocate to resource groups on each WarehousePG segment node.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0.1 - 1.0 | 0.9 | local, system, restart |

### gp_resource_group_cpu_priority

Sets the CPU priority for WarehousePG processes relative to non-WarehousePG processes when resource groups are enabled. For example, setting this parameter to `10` sets the ratio of allotted CPU resources for WarehousePG processes to non-WarehousePG processes to 10:1.

> **Note** This ratio calculation applies only when the machine's CPU usage is at 100%.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1 - 50 | 10 | local, system, restart |

### gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_enable_recalculate_query_mem` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Specifies whether or not WarehousePG recalculates the maximum amount of memory to allocate on a segment host per query running in a resource group. The default value is `false`, WarehousePG calculates the maximum per-query memory on a segment host based on the memory configuration and the number of primary segments on the coordinator host. When set to `true`, WarehousePG recalculates the maximum per-query memory on a segment host based on the memory and the number of primary segments configured for that segment host.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_resource_group_memory_limit

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Identifies the maximum percentage of system memory resources to allocate to resource groups on each WarehousePG segment node.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0.1 - 1.0 | 0.7 | local, system, restart |

> **Note** When resource group-based resource management is active, the memory allotted to a segment host is equally shared by active primary segments. WarehousePG assigns memory to primary segments when the segment takes the primary role. The initial memory allotment to a primary segment does not change, even in a failover situation. This may result in a segment host utilizing more memory than the `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` setting permits.

For example, suppose your WarehousePG cluster is utilizing the default `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` of `0.7` and a segment host named `seghost1` has 4 primary segments and 4 mirror segments. WarehousePG assigns each primary segment on `seghost1` `(0.7 / 4 = 0.175)` of overall system memory. If failover occurs and two mirrors on `seghost1` fail over to become primary segments, each of the original 4 primaries retain their memory allotment of `0.175`, and the two new primary segments are each allotted `(0.7 / 6 = 0.116)` of system memory. `seghost1`'s overall memory allocation in this scenario is

```
0.7 + (0.116 * 2) = 0.932
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

which is above the percentage configured in the `gp_resource_group_memory_limit` setting.

### gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout

> **Note** The `gp_resource_group_queuing_timeout` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Cancel a transaction queued in a resource group that waits longer than the specified number of milliseconds. The time limit applies separately to each transaction. The default value is zero; transactions are queued indefinitely and never time out.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - `INT_MAX` millisecs | 0 millisecs | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_resource_manager

Identifies the resource management scheme currently enabled in the WarehousePG cluster. The default scheme is to use resource queues. For information about WarehousePG resource management, see Managing Resources.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| group<br>queue | queue | local, system, restart |

### gp_resqueue_memory_policy

> **Note** The `gp_resqueue_memory_policy` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Enables WarehousePG memory management features. The distribution algorithm `eager_free` takes advantage of the fact that not all operators run at the same time. The query plan is divided into stages and WarehousePG eagerly frees memory allocated to a previous stage at the end of that stage's execution, then allocates the eagerly freed memory to the new stage.

When set to `none`, the `eager_free` algorithm is not used.

When set to `auto`, query memory usage is controlled by statement_mem and resource queue memory limits.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| none, auto, eager_free | eager_free | local, session, reload |

### gp_resqueue_priority

> **Note** The `gp_resqueue_priority` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Activates or deactivates query prioritization. When this parameter is deactivated, existing priority settings are not evaluated at query run time.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment

> **Note** The `gp_resqueue_priority_cpucores_per_segment` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Specifies the number of CPU units allocated to each segment instance on a segment host. If the segment is configured with primary-mirror segment instance pairs, use the number of primary segment instances on the host in the calculation. Include any CPU core that is available to the operating system, including virtual CPU cores, in the total number of available cores.

For example, if a WarehousePG cluster has 10-core segment hosts that are configured with four primary segments, set the value to 2.5 on each segment host (10 divided by 4). A coordinator host typically has only a single running coordinator instance, so set the value on the coordinator and standby maaster hosts to reflect the usage of all available CPU cores, in this case 10.

Incorrect settings can result in CPU under-utilization or query prioritization not working as designed.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0.1 - 512.0 | 4 | local, system, restart |

### gp_resqueue_priority_sweeper_interval

> **Note** The `gp_resqueue_priority_sweeper_interval` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Specifies the interval at which the sweeper process evaluates current CPU usage. When a new statement becomes active, its priority is evaluated and its CPU share determined when the next interval is reached.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 500 - 15000 ms | 1000 | local, system, restart |

### gp_retrieve_conn

A session that you initiate with `PGOPTIONS='-c gp_retrieve_conn=true'` is a retrieve session. You use a retrieve session to retrieve query result tuples from a specific endpoint instantiated for a parallel retrieve cursor.

The default value is `false`.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | read only |

### gp_safefswritesize

Specifies a minimum size for safe write operations to append-optimized tables in a non-mature file system. When a number of bytes greater than zero is specified, the append-optimized writer adds padding data up to that number in order to prevent data corruption due to file system errors. Each non-mature file system has a known safe write size that must be specified here when using WarehousePG with that type of file system. This is commonly set to a multiple of the extent size of the file system; for example, Linux ext3 is 4096 bytes, so a value of 32768 is commonly used.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 0 | local, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_segment_connect_timeout

Time that the WarehousePG interconnect will try to connect to a segment instance over the network before timing out. Controls the network connection timeout between coordinator and primary segments, and primary to mirror segment replication processes.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 3min | local, session, reload |

### gp_segments_for_planner

Sets the number of primary segment instances for the Postgres Planner to assume in its cost and size estimates. If 0, then the value used is the actual number of primary segments. This variable affects the Postgres Planner's estimates of the number of rows handled by each sending and receiving process in Motion operators.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0-*n* | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_server_version

Reports the version number of the server as a string. A version modifier argument might be appended to the numeric portion of the version string, example: *6.0.0 beta*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| String. Examples: *6.0.0* | n/a | read only |

### gp_server_version_num

Reports the version number of the server as an integer. The number is guaranteed to always be increasing for each version and can be used for numeric comparisons. The major version is represented as is, the minor and patch versions are zero-padded to always be double digit wide.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| *Mmmpp* where *M* is the major version, *mm* is the minor version zero-padded and *pp* is the patch version zero-padded. Example: 50000 | n/a | read only |

### gp_session_id

A system assigned ID number for a client session. Starts counting from 1 when the coordinator instance is first started.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1-*n* | 14 | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_session_role

The role of this server process is set to *dispatch* for the coordinator and *execute* for a segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| dispatch | | |
| execute | | read only |
| utility | | |

### gp_set_proc_affinity

If enabled, when a WarehousePG server process (postmaster) is started it will bind to a CPU.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_set_read_only

Set to on to deactivate writes to the database. Any in progress transactions must finish before read-only mode takes affect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

### gp_statistics_pullup_from_child_partition

Enables the use of statistics from child tables when planning queries on the parent table by the Postgres Planner.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_statistics_use_fkeys

When enabled, the Postgres Planner will use the statistics of the referenced column in the parent table when a column is foreign key reference to another table instead of the statistics of the column itself.

> **Note** This parameter is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_use_legacy_hashops

For a table that is defined with a `DISTRIBUTED BY key\_column` clause, this parameter controls the hash algorithm that is used to distribute table data among segment instances. The default value is `false`, use the jump consistent hash algorithm.

Setting the value to `true` uses the modulo hash algorithm.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_vmem_idle_resource_timeout

If a database session is idle for longer than the time specified, the session will free system resources (such as shared memory), but remain connected to the database. This allows more concurrent connections to the database at one time.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 18s | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_vmem_protect_limit

> **Note** The `gp_vmem_protect_limit` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Sets the amount of memory (in number of MBs) that all `postgres` processes of an active segment instance can consume. If a query causes this limit to be exceeded, memory will not be allocated and the query will fail. Note that this is a local parameter and must be set for every segment in the system (primary and mirrors). When setting the parameter value, specify only the numeric value. For example, to specify 4096MB, use the value `4096`. Do not add the units `MB` to the value.

To prevent over-allocation of memory, these calculations can estimate a safe `gp_vmem_protect_limit` value.

First calculate the value of `gp_vmem`. This is the WarehousePG memory available on a host.

- If the total system memory is less than 256 GB, use this formula:

```
gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.7
```

- If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB, use this formula:

```
gp_vmem = ((SWAP + RAM) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * RAM)) / 1.17
```

where SWAP is the host swap space and RAM is the RAM on the host in GB.

Next, calculate the `max_acting_primary_segments`. This is the maximum number of primary segments that can be running on a host when mirror segments are activated due to a failure. With mirrors arranged in a 4-host block with 8 primary segments per host, for example, a single segment host failure would activate two or three mirror segments on each remaining host in the failed host's block. The `max_acting_primary_segments` value for this configuration is 11 (8 primary segments plus 3 mirrors activated on failure).

This is the calculation for `gp_vmem_protect_limit`. The value should be converted to MB.

```
gp_vmem_protect_limit = <gp_vmem> / <acting_primary_segments>
```

For scenarios where a large number of workfiles are generated, this is the calculation for `gp_vmem` that accounts for the workfiles.

- If the total system memory is less than 256 GB:

```
<gp_vmem> = ((<SWAP> + <RAM>) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * <RAM> – (300KB * <total_#_workfiles>))) / 1.7
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- If the total system memory is equal to or greater than 256 GB:

```
<gp_vmem> = ((<SWAP> + <RAM>) – (7.5GB + 0.05 * <RAM> – (300KB * <total_#_workfiles>))) / 1.17
```

For information about monitoring and managing workfile usage, see the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Based on the `gp_vmem` value you can calculate the value for the `vm.overcommit_ratio` operating system kernel parameter. This parameter is set when you configure each WarehousePG host.

```
vm.overcommit_ratio = (<RAM> – (0.026 * <gp_vmem>)) / <RAM>
```

> **Note** The default value for the kernel parameter `vm.overcommit_ratio` in Red Hat Enterprise Linux is 50.

For information about the kernel parameter, see the *WarehousePG Installation Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 8192 | local, system, restart |

### gp_vmem_protect_segworker_cache_limit

If a query executor process consumes more than this configured amount, then the process will not be cached for use in subsequent queries after the process completes. Systems with lots of connections or idle processes may want to reduce this number to free more memory on the segments. Note that this is a local parameter and must be set for every segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of megabytes | 500 | local, system, restart |

### gp_workfile_compression

Specifies whether the temporary files created, when a hash aggregation or hash join operation spills to disk, are compressed.

If your WarehousePG installation uses serial ATA (SATA) disk drives, enabling compression might help to avoid overloading the disk subsystem with IO operations.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_workfile_limit_files_per_query

Sets the maximum number of temporary spill files (also known as workfiles) allowed per query per segment. Spill files are created when running a query that requires more memory than it is allocated. The current query is terminated when the limit is exceeded.

Set the value to 0 (zero) to allow an unlimited number of spill files. coordinator session reload

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 100000 | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### gp_workfile_limit_per_query

Sets the maximum disk size an individual query is allowed to use for creating temporary spill files at each segment. The default value is 0, which means a limit is not enforced.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| kilobytes | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### gp_workfile_limit_per_segment

Sets the maximum total disk size that all running queries are allowed to use for creating temporary spill files at each segment. The default value is 0, which means a limit is not enforced.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| kilobytes | 0 | local, system, restart |

### gpperfmon_port

Controls the time (in seconds) that WarehousePG waits before returning an error when WarehousePG is attempting to connect or write to agpfdist server and `gpfdist` does not respond. The default value is 300 (5 minutes). A value of 0 deactivates the timeout.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 8888 | coordinator, system, restart |

### ignore_checksum_failure

Only has effect if data_checksums is enabled.

WarehousePG uses checksums to prevent loading data that has been corrupted in the file system into memory managed by database processes.

By default, when a checksum verify error occurs when reading a heap data page, WarehousePG generates an error and prevents the page from being loaded into managed memory. When `ignore_checksum_failure` is set to on and a checksum verify failure occurs, WarehousePG generates a warning, and allows the page to be read into managed memory. If the page is then updated it is saved to disk and replicated to the mirror. If the page header is corrupt an error is reported even if this option is enabled.

> **Caution** Setting `ignore_checksum_failure` to on may propagate or hide data corruption or lead to other serious problems. However, if a checksum failure has already been detected and the page header is uncorrupted, setting `ignore_checksum_failure` to on may allow you to bypass the error and recover undamaged tuples that may still be present in the table.

The default setting is off, and it can only be changed by a superuser.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, session, reload |

### integer_datetimes

Reports whether PostgreSQL was built with support for 64-bit-integer dates and times.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### IntervalStyle

Sets the display format for interval values. The value *sql_standard* produces output matching SQL standard interval literals. The value *postgres* produces output matching PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the DateStyle parameter was set to ISO.

The value *postgres_verbose* produces output matching WarehousePG releases prior to 3.3 when the DateStyle parameter was set to non-ISO output.

The value *iso_8601* will produce output matching the time interval *format with designators* defined in section 4.4.3.2 of ISO 8601. See the PostgreSQL 9.4 documentation for more information.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| postgres<br>postgres_verbose<br>sql_standard<br>iso_8601 | postgres | coordinator, session, reload |

### join_collapse_limit

The Postgres Planner will rewrite explicit inner `JOIN` constructs into lists of `FROM` items whenever a list of no more than this many items in total would result. By default, this variable is set the same as *from_collapse_limit*, which is appropriate for most uses. Setting it to 1 prevents any reordering of inner JOINs. Setting this variable to a value between 1 and *from_collapse_limit* might be useful to trade off planning time against the quality of the chosen plan (higher values produce better plans).

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 1-*n* | 20 | coordinator, session, reload |

### krb_caseins_users

Sets whether Kerberos user names should be treated case-insensitively. The default is case sensitive (off).

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, reload |

### krb_server_keyfile

Sets the location of the Kerberos server key file.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| path and file name | unset | coordinator, system, restart |

### lc_collate

Reports the locale in which sorting of textual data is done. The value is determined when the WarehousePG array is initialized.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### lc_ctype

Reports the locale that determines character classifications. The value is determined when the WarehousePG array is initialized.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | read only |

### lc_messages

Sets the language in which messages are displayed. The locales available depends on what was installed with your operating system - use *locale -a* to list available locales. The default value is inherited from the execution environment of the server. On some systems, this locale category does not exist. Setting this variable will still work, but there will be no effect. Also, there is a chance that no translated messages for the desired language exist. In that case you will continue to see the English messages.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | local, session, reload |

### lc_monetary

Sets the locale to use for formatting monetary amounts, for example with the *to_char* family of functions. The locales available depends on what was installed with your operating system - use *locale -a* to list available locales. The default value is inherited from the execution environment of the server.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | local, session, reload |

### lc_numeric

Sets the locale to use for formatting numbers, for example with the *to_char* family of functions. The locales available depends on what was installed with your operating system - use *locale -a* to list available locales. The default value is inherited from the execution environment of the server.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | local, system, restart |

### lc_time

This parameter currently does nothing, but may in the future.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | | local, system, restart |

### listen_addresses

Specifies the TCP/IP address(es) on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications - a comma-separated list of host names and/or numeric IP addresses. The special entry * corresponds to all available IP interfaces. If the list is empty, only UNIX-domain sockets can connect.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| localhost, host names, IP addresses, * (all available IP interfaces) | * | coordinator, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### local_preload_libraries

Comma separated list of shared library files to preload at the start of a client session.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| | | local, system, restart |

### lock_timeout

Abort any statement that waits longer than the specified number of milliseconds while attempting to acquire a lock on a table, index, row, or other database object. The time limit applies separately to each lock acquisition attempt. The limit applies both to explicit locking requests (such as `LOCK TABLE` or `SELECT FOR UPDATE`) and to implicitly-acquired locks. If `log_min_error_statement` is set to `ERROR` or lower, WarehousePG logs the statement that timed out. A value of zero (the default) turns off this lock wait monitoring.

Unlike statement_timeout, this timeout can only occur while waiting for locks. Note that if `statement_timeout` is nonzero, it is rather pointless to set `lock_timeout` to the same or larger value, since the statement timeout would always trigger first.

WarehousePG uses the deadlock_timeout and gp_global_deadlock_detector_period to trigger local and global deadlock detection. Note that if `lock_timeout` is turned on and set to a value smaller than these deadlock detection timeouts, WarehousePG will abort a statement before it would ever trigger a deadlock check in that session.

> **Note** Setting `lock_timeout` in `postgresql.conf` is not recommended because it would affect all sessions

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - `INT_MAX` millisecs | 0 millisecs | coordinator, session, reload |

### log_autostats

Logs information about automatic `ANALYZE` operations related to gp_autostats_modeand gp_autostats_on_change_threshold.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_connections

This outputs a line to the server log detailing each successful connection. Some client programs, like psql, attempt to connect twice while determining if a password is required, so duplicate "connection received" messages do not always indicate a problem.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, reload |

### log_checkpoints

Causes checkpoints and restartpoints to be logged in the server log. Some statistics are included in the log messages, including the number of buffers written and the time spent writing them.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | local, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### log_disconnections

This outputs a line in the server log at termination of a client session, and includes the duration of the session.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, reload |

### log_dispatch_stats

When set to "on," this parameter adds a log message with verbose information about the dispatch of the statement.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, reload |

### log_duration

Causes the duration of every completed statement which satisfies *log_statement* to be logged.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_error_verbosity

Controls the amount of detail written in the server log for each message that is logged.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| TERSE | | |
| DEFAULT | DEFAULT | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |
| VERBOSE | | |

### log_executor_stats

For each query, write performance statistics of the query executor to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument. Cannot be enabled together with*log_statement_stats*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, restart |

### log_file_mode

On Unix systems this parameter sets the permissions for log files when `logging_collector` is enabled. The parameter value is expected to be a numeric mode specified in the format accepted by the `chmod` and `umask` system calls.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| numeric UNIX file permission mode (as accepted by the *chmod* or *umask* commands) | 0600 | local, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### log_hostname

By default, connection log messages only show the IP address of the connecting host. Turning on this option causes logging of the IP address and host name of the WarehousePG coordinator. Note that depending on your host name resolution setup this might impose a non-negligible performance penalty.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, reload |

### log_min_duration_statement

Logs the statement and its duration on a single log line if its duration is greater than or equal to the specified number of milliseconds. Setting this to 0 will print all statements and their durations. -1 deactivates the feature. For example, if you set it to 250 then all SQL statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Enabling this option can be useful in tracking down unoptimized queries in your applications.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of milliseconds, 0, -1 | -1 | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_min_error_statement

Controls whether or not the SQL statement that causes an error condition will also be recorded in the server log. All SQL statements that cause an error of the specified level or higher are logged. The default is ERROR. To effectively turn off logging of failing statements, set this parameter to PANIC.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| DEBUG5 | | |
| DEBUG4 | | |
| DEBUG3 | | |
| DEBUG2 | | |
| DEBUG1 | | |
| INFO | ERROR | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |
| NOTICE | | |
| WARNING | | |
| ERROR | | |
| FATAL | | |
| PANIC | | |

### log_min_messages

Controls which message levels are written to the server log. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent to the log.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| DEBUG5 | | |
| DEBUG4 | | |
| DEBUG3 | | |
| DEBUG2 | | |
| DEBUG1 | | |
| INFO | | |
| NOTICE | WARNING | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |
| WARNING | | |
| LOG | | |
| ERROR | | |
| FATAL | | |
| PANIC | | |

### log_parser_stats

For each query, write performance statistics of the query parser to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument. Cannot be enabled together with*log_statement_stats*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_planner_stats

For each query, write performance statistics of the Postgres Planner to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument. Cannot be enabled together with *log_statement_stats*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_rotation_age

Determines the amount of time WarehousePG writes messages to the active log file. When this amount of time has elapsed, the file is closed and a new log file is created. Set to zero to deactivate time-based creation of new log files.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 1d | local, system, restart |

### log_rotation_size

Determines the size of an individual log file that triggers rotation. When the log file size is equal to or greater than this size, the file is closed and a new log file is created. Set to zero to deactivate size-based creation of new log files.

The maximum value is INT_MAX/1024. If an invalid value is specified, the default value is used. INT_MAX is the largest value that can be stored as an integer on your system.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 1048576 | local, system, restart |

### log_statement

Controls which SQL statements are logged. DDL logs all data definition commands like CREATE, ALTER, and DROP commands. MOD logs all DDL statements, plus INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, and COPY FROM. PREPARE and EXPLAIN ANALYZE statements are also logged if their contained command is of an appropriate type.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| NONE<br>DDL<br>MOD<br>ALL | ALL | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_statement_stats

For each query, write total performance statistics of the query parser, planner, and executor to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### log_temp_files

Controls logging of temporary file names and sizes. Temporary files can be created for sorts, hashes, temporary query results and spill files. A log entry is made in `log` for each temporary file when it is deleted. Depending on the source of the temporary files, the log entry could be created on either the coordinator and/or segments. A `log_temp_files` value of zero logs all temporary file information, while positive values log only files whose size is greater than or equal to the specified number of kilobytes. The default setting is `-1`, which deactivates logging. Only superusers can change this setting.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Integer | -1 | local, session, reload |

### log_timezone

Sets the time zone used for timestamps written in the log. Unlike TimeZone, this value is system-wide, so that all sessions will report timestamps consistently. The default is `unknown`, which means to use whatever the system environment specifies as the time zone.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | unknown | local, system, restart |

### log_truncate_on_rotation

Truncates (overwrites), rather than appends to, any existing log file of the same name. Truncation will occur only when a new file is being opened due to time-based rotation. For example, using this setting in combination with a log_filename such as `gpseg#-%H.log` would result in generating twenty-four hourly log files and then cyclically overwriting them. When off, pre-existing files will be appended to in all cases.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | local, system, reload |

### maintenance_work_mem

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used in maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM` and `CREATE INDEX`. It defaults to 16 megabytes (16MB). Larger settings might improve performance for vacuuming and for restoring database dumps.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Integer | 16 | local, system, reload |

### max_appendonly_tables

Sets the maximum number of concurrent transactions that can write to or update append-optimized tables. Transactions that exceed the maximum return an error.

Operations that are counted are `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `COPY`, and `VACUUM` operations. The limit is only for in-progress transactions. Once a transaction ends (either aborted or committed), it is no longer counted against this limit.

> **Note** WarehousePG limits the maximum number of concurrent inserts into an append-only table to 127.

For operations against a partitioned table, each subpartition (child table) that is an append-optimized table and is changed counts as a single table towards the maximum. For example, a partitioned table `p_tbl` is defined with three subpartitions that are append-optimized tables `p_tbl_ao1`, `p_tbl_ao2`, and `p_tbl_ao3`. An `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command against the partitioned table `p_tbl` that changes append-optimized tables `p_tbl_ao1` and `p_tbl_ao2` is counted as two transactions.

Increasing the limit allocates more shared memory on the coordinator host at server start.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 10000 | coordinator, system, restart |

### max_connections

The maximum number of concurrent connections to the database server. In a WarehousePG cluster, user client connections go through the WarehousePG coordinator instance only. Segment instances should allow 3-10 times the amount as the coordinator. When you increase this parameter, max_prepared_transactions must be increased as well. For more information about limiting concurrent connections, see "Configuring Client Authentication" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Increasing this parameter may cause WarehousePG to request more shared memory. See shared_buffers for information about WarehousePG server instance shared memory buffers.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 10 - 8388607 | 250 on coordinator<br>750 on segments | local, system, restart |

### max_files_per_process

Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open files allowed to each server subprocess. If the kernel is enforcing a safe per-process limit, you don't need to worry about this setting. Some platforms such as BSD, the kernel will allow individual processes to open many more files than the system can really support.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 1000 | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### max_function_args

Reports the maximum number of function arguments.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 100 | read only |

### max_identifier_length

Reports the maximum identifier length.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 63 | read only |

### max_index_keys

Reports the maximum number of index keys.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 32 | read only |

### max_locks_per_transaction

The shared lock table is created with room to describe locks on *max_locks_per_transaction* * (*max_connections* + *max_prepared_transactions*) objects, so no more than this many distinct objects can be locked at any one time. This is not a hard limit on the number of locks taken by any one transaction, but rather a maximum average value. You might need to raise this value if you have clients that touch many different tables in a single transaction.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 128 | local, system, restart |

### max_prepared_transactions

Sets the maximum number of transactions that can be in the prepared state simultaneously. WarehousePG uses prepared transactions internally to ensure data integrity across the segments. This value must be at least as large as the value of max_connections on the coordinator. Segment instances should be set to the same value as the coordinator.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 250 on coordinator<br>250 on segments | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### max_resource_portals_per_transaction

> **Note** The `max_resource_portals_per_transaction` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open user-declared cursors allowed per transaction. Note that an open cursor will hold an active query slot in a resource queue. Used for resource management.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 64 | coordinator, system, restart |

### max_resource_queues

> **Note** The `max_resource_queues` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Sets the maximum number of resource queues that can be created in a WarehousePG cluster. Note that resource queues are system-wide (as are roles) so they apply to all databases in the system.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 9 | coordinator, system, restart |

### max_slot_wal_keep_size

Sets the maximum size in megabytes of Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) files on disk per segment instance that can be reserved when WarehousePG streams data to the mirror segment instance or standby coordinator to keep it synchronized with the corresponding primary segment instance or coordinator. The default is -1, WarehousePG can retain an unlimited amount of WAL files on disk.

If the file size exceeds the maximum size, the files are released and are available for deletion. A mirror or standby may no longer be able to continue replication due to removal of required WAL files.

> **Caution** If `max_slot_wal_keep_size` is set to a non-default value for acting primaries, full and incremental recovery of their mirrors may not be possible. Depending on the workload on the primary running concurrently with a full recovery, the recovery may fail with a missing WAL error. Therefore, you must ensure that `max_slot_wal_keep_size` is set to the default of `-1` or a high enough value before running full recovery. Similarly, depending on how behind the downed mirror is, an incremental recovery of it may fail with a missing WAL complaint. In this case, full recovery would be the only recourse.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Integer | -1 | local, system, reload |

### max_stack_depth

Specifies the maximum safe depth of the server's execution stack. The ideal setting for this parameter is the actual stack size limit enforced by the kernel (as set by *ulimit -s* or local equivalent), less a safety margin of a megabyte or so. Setting the parameter higher than the actual kernel limit will mean that a runaway recursive function can crash an individual backend process.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 2MB | local, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### max_statement_mem

Sets the maximum memory limit for a query. Helps avoid out-of-memory errors on a segment host during query processing as a result of setting statement_mem too high.

Taking into account the configuration of a single segment host, calculate `max_statement_mem` as follows:

```
(seghost_physical_memory) / (average_number_concurrent_queries)
```

When changing both `max_statement_mem` and `statement_mem`, `max_statement_mem` must be changed first, or listed first in the postgresql.conf file.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 2000MB | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### memory_spill_ratio

> **Note** The `memory_spill_ratio` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Sets the memory usage threshold percentage for memory-intensive operators in a transaction. When a transaction reaches this threshold, it spills to disk.

The default `memory_spill_ratio` percentage is the value defined for the resource group assigned to the currently active role. You can set `memory_spill_ratio` at the session level to selectively set this limit on a per-query basis. For example, if you have a specific query that spills to disk and requires more memory, you may choose to set a larger `memory_spill_ratio` to increase the initial memory allocation.

You can specify an integer percentage value from 0 to 100 inclusive. If you specify a value of 0, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` server configuration parameter value to control the initial query operator memory amount.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 100 | 20 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer

Activates or deactivates GPORCA when running SQL queries. The default is `on`. If you deactivate GPORCA, WarehousePG uses only the Postgres Planner.

GPORCA co-exists with the Postgres Planner. With GPORCA enabled, WarehousePG uses GPORCA to generate an execution plan for a query when possible. If GPORCA cannot be used, then the Postgres Planner is used.

The optimizer parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about the Postgres Planner and GPORCA, see Querying Data in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_analyze_root_partition

For a partitioned table, controls whether the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword is required to collect root partition statistics when the `ANALYZE` command is run on the table. GPORCA uses the root partition statistics when generating a query plan. The Postgres Planner does not use these statistics.

The default setting for the parameter is `on`, the `ANALYZE` command can collect root partition statistics without the `ROOTPARTITION` keyword. Root partition statistics are collected when you run `ANALYZE` on the root partition, or when you run `ANALYZE` on a child leaf partition of the partitioned table and the other child leaf partitions have statistics. When the value is `off`, you must run `ANALZYE ROOTPARTITION` to collect root partition statistics.

When the value of the server configuration parameter optimizer is `on` (the default), the value of this parameter should also be `on`. For information about collecting table statistics on partitioned tables, see ANALYZE.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

For information about the Postgres Planner and GPORCA, see Querying Data in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_array_expansion_threshold

When GPORCA is enabled (the default) and is processing a query that contains a predicate with a constant array, the `optimizer_array_expansion_threshold` parameter limits the optimization process based on the number of constants in the array. If the array in the query predicate contains more than the number elements specified by parameter, GPORCA deactivates the transformation of the predicate into its disjunctive normal form during query optimization.

The default value is 100.

For example, when GPORCA is running a query that contains an `IN` clause with more than 100 elements, GPORCA does not transform the predicate into its disjunctive normal form during query optimization to reduce optimization time consume less memory. The difference in query processing can be seen in the filter condition for the `IN` clause of the query `EXPLAIN` plan.

Changing the value of this parameter changes the trade-off between a shorter optimization time and lower memory consumption, and the potential benefits from constraint derivation during query optimization, for example conflict detection and partition elimination.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Integer > 0 | 25 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_control

Controls whether the server configuration parameter optimizer can be changed with SET, the RESET command, or the WarehousePG utility gpconfig. If the `optimizer_control` parameter value is `on`, users can set the optimizer parameter. If the `optimizer_control` parameter value is `off`, the optimizer parameter cannot be changed.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### optimizer_cost_model

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls the cost model that GPORCA chooses for bitmap scans used with bitmap indexes or with btree indexes on AO tables.

- `legacy` - preserves the calibrated cost model used by GPORCA in WarehousePG releases 6.13 and earlier
- `calibrated` - improves cost estimates for indexes
- `experimental` - reserved for future experimental cost models; currently equivalent to the `calibrated` model

The default cost model, `calibrated`, is more likely to choose a faster bitmap index with nested loop joins instead of hash joins.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| legacy<br>calibrated<br>experimental | calibrated | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### optimizer_cte_inlining_bound

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls the amount of inlining performed for common table expression (CTE) queries (queries that contain a `WHERE` clause). The default value, 0, deactivates inlining.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Decimal >= 0 | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_dpe_stats

When GPORCA is enabled (the default) and this parameter is `true` (the default), GPORCA derives statistics that allow it to more accurately estimate the number of rows to be scanned during dynamic partition elimination.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_discard_redistribute_hashjoin

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter specifies whether the Query Optimizer should eliminate plans that include a HashJoin operator with a Redistribute Motion child. Eliminating such plans can improve performance in cases where the data being joined exhibits high skewness in the join keys.

The default setting is `off`, GPORCA considers all plan alternatives, including those with a Redistribute Motion child, in the HashJoin operator. If you observe performance issues with queries that use a HashJoin with highly skewed data, you may want to consider setting `optimizer_discard_redistribute_hashjoin` to `on` to instruct GPORCA to discard such plans.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_enable_associativity

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls whether the join associativity transform is enabled during query optimization. The transform analyzes join orders. For the default value `off`, only the GPORCA dynamic programming algorithm for analyzing join orders is enabled. The join associativity transform largely duplicates the functionality of the newer dynamic programming algorithm.

If the value is `on`, GPORCA can use the associativity transform during query optimization.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### optimizer_enable_dml

When GPORCA is enabled (the default) and this parameter is `true` (the default), GPORCA attempts to run DML commands such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`. If GPORCA cannot run the command, WarehousePG falls back to the Postgres Planner.

When set to `false`, WarehousePG always falls back to the Postgres Planner when performing DML commands.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_enable_indexonlyscan

When GPORCA is enabled (the default) and this parameter is `true` (the default), GPORCA can generate index-only scan plan types for B-tree indexes. GPORCA accesses the index values only, not the data blocks of the relation. This provides a query execution performance improvement, particularly when the table has been vacuumed, has wide columns, and GPORCA does not need to fetch any data blocks (for example, they are visible).

When deactivated ( `false`), GPORCA does not generate index-only scan plan types.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_enable_master_only_queries

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter allows GPORCA to run catalog queries that run only on the WarehousePG coordinator. For the default value `off`, only the Postgres Planner can run catalog queries that run only on the WarehousePG coordinator.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

> **Note** Enabling this parameter decreases performance of short running catalog queries. To avoid this issue, set this parameter only for a session or a query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_enable_multiple_distinct_aggs

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter allows GPORCA to support Multiple Distinct Qualified Aggregates, such as `SELECT count(DISTINCT a),sum(DISTINCT b) FROM foo`. This parameter is deactivated by default because its plan is generally suboptimal in comparison to the plan generated by the Postgres planner.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_enable_orderedagg

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter determines whether or not GPORCA generates a query plan for ordered aggregates. This parameter is deactivated by default; GPORCA does not generate a plan for a query that includes an ordered aggregate, and the query falls back to the Postgres Planner.

You can set this parameter for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

### optimizer_enable_replicated_table

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls GPORCA's behavior when it encounters DML operations on a replicated table.

The default value is `on`, GPORCA attempts to plan and execute operations on replicated tables. When `off`, GPORCA immediately falls back to the Postgres Planner when it detects replicated table operations.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_force_agg_skew_avoidance

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter affects the query plan alternatives that GPORCA considers when 3 stage aggregate plans are generated. When the value is `true`, the default, GPORCA considers only 3 stage aggregate plans where the intermediate aggregation uses the `GROUP BY` and `DISTINCT` columns for distribution to reduce the effects of processing skew.

If the value is `false`, GPORCA can also consider a plan that uses `GROUP BY` columns for distribution. These plans might perform poorly when processing skew is present.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_force_comprehensive_join_implementation

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter affects its consideration of nested loop join and hash join alternatives.

The default value is `false`, GPORCA does not consider nested loop join alternatives when a hash join is available, which significantly improves optimization performance for most queries. When set to `true`, GPORCA will explore nested loop join alternatives even when a hash join is possible.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### optimizer_force_multistage_agg

For the default settings, GPORCA is enabled and this parameter is `false`, GPORCA makes a cost-based choice between a one- or two-stage aggregate plan for a scalar distinct qualified aggregate. When `true`, GPORCA chooses a multi-stage aggregate plan when such a plan alternative is generated.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_force_three_stage_scalar_dqa

For the default settings, GPORCA is enabled and this parameter is `true`, GPORCA chooses a plan with multistage aggregates when such a plan alternative is generated. When the value is `false`, GPORCA makes a cost based choice rather than a heuristic choice.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session, or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_join_arity_for_associativity_commutativity

The value is an optimization hint to limit the number of join associativity and join commutativity transformations explored during query optimization. The limit controls the alternative plans that GPORCA considers during query optimization. For example, the default value of 18 is an optimization hint for GPORCA to stop exploring join associativity and join commutativity transformations when an n-ary join operator has more than 18 children during optimization.

For a query with a large number of joins, specifying a lower value improves query performance by limiting the number of alternate query plans that GPORCA evaluates. However, setting the value too low might cause GPORCA to generate a query plan that performs sub-optimally.

This parameter has no effect when the `optimizer_join_order` parameter is set to `query` or `greedy`.

This parameter can be set for a database system or a session.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 18 | local, system, reload |

### optimizer_join_order

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter sets the join enumeration algorithm:

- `query` - Uses the join order specified in the query.
- `greedy` - Evaluates the join order specified in the query and alternatives based on minimum cardinalities of the relations in the joins.
- `exhaustive` - Applies transformation rules to find and evaluate up to a configurable threshold number ( `optimizer_join_order_threshold`, default 10) of n-way inner joins, and then changes to and uses the `greedy` method beyond that. While planning time drops significantly at that point, plan quality and execution time may get worse.
- `exhaustive2` - Operates with an emphasis on generating join orders that are suitable for dynamic partition elimination. This algorithm applies transformation rules to find and evaluate n-way inner and outer joins. When evaluating very large joins with more than `optimizer_join_order_threshold` (default 10) tables, this algorithm employs a gradual transition to the `greedy` method; planning time goes up smoothly as the query gets more complicated, and plan quality and execution time only gradually degrade. `exhaustive2` provides a good trade-off between planning time and execution time for many queries.

Setting this parameter to `query` or `greedy` can generate a suboptimal query plan. However, if the administrator is confident that a satisfactory plan is generated with the `query` or `greedy` setting, query optimization time may be improved by setting the parameter to the lower optimization level.

When you set this parameter to `query` or `greedy`, GPORCA ignores the `optimizer_join_order_threshold` parameter.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

This parameter can be set for an individual database, a session, or a query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| query<br>greedy<br>exhaustive<br>exhaustive2 | exhaustive | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_join_order_threshold

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter sets the maximum number of join children for which GPORCA will use the dynamic programming-based join ordering algorithm. This threshold restricts the search effort for a join plan to reasonable limits.

GPORCA examines the `optimizer_join_order_threshold` parameter when `optimizer_join_order` is set to `exhaustive` or `exhaustive2`. GPORCA ignores this parameter when `optimizer_join_order` is set to `query` or `greedy`.

You can set this value for a single query or for an entire session.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 12 | 10 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_mdcache_size

Sets the maximum amount of memory on the WarehousePG coordinator that GPORCA uses to cache query metadata (optimization data) during query optimization. The memory limit session based. GPORCA caches query metadata during query optimization with the default settings: GPORCA is enabled and optimizer_metadata_caching is `on`.

The default value is 16384 (16MB). This is an optimal value that has been determined through performance analysis.

You can specify a value in KB, MB, or GB. The default unit is KB. For example, a value of 16384 is 16384KB. A value of 1GB is the same as 1024MB or 1048576KB. If the value is 0, the size of the cache is not limited.

This parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Integer >= 0 | 16384 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_metadata_caching

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter specifies whether GPORCA caches query metadata (optimization data) in memory on the WarehousePG coordinator during query optimization. The default for this parameter is `on`, enable caching. The cache is session based. When a session ends, the cache is released. If the amount of query metadata exceeds the cache size, then old, unused metadata is evicted from the cache.

If the value is `off`, GPORCA does not cache metadata during query optimization.

This parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

The server configuration parameter optimizer_mdcache_size controls the size of the query metadata cache.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_minidump

GPORCA generates minidump files to describe the optimization context for a given query. The information in the file is not in a format that can be easily used for debugging or troubleshooting. The minidump file is located under the coordinator data directory and uses the following naming format:

```
Minidump_date_time.mdp
```

The minidump file contains this query related information:

- Catalog objects including data types, tables, operators, and statistics required by GPORCA
- An internal representation (DXL) of the query
- An internal representation (DXL) of the plan produced by GPORCA
- System configuration information passed to GPORCA such as server configuration parameters, cost and statistics configuration, and number of segments
- A stack trace of errors generated while optimizing the query

Setting this parameter to `ALWAYS` generates a minidump for all queries. Set this parameter to `ONERROR` to minimize total optimization time.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| ONERROR<br>ALWAYS | ONERROR | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_nestloop_factor

This parameter adds a costing factor to GPORCA to prioritize hash joins instead of nested loop joins during query optimization. The default value of 1024 was chosen after evaluating numerous workloads with uniformly distributed data. 1024 should be treated as the practical upper bound setting for this parameter. If you find the GPORCA selects hash joins more often than it should, reduce the value to shift the costing factor in favor of nested loop joins.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| INT_MAX > 1 | 1024 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_parallel_union

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), `optimizer_parallel_union` controls the amount of parallelization that occurs for queries that contain a `UNION` or `UNION ALL` clause.

When the value is `off`, the default, GPORCA generates a query plan where each child of an APPEND(UNION) operator is in the same slice as the APPEND operator. During query execution, the children are run in a sequential manner.

When the value is `on`, GPORCA generates a query plan where a redistribution motion node is under an APPEND(UNION) operator. During query execution, the children and the parent APPEND operator are on different slices, allowing the children of the APPEND(UNION) operator to run in parallel on segment instances.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### optimizer_penalize_skew_broadcast_threshold

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), during query optimization GPORCA penalizes the cost of plans that attempt to broadcast more than the value specified by `optimizer_penalize_broadcast_threshold`. For example, if this parameter is set to 100K rows (the default), any broadcast of more than 100K rows is heavily penalized.

When this parameter is set to `0`, GPORCA sets this broadcast threshold to unlimited and never penalizes a broadcast motion.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer >= 0 | 100K rows | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_penalize_skew

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter allows GPORCA to penalize the local cost of a HashJoin with a skewed Redistribute Motion as child to favor a Broadcast Motion during query optimization. The default value is `true`.

GPORCA determines there is skew for a Redistribute Motion when the NDV (number of distinct values) is less than the number of segments.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_print_missing_stats

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls the display of table column information about columns with missing statistics for a query. The default value is `true`, display the column information to the client. When the value is `false`, the information is not sent to the client.

The information is displayed during query execution, or with the `EXPLAIN` or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` commands.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_print_optimization_stats

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter enables logging of GPORCA query optimization statistics for various optimization stages for a query. The default value is off, do not log optimization statistics. To log the optimization statistics, this parameter must be set to on and the parameter client_min_messages must be set to log.

- `set optimizer_print_optimization_stats = on;`
- `set client_min_messages = 'log';`

The information is logged during query execution, or with the `EXPLAIN` or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` commands.

This parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### optimizer_skew_factor

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), `optimizer_skew_factor` controls skew ratio computation.

The default value is `0`, skew computation is turned off for GPORCA. To enable skew computation, set `optimizer_skew_factor` to a value between `1` and `100`, inclusive.

The larger the `optimizer_skew_factor`, the larger the cost that GPORCA assigns to redistributed hash join, such that GPORCA favors more a broadcast hash join.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 0-100 | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_sort_factor

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), `optimizer_sort_factor` controls the cost factor to apply to sorting operations during query optimization. The default value `1` specifies the default sort cost factor. The value is a ratio of increase or decrease from the default factor. For example, a value of `2.0` sets the cost factor at twice the default, and a value of `0.5` sets the factor at half the default.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session or query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Decimal > 0 | 1 | coordinator, session, reload |

### optimizer_use_gpdb_allocators

When GPORCA is enabled (the default) and this parameter is `true` (the default), GPORCA uses WarehousePG memory management when running queries. When set to `false`, GPORCA uses GPORCA-specific memory management. WarehousePG memory management allows for faster optimization, reduced memory usage during optimization, and improves GPORCA support of vmem limits when compared to GPORCA-specific memory management.

For information about GPORCA, see About GPORCA in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, system, restart |

### optimizer_xform_bind_threshold

When GPORCA is enabled (the default), this parameter controls the maximum number of bindings per transform that GPORCA produces per group expression. Setting this parameter limits the number of alternatives that GPORCA creates, in many cases reducing the optimization time and overall memory usage of queries that include deeply nested expressions.

The default value is `0`, GPORCA produces an unlimited set of bindings.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - INT_MAX | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### password_encryption

When a password is specified in CREATE USER or ALTER USER without writing either ENCRYPTED or UNENCRYPTED, this option determines whether the password is to be encrypted.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### password_hash_algorithm

Specifies the cryptographic hash algorithm that is used when storing an encrypted WarehousePG user password. The default algorithm is MD5.

For information about setting the password hash algorithm to protect user passwords, see Protecting Passwords in WarehousePG.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| MD5 | | |
| SHA-256 | MD5 | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |
| SCRAM-SHA-256 | | |

### plan_cache_mode

Prepared statements (either explicitly prepared or implicitly generated, for example by PL/pgSQL) can be run using *custom* or *generic* plans. Custom plans are created for each execution using its specific set of parameter values, while generic plans do not rely on the parameter values and can be re-used across executions. The use of a generic plan saves planning time, but if the ideal plan depends strongly on the parameter values, then a generic plan might be inefficient. The choice between these options is normally made automatically, but it can be overridden by setting the `plan_cache_mode` parameter. If the prepared statement has no parameters, a generic plan is always used.

The allowed values are `auto` (the default), `force_custom_plan` and `force_generic_plan`. This setting is considered when a cached plan is to be run, not when it is prepared. For more information see PREPARE.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, a session, or a query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| auto | | |
| force_custom_plan | auto | coordinator, session, reload |
| force_generic_plan | | |

### pljava_classpath

A colon ( `:` ) separated list of jar files or directories containing jar files needed for PL/Java functions. The full path to the jar file or directory must be specified, except the path can be omitted for jar files in the `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java` directory. The jar files must be installed in the same locations on all WarehousePG hosts and readable by the `gpadmin` user.

The `pljava_classpath` parameter is used to assemble the PL/Java classpath at the beginning of each user session. Jar files added after a session has started are not available to that session.

If the full path to a jar file is specified in `pljava_classpath` it is added to the PL/Java classpath. When a directory is specified, any jar files the directory contains are added to the PL/Java classpath. The search does not descend into subdirectories of the specified directories. If the name of a jar file is included in `pljava_classpath` with no path, the jar file must be in the `$GPHOME/lib/postgresql/java` directory.

> **Note** Performance can be affected if there are many directories to search or a large number of jar files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If pljava_classpath_insecure is `false`, setting the `pljava_classpath` parameter requires superuser privilege. Setting the classpath in SQL code will fail when the code is run by a user without superuser privilege. The `pljava_classpath` parameter must have been set previously by a superuser or in the `postgresql.conf` file. Changing the classpath in the `postgresql.conf` file requires a reload ( `gpstop -u` ).

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### pljava_classpath_insecure

Controls whether the server configuration parameter pljava_classpath can be set by a user without WarehousePG superuser privileges. When `true`, `pljava_classpath` can be set by a regular user. Otherwise, pljava_classpath can be set only by a database superuser. The default is `false`.

> **Caution** Enabling this parameter exposes a security risk by giving non-administrator database users the ability to run unauthorized Java methods.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### pljava_statement_cache_size

Sets the size in KB of the JRE MRU (Most Recently Used) cache for prepared statements.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 10 | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### pljava_release_lingering_savepoints

If true, lingering savepoints used in PL/Java functions will be released on function exit. If false, savepoints will be rolled back.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### pljava_vmoptions

Defines the startup options for the Java VM. The default value is an empty string ("").

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### port

The database listener port for a WarehousePG instance. The coordinator and each segment has its own port. Port numbers for the WarehousePG cluster must also be changed in the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog. You must shut down your WarehousePG cluster before changing port numbers.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| any valid port number | 5432 | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### quote_all_identifiers

Ensures that all identifiers are quoted, even if they are not keywords, when the database generates SQL. See also the `--quote-all-identifiers` option of pg_dump and pg_dumpall.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | false | local, session, reload |

### random_page_cost

Sets the estimate of the cost of a nonsequentially fetched disk page for the Postgres Planner. This is measured as a multiple of the cost of a sequential page fetch. A higher value makes it more likely a sequential scan will be used, a lower value makes it more likely an index scan will be used.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 100 | coordinator, session, reload |

### readable_external_table_timeout

When an SQL query reads from an external table, the parameter value specifies the amount of time in seconds that WarehousePG waits before cancelling the query when data stops being returned from the external table.

The default value of 0, specifies no time out. WarehousePG does not cancel the query.

If queries that use gpfdist run a long time and then return the error "intermittent network connectivity issues", you can specify a value for `readable_external_table_timeout`. If no data is returned by gpfdist for the specified length of time, WarehousePG cancels the query.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer >= 0 | 0 | coordinator, system, reload |

### repl_catchup_within_range

For WarehousePG coordinator mirroring, controls updates to the active coordinator. If the number of WAL segment files that have not been processed by the `walsender` exceeds this value, WarehousePG updates the active coordinator.

If the number of segment files does not exceed the value, WarehousePG blocks updates to the to allow the `walsender` process the files. If all WAL segments have been processed, the active coordinator is updated.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - 64 | 1 | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### wal_sender_timeout

For WarehousePG coordinator mirroring, sets the maximum time in milliseconds that the `walsender` process on the active coordinator waits for a status message from the `walreceiver` process on the standby coordinator. If a message is not received, the `walsender` logs an error message.

The wal_receiver_status_interval controls the interval between `walreceiver` status messages.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - INT_MAX | 60000 ms (60 seconds) | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### resource_cleanup_gangs_on_wait

> **Note** The `resource_cleanup_gangs_on_wait` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

If a statement is submitted through a resource queue, clean up any idle query executor worker processes before taking a lock on the resource queue.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### resource_select_only

> **Note** The `resource_select_only` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Sets the types of queries managed by resource queues. If set to on, then `SELECT`, `SELECT INTO`, `CREATE TABLE AS SELECT`, and `DECLARE CURSOR` commands are evaluated. If set to off `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands will be evaluated as well.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

### runaway_detector_activation_percent

For queries that are managed by resource queues or resource groups, this parameter determines when WarehousePG terminates running queries based on the amount of memory the queries are using. A value of 100 deactivates the automatic termination of queries based on the percentage of memory that is utilized.

Either the resource queue or the resource group management scheme can be active in WarehousePG; both schemes cannot be active at the same time. The server configuration parameter gp_resource_manager controls which scheme is active.

**When resource queues are enabled -** This parameter sets the percent of utilized WarehousePG vmem memory that triggers the termination of queries. If the percentage of vmem memory that is utilized for a WarehousePG segment exceeds the specified value, WarehousePG terminates queries managed by resource queues based on memory usage, starting with the query consuming the largest amount of memory. Queries are terminated until the percentage of utilized vmem is below the specified percentage.

Specify the maximum vmem value for active WarehousePG segment instances with the server configuration parameter gp_vmem_protect_limit.

For example, if vmem memory is set to 10GB, and this parameter is 90 (90%), WarehousePG starts terminating queries when the utilized vmem memory exceeds 9 GB.

For information about resource queues, see Using Resource Queues.

**When resource groups are enabled -** This parameter sets the percent of utilized resource group global shared memory that triggers the termination of queries that are managed by resource groups that are configured to use the `vmtracker` memory auditor, such as `admin_group` and `default_group`. For information about memory auditors, see Memory Auditor.

Resource groups have a global shared memory pool when the sum of the `MEMORY_LIMIT` attribute values configured for all resource groups is less than 100. For example, if you have 3 resource groups configured with `memory_limit` values of 10 , 20, and 30, then global shared memory is 40% = 100% - (10% + 20% + 30%). See Global Shared Memory.

If the percentage of utilized global shared memory exceeds the specified value, WarehousePG terminates queries based on memory usage, selecting from queries managed by the resource groups that are configured to use the `vmtracker` memory auditor. WarehousePG starts with the query consuming the largest amount of memory. Queries are terminated until the percentage of utilized global shared memory is below the specified percentage.

For example, if global shared memory is 10GB, and this parameter is 90 (90%), WarehousePG starts terminating queries when the utilized global shared memory exceeds 9 GB.

For information about resource groups, see Using Resource Groups.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| percentage (integer) | 90 | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### search_path

Specifies the order in which schemas are searched when an object is referenced by a simple name with no schema component. When there are objects of identical names in different schemas, the one found first in the search path is used. The system catalog schema, *pg_catalog*, is always searched, whether it is mentioned in the path or not. When objects are created without specifying a particular target schema, they will be placed in the first schema listed in the search path. The current effective value of the search path can be examined via the SQL function *current_schema()*. *current_schema()* shows how the requests appearing in *search_path* were resolved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| a comma-separated list of schema names | $user,public | coordinator, session, reload |

### seq_page_cost

For the Postgres Planner, sets the estimate of the cost of a disk page fetch that is part of a series of sequential fetches.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| floating point | 1 | coordinator, session, reload |

### server_encoding

Reports the database encoding (character set). It is determined when the WarehousePG array is initialized. Ordinarily, clients need only be concerned with the value of *client_encoding*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| <system dependent> | UTF8 | read only |

### server_version

Reports the version of PostgreSQL that this release of WarehousePG is based on.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | 9.4.20 | read only |

### server_version_num

Reports the version of PostgreSQL that this release of WarehousePG is based on as an integer.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 90420 | read only |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### shared_buffers

Sets the amount of memory a WarehousePG segment instance uses for shared memory buffers. This setting must be at least 128KB and at least 16KB times max_connections.

Each WarehousePG segment instance calculates and attempts to allocate certain amount of shared memory based on the segment configuration. The value of `shared_buffers` is significant portion of this shared memory calculation, but is not all it. When setting `shared_buffers`, the values for the operating system parameters `SHMMAX` or `SHMALL` might also need to be adjusted.

The operating system parameter `SHMMAX` specifies maximum size of a single shared memory allocation. The value of `SHMMAX` must be greater than this value:

```
`shared_buffers` + <other_seg_shmem>
```

The value of `other_seg_shmem` is the portion the WarehousePG shared memory calculation that is not accounted for by the `shared_buffers` value. The `other_seg_shmem` value will vary based on the segment configuration.

With the default WarehousePG parameter values, the value for `other_seg_shmem` is approximately 111MB for WarehousePG segments and approximately 79MB for the WarehousePG coordinator.

The operating system parameter `SHMALL` specifies the maximum amount of shared memory on the host. The value of `SHMALL` must be greater than this value:

```
(<num_instances_per_host> * ( `shared_buffers` + <other_seg_shmem> )) + <other_app_shared_mem>
```

The value of `other_app_shared_mem` is the amount of shared memory that is used by other applications and processes on the host.

When shared memory allocation errors occur, possible ways to resolve shared memory allocation issues are to increase `SHMMAX` or `SHMALL`, or decrease `shared_buffers` or `max_connections`.

See the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for information about the WarehousePG values for the parameters `SHMMAX` and `SHMALL`.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 16K * *max_connections* | 125MB | local, system, restart |

### shared_preload_libraries

A comma-separated list of shared libraries that are to be preloaded at server start. PostgreSQL procedural language libraries can be preloaded in this way, typically by using the syntax '`$libdir/plXXX`' where XXX is pgsql, perl, tcl, or python. By preloading a shared library, the library startup time is avoided when the library is first used. If a specified library is not found, the server will fail to start.

> **Note** When you add a library to `shared_preload_libraries`, be sure to retain any previous setting of the parameter.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| | | local, system, restart |

### ssl

Enables SSL connections.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### ssl_ciphers

Specifies a list of SSL ciphers that are allowed to be used on secure connections. `ssl_ciphers` *overrides* any ciphers string specified in `/etc/openssl.cnf`. The default value `ALL:!ADH:!LOW:!EXP:!MD5:@STRENGTH` enables all ciphers except for ADH, LOW, EXP, and MD5 ciphers, and prioritizes ciphers by their strength.

> **Note** With TLS 1.2 some ciphers in MEDIUM and HIGH strength still use NULL encryption (no encryption for transport), which the default `ssl_ciphers` string allows. To bypass NULL ciphers with TLS 1.2 use a string such as `TLSv1.2:!eNULL:!aNULL`.

See the openssl manual page for a list of supported ciphers.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | ALL:!ADH:!LOW:!EXP:!MD5:@STRENGTH | coordinator, system, restart |

### standard_conforming_strings

Determines whether ordinary string literals ('...') treat backslashes literally, as specified in the SQL standard. The default value is on. Turn this parameter off to treat backslashes in string literals as escape characters instead of literal backslashes. Applications may check this parameter to determine how string literals are processed. The presence of this parameter can also be taken as an indication that the escape string syntax (E'...') is supported.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | coordinator, session, reload |

### statement_mem

Allocates segment host memory per query. The amount of memory allocated with this parameter cannot exceed max_statement_mem or the memory limit on the resource queue or resource group through which the query was submitted. If additional memory is required for a query, temporary spill files on disk are used.

*If you are using resource groups to control resource allocation in your WarehousePG cluster.*

- WarehousePG uses `statement_mem` to control query memory usage when the resource group `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` is set to 0.
- You can use the following calculation to estimate a reasonable `statement_mem` value:

```
rg_perseg_mem = ((RAM * (vm.overcommit_ratio / 100) + SWAP) * gp_resource_group_memory_limit) /
num_active_primary_segments
statement_mem = rg_perseg_mem / max_expected_concurrent_queries
```

*If you are using resource queues to control resource allocation in your WarehousePG cluster.*

- When gp_resqueue_memory_policy =auto, `statement_mem` and resource queue memory limits control query memory usage.
- You can use the following calculation to estimate a reasonable `statement_mem` value for a wide variety of situations:

```
( <gp_vmem_protect_limit>GB * .9 ) / <max_expected_concurrent_queries>
```

  For example, with a `gp_vmem_protect_limit` set to 8192MB (8GB) and assuming a maximum of 40 concurrent queries with a 10% buffer, you would use the following calculation to determine the `statement_mem` value:

```
(8GB * .9) / 40 = .18GB = 184MB
```

When changing both `max_statement_mem` and `statement_mem`, `max_statement_mem` must be changed first, or listed first in the postgresql.conf file.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 128MB | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### statement_timeout

Abort any statement that takes over the specified number of milliseconds. 0 turns off the limitation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of milliseconds | 0 | coordinator, session, reload |

### stats_queue_level

> **Note** The `stats_queue_level` server configuration parameter is enforced only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

Collects resource queue statistics on database activity.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### superuser_reserved_connections

Determines the number of connection slots that are reserved for WarehousePG superusers.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer < *max_connections* | 10 | local, system, restart |

### tcp_keepalives_count

How many keepalives may be lost before the connection is considered dead. A value of 0 uses the system default. If TCP_KEEPCNT is not supported, this parameter must be 0.

Use this parameter for all connections that are not between a primary and mirror segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of lost keepalives | 0 | local, system, restart |

### tcp_keepalives_idle

Number of seconds between sending keepalives on an otherwise idle connection. A value of 0 uses the system default. If TCP_KEEPIDLE is not supported, this parameter must be 0.

Use this parameter for all connections that are not between a primary and mirror segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of seconds | 0 | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### tcp_keepalives_interval

How many seconds to wait for a response to a keepalive before retransmitting. A value of 0 uses the system default. If TCP_KEEPINTVL is not supported, this parameter must be 0.

Use this parameter for all connections that are not between a primary and mirror segment.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of seconds | 0 | local, system, restart |

### temp_buffers

Sets the maximum memory, in blocks, to allow for temporary buffers by each database session. These are session-local buffers used only for access to temporary tables. The setting can be changed within individual sessions, but only up until the first use of temporary tables within a session. The cost of setting a large value in sessions that do not actually need a lot of temporary buffers is only a buffer descriptor for each block, or about 64 bytes, per increment. However if a buffer is actually used, an additional 32768 bytes will be consumed.

You can set this parameter to the number of 32K blocks (for example, `1024` to allow 32MB for buffers), or specify the maximum amount of memory to allow (for example `'48MB'` for 1536 blocks). The `gpconfig` utility and `SHOW` command report the maximum amount of memory allowed for temporary buffers.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 1024 (32MB) | coordinator, session, reload |

### temp_tablespaces

Specifies tablespaces in which to create temporary objects (temp tables and indexes on temp tables) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace. These tablespaces can also include temporary files for purposes such as large data set sorting.

The value is a comma-separated list of tablespace names. When the list contains more than one tablespace name, WarehousePG chooses a random list member each time it creates a temporary object. An exception applies within a transaction, where successively created temporary objects are placed in successive tablespaces from the list. If the selected element of the list is an empty string, WarehousePG automatically uses the default tablespace of the current database instead.

When setting `temp_tablespaces` interactively, avoid specifying a nonexistent tablespace, or a tablespace for which the user does have `CREATE` privileges. For non-superusers, a superuser must `GRANT` them the `CREATE` privilege on the temp tablespace.. When using a previously set value (for example a value in `postgresql.conf`), nonexistent tablespaces are ignored, as are tablespaces for which the user lacks `CREATE` privilege.

The default value is an empty string, which results in all temporary objects being created in the default tablespace of the current database.

See also default_tablespace.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| one or more tablespace names | unset | coordinator, session, reload |

### TimeZone

Sets the time zone for displaying and interpreting time stamps. The default is to use whatever the system environment specifies as the time zone. SeeDate/Time Keywords in the PostgreSQL documentation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| time zone abbreviation | | local, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### timezone_abbreviations

Sets the collection of time zone abbreviations that will be accepted by the server for date time input. The default is `Default`, which is a collection that works in most of the world. `Australia` and `India`, and other collections can be defined for a particular installation. Possible values are names of configuration files stored in `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/timezonesets/`.

To configure WarehousePG to use a custom collection of timezones, copy the file that contains the timezone definitions to the directory `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/timezonesets/` on the WarehousePG coordinator and segment hosts. Then set value of the server configuration parameter `timezone_abbreviations` to the file. For example, to use a file `custom` that contains the default timezones and the WIB (Waktu Indonesia Barat) timezone.

1. Copy the file `Default` from the directory `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/timezonesets/` the file `custom`. Add the WIB timezone information from the file `Asia.txt` to the `custom`.
2. Copy the file `custom` to the directory `$GPHOME/share/postgresql/timezonesets/` on the WarehousePG coordinator and segment hosts.
3. Set value of the server configuration parameter `timezone_abbreviations` to `custom`.
4. Reload the server configuration file (`gpstop -u`).

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| string | Default | coordinator, session, reload |

### track_activities

Enables the collection of information on the currently executing command of each session, along with the time when that command began execution. The default value is `true`. Only superusers can change this setting. See the pg_stat_activity view.

> **Note** Even when enabled, this information is not visible to all users, only to superusers and the user owning the session being reported on, so it should not represent a security risk.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### track_activity_query_size

Sets the maximum length limit for the query text stored in `query` column of the system catalog view *pg_stat_activity*. The minimum length is 1024 characters.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 1024 | local, system, restart |

### track_counts

Enables the collection of information on the currently executing command of each session, along with the time at which that command began execution.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload, superuser |

### transaction_isolation

Sets the current transaction's isolation level.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| read committed<br>serializable | read committed | coordinator, session, reload |

### transaction_read_only

Sets the current transaction's read-only status.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### transform_null_equals

When on, expressions of the form expr = NULL (or NULL = expr) are treated as expr IS NULL, that is, they return true if expr evaluates to the null value, and false otherwise. The correct SQL-spec-compliant behavior of expr = NULL is to always return null (unknown).

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### unix_socket_directories

Specifies the directory of the UNIX-domain socket on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. Multiple sockets can be created by listing multiple directories separated by commas.

> **Important** Do not change the value of this parameter. The default location is required for WarehousePG utilities.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| directory path | 0777 | local, system, restart |

### unix_socket_group

Sets the owning group of the UNIX-domain socket. By default this is an empty string, which uses the default group for the current user.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| UNIX group name | unset | local, system, restart |

### unix_socket_permissions

Sets the access permissions of the UNIX-domain socket. UNIX-domain sockets use the usual UNIX file system permission set. Note that for a UNIX-domain socket, only write permission matters.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| numeric UNIX file permission mode (as accepted by the *chmod* or *umask* commands) | 0777 | local, system, restart |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### update_process_title

Enables updating of the process title every time a new SQL command is received by the server. The process title is typically viewed by the `ps` command.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | on | local, session, reload |

### vacuum_cost_delay

The length of time that the process will sleep when the cost limit has been exceeded. 0 deactivates the cost-based vacuum delay feature.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| milliseconds < 0 (in multiples of 10) | 0 | local, session, reload |

### vacuum_cost_limit

The accumulated cost that will cause the vacuuming process to sleep.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 200 | local, session, reload |

### vacuum_cost_page_dirty

The estimated cost charged when vacuum modifies a block that was previously clean. It represents the extra I/O required to flush the dirty block out to disk again.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 20 | local, session, reload |

### vacuum_cost_page_hit

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer found in the shared buffer cache. It represents the cost to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table and scan the content of the page.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 1 | local, session, reload |

### vacuum_cost_page_miss

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer that has to be read from disk. This represents the effort to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table, read the desired block in from the disk and scan its content.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer > 0 | 10 | local, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### vacuum_freeze_min_age

Specifies the cutoff age (in transactions) that `VACUUM` should use to decide whether to replace transaction IDs with *FrozenXID* while scanning a table.

For information about `VACUUM` and transaction ID management, see "Managing Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* and the PostgreSQL documentation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 0-100000000000 | 50000000 | local, session, reload |

### validate_previous_free_tid

Enables a test that validates the free tuple ID (TID) list. The list is maintained and used by WarehousePG. WarehousePG determines the validity of the free TID list by ensuring the previous free TID of the current free tuple is a valid free tuple. The default value is `true`, enable the test.

If WarehousePG detects a corruption in the free TID list, the free TID list is rebuilt, a warning is logged, and a warning is returned by queries for which the check failed. WarehousePG attempts to run the queries.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | master, session, reload |

### verify_gpfdists_cert

When a WarehousePG external table is defined with the `gpfdists` protocol to use SSL security, this parameter controls whether SSL certificate authentication is enabled.

Regardless of the setting of this server configuration parameter, WarehousePG always encrypts data that you read from or write to an external table that specifies the `gpfdists` protocol.

The default is `true`, SSL authentication is enabled when WarehousePG communicates with the `gpfdist` utility to either read data from or write data to an external data source.

The value `false` deactivates SSL certificate authentication. These SSL exceptions are ignored:

- The self-signed SSL certificate that is used by `gpfdist` is not trusted by WarehousePG.
- The host name contained in the SSL certificate does not match the host name that is running `gpfdist`.

You can set the value to `false` to deactivate authentication when testing the communication between the WarehousePG external table and the `gpfdist` utility that is serving the external data.

> **Caution** Deactivating SSL certificate authentication exposes a security risk by not validating the `gpfdists` SSL certificate.

For information about the `gpfdists` protocol, see gpfdists:// Protocol. For information about running the `gpfdist` utility, see gpfdist.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | true | coordinator, session, reload |

### vmem_process_interrupt

Enables checking for interrupts before reserving vmem memory for a query during WarehousePG query execution. Before reserving further vmem for a query, check if the current session for the query has a pending query cancellation or other pending interrupts. This ensures more responsive interrupt processing, including query cancellation requests. The default is `off`.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| Boolean | off | coordinator, session, reload |

### wait_for_replication_threshold

When WarehousePG segment mirroring is enabled, specifies the maximum amount of Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)-based records (in KB) written by a transaction on the primary segment instance before the records are written to the mirror segment instance for replication. As the default, WarehousePG writes the records to the mirror segment instance when a checkpoint occurs or the `wait_for_replication_threshold` value is reached.

A value of 0 deactivates the check for the amount of records. The records are written to the mirror segment instance only after a checkpoint occurs.

If you set the value to 0, database performance issues might occur under heavy loads that perform long transactions that do not perform a checkpoint operation.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - MAX-INT / 1024 | 1024 | coordinator, system, reload |

### wal_keep_segments

For WarehousePG coordinator mirroring, sets the maximum number of processed WAL segment files that are saved by the by the active WarehousePG coordinator if a checkpoint operation occurs.

The segment files are used to synchronize the active coordinator on the standby coordinator.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer | 5 | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### wal_receiver_status_interval

For WarehousePG coordinator mirroring, sets the interval in seconds between `walreceiver` process status messages that are sent to the active coordinator. Under heavy loads, the time might be longer.

The value of wal_sender_timeout controls the time that the `walsender` process waits for a `walreceiver` message.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 0- INT_MAX/1000 | 10 sec | coordinator, system, reload, superuser |

### wal_sender_archiving_status_interval

When WarehousePG segment mirroring and archiving is enabled, specifies the interval in milliseconds at which the `walsender` process on the primary segment sends archival status messages to the `walreceiver` process of its corresponding mirror segment.

A value of 0 deactivates this feature.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| 0 - `INT_MAX` | 10000 ms (10 seconds) | local, system, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### work_mem

Sets the maximum amount of memory to be used by a query operation (such as a sort or hash table) before writing to temporary disk files. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default value is 32 MB. Note that for a complex query, several sort or hash operations might be running in parallel; each operation will be allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to write data into temporary files. In addition, several running sessions may be performing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used could be many times the value of `work_mem`; keep this fact in mind when choosing the value for this parameter. Sort operations are used for `ORDER BY`, `DISTINCT`, and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, and hash-based processing of `IN` subqueries. Apart from sorting and hashing, bitmap index scans also rely on `work_mem`. Operations relying on tuplestores such as function scans, CTEs, PL/pgSQL and administration UDFs also rely on `work_mem`.

Apart from assigning memory to specific execution operators, setting `work_mem` also influences certain query plans over others, when the Postgres-based planner is used as the optimizer.

`work_mem` is a distinct memory management concept that does not interact with resource queue or resource group memory controls, which are imposed at the query level.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| number of kilobytes | 32MB | coordinator, session, reload |

### writable_external_table_bufsize

Size of the buffer that WarehousePG uses for network communication, such as the `gpfdist` utility and external web tables (that use http). Valid units are `KB` (as in `128KB`), `MB`, `GB`, and `TB`. WarehousePG stores data in the buffer before writing the data out. For information about `gpfdist`, see the *WarehousePG Utility Guide*.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 32 - 131072 (32KB - 128MB) | 64 | local, session, reload |

### xid_stop_limit

The number of transaction IDs prior to the ID where transaction ID wraparound occurs. When this limit is reached, WarehousePG stops creating new transactions to avoid data loss due to transaction ID wraparound.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 10000000 - INT_MAX | 100000000 | local, system, restart |

### xid_warn_limit

The number of transaction IDs prior to the limit specified by xid_stop_limit. When WarehousePG reaches this limit, it issues a warning to perform a VACUUM operation to avoid data loss due to transaction ID wraparound.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| integer 10000000 - INT_MAX | 500000000 | local, system, restart |

### xmlbinary

Specifies how binary values are encoded in XML data. For example, when `bytea` values are converted to XML. The binary data can be converted to either base64 encoding or hexadecimal encoding. The default is base64.

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| base64<br>hex | base64 | coordinator, session, reload |

### xmloption

Specifies whether XML data is to be considered as an XML document ( `document` ) or XML content fragment ( `content` ) for operations that perform implicit parsing and serialization. The default is `content` .

This parameter affects the validation performed by `xml_is_well_formed()` . If the value is `document` , the function checks for a well-formed XML document. If the value is `content` , the function checks for a well-formed XML content fragment.

> **Note** An XML document that contains a document type declaration (DTD) is not considered a valid XML content fragment. If `xmloption` set to `content` , XML that contains a DTD is not considered valid XML.

To cast a character string that contains a DTD to the `xml` data type, use the `xmlparse` function with the `document` keyword, or change the `xmloption` value to `document` .

The parameter can be set for a database system, an individual database, or a session. The SQL command to set this option for a session is also available in WarehousePG.

```
SET XML OPTION { DOCUMENT | CONTENT }
```

| Value Range | Default | Set Classifications |
|---|---|---|
| document<br>content | content | coordinator, session, reload |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7 WarehousePG Utility Guide

Reference information for WarehousePG utility programs.

- About the WarehousePG Utilities

  General information about using the WarehousePG utility programs.

- Utility Reference

  The command-line utilities provided with WarehousePG.

- Additional Supplied Programs

  Additional programs available in the WarehousePG installation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.1 About the WarehousePG utilities

General information about using the WarehousePG utility programs.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Utility Guide

### Referencing IP Addresses

When you reference IPv6 addresses in WarehousePG utility programs, or when you use numeric IP addresses instead of hostnames in any management utility, always enclose the IP address in brackets. When specifying an IP address at the command line, the best practice is to escape any brackets or enclose them in single quotes. For example, use either:

```
\[2620:0:170:610::11\]
```

Or:

```
'[2620:0:170:610::11]'
```

### Running Backend Server Programs

WarehousePG has modified certain PostgreSQL backend server programs to handle the parallelism and distribution of a WarehousePG cluster. You access these programs only through the WarehousePG management tools and utilities. *Do not run these programs directly.*

The following table identifies certain PostgreSQL backend server programs and the WarehousePG utility command to run instead.

| PostgreSQL Program Name | Description | Use Instead |
|---|---|---|
| `initdb` | This program is called by `gpinitsystem` when initializing a WarehousePG array. It is used internally to create the individual segment instances and the coordinator instance. | gpinitsystem |
| `ipcclean` | Not used in WarehousePG | N/A |
| `pg_basebackup` | This program makes a binary copy of a single database instance. WarehousePG uses it for tasks such as creating a standby coordinator instance, or recovering a mirror segment when a full copy is needed. Do not use this utility to back up WarehousePG segment instances because it does not produce MPP-consistent backups. | gpinitstandby, `[gprecoverseg] (ref/gprecoverseg.html)` |
| `pg_controldata` | Not used in WarehousePG | gpstate |
| `pg_ctl` | This program is called by `gpstart` and `gpstop` when starting or stopping a WarehousePG array. It is used internally to stop and start the individual segment instances and the coordinator instance in parallel and with the correct options. | gpstart, gpstop |
| `pg_resetxlog` | DO NOT USE<br><br>**Caution:** This program might cause data loss or cause data to become unavailable. If this program is used, the WarehousePG cluster is not supported. Thecluster must be reinitialized and restoredby the customer. | N/A |
| `postgres` | The `postgres` executable is the actual PostgreSQL server process that processes queries. | The main `postgres` process (postmaster) creates other `postgres` subprocesses and `postgres` session as needed to handle client connections. |
| `postmaster` | `postmaster` starts the `postgres` database server listener process that accepts client connections. In WarehousePG, a `postgres` database listener process runs on the WarehousePG coordinator Instance and on each Segment Instance. | In WarehousePG, you use gpstart and gpstop to start all postmasters ( `postgres` processes) in the system at once in the correct order and with the correct options. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.2 Additional Supplied Programs

Additional programs available in the WarehousePG installation.

The following PostgreSQL `contrib` server utility programs are installed:

- pg_upgrade - Server program to upgrade a Postgres Database server instance.

  > **Note** `pg_upgrade` is not intended for direct use with WarehousePG 6.

- `pg_upgrade_support` - supporting library for `pg_upgrade`.
- pg_xlogdump - Server utility program to display a human-readable rendering of the write-ahead log of a WarehousePG cluster.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Utility Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3 Utility Reference

The command-line utilities provided with WarehousePG.

WarehousePG uses the standard PostgreSQL client and server programs and provides additional management utilities for administering a distributed WarehousePG DBMS.

Several utilities are installed when you install the WarehousePG server. These utilities reside in `$GPHOME/bin`.

For the `gpbackup` and `gprestore` utilities, see WarehousePG Backup and Restore.

WarehousePG provides the following utility programs. Superscripts identify those utilities that require separate downloads, as well as those utilities that are also installed with the Client and Loader Tools Packages. (See the Note following the table.) All utilities are installed when you install the WarehousePG server, unless specifically identified by a superscript.

- analyzedb
- clusterdb
- createdb
- createuser
- dropdb
- dropuser
- gpactivatestandby
- gpaddmirrors
- gpcheckcat
- gpcheckperf
- gpconfig
- gpdeletesystem
- gpexpand
- gpfdist
- gpinitstandby
- gpinitsystem
- gpload
- gplogfilter
- gpmapreduce
- gpmapreduce.yaml
- gpmovemirrors
- gprecoverseg
- gpreload
- gpscp
- gpssh
- gpssh-exkeys
- gpstart
- gpstate
- gpstop
- pg_config
- pg_dump
- pg_dumpall
- pg_restore
- pgbouncer
- pgbouncer.ini
- psql
- reindexdb
- vacuumdb

Additional utilities may be found at WarehousePG Github Org Repo

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.1 analyzedb

A utility that performs `ANALYZE` operations on tables incrementally and concurrently. For append optimized tables, analyzedb updates statistics only if the statistics are not current.

#### Synopsis

```
analyzedb -d <dbname>
   { -s <schema>  |
   { -t <schema>.<table>
     [ -i <col1>[,<col2>, ...] |
       -x <col1>[,<col2>, ...] ] } |
     { -f | --file} <config-file> }
   [ -l | --list ]
   [ --gen_profile_only ]
   [ -p <parallel-level> ]
   [ --full ]
   [ --skip_root_stats ]
   [ --skip_orca_root_stats ]
   [ -v | --verbose ]
   [ -a ]

analyzedb { --clean_last | --clean_all }
analyzedb --version
analyzedb { -? | -h | --help }
```

#### Description

The analyzedb utility updates statistics on table data for the specified tables in a WarehousePG incrementally and concurrently.

While performing ANALYZE operations, analyzedb creates a snapshot of the table metadata and stores it on disk on the coordinator host. An `ANALYZE` operation is performed only if the table has been modified. If a table or partition has not been modified since the last time it was analyzed, analyzedb automatically skips the table or partition because it already contains up-to-date statistics.

- For append optimized tables, analyzedb updates statistics incrementally, if the statistics are not current. For example, if table data is changed after statistics were collected for the table. If there are no statistics for the table, statistics are collected.
- For heap tables, statistics are always updated.

Specify the `--full` option to update append-optimized table statistics even if the table statistics are current.

By default, analyzedb creates a maximum of 5 concurrent sessions to analyze tables in parallel. For each session, analyzedb issues an ANALYZE command to the database and specifies different table names. The `-p` option controls the maximum number of concurrent sessions.

##### Partitioned Append-Optimized Tables

For a partitioned, append-optimized table, analyzedb checks the partitioned table root partition and leaf partitions. If needed, the utility updates statistics for non-current partitions and the root partition. For information about how statistics are collected for partitioned tables, see ANALYZE.

`analyzedb` must sample additional partitions within a partitioned table when it encounters a stale partition, even when statistics are already collected. Consider it a best practice to run `analyzedb` on the root partition any time that you add a new partition(s) to a partitioned table. This operation both analyzes the child leaf partitions in parallel and merges any updated statistics into the root partition.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

The analyzedb utility updates append optimized table statistics if the table has been modified by DML or DDL commands, including INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE and TRUNCATE. The utility determines if a table has been modified by comparing catalog metadata of tables with the previous snapshot of metadata taken during a previous analyzedb operation. The snapshots of table metadata are stored as state files in the directory `db_analyze/<db_name>/<timestamp>` in the WarehousePG coordinator data directory.

The utility preserves old snapshot information from the past 8 days, and the 3 most recent state directories regardless of age, while all other directories are automatically removed. You can also specify the `--clean_last` or `--clean_all` option to remove state files generated by analyzedb.

If you do not specify a table, set of tables, or schema, the analyzedb utility collects the statistics as needed on all system catalog tables and user-defined tables in the database.

External tables are not affected by analyzedb.

Table names that contain spaces are not supported.

Running the `ANALYZE` command on a table, not using the `analyzedb` utility, does not update the table metadata that the `analyzedb` utility uses to determine whether table statistics are up to date.

### Options

- --clean_last

  Remove the state files generated by last analyzedb operation. All other options except -d are ignored.

- --clean_all

  Remove all the state files generated by analyzedb. All other options except -d are ignored.

- -d dbname

  Specifies the name of the database that contains the tables to be analyzed. If this option is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If `PGDATABASE` is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

- -f config-file | --file config-file

  Text file that contains a list of tables to be analyzed. A relative file path from current directory can be specified.

  The file lists one table per line. Table names must be qualified with a schema name. Optionally, a list of columns can be specified using the -i or -x. No other options are allowed in the file. Other options such as `--full` must be specified on the command line.

  Only one of the options can be used to specify the files to be analyzed: `-f` or `--file`, `-t`, or `-s`.

  When performing ANALYZE operations on multiple tables, analyzedb creates concurrent sessions to analyze tables in parallel. The `-p` option controls the maximum number of concurrent sessions.

  In the following example, the first line performs an ANALYZE operation on the table `public.nation`, the second line performs an ANALYZE operation only on the columns `l_shipdate` and `l_receiptdate` in the table `public.lineitem`.

  ```
  public.nation
  public.lineitem -i l_shipdate,l_receiptdate
  ```

- --full

  Perform an ANALYZE operation on all the specified tables. The operation is performed even if the statistics are up to date.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --gen_profile_only

  Update the `analyzedb` snapshot of table statistics information without performing any `ANALYZE` operations. If other options specify tables or a schema, the utility updates the snapshot information only for the specified tables.

  Specify this option if the `ANALYZE` command was run on database tables and you want to update the `analyzedb` snapshot for the tables.

- -i col1,col2, ...

  Optional. Must be specified with the -t option. For the table specified with the -t option, collect statistics only for the specified columns.

  Only -i, or -x can be specified. Both options cannot be specified.

- -l | --list

  Lists the tables that would have been analyzed with the specified options. The ANALYZE operations are not performed.

- -p parallel-level

  The number of tables that are analyzed in parallel. parallel level can be an integer between 1 and 10, inclusive. Default value is 5.

- --skip_root_stats

  This option is no longer used, you may remove it from your scripts.

- `--skip_orca_root_stats`

  > **Note** Do not use this option if GPORCA is enabled.

  Use this option if you find that `ANALYZE ROOTPARTITION` commands take a very long time to complete.

> **Caution** After you run `analyzedb` with this option, subsequent `analyzedb` executions will not update root partition statistics except when changes have been made to the table.

- -s schema

  Specify a schema to analyze. All tables in the schema will be analyzed. Only a single schema name can be specified on the command line.

  Only one of the options can be used to specify the files to be analyzed: `-f` or `--file` , `-t` , or `-s` .

- -t schema.table

  Collect statistics only on schema.table. The table name must be qualified with a schema name. Only a single table name can be specified on the command line. You can specify the `-f` option to specify multiple tables in a file or the `-s` option to specify all the tables in a schema.

  Only one of these options can be used to specify the files to be analyzed: `-f` or `--file` , `-t` , or `-s` .

- -x col1,col2, ...

  Optional. Must be specified with the -t option. For the table specified with the -t option, exclude statistics collection for the specified columns. Statistics are collected only on the columns that are not listed.

  Only -i, or -x can be specified. Both options cannot be specified.

- -a

  Quiet mode. Do not prompt for user confirmation.

- -h | -? | --help

  Displays the online help.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v | --verbose

  If specified, sets the logging level to verbose to write additional information the log file and to the command line during command execution. The information includes a list of all the tables to be analyzed (including child leaf partitions of partitioned tables). Output also includes the duration of each `ANALYZE` operation.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

### Examples

An example that collects statistics only on a set of table columns. In the database `mytest`, collect statistics on the columns `shipdate` and `receiptdate` in the table `public.orders`:

```
analyzedb -d mytest -t public.orders -i shipdate,receiptdate
```

An example that collects statistics on a table and exclude a set of columns. In the database `mytest`, collect statistics on the table `public.foo`, and do not collect statistics on the columns `bar` and `test2`.

```
analyzedb -d mytest -t public.foo -x bar,test2
```

An example that specifies a file that contains a list of tables. This command collect statistics on the tables listed in the file `analyze-tables` in the database named `mytest`.

```
analyzedb -d mytest -f analyze-tables
```

If you do not specify a table, set of tables, or schema, the analyzedb utility collects the statistics as needed on all catalog tables and user-defined tables in the specified database. This command refreshes table statistics on the system catalog tables and user-defined tables in the database `mytest`.

```
analyzedb -d mytest
```

You can create a PL/Python function to run the `analyzedb` utility as a WarehousePG function. This example `CREATE FUNCTION` command creates a user defined PL/Python function that runs the `analyzedb` utility and displays output on the command line. Specify `analyzedb` options as the function parameter.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION analyzedb(params TEXT)
  RETURNS VOID AS
$BODY$
    import subprocess
    cmd = ['analyzedb', '-a' ] + params.split()
    p = subprocess.Popen(cmd, stdout=subprocess.PIPE, stderr=subprocess.STDOUT)

    # verbose output of process
    for line in iter(p.stdout.readline, ''):
        plpy.info(line);

    p.wait()
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpythonu VOLATILE;
```

When this `SELECT` command is run by the gpadmin user, the `analyzedb` utility performs an analyze operation on the table `public.mytable` that is in the database `mytest`.

```
SELECT analyzedb('-d mytest -t public.mytable') ;
```

> **Note** To create a PL/Python function, the PL/Python procedural language must be registered as a language in the database. For example, this `CREATE LANGUAGE` command run as gpadmin registers PL/Python as an untrusted language:

```
CREATE LANGUAGE plpythonu;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

See Also

ANALYZE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.2 clusterdb

Reclusters tables that were previously clustered with `CLUSTER`.

#### Synopsis

```
clusterdb [<connection-option> ...] [--verbose | -v] [--table | -t <table>] [[--dbname | -d] <dbname]

clusterdb [<connection-option> ...] [--all | -a] [--verbose | -v]

clusterdb -? | --help

clusterdb -V | --version
```

#### Description

To cluster a table means to physically reorder a table on disk according to an index so that index scan operations can access data on disk in a somewhat sequential order, thereby improving index seek performance for queries that use that index.

The `clusterdb` utility will find any tables in a database that have previously been clustered with the `CLUSTER` SQL command, and clusters them again on the same index that was last used. Tables that have never been clustered are not affected.

`clusterdb` is a wrapper around the SQL command `CLUSTER`. Although clustering a table in this way is supported in WarehousePG, it is not recommended because the `CLUSTER` operation itself is extremely slow.

If you do need to order a table in this way to improve your query performance, use a `CREATE TABLE AS` statement to reorder the table on disk rather than using `CLUSTER`. If you do 'cluster' a table in this way, then `clusterdb` would not be relevant.

#### Options

- -a | --all

  Cluster all databases.

- [-d] dbname | [--dbname=]dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to be clustered. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `clusterdb` generates and sends to the server.

- -q | --quiet

  Do not display a response.

- -t table | --table=table

  Cluster the named table only. Multiple tables can be clustered by writing multiple `-t` switches.

- -v | --verbose

  Print detailed information during processing.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -V | --version

  Print the `clusterdb` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `clusterdb` command line arguments, and exit.

#### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --maintenance-db=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to discover what other databases should be clustered. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, and if that does not exist, `template1` will be used.

### Examples

To cluster the database `test`:

```
clusterdb test
```

To cluster a single table `foo` in a database named `xyzzy`:

```
clusterdb --table foo xyzzyb
```

### See Also

CLUSTER

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.3 createdb

Creates a new database.

#### Synopsis

```
createdb [<connection-option> ...] [<option> ...] [<dbname> ['<description>']]

createdb -? | --help

createdb -V | --version
```

#### Description

`createdb` creates a new database in a WarehousePG cluster.

Normally, the database user who runs this command becomes the owner of the new database. However, a different owner can be specified via the `-O` option, if the executing user has appropriate privileges.

`createdb` is a wrapper around the SQL command CREATE DATABASE .

#### Options

- dbname

  The name of the database to be created. The name must be unique among all other databases in the WarehousePG cluster. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGDATABASE` , then `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system user.

- description

  A comment to be associated with the newly created database. Descriptions containing white space must be enclosed in quotes.

- -D tablespace | --tablespace=tablespace

  Specifies the default tablespace for the database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

- -e echo

  Echo the commands that `createdb` generates and sends to the server.

- -E encoding | --encoding encoding

  Character set encoding to use in the new database. Specify a string constant (such as `'UTF8'` ), an integer encoding number, or `DEFAULT` to use the default encoding. See the WarehousePG Reference Guide for information about supported character sets.

- -l locale | --locale locale

  Specifies the locale to be used in this database. This is equivalent to specifying both `--lc-collate` and `--lc-ctype` .

- --lc-collate locale

  Specifies the `LC_COLLATE` setting to be used in this database.

- --lc-ctype locale

  Specifies the `LC_CTYPE` setting to be used in this database.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -O owner | --owner=owner

  The name of the database user who will own the new database. Defaults to the user running this command. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

- -T template | --template=template

  The name of the template from which to create the new database. Defaults to `template1`. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

- -V | --version

  Print the `createdb` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `createdb` command line arguments, and exit.

The options `-D`, `-l`, `-E`, `-O`, and `-T` correspond to options of the underlying SQL command `CREATE DATABASE`; see CREATE DATABASE in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information about them.

#### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --maintenance-db=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to when creating the new database. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used; if that does not exist (or if it is the name of the new database being created), `template1` will be used.

### Examples

To create the database `test` using the default options:

```
createdb test
```

To create the database `demo` using the WarehousePG coordinator on host `gpmaster`, port `54321`, using the `LATIN1` encoding scheme:

```
createdb -p 54321 -h gpmaster -E LATIN1 demo
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE DATABASE, dropdb

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.4 createuser

Creates a new database role.

#### Synopsis

```
createuser [<connection-option> ...] [<role_attribute> ...] [-e] <role_name>

createuser -? | --help

createuser -V | --version
```

#### Description

`createuser` creates a new WarehousePG role. You must be a superuser or have the `CREATEROLE` privilege to create new roles. You must connect to the database as a superuser to create new superusers.

Superusers can bypass all access permission checks within the database, so superuser privileges should not be granted lightly.

`createuser` is a wrapper around the SQL command `CREATE ROLE`.

#### Options

- role_name

  The name of the role to be created. This name must be different from all existing roles in this WarehousePG installation.

- -c number | --connection-limit=number

  Set a maximum number of connections for the new role. The default is to set no limit.

- -d | --createdb

  The new role will be allowed to create databases.

- -D | --no-createdb

  The new role will not be allowed to create databases. This is the default.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `createuser` generates and sends to the server.

- -E | --encrypted

  Encrypts the role's password stored in the database. If not specified, the default password behavior is used.

- -i | --inherit

  The new role will automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of. This is the default.

- -I | --no-inherit

  The new role will not automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --interactive

  Prompt for the user name if none is specified on the command line, and also prompt for whichever of the options `-d` / `-D` , `-r` / `-R` , `-s` / `-S` is not specified on the command line.

- -l | --login

  The new role will be allowed to log in to WarehousePG. This is the default.

- -L | --no-login

  The new role will not be allowed to log in (a group-level role).

- -N | --unencrypted

  Does not encrypt the role's password stored in the database. If not specified, the default password behavior is used.

- -P | --pwprompt

  If given, `createuser` will issue a prompt for the password of the new role. This is not necessary if you do not plan on using password authentication.

- -r | --createrole

  The new role will be allowed to create new roles ( `CREATEROLE` privilege).

- -R | --no-createrole

  The new role will not be allowed to create new roles. This is the default.

- -s | --superuser

  The new role will be a superuser.

- -S | --no-superuser

  The new role will not be a superuser. This is the default.

- -V | --version

  Print the `createuser` version and exit.

- --replication

  The new user will have the `REPLICATION` privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for CREATE ROLE.

- --no-replication

  The new user will not have the `REPLICATION` privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for CREATE ROLE.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `createuser` command line arguments, and exit.

#### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

### Examples

To create a role `joe` on the default database server:

```
$ createuser joe
```

To create a role `joe` on the default database server with prompting for some additional attributes:

```
$ createuser --interactive joe
Shall the new role be a superuser? (y/n) **n**
Shall the new role be allowed to create databases? (y/n) **n**
Shall the new role be allowed to create more new roles? (y/n) **n**
CREATE ROLE
```

To create the same role `joe` using connection options, with attributes explicitly specified, and taking a look at the underlying command:

```
createuser -h masterhost -p 54321 -S -D -R -e joe
CREATE ROLE joe NOSUPERUSER NOCREATEDB NOCREATEROLE INHERIT
LOGIN;
CREATE ROLE
```

To create the role `joe` as a superuser, and assign password `admin123` immediately:

```
createuser -P -s -e joe
Enter password for new role: admin123
Enter it again: admin123
CREATE ROLE joe PASSWORD 'admin123' SUPERUSER CREATEDB
CREATEROLE INHERIT LOGIN;
CREATE ROLE
```

In the above example, the new password is not actually echoed when typed, but we show what was typed for clarity. However the password will appear in the echoed command, as illustrated if the `-e` option is used.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

CREATE ROLE, dropuser

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.5 dropdb

Removes a database.

#### Synopsis

```
dropdb [<connection-option> ...] [-e] [-i] <dbname>

dropdb -? | --help

dropdb -V | --version
```

#### Description

`dropdb` destroys an existing database. The user who runs this command must be a superuser or the owner of the database being dropped.

`dropdb` is a wrapper around the SQL command `DROP DATABASE`. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for information about `DROP DATABASE.`

#### Options

- dbname

  The name of the database to be removed.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `dropdb` generates and sends to the server.

- -i | --interactive

  Issues a verification prompt before doing anything destructive.

- -V | --version

  Print the `dropdb` version and exit.

- --if-exists

  Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `dropdb` command line arguments, and exit.

##### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --maintenance-db=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to in order to drop the target database. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used; if that does not exist (or if it is the name of the database being dropped), `template1` will be used.

### Examples

To destroy the database named `demo` using default connection parameters:

```
dropdb demo
```

To destroy the database named `demo` using connection options, with verification, and a peek at the underlying command:

```
dropdb -p 54321 -h masterhost -i -e demo
Database "demo" will be permanently deleted.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP DATABASE "demo"
DROP DATABASE
```

### See Also

createdb, DROP DATABASE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.6 dropuser

Removes a database role.

#### Synopsis

```
dropuser [<connection-option> ...] [-e] [-i] <role_name>

dropuser -? | --help

dropuser -V | --version
```

#### Description

`dropuser` removes an existing role from WarehousePG. Only superusers and users with the `CREATEROLE` privilege can remove roles. To remove a superuser role, you must yourself be a superuser.

`dropuser` is a wrapper around the SQL command `DROP ROLE`.

#### Options

- role_name

  The name of the role to be removed. You will be prompted for a name if not specified on the command line and the `-i` / `--interactive` option is used.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `dropuser` generates and sends to the server.

- -i | --interactive

  Prompt for confirmation before actually removing the role, and prompt for the role name if none is specified on the command line.

- --if-exists

  Do not throw an error if the user does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

- -V | --version

  Print the `dropuser` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `dropuser` command line arguments, and exit.

##### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

### Examples

To remove the role `joe` using default connection options:

```
dropuser joe
DROP ROLE
```

To remove the role joe using connection options, with verification, and a peek at the underlying command:

```
dropuser -p 54321 -h masterhost -i -e joe
Role "joe" will be permanently removed.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP ROLE "joe"
DROP ROLE
```

### See Also

createuser, DROP ROLE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.7 gpactivatestandby

Activates a standby coordinator host and makes it the active coordinator for the WarehousePG cluster.

#### Synopsis

```
gpactivatestandby [-d <standby_master_datadir>] [-f] [-a] [-q]
    [-l <logfile_directory>]

gpactivatestandby -v

gpactivatestandby -? | -h | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpactivatestandby` utility activates a backup, standby coordinator host and brings it into operation as the active coordinator instance for a WarehousePG cluster. The activated standby coordinator effectively becomes the WarehousePG coordinator, accepting client connections on the coordinator port.

> **NOTE** Before running `gpactivatestandby`, be sure to run `gpstate -f` to confirm that the standby coordinator is synchronized with the current coordinator node. If synchronized, the final line of the `gpstate -f` output will look similar to this: `20230607:06:50:06:004205 gpstate:test1-m:gpadmin-[INFO]:--Sync state: sync`

When you initialize a standby coordinator, the default is to use the same port as the active coordinator. For information about the coordinator port for the standby coordinator, see gpinitstandby.

You must run this utility from the coordinator host you are activating, not the failed coordinator host you are deactivating. Running this utility assumes you have a standby coordinator host configured for the system (see gpinitstandby).

The utility will perform the following steps:

- Stops the synchronization process (`walreceiver`) on the standby coordinator
- Updates the system catalog tables of the standby coordinator using the logs
- Activates the standby coordinator to be the new active coordinator for the system
- Restarts the WarehousePG cluster with the new coordinator host

A backup, standby WarehousePG coordinator host serves as a 'warm standby' in the event of the primary WarehousePG coordinator host becoming non-operational. The standby coordinator is kept up to date by transaction log replication processes (the `walsender` and `walreceiver`), which run on the primary coordinator and standby coordinator hosts and keep the data between the primary and standby coordinator hosts synchronized.

If the primary coordinator fails, the log replication process is shutdown, and the standby coordinator can be activated in its place by using the `gpactivatestandby` utility. Upon activation of the standby coordinator, the replicated logs are used to reconstruct the state of the WarehousePG coordinator host at the time of the last successfully committed transaction.

In order to use `gpactivatestandby` to activate a new primary coordinator host, the coordinator host that was previously serving as the primary coordinator cannot be running. The utility checks for a `postmaster.pid` file in the data directory of the deactivated coordinator host, and if it finds it there, it will assume the old coordinator host is still active. In some cases, you may need to remove the `postmaster.pid` file from the deactivated coordinator host data directory before running `gpactivatestandby` (for example, if the deactivated coordinator host process was terminated unexpectedly).

After activating a standby coordinator, run `ANALYZE` to update the database query statistics. For example:

```
psql <dbname> -c 'ANALYZE;'
```

After you activate the standby coordinator as the primary coordinator, the WarehousePG cluster no longer has a standby coordinator configured. You might want to specify another host to be the new standby with the gpinitstandby utility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Options

- -a (do not prompt)

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation.

- -d standby_master_datadir

  The absolute path of the data directory for the coordinator host you are activating.

  If this option is not specified, `gpactivatestandby` uses the value of the `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` environment variable setting on the coordinator host you are activating. If this option is specified, it overrides any setting of `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`.

  If a directory cannot be determined, the utility returns an error.

- -f (force activation)

  Use this option to force activation of the backup coordinator host. Use this option only if you are sure that the standby and primary coordinator hosts are consistent.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -q (no screen output)

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -v (show utility version)

  Displays the version, status, last updated date, and check sum of this utility.

- -? | -h | --help (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Example

Activate the standby coordinator host and make it the active coordinator instance for a WarehousePG cluster (run from backup coordinator host you are activating):

```
gpactivatestandby -d /gpdata
```

### See Also

gpinitsystem, gpinitstandby

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.8 gpaddmirrors

Adds mirror segments to a WarehousePG cluster that was initially configured without mirroring.

#### Synopsis

```
gpaddmirrors [-p <port_offset>] [-m <datadir_config_file> [-a]] [-s]
   [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-b <segment_batch_size>] [-B <batch_size>] [-l <logfile_directory>]
   [-v] [--hba-hostnames <boolean>]

gpaddmirrors -i <mirror_config_file> [-a] [-d <coordinator_data_directory>]
   [-b <segment_batch_size>] [-B <batch_size>] [-l <logfile_directory>] [-v]

gpaddmirrors -o output_sample_mirror_config> [-s] [-m <datadir_config_file>]

gpaddmirrors -?

gpaddmirrors --version
```

#### Description

The `gpaddmirrors` utility configures mirror segment instances for an existing WarehousePG cluster that was initially configured with primary segment instances only. The utility will create the mirror instances and begin the online replication process between the primary and mirror segment instances. Once all mirrors are synchronized with their primaries, your WarehousePG cluster is fully data redundant.

> **Important** During the online replication process, WarehousePG should be in a quiescent state, workloads and other queries should not be running.

By default, the utility will prompt you for the file system location(s) where it will create the mirror segment data directories. If you do not want to be prompted, you can pass in a file containing the file system locations using the `-m` option.

The mirror locations and ports must be different than your primary segment data locations and ports.

The utility creates a unique data directory for each mirror segment instance in the specified location using the predefined naming convention. There must be the same number of file system locations declared for mirror segment instances as for primary segment instances. It is OK to specify the same directory name multiple times if you want your mirror data directories created in the same location, or you can enter a different data location for each mirror. Enter the absolute path. For example:

```
Enter mirror segment data directory location 1 of 2 > /gpdb/mirror
Enter mirror segment data directory location 2 of 2 > /gpdb/mirror
```

OR

```
Enter mirror segment data directory location 1 of 2 > /gpdb/m1
Enter mirror segment data directory location 2 of 2 > /gpdb/m2
```

Alternatively, you can run the `gpaddmirrors` utility and supply a detailed configuration file using the `-i` option. This is useful if you want your mirror segments on a completely different set of hosts than your primary segments. The format of the mirror configuration file is:

```
<contentID>|<address>|<port>|<data_dir>
```

Where `<contentID>` is the segment instance content ID, `<address>` is the host name or IP address of the segment host, `<port>` is the communication port, and `<data_dir>` is the segment instance data directory.

For example:

```
0|sdw1-1|60000|/gpdata/m1/gp0
1|sdw1-1|60001|/gpdata/m2/gp1
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog table can help you determine your current primary segment configuration so that you can plan your mirror segment configuration. For example, run the following query:

```
=# SELECT dbid, content, address as host_address, port, datadir
   FROM gp_segment_configuration
   ORDER BY dbid;
```

If you are creating mirrors on alternate mirror hosts, the new mirror segment hosts must be pre-installed with the WarehousePG software and configured exactly the same as the existing primary segment hosts.

You must make sure that the user who runs `gpaddmirrors` (the `gpadmin` user) has permissions to write to the data directory locations specified. You may want to create these directories on the segment hosts and `chown` them to the appropriate user before running `gpaddmirrors`.

> **Note** This utility uses secure shell (SSH) connections between systems to perform its tasks. In large WarehousePG deployments, cloud deployments, or deployments with a large number of segments per host, this utility may exceed the host's maximum threshold for unauthenticated connections. Consider updating the SSH `MaxStartups` configuration parameter to increase this threshold. For more information about SSH configuration options, refer to the SSH documentation for your Linux distribution.

### Options

- -a (do not prompt)

  Run in quiet mode - do not prompt for information. Must supply a configuration file with either `-m` or `-i` if this option is used.

- -b segment_batch_size

  The maximum number of segments per host to operate on in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `128`. If not specified, the utility will start recovering up to 64 segments in parallel on each host.

- -B batch_size

  The number of hosts to work on in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start working on up to 16 hosts in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `64`.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  The coordinator data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

- --hba-hostnames boolean

  Optional. Controls whether this utility uses IP addresses or host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file when updating this file with addresses that can connect to WarehousePG. When set to 0 -- the default value -- this utility uses IP addresses when updating this file. When set to 1, this utility uses host names when updating this file. For consistency, use the same value that was specified for `HBA_HOSTNAMES` when the WarehousePG cluster was initialized. For information about how WarehousePG resolves host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file, see Configuring Client Authentication.

- -i mirror_config_file

  A configuration file containing one line for each mirror segment you want to create. You must have one mirror segment instance listed for each primary segment in the system. The format of this file is as follows (as per attributes in the gp_segment_configuration catalog table):

  ```
  <contentID>|<address>|<port>|<data_dir>
  ```

  Where `<contentID>` is the segment instance content ID, `<address>` is the hostname or IP address of the segment host, `<port>` is the communication port, and `<data_dir>` is the segment instance data directory. For information about using a hostname or IP address, seeSpecifying Hosts using Hostnames or IP Addresses. Also, see Using Host Systems with Multiple NICs.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -m datadir_config_file

  A configuration file containing a list of file system locations where the mirror data directories will be created. If not supplied, the utility prompts you for locations. Each line in the file specifies a mirror data directory location. For example:

  ```
  /gpdata/m1
  /gpdata/m2
  /gpdata/m3
  /gpdata/m4
  ```

- -o output_sample_mirror_config

  If you are not sure how to lay out the mirror configuration file used by the `-i` option, you can run `gpaddmirrors` with this option to generate a sample mirror configuration file based on your primary segment configuration. The utility will prompt you for your mirror segment data directory locations (unless you provide these in a file using `-m`). You can then edit this file to change the host names to alternate mirror hosts if necessary.

- -p port_offset

  Optional. This number is used to calculate the database ports used for mirror segments. The default offset is 1000. Mirror port assignments are calculated as follows:

  ```
  primary_port + offset = mirror_database_port
  ```

  For example, if a primary segment has port 50001, then its mirror will use a database port of 51001, by default.

- -s (spread mirrors)

  Spreads the mirror segments across the available hosts. The default is to group a set of mirror segments together on an alternate host from their primary segment set. Mirror spreading will place each mirror on a different host within the WarehousePG array. Spreading is only allowed if there is a sufficient number of hosts in the array (number of hosts is greater than the number of segment instances per host).

- -v (verbose)

  Sets logging output to verbose.

- --version (show utility version)

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Specifying Hosts using Hostnames or IP Addresses

When specifying a mirroring configuration using the `gpaddmirrors` option `-i`, you can specify either a hostname or an IP address for the <address> value.

- If you specify a hostname, the resolution of the hostname to an IP address should be done locally for security. For example, you should use entries in a local `/etc/hosts` file to map the hostname to an IP address. The resolution of a hostname to an IP address should not be performed by an external service such as a public DNS server. You must stop the WarehousePG cluster before you change the mapping of a hostname to a different IP address.
- If you specify an IP address, the address should not be changed after the initial configuration. When segment mirroring is enabled, replication from the primary to the mirror segment will fail if the IP address changes from the configured value. For this reason, you should use a hostname when enabling mirroring using the `-i` option unless you have a specific requirement to use IP addresses.

When enabling a mirroring configuration that adds hosts to the WarehousePG cluster, `gpaddmirrors` populates the gp_segment_configuration catalog table with the mirror segment instance information. WarehousePG uses the address value of the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table when looking up host systems for WarehousePG interconnect (internal) communication between the coordinator and segment instances and between segment instances, and for other internal communication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Using Host Systems with Multiple NICs

If hosts systems are configured with multiple NICs, you can initialize a WarehousePG cluster to use each NIC as a WarehousePG host system. You must ensure that the host systems are configured with sufficient resources to support all the segment instances being added to the host. Also, if you enable segment mirroring, you must ensure that the WarehousePG cluster configuration supports failover if a host system fails. For information about WarehousePG mirroring schemes, see Segment Mirroring Configurations.

For example, this is a segment instance configuration for a simple WarehousePG cluster. The segment host `gp6m` is configured with two NICs, `gp6m-1` and `gp6m-2`, where the WarehousePG cluster uses `gp6m-1` for the coordinator segment and `gp6m-2` for segment instances.

```
select content, role, port, hostname, address from gp_segment_configuration ;

 content | role | port  | hostname | address
---------+------+-------+----------+----------
      -1 | p    |  5432 | gp6m     | gp6m-1
       0 | p    | 40000 | gp6m     | gp6m-2
       0 | m    | 50000 | gp6s     | gp6s
       1 | p    | 40000 | gp6s     | gp6s
       1 | m    | 50000 | gp6m     | gp6m-2
(5 rows)
```

### Examples

Add mirroring to an existing WarehousePG cluster using the same set of hosts as your primary data. Calculate the mirror database ports by adding 100 to the current primary segment port numbers:

```
$ gpaddmirrors -p 100
```

Generate a sample mirror configuration file with the `-o` option to use with `gpaddmirrors -i`:

```
$ gpaddmirrors -o /home/gpadmin/sample_mirror_config
```

Add mirroring to an existing WarehousePG cluster using a different set of hosts from your primary data:

```
$ gpaddmirrors -i mirror_config_file
```

Where `mirror_config_file` looks something like this:

```
0|sdw1-1|52001|/gpdata/m1/gp0
1|sdw1-2|52002|/gpdata/m2/gp1
2|sdw2-1|52001|/gpdata/m1/gp2
3|sdw2-2|52002|/gpdata/m2/gp3
```

### See Also

gpinitsystem, gpinitstandby, gpactivatestandby

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.9 gpcheckcat

The `gpcheckcat` utility tests WarehousePG catalog tables for inconsistencies.

The utility is in `$GPHOME/bin/lib`.

#### Synopsis

```
gpcheckcat [ <options<] [ <dbname>]

  Options:
     -g <dir>
     -p <port>
     -s <test_name | 'test_name1, test_name2 [, ...]'>
     -P <password>
     -U <user_name>
     -S {none | only}
     -O
     -R <test_name | 'test_name1, test_name2 [, ...]'>
     -C <catalog_name>
     -B <parallel_processes>
     -v
     -A
     -x "<parameter_name>=<value>"

gpcheckcat  -l

gpcheckcat -? | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpcheckcat` utility runs multiple tests that check for database catalog inconsistencies. Some of the tests cannot be run concurrently with other workload statements or the results will not be usable. Restart the database in restricted mode when running `gpcheckcat`, otherwise `gpcheckcat` might report inconsistencies due to ongoing database operations rather than the actual number of inconsistencies. If you run `gpcheckcat` without stopping database activity, run it with `-O` option.

> **Note** Any time you run the utility, it checks for and deletes orphaned, temporary database schemas (temporary schemas without a session ID) in the specified databases. The utility displays the results of the orphaned, temporary schema check on the command line and also logs the results.

Catalog inconsistencies are inconsistencies that occur between WarehousePG cluster tables. In general, there are three types of inconsistencies:

- Inconsistencies in system tables at the segment level. For example, an inconsistency between a system table that contains table data and a system table that contains column data. As another, a system table that contains duplicates in a column that should to be unique.
- Inconsistencies between same system table across segments. For example, a system table is missing row on one segment, but other segments have this row. As another example, the values of specific row column data are different across segments, such as table owner or table access privileges.
- Inconsistency between a catalog table and the filesystem. For example, a file exists in database directory, but there is no entry for it in the pg_class table.

#### Options

- -A

  Run `gpcheckcat` on all databases in the WarehousePG installation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -B <parallel_processes>

  The number of processes to run in parallel.

  The `gpcheckcat` utility attempts to determine the number of simultaneous processes (the batch size) to use. The utility assumes it can use a buffer with a minimum of 20MB for each process. The maximum number of parallel processes is the number of WarehousePG segment instances. The utility displays the number of parallel processes that it uses when it starts checking the catalog.

  > **Note** The utility might run out of memory if the number of errors returned exceeds the buffer size. If an out of memory error occurs, you can lower the batch size with the `-B` option. For example, if the utility displays a batch size of 936 and runs out of memory, you can specify `-B 468` to run 468 processes in parallel.

- -C catalog_table

  Run cross consistency, foreign key, and ACL tests for the specified catalog table.

- -g data_directory

  Generate SQL scripts to fix catalog inconsistencies. The scripts are placed in data_directory.

- -l

  List the `gpcheckcat` tests.

- -O

  Run only the `gpcheckcat` tests that can be run in online (not restricted) mode.

- -p port

  This option specifies the port that is used by the WarehousePG.

- -P password

  The password of the user connecting to WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -R test_name | 'test_name1,test_name2 [, ...]'

  Specify one or more tests to run. Specify multiple tests as a comma-delimited list of test names enclosed in quotes.

  Some tests can be run only when WarehousePG is in restricted mode.

  These are the tests that can be performed:

  `acl` - Cross consistency check for access control privileges

  `aoseg_table` - Check that the vertical partition information (vpinfo) on segment instances is consistent with `pg_attribute` (checks only append-optimized, column storage tables in the database)

  `duplicate` - Check for duplicate entries

  `foreign_key` - Check foreign keys

  `inconsistent` - Cross consistency check for coordinator segment inconsistency

  `missing_extraneous` - Cross consistency check for missing or extraneous entries

  `mix_distribution_policy` - Check `pg_opclass` and `pg_amproc` to identify tables using a mix of legacy and non-legacy hashops in their distribution policies.

  `owner` - Check table ownership that is inconsistent with the coordinator database

  `orphaned_toast_tables` - Check for orphaned TOAST tables.

  > **Note** There are several ways a TOAST table can become orphaned where a repair script cannot be generated and a manual catalog change is required. One way is if the `reltoastrelid` entry in *pg_class* points to an incorrect TOAST table (a TOAST table mismatch). Another way is if both the `reltoastrelid` in *pg_class* is missing and the `pg_depend` entry is missing (a double orphan TOAST table). If a manual catalog change is needed, `gpcheckcat` will display detailed steps you can follow to update the catalog.

  `part_integrity` - Check *pg_partition* branch integrity, partition with OIDs, partition distribution policy

  `part_constraint` - Check constraints on partitioned tables

  `unique_index_violation` - Check tables that have columns with the unique index constraint for duplicate entries

  `dependency` - Check for dependency on non-existent objects (restricted mode only)

  `distribution_policy` - Check constraints on randomly distributed tables (restricted mode only)

  `namespace` - Check for schemas with a missing schema definition (restricted mode only)

  `pgclass` - Check *pg_class* entry that does not have any corresponding *pg_attribute* entry (restricted mode only)

- -s `test_name | 'test_name1, test_name2 [, ...]'`

  Specify one ore more tests to skip. Specify multiple tests as a comma-delimited list of test names enclosed in quotes.

- -S {none | only}

  Specify this option to control the testing of catalog tables that are shared across all databases in the WarehousePG installation, such as *pg_database*.

  The value `none` deactivates testing of shared catalog tables. The value `only` tests only the shared catalog tables.

- -U user_name

  The user connecting to WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -? | --help

  Displays the online help.

- -v (verbose)

  Displays detailed information about the tests that are performed.

- -x "<parameter_name>="

  Set a server configuration parameter, such as `log_min_messages`, at a session level. To set multiple configuration parameters, use the `-x` option multiple times.

### Notes

The utility identifies tables with missing attributes and displays them in various locations in the output and in a non-standardized format. The utility also displays a summary list of tables with missing attributes in the format `<database>. <schema>. <table>. <segment_id>` after the output information is displayed.

If `gpcheckcat` detects inconsistent OID (Object ID) information, it generates one or more verification files that contain an SQL query. You can run the SQL query to see details about the OID inconsistencies and investigate the inconsistencies. The files are generated in the directory where `gpcheckcat` is invoked.

This is the format of the file:

```
gpcheckcat.verify.dbname.catalog\_table\_name.test\_name.TIMESTAMP.sql
```

This is an example verification filename created by `gpcheckcat` when it detects inconsistent OID (Object ID) information in the catalog table *pg_type* in the database `mydb`:

```
gpcheckcat.verify.mydb.pg_type.missing_extraneous.20150420102715.sql
```

This is an example query from a verification file:

```
SELECT *
  FROM (
       SELECT relname, oid FROM pg_class WHERE reltype
         IN (1305822,1301043,1301069,1301095)
       UNION ALL
       SELECT relname, oid FROM gp_dist_random('pg_class') WHERE reltype
         IN (1305822,1301043,1301069,1301095)
       ) alltyprelids
  GROUP BY relname, oid ORDER BY count(*) desc ;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.10 gpcheckperf

Verifies the baseline hardware performance of the specified hosts.

#### Synopsis

```
gpcheckperf -d <test_directory> [-d <test_directory> ...]
    {-f <hostfile_gpcheckperf> | - h <hostname> [-h hostname ...]}
    [-r ds] [-B <block_size>] [-S <file_size>] [--buffer-size <buffer_size>] [-D] [-v|-V]

gpcheckperf -d <temp_directory>
    {-f <hostfile_gpchecknet> | - h <hostname> [-h< hostname> ...]}
    [ -r n|N|M [--duration <time>] [--netperf] ] [-D] [-v | -V]

gpcheckperf -?

gpcheckperf --version
```

#### Description

The `gpcheckperf` utility starts a session on the specified hosts and runs the following performance tests:

- **Disk I/O Test (dd test)** — To test the sequential throughput performance of a logical disk or file system, the utility uses the **dd** command, which is a standard UNIX utility. It times how long it takes to write and read a large file to and from disk and calculates your disk I/O performance in megabytes (MB) per second. By default, the file size that is used for the test is calculated at two times the total random access memory (RAM) on the host. This ensures that the test is truly testing disk I/O and not using the memory cache.
- **Memory Bandwidth Test (stream)** — To test memory bandwidth, the utility uses the STREAM benchmark program to measure sustainable memory bandwidth (in MB/s). This tests that your system is not limited in performance by the memory bandwidth of the system in relation to the computational performance of the CPU. In applications where the data set is large (as in WarehousePG), low memory bandwidth is a major performance issue. If memory bandwidth is significantly lower than the theoretical bandwidth of the CPU, then it can cause the CPU to spend significant amounts of time waiting for data to arrive from system memory.
- **Network Performance Test (gpnetbench*)** — To test network performance (and thereby the performance of the WarehousePG interconnect), the utility runs a network benchmark program that transfers a 5 second stream of data from the current host to each remote host included in the test. The data is transferred in parallel to each remote host and the minimum, maximum, average and median network transfer rates are reported in megabytes (MB) per second. If the summary transfer rate is slower than expected (less than 100 MB/s), you can run the network test serially using the `-r n` option to obtain per-host results. To run a full-matrix bandwidth test, you can specify `-r M` which will cause every host to send and receive data from every other host specified. This test is best used to validate if the switch fabric can tolerate a full-matrix workload.

To specify the hosts to test, use the `-f` option to specify a file containing a list of host names, or use the `-h` option to name single host names on the command-line. If running the network performance test, all entries in the host file must be for network interfaces within the same subnet. If your segment hosts have multiple network interfaces configured on different subnets, run the network test once for each subnet.

You must also specify at least one test directory (with `-d`). The user who runs `gpcheckperf` must have write access to the specified test directories on all remote hosts. For the disk I/O test, the test directories should correspond to your segment data directories (primary and/or mirrors). For the memory bandwidth and network tests, a temporary directory is required for the test program files.

Before using `gpcheckperf`, you must have a trusted host setup between the hosts involved in the performance test. You can use the utility `gpssh-exkeys` to update the known host files and exchange public keys between hosts if you have not done so already. Note that `gpcheckperf` calls to `gpssh` and `gpscp`, so these WarehousePG utilities must also be in your `$PATH`.

#### Options

- -B block_size

  Specifies the block size (in KB or MB) to use for disk I/O test. The default is 32KB, which is the same as the WarehousePG page size. The maximum block size is 1 MB.

- --buffer-size buffer_size

  Specifies the size of the send buffer in kilobytes. Default size is 32 kilobytes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -d test_directory

  For the disk I/O test, specifies the file system directory locations to test. You must have write access to the test directory on all hosts involved in the performance test. You can use the `-d` option multiple times to specify multiple test directories (for example, to test disk I/O of your primary and mirror data directories).

- -d temp_directory

  For the network and stream tests, specifies a single directory where the test program files will be copied for the duration of the test. You must have write access to this directory on all hosts involved in the test.

- -D (display per-host results)

  Reports performance results for each host for the disk I/O tests. The default is to report results for just the hosts with the minimum and maximum performance, as well as the total and average performance of all hosts.

- --duration time

  Specifies the duration of the network test in seconds (s), minutes (m), hours (h), or days (d). The default is 15 seconds.

- -f hostfile_gpcheckperf

  For the disk I/O and stream tests, specifies the name of a file that contains one host name per host that will participate in the performance test. The host name is required, and you can optionally specify an alternate user name and/or SSH port number per host. The syntax of the host file is one host per line as follows:

  ```
  [<username>@]<hostname>[:<ssh_port>]
  ```

- -f hostfile_gpchecknet

  For the network performance test, all entries in the host file must be for host addresses within the same subnet. If your segment hosts have multiple network interfaces configured on different subnets, run the network test once for each subnet. For example (a host file containing segment host address names for interconnect subnet 1):

  ```
  sdw1-1
  sdw2-1
  sdw3-1
  ```

- -h hostname

  Specifies a single host name (or host address) that will participate in the performance test. You can use the `-h` option multiple times to specify multiple host names.

- --netperf

  Specifies that the `netperf` binary should be used to perform the network test instead of the WarehousePG network test. To use this option, you must download `netperf` from https://github.com/HewlettPackard/netperf and install it into `$GPHOME/bin/lib` on all WarehousePG hosts (coordinator and segments).

- -r ds{n|N|M}

  Specifies which performance tests to run. The default is `dsn`:

  - Disk I/O test ( `d` )
  - Stream test ( `s` )
  - Network performance test in sequential ( `n` ), parallel ( `N` ), or full-matrix ( `M` ) mode. The optional `--duration` option specifies how long (in seconds) to run the network test. To use the parallel ( `N` ) mode, you must run the test on an even number of hosts.

    If you would rather use `netperf` (https://github.com/HewlettPackard/netperf) instead of the WarehousePG network test, you can download it and install it into `$GPHOME/bin/lib` on all WarehousePG hosts (coordinator and segments). You would then specify the optional `--netperf` option to use the `netperf` binary instead of the default `gpnetbench*` utilities.

- -S file_size

  Specifies the total file size to be used for the disk I/O test for all directories specified with `-d` . file_size should equal two times total RAM on the host. If not specified, the default is calculated at two times the total RAM on the host where `gpcheckperf` is run. This ensures that the test is truly testing disk I/O and not using the memory cache. You can specify sizing in KB, MB, or GB.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v (verbose) | -V (very verbose)

  Verbose mode shows progress and status messages of the performance tests as they are run. Very verbose mode shows all output messages generated by this utility.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Run the disk I/O and memory bandwidth tests on all the hosts in the file host_file using the test directory of /data1 and /data2:

```
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpcheckperf -d /data1 -d /data2 -r ds
```

Run only the disk I/O test on the hosts named sdw1 and sdw2using the test directory of /data1. Show individual host results and run in verbose mode:

```
$ gpcheckperf -h sdw1 -h sdw2 -d /data1 -r d -D -v
```

Run the parallel network test using the test directory of /tmp, where hostfile_gpcheck_ic* specifies all network interface host address names within the same interconnect subnet:

```
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic1 -r N -d /tmp
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic2 -r N -d /tmp
```

Run the same test as above, but use `netperf` instead of the WarehousePG network test (note that `netperf` must be installed in `$GPHOME/bin/lib` on all WarehousePG hosts):

```
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic1 -r N --netperf -d /tmp
$ gpcheckperf -f hostfile_gpchecknet_ic2 -r N --netperf -d /tmp
```

### See Also

gpssh, gpscp

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.11 gpconfig

Sets server configuration parameters on all segments within a WarehousePG cluster.

#### Synopsis

```
gpconfig -c <param_name> -v <value> [-m <master_value> | --masteronly]
       | -r <param_name> [--masteronly]
       | -l
       [--skipvalidation] [--verbose] [--debug]

gpconfig -s <param_name> [--file | --file-compare] [--verbose] [--debug]

gpconfig --help
```

#### Description

The `gpconfig` utility allows you to set, unset, or view configuration parameters from the `postgresql.conf` files of all instances (coordinator, segments, and mirrors) in your WarehousePG cluster. When setting a parameter, you can also specify a different value for the coordinator if necessary. For example, parameters such as `max_connections` require a different setting on the coordinator than what is used for the segments. If you want to set or unset a global or coordinator only parameter, use the `--masteronly` option.

> **Note** For configuration parameters of vartype `string`, you may not pass values enclosed in single quotes to `gpconfig -c`.

`gpconfig` can only be used to manage certain parameters. For example, you cannot use it to set parameters such as `port`, which is required to be distinct for every segment instance. Use the `-l` (list) option to see a complete list of configuration parameters supported by `gpconfig`.

When `gpconfig` sets a configuration parameter in a segment `postgresql.conf` file, the new parameter setting always displays at the bottom of the file. When you use `gpconfig` to remove a configuration parameter setting, `gpconfig` comments out the parameter in all segment `postgresql.conf` files, thereby restoring the system default setting. For example, if you use `gpconfig` to remove (comment out) a parameter and later add it back (set a new value), there will be two instances of the parameter; one that is commented out, and one that is enabled and inserted at the bottom of the `postgresql.conf` file.

After setting a parameter, you must restart your WarehousePG cluster or reload the `postgresql.conf` files in order for the change to take effect. Whether you require a restart or a reload depends on the parameter.

For more information about the server configuration parameters, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

To show the currently set values for a parameter across the system, use the `-s` option.

`gpconfig` uses the following environment variables to connect to the WarehousePG coordinator instance and obtain system configuration information:

- `PGHOST`
- `PGPORT`
- `PGUSER`
- `PGPASSWORD`
- `PGDATABASE`

#### Options

- -c | --change param_name

  Changes a configuration parameter setting by adding the new setting to the bottom of the `postgresql.conf` files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v | --value value

  The value to use for the configuration parameter you specified with the `-c` option. By default, this value is applied to all segments, their mirrors, the coordinator, and the standby coordinator.

  The utility correctly quotes the value when adding the setting to the `postgresql.conf` files.

  To set the value to an empty string, enter empty single quotes ( `''` ).

- -m | --mastervalue coordinator_value

  The coordinator value to use for the configuration parameter you specified with the `-c` option. If specified, this value only applies to the coordinator and standby coordinator. This option can only be used with `-v` .

- --masteronly

  When specified, `gpconfig` will only edit the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file.

- -r | --remove param_name

  Removes a configuration parameter setting by commenting out the entry in the `postgresql.conf` files.

- -l | --list

  Lists all configuration parameters supported by the `gpconfig` utility.

- -s | --show param_name

  Shows the value for a configuration parameter used on all instances (coordinator and segments) in the WarehousePG cluster. If there is a difference in a parameter value among the instances, the utility displays an error message. Running `gpconfig` with the `-s` option reads parameter values directly from the database, and not the `postgresql.conf` file. If you are using `gpconfig` to set configuration parameters across all segments, then running `gpconfig -s` to verify the changes, you might still see the previous (old) values. You must reload the configuration files ( `gpstop -u` ) or restart the system ( `gpstop -r` ) for changes to take effect.

- --file

  For a configuration parameter, shows the value from the `postgresql.conf` file on all instances (coordinator and segments) in the WarehousePG cluster. If there is a difference in a parameter value among the instances, the utility displays a message. Must be specified with the `-s` option.

  For example, the configuration parameter `statement_mem` is set to 64MB for a user with the `ALTER ROLE` command, and the value in the `postgresql.conf` file is 128MB. Running the command `gpconfig -s statement_mem --file` displays 128MB. The command `gpconfig -s statement_mem` run by the user displays 64MB.

  Not valid with the `--file-compare` option.

- --file-compare

  For a configuration parameter, compares the current WarehousePG value with the value in the `postgresql.conf` files on hosts (coordinator and segments). The values in the `postgresql.conf files` represent the value when WarehousePG is restarted.

  If the values are not the same, the utility displays the values from all hosts. If all hosts have the same value, the utility displays a summary report.

  Not valid with the `--file` option.

- --skipvalidation

  Overrides the system validation checks of `gpconfig` and allows you to operate on any server configuration parameter, including hidden parameters and restricted parameters that cannot be changed by `gpconfig` . When used with the `-l` option (list), it shows the list of restricted parameters.

> **Caution** Use extreme caution when setting configuration parameters with this option.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --verbose

  Displays additional log information during `gpconfig` command execution.

- --debug

  Sets logging output to debug level.

- -? | -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Set the `max_connections` setting to 100 on all segments and 10 on the coordinator:

```
gpconfig -c max_connections -v 100 -m 10
```

These examples shows the syntax required due to bash shell string processing.

```
gpconfig -c search_path -v '"\$user",public'
gpconfig -c dynamic_library_path -v '\$libdir'
```

The configuration parameters are added to the `postgresql.conf` file.

```
search_path='"$user",public'
dynamic_library_path='$libdir'
```

Comment out all instances of the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter, and restore the system default:

```
gpconfig -r default_statistics_target
```

List all configuration parameters supported by `gpconfig`:

```
gpconfig -l
```

Show the values of a particular configuration parameter across the system:

```
gpconfig -s max_connections
```

### See Also

gpstop

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.12 gpdeletesystem

Deletes a WarehousePG cluster that was initialized using `gpinitsystem`.

#### Synopsis

```
gpdeletesystem [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-B <parallel_processes>]
   [-f] [-l <logfile_directory>] [-D]

gpdeletesystem -?

gpdeletesystem -v
```

#### Description

The `gpdeletesystem` utility performs the following actions:

- Stop all `postgres` processes (the segment instances and coordinator instance).
- Deletes all data directories.

Before running `gpdeletesystem`:

- Move any backup files out of the coordinator and segment data directories.
- Make sure that WarehousePG is running.
- If you are currently in a segment data directory, change directory to another location. The utility fails with an error when run from within a segment data directory.

This utility will not uninstall the WarehousePG software.

#### Options

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  Specifies the coordinator host data directory. If this option is not specified, the setting for the environment variable `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` is used. If this option is specified, it overrides any setting of `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`. If coordinator_data_directory cannot be determined, the utility returns an error.

- -B parallel_processes

  The number of segments to delete in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start up to 60 parallel processes depending on how many segment instances it needs to delete.

- -f (force)

  Force a delete even if backup files are found in the data directories. The default is to not delete WarehousePG instances if backup files are present.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -D (debug)

  Sets logging level to debug.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v (show utility version)

  Displays the version, status, last updated date, and check sum of this utility.

### Examples

Delete a WarehousePG cluster:

```
gpdeletesystem -d /gpdata/gp-1
```

Delete a WarehousePG cluster even if backup files are present:

```
gpdeletesystem -d /gpdata/gp-1 -f
```

### See Also

gpinitsystem

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.13 gpexpand

Expands an existing WarehousePG across new hosts in the system.

#### Synopsis

```
gpexpand [{-f|--hosts-file} <hosts_file>]
        | {-i|--input} <input_file> [-B <batch_size>]
        | [{-d | --duration} <hh:mm:ss> | {-e|--end} '<YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss>']
          [-a|-analyze]
          [-n  <parallel_processes>]
        | {-r|--rollback}
        | {-c|--clean}
        [-v|--verbose] [-s|--silent]
        [{-t|--tardir} <directory> ]
        [-S|--simple-progress ]

gpexpand -? | -h | --help

gpexpand --version
```

#### Prerequisites

- You are logged in as the WarehousePG superuser ( `gpadmin` ).
- The new segment hosts have been installed and configured as per the existing segment hosts. This involves:
  - Configuring the hardware and OS
  - Installing the WarehousePG software
  - Creating the `gpadmin` user account
  - Exchanging SSH keys.

- Enough disk space on your segment hosts to temporarily hold a copy of your largest table.
- When redistributing data, WarehousePG must be running in production mode. WarehousePG cannot be running in restricted mode or in coordinator mode. The `gpstart` options `-R` or `-m` cannot be specified to start WarehousePG.

> **Note** These utilities cannot be run while `gpexpand` is performing segment initialization.

- `gpbackup`
- `gpcheckcat`
- `gpconfig`
- `gprestore`

> **Important** When expanding a WarehousePG cluster, you must deactivate WarehousePG interconnect proxies before adding new hosts and segment instances to the system, and you must update the `gp_interconnect_proxy_addresses` parameter with the newly-added segment instances before you re-enable interconnect proxies. For information about WarehousePG interconnect proxies, see Configuring Proxies for the WarehousePG Interconnect.

For information about preparing a system for expansion, see Expanding a WarehousePG clusterin the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

#### Description

The `gpexpand` utility performs system expansion in two phases: segment instance initialization and then table data redistribution.

In the initialization phase, `gpexpand` runs with an input file that specifies data directories, dbid values, and other characteristics of the new segment instances. You can create the input file manually, or by following the prompts in an interactive interview.

If you choose to create the input file using the interactive interview, you can optionally specify a file containing a list of expansion system hosts. If your platform or command shell limits the length of the list of hostnames that you can type when prompted in the interview, specifying the hosts with `-f` may be mandatory.

In addition to initializing the segment instances, the initialization phase performs these actions:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- Creates an expansion schema named *gpexpand* in the postgres database to store the status of the expansion operation, including detailed status for tables.

In the table data redistribution phase, `gpexpand` redistributes table data to rebalance the data across the old and new segment instances.

> **Note** Data redistribution should be performed during low-use hours. Redistribution can be divided into batches over an extended period.

To begin the redistribution phase, run `gpexpand` with no options or with the `-d` (duration), `-e` (end time), or `-i` options. If you specify an end time or duration, then the utility redistributes tables in the expansion schema until the specified end time or duration is reached. If you specify `-i` or no options, then the utility redistribution phase continues until all tables in the expansion schema are reorganized. Each table is reorganized using `ALTER TABLE` commands to rebalance the tables across new segments, and to set tables to their original distribution policy. If `gpexpand` completes the reorganization of all tables, it displays a success message and ends.

> **Note** This utility uses secure shell (SSH) connections between systems to perform its tasks. In large WarehousePG deployments, cloud deployments, or deployments with a large number of segments per host, this utility may exceed the host's maximum threshold for unauthenticated connections. Consider updating the SSH `MaxStartups` and `MaxSessions` configuration parameters to increase this threshold. For more information about SSH configuration options, refer to the SSH documentation for your Linux distribution.

### Options

- -a | --analyze

  Run `ANALYZE` to update the table statistics after expansion. The default is to not run `ANALYZE`.

- -B batch_size

  Batch size of remote commands to send to a given host before making a one-second pause. Default is `16`. Valid values are 1-128.

  The `gpexpand` utility issues a number of setup commands that may exceed the host's maximum threshold for unauthenticated connections as defined by `MaxStartups` in the SSH daemon configuration. The one-second pause allows authentications to be completed before `gpexpand` issues any more commands.

  The default value does not normally need to be changed. However, it may be necessary to reduce the maximum number of commands if `gpexpand` fails with connection errors such as `'ssh_exchange_identification: Connection closed by remote host.'`

- -c | --clean

  Remove the expansion schema.

- -d | --duration hh:mm:ss

  Duration of the expansion session from beginning to end.

- -e | --end 'YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss'

  Ending date and time for the expansion session.

- -f | --hosts-file filename

  Specifies the name of a file that contains a list of new hosts for system expansion. Each line of the file must contain a single host name.

  This file can contain hostnames with or without network interfaces specified. The `gpexpand` utility handles either case, adding interface numbers to end of the hostname if the original nodes are configured with multiple network interfaces.

  > **Note** The WarehousePG segment host naming convention is `sdwN` where `sdw` is a prefix and `N` is an integer. For example, `sdw1`, `sdw2` and so on. For hosts with multiple interfaces, the convention is to append a dash ( `-` ) and number to the host name. For example, `sdw1-1` and `sdw1-2` are the two interface names for host `sdw1`.

  For information about using a hostname or IP address, see Specifying Hosts using Hostnames or IP Addresses. Also, see Using Host Systems with Multiple NICs.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -i | --input input_file

  Specifies the name of the expansion configuration file, which contains one line for each segment to be added in the format of:

  hostname|address|port|datadir|dbid|content|preferred_role

- -n parallel_processes

  The number of tables to redistribute simultaneously. Valid values are `1` - `96`.

  Each table redistribution process requires two database connections: one to alter the table, and another to update the table's status in the expansion schema. Before increasing `-n`, check the current value of the server configuration parameter `max_connections` and make sure the maximum connection limit is not exceeded.

- -r | --rollback

  Roll back a failed expansion setup operation.

- -s | --silent

  Runs in silent mode. Does not prompt for confirmation to proceed on warnings.

- -S | --simple-progress

  If specified, the `gpexpand` utility records only the minimum progress information in the WarehousePG table *gpexpand.expansion_progress*. The utility does not record the relation size information and status information in the table *gpexpand.status_detail*.

  Specifying this option can improve performance by reducing the amount of progress information written to the *gpexpand* tables.

- [-t | --tardir] directory

  The fully qualified path to a directory on segment hosts where the `gpexpand` utility copies a temporary tar file. The file contains WarehousePG files that are used to create segment instances. The default directory is the user home directory.

- -v | --verbose

  Verbose debugging output. With this option, the utility will output all DDL and DML used to expand the database.

- --version

  Display the utility's version number and exit.

- -? | -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

### Specifying Hosts using Hostnames or IP Addresses

When expanding a WarehousePG cluster, you can specify either a hostname or an IP address for the value.

- If you specify a hostname, the resolution of the hostname to an IP address should be done locally for security. For example, you should use entries in a local `/etc/hosts` file to map a hostname to an IP address. The resolution of a hostname to an IP address should not be performed by an external service such as a public DNS server. You must stop the WarehousePG cluster before you change the mapping of a hostname to a different IP address.
- If you specify an IP address, the address should not be changed after the initial configuration. When segment mirroring is enabled, replication from the primary to the mirror segment will fail if the IP address changes from the configured value. For this reason, you should use a hostname when expanding a WarehousePG cluster unless you have a specific requirement to use IP addresses.

When expanding a WarehousePG cluster, `gpexpand` populates gp_segment_configuration catalog table with the new segment instance information. WarehousePG uses the `address` value of the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table when looking up host systems for WarehousePG interconnect (internal) communication between the coordinator and segment instances and between segment instances, and for other internal communication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Using Host Systems with Multiple NICs

If host systems are configured with multiple NICs, you can expand a WarehousePG cluster to use each NIC as a WarehousePG host system. You must ensure that the host systems are configured with sufficient resources to support all the segment instances being added to the host. Also, if you enable segment mirroring, you must ensure that the expanded WarehousePG cluster configuration supports failover if a host system fails. For information about WarehousePG mirroring schemes, see ../../best_practices/ha.html#topic_ngz_qf4_tt.

For example, this is a `gpexpand` configuration file for a simple WarehousePG cluster. The segment host `gp6s1` and `gp6s2` are configured with two NICs, `-s1` and `-s2`, where the WarehousePG cluster uses each NIC as a host system.

```
gp6s1-s2|gp6s1-s2|40001|/data/data1/gpseg2|6|2|p
gp6s2-s1|gp6s2-s1|50000|/data/mirror1/gpseg2|9|2|m
gp6s2-s1|gp6s2-s1|40000|/data/data1/gpseg3|7|3|p
gp6s1-s2|gp6s1-s2|50001|/data/mirror1/gpseg3|8|3|m
```

### Examples

Run `gpexpand` with an input file to initialize new segments and create the expansion schema in the postgres database:

```
$ gpexpand -i input_file
```

Run `gpexpand` for sixty hours maximum duration to redistribute tables to new segments:

```
$ gpexpand -d 60:00:00
```

### See Also

gpssh-exkeys, Expanding a WarehousePG cluster

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.14 gpfdist

Serves data files to or writes data files out from WarehousePG segments.

#### Synopsis

```
gpfdist [-d <directory>] [-p <http_port>] [-P <last_http_port>] [-l <log_file>]
   [-t <timeout>] [-k <clean_up_timeout>] [-S] [-w <time>] [-v | -V] [-s] [-m <max_length>]
   [--ssl <certificate_path> [--sslclean <wait_time>] ]
   [--compress] [--multi_thread <num_threads>]
   [-c <config.yml>]

gpfdist -? | --help

gpfdist --version
```

#### Description

`gpfdist` is WarehousePG parallel file distribution program. It is used by readable external tables and `gpload` to serve external table files to all WarehousePG segments in parallel. It is used by writable external tables to accept output streams from WarehousePG segments in parallel and write them out to a file.

> **Note** `gpfdist` and `gpload` are compatible only with the WarehousePG major version in which they are shipped.

In order for `gpfdist` to be used by an external table, the `LOCATION` clause of the external table definition must specify the external table data using the `gpfdist://` protocol (see the WarehousePG command `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE`).

> **Note** If the `--ssl` option is specified to enable SSL security, create the external table with the `gpfdists://` protocol.

The benefit of using `gpfdist` is that you are guaranteed maximum parallelism while reading from or writing to external tables, thereby offering the best performance as well as easier administration of external tables.

For readable external tables, `gpfdist` parses and serves data files evenly to all the segment instances in the WarehousePG cluster when users `SELECT` from the external table. For writable external tables, `gpfdist` accepts parallel output streams from the segments when users `INSERT` into the external table, and writes to an output file.

> **Note** When `gpfdist` reads data and encounters a data formatting error, the error message includes a row number indicating the location of the formatting error. `gpfdist` attempts to capture the row that contains the error. However, `gpfdist` might not capture the exact row for some formatting errors.

For readable external tables, if load files are compressed using `gzip`, `bzip2`, or `zstd` (have a `.gz`, `.bz2`, or `.zst` file extension), `gpfdist` uncompresses the data while loading the data (on the fly). For writable external tables, `gpfdist` compresses the data using `gzip` if the target file has a `.gz` extension, `bzip` if the target file has a `.bz2` extension, or `zstd` if the target file has a `.zst` extension.

> **Note** Compression is not supported for readable and writeable external tables when the `gpfdist` utility runs on Windows platforms.

When reading or writing data with the `gpfdist` or `gpfdists` protocol, WarehousePG includes `X-GP-PROTO` in the HTTP request header to indicate that the request is from WarehousePG. The utility rejects HTTP requests that do not include `X-GP-PROTO` in the request header.

Most likely, you will want to run `gpfdist` on your ETL machines rather than the hosts where WarehousePG is installed. To install `gpfdist` on another host, simply copy the utility over to that host and add `gpfdist` to your `$PATH`.

> **Note** When using IPv6, always enclose the numeric IP address in brackets.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Options

- -d directory

  The directory from which `gpfdist` will serve files for readable external tables or create output files for writable external tables. If not specified, defaults to the current directory.

- -l log_file

  The fully qualified path and log file name where standard output messages are to be logged.

- -p http_port

  The HTTP port on which `gpfdist` will serve files. Defaults to 8080.

- -P last_http_port

  The last port number in a range of HTTP port numbers (http_port to last_http_port, inclusive) on which `gpfdist` will attempt to serve files. `gpfdist` serves the files on the first port number in the range to which it successfully binds.

- -t timeout

  Sets the time allowed for WarehousePG to establish a connection to a `gpfdist` process. Default is 5 seconds. Allowed values are 2 to 7200 seconds (2 hours). May need to be increased on systems with a lot of network traffic.

- -k clean_up_timeout

  Sets the number of seconds that `gpfdist` waits before cleaning up the session when there are no `POST` requests from the segments. Default is 300. Allowed values are 300 to 86400. You may increase its value when experiencing heavy network traffic.

- -m max_length

  Sets the maximum allowed data row length in bytes. Default is 32768. Should be used when user data includes very wide rows (or when `line too long` error message occurs). Should not be used otherwise as it increases resource allocation. Valid range is 32K to 256MB. The upper limit is 1MB on Windows systems.

  > **Note** Memory issues might occur if you specify a large maximum row length and run a large number of `gpfdist` concurrent connections. For example, setting this value to the maximum of 256MB with 96 concurrent `gpfdist` processes requires approximately 24GB of memory ( `(96 + 1) x 246MB` ).

- -s

  Enables simplified logging. When this option is specified, only messages with `WARN` level and higher are written to the `gpfdist` log file. `INFO` level messages are not written to the log file. If this option is not specified, all `gpfdist` messages are written to the log file.

  You can specify this option to reduce the information written to the log file.

- -S (use O_SYNC)

  Opens the file for synchronous I/O with the `O_SYNC` flag. Any writes to the resulting file descriptor block `gpfdist` until the data is physically written to the underlying hardware.

- -w time

  Sets the number of seconds that WarehousePG delays before closing a target file such as a named pipe. The default value is 0, no delay. The maximum value is 7200 seconds (2 hours).

  For a WarehousePG with multiple segments, there might be a delay between segments when writing data from different segments to the file. You can specify a time to wait before WarehousePG closes the file to ensure all the data is written to the file.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --ssl certificate_path

  Adds SSL encryption to data transferred with `gpfdist`. After running `gpfdist` with the `--ssl certificate\_path` option, the only way to load data from this file server is with the `gpfdist://` protocol. For information on the `gpfdist://` protocol, see "Loading and Unloading Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  The location specified in certificate_path must contain the following files:

  - The server certificate file, `server.crt`
  - The server private key file, `server.key`
  - The trusted certificate authorities, `root.crt`

  The root directory ( `/` ) cannot be specified as certificate_path.

- --sslclean wait_time

  When the utility is run with the `--ssl` option, sets the number of seconds that the utility delays before closing an SSL session and cleaning up the SSL resources after it completes writing data to or from a WarehousePG segment. The default value is 0, no delay. The maximum value is 500 seconds. If the delay is increased, the transfer speed decreases.

  In some cases, this error might occur when copying large amounts of data: `gpfdist server closed connection`. To avoid the error, you can add a delay, for example `--sslclean 5`.

- --compress

  Enable compression during data transfer. When specified, `gpfdist` utilizes the Zstandard ( `zstd` ) compression algorithm.

  This option is not available on Windows platforms.

- --multi_threads num_threads

  Sets the maximum number of threads that `gpfdist` uses during data transfer, parallelizing the operation. When specified, `gpfdist` automatically compresses the data (also parallelized) before transferring.

  `gpfdist` supports a maximum of 256 threads.

  This option is not available on Windows platforms.

- -c config.yaml

  Specifies rules that `gpfdist` uses to select a transform to apply when loading or extracting data. The `gpfdist` configuration file is a YAML 1.1 document.

  For information about the file format, see Configuration File Format in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. For information about configuring data transformation with `gpfdist`, see Transforming External Data with gpfdist and gpload in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

  This option is not available on Windows platforms.

- -v (verbose)

  Verbose mode shows progress and status messages.

- -V (very verbose)

  Verbose mode shows all output messages generated by this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

The server configuration parameter verify_gpfdists_cert controls whether SSL certificate authentication is enabled when WarehousePG communicates with the `gpfdist` utility to either read data from or write data to an external data source. You can set the parameter value to `false` to deactivate authentication when testing the communication between the WarehousePG external table and the `gpfdist` utility that is serving the external data. If the value is `false`, these SSL exceptions are ignored:

- The self-signed SSL certificate that is used by `gpfdist` is not trusted by WarehousePG.
- The host name contained in the SSL certificate does not match the host name that is running `gpfdist`.

> **Caution** Deactivating SSL certificate authentication exposes a security risk by not validating the `gpfdists` SSL certificate.

You can set the server configuration parameter gpfdist_retry_timeout to control the time that WarehousePG waits before returning an error when a `gpfdist` server does not respond while WarehousePG is attempting to write data to `gpfdist`. The default is 300 seconds (5 minutes).

If the `gpfdist` utility hangs with no read or write activity occurring, you can generate a core dump the next time a hang occurs to help debug the issue. Set the environment variable `GPFDIST_WATCHDOG_TIMER` to the number of seconds of no activity to wait before `gpfdist` is forced to exit. When the environment variable is set and `gpfdist` hangs, the utility is stopped after the specified number of seconds, creates a core dump, and sends relevant information to the log file.

This example sets the environment variable on a Linux system so that `gpfdist` exits after 300 seconds (5 minutes) of no activity.

```
export GPFDIST_WATCHDOG_TIMER=300
```

When you enable compression, `gpfdist` transmits a larger amount of data while maintaining low network usage. Note that compression can be time-intensive, and may potentially reduce transmission speeds. When you utilize multi-threaded execution, the overall time required for compression may decrease, which facilitates faster data transmission while maintaining low network occupancy and high speed.

### Examples

To serve files from a specified directory using port 8081 (and start `gpfdist` in the background):

```
gpfdist -d /var/load_files -p 8081 &
```

To start `gpfdist` in the background and redirect output and errors to a log file:

```
gpfdist -d /var/load_files -p 8081 -l /home/gpadmin/log &
```

To enable multi-threaded data transfer (with implicit compression) using four threads, start `gpfdist` as follows:

```
gpfdist -d /var/load_files -p 8081 --multi_thread 4
```

To stop `gpfdist` when it is running in the background:

--First find its process id:

```
ps ax | grep gpfdist
```

--Then stop the process, for example:

```
kill 3456
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### See Also

gpload, `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.15 gpinitstandby

Adds and/or initializes a standby coordinator host for a WarehousePG cluster.

#### Synopsis

```
gpinitstandby { -s <standby_hostname> [-P port] | -r | -n } [-a] [-q]
    [-D] [-S <standby_data_directory>] [-l <logfile_directory>]
    [--hba-hostnames <boolean>]

gpinitstandby -v

gpinitstandby -?
```

#### Description

The `gpinitstandby` utility adds a backup, standby coordinator instance to your WarehousePG cluster. If your system has an existing standby coordinator instance configured, use the `-r` option to remove it before adding the new standby coordinator instance.

Before running this utility, make sure that the WarehousePG software is installed on the standby coordinator host and that you have exchanged SSH keys between the hosts. It is recommended that the coordinator port is set to the same port number on the coordinator host and the standby coordinator host.

This utility should be run on the currently active *primary* coordinator host. See the *WarehousePG Installation Guide* for instructions.

The utility performs the following steps:

- Updates the WarehousePG cluster catalog to remove the existing standby coordinator information (if the `-r` option is supplied)
- Updates the WarehousePG cluster catalog to add the new standby coordinator instance information
- Edits the `pg_hba.conf` file of the WarehousePG coordinator to allow access from the newly added standby coordinator
- Sets up the standby coordinator instance on the alternate coordinator host
- Starts the synchronization process

A backup, standby coordinator instance serves as a 'warm standby' in the event of the primary coordinator becoming non-operational. The standby coordinator is kept up to date by transaction log replication processes (the `walsender` and `walreceiver`), which run on the primary coordinator and standby coordinator hosts and keep the data between the primary and standby coordinator instances synchronized. If the primary coordinator fails, the log replication process is shut down, and the standby coordinator can be activated in its place by using the `gpactivatestandby` utility. Upon activation of the standby coordinator, the replicated logs are used to reconstruct the state of the coordinator instance at the time of the last successfully committed transaction.

The activated standby coordinator effectively becomes the WarehousePG coordinator, accepting client connections on the coordinator port and performing normal coordinator operations such as SQL command processing and resource management.

> **Important** If the `gpinitstandby` utility previously failed to initialize the standby coordinator, you must delete the files in the standby coordinator data directory before running `gpinitstandby` again. The standby coordinator data directory is not cleaned up after an initialization failure because it contains log files that can help in determining the reason for the failure.

If an initialization failure occurs, a summary report file is generated in the standby host directory `/tmp`. The report file lists the directories on the standby host that require clean up.

#### Options

- -a (do not prompt)

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -D (debug)

  Sets logging level to debug.

- --hba-hostnames boolean

  Optional. Controls whether this utility uses IP addresses or host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file when updating this file with addresses that can connect to WarehousePG. When set to 0 -- the default value -- this utility uses IP addresses when updating this file. When set to 1, this utility uses host names when updating this file. For consistency, use the same value that was specified for `HBA_HOSTNAMES` when the WarehousePG cluster was initialized. For information about how WarehousePG resolves host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file, see Configuring Client Authentication.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -n (restart standby coordinator)

  Specify this option to start a WarehousePG standby coordinator that has been configured but has stopped for some reason.

- -P port

  This option specifies the port that is used by the WarehousePG standby coordinator. The default is the same port used by the active WarehousePG coordinator.

  If the WarehousePG standby coordinator is on the same host as the active coordinator, the ports must be different. If the ports are the same for the active and standby coordinator and the host is the same, the utility returns an error.

- -q (no screen output)

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -r (remove standby coordinator)

  Removes the currently configured standby coordinator instance from your WarehousePG cluster.

- -s standby_hostname

  The host name of the standby coordinator host.

- -S standby_data_directory

  The data directory to use for a new standby coordinator. The default is the same directory used by the active coordinator.

  If the standby coordinator is on the same host as the active coordinator, a different directory must be specified using this option.

- -v (show utility version)

  Displays the version, status, last updated date, and checksum of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Add a standby coordinator instance to your WarehousePG cluster and start the synchronization process:

```
gpinitstandby -s host09
```

Start an existing standby coordinator instance and synchronize the data with the current primary coordinator instance:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
gpinitstandby -n
```

> **Note** Do not specify the -n and -s options in the same command.

Add a standby coordinator instance to your WarehousePG cluster specifying a different port:

```
gpinitstandby -s myhost -P 2222
```

If you specify the same host name as the active WarehousePG coordinator, you must also specify a different port number with the `-P` option and a standby data directory with the `-S` option.

Remove the existing standby coordinator from your WarehousePG cluster configuration:

```
gpinitstandby -r
```

### See Also

gpinitsystem, gpaddmirrors, gpactivatestandby

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.16 gpinitsystem

Initializes a WarehousePG cluster using configuration parameters specified in the `gpinitsystem_config` file.

#### Synopsis

```
gpinitsystem -c <cluster_configuration_file>
            [-h <hostfile_gpinitsystem>]
            [-B <parallel_processes>]
            [-p <postgresql_conf_param_file>]
            [-s <standby_master_host>
                [-P <standby_master_port>]
                [-S <standby_master_datadir> | --standby_datadir=<standby_master_datadir>]]
            [--ignore-warnings]
            [-m <number> | --max_connections=number>]
            [-b <size> | --shared_buffers=<size>]
            [-n <locale> | --locale=<locale>] [--lc-collate=<locale>]
            [--lc-ctype=<locale>] [--lc-messages=<locale>]
            [--lc-monetary=<locale>] [--lc-numeric=<locale>]
            [--lc-time=<locale>] [-e <password> | --su_password=<password>]
            [--mirror-mode={group|spread}] [-a] [-q] [-l <logfile_directory>] [-D]
            [-I <input_configuration_file>]
            [-O <output_configuration_file>]

gpinitsystem -v | --version

gpinitsystem -? | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpinitsystem` utility creates a WarehousePG instance or writes an input configuration file using the values defined in a cluster configuration file and any command-line options that you provide. See Initialization Configuration File Format for more information about the configuration file. Before running this utility, make sure that you have installed the WarehousePG software on all the hosts in the array.

With the `<-O output_configuration_file>` option, `gpinitsystem` writes all provided configuration information to the specified output file. This file can be used with the `-I` option to create a new cluster or re-create a cluster from a backed up configuration. See Initialization Configuration File Format for more information.

In a WarehousePG DBMS, each database instance (the coordinator instance and all segment instances) must be initialized across all of the hosts in the system in such a way that they can all work together as a unified DBMS. The `gpinitsystem` utility takes care of initializing the WarehousePG coordinator and each segment instance, and configuring the system as a whole.

Before running `gpinitsystem`, you must set the `$GPHOME` environment variable to point to the location of your WarehousePG installation on the coordinator host and exchange SSH keys between all host addresses in the array using `gpssh-exkeys`.

This utility performs the following tasks:

- Verifies that the parameters in the configuration file are correct.
- Ensures that a connection can be established to each host address. If a host address cannot be reached, the utility will exit.
- Verifies the locale settings.
- Displays the configuration that will be used and prompts the user for confirmation.
- Initializes the coordinator instance.
- Initializes the standby coordinator instance (if specified).
- Initializes the primary segment instances.
- Initializes the mirror segment instances (if mirroring is configured).
- Configures the WarehousePG cluster and checks for errors.
- Starts the WarehousePG cluster.

> **Note** This utility uses secure shell (SSH) connections between systems to perform its tasks. In large WarehousePG deployments, cloud deployments, or deployments with a large number of segments per host, this utility may exceed the host's maximum threshold for unauthenticated connections. Consider updating the SSH `MaxStartups` and `MaxSessions` configuration parameters to increase this threshold. For more information about SSH configuration options, refer to the SSH documentation for your Linux distribution.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Options

- -a

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation.

- -B parallel_processes

  The number of segments to create in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start up to 4 parallel processes at a time.

- -c cluster_configuration_file

  Required. The full path and filename of the configuration file, which contains all of the defined parameters to configure and initialize a new WarehousePG cluster. See Initialization Configuration File Format for a description of this file. You must provide either the `-c <cluster_configuration_file>` option or the `-I <input_configuration_file>` option to `gpinitsystem`.

- -D

  Sets log output level to debug.

- -h hostfile_gpinitsystem

  Optional. The full path and filename of a file that contains the host addresses of your segment hosts. If not specified on the command line, you can specify the host file using the `MACHINE_LIST_FILE` parameter in the gpinitsystem_config file.

- -I input_configuration_file

  The full path and filename of an input configuration file, which defines the WarehousePG host systems, the coordinator instance and segment instances on the hosts, using the `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY`, `PRIMARY_ARRAY`, and `MIRROR_ARRAY` parameters. The input configuration file is typically created by using `gpinitsystem` with the `-O output\_configuration\_file` option. Edit those parameters in order to initialize a new cluster or re-create a cluster from a backed up configuration. You must provide either the `-c <cluster_configuration_file>` option or the `-I <input_configuration_file>` option to `gpinitsystem`.

- --ignore-warnings

  Controls the value returned by `gpinitsystem` when warnings or an error occurs. The utility returns 0 if system initialization completes without warnings. If only warnings occur, system initialization completes and the system is operational.

  With this option, `gpinitsystem` also returns 0 if warnings occurred during system initialization, and returns a non-zero value if a fatal error occurs.

  If this option is not specified, `gpinitsystem` returns 1 if initialization completes with warnings, and returns value of 2 or greater if a fatal error occurs.

  See the `gpinitsystem` log file for warning and error messages.

- -n locale | --locale=locale

  Sets the default locale used by WarehousePG. If not specified, the default locale is `en_US.utf8`. A locale identifier consists of a language identifier and a region identifier, and optionally a character set encoding. For example, `sv_SE` is Swedish as spoken in Sweden, `en_US` is U.S. English, and `fr_CA` is French Canadian. If more than one character set can be useful for a locale, then the specifications look like this: `en_US.UTF-8` (locale specification and character set encoding). On most systems, the command `locale` will show the locale environment settings and `locale -a` will show a list of all available locales.

- --lc-collate=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for collation (sorting data). The sort order cannot be changed after WarehousePG is initialized, so it is important to choose a collation locale that is compatible with the character set encodings that you plan to use for your data. There is a special collation name of `C` or `POSIX` (byte-order sorting as opposed to dictionary-order sorting). The `C` collation can be used with any character encoding.

- --lc-ctype=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for character classification (what character sequences are valid and how they are interpreted). This cannot be changed after WarehousePG is initialized, so it is important to choose a character classification locale that is compatible with the data you plan to store in WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --lc-messages=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for messages output by WarehousePG. The current version of WarehousePG does not support multiple locales for output messages (all messages are in English), so changing this setting will not have any effect.

- --lc-monetary=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for formatting currency amounts.

- --lc-numeric=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for formatting numbers.

- --lc-time=locale

  Similar to `--locale`, but sets the locale used for formatting dates and times.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -m number | --max_connections=number

  Sets the maximum number of client connections allowed to the coordinator. The default is 250.

- -O output_configuration_file

  Optional, used during new cluster initialization. This option writes the `cluster_configuration_file` information (used with -c) to the specified `output_configuration_file`. This file defines the WarehousePG members using the `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY`, `PRIMARY_ARRAY`, and `MIRROR_ARRAY` parameters. Use this file as a template for the `-I input_configuration_file` option. See Examples for more information.

- -p postgresql_conf_param_file

  Optional. The name of a file that contains `postgresql.conf` parameter settings that you want to set for WarehousePG. These settings will be used when the individual coordinator and segment instances are initialized. You can also set parameters after initialization using the `gpconfig` utility.

- -q

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -b size | --shared_buffers=size

  Sets the amount of memory a WarehousePG server instance uses for shared memory buffers. You can specify sizing in kilobytes (kB), megabytes (MB) or gigabytes (GB). The default is 125MB.

- -s standby_master_host

  Optional. If you wish to configure a backup coordinator instance, specify the host name using this option. The WarehousePG software must already be installed and configured on this host.

- -P standby_master_port

  If you configure a standby coordinator instance with `-s`, specify its port number using this option. The default port is the same as the coordinator port. To run the standby and coordinator on the same host, you must use this option to specify a different port for the standby. The WarehousePG software must already be installed and configured on the standby host.

- -S standby_master_datadir | --standby_dir=standby_master_datadir

  If you configure a standby coordinator host with `-s`, use this option to specify its data directory. If you configure a standby on the same host as the coordinator instance, the coordinator and standby must have separate data directories.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -e superuser_password | --su_password=superuser_password

  Use this option to specify the password to set for the WarehousePG superuser account (such as `gpadmin`). If this option is not specified, the default password `gparray` is assigned to the superuser account. You can use the `ALTER ROLE` command to change the password at a later time.

  Recommended security best practices:

  - Do not use the default password option for production environments.
  - Change the password immediately after installation.

- --mirror-mode={group|spread}

  Use this option to specify the placement of mirror segment instances on the segment hosts. The default, `group`, groups the mirror segments for all of a host's primary segments on a single alternate host. `spread` spreads mirror segments for the primary segments on a host across different hosts in the WarehousePG array. Spreading is only allowed if the number of hosts is greater than the number of segment instances per host. See Overview of Segment Mirroring for information about WarehousePG mirroring strategies.

- -v | --version

  Print the `gpinitsystem` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `gpinitsystem` command line arguments, and exit.

### Initialization Configuration File Format

`gpinitsystem` requires a cluster configuration file with the following parameters defined. An example initialization configuration file can be found in `$GPHOME/docs/cli_help/gpconfigs/gpinitsystem_config`.

To avoid port conflicts between WarehousePG and other applications, the WarehousePG port numbers should not be in the range specified by the operating system parameter `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range`. For example, if `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 10000 65535`, you could set WarehousePG base port numbers to these values.

```
PORT_BASE = 6000
MIRROR_PORT_BASE = 7000
```

- ARRAY_NAME

  **Required.** A name for the cluster you are configuring. You can use any name you like. Enclose the name in quotes if the name contains spaces.

- MACHINE_LIST_FILE

  **Optional.** Can be used in place of the `-h` option. This specifies the file that contains the list of the segment host address names that comprise the WarehousePG cluster. The coordinator host is assumed to be the host from which you are running the utility and should not be included in this file. If your segment hosts have multiple network interfaces, then this file would include all addresses for the host. Give the absolute path to the file.

- SEG_PREFIX

  **Required.** This specifies a prefix that will be used to name the data directories on the coordinator and segment instances. The naming convention for data directories in a WarehousePG cluster is SEG_PREFIXnumber where number starts with 0 for segment instances (the coordinator is always -1). So for example, if you choose the prefix `gpseg`, your coordinator instance data directory would be named `gpseg-1`, and the segment instances would be named `gpseg0`, `gpseg1`, `gpseg2`, `gpseg3`, and so on.

- PORT_BASE

  **Required.** This specifies the base number by which primary segment port numbers are calculated. The first primary segment port on a host is set as `PORT_BASE`, and then incremented by one for each additional primary segment on that host. Valid values range from 1 through 65535.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- DATA_DIRECTORY

  **Required.** This specifies the data storage location(s) where the utility will create the primary segment data directories. The number of locations in the list dictate the number of primary segments that will get created per physical host (if multiple addresses for a host are listed in the host file, the number of segments will be spread evenly across the specified interface addresses). It is OK to list the same data storage area multiple times if you want your data directories created in the same location. The user who runs `gpinitsystem` (for example, the `gpadmin` user) must have permission to write to these directories. For example, this will create six primary segments per host:

  ```
  declare -a DATA_DIRECTORY=(/data1/primary /data1/primary
  /data1/primary /data2/primary /data2/primary /data2/primary)
  ```

- MASTER_HOSTNAME

  **Required.** The host name of the coordinator instance. This host name must exactly match the configured host name of the machine (run the `hostname` command to determine the correct hostname).

- MASTER_DIRECTORY

  **Required.** This specifies the location where the data directory will be created on the coordinator host. You must make sure that the user who runs `gpinitsystem` (for example, the `gpadmin` user) has permissions to write to this directory.

- MASTER_PORT

  **Required.** The port number for the coordinator instance. This is the port number that users and client connections will use when accessing the WarehousePG cluster.

- TRUSTED_SHELL

  **Required.** The shell the `gpinitsystem` utility uses to run commands on remote hosts. Allowed values are `ssh`. You must set up your trusted host environment before running the `gpinitsystem` utility (you can use `gpssh-exkeys` to do this).

- CHECK_POINT_SEGMENTS

  **Required.** Maximum distance between automatic write ahead log (WAL) checkpoints, in log file segments (each segment is normally 16 megabytes). This will set the `checkpoint_segments` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file for each segment instance in the WarehousePG cluster.

- ENCODING

  **Required.** The character set encoding to use. This character set must be compatible with the `--locale` settings used, especially `--lc-collate` and `--lc-ctype`. WarehousePG supports the same character sets as PostgreSQL.

- DATABASE_NAME

  **Optional.** The name of a WarehousePG database to create after the system is initialized. You can always create a database later using the `CREATE DATABASE` command or the `createdb` utility.

- MIRROR_PORT_BASE

  **Optional.** This specifies the base number by which mirror segment port numbers are calculated. The first mirror segment port on a host is set as `MIRROR_PORT_BASE`, and then incremented by one for each additional mirror segment on that host. Valid values range from 1 through 65535 and cannot conflict with the ports calculated by `PORT_BASE`.

- MIRROR_DATA_DIRECTORY

  **Optional.** This specifies the data storage location(s) where the utility will create the mirror segment data directories. There must be the same number of data directories declared for mirror segment instances as for primary segment instances (see the `DATA_DIRECTORY` parameter). The user who runs `gpinitsystem` (for example, the `gpadmin` user) must have permission to write to these directories. For example:

  ```
  declare -a MIRROR_DATA_DIRECTORY=(/data1/mirror
  /data1/mirror /data1/mirror /data2/mirror /data2/mirror
  /data2/mirror)
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY, PRIMARY_ARRAY, MIRROR_ARRAY

  **Required** when using `input_configuration file` with `-I` option. These parameters specify the WarehousePG coordinator host, the primary segment, and the mirror segment hosts respectively. During new cluster initialization, use the `gpinitsystem -O output\_configuration\_file` to populate `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY`, `PRIMARY_ARRAY`, `MIRROR_ARRAY`.

  To initialize a new cluster or re-create a cluster from a backed up configuration, edit these values in the input configuration file used with the `gpinitsystem -I input\_configuration\_file` option. Use one of the following formats to specify the host information:

  ```
  <hostname>~<address>~<port>~<data_directory>/<seg_prefix<segment_id>~<dbid>~<content_id>
  ```

  or

  ```
  <host>~<port>~<data_directory>/<seg_prefix<segment_id>~<dbid>~<content_id>
  ```

  The first format populates the `hostname` and `address` fields in the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table with the hostname and address values provided in the input configuration file. The second format populates `hostname` and `address` fields with the same value, derived from host.

  The WarehousePG coordinator always uses the value -1 for the segment ID and content ID. For example, seg_prefix<segment_id> and dbid values for `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY` use `-1` to indicate the coordinator instance:

  ```
  QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY=mdw~mdw~5432~/gpdata/master/gpseg-1~1~-1
  declare -a PRIMARY_ARRAY=(
  sdw1~sdw1~40000~/gpdata/data1/gpseg0~2~0
  sdw1~sdw1~40001~/gpdata/data2/gpseg1~3~1
  sdw2~sdw2~40000~/gpdata/data1/gpseg2~4~2
  sdw2~sdw2~40001~/gpdata/data2/gpseg3~5~3
  )
  declare -a MIRROR_ARRAY=(
  sdw2~sdw2~50000~/gpdata/mirror1/gpseg0~6~0
  sdw2~sdw2~50001~/gpdata/mirror2/gpseg1~7~1
  sdw1~sdw1~50000~/gpdata/mirror1/gpseg2~8~2
  sdw1~sdw1~50001~/gpdata/mirror2/gpseg3~9~3
  )
  ```

  To re-create a cluster using a known WarehousePG cluster configuration, you can edit the segment and content IDs to match the values of the system.

- HEAP_CHECKSUM

  **Optional.** This parameter specifies if checksums are enabled for heap data. When enabled, checksums are calculated for heap storage in all databases, enabling WarehousePG to detect corruption in the I/O system. This option is set when the system is initialized and cannot be changed later.

  The `HEAP_CHECKSUM` option is on by default and turning it off is strongly discouraged. If you set this option to off, data corruption in storage can go undetected and make recovery much more difficult.

  To determine if heap checksums are enabled in a WarehousePG cluster, you can query the `data_checksums` server configuration parameter with the `gpconfig` management utility:

  ```
  $ gpconfig -s data_checksums
  ```

- HBA_HOSTNAMES

  **Optional.** This parameter controls whether `gpinitsystem` uses IP addresses or host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file when updating the file with addresses that can connect to WarehousePG. The default value is `0`, the utility uses IP addresses when updating the file. When Initializing WarehousePG, specify `HBA_HOSTNAMES=1` to have the utility use host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file.

  For information about how WarehousePG resolves host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file, see Configuring Client Authentication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Specifying Hosts using Hostnames or IP Addresses

When Initializing WarehousePG with `gpinitsystem`, you can specify segment hosts using either hostnames or IP addresses. For example, you can use hostnames or IP addresses in the file specified with the `-h` option.

- If you specify a hostname, the resolution of the hostname to an IP address should be done locally for security. For example, you should use entries in a local `/etc/hosts` file to map a hostname to an IP address. The resolution of a hostname to an IP address should not be performed by an external service such as a public DNS server. You must stop the WarehousePG cluster before you change the mapping of a hostname to a different IP address.
- If you specify an IP address, the address should not be changed after the initial configuration. When segment mirroring is enabled, replication from the primary to the mirror segment will fail if the IP address changes from the configured value. For this reason, you should use a hostname when Initializing WarehousePG unless you have a specific requirement to use IP addresses.

When initializing the WarehousePG cluster, `gpinitsystem` uses the initialization information to populate the gp_segment_configuration catalog table and adds hosts to the `pg_hba.conf` file. By default, the host IP address is added to the file. Specify the `gpinitsystem` configuration file parameter HBA_HOSTNAMES=1 to add hostnames to the file.

WarehousePG uses the `address` value of the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table when looking up host systems for WarehousePG interconnect (internal) communication between the coordinator and segment instances and between segment instances, and for other internal communication.

### Examples

Initialize a WarehousePG cluster by supplying a cluster configuration file and a segment host address file, and set up a spread mirroring ( `--mirror-mode=spread` ) configuration:

```
$ gpinitsystem -c gpinitsystem_config -h hostfile_gpinitsystem --mirror-mode=spread
```

Initialize a WarehousePG cluster and set the superuser remote password:

```
$ gpinitsystem -c gpinitsystem_config -h hostfile_gpinitsystem --su-password=mypassword
```

Initialize a WarehousePG cluster with an optional standby coordinator host:

```
$ gpinitsystem -c gpinitsystem_config -h hostfile_gpinitsystem -s host09
```

Initialize a WarehousePG cluster and write the provided configuration to an output file, for example `cluster_init.config`:

```
$ gpinitsystem -c gpinitsystem_config -h hostfile_gpinitsystem -O cluster_init.config
```

The output file uses the `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY` and `PRIMARY_ARRAY` parameters to define coordinator and segment hosts:

```
TRUSTED_SHELL=ssh
CHECK_POINT_SEGMENTS=8
ENCODING=UNICODE
SEG_PREFIX=gpseg
HEAP_CHECKSUM=on
HBA_HOSTNAMES=0
QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY=mdw~mdw.local~5433~/data/master1/gpseg-1~1~-1
declare -a PRIMARY_ARRAY=(
mdw~mdw.local~6001~/data/primary1/gpseg0~2~0
)
declare -a MIRROR_ARRAY=(
mdw~mdw.local~7001~/data/mirror1/gpseg0~3~0
)
```

Initialize a WarehousePG using an input configuration file (a file that defines the WarehousePG cluster) using `QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY` and `PRIMARY_ARRAY` parameters:

```
$ gpinitsystem -I cluster_init.config
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following example uses a host system configured with multiple NICs. If host systems are configured with multiple NICs, you can initialize a WarehousePG cluster to use each NIC as a WarehousePG host system. You must ensure that the host systems are configured with sufficient resources to support all the segment instances being added to the host. Also, if high availability is enabled, you must ensure that the WarehousePG cluster configuration supports failover if a host system fails. For information about WarehousePG mirroring schemes, see ../../best_practices/ha.html#topic_ngz_qf4_tt.

For this simple coordinator and segment instance configuration, the host system `gp6m` is configured with two NICs `gp6m-1` and `gp6m-2`. In the configuration, the QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY parameter defines the coordinator segment using `gp6m-1`. The PRIMARY_ARRAY and MIRROR_ARRAY parameters use `gp6m-2` to define a primary and mirror segment instance.

```
QD_PRIMARY_ARRAY=gp6m~gp6m-1~5432~/data/master/gpseg-1~1~-1
declare -a PRIMARY_ARRAY=(
gp6m~gp6m-2~40000~/data/data1/gpseg0~2~0
gp6s~gp6s~40000~/data/data1/gpseg1~3~1
)
declare -a MIRROR_ARRAY=(
gp6s~gp6s~50000~/data/mirror1/gpseg0~4~0
gp6m~gp6m-2~50000~/data/mirror1/gpseg1~5~1
)
```

### See Also

gpssh-exkeys, gpdeletesystem, Initializing WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.17 gpload

Runs a load job as defined in a YAML formatted control file.

### Synopsis

```
gpload -f <control_file> [-l <log_file>] [-h <hostname>] [-p <port>]
   [-U <username>] [-d <database>] [-W] [--gpfdist_timeout <seconds>]
   [--no_auto_trans] [--max_retries <retry_times>] [[-v | -V] [-q]] [-D]

gpload -?

gpload --version
```

### Requirements

The client machine where `gpload` is run must have the following:

- The gpfdist parallel file distribution program installed and in your `$PATH`. This program is located in `$GPHOME/bin` of your WarehousePG server installation.
- Network access to and from all hosts in your WarehousePG array (coordinator and segments).
- Network access to and from the hosts where the data to be loaded resides (ETL servers).

### Description

`gpload` is a data loading utility that acts as an interface to the WarehousePG external table parallel loading feature. Using a load specification defined in a YAML formatted control file, `gpload` runs a load by invoking the WarehousePG parallel file server (gpfdist), creating an external table definition based on the source data defined, and running an `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `MERGE` operation to load the source data into the target table in the database.

> **Note** `gpfdist` is compatible only with the WarehousePG major version in which it is shipped.

> **Note** `MERGE` and `UPDATE` operations are not supported if the target table column name is a reserved keyword, has capital letters, or includes any character that requires quotes (" ") to identify the column.

The operation, including any SQL commands specified in the `SQL` collection of the YAML control file (see Control File Format), are performed as a single transaction to prevent inconsistent data when performing multiple, simultaneous load operations on a target table.

### Options

- -f control_file

  Required. A YAML file that contains the load specification details. See Control File Format.

- --gpfdist_timeout seconds

  Sets the timeout for the `gpfdist` parallel file distribution program to send a response. Enter a value from `0` to `30` seconds (entering "`0`" to deactivates timeouts). Note that you might need to increase this value when operating on high-traffic networks.

- -l log_file

  Specifies where to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs/gpload_YYYYMMDD`. For more information about the log file, see Log File Format.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --no_auto_trans

  Specify `--no_auto_trans` to deactivate processing the load operation as a single transaction if you are performing a single load operation on the target table.

  By default, `gpload` processes each load operation as a single transaction to prevent inconsistent data when performing multiple, simultaneous operations on a target table.

- -q (no screen output)

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -D (debug mode)

  Check for error conditions, but do not run the load.

- -v (verbose mode)

  Show verbose output of the load steps as they are run.

- -V (very verbose mode)

  Shows very verbose output.

- -? (show help)

  Show help, then exit.

- --version

  Show the version of this utility, then exit.

**Connection Options**

- -d database

  The database to load into. If not specified, reads from the load control file, the environment variable `$PGDATABASE` or defaults to the current system user name.

- -h hostname

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the load control file, the environment variable `$PGHOST` or defaults to `localhost`.

- -p port

  Specifies the TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the load control file, the environment variable `$PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- --max_retries retry_times

  Specifies the maximum number of times `gpload` attempts to connect to WarehousePG after a connection timeout. The default value is `0`, do not attempt to connect after a connection timeout. A negative integer, such as `-1`, specifies an unlimited number of attempts.

- -U username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the load control file, the environment variable `$PGUSER` or defaults to the current system user name.

- -W (force password prompt)

  Force a password prompt. If not specified, reads the password from the environment variable `$PGPASSWORD` or from a password file specified by `$PGPASSFILE` or in `~/.pgpass`. If these are not set, then `gpload` will prompt for a password even if `-W` is not supplied.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Control File Format

The `gpload` control file uses the YAML 1.1 document format and then implements its own schema for defining the various steps of a WarehousePG load operation. The control file must be a valid YAML document.

The `gpload` program processes the control file document in order and uses indentation (spaces) to determine the document hierarchy and the relationships of the sections to one another. The use of white space is significant. White space should not be used simply for formatting purposes, and tabs should not be used at all.

The basic structure of a load control file is:

```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
DATABASE: <db_name>
USER: <db_username>
HOST: <master_hostname>
PORT: <master_port>
GPLOAD:
   INPUT:
    - SOURCE:
         LOCAL_HOSTNAME:
           - <hostname_or_ip>
         PORT: <http_port>
       | PORT_RANGE: [<start_port_range>, <end_port_range>]
         FILE:
           - </path/to/input_file>
         SSL: true | false
         CERTIFICATES_PATH: </path/to/certificates>
    - FULLY_QUALIFIED_DOMAIN_NAME: true | false
    - COLUMNS:
           - <field_name>: <data_type>
    - TRANSFORM: '<transformation>'
    - TRANSFORM_CONFIG: '<configuration-file-path>'
    - MAX_LINE_LENGTH: <integer>
    - FORMAT: text | csv
    - DELIMITER: '<delimiter_character>'
    - ESCAPE: '<escape_character>' | 'OFF'
    - NEWLINE: 'LF' | 'CR' | 'CRLF'
    - NULL_AS: '<null_string>'
    - FILL_MISSING_FIELDS: true | false
    - FORCE_NOT_NULL: true | false
    - QUOTE: '<csv_quote_character>'
    - HEADER: true | false
    - ENCODING: <database_encoding>
    - ERROR_LIMIT: <integer>
    - LOG_ERRORS: true | false
   EXTERNAL:
      - SCHEMA: <schema> | '%'
   OUTPUT:
    - TABLE: <schema.table_name>
    - MODE: insert | update | merge
    - MATCH_COLUMNS:
           - <target_column_name>
    - UPDATE_COLUMNS:
           - <target_column_name>
    - UPDATE_CONDITION: '<boolean_condition>'
    - MAPPING:
              <target_column_name>: <source_column_name> | '<expression>'
   PRELOAD:
    - TRUNCATE: true | false
    - REUSE_TABLES: true | false
    - STAGING_TABLE: <external_table_name>
    - FAST_MATCH: true | false
   SQL:
    - BEFORE: "<sql_command>"
    - AFTER: "<sql_command>"
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- VERSION

  Optional. The version of the `gpload` control file schema. The current version is 1.0.0.1.

- DATABASE

  Optional. Specifies which database in the WarehousePG cluster to connect to. If not specified, defaults to `$PGDATABASE` if set or the current system user name. You can also specify the database on the command line using the `-d` option.

- USER

  Optional. Specifies which database role to use to connect. If not specified, defaults to the current user or `$PGUSER` if set. You can also specify the database role on the command line using the `-U` option.

  If the user running `gpload` is not a WarehousePG superuser, then the appropriate rights must be granted to the user for the load to be processed. See the *WarehousePG Reference Guide* for more information.

- HOST

  Optional. Specifies WarehousePG coordinator host name. If not specified, defaults to localhost or `$PGHOST` if set. You can also specify the coordinator host name on the command line using the `-h` option.

- PORT

  Optional. Specifies WarehousePG coordinator port. If not specified, defaults to 5432 or `$PGPORT` if set. You can also specify the coordinator port on the command line using the `-p` option.

- GPLOAD

  Required. Begins the load specification section. A `GPLOAD` specification must have an `INPUT` and an `OUTPUT` section defined.

  - INPUT

    Required. Defines the location and the format of the input data to be loaded. `gpload` will start one or more instances of thegpfdist file distribution program on the current host and create the required external table definition(s) in WarehousePG that point to the source data. Note that the host from which you run `gpload` must be accessible over the network by all WarehousePG hosts (coordinator and segments).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- SOURCE

  Required. The `SOURCE` block of an `INPUT` specification defines the location of a source file. An `INPUT` section can have more than one `SOURCE` block defined. Each `SOURCE` block defined corresponds to one instance of the gpfdist file distribution program that will be started on the local machine. Each `SOURCE` block defined must have a `FILE` specification.

  For more information about using the `gpfdist` parallel file server and single and multiple `gpfdist` instances, see Loading and Unloading Data.

  - LOCAL_HOSTNAME

    Optional. Specifies the host name or IP address of the local machine on which `gpload` is running. If this machine is configured with multiple network interface cards (NICs), you can specify the host name or IP of each individual NIC to allow network traffic to use all NICs simultaneously. The default is to use the local machine's primary host name or IP only.

  - PORT

    Optional. Specifies the specific port number that the gpfdist file distribution program should use. You can also supply a `PORT_RANGE` to select an available port from the specified range. If both `PORT` and `PORT_RANGE` are defined, then `PORT` takes precedence. If neither `PORT` or `PORT_RANGE` are defined, the default is to select an available port between 8000 and 9000.

    If multiple host names are declared in `LOCAL_HOSTNAME`, this port number is used for all hosts. This configuration is desired if you want to use all NICs to load the same file or set of files in a given directory location.

  - PORT_RANGE

    Optional. Can be used instead of `PORT` to supply a range of port numbers from which `gpload` can choose an available port for this instance of the gpfdist file distribution program.

  - FILE

    Required. Specifies the location of a file, named pipe, or directory location on the local file system that contains data to be loaded. You can declare more than one file so long as the data is of the same format in all files specified.

    If the files are compressed using `gzip` or `bzip2` (have a `.gz` or `.bz2` file extension), the files will be uncompressed automatically (provided that `gunzip` or `bunzip2` is in your path).

    When specifying which source files to load, you can use the wildcard character ( `*` ) or other C-style pattern matching to denote multiple files. The files specified are assumed to be relative to the current directory from which `gpload` is run (or you can declare an absolute path).

  - SSL

    Optional. Specifies usage of SSL encryption. If `SSL` is set to true, `gpload` starts the `gpfdist` server with the `--ssl` option and uses the `gpfdists://` protocol.

  - CERTIFICATES_PATH

    Required when SSL is `true`; cannot be specified when SSL is `false` or unspecified. The location specified in `CERTIFICATES_PATH` must contain the following files:

    - The server certificate file, `server.crt`
    - The server private key file, `server.key`
    - The trusted certificate authorities, `root.crt`

    The root directory ( `/` ) cannot be specified as `CERTIFICATES_PATH`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- FULLY_QUALIFIED_DOMAIN_NAME

  Optional. Specifies whether `gpload` resolve hostnames to the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or the local hostname. If the value is set to `true`, names are resolved to the FQDN. If the value is set to `false`, resolution is to the local hostname. The default is `false`.

  A fully qualified domain name might be required in some situations. For example, if the WarehousePG cluster is in a different domain than an ETL application that is being accessed by `gpload`.

- COLUMNS

  Optional. Specifies the schema of the source data file(s) in the format of `field\_name:data\_type`. The `DELIMITER` character in the source file is what separates two data value fields (columns). A row is determined by a line feed character (`0x0a`).

  If the input `COLUMNS` are not specified, then the schema of the output `TABLE` is implied, meaning that the source data must have the same column order, number of columns, and data format as the target table.

  The default source-to-target mapping is based on a match of column names as defined in this section and the column names in the target `TABLE`. This default mapping can be overridden using the `MAPPING` section.

- TRANSFORM

  Optional. Specifies the name of the input transformation passed to `gpload`. For information about XML transformations, see "Loading and Unloading Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

- TRANSFORM_CONFIG

  Required when `TRANSFORM` is specified. Specifies the location of the transformation configuration file that is specified in the `TRANSFORM` parameter, above.

- MAX_LINE_LENGTH

  Optional. Sets the maximum allowed data row length in bytes. Default is 32768. Should be used when user data includes very wide rows (or when `line too long` error message occurs). Should not be used otherwise as it increases resource allocation. Valid range is 32K to 256MB. The upper limit is 1MB on Windows systems.

- FORMAT

  Optional. Specifies the format of the source data file(s) - either plain text (`TEXT`) or comma separated values (`CSV`) format. Defaults to `TEXT` if not specified. For more information about the format of the source data, see Loading and Unloading Data.

- DELIMITER

  Optional. Specifies a single ASCII character that separates columns within each row (line) of data. The default is a tab character in TEXT mode, a comma in CSV mode. You can also specify a non- printable ASCII character or a non-printable unicode character, for example: `"\x1B"` or `"\u001B"`. The escape string syntax, `E'<character-code>'`, is also supported for non-printable characters. The ASCII or unicode character must be enclosed in single quotes. For example: `E'\x1B'` or `E'\u001B'`.

- ESCAPE

  Specifies the single character that is used for C escape sequences (such as `\n`, `\t`, `\100`, and so on) and for escaping data characters that might otherwise be taken as row or column delimiters. Make sure to choose an escape character that is not used anywhere in your actual column data. The default escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files and a `"` (double quote) for csv-formatted files, however it is possible to specify another character to represent an escape. It is also possible to deactivate escaping in text-formatted files by specifying the value `'OFF'` as the escape value. This is very useful for data such as text-formatted web log data that has many embedded backslashes that are not intended to be escapes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- NEWLINE

  Specifies the type of newline used in your data files, one of:

  - LF (Line feed, 0x0A)
  - CR (Carriage return, 0x0D)
  - CRLF (Carriage return plus line feed, 0x0D 0x0A).

  If not specified, WarehousePG detects the newline type by examining the first row of data that it receives, and uses the first newline type that it encounters.

- NULL_AS

  Optional. Specifies the string that represents a null value. The default is `\N` (backslash-N) in `TEXT` mode, and an empty value with no quotations in `CSV` mode. You might prefer an empty string even in `TEXT` mode for cases where you do not want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. Any source data item that matches this string will be considered a null value.

- FILL_MISSING_FIELDS

  Optional. The default value is `false`. When reading a row of data that has missing trailing field values (the row of data has missing data fields at the end of a line or row), WarehousePG returns an error.

  If the value is `true`, when reading a row of data that has missing trailing field values, the values are set to `NULL`. Blank rows, fields with a `NOT NULL` constraint, and trailing delimiters on a line will still report an error.

  See the `FILL MISSING FIELDS` clause of the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE command.

- FORCE_NOT_NULL

  Optional. In CSV mode, processes each specified column as though it were quoted and hence not a NULL value. For the default null string in CSV mode (nothing between two delimiters), this causes missing values to be evaluated as zero-length strings.

- QUOTE

  Required when `FORMAT` is `CSV`. Specifies the quotation character for `CSV` mode. The default is double-quote (`"`).

- HEADER

  Optional. Specifies that the first line in the data file(s) is a header row (contains the names of the columns) and should not be included as data to be loaded. If using multiple data source files, all files must have a header row. The default is to assume that the input files do not have a header row.

- ENCODING

  Optional. Character set encoding of the source data. Specify a string constant (such as `'SQL_ASCII'`), an integer encoding number, or `'DEFAULT'` to use the default client encoding. If not specified, the default client encoding is used. For information about supported character sets, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

  > **Note** If you *change* the `ENCODING` value in an existing `gpload` control file, you must manually drop any external tables that were creating using the previous `ENCODING` configuration. `gpload` does not drop and recreate external tables to use the new `ENCODING` if `REUSE_TABLES` is set to `true`.

- ERROR_LIMIT

  Optional. Enables single row error isolation mode for this load operation. When enabled, input rows that have format errors will be discarded provided that the error limit count is not reached on any WarehousePG segment instance during input processing. If the error limit is not reached, all good rows will be loaded and any error rows will either be discarded or captured as part of error log information. The default is to cancel the load operation on the first error encountered. Note that single row error isolation only applies to data rows with format errors; for example, extra or missing attributes, attributes of a wrong data type, or invalid client encoding sequences. Constraint errors, such as primary key violations, will still cause the load operation to be cancelled if encountered. For information about handling load errors, see Loading and Unloading Data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- LOG_ERRORS

  Optional when `ERROR_LIMIT` is declared. Value is either `true` or `false`. The default value is `false`. If the value is `true`, rows with formatting errors are logged internally when running in single row error isolation mode. You can examine formatting errors with the WarehousePG built-in SQL function `gp_read_error_log('<table_name>')`. If formatting errors are detected when loading data, `gpload` generates a warning message with the name of the table that contains the error information similar to this message.

  ```
  <timestamp>|WARN|1 bad row, please use GPDB built-in function gp_read_error_log('table-name')
  to access the detailed error row
  ```

  If `LOG_ERRORS: true` is specified, `REUSE_TABLES: true` must be specified to retain the formatting errors in WarehousePG error logs. If `REUSE_TABLES: true` is not specified, the error information is deleted after the `gpload` operation. Only summary information about formatting errors is returned. You can delete the formatting errors from the error logs with the WarehousePG function `gp_truncate_error_log()`.

  > **Note** When `gpfdist` reads data and encounters a data formatting error, the error message includes a row number indicating the location of the formatting error. `gpfdist` attempts to capture the row that contains the error. However, `gpfdist` might not capture the exact row for some formatting errors.

  For more information about handling load errors, see "Loading and Unloading Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. For information about the `gp_read_error_log()` function, see the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE command.

- EXTERNAL

  Optional. Defines the schema of the external table database objects created by `gpload`.

  The default is to use the WarehousePG `search_path`.

  - SCHEMA

    Required when `EXTERNAL` is declared. The name of the schema of the external table. If the schema does not exist, an error is returned. If `%` (percent character) is specified, the schema of the table name specified by `TABLE` in the `OUTPUT` section is used. If the table name does not specify a schema, the default schema is used.

- OUTPUT

  Required. Defines the target table and final data column values that are to be loaded into the database.

  - TABLE

    Required. The name of the target table to load into.

  - MODE

    Optional. Defaults to `INSERT` if not specified. There are three available load modes:

  - INSERT

    Loads data into the target table using the following method:

    ```
    INSERT INTO \<target\_table> SELECT \* FROM \<input\_data>;
    ```

  - UPDATE

    Updates the `UPDATE_COLUMNS` of the target table where the rows have `MATCH_COLUMNS` attribute values equal to those of the input data, and the optional `UPDATE_CONDITION` is true. `UPDATE` is not supported if the target table column name is a reserved keyword, has capital letters, or includes any character that requires quotes (" ") to identify the column.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- MERGE

  Inserts new rows and updates the `UPDATE_COLUMNS` of existing rows where attribute values are equal to those of the input data, and the optional `MATCH_COLUMNS` is true. New rows are identified when the `MATCH_COLUMNS` value in the source data does not have a corresponding value in the existing data of the target table. In those cases, the **entire row** from the source file is inserted, not only the `MATCH` and `UPDATE` columns. If there are multiple new `MATCH_COLUMNS` values that are the same, only one new row for that value will be inserted. Use `UPDATE_CONDITION` to filter out the rows to discard. `MERGE` is not supported if the target table column name is a reserved keyword, has capital letters, or includes any character that requires quotes (" ") to identify the column.

- MATCH_COLUMNS

  Required if `MODE` is `UPDATE` or `MERGE`. Specifies the column(s) to use as the join condition for the update. The attribute value in the specified target column(s) must be equal to that of the corresponding source data column(s) in order for the row to be updated in the target table.

- UPDATE_COLUMNS

  Required if `MODE` is `UPDATE` or `MERGE`. Specifies the column(s) to update for the rows that meet the `MATCH_COLUMNS` criteria and the optional `UPDATE_CONDITION`.

- UPDATE_CONDITION

  Optional. Specifies a Boolean condition (similar to what you would declare in a `WHERE` clause) that must be met in order for a row in the target table to be updated.

- MAPPING

  Optional. If a mapping is specified, it overrides the default source-to-target column mapping. The default source-to-target mapping is based on a match of column names as defined in the source `COLUMNS` section and the column names of the target `TABLE`. A mapping is specified as either:

  ```
  <target_column_name>: <source_column_name>
  ```

  or

  ```
  <target_column_name>: '<expression>'
  ```

  Where <expression> is any expression that you would specify in the `SELECT` list of a query, such as a constant value, a column reference, an operator invocation, a function call, and so on.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- PRELOAD

  Optional. Specifies operations to run prior to the load operation. Right now the only preload operation is `TRUNCATE`.

  - TRUNCATE

    Optional. If set to true, `gpload` will remove all rows in the target table prior to loading it. Default is false.

  - REUSE_TABLES

    Optional. If set to true, `gpload` will not drop the external table objects and staging table objects it creates. These objects will be reused for future load operations that use the same load specifications. This improves performance of trickle loads (ongoing small loads to the same target table).

    If `LOG_ERRORS: true` is specified, `REUSE_TABLES: true` must be specified to retain the formatting errors in WarehousePG error logs. If `REUSE_TABLES: true` is not specified, formatting error information is deleted after the `gpload` operation.

    If the <external_table_name> exists, the utility uses the existing table. The utility returns an error if the table schema does not match the `OUTPUT` table schema.

  - STAGING_TABLE

    Optional. Specify the name of the temporary external table that is created during a `gpload` operation. The external table is used by `gpfdist`. `REUSE_TABLES: true` must also specified. If `REUSE_TABLES` is false or not specified, `STAGING_TABLE` is ignored. By default, `gpload` creates a temporary external table with a randomly generated name.

    If external_table_name contains a period (.), `gpload` returns an error. If the table exists, the utility uses the table. The utility returns an error if the existing table schema does not match the `OUTPUT` table schema.

    The utility uses the value of SCHEMA in the `EXTERNAL` section as the schema for <external_table_name>. If the `SCHEMA` value is `%`, the schema for <external_table_name> is the same as the schema of the target table, the schema of TABLE in the `OUTPUT` section.

    If `SCHEMA` is not set, the utility searches for the table (using the schemas in the database `search_path`). If the table is not found, external_table_name is created in the default `PUBLIC` schema.

    `gpload` creates the staging table using the distribution key(s) of the target table as the distribution key(s) for the staging table. If the target table was created `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`, `gpload` uses `MATCH_COLUMNS` as the staging table's distribution key(s).

  - FAST_MATCH

    Optional. If set to true, `gpload` only searches the database for matching external table objects when reusing external tables. The utility does not check the external table column names and column types in the catalog table `pg_attribute` to ensure that the table can be used for a `gpload` operation. Set the value to true to improve `gpload` performance when reusing external table objects and the database catalog table `pg_attribute` contains a large number of rows. The utility returns an error and quits if the column definitions are not compatible.

    The default value is false, the utility checks the external table definition column names and column types.

    `REUSE_TABLES: true` must also specified. If `REUSE_TABLES` is false or not specified and `FAST_MATCH: true` is specified, `gpload` returns a warning message.

- SQL

  Optional. Defines SQL commands to run before and/or after the load operation. You can specify multiple `BEFORE` and/or `AFTER` commands. List commands in the order of desired execution.

  - BEFORE

    Optional. An SQL command to run before the load operation starts. Enclose commands in quotes.

  - AFTER

    Optional. An SQL command to run after the load operation completes. Enclose commands in quotes.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Log File Format

Log files output by `gpload` have the following format:

```
<timestamp>|<level>|<message>
```

Where <timestamp> takes the form: `YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS`, level is one of `DEBUG`, `LOG`, `INFO`, `ERROR`, and message is a normal text message.

Some `INFO` messages that may be of interest in the log files are (where # corresponds to the actual number of seconds, units of data, or failed rows):

```
INFO|running time: <#.##> seconds
INFO|transferred <#.#> kB of <#.#> kB.
INFO|gpload succeeded
INFO|gpload succeeded with warnings
INFO|gpload failed
INFO|1 bad row
INFO|<#> bad rows
```

### Notes

If your database object names were created using a double-quoted identifier (delimited identifier), you must specify the delimited name within single quotes in the `gpload` control file. For example, if you create a table as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE "MyTable" ("MyColumn" text);
```

Your YAML-formatted `gpload` control file would refer to the above table and column names as follows:

```
- COLUMNS:
   - '"MyColumn"': text
OUTPUT:
   - TABLE: public.'"MyTable"'
```

If the YAML control file contains the unsupported `ERROR_TABLE` element, `gpload` logs a warning stating that `ERROR_TABLE` is not supported, and load errors are handled as if the `LOG_ERRORS` and `REUSE_TABLE` elements were set to `true`. Rows with formatting errors are logged internally when running in single row error isolation mode.

### Examples

Run a load job as defined in `my_load.yml`:

```
gpload -f my_load.yml
```

Example load control file:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
---
VERSION: 1.0.0.1
DATABASE: ops
USER: gpadmin
HOST: mdw-1
PORT: 5432
GPLOAD:
   INPUT:
    - SOURCE:
         LOCAL_HOSTNAME:
           - etl1-1
           - etl1-2
           - etl1-3
           - etl1-4
         PORT: 8081
         FILE:
           - /var/load/data/*
    - COLUMNS:
           - name: text
           - amount: float4
           - category: text
           - descr: text
           - date: date
    - FORMAT: text
    - DELIMITER: '|'
    - ERROR_LIMIT: 25
    - LOG_ERRORS: true
   OUTPUT:
    - TABLE: payables.expenses
    - MODE: INSERT
   PRELOAD:
    - REUSE_TABLES: true
   SQL:
   - BEFORE: "INSERT INTO audit VALUES('start', current_timestamp)"
   - AFTER: "INSERT INTO audit VALUES('end', current_timestamp)"
```

### See Also

gpfdist, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.18 gplogfilter

Searches through WarehousePG log files for specified entries.

#### Synopsis

```
gplogfilter [<timestamp_options>] [<pattern_options>]
     [<output_options>] [<input_options>] [<input_file>]

gplogfilter --help

gplogfilter --version
```

#### Description

The `gplogfilter` utility can be used to search through a WarehousePG log file for entries matching the specified criteria. If an input file is not supplied, then `gplogfilter` will use the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` environment variable to locate the WarehousePG coordinator log file in the standard logging location. To read from standard input, use a dash ( `-` ) as the input file name. Input files may be compressed using `gzip` . In an input file, a log entry is identified by its timestamp in `YYYY-MM-DD [hh:mm[:ss]]` format.

You can also use `gplogfilter` to search through all segment log files at once by running it through the gpssh utility. For example, to display the last three lines of each segment log file:

```
gpssh -f seg_host_file
=> source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
=> gplogfilter -n 3 /gpdata/*/log/gpdb*.csv
```

By default, the output of `gplogfilter` is sent to standard output. Use the `-o` option to send the output to a file or a directory. If you supply an output file name ending in `.gz` , the output file will be compressed by default using maximum compression. If the output destination is a directory, the output file is given the same name as the input file.

#### Options

##### Timestamp Options

- `-b datetime | --begin=datetime`

  Specifies a starting date and time to begin searching for log entries in the format of `YYYY-MM-DD [hh:mm[:ss]]` .

  If a time is specified, the date and time must be enclosed in either single or double quotes. This example encloses the date and time in single quotes:

  ```
  gplogfilter -b '2013-05-23 14:33'
  ```

- `-e datetime | --end=datetime`

  Specifies an ending date and time to stop searching for log entries in the format of `YYYY-MM-DD [hh:mm[:ss]]` .

  If a time is specified, the date and time must be enclosed in either single or double quotes. This example encloses the date and time in single quotes:

  ```
  gplogfilter -e '2013-05-23 14:33'
  ```

- `-d<time> | --duration=<time>`

  Specifies a time duration to search for log entries in the format of `[hh][:mm[:ss]]` . If used without either the `-b` or `-e` option, will use the current time as a basis.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Pattern Matching Options

- `-c i \[gnore] | r \[espect] | --case=i \[gnore] | r \[espect]`

  Matching of alphabetic characters is case sensitive by default unless proceeded by the `--case=ignore` option.

- `-C 'string' | --columns='string'`

  Selects specific columns from the log file. Specify the desired columns as a comma-delimited string of column numbers beginning with `1`, where the second column from left is `2`, the third is `3`, and so on. See "Viewing the Database Server Log Files" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for details about the log file format and for a list of the available columns and their associated number.

- `-f 'string' | --find='string'`

  Finds the log entries containing the specified string.

- `-F 'string' | --nofind='string'`

  Rejects the log entries containing the specified string.

- `-m regex | --match=regex`

  Finds log entries that match the specified Python regular expression. See https://docs.python.org/library/re.html for Python regular expression syntax.

- `-M regex | --nomatch=regex`

  Rejects log entries that match the specified Python regular expression. See https://docs.python.org/library/re.html for Python regular expression syntax.

- `-t | --trouble`

  Finds only the log entries that have `ERROR:`, `FATAL:`, or `PANIC:` in the first line.

#### Output Options

- `-n <integer> | --tail=<integer>`

  Limits the output to the last <integer> of qualifying log entries found.

- `-s <offset> </offset>\[limit] | --slice=<offset> </offset>\[limit]`

  From the list of qualifying log entries, returns the <limit> number of entries starting at the <offset> entry number, where an <offset> of zero ( `0` ) denotes the first entry in the result set and an <offset> of any number greater than zero counts back from the end of the result set.

- `-o <output_file> | --out=<output_file>`

  Writes the output to the specified file or directory location instead of `STDOUT`.

- `-z 0-9 | --zip=0-9`

  Compresses the output file to the specified compression level using `gzip`, where `0` is no compression and `9` is maximum compression. If you supply an output file name ending in `.gz`, the output file will be compressed by default using maximum compression.

- `-a | --append`

  If the output file already exists, appends to the file instead of overwriting it.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Input Options

- input_file

  The name of the input log file(s) to search through. If an input file is not supplied, `gplogfilter` will use the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` environment variable to locate the WarehousePG coordinator log file. To read from standard input, use a dash ( `-` ) as the input file name.

- `-u | --unzip`

  Uncompress the input file using `gunzip`. If the input file name ends in `.gz`, it will be uncompressed by default.

- `--help`

  Displays the online help.

- `--version`

  Displays the version of this utility.

### Examples

Display the last three error messages in the coordinator log file:

```
gplogfilter -t -n 3
```

Display all log messages in the coordinator log file timestamped in the last 10 minutes:

```
gplogfilter -d :10
```

Display log messages in the coordinator log file containing the string `|con6 cmd11|` :

```
gplogfilter -f '|con6 cmd11|'
```

Using gpssh, run `gplogfilter` on the segment hosts and search for log messages in the segment log files containing the string `con6` and save output to a file.

```
gpssh -f seg_hosts_file -e 'source
/usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh ; gplogfilter -f
con6 /gpdata/*/log/gpdb*.csv' > seglog.out
```

### See Also

gpssh, gpscp

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.19 gpmapreduce

Runs WarehousePG MapReduce jobs as defined in a YAML specification document.

> *Note* WarehousePG MapReduce is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

### Synopsis

```
gpmapreduce -f <config.yaml> [dbname [<username>]]
     [-k <name=value> | --key <name=value>]
     [-h <hostname> | --host <hostname>] [-p <port>| --port <port>]
     [-U <username> | --username <username>] [-W] [-v]

gpmapreduce -x | --explain

gpmapreduce -X | --explain-analyze

gpmapreduce -V | --version

gpmapreduce -h | --help
```

### Requirements

The following are required prior to running this program:

- You must have your MapReduce job defined in a YAML file. See gpmapreduce.yaml for more information about the format of, and keywords supported in, the WarehousePG MapReduce YAML configuration file.
- You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs written in untrusted Perl or Python.
- You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs with `EXEC` and `FILE` inputs.
- You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs with `GPFDIST` input unless the user has the appropriate rights granted.

### Description

MapReduce is a programming model developed by Google for processing and generating large data sets on an array of commodity servers. WarehousePG MapReduce allows programmers who are familiar with the MapReduce paradigm to write map and reduce functions and submit them to the WarehousePG parallel engine for processing.

`gpmapreduce` is the WarehousePG MapReduce program. You configure a WarehousePG MapReduce job via a YAML-formatted configuration file that you pass to the program for execution by the WarehousePG parallel engine. The WarehousePG cluster distributes the input data, runs the program across a set of machines, handles machine failures, and manages the required inter-machine communication.

### Options

- -f config.yaml

  Required. The YAML file that contains the WarehousePG MapReduce job definitions. Refer to gpmapreduce.yaml for the format and content of the parameters that you specify in this file.

- -? | --help

  Show help, then exit.

- -V | --version

  Show version information, then exit.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v | --verbose

  Show verbose output.

- -x | --explain

  Do not run MapReduce jobs, but produce explain plans.

- -X | --explain-analyze

  Run MapReduce jobs and produce explain-analyze plans.

- -k | --keyname=value

  Sets a YAML variable. A value is required. Defaults to "key" if no variable name is specified.

#### Connection Options

- -h host | --host host

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port port

  Specifies the TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system user name.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

### Examples

Run a MapReduce job as defined in `my_mrjob.yaml` and connect to the database `mydatabase`:

```
gpmapreduce -f my_mrjob.yaml mydatabase
```

### See Also

gpmapreduce.yaml

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.20 gpmapreduce.yaml

gpmapreduce configuration file.

#### Synopsis

```
%YAML 1.1
---
[VERSION](#VERSION): 1.0.0.2
[DATABASE](#DATABASE): dbname
[USER](#USER): db_username
[HOST](#HOST): master_hostname
[PORT](#PORT): master_port
```

```
  - [DEFINE](#DEFINE):
  - [INPUT](#INPUT):
     [NAME](#NAME): input_name
     [FILE](#FILE):
       - *hostname*: /path/to/file
     [GPFDIST](#GPFDIST):
       - *hostname*:port/file_pattern
     [TABLE](#TABLE): table_name
     [QUERY](#QUERY): SELECT_statement
     [EXEC](#EXEC): command_string
     [COLUMNS](#COLUMNS):
       - field_name data_type
     [FORMAT](#FORMAT): TEXT | CSV
     [DELIMITER](#DELIMITER): delimiter_character
     [ESCAPE](#ESCAPE): escape_character
     [NULL](#NULL): null_string
     [QUOTE](#QUOTE): csv_quote_character
     [ERROR\_LIMIT](#ERROR_LIMIT): integer
     [ENCODING](#ENCODING): database_encoding
```

```
  - [OUTPUT](#OUTPUT):
     [NAME](#OUTPUTNAME): output_name
     [FILE](#OUTPUTFILE): file_path_on_client
     [TABLE](#OUTPUTTABLE): table_name
     [KEYS](#KEYS):        - column_name
     [MODE](#MODE): REPLACE | APPEND
```

```
  - [MAP](#MAP):
     [NAME](#NAME): function_name
     [FUNCTION](#FUNCTION): function_definition
     [LANGUAGE](#LANGUAGE): perl | python | c
     [LIBRARY](#LIBRARY): /path/filename.so
     [PARAMETERS](#PARAMETERS):
       - nametype
     [RETURNS](#RETURNS):
       - nametype
     [OPTIMIZE](#OPTIMIZE): STRICT IMMUTABLE
     [MODE](#MODE): SINGLE | MULTI
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
  - [TRANSITION \| CONSOLIDATE \| FINALIZE](#TCF):
     [NAME](#TCFNAME): function_name
     [FUNCTION](#FUNCTION): function_definition
     [LANGUAGE](#LANGUAGE): perl | python | c
     [LIBRARY](#LIBRARY): /path/filename.so
     [PARAMETERS](#PARAMETERS):
       - nametype
     [RETURNS](#RETURNS):
       - nametype
     [OPTIMIZE](#OPTIMIZE): STRICT IMMUTABLE
     [MODE](#TCFMODE): SINGLE | MULTI
```

```
  - [REDUCE](#REDUCE):
     [NAME](#REDUCENAME): reduce_job_name
     [TRANSITION](#TRANSITION): transition_function_name
     [CONSOLIDATE](#CONSOLIDATE): consolidate_function_name
     [FINALIZE](#FINALIZE): finalize_function_name
     [INITIALIZE](#INITIALIZE): value
     [KEYS](#REDUCEKEYS):
       - key_name
```

```
  - [TASK](#TASK):
     [NAME](#TASKNAME): task_name
     [SOURCE](#SOURCE): input_name
     [MAP](#TASKMAP): map_function_name
     [REDUCE](#REDUCE): reduce_function_name
[EXECUTE](#EXECUTE):
```

```
  - [RUN](#RUN):
     [SOURCE](#EXECUTESOURCE): input_or_task_name
     [TARGET](#TARGET): output_name
     [MAP](#EXECUTEMAP): map_function_name
     [REDUCE](#EXECUTEREDUCE): reduce_function_name...
```

### Description

You specify the input, map and reduce tasks, and the output for the WarehousePG MapReduce `gpmapreduce` program in a YAML-formatted configuration file. (This reference page uses the name `gpmapreduce.yaml` when referring to this file; you may choose your own name for the file.)

The `gpmapreduce` utility processes the YAML configuration file in order, using indentation (spaces) to determine the document hierarchy and the relationships between the sections. The use of white space in the file is significant.

### Keys and Values

- VERSION

  Required. The version of the WarehousePG MapReduce YAML specification. Current supported versions are 1.0.0.1, 1.0.0.2, and 1.0.0.3.

- DATABASE

  Optional. Specifies which database in WarehousePG to connect to. If not specified, defaults to the default database or `$PGDATABASE` if set.

- USER

  Optional. Specifies which database role to use to connect. If not specified, defaults to the current user or `$PGUSER` if set. You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run functions written in untrusted Python and Perl. Regular database users can run functions written in trusted Perl. You also must be a database superuser to run MapReduce jobs that contain FILE, GPFDIST and EXEC input types.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- HOST

  Optional. Specifies WarehousePG coordinator host name. If not specified, defaults to localhost or `$PGHOST` if set.

- PORT

  Optional. Specifies WarehousePG coordinator port. If not specified, defaults to 5432 or `$PGPORT` if set.

- DEFINE

  Required. A sequence of definitions for this MapReduce document. The `DEFINE` section must have at least one `INPUT` definition.

  - INPUT

    Required. Defines the input data. Every MapReduce document must have at least one input defined. Multiple input definitions are allowed in a document, but each input definition can specify only one of these access types: a file, a `gpfdist` file reference, a table in the database, an SQL command, or an operating system command. See `` for information about this reference.

  - NAME

    A name for this input. Names must be unique with regards to the names of other objects in this MapReduce job (such as map function, task, reduce function and output names). Also, names cannot conflict with existing objects in the database (such as tables, functions or views).

  - FILE

    A sequence of one or more input files in the format: `seghostname:/path/to/filename`. You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs with `FILE` input. The file must reside on a WarehousePG segment host.

  - GPFDIST

    A sequence identifying one or more running `gpfdist` file servers in the format: `hostname[:port]/file_pattern`. You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs with `GPFDIST` input.

  - TABLE

    The name of an existing table in the database.

  - QUERY

    A SQL `SELECT` command to run within the database.

  - EXEC

    An operating system command to run on the WarehousePG segment hosts. The command is run by all segment instances in the system by default. For example, if you have four segment instances per segment host, the command will be run four times on each host. You must be a WarehousePG superuser to run MapReduce jobs with `EXEC` input.

  - COLUMNS

    Optional. Columns are specified as: `column_name``[``data_type``]`. If not specified, the default is `value text`. The DELIMITER character is what separates two data value fields (columns). A row is determined by a line feed character ( `0x0a` ).

  - FORMAT

    Optional. Specifies the format of the data - either delimited text ( `TEXT` ) or comma separated values ( `CSV` ) format. If the data format is not specified, defaults to `TEXT`.

  - DELIMITER

    Optional for FILE, GPFDIST and EXEC inputs. Specifies a single character that separates data values. The default is a tab character in `TEXT` mode, a comma in `CSV` mode. The delimiter character must only appear between any two data value fields. Do not place a delimiter at the beginning or end of a row.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ESCAPE

  Optional for FILE, GPFDIST and EXEC inputs. Specifies the single character that is used for C escape sequences (such as `\n`, `\t`, `\100`, and so on) and for escaping data characters that might otherwise be taken as row or column delimiters. Make sure to choose an escape character that is not used anywhere in your actual column data. The default escape character is a \ (backslash) for text-formatted files and a `"` (double quote) for csv-formatted files, however it is possible to specify another character to represent an escape. It is also possible to deactivate escaping by specifying the value `'OFF'` as the escape value. This is very useful for data such as text-formatted web log data that has many embedded backslashes that are not intended to be escapes.

- NULL

  Optional for FILE, GPFDIST and EXEC inputs. Specifies the string that represents a null value. The default is `\N` in `TEXT` format, and an empty value with no quotations in `CSV` format. You might prefer an empty string even in `TEXT` mode for cases where you do not want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. Any input data item that matches this string will be considered a null value.

- QUOTE

  Optional for FILE, GPFDIST and EXEC inputs. Specifies the quotation character for `CSV` formatted files. The default is a double quote (`"`). In `CSV` formatted files, data value fields must be enclosed in double quotes if they contain any commas or embedded new lines. Fields that contain double quote characters must be surrounded by double quotes, and the embedded double quotes must each be represented by a pair of consecutive double quotes. It is important to always open and close quotes correctly in order for data rows to be parsed correctly.

- ERROR_LIMIT

  If the input rows have format errors they will be discarded provided that the error limit count is not reached on any WarehousePG segment instance during input processing. If the error limit is not reached, all good rows will be processed and any error rows discarded.

- ENCODING

  Character set encoding to use for the data. Specify a string constant (such as `'SQL_ASCII'`), an integer encoding number, or `DEFAULT` to use the default client encoding. See Character Set Support for more information.

- OUTPUT

  Optional. Defines where to output the formatted data of this MapReduce job. If output is not defined, the default is `STDOUT` (standard output of the client). You can send output to a file on the client host or to an existing table in the database.

- NAME

  A name for this output. The default output name is `STDOUT`. Names must be unique with regards to the names of other objects in this MapReduce job (such as map function, task, reduce function and input names). Also, names cannot conflict with existing objects in the database (such as tables, functions or views).

- FILE

  Specifies a file location on the MapReduce client machine to output data in the format: `/path/to/filename`.

- TABLE

  Specifies the name of a table in the database to output data. If this table does not exist prior to running the MapReduce job, it will be created using the distribution policy specified with KEYS.

- KEYS

  Optional for TABLE output. Specifies the column(s) to use as the WarehousePG distribution key. If the EXECUTE task contains a REDUCE definition, then the `REDUCE` keys will be used as the table distribution key by default. Otherwise, the first column of the table will be used as the distribution key.

- MODE

  Optional for TABLE output. If not specified, the default is to create the table if it does not already exist, but error out if it does exist. Declaring `APPEND` adds output data to an existing table (provided the table schema matches the output format) without removing any existing data. Declaring `REPLACE` will drop the table if it exists and then recreate it. Both `APPEND` and `REPLACE` will create a new table if one does not exist.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- MAP

  Required. Each `MAP` function takes data structured in ( `key` , `value` ) pairs, processes each pair, and generates zero or more output ( `key` , `value` ) pairs. The WarehousePG MapReduce framework then collects all pairs with the same key from all output lists and groups them together. This output is then passed to the REDUCE task, which is comprised of TRANSITION | CONSOLIDATE | FINALIZE functions. There is one predefined `MAP` function named `IDENTITY` that returns ( `key` , `value` ) pairs unchanged. Although ( `key` , `value` ) are the default parameters, you can specify other prototypes as needed.

- TRANSITION | CONSOLIDATE | FINALIZE

  `TRANSITION` , `CONSOLIDATE` and `FINALIZE` are all component pieces of REDUCE. A `TRANSITION` function is required. `CONSOLIDATE` and `FINALIZE` functions are optional. By default, all take `state` as the first of their input PARAMETERS, but other prototypes can be defined as well.

A `TRANSITION` function iterates through each value of a given key and accumulates values in a `state` variable. When the transition function is called on the first value of a key, the `state` is set to the value specified by INITIALIZE of a REDUCE job (or the default state value for the data type). A transition takes two arguments as input; the current state of the key reduction, and the next value, which then produces a new `state` .

If a `CONSOLIDATE` function is specified, `TRANSITION` processing is performed at the segment-level before redistributing the keys across the WarehousePG interconnect for final aggregation (two-phase aggregation). Only the resulting `state` value for a given key is redistributed, resulting in lower interconnect traffic and greater parallelism. `CONSOLIDATE` is handled like a `TRANSITION` , except that instead of `(state + value) => state` , it is `(state + state) => state` .

If a `FINALIZE` function is specified, it takes the final `state` produced by `CONSOLIDATE` (if present) or `TRANSITION` and does any final processing before emitting the final result. `TRANSITION` and `CONSOLIDATE` functions cannot return a set of values. If you need a `REDUCE` job to return a set, then a `FINALIZE` is necessary to transform the final state into a set of output values.

- NAME

  Required. A name for the function. Names must be unique with regards to the names of other objects in this MapReduce job (such as function, task, input and output names). You can also specify the name of a function built-in to WarehousePG. If using a built-in function, do not supply LANGUAGE or a FUNCTION body.

- FUNCTION

  Optional. Specifies the full body of the function using the specifiedLANGUAGE. If `FUNCTION` is not specified, then a built-in database function corresponding to NAME is used.

- LANGUAGE

  Required when FUNCTION is used. Specifies the implementation language used to interpret the function. This release has language support for `perl` , `python` , and `C` . If calling a built-in database function, `LANGUAGE` should not be specified.

- LIBRARY

  Required when LANGUAGE is C (not allowed for other language functions). To use this attribute, VERSION must be 1.0.0.2. The specified library file must be installed prior to running the MapReduce job, and it must exist in the same file system location on all WarehousePG hosts (coordinator and segments).

- PARAMETERS

  Optional. Function input parameters. The default type is `text` .

`MAP` default - `key text` , `value text`

`TRANSITION` default - `state text` , `value text`

`CONSOLIDATE` default - `state1 text` , `state2 text` (must have exactly two input parameters of the same data type)

`FINALIZE` default - `state text` (single parameter only)

- RETURNS

  Optional. The default return type is `text` .

`MAP` default - `key text` , `value text`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`TRANSITION` default - `state text` (single return value only)

`CONSOLIDATE` default - `state text` (single return value only)

`FINALIZE` default - `value text`

- OPTIMIZE

  Optional optimization parameters for the function:

`STRICT` - function is not affected by `NULL` values

`IMMUTABLE` - function will always return the same value for a given input

- MODE

  Optional. Specifies the number of rows returned by the function.

`MULTI` - returns 0 or more rows per input record. The return value of the function must be an array of rows to return, or the function must be written as an iterator using `yield` in Python or `return_next` in Perl. `MULTI` is the default mode for `MAP` and `FINALIZE` functions.

`SINGLE` - returns exactly one row per input record. `SINGLE` is the only mode supported for `TRANSITION` and `CONSOLIDATE` functions. When used with `MAP` and `FINALIZE` functions, `SINGLE` mode can provide modest performance improvement.

- REDUCE

  Required. A `REDUCE` definition names the TRANSITION | CONSOLIDATE | FINALIZE functions that comprise the reduction of ( `key` , `value` ) pairs to the final result set. There are also several predefined `REDUCE` jobs you can run, which all operate over a column named `value` :

`IDENTITY` - returns (key, value) pairs unchanged

`SUM` - calculates the sum of numeric data

`AVG` - calculates the average of numeric data

`COUNT` - calculates the count of input data

`MIN` - calculates minimum value of numeric data

`MAX` - calculates maximum value of numeric data

- NAME

  Required. The name of this `REDUCE` job. Names must be unique with regards to the names of other objects in this MapReduce job (function, task, input and output names). Also, names cannot conflict with existing objects in the database (such as tables, functions or views).

- TRANSITION

  Required. The name of the `TRANSITION` function.

- CONSOLIDATE

  Optional. The name of the `CONSOLIDATE` function.

- FINALIZE

  Optional. The name of the `FINALIZE` function.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- INITIALIZE

  Optional for `text` and `float` data types. Required for all other data types. The default value for text is `''` . The default value for float is `0.0` . Sets the initial `state` value of the `TRANSITION` function.

- KEYS

  Optional. Defaults to `[key, *]` . When using a multi-column reduce it may be necessary to specify which columns are key columns and which columns are value columns. By default, any input columns that are not passed to the `TRANSITION` function are key columns, and a column named `key` is always a key column even if it is passed to the `TRANSITION` function. The special indicator `*` indicates all columns not passed to the `TRANSITION` function. If this indicator is not present in the list of keys then any unmatched columns are discarded.

- TASK

  Optional. A `TASK` defines a complete end-to-end `INPUT` / `MAP` / `REDUCE` stage within a WarehousePG MapReduce job pipeline. It is similar to EXECUTE except it is not immediately run. A task object can be called as INPUT to further processing stages.

- NAME

  Required. The name of this task. Names must be unique with regards to the names of other objects in this MapReduce job (such as map function, reduce function, input and output names). Also, names cannot conflict with existing objects in the database (such as tables, functions or views).

- SOURCE

  The name of an INPUT or another `TASK` .

- MAP

  Optional. The name of a MAP function. If not specified, defaults to `IDENTITY` .

- REDUCE

  Optional. The name of a REDUCE function. If not specified, defaults to `IDENTITY` .

- EXECUTE

  Required. `EXECUTE` defines the final `INPUT` / `MAP` / `REDUCE` stage within a WarehousePG MapReduce job pipeline.

  - RUN

    SOURCE

  Required. The name of an INPUT or TASK.

- TARGET

  Optional. The name of an OUTPUT. The default output is `STDOUT` .

- MAP

  Optional. The name of a MAP function. If not specified, defaults to `IDENTITY` .

- REDUCE

  Optional. The name of a REDUCE function. Defaults to `IDENTITY` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

gpmapreduce

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.21 gpmemreport

Interprets the output created by the gpmemwatcher utility and generates output files in a readable format.

#### Synopsis

```
gpmemreport [<GZIP_FILE>] [[-s <START>] | [--start= <START>]] [[-e <END>] | [--end= <END>]]

gpmemreport --version

gpmemreport -h | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpmemreport` utility helps interpret the output file created by the gpmemwatcher utility.

When running `gpmemreport` against the `.gz` files generated by `gpmemwatcher`, it generates a series of files, where each file corresponds to a 60 second period of data collected by `gpmemwatcher` converted into a readable format.

#### Options

- -s | --start start_time

  Indicates the start of the reporting period. Timestamp format must be `'%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S'`.

- -e | --end end_time

  Indicates the end of the reporting period. Timestamp format must be `'%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S'`.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

#### Examples

**Example 1: Extract all the files generated by `gpmemwatcher` for the WarehousePG coordinator**

Locate the output `.gz` file from `gpmemwatcher` and run `gpmemreport` against it:

```
$ gpmemreport mdw.ps.out.gz
>>>21:11:19:15:37:18<<<

>>>21:11:19:15:38:18<<<

>>>21:11:19:15:39:18<<<
```

Check that the generated files are listed under the current directory:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
$ ls -thrl
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 1.2K Nov 19 15:50 20211119-153718
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 1.2K Nov 19 15:50 20211119-153818
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 1.2K Nov 19 15:50 20211119-153918
```

**Example 2: Extract the files generated by `gpmemwatcher` for the WarehousePG coordinator starting after a certain timestamp**

Locate the output `.gz` file from `gpmemwatcher` and run `gpmemreport` against it, indicating the start time as `2021-11-19 15:38:00`:

```
$ gpmemreport mdw.ps.out.gz --start='2021-11-19 15:38:00'
>>>21:11:19:15:37:18<<<

>>>21:11:19:15:38:18<<<

>>>21:11:19:15:39:18<<<
```

Check under the current directory that only the selected timestamp files are listed:

```
$ ls -thrl
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 1.2K Nov 19 15:50 20211119-153818
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 1.2K Nov 19 15:50 20211119-153918
```

## See Also

gpmemwatcher

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.22 gpmemwatcher

Tracks the memory usage of each process in a WarehousePG cluster.

### Synopsis

```
gpmemwatcher [-f | --host_file <hostfile>]

gpmemwatcher --stop [-f | --host_file <hostfile>]

gpmemwatcher --version

gpmemwatcher -h | --help
```

### Description

The `gpmemwatcher` utility is a daemon that runs on all servers of a WarehousePG cluster. It tracks the memory usage of each process by collecting the output of the `ps` command every 60 seconds. It is a low impact process that only consumes 4 MB of memory. It will generate approximately 30 MB of data over a 24-hour period.

You may use this utility if WarehousePG is reporting `Out of memory` errors and causing segments to go down or queries to fail. You collect the memory usage information of one or multiple servers within the WarehousePG cluster with `gpmemwatcher` and then use gpmemreport to analyze the files collected.

### Options

- -f | --host_file hostfile

  Indicates the hostfile input file that lists the hosts from which the utility should collect memory usage information. The file must include the hostnames and a working directory that exists on each one of the hosts. For example:

  ```
  mdw:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
  sdw1:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
  sdw2:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
  sdw3:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
  sdw4:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
  ```

- --stop

  Stops all the `gpmemwatcher` processes, generates `.gz` data files in the current directory, and removes all the work files from all the hosts.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Example 1: Start the utility specifying the list of hosts from which to collect the information**

Create the file `/home/gpadmin/hostmap.txt` that contains the following:

```
mdw:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
sdw1:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
sdw2:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
sdw3:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
sdw4:/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working
```

Make sure that the path `/home/gpadmin/gpmemwatcher_dir/working` exists on all hosts.

Start the utility:

```
$ gpmemwatcher -f /home/gpadmin/hostmap.txt
```

**Example 2: Stop utility and dump the resulting into a `.gz` file**

Stop the utility you started in Example 1:

```
$ gpmemwatcher -f /home/gpadmin/hostmap.txt --stop
```

The results `.gz` files will be dumped into the directory where you are running the command:

```
$ [gpadmin@gpdb-m]$ ls -thrl
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 2.8K Nov 19 15:17 mdw.ps.out.gz
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 2.8K Nov 19 15:17 sdw1.ps.out.gz
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 2.8K Nov 19 15:17 sdw2.ps.out.gz
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 2.8K Nov 19 15:17 sdw3.ps.out.gz
-rw-rw-r--. 1 gpadmin gpadmin 2.8K Nov 19 15:17 sdw4.ps.out.gz
```

## See Also

gpmemreport

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.23 gpmovemirrors

Moves mirror segment instances to new locations.

#### Synopsis

```
gpmovemirrors -i <move_config_file> [-d <coordinator_data_directory>]
          [-l <logfile_directory>] [-b <segment_batch_size>]
          [-B <batch_size>] [-v] [--hba-hostnames <boolean>]

gpmovemirrors -?

gpmovemirrors --version
```

#### Description

The `gpmovemirrors` utility moves mirror segment instances to new locations. You may want to move mirrors to new locations to optimize distribution or data storage.

By default, the utility will prompt you for the file system location(s) where it will move the mirror segment data directories.

You must make sure that the user who runs `gpmovemirrors` (the `gpadmin` user) has permissions to write to the data directory locations specified. You may want to create these directories on the segment hosts and `chown` them to the appropriate user before running `gpmovemirrors`.

#### Options

- -b segment_batch_size

  The maximum number of segments per host to operate on in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `128`. If not specified, the utility will start recovering up to 64 segments in parallel on each host.

- -B batch_size

  The number of hosts to work on in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start working on up to 16 hosts in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `64`.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  The coordinator data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

- --hba-hostnames boolean

  Optional. Controls whether this utility uses IP addresses or host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file when updating this file with addresses that can connect to WarehousePG. When set to 0 -- the default value -- this utility uses IP addresses when updating this file. When set to 1, this utility uses host names when updating this file. For consistency, use the same value that was specified for `HBA_HOSTNAMES` when the WarehousePG cluster was initialized. For information about how WarehousePG resolves host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file, see Configuring Client Authentication.

- -i move_config_file

  A configuration file containing information about which mirror segments to move, and where to move them.

  You must have one mirror segment listed for each primary segment in the system. Each line inside the configuration file has the following format (as per attributes in the `gp_segment_configuration` catalog table):

  ```
  <old_address>|<port>|<data_dir> <new_address>|<port>|<data_dir>
  ```

  Where `<old_address>` and `<new_address>` are the host names or IP addresses of the segment hosts, `<port>` is the communication port, and `<data_dir>` is the segment instance data directory.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -v (verbose)

  Sets logging output to verbose.

- --version (show utility version)

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Moves mirrors from an existing WarehousePG cluster to a different set of hosts:

```
$ gpmovemirrors -i move_config_file
```

Where the `move_config_file` looks something like this:

```
sdw2|50000|/data2/mirror/gpseg0 sdw3|50000|/data/mirror/gpseg0
sdw2|50001|/data2/mirror/gpseg1 sdw4|50001|/data/mirror/gpseg1
sdw3|50002|/data2/mirror/gpseg2 sdw1|50002|/data/mirror/gpseg2
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.24 gprecoverseg

Recovers a primary or mirror segment instance that has been marked as down (if mirroring is enabled).

#### Synopsis

```
gprecoverseg [[-p <new_recover_host>[,...]] | -i <recover_config_file>] [-d <coordinator_data_directory>]
             [-b <segment_batch_size>] [-B <batch_size>] [-F [-s]] [-a] [-q] [--differential]
               [--hba-hostnames <boolean>]
             [--no-progress] [-l <logfile_directory>]

gprecoverseg -r [--replay-lag <replay_lag>]

gprecoverseg -o <output_recover_config_file>
             [-p <new_recover_host>[,...]]

gprecoverseg -? | -h | --help

gprecoverseg -v | --verbose

gprecoverseg --version
```

#### Description

In a system with mirrors enabled, the `gprecoverseg` utility reactivates a failed segment instance and identifies the changed database files that require resynchronization. Once `gprecoverseg` completes this process, the system goes into `Not in Sync` mode until the recovered segment is brought up to date. The system is online and fully operational during resynchronization.

During an incremental recovery (the `-F` option is not specified), if `gprecoverseg` detects a segment instance with mirroring deactivated in a system with mirrors activated, the utility reports that mirroring is deactivated for the segment, does not attempt to recover that segment instance, and continues the recovery process.

A segment instance can fail for several reasons, such as a host failure, network failure, or disk failure. When a segment instance fails, its status is marked as `d` (down) in the WarehousePG cluster catalog, and its mirror is activated in `Not in Sync` mode. In order to bring the failed segment instance back into operation again, you must first correct the problem that made it fail in the first place, and then recover the segment instance in WarehousePG using `gprecoverseg`.

Segment recovery using `gprecoverseg` requires that you have an active mirror to recover from. For systems that do not have mirroring enabled, or in the event of a double fault (a primary and mirror pair both down at the same time) — you must take manual steps to recover the failed segment instances and then perform a system restart to bring the segments back online. For example, this command restarts a system.

```
gpstop -r
```

By default, a failed segment is recovered in place, meaning that the system brings the segment back online on the same host and data directory location on which it was originally configured. In this case, use the following format for the recovery configuration file (using `-i`). Note that `failed_host_name` is an optional parameter.

```
<failed_host_name>|<failed_host_address>|<port>|<data_directory>
```

In some cases, this may not be possible (for example, if a host was physically damaged and cannot be recovered). In this situation, `gprecoverseg` allows you to recover failed segments to a completely new host (using `-p`), on an alternative data directory location on your remaining live segment hosts (using `-s`), or by supplying a recovery configuration file (using `-i`) in the following format. The word <space> indicates the location of a required space. Do not add additional spaces. The parameter `failed_host_name` is optional.

```
<failed_host_name>|<failed_host_address>|<port>|<data_directory><SPACE><recovery_host_name>|<recovery_host_address>|
<port>|<data_directory>
```

See the `-i` option below for details and examples of a recovery configuration file.

The `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog table can help you determine your current segment configuration so that you can plan your mirror recovery configuration. For example, run the following query:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
=# SELECT dbid, content, address, port, datadir
   FROM gp_segment_configuration
   ORDER BY dbid;
```

The new recovery segment host must be pre-installed with the WarehousePG software and configured exactly the same as the existing segment hosts. A spare data directory location must exist on all currently configured segment hosts and have enough disk space to accommodate the failed segments.

The recovery process marks the segment as up again in the WarehousePG cluster catalog, and then initiates the resynchronization process to bring the transactional state of the segment up-to-date with the latest changes. The system is online and available during `Not in Sync` mode.

### Options

- -a (do not prompt)

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation.

- -b segment_batch_size

  The maximum number of segments per host to operate on in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `128`. If not specified, the utility will start recovering up to 64 segments in parallel on each host.

- -B batch_size

  The number of hosts to work on in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start working on up to 16 hosts in parallel. Valid values are `1` to `64`.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  Optional. The coordinator host data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

- -F (full recovery)

  Optional. Perform a full copy of the active segment instance in order to recover the failed segment, rather than the default behavior of copying only the changes that occurred while the segment was down.

  > **Caution** A full recovery deletes the data directory of the down segment instance before copying the data from the active (current primary) segment instance. Before performing a full recovery, ensure that the segment failure did not cause data corruption and that any host segment disk issues have been fixed.

  Also, for a full recovery, the utility does not restore custom files that are stored in the segment instance data directory even if the custom files are also in the active segment instance. You must restore the custom files manually. For example, when using the `gpfdists` protocol ( `gpfdist` with SSL encryption) to manage external data, client certificate files are required in the segment instance `$PGDATA/gpfdists` directory. These files are not restored. For information about configuring `gpfdists`, see Encrypting gpfdist Connections.

  Use the `-s` option to output a new line once per second for each segment. Alternatively, use the `--no-progress` option to completely deactivate progress reports. To avoid copying the entire contents of the data directory during a full recovery after a previous full recovery failed, use `gprecoverseg` s

  speed up the amount of time full recovery takes, use the `--differential` option to skip recovery of files and directories that have not changed since the last time `gprecoverseg` ran.

- --differential (Differential recovery)

  Optional. Perform a differential copy of the active segment instance in order to recover the failed segment. The default is to only copy over the incremental changes that occurred while the segment was down.

- --hba-hostnames boolean

  Optional. Controls whether this utility uses IP addresses or host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file when updating this file with addresses that can connect to WarehousePG. When set to 0 -- the default value -- this utility uses IP addresses when updating this file. When set to 1, this utility uses host names when updating this file. For consistency, use the same value that was specified for `HBA_HOSTNAMES` when the WarehousePG cluster was initialized. For information about how WarehousePG resolves host names in the `pg_hba.conf` file, see Configuring Client Authentication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -i recover_config_file

  Specifies the name of a file with the details about failed segments to recover.

  Each line in the config file specifies a segment to recover. This line can have one of three formats. In the event of in-place (incremental) recovery, enter one group of pipe-delimited fields in the line. For example:

  ```
  failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory
  ```

  or

  ```
  failedHostname|failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory
  ```

  For recovery to a new location, enter two groups of fields separated by a space in the line. The required space is indicated by <space>. Do not add additional spaces.

  ```
  failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory<SPACE>newAddress|newPort|newDataDirectory
  ```

  or

  ```
  failedHostname|failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory<SPACE>newHostname|newAddress|newPort|newDataDirectory
  ```

  To do mix recovery, include a field with values I/D/F/i/d/f on each line. Default is incremental recovery if recovery_type field is not provided.

  ```
  recoveryType|failedAddress|failedPort|failedDataDirectory
  ```

  recoveryType field supports below values: I/i for incremental recovery D/d for differential recovery F/f for full recovery

  > **Note** Lines beginning with `#` are treated as comments and ignored.

  **Examples**

  **In-place (incremental) recovery of a single mirror**

  ```
  sdw1-1|50001|/data1/mirror/gpseg16
  ```

  **Recovery of a single mirror to a new host**

  ```
  sdw1-1|50001|/data1/mirror/gpseg16<SPACE>sdw4-1|50001|/data1/recover1/gpseg16
  ```

  In-place recovery of down mirrors with recovery type:

  ```
  sdw1-1|50001|/data1/mirror/gpseg1   // Does incremental recovery (By default)
  I|sdw1-1|50001|/data1/mirror/gpseg1   // Does incremental recovery
  i|sdw1-1|50001|/data1/mirror/gpseg1   // Does incremental recovery
  D|sdw2-1|50002|/data1/mirror/gpseg2   // Does Differential recovery
  d|sdw2-1|50002|/data1/mirror/gpseg2   // Does Differential recovery
  F|sdw3-1|50003|/data1/mirror/gpseg3   // Does Full recovery
  f|sdw3-1|50003|/data1/mirror/gpseg3   // Does Full recovery
  ```

  **Obtaining a Sample File**

  You can use the `-o` option to output a sample recovery configuration file to use as a starting point. The output file lists the currently invalid segments and their default recovery location. This file format can be used with the `-i` option for in-place (incremental) recovery.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -o output_recover_config_file

  Specifies a file name and location to output a sample recovery configuration file. This file can be edited to supply alternate recovery locations if needed. The following example outputs the default recovery configuration file:

  ```
  $ gprecoverseg -o /home/gpadmin/recover_config_file
  ```

- -p new_recover_host[,...]

  Specifies a new host outside of the currently configured WarehousePG array on which to recover invalid segments.

  The new host must have the WarehousePG software installed and configured, and have the same hardware and OS configuration as the current segment hosts (same OS version, locales, `gpadmin` user account, data directory locations created, ssh keys exchanged, number of network interfaces, network interface naming convention, and so on). Specifically, the WarehousePG binaries must be installed, the new host must be able to connect password-less with all segments including the WarehousePG coordinator, and any other WarehousePG specific OS configuration parameters must be applied.

  > **Note** In the case of multiple failed segment hosts, you can specify the hosts to recover with a comma-separated list. However, it is strongly recommended to recover one host at a time. If you must recover more than one host at a time, then it is critical to ensure that a double fault scenario does not occur, in which both the segment primary and corresponding mirror are offline.

- -q (no screen output)

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -r (rebalance segments)

  After a segment recovery, segment instances may not be returned to the preferred role that they were given at system initialization time. This can leave the system in a potentially unbalanced state, as some segment hosts may have more active segments than is optimal for top system performance. This option rebalances primary and mirror segments by returning them to their preferred roles. All segments must be valid and resynchronized before running `gprecoverseg -r`. If there are any in progress queries, they will be cancelled and rolled back.

- --replay-lag

  Replay lag(in GBs) allowed on mirror when rebalancing the segments. If the replay_lag (flush_lsn-replay_lsn) is more than the value provided with this option then rebalance will be aborted.

- -s (sequential progress)

  Show `pg_basebackup` or `pg_rewind` progress sequentially instead of in-place. Useful when writing to a file, or if a tty does not support escape sequences. The default is to show progress in-place.

- --no-progress

  Suppresses progress reports from the `pg_basebackup`, `pg_rewind`, or `rsync` utility. The default is to display progress.

- --differential

  Optional. During a full recovery, copy from the primary segment to the mirror segment only the files and directories that changed since the segment failed. You may use the `--differential` option for in-place full recovery only. See Recovery Scenarios for more information on in-place recovery versus recovery to a different host.

  > **Note** The `--differential` option cannot be combined with any of the following `gprecoverseg` options: `-i`, `-o`, `-F`, or `-p`.

- -v | --verbose

  Sets logging output to verbose.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? | -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Examples

#### Example 1: Recover Failed Segments in Place

Recover any failed segment instances in place:

```
$ gprecoverseg
```

#### Example 2: Rebalance Failed Segments If Not in Preferred Roles

First, verify that all segments are up and running, reysynchronization has completed, and there are segments **not** in preferred roles:

```
$ gpstate -e
```

Then, if necessary, rebalance the segments:

```
$ gprecoverseg -r
```

#### Example 3: Recover Failed Segments to a Separate Host

Recover any failed segment instances to a newly configured new segment host:

```
$ gprecoverseg -i <recover_config_file>
```

## See Also

gpstart, gpstop

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.25 gpreload

Reloads WarehousePG table data sorting the data based on specified columns.

#### Synopsis

```
gpreload -d <database> [-p <port>] {-t | --table-file} <path_to_file> [-a]

gpreload -h

gpreload --version
```

#### Description

The `gpreload` utility reloads table data with column data sorted. For tables that were created with the table storage option `appendoptimized=TRUE` and compression enabled, reloading the data with sorted data can improve table compression. You specify a list of tables to be reloaded and the table columns to be sorted in a text file.

Compression is improved by sorting data when the data in the column has a relatively low number of distinct values when compared to the total number of rows.

For a table being reloaded, the order of the columns to be sorted might affect compression. The columns with the fewest distinct values should be listed first. For example, listing state then city would generally result in better compression than listing city then state.

```
public.cust_table: state, city
public.cust_table: city, state
```

For information about the format of the file used with `gpreload`, see the `--table-file` option.

#### Notes

To improve reload performance, indexes on tables being reloaded should be removed before reloading the data.

Running the `ANALYZE` command after reloading table data might query performance because of a change in the data distribution of the reloaded data.

For each table, the utility copies table data to a temporary table, truncates the existing table data, and inserts data from the temporary table to the table in the specified sort order. Each table reload is performed in a single transaction.

For a partitioned table, you can reload the data of a leaf child partition. However, data is inserted from the root partition table, which acquires a `ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on the entire table.

#### Options

- -a (do not prompt)

  Optional. If specified, the `gpreload` utility does not prompt the user for confirmation.

- -d database

  The database that contains the tables to be reloaded. The `gpreload` utility connects to the database as the user running the utility.

- -p port

  The WarehousePG coordinator port. If not specified, the value of the `PGPORT` environment variable is used. If the value is not available, an error is returned.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- {-t | --table-file } path_to_file

  The location and name of file containing list of schema qualified table names to reload and the column names to reorder from the WarehousePG. Only user defined tables are supported. Views or system catalog tables are not supported.

  If indexes are defined on table listed in the file, `gpreload` prompts to continue.

  Each line specifies a table name and the list of columns to sort. This is the format of each line in the file:

  ```
  schema.table_name: column [desc] [, column2 [desc] ... ]
  ```

  The table name is followed by a colon ( : ) and then at least one column name. If you specify more than one column, separate the column names with a comma. The columns are sorted in ascending order. Specify the keyword `desc` after the column name to sort the column in descending order.

  Wildcard characters are not supported.

  If there are errors in the file, `gpreload` reports the first error and exits. No data is reloaded.

  The following example reloads three tables:

  ```
  public.clients: region, state, rep_id desc
  public.merchants: region, state
  test.lineitem: group, assy, whse
  ```

  In the first table `public.clients`, the data in the `rep_id` column is sorted in descending order. The data in the other columns are sorted in ascending order.

- --version (show utility version)

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Example

This example command reloads the tables in the database `mytest` that are listed in the file `data-tables.txt`.

```
gpreload -d mytest --table-file data-tables.txt
```

### See Also

`CREATE TABLE` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.26 gpscp

Copies files between multiple hosts at once.

### Synopsis

```
gpscp { -f <hostfile_gpssh> | -h <hostname> [-h <hostname> ...] }
      [-J <character>] [-v] [[<user>@]<hostname>:]<file_to_copy> [...]
      [[<user>@]<hostname>:]<copy_to_path>

gpscp -?

gpscp --version
```

### Description

The `gpscp` utility allows you to copy one or more files from the specified hosts to other specified hosts in one command using SCP (secure copy). For example, you can copy a file from the WarehousePG coordinator host to all of the segment hosts at the same time.

To specify the hosts involved in the SCP session, use the `-f` option to specify a file containing a list of host names, or use the `-h` option to name single host names on the command-line. At least one host name ( `-h` ) or a host file ( `-f` ) is required. The `-J` option allows you to specify a single character to substitute for the hostname in the `copy from` and `copy to` destination strings. If `-J` is not specified, the default substitution character is an equal sign ( `=` ). For example, the following command will copy `.bashrc` from the local host to `/home/gpadmin` on all hosts named in `hostfile_gpssh` :

```
gpscp -f hostfile_gpssh .bashrc =:/home/gpadmin
```

If a user name is not specified in the host list or with user `@` in the file path, `gpscp` will copy files as the currently logged in user. To determine the currently logged in user, do a `whoami` command. By default, `gpscp` goes to `$HOME` of the session user on the remote hosts after login. To ensure the file is copied to the correct location on the remote hosts, it is recommended that you use absolute paths.

Before using `gpscp` , you must have a trusted host setup between the hosts involved in the SCP session. You can use the utility `gpssh-exkeys` to update the known host files and exchange public keys between hosts if you have not done so already.

### Options

- -f hostfile_gpssh

  Specifies the name of a file that contains a list of hosts that will participate in this SCP session. The syntax of the host file is one host per line as follows:

  ```
  <hostname>
  ```

- -h hostname

  Specifies a single host name that will participate in this SCP session. You can use the `-h` option multiple times to specify multiple host names.

- -J character

  The `-J` option allows you to specify a single character to substitute for the hostname in the `copy from` and `copy to` destination strings. If `-J` is not specified, the default substitution character is an equal sign ( `=` ).

- -v (verbose mode)

  Optional. Reports additional messages in addition to the SCP command output.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- file_to_copy

  Required. The file name (or absolute path) of a file that you want to copy to other hosts (or file locations). This can be either a file on the local host or on another named host.

- copy_to_path

  Required. The path where you want the file(s) to be copied on the named hosts. If an absolute path is not used, the file will be copied relative to `$HOME` of the session user. You can also use the equal sign ' `=` ' (or another character that you specify with the `-J` option) in place of a hostname. This will then substitute in each host name as specified in the supplied host file ( `-f` ) or with the `-h` option.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

### Examples

Copy the file named `installer.tar` to `/` on all the hosts in the file `hostfile_gpssh`.

```
gpscp -f hostfile_gpssh installer.tar =:/
```

Copy the file named myfuncs.so to the specified location on the hosts named `sdw1` and `sdw2`:

```
gpscp -h sdw1 -h sdw2 myfuncs.so =:/usr/edb/whpg6/lib
```

### See Also

gpssh, gpssh-exkeys

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.27 gpssh

Provides SSH access to multiple hosts at once.

### Synopsis

```
gpssh { -f <hostfile_gpssh> | - h <hostname> [-h <hostname> ...] } \[-s\] [-e]
      [-d <seconds>] [-t <multiplier>] [-v]
      [<bash_command>]

gpssh -?

gpssh --version
```

### Description

The `gpssh` utility allows you to run bash shell commands on multiple hosts at once using SSH (secure shell). You can run a single command by specifying it on the command-line, or omit the command to enter into an interactive command-line session.

To specify the hosts involved in the SSH session, use the `-f` option to specify a file containing a list of host names, or use the `-h` option to name single host names on the command-line. At least one host name ( `-h` ) or a host file ( `-f` ) is required. Note that the current host is ***not*** included in the session by default — to include the local host, you must explicitly declare it in the list of hosts involved in the session.

Before using `gpssh` , you must have a trusted host setup between the hosts involved in the SSH session. You can use the utility `gpssh-exkeys` to update the known host files and exchange public keys between hosts if you have not done so already.

If you do not specify a command on the command-line, `gpssh` will go into interactive mode. At the `gpssh` command prompt ( `=>` ), you can enter a command as you would in a regular bash terminal command-line, and the command will be run on all hosts involved in the session. To end an interactive session, press `CTRL` + `D` on the keyboard or type `exit` or `quit` .

If a user name is not specified in the host file, `gpssh` will run commands as the currently logged in user. To determine the currently logged in user, do a `whoami` command. By default, `gpssh` goes to `$HOME` of the session user on the remote hosts after login. To ensure commands are run correctly on all remote hosts, you should always enter absolute paths.

If you encounter network timeout problems when using `gpssh` , you can use `-d` and `-t` options or set parameters in the `gpssh.conf` file to control the timing that `gpssh` uses when validating the initial `ssh` connection. For information about the configuration file, see gpssh Configuration File.

### Options

- bash_command

  A bash shell command to run on all hosts involved in this session (optionally enclosed in quotes). If not specified, `gpssh` starts an interactive session.

- -d (delay) seconds

  Optional. Specifies the time, in seconds, to wait at the start of a `gpssh` interaction with `ssh` . Default is `0.05` . This option overrides the `delaybeforesend` value that is specified in the `gpssh.conf` configuration file.

  Increasing this value can cause a long wait time during `gpssh` startup.

- -e (echo)

  Optional. Echoes the commands passed to each host and their resulting output while running in non-interactive mode.

- -f hostfile_gpssh

  Specifies the name of a file that contains a list of hosts that will participate in this SSH session. The syntax of the host file is one host per line.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -h hostname

  Specifies a single host name that will participate in this SSH session. You can use the `-h` option multiple times to specify multiple host names.

- -s

  Optional. If specified, before running any commands on the target host, `gpssh` sources the file `greenplum_path.sh` in the directory specified by the `$GPHOME` environment variable.

  This option is valid for both interactive mode and single command mode.

- -t multiplier

  Optional. A decimal number greater than 0 (zero) that is the multiplier for the timeout that `gpssh` uses when validating the `ssh` prompt. Default is `1`. This option overrides the `prompt_validation_timeout` value that is specified in the `gpssh.conf` configuration file.

  Increasing this value has a small impact during `gpssh` startup.

- -v (verbose mode)

  Optional. Reports additional messages in addition to the command output when running in non-interactive mode.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### gpssh Configuration File

The `gpssh.conf` file contains parameters that let you adjust the timing that `gpssh` uses when validating the initial `ssh` connection. These parameters affect the network connection before the `gpssh` session runs commands with `ssh`. The location of the file is specified by the environment variable `MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`. If the environment variable is not defined or the `gpssh.conf` file does not exist, `gpssh` uses the default values or the values set with the `-d` and `-t` options. For information about the environment variable, see the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

The `gpssh.conf` file is a text file that consists of a `[gpssh]` section and parameters. On a line, the `#` (pound sign) indicates the start of a comment. This is an example `gpssh.conf` file.

```
[gpssh]
delaybeforesend = 0.05
prompt_validation_timeout = 1.0
sync_retries = 5
```

These are the `gpssh.conf` parameters.

- delaybeforesend = seconds

  Specifies the time, in seconds, to wait at the start of a `gpssh` interaction with `ssh`. Default is 0.05. Increasing this value can cause a long wait time during `gpssh` startup. The `-d` option overrides this parameter.

- prompt_validation_timeout = multiplier

  A decimal number greater than 0 (zero) that is the multiplier for the timeout that `gpssh` uses when validating the `ssh` prompt. Increasing this value has a small impact during `gpssh` startup. Default is `1`. The `-t` option overrides this parameter.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- sync_retries = attempts

  A non-negative integer that specifies the maximum number of times that `gpssh` attempts to connect to a remote WarehousePG host. The default is 3. If the value is 0, `gpssh` returns an error if the initial connection attempt fails. Increasing the number of attempts also increases the time between retry attempts. This parameter cannot be configured with a command-line option.

  The `-t` option also affects the time between retry attempts.

  Increasing this value can compensate for slow network performance or segment host performance issues such as heavy CPU or I/O load. However, when a connection cannot be established, an increased value also increases the delay when an error is returned.

### Examples

Start an interactive group SSH session with all hosts listed in the file `hostfile_gpssh`:

```
$ gpssh -f hostfile_gpssh
```

At the `gpssh` interactive command prompt, run a shell command on all the hosts involved in this session.

```
=> ls -a /data/primary/*
```

Exit an interactive session:

```
=> exit
=> quit
```

Start a non-interactive group SSH session with the hosts named `sdw1` and `sdw2` and pass a file containing several commands named `command_file` to `gpssh`:

```
$ gpssh -h sdw1 -h sdw2 -v -e < command_file
```

Run single commands in non-interactive mode on hosts `sdw2` and `localhost`:

```
$ gpssh -h sdw2 -h localhost -v -e 'ls -a /data/primary/*'
$ gpssh -h sdw2 -h localhost -v -e 'echo $GPHOME'
$ gpssh -h sdw2 -h localhost -v -e 'ls -1 | wc -l'
```

### See Also

gpssh-exkeys, gpscp

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.28 gpssh-exkeys

Exchanges SSH public keys between hosts.

#### Synopsis

```
gpssh-exkeys -f <hostfile_exkeys> | -h <hostname> [-h <hostname> ...]

gpssh-exkeys -e <hostfile_exkeys> -x <hostfile_gpexpand>

gpssh-exkeys -?

gpssh-exkeys --version
```

#### Description

The `gpssh-exkeys` utility exchanges SSH keys between the specified host names (or host addresses). This allows SSH connections between WarehousePG hosts and network interfaces without a password prompt. The utility is used to initially prepare a WarehousePG cluster for passwordless SSH access, and also to prepare additional hosts for passwordless SSH access when expanding a WarehousePG cluster.

Keys are exchanged as the currently logged in user. You run the utility on the coordinator host as the `gpadmin` user (the user designated to own your WarehousePG installation). WarehousePG management utilities require that the `gpadmin` user be created on all hosts in the WarehousePG cluster, and the utilities must be able to connect as that user to all hosts without a password prompt.

You can also use `gpssh-exkeys` to enable passwordless SSH for additional users, `root`, for example.

The `gpssh-exkeys` utility has the following prerequisites:

- The user must have an account on the coordinator, standby, and every segment host in the WarehousePG cluster.
- The user must have an `id_rsa` SSH key pair installed on the coordinator host.
- The user must be able to connect with SSH from the coordinator host to every other host machine without entering a password. (This is called "1-*n* passwordless SSH.")

You can enable 1-*n* passwordless SSH using the `ssh-copy-id` command to add the user's public key to each host's `authorized_keys` file. The `gpssh-exkeys` utility enables "*n*-*n* passwordless SSH," which allows the user to connect with SSH from any host to any other host in the cluster without a password.

To specify the hosts involved in an SSH key exchange, use the `-f` option to specify a file containing a list of host names (recommended), or use the `-h` option to name single host names on the command-line. At least one host name ( `-h` ) or a host file ( `-f` ) is required. Note that the local host is included in the key exchange by default.

To specify new expansion hosts to be added to an existing WarehousePG cluster, use the `-e` and `-x` options. The `-e` option specifies a file containing a list of existing hosts in the system that have already exchanged SSH keys. The `-x` option specifies a file containing a list of new hosts that need to participate in the SSH key exchange.

The `gpssh-exkeys` utility performs key exchange using the following steps:

- Adds the user's public key to the user's own `authorized_keys` file on the current host.
- Updates the `known_hosts` file of the current user with the host key of each host specified using the `-h`, `-f`, `-e`, and `-x` options.
- Connects to each host using `ssh` and obtains the user's `authorized_keys`, `known_hosts`, and `id_rsa.pub` files.
- Adds keys from the `id_rsa.pub` files obtained from each host to the `authorized_keys` file of the current user.
- Updates the `authorized_keys`, `known_hosts`, and `id_rsa.pub` files on all hosts with new host information (if any).

#### Options

- -e hostfile_exkeys

  When doing a system expansion, this is the name and location of a file containing all configured host names and host addresses (interface names) for each host in your current WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, standby coordinator, and segments), one name per line without blank lines or extra spaces. Hosts specified in this file cannot be specified in the host file used with `-x`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -f hostfile_exkeys

  Specifies the name and location of a file containing all configured host names and host addresses (interface names) for each host in your WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, standby coordinator and segments), one name per line without blank lines or extra spaces.

- -h hostname

  Specifies a single host name (or host address) that will participate in the SSH key exchange. You can use the `-h` option multiple times to specify multiple host names and host addresses.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

- -x hostfile_gpexpand

  When doing a system expansion, this is the name and location of a file containing all configured host names and host addresses (interface names) for each new segment host you are adding to your WarehousePG cluster, one name per line without blank lines or extra spaces. Hosts specified in this file cannot be specified in the host file used with `-e`.

- -? (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Examples

Exchange SSH keys between all host names and addresses listed in the file `hostfile_exkeys`:

```
$ gpssh-exkeys -f hostfile_exkeys
```

Exchange SSH keys between the hosts `sdw1`, `sdw2`, and `sdw3`:

```
$ gpssh-exkeys -h sdw1 -h sdw2 -h sdw3
```

Exchange SSH keys between existing hosts `sdw1`, `sdw2`, and `sdw3`, and new hosts `sdw4` and `sdw5` as part of a system expansion operation:

```
$ cat hostfile_exkeys
mdw
mdw-1
mdw-2
smdw
smdw-1
smdw-2
sdw1
sdw1-1
sdw1-2
sdw2
sdw2-1
sdw2-2
sdw3
sdw3-1
sdw3-2
$ cat hostfile_gpexpand
sdw4
sdw4-1
sdw4-2
sdw5
sdw5-1
sdw5-2
$ gpssh-exkeys -e hostfile_exkeys -x hostfile_gpexpand
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

gpssh, gpscp

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.29 gpstart

Starts a WarehousePG cluster.

### Synopsis

```
gpstart [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-B <parallel_processes>] [-R]
        [-m] [-y] [-a] [-t <timeout_seconds>] [-l <logfile_directory>]
        [--skip-heap-checksum-validation]
        [-v | -q]

gpstart -? | -h | --help

gpstart --version
```

### Description

The `gpstart` utility is used to start the WarehousePG server processes. When you start a WarehousePG cluster, you are actually starting several `postgres` database server listener processes at once (the coordinator and all of the segment instances). The `gpstart` utility handles the startup of the individual instances. Each instance is started in parallel.

As part of the startup process, the utility checks the consistency of heap checksum setting among the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances, either enabled or deactivated on all instances. If the heap checksum setting is different among the instances, an error is returned and WarehousePG does not start. The validation can be deactivated by specifying the option `--skip-heap-checksum-validation`. For more information about heap checksums, see Enabling High Availability and Data Consistency Features in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

> **Note** Before you can start a WarehousePG cluster, you must have initialized the system using `gpinitsystem`. Enabling or deactivating heap checksums is set when you initialize the system and cannot be changed after initialization.

If the WarehousePG cluster is configured with a standby coordinator, and `gpstart` does not detect it during startup, `gpstart` displays a warning and lets you cancel the startup operation.

- If the `-a` option (deactivate interactive mode prompts) is not specified, `gpstart` displays and logs these messages:

  ```
  Standby host is unreachable, cannot determine whether the standby is currently acting as the master. Received error:
  <error>
  Continue only if you are certain that the standby is not acting as the master.
  ```

  It also displays this prompt to continue startup:

  ```
  Continue with startup Yy|Nn (default=N):
  ```

- If the `-a` option is specified, the utility does not start the system. The messages are only logged, and `gpstart` adds this log message:

  ```
  Non interactive mode detected. Not starting the cluster. Start the cluster in interactive mode.
  ```

If the standby coordinator is not accessible, you can start the system and troubleshoot standby coordinator issues while the system is available.

### Options

- -a

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation. Deactivates interactive mode.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -B parallel_processes

  The number of segments to start in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start up to 64 parallel processes depending on how many segment instances it needs to start.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  Optional. The coordinator host data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -m

  Optional. Starts the coordinator instance only, which may be useful for maintenance tasks. This mode only allows connections to the coordinator in utility mode. For example:

  ```
  PGOPTIONS='-c gp_session_role=utility' psql
  ```

  The consistency of the heap checksum setting on coordinator and segment instances is not checked.

- -q

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -R

  Starts WarehousePG in restricted mode (only database superusers are allowed to connect).

- --skip-heap-checksum-validation

  During startup, the utility does not validate the consistency of the heap checksum setting among the WarehousePG coordinator and segment instances. The default is to ensure that the heap checksum setting is the same on all instances, either enabled or deactivated.

> **Caution** Starting WarehousePG without this validation could lead to data loss. Use this option to start WarehousePG only when it is necessary to ignore the heap checksum verification errors to recover data or to troubleshoot the errors.

- -t timeout_seconds

  Specifies a timeout in seconds to wait for a segment instance to start up. If a segment instance was shutdown abnormally (due to power failure or killing its `postgres` database listener process, for example), it may take longer to start up due to the database recovery and validation process. If not specified, the default timeout is 600 seconds.

- -v

  Displays detailed status, progress and error messages output by the utility.

- -y

  Optional. Do not start the standby coordinator host. The default is to start the standby coordinator host and synchronization process.

- -? | -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Start a WarehousePG cluster:

```
gpstart
```

Start a WarehousePG cluster in restricted mode (only allow superuser connections):

```
gpstart -R
```

Start the WarehousePG coordinator instance only and connect in utility mode:

```
gpstart -m
PGOPTIONS='-c gp_session_role=utility' psql
```

### See Also

gpstop, gpinitsystem

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.30 gpstate

Shows the status of a running WarehousePG cluster.

#### Synopsis

```
gpstate [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-B <parallel_processes>]
          [-s | -b | -Q \| -e\] \[-m \| -c] [-p] [-i] [-f] [-v | -q] | -x
          [-l <log_directory>]

gpstate -? | -h | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpstate` utility displays information about a running WarehousePG instance. There is additional information you may want to know about a WarehousePG cluster, since it is comprised of multiple PostgreSQL database instances (segments) spanning multiple machines. The `gpstate` utility provides additional status information for a WarehousePG cluster, such as:

- Which segments are down.
- Coordinator and segment configuration information (hosts, data directories, etc.).
- The ports used by the system.
- A mapping of primary segments to their corresponding mirror segments.

#### Options

- -b (brief status)

  Optional. Display a brief summary of the state of the WarehousePG cluster. This is the default option.

- -B parallel_processes

  The number of segments to check in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start up to 60 parallel processes depending on how many segment instances it needs to check.

- -c (show primary to mirror mappings)

  Optional. Display mapping of primary segments to their corresponding mirror segments.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  Optional. The coordinator data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

- -e (show segments with mirror status issues)

  Show details on primary/mirror segment pairs that have potential issues. These issues include:

  - Whether any segments are down.
  - Whether any primary-mirror segment pairs are out of sync – including information on how many bytes are remaining to sync (as displayed in the `WAL sync remaining bytes` output field).

  > **Note** `gpstate -e` does not display segment pairs that are in sync.

  > **Note** You must have `rsync` version 3.1.x or higher installed in order to view the tracking information for segments undergoing a differential recovery.

  - Whether any primary-mirror segment pairs are not in their preferred roles.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -f (show standby coordinator details)

  Display details of the standby coordinator host if configured.

- -i (show WarehousePG version)

  Display the WarehousePG software version information for each instance.

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -m (list mirrors)

  Optional. List the mirror segment instances in the system and their current role.

- -p (show ports)

  List the port numbers used throughout the WarehousePG cluster.

- -q (no screen output)

  Optional. Run in quiet mode. Except for warning messages, command output is not displayed on the screen. However, this information is still written to the log file.

- -Q (quick status)

  Optional. Checks segment status in the system catalog on the coordinator host. Does not poll the segments for status.

- -s (detailed status)

  Optional. Displays detailed status information about the WarehousePG cluster.

- -v (verbose output)

  Optional. Displays error messages and outputs detailed status and progress information.

- -x (expand)

  Optional. Displays detailed information about the progress and state of a WarehousePG cluster expansion.

- -? | -h | --help (help)

  Displays the online help.

### Output Field Definitions

The following output fields are reported by `gpstate -s` for the coordinator:

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| coordinator host | host name of the coordinator |
| Coordinator postgres process ID | PID of the coordinator database listener process |
| Coordinator data directory | file system location of the coordinator data directory |
| Coordinator port | port of the coordinator `postgres` database listener process |
| Coordinator current role | dispatch = regular operating mode<br>utility = maintenance mode |
| WarehousePG cluster configuration type | Standard = one NIC per host<br>Multi-Home = multiple NICs per host |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| WarehousePG initsystem version | version of WarehousePG when system was first initialized |
| WarehousePG current version | current version of WarehousePG |
| Postgres version | version of PostgreSQL that WarehousePG is based on |
| WarehousePG mirroring status | physical mirroring or none |
| Coordinator standby | host name of the standby coordinator |
| standby coordinator state | status of the standby coordinator: active or passive |

The following output fields are reported by `gpstate -s` for each primary segment:

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Hostname | system-configured host name |
| Address | network address host name (NIC name) |
| Datadir | file system location of segment data directory |
| Port | port number of segment `postgres` database listener process |
| Current Role | current role of a segment: Mirror or Primary |
| Preferred Role | role at system initialization time: Mirror or Primary |
| Mirror Status | status of a primary/mirror segment pair:<br>Synchronized = data is up to date on both<br>Not in Sync = the mirror segment has not caught up to the primary segment |
| Current write location | Location where primary segment is writing new logs as they come in |
| Bytes remaining to send to mirror | Bytes remaining to be sent from primary to mirror |
| Active PID | active process ID of a segment |
| Coordinator reports status as | segment status as reported in the system catalog: Up or Down |
| Database status | status of WarehousePG to incoming requests: Up, Down, or Suspended. A Suspended state means database activity is temporarily paused while a segment transitions from one state to another. |

The following output fields are reported by `gpstate -s` for each mirror segment:

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Hostname | system-configured host name |
| Address | network address host name (NIC name) |
| Datadir | file system location of segment data directory |
| Port | port number of segment `postgres` database listener process |
| Current Role | current role of a segment: Mirror or Primary |
| Preferred Role | role at system initialization time: Mirror or Primary |
| Mirror Status | status of a primary/mirror segment pair:<br>Synchronized = data is up to date on both<br>Not in Sync = the mirror segment has not caught up to the primary segment |
| WAL Sent Location | Log location up to which the primary segment has sent log data to the mirror |
| WAL Flush Location | Log location up to which the mirror segment has flushed the log data to disk |
| WAL Replay Location | Log location up to which the mirror segment has replayed logs locally |
| Bytes received but remain to flush | Difference between flush log location and sent log location |
| Bytes received but remain to replay | Difference between replay log location and sent log location |
| Active PID | active process ID of a segment |
| Coordinator reports status as | segment status as reported in the system catalog: Up or Down |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Database status | status of WarehousePG to incoming requests: Up, Down, or Suspended. A Suspended state means database activity is temporarily paused while a segment transitions from one state to another. |

> **Note** When there is no connection between a primary segment and its mirror, `gpstate -s` displays `Unknown` in the following fields:

- `Bytes remaining to send to mirror`
- `WAL Sent Location`
- `WAL Flush Location`
- `WAL Replay Location`
- `Bytes received but remain to flush`
- `Bytes received but remain to replay`

The following output fields are reported by `gpstate -f` for standby coordinator replication status:

| Output Data | Description |
|---|---|
| Standby address | hostname of the standby coordinator |
| Standby data dir | file system location of the standby coordinator data directory |
| Standby port | port of the standby coordinator `postgres` database listener process |
| Standby PID | process ID of the standby coordinator |
| Standby status | status of the standby coordinator: Standby host passive |
| WAL Sender State | write-ahead log (WAL) streaming state: streaming, startup,backup, catchup |
| Sync state | WAL sender synchronization state: sync |
| Sent Location | WAL sender transaction log (xlog) record sent location |
| Flush Location | WAL receiver xlog record flush location |
| Replay Location | standby xlog record replay location |

### Examples

Show detailed status information of a WarehousePG cluster:

```
gpstate -s
```

Do a quick check for down segments in the coordinator host system catalog:

```
gpstate -Q
```

Show information about mirror segment instances:

```
gpstate -m
```

Show information about the standby coordinator configuration:

```
gpstate -f
```

Display the WarehousePG software version information:

```
gpstate -i
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## See Also

gpstart, gpexpandgplogfilter

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.31 gpstop

Stops or restarts a WarehousePG cluster.

#### Synopsis

```
gpstop [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-B parallel_processes>]
       [-M smart | fast | immediate] [-t <timeout_seconds>] [-r] [-y] [-a]
       [-l <logfile_directory>] [-v | -q]

gpstop -m [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-y] [-l <logfile_directory>] [-v | -q]

gpstop -u [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-l <logfile_directory>] [-v | -q]

gpstop --host <host_namea> [-d <coordinator_data_directory>] [-l <logfile_directory>]
       [-t <timeout_seconds>] [-a] [-v | -q]

gpstop --version

gpstop -? | -h | --help
```

#### Description

The `gpstop` utility is used to stop the database servers that comprise a WarehousePG cluster. When you stop a WarehousePG cluster, you are actually stopping several `postgres` database server processes at once (the coordinator and all of the segment instances). The `gpstop` utility handles the shutdown of the individual instances. Each instance is shutdown in parallel.

The default shutdown mode ( `-M smart` ) waits for current client connections to finish before completing the shutdown. If any connections remain open after the timeout period, or if you interrupt with CTRL-C, `gpstop` lists the open connections and prompts whether to continue waiting for connections to finish, or to perform a fast or immediate shutdown. The default timeout period is 120 seconds and can be changed with the `-t timeout\_seconds` option.

Specify the `-M fast` shutdown mode to roll back all in-progress transactions and terminate any connections before shutting down.

With the `-u` option, the utility uploads changes made to the coordinator `pg_hba.conf` file or to *runtime* configuration parameters in the coordinator `postgresql.conf` file without interruption of service. Note that any active sessions will not pick up the changes until they reconnect to the database.

#### Options

- -a

  Do not prompt the user for confirmation.

- -B parallel_processes

  The number of segments to stop in parallel. If not specified, the utility will start up to 64 parallel processes depending on how many segment instances it needs to stop.

- -d coordinator_data_directory

  Optional. The coordinator host data directory. If not specified, the value set for `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` will be used.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --host host_name

  The utility shuts down the WarehousePG segment instances on the specified host to allow maintenance on the host. Each primary segment instance on the host is shut down and the associated mirror segment instance is promoted to a primary segment if the mirror segment is on another host. Mirror segment instances on the host are shut down.

  The segment instances are not shut down and the utility returns an error in these cases:

  - Segment mirroring is not enabled for the system.
  - The coordinator or standby coordinator is on the host.
  - Both a primary segment instance and its mirror are on the host.

  This option cannot be specified with the `-m`, `-r`, `-u`, or `-y` options.

  > **Note** The `gprecoverseg` utility restores segment instances. Run `gprecoverseg` commands to start the segments as mirrors and then to return the segments to their preferred role (primary segments).

- -l logfile_directory

  The directory to write the log file. Defaults to `~/gpAdminLogs`.

- -m

  Optional. Shuts down a WarehousePG coordinator instance that was started in maintenance mode.

- -M fast

  Fast shut down. Any transactions in progress are interrupted and rolled back.

- -M immediate

  Immediate shut down. Any transactions in progress are cancelled.

  This mode kills all `postgres` processes without allowing the database server to complete transaction processing or clean up any temporary or in-process work files.

- -M smart

  Smart shut down. This is the default shutdown mode. `gpstop` waits for active user connections to disconnect and then proceeds with the shutdown. If any user connections remain open after the timeout period (or if you interrupt by pressing CTRL-C) `gpstop` lists the open user connections and prompts whether to continue waiting for connections to finish, or to perform a fast or immediate shutdown.

- -q

  Run in quiet mode. Command output is not displayed on the screen, but is still written to the log file.

- -r

  Restart after shutdown is complete.

- -t timeout_seconds

  Specifies a timeout threshold (in seconds) to wait for a segment instance to shutdown. If a segment instance does not shutdown in the specified number of seconds, `gpstop` displays a message indicating that one or more segments are still in the process of shutting down and that you cannot restart WarehousePG until the segment instance(s) are stopped. This option is useful in situations where `gpstop` is run and there are very large transactions that need to rollback. These large transactions can take over a minute to rollback and surpass the default timeout period of 120 seconds.

- -u

  This option reloads the `pg_hba.conf` files of the coordinator and segments and the runtime parameters of the `postgresql.conf` files but does not shutdown the WarehousePG array. Use this option to make new configuration settings active after editing `postgresql.conf` or `pg_hba.conf`. Note that this only applies to configuration parameters that are designated as *runtime* parameters.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -v

  Displays detailed status, progress and error messages output by the utility.

- -y

  Do not stop the standby coordinator process. The default is to stop the standby coordinator.

- -? | -h | --help

  Displays the online help.

- --version

  Displays the version of this utility.

### Examples

Stop a WarehousePG cluster in smart mode:

```
gpstop
```

Stop a WarehousePG cluster in fast mode:

```
gpstop -M fast
```

Stop all segment instances and then restart the system:

```
gpstop -r
```

Stop a coordinator instance that was started in maintenance mode:

```
gpstop -m
```

Reload the `postgresql.conf` and `pg_hba.conf` files after making configuration changes but do not shutdown the WarehousePG array:

```
gpstop -u
```

### See Also

gpstart

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.32 pg_config

Retrieves information about the installed version of WarehousePG.

### Synopsis

```
pg_config [<option> ...]

pg_config -? | --help

pg_config --gp_version
```

### Description

The `pg_config` utility prints configuration parameters of the currently installed version of WarehousePG. It is intended, for example, to be used by software packages that want to interface to WarehousePG to facilitate finding the required header files and libraries. Note that information printed out by `pg_config` is for the WarehousePG coordinator only.

If more than one option is given, the information is printed in that order, one item per line. If no options are given, all available information is printed, with labels.

### Options

- --bindir

  Print the location of user executables. Use this, for example, to find the `psql` program. This is normally also the location where the `pg_config` program resides.

- --docdir

  Print the location of documentation files.

- --includedir

  Print the location of C header files of the client interfaces.

- --pkgincludedir

  Print the location of other C header files.

- --includedir-server

  Print the location of C header files for server programming.

- --libdir

  Print the location of object code libraries.

- --pkglibdir

  Print the location of dynamically loadable modules, or where the server would search for them. (Other architecture-dependent data files may also be installed in this directory.)

- --localedir

  Print the location of locale support files.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --mandir

  Print the location of manual pages.

- --sharedir

  Print the location of architecture-independent support files.

- --sysconfdir

  Print the location of system-wide configuration files.

- --pgxs

  Print the location of extension makefiles.

- --configure

  Print the options that were given to the configure script when WarehousePG was configured for building.

- --cc

  Print the value of the CC variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows the C compiler used.

- --cppflags

  Print the value of the `CPPFLAGS` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows C compiler switches needed at preprocessing time.

- --cflags

  Print the value of the `CFLAGS` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows C compiler switches.

- --cflags_sl

  Print the value of the `CFLAGS_SL` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows extra C compiler switches used for building shared libraries.

- --ldflags

  Print the value of the `LDFLAGS` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows linker switches.

- --ldflags_ex

  Print the value of the `LDFLAGS_EX` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows linker switches that were used for building executables only.

- --ldflags_sl

  Print the value of the `LDFLAGS_SL` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This shows linker switches used for building shared libraries only.

- --libs

  Print the value of the `LIBS` variable that was used for building WarehousePG. This normally contains `-l` switches for external libraries linked into WarehousePG.

- --version

  Print the version of PostgreSQL backend server.

- --gp_version

  Print the version of WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

To reproduce the build configuration of the current WarehousePG installation, run the following command:

```
eval ./configure 'pg_config --configure'
```

The output of `pg_config --configure` contains shell quotation marks so arguments with spaces are represented correctly. Therefore, using `eval` is required for proper results.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.33 pg_dump

Extracts a database into a single script file or other archive file.

#### Synopsis

```
pg_dump [<connection-option> ...] [<dump_option> ...] [<dbname>]

pg_dump -? | --help

pg_dump -V | --version
```

#### Description

`pg_dump` is a standard PostgreSQL utility for backing up a database, and is also supported in WarehousePG. It creates a single (non-parallel) dump file. For routine backups of WarehousePG, it is better to use the WarehousePG backup utility, gpbackup, for the best performance.

Use `pg_dump` if you are migrating your data to another database vendor's system, or to another WarehousePG cluster with a different segment configuration (for example, if the system you are migrating to has greater or fewer segment instances). To restore, you must use the corresponding pg_restore utility (if the dump file is in archive format), or you can use a client program such as psql (if the dump file is in plain text format).

Since `pg_dump` is compatible with regular PostgreSQL, it can be used to migrate data into WarehousePG. The `pg_dump` utility in WarehousePG is very similar to the PostgreSQL `pg_dump` utility, with the following exceptions and limitations:

- If using `pg_dump` to backup a WarehousePG database, keep in mind that the dump operation can take a long time (several hours) for very large databases. Also, you must make sure you have sufficient disk space to create the dump file.
- If you are migrating data from one WarehousePG cluster to another, use the `--gp-syntax` command-line option to include the `DISTRIBUTED BY` clause in `CREATE TABLE` statements. This ensures that WarehousePG table data is distributed with the correct distribution key columns upon restore.

`pg_dump` makes consistent backups even if the database is being used concurrently. `pg_dump` does not block other users accessing the database (readers or writers).

When used with one of the archive file formats and combined with `pg_restore`, `pg_dump` provides a flexible archival and transfer mechanism. `pg_dump` can be used to backup an entire database, then `pg_restore` can be used to examine the archive and/or select which parts of the database are to be restored. The most flexible output file formats are the custom format ( `-Fc` ) and the directory format ( `-Fd` ). They allow for selection and reordering of all archived items, support parallel restoration, and are compressed by default. The directory format is the only format that supports parallel dumps.

#### Options

- dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to be dumped. If this is not specified, the environment variable `PGDATABASE` is used. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

##### Dump Options

- -a | --data-only

  Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data and sequence values are dumped.

  This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=data`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -b | --blobs

  Include large objects in the dump. This is the default behavior except when `--schema`, `--table`, or `--schema-only` is specified. The `-b` switch is only useful add large objects to dumps where a specific schema or table has been requested. Note that blobs are considered data and therefore will be included when `--data-only` is used, but not when `--schema-only` is.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- -c | --clean

  Adds commands to the text output file to clean (drop) database objects prior to outputting the commands for creating them. (Restore might generate some harmless error messages, if any objects were not present in the destination database.) Note that objects are not dropped before the dump operation begins, but `DROP` commands are added to the DDL dump output files so that when you use those files to do a restore, the `DROP` commands are run prior to the `CREATE` commands. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

- -C | --create

  Begin the output with a command to create the database itself and reconnect to the created database. (With a script of this form, it doesn't matter which database in the destination installation you connect to before running the script.) If `--clean` is also specified, the script drops and recreates the target database before reconnecting to it. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

- -E encoding | --encoding=encoding

  Create the dump in the specified character set encoding. By default, the dump is created in the database encoding. (Another way to get the same result is to set the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable to the desired dump encoding.)

- -f file | --file=file

  Send output to the specified file. This parameter can be omitted for file-based output formats, in which case the standard output is used. It must be given for the directory output format however, where it specifies the target directory instead of a file. In this case the directory is created by `pg_dump` and must not exist before.

- -F p|c|d|t | --format=plain|custom|directory|tar

  Selects the format of the output. format can be one of the following:

  p | plain — Output a plain-text SQL script file (the default).

  c | custom — Output a custom archive suitable for input into pg_restore. Together with the directory output format, this is the most flexible output format in that it allows manual selection and reordering of archived items during restore. This format is compressed by default and also supports parallel dumps.

  d | directory — Output a directory-format archive suitable for input into `pg_restore`. This will create a directory with one file for each table and blob being dumped, plus a so-called Table of Contents file describing the dumped objects in a machine-readable format that `pg_restore` can read. A directory format archive can be manipulated with standard Unix tools; for example, files in an uncompressed archive can be compressed with the `gzip` tool. This format is compressed by default.

  t | tar — Output a tar-format archive suitable for input into pg_restore. The tar format is compatible with the directory format; extracting a tar-format archive produces a valid directory-format archive. However, the tar format does not support compression. Also, when using tar format the relative order of table data items cannot be changed during restore.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -j njobs | --jobs=njobs

  Run the dump in parallel by dumping njobs tables simultaneously. This option reduces the time of the dump but it also increases the load on the database server. You can only use this option with the directory output format because this is the only output format where multiple processes can write their data at the same time.

  > **Note** Parallel dumps using `pg_dump` are parallelized only on the query dispatcher (coordinator) node, not across the query executor (segment) nodes as is the case when you use `gpbackup`.

  `pg_dump` will open njobs + 1 connections to the database, so make sure your max_connections setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

  Requesting exclusive locks on database objects while running a parallel dump could cause the dump to fail. The reason is that the `pg_dump` coordinator process requests shared locks on the objects that the worker processes are going to dump later in order to make sure that nobody deletes them and makes them go away while the dump is running. If another client then requests an exclusive lock on a table, that lock will not be granted but will be queued waiting for the shared lock of the coordinator process to be released. Consequently, any other access to the table will not be granted either and will queue after the exclusive lock request. This includes the worker process trying to dump the table. Without any precautions this would be a classic deadlock situation. To detect this conflict, the `pg_dump` worker process requests another shared lock using the `NOWAIT` option. If the worker process is not granted this shared lock, somebody else must have requested an exclusive lock in the meantime and there is no way to continue with the dump, so `pg_dump` has no choice but to cancel the dump.

  For a consistent backup, the database server needs to support synchronized snapshots, a feature that was introduced in WarehousePG 6.0. With this feature, database clients can ensure they see the same data set even though they use different connections. `pg_dump -j` uses multiple database connections; it connects to the database once with the coordinator process and once again for each worker job. Without the synchronized snapshot feature, the different worker jobs wouldn't be guaranteed to see the same data in each connection, which could lead to an inconsistent backup.

  If you want to run a parallel dump of a pre-6.0 server, you need to make sure that the database content doesn't change from between the time the coordinator connects to the database until the last worker job has connected to the database. The easiest way to do this is to halt any data modifying processes (DDL and DML) accessing the database before starting the backup. You also need to specify the `--no-synchronized-snapshots` parameter when running `pg_dump -j` against a pre-6.0 WarehousePG server.

- -n schema | --schema=schema

  Dump only schemas matching the schema pattern; this selects both the schema itself, and all its contained objects. When this option is not specified, all non-system schemas in the target database will be dumped. Multiple schemas can be selected by writing multiple `-n` switches. Also, the schema parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands, so multiple schemas can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards.

  > **Note** When -n is specified, `pg_dump` makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected schema(s) may depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-schema dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database. **Note** Non-schema objects such as blobs are not dumped when `-n` is specified. You can add blobs back to the dump with the `--blobs` switch.

- -N schema | --exclude-schema=schema

  Do not dump any schemas matching the schema pattern. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-n`. `-N` can be given more than once to exclude schemas matching any of several patterns. When both `-n` and `-N` are given, the behavior is to dump just the schemas that match at least one `-n` switch but no `-N` switches. If `-N` appears without `-n`, then schemas matching `-N` are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.

- -o | --oids

  Dump object identifiers (OIDs) as part of the data for every table. Use of this option is not recommended for files that are intended to be restored into WarehousePG.

- -O | --no-owner

  Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, `pg_dump` issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created database objects. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify `-O`. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -s | --schema-only

  Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

  This option is the inverse of `--data-only`. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=pre-data --section=post-data`.

  (Do not confuse this with the `--schema` option, which uses the word "schema" in a different meaning.)

  To exclude table data for only a subset of tables in the database, see `--exclude-table-data`.

- -S username | --superuser=username

  Specify the superuser user name to use when deactivating triggers. This is relevant only if `--disable-triggers` is used. It is better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as a superuser.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- -t table | --table=table

  Dump only tables (or views or sequences or foreign tables) matching the table pattern. Specify the table in the format `schema.table`.

  Multiple tables can be selected by writing multiple `-t` switches. Also, the table parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands, so multiple tables can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards. The `-n` and `-N` switches have no effect when `-t` is used, because tables selected by `-t` will be dumped regardless of those switches, and non-table objects will not be dumped.

  > **Note** When `-t` is specified, `pg_dump` makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected table(s) may depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-table dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

  Also, `-t` cannot be used to specify a child table partition. To dump a partitioned table, you must specify the parent table name.

- -T table | --exclude-table=table

  Do not dump any tables matching the table pattern. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t`. `-T` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns. When both `-t` and `-T` are given, the behavior is to dump just the tables that match at least one `-t` switch but no `-T` switches. If `-T` appears without `-t`, then tables matching `-T` are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.

- -v | --verbose

  Specifies verbose mode. This will cause `pg_dump` to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the dump file, and progress messages to standard error.

- -V | --version

  Print the `pg_dump` version and exit.

- -x | --no-privileges | --no-acl

  Prevent dumping of access privileges (`GRANT/REVOKE` commands).

- -Z 0..9 | --compress=0..9

  Specify the compression level to use. Zero means no compression. For the custom archive format, this specifies compression of individual table-data segments, and the default is to compress at a moderate level.

  For plain text output, setting a non-zero compression level causes the entire output file to be compressed, as though it had been fed through `gzip`; but the default is not to compress. The tar archive format currently does not support compression at all.

- --binary-upgrade

  This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --column-inserts | --attribute-inserts

  Dump data as `INSERT` commands with explicit column names `(INSERT INTO` table `(` column `, ...) VALUES ...)`. This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL-based databases. However, since this option generates a separate command for each row, an error in reloading a row causes only that row to be lost rather than the entire table contents.

- --disable-dollar-quoting

  This option deactivates the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

- --disable-triggers

  This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs `pg_dump` to include commands to temporarily deactivate triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload. The commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with `-S`, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- `--exclude-table-data=table`

  Do not dump data for any tables matching the table pattern. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t`. `--exclude-table-data` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns. This option is useful when you need the definition of a particular table even though you do not need the data in it.

  To exclude data for all tables in the database, see `--schema-only`.

- `--if-exists`

  Use conditional commands (i.e. add an `IF EXISTS` clause) when cleaning database objects. This option is not valid unless `--clean` is also specified.

- --inserts

  Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL-based databases. However, since this option generates a separate command for each row, an error in reloading a row causes only that row to be lost rather than the entire table contents. Note that the restore may fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The `--column-inserts` option is safe against column order changes, though even slower.

- --lock-wait-timeout=timeout

  Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead, fail if unable to lock a table within the specified timeout. Specify timeout as a number of milliseconds.

- --no-security-labels

  Do not dump security labels.

- --no-synchronized-snapshots

  This option allows running `pg_dump -j` against a pre-6.0 WarehousePG server; see the documentation of the `-j` parameter for more details.

- --no-tablespaces

  Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

  This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

- --no-unlogged-table-data

  Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables. This option has no effect on whether or not the table definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table data. Data in unlogged tables is always excluded when dumping from a standby server.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --quote-all-identifiers

  Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server whose WarehousePG major version is different from `pg_dump`'s, or when the output is intended to be loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, `pg_dump` quotes only identifiers that are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using `--quote-all-identifiers` prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

- --section=sectionname

  Only dump the named section. The section name can be `pre-data`, `data`, or `post-data`. This option can be specified more than once to select multiple sections. The default is to dump all sections.

  The `data` section contains actual table data and sequence values. `post-data` items include definitions of indexes, triggers, rules, and constraints other than validated check constraints. `pre-data` items include all other data definition items.

- --serializable-deferrable

  Use a serializable transaction for the dump, to ensure that the snapshot used is consistent with later database states; but do this by waiting for a point in the transaction stream at which no anomalies can be present, so that there isn't a risk of the dump failing or causing other transactions to roll back with a serialization_failure.

  This option is not beneficial for a dump which is intended only for disaster recovery. It could be useful for a dump used to load a copy of the database for reporting or other read-only load sharing while the original database continues to be updated. Without it the dump may reflect a state which is not consistent with any serial execution of the transactions eventually committed. For example, if batch processing techniques are used, a batch may show as closed in the dump without all of the items which are in the batch appearing.

  This option will make no difference if there are no read-write transactions active when `pg_dump` is started. If read-write transactions are active, the start of the dump may be delayed for an indeterminate length of time. Once running, performance with or without the switch is the same.

  > **Note** Because WarehousePG does not support serializable transactions, the `--serializable-deferrable` option has no effect in WarehousePG.

- --use-set-session-authorization

  Output SQL-standard `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands instead of `ALTER OWNER` commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, may not restore properly. A dump using `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` will require superuser privileges to restore correctly, whereas `ALTER OWNER` requires lesser privileges.

- --gp-syntax | --no-gp-syntax

  Use `--gp-syntax` to dump WarehousePG syntax in the `CREATE TABLE` statements. This allows the distribution policy (`DISTRIBUTED BY` or `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` clauses) of a WarehousePG table to be dumped, which is useful for restoring into other WarehousePG clusters. The default is to include WarehousePG syntax when connected to a WarehousePG cluster, and to exclude it when connected to a regular PostgreSQL system.

- --function-oids oids

  Dump the function(s) specified in the oids list of object identifiers.

  > **Note** This option is provided solely for use by other administration utilities; its use for any other purpose is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

- --relation-oids oids

  Dump the relation(s) specified in the oids list of object identifiers.

  > **Note** This option is provided solely for use by other administration utilities; its use for any other purpose is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `pg_dump` command line arguments, and exit.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Connection Options**

- -d dbname | --dbname=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying dbname as the first non-option argument on the command line.

  If this parameter contains an `=` sign or starts with a valid URI prefix ( `postgresql://` or `postgres://` ), it is treated as a conninfo string. See Connection Strings in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- --role=rolename

  Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes `pg_dump` to issue a `SET ROLE rolename` command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by `-U` ) lacks privileges needed by `pg_dump` , but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

## Notes

When a data-only dump is chosen and the option `--disable-triggers` is used, `pg_dump` emits commands to deactivate triggers on user tables before inserting the data and commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs may be left in the wrong state.

The dump file produced by `pg_dump` does not contain the statistics used by the optimizer to make query planning decisions. Therefore, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` after restoring from a dump file to ensure optimal performance.

The database activity of `pg_dump` is normally collected by the statistics collector. If this is undesirable, you can set parameter `track_counts` to false via `PGOPTIONS` or the `ALTER USER` command.

Because `pg_dump` may be used to transfer data to newer versions of WarehousePG, the output of `pg_dump` can be expected to load into WarehousePG versions newer than `pg_dump` 's version. `pg_dump` can also dump from WarehousePG versions older than its own version. However, `pg_dump` cannot dump from WarehousePG versions newer than its own major version; it will refuse to even try, rather than risk making an invalid dump. Also, it is not guaranteed that `pg_dump` 's output can be loaded into a server of an older major version — not even if the dump was taken from a server of that version. Loading a dump file into an older server may require manual editing of the dump file to remove syntax not understood by the older server. Use of the `--quote-all-identifiers` option is recommended in cross-version cases, as it can prevent problems arising from varying reserved-word lists in different WarehousePG versions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

Dump a database called `mydb` into a SQL-script file:

```
pg_dump mydb > db.sql
```

To reload such a script into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
psql -d newdb -f db.sql
```

Dump a WarehousePG in tar file format and include distribution policy information:

```
pg_dump -Ft --gp-syntax mydb > db.tar
```

To dump a database into a custom-format archive file:

```
pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive:

```
pg_dump -Fd mydb -f dumpdir
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive in parallel with 5 worker jobs:

```
pg_dump -Fd mydb -j 5 -f dumpdir
```

To reload an archive file into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

To dump a single table named `mytab`:

```
pg_dump -t mytab mydb > db.sql
```

To specify an upper-case or mixed-case name in `-t` and related switches, you need to double-quote the name; else it will be folded to lower case. But double quotes are special to the shell, so in turn they must be quoted. Thus, to dump a single table with a mixed-case name, you need something like:

```
pg_dump -t '"MixedCaseName"' mydb > mytab.sql
```

### See Also

pg_dumpall, pg_restore, psql

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.34 pg_dumpall

Extracts all databases in a WarehousePG cluster to a single script file or other archive file.

#### Synopsis

```
pg_dumpall [<connection-option> ...] [<dump_option> ...]

pg_dumpall -? | --help

pg_dumpall -V | --version
```

#### Description

`pg_dumpall` is a standard PostgreSQL utility for backing up all databases in a WarehousePG (or PostgreSQL) instance, and is also supported in WarehousePG. It creates a single (non-parallel) dump file. For routine backups of WarehousePG it is better to use the WarehousePG backup utility, gpbackup, for the best performance.

`pg_dumpall` creates a single script file that contains SQL commands that can be used as input to psql to restore the databases. It does this by calling pg_dump for each database. `pg_dumpall` also dumps global objects that are common to all databases. (`pg_dump` does not save these objects.) This currently includes information about database users and groups, and access permissions that apply to databases as a whole.

Since `pg_dumpall` reads tables from all databases you will most likely have to connect as a database superuser in order to produce a complete dump. Also you will need superuser privileges to run the saved script in order to be allowed to add users and groups, and to create databases.

The SQL script will be written to the standard output. Use the `[-f | --file]` option or shell operators to redirect it into a file.

`pg_dumpall` needs to connect several times to the WarehousePG coordinator server (once per database). If you use password authentication it is likely to ask for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases.

#### Options

##### Dump Options

- -a | --data-only

  Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions). This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

- -c | --clean

  Output commands to clean (drop) database objects prior to (the commands for) creating them. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

- -f filename | --file=filename

  Send output to the specified file.

- -g | --globals-only

  Dump only global objects (roles and tablespaces), no databases.

- -o | --oids

  Dump object identifiers (OIDs) as part of the data for every table. Use of this option is not recommended for files that are intended to be restored into WarehousePG.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -O | --no-owner

  Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, pg_dump issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created database objects. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify `-O`. This option is only meaningful for the plain-text format. For the archive formats, you may specify the option when you call pg_restore.

- -r | --roles-only

  Dump only roles, not databases or tablespaces.

- -s | --schema-only

  Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

- -S username | --superuser=username

  Specify the superuser user name to use when deactivating triggers. This is relevant only if `--disable-triggers` is used. It is better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as a superuser.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- -t | --tablespaces-only

  Dump only tablespaces, not databases or roles.

- -v | --verbose

  Specifies verbose mode. This will cause `[pg\_dump](pg_dump.html)` to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the dump file, and progress messages to standard error.

- -V | --version

  Print the `pg_dumpall` version and exit.

- -x | --no-privileges | --no-acl

  Prevent dumping of access privileges ( `GRANT/REVOKE` commands).

- --binary-upgrade

  This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

- --column-inserts | --attribute-inserts

  Dump data as `INSERT` commands with explicit column names ( `INSERT INTO <table> (<column>, ...) VALUES ...`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL-based databases. Also, since this option generates a separate command for each row, an error in reloading a row causes only that row to be lost rather than the entire table contents.

- --disable-dollar-quoting

  This option deactivates the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

- --disable-triggers

  This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs `pg_dumpall` to include commands to temporarily deactivate triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload. The commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with `-S`, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --inserts

  Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL-based databases. Also, since this option generates a separate command for each row, an error in reloading a row causes only that row to be lost rather than the entire table contents. Note that the restore may fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The `--column-inserts` option is safe against column order changes, though even slower.

- --lock-wait-timeout=timeout

  Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead, fail if unable to lock a table within the specified timeout. The timeout may be specified in any of the formats accepted by `SET statement_timeout`. Allowed values vary depending on the server version you are dumping from, but an integer number of milliseconds is accepted by all WarehousePG versions.

- --no-security-labels

  Do not dump security labels.

- --no-tablespaces

  Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

- --no-unlogged-table-data

  Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables. This option has no effect on whether or not the table definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table data.

- --quote-all-identifiers

  Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server whose WarehousePG major version is different from `pg_dumpall`'s, or when the output is intended to be loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, `pg_dumpall` quotes only identifiers that are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using `--quote-all-identifiers` prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

- --resource-queues

  Dump resource queue definitions.

- --resource-groups

  Dump resource group definitions.

- --use-set-session-authorization

  Output SQL-standard `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands instead of `ALTER OWNER` commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, may not restore properly. A dump using `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` will require superuser privileges to restore correctly, whereas `ALTER OWNER` requires lesser privileges.

- --gp-syntax

  Output WarehousePG syntax in the `CREATE TABLE` statements. This allows the distribution policy (`DISTRIBUTED BY` or `DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY` clauses) of a WarehousePG table to be dumped, which is useful for restoring into other WarehousePG clusters.

- --no-gp-syntax

  Do not output the table distribution clauses in the `CREATE TABLE` statements.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `pg_dumpall` command line arguments, and exit.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

**Connection Options**

- -d connstr | --dbname=connstr

  Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string. See Connection Strings in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

  The option is called `--dbname` for consistency with other client applications, but because `pg_dumpall` needs to connect to many databases, the database name in the connection string will be ignored. Use the `-l` option to specify the name of the database used to dump global objects and to discover what other databases should be dumped.

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to `localhost`.

- -l dbname | --database=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database in which to connect to dump global objects. If not specified, the `postgres` database is used. If the `postgres` database does not exist, the `template1` database is used.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username= username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --role=rolename

  Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes `pg_dumpall` to issue a `SET ROLE <rolename>` command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by `-U`) lacks privileges needed by `pg_dumpall`, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

## Notes

Since `pg_dumpall` calls pg_dump internally, some diagnostic messages will refer to `pg_dump`.

Once restored, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each database so the query planner has useful statistics. You can also run `vacuumdb -a -z` to vacuum and analyze all databases.

`pg_dumpall` requires all needed tablespace directories to exist before the restore; otherwise, database creation will fail for databases in non-default locations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Examples

To dump all databases:

```
pg_dumpall > db.out
```

To reload database(s) from this file, you can use:

```
psql template1 -f db.out
```

To dump only global objects (including resource queues):

```
pg_dumpall -g --resource-queues
```

### See Also

pg_dump

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.35 pg_restore

Restores a database from an archive file created by `pg_dump`.

#### Synopsis

```
pg_restore [<connection-option> ...] [<restore_option> ...] <filename>

pg_restore -? | --help

pg_restore -V | --version
```

#### Description

`pg_restore` is a utility for restoring a database from an archive created by pg_dump in one of the non-plain-text formats. It will issue the commands necessary to reconstruct the database to the state it was in at the time it was saved. The archive files also allow `pg_restore` to be selective about what is restored, or even to reorder the items prior to being restored.

`pg_restore` can operate in two modes. If a database name is specified, the archive is restored directly into the database. Otherwise, a script containing the SQL commands necessary to rebuild the database is created and written to a file or standard output. The script output is equivalent to the plain text output format of `pg_dump`. Some of the options controlling the output are therefore analogous to `pg_dump` options.

`pg_restore` cannot restore information that is not present in the archive file. For instance, if the archive was made using the "dump data as `INSERT` commands" option, `pg_restore` will not be able to load the data using `COPY` statements.

#### Options

- filename

  Specifies the location of the archive file (or directory, for a directory-format archive) to be restored. If not specified, the standard input is used.

##### Restore Options

- -a | --data-only

  Restore only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data and sequence values are restored, if present in the archive.

  This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=data`.

- -c | --clean

  Clean (drop) database objects before recreating them. (This might generate some harmless error messages, if any objects were not present in the destination database.)

- -C | --create

  Create the database before restoring into it. If `--clean` is also specified, drop and recreate the target database before connecting to it.

  When this option is used, the database named with `-d` is used only to issue the initial `DROP DATABASE` and `CREATE DATABASE` commands. All data is restored into the database name that appears in the archive.

- -d dbname | --dbname=dbname

  Connect to this database and restore directly into this database. This utility, like most other WarehousePG utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq`. However it does not read `PGDATABASE` when a database name is not supplied.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -e | --exit-on-error

  Exit if an error is encountered while sending SQL commands to the database. The default is to continue and to display a count of errors at the end of the restoration.

- -f outfilename | --file=outfilename

  Specify output file for generated script, or for the listing when used with `-l`. Default is the standard output.

- -F c|d|t | --format={custom | directory | tar}

  The format of the archive produced by pg_dump. It is not necessary to specify the format, since `pg_restore` will determine the format automatically. Format can be `custom`, `directory`, or `tar`.

- -I index | --index=index

  Restore definition of named index only.

- -j | --number-of-jobs | --jobs=number-of-jobs

  Run the most time-consuming parts of `pg_restore` — those which load data, create indexes, or create constraints — using multiple concurrent jobs. This option can dramatically reduce the time to restore a large database to a server running on a multiprocessor machine.

  Each job is one process or one thread, depending on the operating system, and uses a separate connection to the server.

  The optimal value for this option depends on the hardware setup of the server, of the client, and of the network. Factors include the number of CPU cores and the disk setup. A good place to start is the number of CPU cores on the server, but values larger than that can also lead to faster restore times in many cases. Of course, values that are too high will lead to decreased performance because of thrashing.

  Only the custom archive format is supported with this option. The input file must be a regular file (not, for example, a pipe). This option is ignored when emitting a script rather than connecting directly to a database server. Also, multiple jobs cannot be used together with the option `--single-transaction`.

- -l | --list

  List the contents of the archive. The output of this operation can be used with the `-L` option to restrict and reorder the items that are restored.

- -L list-file | --use-list=list-file

  Restore elements in the list-file only, and in the order they appear in the file. Note that if filtering switches such as `-n` or `-t` are used with `-L`, they will further restrict the items restored.

  list-file is normally created by editing the output of a previous `-l` operation. Lines can be moved or removed, and can also be commented out by placing a semicolon (;) at the start of the line. See below for examples.

- -n schema | --schema=schema

  Restore only objects that are in the named schema. This can be combined with the `-t` option to restore just a specific table.

- -O | --no-owner

  Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, `pg_restore` issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created schema elements. These statements will fail unless the initial connection to the database is made by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). With `-O`, any user name can be used for the initial connection, and this user will own all the created objects.

- -P 'function-name(argtype [, ...])' | --function='function-name(argtype [, ...])'

  Restore the named function only. The function name must be enclosed in quotes. Be careful to spell the function name and arguments exactly as they appear in the dump file's table of contents (as shown by the `--list` option).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -s | --schema-only

  Restore only the schema (data definitions), not data, to the extent that schema entries are present in the archive.

  This option is the inverse of `--data-only`. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=pre-data --section=post-data`.

  (Do not confuse this with the `--schema` option, which uses the word "schema" in a different meaning.)

- -S username | --superuser=username

  Specify the superuser user name to use when deactivating triggers. This is only relevant if `--disable-triggers` is used.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- -t table | --table=table

  Restore definition and/or data of named table only. Multiple tables may be specified with multiple `-t` switches. This can be combined with the `-n` option to specify a schema.

- -T trigger | --trigger=trigger

  Restore named trigger only.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- -v | --verbose

  Specifies verbose mode.

- -V | --version

  Print the `pg_restore` version and exit.

- -x | --no-privileges | --no-acl

  Prevent restoration of access privileges (`GRANT/REVOKE` commands).

- -1 | --single-transaction

  Run the restore as a single transaction. This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied.

- --disable-triggers

  This option is relevant only when performing a data-only restore. It instructs `pg_restore` to run commands to temporarily deactivate triggers on the target tables while the data is reloaded. Use this if you have triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data reload. The commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So you should also specify a superuser name with `-S` or, preferably, run `pg_restore` as a superuser.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- --no-data-for-failed-tables

  By default, table data is restored even if the creation command for the table failed (e.g., because it already exists). With this option, data for such a table is skipped. This behavior is useful when the target database may already contain the desired table contents. Specifying this option prevents duplicate or obsolete data from being loaded. This option is effective only when restoring directly into a database, not when producing SQL script output.

- --no-security-labels

  Do not output commands to restore security labels, even if the archive contains them.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- --no-tablespaces

  Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

- --section=sectionname

  Only restore the named section. The section name can be `pre-data`, `data`, or `post-data`. This option can be specified more than once to select multiple sections.

  The default is to restore all sections.

- --use-set-session-authorization

  Output SQL-standard `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands instead of `ALTER OWNER` commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, it might not restore properly.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `pg_restore` command line arguments, and exit.

**Connection Options**

- -h host | --host host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --role=rolename

  Specifies a role name to be used to perform the restore. This option causes `pg_restore` to issue a `SET ROLE rolename` command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by `-U`) lacks privileges needed by `pg_restore`, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows restores to be performed without violating the policy.

## Notes

If your installation has any local additions to the `template1` database, be careful to load the output of `pg_restore` into a truly empty database; otherwise you are likely to get errors due to duplicate definitions of the added objects. To make an empty database without any local additions, copy from `template0` not `template1`, for example:

```
CREATE DATABASE foo WITH TEMPLATE template0;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

When restoring data to a pre-existing table and the option `--disable-triggers` is used, `pg_restore` emits commands to deactivate triggers on user tables before inserting the data, then emits commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs may be left in the wrong state.

See also the `pg_dump` documentation for details on limitations of `pg_dump`.

Once restored, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each restored table so the query planner has useful statistics.

### Examples

Assume we have dumped a database called `mydb` into a custom-format dump file:

```
pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To drop the database and recreate it from the dump:

```
dropdb mydb
pg_restore -C -d template1 db.dump
```

To reload the dump into a new database called `newdb`. Notice there is no `-C`, we instead connect directly to the database to be restored into. Also note that we clone the new database from `template0` not `template1`, to ensure it is initially empty:

```
createdb -T template0 newdb
pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

To reorder database items, it is first necessary to dump the table of contents of the archive:

```
pg_restore -l db.dump > db.list
```

The listing file consists of a header and one line for each item, for example,

```
; Archive created at Mon Sep 14 13:55:39 2009
;     dbname: DBDEMOS
;     TOC Entries: 81
;     Compression: 9
;     Dump Version: 1.10-0
;     Format: CUSTOM
;     Integer: 4 bytes
;     Offset: 8 bytes
;     Dumped from database version: 9.4.24
;     Dumped by pg_dump version: 9.4.24
;
; Selected TOC Entries:
;
3; 2615 2200 SCHEMA - public pasha
1861; 0 0 COMMENT - SCHEMA public pasha
1862; 0 0 ACL - public pasha
317; 1247 17715 TYPE public composite pasha
319; 1247 25899 DOMAIN public domain0 pasha2
```

Semicolons start a comment, and the numbers at the start of lines refer to the internal archive ID assigned to each item. Lines in the file can be commented out, deleted, and reordered. For example:

```
10; 145433 TABLE map_resolutions postgres
;2; 145344 TABLE species postgres
;4; 145359 TABLE nt_header postgres
6; 145402 TABLE species_records postgres
;8; 145416 TABLE ss_old postgres
```

Could be used as input to `pg_restore` and would only restore items 10 and 6, in that order:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
pg_restore -L db.list db.dump
```

### See Also

pg_dump

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.36 pgbouncer

Manages database connection pools.

### Synopsis

```
pgbouncer [OPTION ...] <pgbouncer.ini>

  OPTION
   [ -d | --daemon ]
   [ -R | --reboot ]
   [ -q | --quiet ]
   [ -v | --verbose ]
   [ {-u | --user}=username ]

pgbouncer [ -V | --version ] | [ -h | --help ]
```

### Description

PgBouncer is a light-weight connection pool manager for WarehousePG and PostgreSQL databases. PgBouncer maintains a pool of connections for each database user and database combination. PgBouncer either creates a new database connection for the client or reuses an existing pooled connection for the same user and database. When the client disconnects, PgBouncer returns the connection to the pool for re-use.

PgBouncer supports the standard connection interface shared by PostgreSQL and WarehousePG. The WarehousePG client application (for example, `psql`) should connect to the host and port on which PgBouncer is running rather than directly to the WarehousePG coordinator host and port.

You configure PgBouncer and its access to WarehousePG via a configuration file. You provide the configuration file name, usually `<pgbouncer.ini>`, when you run the `pgbouncer` command. This file provides location information for WarehousePGs. The `pgbouncer.ini` file also specifies process, connection pool, authorized users, and authentication configuration for PgBouncer, among other configuration options.

By default, the `pgbouncer` process runs as a foreground process. You can optionally start `pgbouncer` as a background (daemon) process with the `-d` option.

The `pgbouncer` process is owned by the operating system user that starts the process. You can optionally specify a different user name under which to start `pgbouncer`.

PgBouncer includes a `psql`-like administration console. Authorized users can connect to a virtual database to monitor and manage PgBouncer. You can manage a PgBouncer daemon process via the admin console. You can also use the console to update and reload the PgBouncer configuration at runtime without stopping and restarting the process.

For additional information about PgBouncer, refer to the PgBouncer FAQ.

### Options

- -d | --daemon

  Run PgBouncer as a daemon (a background process). The default start-up mode is to run as a foreground process.

  In daemon mode, setting `pidfile` as well as `logfile` or `syslog` is required. No log messages will be written to `stderr` after going into the background.

  To stop a PgBouncer process that was started as a daemon, issue the `SHUTDOWN` command from the PgBouncer administration console.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -R | --reboot

  Restart PgBouncer using the specified command line arguments. That means connecting to the running process, loading the open sockets from it, and then using them. If there is no active process, boot normally. Non-TLS connections to databases are maintained during restart; TLS connections are dropped.

  To restart PgBouncer as a daemon, specify the options `-Rd`.

  > **Note** Restart is available only if the operating system supports Unix sockets and the PgBouncer `unix_socket_dir` configuration is not deactivated.

- -q | --quiet

  Run quietly. Do not log to `stderr`. This does not affect logging verbosity, only that `stderr` is not to be used. For use in `init.d` scripts.

- -v | --verbose

  Increase message verbosity. Can be specified multiple times.

- {-u | --user}=<username>

  Assume the identity of username on PgBouncer process start-up.

- -V | --version

  Show the version and exit.

- -h | --help

  Show the command help message and exit.

### See Also

pgbouncer.ini, pgbouncer-admin

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.37 pgbouncer-admin

PgBouncer Administration Console.

### Synopsis

```
psql -p <port> pgbouncer
```

### Description

The PgBouncer Administration Console is available via `psql`. Connect to the PgBouncer `<port>` and the virtual database named `pgbouncer` to log in to the console.

Users listed in the `pgbouncer.ini` configuration parameters `admin_users` and `stats_users` have privileges to log in to the PgBouncer Administration Console. When `auth_type=any`, then any user is allowed in as a stats_user.

Additionally, the user name `pgbouncer` is allowed to log in without password when the login comes via the Unix socket and the client has same Unix user UID as the running process.

You can control connections between PgBouncer and WarehousePG from the console. You can also set PgBouncer configuration parameters.

### Options

- -p <port>

  The PgBouncer port number.

### Command Syntax

```
pgbouncer=# SHOW help;
NOTICE:  Console usage
DETAIL:
    SHOW HELP|CONFIG|USERS|DATABASES|POOLS|CLIENTS|SERVERS|VERSION
    SHOW FDS|SOCKETS|ACTIVE_SOCKETS|LISTS|MEM
    SHOW DNS_HOSTS|DNS_ZONES
    SHOW STATS|STATS_TOTALS|STATS_AVERAGES
    SHOW TOTALS
    SET key = arg
    RELOAD
    PAUSE [<db>]
    RESUME [<db>]
    DISABLE <db>
    ENABLE <db>
    RECONNECT [<db>]
    KILL <db>
    SUSPEND
    SHUTDOWN
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Administration Commands

The following PgBouncer administration commands control the running `pgbouncer` process.

- PAUSE [<db>]

  If no database is specified, PgBouncer tries to disconnect from all servers, first waiting for all queries to complete. The command will not return before all queries are finished. This command is to be used to prepare to restart the database.

  If a database name is specified, PgBouncer pauses only that database.

  New client connections to a paused database will wait until a `RESUME` command is invoked.

- DISABLE <db>

  Reject all new client connections on the database.

- ENABLE <db>

  Allow new client connections after a previous `DISABLE` command.

- RECONNECT

  Close each open server connection for the given database, or all databases, after it is released (according to the pooling mode), even if its lifetime is not up yet. New server connections can be made immediately and will connect as necessary according to the pool size settings.

  This command is useful when the server connection setup has changed, for example to perform a gradual switchover to a new server. It is not necessary to run this command when the connection string in `pgbouncer.ini` has been changed and reloaded (see `RELOAD`) or when DNS resolution has changed, because then the equivalent of this command will be run automatically. This command is only necessary if something downstream of PgBouncer routes the connections.

  After this command is run, there could be an extended period where some server connections go to an old destination and some server connections go to a new destination. This is likely only sensible when switching read-only traffic between read-only replicas, or when switching between nodes of a multimaster replication setup. If all connections need to be switched at the same time, `PAUSE` is recommended instead. To close server connections without waiting (for example, in emergency failover rather than gradual switchover scenarios), also consider `KILL`.

- KILL <db>

  Immediately drop all client and server connections to the named database.

  New client connections to a killed database will wait until `RESUME` is called.

- SUSPEND

  All socket buffers are flushed and PgBouncer stops listening for data on them. The command will not return before all buffers are empty. To be used when rebooting PgBouncer online.

  New client connections to a suspended database will wait until `RESUME` is called.

- RESUME [<db>]

  Resume work from a previous `KILL`, `PAUSE`, or `SUSPEND` command.

- SHUTDOWN

  The PgBouncer process will exit. To exit from the `psql` command line session, enter `\q`.

- RELOAD

  The PgBouncer process reloads the current configuration file and updates the changeable settings.

  PgBouncer notices when a configuration file reload changes the connection parameters of a database definition. An existing server connection to the old destination will be closed when the server connection is next released (according to the pooling mode), and new server connections will immediately use the updated connection parameters

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- WAIT_CLOSE [<db>]

  Wait until all server connections, either of the specified database or of all databases, have cleared the "close_needed" state (see `SHOW SERVERS`). This can be called after a `RECONNECT` or `RELOAD` to wait until the respective configuration change has been fully activated, for example in switchover scripts.

- SET key = value

  Changes the specified configuration setting. See the `SHOW CONFIG;` command.

  (Note that this command is run on the PgBouncer admin console and sets PgBouncer settings. A `SET` command run on another database will be passed to the PostgreSQL backend like any other SQL command.)

### SHOW Command

The `SHOW <category>` command displays different types of PgBouncer information. You can specify one of the following categories:

- CLIENTS
- CONFIG
- DATABASES
- DNS_HOSTS
- DNS_ZONES
- FDS
- LISTS
- MEM
- POOLS
- SERVERS
- SOCKETS, ACTIVE_SOCKETS,
- STATS
- STATS_TOTALS
- STATS_AVERAGES
- TOTALS
- USERS
- VERSION

#### CLIENTS

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| type | C, for client. |
| user | Client connected user. |
| database | Database name. |
| state | State of the client connection, one of `active` or `waiting`. |
| addr | IP address of client. |
| port | Port client is connected to. |
| local_addr | Connection end address on local machine. |
| local_port | Connection end port on local machine. |
| connect_time | Timestamp of connect time. |
| request_time | Timestamp of latest client request. |
| wait | Current Time waiting in seconds. |
| wait_us | Microsecond part of the current waiting time. |
| ptr | Address of internal object for this connection. Used as unique ID. |
| link | Address of server connection the client is paired with. |
| remote_pid | Process ID, if client connects with Unix socket and the OS supports getting it. |
| tls | A string with TLS connection information, or empty if not using TLS. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### CONFIG

Show the current PgBouncer configuration settings, one per row, with the following columns:

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| key | Configuration variable name |
| value | Configuration value |
| default | Configuration default value |
| changeable | Either `yes` or `no`. Shows whether the variable can be changed while running. If `no`, the variable can be changed only at boot time. Use `SET` to change a variable at run time. |

#### DATABASES

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| name | Name of configured database entry. |
| host | Host pgbouncer connects to. |
| port | Port pgbouncer connects to. |
| database | Actual database name pgbouncer connects to. |
| force_user | When user is part of the connection string, the connection between pgbouncer and the database server is forced to the given user, whatever the client user. |
| pool_size | Maximum number of server connections. |
| min_pool_size | Minimum number of server connections. |
| reserve_pool | The maximum number of additional connections for this database. |
| pool_mode | The database's override `pool_mode` or NULL if the default will be used instead. |
| max_connections | Maximum number of allowed connections for this database, as set by `max_db_connections`, either globally or per-database. |
| current_connections | The current number of connections for this database. |
| paused | Paused/unpaused state of the database. 1 if this database is currently paused, else 0. |
| disabled | Enabled/disabled state of the database. 1 if this database is currently disabled, else 0. |

#### DNS_HOSTS

Show host names in DNS cache.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| hostname | Host name |
| ttl | How many seconds until next lookup. |
| addrs | Comma-separated list of addresses. |

#### DNS_ZONES

Show DNS zones in cache.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| zonename | Zone name |
| serial | Current DNS serial number |
| count | Hostnames belonging to this zone |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### FDS

`SHOW FDS` is an internal command used for an online restart, for example when upgrading to a new PgBouncer version. It displays a list of file descriptors in use with the internal state attached to them. This command blocks the internal event loop, so it should not be used while PgBouncer is in use.

When the connected user has username "pgbouncer", connects through a Unix socket, and has the same UID as the running process, the actual file descriptors are passed over the connection. This mechanism is used to do an online restart.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| fd | File descriptor numeric value. |
| task | One of `pooler`, `client`, or `server`. |
| user | User of the connection using the file descriptor. |
| database | Database of the connection using the file descriptor. |
| addr | IP address of the connection using the file descriptor, `unix` if a Unix socket is used. |
| port | Port used by the connection using the file descriptor. |
| cancel | Cancel key for this connection. |
| link | File descriptor for corresponding server/client. NULL if idle. |

#### LISTS

Shows the following PgBouncer internal information, in columns (not rows):

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| databases | Count of databases. |
| users | Count of users. |
| pools | Count of pools. |
| free_clients | Count of free clients. |
| used_clients | Count of used clients. |
| login_clients | Count of clients in `login` state. |
| free_servers | Count of free servers. |
| used_servers | Count of used servers. |
| dns_names | Count of DNS names in the cache. |
| dns_zones | Count of DNS zones in the cache. |
| dns_queries | Count of in-flight DNS queries. |
| dns_pending | not used |

#### MEM

Shows low-level information about the current sizes of various internal memory allocations. The information presented is subject to change.

#### POOLS

A new pool entry is made for each pair of (database, user).

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| database | Database name. |
| user | User name. |
| cl_active | Client connections that are linked to server connection and can process queries. |
| cl_waiting | Client connections that have sent queries but have not yet got a server connection. |
| cl_cancel_req | Client connections that have not yet forwarded query cancellations to the server. |
| sv_active | Server connections that are linked to client. |
| sv_idle | Server connections that are unused and immediately usable for client queries. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sv_used | Server connections that have been idle more than `server_check_delay`. The `server_check_query` query must be run on them before they can be used again. |
| sv_tested | Server connections that are currently running either `server_reset_query` or `server_check_query`. |
| sv_login | Server connections currently in the process of logging in. |
| maxwait | How long the first (oldest) client in the queue has waited, in seconds. If this begins to increase, the current pool of servers does not handle requests quickly enough. The cause may be either an overloaded server or the `pool_size` setting is too small. |
| maxwait_us | Microsecond part of the maximum waiting time. |
| pool_mode | The pooling mode in use. |

#### SERVERS

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| type | S, for server. |
| user | User name that `pgbouncer` uses to connect to server. |
| database | Database name. |
| state | State of the `pgbouncer` server connection, one of `active`, `idle`, `used`, `tested`, or `new`. |
| addr | IP address of the WarehousePG or PostgreSQL server. |
| port | Port of the WarehousePG or PostgreSQL server. |
| local_addr | Connection start address on local machine. |
| local_port | Connection start port on local machine. |
| connect_time | When the connection was made. |
| request_time | When the last request was issued. |
| wait | Current waiting time in seconds. |
| wait_us | Microsecond part of the current waiting time. |
| close_needed | 1 if the connection will be closed as soon as possible, because a configuration file reload or DNS update changed the connection information or `RECONNECT` was issued. |
| ptr | Address of the internal object for this connection. Used as unique ID. |
| link | Address of the client connection the server is paired with. |
| remote_pid | Pid of backend server process. If the connection is made over Unix socket and the OS supports getting process ID info, it is the OS pid. Otherwise it is extracted from the cancel packet the server sent, which should be PID in case server is PostgreSQL, but it is a random number in case server is another PgBouncer. |
| tls | A string with TLS connection information, or empty if not using TLS. |

#### SOCKETS, ACTIVE_SOCKETS

Shows low-level information about sockets or only active sockets. This includes the information shown under `SHOW CLIENTS` and `SHOW SERVERS` as well as other more low-level information.

#### STATS

Shows statistics. In this and related commands, the total figures are since process start, the averages are updated every `stats_period`.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| database | Statistics are presented per database. |
| total_xact_count | Total number of SQL transactions pooled by PgBouncer. |
| total_query_count | Total number of SQL queries pooled by PgBouncer. |
| total_received | Total volume in bytes of network traffic received by `pgbouncer`. |
| total_sent | Total volume in bytes of network traffic sent by `pgbouncer`. |
| total_xact_time | Total number of microseconds spent by PgBouncer when connected to WarehousePG in a transaction, either idle in transaction or executing queries. |
| total_query_time | Total number of microseconds spent by `pgbouncer` when actively connected to the database server. |
| total_wait_time | Time spent (in microseconds) by clients waiting for a server. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| avg_xact_count | Average number of transactions per second in the last stat period. |
| avg_query_count | Average queries per second in the last stats period. |
| avg_recv | Average received (from clients) bytes per second. |
| avg_sent | Average sent (to clients) bytes per second. |
| avg_xact_time | Average transaction duration in microseconds. |
| avg_query_time | Average query duration in microseconds. |
| avg_wait_time | Time spent by clients waiting for a server in microseconds (average per second). |

#### STATS_AVERAGES

Subset of `SHOW STATS` showing the average values for selected statistics ( `avg_` )

#### STATS_TOTALS

Subset of `SHOW STATS` showing the total values for selected statistics ( `total_` )

#### TOTALS

Like `SHOW STATS` but aggregated across all databases.

#### USERS

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| name | The user name |
| pool_mode | The user's override pool_mode, or NULL if the default will be used instead. |

#### VERSION

Display PgBouncer version information.

> **Note** This reference documentation is based on the PgBouncer 1.16 documentation.

### Signals

SIGHUP : Reload config. Same as issuing the command `RELOAD` on the console.

SIGINT : Safe shutdown. Same as issuing `PAUSE` and `SHUTDOWN` on the console.

SIGTERM : Immediate shutdown. Same as issuing `SHUTDOWN` on the console.

SIGUSR1 : Same as issuing `PAUSE` on the console.

SIGUSR2 : Same as issuing `RESUME` on the console.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Libevent Settings

From the Libevent documentation:

```
It is possible to disable support for epoll, kqueue, devpoll, poll or select by
setting the environment variable EVENT_NOEPOLL, EVENT_NOKQUEUE, EVENT_NODEVPOLL,
EVENT_NOPOLL or EVENT_NOSELECT, respectively.

By setting the environment variable EVENT_SHOW_METHOD, libevent displays the
kernel notification method that it uses.
```

### See Also

pgbouncer, pgbouncer.ini

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.38 pgbouncer.ini

PgBouncer configuration file.

### Synopsis

```
[databases]
db = ...

[pgbouncer]
...

[users]
...
```

### Description

You specify PgBouncer configuration parameters and identify user-specific configuration parameters in a configuration file.

The PgBouncer configuration file (typically named `pgbouncer.ini`) is specified in `.ini` format. Files in `.ini` format are composed of sections, parameters, and values. Section names are enclosed in square brackets, for example, `[<section_name>]`. Parameters and values are specified in `key=value` format. Lines beginning with a semicolon (`;`) or pound sign (`#`) are considered comment lines and are ignored.

The PgBouncer configuration file can contain `%include` directives, which specify another file to read and process. This enables you to split the configuration file into separate parts. For example:

```
%include filename
```

If the filename provided is not an absolute path, the file system location is taken as relative to the current working directory.

The PgBouncer configuration file includes the following sections, described in detail below:

- [databases] Section
- [pgbouncer] Section
- [users] Section

### [databases] Section

The `[databases]` section contains `key=value` pairs, where the `key` is a database name and the `value` is a `libpq` connect-string list of `key` = `value` pairs. Not all features known from `libpq` can be used (service=, .pgpass), since the actual `libpq` is not used.

A database name can contain characters `[0-9A-Za-z_.-]` without quoting. Names that contain other characters must be quoted with standard SQL identifier quoting:

- Enclose names in double quotes (`" "`).
- Represent a double-quote within an identifier with two consecutive double quote characters.

The database name `*` is the fallback database. PgBouncer uses the value for this key as a connect string for the requested database. Automatically-created database entries such as these are cleaned up if they remain idle longer than the time specified in `autodb_idle_timeout` parameter.

#### Database Connection Parameters

The following parameters may be included in the `value` to specify the location of the database.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- dbname

  The destination database name.

  Default: the client-specified database name

- host

  The name or IP address of the WarehousePG coordinator host. Host names are resolved at connect time. If DNS returns several results, they are used in a round-robin manner. The DNS result is cached and the `dns_max_ttl` parameter determines when the cache entry expires.

  If the value begins with `/`, then a Unix socket in the file-system namespace is used. If the value begins with `@`, then a Unix socket in the abstract namespace is used.

  Default: not set; the connection is made through a Unix socket

- port

  The WarehousePG coordinator port.

  Default: 5432

- user

  If `user=` is set, all connections to the destination database are initiated as the specified user, resulting in a single connection pool for the database.

  If the `user=` parameter is not set, PgBouncer attempts to log in to the destination database with the user name passed by the client. In this situation, there will be one pool for each user who connects to the database.

- password

  If no password is specified here, the password from the `auth_file` or `auth_query` will be used.

- auth_user

  Override of the global `auth_user` setting, if specified.

- client_encoding

  Ask for specific `client_encoding` from server.

- datestyle

  Ask for specific `datestyle` from server.

- timezone

  Ask for specific `timezone` from server.

#### Pool Configuration

You can use the following parameters for database-specific pool configuration.

- pool_size

  Set the maximum size of pools for this database. If not set, the `default_pool_size` is used.

- min_pool_size

  Set the minimum pool size for this database. If not set, the global `min_pool_size` is used.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- reserve_pool

  Set additional connections for this database. If not set, `reserve_pool_size` is used.

- connect_query

  Query to be run after a connection is established, but before allowing the connection to be used by any clients. If the query raises errors, they are logged but ignored otherwise.

- pool_mode

  Set the pool mode specific to this database. If not set, the default `pool_mode` is used.

- max_db_connections

  Set a database-wide maximum number of PgBouncer connections for this database. The total number of connections for all pools for this database will not exceed this value.

### [pgbouncer] Section

#### Generic Settings

- logfile

  The location of the log file. For daemonization ( `-d` ), either this or `syslog` need to be set. The log file is kept open. After log rotation, run `kill -HUP pgbouncer` or run the `RELOAD` command in the PgBouncer Administration Console.

  Note that setting `logfile` does not by itself turn off logging to `stderr` . Use the command-line option `-q` or `-d` for that.

  Default: not set

- pidfile

  The name of the pid file. Without a `pidfile` , you cannot run PgBouncer as a background (daemon) process.

  Default: not set

- listen_addr

  Specifies a list of interface addresses where PgBouncer listens for TCP connections. You may also use `*` , which means to listen on all interfaces. If not set, only Unix socket connections are accepted.

  Specify addresses numerically (IPv4/IPv6) or by name.

  Default: not set

- listen_port

  The port PgBouncer listens on. Applies to both TCP and Unix sockets.

  Default: 6432

- unix_socket_dir

  Specifies the location for the Unix sockets. Applies to both listening socket and server connections. If set to an empty string, Unix sockets are deactivated. A value that starts with @ specifies that a Unix socket in the abstract namespace should be created.

  For online reboot ( `-R` ) to work, a Unix socket needs to be configured, and it needs to be in the file-system namespace.

  Default: `/tmp`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- unix_socket_mode

  Filesystem mode for the Unix socket. Ignored for sockets in the abstract namespace.

  Default: 0777

- unix_socket_group

  Group name to use for Unix socket. Ignored for sockets in the abstract namespace.

  Default: not set

- user

  If set, specifies the Unix user to change to after startup. This works only if PgBouncer is started as root or if it is already running as the given user.

  Default: not set

- auth_file

  The name of the file containing the user names and passwords to load. The file format is the same as the WarehousePG pg_auth file. Refer to thePgBouncer Authentication File Format for more information.

  Default: not set

- auth_hba_file

  HBA configuration file to use when `auth_type` is `hba`. Refer to the Configuring HBA-based Authentication for PgBouncer and Configuring LDAP-based Authentication for PgBouncer for more information.

  Default: not set

- auth_type

  How to authenticate users.

  - `pam`: Use PAM to authenticate users. `auth_file` is ignored. This method is not compatible with databases using the `auth_user` option. The service name reported to PAM is `pgbouncer`. PAM is not supported in the HBA configuration file.
  - `hba`: The actual authentication type is loaded from the `auth_hba_file`. This setting allows different authentication methods for different access paths, for example: connections over Unix socket use the `peer` auth method, connections over TCP must use TLS.
  - `cert`: Clients must connect with TLS using a valid client certificate. The client's username is taken from CommonName field in the certificate.
  - `md5`: Use MD5-based password check. `auth_file` may contain both MD5-encrypted or plain-text passwords. If `md5` is configured and a user has a SCRAM secret, then SCRAM authentication is used automatically instead. This is the default authentication method.
  - `scram-sha-256`: Use password check with SCRAM-SHA-256. `auth_file` has to contain SCRAM secrets or plain-text passwords.
  - `plain`: Clear-text password is sent over wire. *Deprecated*.
  - `trust`: No authentication is performed. The username must still exist in the `auth_file`.
  - `any`: Like the `trust` method, but the username supplied is ignored. Requires that all databases are configured to log in with a specific user. Additionally, the console database allows any user to log in as admin.

- auth_key_file

  If you are connecting to LDAP with an encrypted password, `auth_key_file` identifies the file system location of the encryption key. Refer to About Specifying an Encrypted LDAP Password for more information.

  Default: not set

- auth_cipher

  If you are connecting to LDAP with an encrypted password, `auth_cipher` identifies the cipher algorithm for password authentication. PgBouncer accepts any cipher supported by OpenSSL on the system. When FIPS mode is enabled, specify only a cipher that is considered safe in FIPS mode. Refer to About Specifying an Encrypted LDAP Password for more information.

  Default: `aes-256-cbc`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- auth_query

  Query to load a user's password from the database.

  Direct access to pg_shadow requires admin rights. It's preferable to use a non-superuser that calls a `SECURITY DEFINER` function instead.

  Note that the query is run inside target database, so if a function is used it needs to be installed into each database.

  Default: `SELECT usename, passwd FROM pg_shadow WHERE usename=$1`

- auth_user

  If `auth_user` is set, any user who is not specified in `auth_file` is authenticated through the `auth_query` query from the `pg_shadow` database view. PgBouncer performs this query as the `auth_user` WarehousePG user. `auth_user` 's password must be set in the `auth_file` . (If the `auth_user` does not require a password then it does not need to be defined in `auth_file` .)

  Direct access to `pg_shadow` requires WarehousePG administrative privileges. It is preferable to use a non-admin user that calls `SECURITY DEFINER` function instead.

  Default: not set

- pool_mode

  Specifies when a server connection can be reused by other clients.

  - `session` : Connection is returned to the pool when the client disconnects. Default.
  - `transaction` : Connection is returned to the pool when the transaction finishes.
  - `statement` : Connection is returned to the pool when the current query finishes. Transactions spanning multiple statements are disallowed in this mode.

- max_client_conn

  Maximum number of client connections allowed. When increased, you should also increase the file descriptor limits. The actual number of file descriptors used is more than `max_client_conn` . The theoretical maximum used, when each user connects with its own username to the server is:

  ```
  max_client_conn + (max pool_size * total databases * total users)
  ```

  If a database user is specified in the connect string, all users connect using the same username. Then the theoretical maximum connections is:

  ```
  max_client_conn + (max pool_size * total databases)
  ```

  The theoretical maximum should be never reached, unless someone deliberately crafts a special load for it. Still, it means you should set the number of file descriptors to a safely high number. Search for `ulimit` in your operating system documentation.

  Default: 100

- default_pool_size

  The number of server connections to allow per user/database pair. This can be overridden in the per-database configuration.

  Default: 20

- min_pool_size

  Add more server connections to the pool when it is lower than this number. This improves behavior when the usual load drops and then returns suddenly after a period of total inactivity. The value is effectively capped at the pool size.

  Default: 0 (deactivated)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- reserve_pool_size

  The number of additional connections to allow for a pool (see `reserve_pool_timeout`). `0` deactivates.

  Default: 0 (deactivated)

- reserve_pool_timeout

  If a client has not been serviced in this many seconds, PgBouncer enables use of additional connections from the reserve pool. `0` deactivates.

  Default: 5.0

- max_db_connections

  Do not allow more than this many server connections per database (regardless of user). This considers the PgBouncer database that the client has connected to, not the PostgreSQL database of the outgoing connection.

  This can also be set per database in the `[databases]` section.

  Note that when you hit the limit, closing a client connection to one pool will not immediately allow a server connection to be established for another pool, because the server connection for the first pool is still open. Once the server connection closes (due to idle timeout), a new server connection will immediately be opened for the waiting pool.

  Default: 0 (unlimited)

- max_user_connections

  Do not allow more than this many server connections per user (regardless of database). This considers the PgBouncer user that is associated with a pool, which is either the user specified for the server connection or in absence of that the user the client has connected as.

  This can also be set per user in the `[users]` section.

  Note that when you hit the limit, closing a client connection to one pool will not immediately allow a server connection to be established for another pool, because the server connection for the first pool is still open. Once the server connection closes (due to idle timeout), a new server connection will immediately be opened for the waiting pool.

  Default: 0 (unlimited)

- server_round_robin

  By default, PgBouncer reuses server connections in LIFO (last-in, first-out) order, so that a few connections get the most load. This provides the best performance when a single server serves a database. But if there is TCP round-robin behind a database IP, then it is better if PgBouncer also uses connections in that manner to achieve uniform load.

  Default: 0

- ignore_startup_parameters

  By default, PgBouncer allows only parameters it can keep track of in startup packets: `client_encoding`, `datestyle`, `timezone`, and `standard_conforming_strings`. All others parameters raise an error. To allow other parameters, specify them here so that PgBouncer knows that they are handled by the admin and it can ignore them.

  Default: empty

- disable_pqexec

  Deactivates Simple Query protocol (PQexec). Unlike Extended Query protocol, Simple Query protocol allows multiple queries in one packet, which allows some classes of SQL-injection attacks. Deactivating it can improve security. This means that only clients that exclusively use Extended Query protocol will work.

  Default: 0

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- application_name_add_host

  Add the client host address and port to the application name setting set on connection start. This helps in identifying the source of bad queries. This logic applies only on start of connection. If `application_name` is later changed with `SET`, PgBouncer does not change it again.

  Default: 0

- conffile

  Show location of the current configuration file. Changing this parameter will result in PgBouncer using another config file for next `RELOAD` / `SIGHUP`.

  Default: file from command line

- service_name

  Used during win32 service registration.

  Default: pgbouncer

- job_name

  Alias for `service_name`.

- stats_period

  Sets how often the averages shown in various `SHOW` commands are updated and how often aggregated statistics are written to the log (but see `log_stats`). [seconds]

  Default: 60

#### Log Settings

- syslog

  Toggles syslog on and off.

  Default: 0

- syslog_ident

  Under what name to send logs to syslog.

  Default: `pgbouncer` (program name)

- syslog_facility

  Under what facility to send logs to syslog. Some possibilities are: `auth`, `authpriv`, `daemon`, `user`, `local0-7`.

  Default: `daemon`

- log_connections

  Log successful logins.

  Default: 1

- log_disconnections

  Log disconnections, with reasons.

  Default: 1

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- log_pooler_errors

  Log error messages that the pooler sends to clients.

  Default: 1

- log_stats

  Write aggregated statistics into the log, every `stats_period`. This can be deactivated if external monitoring tools are used to grab the same data from `SHOW` commands.

  Default: 1

- verbose

  Increase verbosity. Mirrors the `-v` switch on the command line. Using `-v -v` on the command line is the same as `verbose=2`.

  Default: 0

#### Console Access Control

- admin_users

  Comma-separated list of database users that are allowed to connect and run all commands on the PgBouncer Administration Console. Ignored when `auth_type=any`, in which case any username is allowed in as admin.

  Default: empty

- stats_users

  Comma-separated list of database users that are allowed to connect and run read-only queries on the console. This includes all `SHOW` commands except `SHOW FDS`.

  Default: empty

#### Connection Sanity Checks, Timeouts

- server_reset_query

  Query sent to server on connection release, before making it available to other clients. At that moment no transaction is in progress so it should not include `ABORT` or `ROLLBACK`.

  The query should clean any changes made to a database session so that the next client gets a connection in a well-defined state. Default is `DISCARD ALL` which cleans everything, but that leaves the next client no pre-cached state. It can be made lighter, e.g. `DEALLOCATE ALL` to just drop prepared statements, if the application does not break when some state is kept around.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support `DISCARD ALL`.

  When transaction pooling is used, the `server_reset_query` is not used, as clients must not use any session-based features as each transaction ends up in a different connection and thus gets a different session state.

  Default: `DISCARD ALL;` (Not supported by WarehousePG.)

- server_reset_query_always

  Whether `server_reset_query` should be run in all pooling modes. When this setting is off (default), the `server_reset_query` will be run only in pools that are in sessions-pooling mode. Connections in transaction-pooling mode should not have any need for reset query.

  This setting is for working around broken setups that run applications that use session features over a transaction-pooled PgBouncer. It changes non-deterministic breakage to deterministic breakage: Clients always lose their state after each transaction.

  Default: 0

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- server_check_delay

  How long to keep released connections available for immediate re-use, without running sanity-check queries on it. If `0`, then the query is run always.

  Default: 30.0

- server_check_query

  A simple do-nothing query to test the server connection.

  If an empty string, then sanity checking is deactivated.

  Default: SELECT 1;

- server_fast_close

  Disconnect a server in session pooling mode immediately or after the end of the current transaction if it is in "close_needed" mode (set by `RECONNECT`, `RELOAD` that changes connection settings, or DNS change), rather than waiting for the session end. In statement or transaction pooling mode, this has no effect since that is the default behavior there.

  If because of this setting a server connection is closed before the end of the client session, the client connection is also closed. This ensures that the client notices that the session has been interrupted.

  This setting makes connection configuration changes take effect sooner if session pooling and long-running sessions are used. The downside is that client sessions are liable to be interrupted by a configuration change, so client applications will need logic to reconnect and reestablish session state. But note that no transactions will be lost, because running transactions are not interrupted, only idle sessions.

  Default: 0

- server_lifetime

  The pooler will close an unused server connections that has been connected longer than this number of seconds. Setting it to `0` means the connection is to be used only once, then closed. [seconds]

  Default: 3600.0

- server_idle_timeout

  If a server connection has been idle more than this many seconds it is dropped. If this parameter is set to `0`, timeout is deactivated. [seconds]

  Default: 600.0

- server_connect_timeout

  If connection and login will not finish in this amount of time, the connection will be closed. [seconds]

  Default: 15.0

- server_login_retry

  If a login fails due to failure from `connect()` or authentication, that pooler waits this much before retrying to connect. [seconds]

  Default: 15.0

- client_login_timeout

  If a client connects but does not manage to login in this amount of time, it is disconnected. This is needed to avoid dead connections stalling `SUSPEND` and thus online restart. [seconds]

  Default: 60.0

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- autodb_idle_timeout

  If database pools created automatically (via `*`) have been unused this many seconds, they are freed. Their statistics are also forgotten. [seconds]

  Default: 3600.0

- dns_max_ttl

  How long to cache DNS lookups, in seconds. If a DNS lookup returns several answers, PgBouncer round-robins between them in the meantime. The actual DNS TTL is ignored. [seconds]

  Default: 15.0

- dns_nxdomain_ttl

  How long error and NXDOMAIN DNS lookups can be cached. [seconds]

  Default: 15.0

- dns_zone_check_period

  Period to check if zone serial numbers have changed.

  PgBouncer can collect DNS zones from hostnames (everything after first dot) and then periodically check if the zone serial numbers change. If changes are detected, all hostnames in that zone are looked up again. If any host IP changes, its connections are invalidated.

  Works only with UDNS and c-ares backend ( `--with-udns` or `--with-cares` to configure).

  Default: 0.0 (deactivated)

- resolv_conf

  The location of a custom `resolv.conf` file. This is to allow specifying custom DNS servers and perhaps other name resolution options, independent of the global operating system configuration.

  Requires evdns (>= 2.0.3) or c-ares (>= 1.15.0) backend.

  The parsing of the file is done by the DNS backend library, not PgBouncer, so see the library's documentation for details on allowed syntax and directives.

  Default: empty (use operating system defaults)

#### TLS settings

- client_tls_sslmode

  TLS mode to use for connections from clients. TLS connections are deactivated by default. When enabled, `client_tls_key_file` and `client_tls_cert_file` must be also configured to set up the key and certificate PgBouncer uses to accept client connections.

  - `disable` : Plain TCP. If client requests TLS, it's ignored. Default.
  - `allow` : If client requests TLS, it is used. If not, plain TCP is used. If client uses client-certificate, it is not validated.
  - `prefer` : Same as `allow` .
  - `require` : Client must use TLS. If not, client connection is rejected. If client presents a client-certificate, it is not validated.
  - `verify-ca` : Client must use TLS with valid client certificate.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

    - `verify-full`: Same as `verify-ca`.

- client_tls_key_file

  Private key for PgBouncer to accept client connections.

  Default: not set

- client_tls_cert_file

  Certificate for private key. CLients can validate it.

  Default: unset

- client_tls_ca_file

  Root certificate to validate client certificates.

  Default: unset

- client_tls_protocols

  Which TLS protocol versions are allowed.

  Valid values: are `tlsv1.0`, `tlsv1.1`, `tlsv1.2`, `tlsv1.3`.

  Shortcuts: `all` (`tlsv1.0`, `tlsv1.1`, `tlsv1.2`, `tlsv1.3`), `secure` (`tlsv1.2`, `tlsv1.3`), `legacy` (`all`).

  Default: `secure`

- client_tls_ciphers

  Allowed TLS ciphers, in OpenSSL syntax. Shortcuts: `default`/`secure`, `compat`/`legacy`, `insecure`/`all`, `normal`, `fast`.

  Only connections using TLS version 1.2 and lower are affected. There is currently no setting that controls the cipher choices used by TLS version 1.3 connections.

  Default: `fast`

- client_tls_ecdhcurve

  Elliptic Curve name to use for ECDH key exchanges.

  Allowed values: `none` (DH is deactivated), `auto` (256-bit ECDH), curve name.

  Default: `auto`

- client_tls_dheparams

  DHE key exchange type.

  Allowed values: `none` (DH is deactivated), `auto` (2048-bit DH), `legacy` (1024-bit DH).

  Default: `auto`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- server_tls_sslmode

  TLS mode to use for connections to WarehousePG and PostgreSQL servers. TLS connections are deactivated by default.

  - `disable` : Plain TCP. TLS is not requested from the server. Default.
  - `allow` : If server rejects plain, try TLS. (*PgBouncer Documentation is speculative on this.*)
  - `prefer` : TLS connection is always requested first. When connection is refused, plain TPC is used. Server certificate is not validated.
  - `require` : Connection must use TLS. If server rejects it, plain TCP is not attempted. Server certificate is not validated.
  - `verify-ca` : Connection must use TLS and server certificate must be valid according to `server_tls_ca_file` . The server hostname is not verfied against the certificate.
  - `verify-full` : Connection must use TLS and the server certificate must be valid according to `server_tls_ca_file` . The server hostname must match the hostname in the certificate.

- server_tls_ca_file

  Root certificate file used to validate WarehousePG and PostgreSQL server certificates.

  Default: unset

- server_tls_key_file

  Private key for PgBouncer to authenticate against WarehousePG or PostgreSQL server.

  Default: not set

- server_tls_cert_file

  Certificate for private key. WarehousePG or PostgreSQL servers can validate it.

  Default: not set

- server_tls_protocols

  Which TLS protocol versions are allowed. Allowed values: `tlsv1.0` , `tlsv1.1` , `tlsv1.2` , `tlsv1.3` . Shortcuts: `all` ( `tlsv1.0` , `tlsv1.1` , `tlsv1.2` , `tlsv1.3` ); `secure` ( `tlsv1.2` , `tlsv1.3` ); `legacy` ( `all` ).

  Default: `secure`

- server_tls_ciphers

  Allowed TLS ciphers, in OpenSSL syntax. Shortcuts: `default` / `secure` , `compat` / `legacy` , `insecure` / `all` , `normal` , `fast` .

  Only connections using TLS version 1.2 and lower are affected. There is currently no setting that controls the cipher choices used by TLS version 1.3 connections.

  Default: `fast`

#### Dangerous Timeouts

Setting the following timeouts can cause unexpected errors.

- query_timeout

  Queries running longer than this (seconds) are canceled. This parameter should be used only with a slightly smaller server-side `statement_timeout` , to apply only for network problems. [seconds]

  Default: 0.0 (deactivated)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- query_wait_timeout

  The maximum time, in seconds, queries are allowed to wait for execution. If the query is not assigned to a server during that time, the client is disconnected. This is used to prevent unresponsive servers from grabbing up connections. [seconds]

  Default: 120

- client_idle_timeout

  Client connections idling longer than this many seconds are closed. This should be larger than the client-side connection lifetime settings, and only used for network problems. [seconds]

  Default: 0.0 (deactivated)

- idle_transaction_timeout

  If client has been in "idle in transaction" state longer than this (seconds), it is disconnected. [seconds]

  Default: 0.0 (deactivated)

- suspend_timeout

  How many seconds to wait for buffer flush during `SUSPEND` or reboot (`-R`). A connection is dropped if the flush does not succeed.

  Default: 10

**Low-level Network Settings**

- pkt_buf

  Internal buffer size for packets. Affects the size of TCP packets sent and general memory usage. Actual `libpq` packets can be larger than this so there is no need to set it large.

  Default: 4096

- max_packet_size

  Maximum size for packets that PgBouncer accepts. One packet is either one query or one result set row. A full result set can be larger.

  Default: 2147483647

- listen_backlog

  Backlog argument for the `listen(2)` system call. It determines how many new unanswered connection attempts are kept in queue. When the queue is full, further new connection attempts are dropped.

  Default: 128

- sbuf_loopcnt

  How many times to process data on one connection, before proceeding. Without this limit, one connection with a big result set can stall PgBouncer for a long time. One loop processes one `pkt_buf` amount of data. 0 means no limit.

  Default: 5

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- so_reuseport

  Specifies whether to set the socket option `SO_REUSEPORT` on TCP listening sockets. On some operating systems, this allows running multiple PgBouncer instances on the same host listening on the same port and having the kernel distribute the connections automatically. This option is a way to get PgBouncer to use more CPU cores. (PgBouncer is single-threaded and uses one CPU core per instance.)

  The behavior in detail depends on the operating system kernel. As of this writing, this setting has the desired effect on (sufficiently recent versions of) Linux, DragonFlyBSD, and FreeBSD. (On FreeBSD, it applies the socket option `SO_REUSEPORT_LB` instead.). Some other operating systems support the socket option but it won't have the desired effect: It will allow multiple processes to bind to the same port but only one of them will get the connections. See your operating system's `setsockopt()` documentation for details.

  On systems that don't support the socket option at all, turning this setting on will result in an error.

  Each PgBouncer instance on the same host needs different settings for at least `unix_socket_dir` and `pidfile`, as well as `logfile` if that is used. Also note that if you make use of this option, you can no longer connect to a specific PgBouncer instance via TCP/IP, which might have implications for monitoring and metrics collection.

  Default: 0

- tcp_defer_accept

  For details on this and other TCP options, please see the tcp(7) man page.

  Default: 45 on Linux, otherwise 0

- tcp_socket_buffer

  Default: not set

- tcp_keepalive

  Turns on basic keepalive with OS defaults.

  On Linux, the system defaults are `tcp_keepidle=7200`, `tcp_keepintvl=75`, `tcp_keepcnt=9`. They are probably similar on other operating systems.

  Default: 1

- tcp_keepcnt

  Default: not set

- tcp_keepidle

  Default: not set

- tcp_keepintvl

  Default: not set

- tcp_user_timeout

  Sets the `TCP_USER_TIMEOUT` socket option. This specifies the maximum amount of time in milliseconds that transmitted data may remain unacknowledged before the TCP connection is forcibly closed. If set to `0`, then the operating system's default is used.

  Default: 0

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### [users] Section

This section contains `key` = `value` pairs, where the `key` is a user name and the `value` is a `libpq` connect-string list of `key` = `value` pairs of configuration settings specific for this user. Only a few settings are available here.

- pool_mode

  Set the pool mode for all connections from this user. If not set, the database or default `pool_mode` is used.

- max_user_connection

  Configure a maximum for the user (i.e. all pools with the user will not have more than this many server connections).

For example:

```
[users]

user1 = pool_mode=transaction max_user_connections=10
```

### Example Configuration Files

#### Minimal Configuration

```
[databases]
postgres = host=127.0.0.1 dbname=postgres auth_user=gpadmin

[pgbouncer]
pool_mode = session
listen_port = 6543
listen_addr = 127.0.0.1
auth_type = md5
auth_file = users.txt
logfile = pgbouncer.log
pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
admin_users = someuser
stats_users = stat_collector
```

Use connection parameters passed by the client:

```
[databases]
* =

[pgbouncer]
listen_port = 6543
listen_addr = 0.0.0.0
auth_type = trust
auth_file = bouncer/users.txt
logfile = pgbouncer.log
pidfile = pgbouncer.pid
ignore_startup_parameters=options
```

#### Database Defaults

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
[databases]

; foodb over unix socket
foodb =

; redirect bardb to bazdb on localhost
bardb = host=127.0.0.1 dbname=bazdb

; access to destination database will go with single user
forcedb = host=127.0.0.1 port=300 user=baz password=foo client_encoding=UNICODE datestyle=ISO
```

Example of a secure function for auth_query:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(in i_username text, out uname text, out phash text)
RETURNS record AS $$
BEGIN
    SELECT usename, passwd FROM
pg_catalog.pg_shadow
    WHERE usename = i_username INTO uname,
phash;
    RETURN;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql SECURITY
DEFINER;
REVOKE ALL ON FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(text) FROM public, pgbouncer;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION pgbouncer.user_lookup(text) TO pgbouncer;
```

### See Also

pgbouncer, pgbouncer-admin, PgBouncer Configuration Page

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.7.3.39 psql

Interactive command-line interface for WarehousePG

### Synopsis

```
psql [<option> ...] [<dbname> [<username>]]
```

### Description

`psql` is a terminal-based front-end to WarehousePG. It enables you to type in queries interactively, issue them to WarehousePG, and see the query results. Alternatively, input can be from a file. In addition, it provides a number of meta-commands and various shell-like features to facilitate writing scripts and automating a wide variety of tasks.

### Options

- -a | --echo-all

  Print all nonempty input lines to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) This is equivalent to setting the variable ECHO to `all`.

- -A | --no-align

  Switches to unaligned output mode. (The default output mode is aligned.)

- -c 'command' | --command='command'

  Specifies that `psql` is to run the specified command string, and then exit. This is useful in shell scripts. command must be either a command string that is completely parseable by the server, or a single backslash command. Thus you cannot mix SQL and `psql` meta-commands with this option. To achieve that, you could pipe the string into `psql`, like this:

  ```
  echo '\x \\ SELECT * FROM foo;' | psql
  ```

  (`\\` is the separator meta-command.)

  If the command string contains multiple SQL commands, they are processed in a single transaction, unless there are explicit `BEGIN/COMMIT` commands included in the string to divide it into multiple transactions. This is different from the behavior when the same string is fed to `psql`'s standard input. Also, only the result of the last SQL command is returned.

- -d dbname | --dbname=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying dbname as the first non-option argument on the command line.

  If this parameter contains an `=` sign or starts with a valid URI prefix (`postgresql://` or `postgres://`), it is treated as a `conninfo` string. See Connection Strings in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information.

- -e | --echo-queries

  Copy all SQL commands sent to the server to standard output as well.

- -E | --echo-hidden

  Echo the actual queries generated by `\d` and other backslash commands. You can use this to study `psql`'s internal operations. This is equivalent to setting the variable ECHO_HIDDEN to `on`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -f filename | --file=filename

  Use the file filename as the source of commands instead of reading commands interactively. After the file is processed, `psql` terminates. This is in many ways equivalent to the meta-command `\i`.

  If filename is `-` (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command. Note however that Readline is not used in this case (much as if `-n` had been specified).

  Using this option is subtly different from writing `psql < <filename>`. In general, both will do what you expect, but using `-f` enables some nice features such as error messages with line numbers. There is also a slight chance that using this option will reduce the start-up overhead. On the other hand, the variant using the shell's input redirection is (in theory) guaranteed to yield exactly the same output you would have received had you entered everything by hand.

- -F separator | --field-separator=separator

  Use the specified separator as the field separator for unaligned output.

- -H | --html

  Turn on HTML tabular output.

- -l | --list

  List all available databases, then exit. Other non-connection options are ignored.

- -L filename | --log-file=filename

  Write all query output into the specified log file, in addition to the normal output destination.

- -n | --no-readline

  Do not use Readline for line editing and do not use the command history. This can be useful to turn off tab expansion when cutting and pasting.

- -o filename | --output=filename

  Put all query output into the specified file.

- -P assignment | --pset=assignment

  Allows you to specify printing options in the style of `\pset` on the command line. Note that here you have to separate name and value with an equal sign instead of a space. Thus to set the output format to `LaTeX`, you could write `-P format=latex`.

- -q | --quiet

  Specifies that `psql` should do its work quietly. By default, it prints welcome messages and various informational output. If this option is used, none of this happens. This is useful with the `-c` option. This is equivalent to setting the variable QUIET to `on`.

- -R separator | --record-separator=separator

  Use separator as the record separator for unaligned output.

- -s | --single-step

  Run in single-step mode. That means the user is prompted before each command is sent to the server, with the option to cancel execution as well. Use this to debug scripts.

- -S | --single-line

  Runs in single-line mode where a new line terminates an SQL command, as a semicolon does.

- -t | --tuples-only

  Turn off printing of column names and result row count footers, etc. This command is equivalent to `\pset tuples_only` and is provided for convenience.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -T table_options | --table-attr= table_options

  Allows you to specify options to be placed within the HTML table tag. See `\pset` for details.

- -v assignment | --set=assignment | --variable= assignment

  Perform a variable assignment, like the `\set` meta command. Note that you must separate name and value, if any, by an equal sign on the command line. To unset a variable, leave off the equal sign. To set a variable with an empty value, use the equal sign but leave off the value. These assignments are done during a very early stage of start-up, so variables reserved for internal purposes might get overwritten later.

- -V | --version

  Print the `psql` version and exit.

- -x | --expanded

  Turn on the expanded table formatting mode.

- -X | --no-psqlrc

  Do not read the start-up file (neither the system-wide `psqlrc` file nor the user's `~/.psqlrc` file).

- -z | --field-separator-zero

  Set the field separator for unaligned output to a zero byte.

- -0 | --record-separator-zero

  Set the record separator for unaligned output to a zero byte. This is useful for interfacing, for example, with `xargs -0`.

- -1 | --single-transaction

  When `psql` runs a script, adding this option wraps `BEGIN` / `COMMIT` around the script to run it as a single transaction. This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied.

  If the script itself uses `BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, or `ROLLBACK`, this option will not have the desired effects. Also, if the script contains any command that cannot be run inside a transaction block, specifying this option will cause that command (and hence the whole transaction) to fail.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `psql` command line arguments, and exit.

**Connection Options**

- -h host | --host=host

  The host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

  When starting `psql` on the coordinator host, if the host value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the UNIX-domain socket.

- -p port | --port=port

  The TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system role name.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt. `psql` should automatically prompt for a password whenever the server requests password authentication. However, currently password request detection is not totally reliable, hence this option to force a prompt. If no password prompt is issued and the server requires password authentication, the connection attempt will fail.

- -w --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

  > **Note** This option remains set for the entire session, and so it affects uses of the meta-command `\connect` as well as the initial connection attempt.

## Exit Status

`psql` returns 0 to the shell if it finished normally, 1 if a fatal error of its own (out of memory, file not found) occurs, 2 if the connection to the server went bad and the session was not interactive, and 3 if an error occurred in a script and the variable `ON_ERROR_STOP` was set.

## Usage

### Connecting to a Database

`psql` is a client application for WarehousePG. In order to connect to a database you need to know the name of your target database, the host name and port number of the WarehousePG coordinator server and what database user name you want to connect as. `psql` can be told about those parameters via command line options, namely `-d` , `-h` , `-p` , and `-U` respectively. If an argument is found that does not belong to any option it will be interpreted as the database name (or the user name, if the database name is already given). Not all of these options are required; there are useful defaults. If you omit the host name, `psql` will connect via a UNIX-domain socket to a coordinator server on the local host, or via TCP/IP to `localhost` on machines that do not have UNIX-domain sockets. The default coordinator port number is 5432. If you use a different port for the coordinator, you must specify the port. The default database user name is your operating-system user name, as is the default database name. Note that you cannot just connect to any database under any user name. Your database administrator should have informed you about your access rights.

When the defaults are not right, you can save yourself some typing by setting any or all of the environment variables `PGAPPNAME` , `PGDATABASE` , `PGHOST` , `PGPORT` , and `PGUSER` to appropriate values.

It is also convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file to avoid regularly having to type in passwords. This file should reside in your home directory and contain lines of the following format:

```
<hostname>:<port>:<database>:<username>:<password>
```

The permissions on `.pgpass` must disallow any access to world or group (for example: `chmod 0600 ~/.pgpass` ). If the permissions are less strict than this, the file will be ignored. (The file permissions are not currently checked on Microsoft Windows clients, however.)

An alternative way to specify connection parameters is in a `conninfo` string or a URI, which is used instead of a database name. This mechanism gives you very wide control over the connection. For example:

```
$ psql "service=myservice sslmode=require"
$ psql postgresql://gpmaster:5433/mydb?sslmode=require
```

This way you can also use LDAP for connection parameter lookup as described in LDAP Lookup of Connection Parameters in the PostgreSQL documentation. See Parameter Keywords in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information on all the available connection options.

If the connection could not be made for any reason (insufficient privileges, server is not running, etc.), `psql` will return an error and terminate.

If at least one of standard input or standard output are a terminal, then `psql` sets the client encoding to `auto` , which will detect the appropriate client encoding from the locale settings ( `LC_CTYPE` environment variable on Unix systems). If this doesn't work out as expected, the client encoding can be overridden using the environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING` .

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Entering SQL Commands

In normal operation, `psql` provides a prompt with the name of the database to which `psql` is currently connected, followed by the string **=>** for a regular user or **=#** for a superuser. For example:

```
testdb=>
testdb=#
```

At the prompt, the user may type in SQL commands. Ordinarily, input lines are sent to the server when a command-terminating semicolon is reached. An end of line does not terminate a command. Thus commands can be spread over several lines for clarity. If the command was sent and run without error, the results of the command are displayed on the screen.

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin your session by removing publicly-writable schemas from search_path. You can add `options=-csearch_path=` to the connection string or issue `SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)` before other SQL commands. This consideration is not specific to `psql`; it applies to every interface for running arbitrary SQL commands.

### Meta-Commands

Anything you enter in `psql` that begins with an unquoted backslash is a `psql` meta-command that is processed by `psql` itself. These commands help make `psql` more useful for administration or scripting. Meta-commands are more commonly called slash or backslash commands.

The format of a `psql` command is the backslash, followed immediately by a command verb, then any arguments. The arguments are separated from the command verb and each other by any number of whitespace characters.

To include whitespace into an argument you may quote it with single quotes. To include a single quote into such an argument, write two single quotes within single-quoted text. Anything contained in single quotes is furthermore subject to C-like substitutions for `\n` (new line), `\t` (tab), `\b` (backspace), `\r` (carriage return), `\f` (form feed), `\digits` (octal), and `\xdigits` (hexadecimal). A backslash preceding any other character within single-quoted text quotes that single character, whatever it is.

Within an argument, text that is enclosed in backquotes (```) is taken as a command line that is passed to the shell. The output of the command (with any trailing newline removed) replaces the backquoted text.

If an unquoted colon (`:`) followed by a `psql` variable name appears within an argument, it is replaced by the variable's value, as described in SQL Interpolation.

Some commands take an SQL identifier (such as a table name) as argument. These arguments follow the syntax rules of SQL: Unquoted letters are forced to lowercase, while double quotes (`"`) protect letters from case conversion and allow incorporation of whitespace into the identifier. Within double quotes, paired double quotes reduce to a single double quote in the resulting name. For example, `FOO"BAR"BAZ` is interpreted as `fooBARbaz`, and `"A weird"" name"` becomes `A weird" name`.

Parsing for arguments stops when another unquoted backslash occurs. This is taken as the beginning of a new meta-command. The special sequence `\\` (two backslashes) marks the end of arguments and continues parsing SQL commands, if any. That way SQL and `psql` commands can be freely mixed on a line. But in any case, the arguments of a meta-command cannot continue beyond the end of the line.

The following meta-commands are defined:

- \a

  If the current table output format is unaligned, it is switched to aligned. If it is not unaligned, it is set to unaligned. This command is kept for backwards compatibility. See `\pset` for a more general solution.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \c | \connect [dbname [username] [host] [port]] | conninfo

  Establishes a new WarehousePG connection. The connection parameters to use can be specified either using a positional syntax, or using `conninfo` connection strings as detailed in libpq Connection Strings.

  Where the command omits database name, user, host, or port, the new connection can reuse values from the previous connection. By default, values from the previous connection are reused except when processing a `conninfo` string. Passing a first argument of `-reuse-previous=on` or `-reuse-previous=off` overrides that default. When the command neither specifies nor reuses a particular parameter, the `libpq` default is used. Specifying any of dbname, username, host or port as `-` is equivalent to omitting that parameter.

  If the new connection is successfully made, the previous connection is closed. If the connection attempt failed, the previous connection will only be kept if `psql` is in interactive mode. When running a non-interactive script, processing will immediately stop with an error. This distinction was chosen as a user convenience against typos, and a safety mechanism that scripts are not accidentally acting on the wrong database.

  Examples:

  ```
  => \c mydb myuser host.dom 6432
  => \c service=foo
  => \c "host=localhost port=5432 dbname=mydb connect_timeout=10 sslmode=disable"
  => \c postgresql://tom@localhost/mydb?application_name=myapp
  ```

- \C [title]

  Sets the title of any tables being printed as the result of a query or unset any such title. This command is equivalent to `\pset title`.

- \cd [directory]

  Changes the current working directory. Without argument, changes to the current user's home directory. To print your current working directory, use `\!pwd`.

- \conninfo

  Displays information about the current connection including the database name, the user name, the type of connection (UNIX domain socket, `TCP/IP`, etc.), the host, and the port.

- \copy {table [(column_list)] | (query)} {from | to} {'filename' | program 'command' | stdin | stdout | pstdin | pstdout} [with] (option [, ...]) ]

  Performs a frontend (client) copy. This is an operation that runs an SQL `[COPY](../../ref_guide/sql_commands/COPY.html)` command, but instead of the server reading or writing the specified file, `psql` reads or writes the file and routes the data between the server and the local file system. This means that file accessibility and privileges are those of the local user, not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

  When `program` is specified, command is run by `psql` and the data from or to command is routed between the server and the client. This means that the execution privileges are those of the local user, not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

  `\copy ... from stdin | to stdout` reads/writes based on the command input and output respectively. All rows are read from the same source that issued the command, continuing until `\.` is read or the stream reaches `EOF`. Output is sent to the same place as command output. To read/write from `psql`'s standard input or output, use `pstdin` or `pstdout`. This option is useful for populating tables in-line within a SQL script file.

  The syntax of the command is similar to that of the SQL COPY command, and option must indicate one of the options of the SQL `COPY` command. Note that, because of this, special parsing rules apply to the `\copy` command. In particular, the variable substitution rules and backslash escapes do not apply.

  This operation is not as efficient as the SQL `COPY` command because all data must pass through the client/server connection.

- \copyright

  Shows the copyright and distribution terms of PostgreSQL on which WarehousePG is based.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \d [relation_pattern] | \d+ [relation_pattern] | \dS [relation_pattern]

  For each relation (table, external table, view, materialized view, index, sequence, or foreign table) or composite type matching the relation pattern, show all columns, their types, the tablespace (if not the default) and any special attributes such as `NOT NULL` or defaults. Associated indexes, constraints, rules, and triggers are also shown. For foreign tables, the associated foreign server is shown as well.

  - For some types of relation, `\d` shows additional information for each column: column values for sequences, indexed expressions for indexes, and foreign data wrapper options for foreign tables.

  - The command form `\d+` is identical, except that more information is displayed: any comments associated with the columns of the table are shown, as is the presence of OIDs in the table, the view definition if the relation is a view.

    For partitioned tables, the command `\d` or `\d+` specified with the root partition table or child partition table displays information about the table including partition keys on the current level of the partition table. The command `\d+` also displays the immediate child partitions of the table and whether the child partition is an external table or regular table.

    For append-optimized tables and column-oriented tables, `\d+` displays the storage options for a table. For append-optimized tables, the options are displayed for the table. For column-oriented tables, storage options are displayed for each column.

  - By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

    > **Note** If `\d` is used without a pattern argument, it is equivalent to `\dtvmsE` which will show a list of all visible tables, views, materialized views, sequences, and foreign tables.

- \da[S] [aggregate_pattern]

  Lists aggregate functions, together with the data types they operate on. If a pattern is specified, only aggregates whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

- \db[+] [tablespace_pattern]

  Lists all available tablespaces and their corresponding paths. If pattern is specified, only tablespaces whose names match the pattern are shown. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions.

- \dc[S+] [conversion_pattern]

  Lists conversions between character-set encodings. If a pattern is specified, only conversions whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

- \dC[+] [pattern]

  Lists type casts. If a pattern is specified, only casts whose source or target types match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

- \dd[S] [pattern]

  Shows the descriptions of objects of type `constraint`, `operator class`, `operator family`, `rule`, and `trigger`. All other comments may be viewed by the respective backslash commands for those object types.

  `\dd` displays descriptions for objects matching the pattern, or of visible objects of the appropriate type if no argument is given. But in either case, only objects that have a description are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

  Descriptions for objects can be created with the `COMMENT` SQL command.

- \ddp [pattern]

  Lists default access privilege settings. An entry is shown for each role (and schema, if applicable) for which the default privilege settings have been changed from the built-in defaults. If pattern is specified, only entries whose role name or schema name matches the pattern are listed.

  The ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES command is used to set default access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained under GRANT.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \dD[S+] [domain_pattern]

  Lists domains. If a pattern is specified, only domains whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description.

- \dEimstPv[S+] [external_table | index | materialized_view | sequence | table | parent table | view]

  This is not the actual command name: the letters `E`, `i`, `m`, `s`, `t`, `P`, and `v` stand for external table, index, materialized view, sequence, table, parent table, and view, respectively. You can specify any or all of these letters, in any order, to obtain a listing of objects of these types. For example, `\dit` lists indexes and tables. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its physical size on disk and its associated description, if any. If a pattern is specified, only objects whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

- \des[+] [foreign_server_pattern]

  Lists foreign servers. If a pattern is specified, only those servers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\des+` is used, a full description of each server is shown, including the server's ACL, type, version, options, and description.

- \det[+] [foreign_table_pattern]

  Lists all foreign tables. If a pattern is specified, only entries whose table name or schema name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\det+` is used, generic options and the foreign table description are also displayed.

- \deu[+] [user_mapping_pattern]

  Lists user mappings. If a pattern is specified, only those mappings whose user names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\deu+` is used, additional information about each mapping is shown.

> **Caution** `\deu+` might also display the user name and password of the remote user, so care should be taken not to disclose them.

- \dew[+] [foreign_data_wrapper_pattern]

  Lists foreign-data wrappers. If a pattern is specified, only those foriegn-data wrappers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\dew+` is used, the ACL, options, and description of the foreign-data wrapper are also shown.

- \df[antwS+] [function_pattern]

  Lists functions, together with their arguments, return types, and function types, which are classified as "agg" (aggregate), "normal", "trigger", or "window". To display only functions of a specific type(s), add the corresponding letters `a`, `n`, `t`, or `w`, to the command. If a pattern is specified, only functions whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\df+` is used, additional information about each function, including security, volatility, language, source code, and description, is shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

- \dF[+] [pattern]

  Lists text search configurations. If a pattern is specified, only configurations whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dF+` is used, a full description of each configuration is shown, including the underlying text search parser and the dictionary list for each parser token type.

- \dFd[+] [pattern]

  Lists text search dictionaries. If a pattern is specified, only dictionaries whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFd+` is used, additional information is shown about each selected dictionary, including the underlying text search template and the option values.

- \dFp[+] [pattern]

  Lists text search parsers. If a pattern is specified, only parsers whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFp+` is used, a full description of each parser is shown, including the underlying functions and the list of recognized token types.

- \dFt[+] [pattern]

  Lists text search templates. If a pattern is specified, only templates whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFt+` is used, additional information is shown about each template, including the underlying function names.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \dg[+] [role_pattern]

  Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of "users" and "groups" have been unified into "roles", this command is now equivalent to `\du`.) If a pattern is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\dg+` is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

- \dl

  This is an alias for `\lo_list`, which shows a list of large objects.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- \dL[S+] [pattern]

  Lists procedural languages. If a pattern is specified, only languages whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created languages are shown; supply the `S` modifier to include system objects. If `+` is appended to the command name, each language is listed with its call handler, validator, access privileges, and whether it is a system object.

- \dn[S+] [schema_pattern]

  Lists all available schemas (namespaces). If a pattern is specified, only schemas whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user- create objects are show; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description, if any.

- \do[S] [operator_pattern]

  Lists available operators with their operand and return types. If a pattern is specified, only operators whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

- \dO[S+] [pattern]

  Lists collations. If a pattern is specified, only collations whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects. If `+` is appended to the command name, each collation is listed with its associated description, if any. Note that only collations usable with the current database's encoding are shown, so the results may vary in different databases of the same installation.

- \dp [relation_pattern_to_show_privileges]

  Lists tables, views, and sequences with their associated access privileges. If a pattern is specified, only tables, views, and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed. The GRANT and REVOKE commands are used to set access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained under GRANT.

- \drds [role-pattern [database-pattern]]

  Lists defined configuration settings. These settings can be role-specific, database-specific, or both. role-pattern and database-pattern are used to select specific roles and database to list, respectively. If omitted, or if `*` is specified, all settings are listed, including those not role-specific or database-specific, respectively.

  The ALTER ROLE and ALTER DATABASE commands are used to define per-role and per-database role configuration settings.

- \dT[S+] [datatype_pattern]

  Lists data types. If a pattern is specified, only types whose names match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, each type is listed with its internal name and size, its allowed values if it is an `enum` type, and its associated permissions. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the `S` modifier to include system objects.

- \du[+] [role_pattern]

  Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of "users" and "groups" have been unified into "roles", this command is now equivalent to `\dg`.) If a pattern is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\du+` is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

- \dx[+] [extension_pattern]

  Lists installed extensions. If a pattern is specified, only those extensions whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\dx+` is used, all of the objects belonging to each matching extension are listed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \dy[+] [pattern]

  Lists event triggers. If a pattern is specified, only those triggers whose names match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

- \dy[+] [pattern]

  Lists event triggers. If a pattern is specified, only those triggers whose names match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support user-defined triggers.

- \e | \edit [filename] [line_number]

  If filename is specified, the file is edited; after the editor exits, its content is copied back to the query buffer. If no filename is given, the current query buffer is copied to a temporary file which is then edited in the same fashion.

  The new query buffer is then re-parsed according to the normal rules of `psql`, where the whole buffer is treated as a single line. (Thus you cannot make scripts this way. Use `\i` for that.) This means also that if the query ends with (or rather contains) a semicolon, it is immediately run. In other cases it will merely wait in the query buffer; type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

  If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the file or query buffer. Note that if a single all-digits argument is given, `psql` assumes it is a line number, not a file name.

  See Environment for information about configuring and customizing your editor.

- \echo text [ ... ]

  Prints the arguments to the standard output, separated by one space and followed by a newline. This can be useful to intersperse information in the output of scripts. If the first argument is an unquoted `-n`, the trailing newline is not written.

  > **Note** If you use the `\o` command to redirect your query output you might wish to use `\qecho` instead of this command.

- \ef [function_description [line_number]]

  This command fetches and edits the definition of the named function, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` command. Editing is done in the same way as for `\edit`. After the editor exits, the updated command waits in the query buffer; type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

  The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function with the same name.

  If no function is specified, a blank `CREATE FUNCTION` template is presented for editing.

  If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the function body. (Note that the function body typically does not begin on the first line of the file.)

  See Environment for information about configuring and customizing your editor.

- \encoding [encoding]

  Sets the client character set encoding. Without an argument, this command shows the current encoding.

- \f [field_separator_string]

  Sets the field separator for unaligned query output. The default is the vertical bar ( `|` ). See also `\pset` for a generic way of setting output options.

- \g [filename]

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \g [ | command ]

  Sends the current query input buffer to the server, and optionally stores the query's output in filename or pipes the output to the shell command command. The file or command is written to only if the query successfully returns zero or more tuples, not if the query fails or is a non-data-returning SQL command.

  A bare `\g` is essentially equivalent to a semi-colon. A `\g` with argument is a one-shot alternative to the `\o` command.

- \gset [prefix]

  Sends the current query input buffer to the server and stores the query's output into `psql` variables. The query to be run must return exactly one row. Each column of the row is stored into a separate variable, named the same as the column. For example:

  ```
  => SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2;
  -> \gset
  => \echo :var1 :var2
  hello 10
  ```

  If you specify a prefix, that string is prepended to the query's column names to create the variable names to use:

  ```
  => SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2;
  -> \gset result_
  => \echo :result_var1 :result_var2
  hello 10
  ```

  If a column result is NULL, the corresponding variable is unset rather than being set.

  If the query fails or does not return one row, no variables are changed.

- \h | \help [sql_command]

  Gives syntax help on the specified SQL command. If a command is not specified, then `psql` will list all the commands for which syntax help is available. If command is an asterisk ( `*` ) then syntax help on all SQL commands is shown. To simplify typing, commands that consist of several words do not have to be quoted.

- \H | \html

  Turns on HTML query output format. If the HTML format is already on, it is switched back to the default aligned text format. This command is for compatibility and convenience, but see `\pset` about setting other output options.

- \i | \include filename

  Reads input from the file filename and runs it as though it had been typed on the keyboard.

  If filename is `-` (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command. This can be used to intersperse interactive input with input from files. Note that Readline behavior will be used only if it is active at the outermost level.

  If you want to see the lines on the screen as they are read you must set the variable `ECHO` to `all` .

- \ir | \include_relative filename

  The `\ir` command is similar to `\i` , but resolves relative file names differently. When running in interactive mode, the two commands behave identically. However, when invoked from a script, `\ir` interprets file names relative to the directory in which the script is located, rather than the current working directory.

- \l[+] | \list[+] [pattern]

  List the databases in the server and show their names, owners, character set encodings, and access privileges. If a pattern is specified, only databases whose names match the pattern are listed. If `+` is appended to the command name, database sizes, default tablespaces, and descriptions are also displayed. (Size information is only available for databases that the current user can connect to.)

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \lo_export loid filename

  Reads the large object with OID loid from the database and writes it to filename. Note that this is subtly different from the server function `lo_export`, which acts with the permissions of the user that the database server runs as and on the server's file system. Use `\lo_list` to find out the large object's OID.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- \lo_import large_object_filename [comment]

  Stores the file into a large object. Optionally, it associates the given comment with the object. Example:

```
mydb=> \lo_import '/home/gpadmin/pictures/photo.xcf' 'a
picture of me'
lo_import 152801
```

The response indicates that the large object received object ID 152801 which one ought to remember if one wants to access the object ever again. For that reason it is recommended to always associate a human-readable comment with every object. Those can then be seen with the `\lo_list` command. Note that this command is subtly different from the server-side `lo_import` because it acts as the local user on the local file system, rather than the server's user and file system.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- \lo_list

  Shows a list of all large objects currently stored in the database, along with any comments provided for them.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- \lo_unlink largeobject_oid

  Deletes the large object of the specified OID from the database. Use `\lo_list` to find out the large object's OID.

  > **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

- \o | \out [ filename ]

- \o | \out [ `|` command ]

  Saves future query results to the file filename or pipes future results to the shell command command. If no argument is specified, the query output is reset to the standard output. Query results include all tables, command responses, and notices obtained from the database server, as well as output of various backslash commands that query the database (such as `\d`), but not error messages. To intersperse text output in between query results, use `\qecho`.

- \p

  Print the current query buffer to the standard output.

- \password [username]

  Changes the password of the specified user (by default, the current user). This command prompts for the new password, encrypts it, and sends it to the server as an `ALTER ROLE` command. This makes sure that the new password does not appear in cleartext in the command history, the server log, or elsewhere.

- \prompt [ text ] name

  Prompts the user to supply text, which is assigned to the variable name. An optional prompt string, text, can be specified. (For multiword prompts, surround the text with single quotes.)

  By default, `\prompt` uses the terminal for input and output. However, if the `-f` command line switch was used, `\prompt` uses standard input and standard output.

- \pset [print_option [value]]

  This command sets options affecting the output of query result tables. print_option describes which option is to be set. The semantics of value vary depending on the selected option. For some options, omitting value causes the option to be toggled or unset, as described under the particular option. If no such behavior is mentioned, then omitting value just results in the current setting being displayed.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

`\pset` without any arguments displays the current status of all printing options.

Adjustable printing options are:

- `border` – The value must be a number. In general, the higher the number the more borders and lines the tables will have, but this depends on the particular format. In HTML format, this will translate directly into the `border=...` attribute; in the other formats only values `0` (no border), `1` (internal dividing lines), and `2` (table frame) make sense. `latex` and `latex-longtable` also support a `border` value of 3 which adds a dividing line between each row.

- `columns` – Sets the target width for the `wrapped` format, and also the width limit for determining whether output is wide enough to require the pager or switch to the vertical display in expanded auto mode. The default is zero. Zero causes the target width to be controlled by the environment variable `COLUMNS`, or the detected screen width if `COLUMNS` is not set. In addition, if `columns` is zero then the wrapped format affects screen output only. If columns is nonzero then file and pipe output is wrapped to that width as well.

  After setting the target width, use the command `\pset format wrapped` to enable the wrapped format.

- `expanded` | `x` – If value is specified it must be either `on` or `off`, which will activate or deactivate expanded mode, or `auto`. If value is omitted the command toggles between the `on` and `off` settings. When expanded mode is enabled, query results are displayed in two columns, with the column name on the left and the data on the right. This mode is useful if the data wouldn't fit on the screen in the normal "horizontal" mode. In the `auto` setting, the expanded mode is used whenever the query output is wider than the screen, otherwise the regular mode is used. The `auto` setting is only effective in the aligned and wrapped formats. In other formats, it always behaves as if the expanded mode is `off`.

- `fieldsep` – Specifies the field separator to be used in unaligned output mode. That way one can create, for example, tab- or comma-separated output, which other programs might prefer. To set a tab as field separator, type `\pset fieldsep '\t'`. The default field separator is `'|'` (a vertical bar).

- `fieldsep_zero` - Sets the field separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

- `footer` – If value is specified it must be either `on` or `off` which will activate or deactivate display of the table footer (the (n rows) count). If value is omitted the command toggles footer display on or off.

- `format` – Sets the output format to one of `unaligned`, `aligned`, `html`, `latex` (uses `tabular`), `latex-longtable`, `troff-ms`, or `wrapped`. Unique abbreviations are allowed. `unaligned` format writes all columns of a row on one line, separated by the currently active field separator. This is useful for creating output that might be intended to be read in by other programs (for example, tab-separated or comma-separated format).

  `aligned` format is the standard, human-readable, nicely formatted text output; this is the default.

  The `html`, `latex`, `latex-longtable`, and `troff-ms` formats put out tables that are intended to be included in documents using the respective mark-up language. They are not complete documents! (This might not be so dramatic in HTML, but in LaTeX you must have a complete document wrapper. `latex-longtable` also requires the LaTeX `longtable` and `booktabs` packages.)

  The `wrapped` format is like `aligned`, but wraps wide data values across lines to make the output fit in the target column width. The target width is determined as described under the `columns` option. Note that `psql` does not attempt to wrap column header titles; the `wrapped` format behaves the same as `aligned` if the total width needed for column headers exceeds the target.

- `linestyle` [`unicode` | `ascii` | `old-ascii`] – Sets the border line drawing style to one of unicode, ascii, or old-ascii. Unique abbreviations, including one letter, are allowed for the three styles. The default setting is `ascii`. This option only affects the `aligned` and `wrapped` output formats.

  `ascii` – uses plain ASCII characters. Newlines in data are shown using a `+` symbol in the right-hand margin. When the wrapped format wraps data from one line to the next without a newline character, a dot (`.`) is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

  `old-ascii` – style uses plain ASCII characters, using the formatting style used in PostgreSQL 8.4 and earlier. Newlines in data are shown using a `:` symbol in place of the left-hand column separator. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, a `;` symbol is used in place of the left-hand column separator.

  `unicode` – style uses Unicode box-drawing characters. Newlines in data are shown using a carriage return symbol in the right-hand margin. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, an ellipsis symbol is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

  When the `border` setting is greater than zero, this option also determines the characters with which the border lines are drawn. Plain ASCII characters work everywhere, but Unicode characters look nicer on displays that recognize them.

- `null 'string'` – The second argument is a string to print whenever a column is null. The default is to print nothing, which can easily be mistaken for an empty string. For example, one might prefer `\pset null '(null)'`.

- `numericlocale` – If value is specified it must be either `on` or `off` which will activate or deactivate display of a locale-specific character to separate groups of digits to the left of the decimal marker. If value is omitted the command toggles between regular and locale-specific numeric output.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `pager` – Controls the use of a pager for query and `psql` help output. If the environment variable `PAGER` is set, the output is piped to the specified program. Otherwise a platform-dependent default (such as `more`) is used. When `off`, the pager program is not used. When `on`, the pager is used only when appropriate, i.e. when the output is to a terminal and will not fit on the screen. Pager can also be set to `always`, which causes the pager to be used for all terminal output regardless of whether it fits on the screen. `\pset pager` without a value toggles pager use on and off.

- `recordsep` – Specifies the record (line) separator to use in unaligned output mode. The default is a newline character.

- `recordsep_zero` - Sets the record separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

- `tableattr` | `T` [text] – In HTML format, this specifies attributes to be placed inside the HTML `table` tag. This could for example be `cellpadding` or `bgcolor`. Note that you probably don't want to specify `border` here, as that is already taken care of by `\pset border`. If no value is given, the table attributes are unset.

  In `latex-longtable` format, this controls the proportional width of each column containing a left-aligned data type. It is specified as a whitespace-separated list of values, e.g. `'0.2 0.2 0.6'`. Unspecified output columns use the last specified value.

- `title` [text] – Sets the table title for any subsequently printed tables. This can be used to give your output descriptive tags. If no value is given, the title is unset.

- `tuples_only` | `t` [novalue | on | off] – If value is specified, it must be either `on` or `off` which will activate or deactivate tuples-only mode. If value is omitted the command toggles between regular and tuples-only output. Regular output includes extra information such as column headers, titles, and various footers. In tuples-only mode, only actual table data is shown. The `\t` command is equivalent to `\pset``tuples_only` and is provided for convenience.

**Tip:**

There are various shortcut commands for `\pset`. See `\a`, `\C`, `\f`, `\H`, `\t`, `\T`, and `\x`.

- \q | \quit

  Quits the `psql` program. In a script file, only execution of that script is terminated.

- \qecho text [ ... ]

  This command is identical to `\echo` except that the output will be written to the query output channel, as set by `\o`.

- \r | \reset

  Resets (clears) the query buffer.

- \s [filename]

  Print `psql`'s command line history to `filename`. If `filename` is omitted, the history is written to the standard output (using the pager if appropriate). This command is not available if `psql` was built without `Readline` support.

- \set [name [value [ ... ]]]

  Sets the `psql` variable name to value, or if more than one value is given, to the concatenation of all of them. If only one argument is given, the variable is just set with an empty value. To unset a variable, use the `\unset` command.

  `\set` without any arguments displays the names and values of all currently-set `psql` variables.

  Valid variable names can contain characters, digits, and underscores. See "Variables" in Advanced Features. Variable names are case-sensitive.

  Although you are welcome to set any variable to anything you want, `psql` treats several variables as special. They are documented in the topic about variables.

  This command is unrelated to the SQL command SET.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \setenv name [ value ]

  Sets the environment variable name to value, or if the value is not supplied, unsets the environment variable. Example:

  ```
  testdb=> \setenv PAGER less
  testdb=> \setenv LESS -imx4F
  ```

- \sf[+] function_description

  This command fetches and shows the definition of the named function, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` command. The definition is printed to the current query output channel, as set by `\o`.

  The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function of the same name.

  If `+` is appended to the command name, then the output lines are numbered, with the first line of the function body being line 1.

- \t [novalue | on | off]

  The `\t` command by itself toggles a display of output column name headings and row count footer. The values `on` and `off` set the tuples display, regardless of the current setting. This command is equivalent to `\pset tuples_only` and is provided for convenience.

- \T table_options

  Specifies attributes to be placed within the `table` tag in HTML output format. This command is equivalent to `\pset tableattr table_options`

- \timing [novalue | on | off]

  Without a parameter, toggles a display of how long each SQL statement takes, in milliseconds. The values `on` and `off` set the time display, regardless of the current setting.

- \unset name

  Unsets (deletes) the `psql` variable name.

- \w | \write filename

- \w | \write `|` command

  Outputs the current query buffer to the file filename or pipes it to the shell command command.

- \watch [seconds]

  Repeatedly runs the current query buffer (like `\g`) until interrupted or the query fails. Wait the specified number of seconds (default 2) between executions.

- \x [ on | off | auto ]

  Sets or toggles expanded table formatting mode. As such it is equivalent to `\pset expanded`.

- \z [pattern]

  Lists tables, views, and sequences with their associated access privileges. If a pattern is specified, only tables, views and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed. This is an alias for `\dp`.

- \! [command]

  Escapes to a separate shell or runs the shell command command. The arguments are not further interpreted; the shell will see them as-is. In particular, the variable substitution rules and backslash escapes do not apply.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- \?

  Shows help information about the `psql` backslash commands.

### Patterns

The various `\d` commands accept a pattern parameter to specify the object name(s) to be displayed. In the simplest case, a pattern is just the exact name of the object. The characters within a pattern are normally folded to lower case, just as in SQL names; for example, `\dt FOO` will display the table named `foo`. As in SQL names, placing double quotes around a pattern stops folding to lower case. Should you need to include an actual double quote character in a pattern, write it as a pair of double quotes within a double-quote sequence; again this is in accord with the rules for SQL quoted identifiers. For example, `\dt "FOO""BAR"` will display the table named `FOO"BAR` (not `foo"bar`). Unlike the normal rules for SQL names, you can put double quotes around just part of a pattern, for instance `\dt FOO"FOO"BAR` will display the table named `fooFOObar`.

Within a pattern, `*` matches any sequence of characters (including no characters) and `?` matches any single character. (This notation is comparable to UNIX shell file name patterns.) For example, `\dt int*` displays all tables whose names begin with `int`. But within double quotes, `*` and `?` lose these special meanings and are just matched literally.

A pattern that contains a dot (`.`) is interpreted as a schema name pattern followed by an object name pattern. For example, `\dt foo*.bar*` displays all tables whose table name starts with `bar` that are in schemas whose schema name starts with `foo`. When no dot appears, then the pattern matches only objects that are visible in the current schema search path. Again, a dot within double quotes loses its special meaning and is matched literally.

Advanced users can use regular-expression notations. All regular expression special characters work as specified in thePostgreSQL documentation on regular expressions, except for `.` which is taken as a separator as mentioned above, `*` which is translated to the regular-expression notation `.*`, and `?` which is translated to `.` You can emulate these pattern characters at need by writing `?` for `.,``(R+|)` for `R*`, or `(R|)` for `R?`. Remember that the pattern must match the whole name, unlike the usual interpretation of regular expressions; write `*` at the beginning and/or end if you don't wish the pattern to be anchored. Note that within double quotes, all regular expression special characters lose their special meanings and are matched literally. Also, the regular expression special characters are matched literally in operator name patterns (such as the argument of `\do`).

Whenever the pattern parameter is omitted completely, the `\d` commands display all objects that are visible in the current schema search path – this is equivalent to using the pattern `*.` To see all objects in the database, use the pattern `*.*.`

### Advanced Features

#### Variables

`psql` provides variable substitution features similar to common UNIX command shells. Variables are simply name/value pairs, where the value can be any string of any length. The name must consist of letters (including non-Latin letters), digits, and underscores.

To set a variable, use the psql meta-command `\set`. For example,

```
testdb=> \set foo bar
```

sets the variable `foo` to the value `bar`. To retrieve the content of the variable, precede the name with a colon, for example:

```
testdb=> \echo :foo
bar
```

This works in both regular SQL commands and meta-commands; there is more detail in SQL Interpolation.

If you call `\set` without a second argument, the variable is set, with an empty string as value. To unset (i.e., delete) a variable, use the command `\unset`. To show the values of all variables, call `\set` without any argument.

> **Note** The arguments of `\set` are subject to the same substitution rules as with other commands. Thus you can construct interesting references such as `\set :foo 'something'` and get 'soft links' or 'variable variables' of Perl or PHP fame, respectively. Unfortunately, there is no way to do anything useful with these constructs. On the other hand, `\set bar :foo` is a perfectly valid way to copy a variable.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

A number of these variables are treated specially by `psql`. They represent certain option settings that can be changed at run time by altering the value of the variable, or in some cases represent changeable state of `psql`. Although you can use these variables for other purposes, this is not recommended, as the program behavior might grow really strange really quickly. By convention, all specially treated variables' names consist of all upper-case ASCII letters (and possibly digits and underscores). To ensure maximum compatibility in the future, avoid using such variable names for your own purposes. A list of all specially treated variables follows.

- AUTOCOMMIT

  When on (the default), each SQL command is automatically committed upon successful completion. To postpone commit in this mode, you must enter a `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION` SQL command. When off or unset, SQL commands are not committed until you explicitly issue `COMMIT` or `END`. The autocommit-on mode works by issuing an implicit `BEGIN` for you, just before any command that is not already in a transaction block and is not itself a `BEGIN` or other transaction-control command, nor a command that cannot be run inside a transaction block (such as `VACUUM`).

  In autocommit-off mode, you must explicitly abandon any failed transaction by entering `ABORT` or `ROLLBACK`. Also keep in mind that if you exit the session without committing, your work will be lost.

  The autocommit-on mode is PostgreSQL's traditional behavior, but autocommit-off is closer to the SQL spec. If you prefer autocommit-off, you may wish to set it in your `~/.psqlrc` file.

- COMP_KEYWORD_CASE

  Determines which letter case to use when completing an SQL key word. If set to `lower` or `upper`, the completed word will be in lower or upper case, respectively. If set to `preserve-lower` or `preserve-upper` (the default), the completed word will be in the case of the word already entered, but words being completed without anything entered will be in lower or upper case, respectively.

- DBNAME

  The name of the database you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be unset.

- ECHO

  If set to `all`, all nonempty input lines are printed to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch `-a`. If set to queries, `psql` prints each query to standard output as it is sent to the server. The switch for this is `-e`.

- ECHO_HIDDEN

  When this variable is set to `on` and a backslash command queries the database, the query is first shown. This feature helps you to study WarehousePG internals and provide similar functionality in your own programs. (To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch `-E`.) If you set the variable to the value `noexec`, the queries are just shown but are not actually sent to the server and run.

- ENCODING

  The current client character set encoding.

- FETCH_COUNT

  If this variable is set to an integer value > 0, the results of `SELECT` queries are fetched and displayed in groups of that many rows, rather than the default behavior of collecting the entire result set before display. Therefore only a limited amount of memory is used, regardless of the size of the result set. Settings of 100 to 1000 are commonly used when enabling this feature. Keep in mind that when using this feature, a query may fail after having already displayed some rows.

  Although you can use any output format with this feature, the default aligned format tends to look bad because each group of `FETCH_COUNT` rows will be formatted separately, leading to varying column widths across the row groups. The other output formats work better.

- HISTCONTROL

  If this variable is set to `ignorespace`, lines which begin with a space are not entered into the history list. If set to a value of `ignoredups`, lines matching the previous history line are not entered. A value of `ignoreboth` combines the two options. If unset, or if set to any other value than those above, all lines read in interactive mode are saved on the history list.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- HISTFILE

  The file name that will be used to store the history list. The default value is `~/.psql_history`. For example, putting

  ```
  \set HISTFILE ~/.psql_history- :DBNAME
  ```

  in `~/.psqlrc` will cause `psql` to maintain a separate history for each database.

- HISTSIZE

  The number of commands to store in the command history. The default value is 500.

- HOST

  The database server host you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be unset.

- IGNOREEOF

  If unset, sending an `EOF` character (usually `CTRL+D`) to an interactive session of `psql` will terminate the application. If set to a numeric value, that many `EOF` characters are ignored before the application terminates. If the variable is set but has no numeric value, the default is `10`.

- LASTOID

  The value of the last affected OID, as returned from an `INSERT` or `lo_import` command. This variable is only guaranteed to be valid until after the result of the next SQL command has been displayed.

- ON_ERROR_ROLLBACK

  When set to `on`, if a statement in a transaction block generates an error, the error is ignored and the transaction continues. When set to `interactive`, such errors are only ignored in interactive sessions, and not when reading script files. When unset or set to `off`, a statement in a transaction block that generates an error cancels the entire transaction. The error rollback mode works by issuing an implicit `SAVEPOINT` for you, just before each command that is in a transaction block, and rolls back to the savepoint on error.

- ON_ERROR_STOP

  By default, command processing continues after an error. When this variable is set to `on`, processing will instead stop immediately. In interactive mode, `psql` will return to the command prompt; otherwise, `psql` will exit, returning error code 3 to distinguish this case from fatal error conditions, which are reported using error code 1. In either case, any currently running scripts (the top-level script, if any, and any other scripts which it may have in invoked) will be terminated immediately. If the top-level command string contained multiple SQL commands, processing will stop with the current command.

- PORT

  The database server port to which you are currently connected. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be unset.

- PROMPT1

- PROMPT2

- PROMPT3

  These specify what the prompts `psql` issues should look like. See "Prompting".

- QUIET

  Setting this variable to `on` is equivalent to the command line option `-q`. It is not very useful in interactive mode.

- SINGLELINE

  This variable is equivalent to the command line option `-S`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- SINGLESTEP

  Setting this variable to `on` is equivalent to the command line option `-s`.

- USER

  The database user you are currently connected as. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be unset.

- VERBOSITY

  This variable can be set to the values `default`, `verbose`, or `terse` to control the verbosity of error reports.

#### SQL Interpolation

A key feature of `psql` variables is that you can substitute ("interpolate") them into regular SQL statements, as well as the arguments of meta-commands. Furthermore, `psql` provides facilities for ensuring that variable values used as SQL literals and identifiers are properly quoted. The syntax for interpolating a value without any quoting is to prepend the variable name with a colon (`:`). For example,

```
testdb=> \set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM :foo;
```

would query the table `my_table`. Note that this may be unsafe: the value of the variable is copied literally, so it can contain unbalanced quotes, or even backslash commands. You must make sure that it makes sense where you put it.

When a value is to be used as an SQL literal or identifier, it is safest to arrange for it to be quoted. To quote the value of a variable as an SQL literal, write a colon followed by the variable name in single quotes. To quote the value as an SQL identifier, write a colon followed by the variable name in double quotes. These constructs deal correctly with quotes and other special characters embedded within the variable value. The previous example would be more safely written this way:

```
testdb=> \set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM :"foo";
```

Variable interpolation will not be performed within quoted SQL literals and identifiers. Therefore, a construction such as `':foo'` doesn't work to produce a quoted literal from a variable's value (and it would be unsafe if it did work, since it wouldn't correctly handle quotes embedded in the value).

One example use of this mechanism is to copy the contents of a file into a table column. First load the file into a variable and then interpolate the variable's value as a quoted string:

```
testdb=> \set content `cat my_file.txt`
testdb=> INSERT INTO my_table VALUES (:'content');
```

(Note that this still won't work if `my_file.txt` contains `NUL` bytes. `psql` does not support embedded `NUL` bytes in variable values.)

Since colons can legally appear in SQL commands, an apparent attempt at interpolation (that is, `:name`, `:'name'`, or `:"name"`) is not replaced unless the named variable is currently set. In any case, you can escape a colon with a backslash to protect it from substitution.

The colon syntax for variables is standard SQL for embedded query languages, such as ECPG. The colon syntaxes for array slices and type casts are WarehousePG extensions, which can sometimes conflict with the standard usage. The colon-quote syntax for escaping a variable's value as an SQL literal or identifier is a `psql` extension.

#### Prompting

The prompts `psql` issues can be customized to your preference. The three variables `PROMPT1`, `PROMPT2`, and `PROMPT3` contain strings and special escape sequences that describe the appearance of the prompt. Prompt 1 is the normal prompt that is issued when `psql` requests a new command. Prompt 2 is issued when more input is expected during command entry, for example because the command was not terminated with a semicolon or a quote was not closed. Prompt 3 is issued when you are running an SQL `COPY FROM STDIN` command and you need to type in a row value on the terminal.

The value of the selected prompt variable is printed literally, except where a percent sign (`%`) is encountered. Depending on the next character, certain other text is substituted instead. Defined substitutions are:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- %M

  The full host name (with domain name) of the database server, or `[local]` if the connection is over a UNIX domain socket, or `[local:/dir/name]`, if the UNIX domain socket is not at the compiled in default location.

- %m

  The host name of the database server, truncated at the first dot, or `[local]` if the connection is over a UNIX domain socket.

- %>

  The port number at which the database server is listening.

- %n

  The database session user name. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`.)

- %/

  The name of the current database.

- %~

  Like `%/`, but the output is `~` (tilde) if the database is your default database.

- %#

  If the session user is a database superuser, then a **#**, otherwise a **>**. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`.)

- %R

  In prompt 1 normally `=`, but `^` if in single-line mode, or `!` if the session is disconnected from the database (which can happen if `\connect` fails). In prompt 2 `%R` is replaced by a character that depends on why `psql` expects more input: `-` if the command simply wasn't terminated yet, but `*` if there is an unfinished `/* ... */` comment, a single quote if there is an unfinished quoted string, a double quote if there is an unfinished quoted identifier, a dollar sign if there is an unfinished dollar-quoted string, or `(` if there is an unmatched left parenthesis. In prompt 3 `%R` doesn't produce anything.

- %x

  Transaction status: an empty string when not in a transaction block, or ***** when in a transaction block, or **!** when in a failed transaction block, or **?** when the transaction state is indeterminate (for example, because there is no connection).

- %digits

  The character with the indicated octal code is substituted.

- %:name:

  The value of the `psql` variable name. See "Variables" in Advanced Features for details.

- %`command`

  The output of command, similar to ordinary back-tick substitution.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- %[ ... %]

  Prompts may contain terminal control characters which, for example, change the color, background, or style of the prompt text, or change the title of the terminal window. In order for line editing to work properly, these non-printing control characters must be designated as invisible by surrounding them with `%[` and `%]`. Multiple pairs of these may occur within the prompt. For example,

  ```
  testdb=> \set PROMPT1 '%[%033[1;33;40m%]%n@%/%R%[%033[0m%]%#'
  ```

  results in a boldfaced ( `1;` ) yellow-on-black ( `33;40` ) prompt on VT100-compatible, color-capable terminals. To insert a percent sign into your prompt, write `%%`. The default prompts are `'%/%R%# '` for prompts 1 and 2, and `'>> '` for prompt 3.

#### Command-Line Editing

`psql` uses the `readline` library for convenient line editing and retrieval. The command history is automatically saved when `psql` exits and is reloaded when `psql` starts up. Tab-completion is also supported, although the completion logic makes no claim to be an SQL parser. The queries generated by tab-completion can also interfere with other SQL commands, e.g. `SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL`. If for some reason you do not like the tab completion, you can turn it off by putting this in a file named `.inputrc` in your home directory:

```
$if psql
set disable-completion on
$endif
```

### Environment

- COLUMNS

  If `\pset columns` is zero, controls the width for the wrapped format and width for determining if wide output requires the pager or should be switched to the vertical format in expanded auto mode.

- PAGER

  If the query results do not fit on the screen, they are piped through this command. Typical values are `more` or `less`. The default is platform-dependent. The use of the pager can be deactivated by setting PAGER to empty, or by using pager-related options of the `\pset` command.

- PGDATABASE

- PGHOST

- PGPORT

- PGUSER

  Default connection parameters.

- PSQL_EDITOR

- EDITOR

- VISUAL

  Editor used by the `\e` and `\ef` commands. The variables are examined in the order listed; the first that is set is used.

  The built-in default editors are `vi` on Unix systems and `notepad.exe` on Windows systems.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG

  When `\e` or `\ef` is used with a line number argument, this variable specifies the command-line argument used to pass the starting line number to the user's editor. For editors such as Emacs or `vi`, this is a plus sign. Include a trailing space in the value of the variable if there needs to be space between the option name and the line number. Examples:

  ```
  PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='+'
  PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='--line '
  ```

  The default is `+` on Unix systems (corresponding to the default editor `vi`, and useful for many other common editors); but there is no default on Windows systems.

- PSQL_HISTORY

  Alternative location for the command history file. Tilde ( `~` ) expansion is performed.

- PSQLRC

  Alternative location of the user's `.psqlrc` file. Tilde ( `~` ) expansion is performed.

- SHELL

  Command run by the `\!` command.

- TMPDIR

  Directory for storing temporary files. The default is `/tmp`.

### Files

- psqlrc and ~/.psqlrc

  Unless it is passed an `-X` or `-c` option, `psql` attempts to read and run commands from the system-wide startup file ( `psqlrc` ) and then the user's personal startup file ( `~/.psqlrc` ), after connecting to the database but before accepting normal commands. These files can be used to set up the client and/or the server to taste, typically with `\set` and `SET` commands.

  The system-wide startup file is named `psqlrc` and is sought in the installation's "system configuration" directory, which is most reliably identified by running `pg_config --sysconfdir`. By default this directory will be `../etc/` relative to the directory containing the WarehousePG executables. The name of this directory can be set explicitly via the `PGSYSCONFDIR` environment variable.

  The user's personal startup file is named `.psqlrc` and is sought in the invoking user's home directory. On Windows, which lacks such a concept, the personal startup file is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psqlrc.conf`. The location of the user's startup file can be set explicitly via the `PSQLRC` environment variable.

  Both the system-wide startup file and the user's personal startup file can be made psql-version-specific by appending a dash and the underlying PostgreSQL major or minor release number to the file name, for example `~/.psqlrc-9.4`. The most specific version-matching file will be read in preference to a non-version-specific file.

- .psql_history

  The command-line history is stored in the file `~/.psql_history`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psql_history` on Windows.

  The location of the history file can be set explicitly via the `PSQL_HISTORY` environment variable.

### Notes

`psql` works best with servers of the same or an older major version. Backslash commands are particularly likely to fail if the server is of a newer version than `psql` itself. However, backslash commands of the `\d` family should work with older server versions, though not necessarily with servers newer than `psql` itself. The general functionality of running SQL commands and displaying query results should also work with servers of a newer major version, but this cannot be guaranteed in all cases.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If you want to use `psql` to connect to several servers of different major versions, it is recommended that you use the newest version of `psql`. Alternatively, you can keep a copy of `psql` from each major version around and be sure to use the version that matches the respective server. But in practice, this additional complication should not be necessary.

### Notes for Windows Users

`psql` is built as a console application. Since the Windows console windows use a different encoding than the rest of the system, you must take special care when using 8-bit characters within `psql`. If `psql` detects a problematic console code page, it will warn you at startup. To change the console code page, two things are necessary:

Set the code page by entering:

```
cmd.exe /c chcp 1252
```

`1252` is a character encoding of the Latin alphabet, used by Microsoft Windows for English and some other Western languages. If you are using Cygwin, you can put this command in `/etc/profile`.

Set the console font to Lucida Console, because the raster font does not work with the ANSI code page.

### Examples

Start `psql` in interactive mode:

```
psql -p 54321 -U sally mydatabase
```

In `psql` interactive mode, spread a command over several lines of input. Notice the changing prompt:

```
testdb=> CREATE TABLE my_table (
testdb(>  first integer not null default 0,
testdb(>  second text)
testdb-> ;
CREATE TABLE
```

Look at the table definition:

```
testdb=> \d my_table
             Table "public.my_table"
 Column    |  Type   |      Modifiers
-----------+---------+--------------------
 first     | integer | not null default 0
 second    | text    |
Distributed by: (first)
```

Run `psql` in non-interactive mode by passing in a file containing SQL commands:

```
psql -f /home/gpadmin/test/myscript.sql
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.40 reindexdb

Rebuilds indexes in a database.

#### Synopsis

```
reindexdb [<connection-option> ...] [--table | -t <table> ]
        [--index | -i <index> ] [<dbname>]

reindexdb [<connection-option> ...] --all | -a

reindexdb [<connection-option> ...] --system | -s [<dbname>]

reindexdb -? | --help

reindexdb -V | --version
```

#### Description

`reindexdb` is a utility for rebuilding indexes in WarehousePG.

`reindexdb` is a wrapper around the SQL command `REINDEX`. There is no effective difference between reindexing databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

#### Options

- -a | --all

  Reindex all databases.

- [-d] dbname | [--dbname=]dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to be reindexed. If this is not specified and `-all` is not used, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `reindexdb` generates and sends to the server.

- -i index | --index=index

  Recreate index only.

- -q | --quiet

  Do not display a response.

- -s | --system

  Reindex system catalogs.

- -t table | --table=table

  Reindex table only. Multiple tables can be reindexed by writing multiple `-t` switches.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -V | --version

  Print the `reindexdb` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `reindexdb` command line arguments, and exit.

#### Connection Options

- -h host | --host=host

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  Specifies the TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system user name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --maintenance-db=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to discover what other databases should be reindexed. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, and if that does not exist, `template1` will be used.

### Notes

`reindexdb` causes locking of system catalog tables, which could affect currently running queries. To avoid disrupting ongoing business operations, schedule the `reindexb` operation during a period of low activity.

`reindexdb` might need to connect several times to the coordinator server, asking for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases.

### Examples

To reindex the database `mydb`:

```
reindexdb mydb
```

To reindex the table `foo` and the index `bar` in a database named `abcd`:

```
reindexdb --table foo --index bar abcd
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

See Also

REINDEX

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.7.3.41 vacuumdb

Garbage-collects and analyzes a database.

#### Synopsis

```
vacuumdb [<connection-option>...] [--full | -f] [--freeze | -F] [--verbose | -v]
    [--analyze | -z] [--analyze-only | -Z] [--table | -t <table> [( <column> [,...] )] ] [<dbname>]

vacuumdb [<connection-option>...] [--all | -a] [--full | -f] [-F]
    [--verbose | -v] [--analyze | -z]
    [--analyze-only | -Z]

vacuumdb -? | --help

vacuumdb -V | --version
```

#### Description

`vacuumdb` is a utility for cleaning a WarehousePG database. `vacuumdb` will also generate internal statistics used by the WarehousePG query optimizer.

`vacuumdb` is a wrapper around the SQL command `VACUUM`. There is no effective difference between vacuuming databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

#### Options

- -a | --all

  Vacuums all databases.

- [-d] dbname | [--dbname=]dbname

  The name of the database to vacuum. If this is not specified and `-a` (or `--all`) is not used, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

- -e | --echo

  Echo the commands that `reindexdb` generates and sends to the server.

- -f | --full

  Selects a full vacuum, which may reclaim more space, but takes much longer and exclusively locks the table.

> **Caution** A `VACUUM FULL` is not recommended in WarehousePG.

- -F | --freeze

  Freeze row transaction information.

- -q | --quiet

  Do not display a response.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- -t table [(column)] | --table= table [(column)]

  Clean or analyze this table only. Column names may be specified only in conjunction with the `--analyze` or `--analyze-all` options. Multiple tables can be vacuumed by writing multiple `-t` switches. If you specify columns, you probably have to escape the parentheses from the shell.

- -v | --verbose

  Print detailed information during processing.

- -z | --analyze

  Collect statistics for use by the query planner.

- -Z | --analyze-only

  Only calculate statistics for use by the query planner (no vacuum).

- -V | --version

  Print the `vacuumdb` version and exit.

- -? | --help

  Show help about `vacuumdb` command line arguments, and exit.

**Connection Options**

- -h host | --host=host

  Specifies the host name of the machine on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is running. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGHOST` or defaults to localhost.

- -p port | --port=port

  Specifies the TCP port on which the WarehousePG coordinator database server is listening for connections. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGPORT` or defaults to 5432.

- -U username | --username=username

  The database role name to connect as. If not specified, reads from the environment variable `PGUSER` or defaults to the current system user name.

- -w | --no-password

  Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

- -W | --password

  Force a password prompt.

- --maintenance-db=dbname

  Specifies the name of the database to connect to discover what other databases should be vacuumed. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, and if that does not exist, `template1` will be used.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Notes

`vacuumdb` might need to connect several times to the coordinator server, asking for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases.

### Examples

To clean the database `test`:

```
vacuumdb test
```

To clean and analyze a database named `bigdb`:

```
vacuumdb --analyze bigdb
```

To clean a single table `foo` in a database named `mydb`, and analyze a single column `bar` of the table. Note the quotes around the table and column names to escape the parentheses from the shell:

```
vacuumdb --analyze --verbose --table 'foo(bar)' mydb
```

### See Also

VACUUM, ANALYZE

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.8 System Catalogs

This reference describes the WarehousePG cluster catalog tables and views. System tables prefixed with `gp_` relate to the parallel features of WarehousePG. Tables prefixed with `pg_` are either standard PostgreSQL system catalog tables supported in WarehousePG, or are related to features WarehousePG that provides to enhance PostgreSQL for data warehousing workloads. Note that the global system catalog for WarehousePG resides on the coordinator instance.

> **Caution** Changes to WarehousePG cluster catalog tables or views are not supported. If a catalog table or view is changedby the customer, the WarehousePG cluster is not supported. The cluster must be reinitialized and restored by the customer.


- System Tables
- System Views
- System Catalogs Definitions


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1 System Catalogs Definitions

System catalog table and view definitions in alphabetical order.

- foreign_data_wrapper_options
- foreign_data_wrappers
- foreign_server_options
- foreign_servers
- foreign_table_options
- foreign_tables
- gp_configuration_history
- gp_distributed_log
- gp_distributed_xacts
- gp_distribution_policy
- gpexpand.expansion_progress
- gp_endpoints
- gpexpand.status
- gpexpand.status_detail
- gp_fastsequence
- gp_id
- gp_pgdatabase
- gp_resgroup_config
- gp_resgroup_status
- gp_resgroup_status_per_host
- gp_resgroup_status_per_segment
- gp_resqueue_status
- gp_segment_configuration
- gp_segment_endpoints
- gp_session_endpoints
- gp_stat_archiver
- gp_stat_replication
- gp_suboverflowed_backend
- gp_transaction_log

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- gp_version_at_initdb
- pg_aggregate
- pg_am
- pg_amop
- pg_amproc
- pg_appendonly
- pg_attrdef
- pg_attribute
- pg_attribute_encoding
- pg_auth_members
- pg_authid
- pg_available_extension_versions
- pg_available_extensions
- pg_cast
- pg_class
- pg_compression
- pg_constraint
- pg_conversion
- pg_cursors
- pg_database
- pg_db_role_setting
- pg_depend
- pg_description
- pg_enum
- pg_extension
- pg_exttable
- pg_foreign_data_wrapper
- pg_foreign_server
- pg_foreign_table
- pg_index
- pg_inherits

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_language
- pg_largeobject
- pg_locks
- pg_matviews
- pg_max_external_files
- pg_namespace
- pg_opclass
- pg_operator
- pg_opfamily
- pg_partition
- pg_partition_columns
- pg_partition_encoding
- pg_partition_rule
- pg_partition_templates
- pg_partitions
- pg_pltemplate
- pg_proc
- pg_resgroup
- pg_resgroupcapability
- pg_resourcetype
- pg_resqueue
- pg_resqueue_attributes
- pg_resqueuecapability
- pg_rewrite
- pg_roles
- pg_rules
- pg_shdepend
- pg_shdescription
- pg_stat_activity
- pg_stat_all_indexes
- pg_stat_all_tables

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_stat_last_operation
- pg_stat_last_shoperation
- pg_stat_operations
- pg_stat_partition_operations
- pg_stat_replication
- pg_statistic
- pg_stat_resqueues
- pg_tablespace
- pg_trigger
- pg_type
- pg_type_encoding
- pg_user_mapping
- pg_user_mappings
- user_mapping_options
- user_mappings

Parent topic: WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.1 foreign_data_wrapper_options

The `foreign_data_wrapper_options` view contains all of the otpions defined for foreign-data wrappers in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign-data wrappers to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_data_wrapper_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign-data wrapper is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_data_wrapper_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign-data wrapper. |
| `option_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of an option. |
| `option_value` | character_data | | Value of the option. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.2 foreign_data_wrappers

The `foreign_data_wrappers` view contains all foreign-data wrappers defined in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign-data wrappers to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_data_wrapper_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign-data wrapper is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_data_wrapper_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign-data wrapper. |
| `authorization_identifier` | sql_identifier | | Name of the owner of the foreign server. |
| `library_name` | character_data | | File name of the library that implements this foreign-data wrapper. |
| `foreign_data_wrapper_language` | character_data | | Language used to implement the foreign-data wrapper. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.3 foreign_server_options

The `foreign_server_options` view contains all of the options defined for foreign servers in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign servers to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_server_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign server is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_server_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign server. |
| `option_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of an option. |
| `option_value` | character_data | | Value of the option. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.4 foreign_servers

The `foreign_servers` view contains all foreign servers defined in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign servers to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_server_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign server is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_server_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign server. |
| `foreign_data_wrapper_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_data_wrapper_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server. |
| `foreign_server_type` | character_data | | Foreign server type information, if specified upon creation. |
| `foreign_server_version` | character_data | | Foreign server version information, if specified upon creation. |
| `authorization_identifier` | sql_identifier | | Name of the owner of the foreign server. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.5 foreign_table_options

The `foreign_table_options` view contains all of the options defined for foreign tables in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign tables to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_table_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign table is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_table_schema` | sql_identifier | | Name of the schema that contains the foreign table. |
| `foreign_table_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign table. |
| `option_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of an option. |
| `option_value` | character_data | | Value of the option. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.6 foreign_tables

The `foreign_tables` view contains all foreign tables defined in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those foreign tables to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `foreign_table_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign table is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_table_schema` | sql_identifier | | Name of the schema that contains the foreign table. |
| `foreign_table_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign table. |
| `foreign_server_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign server is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_server_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign server. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.7 gp_configuration_history

The `gp_configuration_history` table contains information about system changes related to fault detection and recovery operations. The `fts_probe` process logs data to this table, as do certain related management utilities such as `gprecoverseg` and `gpinitsystem`. For example, when you add a new segment and mirror segment to the system, records for these events are logged to `gp_configuration_history`.

This table is populated only on the master. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `time` | timestamp with time zone | | Timestamp for the event recorded. |
| `dbid` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.dbid | System-assigned ID. The unique identifier of a segment (or coordinator) instance. |
| `desc` | text | | Text description of the event. |

For information about `gprecoverseg` and `gpinitsystem`, see the WarehousePG Utility Guide.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.8 gp_distributed_log

The `gp_distributed_log` view contains status information about distributed transactions and their associated local transactions. A distributed transaction is a transaction that involves modifying data on the segment instances. WarehousePG's distributed transaction manager ensures that the segments stay in synch. This view allows you to see the status of distributed transactions.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `segment_id` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.content | The content id of the segment. The coordinator is always -1 (no content). |
| `dbid` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.dbid | The unique id of the segment instance. |
| `distributed_xid` | xid | | The global transaction id. |
| `distributed_id` | text | | A system assigned ID for a distributed transaction. |
| `status` | text | | The status of the distributed transaction (Committed or Aborted). |
| `local_transaction` | xid | | The local transaction ID. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.9 gp_distributed_xacts

The `gp_distributed_xacts` view contains information about WarehousePG distributed transactions. A distributed transaction is a transaction that involves modifying data on the segment instances. WarehousePG's distributed transaction manager ensures that the segments stay in synch. This view allows you to see the currently active sessions and their associated distributed transactions.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `distributed_xid` | xid | | The transaction ID used by the distributed transaction across the WarehousePG array. |
| `distributed_id` | text | | The distributed transaction identifier. It has 2 parts — a unique timestamp and the distributed transaction number. |
| `state` | text | | The current state of this session with regards to distributed transactions. |
| `gp_session_id` | int | | The ID number of the WarehousePG session associated with this transaction. |
| `xmin_distributed_snapshot` | xid | | The minimum distributed transaction number found among all open transactions when this transaction was started. It is used for MVCC distributed snapshot purposes. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.10 gp_distribution_policy

The `gp_distribution_policy` table contains information about WarehousePG tables and their policy for distributing table data across the segments. This table is populated only on the coordinator. This table is not globally shared, meaning each database has its own copy of this table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `localoid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table object identifier (OID). |
| `policytype` | char | | The table distribution policy:<br>`p` - Partitioned policy. Table data is distributed among segment instances.<br>`r` - Replicated policy. Table data is replicated on each segment instance. |
| `numsegments` | integer | | The number of segment instances on which the table data is distributed. |
| `distkey` | int2vector | pg_attribute.attnum | The column number(s) of the distribution column(s). |
| `distclass` | oidvector | pg_opclass.oid | The operator class identifier(s) of the distribution column(s). |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.11 gpexpand.expansion_progress

The `gpexpand.expansion_progress` view contains information about the status of a system expansion operation. The view provides calculations of the estimated rate of table redistribution and estimated time to completion.

Status for specific tables involved in the expansion is stored in gpexpand.status_detail.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `name` | text | | Name for the data field provided. Includes:<br><br>Bytes Left<br><br>Bytes Done<br><br>Estimated Expansion Rate<br><br>Estimated Time to Completion<br><br>Tables Expanded<br><br>Tables Left |
| `value` | text | | The value for the progress data. For example: `Estimated Expansion Rate - 9.75667095996092 MB/s` |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.12 gp_endpoints

The `gp_endpoints` view lists the endpoints created for all active parallel retrieve cursors declared by the current session user in the current database. When the WarehousePG superuser accesses this view, it returns a list of all endpoints created for all parallel retrieve cursors declared by all users in the current database.

Endpoints exist only for the duration of the transaction that defines the parallel retrieve cursor, or until the cursor is closed.

| name | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| gp_segment_id | integer | | The QE's endpoint `gp_segment_id`. |
| auth_token | text | | The authentication token for a retrieve session. |
| cursorname | text | | The name of the parallel retrieve cursor. |
| sessionid | integer | | The identifier of the session in which the parallel retrieve cursor was created. |
| hostname | varchar(64) | | The name of the host from which to retrieve the data for the endpoint. |
| port | integer | | The port number from which to retrieve the data for the endpoint. |
| username | text | | The name of the session user (not the current user); *you must initiate the retrieve session as this user*. |
| state | text | | The state of the endpoint; the valid states are:<br><br>READY: The endpoint is ready to be retrieved.<br><br>ATTACHED: The endpoint is attached to a retrieve connection.<br><br>RETRIEVING: A retrieve session is retrieving data from the endpoint at this moment.<br><br>FINISHED: The endpoint has been fully retrieved.<br><br>RELEASED: Due to an error, the endpoint has been released and the connection closed. |
| endpointname | text | | The endpoint identifier; you provide this identifier to the `RETRIEVE` command. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.13 gpexpand.status

The `gpexpand.status` table contains information about the status of a system expansion operation. Status for specific tables involved in the expansion is stored in gpexpand.status_detail.

In a normal expansion operation it is not necessary to modify the data stored in this table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `status` | text | | Tracks the status of an expansion operation. Valid values are:<br>`SETUP`<br>`SETUP DONE`<br>`EXPANSION STARTED`<br>`EXPANSION STOPPED`<br>`COMPLETED` |
| `updated` | timestamp without time zone | | Timestamp of the last change in status. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.14 gpexpand.status_detail

The `gpexpand.status_detail` table contains information about the status of tables involved in a system expansion operation. You can query this table to determine the status of tables being expanded, or to view the start and end time for completed tables.

This table also stores related information about the table such as the oid and disk size. Overall status information for the expansion is stored in gpexpand.status.

In a normal expansion operation it is not necessary to modify the data stored in this table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `table_oid` | oid | | OID of the table. |
| `dbname` | text | | Name of the database to which the table belongs. |
| `fq_name` | text | | Fully qualified name of the table. |
| `root_partition_oid` | oid | | For a partitioned table, the OID of the root partition. Otherwise, `None`. |
| `rank` | int | | Rank determines the order in which tables are expanded. The expansion utility will sort on rank and expand the lowest-ranking tables first. |
| `external_writable` | boolean | | Identifies whether or not the table is an external writable table. (External writable tables require a different syntax to expand). |
| `status` | text | | Status of expansion for this table. Valid values are:<br><br>NOT STARTED<br><br>IN PROGRESS<br><br>COMPLETED<br><br>NO LONGER EXISTS |
| `expansion_started` | timestamp without time zone | | Timestamp for the start of the expansion of this table. This field is only populated after a table is successfully expanded. |
| `expansion_finished` | timestamp without time zone | | Timestamp for the completion of expansion of this table. |
| `source_bytes` | | | The size of disk space associated with the source table. Due to table bloat in heap tables and differing numbers of segments after expansion, it is not expected that the final number of bytes will equal the source number. This information is tracked to help provide progress measurement to aid in duration estimation for the end-to-end expansion operation. |
| `rel_storage` | text | Storage type of a relation. | |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.15 gp_fastsequence

The `gp_fastsequence` table contains information about append-optimized and column-oriented tables. The `last_sequence` value indicates maximum row number currently used by the table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `objid` | oid | pg_class.oid | Object id of the `pg_aoseg.pg_aocsseg_*` table used to track append-optimized file segments. |
| `objmod` | bigint | | Object modifier. |
| `last_sequence` | bigint | | The last sequence number used by the object. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.16 gp_id

The `gp_id` system catalog table identifies the WarehousePG cluster name and number of segments for the system. It also has `local` values for the particular database instance (segment or coordinator) on which the table resides. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `gpname` | name | | The name of this WarehousePG cluster. |
| `numsegments` | integer | | The number of segments in the WarehousePG cluster. |
| `dbid` | integer | | The unique identifier of this segment (or coordinator) instance. |
| `content` | integer | | The ID for the portion of data on this segment instance. A primary and its mirror will have the same content ID.<br><br>For a segment the value is from 0-*N-1*, where *N* is the number of segments in WarehousePG.<br><br>For the coordinator, the value is -1. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.17 gp_pgdatabase

The `gp_pgdatabase` view shows status information about the WarehousePG segment instances and whether they are acting as the mirror or the primary. This view is used internally by the WarehousePG fault detection and recovery utilities to determine failed segments.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `dbid` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.dbid | System-assigned ID. The unique identifier of a segment (or coordinator) instance. |
| `isprimary` | boolean | gp_segment_configuration.role | Whether or not this instance is active. Is it currently acting as the primary segment (as opposed to the mirror). |
| `content` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.content | The ID for the portion of data on an instance. A primary segment instance and its mirror will have the same content ID.<br><br>For a segment the value is from 0-*N-1*, where *N* is the number of segments in WarehousePG.<br><br>For the coordinator, the value is -1. |
| `valid` | boolean | gp_segment_configuration.mode | Whether or not this instance is up and the mode is either *s* (synchronized) or *n* (not in sync). |
| `definedprimary` | boolean | gp_segment_configuration.preferred_role | Whether or not this instance was defined as the primary (as opposed to the mirror) at the time the system was initialized. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.18 gp_resgroup_config

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config` view allows administrators to see the current CPU, memory, and concurrency limits for a resource group.

> **Note** The `gp_resgroup_config` view is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `groupid` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | The ID of the resource group. |
| `groupname` | name | pg_resgroup.rsgname | The name of the resource group. |
| `concurrency` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 1 | The concurrency ( `CONCURRENCY` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| `cpu_rate_limit` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 2 | The CPU limit ( `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` ) value specified for the resource group, or -1. |
| `memory_limit` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 3 | The memory limit ( `MEMORY_LIMIT` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| `memory_shared_quota` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 4 | The shared memory quota ( `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| `memory_spill_ratio` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 5 | The memory spill ratio ( `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| `memory_auditor` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 6 | The memory auditor in use for the resource group. |
| `cpuset` | text | pg_resgroupcapability.value for pg_resgroupcapability.reslimittype = 7 | The CPU cores reserved for the resource group, or -1. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.19 gp_resgroup_status

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status` view allows administrators to see status and activity for a resource group. It shows how many queries are waiting to run and how many queries are currently active in the system for each resource group. The view also displays current memory and CPU usage for the resource group.

> **Note** The `gp_resgroup_status` view is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsgname` | name | pg_resgroup.rsgname | The name of the resource group. |
| `groupid` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | The ID of the resource group. |
| `num_running` | integer | | The number of transactions currently running in the resource group. |
| `num_queueing` | integer | | The number of currently queued transactions for the resource group. |
| `num_queued` | integer | | The total number of queued transactions for the resource group since the WarehousePG cluster was last started, excluding the `num_queueing`. |
| `num_executed` | integer | | The total number of transactions run in the resource group since the WarehousePG cluster was last started, excluding the `num_running`. |
| `total_queue_duration` | interval | | The total time any transaction was queued since the WarehousePG cluster was last started. |
| `cpu_usage` | json | | A set of key-value pairs. For each segment instance (the key), the value is the real-time, per-segment instance CPU core usage by a resource group. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of CPU cores that are used by the resource group for the segment instance. |
| `memory_usage` | json | | The real-time memory usage of the resource group on each WarehousePG segment's host. |

The `cpu_usage` field is a JSON-formatted, key:value string that identifies, for each resource group, the per-segment instance CPU core usage. The key is the segment id. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores used by the segment instance's resource group on the segment host; the maximum value is 1.00. The total CPU usage of all segment instances running on a host should not exceed the `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit`. Example `cpu_usage` column output:

```
{"-1":0.01, "0":0.31, "1":0.31}
```

In the example, segment `0` and segment `1` are running on the same host; their CPU usage is the same.

The `memory_usage` field is also a JSON-formatted, key:value string. The string contents differ depending upon the type of resource group. For each resource group that you assign to a role (default memory auditor `vmtracker`), this string identifies the used and available fixed and shared memory quota allocations on each segment. The key is segment id. The values are memory values displayed in MB units. The following example shows `memory_usage` column output for a single segment for a resource group that you assign to a role:

```
"0":{"used":0, "available":76, "quota_used":-1, "quota_available":60, "shared_used":0, "shared_available":16}
```

For each resource group that you assign to an external component, the `memory_usage` JSON-formatted string identifies the memory used and the memory limit on each segment. The following example shows `memory_usage` column output for an external component resource group for a single segment:

```
"1":{"used":11, "limit_granted":15}
```

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.20 gp_resgroup_status_per_host

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status_per_host` view allows administrators to see current memory and CPU usage and allocation for each resource group on a per-host basis.

Memory amounts are specified in MBs.

> **Note** The `gp_resgroup_status_per_host` view is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsgname` | name | pg_resgroup.rsgname | The name of the resource group. |
| `groupid` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | The ID of the resource group. |
| `hostname` | text | gp_segment_configuration.hostname | The hostname of the segment host. |
| `cpu` | numeric | | The real-time CPU core usage by the resource group on a host. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores that are used by the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_used` | integer | | The real-time memory usage of the resource group on the host. This total includes resource group fixed and shared memory. It also includes global shared memory used by the resource group. |
| `memory_available` | integer | | The unused fixed and shared memory for the resource group that is available on the host. This total does not include available resource group global shared memory. |
| `memory_quota_used` | integer | | The real-time fixed memory usage for the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_quota_available` | integer | | The fixed memory available to the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_shared_used` | integer | | The group shared memory used by the resource group on the host. If any global shared memory is used by the resource group, this amount is included in the total as well. |
| `memory_shared_available` | integer | | The amount of group shared memory available to the resource group on the host. Resource group global shared memory is not included in this total. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.21 gp_resgroup_status_per_segment

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_status_per_segment` view allows administrators to see current memory and CPU usage and allocation for each resource group on a per-host and per-segment basis.

Memory amounts are specified in MBs.

> **Note** The `gp_resgroup_status_per_segment` view is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsgname` | name | pg_resgroup.rsgname | The name of the resource group. |
| `groupid` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | The ID of the resource group. |
| `hostname` | text | gp_segment_configuration.hostname | The hostname of the segment host. |
| `segment_id` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.content | The content ID for a segment instance on the segment host. |
| `cpu` | numeric | | The real-time, per-segment instance CPU core usage by the resource group on the host. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores that are used by the resource group for the segment instance. |
| `memory_used` | integer | | The real-time memory usage of the resource group for the segment instance on the host. This total includes resource group fixed and shared memory. It also includes global shared memory used by the resource group. |
| `memory_available` | integer | | The unused fixed and shared memory for the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_quota_used` | integer | | The real-time fixed memory usage for the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_quota_available` | integer | | The fixed memory available to the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_shared_used` | integer | | The group shared memory used by the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_shared_availble` | integer | | The amount of group shared memory available for the segment instance on the host. Resource group global shared memory is not included in this total. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.22 gp_resqueue_status

The `gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status` view allows administrators to see status and activity for a resource queue. It shows how many queries are waiting to run and how many queries are currently active in the system from a particular resource queue.

> **Note** The `gp_resqueue_status` view is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `queueid` | oid | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ queueid | The ID of the resource queue. |
| `rsqname` | name | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqname | The name of the resource queue. |
| `rsqcountlimit` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqcountlimit | The active query threshold of the resource queue. A value of -1 means no limit. |
| `rsqcountvalue` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqcountvalue | The number of active query slots currently being used in the resource queue. |
| `rsqcostlimit` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqcostlimit | The query cost threshold of the resource queue. A value of -1 means no limit. |
| `rsqcostvalue` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqcostvalue | The total cost of all statements currently in the resource queue. |
| `rsqmemorylimit` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqmemorylimit | The memory limit for the resource queue. |
| `rsqmemoryvalue` | real | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqmemoryvalue | The total memory used by all statements currently in the resource queue. |
| `rsqwaiters` | integer | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqwaiter | The number of statements currently waiting in the resource queue. |
| `rsqholders` | integer | gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_ rsqholders | The number of statements currently running on the system from this resource queue. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.23 gp_segment_configuration

The `gp_segment_configuration` table contains information about mirroring and segment instance configuration.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `dbid` | smallint | | Unique identifier of a segment (or coordinator) instance. |
| `content` | smallint | | The content identifier for a segment instance. A primary segment instance and its corresponding mirror will always have the same content identifier.<br><br>For a segment the value is from 0 to *N*-1, where *N* is the number of primary segments in the system.<br><br>For the coordinator, the value is always -1. |
| `role` | char | | The role that a segment is currently running as. Values are `p` (primary) or `m` (mirror). |
| `preferred_role` | char | | The role that a segment was originally assigned at initialization time. Values are `p` (primary) or `m` (mirror). |
| `mode` | char | | The synchronization status of a segment instance with its mirror copy. Values are `s` (Synchronized) or `n` (Not In Sync).<br><br>> **Note** This column always shows `n` for the coordinator segment and `s` for the standby coordinator segment, but these values do not describe the synchronization state for the coordinator segment. Use gp_stat_replication to determine the synchronization state between the coordinator and standby coordinator. |
| `status` | char | | The fault status of a segment instance. Values are `u` (up) or `d` (down). |
| `port` | integer | | The TCP port the database server listener process is using. |
| `hostname` | text | | The hostname of a segment host. |
| `address` | text | | The hostname used to access a particular segment instance on a segment host. This value may be the same as `hostname` on systems that do not have per-interface hostnames configured. |
| `datadir` | text | | Segment instance data directory. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.24 gp_segment_endpoints

The `gp_segment_endpoints` view lists the endpoints created in the QE for all active parallel retrieve cursors declared by the current session user. When the WarehousePG superuser accesses this view, it returns a list of all endpoints on the QE created for all parallel retrieve cursors declared by all users.

Endpoints exist only for the duration of the transaction that defines the parallel retrieve cursor, or until the cursor is closed.

| name | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| auth_token | text | | The authentication token for the retrieve session. |
| databaseid | oid | | The identifier of the database in which the parallel retrieve cursor was created. |
| senderpid | integer | | The identifier of the process sending the query results. |
| receiverpid | integer | | The process identifier of the retrieve session that is receiving the query results. |
| state | text | | The state of the endpoint; the valid states are:<br><br>READY: The endpoint is ready to be retrieved.<br><br>ATTACHED: The endpoint is attached to a retrieve connection.<br><br>RETRIEVING: A retrieve session is retrieving data from the endpoint at this moment.<br><br>FINISHED: The endpoint has been fully retrieved.<br><br>RELEASED: Due to an error, the endpoint has been released and the connection closed. |
| gp_segment_id | integer | | The QE's endpoint `gp_segment_id`. |
| sessionid | integer | | The identifier of the session in which the parallel retrieve cursor was created. |
| username | text | | The name of the session user (not the current user); *you must initiate the retrieve session as this user*. |
| endpointname | text | | The endpoint identifier; you provide this identifier to the `RETRIEVE` command. |
| cursorname | text | | The name of the parallel retrieve cursor. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.25 gp_session_endpoints

The `gp_session_endpoints` view lists the endpoints created for all active parallel retrieve cursors declared by the current session user in the current session.

Endpoints exist only for the duration of the transaction that defines the parallel retrieve cursor, or until the cursor is closed.

| name | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| gp_segment_id | integer | | The QE's endpoint `gp_segment_id`. |
| auth_token | text | | The authentication token for a retrieve session. |
| cursorname | text | | The name of the parallel retrieve cursor. |
| sessionid | integer | | The identifier of the session in which the parallel retrieve cursor was created. |
| hostname | varchar(64) | | The name of the host from which to retrieve the data for the endpoint. |
| port | integer | | The port number from which to retrieve the data for the endpoint. |
| username | text | | The name of the session user (not the current user); *you must initiate the retrieve session as this user*. |
| state | text | | The state of the endpoint; the valid states are:<br>READY: The endpoint is ready to be retrieved.<br>ATTACHED: The endpoint is attached to a retrieve connection.<br>RETRIEVING: A retrieve session is retrieving data from the endpoint at this moment.<br>FINISHED: The endpoint has been fully retrieved.<br>RELEASED: Due to an error, the endpoint has been released and the connection closed. |
| endpointname | text | | The endpoint identifier; you provide this identifier to the `RETRIEVE` command. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.26 gp_stat_replication

The `gp_stat_replication` view contains replication statistics of the `walsender` process that is used for WarehousePG Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) replication when coordinator or segment mirroring is enabled.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `gp_segment_id` | integer | | Unique identifier of a segment (or coordinator) instance. |
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of the `walsender` backend process. |
| `usesysid` | oid | | User system ID that runs the `walsender` backend process. |
| `usename` | name | | User name that runs the `walsender` backend process. |
| `application_name` | text | | Client application name. |
| `client_addr` | inet | | Client IP address. |
| `client_hostname` | text | | Client host name. |
| `client_port` | integer | | Client port number. |
| `backend_start` | timestamp | | Operation start timestamp. |
| `backend_xmin` | xid | | The current backend's `xmin` horizon. |
| `state` | text | | `walsender` state. The value can be:<br>`startup`<br>`backup`<br>`catchup`<br>`streaming` |
| `sent_location` | text | | `walsender` xlog record sent location. |
| `write_location` | text | | `walreceiver` xlog record write location. |
| `flush_location` | text | | `walreceiver` xlog record flush location. |
| `replay_location` | text | | Coordinator standby or segment mirror xlog record replay location. |
| `sync_priority` | integer | | Priority. The value is `1`. |
| `sync_state` | text | | `walsender` synchronization state. The value is `sync`. |
| `sync_error` | text | | `walsender` synchronization error. `none` if no error. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.27 gp_transaction_log

The `gp_transaction_log` view contains status information about transactions local to a particular segment. This view allows you to see the status of local transactions.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `segment_id` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.content | The content id of the segment. The coordinator is always -1 (no content). |
| `dbid` | smallint | gp_segment_configuration.dbid | The unique id of the segment instance. |
| `transaction` | xid | | The local transaction ID. |
| `status` | text | | The status of the local transaction (Committed or Aborted). |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.28 gp_version_at_initdb

The `gp_version_at_initdb` table is populated on the coordinator and each segment in the WarehousePG cluster. It identifies the version of WarehousePG used when the system was first initialized. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaversion` | integer | | Schema version number. |
| `productversion` | text | | Product version number. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.29 pg_aggregate

The `pg_aggregate` table stores information about aggregate functions. An aggregate function is a function that operates on a set of values (typically one column from each row that matches a query condition) and returns a single value computed from all these values. Typical aggregate functions are `sum`, `count`, and `max`. Each entry in `pg_aggregate` is an extension of an entry in `pg_proc`. The `pg_proc` entry carries the aggregate's name, input and output data types, and other information that is similar to ordinary functions.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `aggfnoid` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | OID of the aggregate function |
| `aggkind` | char | | Aggregate kind: `n` for *normal* aggregates, `o` for *ordered-set* aggregates, or `h` for *hypothetical-set* aggregates |
| `aggnumdirectargs` | int2 | | Number of direct (non-aggregated) arguments of an ordered-set or hypothetical-set aggregate, counting a variadic array as one argument. If equal to `pronargs`, the aggregate must be variadic and the variadic array describes the aggregated arguments as well as the final direct arguments. Always zero for normal aggregates. |
| `aggtransfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Transition function OID |
| `aggfinalfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Final function OID (zero if none) |
| `aggcombinefn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Combine function OID (zero if none) |
| `aggserialfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | OID of the serialization function to convert transtype to `bytea` (zero if none) |
| `aggdeserialfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | OID of the deserialization function to convert `bytea` to transtype (zero if none) |
| `aggmtransfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Forward transition function OID for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none) |
| `aggminvtransfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Inverse transition function OID for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none) |
| `aggmfinalfn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Final function OID for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none) |
| `aggfinalextra` | bool | | True to pass extra dummy arguments to `aggfinalfn` |
| `aggmfinalextra` | bool | | True to pass extra dummy arguments to `aggmfinalfn` |
| `aggsortop` | oid | pg_operator.oid | Associated sort operator OID (zero if none) |
| `aggtranstype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data |
| `aggtransspace` | int4 | | Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data, or zero to use a default estimate |
| `aggmtranstype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none) |
| `aggmtransspace` | int4 | | Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data for moving-aggregate mode, or zero to use a default estimate |
| `agginitval` | text | | The initial value of the transition state. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is NULL, the transition state value starts out NULL. |
| `aggminitval` | text | | The initial value of the transition state for moving- aggregate mode. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is NULL, the transition state value starts out NULL. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Parent topic: System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.30 pg_am

The `pg_am` table stores information about index access methods. There is one row for each index access method supported by the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `amname` | name | | Name of the access method |
| `amstrategies` | int2 | | Number of operator strategies for this access method, or zero if the access method does not have a fixed set of operator strategies |
| `amsupport` | int2 | | Number of support routines for this access method |
| `amcanorder` | boolean | | Does the access method support ordered scans sorted by the indexed column's value? |
| `amcanorderbyop` | boolean | | Does the access method support ordered scans sorted by the result of an operator on the indexed column? |
| `amcanbackward` | boolean | | Does the access method support backward scanning? |
| `amcanunique` | boolean | | Does the access method support unique indexes? |
| `amcanmulticol` | boolean | | Does the access method support multicolumn indexes? |
| `amoptionalkey` | boolean | | Does the access method support a scan without any constraint for the first index column? |
| `amsearcharray` | boolean | | Does the access method support `ScalarArrayOpExpr` searches? |
| `amsearchnulls` | boolean | | Does the access method support `IS NULL/NOT NULL` searches? |
| `amstorage` | boolean | | Can index storage data type differ from column data type? |
| `amclusterable` | boolean | | Can an index of this type be clustered on? |
| `ampredlocks` | boolean | | Does an index of this type manage fine-grained predicae locks? |
| `amkeytype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Type of data stored in index, or zero if not a fixed type |
| `aminsert` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Insert this tuple" function |
| `ambeginscan` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Prepare for index scan" function |
| `amgettuple` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Next valid tuple" function, or zero if none |
| `amgetbitmap` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Fetch all tuples" function, or zero if none |
| `amrescan` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "(Re)start index scan" function |
| `amendscan` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Clean up after index scan" function |
| `ammarkpos` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Mark current scan position" function |
| `amrestrpos` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Restore marked scan position" function |
| `ambuild` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Build new index" function |
| `ambuildempty` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | "Build empty index" function |
| `ambulkdelete` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Bulk-delete function |
| `amvacuumcleanup` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Post-`VACUUM` cleanup function |
| `amcanreturn` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Function to check whether index supports index-only scans, or zero if none |
| `amcostestimate` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Function to estimate cost of an index scan |
| `amoptions` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Function to parse and validate `reloptions` for an index |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.31 pg_amop

The `pg_amop` table stores information about operators associated with index access method operator classes. There is one row for each operator that is a member of an operator class.

An entry's `amopmethod` must match the `opfmethod` of its containing operator family (including `amopmethod` here is an intentional denormalization of the catalog structure for performance reasons). Also, `amoplefttype` and `amoprighttype` must match the `oprleft` and `oprright` fields of the referenced `pg_operator` entry.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `amopfamily` | oid | pg_opfamily.oid | The operator family that this entry is for |
| `amoplefttype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Left-hand input data type of operator |
| `amoprighttype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Right-hand input data type of operator |
| `amopstrategy` | int2 | | Operator strategy number |
| `amoppurpose` | char | | Operator purpose, either `s` for search or `o` for ordering |
| `amopopr` | oid | pg_operator.oid | OID of the operator |
| `amopmethod` | oid | pg_am.oid | Index access method for the operator family |
| `amopsortfamily` | oid | pg_opfamily.oid | If an ordering operator, the B-tree operator family that this entry sorts according to; zero if a search operator |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.32 pg_amproc

The `pg_amproc` table stores information about support procedures associated with index access method operator classes. There is one row for each support procedure belonging to an operator class.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `amprocfamily` | oid | pg_opfamily.oid | The operator family this entry is for |
| `amproclefttype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Left-hand input data type of associated operator |
| `amprocrighttype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Right-hand input data type of associated operator |
| `amprocnum` | int2 | | Support procedure number |
| `amproc` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | OID of the procedure |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.33 pg_appendonly

The `pg_appendonly` table contains information about the storage options and other characteristics of append-optimized tables.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `relid` | oid | | The table object identifier (OID) of the compressed table. |
| `blocksize` | integer | | Block size used for compression of append-optimized tables. Valid values are 8K - 2M. Default is `32K`. |
| `safefswritesize` | integer | | Minimum size for safe write operations to append-optimized tables in a non-mature file system. Commonly set to a multiple of the extent size of the file system; for example, Linux ext3 is 4096 bytes, so a value of 32768 is commonly used. |
| `compresslevel` | smallint | | The compression level, with compression ratio increasing from 1 to 19. With `zlib` specified, valid values are 1-9. When `zstd` is specified, valid values are 1-19. |
| `majorversion` | smallint | | The major version number of the pg_appendonly table. |
| `minorversion` | smallint | | The minor version number of the pg_appendonly table. |
| `checksum` | boolean | | A checksum value that is stored to compare the state of a block of data at compression time and at scan time to ensure data integrity. |
| `compresstype` | text | | Type of compression used to compress append-optimized tables. Valid values are:<br>- `none` (no compression)<br>- `rle_type` (run-length encoding compression)<br>- `zlib` (gzip compression)<br>- `zstd` (Zstandard compression) |
| `columnstore` | boolean | | `1` for column-oriented storage, `0` for row-oriented storage. |
| `segreliid` | oid | | Table on-disk segment file id. |
| `segidxid` | oid | | Index on-disk segment file id. |
| `blkdirrelid` | oid | | Block used for on-disk column-oriented table file. |
| `blkdiridxid` | oid | | Block used for on-disk column-oriented index file. |
| `visimaprelid` | oid | | Visibility map for the table. |
| `visimapidxid` | oid | | B-tree index on the visibility map. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.34 pg_attrdef

The `pg_attrdef` table stores column default values. The main information about columns is stored in pg_attribute. Only columns that explicitly specify a default value (when the table is created or the column is added) will have an entry here.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `adrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table this column belongs to |
| `adnum` | int2 | pg_attribute.attnum | The number of the column |
| `adbin` | text | | The internal representation of the column default value |
| `adsrc` | text | | A human-readable representation of the default value. This field is historical, and is best not used. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.35 pg_attribute

The `pg_attribute` table stores information about table columns. There will be exactly one `pg_attribute` row for every column in every table in the database. (There will also be attribute entries for indexes, and all objects that have `pg_class` entries.) The term attribute is equivalent to column.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `attrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table this column belongs to. |
| `attname` | name | | The column name. |
| `atttypid` | oid | pg_type.oid | The data type of this column. |
| `attstattarget` | int4 | | Controls the level of detail of statistics accumulated for this column by `ANALYZE`. A zero value indicates that no statistics should be collected. A negative value says to use the system default statistics target. The exact meaning of positive values is data type-dependent. For scalar data types, it is both the target number of "most common values" to collect, and the target number of histogram bins to create. |
| `attlen` | int2 | | A copy of `pg_type.typlen` of this column's type. |
| `attnum` | int2 | | The number of the column. Ordinary columns are numbered from 1 up. System columns, such as oid, have (arbitrary) negative numbers. |
| `attndims` | int4 | | Number of dimensions, if the column is an array type; otherwise `0`. (Presently, the number of dimensions of an array is not enforced, so any nonzero value effectively means it is an array.) |
| `attcacheoff` | int4 | | Always `-1` in storage, but when loaded into a row descriptor in memory this may be updated to cache the offset of the attribute within the row. |
| `atttypmod` | int4 | | Records type-specific data supplied at table creation time (for example, the maximum length of a `varchar` column). It is passed to type-specific input functions and length coercion functions. The value will generally be `-1` for types that do not need it. |
| `attbyval` | boolean | | A copy of `pg_type.typbyval` of this column's type. |
| `attstorage` | char | | Normally a copy of `pg_type.typstorage` of this column's type. For TOAST-able data types, this can be altered after column creation to control storage policy. |
| `attalign` | char | | A copy of `pg_type.typalign` of this column's type. |
| `attnotnull` | boolean | | This represents a not-null constraint. It is possible to change this column to activate or deactivate the constraint. |
| `atthasdef` | boolean | | This column has a default value, in which case there will be a corresponding entry in the `pg_attrdef` catalog that actually defines the value. |
| `attisdropped` | boolean | | This column has been dropped and is no longer valid. A dropped column is still physically present in the table, but is ignored by the parser and so cannot be accessed via SQL. |
| `attislocal` | boolean | | This column is defined locally in the relation. Note that a column may be locally defined and inherited simultaneously. |
| `attinhcount` | int4 | | The number of direct ancestors this column has. A column with a nonzero number of ancestors cannot be dropped nor renamed. |
| `attcollation` | oid | pg_collation.oid | The defined collation of the column, or zero if the is not of a collatable data type. |
| `attacl` | aclitem[] | | Column-level access privileges, if any have been granted specifically on this column. |
| `attoptions` | text[] | | Attribute-level options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `attfdwoptions` | text[] | | Attribute-level foreign data wrapper options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.36 pg_attribute_encoding

The `pg_attribute_encoding` system catalog table contains column storage information.

| column | type | modifers | storage | description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `attrelid` | oid | not null | plain | Foreign key to `pg_attribute.attrelid` |
| `attnum` | smallint | not null | plain | Foreign key to `pg_attribute.attnum` |
| `attoptions` | text [ ] | | extended | The options |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.37 pg_auth_members

The `pg_auth_members` system catalog table shows the membership relations between roles. Any non-circular set of relationships is allowed. Because roles are system-wide, `pg_auth_members` is shared across all databases of a WarehousePG cluster.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `roleid` | oid | pg_authid.oid | ID of the parent-level (group) role |
| `member` | oid | pg_authid.oid | ID of a member role |
| `grantor` | oid | pg_authid.oid | ID of the role that granted this membership |
| `admin_option` | boolean | | True if role member may grant membership to others |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.38 pg_authid

The `pg_authid` table contains information about database authorization identifiers (roles). A role subsumes the concepts of users and groups. A user is a role with the `rolcanlogin` flag set. Any role (with or without `rolcanlogin`) may have other roles as members. See pg_auth_members.

Since this catalog contains passwords, it must not be publicly readable. pg_roles is a publicly readable view on `pg_authid` that blanks out the password field.

Because user identities are system-wide, `pg_authid` is shared across all databases in a WarehousePG cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_authid` per system, not one per database.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `rolname` | name | | Role name |
| `rolsuper` | boolean | | Role has superuser privileges |
| `rolinherit` | boolean | | Role automatically inherits privileges of roles it is a member of |
| `rolcreaterole` | boolean | | Role may create more roles |
| `rolcreatedb` | boolean | | Role may create databases |
| `rolcatupdate` | boolean | | Role may update system catalogs directly. (Even a superuser may not do this unless this column is true) |
| `rolcanlogin` | boolean | | Role may log in. That is, this role can be given as the initial session authorization identifier |
| `rolreplication` | boolean | | Role is a replication role. That is, this role can initiate streaming replication and set/unset the system backup mode using `pg_start_backup` and `pg_stop_backup`. |
| `rolconnlimit` | int4 | | For roles that can log in, this sets maximum number of concurrent connections this role can make. `-1` means no limit |
| `rolpassword` | text | | Password (possibly encrypted); NULL if none. The format depends on the form of encryption used.[1] |
| `rolvaliduntil` | timestamptz | | Password expiry time (only used for password authentication); NULL if no expiration |
| `rolresqueue` | oid | | Object ID of the associated resource queue ID in *pg_resqueue* |
| `rolcreaterextgpfd` | boolean | | Privilege to create read external tables with the `gpfdist` or `gpfdists` protocol |
| `rolcreaterexhttp` | boolean | | Privilege to create read external tables with the `http` protocol |
| `rolcreatewextgpfd` | boolean | | Privilege to create write external tables with the `gpfdist` or `gpfdists` protocol |
| `rolresgroup` | oid | | Object ID of the associated resource group ID in *pg_resgroup* |

Notes[1]:

- For an MD5-encrypted password, `rolpassword` column will begin with the string `md5` followed by a 32-character hexadecimal MD5 hash. The MD5 hash will be of the user's password concatenated to their user name. For example, if user `joe` has password `xyzzy` WarehousePG will store the md5 hash of `xyzzyjoe`.
- If the password is encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256, the `rolpassword` column has the format:

  ```
  SCRAM-SHA-256$<iteration count>:<salt>$<StoredKey>:<ServerKey>
  ```

  where `<salt>`, `<StoredKey>` and `<ServerKey>` are in Base64-encoded format. This format is the same as that specified by RFC 5803.
- If the password is encrypted with SHA-256, the `rolpassword` column is a 64-byte hexadecimal string prefixed with the characters `sha256`.

A password that does not follow any of these formats is assumed to be unencrypted.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.39 pg_available_extension_versions

The `pg_available_extension_versions` view lists the specific extension versions that are available for installation. The *pg_extension* system catalog table shows the extensions currently installed.

The view is read only.

| column | type | description |
|---|---|---|
| `name` | name | Extension name. |
| `version` | text | Version name. |
| `installed` | boolean | `True` if this version of this extension is currently installed, `False` otherwise. |
| `superuser` | boolean | `True` if only superusers are allowed to install the extension, `False` otherwise. |
| `relocatable` | boolean | `True` if extension can be relocated to another schema, `False` otherwise. |
| `schema` | name | Name of the schema that the extension must be installed into, or `NULL` if partially or fully relocatable. |
| `requires` | name[] | Names of prerequisite extensions, or `NULL` if none |
| `comment` | text | Comment string from the extension control file. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.40 pg_available_extensions

The `pg_available_extensions` view lists the extensions that are available for installation. The *pg_extension* system catalog table shows the extensions currently installed.

The view is read only.

| column | type | description |
|---|---|---|
| `name` | name | Extension name. |
| `default_version` | text | Name of default version, or `NULL` if none is specified. |
| `installed_version` | text | Currently installed version of the extension, or `NULL` if not installed. |
| `comment` | text | Comment string from the extension control file. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.41 pg_cast

The `pg_cast` table stores data type conversion paths, both built-in paths and those defined with `CREATE CAST`.

Note that `pg_cast` does not represent every type conversion known to the system, only those that cannot be deduced from some generic rule. For example, casting between a domain and its base type is not explicitly represented in `pg_cast`. Another important exception is that "automatic I/O conversion casts", those performed using a data type's own I/O functions to convert to or from `text` or other string types, are not explicitly represented in `pg_cast`.

The cast functions listed in `pg_cast` must always take the cast source type as their first argument type, and return the cast destination type as their result type. A cast function can have up to three arguments. The second argument, if present, must be type `integer`; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or `-1` if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type `boolean`; it receives `true` if the cast is an explicit cast, `false` otherwise.

It is legitimate to create a `pg_cast` entry in which the source and target types are the same, if the associated function takes more than one argument. Such entries represent 'length coercion functions' that coerce values of the type to be legal for a particular type modifier value.

When a `pg_cast` entry has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, the entry converts from one type to another and applies a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `castsource` | oid | pg_type.oid | OID of the source data type. |
| `casttarget` | oid | pg_type.oid | OID of the target data type. |
| `castfunc` | oid | pg_proc.oid | The OID of the function to use to perform this cast. Zero is stored if the cast method does not require a function. |
| `castcontext` | char | | Indicates what contexts the cast may be invoked in. `e` means only as an explicit cast (using `CAST` or `::` syntax). `a` means implicitly in assignment to a target column, as well as explicitly. `i` means implicitly in expressions, as well as the other cases*.* |
| `castmethod` | char | | Indicates how the cast is performed:<br>`f` - The function identified in the `castfunc` field is used.<br>`i` - The input/output functions are used.<br>`b` - The types are binary-coercible, and no conversion is required. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.42 pg_class

The system catalog table `pg_class` catalogs tables and most everything else that has columns or is otherwise similar to a table (also known as *relations*). This includes indexes (see also pg_index), sequences, views, composite types, and TOAST tables. Not all columns are meaningful for all relation types.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `relname` | name | | Name of the table, index, view, etc. |
| `relnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace (schema) that contains this relation |
| `reltype` | oid | pg_type.oid | The OID of the data type that corresponds to this table's row type, if any (zero for indexes, which have no pg_type entry) |
| `reloftype` | oid | pg_type.oid | The OID of an entry in `pg_type` for an underlying composite type. |
| `relowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the relation |
| `relam` | oid | pg_am.oid | If this is an index, the access method used (B-tree, Bitmap, hash, etc.) |
| `relfilenode` | oid | | Name of the on-disk file of this relation; `0` if none. |
| `reltablespace` | oid | pg_tablespace.oid | The tablespace in which this relation is stored. If zero, the database's default tablespace is implied. (Not meaningful if the relation has no on-disk file.) |
| `relpages` | int4 | | Size of the on-disk representation of this table in pages (of 32K each). This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by `VACUUM`, `ANALYZE`, and a few DDL commands. |
| `reltuples` | float4 | | Number of rows in the table. This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by `VACUUM`, `ANALYZE`, and a few DDL commands. |
| `relallvisible` | int32 | | Number of all-visible blocks (this value may not be up-to-date). |
| `reltoastrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the TOAST table associated with this table, `0` if none. The TOAST table stores large attributes "out of line" in a secondary table. |
| `relhasindex` | boolean | | True if this is a table and it has (or recently had) any indexes. This is set by `CREATE INDEX`, but not cleared immediately by `DROP INDEX`. `VACUUM` will clear if it finds the table has no indexes. |
| `relisshared` | boolean | | True if this table is shared across all databases in the system. Only certain system catalog tables are shared. |
| `relpersistence` | char | | The type of object persistence: `p` = heap or append-optimized table, `u` = unlogged temporary table, `t` = temporary table. |
| `relkind` | char | | The type of object<br>`r` = heap or append-optimized table, `i` = index, `S` = sequence, `t` = TOAST value, `v` = view, `c` = composite type, `f` = foreign table, `u` = uncatalogued temporary heap table, `o` = internal append-optimized segment files and EOFs, `b` = append-only block directory, `M` = append-only visibility map |
| `relstorage` | char | | The storage mode of a table<br>`a` = append-optimized, `c` = column-oriented, `h` = heap, `v` = virtual, `x` = external table. |
| `relnatts` | int2 | | Number of user columns in the relation (system columns not counted). There must be this many corresponding entries in pg_attribute. |
| `relchecks` | int2 | | Number of check constraints on the table. |
| `relhasoids` | boolean | | True if an OID is generated for each row of the relation. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `relhaspkey` | boolean | | True if the table has (or once had) a primary key. |
| `relhasrules` | boolean | | True if table has rules. |
| `relhastriggers` | boolean | | True if table has (or once had) triggers. |
| `relhassubclass` | boolean | | True if table has (or once had) any inheritance children. |
| `relispopulated` | boolean | | True if relation is populated (this is true for all relations other than some materialized views). |
| `relreplident` | char | | Columns used to form “replica identity” for rows: d = default (primary key, if any), n = nothing, f = all columns i = index with `indisreplident` set, or default |
| `relfrozenxid` | xid | | All transaction IDs before this one have been replaced with a permanent (frozen) transaction ID in this table. This is used to track whether the table needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent transaction ID wraparound or to allow `pg_clog` to be shrunk.<br><br>The value is `0` ( `InvalidTransactionId` ) if the relation is not a table or if the table does not require vacuuming to prevent transaction ID wraparound. The table still might require vacuuming to reclaim disk space. |
| `relminmxid` | xid | | All multixact IDs before this one have been replaced by a transaction ID in this table. This is used to track whether the table needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent multixact ID wraparound or to allow `pg_multixact` to be shrunk. Zero ( `InvalidMultiXactId` ) if the relation is not a table. |
| `relacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges assigned by `GRANT` and `REVOKE` . |
| `reloptions` | text[] | | Access-method-specific options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.43 pg_compression

The `pg_compression` system catalog table describes the compression methods available.

| column | type | modifers | storage | description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `compname` | name | not null | plain | Name of the compression |
| `compconstructor` | regproc | not null | plain | Name of compression constructor |
| `compdestructor` | regproc | not null | plain | Name of compression destructor |
| `compcompressor` | regproc | not null | plain | Name of the compressor |
| `compdecompressor` | regproc | not null | plain | Name of the decompressor |
| `compvalidator` | regproc | not null | plain | Name of the compression validator |
| `compowner` | oid | not null | plain | oid from pg_authid |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.44 pg_constraint

The `pg_constraint` system catalog table stores check, primary key, unique, and foreign key constraints on tables. Column constraints are not treated specially. Every column constraint is equivalent to some table constraint. Not-null constraints are represented in the pg_attribute catalog table. Check constraints on domains are stored here, too.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `conname` | name | | Constraint name (not necessarily unique!) |
| `connamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace (schema) that contains this constraint. |
| `contype` | char | | `c` = check constraint, `f` = foreign key constraint, `p` = primary key constraint, `u` = unique constraint. |
| `condeferrable` | boolean | | Is the constraint deferrable? |
| `condeferred` | boolean | | Is the constraint deferred by default? |
| `convalidated` | boolean | | Has the constraint been validated? Currently, can only be false for foreign keys |
| `conrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table this constraint is on; 0 if not a table constraint. |
| `contypid` | oid | pg_type.oid | The domain this constraint is on; 0 if not a domain constraint. |
| `conindid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The index supporting this constraint, if it's a unique, primary key, foreign key, or exclusion constraint; else 0 |
| `confrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | If a foreign key, the referenced table; else 0. |
| `confupdtype` | char | | Foreign key update action code. |
| `confdeltype` | char | | Foreign key deletion action code. |
| `confmatchtype` | char | | Foreign key match type. |
| `conislocal` | boolean | | This constraint is defined locally for the relation. Note that a constraint can be locally defined and inherited simultaneously. |
| `coninhcount` | int4 | | The number of direct inheritance ancestors this constraint has. A constraint with a nonzero number of ancestors cannot be dropped nor renamed. |
| `conkey` | int2[] | pg_attribute.attnum | If a table constraint, list of columns which the constraint constrains. |
| `confkey` | int2[] | pg_attribute.attnum | If a foreign key, list of the referenced columns. |
| `conpfeqop` | oid[] | pg_operator.oid | If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = FK comparisons. |
| `conppeqop` | oid[] | pg_operator.oid | If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = PK comparisons. |
| `conffeqop` | oid[] | pg_operator.oid | If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = PK comparisons. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `conexclop` | oid[] | pg_operator.oid | If an exclusion constraint, list of the per-column exclusion operators. |
| `conbin` | text | | If a check constraint, an internal representation of the expression. |
| `consrc` | text | | If a check constraint, a human-readable representation of the expression. This is not updated when referenced objects change; for example, it won't track renaming of columns. Rather than relying on this field, it is best to use `pg_get_constraintdef()` to extract the definition of a check constraint. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.45 pg_conversion

The `pg_conversion` system catalog table describes the available encoding conversion procedures as defined by `CREATE CONVERSION`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `conname` | name | | Conversion name (unique within a namespace). |
| `connamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace (schema) that contains this conversion. |
| `conowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the conversion. |
| `conforencoding` | int4 | | Source encoding ID. |
| `contoencoding` | int4 | | Destination encoding ID. |
| `conproc` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Conversion procedure. |
| `condefault` | boolean | | True if this is the default conversion. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.46 pg_cursors

The `pg_cursors` view lists the currently available cursors. Cursors can be defined in one of the following ways:

- via the DECLARE SQL statement
- via the Bind message in the frontend/backend protocol
- via the Server Programming Interface (SPI)

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support the definition, or access of, parallel retrieve cursors via SPI.

Cursors exist only for the duration of the transaction that defines them, unless they have been declared `WITH HOLD`. Non-holdable cursors are only present in the view until the end of their creating transaction.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support holdable parallel retrieve cursors.

| name | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `name` | text | | The name of the cursor. |
| `statement` | text | | The verbatim query string submitted to declare this cursor. |
| `is_holdable` | boolean | | `true` if the cursor is holdable (that is, it can be accessed after the transaction that declared the cursor has committed); `false` otherwise.<br><br>> **Note** WarehousePG does not support holdable parallel retrieve cursors, this value is always `false` for such cursors. |
| `is_binary` | boolean | | `true` if the cursor was declared `BINARY`; `false` otherwise. |
| `is_scrollable` | boolean | | `true` if the cursor is scrollable (that is, it allows rows to be retrieved in a nonsequential manner); `false` otherwise.<br><br>> **Note** WarehousePG does not support scrollable cursors, this value is always `false`. |
| `creation_time` | timestamptz | | The time at which the cursor was declared. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.47 pg_database

The `pg_database` system catalog table stores information about the available databases. Databases are created with the `CREATE DATABASE` SQL command. Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_database` is shared across all databases in the system. There is only one copy of `pg_database` per system, not one per database.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `datname` | name | | Database name. |
| `datdba` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the database, usually the user who created it. |
| `encoding` | int4 | | Character encoding for this database. `pg_encoding_to_char()` can translate this number to the encoding name. |
| `datcollate` | name | | `LC_COLLATE` for this database. |
| `datctype` | name | | `LC_CTYPE` for this database. |
| `datistemplate` | boolean | | If true then this database can be used in the `TEMPLATE` clause of `CREATE DATABASE` to create a new database as a clone of this one. |
| `datallowconn` | boolean | | If false then no one can connect to this database. This is used to protect the `template0` database from being altered. |
| `datconnlimit` | int4 | | Sets the maximum number of concurrent connections that can be made to this database. `-1` means no limit. |
| `datlastsysoid` | oid | | Last system OID in the database. |
| `datfrozenxid` | xid | | All transaction IDs (XIDs) before this one have been replaced with a permanent (frozen) transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent transaction ID wraparound or to allow pg_clog to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table *pg_class.relfrozenxid* values. |
| `datminmxid` | xid | | A *Multixact ID* is used to support row locking by multiple transactions. All multixact IDs before this one have been replaced with a transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent multixact ID wraparound or to allow `pg_multixact` to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table *pg_class.relminmxid* values. |
| `dattablespace` | oid | pg_tablespace.oid | The default tablespace for the database. Within this database, all tables for which *pg_class.reltablespace* is zero will be stored in this tablespace. All non-shared system catalogs will also be there. |
| `datacl` | aclitem[] | | Database access privileges as given by `GRANT` and `REVOKE`. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.48 pg_db_role_setting

The `pg_db_role_setting` system catalog table records the default values of server configuration settings for each role and database combination.

There is a single copy of `pg_db_role_settings` per WarehousePG cluster. This system catalog table is shared across all databases.

You can view the server configuration settings for your WarehousePG cluster with `psql`'s `\drds` meta-command.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `setdatabase` | oid | pg_database.oid | The database to which the setting is applicable, or zero if the setting is not database-specific. |
| `setrole` | oid | pg_authid.oid | The role to which the setting is applicable, or zero if the setting is not role-specific. |
| `setconfig` | text[] | | Per-database- and per-role-specific defaults for user-settable server configuration parameters. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.49 pg_depend

The `pg_depend` system catalog table records the dependency relationships between database objects. This information allows `DROP` commands to find which other objects must be dropped by `DROP CASCADE` or prevent dropping in the `DROP RESTRICT` case. See also pg_shdepend, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects that are shared across a WarehousePG cluster.

In all cases, a `pg_depend` entry indicates that the referenced object may not be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by `deptype`:

- **DEPENDENCY_NORMAL (n)** — A normal relationship between separately-created objects. The dependent object may be dropped without affecting the referenced object. The referenced object may only be dropped by specifying `CASCADE`, in which case the dependent object is dropped, too. Example: a table column has a normal dependency on its data type.

- **DEPENDENCY_AUTO (a)** — The dependent object can be dropped separately from the referenced object, and should be automatically dropped (regardless of `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` mode) if the referenced object is dropped. Example: a named constraint on a table is made autodependent on the table, so that it will go away if the table is dropped.

- **DEPENDENCY_INTERNAL (i)** — The dependent object was created as part of creation of the referenced object, and is really just a part of its internal implementation. A `DROP` of the dependent object will be disallowed outright (we'll tell the user to issue a `DROP` against the referenced object, instead). A `DROP` of the referenced object will be propagated through to drop the dependent object whether `CASCADE` is specified or not.

- **DEPENDENCY_PIN (p)** — There is no dependent object; this type of entry is a signal that the system itself depends on the referenced object, and so that object must never be deleted. Entries of this type are created only by system initialization. The columns for the dependent object contain zeroes.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `classid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in. |
| `objid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the specific dependent object. |
| `objsubid` | int4 | | For a table column, this is the column number. For all other object types, this column is zero. |
| `refclassid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in. |
| `refobjid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the specific referenced object. |
| `refobjsubid` | int4 | | For a table column, this is the referenced column number. For all other object types, this column is zero. |
| `deptype` | char | | A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.50 pg_description

The `pg_description` system catalog table stores optional descriptions (comments) for each database object. Descriptions can be manipulated with the `COMMENT` command and viewed with `psql`'s `\d` meta-commands. Descriptions of many built-in system objects are provided in the initial contents of `pg_description`. See also pg_shdescription, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects that are shared across a WarehousePG cluster.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `objoid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the object this description pertains to. |
| `classoid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog this object appears in |
| `objsubid` | int4 | | For a comment on a table column, this is the column number. For all other object types, this column is zero. |
| `description` | text | | Arbitrary text that serves as the description of this object. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.51 pg_enum

The `pg_enum` table contains entries matching enum types to their associated values and labels. The internal representation of a given enum value is actually the OID of its associated row in `pg_enum`. The OIDs for a particular enum type are guaranteed to be ordered in the way the type should sort, but there is no guarantee about the ordering of OIDs of unrelated enum types.

| Column | Type | References | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `enumtypid` | oid | pgtype.oid | The OID of the `pg_type` entry owning this enum value |
| `enumsortorder` | float4 | | The sort position of this enum value within its enum type |
| `enumlabel` | name | | The textual label for this enum value |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.52 pg_extension

The system catalog table `pg_extension` stores information about installed extensions.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `extname` | name | | Name of the extension. |
| `extowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the extension |
| `extnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | Schema containing the extension exported objects. |
| `extrelocatable` | boolean | | True if the extension can be relocated to another schema. |
| `extversion` | text | | Version name for the extension. |
| `extconfig` | oid[] | pg_class.oid | Array of `regclass` OIDs for the extension configuration tables, or `NULL` if none. |
| `extcondition` | text[] | | Array of `WHERE` -clause filter conditions for the extension configuration tables, or `NULL` if none. |

Unlike most catalogs with a namespace column, `extnamespace` does not imply that the extension belongs to that schema. Extension names are never schema-qualified. The `extnamespace` schema indicates the schema that contains most or all of the extension objects. If `extrelocatable` is `true` , then this schema must contain all schema-qualifiable objects that belong to the extension.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.53 pg_exttable

The `pg_exttable` system catalog table is used to track external tables and web tables created by the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` command.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `reloid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of this external table. |
| `urilocation` | text[] | | The URI location(s) of the external table files. |
| `execlocation` | text[] | | The ON segment locations defined for the external table. |
| `fmttype` | char | | Format of the external table files: `t` for text, or `c` for csv. |
| `fmtopts` | text | | Formatting options of the external table files, such as the field delimiter, null string, escape character, etc. |
| `options` | text[] | | The options defined for the external table. |
| `command` | text | | The OS command to run when the external table is accessed. |
| `rejectlimit` | integer | | The per segment reject limit for rows with errors, after which the load will fail. |
| `rejectlimittype` | char | | Type of reject limit threshold: `r` for number of rows. |
| `logerrors` | bool | | `1` to log errors, `0` to not. |
| `encoding` | text | | The client encoding. |
| `writable` | boolean | | `0` for readable external tables, `1` for writable external tables. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.54 pg_foreign_data_wrapper

The system catalog table `pg_foreign_data_wrapper` stores foreign-data wrapper definitions. A foreign-data wrapper is a mechanism by which you access external data residing on foreign servers.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `fdwname` | name | | Name of the foreign-data wrapper. |
| `fdwowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the foreign-data wrapper. |
| `fdwhandler` | oid | pg_proc.oid | A reference to a handler function that is responsible for supplying execution routines for the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no handler is provided. |
| `fdwvalidator` | oid | pg_proc.oid | A reference to a validator function that is responsible for checking the validity of the options provided to the foreign-data wrapper. This function also checks the options for foreign servers and user mappings using the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no validator is provided. |
| `fdwacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges; see GRANT and REVOKE for details. |
| `fdwoptions` | text[] | | Foreign-data wrapper-specific options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.55 pg_foreign_server

The system catalog table `pg_foreign_server` stores foreign server definitions. A foreign server describes a source of external data, such as a remote server. You access a foreign server via a foreign-data wrapper.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `srvname` | name | | Name of the foreign server. |
| `srvowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the foreign server. |
| `srvfdw` | oid | pg_foreign_data_wrapper.oid | OID of the foreign-data wrapper of this foreign server. |
| `srvtype` | text | | Type of server (optional). |
| `srvversion` | text | | Version of the server (optional). |
| `srvacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges; see GRANT and REVOKE for details. |
| `srvoptions` | text[] | | Foreign server-specific options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.56 pg_foreign_table

The system catalog table `pg_foreign_table` contains auxiliary information about foreign tables. A foreign table is primarily represented by a `pg_class` entry, just like a regular table. Its `pg_foreign_table` entry contains the information that is pertinent only to foreign tables and not any other kind of relation.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `ftrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the `pg_class` entry for this foreign table. |
| `ftserver` | oid | pg_foreign_server.oid | OID of the foreign server for this foreign table. |
| `ftoptions` | text[] | | Foreign table options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.57 pg_index

The `pg_index` system catalog table contains part of the information about indexes. The rest is mostly in`pg_class`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `indexrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the pg_class entry for this index. |
| `indrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the pg_class entry for the table this index is for. |
| `indnatts` | int2 | | The number of columns in the index (duplicates pg_class.relnatts). |
| `indisunique` | boolean | | If true, this is a unique index. |
| `indisprimary` | boolean | | If true, this index represents the primary key of the table. (indisunique should always be true when this is true.) |
| `indisexclusion` | boolean | | If true, this index supports an exclusion constraint |
| indimmediate | boolean | | If true, the uniqueness check is enforced immediately on insertion (irrelevant if `indisunique` is not true) |
| `indisclustered` | boolean | | If true, the table was last clustered on this index via the `CLUSTER` command. |
| `indisvalid` | boolean | | If true, the index is currently valid for queries. False means the index is possibly incomplete: it must still be modified by `INSERT` / `UPDATE` operations, but it cannot safely be used for queries. |
| `indcheckxmin` | boolean | | If true, queries must not use the index until the `xmin` of this `pg_index` row is below their `TransactionXmin` event horizon, because the table may contain broken HOT chains with incompatible rows that they can see |
| `indisready` | boolean | | If true, the index is currently ready for inserts. False means the index must be ignored by `INSERT` / `UPDATE` operations |
| `indislive` | boolean | | If false, the index is in process of being dropped, and should be ignored for all purposes |
| `indisreplident` | boolean | | If true this index has been chosen as "replica identity" using `ALTER TABLE ... REPLICA IDENTITY USING INDEX ...` |
| `indkey` | int2vector | pg_attribute.attnum | This is an array of `indnatts` values that indicate which table columns this index indexes. For example a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns make up the index key. A zero in this array indicates that the corresponding index attribute is an expression over the table columns, rather than a simple column reference. |
| `indcollation` | oidvector | | For each column in the index key, this contains the OID of the collation to use for the index. |
| `indclass` | oidvector | pg_opclass.oid | For each column in the index key this contains the OID of the operator class to use. |
| `indoption` | int2vector | | This is an array of `indnatts` values that store per-column flag bits. The meaning of the bits is defined by the index's access method. |
| `indexprs` | text | | Expression trees (in `nodeToString()` representation) for index attributes that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element for each zero entry in indkey. NULL if all index attributes are simple references. |
| `indpred` | text | | Expression tree (in `nodeToString()` representation) for partial index predicate. NULL if not a partial index. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.58 pg_inherits

The `pg_inherits` system catalog table records information about table inheritance hierarchies. There is one entry for each direct child table in the database. (Indirect inheritance can be determined by following chains of entries.) In WarehousePG, inheritance relationships are created by both the `INHERITS` clause (standalone inheritance) and the `PARTITION BY` clause (partitioned child table inheritance) of `CREATE TABLE`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `inhrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the child table. |
| `inhparent` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the parent table. |
| `inhseqno` | int4 | | If there is more than one direct parent for a child table (multiple inheritance), this number tells the order in which the inherited columns are to be arranged. The count starts at 1. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.59 pg_language

The `pg_language` system catalog table registers languages in which you can write functions or stored procedures. It is populated by `CREATE LANGUAGE`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `lannam e` | name | | Name of the language. |
| `lanown er` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the language. |
| `lanisp l` | boolean | | This is false for internal languages (such as SQL) and true for user-defined languages. Currently, `pg_dump` still uses this to determine which languages need to be dumped, but this may be replaced by a different mechanism in the future. |
| `lanplt rusted` | boolean | | True if this is a trusted language, which means that it is believed not to grant access to anything outside the normal SQL execution environment. Only superusers may create functions in untrusted languages. |
| `lanplc allfoid` | oid | pg_proc.oid | For noninternal languages this references the language handler, which is a special function that is responsible for running all functions that are written in the particular language. |
| `laninl ine` | oid | pg_proc.oid | This references a function that is responsible for running inline anonymous code blocks (see theDO command). Zero if anonymous blocks are not supported. |
| `lanval idator` | oid | pg_proc.oid | This references a language validator function that is responsible for checking the syntax and validity of new functions when they are created. Zero if no validator is provided. |
| `lanacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges for the language. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.60 pg_largeobject

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

The `pg_largeobject` system catalog table holds the data making up 'large objects'. A large object is identified by an OID assigned when it is created. Each large object is broken into segments or 'pages' small enough to be conveniently stored as rows in `pg_largeobject`. The amount of data per page is defined to be `LOBLKSIZE` (which is currently `BLCKSZ`/4, or typically 8K).

Each row of `pg_largeobject` holds data for one page of a large object, beginning at byte offset (*pageno* `* LOBLKSIZE`) within the object. The implementation allows sparse storage: pages may be missing, and may be shorter than `LOBLKSIZE` bytes even if they are not the last page of the object. Missing regions within a large object read as zeroes.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `loid` | oid | | Identifier of the large object that includes this page. |
| `pageno` | int4 | | Page number of this page within its large object (counting from zero). |
| `data` | bytea | | Actual data stored in the large object. This will never be more than `LOBLKSIZE` bytes and may be less. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.61 pg_locks

The `pg_locks` view provides access to information about the locks held by open transactions within WarehousePG.

`pg_locks` contains one row per active lockable object, requested lock mode, and relevant transaction. Thus, the same lockable object may appear many times if multiple transactions are holding or waiting for locks on it. An object with no current locks on it will not appear in the view at all.

There are several distinct types of lockable objects: whole relations (such as tables), individual pages of relations, individual tuples of relations, transaction IDs (both virtual and permanent IDs), and general database objects. Also, the right to extend a relation is represented as a separate lockable object.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `locktype` | text | | Type of the lockable object: `relation`, `extend`, `page`, `tuple`, `transactionid`, `object`, `userlock`, `resource queue`, or `advisory` |
| `database` | oid | pg_database.oid | OID of the database in which the object exists, zero if the object is a shared object, or NULL if the object is a transaction ID |
| `relation` | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the relation, or NULL if the object is not a relation or part of a relation |
| `page` | integer | | Page number within the relation, or NULL if the object is not a tuple or relation page |
| `tuple` | smallint | | Tuple number within the page, or NULL if the object is not a tuple |
| `virtualxid` | text | | Virtual ID of a transaction, or NULL if the object is not a virtual transaction ID |
| `transactionid` | xid | | ID of a transaction, or NULL if the object is not a transaction ID |
| `classid` | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the system catalog containing the object, or NULL if the object is not a general database object |
| `objid` | oid | any OID column | OID of the object within its system catalog, or NULL if the object is not a general database object |
| `objsubid` | smallint | | For a table column, this is the column number (the classid and objid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero. NULL if the object is not a general database object |
| `virtualtransaction` | text | | Virtual ID of the transaction that is holding or awaiting this lock |
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of the server process holding or awaiting this lock. NULL if the lock is held by a prepared transaction |
| `mode` | text | | Name of the lock mode held or desired by this process |
| `granted` | boolean | | True if lock is held, false if lock is awaited. |
| `fastpath` | boolean | | True if lock was taken via fastpath, false if lock is taken via main lock table. |
| `mppsessionid` | integer | | The id of the client session associated with this lock. |
| `mppiswriter` | boolean | | Specifies whether the lock is held by a writer process. |
| `gp_segment_id` | integer | | The WarehousePG segment id ( `dbid` ) where the lock is held. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.62 pg_matviews

The view `pg_matviews` provides access to useful information about each materialized view in the database.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaname` | name | pg_namespace.nspname | Name of the schema containing the materialized view |
| `matviewname` | name | pg_class.relname | Name of the materialized view |
| `matviewowner` | name | pg_authid.rolname | Name of the materialized view's owner |
| `tablespace` | name | pg_tablespace.spcname | Name of the tablespace containing the materialized view (NULL if default for the database) |
| `hasindexes` | boolean | | True if the materialized view has (or recently had) any indexes |
| `ispopulated` | boolean | | True if the materialized view is currently populated |
| `definition` | text | | Materialized view definition (a reconstructed `SELECT` command) |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.63 pg_max_external_files

The `pg_max_external_files` view shows the maximum number of external table files allowed per segment host when using the external table `file` protocol.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `hostname` | name | | The host name used to access a particular segment instance on a segment host. |
| `maxfiles` | bigint | | Number of primary segment instances on the host. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.64 pg_namespace

The `pg_namespace` system catalog table stores namespaces. A namespace is the structure underlying SQL schemas: each namespace can have a separate collection of relations, types, etc. without name conflicts.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `nspname` | name | | Name of the namespace |
| `nspowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the namespace |
| `nspacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges as given by `GRANT` and `REVOKE` |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.65 pg_opclass

The `pg_opclass` system catalog table defines index access method operator classes. Each operator class defines semantics for index columns of a particular data type and a particular index access method. An operator class essentially specifies that a particular operator family is applicable to a particular indexable column data type. The set of operators from the family that are actually usable with the indexed column are those that accept the column's data type as their left-hand input.

An operator class's `opcmethod` must match the `opfmethod` of its containing operator family. Also, there must be no more than one `pg_opclass` row having `opcdefault` true for any given combination of `opcmethod` and `opcintype`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `opcmethod` | oid | pg_am.oid | Index access method operator class is for |
| `opcname` | name | | Name of this operator class |
| `opcnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | Namespace of this operator class |
| `opcowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the operator class |
| `opcfamily` | oid | pg_opfamily.oid | Operator family containing the operator class |
| `opcintype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Data type that the operator class indexes |
| `opcdefault` | boolean | | True if this operator class is the default for the data type `opcintype` |
| `opckeytype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Type of data stored in index, or zero if same as `opcintype` |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.66 pg_operator

The `pg_operator` system catalog table stores information about operators, both built-in and those defined by `CREATE OPERATOR`. Unused column contain zeroes. For example, `oprleft` is zero for a prefix operator.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute, must be explicityly selected) |
| `oprname` | name | | Name of the operator |
| `oprnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace that contains this operator |
| `oprowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the operator |
| `oprkind` | char | | `b` = infix (both), `l` = prefix (left), `r` = postfix (right) |
| `oprcanmerge` | boolean | | This operator supports merge joins |
| `oprcanhash` | boolean | | This operator supports hash joins |
| `oprleft` | oid | pg_type.oid | Type of the left operand |
| `oprright` | oid | pg_type.oid | Type of the right operand |
| `oprresult` | oid | pg_type.oid | Type of the result |
| `oprcom` | oid | pg_operator.oid | Commutator of this operator, if any |
| `oprnegate` | oid | pg_operator.oid | Negator of this operator, if any |
| `oprcode` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Function that implements this operator |
| `oprrest` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Restriction selectivity estimation function for this operator |
| `oprjoin` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Join selectivity estimation function for this operator |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.67 pg_opfamily

The catalog `pg_opfamily` defines operator families. Each operator family is a collection of operators and associated support routines that implement the semantics specified for a particular index access method. Furthermore, the operators in a family are all compatible in a way that is specified by the access method. The operator family concept allows cross-data-type operators to be used with indexes and to be reasoned about using knowledge of access method semantics.

The majority of the information defining an operator family is not in its `pg_opfamily` row, but in the associated rows in pg_amop, pg_amproc, and pg_opclass.

| Name | Type | References | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `opfmethod` | oid | pg_am.oid | Index access method operator for this family |
| `opfname` | name | | Name of this operator family |
| `opfnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | Namespace of this operator family |
| `opfowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the operator family |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.68 pg_partition

The `pg_partition` system catalog table is used to track partitioned tables and their inheritance level relationships. Each row of `pg_partition` represents either the level of a partitioned table in the partition hierarchy, or a subpartition template description. The value of the attribute `paristemplate` determines what a particular row represents.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `parrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The object identifier of the table. |
| `parkind` | char | | The partition type - `R` for range or `L` for list. |
| `parlevel` | smallint | | The partition level of this row: 0 for the top-level parent table, 1 for the first level under the parent table, 2 for the second level, and so on. |
| `paristemplate` | boolean | | Whether or not this row represents a subpartition template definition (true) or an actual partitioning level (false). |
| `parnatts` | smallint | | The number of attributes that define this level. |
| `paratts` | int2vector | | An array of the attribute numbers (as in `pg_attribute.attnum`) of the attributes that participate in defining this level. |
| `parclass` | oidvector | pg_opclass.oid | The operator class identifier(s) of the partition columns. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.69 pg_partition_columns

The `pg_partition_columns` system view is used to show the partition key columns of a partitioned table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaname` | name | | The name of the schema the partitioned table is in. |
| `tablename` | name | | The table name of the top-level parent table. |
| `columnname` | name | | The name of the partition key column. |
| `partitionlevel` | smallint | | The level of this subpartition in the hierarchy. |
| `position_in_partition_key` | integer | | For list partitions you can have a composite (multi-column) partition key. This shows the position of the column in a composite key. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.70 pg_partition_encoding

The `pg_partition_encoding` system catalog table describes the available column compression options for a partition template.

| column | type | modifers | storage | description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `parencoid` | oid | not null | plain | |
| `parencattnum` | snallint | not null | plain | |
| `parencattoptions` | text [ ] | | extended | |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.71 pg_partition_rule

The `pg_partition_rule` system catalog table is used to track partitioned tables, their check constraints, and data containment rules. Each row of `pg_partition_rule` represents either a leaf partition (the bottom level partitions that contain data), or a branch partition (a top or mid-level partition that is used to define the partition hierarchy, but does not contain any data).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `paroid` | oid | pg_partition.oid | Row identifier of the partitioning level (from pg_partition) to which this partition belongs. In the case of a branch partition, the corresponding table (identified by `pg_partition_rule`) is an empty container table. In case of a leaf partition, the table contains the rows for that partition containment rule. |
| `parchildrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table identifier of the partition (child table). |
| `parparentrule` | oid | pg_partition_rule.paroid | The row identifier of the rule associated with the parent table of this partition. |
| `parname` | name | | The given name of this partition. |
| `parisdefault` | boolean | | Whether or not this partition is a default partition. |
| `parruleord` | smallint | | For range partitioned tables, the rank of this partition on this level of the partition hierarchy. |
| `parrangestartincl` | boolean | | For range partitioned tables, whether or not the starting value is inclusive. |
| `parrangeendincl` | boolean | | For range partitioned tables, whether or not the ending value is inclusive. |
| `parrangestart` | text | | For range partitioned tables, the starting value of the range. |
| `parrangeend` | text | | For range partitioned tables, the ending value of the range. |
| `parrangeevery` | text | | For range partitioned tables, the interval value of the `EVERY` clause. |
| `parlistvalues` | text | | For list partitioned tables, the list of values assigned to this partition. |
| `parreloptions` | text | | An array describing the storage characteristics of the particular partition. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.72 pg_partition_templates

The `pg_partition_templates` system view is used to show the subpartitions that were created using a subpartition template.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaname` | name | | The name of the schema the partitioned table is in. |
| `tablename` | name | | The table name of the top-level parent table. |
| `partitionname` | name | | The name of the subpartition (this is the name to use if referring to the partition in an `ALTER TABLE` command). `NULL` if the partition was not given a name at create time or generated by an `EVERY` clause. |
| `partitiontype` | text | | The type of subpartition (range or list). |
| `partitionlevel` | smallint | | The level of this subpartition in the hierarchy. |
| `partitionrank` | bigint | | For range partitions, the rank of the partition compared to other partitions of the same level. |
| `partitionposition` | smallint | | The rule order position of this subpartition. |
| `partitionlistvalues` | text | | For list partitions, the list value(s) associated with this subpartition. |
| `partitionrangestart` | text | | For range partitions, the start value of this subpartition. |
| `partitionstartinclusive` | boolean | | `T` if the start value is included in this subpartition. `F` if it is excluded. |
| `partitionrangeend` | text | | For range partitions, the end value of this subpartition. |
| `partitionendinclusive` | boolean | | `T` if the end value is included in this subpartition. `F` if it is excluded. |
| `partitioneveryclause` | text | | The `EVERY` clause (interval) of this subpartition. |
| `partitionisdefault` | boolean | | `T` if this is a default subpartition, otherwise `F`. |
| `partitionboundary` | text | | The entire partition specification for this subpartition. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.73 pg_partitions

The `pg_partitions` system view is used to show the structure of a partitioned table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaname` | name | | The name of the schema the partitioned table is in. |
| `tablename` | name | | The name of the top-level parent table. |
| `partitionschemaname` | name | | The namespace of the partition table. |
| `partitiontablename` | name | | The relation name of the partitioned table (this is the table name to use if accessing the partition directly). |
| `partitionname` | name | | The name of the partition (this is the name to use if referring to the partition in an `ALTER TABLE` command). `NULL` if the partition was not given a name at create time or generated by an `EVERY` clause. |
| `parentpartitiontablename` | name | | The relation name of the parent table one level up from this partition. |
| `parentpartitionname` | name | | The given name of the parent table one level up from this partition. |
| `partitiontype` | text | | The type of partition (range or list). |
| `partitionlevel` | smallint | | The level of this partition in the hierarchy. |
| `partitionrank` | bigint | | For range partitions, the rank of the partition compared to other partitions of the same level. |
| `partitionposition` | smallint | | The rule order position of this partition. |
| `partitionlistvalues` | text | | For list partitions, the list value(s) associated with this partition. |
| `partitionrangestart` | text | | For range partitions, the start value of this partition. |
| `partitionstartinclusive` | boolean | | `T` if the start value is included in this partition. `F` if it is excluded. |
| `partitionrangeend` | text | | For range partitions, the end value of this partition. |
| `partitionendinclusive` | boolean | | `T` if the end value is included in this partition. `F` if it is excluded. |
| `partitioneveryclause` | text | | The `EVERY` clause (interval) of this partition. |
| `partitionisdefault` | boolean | | `T` if this is a default partition, otherwise `F`. |
| `partitionboundary` | text | | The entire partition specification for this partition. |
| `parenttablespace` | text | | The tablespace of the parent table one level up from this partition. |
| `partitiontablespace` | text | | The tablespace of this partition. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.74 pg_pltemplate

The `pg_pltemplate` system catalog table stores template information for procedural languages. A template for a language allows the language to be created in a particular database by a simple `CREATE LANGUAGE` command, with no need to specify implementation details. Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_pltemplate` is shared across all databases of WarehousePG cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_pltemplate` per system, not one per database. This allows the information to be accessible in each database as it is needed.

There are not currently any commands that manipulate procedural language templates; to change the built-in information, a superuser must modify the table using ordinary `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `UPDATE` commands.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `tmplname` | name | | Name of the language this template is for |
| `tmpltrusted` | boolean | | True if language is considered trusted |
| `tmpldbacreate` | boolean | | True if language may be created by a database owner |
| `tmplhandler` | text | | Name of call handler function |
| `tmplinline` | text | | Name of anonymous-block handler function, or null if none |
| `tmplvalidator` | text | | Name of validator function, or NULL if none |
| `tmpllibrary` | text | | Path of shared library that implements language |
| `tmplacl` | aclitem[] | | Access privileges for template (not yet implemented). |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.75 pg_proc

The `pg_proc` system catalog table stores information about functions (or procedures), both built-in functions and those defined by `CREATE FUNCTION`. The table contains data for aggregate and window functions as well as plain functions. If `proisagg` is true, there should be a matching row in `pg_aggregate`.

For compiled functions, both built-in and dynamically loaded, `prosrc` contains the function's C-language name (link symbol). For all other currently-known language types, `prosrc` contains the function's source text. `probin` is unused except for dynamically-loaded C functions, for which it gives the name of the shared library file containing the function.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `proname` | name | | Name of the function |
| `pronamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace that contains this function |
| `proowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the function |
| `prolang` | oid | pg_language.oid | Implementation language or call interface of this function |
| `procost` | float4 | | Estimated execution cost (in cpu_operator_cost units); if `proretset` is `true`, identifies the cost per row returned |
| `prorows` | float4 | | Estimated number of result rows (zero if not `proretset`) |
| `provariadic` | oid | pg_type.oid | Data type of the variadic array parameter's elements, or zero if the function does not have a variadic parameter |
| `protransform` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Calls to this function can be simplified by this other function |
| `proisagg` | boolean | | Function is an aggregate function |
| `proiswindow` | boolean | | Function is a window function |
| `prosecdef` | boolean | | Function is a security definer (for example, a 'setuid' function) |
| `proleakproof` | boolean | | The function has no side effects. No information about the arguments is conveyed except via the return value. Any function that might throw an error depending on the values of its arguments is not leak-proof. |
| `proisstrict` | boolean | | Function returns NULL if any call argument is NULL. In that case the function will not actually be called at all. Functions that are not strict must be prepared to handle NULL inputs. |
| `proretset` | boolean | | Function returns a set (multiple values of the specified data type) |
| `provolatile` | char | | Tells whether the function's result depends only on its input arguments, or is affected by outside factors. `i` = *immutable* (always delivers the same result for the same inputs), `s` = *stable* (results (for fixed inputs) do not change within a scan), or `v` = *volatile* (results may change at any time or functions with side-effects). |
| `pronargs` | int2 | | Number of arguments |
| `pronargdefaults` | int2 | | Number of arguments that have default values |
| `prorettype` | oid | pg_type.oid | Data type of the return value |
| `proargtypes` | oidvector | pg_type.oid | An array with the data types of the function arguments. This includes only input arguments (including `INOUT` and `VARIADIC` arguments), and thus represents the call signature of the function. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| proallargtypes | oid[] | pg_type.oid | An array with the data types of the function arguments. This includes all arguments (including OUT and INOUT arguments); however, if all of the arguments are IN arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripting is 1-based, whereas for historical reasons proargtypes is subscripted from 0. |
| proargmodes | char[] | | An array with the modes of the function arguments: i = IN , o = OUT , b = INOUT , v = VARIADIC . If all the arguments are IN arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of proallargtypes , not proargtypes . |
| proargnames | text[] | | An array with the names of the function arguments. Arguments without a name are set to empty strings in the array. If none of the arguments have a name, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of proallargtypes not proargtypes . |
| proargdefaults | pg_node_tree | | Expression trees (in nodeToString() representation) for default argument values. This is a list with pronargdefaults elements, corresponding to the last N input arguments (i.e., the last N proargtypes positions). If none of the arguments have defaults, this field will be null. |
| prosrc | text | | This tells the function handler how to invoke the function. It might be the actual source code of the function for interpreted languages, a link symbol, a file name, or just about anything else, depending on the implementation language/call convention. |
| probin | text | | Additional information about how to invoke the function. Again, the interpretation is language-specific. |
| proconfig | text[] | | Function's local settings for run-time configuration variables. |
| proacl | aclitem[] | | Access privileges for the function as given by GRANT / REVOKE |
| prodataaccess | char | | Provides a hint regarding the type SQL statements that are included in the function: n - does not contain SQL, c - contains SQL, r - contains SQL that reads data, m - contains SQL that modifies data |
| proexeclocation | char | | Where the function runs when it is invoked: m - coordinator only, a - any segment instance, s - all segment instances, i - initplan. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.76 pg_resgroup

> **Note** The `pg_resgroup` system catalog table is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

The `pg_resgroup` system catalog table contains information about WarehousePG resource groups, which are used for managing concurrent statements, CPU, and memory resources. This table, defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsgname` | name | | The name of the resource group. |
| `parent` | oid | | Unused; reserved for future use. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.77 pg_resgroupcapability

> **Note** The `pg_resgroupcapability` system catalog table is valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

The `pg_resgroupcapability` system catalog table contains information about the capabilities and limits of defined WarehousePG resource groups. You can join this table to the pg_resgroup table by resource group object ID.

The `pg_resgroupcapability` table, defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `resgroupid` | oid | `pg_resgroup.oid` | The object ID of the associated resource group. |
| `reslimittype` | smallint | `` | The resource group limit type:<br><br>0 - Unknown<br><br>1 - Concurrency<br><br>2 - CPU<br><br>3 - Memory<br><br>4 - Memory shared quota<br><br>5 - Memory spill ratio<br><br>6 - Memory auditor<br><br>7 - CPU set |
| `value` | opaque type | | The specific value set for the resource limit referenced in this record. This value has the fixed type `text`, and will be converted to a different data type depending upon the limit referenced. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.78 pg_resourcetype

The `pg_resourcetype` system catalog table contains information about the extended attributes that can be assigned to WarehousePG resource queues. Each row details an attribute and inherent qualities such as its default setting, whether it is required, and the value to deactivate it (when allowed).

This table is populated only on the coordinator. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `restypid` | smallint | | The resource type ID. |
| `resname` | name | | The name of the resource type. |
| `resrequired` | boolean | | Whether the resource type is required for a valid resource queue. |
| `reshasdefault` | boolean | | Whether the resource type has a default value. When true, the default value is specified in reshasdefaultsetting. |
| `rescandisable` | boolean | | Whether the type can be removed or deactivated. When true, the default value is specified in resdisabledsetting. |
| `resdefaultsetting` | text | | Default setting for the resource type, when applicable. |
| `resdisabledsetting` | text | | The value that deactivates this resource type (when allowed). |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.79 pg_resqueue

> **Note** The `pg_resqueue` system catalog table is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

The `pg_resqueue` system catalog table contains information about WarehousePG resource queues, which are used for the resource management feature. This table is populated only on the coordinator. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsqname` | name | | The name of the resource queue. |
| `rsqcountlimit` | real | | The active query threshold of the resource queue. |
| `rsqcostlimit` | real | | The query cost threshold of the resource queue. |
| `rsqovercommit` | boolean | | Allows queries that exceed the cost threshold to run when the system is idle. |
| `rsqignorecostlimit` | real | | The query cost limit of what is considered a 'small query'. Queries with a cost under this limit will not be queued and run immediately. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.80 pg_resqueue_attributes

> **Note** The `pg_resqueue_attributes` view is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

The `pg_resqueue_attributes` view allows administrators to see the attributes set for a resource queue, such as its active statement limit, query cost limits, and priority.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsqname` | name | pg_resqueue.rsqname | The name of the resource queue. |
| `resname` | text | | The name of the resource queue attribute. |
| `resetting` | text | | The current value of a resource queue attribute. |
| `restypid` | integer | | System assigned resource type id. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.81 pg_resqueuecapability

> **Note** The `pg_resqueuecapability` system catalog table is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

The `pg_resqueuecapability` system catalog table contains information about the extended attributes, or capabilities, of existing WarehousePG resource queues. Only resource queues that have been assigned an extended capability, such as a priority setting, are recorded in this table. This table is joined to the pg_resqueue table by resource queue object ID, and to the pg_resourcetype table by resource type ID ( `restypid` ).

This table is populated only on the coordinator. This table is defined in the `pg_global` tablespace, meaning it is globally shared across all databases in the system.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rsqueueid` | oid | `pg_resqueue.oid` | The object ID of the associated resource queue. |
| `restypid` | smallint | `pg_resourcetype.restypid` | The resource type, derived from the *pg_resqueuecapability* system table. |
| `resetting` | opaque type | | The specific value set for the capability referenced in this record. Depending on the actual resource type, this value may have different data types. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.82 pg_rewrite

The `pg_rewrite` system catalog table stores rewrite rules for tables and views. `pg_class.relhasrules` must be true if a table has any rules in this catalog.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| rulename | name | | Rule name. |
| ev_class | oid | pg_class.oid | The table this rule is for. |
| ev_type | char | | Event type that the rule is for: 1 = SELECT, 2 = UPDATE, 3 = INSERT, 4 = DELETE |
| ev_enabled | char | | Controls in which session replication role mode the rule fires. Always O, rule fires in origin mode. |
| is_instead | bool | | True if the rule is an `INSTEAD` rule |
| ev_qual | pg_node_tree | | Expression tree (in the form of a `nodeToString()` representation) for the rule's qualifying condition |
| ev_action | pg_node_tree | | Query tree (in the form of a `nodeToString()` representation) for the rule's action |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.83 pg_roles

The view `pg_roles` provides access to information about database roles. This is simply a publicly readable view of pg_authid that blanks out the password field. This view explicitly exposes the OID column of the underlying table, since that is needed to do joins to other catalogs.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `rolname` | name | | Role name |
| `rolsuper` | bool | | Role has superuser privileges |
| `rolinherit` | bool | | Role automatically inherits privileges of roles it is a member of |
| `rolcreaterole` | bool | | Role may create more roles |
| `rolcreatedb` | bool | | Role may create databases |
| `rolcatupdate` | bool | | Role may update system catalogs directly. (Even a superuser may not do this unless this column is true.) |
| `rolcanlogin` | bool | | Role may log in. That is, this role can be given as the initial session authorization identifier |
| `rolconnlimit` | int4 | | For roles that can log in, this sets maximum number of concurrent connections this role can make. -1 means no limit |
| `rolpassword` | text | | Not the password (always reads as ********) |
| `rolvaliduntil` | timestamptz | | Password expiry time (only used for password authentication); NULL if no expiration |
| `rolconfig` | text[] | | Role-specific defaults for run-time configuration variables |
| `rolresqueue` | oid | pg_resqueue.oid | Object ID of the resource queue this role is assigned to. |
| `oid` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Object ID of role |
| `rolcreaterextgpfd` | bool | | Role may create readable external tables that use the gpfdist protocol. |
| `rolcreaterexthttp` | bool | | Role may create readable external tables that use the http protocol. |
| `rolcreatewextgpfd` | bool | | Role may create writable external tables that use the gpfdist protocol. |
| `rolresgroup` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | Object ID of the resource group to which this role is assigned. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.84 pg_rules

The view `pg_rules` provides access to useful information about query rewrite rules.

The `pg_rules` view excludes the `ON SELECT` rules of views and materialized views; those can be seen in `pg_views` and `pg_matviews`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `schemaname` | name | pg_namespace.nspname | Name of schema containing table |
| `tablename` | name | pg_class.relname | Name of table the rule is for |
| `rulename` | name | pg_rewrite.rulename | Name of rule |
| `definition` | text | | Rule definition (a reconstructed creation command) |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.85 pg_shdepend

The `pg_shdepend` system catalog table records the dependency relationships between database objects and shared objects, such as roles. This information allows WarehousePG to ensure that those objects are unreferenced before attempting to delete them. See also pg_depend, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects within a single database. Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdepend` is shared across all databases of WarehousePG cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdepend` per system, not one per database.

In all cases, a `pg_shdepend` entry indicates that the referenced object may not be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by `deptype`:

- **SHARED_DEPENDENCY_OWNER (o)** — The referenced object (which must be a role) is the owner of the dependent object.
- **SHARED_DEPENDENCY_ACL (a)** — The referenced object (which must be a role) is mentioned in the ACL (access control list) of the dependent object.
- **SHARED_DEPENDENCY_PIN (p)** — There is no dependent object; this type of entry is a signal that the system itself depends on the referenced object, and so that object must never be deleted. Entries of this type are created only by system initialization. The columns for the dependent object contain zeroes.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `dbid` | oid | pg_database.oid | The OID of the database the dependent object is in, or zero for a shared object. |
| `classid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in. |
| `objid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the specific dependent object. |
| `objsubid` | int4 | | For a table column, this is the column number. For all other object types, this column is zero. |
| `refclassid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in (must be a shared catalog). |
| `refobjid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the specific referenced object. |
| `refobjsubid` | int4 | | For a table column, this is the referenced column number. For all other object types, this column is zero. |
| `deptype` | char | | A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.86 pg_shdescription

The `pg_shdescription` system catalog table stores optional descriptions (comments) for shared database objects. Descriptions can be manipulated with the `COMMENT` command and viewed with `psql`'s `\d` meta-commands. See also pg_description, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects within a single database. Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdescription` is shared across all databases of a WarehousePG cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdescription` per system, not one per database.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `objoid` | oid | any OID column | The OID of the object this description pertains to. |
| `classoid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The OID of the system catalog this object appears in |
| `description` | text | | Arbitrary text that serves as the description of this object. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.87 pg_stat_activity

The view `pg_stat_activity` shows one row per server process with details about the associated user session and query. The columns that report data on the current query are available unless the parameter `stats_command_string` has been turned off. Furthermore, these columns are only visible if the user examining the view is a superuser or the same as the user owning the process being reported on.

The maximum length of the query text string stored in the column `query` can be controlled with the server configuration parameter `track_activity_query_size`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `datid` | oid | pg_database.oid | Database OID |
| `datname` | name | | Database name |
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of this backend |
| `sess_id` | integer | | Session ID |
| `usesysid` | oid | pg_authid.oid | OID of the user logged into this backend |
| `usename` | name | | Name of the user logged into this backend |
| `application_name` | text | | Name of the application that is connected to this backend |
| `client_addr` | inet | | IP address of the client connected to this backend. If this field is null, it indicates either that the client is connected via a Unix socket on the server machine or that this is an internal process such as autovacuum. |
| `client_hostname` | text | | Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of `client_addr`. This field will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when log_hostname is enabled. |
| `client_port` | integer | | TCP port number that the client is using for communication with this backend, or -1 if a Unix socket is used |
| `backend_start` | timestamptz | | Time backend process was started |
| `xact_start` | timestamptz | | Transaction start time |
| `query_start` | timestamptz | | Time query began execution |
| `state_change` | timestampz | | Time when the `state` was last changed |
| `waiting` | boolean | | True if waiting on a lock, false if not waiting |
| `state` | text | | Current overall state of this backend. Possible values are:<br>- `active`: The backend is running a query.<br>- `idle`: The backend is waiting for a new client command.<br>- `idle in transaction`: The backend is in a transaction, but is not currently running a query.<br>- `idle in transaction (aborted)`: This state is similar to idle in transaction, except one of the statements in the transaction caused an error.<br>- `fastpath function call`: The backend is running a fast-path function.<br>- `disabled`: This state is reported if `track_activities` is deactivated in this backend. |
| `query` | text | | Text of this backend's most recent query. If `state` is active this field shows the currently running query. In all other states, it shows the last query that was run. |
| `waiting_reason` | text | | Reason the server process is waiting. The value can be: lock, replication, or resgroup |
| `rsgid` | oid | pg_resgroup.oid | Resource group OID or `0`.<br>See Note. |
| `rsgname` | text | pg_resgroup.rsgname | Resource group name or `unknown`.<br>See Note. |
| `rsgqueueduration` | interval | | For a queued query, the total time the query has been queued. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Note on `rsgid` and `rsgname`

> **Note** When resource groups are enabled. Only query dispatcher (QD) processes will have a `rsgid` and `rsgname`. Other server processes such as a query executer (QE) process or session connection processes will have a `rsgid` value of `0` and a `rsgname` value of `unknown`. QE processes are managed by the same resource group as the dispatching QD process.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.88 pg_stat_all_indexes

The `pg_stat_all_indexes` view shows one row for each index in the current database that displays statistics about accesses to that specific index.

The `pg_stat_user_indexes` and `pg_stat_sys_indexes` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system indexes respectively.

In WarehousePG 6, the `pg_stat_*_indexes` views display access statistics for indexes only from the coordinator instance. Access statistics from segment instances are ignored. You can create views that display usage statistics that combine statistics from the coordinator and the segment instances, see Index Access Statistics from the Coordinator and Segment Instances.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `relid` | oid | OID of the table for this index |
| `indexrelid` | oid | OID of this index |
| `schemaname` | name | Name of the schema this index is in |
| `relname` | name | Name of the table for this index |
| `indexrelname` | name | Name of this index |
| `idx_scan` | bigint | Total number of index scans initiated on this index from all segment instances |
| `idx_tup_read` | bigint | Number of index entries returned by scans on this index |
| `idx_tup_fetch` | bigint | Number of live table rows fetched by simple index scans using this index |

#### Index Access Statistics from the Coordinator and Segment Instances

To display index access statistics that combine statistics from the coordinator and the segment instances you can create these views. A user requires `SELECT` privilege on the views to use them.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
-- Create these index access statistics views
--   pg_stat_all_indexes_gpdb6
--   pg_stat_sys_indexes_gpdb6
--   pg_stat_user_indexes_gpdb6

CREATE VIEW pg_stat_all_indexes_gpdb6 AS
SELECT
    s.relid,
    s.indexrelid,
    s.schemaname,
    s.relname,
    s.indexrelname,
    m.idx_scan,
    m.idx_tup_read,
    m.idx_tup_fetch
FROM
    (SELECT
         relid,
         indexrelid,
         schemaname,
         relname,
         indexrelname,
         sum(idx_scan) as idx_scan,
         sum(idx_tup_read) as idx_tup_read,
         sum(idx_tup_fetch) as idx_tup_fetch
     FROM gp_dist_random('pg_stat_all_indexes')
     WHERE relid >= 16384
     GROUP BY relid, indexrelid, schemaname, relname, indexrelname
     UNION ALL
     SELECT *
     FROM pg_stat_all_indexes
     WHERE relid < 16384) m, pg_stat_all_indexes s
WHERE m.relid = s.relid AND m.indexrelid = s.indexrelid;


CREATE VIEW pg_stat_sys_indexes_gpdb6 AS
    SELECT * FROM pg_stat_all_indexes_gpdb6
    WHERE schemaname IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema') OR
          schemaname ~ '^pg_toast';


CREATE VIEW pg_stat_user_indexes_gpdb6 AS
    SELECT * FROM pg_stat_all_indexes_gpdb6
    WHERE schemaname NOT IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema') AND
          schemaname !~ '^pg_toast';
```

Parent topic: System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.89 pg_stat_all_tables

The `pg_stat_all_tables` view shows one row for each table in the current database (including TOAST tables) to display statistics about accesses to that specific table.

The `pg_stat_user_tables` and `pg_stat_sys_table` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system tables respectively.

In WarehousePG 6, the `pg_stat_*_tables` views display access statistics for tables only from the coordinator instance. Access statistics from segment instances are ignored. You can create views that display usage statistics, see Table Access Statistics from the Coordinator and Segment Instances.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `relid` | oid | OID of a table |
| `schemaname` | name | Name of the schema that this table is in |
| `relname` | name | Name of this table |
| `seq_scan` | bigint | Total number of sequential scans initiated on this table from all segment instances |
| `seq_tup_read` | bigint | Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans |
| `idx_scan` | bigint | Total number of index scans initiated on this table from all segment instances |
| `idx_tup_fetch` | bigint | Number of live rows fetched by index scans |
| `n_tup_ins` | bigint | Number of rows inserted |
| `n_tup_upd` | bigint | Number of rows updated (includes HOT updated rows) |
| `n_tup_del` | bigint | Number of rows deleted |
| `n_tup_hot_upd` | bigint | Number of rows HOT updated (i.e., with no separate index update required) |
| `n_live_tup` | bigint | Estimated number of live rows |
| `n_dead_tup` | bigint | Estimated number of dead rows |
| `n_mod_since_analyze` | bigint | Estimated number of rows modified since this table was last analyzed |
| `last_vacuum` | timestamp with time zone | Last time this table was manually vacuumed (not counting `VACUUM FULL`) |
| `last_autovacuum` | timestamp with time zone | Last time this table was vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon[1] |
| `last_analyze` | timestamp with time zone | Last time this table was manually analyzed |
| `last_autoanalyze` | timestamp with time zone | Last time this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon[1] |
| `vacuum_count` | bigint | Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting `VACUUM FULL`) |
| `autovacuum_count` | bigint | Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon[1] |
| `analyze_count` | bigint | Number of times this table has been manually analyzed |
| `autoanalyze_count` | bigint | Number of times this table has been analyzed by the autovacuum daemon [1] |

> **Note** [1]In WarehousePG, the autovacuum daemon is deactivated and not supported for user defined databases.

#### Table Access Statistics from the Coordinator and Segment Instances

To display table access statistics that combine statistics from the coordinator and the segment instances you can create these views. A user requires `SELECT` privilege on the views to use them.

```
-- Create these table access statistics views
--   pg_stat_all_tables_gpdb6
--   pg_stat_sys_tables_gpdb6
--   pg_stat_user_tables_gpdb6

CREATE VIEW pg_stat_all_tables_gpdb6 AS
SELECT
    s.relid,
    s.schemaname,
    s.relname,
    m.seq_scan,
    m.seq_tup_read,
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
    m.idx_scan,
    m.idx_tup_fetch,
    m.n_tup_ins,
    m.n_tup_upd,
    m.n_tup_del,
    m.n_tup_hot_upd,
    m.n_live_tup,
    m.n_dead_tup,
    s.n_mod_since_analyze,
    s.last_vacuum,
    s.last_autovacuum,
    s.last_analyze,
    s.last_autoanalyze,
    s.vacuum_count,
    s.autovacuum_count,
    s.analyze_count,
    s.autoanalyze_count
FROM
    (SELECT
         relid,
         schemaname,
         relname,
         sum(seq_scan) as seq_scan,
         sum(seq_tup_read) as seq_tup_read,
         sum(idx_scan) as idx_scan,
         sum(idx_tup_fetch) as idx_tup_fetch,
         sum(n_tup_ins) as n_tup_ins,
         sum(n_tup_upd) as n_tup_upd,
         sum(n_tup_del) as n_tup_del,
         sum(n_tup_hot_upd) as n_tup_hot_upd,
         sum(n_live_tup) as n_live_tup,
         sum(n_dead_tup) as n_dead_tup,
         max(n_mod_since_analyze) as n_mod_since_analyze,
         max(last_vacuum) as last_vacuum,
         max(last_autovacuum) as last_autovacuum,
         max(last_analyze) as last_analyze,
         max(last_autoanalyze) as last_autoanalyze,
         max(vacuum_count) as vacuum_count,
         max(autovacuum_count) as autovacuum_count,
         max(analyze_count) as analyze_count,
         max(autoanalyze_count) as autoanalyze_count
     FROM gp_dist_random('pg_stat_all_tables')
     WHERE relid >= 16384
     GROUP BY relid, schemaname, relname
     UNION ALL
     SELECT *
     FROM pg_stat_all_tables
     WHERE relid < 16384) m, pg_stat_all_tables s
 WHERE m.relid = s.relid;


CREATE VIEW pg_stat_sys_tables_gpdb6 AS
    SELECT * FROM pg_stat_all_tables_gpdb6
    WHERE schemaname IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema') OR
          schemaname ~ '^pg_toast';


CREATE VIEW pg_stat_user_tables_gpdb6 AS
    SELECT * FROM pg_stat_all_tables_gpdb6
    WHERE schemaname NOT IN ('pg_catalog', 'information_schema') AND
          schemaname !~ '^pg_toast';
```

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.90 pg_stat_last_operation

The pg_stat_last_operation table contains metadata tracking information about database objects (tables, views, etc.).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `classid` | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the system catalog containing the object. |
| `objid` | oid | any OID column | OID of the object within its system catalog. |
| `staactionname` | name | | The action that was taken on the object. |
| `stasysid` | oid | pg_authid.oid | A foreign key to pg_authid.oid. |
| `stausename` | name | | The name of the role that performed the operation on this object. |
| `stasubtype` | text | | The type of object operated on or the subclass of operation performed. |
| `statime` | timestamp with timezone | | The timestamp of the operation. This is the same timestamp that is written to the WarehousePG server log files in case you need to look up more detailed information about the operation in the logs. |

The `pg_stat_last_operation` table contains metadata tracking information about operations on database objects. This information includes the object id, DDL action, user, type of object, and operation timestamp. WarehousePG updates this table when a database object is created, altered, truncated, vacuumed, analyzed, or partitioned, and when privileges are granted to an object.

If you want to track the operations performed on a specific object, use the `objid` value. Because the `stasubtype` value can identify either the type of object operated on or the subclass of operation performed, it is not a suitable parameter when querying the `pg_stat_last_operation` table.

The following example creates and replaces a view, and then shows how to use `objid` as a query parameter on the `pg_stat_last_operation` table.

```
testdb=# CREATE VIEW trial AS SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration;
CREATE VIEW
testdb=# CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW trial AS SELECT * FROM gp_segment_configuration;
CREATE VIEW
testdb=# SELECT * FROM pg_stat_last_operation WHERE objid='trial'::regclass::oid;
 classid | objid | staactionname | stasysid | stausename | stasubtype |            statime
---------+-------+---------------+----------+------------+------------+-------------------------------
  1259   | 24735 | CREATE        |       10 | gpadmin    | VIEW       | 2020-04-07 16:44:28.808811+00
  1259   | 24735 | ALTER         |       10 | gpadmin    | SET        | 2020-04-07 16:44:38.110615+00
(2 rows)
```

Notice that the `pg_stat_last_operation` table entry for the view `REPLACE` operation specifies the `ALTER` action ( `staactionname` ) and the `SET` subtype ( `stasubtype` ).

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.91 pg_stat_last_shoperation

The pg_stat_last_shoperation table contains metadata tracking information about global objects (roles, tablespaces, etc.).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| classid | oid | pg_class.oid | OID of the system catalog containing the object. |
| `objid` | oid | any OID column | OID of the object within its system catalog. |
| `staactionname` | name | | The action that was taken on the object. |
| `stasysid` | oid | | |
| `stausename` | name | | The name of the role that performed the operation on this object. |
| `stasubtype` | text | | The type of object operated on or the subclass of operation performed. |
| `statime` | timestamp with timezone | | The timestamp of the operation. This is the same timestamp that is written to the WarehousePG server log files in case you need to look up more detailed information about the operation in the logs. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.92 pg_stat_operations

The view `pg_stat_operations` shows details about the last operation performed on a database object (such as a table, index, view or database) or a global object (such as a role).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `classname` | text | | The name of the system table in the `pg_catalog` schema where the record about this object is stored ( `pg_class` =relations, `pg_database` =databases, `pg_namespace` =schemas, `pg_authid` =roles) |
| `objname` | name | | The name of the object. |
| `objid` | oid | | The OID of the object. |
| `schemaname` | name | | The name of the schema where the object resides. |
| `usestatus` | text | | The status of the role who performed the last operation on the object ( `CURRENT` =a currently active role in the system, `DROPPED` =a role that no longer exists in the system, `CHANGED` =a role name that exists in the system, but has changed since the last operation was performed). |
| `username` | name | | The name of the role that performed the operation on this object. |
| `actionname` | name | | The action that was taken on the object. |
| `subtype` | text | | The type of object operated on or the subclass of operation performed. |
| `statime` | timestamptz | | The timestamp of the operation. This is the same timestamp that is written to the WarehousePG server log files in case you need to look up more detailed information about the operation in the logs. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.93 pg_stat_partition_operations

The `pg_stat_partition_operations` view shows details about the last operation performed on a partitioned table.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `classname` | text | | The name of the system table in the `pg_catalog` schema where the record about this object is stored (always `pg_class` for tables and partitions). |
| `objname` | name | | The name of the object. |
| `objid` | oid | | The OID of the object. |
| `schemaname` | name | | The name of the schema where the object resides. |
| `usestatus` | text | | The status of the role who performed the last operation on the object ( `CURRENT` =a currently active role in the system, `DROPPED` =a role that no longer exists in the system, `CHANGED` =a role name that exists in the system, but its definition has changed since the last operation was performed). |
| `usename` | name | | The name of the role that performed the operation on this object. |
| `actionname` | name | | The action that was taken on the object. |
| `subtype` | text | | The type of object operated on or the subclass of operation performed. |
| `statime` | timestamptz | | The timestamp of the operation. This is the same timestamp that is written to the WarehousePG server log files in case you need to look up more detailed information about the operation in the logs. |
| `partitionlevel` | smallint | | The level of this partition in the hierarchy. |
| `parenttablename` | name | | The relation name of the parent table one level up from this partition. |
| `parentschemaname` | name | | The name of the schema where the parent table resides. |
| `parent_relid` | oid | | The OID of the parent table one level up from this partition. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.94 pg_stat_replication

The `pg_stat_replication` view contains metadata of the `walsender` process that is used for WarehousePG coordinator mirroring.

The gp_stat_replication view contains `walsender` replication information for coordinator and segment mirroring.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of WAL sender backend process. |
| `usesysid` | integer | | User system ID that runs the WAL sender backend process |
| `usename` | name | | User name that runs WAL sender backend process. |
| `application_name` | oid | | Client application name. |
| `client_addr` | name | | Client IP address. |
| `client_hostname` | text | | The host name of the client machine. |
| `client_port` | integer | | Client port number. |
| `backend_start` | timestamp | | Operation start timestamp. |
| `backend_xmin` | xid | | The current backend's `xmin` horizon. |
| `state` | text | | WAL sender state. The value can be:<br>`startup`<br>`backup`<br>`catchup`<br>`streaming` |
| `sent_location` | text | | WAL sender xlog record sent location. |
| `write_location` | text | | WAL receiver xlog record write location. |
| `flush_location` | text | | WAL receiver xlog record flush location. |
| `replay_location` | text | | Standby xlog record replay location. |
| `sync_priority` | text | | Priority. the value is `1`. |
| `sync_state` | text | | WAL sender synchronization state. The value is `sync`. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.95 pg_statistic

The `pg_statistic` system catalog table stores statistical data about the contents of the database. Entries are created by `ANALYZE` and subsequently used by the query optimizer. There is one entry for each table column that has been analyzed. Note that all the statistical data is inherently approximate, even assuming that it is up-to-date.

`pg_statistic` also stores statistical data about the values of index expressions. These are described as if they were actual data columns; in particular, `starelid` references the index. No entry is made for an ordinary non-expression index column, however, since it would be redundant with the entry for the underlying table column. Currently, entries for index expressions always have `stainherit = false`.

When `stainherit = false`, there is normally one entry for each table column that has been analyzed. If the table has inheritance children, WarehousePG creates a second entry with `stainherit = true`. This row represents the column's statistics over the inheritance tree, for example, statistics for the data you would see with `SELECT column FROM table*`, whereas the `stainherit = false` row represents the results of `SELECT column FROM ONLY table`.

Since different kinds of statistics may be appropriate for different kinds of data, `pg_statistic` is designed not to assume very much about what sort of statistics it stores. Only extremely general statistics (such as nullness) are given dedicated columns in `pg_statistic`. Everything else is stored in slots, which are groups of associated columns whose content is identified by a code number in one of the slot's columns.

Statistical information about a table's contents should be considered sensitive (for example: minimum and maximum values of a salary column). `pg_stats` is a publicly readable view on `pg_statistic` that only exposes information about those tables that are readable by the current user.

> **Caution** Diagnostic tools such as `gpsd` and `minirepro` collect sensitive information from `pg_statistic`, such as histogram boundaries, in a clear, readable form. Always review the output files of these utilities to ensure that the contents are acceptable for transport outside of the database in your organization.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `starelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | The table or index that the described column belongs to. |
| `staattnum` | int2 | pg_attribute.attnum | The number of the described column. |
| `stainherit` | bool | | If true, the statistics include inheritance child columns, not just the values in the specified relations. |
| `stanullfrac` | float4 | | The fraction of the column's entries that are null. |
| `stawidth` | int4 | | The average stored width, in bytes, of nonnull entries. |
| `stadistinct` | float4 | | The number of distinct nonnull data values in the column. A value greater than zero is the actual number of distinct values. A value less than zero is the negative of a fraction of the number of rows in the table (for example, a column in which values appear about twice on the average could be represented by `stadistinct` = -0.5). A zero value means the number of distinct values is unknown. |
| `stakind*N*` | int2 | | A code number indicating the kind of statistics stored in the `N` th slot of the `pg_statistic` row. |
| `staop*N*` | oid | pg_operator.oid | An operator used to derive the statistics stored in the `N` th slot. For example, a histogram slot would show the `<` operator that defines the sort order of the data. |
| `stanumbers*N*` | float4[] | | Numerical statistics of the appropriate kind for the `N` th slot, or NULL if the slot kind does not involve numerical values. |
| `stavalues*N*` | anyarray | | Column data values of the appropriate kind for the `N` th slot, or NULL if the slot kind does not store any data values. Each array's element values are actually of the specific column's data type, so there is no way to define these columns' type more specifically than `anyarray`. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.96 pg_stat_resqueues

> **Note** The `pg_stat_resqueues` view is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

The `pg_stat_resqueues` view allows administrators to view metrics about a resource queue's workload over time. To allow statistics to be collected for this view, you must enable the `stats_queue_level` server configuration parameter on the WarehousePG coordinator instance. Enabling the collection of these metrics does incur a small performance penalty, as each statement submitted through a resource queue must be logged in the system catalog tables.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `queueid` | oid | | The OID of the resource queue. |
| `queuename` | name | | The name of the resource queue. |
| `n_queries_exec` | bigint | | Number of queries submitted for execution from this resource queue. |
| `n_queries_wait` | bigint | | Number of queries submitted to this resource queue that had to wait before they could run. |
| `elapsed_exec` | bigint | | Total elapsed execution time for statements submitted through this resource queue. |
| `elapsed_wait` | bigint | | Total elapsed time that statements submitted through this resource queue had to wait before they were run. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.97 pg_tablespace

The `pg_tablespace` system catalog table stores information about the available tablespaces. Tables can be placed in particular tablespaces to aid administration of disk layout. Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_tablespace` is shared across all databases of a WarehousePG cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_tablespace` per system, not one per database.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `spcname` | name | | Tablespace name. |
| `spcowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the tablespace, usually the user who created it. |
| `spcacl` | aclitem[] | | Tablespace access privileges. |
| `spcoptions` | text[] | | Tablespace contentID locations. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.98 pg_trigger

The `pg_trigger` system catalog table stores triggers on tables.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support triggers.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `tgrelid` | oid | *pg_class.oid*<br><br>Note that WarehousePG does not enforce referential integrity. | The table this trigger is on. |
| `tgname` | name | | Trigger name (must be unique among triggers of same table). |
| `tgfoid` | oid | *pg_proc.oid*<br><br>Note that WarehousePG does not enforce referential integrity. | The function to be called. |
| `tgtype` | int2 | | Bit mask identifying trigger conditions. |
| `tgenabled` | boolean | | True if trigger is enabled. |
| `tgisinternal` | boolean | | True if trigger is internally generated (usually, to enforce the constraint identified by tgconstraint). |
| `tgconstrrelid` | oid | *pg_class.oid*<br><br>Note that WarehousePG does not enforce referential integrity. | The table referenced by an referential integrity constraint. |
| `tgconstrindid` | oid | *pg_class.oid* | The index supporting a unique, primary key, or referential integrity constraint. |
| `tgconstraint` | oid | *pg_constraint.oid* | The `pg_constraint` entry associated with the trigger, if any. |
| `tgdeferrable` | boolean | | True if deferrable. |
| `tginitdeferred` | boolean | | True if initially deferred. |
| `tgnargs` | int2 | | Number of argument strings passed to trigger function. |
| `tgattr` | int2vector | | Currently not used. |
| `tgargs` | bytea | | Argument strings to pass to trigger, each NULL-terminated. |
| `tgqual` | pg_node_tree | | Expression tree (in `nodeToString()` representation) for the trigger's `WHEN` condition, or null if none. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.99 pg_type

The `pg_type` system catalog table stores information about data types. Base types (scalar types) are created with `CREATE TYPE`, and domains with `CREATE DOMAIN`. A composite type is automatically created for each table in the database, to represent the row structure of the table. It is also possible to create composite types with `CREATE TYPE AS`.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `oid` | oid | | Row identifier (hidden attribute; must be explicitly selected) |
| `typname` | name | | Data type name |
| `typnamespace` | oid | pg_namespace.oid | The OID of the namespace that contains this type |
| `typowner` | oid | pg_authid.oid | Owner of the type |
| `typlen` | int2 | | For a fixed-size type, `typlen` is the number of bytes in the internal representation of the type. But for a variable-length type, `typlen` is negative. `-1` indicates a 'varlena' type (one that has a length word), `-2` indicates a null-terminated C string. |
| `typbyval` | boolean | | Determines whether internal routines pass a value of this type by value or by reference. `typbyval` had better be false if `typlen` is not 1, 2, or 4 (or 8 on machines where Datum is 8 bytes). Variable-length types are always passed by reference. Note that `typbyval` can be false even if the length would allow pass-by-value. |
| `typtype` | char | | `b` for a base type, `c` for a composite type, `d` for a domain, `e` for an enum type, `p` for a pseudo-type, or `r` for a range type. See also `typrelid` and `typbasetype`. |
| `typcategory` | char | | Arbitrary classification of data types that is used by the parser to determine which implicit casts should be preferred. See Category Codes. |
| `typispreferred` | boolean | | True if the type is a preferred cast target within its `typcategory` |
| `typisdefined` | boolean | | True if the type is defined, false if this is a placeholder entry for a not-yet-defined type. When false, nothing except the type name, namespace, and OID can be relied on. |
| `typdelim` | char | | Character that separates two values of this type when parsing array input. Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element data type, not the array data type. |
| `typrelid` | oid | pg_class.oid | If this is a composite type (see `typtype`), then this column points to the `pg_class` entry that defines the corresponding table. (For a free-standing composite type, the `pg_class` entry does not really represent a table, but it is needed anyway for the type's `pg_attribute` entries to link to.) Zero for non-composite types. |
| `typelem` | oid | pg_type.oid | If not `0` then it identifies another row in `pg_type`. The current type can then be subscripted like an array yielding values of type `typelem`. A "true" array type is variable length (`typlen` = `-1`), but some fixed-length (`typlen` > `0`) types also have nonzero `typelem`, for example `name` and `point`. If a fixed-length type has a `typelem` then its internal representation must be some number of values of the `typelem` data type with no other data. Variable-length array types have a header defined by the array subroutines. |
| `typarray` | oid | pg_type.oid | If not 0, identifies another row in `pg_type`, which is the "true" array type having this type as its element. Use `pg_type.typarray` to locate the array type associated with a specific type. |
| `typinput` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Input conversion function (text format) |
| `typoutput` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Output conversion function (text format) |
| `typreceive` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Input conversion function (binary format), or 0 if none |
| `typsend` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Output conversion function (binary format), or 0 if none |
| `typmodin` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Type modifier input function, or 0 if the type does not support modifiers |
| `typmodout` | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Type modifier output function, or 0 to use the standard format |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| typanalyze | regproc | pg_proc.oid | Custom ANALYZE function, or 0 to use the standard function |
| typalign | char | | The alignment required when storing a value of this type. It applies to storage on disk as well as most representations of the value inside WarehousePG. When multiple values are stored consecutively, such as in the representation of a complete row on disk, padding is inserted before a datum of this type so that it begins on the specified boundary. The alignment reference is the beginning of the first datum in the sequence. Possible values are:<br>c = char alignment (no alignment needed).<br>s = short alignment (2 bytes on most machines).<br>i = int alignment (4 bytes on most machines).<br>d = double alignment (8 bytes on many machines, but not all). |
| typstorage | char | | For varlena types (those with typlen = -1) tells if the type is prepared for toasting and what the default strategy for attributes of this type should be. Possible values are:<br>p : Value must always be stored plain.<br>e : Value can be stored in a secondary relation (if relation has one, see pg_class.reltoastrelid ).<br>m : Value can be stored compressed inline.<br>x : Value can be stored compressed inline or stored in secondary storage.<br>Note that m columns can also be moved out to secondary storage, but only as a last resort ( e and x columns are moved first). |
| typnotnull | boolean | | Represents a not-null constraint on a type. Used for domains only. |
| typbasetype | oid | pg_type.oid | Identifies the type that a domain is based on. Zero if this type is not a domain. |
| typtypmod | int4 | | Domains use typtypmod to record the typmod to be applied to their base type (-1 if base type does not use a typmod ). -1 if this type is not a domain. |
| typndims | int4 | | The number of array dimensions for a domain over an array (if typbasetype is an array type). Zero for types other than domains over array types. |
| typcollation | oid | pg_collation.oid | Specifies the collation of the type. Zero if the type does not support collations. The value is DEFAULT_COLLATION_OID for a base type that supports collations. A domain over a collatable type can have some other collation OID if one was specified for the domain. |
| typdefaultbin | pg_node_tree | | If not null, it is the nodeToString() representation of a default expression for the type. This is only used for domains. |
| typdefault | text | | Null if the type has no associated default value. If typdefaultbin is not null, typdefault must contain a human-readable version of the default expression represented by typdefaultbin . If typdefaultbin is null and typdefault is not, then typdefault is the external representation of the type's default value, which may be fed to the type's input converter to produce a constant. |
| typacl | aclitem[] | | Access privileges; see GRANT and REVOKE for details. |

### Category codes

The following table lists the system-defined values of typcategory . Any future additions to this list will also be upper-case ASCII letters. All other ASCII characters are reserved for user-defined categories.

| Code | Category |
|---|---|
| A | Array types |
| B | Boolean types |
| C | Composite types |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Code | Category |
|---|---|
| D | Date/time types |
| E | Enum types |
| G | Geometric types |
| I | Network address types |
| N | Numeric types |
| P | Pseudo-types |
| R | Range types |
| S | String types |
| T | Timespan types |
| U | User-defined types |
| V | Bit-string types |
| X | `unknown` type |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.100 pg_type_encoding

The `pg_type_encoding` system catalog table contains the column storage type information.

| column | type | modifers | storage | description |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| `typeid` | oid | not null | plain | Foreign key to pg_attribute |
| `typoptions` | text [ ] | | extended | The actual options |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.101 pg_user_mapping

The system catalog table `pg_user_mapping` stores the mappings from local user to remote user. You must have administrator privileges to view this catalog. Access to this catalog is restricted from normal users, use the `pg_user_mappings` view instead.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `umuser` | oid | pg_authid.oid | OID of the local role being mapped, 0 if the user mapping is public. |
| `umserver` | oid | pg_foreign_server.oid | OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping. |
| `umoptions` | text[] | | User mapping-specific options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.102 pg_user_mappings

The `pg_user_mappings` view provides access to information about user mappings. This view is essentially a public-readble view of the `pg_user_mapping` system catalog table that omits the options field if the user does not have access rights to view it.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `umid` | oid | pg_user_mapping.oid | OID of the user mapping. |
| `srvid` | oid | pg_foreign_server.oid | OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping. |
| `srvname` | text | pg_foreign_server.srvname | Name of the foreign server. |
| `umuser` | oid | pg_authid.oid | OID of the local role being mapped, 0 if the user mapping is public. |
| `usename` | name | | Name of the local user to be mapped. |
| `umoptions` | text[] | | User mapping-specific options, as "keyword=value" strings. |

To protect password information stored as a user mapping option, the `umoptions` column reads as null unless one of the following applies:

- The current user is the user being mapped, and owns the server or holds `USAGE` privilege on it.
- The current user is the server owner and the mapping is for `PUBLIC`.
- The current user is a superuser.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.103 user_mapping_options

The `user_mapping_options` view contains all of the options defined for user mappings in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those user mappings to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `authorization_identifier` | sql_identifier | | Name of the user being mapped, or `PUBLIC` if the mapping is public. |
| `foreign_server_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign server used by this mapping is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_server_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign server used by this mapping. |
| `option_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of an option. |
| `option_value` | character_data | | Value of the option. This column will display null unless:<br>- The current user is the user being mapped.<br>- The mapping is for `PUBLIC` and the current user is the foreign server owner.<br>- The current user is a superuser.<br>The intent is to protect password information stored as a user mapping option. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.104 user_mappings

The `user_mappings` view contains all of the user mappings defined in the current database. WarehousePG displays only those user mappings to which the current user has access (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `authorization_identifier` | sql_identifier | | Name of the user being mapped, or `PUBLIC` if the mapping is public. |
| `foreign_server_catalog` | sql_identifier | | Name of the database in which the foreign server used by this mapping is defined (always the current database). |
| `foreign_server_name` | sql_identifier | | Name of the foreign server used by this mapping. |

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.105 gp_global_sequence

The `gp_global_sequence` table contains the log sequence number position in the transaction log, which is used by the file replication process to determine the file blocks to replicate from a primary to a mirror segment.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `sequence_num` | bigint | | Log sequence number position in the transaction log |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.106 gp_stat_archiver

The `gp_stat_archiver` view contains data about the WAL archiver process of the cluster. It displays one row per segment.

| column | type | references | description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `archived_count` | bigint | Number of WAL files that have been successfully archived. | |
| `last_archived_wal` | text | Name of the last WAL file successfully archived. | |
| `last_archived_time` | timestamp with time zone | Time of the last successful archive operation. | |
| `failed_count` | bigint | Number of failed attempts for archiving WAL files. | |
| `last_failed_wal` | text | Name of the WAL file of the last failed archival operation. | |
| `last_failed_time` | timestamp with time zone | Time of the last failed archival operation. | |
| `stats_reset` | timestamp with time zone | Time at which these statistics were last reset. | |
| `gp_segment_id` | int | The id of the segment to which the data being archived belongs. | |

> **Note** As this is not a `pg_catalog` view, you must run the following command to make this view available:

```
CREATE EXTENSION gp_pitr;
```

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.1.107 gp_suboverflowed_backend

The `gp_suboverflowed_backend` view allows administrators to identify sessions in which a backend has subtransaction overflows, which can cause query performance degradation in the system, including catalog queries.

| column | type | description |
|---|---|---|
| `segid` | integer | The id of the segment containing the suboverflowed backend. |
| `pids` | integer[] | A list of the pids of all suboverflowed backends on this segment. |

> **Note** As this is not a `pg_catalog` view, you must run the following command to make this view available:

```
CREATE EXTENSION gp_subtransaction_overflow;
```

For more information on handling suboverflowed backends to prevent performance issues, see Checking for and Terminating Overflowed Backends.

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs Definitions

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.2 System Tables

- gp_configuration_history
- gp_distribution_policy
- gp_fastsequence
- gp_global_sequence
- gp_id
- gp_stat_replication
- gp_segment_configuration
- gp_version_at_initdb
- gpexpand.status
- gpexpand.status_detail
- pg_aggregate
- pg_am
- pg_amop
- pg_amproc
- pg_appendonly
- pg_appendonly_alter_column (not supported)
- pg_attrdef
- pg_attribute
- pg_auth_members
- pg_authid
- pg_autovacuum (not supported)
- pg_cast
- pg_class
- pg_constraint
- pg_conversion
- pg_database
- pg_db_role_setting
- pg_depend
- pg_description
- pg_exttable
- pg_foreign_data_wrapper
- pg_foreign_server
- pg_foreign_table
- pg_index
- pg_inherits
- pg_language
- pg_largeobject
- pg_namespace
- pg_opclass
- pg_operator
- pg_opfamily
- pg_partition
- pg_partition_rule
- pg_pltemplate
- pg_proc
- pg_resgroup
- pg_resgroupcapability
- pg_resourcetype
- pg_resqueue
- pg_resqueuecapability
- pg_rewrite
- pg_shdepend
- pg_shdescription
- pg_stat_last_operation
- pg_stat_last_shoperation
- pg_stat_replication
- pg_statistic
- pg_tablespace
- pg_trigger
- pg_type
- pg_user_mapping

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.8.3 System Views

WarehousePG provides the following system views not available in PostgreSQL.

- gp_distributed_log
- gp_distributed_xacts
- gp_endpoints
- gp_pgdatabase
- gp_resgroup_config
- gp_resgroup_status
- gp_resgroup_status_per_host
- gp_resgroup_status_per_segment
- gp_resqueue_status
- gp_segment_endpoints
- gp_session_endpoints
- gp_suboverflowed_backend
- gp_stat_archiver
- gp_transaction_log
- gpexpand.expansion_progress
- pg_cursors
- pg_matviews
- pg_max_external_files
- pg_partition_columns
- pg_partition_templates
- pg_partitions
- pg_resqueue_attributes
- pg_resqueue_status (Deprecated. Use gp_toolkit.gp_resqueue_status.)
- pg_stat_activity
- pg_stat_all_indexes
- pg_stat_all_tables
- pg_stat_replication
- pg_stat_resqueues
- session_level_memory_consumption (See Monitoring a WarehousePG cluster.)

For more information about the standard system views supported in PostgreSQL and WarehousePG, see the following sections of the PostgreSQL documentation:

- System Views
- Statistics Collector Views
- The Information Schema

**Parent topic:** System Catalogs

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.9 The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

WarehousePG provides an administrative schema called `gp_toolkit` that you can use to query the system catalogs, log files, and operating environment for system status information. The `gp_toolkit` schema contains a number of views that you can access using SQL commands. The `gp_toolkit` schema is accessible to all database users, although some objects may require superuser permissions. For convenience, you may want to add the `gp_toolkit` schema to your schema search path. For example:

```
=> ALTER ROLE myrole SET search_path TO myschema,gp_toolkit;
```

This documentation describes the most useful views in `gp_toolkit`. You may notice other objects (views, functions, and external tables) within the `gp_toolkit` schema that are not described in this documentation (these are supporting objects to the views described in this section).

> **Caution** Do not change database objects in the gp_toolkit schema. Do not create database objects in the schema. Changes to objects in the schema might affect the accuracy of administrative information returned by schema objects. Any changes made in the gp_toolkit schema are lost when the database is backed up and then restored with the `gpbackup` and `gprestore` utilities.

These are the categories for views in the `gp_toolkit` schema.

- Checking for Tables that Need Routine Maintenance
- Checking for Locks
- Checking Append-Optimized Tables
- Viewing WarehousePG Server Log Files
- Checking Server Configuration Files
- Checking for Failed Segments
- Checking Resource Group Activity and Status
- Checking Resource Queue Activity and Status
- Checking Query Disk Spill Space Usage
- Viewing Users and Groups (Roles)
- Checking Database Object Sizes and Disk Space
- Checking for Uneven Data Distribution

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

### Checking for Tables that Need Routine Maintenance

The following views can help identify tables that need routine table maintenance ( `VACUUM` and/or `ANALYZE` ).

- gp_bloat_diag
- gp_stats_missing

The `VACUUM` or `VACUUM FULL` command reclaims disk space occupied by deleted or obsolete rows. Because of the MVCC transaction concurrency model used in WarehousePG, data rows that are deleted or updated still occupy physical space on disk even though they are not visible to any new transactions. Expired rows increase table size on disk and eventually slow down scans of the table.

The `ANALYZE` command collects column-level statistics needed by the query optimizer. WarehousePG uses a cost-based query optimizer that relies on database statistics. Accurate statistics allow the query optimizer to better estimate selectivity and the number of rows retrieved by a query operation in order to choose the most efficient query plan.

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_bloat_diag

This view shows regular heap-storage tables that have bloat (the actual number of pages on disk exceeds the expected number of pages given the table statistics). Tables that are bloated require a `VACUUM` or a `VACUUM FULL` in order to reclaim disk space occupied by deleted or obsolete rows. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see the tables that they have permission to access.

> **Note** For diagnostic functions that return append-optimized table information, see Checking Append-Optimized Tables.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| bdirelid | Table object id. |
| bdinspname | Schema name. |
| bdirelname | Table name. |
| bdirelpages | Actual number of pages on disk. |
| bdiexppages | Expected number of pages given the table data. |
| bdidiag | Bloat diagnostic message. |

#### gp_stats_missing

This view shows tables that do not have statistics and therefore may require an `ANALYZE` be run on the table.

> **Note** By default, `gp_stats_missing` does not display data for materialized views. Refer to Including Data for Materialized Views for instructions on adding this data to the `gp_stats_missing*` view output.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| smischema | Schema name. |
| smitable | Table name. |
| smisize | Does this table have statistics? False if the table does not have row count and row sizing statistics recorded in the system catalog, which may indicate that the table needs to be analyzed. This will also be false if the table does not contain any rows. For example, the parent tables of partitioned tables are always empty and will always return a false result. |
| smicols | Number of columns in the table. |
| smirecs | The total number of columns in the table that have statistics recorded. |

### Checking for Locks

When a transaction accesses a relation (such as a table), it acquires a lock. Depending on the type of lock acquired, subsequent transactions may have to wait before they can access the same relation. For more information on the types of locks, see "Managing Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. WarehousePG resource queues (used for resource management) also use locks to control the admission of queries into the system.

The `gp_locks_*` family of views can help diagnose queries and sessions that are waiting to access an object due to a lock.

- gp_locks_on_relation
- gp_locks_on_resqueue

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_locks_on_relation

This view shows any locks currently being held on a relation, and the associated session information about the query associated with the lock. For more information on the types of locks, see "Managing Data" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see the locks for relations that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| lorlocktype | Type of the lockable object: `relation`, `extend`, `page`, `tuple`, `transactionid`, `object`, `userlock`, `resource queue`, or `advisory` |
| lordatabase | Object ID of the database in which the object exists, zero if the object is a shared object. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| lorrelname | The name of the relation. |
| lorrelation | The object ID of the relation. |
| lortransaction | The transaction ID that is affected by the lock. |
| lorpid | Process ID of the server process holding or awaiting this lock. NULL if the lock is held by a prepared transaction. |
| lormode | Name of the lock mode held or desired by this process. |
| lorgranted | Displays whether the lock is granted (true) or not granted (false). |
| lorcurrentquery | The current query in the session. |

#### gp_locks_on_resqueue

> **Note** The `gp_locks_on_resqueue` view is valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

This view shows any locks currently being held on a resource queue, and the associated session information about the query associated with the lock. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see the locks associated with their own sessions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| lorusename | Name of the user running the session. |
| lorrsqname | The resource queue name. |
| lorlocktype | Type of the lockable object: `resource queue` |
| lorobjid | The ID of the locked transaction. |
| lortransaction | The ID of the transaction that is affected by the lock. |
| lorpid | The process ID of the transaction that is affected by the lock. |
| lormode | The name of the lock mode held or desired by this process. |
| lorgranted | Displays whether the lock is granted (true) or not granted (false). |
| lorwaiting | Displays whether or not the session is waiting. |

### Checking Append-Optimized Tables

The `gp_toolkit` schema includes a set of diagnostic functions you can use to investigate the state of append-optimized tables.

When an append-optimized table (or column-oriented append-optimized table) is created, another table is implicitly created, containing metadata about the current state of the table. The metadata includes information such as the number of records in each of the table's segments.

Append-optimized tables may have non-visible rows—rows that have been updated or deleted, but remain in storage until the table is compacted using `VACUUM`. The hidden rows are tracked using an auxiliary visibility map table, or visimap.

The following functions let you access the metadata for append-optimized and column-oriented tables and view non-visible rows.

For most of the functions, the input argument is `regclass`, either the table `name` or the `oid` of a table.

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### __gp_aovisimap_compaction_info(oid)

This function displays compaction information for an append-optimized table. The information is for the on-disk data files on WarehousePG segments that store the table data. You can use the information to determine the data files that will be compacted by a `VACUUM` operation on an append-optimized table.

> **Note** Until a VACUUM operation deletes the row from the data file, deleted or updated data rows occupy physical space on disk even though they are hidden to new transactions. The configuration parameter gp_appendonly_compaction controls the functionality of the `VACUUM` command.

This table describes the __gp_aovisimap_compaction_info function output table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| content | WarehousePG segment ID. |
| datafile | ID of the data file on the segment. |
| compaction_possible | The value is either `t` or `f`. The value `t` indicates that the data in data file be compacted when a VACUUM operation is performed.<br>The server configuration parameter `gp_appendonly_compaction_threshold` affects this value. |
| hidden_tupcount | In the data file, the number of hidden (deleted or updated) rows. |
| total_tupcount | In the data file, the total number of rows. |
| percent_hidden | In the data file, the ratio (as a percentage) of hidden (deleted or updated) rows to total rows. |

**__gp_aoseg(regclass)**

This function returns metadata information contained in the append-optimized table's on-disk segment file.

The input argument is the name or the oid of an append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| segno | The file segment number. |
| eof | The effective end of file for this file segment. |
| tupcount | The total number of tuples in the segment, including invisible tuples. |
| varblockcount | The total number of varblocks in the file segment. |
| eof_uncompressed | The end of file if the file segment were uncompressed. |
| modcount | The number of data modification operations. |
| state | The state of the file segment. Indicates if the segment is active or ready to be dropped after compaction. |

**__gp_aoseg_history(regclass)**

This function returns metadata information contained in the append-optimized table's on-disk segment file. It displays all different versions (heap tuples) of the aoseg meta information. The data is complex, but users with a deep understanding of the system may find it useful for debugging.

The input argument is the name or the oid of an append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_tid | The id of the tuple. |
| gp_xmin | The id of the earliest transaction. |
| gp_xmin_status | Status of the gp_xmin transaction. |
| gp_xmin_commit_ | The commit distribution id of the gp_xmin transaction. |
| gp_xmax | The id of the latest transaction. |
| gp_xmax_status | The status of the latest transaction. |
| gp_xmax_commit_ | The commit distribution id of the gp_xmax transaction. |
| gp_command_id | The id of the query command. |
| gp_infomask | A bitmap containing state information. |
| gp_update_tid | The ID of the newer tuple if the row is updated. |
| gp_visibility | The tuple visibility status. |
| segno | The number of the segment in the segment file. |
| tupcount | The number of tuples, including hidden tuples. |
| eof | The effective end of file for the segment. |
| eof_uncompressed | The end of file for the segment if data were uncompressed. |
| modcount | A count of data modifications. |
| state | The status of the segment. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### __gp_aocsseg(regclass)

This function returns metadata information contained in a column-oriented append-optimized table's on-disk segment file, excluding non-visible rows. Each row describes a segment for a column in the table.

The input argument is the name or the oid of a column-oriented append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_tid | The table id. |
| segno | The segment number. |
| column_num | The column number. |
| physical_segno | The number of the segment in the segment file. |
| tupcount | The number of rows in the segment, excluding hidden tuples. |
| eof | The effective end of file for the segment. |
| eof_uncompressed | The end of file for the segment if the data were uncompressed. |
| modcount | A count of data modification operations for the segment. |
| state | The status of the segment. |

#### __gp_aocsseg_history(regclass)

This function returns metadata information contained in a column-oriented append-optimized table's on-disk segment file. Each row describes a segment for a column in the table. The data is complex, but users with a deep understanding of the system may find it useful for debugging.

The input argument is the name or the oid of a column-oriented append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_tid | The oid of the tuple. |
| gp_xmin | The earliest transaction. |
| gp_xmin_status | The status of the gp_xmin transaction. |
| gp_xmin_ | Text representation of gp_xmin. |
| gp_xmax | The latest transaction. |
| gp_xmax_status | The status of the gp_xmax transaction. |
| gp_xmax_ | Text representation of gp_max. |
| gp_command_id | ID of the command operating on the tuple. |
| gp_infomask | A bitmap containing state information. |
| gp_update_tid | The ID of the newer tuple if the row is updated. |
| gp_visibility | The tuple visibility status. |
| segno | The segment number in the segment file. |
| column_num | The column number. |
| physical_segno | The segment containing data for the column. |
| tupcount | The total number of tuples in the segment. |
| eof | The effective end of file for the segment. |
| eof_uncompressed | The end of file for the segment if the data were uncompressed. |
| modcount | A count of the data modification operations. |
| state | The state of the segment. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### __gp_aovisimap(regclass)

This function returns the tuple ID, the segment file, and the row number of each non-visible tuple according to the visibility map.

The input argument is the name or the oid of an append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| tid | The tuple id. |
| segno | The number of the segment file. |
| row_num | The row number of a row that has been deleted or updated. |

#### __gp_aovisimap_hidden_info(regclass)

This function returns the numbers of hidden and visible tuples in the segment files for an append-optimized table.

The input argument is the name or the oid of an append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| segno | The number of the segment file. |
| hidden_tupcount | The number of hidden tuples in the segment file. |
| total_tupcount | The total number of tuples in the segment file. |

#### __gp_aovisimap_entry(regclass)

This function returns information about each visibility map entry for the table.

The input argument is the name or the oid of an append-optimized table.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| segno | Segment number of the visibility map entry. |
| first_row_num | The first row number of the entry. |
| hidden_tupcount | The number of hidden tuples in the entry. |
| bitmap | A text representation of the visibility bitmap. |

### Viewing WarehousePG Server Log Files

Each component of a WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, standby coordinator, primary segments, and mirror segments) keeps its own server log files. The `gp_log_*` family of views allows you to issue SQL queries against the server log files to find particular entries of interest. The use of these views require superuser permissions.

- gp_log_command_timings
- gp_log_database
- gp_log_master_concise
- gp_log_system

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_log_command_timings

This view uses an external table to read the log files on the coordinator and report the run time of SQL commands in a database session. The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| logsession | The session identifier (prefixed with "con"). |
| logcmdcount | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd"). |
| logdatabase | The name of the database. |
| loguser | The name of the database user. |
| logpid | The process id (prefixed with "p"). |
| logtimemin | The time of the first log message for this command. |
| logtimemax | The time of the last log message for this command. |
| logduration | Statement duration from start to end time. |

**gp_log_database**

This view uses an external table to read the server log files of the entire WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, segments, and mirrors) and lists log entries associated with the current database. Associated log entries can be identified by the session id (logsession) and command id (logcmdcount). The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| logtime | The timestamp of the log message. |
| loguser | The name of the database user. |
| logdatabase | The name of the database. |
| logpid | The associated process id (prefixed with "p"). |
| logthread | The associated thread count (prefixed with "th"). |
| loghost | The segment or coordinator host name. |
| logport | The segment or coordinator port. |
| logsessiontime | Time session connection was opened. |
| logtransaction | Global transaction id. |
| logsession | The session identifier (prefixed with "con"). |
| logcmdcount | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd"). |
| logsegment | The segment content identifier (prefixed with "seg" for primary or "mir" for mirror. The coordinator always has a content id of -1). |
| logslice | The slice id (portion of the query plan being run). |
| logdistxact | Distributed transaction id. |
| loglocalxact | Local transaction id. |
| logsubxact | Subtransaction id. |
| logseverity | LOG, ERROR, FATAL, PANIC, DEBUG1 or DEBUG2. |
| logstate | SQL state code associated with the log message. |
| logmessage | Log or error message text. |
| logdetail | Detail message text associated with an error message. |
| loghint | Hint message text associated with an error message. |
| logquery | The internally-generated query text. |
| logquerypos | The cursor index into the internally-generated query text. |
| logcontext | The context in which this message gets generated. |
| logdebug | Query string with full detail for debugging. |
| logcursorpos | The cursor index into the query string. |
| logfunction | The function in which this message is generated. |
| logfile | The log file in which this message is generated. |
| logline | The line in the log file in which this message is generated. |
| logstack | Full text of the stack trace associated with this message. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_log_master_concise

This view uses an external table to read a subset of the log fields from the coordinator log file. The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| logtime | The timestamp of the log message. |
| logdatabase | The name of the database. |
| logsession | The session identifier (prefixed with "con"). |
| logcmdcount | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd"). |
| logseverity | The log severity level. |
| logmessage | Log or error message text. |

#### gp_log_system

This view uses an external table to read the server log files of the entire WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, segments, and mirrors) and lists all log entries. Associated log entries can be identified by the session id (logsession) and command id (logcmdcount). The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| logtime | The timestamp of the log message. |
| loguser | The name of the database user. |
| logdatabase | The name of the database. |
| logpid | The associated process id (prefixed with "p"). |
| logthread | The associated thread count (prefixed with "th"). |
| loghost | The segment or coordinator host name. |
| logport | The segment or coordinator port. |
| logsessiontime | Time session connection was opened. |
| logtransaction | Global transaction id. |
| logsession | The session identifier (prefixed with "con"). |
| logcmdcount | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd"). |
| logsegment | The segment content identifier (prefixed with "seg" for primary or "mir" for mirror. The coordinator always has a content id of -1). |
| logslice | The slice id (portion of the query plan being run). |
| logdistxact | Distributed transaction id. |
| loglocalxact | Local transaction id. |
| logsubxact | Subtransaction id. |
| logseverity | LOG, ERROR, FATAL, PANIC, DEBUG1 or DEBUG2. |
| logstate | SQL state code associated with the log message. |
| logmessage | Log or error message text. |
| logdetail | Detail message text associated with an error message. |
| loghint | Hint message text associated with an error message. |
| logquery | The internally-generated query text. |
| logquerypos | The cursor index into the internally-generated query text. |
| logcontext | The context in which this message gets generated. |
| logdebug | Query string with full detail for debugging. |
| logcursorpos | The cursor index into the query string. |
| logfunction | The function in which this message is generated. |
| logfile | The log file in which this message is generated. |
| logline | The line in the log file in which this message is generated. |
| logstack | Full text of the stack trace associated with this message. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Checking Server Configuration Files

Each component of a WarehousePG cluster (coordinator, standby coordinator, primary segments, and mirror segments) has its own server configuration file ( `postgresql.conf` ). The following `gp_toolkit` objects can be used to check parameter settings across all primary `postgresql.conf` files in the system:

- gp_param_setting('parameter_name')
- gp_param_settings_seg_value_diffs

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_param_setting('parameter_name')

This function takes the name of a server configuration parameter and returns the `postgresql.conf` value for the coordinator and each active segment. This function is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| paramsegment | The segment content id (only active segments are shown). The coordinator content id is always -1. |
| paramname | The name of the parameter. |
| paramvalue | The value of the parameter. |

**Example:**

```
SELECT * FROM gp_param_setting('max_connections');
```

#### gp_param_settings_seg_value_diffs

Server configuration parameters that are classified as *local* parameters (meaning each segment gets the parameter value from its own `postgresql.conf` file), should be set identically on all segments. This view shows local parameter settings that are inconsistent. Parameters that are supposed to have different values (such as `port` ) are not included. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| psdname | The name of the parameter. |
| psdvalue | The value of the parameter. |
| psdcount | The number of segments that have this value. |

## Checking for Failed Segments

The gp_pgdatabase_invalid view can be used to check for down segments.

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_pgdatabase_invalid

This view shows information about segments that are marked as down in the system catalog. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| pgdbidbid | The segment dbid. Every segment has a unique dbid. |
| pgdbiisprimary | Is the segment currently acting as the primary (active) segment? (t or f) |
| pgdbicontent | The content id of this segment. A primary and mirror will have the same content id. |
| pgdbivalid | Is this segment up and valid? (t or f) |
| pgdbidefinedprimary | Was this segment assigned the role of primary at system initialization time? (t or f) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Checking Resource Group Activity and Status

> **Note** The resource group activity and status views described in this section are valid only when resource group-based resource management is active.

Resource groups manage transactions to avoid exhausting system CPU and memory resources. Every database user is assigned a resource group. WarehousePG evaluates every transaction submitted by a user against the limits configured for the user's resource group before running the transaction.

You can use the `gp_resgroup_config` view to check the configuration of each resource group. You can use the `gp_resgroup_status*` views to display the current transaction status and resource usage of each resource group.

- gp_resgroup_config
- gp_resgroup_status
- gp_resgroup_status_per_host
- gp_resgroup_status_per_segment

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_resgroup_config

The `gp_resgroup_config` view allows administrators to see the current CPU, memory, and concurrency limits for a resource group.

This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| groupid | The ID of the resource group. |
| groupname | The name of the resource group. |
| concurrency | The concurrency ( `CONCURRENCY` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| cpu_rate_limit | The CPU limit ( `CPU_RATE_LIMIT` ) value specified for the resource group, or -1. |
| memory_limit | The memory limit ( `MEMORY_LIMIT` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| memory_shared_quota | The shared memory quota ( `MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| memory_spill_ratio | The memory spill ratio ( `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO` ) value specified for the resource group. |
| memory_auditor | The memory auditor for the resource group. |
| cpuset | The CPU cores reserved for the resource group on the coordinator host and segment hosts, or -1. |

#### gp_resgroup_status

The `gp_resgroup_status` view allows administrators to see status and activity for a resource group. It shows how many queries are waiting to run and how many queries are currently active in the system for each resource group. The view also displays current memory and CPU usage for the resource group.

> **Note** Resource groups use the Linux control groups (cgroups) configured on the host systems. The cgroups are used to manage host system resources. When resource groups use cgroups that are as part of a nested set of cgroups, resource group limits are relative to the parent cgroup allotment. For information about nested cgroups and WarehousePG resource group limits, see Using Resource Groups.

This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| rsgname | The name of the resource group. |
| groupid | The ID of the resource group. |
| num_running | The number of transactions currently running in the resource group. |
| num_queueing | The number of currently queued transactions for the resource group. |
| num_queued | The total number of queued transactions for the resource group since the WarehousePG cluster was last started, excluding the num_queueing. |
| num_executed | The total number of transactions run in the resource group since the WarehousePG cluster was last started, excluding the num_running. |
| total_queue_duration | The total time any transaction was queued since the WarehousePG cluster was last started. |
| cpu_usage | A set of key-value pairs. For each segment instance (the key), the value is the real-time, per-segment instance CPU core usage by a resource group. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of CPU cores that are used by the resource group for the segment instance. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| memory_usage | The real-time memory usage of the resource group on each WarehousePG segment's host. |

The `cpu_usage` field is a JSON-formatted, key:value string that identifies, for each resource group, the per-segment instance CPU core usage. The key is the segment id. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores used by the segment instance's resource group on the segment host; the maximum value is 1.00. The total CPU usage of all segment instances running on a host should not exceed the `gp_resource_group_cpu_limit`. Example `cpu_usage` column output:

```
{"-1":0.01, "0":0.31, "1":0.31}
```

In the example, segment `0` and segment `1` are running on the same host; their CPU usage is the same.

The `memory_usage` field is also a JSON-formatted, key:value string. The string contents differ depending upon the type of resource group. For each resource group that you assign to a role (default memory auditor `vmtracker`), this string identifies the used and available fixed and shared memory quota allocations on each segment. The key is segment id. The values are memory values displayed in MB units. The following example shows `memory_usage` column output for a single segment for a resource group that you assign to a role:

```
"0":{"used":0, "available":76, "quota_used":-1, "quota_available":60, "shared_used":0, "shared_available":16}
```

For each resource group that you assign to an external component, the `memory_usage` JSON-formatted string identifies the memory used and the memory limit on each segment. The following example shows `memory_usage` column output for an external component resource group for a single segment:

```
"1":{"used":11, "limit_granted":15}
```

> **Note** See the `gp_resgroup_status_per_host` and `gp_resgroup_status_per_segment` views, described below, for more user-friendly display of CPU and memory usage.

#### gp_resgroup_status_per_host

The gp_resgroup_status_per_host view displays the real-time CPU and memory usage (MBs) for each resource group on a per-host basis. The view also displays available and granted group fixed and shared memory for each resource group on a host.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| `rsgname` | The name of the resource group. |
| `groupid` | The ID of the resource group. |
| `hostname` | The hostname of the segment host. |
| `cpu` | The real-time CPU core usage by the resource group on a host. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores that are used by the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_used` | The real-time memory usage of the resource group on the host. This total includes resource group fixed and shared memory. It also includes global shared memory used by the resource group. |
| `memory_available` | The unused fixed and shared memory for the resource group that is available on the host. This total does not include available resource group global shared memory. |
| `memory_quota_used` | The real-time fixed memory usage for the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_quota_available` | The fixed memory available to the resource group on the host. |
| `memory_shared_used` | The group shared memory used by the resource group on the host. If any global shared memory is used by the resource group, this amount is included in the total as well. |
| `memory_shared_available` | The amount of group shared memory available to the resource group on the host. Resource group global shared memory is not included in this total. |

Sample output for the `gp_resgroup_status_per_host` view:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
 rsgname       | groupid | hostname   | cpu  | memory_used | memory_available | memory_quota_used |
memory_quota_available | memory_shared_used | memory_shared_available
---------------+---------+------------+------+-------------+------------------+-------------------+------------------------
--------------------+---------------------
 admin_group   | 6438    | my-desktop | 0.84 | 1           | 271              | 68                | 68
| 0                  | 136
 default_group | 6437    | my-desktop | 0.00 | 0           | 816              | 0                 | 400
| 0                  | 416
(2 rows)
```

#### gp_resgroup_status_per_segment

The gp_resgroup_status_per_segment view displays the real-time CPU and memory usage (MBs) for each resource group on a per-segment-instance and per-host basis. The view also displays available and granted group fixed and shared memory for each resource group and segment instance combination on the host.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| `rsgname` | The name of the resource group. |
| `groupid` | The ID of the resource group. |
| `hostname` | The hostname of the segment host. |
| `segment_id` | The content ID for a segment instance on the segment host. |
| `cpu` | The real-time, per-segment instance CPU core usage by the resource group on the host. The value is the sum of the percentages (as a decimal value) of the CPU cores that are used by the resource group for the segment instance. |
| `memory_used` | The real-time memory usage of the resource group for the segment instance on the host. This total includes resource group fixed and shared memory. It also includes global shared memory used by the resource group. |
| `memory_available` | The unused fixed and shared memory for the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_quota_used` | The real-time fixed memory usage for the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_quota_available` | The fixed memory available to the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_shared_used` | The group shared memory used by the resource group for the segment instance on the host. |
| `memory_shared_available` | The amount of group shared memory available for the segment instance on the host. Resource group global shared memory is not included in this total. |

Query output for this view is similar to that of the `gp_resgroup_status_per_host` view, and breaks out the CPU and memory (used and available) for each segment instance on each host.

### Checking Resource Queue Activity and Status

> **Note** The resource queue activity and status views described in this section are valid only when resource queue-based resource management is active.

The purpose of resource queues is to limit the number of active queries in the system at any given time in order to avoid exhausting system resources such as memory, CPU, and disk I/O. All database users are assigned to a resource queue, and every statement submitted by a user is first evaluated against the resource queue limits before it can run. The `gp_resq_*` family of views can be used to check the status of statements currently submitted to the system through their respective resource queue. Note that statements issued by superusers are exempt from resource queuing.

- gp_resq_activity
- gp_resq_activity_by_queue
- gp_resq_priority_statement
- gp_resq_role
- gp_resqueue_status

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_resq_activity

For the resource queues that have active workload, this view shows one row for each active statement submitted through a resource queue. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| resqprocpid | Process ID assigned to this statement (on the coordinator). |
| resqrole | User name. |
| resqoid | Resource queue object id. |
| resqname | Resource queue name. |
| resqstart | Time statement was issued to the system. |
| resqstatus | Status of statement: running, waiting or cancelled. |

#### gp_resq_activity_by_queue

For the resource queues that have active workload, this view shows a summary of queue activity. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| resqoid | Resource queue object id. |
| resqname | Resource queue name. |
| resqlast | Time of the last statement issued to the queue. |
| resqstatus | Status of last statement: running, waiting or cancelled. |
| resqtotal | Total statements in this queue. |

#### gp_resq_priority_statement

This view shows the resource queue priority, session ID, and other information for all statements currently running in the WarehousePG cluster. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| rqpdatname | The database name that the session is connected to. |
| rqpusename | The user who issued the statement. |
| rqpsession | The session ID. |
| rqpcommand | The number of the statement within this session (the command id and session id uniquely identify a statement). |
| rqppriority | The resource queue priority for this statement (MAX, HIGH, MEDIUM, LOW). |
| rqpweight | An integer value associated with the priority of this statement. |
| rqpquery | The query text of the statement. |

#### gp_resq_role

This view shows the resource queues associated with a role. This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| rrrolname | Role (user) name. |
| rrrsqname | The resource queue name assigned to this role. If a role has not been explicitly assigned to a resource queue, it will be in the default resource queue (*pg_default*). |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_resqueue_status

This view allows administrators to see status and activity for a resource queue. It shows how many queries are waiting to run and how many queries are currently active in the system from a particular resource queue.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| `queueid` | The ID of the resource queue. |
| `rsqname` | The name of the resource queue. |
| `rsqcountlimit` | The active query threshold of the resource queue. A value of -1 means no limit. |
| `rsqcountvalue` | The number of active query slots currently being used in the resource queue. |
| `rsqcostlimit` | The query cost threshold of the resource queue. A value of -1 means no limit. |
| `rsqcostvalue` | The total cost of all statements currently in the resource queue. |
| `rsqmemorylimit` | The memory limit for the resource queue. |
| `rsqmemoryvalue` | The total memory used by all statements currently in the resource queue. |
| `rsqwaiters` | The number of statements currently waiting in the resource queue. |
| `rsqholders` | The number of statements currently running on the system from this resource queue. |

### Checking Query Disk Spill Space Usage

The *gp_workfile_** views show information about all the queries that are currently using disk spill space. WarehousePG creates work files on disk if it does not have sufficient memory to run the query in memory. This information can be used for troubleshooting and tuning queries. The information in the views can also be used to specify the values for the WarehousePG configuration parameters `gp_workfile_limit_per_query` and `gp_workfile_limit_per_segment`.

- gp_workfile_entries
- gp_workfile_usage_per_query
- gp_workfile_usage_per_segment

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_workfile_entries

This view contains one row for each operator using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time. The view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers only to see information for the databases that they have permission to access.

| Column | Type | References | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `datname` | name | | WarehousePG name. |
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of the server process. |
| `sess_id` | integer | | Session ID. |
| `command_cnt` | integer | | Command ID of the query. |
| `usename` | name | | Role name. |
| `query` | text | | Current query that the process is running. |
| `segid` | integer | | Segment ID. |
| `slice` | integer | | The query plan slice. The portion of the query plan that is being run. |
| `optype` | text | | The query operator type that created the work file. |
| `size` | bigint | | The size of the work file in bytes. |
| `numfiles` | integer | | The number of files created. |
| `prefix` | text | | Prefix used when naming a related set of workfiles. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_workfile_usage_per_query

This view contains one row for each query using disk space for workfiles on a segment at the current time. The view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers only to see information for the databases that they have permission to access.

| Column | Type | References | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `datname` | name | | WarehousePG name. |
| `pid` | integer | | Process ID of the server process. |
| `sess_id` | integer | | Session ID. |
| `command_cnt` | integer | | Command ID of the query. |
| `usename` | name | | Role name. |
| `query` | text | | Current query that the process is running. |
| `segid` | integer | | Segment ID. |
| `size` | numeric | | The size of the work file in bytes. |
| `numfiles` | bigint | | The number of files created. |

#### gp_workfile_usage_per_segment

This view contains one row for each segment. Each row displays the total amount of disk space used for workfiles on the segment at the current time. The view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers only to see information for the databases that they have permission to access.

| Column | Type | References | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| `segid` | smallint | | Segment ID. |
| `size` | numeric | | The total size of the work files on a segment. |
| `numfiles` | bigint | | The number of files created. |

### Viewing Users and Groups (Roles)

It is frequently convenient to group users (roles) together to ease management of object privileges: that way, privileges can be granted to, or revoked from, a group as a whole. In WarehousePG this is done by creating a role that represents the group, and then granting membership in the group role to individual user roles.

The gp_roles_assigned view can be used to see all of the roles in the system, and their assigned members (if the role is also a group role).

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_roles_assigned

This view shows all of the roles in the system, and their assigned members (if the role is also a group role). This view is accessible to all users.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| raroleid | The role object ID. If this role has members (users), it is considered a *group* role. |
| rarolename | The role (user or group) name. |
| ramemberid | The role object ID of the role that is a member of this role. |
| ramembername | Name of the role that is a member of this role. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Checking Database Object Sizes and Disk Space

The `gp_size_*` family of views can be used to determine the disk space usage for a distributed WarehousePG, schema, table, or index. The following views calculate the total size of an object across all primary segments (mirrors are not included in the size calculations).

> **Note** By default, the `gp_size_*` views do not display data for materialized views. Refer to Including Data for Materialized Views for instructions on adding this data to `gp_size_*` view output.

- gp_size_of_all_table_indexes
- gp_size_of_database
- gp_size_of_index
- gp_size_of_partition_and_indexes_disk
- gp_size_of_schema_disk
- gp_size_of_table_and_indexes_disk
- gp_size_of_table_and_indexes_licensing
- gp_size_of_table_disk
- gp_size_of_table_uncompressed
- gp_disk_free

The table and index sizing views list the relation by object ID (not by name). To check the size of a table or index by name, you must look up the relation name (`relname`) in the `pg_class` table. For example:

```
SELECT relname as name, sotdsize as size, sotdtoastsize as
toast, sotdadditionalsize as other
FROM gp_size_of_table_disk as sotd, pg_class
WHERE sotd.sotdoid=pg_class.oid ORDER BY relname;
```

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_size_of_all_table_indexes

This view shows the total size of all indexes for a table. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see relations that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| soatioid | The object ID of the table |
| soatisize | The total size of all table indexes in bytes |
| soatischemaname | The schema name |
| soatitablename | The table name |

#### gp_size_of_database

This view shows the total size of a database. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see databases that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sodddatname | The name of the database |
| sodddatsize | The size of the database in bytes |

#### gp_size_of_index

This view shows the total size of an index. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see relations that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| soioid | The object ID of the index |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| soitableoid | The object ID of the table to which the index belongs |
| soisize | The size of the index in bytes |
| soiindexschemaname | The name of the index schema |
| soiindexname | The name of the index |
| soitableschemaname | The name of the table schema |
| soitablename | The name of the table |

#### gp_size_of_partition_and_indexes_disk

This view shows the size on disk of partitioned child tables and their indexes. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see relations that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sopaidparentoid | The object ID of the parent table |
| sopaidpartitionoid | The object ID of the partition table |
| sopaidpartitiontablesize | The partition table size in bytes |
| sopaidpartitionindexessize | The total size of all indexes on this partition |
| Sopaidparentschemaname | The name of the parent schema |
| Sopaidparenttablename | The name of the parent table |
| Sopaidpartitionschemaname | The name of the partition schema |
| sopaidpartitiontablename | The name of the partition table |

#### gp_size_of_schema_disk

This view shows schema sizes for the public schema and the user-created schemas in the current database. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will be able to see only the schemas that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sosdnsp | The name of the schema |
| sosdschematablesize | The total size of tables in the schema in bytes |
| sosdschemaidxsize | The total size of indexes in the schema in bytes |

#### gp_size_of_table_and_indexes_disk

This view shows the size on disk of tables and their indexes. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see relations that they have permission to access.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sotaidoid | The object ID of the parent table |
| sotaidtablesize | The disk size of the table |
| sotaididxsize | The total size of all indexes on the table |
| sotaidschemaname | The name of the schema |
| sotaidtablename | The name of the table |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### gp_size_of_table_and_indexes_licensing

This view shows the total size of tables and their indexes for licensing purposes. The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sotailoid | The object ID of the table |
| sotailtablesizedisk | The total disk size of the table |
| sotailtablesizeuncompressed | If the table is a compressed append-optimized table, shows the uncompressed table size in bytes. |
| sotailindexessize | The total size of all indexes in the table |
| sotailschemaname | The schema name |
| sotailtablename | The table name |

#### gp_size_of_table_disk

This view shows the size of a table on disk. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see tables that they have permission to access

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sotdoid | The object ID of the table |
| sotdsize | The size of the table in bytes. The size is only the main table size. The size does not include auxiliary objects such as oversized (toast) attributes, or additional storage objects for AO tables. |
| sotdtoastsize | The size of the TOAST table (oversized attribute storage), if there is one. |
| sotdadditionalsize | Reflects the segment and block directory table sizes for append-optimized (AO) tables. |
| sotdschemaname | The schema name |
| sotdtablename | The table name |

#### gp_size_of_table_uncompressed

This view shows the uncompressed table size for append-optimized (AO) tables. Otherwise, the table size on disk is shown. The use of this view requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sotuoid | The object ID of the table |
| sotusize | The uncomressed size of the table in bytes if it is a compressed AO table. Otherwise, the table size on disk. |
| sotuschemaname | The schema name |
| sotutablename | The table name |

#### gp_disk_free

This external table runs the `df` (disk free) command on the active segment hosts and reports back the results. Inactive mirrors are not included in the calculation. The use of this external table requires superuser permissions.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| dfsegment | The content id of the segment (only active segments are shown) |
| dfhostname | The hostname of the segment host |
| dfdevice | The device name |
| dfspace | Free disk space in the segment file system in kilobytes |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Checking for Missing and Orphaned Data Files

WarehousePG considers a relation data file that is present in the catalog, but not on disk, to be missing. Conversely, when WarehousePG encounters an unexpected data file on disk that is not referenced in any relation, it considers that file to be orphaned.

WarehousePG provides the following views to help identify if missing or orphaned files exist in the current database:

- gp_check_orphaned_files
- gp_check_missing_files
- gp_check_missing_files_ext

Consider it a best practice to check for these conditions prior to expanding the cluster or before offline maintenance.

By default, the views identified in this section are available to `PUBLIC`.

#### gp_check_orphaned_files

The `gp_check_orphaned_files` view scans the default and user-defined tablespaces for orphaned data files. WarehousePG considers normal data files, files with an underscore ( `_` ) in the name, and extended numbered files (files that contain a `.<N>` in the name) in this check. `gp_check_orphaned_files` gathers results from the WarehousePG coordinator and all segments.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_segment_id | The WarehousePG segment identifier. |
| tablespace | The identifier of the tablespace in which the orphaned file resides. |
| filename | The file name of the orphaned data file. |
| filepath | The file system path of the orphaned data file, relative to `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`. |

> **Caution** Use this view as one of many data points to identify orphaned data files. Do not delete files based solely on results from querying this view.

#### gp_check_missing_files

The `gp_check_missing_files` view scans heap and append-optimized, column-oriented tables for missing data files. WarehousePG considers only normal data files (files that do not contain a `.` or an `_` in the name) in this check. `gp_check_missing_files` gathers results from the WarehousePG coordinator and all segments.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_segment_id | The WarehousePG segment identifier. |
| tablespace | The identifier of the tablespace in which the table resides. |
| relname | The name of the table that has a missing data file(s). |
| filename | The file name of the missing data file. |

#### gp_check_missing_files_ext

The `gp_check_missing_files_ext` view scans only append-optimized, column-oriented tables for missing extended data files. WarehousePG considers both normal data files and extended numbered files (files that contain a `.<N>` in the name) in this check. Files that contain an `_` in the name are not considered. `gp_check_missing_files_ext` gathers results from the WarehousePG segments only.

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| gp_segment_id | The WarehousePG segment identifier. |
| tablespace | The identifier of the tablespace in which the table resides. |
| relname | The name of the table that has a missing extended data file(s). |
| filename | The file name of the missing extended data file. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Checking for Uneven Data Distribution

All tables in WarehousePG are distributed, meaning their data is divided across all of the segments in the system. If the data is not distributed evenly, then query processing performance may decrease. The following views can help diagnose if a table has uneven data distribution:

- gp_skew_coefficients
- gp_skew_idle_fractions

> **Note** By default, the `gp_skew_*` views do not display data for materialized views. Refer to Including Data for Materialized Views for instructions on adding this data to `gp_skew_*` view output.

**Parent topic:** The gp_toolkit Administrative Schema

#### gp_skew_coefficients

This view shows data distribution skew by calculating the coefficient of variation (CV) for the data stored on each segment. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see tables that they have permission to access

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| skcoid | The object id of the table. |
| skcnamespace | The namespace where the table is defined. |
| skcrelname | The table name. |
| skccoeff | The coefficient of variation (CV) is calculated as the standard deviation divided by the average. It takes into account both the average and variability around the average of a data series. The lower the value, the better. Higher values indicate greater data skew. |

#### gp_skew_idle_fractions

This view shows data distribution skew by calculating the percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan, which is an indicator of processing data skew. This view is accessible to all users, however non-superusers will only be able to see tables that they have permission to access

| Column | Description |
|---|---|
| sifoid | The object id of the table. |
| sifnamespace | The namespace where the table is defined. |
| sifrelname | The table name. |
| siffraction | The percentage of the system that is idle during a table scan, which is an indicator of uneven data distribution or query processing skew. For example, a value of 0.1 indicates 10% skew, a value of 0.5 indicates 50% skew, and so on. Tables that have more than 10% skew should have their distribution policies evaluated. |

### Including Data for Materialized Views

You must update a `gp_toolkit` internal view if you want data about materialized views to be included in the output of relevant `gp_toolkit` views.

Run the following SQL commands as the WarehousePG administrator to update the internal view:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE or REPLACE VIEW gp_toolkit.__gp_user_tables
AS
    SELECT
        fn.fnnspname as autnspname,
        fn.fnrelname as autrelname,
        relkind as autrelkind,
        reltuples as autreltuples,
        relpages as autrelpages,
        relacl as autrelacl,
        pgc.oid as autoid,
        pgc.reltoastrelid as auttoastoid,
        pgc.relstorage as autrelstorage
    FROM
        pg_catalog.pg_class pgc,
        gp_toolkit.__gp_fullname fn
    WHERE pgc.relnamespace IN
    (
        SELECT aunoid
        FROM gp_toolkit.__gp_user_namespaces
    )
    AND (pgc.relkind = 'r' OR pgc.relkind = 'm')
    AND pgc.relispopulated = 't'
    AND pgc.oid = fn.fnoid;

GRANT SELECT ON TABLE gp_toolkit.__gp_user_tables TO public;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.10 SQL Features, Reserved and Key Words, and Compliance

This section includes topics that identify SQL features and compliance in WarehousePG:


- Summary of WarehousePG Features
- Reserved Identifiers and SQL Key Words
- SQL 2008 Optional Feature Compliance


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.10.1 Summary of WarehousePG Features

This section provides a high-level overview of the system requirements and feature set of WarehousePG. It contains the following topics:


- WarehousePG SQL Standard Conformance
- WarehousePG and PostgreSQL Compatibility


### WarehousePG SQL Standard Conformance

The SQL language was first formally standardized in 1986 by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) as SQL 1986. Subsequent versions of the SQL standard have been released by ANSI and as International Organization for Standardization (ISO) standards: SQL 1989, SQL 1992, SQL 1999, SQL 2003, SQL 2006, and finally SQL 2008, which is the current SQL standard. The official name of the standard is ISO/IEC 9075-14:2008. In general, each new version adds more features, although occasionally features are deprecated or removed.

It is important to note that there are no commercial database systems that are fully compliant with the SQL standard. WarehousePG is almost fully compliant with the SQL 1992 standard, with most of the features from SQL 1999. Several features from SQL 2003 have also been implemented (most notably the SQL OLAP features).

This section addresses the important conformance issues of WarehousePG as they relate to the SQL standards. For a feature-by-feature list of WarehousePG's support of the latest SQL standard, see SQL 2008 Optional Feature Compliance.

#### Core SQL Conformance

In the process of building a parallel, shared-nothing database system and query optimizer, certain common SQL constructs are not currently implemented in WarehousePG. The following SQL constructs are not supported:

2. Some set returning subqueries in `EXISTS` or `NOT EXISTS` clauses that WarehousePG's parallel optimizer cannot rewrite into joins.

4. Backwards scrolling cursors, including the use of `FETCH PRIOR`, `FETCH FIRST`, `FETCH ABSOLUTE`, and `FETCH RELATIVE`.

6. In `CREATE TABLE` statements (on hash-distributed tables): a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` clause must include all of (or a superset of) the distribution key columns. Because of this restriction, only one `UNIQUE` clause or `PRIMARY KEY` clause is allowed in a `CREATE TABLE` statement. `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` clauses are not allowed on randomly-distributed tables.

8. `CREATE UNIQUE INDEX` statements that do not contain all of (or a superset of) the distribution key columns. `CREATE UNIQUE INDEX` is not allowed on randomly-distributed tables.

   Note that `UNIQUE INDEXES` (but not `UNIQUE CONSTRAINTS`) are enforced on a part basis within a partitioned table. They guarantee the uniqueness of the key within each part or sub-part.

10. `VOLATILE` or `STABLE` functions cannot run on the segments, and so are generally limited to being passed literal values as the arguments to their parameters.

11. Triggers are not generally supported because they typically rely on the use of `VOLATILE` functions. PostgreSQL Event Triggers are supported because they capture only DDL events.

13. Referential integrity constraints (foreign keys) are not enforced in WarehousePG. Users can declare foreign keys and this information is kept in the system catalog, however.

15. Sequence manipulation functions `CURRVAL` and `LASTVAL`.

#### SQL 1992 Conformance

The following features of SQL 1992 are not supported in WarehousePG:

2. `NATIONAL CHARACTER` (`NCHAR`) and `NATIONAL CHARACTER VARYING` (`NVARCHAR`). Users can declare the `NCHAR` and `NVARCHAR` types, however they are just synonyms for `CHAR` and `VARCHAR` in WarehousePG. 4. `CREATE ASSERTION` statement. 6. `INTERVAL` literals are supported in WarehousePG, but do not conform to the standard. 8. `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement. 10. `GLOBAL TEMPORARY TABLE`s and `LOCAL TEMPORARY TABLE`s. WarehousePG `TEMPORARY TABLE`s do not conform to the SQL standard, but many commercial database systems have implemented temporary tables in the same way. WarehousePG temporary tables are the same as `VOLATILE TABLE`s in Teradata. 12. `UNIQUE` predicate. 14. `MATCH PARTIAL` for referential integrity checks (most likely will not be implemented in WarehousePG).

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### SQL 1999 Conformance

The following features of SQL 1999 are not supported in WarehousePG:

2. Large Object data types: `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB`. However, the `BYTEA` and `TEXT` columns can store very large amounts of data in WarehousePG (hundreds of megabytes).

4. `MODULE` (SQL client modules).

5. `CREATE PROCEDURE` (`SQL/PSM`). This can be worked around in WarehousePG by creating a `FUNCTION` that returns `void`, and invoking the function as follows:

   ```
   SELECT <myfunc>(<args>);
   ```

7. The PostgreSQL/WarehousePG function definition language (`PL/PGSQL`) is a subset of Oracle's `PL/SQL`, rather than being compatible with the `SQL/PSM` function definition language. WarehousePG also supports function definitions written in Python, Perl, Java, and R.

9. `BIT` and `BIT VARYING` data types (intentionally omitted). These were deprecated in SQL 2003, and replaced in SQL 2008.

11. WarehousePG supports identifiers up to 63 characters long. The SQL standard requires support for identifiers up to 128 characters long.

13. Prepared transactions (`PREPARE TRANSACTION`, `COMMIT PREPARED`, `ROLLBACK PREPARED`). This also means WarehousePG does not support `XA` Transactions (2 phase commit coordination of database transactions with external transactions).

15. `CHARACTER SET` option on the definition of `CHAR()` or `VARCHAR()` columns.

17. Specification of `CHARACTERS` or `OCTETS` (`BYTES`) on the length of a `CHAR()` or `VARCHAR()` column. For example, `VARCHAR(15 CHARACTERS)` or `VARCHAR(15 OCTETS)` or `VARCHAR(15 BYTES)`.

18. `CREATE DISTINCT TYPE` statement. `CREATE DOMAIN` can be used as a workaround in WarehousePG.

20. The *explicit table* construct.

#### SQL 2003 Conformance

The following features of SQL 2003 are not supported in WarehousePG:

2. `MERGE` statements. 4. `IDENTITY` columns and the associated `GENERATED ALWAYS/GENERATED BY DEFAULT` clause. The `SERIAL` or `BIGSERIAL` data types are very similar to `INT` or `BIGINT GENERATED BY DEFAULT AS IDENTITY`. 6. `MULTISET` modifiers on data types. 8. `ROW` data type. 10. WarehousePG syntax for using sequences is non-standard. For example, `nextval('seq')` is used in WarehousePG instead of the standard `NEXT VALUE FOR seq`. 11. `GENERATED ALWAYS AS` columns. Views can be used as a workaround. 12. The sample clause (`TABLESAMPLE`) on `SELECT` statements. The `random()` function can be used as a workaround to get random samples from tables. 14. The *partitioned join tables* construct (`PARTITION BY` in a join). 16. WarehousePG cluster data types are almost SQL standard compliant with some exceptions. Generally customers should not encounter any problems using them.

#### SQL 2008 Conformance

The following features of SQL 2008 are not supported in WarehousePG:

2. `BINARY` and `VARBINARY` data types. `BYTEA` can be used in place of `VARBINARY` in WarehousePG.

4. The `ORDER BY` clause is ignored in views and subqueries unless a `LIMIT` clause is also used. This is intentional, as the WarehousePG optimizer cannot determine when it is safe to avoid the sort, causing an unexpected performance impact for such `ORDER BY` clauses. To work around, you can specify a really large `LIMIT`. For example:

   ```
   SELECT * FROM mytable ORDER BY 1 LIMIT 9999999999
   ```

6. The *row subquery* construct is not supported.

8. `TRUNCATE TABLE` does not accept the `CONTINUE IDENTITY` and `RESTART IDENTITY` clauses.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### WarehousePG and PostgreSQL Compatibility

WarehousePG is based on PostgreSQL 9.4. To support the distributed nature and typical workload of a WarehousePG cluster, some SQL commands have been added or modified, and there are a few PostgreSQL features that are not supported. WarehousePG has also added features not found in PostgreSQL, such as physical data distribution, parallel query optimization, external tables, resource queues, and enhanced table partitioning. For full SQL syntax and references, see the SQL Commands.

> **Note** WarehousePG does not support the PostgreSQL large object facility for streaming user data that is stored in large-object structures.

> **Note** This syntax is deprecated and will be removed in a future WarehousePG release.

#### SQL Support in WarehousePG

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `ALTER AGGREGATE` | YES | |
| `ALTER CONVERSION` | YES | |
| `ALTER DATABASE` | YES | |
| `ALTER DOMAIN` | YES | |
| `ALTER EVENT TRIGGER` | YES | |
| `ALTER EXTENSION` | YES | Changes the definition of a WarehousePG extension - based on PostgreSQL 9.6. |
| `ALTER FUNCTION` | YES | |
| `ALTER GROUP` | YES | An alias for ALTER ROLE |
| `ALTER INDEX` | YES | |
| `ALTER LANGUAGE` | YES | |
| `ALTER OPERATOR` | YES | |
| `ALTER OPERATOR CLASS` | YES | |
| `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` | YES | |
| `ALTER PROTOCOL` | YES | |
| `ALTER RESOURCE QUEUE` | YES | WarehousePG resource management feature - not in PostgreSQL. |
| `ALTER ROLE` | YES | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`RESOURCE QUEUE` *queue_name* `\| none` |
| `ALTER SCHEMA` | YES | |
| `ALTER SEQUENCE` | YES | |
| `ALTER SYSTEM` | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `ALTER TABLE` | YES | **Unsupported Clauses / Options:**<br>`CLUSTER ON`<br>`ENABLE/DISABLE TRIGGER`<br>**WarehousePG Database Clauses:**<br>`ADD \| DROP \| RENAME \| SPLIT \| EXCHANGE PARTITION \| SET SUBPARTITION TEMPLATE \| SET WITH (REORGANIZE=true \| false) \| SET DISTRIBUTED BY` |
| `ALTER TABLESPACE` | YES | |
| `ALTER TRIGGER` | NO | |
| `ALTER TYPE` | YES | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`SET DEFAULT ENCODING` |
| `ALTER USER` | YES | An alias for ALTER ROLE |
| `ALTER VIEW` | YES | |
| `ANALYZE` | YES | |
| `BEGIN` | YES | |
| `CHECKPOINT` | YES | |
| `CLOSE` | YES | |
| `CLUSTER` | YES | |
| `COMMENT` | YES | |
| `COMMIT` | YES | |
| `COMMIT PREPARED` | NO | |
| `COPY` | YES | **Modified Clauses:**<br>`ESCAPE [ AS ] '` *escape* `' \| 'OFF'`<br>**WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`[LOG ERRORS] SEGMENT REJECT LIMIT` *count* `[ROWS\|PERCENT]` |
| `CREATE AGGREGATE` | YES | **Unsupported Clauses / Options:**<br>`[ , SORTOP =` *sort_operator* `]`<br>**WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`[ , COMBINEFUNC =` *combinefunc* `]`<br>**Limitations:**<br>The functions used to implement the aggregate must be `IMMUTABLE` functions. |
| `CREATE CAST` | YES | |
| `CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER` | NO | |
| `CREATE CONVERSION` | YES | |
| `CREATE DATABASE` | YES | |
| `CREATE DOMAIN` | YES | |
| `CREATE EVENT TRIGGER` | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `CREATE EXTENSION` | YES | Loads a new extension into WarehousePG - based on PostgreSQL 9.6. |
| `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` | YES | WarehousePG parallel ETL feature - not in PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `CREATE FUNCTION` | YES | **Limitations:**<br><br>Functions defined as `STABLE` or `VOLATILE` can be run in WarehousePG provided that they are run on the coordinator only. `STABLE` and `VOLATILE` functions cannot be used in statements that run at the segment level. |
| `CREATE GROUP` | YES | An alias for CREATE ROLE |
| `CREATE INDEX` | YES | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br><br>`USING bitmap` (bitmap indexes)<br><br>**Limitations:**<br><br>`UNIQUE` indexes are allowed only if they contain all of (or a superset of) the WarehousePG distribution key columns. On partitioned tables, a unique index is only supported within an individual partition - not across all partitions.<br><br>`CONCURRENTLY` keyword not supported in WarehousePG. |
| `CREATE LANGUAGE` | YES | |
| `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` | YES | Based on PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `CREATE OPERATOR` | YES | **Limitations:**<br><br>The function used to implement the operator must be an `IMMUTABLE` function. |
| `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` | YES | |
| `CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY` | YES | |
| `CREATE PROTOCOL` | YES | |
| `CREATE RESOURCE QUEUE` | YES | WarehousePG resource management feature - not in PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `CREATE ROLE` | YES | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br><br>`RESOURCE QUEUE` *queue_name* `\| none` |
| `CREATE RULE` | YES | |
| `CREATE SCHEMA` | YES | |
| `CREATE SEQUENCE` | YES | **Limitations:**<br><br>The `lastval()` and `currval()` functions are not supported.<br><br>The `setval()` function is only allowed in queries that do not operate on distributed data. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `CREATE TABLE` | YES | **Unsupported Clauses / Options:**<br>`[GLOBAL \| LOCAL]`<br>`REFERENCES`<br>`FOREIGN KEY`<br>`[DEFERRABLE \| NOT DEFERRABLE]`<br>**Limited Clauses:**<br>`UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraints are only allowed on hash-distributed tables (`DISTRIBUTED BY`), and the constraint columns must be the same as or a superset of the distribution key columns of the table and must include all the distribution key columns of the partitioning key.<br>**WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`DISTRIBUTED BY (column, [ ... ] ) \|`<br>`DISTRIBUTED RANDOMLY`<br>`PARTITION BY type (column [, ...]) ( partition_specification, [...] )`<br>`WITH (appendoptimized=true [,compresslevel=value,blocksize=value] )` |
| `CREATE TABLE AS` | YES | See CREATE TABLE |
| `CREATE TABLESPACE` | **YES** | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>Specify host file system locations for specific segment instances.<br>`WITH (contentID_1='/path/to/dir1...)` |
| `CREATE TRIGGER` | **NO** | |
| `CREATE TYPE` | YES | **WarehousePG Clauses:**<br>`COMPRESSTYPE \| COMPRESSLEVEL \| BLOCKSIZE`<br>**Limitations:**<br>The functions used to implement a new base type must be `IMMUTABLE` functions. |
| `CREATE USER` | YES | An alias for CREATE ROLE |
| `CREATE VIEW` | YES | |
| `DEALLOCATE` | YES | |
| `DECLARE` | YES | **Unsupported Clauses / Options:**<br>`SCROLL`<br>`FOR UPDATE [ OF column [, ...] ]`<br>**Limitations:**<br>Cursors cannot be backward-scrolled. Forward scrolling is supported.<br>PL/pgSQL does not have support for updatable cursors. |
| `DELETE` | YES | |
| `DISCARD` | YES | **Limitation:** `DISCARD ALL` is not supported. |
| `DO` | YES | PostgreSQL 9.0 feature |
| `DROP AGGREGATE` | YES | |
| `DROP CAST` | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `DROP CONVERSION` | YES | |
| `DROP DATABASE` | YES | |
| `DROP DOMAIN` | YES | |
| `DROP EVENT TRIGGER` | YES | |
| `DROP EXTENSION` | YES | Removes an extension from WarehousePG – based on PostgreSQL 9.6. |
| `DROP EXTERNAL TABLE` | YES | WarehousePG parallel ETL feature - not in PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `DROP FUNCTION` | YES | |
| `DROP GROUP` | YES | An alias for DROP ROLE |
| `DROP INDEX` | YES | |
| `DROP LANGUAGE` | YES | |
| `DROP OPERATOR` | YES | |
| `DROP OPERATOR CLASS` | YES | |
| `DROP OPERATOR FAMILY` | YES | |
| `DROP OWNED` | **NO** | |
| `DROP PROTOCOL` | YES | |
| `DROP RESOURCE QUEUE` | YES | WarehousePG resource management feature - not in PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `DROP ROLE` | YES | |
| `DROP RULE` | YES | |
| `DROP SCHEMA` | YES | |
| `DROP SEQUENCE` | YES | |
| `DROP TABLE` | YES | |
| `DROP TABLESPACE` | YES | |
| `DROP TRIGGER` | **NO** | |
| `DROP TYPE` | YES | |
| `DROP USER` | YES | An alias for DROP ROLE |
| `DROP VIEW` | YES | |
| `END` | YES | |
| `EXECUTE` | YES | |
| `EXPLAIN` | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `FETCH` | YES | **Unsupported Clauses / Options:**<br>`LAST`<br>`PRIOR`<br>`BACKWARD`<br>`BACKWARD ALL`<br>**Limitations:**<br>Cannot fetch rows in a nonsequential fashion; backward scan is not supported. |
| `GRANT` | YES | |
| `INSERT` | YES | |
| `LATERAL` Join Type | **NO** | |
| `LISTEN` | **YES** | |
| `LOAD` | YES | |
| `LOCK` | YES | |
| `MOVE` | YES | See FETCH |
| `NOTIFY` | **YES** | |
| `PREPARE` | YES | |
| `PREPARE TRANSACTION` | **NO** | |
| `REASSIGN OWNED` | YES | |
| `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` | YES | Based on PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `REINDEX` | YES | |
| `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` | YES | |
| `RESET` | YES | |
| `RETRIEVE` | YES | WarehousePG parallel retrieve cursor - not in PostgreSQL 9.4. |
| `REVOKE` | YES | |
| `ROLLBACK` | YES | |
| `ROLLBACK PREPARED` | **NO** | |
| `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT` | YES | |
| `SAVEPOINT` | YES | |
| `SELECT` | YES | **Limitations:**<br>Limited use of `VOLATILE` and `STABLE` functions in `FROM` or `WHERE` clauses<br>Text search ( `Tsearch2` ) is not supported<br>**WarehousePG Clauses (OLAP):**<br>`[GROUP BY` *grouping_element* `[, ...]]`<br>`[WINDOW` *window_name* `AS (` *window_specification* `)]`<br>`[FILTER (WHERE` *condition* `)]` applied to an aggregate function in the `SELECT` list |
| `SELECT INTO` | YES | See SELECT |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SQL Command | Supported in WarehousePG | Modifications, Limitations, Exceptions |
|---|---|---|
| `SET` | YES | |
| `SET CONSTRAINTS` | **NO** | In PostgreSQL, this only applies to foreign key constraints, which are currently not enforced in WarehousePG. |
| `SET ROLE` | YES | |
| `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` | YES | Deprecated as of PostgreSQL 8.1 - see SET ROLE |
| `SET TRANSACTION` | YES | **Limitations:**<br>`DEFERRABLE` clause has no effect.<br>`SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT` command is not supported. |
| `SHOW` | YES | |
| `START TRANSACTION` | YES | |
| `TRUNCATE` | YES | |
| `UNLISTEN` | **YES** | |
| `UPDATE` | YES | **Limitations:**<br>`SET` not allowed for WarehousePG distribution key columns. |
| `VACUUM` | YES | **Limitations:**<br>`VACUUM FULL` is not recommended in WarehousePG. |
| `VALUES` | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.10.2 Reserved Identifiers and SQL Key Words

This topic describes WarehousePG reserved identifiers and object names, and SQL key words recognized by the WarehousePG and PostgreSQL command parsers.

### Reserved Identifiers

In the WarehousePG cluster, names beginning with `gp_` and `pg_` are reserved and should not be used as names for user-created objects, such as tables, views, and functions.

The resource group names `admin_group`, `default_group`, and `none` are reserved. The resource queue name `pg_default` is reserved.

The tablespace names `pg_default` and `pg_global` are reserved.

The role names `gpadmin` and `gpmon` are reserved. `gpadmin` is the default WarehousePG superuser role. The `gpmon` role owns the `gpperfmon` database.

In data files, the characters that delimit fields (columns) and rows have a special meaning. If they appear within the data you must escape them so that WarehousePG treats them as data and not as delimiters. The backslash character ( `\` ) is the default escape character. See Escaping for details.

See SQL Syntax in the PostgreSQL documentation for more information about SQL identifiers, constants, operators, and expressions.

### SQL Key Words

SQL keyword status lists all tokens that are key words in WarehousePG 6 and PostgreSQL 9.4.

ANSI SQL distinguishes between *reserved* and *unreserved* key words. According to the standard, reserved key words are the only real key words; they are never allowed as identifiers. Unreserved key words only have a special meaning in particular contexts and can be used as identifiers in other contexts. Most unreserved key words are actually the names of built-in tables and functions specified by SQL. The concept of unreserved key words essentially only exists to declare that some predefined meaning is attached to a word in some contexts.

In the WarehousePG and PostgreSQL parsers there are several different classes of tokens ranging from those that can never be used as an identifier to those that have absolutely no special status in the parser as compared to an ordinary identifier. (The latter is usually the case for functions specified by SQL.) Even reserved key words are not completely reserved, but can be used as column labels (for example, `SELECT 55 AS CHECK`, even though `CHECK` is a reserved key word).

SQL keyword status classifies as "unreserved" those key words that are explicitly known to the parser but are allowed as column or table names. Some key words that are otherwise unreserved cannot be used as function or data type names and are marked accordingly. (Most of these words represent built-in functions or data types with special syntax. The function or type is still available but it cannot be redefined by the user.) Key words labeled "reserved" are not allowed as column or table names. Some reserved key words are allowable as names for functions or data types; this is also shown in the table. If not so marked, a reserved key word is only allowed as an "AS" column label name.

If you get spurious parser errors for commands that contain any of the listed key words as an identifier you should try to quote the identifier to see if the problem goes away.

Before studying the table, note the fact that a key word is not reserved does not mean that the feature related to the word is not implemented. Conversely, the presence of a key word does not indicate the existence of a feature.

#### SQL keyword status

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| ABORT | unreserved | unreserved |
| ABSOLUTE | unreserved | unreserved |
| ACCESS | unreserved | unreserved |
| ACTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| ACTIVE | unreserved | |
| ADD | unreserved | unreserved |
| ADMIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| AFTER | unreserved | unreserved |
| AGGREGATE | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| ALL | reserved | reserved |
| ALSO | unreserved | unreserved |
| ALTER | unreserved | unreserved |
| ALWAYS | unreserved | unreserved |
| ANALYSE | reserved | reserved |
| ANALYZE | reserved | reserved |
| AND | reserved | reserved |
| ANY | reserved | reserved |
| ARRAY | reserved | reserved |
| AS | reserved | reserved |
| ASC | reserved | reserved |
| ASSERTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| ASSIGNMENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| ASYMMETRIC | reserved | reserved |
| AT | unreserved | unreserved |
| ATTRIBUTE | unreserved | unreserved |
| AUTHORIZATION | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| BACKWARD | unreserved | unreserved |
| BEFORE | unreserved | unreserved |
| BEGIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| BETWEEN | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| BIGINT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| BINARY | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| BIT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| BOOLEAN | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| BOTH | reserved | reserved |
| BY | unreserved | unreserved |
| CACHE | unreserved | unreserved |
| CALLED | unreserved | unreserved |
| CASCADE | unreserved | unreserved |
| CASCADED | unreserved | unreserved |
| CASE | reserved | reserved |
| CAST | reserved | reserved |
| CATALOG | unreserved | unreserved |
| CHAIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| CHAR | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| CHARACTER | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| CHARACTERISTICS | unreserved | unreserved |
| CHECK | reserved | reserved |
| CHECKPOINT | unreserved | unreserved |
| CLASS | unreserved | unreserved |
| CLOSE | unreserved | unreserved |
| CLUSTER | unreserved | unreserved |
| COALESCE | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| COLLATE | reserved | reserved |
| COLLATION | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| COLUMN | reserved | reserved |
| COMMENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| COMMENTS | unreserved | unreserved |
| COMMIT | unreserved | unreserved |
| COMMITTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONCURRENCY | unreserved | |
| CONCURRENTLY | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| CONFIGURATION | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONFLICT | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONNECTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONSTRAINT | reserved | reserved |
| CONSTRAINTS | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONTAINS | unreserved | |
| CONTENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONTINUE | unreserved | unreserved |
| CONVERSION | unreserved | unreserved |
| COPY | unreserved | unreserved |
| COST | unreserved | unreserved |
| CPU_RATE_LIMIT | unreserved | |
| CPUSET | unreserved | |
| CREATE | reserved | reserved |
| CREATEEXTTABLE | unreserved | |
| CROSS | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| CSV | unreserved | unreserved |
| CUBE | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| CURRENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| CURRENT_CATALOG | reserved | reserved |
| CURRENT_DATE | reserved | reserved |
| CURRENT_ROLE | reserved | reserved |
| CURRENT_SCHEMA | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| CURRENT_TIME | reserved | reserved |
| CURRENT_TIMESTAMP | reserved | reserved |
| CURRENT_USER | reserved | reserved |
| CURSOR | unreserved | unreserved |
| CYCLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DATA | unreserved | unreserved |
| DATABASE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DAY | unreserved | unreserved |
| DEALLOCATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DEC | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| DECIMAL | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| DECLARE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DECODE | reserved | |
| DEFAULT | reserved | reserved |
| DEFAULTS | unreserved | unreserved |
| DEFERRABLE | reserved | reserved |
| DEFERRED | unreserved | unreserved |
| DEFINER | unreserved | unreserved |
| DELETE | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| DELIMITER | unreserved | unreserved |
| DELIMITERS | unreserved | unreserved |
| DENY | unreserved | |
| DEPENDS | unreserved | unreserved |
| DESC | reserved | reserved |
| DICTIONARY | unreserved | unreserved |
| DISABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DISCARD | unreserved | unreserved |
| DISTINCT | reserved | reserved |
| DISTRIBUTED | reserved | |
| DO | reserved | reserved |
| DOCUMENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| DOMAIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| DOUBLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| DROP | unreserved | unreserved |
| DXL | unreserved | |
| EACH | unreserved | unreserved |
| ELSE | reserved | reserved |
| ENABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| ENCODING | unreserved | unreserved |
| ENCRYPTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| END | reserved | reserved |
| ENDPOINT | unreserved | unreserved |
| ENUM | unreserved | unreserved |
| ERRORS | unreserved | |
| ESCAPE | unreserved | unreserved |
| EVENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| EVERY | unreserved | |
| EXCEPT | reserved | reserved |
| EXCHANGE | unreserved | |
| EXCLUDE | reserved | unreserved |
| EXCLUDING | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXCLUSIVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXECUTE | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXISTS | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| EXPAND | unreserved | |
| EXPLAIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXTENSION | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXTERNAL | unreserved | unreserved |
| EXTRACT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| FALSE | reserved | reserved |
| FAMILY | unreserved | unreserved |
| FETCH | reserved | reserved |
| FIELDS | unreserved | |
| FILESPACE | unreserved | unreserved |
| FILL | unreserved | |
| FILTER | unreserved | unreserved |
| FIRST | unreserved | unreserved |
| FLOAT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| FOLLOWING | reserved | unreserved |
| FOR | reserved | reserved |
| FORCE | unreserved | unreserved |
| FOREIGN | reserved | reserved |
| FORMAT | unreserved | |
| FORWARD | unreserved | unreserved |
| FREEZE | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| FROM | reserved | reserved |
| FULL | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| FULLSCAN | unreserved | |
| FUNCTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| FUNCTIONS | unreserved | unreserved |
| GLOBAL | unreserved | unreserved |
| GRANT | reserved | reserved |
| GRANTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| GREATEST | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| GROUP | reserved | reserved |
| GROUP_ID | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| GROUPING | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| HANDLER | unreserved | unreserved |
| HASH | unreserved | |
| HAVING | reserved | reserved |
| HEADER | unreserved | unreserved |
| HOLD | unreserved | unreserved |
| HOST | unreserved | |
| HOUR | unreserved | unreserved |
| IDENTITY | unreserved | unreserved |
| IF | unreserved | unreserved |
| IGNORE | unreserved | |
| ILIKE | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| IMMEDIATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| IMMUTABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| IMPLICIT | unreserved | unreserved |
| IMPORT | unreserved | unreserved |
| IN | reserved | reserved |
| INCLUDING | unreserved | unreserved |
| INCLUSIVE | unreserved | |
| INCREMENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| INDEX | unreserved | unreserved |
| INDEXES | unreserved | unreserved |
| INHERIT | unreserved | unreserved |
| INHERITS | unreserved | unreserved |
| INITIALLY | reserved | reserved |
| INITPLAN | unreserved | unreserved |
| INLINE | unreserved | unreserved |
| INNER | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| INOUT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| INPUT | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| INSENSITIVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| INSERT | unreserved | unreserved |
| INSTEAD | unreserved | unreserved |
| INT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| INTEGER | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| INTERSECT | reserved | reserved |
| INTERVAL | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| INTO | reserved | reserved |
| INVOKER | unreserved | unreserved |
| IS | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| ISNULL | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| ISOLATION | unreserved | unreserved |
| JOIN | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| KEY | unreserved | unreserved |
| LABEL | unreserved | unreserved |
| LANGUAGE | unreserved | unreserved |
| LARGE | unreserved | unreserved |
| LAST | unreserved | unreserved |
| LATERAL | reserved | reserved |
| LC_COLLATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| LC_CTYPE | unreserved | unreserved |
| LEADING | reserved | reserved |
| LEAKPROOF | unreserved | unreserved |
| LEAST | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| LEFT | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| LEVEL | unreserved | unreserved |
| LIKE | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| LIMIT | reserved | reserved |
| LIST | unreserved | |
| LISTEN | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOAD | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOCAL | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOCALTIME | reserved | reserved |
| LOCALTIMESTAMP | reserved | reserved |
| LOCATION | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOCK | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOCKED | unreserved | unreserved |
| LOG | reserved (can be function or type name) | |
| LOGGED | unreserved | unreserved |
| MAPPING | unreserved | unreserved |
| MASTER | unreserved | |
| MATCH | unreserved | unreserved |
| MATERIALIZED | unreserved | unreserved |
| MAXVALUE | unreserved | unreserved |
| MEDIAN | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| MEMORY_LIMIT | unreserved | |
| MEMORY_SHARED_QUOTA | unreserved | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO | unreserved | |
| METHOD | unreserved | unreserved |
| MINUTE | unreserved | unreserved |
| MINVALUE | unreserved | unreserved |
| MISSING | unreserved | |
| MODE | unreserved | unreserved |
| MODIFIES | unreserved | |
| MONTH | unreserved | unreserved |
| MOVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| NAME | unreserved | unreserved |
| NAMES | unreserved | unreserved |
| NATIONAL | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| NATURAL | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| NCHAR | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| NEWLINE | unreserved | |
| NEXT | unreserved | unreserved |
| NO | unreserved | unreserved |
| NOCREATEEXTTABLE | unreserved | |
| NONE | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| NOOVERCOMMIT | unreserved | |
| NOT | reserved | reserved |
| NOTHING | unreserved | unreserved |
| NOTIFY | unreserved | unreserved |
| NOTNULL | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| NOWAIT | unreserved | unreserved |
| NULL | reserved | reserved |
| NULLIF | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| NULLS | unreserved | unreserved |
| NUMERIC | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| OBJECT | unreserved | unreserved |
| OF | unreserved | unreserved |
| OFF | unreserved | unreserved |
| OFFSET | reserved | reserved |
| OIDS | unreserved | unreserved |
| ON | reserved | reserved |
| ONLY | reserved | reserved |
| OPERATOR | unreserved | unreserved |
| OPTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| OPTIONS | unreserved | unreserved |
| OR | reserved | reserved |
| ORDER | reserved | reserved |
| ORDERED | unreserved | |
| ORDINALITY | unreserved | unreserved |
| OTHERS | unreserved | |
| OUT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| OUTER | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| OVER | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| OVERCOMMIT | unreserved | |
| OVERLAPS | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| OVERLAY | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| OWNED | unreserved | unreserved |
| OWNER | unreserved | unreserved |
| PARALLEL | unreserved | unreserved |
| PARSER | unreserved | unreserved |
| PARTIAL | unreserved | unreserved |
| PARTITION | reserved | unreserved |
| PARTITIONS | unreserved | |
| PASSING | unreserved | unreserved |
| PASSWORD | unreserved | unreserved |
| PERCENT | unreserved | |
| PLACING | reserved | reserved |
| PLANS | unreserved | unreserved |
| POLICY | unreserved | unreserved |
| POSITION | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| PRECEDING | reserved | unreserved |
| PRECISION | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| PREPARE | unreserved | unreserved |
| PREPARED | unreserved | unreserved |
| PRESERVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| PRIMARY | reserved | reserved |
| PRIOR | unreserved | unreserved |
| PRIVILEGES | unreserved | unreserved |
| PROCEDURAL | unreserved | unreserved |
| PROCEDURE | unreserved | unreserved |
| PROGRAM | unreserved | unreserved |
| PROTOCOL | unreserved | |
| QUEUE | unreserved | |
| QUOTE | unreserved | unreserved |
| RANDOMLY | unreserved | |
| RANGE | unreserved | unreserved |
| READ | unreserved | unreserved |
| READABLE | unreserved | |
| READS | unreserved | |
| REAL | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| REASSIGN | unreserved | unreserved |
| RECHECK | unreserved | unreserved |
| RECURSIVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| REF | unreserved | unreserved |
| REFERENCES | reserved | reserved |
| REFRESH | unreserved | unreserved |
| REINDEX | unreserved | unreserved |
| REJECT | unreserved | |
| RELATIVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| RELEASE | unreserved | unreserved |
| RENAME | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| REPEATABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| REPLACE | unreserved | unreserved |
| REPLICA | unreserved | unreserved |
| REPLICATED | unreserved | |
| RESET | unreserved | unreserved |
| RESOURCE | unreserved | |
| RESTART | unreserved | unreserved |
| RESTRICT | unreserved | unreserved |
| RETRIEVE | unreserved | unreserved |
| RETURNING | reserved | reserved |
| RETURNS | unreserved | unreserved |
| REVOKE | unreserved | unreserved |
| RIGHT | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| ROLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| ROLLBACK | unreserved | unreserved |
| ROLLUP | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| ROOTPARTITION | unreserved | |
| ROW | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| ROWS | unreserved | unreserved |
| RULE | unreserved | unreserved |
| SAVEPOINT | unreserved | unreserved |
| SCATTER | reserved | |
| SCHEMA | unreserved | unreserved |
| SCROLL | unreserved | unreserved |
| SEARCH | unreserved | unreserved |
| SECOND | unreserved | unreserved |
| SECURITY | unreserved | unreserved |
| SEGMENT | unreserved | |
| SEGMENTS | unreserved | |
| SELECT | reserved | reserved |
| SEQUENCE | unreserved | unreserved |
| SEQUENCES | unreserved | unreserved |
| SERIALIZABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| SERVER | unreserved | unreserved |
| SESSION | unreserved | unreserved |
| SESSION_USER | reserved | reserved |
| SET | unreserved | unreserved |
| SETOF | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| SETS | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | |
| SHARE | unreserved | unreserved |
| SHOW | unreserved | unreserved |
| SIMILAR | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| SIMPLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| SKIP | unreserved | unreserved |
| SMALLINT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| SNAPSHOT | unreserved | unreserved |
| SOME | reserved | reserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| SPLIT | unreserved | |
| SQL | unreserved | |
| STABLE | unreserved | unreserved |
| STANDALONE | unreserved | unreserved |
| START | unreserved | unreserved |
| STATEMENT | unreserved | unreserved |
| STATISTICS | unreserved | unreserved |
| STDIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| STDOUT | unreserved | unreserved |
| STORAGE | unreserved | unreserved |
| STRICT | unreserved | unreserved |
| STRIP | unreserved | unreserved |
| SUBPARTITION | unreserved | |
| SUBSTRING | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| SYMMETRIC | reserved | reserved |
| SYSID | unreserved | unreserved |
| SYSTEM | unreserved | unreserved |
| TABLE | reserved | reserved |
| TABLES | unreserved | unreserved |
| TABLESPACE | unreserved | unreserved |
| TEMP | unreserved | unreserved |
| TEMPLATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| TEMPORARY | unreserved | unreserved |
| TEXT | unreserved | unreserved |
| THEN | reserved | reserved |
| THRESHOLD | unreserved | |
| TIES | unreserved | |
| TIME | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| TIMESTAMP | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| TO | reserved | reserved |
| TRAILING | reserved | reserved |
| TRANSACTION | unreserved | unreserved |
| TRANSFORM | unreserved | unreserved |
| TREAT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| TRIGGER | unreserved | unreserved |
| TRIM | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| TRUE | reserved | reserved |
| TRUNCATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| TRUSTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| TYPE | unreserved | unreserved |
| TYPES | unreserved | unreserved |
| UNBOUNDED | reserved | unreserved |
| UNCOMMITTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| UNENCRYPTED | unreserved | unreserved |
| UNION | reserved | reserved |
| UNIQUE | reserved | reserved |
| UNKNOWN | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| UNLISTEN | unreserved | unreserved |
| UNLOGGED | unreserved | unreserved |
| UNTIL | unreserved | unreserved |
| UPDATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| USER | reserved | reserved |
| USING | reserved | reserved |
| VACUUM | unreserved | unreserved |
| VALID | unreserved | unreserved |
| VALIDATE | unreserved | unreserved |
| VALIDATION | unreserved | |
| VALIDATOR | unreserved | unreserved |
| VALUE | unreserved | unreserved |
| VALUES | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| VARCHAR | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| VARIADIC | reserved | reserved |
| VARYING | unreserved | unreserved |
| VERBOSE | reserved (can be function or type name) | reserved (can be function or type name) |
| VERSION | unreserved | unreserved |
| VIEW | unreserved | unreserved |
| VIEWS | unreserved | unreserved |
| VOLATILE | unreserved | unreserved |
| WEB | unreserved | |
| WHEN | reserved | reserved |
| WHERE | reserved | reserved |
| WHITESPACE | unreserved | unreserved |
| WINDOW | reserved | reserved |
| WITH | reserved | reserved |
| WITHIN | unreserved | unreserved |
| WITHOUT | unreserved | unreserved |
| WORK | unreserved | unreserved |
| WRAPPER | unreserved | unreserved |
| WRITABLE | unreserved | |
| WRITE | unreserved | unreserved |
| XML | unreserved | unreserved |
| XMLATTRIBUTES | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLCONCAT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLELEMENT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLEXISTS | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLFOREST | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLPARSE | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLPI | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLROOT | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |
| XMLSERIALIZE | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) | unreserved (cannot be function or type name) |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Key Word | WarehousePG | PostgreSQL 9.4 |
|---|---|---|
| YEAR | unreserved | unreserved |
| YES | unreserved | unreserved |
| ZONE | unreserved | unreserved |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.10.3 SQL 2008 Optional Feature Compliance

The following table lists the features described in the 2008 SQL standard. Features that are supported in WarehousePG are marked as YES in the 'Supported' column, features that are not implemented are marked as NO.

For information about WarehousePG features and SQL compliance, see the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| B011 | Embedded Ada | NO | |
| B012 | Embedded C | NO | Due to issues with PostgreSQL `ecpg` |
| B013 | Embedded COBOL | NO | |
| B014 | Embedded Fortran | NO | |
| B015 | Embedded MUMPS | NO | |
| B016 | Embedded Pascal | NO | |
| B017 | Embedded PL/I | NO | |
| B021 | Direct SQL | YES | |
| B031 | Basic dynamic SQL | NO | |
| B032 | Extended dynamic SQL | NO | |
| B033 | Untyped SQL-invoked function arguments | NO | |
| B034 | Dynamic specification of cursor attributes | NO | |
| B035 | Non-extended descriptor names | NO | |
| B041 | Extensions to embedded SQL exception declarations | NO | |
| B051 | Enhanced execution rights | NO | |
| B111 | Module language Ada | NO | |
| B112 | Module language C | NO | |
| B113 | Module language COBOL | NO | |
| B114 | Module language Fortran | NO | |
| B115 | Module language MUMPS | NO | |
| B116 | Module language Pascal | NO | |
| B117 | Module language PL/I | NO | |
| B121 | Routine language Ada | NO | |
| B122 | Routine language C | NO | |
| B123 | Routine language COBOL | NO | |
| B124 | Routine language Fortran | NO | |
| B125 | Routine language MUMPS | NO | |
| B126 | Routine language Pascal | NO | |
| B127 | Routine language PL/I | NO | |
| B128 | Routine language SQL | NO | |
| E011 | Numeric data types | YES | |
| E011-01 | `INTEGER` and `SMALLINT` data types | YES | |
| E011-02 | `DOUBLE PRECISION` and `FLOAT` data types | YES | |
| E011-03 | `DECIMAL` and `NUMERIC` data types | YES | |
| E011-04 | Arithmetic operators | YES | |
| E011-05 | Numeric comparison | YES | |
| E011-06 | Implicit casting among the numeric data types | YES | |
| E021 | Character data types | YES | |
| E021-01 | `CHARACTER` data type | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| E021-02 | `CHARACTER VARYING` data type | YES | |
| E021-03 | Character literals | YES | |
| E021-04 | `CHARACTER_LENGTH` function | YES | Trims trailing spaces from `CHARACTER` values before counting |
| E021-05 | `OCTET_LENGTH` function | YES | |
| E021-06 | `SUBSTRING` function | YES | |
| E021-07 | Character concatenation | YES | |
| E021-08 | `UPPER` and `LOWER` functions | YES | |
| E021-09 | `TRIM` function | YES | |
| E021-10 | Implicit casting among the character string types | YES | |
| E021-11 | `POSITION` function | YES | |
| E021-12 | Character comparison | YES | |
| E031 | Identifiers | YES | |
| E031-01 | Delimited identifiers | YES | |
| E031-02 | Lower case identifiers | YES | |
| E031-03 | Trailing underscore | YES | |
| E051 | Basic query specification | YES | |
| E051-01 | `SELECT DISTINCT` | YES | |
| E051-02 | `GROUP BY` clause | YES | |
| E051-03 | `GROUP BY` can contain columns not in `SELECT` list | YES | |
| E051-04 | `SELECT` list items can be renamed | YES | |
| E051-05 | `HAVING` clause | YES | |
| E051-06 | Qualified * in `SELECT` list | YES | |
| E051-07 | Correlation names in the `FROM` clause | YES | |
| E051-08 | Rename columns in the `FROM` clause | YES | |
| E061 | Basic predicates and search conditions | YES | |
| E061-01 | Comparison predicate | YES | |
| E061-02 | `BETWEEN` predicate | YES | |
| E061-03 | `IN` predicate with list of values | YES | |
| E061-04 | `LIKE` predicate | YES | |
| E061-05 | `LIKE` predicate `ESCAPE` clause | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| E061-06 | `NULL` predicate | YES | |
| E061-07 | Quantified comparison predicate | YES | |
| E061-08 | `EXISTS` predicate | YES | Not all uses work in WarehousePG |
| E061-09 | Subqueries in comparison predicate | YES | |
| E061-11 | Subqueries in IN predicate | YES | |
| E061-12 | Subqueries in quantified comparison predicate | YES | |
| E061-13 | Correlated subqueries | YES | |
| E061-14 | Search condition | YES | |
| E071 | Basic query expressions | YES | |
| E071-01 | `UNION DISTINCT` table operator | YES | |
| E071-02 | `UNION ALL` table operator | YES | |
| E071-03 | `EXCEPT DISTINCT` table operator | YES | |
| E071-05 | Columns combined via table operators need not have exactly the same data type | YES | |
| E071-06 | Table operators in subqueries | YES | |
| E081 | Basic Privileges | NO | Partial sub-feature support |
| E081-01 | `SELECT` privilege | YES | |
| E081-02 | `DELETE` privilege | YES | |
| E081-03 | `INSERT` privilege at the table level | YES | |
| E081-04 | `UPDATE` privilege at the table level | YES | |
| E081-05 | `UPDATE` privilege at the column level | YES | |
| E081-06 | `REFERENCES` privilege at the table level | NO | |
| E081-07 | `REFERENCES` privilege at the column level | NO | |
| E081-08 | `WITH GRANT OPTION` | YES | |
| E081-09 | `USAGE` privilege | YES | |
| E081-10 | `EXECUTE` privilege | YES | |
| E091 | Set Functions | YES | |
| E091-01 | `AVG` | YES | |
| E091-02 | `COUNT` | YES | |
| E091-03 | `MAX` | YES | |
| E091-04 | `MIN` | YES | |
| E091-05 | `SUM` | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| E091-06 | `ALL` quantifier | YES | |
| E091-07 | `DISTINCT` quantifier | YES | |
| E101 | Basic data manipulation | YES | |
| E101-01 | `INSERT` statement | YES | |
| E101-03 | Searched `UPDATE` statement | YES | |
| E101-04 | Searched `DELETE` statement | YES | |
| E111 | Single row `SELECT` statement | YES | |
| E121 | Basic cursor support | YES | |
| E121-01 | `DECLARE CURSOR` | YES | |
| E121-02 | `ORDER BY` columns need not be in select list | YES | |
| E121-03 | Value expressions in `ORDER BY` clause | YES | |
| E121-04 | `OPEN` statement | YES | |
| E121-06 | Positioned `UPDATE` statement | NO | |
| E121-07 | Positioned `DELETE` statement | NO | |
| E121-08 | `CLOSE` statement | YES | |
| E121-10 | `FETCH` statement implicit `NEXT` | YES | |
| E121-17 | `WITH HOLD` cursors | YES | |
| E131 | Null value support | YES | |
| E141 | Basic integrity constraints | YES | |
| E141-01 | `NOT NULL` constraints | YES | |
| E141-02 | `UNIQUE` constraints of `NOT NULL` columns | YES | Must be the same as or a superset of the WarehousePG distribution key |
| E141-03 | `PRIMARY KEY` constraints | YES | Must be the same as or a superset of the WarehousePG distribution key |
| E141-04 | Basic `FOREIGN KEY` constraint with the `NO ACTION` default for both referential delete action and referential update action | NO | |
| E141-06 | `CHECK` constraints | YES | |
| E141-07 | Column defaults | YES | |
| E141-08 | `NOT NULL` inferred on `PRIMARY KEY` | YES | |
| E141-10 | Names in a foreign key can be specified in any order | YES | Foreign keys can be declared but are not enforced in WarehousePG |
| E151 | Transaction support | YES | |
| E151-01 | `COMMIT` statement | YES | |
| E151-02 | `ROLLBACK` statement | YES | |
| E152 | Basic SET TRANSACTION statement | YES | |
| E152-01 | `ISOLATION LEVEL SERIALIZABLE` clause | NO | Can be declared but is treated as a synonym for `REPEATABLE READ` |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| E152-02 | `READ ONLY` and `READ WRITE` clauses | YES | |
| E153 | Updatable queries with subqueries | NO | |
| E161 | SQL comments using leading double minus | YES | |
| E171 | SQLSTATE support | YES | |
| E182 | Module language | NO | |
| F021 | Basic information schema | YES | |
| F021-01 | `COLUMNS` view | YES | |
| F021-02 | `TABLES` view | YES | |
| F021-03 | `VIEWS` view | YES | |
| F021-04 | `TABLE_CONSTRAINTS` view | YES | |
| F021-05 | `REFERENTIAL_CONSTRAINTS` view | YES | |
| F021-06 | `CHECK_CONSTRAINTS` view | YES | |
| F031 | Basic schema manipulation | YES | |
| F031-01 | `CREATE TABLE` statement to create persistent base tables | YES | |
| F031-02 | `CREATE VIEW` statement | YES | |
| F031-03 | `GRANT` statement | YES | |
| F031-04 | `ALTER TABLE` statement: `ADD COLUMN` clause | YES | |
| F031-13 | `DROP TABLE` statement: `RESTRICT` clause | YES | |
| F031-16 | `DROP VIEW` statement: `RESTRICT` clause | YES | |
| F031-19 | `REVOKE` statement: `RESTRICT` clause | YES | |
| F032 | `CASCADE` drop behavior | YES | |
| F033 | `ALTER TABLE` statement: `DROP COLUMN` clause | YES | |
| F034 | Extended REVOKE statement | YES | |
| F034-01 | `REVOKE` statement performed by other than the owner of a schema object | YES | |
| F034-02 | `REVOKE` statement: `GRANT OPTION FOR` clause | YES | |
| F034-03 | `REVOKE` statement to revoke a privilege that the grantee has `WITH GRANT OPTION` | YES | |
| F041 | Basic joined table | YES | |
| F041-01 | Inner join (but not necessarily the `INNER` keyword) | YES | |
| F041-02 | `INNER` keyword | YES | |
| F041-03 | `LEFT OUTER JOIN` | YES | |
| F041-04 | `RIGHT OUTER JOIN` | YES | |
| F041-05 | Outer joins can be nested | YES | |
| F041-07 | The inner table in a left or right outer join can also be used in an inner join | YES | |
| F041-08 | All comparison operators are supported (rather than just `=`) | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| F051 | Basic date and time | YES | |
| F051-01 | `DATE` data type (including support of `DATE` literal) | YES | |
| F051-02 | `TIME` data type (including support of `TIME` literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0 | YES | |
| F051-03 | `TIMESTAMP` data type (including support of `TIMESTAMP` literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0 and 6 | YES | |
| F051-04 | Comparison predicate on `DATE`, `TIME`, and `TIMESTAMP` data types | YES | |
| F051-05 | Explicit `CAST` between datetime types and character string types | YES | |
| F051-06 | `CURRENT_DATE` | YES | |
| F051-07 | `LOCALTIME` | YES | |
| F051-08 | `LOCALTIMESTAMP` | YES | |
| F052 | Intervals and datetime arithmetic | YES | |
| F053 | `OVERLAPS` predicate | YES | |
| F081 | `UNION` and `EXCEPT` in views | YES | |
| F111 | Isolation levels other than SERIALIZABLE | YES | |
| F111-01 | `READ UNCOMMITTED` isolation level | NO | Can be declared but is treated as a synonym for `READ COMMITTED` |
| F111-02 | `READ COMMITTED` isolation level | YES | |
| F111-03 | `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level | YES | |
| F121 | Basic diagnostics management | NO | |
| F122 | Enhanced diagnostics management | NO | |
| F123 | All diagnostics | NO | |
| F131- | Grouped operations | YES | |
| F131-01 | `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, and `HAVING` clauses supported in queries with grouped views | YES | |
| F131-02 | Multiple tables supported in queries with grouped views | YES | |
| F131-03 | Set functions supported in queries with grouped views | YES | |
| F131-04 | Subqueries with `GROUP BY` and `HAVING` clauses and grouped views | YES | |
| F131-05 | Single row `SELECT` with `GROUP BY` and `HAVING` clauses and grouped views | YES | |
| F171 | Multiple schemas per user | YES | |
| F181 | Multiple module support | NO | |
| F191 | Referential delete actions | NO | |
| F200 | `TRUNCATE TABLE` statement | YES | |
| F201 | `CAST` function | YES | |
| F202 | `TRUNCATE TABLE`: identity column restart option | NO | |
| F221 | Explicit defaults | YES | |
| F222 | `INSERT` statement: `DEFAULT VALUES` clause | YES | |
| F231 | Privilege tables | YES | |
| F231-01 | `TABLE_PRIVILEGES` view | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| F231-02 | `COLUMN_PRIVILEGES` view | YES | |
| F231-03 | `USAGE_PRIVILEGES` view | YES | |
| F251 | Domain support | | |
| F261 | CASE expression | YES | |
| F261-01 | Simple `CASE` | YES | |
| F261-02 | Searched `CASE` | YES | |
| F261-03 | `NULLIF` | YES | |
| F261-04 | `COALESCE` | YES | |
| F262 | Extended `CASE` expression | NO | |
| F263 | Comma-separated predicates in simple `CASE` expression | NO | |
| F271 | Compound character literals | YES | |
| F281 | `LIKE` enhancements | YES | |
| F291 | `UNIQUE` predicate | NO | |
| F301 | `CORRESPONDING` in query expressions | NO | |
| F302 | INTERSECT table operator | YES | |
| F302-01 | `INTERSECT DISTINCT` table operator | YES | |
| F302-02 | `INTERSECT ALL` table operator | YES | |
| F304 | `EXCEPT ALL` table operator | | |
| F311 | Schema definition statement | YES | Partial sub-feature support |
| F311-01 | `CREATE SCHEMA` | YES | |
| F311-02 | `CREATE TABLE` for persistent base tables | YES | |
| F311-03 | `CREATE VIEW` | YES | |
| F311-04 | `CREATE VIEW: WITH CHECK OPTION` | NO | |
| F311-05 | `GRANT` statement | YES | |
| F312 | `MERGE` statement | NO | |
| F313 | Enhanced `MERGE` statement | NO | |
| F321 | User authorization | YES | |
| F341 | Usage Tables | NO | |
| F361 | Subprogram support | YES | |
| F381 | Extended schema manipulation | YES | |
| F381-01 | `ALTER TABLE` statement: `ALTER COLUMN` clause | | Some limitations on altering distribution key columns |
| F381-02 | `ALTER TABLE` statement: `ADD CONSTRAINT` clause | | |
| F381-03 | `ALTER TABLE` statement: `DROP CONSTRAINT` clause | | |
| F382 | Alter column data type | YES | Some limitations on altering distribution key columns |
| F391 | Long identifiers | YES | |
| F392 | Unicode escapes in identifiers | NO | |
| F393 | Unicode escapes in literals | NO | |
| F394 | Optional normal form specification | NO | |
| F401 | Extended joined table | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| F401-01 | `NATURAL JOIN` | YES | |
| F401-02 | `FULL OUTER JOIN` | YES | |
| F401-04 | `CROSS JOIN` | YES | |
| F402 | Named column joins for LOBs, arrays, and multisets | NO | |
| F403 | Partitioned joined tables | NO | |
| F411 | Time zone specification | YES | Differences regarding literal interpretation |
| F421 | National character | YES | |
| F431 | Read-only scrollable cursors | YES | Forward scrolling only |
| 01 | `FETCH` with explicit `NEXT` | YES | |
| 02 | `FETCH FIRST` | NO | |
| 03 | `FETCH LAST` | YES | |
| 04 | `FETCH PRIOR` | NO | |
| 05 | `FETCH ABSOLUTE` | NO | |
| 06 | `FETCH RELATIVE` | NO | |
| F441 | Extended set function support | YES | |
| F442 | Mixed column references in set functions | YES | |
| F451 | Character set definition | NO | |
| F461 | Named character sets | NO | |
| F471 | Scalar subquery values | YES | |
| F481 | Expanded `NULL` predicate | YES | |
| F491 | Constraint management | YES | |
| F501 | Features and conformance views | YES | |
| F501-01 | `SQL_FEATURES` view | YES | |
| F501-02 | `SQL_SIZING` view | YES | |
| F501-03 | `SQL_LANGUAGES` view | YES | |
| F502 | Enhanced documentation tables | YES | |
| F502-01 | `SQL_SIZING_PROFILES` view | YES | |
| F502-02 | `SQL_IMPLEMENTATION_INFO` view | YES | |
| F502-03 | `SQL_PACKAGES` view | YES | |
| F521 | Assertions | NO | |
| F531 | Temporary tables | YES | Non-standard form |
| F555 | Enhanced seconds precision | YES | |
| F561 | Full value expressions | YES | |
| F571 | Truth value tests | YES | |
| F591 | Derived tables | YES | |
| F611 | Indicator data types | YES | |
| F641 | Row and table constructors | NO | |
| F651 | Catalog name qualifiers | YES | |
| F661 | Simple tables | NO | |
| F671 | Subqueries in `CHECK` | NO | Intentionally omitted |
| F672 | Retrospective check constraints | YES | |
| F690 | Collation support | NO | |
| F692 | Enhanced collation support | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| F693 | SQL-session and client module collations | NO | |
| F695 | Translation support | NO | |
| F696 | Additional translation documentation | NO | |
| F701 | Referential update actions | NO | |
| F711 | `ALTER` domain | YES | |
| F721 | Deferrable constraints | NO | |
| F731 | `INSERT` column privileges | YES | |
| F741 | Referential `MATCH` types | NO | No partial match |
| F751 | View `CHECK` enhancements | NO | |
| F761 | Session management | YES | |
| F762 | `CURRENT_CATALOG` | NO | |
| F763 | `CURRENT_SCHEMA` | NO | |
| F771 | Connection management | YES | |
| F781 | Self-referencing operations | YES | |
| F791 | Insensitive cursors | YES | |
| F801 | Full set function | YES | |
| F812 | Basic flagging | NO | |
| F813 | Extended flagging | NO | |
| F831 | Full cursor update | NO | |
| F841 | `LIKE_REGEX` predicate | NO | Non-standard syntax for regex |
| F842 | `OCCURENCES_REGEX` function | NO | |
| F843 | `POSITION_REGEX` function | NO | |
| F844 | `SUBSTRING_REGEX` function | NO | |
| F845 | `TRANSLATE_REGEX` function | NO | |
| F846 | Octet support in regular expression operators | NO | |
| F847 | Nonconstant regular expressions | NO | |
| F850 | Top-level `ORDER BY` clause in *query expression* | YES | |
| F851 | Top-level `ORDER BY` clause in subqueries | NO | |
| F852 | Top-level `ORDER BY` clause in views | NO | |
| F855 | Nested `ORDER BY` clause in *query expression* | NO | |
| F856 | Nested `FETCH FIRST` clause in *query expression* | NO | |
| F857 | Top-level `FETCH FIRST` clause in *query expression* | NO | |
| F858 | `FETCH FIRST` clause in subqueries | NO | |
| F859 | Top-level `FETCH FIRST` clause in views | NO | |
| F860 | `FETCH FIRST ROW` *count* in `FETCH FIRST` clause | NO | |
| F861 | Top-level `RESULT OFFSET` clause in *query expression* | NO | |
| F862 | `RESULT OFFSET` clause in subqueries | NO | |
| F863 | Nested `RESULT OFFSET` clause in *query expression* | NO | |
| F864 | Top-level `RESULT OFFSET` clause in views | NO | |
| F865 | `OFFSET ROW` *count* in `RESULT OFFSET` clause | NO | |
| S011 | Distinct data types | NO | |
| S023 | Basic structured types | NO | |
| S024 | Enhanced structured types | NO | |
| S025 | Final structured types | NO | |
| S026 | Self-referencing structured types | NO | |
| S027 | Create method by specific method name | NO | |
| S028 | Permutable UDT options list | NO | |
| S041 | Basic reference types | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| S043 | Enhanced reference types | NO | |
| S051 | Create table of type | NO | |
| S071 | SQL paths in function and type name resolution | YES | |
| S091 | Basic array support | NO | WarehousePG has arrays, but is not fully standards compliant |
| S091-01 | Arrays of built-in data types | NO | Partially compliant |
| S091-02 | Arrays of distinct types | NO | |
| S091-03 | Array expressions | NO | |
| S092 | Arrays of user-defined types | NO | |
| S094 | Arrays of reference types | NO | |
| S095 | Array constructors by query | NO | |
| S096 | Optional array bounds | NO | |
| S097 | Array element assignment | NO | |
| S098 | `array_agg` | Partially | Supported: Using `array_agg` without a window specification, for example: `SELECT array_agg(x) FROM ...`, `SELECT array_agg (x order by y) FROM ...`<br><br>Not supported: Using `array_agg` as an aggregate derived window function, for example: `SELECT array_agg(x) over (ORDER BY y) FROM ...`, `SELECT array_agg(x order by y) over (PARTITION BY z) FROM ...`, `SELECT array_agg(x order by y) over (ORDER BY z) FROM ...` |
| S111 | `ONLY` in query expressions | YES | |
| S151 | Type predicate | NO | |
| S161 | Subtype treatment | NO | |
| S162 | Subtype treatment for references | NO | |
| S201 | SQL-invoked routines on arrays | NO | Functions can be passed WarehousePG cluster types |
| S202 | SQL-invoked routines on multisets | NO | |
| S211 | User-defined cast functions | YES | |
| S231 | Structured type locators | NO | |
| S232 | Array locators | NO | |
| S233 | Multiset locators | NO | |
| S241 | Transform functions | NO | |
| S242 | Alter transform statement | NO | |
| S251 | User-defined orderings | NO | |
| S261 | Specific type method | NO | |
| S271 | Basic multiset support | NO | |
| S272 | Multisets of user-defined types | NO | |
| S274 | Multisets of reference types | NO | |
| S275 | Advanced multiset support | NO | |
| S281 | Nested collection types | NO | |
| S291 | Unique constraint on entire row | NO | |
| S301 | Enhanced `UNNEST` | NO | |
| S401 | Distinct types based on array types | NO | |
| S402 | Distinct types based on distinct types | NO | |
| S403 | `MAX_CARDINALITY` | NO | |
| S404 | `TRIM_ARRAY` | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| T011 | Timestamp in Information Schema | NO | |
| T021 | `BINARY` and `VARBINARY` data types | NO | |
| T022 | Advanced support for `BINARY` and `VARBINARY` data types | NO | |
| T023 | Compound binary literal | NO | |
| T024 | Spaces in binary literals | NO | |
| T031 | `BOOLEAN` data type | YES | |
| T041 | Basic `LOB` data type support | NO | |
| T042 | Extended `LOB` data type support | NO | |
| T043 | Multiplier T | NO | |
| T044 | Multiplier P | NO | |
| T051 | Row types | NO | |
| T052 | `MAX` and `MIN` for row types | NO | |
| T053 | Explicit aliases for all-fields reference | NO | |
| T061 | UCS support | NO | |
| T071 | `BIGINT` data type | YES | |
| T101 | Enhanced nullability determiniation | NO | |
| T111 | Updatable joins, unions, and columns | NO | |
| T121 | `WITH` (excluding `RECURSIVE`) in query expression | NO | |
| T122 | `WITH` (excluding `RECURSIVE`) in subquery | NO | |
| T131 | Recursive query | NO | |
| T132 | Recursive query in subquery | NO | |
| T141 | `SIMILAR` predicate | YES | |
| T151 | `DISTINCT` predicate | YES | |
| T152 | `DISTINCT` predicate with negation | NO | |
| T171 | `LIKE` clause in table definition | YES | |
| T172 | `AS` subquery clause in table definition | YES | |
| T173 | Extended `LIKE` clause in table definition | YES | |
| T174 | Identity columns | NO | |
| T175 | Generated columns | NO | |
| T176 | Sequence generator support | NO | |
| T177 | Sequence generator support: simple restart option | NO | |
| T178 | Identity columns: simple restart option | NO | |
| T191 | Referential action `RESTRICT` | NO | |
| T201 | Comparable data types for referential constraints | NO | |
| T211 | Basic trigger capability | NO | |
| T211-01 | Triggers activated on `UPDATE`, `INSERT`, or `DELETE` of one base table | NO | |
| T211-02 | `BEFORE` triggers | NO | |
| T211-03 | `AFTER` triggers | NO | |
| T211-04 | `FOR EACH ROW` triggers | NO | |
| T211-05 | Ability to specify a search condition that must be true before the trigger is invoked | NO | |
| T211-06 | Support for run-time rules for the interaction of triggers and constraints | NO | |
| T211-07 | `TRIGGER` privilege | YES | |
| T211-08 | Multiple triggers for the same event are run in the order in which they were created in the catalog | NO | Intentionally omitted |
| T212 | Enhanced trigger capability | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| T213 | `INSTEAD OF` triggers | NO | |
| T231 | Sensitive cursors | YES | |
| T241 | `START TRANSACTION` statement | YES | |
| T251 | `SET TRANSACTION` statement: `LOCAL` option | NO | |
| T261 | Chained transactions | NO | |
| T271 | Savepoints | YES | |
| T272 | Enhanced savepoint management | NO | |
| T281 | `SELECT` privilege with column granularity | YES | |
| T285 | Enhanced derived column names | NO | |
| T301 | Functional dependencies | NO | |
| T312 | OVERLAY function | YES | |
| T321 | Basic SQL-invoked routines | NO | Partial support |
| T321-01 | User-defined functions with no overloading | YES | |
| T321-02 | User-defined stored procedures with no overloading | NO | |
| T321-03 | Function invocation | YES | |
| T321-04 | CALL statement | NO | |
| T321-05 | RETURN statement | NO | |
| T321-06 | ROUTINES view | YES | |
| T321-07 | PARAMETERS view | YES | |
| T322 | Overloading of SQL-invoked functions and procedures | YES | |
| T323 | Explicit security for external routines | YES | |
| T324 | Explicit security for SQL routines | NO | |
| T325 | Qualified SQL parameter references | NO | |
| T326 | Table functions | NO | |
| T331 | Basic roles | NO | |
| T332 | Extended roles | NO | |
| T351 | Bracketed SQL comments ( `/*...*/` comments) | YES | |
| T431 | Extended grouping capabilities | NO | |
| T432 | Nested and concatenated `GROUPING SETS` | NO | |
| T433 | Multiargument `GROUPING` function | NO | |
| T434 | `GROUP BY DISTINCT` | NO | |
| T441 | `ABS` and `MOD` functions | YES | |
| T461 | Symmetric `BETWEEN` predicate | YES | |
| T471 | Result sets return value | NO | |
| T491 | `LATERAL` derived table | NO | |
| T501 | Enhanced `EXISTS` predicate | NO | |
| T511 | Transaction counts | NO | |
| T541 | Updatable table references | NO | |
| T561 | Holdable locators | NO | |
| T571 | Array-returning external SQL-invoked functions | NO | |
| T572 | Multiset-returning external SQL-invoked functions | NO | |
| T581 | Regular expression substring function | YES | |
| T591 | `UNIQUE` constraints of possibly null columns | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| T601 | Local cursor references | NO | |
| T611 | Elementary OLAP operations | YES | |
| T612 | Advanced OLAP operations | NO | Partially supported |
| T613 | Sampling | NO | |
| T614 | `NTILE` function | YES | |
| T615 | `LEAD` and `LAG` functions | YES | |
| T616 | Null treatment option for `LEAD` and `LAG` functions | NO | |
| T617 | `FIRST_VALUE` and `LAST_VALUE` function | YES | |
| T618 | `NTH_VALUE` | NO | Function exists in WarehousePG but not all options are supported |
| T621 | Enhanced numeric functions | YES | |
| T631 | N predicate with one list element | NO | |
| T641 | Multiple column assignment | NO | Some syntax variants supported |
| T651 | SQL-schema statements in SQL routines | NO | |
| T652 | SQL-dynamic statements in SQL routines | NO | |
| T653 | SQL-schema statements in external routines | NO | |
| T654 | SQL-dynamic statements in external routines | NO | |
| T655 | Cyclically dependent routines | NO | |
| M001 | Datalinks | NO | |
| M002 | Datalinks via SQL/CLI | NO | |
| M003 | Datalinks via Embedded SQL | NO | |
| M004 | Foreign data support | NO | |
| M005 | Foreign schema support | NO | |
| M006 | GetSQLString routine | NO | |
| M007 | TransmitRequest | NO | |
| M009 | GetOpts and GetStatistics routines | NO | |
| M010 | Foreign data wrapper support | NO | |
| M011 | Datalinks via Ada | NO | |
| M012 | Datalinks via C | NO | |
| M013 | Datalinks via COBOL | NO | |
| M014 | Datalinks via Fortran | NO | |
| M015 | Datalinks via M | NO | |
| M016 | Datalinks via Pascal | NO | |
| M017 | Datalinks via PL/I | NO | |
| M018 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Ada | NO | |
| M019 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in C | NO | |
| M020 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in COBOL | NO | |
| M021 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Fortran | NO | |
| M022 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in MUMPS | NO | |
| M023 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in Pascal | NO | |
| M024 | Foreign data wrapper interface routines in PL/I | NO | |
| M030 | SQL-server foreign data support | NO | |
| M031 | Foreign data wrapper general routines | NO | |
| X010 | XML type | YES | |
| X011 | Arrays of XML type | YES | |
| X012 | Multisets of XML type | NO | |
| X013 | Distinct types of XML type | NO | |
| X014 | Attributes of XML type | NO | |
| X015 | Fields of XML type | NO | |
| X016 | Persistent XML values | YES | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| X020 | XMLConcat | YES | xmlconcat2() supported |
| X025 | XMLCast | NO | |
| X030 | XMLDocument | NO | |
| X031 | XMLElement | YES | |
| X032 | XMLForest | YES | |
| X034 | XMLAgg | YES | |
| X035 | XMLAgg: ORDER BY option | YES | |
| X036 | XMLComment | YES | |
| X037 | XMLPI | YES | |
| X038 | XMLText | NO | |
| X040 | Basic table mapping | NO | |
| X041 | Basic table mapping: nulls absent | NO | |
| X042 | Basic table mapping: null as nil | NO | |
| X043 | Basic table mapping: table as forest | NO | |
| X044 | Basic table mapping: table as element | NO | |
| X045 | Basic table mapping: with target namespace | NO | |
| X046 | Basic table mapping: data mapping | NO | |
| X047 | Basic table mapping: metadata mapping | NO | |
| X048 | Basic table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings | NO | |
| X049 | Basic table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings | NO | |
| X051 | Advanced table mapping: nulls absent | NO | |
| X052 | Advanced table mapping: null as nil | NO | |
| X053 | Advanced table mapping: table as forest | NO | |
| X054 | Advanced table mapping: table as element | NO | |
| X055 | Advanced table mapping: target namespace | NO | |
| X056 | Advanced table mapping: data mapping | NO | |
| X057 | Advanced table mapping: metadata mapping | NO | |
| X058 | Advanced table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings | NO | |
| X059 | Advanced table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings | NO | |
| X060 | XMLParse: Character string input and CONTENT option | YES | |
| X061 | XMLParse: Character string input and DOCUMENT option | YES | |
| X065 | XMLParse: BLOB input and CONTENT option | NO | |
| X066 | XMLParse: BLOB input and DOCUMENT option | NO | |
| X068 | XMLSerialize: BOM | NO | |
| X069 | XMLSerialize: INDENT | NO | |
| X070 | XMLSerialize: Character string serialization and CONTENT option | YES | |
| X071 | XMLSerialize: Character string serialization and DOCUMENT option | YES | |
| X072 | XMLSerialize: Character string serialization | YES | |
| X073 | XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization and CONTENT option | NO | |
| X074 | XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization and DOCUMENT option | NO | |
| X075 | XMLSerialize: BLOB serialization | NO | |
| X076 | XMLSerialize: VERSION | NO | |
| X077 | XMLSerialize: explicit ENCODING option | NO | |
| X078 | XMLSerialize: explicit XML declaration | NO | |
| X080 | Namespaces in XML publishing | NO | |
| X081 | Query-level XML namespace declarations | NO | |
| X082 | XML namespace declarations in DML | NO | |
| X083 | XML namespace declarations in DDL | NO | |
| X084 | XML namespace declarations in compound statements | NO | |
| X085 | Predefined namespace prefixes | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| X086 | XML namespace declarations in XMLTable | NO | |
| X090 | XML document predicate | NO | xml_is_well_formed_document() supported |
| X091 | XML content predicate | NO | xml_is_well_formed_content() supported |
| X096 | XMLExists | NO | xmlexists() supported |
| X100 | Host language support for XML: CONTENT option | NO | |
| X101 | Host language support for XML: DOCUMENT option | NO | |
| X110 | Host language support for XML: VARCHAR mapping | NO | |
| X111 | Host language support for XML: CLOB mapping | NO | |
| X112 | Host language support for XML: BLOB mapping | NO | |
| X113 | Host language support for XML: STRIP WHITESPACE option | YES | |
| X114 | Host language support for XML: PRESERVE WHITESPACE option | YES | |
| X120 | XML parameters in SQL routines | YES | |
| X121 | XML parameters in external routines | YES | |
| X131 | Query-level XMLBINARY clause | NO | |
| X132 | XMLBINARY clause in DML | NO | |
| X133 | XMLBINARY clause in DDL | NO | |
| X134 | XMLBINARY clause in compound statements | NO | |
| X135 | XMLBINARY clause in subqueries | NO | |
| X141 | IS VALID predicate: data-driven case | NO | |
| X142 | IS VALID predicate: ACCORDING TO clause | NO | |
| X143 | IS VALID predicate: ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X144 | IS VALID predicate: schema location | NO | |
| X145 | IS VALID predicate outside check constraints | NO | |
| X151 | IS VALID predicate with DOCUMENT option | NO | |
| X152 | IS VALID predicate with CONTENT option | NO | |
| X153 | IS VALID predicate with SEQUENCE option | NO | |
| X155 | IS VALID predicate: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X157 | IS VALID predicate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X160 | Basic Information Schema for registered XML Schemas | NO | |
| X161 | Advanced Information Schema for registered XML Schemas | NO | |
| X170 | XML null handling options | NO | |
| X171 | NIL ON NO CONTENT option | NO | |
| X181 | XML( DOCUMENT (UNTYPED)) type | NO | |
| X182 | XML( DOCUMENT (ANY)) type | NO | |
| X190 | XML( SEQUENCE) type | NO | |
| X191 | XML( DOCUMENT (XMLSCHEMA )) type | NO | |
| X192 | XML( CONTENT (XMLSCHEMA)) type | NO | |
| X200 | XMLQuery | NO | |
| X201 | XMLQuery: RETURNING CONTENT | NO | |
| X202 | XMLQuery: RETURNING SEQUENCE | NO | |
| X203 | XMLQuery: passing a context item | NO | |
| X204 | XMLQuery: initializing an XQuery variable | NO | |
| X205 | XMLQuery: EMPTY ON EMPTY option | NO | |
| X206 | XMLQuery: NULL ON EMPTY option | NO | |
| X211 | XML 1.1 support | NO | |
| X221 | XML passing mechanism BY VALUE | NO | |
| X222 | XML passing mechanism BY REF | NO | |
| X231 | XML( CONTENT (UNTYPED )) type | NO | |
| X232 | XML( CONTENT (ANY )) type | NO | |
| X241 | RETURNING CONTENT in XML publishing | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| ID | Feature | Supported | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|
| X242 | RETURNING SEQUENCE in XML publishing | NO | |
| X251 | Persistent XML values of XML( DOCUMENT (UNTYPED )) type | NO | |
| X252 | Persistent XML values of XML( DOCUMENT (ANY)) type | NO | |
| X253 | Persistent XML values of XML( CONTENT (UNTYPED)) type | NO | |
| X254 | Persistent XML values of XML( CONTENT (ANY)) type | NO | |
| X255 | Persistent XML values of XML( SEQUENCE) type | NO | |
| X256 | Persistent XML values of XML( DOCUMENT (XMLSCHEMA)) type | NO | |
| X257 | Persistent XML values of XML( CONTENT (XMLSCHEMA ) type | NO | |
| X260 | XML type: ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X261 | XML type: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X263 | XML type: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X264 | XML type: schema location | NO | |
| X271 | XMLValidate: data-driven case | NO | |
| X272 | XMLValidate: ACCORDING TO clause | NO | |
| X273 | XMLValidate: ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X274 | XMLValidate: schema location | NO | |
| X281 | XMLValidate: with DOCUMENT option | NO | |
| X282 | XMLValidate with CONTENT option | NO | |
| X283 | XMLValidate with SEQUENCE option | NO | |
| X284 | XMLValidate NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X286 | XMLValidate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause | NO | |
| X300 | XMLTable | NO | |
| X301 | XMLTable: derived column list option | NO | |
| X302 | XMLTable: ordinality column option | NO | |
| X303 | XMLTable: column default option | NO | |
| X304 | XMLTable: passing a context item | NO | |
| X305 | XMLTable: initializing an XQuery variable | NO | |
| X400 | Name and identifier mapping | NO | |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.11 Objects Removed in WarehousePG 6

WarehousePG 6 removes several database objects. These changes can effect the successful upgrade from one major version to another. Review these objects when using WarehousePG Upgrade, or WarehousePG Backup and Restore. This topic highlight these changes.


- Removed Relations
- Removed Columns
- Removed Functions and Procedures
- Removed Types, Domains, and Composite Types
- Removed Operators


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

### Removed Relations

The following list includes the removed relations in WarehousePG 6.

- gp_toolkit.__gp_localid
- gp_toolkit.__gp_masterid
- pg_catalog.gp_configuration
- pg_catalog.gp_db_interfaces
- pg_catalog.gp_fault_strategy
- pg_catalog.gp_global_sequence
- pg_catalog.gp_interfaces
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_database_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_filespace_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_relation_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_tablespace_node
- pg_catalog.gp_relation_node
- pg_catalog.pg_autovacuum
- pg_catalog.pg_filespace
- pg_catalog.pg_filespace_entry
- pg_catalog.pg_listener
- pg_catalog.pg_window

### Removed Columns

The following list includes the removed columns in WarehousePG 6.

- gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config.proposed_concurrency
- gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config.proposed_memory_limit
- gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config.proposed_memory_shared_quota
- gp_toolkit.gp_resgroup_config.proposed_memory_spill_ratio
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_entries.current_query
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_entries.directory
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_entries.procpid
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_entries.state
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_entries.workmem
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_usage_per_query.current_query
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_usage_per_query.procpid
- gp_toolkit.gp_workfile_usage_per_query.state
- information_schema.triggers.condition_reference_new_row
- information_schema.triggers.condition_reference_new_table
- information_schema.triggers.condition_reference_old_row
- information_schema.triggers.condition_reference_old_table
- information_schema.triggers.condition_timing
- pg_catalog.gp_distribution_policy.attrnums
- pg_catalog.gp_segment_configuration.replication_port
- pg_catalog.pg_aggregate.agginvprelimfn
- pg_catalog.pg_aggregate.agginvtransfn
- pg_catalog.pg_aggregate.aggordered
- pg_catalog.pg_aggregate.aggprelimfn
- pg_catalog.pg_am.amcanshrink
- pg_catalog.pg_am.amgetmulti
- pg_catalog.pg_am.amindexnulls
- pg_catalog.pg_amop.amopreqcheck
- pg_catalog.pg_authid.rolconfig

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.pg_authid.rolcreaterexthdfs
- pg_catalog.pg_authid.rolcreatewexthdfs
- pg_catalog.pg_class.relfkeys
- pg_catalog.pg_class.relrefs
- pg_catalog.pg_class.reltoastidxid
- pg_catalog.pg_class.reltriggers
- pg_catalog.pg_class.relukeys
- pg_catalog.pg_database.datconfig
- pg_catalog.pg_exttable.fmterrtbl
- pg_catalog.pg_proc.proiswin
- pg_catalog.pg_resgroupcapability.proposed
- pg_catalog.pg_rewrite.ev_attr
- pg_catalog.pg_roles.rolcreaterexthdfs
- pg_catalog.pg_roles.rolcreatewexthdfs
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity.current_query
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity.procpid
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_replication.procpid
- pg_catalog.pg_tablespace.spcfsoid
- pg_catalog.pg_tablespace.spclocation
- pg_catalog.pg_tablespace.spcmirlocations
- pg_catalog.pg_tablespace.spcprilocations
- pg_catalog.pg_trigger.tgconstrname
- pg_catalog.pg_trigger.tgisconstraint

### Removed Functions and Procedures

The following list includes the removed functions and procedures in WarehousePG 6.

- gp_toolkit.__gp_aocsseg
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aocsseg_history
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aocsseg_name
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aoseg_history
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aoseg_name
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap_entry
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap_entry_name
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap_hidden_info
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap_hidden_info_name
- gp_toolkit.__gp_aovisimap_name
- gp_toolkit.__gp_param_local_setting
- gp_toolkit.__gp_workfile_entries_f
- gp_toolkit.__gp_workfile_mgr_used_diskspace_f
- information_schema._pg_keyissubset
- information_schema._pg_underlying_index
- pg_catalog.areajoinsel
- pg_catalog.array_agg_finalfn
- pg_catalog.bmcostestimate
- pg_catalog.bmgetmulti
- pg_catalog.bpchar_pattern_eq
- pg_catalog.bpchar_pattern_ne
- pg_catalog.btcostestimate
- pg_catalog.btgetmulti
- pg_catalog.btgpxlogloccmp
- pg_catalog.btname_pattern_cmp
- pg_catalog.btrescan
- pg_catalog.contjoinsel
- pg_catalog.cume_dist_final
- pg_catalog.cume_dist_prelim
- pg_catalog.dense_rank_immed
- pg_catalog.eqjoinsel
- pg_catalog.first_value
- pg_catalog.first_value_any
- pg_catalog.first_value_bit
- pg_catalog.first_value_bool
- pg_catalog.first_value_box
- pg_catalog.first_value_bytea
- pg_catalog.first_value_char
- pg_catalog.first_value_cidr
- pg_catalog.first_value_circle
- pg_catalog.first_value_float4
- pg_catalog.first_value_float8
- pg_catalog.first_value_inet
- pg_catalog.first_value_int4

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.first_value_int8
- pg_catalog.first_value_interval
- pg_catalog.first_value_line
- pg_catalog.first_value_lseg
- pg_catalog.first_value_macaddr
- pg_catalog.first_value_money
- pg_catalog.first_value_name
- pg_catalog.first_value_numeric
- pg_catalog.first_value_oid
- pg_catalog.first_value_path
- pg_catalog.first_value_point
- pg_catalog.first_value_polygon
- pg_catalog.first_value_reltime
- pg_catalog.first_value_smallint
- pg_catalog.first_value_text
- pg_catalog.first_value_tid
- pg_catalog.first_value_time
- pg_catalog.first_value_timestamp
- pg_catalog.first_value_timestamptz
- pg_catalog.first_value_timetz
- pg_catalog.first_value_varbit
- pg_catalog.first_value_varchar
- pg_catalog.first_value_xid
- pg_catalog.flatfile_update_trigger
- pg_catalog.float4_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.float4_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.float4_decum
- pg_catalog.float8_amalg
- pg_catalog.float8_avg
- pg_catalog.float8_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.float8_avg_amalg
- pg_catalog.float8_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.float8_avg_demalg
- pg_catalog.float8_decum
- pg_catalog.float8_demalg
- pg_catalog.float8_regr_amalg
- pg_catalog.get_ao_compression_ratio
- pg_catalog.get_ao_distribution
- pg_catalog.ginarrayconsistent
- pg_catalog.gincostestimate
- pg_catalog.gin_extract_tsquery
- pg_catalog.gingetmulti
- pg_catalog.gingettuple
- pg_catalog.ginqueryarrayextract
- pg_catalog.ginrescan
- pg_catalog.gin_tsquery_consistent
- pg_catalog.gist_box_consistent
- pg_catalog.gist_circle_consistent
- pg_catalog.gistcostestimate
- pg_catalog.gistgetmulti
- pg_catalog.gist_poly_consistent
- pg_catalog.gistrescan
- pg_catalog.gp_activate_standby
- pg_catalog.gp_add_global_sequence_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_master_standby
- pg_catalog.gp_add_persistent_database_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_persistent_filespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_persistent_relation_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_persistent_tablespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_relation_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_add_segment
- pg_catalog.gp_add_segment_mirror
- pg_catalog.gp_add_segment_persistent_entries
- pg_catalog.gpaotidin
- pg_catalog.gpaotidout
- pg_catalog.gpaotidrecv
- pg_catalog.gpaotidsend
- pg_catalog.gp_backup_launch
- pg_catalog.gp_changetracking_log
- pg_catalog.gp_dbspecific_ptcat_verification
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_global_sequence_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_persistent_database_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_persistent_filespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_persistent_relation_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_persistent_tablespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_delete_relation_node_entry

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.gp_nondbspecific_ptcat_verification
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_build_all
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_build_db
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_relation_node_check
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_repair_delete
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_reset_all
- pg_catalog.gp_prep_new_segment
- pg_catalog.gp_quicklz_compress
- pg_catalog.gp_quicklz_constructor
- pg_catalog.gp_quicklz_decompress
- pg_catalog.gp_quicklz_destructor
- pg_catalog.gp_quicklz_validator
- pg_catalog.gp_read_backup_file
- pg_catalog.gp_remove_segment_persistent_entries
- pg_catalog.gp_restore_launch
- pg_catalog.gp_statistics_estimate_reltuples_relpages_oid
- pg_catalog.gp_update_ao_master_stats
- pg_catalog.gp_update_global_sequence_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_update_persistent_database_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_update_persistent_filespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_update_persistent_relation_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_update_persistent_tablespace_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_update_relation_node_entry
- pg_catalog.gp_write_backup_file
- pg_catalog.gpxlogloceq
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocge
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocgt
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocin
- pg_catalog.gpxlogloclarger
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocle
- pg_catalog.gpxlogloclt
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocne
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocout
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocrecv
- pg_catalog.gpxloglocsend
- pg_catalog.gpxlogloclocsmaller
- pg_catalog.gtsquery_consistent
- pg_catalog.gtsvector_consistent
- pg_catalog.hashcostestimate
- pg_catalog.hashgetmulti
- pg_catalog.hashrescan
- pg_catalog.iclikejoinsel
- pg_catalog.icnlikejoinsel
- pg_catalog.icregexeqjoinsel
- pg_catalog.icregexnejoinsel
- pg_catalog.int24mod
- pg_catalog.int2_accum
- pg_catalog.int2_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.int2_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.int2_decum
- pg_catalog.int2_invsum
- pg_catalog.int42mod
- pg_catalog.int4_accum
- pg_catalog.int4_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.int4_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.int4_decum
- pg_catalog.int4_invsum
- pg_catalog.int8
- pg_catalog.int8_accum
- pg_catalog.int8_avg
- pg_catalog.int8_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.int8_avg_amalg
- pg_catalog.int8_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.int8_avg_demalg
- pg_catalog.int8_decum
- pg_catalog.int8_invsum
- pg_catalog.interval_amalg
- pg_catalog.interval_decum
- pg_catalog.interval_demalg
- pg_catalog.json_each_text
- pg_catalog.json_extract_path_op
- pg_catalog.json_extract_path_text_op
- pg_catalog.lag_any
- pg_catalog.lag_bit
- pg_catalog.lag_bool
- pg_catalog.lag_box

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.lag_bytea
- pg_catalog.lag_char
- pg_catalog.lag_cidr
- pg_catalog.lag_circle
- pg_catalog.lag_float4
- pg_catalog.lag_float8
- pg_catalog.lag_inet
- pg_catalog.lag_int4
- pg_catalog.lag_int8
- pg_catalog.lag_interval
- pg_catalog.lag_line
- pg_catalog.lag_lseg
- pg_catalog.lag_macaddr
- pg_catalog.lag_money
- pg_catalog.lag_name
- pg_catalog.lag_numeric
- pg_catalog.lag_oid
- pg_catalog.lag_path
- pg_catalog.lag_point
- pg_catalog.lag_polygon
- pg_catalog.lag_reltime
- pg_catalog.lag_smallint
- pg_catalog.lag_text
- pg_catalog.lag_tid
- pg_catalog.lag_time
- pg_catalog.lag_timestamp
- pg_catalog.lag_timestamptz
- pg_catalog.lag_timetz
- pg_catalog.lag_varbit
- pg_catalog.lag_varchar
- pg_catalog.lag_xid
- pg_catalog.last_value
- pg_catalog.last_value_any
- pg_catalog.last_value_bigint
- pg_catalog.last_value_bit
- pg_catalog.last_value_bool
- pg_catalog.last_value_box
- pg_catalog.last_value_bytea
- pg_catalog.last_value_char
- pg_catalog.last_value_cidr
- pg_catalog.last_value_circle
- pg_catalog.last_value_float4
- pg_catalog.last_value_float8
- pg_catalog.last_value_inet
- pg_catalog.last_value_int
- pg_catalog.last_value_interval
- pg_catalog.last_value_line
- pg_catalog.last_value_lseg
- pg_catalog.last_value_macaddr
- pg_catalog.last_value_money
- pg_catalog.last_value_name
- pg_catalog.last_value_numeric
- pg_catalog.last_value_oid
- pg_catalog.last_value_path
- pg_catalog.last_value_point
- pg_catalog.last_value_polygon
- pg_catalog.last_value_reltime
- pg_catalog.last_value_smallint
- pg_catalog.last_value_text
- pg_catalog.last_value_tid
- pg_catalog.last_value_time
- pg_catalog.last_value_timestamp
- pg_catalog.last_value_timestamptz
- pg_catalog.last_value_timetz
- pg_catalog.last_value_varbit
- pg_catalog.last_value_varchar
- pg_catalog.last_value_xid
- pg_catalog.lead_any
- pg_catalog.lead_bit
- pg_catalog.lead_bool
- pg_catalog.lead_box
- pg_catalog.lead_bytea
- pg_catalog.lead_char
- pg_catalog.lead_cidr
- pg_catalog.lead_circle
- pg_catalog.lead_float4

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.lead_float8
- pg_catalog.lead_inet
- pg_catalog.lead_int
- pg_catalog.lead_int8
- pg_catalog.lead_interval
- pg_catalog.lead_lag_frame_maker
- pg_catalog.lead_line
- pg_catalog.lead_lseg
- pg_catalog.lead_macaddr
- pg_catalog.lead_money
- pg_catalog.lead_name
- pg_catalog.lead_numeric
- pg_catalog.lead_oid
- pg_catalog.lead_path
- pg_catalog.lead_point
- pg_catalog.lead_polygon
- pg_catalog.lead_reltime
- pg_catalog.lead_smallint
- pg_catalog.lead_text
- pg_catalog.lead_tid
- pg_catalog.lead_time
- pg_catalog.lead_timestamp
- pg_catalog.lead_timestamptz
- pg_catalog.lead_timetz
- pg_catalog.lead_varbit
- pg_catalog.lead_varchar
- pg_catalog.lead_xid
- pg_catalog.likejoinsel
- pg_catalog.max
- pg_catalog.min
- pg_catalog.mod
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_eq
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_ge
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_gt
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_le
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_lt
- pg_catalog.name_pattern_ne
- pg_catalog.neqjoinsel
- pg_catalog.nlikejoinsel
- pg_catalog.ntile
- pg_catalog.ntile_final
- pg_catalog.ntile_prelim_bigint
- pg_catalog.ntile_prelim_int
- pg_catalog.ntile_prelim_numeric
- pg_catalog.numeric_accum
- pg_catalog.numeric_amalg
- pg_catalog.numeric_avg
- pg_catalog.numeric_avg_accum
- pg_catalog.numeric_avg_amalg
- pg_catalog.numeric_avg_decum
- pg_catalog.numeric_avg_demalg
- pg_catalog.numeric_decum
- pg_catalog.numeric_demalg
- pg_catalog.numeric_stddev_pop
- pg_catalog.numeric_stddev_samp
- pg_catalog.numeric_var_pop
- pg_catalog.numeric_var_samp
- pg_catalog.percent_rank_final
- pg_catalog.pg_current_xlog_insert_location
- pg_catalog.pg_current_xlog_location
- pg_catalog.pg_cursor
- pg_catalog.pg_get_expr
- pg_catalog.pg_lock_status
- pg_catalog.pg_objname_to_oid
- pg_catalog.pg_prepared_statement
- pg_catalog.pg_prepared_xact
- pg_catalog.pg_relation_size
- pg_catalog.pg_show_all_settings
- pg_catalog.pg_start_backup
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_get_activity
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_get_backend_txn_start
- pg_catalog.pg_stat_get_wal_senders
- pg_catalog.pg_stop_backup
- pg_catalog.pg_switch_xlog
- pg_catalog.pg_total_relation_size
- pg_catalog.pg_xlogfile_name

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- pg_catalog.pg_xlogfile_name_offset
- pg_catalog.positionjoinsel
- pg_catalog.rank_immed
- pg_catalog.regexeqjoinsel
- pg_catalog.regexnejoinsel
- pg_catalog.row_number_immed
- pg_catalog.scalargtjoinsel
- pg_catalog.scalarltjoinsel
- pg_catalog.string_agg
- pg_catalog.string_agg_delim_transfn
- pg_catalog.string_agg_transfn
- pg_catalog.text_pattern_eq
- pg_catalog.text_pattern_ne

### Removed Types, Domains, and Composite Types

The following list includes the WarehousePG 6 removed types, domains, and composite types.

- gp_toolkit.__gp_localid
- gp_toolkit.__gp_masterid
- pg_catalog._gpaotid
- pg_catalog._gpxlogloc
- pg_catalog.gp_configuration
- pg_catalog.gp_db_interfaces
- pg_catalog.gp_fault_strategy
- pg_catalog.gp_global_sequence
- pg_catalog.gp_interfaces
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_database_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_filespace_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_relation_node
- pg_catalog.gp_persistent_tablespace_node
- pg_catalog.gp_relation_node
- pg_catalog.gpaotid
- pg_catalog.gpxlogloc
- pg_catalog.nb_classification
- pg_catalog.pg_autovacuum
- pg_catalog.pg_filespace
- pg_catalog.pg_filespace_entry
- pg_catalog.pg_listener
- pg_catalog.pg_window

### Removed Operators

The following list includes the WarehousePG 6 removed operators.

| oprname | oprcode |
|---|---|
| pg_catalog.#> | json_extract_path_op |
| pg_catalog.#>> | json_extract_path_text_op |
| pg_catalog.% | int42mod |
| pg_catalog.% | int24mod |
| pg_catalog.< | gpxloglocl t |
| pg_catalog.<= | gpxloglocle |
| pg_catalog.<> | gpxloglocne |
| pg_catalog.= | gpxlogloceq |
| pg_catalog.> | gpxloglocgt |
| pg_catalog.>= | gpxloglocge |
| pg_catalog.~<=~ | name_pattern_le |
| pg_catalog.~<>~ | name_pattern_ne |
| pg_catalog.~<>~ | bpchar_pattern_ne |
| pg_catalog.~<>~ | textne |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| oprname | oprcode |
| --- | --- |
| pg_catalog.~<~ | name_pattern_lt |
| pg_catalog.~=~ | name_pattern_eq |
| pg_catalog.~=~ | bpchar_pattern_eq |
| pg_catalog.~=~ | texteq |
| pg_catalog.~>=~ | name_pattern_ge |
| pg_catalog.~>~ | name_pattern_gt |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.12 Server Programmatic Interfaces

This section describes programmatic interfaces to the WarehousePG server.

- WarehousePG Partner Connector API
- Background Worker Processes

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.12.1 WarehousePG Partner Connector API

With the WarehousePG Partner Connector API (GPPC API), you can write portable WarehousePG user-defined functions (UDFs) in the C and C++ programming languages. Functions that you develop with the GPPC API require no recompilation or modification to work with older or newer WarehousePG versions.

Functions that you write to the GPPC API can be invoked using SQL in WarehousePG. The API provides a set of functions and macros that you can use to issue SQL commands through the Server Programming Interface (SPI), manipulate simple and composite data type function arguments and return values, manage memory, and handle data.

You compile the C/C++ functions that you develop with the GPPC API into a shared library. The GPPC functions are available to WarehousePG users after the shared library is installed in the WarehousePG cluster and the GPPC functions are registered as SQL UDFs.

This topic contains the following information:


- Using the GPPC API
  - Requirements
  - Header and Library Files
  - Data Types
  - Function Declaration, Arguments, and Results
  - Memory Handling
  - Working With Variable-Length Text Types
  - Error Reporting and Logging
  - SPI Functions
  - About Tuple Descriptors and Tuples
  - Set-Returning Functions
  - Table Functions
  - Sample Code
- Building a GPPC Shared Library with PGXS
- Registering a GPPC Function with WarehousePG
- Packaging and Deployment Considerations
- GPPC Text Function Example
- GPPC Set-Returning Function Example


### Using the GPPC API

The GPPC API shares some concepts with C language functions as defined by PostgreSQL. Refer to C-Language Functions in the PostgreSQL documentation for detailed information about developing C language functions.

The GPPC API is a wrapper that makes a C/C++ function SQL-invokable in WarehousePG. This wrapper shields GPPC functions that you write from WarehousePG library changes by normalizing table and data manipulation and SPI operations through functions and macros defined by the API.

The GPPC API includes functions and macros to:

- Operate on base and composite data types.
- Process function arguments and return values.
- Allocate and free memory.
- Log and report errors to the client.
- Issue SPI queries.
- Return a table or set of rows.
- Process tables as function input arguments.

#### Requirements

When you develop with the GPPC API:

- You must develop your code on a system with the same hardware and software architecture as that of your WarehousePG hosts.
- You must write the GPPC function(s) in the C or C++ programming languages.
- The function code must use the GPPC API, data types, and macros.
- The function code must *not* use the PostgreSQL C-Language Function API, header files, functions, or macros.
- The function code must *not* `#include` the `postgres.h` header file or use `PG_MODULE_MAGIC`.
- You must use only the GPPC-wrapped memory functions to allocate and free memory. See Memory Handling.
- Symbol names in your object files must not conflict with each other nor with symbols defined in the WarehousePG server. You must rename your functions or variables if you get error messages to this effect.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Header and Library Files

The GPPC header files and libraries are installed in `$GPHOME`:

- $GPHOME/include/gppc.h - the main GPPC header file
- $GPHOME/include/gppc_config.h - header file defining the GPPC version
- $GPHOME/lib/libgppc.[a, so, so.1, so.1.2] - GPPC archive and shared libraries

#### Data Types

The GPPC functions that you create will operate on data residing in WarehousePG. The GPPC API includes data type definitions for equivalent WarehousePG SQL data types. You must use these types in your GPPC functions.

The GPPC API defines a generic data type that you can use to represent any GPPC type. This data type is named `GppcDatum`, and is defined as follows:

```
typedef int64_t GppcDatum;
```

The following table identifies each GPPC data type and the SQL type to which it maps.

| SQL Type | GPPC Type | GPPC Oid for Type |
|---|---|---|
| boolean | GppcBool | GppcOidBool |
| char (single byte) | GppcChar | GppcOidChar |
| int2/smallint | GppcInt2 | GppcOidInt2 |
| int4/integer | GppcInt4 | GppcOidInt4 |
| int8/bigint | GppcInt8 | GppcOidInt8 |
| float4/real | GppcFloat4 | GppcOidFloat4 |
| float8/double | GppcFloat8 | GppcOidFloat8 |
| text | *GppcText | GppcOidText |
| varchar | *GppcVarChar | GppcOidVarChar |
| char | *GppcBpChar | GppcOidBpChar |
| bytea | *GppcBytea | GppcOidBytea |
| numeric | *GppcNumeric | GppcOidNumeric |
| date | GppcDate | GppcOidDate |
| time | GppcTime | GppcOidTime |
| timetz | *GppcTimeTz | GppcOidTimeTz |
| timestamp | GppcTimestamp | GppcOidTimestamp |
| timestamptz | GppcTimestampTz | GppcOidTimestampTz |
| anytable | GppcAnyTable | GppcOidAnyTable |
| oid | GppcOid | |

The GPPC API treats text, numeric, and timestamp data types specially, providing functions to operate on these types.

Example GPPC base data type declarations:

```
GppcText       message;
GppcInt4       arg1;
GppcNumeric    total_sales;
```

The GPPC API defines functions to convert between the generic `GppcDatum` type and the GPPC specific types. For example, to convert from an integer to a datum:

```
GppcInt4 num = 13;
GppcDatum num_dat = GppcInt4GetDatum(num);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Composite Types

A composite data type represents the structure of a row or record, and is comprised of a list of field names and their data types. This structure information is typically referred to as a tuple descriptor. An instance of a composite type is typically referred to as a tuple or row. A tuple does not have a fixed layout and can contain null fields.

The GPPC API provides an interface that you can use to define the structure of, to access, and to set tuples. You will use this interface when your GPPC function takes a table as an input argument or returns table or set of record types. Using tuples in table and set returning functions is covered later in this topic.

### Function Declaration, Arguments, and Results

The GPPC API relies on macros to declare functions and to simplify the passing of function arguments and results. These macros include:

| Task | Macro Signature | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Make a function SQL-invokable | `GPPC_FUNCTION_INFO(function\_name)` | Glue to make function `function\_name` SQL-invokable. |
| Declare a function | `GppcDatum function\_name(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS)` | Declare a GPPC function named `function\_name`; every function must have this same signature. |
| Return the number of arguments | `GPPC_NARGS()` | Return the number of arguments passed to the function. |
| Fetch an argument | `GPPC_GETARG_<ARGTYPE>(arg\_num)` | Fetch the value of argument number arg_num (starts at 0), where `<ARGTYPE>` identifies the data type of the argument. For example, `GPPC_GETARG_FLOAT8(0)`. |
| Fetch and make a copy of a text-type argument | `GPPC_GETARG_<ARGTYPE>_COPY(arg\_num)` | Fetch and make a copy of the value of argument number arg_num (starts at 0). `<ARGTYPE>` identifies the text type (text, varchar, bpchar, bytea). For example, `GPPC_GETARG_BYTEA_COPY(1)`. |
| Determine if an argument is NULL | `GPPC_ARGISNULL(arg\_num)` | Return whether or not argument number `arg\_num` is NULL. |
| Return a result | `GPPC_RETURN_<ARGTYPE>(return\_val)` | Return the value `return\_val`, where `<ARGTYPE>` identifies the data type of the return value. For example, `GPPC_RETURN_INT4(131)`. |

When you define and implement your GPPC function, you must declare it with the GPPC API using the two declarations identified above. For example, to declare a GPPC function named `add_int4s()`:

```
GPPC_FUNCTION_INFO(add_int4s);
GppcDatum add_int4s(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS);

GppcDatum
add_int4s(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
  // code here
}
```

If the `add_int4s()` function takes two input arguments of type `int4`, you use the `GPPC_GETARG_INT4(arg\_num)` macro to access the argument values. The argument index starts at 0. For example:

```
GppcInt4  first_int = GPPC_GETARG_INT4(0);
GppcInt4  second_int = GPPC_GETARG_INT4(1);
```

If `add_int4s()` returns the sum of the two input arguments, you use the `GPPC_RETURN_INT8(return\_val)` macro to return this sum. For example:

```
GppcInt8  sum = first_int + second_int;
GPPC_RETURN_INT8(sum);
```

The complete GPPC function:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
GPPC_FUNCTION_INFO(add_int4s);
GppcDatum add_int4s(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS);

GppcDatum
add_int4s(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
  // get input arguments
  GppcInt4    first_int = GPPC_GETARG_INT4(0);
  GppcInt4    second_int = GPPC_GETARG_INT4(1);

  // add the arguments
  GppcInt8    sum = first_int + second_int;

  // return the sum
  GPPC_RETURN_INT8(sum);
}
```

#### Memory Handling

The GPPC API provides functions that you use to allocate and free memory, including text memory. You must use these functions for all memory operations.

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| void *GppcAlloc( size_t num ) | Allocate num bytes of uninitialized memory. |
| void *GppcAlloc0( size_t num ) | Allocate num bytes of 0-initialized memory. |
| void *GppcRealloc( void *ptr, size_t num ) | Resize pre-allocated memory. |
| void GppcFree( void *ptr ) | Free allocated memory. |

After you allocate memory, you can use system functions such as `memcpy()` to set the data.

The following example allocates an array of `GppcDatum` s and sets the array to datum versions of the function input arguments:

```
GppcDatum  *values;
int attnum = GPPC_NARGS();

// allocate memory for attnum values
values = GppcAlloc( sizeof(GppcDatum) * attnum );

// set the values
for( int i=0; i<attnum; i++ ) {
    GppcDatum d = GPPC_GETARG_DATUM(i);
    values[i] = d;
}
```

When you allocate memory for a GPPC function, you allocate it in the current context. The GPPC API includes functions to return, create, switch, and reset memory contexts.

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GppcMemoryContext GppcGetCurrentMemoryContext(void) | Return the current memory context. |
| GppcMemoryContext GppcMemoryContextCreate(GppcMemoryContext parent) | Create a new memory context under parent. |
| GppcMemoryContext GppcMemoryContextSwitchTo(GppcMemoryContext context) | Switch to the memory context context. |
| void GppcMemoryContextReset(GppcMemoryContext context) | Reset (free) the memory in memory context context. |

WarehousePG typically calls a SQL-invoked function in a per-tuple context that it creates and deletes every time the server backend processes a table row. Do not assume that memory allocated in the current memory context is available across multiple function calls.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Working With Variable-Length Text Types

The GPPC API supports the variable length text, varchar, blank padded, and byte array types. You must use the GPPC API-provided functions when you operate on these data types. Variable text manipulation functions provided in the GPPC API include those to allocate memory for, determine string length of, get string pointers for, and access these types:

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GppcText GppcAllocText( size_t len )<br><br>GppcVarChar GppcAllocVarChar( size_t len )<br><br>GppcBpChar GppcAllocBpChar( size_t len )<br><br>GppcBytea GppcAllocBytea( size_t len ) | Allocate len bytes of memory for the varying length type. |
| size_t GppcGetTextLength( GppcText s )<br><br>size_t GppcGetVarCharLength( GppcVarChar s )<br><br>size_t GppcGetBpCharLength( GppcBpChar s )<br><br>size_t GppcGetByteaLength( GppcBytea b ) | Return the number of bytes in the memory chunk. |
| char *GppcGetTextPointer( GppcText s )<br><br>char *GppcGetVarCharPointer( GppcVarChar s )<br><br>char *GppcGetBpCharPointer( GppcBpChar s )<br><br>char *GppcGetByteaPointer( GppcBytea b ) | Return a string pointer to the head of the memory chunk. The string is not null-terminated. |
| char *GppcTextGetCString( GppcText s )<br><br>char *GppcVarCharGetCString( GppcVarChar s )<br><br>char *GppcBpCharGetCString( GppcBpChar s ) | Return a string pointer to the head of the memory chunk. The string is null-terminated. |
| GppcText *GppcCStringGetText( const char *s )<br><br>GppcVarChar *GppcCStringGetVarChar( const char *s )<br><br>GppcBpChar *GppcCStringGetBpChar( const char *s ) | Build a varying-length type from a character string. |

Memory returned by the `GppcGet<VLEN_ARGTYPE>Pointer()` functions may point to actual database content. Do not modify the memory content. The GPPC API provides functions to allocate memory for these types should you require it. After you allocate memory, you can use system functions such as `memcpy()` to set the data.

The following example manipulates text input arguments and allocates and sets result memory for a text string concatenation operation:

```
GppcText first_textstr = GPPC_GETARG_TEXT(0);
GppcText second_textstr = GPPC_GETARG_TEXT(1);

// determine the size of the concatenated string and allocate
// text memory of this size
size_t arg0_len = GppcGetTextLength(first_textstr);
size_t arg1_len = GppcGetTextLength(second_textstr);
GppcText retstring = GppcAllocText(arg0_len + arg1_len);

// construct the concatenated return string; copying each string
// individually
memcpy(GppcGetTextPointer(retstring), GppcGetTextPointer(first_textstr), arg0_len);
memcpy(GppcGetTextPointer(retstring) + arg0_len, GppcGetTextPointer(second_textstr), arg1_len);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Error Reporting and Logging

The GPPC API provides error reporting and logging functions. The API defines reporting levels equivalent to those in WarehousePG:

```
typedef enum GppcReportLevel
{
        GPPC_DEBUG1                             = 10,
        GPPC_DEBUG2                             = 11,
        GPPC_DEBUG3                             = 12,
        GPPC_DEBUG4                             = 13,
        GPPC_DEBUG                              = 14,
        GPPC_LOG                                = 15,
        GPPC_INFO                               = 17,
        GPPC_NOTICE                             = 18,
        GPPC_WARNING                          = 19,
        GPPC_ERROR                              = 20,
} GppcReportLevel;
```

(The WarehousePG `client_min_messages` server configuration parameter governs the current client logging level. The `log_min_messages` configuration parameter governs the current log-to-logfile level.)

A GPPC report includes the report level, a report message, and an optional report callback function.

Reporting and handling functions provide by the GPPC API include:

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GppcReport() | Format and print/log a string of the specified report level. |
| GppcInstallReportCallback() | Register/install a report callback function. |
| GppcUninstallReportCallback() | Uninstall a report callback function. |
| GppcGetReportLevel() | Retrieve the level from an error report. |
| GppcGetReportMessage() | Retrieve the message from an error report. |
| GppcCheckForInterrupts() | Error out if an interrupt is pending. |

The `GppcReport()` function signature is:

```
void GppcReport(GppcReportLevel elevel, const char *fmt, ...);
```

`GppcReport()` takes a format string input argument similar to `printf()`. The following example generates an error level report message that formats a GPPC text argument:

```
GppcText  uname = GPPC_GETARG_TEXT(1);
GppcReport(GPPC_ERROR, "Unknown user name: %s", GppcTextGetCString(uname));
```

Refer to the GPPC example code for example report callback handlers.

#### SPI Functions

The WarehousePG Server Programming Interface (SPI) provides writers of C/C++ functions the ability to run SQL commands within a GPPC function. For additional information on SPI functions, refer to Server Programming Interface in the PostgreSQL documentation.

The GPPC API exposes a subset of PostgreSQL SPI functions. This subset enables you to issue SPI queries and retrieve SPI result values in your GPPC function. The GPPC SPI wrapper functions are:

| SPI Function Name | GPPC Function Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| SPI_connect() | GppcSPIConnect() | Connect to the WarehousePG server programming interface. |
| SPI_finish() | GppcSPIFinish() | Disconnect from the WarehousePG server programming interface. |
| SPI_exec() | GppcSPIExec() | Run a SQL statement, returning the number of rows. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| SPI Function Name | GPPC Function Name | Description |
|---|---|---|
| SPI_getvalue() | GppcSPIGetValue() | Retrieve the value of a specific attribute by number from a SQL result as a character string. |
| GppcSPIGetDatum() | Retrieve the value of a specific attribute by number from a SQL result as a `GppcDatum`. | |
| GppcSPIGetValueByName() | Retrieve the value of a specific attribute by name from a SQL result as a character string. | |
| GppcSPIGetDatumByName() | Retrieve the value of a specific attribute by name from a SQL result as a `GppcDatum`. | |

When you create a GPPC function that accesses the server programming interface, your function should comply with the following flow:

```
GppcSPIConnect();
GppcSPIExec(...)
// process the results - GppcSPIGetValue(...), GppcSPIGetDatum(...)
GppcSPIFinish()
```

You use `GppcSPIExec()` to run SQL statements in your GPPC function. When you call this function, you also identify the maximum number of rows to return. The function signature of `GppcSPIExec()` is:

```
GppcSPIResult GppcSPIExec(const char *sql_statement, long rcount);
```

`GppcSPIExec()` returns a `GppcSPIResult` structure. This structure represents SPI result data. It includes a pointer to the data, information about the number of rows processed, a counter, and a result code. The GPPC API defines this structure as follows:

```
typedef struct GppcSPIResultData
{
    struct GppcSPITupleTableData   *tuptable;
    uint32_t                       processed;
    uint32_t                       current;
    int                            rescode;
} GppcSPIResultData;
typedef GppcSPIResultData *GppcSPIResult;
```

You can set and use the `current` field in the `GppcSPIResult` structure to examine each row of the `tuptable` result data.

The following code excerpt uses the GPPC API to connect to SPI, run a simple query, loop through query results, and finish processing:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
GppcSPIResult   result;
char            *attname = "id";
char            *query = "SELECT i, 'foo' || i AS val FROM generate_series(1, 10)i ORDER BY 1";
bool            isnull = true;

// connect to SPI
if( GppcSPIConnect() < 0 ) {
    GppcReport(GPPC_ERROR, "cannot connect to SPI");
}

// execute the query, returning all rows
result = GppcSPIExec(query, 0);

// process result
while( result->current < result->processed ) {
    // get the value of attname column as a datum, making a copy
    datum = GppcSPIGetDatumByName(result, attname, &isnull, true);

    // do something with value

    // move on to next row
    result->current++;
}

// complete processing
GppcSPIFinish();
```

#### About Tuple Descriptors and Tuples

A table or a set of records contains one or more tuples (rows). The structure of each attribute of a tuple is defined by a tuple descriptor. A tuple descriptor defines the following for each attribute in the tuple:

- attribute name
- object identifier of the attribute data type
- byte length of the attribute data type
- object identifier of the attribute modifer

The GPPC API defines an abstract type, `GppcTupleDesc`, to represent a tuple/row descriptor. The API also provides functions that you can use to create, access, and set tuple descriptors:

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GppcCreateTemplateTupleDesc() | Create an empty tuple descriptor with a specified number of attributes. |
| GppcTupleDescInitEntry() | Add an attribute to the tuple descriptor at a specified position. |
| GppcTupleDescNattrs() | Fetch the number of attributes in the tuple descriptor. |
| GppcTupleDescAttrName() | Fetch the name of the attribute in a specific position (starts at 0) in the tuple descriptor. |
| GppcTupleDescAttrType() | Fetch the type object identifier of the attribute in a specific position (starts at 0) in the tuple descriptor. |
| GppcTupleDescAttrLen() | Fetch the type length of an attribute in a specific position (starts at 0) in the tuple descriptor. |
| GppcTupleDescAttrTypmod() | Fetch the type modifier object identifier of an attribute in a specific position (starts at 0) in the tuple descriptor. |

To construct a tuple descriptor, you first create a template, and then fill in the descriptor fields for each attribute. The signatures for these functions are:

```
GppcTupleDesc GppcCreateTemplateTupleDesc(int natts);
void GppcTupleDescInitEntry(GppcTupleDesc desc, uint16_t attno,
                            const char *attname, GppcOid typid, int32_t typmod);
```

In some cases, you may want to initialize a tuple descriptor entry from an attribute definition in an existing tuple. The following functions fetch the number of attributes in a tuple descriptor, as well as the definition of a specific attribute (by number) in the descriptor:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
int GppcTupleDescNattrs(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc);
const char *GppcTupleDescAttrName(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, int16_t attno);
GppcOid GppcTupleDescAttrType(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, int16_t attno);
int16_t GppcTupleDescAttrLen(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, int16_t attno);
int32_t GppcTupleDescAttrTypmod(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, int16_t attno);
```

The following example initializes a two attribute tuple descriptor. The first attribute is initialized with the definition of an attribute from a different descriptor, and the second attribute is initialized to a boolean type attribute:

```
GppcTupleDesc       tdesc;
GppcTupleDesc       indesc = some_input_descriptor;

// initialize the tuple descriptor with 2 attributes
tdesc = GppcCreateTemplateTupleDesc(2);

// use third attribute from the input descriptor
GppcTupleDescInitEntry(tdesc, 1,
           GppcTupleDescAttrName(indesc, 2),
           GppcTupleDescAttrType(indesc, 2),
           GppcTupleDescAttrTypmod(indesc, 2));

// create the boolean attribute
GppcTupleDescInitEntry(tdesc, 2, "is_active", GppcOidBool, 0);
```

The GPPC API defines an abstract type, `GppcHeapTuple`, to represent a tuple/record/row. A tuple is defined by its tuple descriptor, the value for each tuple attribute, and an indicator of whether or not each value is NULL.

The GPPC API provides functions that you can use to set and access a tuple and its attributes:

| Function Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GppcHeapFormTuple() | Form a tuple from an array of `GppcDatum` s. |
| GppcBuildHeapTupleDatum() | Form a `GppcDatum` tuple from an array of `GppcDatum` s. |
| GppcGetAttributeByName() | Fetch an attribute from the tuple by name. |
| GppcGetAttributeByNum() | Fetch an attribute from the tuple by number (starts at 1). |

The signatures for the tuple-building GPPC functions are:

```
GppcHeapTuple GppcHeapFormTuple(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, GppcDatum *values, bool *nulls);
GppcDatum    GppcBuildHeapTupleDatum(GppcTupleDesc tupdesc, GppcDatum *values, bool *nulls);
```

The following code excerpt constructs a `GppcDatum` tuple from the tuple descriptor in the above code example, and from integer and boolean input arguments to a function:

```
GppcDatum intarg = GPPC_GETARG_INT4(0);
GppcDatum boolarg = GPPC_GETARG_BOOL(1);
GppcDatum result, values[2];
bool nulls[2] = { false, false };

// construct the values array
values[0] = intarg;
values[1] = boolarg;
result = GppcBuildHeapTupleDatum( tdesc, values, nulls );
```

#### Set-Returning Functions

WarehousePG UDFs whose signatures include `RETURNS SETOF RECORD` or `RETURNS TABLE( ... )` are set-returning functions.

The GPPC API provides support for returning sets (for example, multiple rows/tuples) from a GPPC function. WarehousePG calls a set-returning function (SRF) once for each row or item. The function must save enough state to remember what it was doing and to return the next row on each call. Memory that you allocate in the SRF context must survive across multiple function calls.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The GPPC API provides macros and functions to help keep track of and set this context, and to allocate SRF memory. They include:

| Function/Macro Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GPPC_SRF_RESULT_DESC() | Get the output row tuple descriptor for this SRF. The result tuple descriptor is determined by an output table definition or a `DESCRIBE` function. |
| GPPC_SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL() | Determine if this is the first call to the SRF. |
| GPPC_SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT() | Initialize the SRF context. |
| GPPC_SRF_PERCALL_SETUP() | Restore the context on each call to the SRF. |
| GPPC_SRF_RETURN_NEXT() | Return a value from the SRF and continue processing. |
| GPPC_SRF_RETURN_DONE() | Signal that SRF processing is complete. |
| GppSRFAlloc() | Allocate memory in this SRF context. |
| GppSRFAlloc0() | Allocate memory in this SRF context and initialize it to zero. |
| GppSRFSave() | Save user state in this SRF context. |
| GppSRFRestore() | Restore user state in this SRF context. |

The `GppcFuncCallContext` structure provides the context for an SRF. You create this context on the first call to your SRF. Your set-returning GPPC function must retrieve the function context on each invocation. For example:

```
// set function context
GppcFuncCallContext fctx;
if (GPPC_SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL()) {
    fctx = GPPC_SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();
}
fctx = GPPC_SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();
// process the tuple
```

The GPPC function must provide the context when it returns a tuple result or to indicate that processing is complete. For example:

```
GPPC_SRF_RETURN_NEXT(fctx, result_tuple);
// or
GPPC_SRF_RETURN_DONE(fctx);
```

Use a `DESCRIBE` function to define the output tuple descriptor of a function that uses the `RETURNS SETOF RECORD` clause. Use the `GPPC_SRF_RESULT_DESC()` macro to get the output tuple descriptor of a function that uses the `RETURNS TABLE( ... )` clause.

Refer to the GPPC Set-Returning Function Example for a set-returning function code and deployment example.

#### Table Functions

The GPPC API provides the `GppcAnyTable` type to pass a table to a function as an input argument, or to return a table as a function result.

Table-related functions and macros provided in the GPPC API include:

| Function/Macro Name | Description |
|---|---|
| GPPC_GETARG_ANYTABLE() | Fetch an anytable function argument. |
| GPPC_RETURN_ANYTABLE() | Return the table. |
| GppcAnyTableGetTupleDesc() | Fetch the tuple descriptor for the table. |
| GppcAnyTableGetNextTuple() | Fetch the next row in the table. |

You can use the `GPPC_GETARG_ANYTABLE()` macro to retrieve a table input argument. When you have access to the table, you can examine the tuple descriptor for the table using the `GppcAnyTableGetTupleDesc()` function. The signature of this function is:

```
GppcTupleDesc GppcAnyTableGetTupleDesc(GppcAnyTable t);
```

For example, to retrieve the tuple descriptor of a table that is the first input argument to a function:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
GppcAnyTable     intbl;
GppcTupleDesc    in_desc;

intbl = GPPC_GETARG_ANYTABLE(0);
in_desc = GppcAnyTableGetTupleDesc(intbl);
```

The `GppcAnyTableGetNextTuple()` function fetches the next row from the table. Similarly, to retrieve the next tuple from the table above:

```
GppcHeapTuple    ntuple;

ntuple = GppcAnyTableGetNextTuple(intbl);
```

#### Sample Code

The gppc test directory in the WarehousePG github repository includes sample GPPC code:

- `gppc_demo/` - sample code exercising GPPC SPI functions, error reporting, data type argument and return macros, set-returning functions, and encoding functions
- `tabfunc_gppc_demo/` - sample code exercising GPPC table and set-returning functions

### Building a GPPC Shared Library with PGXS

You compile functions that you write with the GPPC API into one or more shared libraries that the WarehousePG server loads on demand.

You can use the PostgreSQL build extension infrastructure (PGXS) to build the source code for your GPPC functions against a WarehousePG installation. This framework automates common build rules for simple modules. If you have a more complicated use case, you will need to write your own build system.

To use the PGXS infrastructure to generate a shared library for functions that you create with the GPPC API, create a simple `Makefile` that sets PGXS-specific variables.

> **Note** Refer to Extension Building Infrastructure in the PostgreSQL documentation for information about the `Makefile` variables supported by PGXS.

For example, the following `Makefile` generates a shared library named `sharedlib_name.so` from two C source files named `src1.c` and `src2.c`:

```
MODULE_big = sharedlib_name
OBJS = src1.o src2.o
PG_CPPFLAGS = -I$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --includedir)
SHLIB_LINK = -L$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --libdir) -lgppc

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)
include $(PGXS)
```

`MODULE_big` identifes the base name of the shared library generated by the `Makefile`.

`PG_CPPFLAGS` adds the WarehousePG installation include directory to the compiler header file search path.

`SHLIB_LINK` adds the WarehousePG installation library directory to the linker search path. This variable also adds the GPPC library (`-lgppc`) to the link command.

The `PG_CONFIG` and `PGXS` variable settings and the `include` statement are required and typically reside in the last three lines of the `Makefile`.

### Registering a GPPC Function with WarehousePG

Before users can invoke a GPPC function from SQL, you must register the function with WarehousePG.

Registering a GPPC function involves mapping the GPPC function signature to a SQL user-defined function. You define this mapping with the `CREATE FUNCTION .. AS` command specifying the GPPC shared library name. You may choose to use the same name or differing names for the GPPC and SQL functions.

Sample `CREATE FUNCTION ... AS` syntax follows:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
CREATE FUNCTION <sql_function_name>(<arg>[, ...]) RETURNS <return_type>
  AS '<shared_library_path>'[, '<gppc_function_name>']
LANGUAGE C STRICT [WITH (DESCRIBE=<describe_function>)];
```

You may omit the shared library `.so` extension when you specify `shared\_library\_path`.

The following command registers the example `add_int4s()` function referenced earlier in this topic to a SQL UDF named `add_two_int4s_gppc()` if the GPPC function was compiled and linked in a shared library named `gppc_try.so`:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_two_int4s_gppc(int4, int4) RETURNS int8
  AS 'gppc_try.so', 'add_int4s'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

#### About Dynamic Loading

You specify the name of the GPPC shared library in the SQL `CREATE FUNCTION ... AS` command to register a GPPC function in the shared library with WarehousePG. The WarehousePG dynamic loader loads a GPPC shared library file into memory the first time that a user invokes a user-defined function linked in that shared library. If you do not provide an absolute path to the shared library in the `CREATE FUNCTION ... AS` command, WarehousePG attempts to locate the library using these ordered steps:

1. If the shared library file path begins with the string `$libdir`, WarehousePG looks for the file in the PostgreSQL package library directory. Run the `pg_config --pkglibdir` command to determine the location of this directory.
2. If the shared library file name is specified without a directory prefix, WarehousePG searches for the file in the directory identified by the `dynamic_library_path` server configuration parameter value.
3. The current working directory.

### Packaging and Deployment Considerations

You must package the GPPC shared library and SQL function registration script in a form suitable for deployment by the WarehousePG administrator in the WarehousePG cluster. Provide specific deployment instructions for your GPPC package.

When you construct the package and deployment instructions, take into account the following:

- Consider providing a shell script or program that the WarehousePG administrator runs to both install the shared library to the desired file system location and register the GPPC functions.
- The GPPC shared library must be installed to the same file system location on the coordinator host and on every segment host in the WarehousePG cluster.
- The `gpadmin` user must have permission to traverse the complete file system path to the GPPC shared library file.
- The file system location of your GPPC shared library after it is installed in the WarehousePG deployment determines how you reference the shared library when you register a function in the library with the `CREATE FUNCTION ... AS` command.
- Create a `.sql` script file that registers a SQL UDF for each GPPC function in your GPPC shared library. The functions that you create in the `.sql` registration script must reference the deployment location of the GPPC shared library. Include this script in your GPPC deployment package.
- Document the instructions for running your GPPC package deployment script, if you provide one.
- Document the instructions for installing the GPPC shared library if you do not include this task in a package deployment script.
- Document the instructions for installing and running the function registration script if you do not include this task in a package deployment script.

### GPPC Text Function Example

In this example, you develop, build, and deploy a GPPC shared library and register and run a GPPC function named `concat_two_strings`. This function uses the GPPC API to concatenate two string arguments and return the result.

You will develop the GPPC function on your WarehousePG coordinator host. Deploying the GPPC shared library that you create in this example requires administrative access to your WarehousePG cluster.

Perform the following procedure to run the example:

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator host and set up your environment. For example:

```
$ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
gpadmin@gpmaster$ . /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Create a work directory and navigate to the new directory. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ mkdir gppc_work
gpadmin@gpmaster$ cd gppc_work
```

3. Prepare a file for GPPC source code by opening the file in the editor of your choice. For example, to open a file named `gppc_concat.c` using `vi`:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ vi gppc_concat.c
```

4. Copy/paste the following code into the file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "gppc.h"

// make the function SQL-invokable
GPPC_FUNCTION_INFO(concat_two_strings);

// declare the function
GppcDatum concat_two_strings(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS);

GppcDatum
concat_two_strings(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    // retrieve the text input arguments
    GppcText arg0 = GPPC_GETARG_TEXT(0);
    GppcText arg1 = GPPC_GETARG_TEXT(1);

    // determine the size of the concatenated string and allocate
    // text memory of this size
    size_t arg0_len = GppcGetTextLength(arg0);
    size_t arg1_len = GppcGetTextLength(arg1);
    GppcText retstring = GppcAllocText(arg0_len + arg1_len);

    // construct the concatenated return string
    memcpy(GppcGetTextPointer(retstring), GppcGetTextPointer(arg0), arg0_len);
    memcpy(GppcGetTextPointer(retstring) + arg0_len, GppcGetTextPointer(arg1), arg1_len);

    GPPC_RETURN_TEXT( retstring );
}
```

The code declares and implements the `concat_two_strings()` function. It uses GPPC data types, macros, and functions to get the function arguments, allocate memory for the concatenated string, copy the arguments into the new string, and return the result.

5. Save the file and exit the editor.

6. Open a file named `Makefile` in the editor of your choice. Copy/paste the following text into the file:

```
MODULE_big = gppc_concat
OBJS = gppc_concat.o

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)

PG_CPPFLAGS = -I$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --includedir)
SHLIB_LINK = -L$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --libdir) -lgppc
include $(PGXS)
```

7. Save the file and exit the editor.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

8. Build a GPPC shared library for the `concat_two_strings()` function. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ make all
```

   The `make` command generates a shared library file named `gppc_concat.so` in the current working directory.

9. Copy the shared library to your WarehousePG installation. You must have WarehousePG administrative privileges to copy the file. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ cp gppc_concat.so /usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/
```

10. Copy the shared library to every host in your WarehousePG installation. For example, if `seghostfile` contains a list, one-host-per-line, of the segment hosts in your WarehousePG cluster:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ gpscp -v -f seghostfile /usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/gppc_concat.so
=:/usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/gppc_concat.so
```

11. Open a `psql` session. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ psql -d testdb
```

12. Register the GPPC function named `concat_two_strings()` with WarehousePG, For example, to map the WarehousePG function `concat_with_gppc()` to the GPPC `concat_two_strings()` function:

```
testdb=# CREATE FUNCTION concat_with_gppc(text, text) RETURNS text
  AS 'gppc_concat', 'concat_two_strings'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

13. Run the `concat_with_gppc()` function. For example:

```
testdb=# SELECT concat_with_gppc( 'happy', 'monday' );
 concat_with_gppc
------------------
 happymonday
(1 row)
```

### GPPC Set-Returning Function Example

In this example, you develop, build, and deploy a GPPC shared library. You also create and run a `.sql` registration script for a GPPC function named `return_tbl()`. This function uses the GPPC API to take an input table with an integer and a text column, determine if the integer column is greater than 13, and returns a result table with the input integer column and a boolean column identifying whether or not the integer is greater than 13. `return_tbl()` utilizes GPPC API reporting and SRF functions and macros.

You will develop the GPPC function on your WarehousePG coordinator host. Deploying the GPPC shared library that you create in this example requires administrative access to your WarehousePG cluster.

Perform the following procedure to run the example:

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator host and set up your environment. For example:

```
$ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
gpadmin@gpmaster$ . /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
```

2. Create a work directory and navigate to the new directory. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ mkdir gppc_work
gpadmin@gpmaster$ cd gppc_work
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Prepare a source file for GPPC code by opening the file in the editor of your choice. For example, to open a file named `gppc_concat.c` using `vi`:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ vi gppc_rettbl.c
```

4. Copy/paste the following code into the file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "gppc.h"

// initialize the logging level
GppcReportLevel level = GPPC_INFO;

// make the function SQL-invokable and declare the function
GPPC_FUNCTION_INFO(return_tbl);
GppcDatum return_tbl(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS);

GppcDatum
return_tbl(GPPC_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GppcFuncCallContext fctx;
    GppcAnyTable    intbl;
    GppcHeapTuple   intuple;
    GppcTupleDesc   in_tupdesc, out_tupdesc;
    GppcBool        resbool = false;
    GppcDatum       result, boolres, values[2];
    bool        nulls[2] = {false, false};

    // single input argument - the table
    intbl = GPPC_GETARG_ANYTABLE(0);

    // set the function context
    if (GPPC_SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL()) {
        fctx = GPPC_SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();
    }
    fctx = GPPC_SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();

    // get the tuple descriptor for the input table
    in_tupdesc  = GppcAnyTableGetTupleDesc(intbl);

    // retrieve the next tuple
    intuple = GppcAnyTableGetNextTuple(intbl);
    if( intuple == NULL ) {
      // no more tuples, conclude
      GPPC_SRF_RETURN_DONE(fctx);
    }

    // get the output tuple descriptor and verify that it is
    // defined as we expect
    out_tupdesc = GPPC_SRF_RESULT_DESC();
    if (GppcTupleDescNattrs(out_tupdesc) != 2                ||
        GppcTupleDescAttrType(out_tupdesc, 0) != GppcOidInt4 ||
        GppcTupleDescAttrType(out_tupdesc, 1) != GppcOidBool) {
        GppcReport(GPPC_ERROR, "INVALID out_tupdesc tuple");
    }

    // log the attribute names of the output tuple descriptor
    GppcReport(level, "output tuple descriptor attr0 name: %s", GppcTupleDescAttrName(out_tupdesc, 0));
    GppcReport(level, "output tuple descriptor attr1 name: %s", GppcTupleDescAttrName(out_tupdesc, 1));

    // retrieve the attribute values by name from the tuple
    bool text_isnull, int_isnull;
    GppcDatum intdat = GppcGetAttributeByName(intuple, "id", &int_isnull);
    GppcDatum textdat = GppcGetAttributeByName(intuple, "msg", &text_isnull);

    // convert datum to specific type
    GppcInt4 intarg = GppcDatumGetInt4(intdat);
    GppcReport(level, "id: %d", intarg);
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
    GppcReport(level, "msg: %s", GppcTextGetCString(GppcDatumGetText(textdat)));

    // perform the >13 check on the integer
    if( !int_isnull && (intarg > 13) ) {
        // greater than 13?
        resbool = true;
        GppcReport(level, "id is greater than 13!");
    }

    // values are datums; use integer from the tuple and
    // construct the datum for the boolean return
    values[0] = intdat;
    boolres = GppcBoolGetDatum(resbool);
    values[1] = boolres;

    // build a datum tuple and return
    result = GppcBuildHeapTupleDatum(out_tupdesc, values, nulls);
    GPPC_SRF_RETURN_NEXT(fctx, result);

}
```

The code declares and implements the `return_tbl()` function. It uses GPPC data types, macros, and functions to fetch the function arguments, examine tuple descriptors, build the return tuple, and return the result. The function also uses the SRF macros to keep track of the tuple context across function calls.

5. Save the file and exit the editor.

6. Open a file named `Makefile` in the editor of your choice. Copy/paste the following text into the file:

```
MODULE_big = gppc_rettbl
OBJS = gppc_rettbl.o

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)

PG_CPPFLAGS = -I$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --includedir)
SHLIB_LINK = -L$(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --libdir) -lgppc
include $(PGXS)
```

7. Save the file and exit the editor.

8. Build a GPPC shared library for the `return_tbl()` function. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ make all
```

The `make` command generates a shared library file named `gppc_rettbl.so` in the current working directory.

9. Copy the shared library to your WarehousePG installation. You must have WarehousePG administrative privileges to copy the file. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ cp gppc_rettbl.so /usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/
```

This command copies the shared library to `$libdir`

10. Copy the shared library to every host in your WarehousePG installation. For example, if `seghostfile` contains a list, one-host-per-line, of the segment hosts in your WarehousePG cluster:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ gpscp -v -f seghostfile /usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/gppc_rettbl.so
=:/usr/edb/whpg6/lib/postgresql/gppc_rettbl.so
```

11. Create a `.sql` file to register the GPPC `return_tbl()` function. Open a file named `gppc_rettbl_reg.sql` in the editor of your choice.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

12. Copy/paste the following text into the file:

```
CREATE FUNCTION rettbl_gppc(anytable) RETURNS TABLE(id int4, thirteen bool)
  AS 'gppc_rettbl', 'return_tbl'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

13. Register the GPPC function by running the script you just created. For example, to register the function in a database named `testdb`:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ psql -d testdb -f gppc_rettbl_reg.sql
```

14. Open a `psql` session. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ psql -d testdb
```

15. Create a table with some test data. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE gppc_testtbl( id int, msg text );
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (1, 'f1');
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (7, 'f7');
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (10, 'f10');
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (13, 'f13');
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (15, 'f15');
INSERT INTO gppc_testtbl VALUES (17, 'f17');
```

16. Run the `rettbl_gppc()` function. For example:

```
testdb=# SELECT * FROM rettbl_gppc(TABLE(SELECT * FROM gppc_testtbl));
 id | thirteen
----+----------
  1 | f
  7 | f
 13 | f
 15 | t
 17 | t
 10 | f
(6 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.12.2 Developing a Background Worker Process

WarehousePG can be extended to run user-supplied code in separate processes. Such processes are started, stopped, and monitored by `postgres`, which permits them to have a lifetime closely linked to the server's status. These processes have the option to attach to WarehousePG's shared memory area and to connect to databases internally; they can also run multiple transactions serially, just like a regular client-connected server process. Also, by linking to `libpq` they can connect to the server and behave like a regular client application.

> **Caution** There are considerable robustness and security risks in using background worker processes because, being written in the `C` language, they have unrestricted access to data. Administrators wishing to enable modules that include background worker processes should exercise extreme caution. Only carefully audited modules should be permitted to run background worker processes.

Background workers can be initialized at the time that WarehousePG is started by including the module name in the shared_preload_libraries server configuration parameter. A module wishing to run a background worker can register it by calling `RegisterBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker)` from its `_PG_init()`. Background workers can also be started after the system is up and running by calling the function `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker, BackgroundWorkerHandle **handle)`. Unlike `RegisterBackgroundWorker`, which can only be called from within the `postmaster`, `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` must be called from a regular backend.

The structure `BackgroundWorker` is defined thus:

```
typedef void (*bgworker_main_type)(Datum main_arg);
typedef struct BackgroundWorker
{
    char        bgw_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    int         bgw_flags;
    BgWorkerStartTime bgw_start_time;
    int         bgw_restart_time;       /* in seconds, or BGW_NEVER_RESTART */
    bgworker_main_type bgw_main;
    char        bgw_library_name[BGW_MAXLEN];   /* only if bgw_main is NULL */
    char        bgw_function_name[BGW_MAXLEN];  /* only if bgw_main is NULL */
    Datum       bgw_main_arg;
    int         bgw_notify_pid;
} BackgroundWorker;
```

`bgw_name` is a string to be used in log messages, process listings and similar contexts.

`bgw_flags` is a bitwise-or'd bit mask indicating the capabilities that the module wants. Possible values are `BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS` (requesting shared memory access) and `BGWORKER_BACKEND_DATABASE_CONNECTION` (requesting the ability to establish a database connection, through which it can later run transactions and queries). A background worker using `BGWORKER_BACKEND_DATABASE_CONNECTION` to connect to a database must also attach shared memory using `BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS`, or worker start-up will fail.

`bgw_start_time` is the server state during which `postgres` should start the process; it can be one of `BgWorkerStart_PostmasterStart` (start as soon as `postgres` itself has finished its own initialization; processes requesting this are not eligible for database connections), `BgWorkerStart_ConsistentState` (start as soon as a consistent state has been reached in a hot standby, allowing processes to connect to databases and run read-only queries), and `BgWorkerStart_RecoveryFinished` (start as soon as the system has entered normal read-write state). Note the last two values are equivalent in a server that's not a hot standby. Note that this setting only indicates when the processes are to be started; they do not stop when a different state is reached.

`bgw_restart_time` is the interval, in seconds, that `postgres` should wait before restarting the process, in case it crashes. It can be any positive value, or `BGW_NEVER_RESTART`, indicating not to restart the process in case of a crash.

`bgw_main` is a pointer to the function to run when the process is started. This function must take a single argument of type `Datum` and return `void`. `bgw_main_arg` will be passed to it as its only argument. Note that the global variable `MyBgworkerEntry` points to a copy of the `BackgroundWorker` structure passed at registration time. `bgw_main` may be NULL; in that case, `bgw_library_name` and `bgw_function_name` will be used to determine the entry point. This is useful for background workers launched after postmaster startup, where the postmaster does not have the requisite library loaded.

`bgw_library_name` is the name of a library in which the initial entry point for the background worker should be sought. It is ignored unless `bgw_main` is NULL. But if `bgw_main` is NULL, then the named library will be dynamically loaded by the worker process and `bgw_function_name` will be used to identify the function to be called.

`bgw_function_name` is the name of a function in a dynamically loaded library which should be used as the initial entry point for a new background worker. It is ignored unless `bgw_main` is NULL.

`bgw_notify_pid` is the PID of a WarehousePG backend process to which the postmaster should send `SIGUSR1` when the process is started or exits. It should be 0 for workers registered at postmaster startup time, or when the backend registering the worker does not wish to wait for the worker to start up. Otherwise, it should be initialized to `MyProcPid`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Once running, the process can connect to a database by calling `BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnection(` char *dbname `,` char *username `)`. This allows the process to run transactions and queries using the `SPI` interface. If dbname is NULL, the session is not connected to any particular database, but shared catalogs can be accessed. If username is NULL, the process will run as the superuser created during `initdb`. BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnection can only be called once per background process, it is not possible to switch databases.

Signals are initially blocked when control reaches the `bgw_main` function, and must be unblocked by it; this is to allow the process to customize its signal handlers, if necessary. Signals can be unblocked in the new process by calling `BackgroundWorkerUnblockSignals` and blocked by calling `BackgroundWorkerBlockSignals`.

If `bgw_restart_time` for a background worker is configured as `BGW_NEVER_RESTART`, or if it exits with an exit code of 0 or is terminated by `TerminateBackgroundWorker`, it will be automatically unregistered by the postmaster on exit. Otherwise, it will be restarted after the time period configured via `bgw_restart_time`, or immediately if the postmaster reinitializes the cluster due to a backend failure. Backends which need to suspend execution only temporarily should use an interruptible sleep rather than exiting; this can be achieved by calling `WaitLatch()`. Make sure the `WL_POSTMASTER_DEATH` flag is set when calling that function, and verify the return code for a prompt exit in the emergency case that `postgres` itself has terminated.

When a background worker is registered using the `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` function, it is possible for the backend performing the registration to obtain information regarding the status of the worker. Backends wishing to do this should pass the address of a `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` as the second argument to `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker`. If the worker is successfully registered, this pointer will be initialized with an opaque handle that can subsequently be passed to `GetBackgroundWorkerPid(` BackgroundWorkerHandle * `,` pid_t * `)` or `TerminateBackgroundWorker(` BackgroundWorkerHandle * `)`. `GetBackgroundWorkerPid` can be used to poll the status of the worker: a return value of `BGWH_NOT_YET_STARTED` indicates that the worker has not yet been started by the postmaster; `BGWH_STOPPED` indicates that it has been started but is no longer running; and `BGWH_STARTED` indicates that it is currently running. In this last case, the PID will also be returned via the second argument. `TerminateBackgroundWorker` causes the postmaster to send `SIGTERM` to the worker if it is running, and to unregister it as soon as it is not.

In some cases, a process which registers a background worker may wish to wait for the worker to start up. This can be accomplished by initializing `bgw_notify_pid` to `MyProcPid` and then passing the `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` obtained at registration time to `WaitForBackgroundWorkerStartup(` BackgroundWorkerHandle *handle `,` pid_t * `)` function. This function will block until the postmaster has attempted to start the background worker, or until the postmaster dies. If the background runner is running, the return value will `BGWH_STARTED`, and the PID will be written to the provided address. Otherwise, the return value will be `BGWH_STOPPED` or `BGWH_POSTMASTER_DIED`.

The `worker_spi` contrib module contains a working example, which demonstrates some useful techniques.

The maximum number of registered background workers is limited by the `max_worker_processes` server configuration parameter.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.13 The gpperfmon Database

The `gpperfmon` database is a dedicated database where data collection agents on WarehousePG segment hosts save query and system statistics.

The `gpperfmon` database is created using the `gpperfmon_install` command-line utility. The utility creates the database and the `gpmon` database role and enables the data collection agents on the coordinator and segment hosts. See the `gpperfmon_install` reference in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide* for information about using the utility and configuring the data collection agents.

> **NOTE** If you plan to run `gpperfrmon_install`, be aware that it is not supported on Red Hat Linux 8.

The `gpperfmon` database consists of three sets of tables that capture query and system status information at different stages.

- `_now` tables store current system metrics such as active queries.
- `_tail` tables are used to stage data before it is saved to the `_history` tables. The `_tail` tables are for internal use only and not to be queried by users.
- `_history` tables store historical metrics.

The data for `_now` and `_tail` tables are stored as text files on the coordinator host file system, and are accessed in the `gpperfmon` database via external tables. The `history` tables are regular heap database tables in the `gpperfmon` database. History is saved only for queries that run for a minimum number of seconds, 20 by default. You can set this threshold to another value by setting the `min_query_time` parameter in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/conf/gpperfmon.conf` configuration file. Setting the value to 0 saves history for all queries.

> **Note** `gpperfmon` does not support SQL `ALTER` commands. `ALTER` queries are not recorded in the `gpperfmon` query history tables.

The `history` tables are partitioned by month. See History Table Partition Retention for information about removing old partitions.

The database contains the following categories of tables:

- The database_* tables store query workload information for a WarehousePG instance.
- The diskspace_* tables store diskspace metrics.
- The log_alert_* tables store error and warning messages from `pg_log`.
- The queries_* tables store high-level query status information.
- The segment_* tables store memory allocation statistics for the WarehousePG segment instances.
- The socket_stats_* tables store statistical metrics about socket usage for a WarehousePG instance. These tables are in place for future use and are not currently populated.
- The system_* tables store system utilization metrics.

The `gpperfmon` database also contains the following views:

- The dynamic_memory_info view shows an aggregate of all the segments per host and the amount of dynamic memory used per host.
- The memory_info view shows per-host memory information from the `system_history` and `segment_history` tables.

### History Table Partition Retention

The `history` tables in the `gpperfmon` database are partitioned by month. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

The `partition_age` parameter in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/conf/gpperfmon.conf` file can be set to the maximum number of monthly partitions to keep. Partitions older than the specified value are removed automatically when new partitions are added.

The default value for `partition_age` is `0`, which means that administrators must manually remove unneeded partitions.

### Alert Log Processing and Log Rotation

When the `gp_enable_gpperfmon` server configuration parameter is set to true, the WarehousePG syslogger writes alert messages to a `.csv` file in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/logs` directory.

The level of messages written to the log can be set to `none`, `warning`, `error`, `fatal`, or `panic` by setting the `gpperfmon_log_alert_level` server configuration parameter in `postgresql.conf`. The default message level is `warning`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The directory where the log is written can be changed by setting the `log_location` configuration variable in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/conf/gpperfmon.conf` configuration file.

The syslogger rotates the alert log every 24 hours or when the current log file reaches or exceeds 1MB.

A rotated log file can exceed 1MB if a single error message contains a large SQL statement or a large stack trace. Also, the syslogger processes error messages in chunks, with a separate chunk for each logging process. The size of a chunk is OS-dependent; on Red Hat Enterprise Linux, for example, it is 4096 bytes. If many WarehousePG sessions generate error messages at the same time, the log file can grow significantly before its size is checked and log rotation is triggered.

### gpperfmon Data Collection Process

When WarehousePG starts up with gpperfmon support enabled, it forks a `gpmmon` agent process. `gpmmon` then starts a `gpsmon` agent process on the coordinator host and every segment host in the WarehousePG cluster. The WarehousePG postmaster process monitors the `gpmmon` process and restarts it if needed, and the `gpmmon` process monitors and restarts `gpsmon` processes as needed.

The `gpmmon` process runs in a loop and at configurable intervals retrieves data accumulated by the `gpsmon` processes, adds it to the data files for the `_now` and `_tail` external database tables, and then into the `_history` regular heap database tables.

> **Note** The `log_alert` tables in the `gpperfmon` database follow a different process, since alert messages are delivered by the WarehousePG cluster logger instead of through `gpsmon`. See Alert Log Processing and Log Rotation for more information.

Two configuration parameters in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/conf/gpperfmon.conf` configuration file control how often `gpmmon` activities are triggered:

- The `quantum` parameter is how frequently, in seconds, `gpmmon` requests data from the `gpsmon` agents on the segment hosts and adds retrieved data to the `_now` and `_tail` external table data files. Valid values for the `quantum` parameter are 10, 15, 20, 30, and 60. The default is 15.
- The `harvest_interval` parameter is how frequently, in seconds, data in the `_tail` tables is moved to the `_history` tables. The `harvest_interval` must be at least 30. The default is 120.

See the `gpperfmon_install` management utility reference in the *WarehousePG Utility Guide* for the complete list of gpperfmon configuration parameters.

The following steps describe the flow of data from WarehousePG into the `gpperfmon` database when gpperfmon support is enabled.

1. While executing queries, the WarehousePG query dispatcher and query executor processes send out query status messages in UDP datagrams. The `gp_gpperfmon_send_interval` server configuration variable determines how frequently the database sends these messages. The default is every second.
2. The `gpsmon` process on each host receives the UDP packets, consolidates and summarizes the data they contain, and adds additional host metrics, such as CPU and memory usage.
3. The `gpsmon` processes continue to accumulate data until they receive a dump command from `gpmmon`.
4. The `gpsmon` processes respond to a dump command by sending their accumulated status data and log alerts to a listening `gpmmon` event handler thread.
5. The `gpmmon` event handler saves the metrics to `.txt` files in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data` directory on the coordinator host.

At each `quantum` interval (15 seconds by default), `gpmmon` performs the following steps:

1. Sends a dump command to the `gpsmon` processes.

2. Gathers and converts the `.txt` files saved in `the $MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data` directory into `.dat` external data files for the `_now` and `_tail` external tables in the `gpperfmon` database.

   For example, disk space metrics are added to the `diskspace_now.dat` and `_diskspace_tail.dat` delimited text files. These text files are accessed via the `diskspace_now` and `_diskspace_tail` tables in the `gpperfmon` database.

At each `harvest_interval` (120 seconds by default), `gpmmon` performs the following steps for each `_tail` file:

1. Renames the `_tail` file to a `_stage` file.

2. Creates a new `_tail` file.

3. Appends data from the `_stage` file into the `_tail` file.

4. Runs a SQL command to insert the data from the `_tail` external table into the corresponding `_history` table.

   For example, the contents of the `_database_tail` external table is inserted into the `database_history` regular (heap) table.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Deletes the `_tail` file after its contents have been loaded into the database table.
6. Gathers all of the `gpdb-alert-*.csv` files in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/logs` directory (except the most recent, which the syslogger has open and is writing to) into a single file, `alert_log_stage`.
7. Loads the `alert_log_stage` file into the `log_alert_history` table in the `gpperfmon` database.
8. Truncates the `alert_log_stage` file.

The following topics describe the contents of the tables in the `gpperfmon` database.

- database_*
- diskspace_*
- interface_stats_*
- log_alert_*
- queries_*
- segment_*
- socket_stats_*
- system_*
- dynamic_memory_info
- memory_info

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Reference Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.1 database_*

The `database_*` tables store query workload information for a WarehousePG instance. There are three database tables, all having the same columns:

- `database_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. Current query workload data is stored in `database_now` during the period between data collection from the data collection agents and automatic commitment to the `database_history` table.
- `database_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for query workload data that has been cleared from `database_now` but has not yet been committed to `database_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `database_history` is a regular table that stores historical database-wide query workload data. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp | Time this row was created. |
| `queries_total` | int | The total number of queries in WarehousePG at data collection time. |
| `queries_running` | int | The number of active queries running at data collection time. |
| `queries_queued` | int | The number of queries waiting in a resource group or resource queue, depending upon which resource management scheme is active, at data collection time. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.2 diskspace_*

The `diskspace_*` tables store diskspace metrics.

- `diskspace_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. Current diskspace metrics are stored in `database_now` during the period between data collection from the `gpperfmon` agents and automatic commitment to the `diskspace_history` table.
- `diskspace_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for diskspace metrics that have been cleared from `diskspace_now` but has not yet been committed to `diskspace_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `diskspace_history` is a regular table that stores historical diskspace metrics. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp(0) without time zone | Time of diskspace measurement. |
| `hostname` | varchar(64) | The hostname associated with the diskspace measurement. |
| `Filesystem` | text | Name of the filesystem for the diskspace measurement. |
| `total_bytes` | bigint | Total bytes in the file system. |
| `bytes_used` | bigint | Total bytes used in the file system. |
| `bytes_available` | bigint | Total bytes available in file system. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.3 interface*stats**

The `interface_stats_*` tables store statistical metrics about communications over each active interface for a WarehousePG instance.

These tables are in place for future use and are not currently populated.

There are three `interface_stats` tables, all having the same columns:

- `interface_stats_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`.
- `interface_stats_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for statistical interface metrics that has been cleared from `interface_stats_now` but has not yet been committed to `interface_stats_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `interface_stats_history` is a regular table that stores statistical interface metrics. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in one month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `interface_name` | string | Name of the interface. For example: eth0, eth1, lo. |
| `bytes_received` | bigint | Amount of data received in bytes. |
| `packets_received` | bigint | Number of packets received. |
| `receive_errors` | bigint | Number of errors encountered while data was being received. |
| `receive_drops` | bigint | Number of times packets were dropped while data was being received. |
| `receive_fifo_errors` | bigint | Number of times FIFO (first in first out) errors were encountered while data was being received. |
| `receive_frame_errors` | bigint | Number of frame errors while data was being received. |
| `receive_compressed_packets` | int | Number of packets received in compressed format. |
| `receive_multicast_packets` | int | Number of multicast packets received. |
| `bytes_transmitted` | bigint | Amount of data transmitted in bytes. |
| `packets_transmitted` | bigint | Amount of data transmitted in bytes. |
| `packets_transmitted` | bigint | Number of packets transmitted. |
| `transmit_errors` | bigint | Number of errors encountered during data transmission. |
| `transmit_drops` | bigint | Number of times packets were dropped during data transmission. |
| `transmit_fifo_errors` | bigint | Number of times fifo errors were encountered during data transmission. |
| `transmit_collision_errors` | bigint | Number of times collision errors were encountered during data transmission. |
| `transmit_carrier_errors` | bigint | Number of times carrier errors were encountered during data transmission. |
| `transmit_compressed_packets` | int | Number of packets transmitted in compressed format. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.4 log*alert** 

The `log_alert_*` tables store `pg_log` errors and warnings.

See Alert Log Processing and Log Rotation for information about configuring the system logger for `gpperfmon`.

There are three `log_alert` tables, all having the same columns:

- `log_alert_now` is an external table whose data is stored in `.csv` files in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/logs` directory. Current `pg_log` errors and warnings data are available in `log_alert_now` during the period between data collection from the `gpperfmon` agents and automatic commitment to the `log_alert_history` table.
- `log_alert_tail` is an external table with data stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/logs/alert_log_stage`. This is a transitional table for data that has been cleared from `log_alert_now` but has not yet been committed to `log_alert_history`. The table includes records from all alert logs except the most recent. It typically contains only a few minutes' worth of data.
- `log_alert_history` is a regular table that stores historical database-wide errors and warnings data. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `logtime` | timestamp with time zone | Timestamp for this log |
| `loguser` | text | User of the query |
| `logdatabase` | text | The accessed database |
| `logpid` | text | Process id |
| `logthread` | text | Thread number |
| `loghost` | text | Host name or ip address |
| `logport` | text | Port number |
| `logsessiontime` | timestamp with time zone | Session timestamp |
| `logtransaction` | integer | Transaction id |
| `logsession` | text | Session id |
| `logcmdcount` | text | Command count |
| `logsegment` | text | Segment number |
| `logslice` | text | Slice number |
| `logdistxact` | text | Distributed transaction |
| `loglocalxact` | text | Local transaction |
| `logsubxact` | text | Subtransaction |
| `logseverity` | text | Log severity |
| `logstate` | text | State |
| `logmessage` | text | Log message |
| `logdetail` | text | Detailed message |
| `loghint` | text | Hint info |
| `logquery` | text | Executed query |
| `logquerypos` | text | Query position |
| `logcontext` | text | Context info |
| `logdebug` | text | Debug |
| `logcursorpos` | text | Cursor position |
| `logfunction` | text | Function info |
| `logfile` | text | Source code file |
| `logline` | text | Source code line |
| `logstack` | text | Stack trace |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.5 queries_*

The `queries_*` tables store high-level query status information.

The `tmid`, `ssid` and `ccnt` columns are the composite key that uniquely identifies a particular query.

There are three queries tables, all having the same columns:

- `queries_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. Current query status is stored in `queries_now` during the period between data collection from the `gpperfmon` agents and automatic commitment to the `queries_history` table.
- `queries_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for query status data that has been cleared from `queries_now` but has not yet been committed to `queries_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `queries_history` is a regular table that stores historical query status data. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp | Time this row was created. |
| `tmid` | int | A time identifier for a particular query. All records associated with the query will have the same `tmid`. |
| `ssid` | int | The session id as shown by `gp_session_id`. All records associated with the query will have the same `ssid`. |
| `ccnt` | int | The command number within this session as shown by `gp_command_count`. All records associated with the query will have the same `ccnt`. |
| `username` | varchar(64) | WarehousePG role name that issued this query. |
| `db` | varchar(64) | Name of the database queried. |
| `cost` | int | Not implemented in this release. |
| `tsubmit` | timestamp | Time the query was submitted. |
| `tstart` | timestamp | Time the query was started. |
| `tfinish` | timestamp | Time the query finished. |
| `status` | varchar(64) | Status of the query -- `start`, `done`, or `abort`. |
| `rows_out` | bigint | Rows out for the query. |
| `cpu_elapsed` | bigint | CPU usage by all processes across all segments executing this query (in seconds). It is the sum of the CPU usage values taken from all active primary segments in the database system.<br><br>Note that the value is logged as 0 if the query runtime is shorter than the value for the quantum. This occurs even if the query runtime is greater than the value for `min_query_time`, and this value is lower than the value for the quantum. |
| `cpu_currpct` | float | Current CPU percent average for all processes executing this query. The percentages for all processes running on each segment are averaged, and then the average of all those values is calculated to render this metric.<br><br>Current CPU percent average is always zero in historical and tail data. |
| `skew_cpu` | float | Displays the amount of processing skew in the system for this query. Processing/CPU skew occurs when one segment performs a disproportionate amount of processing for a query. This value is the coefficient of variation in the CPU% metric across all segments for this query, multiplied by 100. For example, a value of .95 is shown as 95. |
| `skew_rows` | float | Displays the amount of row skew in the system. Row skew occurs when one segment produces a disproportionate number of rows for a query. This value is the coefficient of variation for the `rows_in` metric across all segments for this query, multiplied by 100. For example, a value of .95 is shown as 95. |
| `query_hash` | bigint | Not implemented in this release. |
| `query_text` | text | The SQL text of this query. |
| `query_plan` | text | Text of the query plan. Not implemented in this release. |
| `application_name` | varchar(64) | The name of the application. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `rsqname` | varchar(64) | If the resource queue-based resource management scheme is active, this column specifies the name of the resource queue. |
| `rqpriority` | varchar(64) | If the resource queue-based resource management scheme is active, this column specifies the priority of the query -- `max, high, med, low, or min`. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.6 segment_*

The `segment_*` tables contain memory allocation statistics for the WarehousePG segment instances. This tracks the amount of memory consumed by all postgres processes of a particular segment instance, and the remaining amount of memory available to a segment as per the settings configured by the currently active resource management scheme (resource group-based or resource queue-based). See the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide* for more information about resource management schemes.

There are three segment tables, all having the same columns:

- `segment_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. Current memory allocation data is stored in `segment_now` during the period between data collection from the `gpperfmon` agents and automatic commitment to the segment_history table.
- `segment_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for memory allocation data that has been cleared from `segment_now` but has not yet been committed to `segment_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `segment_history` is a regular table that stores historical memory allocation metrics. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

A particular segment instance is identified by its `hostname` and `dbid` (the unique segment identifier as per the `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog table).

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp(0) (without time zone) | The time the row was created. |
| `dbid` | int | The segment ID (`dbid` from `gp_segment_configuration`). |
| `hostname` | charvar(64) | The segment hostname. |
| `dynamic_memory_used` | bigint | The amount of dynamic memory (in bytes) allocated to query processes running on this segment. |
| `dynamic_memory_available` | bigint | The amount of additional dynamic memory (in bytes) that the segment can request before reaching the limit set by the currently active resource management scheme (resource group-based or resource queue-based). |

See also the views `memory_info` and `dynamic_memory_info` for aggregated memory allocation and utilization by host.

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.7 socket*stats**

The `socket_stats_*` tables store statistical metrics about socket usage for a WarehousePG instance. There are three system tables, all having the same columns:

These tables are in place for future use and are not currently populated.

- `socket_stats_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`.
- `socket_stats_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for socket statistical metrics that has been cleared from `socket_stats_now` but has not yet been committed to `socket_stats_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `socket_stats_history` is a regular table that stores historical socket statistical metrics. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `total_sockets_used` | int | Total sockets used in the system. |
| `tcp_sockets_inuse` | int | Number of TCP sockets in use. |
| `tcp_sockets_orphan` | int | Number of TCP sockets orphaned. |
| `tcp_sockets_timewait` | int | Number of TCP sockets in Time-Wait. |
| `tcp_sockets_alloc` | int | Number of TCP sockets allocated. |
| `tcp_sockets_memusage_inbytes` | int | Amount of memory consumed by TCP sockets. |
| `udp_sockets_inuse` | int | Number of UDP sockets in use. |
| `udp_sockets_memusage_inbytes` | int | Amount of memory consumed by UDP sockets. |
| `raw_sockets_inuse` | int | Number of RAW sockets in use. |
| `frag_sockets_inuse` | int | Number of FRAG sockets in use. |
| `frag_sockets_memusage_inbytes` | int | Amount of memory consumed by FRAG sockets. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.8 system_*

The `system_*` tables store system utilization metrics. There are three system tables, all having the same columns:

- `system_now` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. Current system utilization data is stored in `system_now` during the period between data collection from the `gpperfmon` agents and automatic commitment to the `system_history` table.
- `system_tail` is an external table whose data files are stored in `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/gpperfmon/data`. This is a transitional table for system utilization data that has been cleared from `system_now` but has not yet been committed to `system_history`. It typically only contains a few minutes worth of data.
- `system_history` is a regular table that stores historical system utilization metrics. It is pre-partitioned into monthly partitions. Partitions are automatically added in two month increments as needed.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp | Time this row was created. |
| `hostname` | varchar(64) | Segment or coordinator hostname associated with these system metrics. |
| `mem_total` | bigint | Total system memory in Bytes for this host. |
| `mem_used` | bigint | Used system memory in Bytes for this host. |
| `mem_actual_used` | bigint | Used actual memory in Bytes for this host (not including the memory reserved for cache and buffers). |
| `mem_actual_free` | bigint | Free actual memory in Bytes for this host (not including the memory reserved for cache and buffers). |
| `swap_total` | bigint | Total swap space in Bytes for this host. |
| `swap_used` | bigint | Used swap space in Bytes for this host. |
| `swap_page_in` | bigint | Number of swap pages in. |
| `swap_page_out` | bigint | Number of swap pages out. |
| `cpu_user` | float | CPU usage by the WarehousePG cluster user. |
| `cpu_sys` | float | CPU usage for this host. |
| `cpu_idle` | float | Idle CPU capacity at metric collection time. |
| `load0` | float | CPU load average for the prior one-minute period. |
| `load1` | float | CPU load average for the prior five-minute period. |
| `load2` | float | CPU load average for the prior fifteen-minute period. |
| `quantum` | int | Interval between metric collection for this metric entry. |
| `disk_ro_rate` | bigint | Disk read operations per second. |
| `disk_wo_rate` | bigint | Disk write operations per second. |
| `disk_rb_rate` | bigint | Bytes per second for disk read operations. |
| `disk_wb_rate` | bigint | Bytes per second for disk write operations. |
| `net_rp_rate` | bigint | Packets per second on the system network for read operations. |
| `net_wp_rate` | bigint | Packets per second on the system network for write operations. |
| `net_rb_rate` | bigint | Bytes per second on the system network for read operations. |
| `net_wb_rate` | bigint | Bytes per second on the system network for write operations. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.9 dynamic_memory_info

The `dynamic_memory_info` view shows a sum of the used and available dynamic memory for all segment instances on a segment host. Dynamic memory refers to the maximum amount of memory that WarehousePG instance will allow the query processes of a single segment instance to consume before it starts cancelling processes. This limit, determined by the currently active resource management scheme (resource group-based or resource queue-based), is evaluated on a per-segment basis.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp(0) without time zone | Time this row was created in the `segment_history` table. |
| `hostname` | varchar(64) | Segment or coordinator hostname associated with these system memory metrics. |
| `dynamic_memory_used_mb` | numeric | The amount of dynamic memory in MB allocated to query processes running on this segment. |
| `dynamic_memory_available_mb` | numeric | The amount of additional dynamic memory (in MB) available to the query processes running on this segment host. Note that this value is a sum of the available memory for all segments on a host. Even though this value reports available memory, it is possible that one or more segments on the host have exceeded their memory limit. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### 6.13.10 memory_info

The `memory_info` view shows per-host memory information from the `system_history` and `segment_history` tables. This allows administrators to compare the total memory available on a segment host, total memory used on a segment host, and dynamic memory used by query processes.

| Column | Type | Description |
|---|---|---|
| `ctime` | timestamp(0) without time zone | Time this row was created in the `segment_history` table. |
| `hostname` | varchar(64) | Segment or coordinator hostname associated with these system memory metrics. |
| `mem_total_mb` | numeric | Total system memory in MB for this segment host. |
| `mem_used_mb` | numeric | Total system memory used in MB for this segment host. |
| `mem_actual_used_mb` | numeric | Actual system memory used in MB for this segment host. |
| `mem_actual_free_mb` | numeric | Actual system memory free in MB for this segment host. |
| `swap_total_mb` | numeric | Total swap space in MB for this segment host. |
| `swap_used_mb` | numeric | Total swap space used in MB for this segment host. |
| `dynamic_memory_used_mb` | numeric | The amount of dynamic memory in MB allocated to query processes running on this segment. |
| `dynamic_memory_available_mb` | numeric | The amount of additional dynamic memory (in MB) available to the query processes running on this segment host. Note that this value is a sum of the available memory for all segments on a host. Even though this value reports available memory, it is possible that one or more segments on the host have exceeded their memory limit. |

**Parent topic:** The gpperfmon Database

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 6.14 Server Configuration Parameter Changes from WarehousePG 5 to 6

WarehousePG 6 includes new server configuration parameters, and removes or updates the default values of certain server configuration parameters as described below.

### New Parameters

The following new server configuration parameters are available in WarehousePG 6:

- `default_text_search_config` selects the text search configuration.
- `default_transaction_deferrable` controls the default deferrable status of each new transaction.
- `gp_enable_global_deadlock_detector` controls whether the WarehousePG global deadlock detector is enabled.
- `gp_global_deadlock_detector_period` is the timeout period for the WarehousePG global deadlock detector.
- `gp_use_legacy_hashops` controls whether the legacy or default hash functions are used when creating tables that are defined with a distribution column.
- `lock_timeout` identifies the amount of time for WarehousePG to wait to acquire a lock.
- `optimizer_enable_dml` controls DML operations executed by GPORCA.
- `temp_tablespaces` specifies the tablespace in which WarehousePG creates temporary objects.

### Removed Parameters

The following server configuration parameters are removed in WarehousePG 6:

- `add_missing_from`
- `custom_variable_classes`
- `filerep_mirrorvalidation_during_resync`
- `gp_analyze_relative_error`
- `gp_backup_directIO`
- `gp_backup_directIO_read_chunk_mb`
- `gp_cancel_query_delay_time` (undocumented)
- `gp_cancel_query_print_log` (undocumented)
- `gp_connections_per_thread`
- `gp_email_from`
- `gp_email_smtp_password`
- `gp_email_smtp_server`
- `gp_email_smtp_userid`
- `gp_email_to`
- `gp_enable_fallback_plan`
- `gp_enable_sequential_window_plans`
- `gp_filerep_tcp_keepalives_count`
- `gp_filerep_tcp_keepalives_idle`
- `gp_filerep_tcp_keepalives_interval`
- `gp_fts_probe_threadcount`
- `gp_hadoop_home`
- `gp_hadoop_target_version`
- `gp_idf_deduplicate`
- `gp_interconnect_hash_multiplier`
- `gp_max_csv_line_length`
- `gp_max_databases`
- `gp_max_filespaces`
- `gp_max_tablespaces`
- `gp_num_contents_in_cluster`
- `gp_snmp_community`
- `gp_snmp_monitor_address`
- `gp_snmp_use_inform_or_trap`
- `gp_workfile_checksumming`
- `krb_srvname`
- `max_fsm_pages`
- `max_fsm_relations`

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Changed Parameters

These server configuration parameters are changed in WarehousePG 6:

- These configuration parameter values are changed from strings to enums:
  - `backslash_quote`
  - `client_min_messages`
  - `default_transaction_isolation`
  - `IntervalStyle`
  - `log_error_verbosity`
  - `log_min_messages`
  - `log_statement`
- The `debug_pretty_print` parameter default value is changed from `off` to `on`.
- The `effective_cache_size` parameter default value is changed from `16384` pages to `524288` pages.
- The `gp_cached_segworkers_threshold` parameter minimum value is changed from `0` to `1`.
- The `gp_recursive_cte_prototype` configuration parameter name is changed to `gp_recursive_cte` and deprecated.
- The `gp_workfile_limit_per_query` parameter maximum value is changed from `SIZE_MAX/1024` to `INT_MAX`.
- The `gp_workfile_limit_per_segment` parameter maximum value is changed from `SIZE_MAX/1024` to `INT_MAX`.
- The `gp_workfile_compress_algorithm` configuration parameter name is changed to `gp_workfile_compression`. This server configuration parameter now enables or disables compression of temporary files. When workfile compression is enabled, WarehousePG uses Zstandard compression.
- The default value of the `log_rotation_size` parameter is changed from `0` to `1GB`. This changes the default log rotation behavior so that a new log file is opened when more than 1GB has been written to the current log file, or when the current log file has been open for 24 hours.
- The `optimizer_force_multistage_agg` parameter default is changed from `true` to `false`. GPORCA will now by default choose between a one-stage or two-stage aggregate plan for a scalar distinct qualified aggregate based on cost.
- The `optimizer_penalize_skew` parameter default is changed from `false` to `true`. GPORCA will now by default choose between a one-stage or two-stage aggregate plan for a scalar distinct qualified aggregate based on cost.
- The `pgstat_track_activity_query_size` configuration parameter name is changed to `track_activity_query_size` and removed.
- The `server_version` parameter value is changed from `8.3.23` to `9.4.20`.
- The `server_version_num` parameter value is changed from `80323` to `90420`.
- When the resource group resource management scheme is enabled and you configure `MEMORY_SPILL_RATIO=0` for a resource group, WarehousePG uses the `statement_mem` parameter setting to identify the initial amount of query operator memory.
- The `unix_socket_directory` configuration parameter name is changed to `unix_socket_directories` and now references one or more directories where WarehousePG creates Unix-domain sockets.
- The `bytea` representation changed to a hexadecimal format, by default. Use the server parameter `bytea_output` to select `escape` output format for backward compatibility with PostgreSQL 8.x. After upgrading, set the `bytea_output` configuration parameter to `escape` by running `gpconfig -c bytea_output -v escape`.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 7 About this Documentation

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 8 PXF Upgrade and Migration

When you upgrade your WarehousePG cluster, you must perform some additional steps in order to bring your PXF configuration up to date.

*WarehousePG 6.x to 6.newer upgrade*: You may be required to perform PXF upgrade actions when you upgrade from a previous WarehousePG 6.x version.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 8.1 Upgrading PXF When You Upgrade from a Previous WarehousePG 6.x Version

> **Note** Starting in WarehousePG version 6.19.0, the PXF software is no longer bundled in the WarehousePG Server distribution. You may be required to download and install the PXF `rpm` or `deb` package to use PXF in your WarehousePG cluster as described in the procedures below.

If you are using PXF in your current WarehousePG 6.x installation, you must perform some PXF upgrade actions when you upgrade to a newer version of WarehousePG 6.x. This procedure uses *PXF.from* to refer to your currently-installed PXF version.

The PXF upgrade procedure has two parts. You perform one procedure before, and one procedure after, you upgrade to a new version of WarehousePG:

- Step 1: PXF Pre-Upgrade Actions
- Upgrade to a new WarehousePG version
- Step 2: Upgrading PXF

### Step 1: PXF Pre-Upgrade Actions

Perform this procedure before you upgrade to a new version of WarehousePG:

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator node. For example:

   ```
   $ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
   ```

2. Identify and note the *PXF.from* version number. For example:

   ```
   gpadmin@gpmaster$ pxf version
   ```

3. Determine if *PXF.from* is a PXF `rpm` or `deb` installation ( `/usr/local/pxf-gp<greenplum-major-version>` ), or if you are running *PXF.from* from the WarehousePG server installation ( `$GPHOME/pxf` ), and note the answer.

4. If the *PXF.from* version is 5.x, identify the file system location of the `$PXF_CONF` setting in your PXF 5.x PXF installation; you might need this later. If you are unsure of the location, you can find the value in `pxf-env-default.sh` .

5. Stop PXF on each segment host.

6. Upgrade to the new version of WarehousePG and then continue your PXF upgrade with Step 2: Upgrading PXF.

### Step 2: Registering or Upgrading PXF

After you upgrade to the new version of WarehousePG, perform the following procedure to configure the PXF software; you may be required to install the standalone PXF distribution:

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator node. For example:

   ```
   $ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
   ```

2. If you previously installed the PXF `rpm` or `deb` on your WarehousePG 6.x hosts, you must register it to continue using PXF:

   1. Copy the PXF extension files from the PXF installation directory to the new WarehousePG 6.x install directory:

      ```
      gpadmin@gpmaster pxf cluster register
      ```

   2. Start PXF on each segment host.

   3. Skip the following steps and exit this procedure.

3. Starting in WarehousePG version 6.19.0, PXF is removed from the WarehousePG Server distribution. You must download and install the standalone PXF `rpm` or `deb` package. **Install the same PXF 5.x version as *PXF.from*.**

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Synchronize the PXF configuration from the coordinator host to the standby coordinator and each WarehousePG segment host. For example:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ $GPHOME/pxf/bin/pxf cluster sync
```

5. Start PXF on each segment host:

```
gpadmin@gpmaster$ $GPHOME/pxf/bin/pxf cluster start
```

Your WarehousePG cluster is now running the same version of PXF, but running it from the PXF installation directory ( `/usr/local/pxf-gp<greenplum-major-version>` ). Should you wish to upgrade PXF in the future, consult the PXF upgrade documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

# 9 WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

This guide describes how to secure a WarehousePG cluster. The guide assumes knowledge of Linux/UNIX system administration and database management systems. Familiarity with structured query language (SQL) is helpful.

> **Important** WarehousePG is based on PostgreSQL, therefore certain commercial security scanning software, when trying to identify WarehousePG vulnerabilities, may use a PostgreSQL database profile. The reports generated by these tools can produce misleading results, and cannot be trusted as an accurate assessment of vulnerabilities that may exist in WarehousePG.

Because WarehousePG is based on PostgreSQL 9.4, this guide assumes some familiarity with PostgreSQL. References to PostgreSQL documentation are provided throughout this guide for features that are similar to those in WarehousePG.

This information is intended for system administrators responsible for administering a WarehousePG cluster.

- Securing the Database

  Introduces WarehousePG security topics.

- WarehousePG Ports and Protocols

  Lists network ports and protocols used within the WarehousePG cluster.

- Configuring Client Authentication

  Describes the available methods for authenticating WarehousePG clients.

- Configuring Database Authorization

  Describes how to restrict authorization access to database data at the user level by using roles and permissions.

- Auditing

  Describes WarehousePG events that are logged and should be monitored to detect security threats.

- Encrypting Data and Database Connections

  Describes how to encrypt data at rest in the database or in transit over the network, to protect from eavesdroppers or man-in-the-middle attacks.

- Security Best Practices

  Describes basic security best practices that you should follow to ensure the highest level of system security.

### About Endpoint Security Software

If you install any endpoint security software on your WarehousePG hosts, such as anti-virus, data protection, network security, or other security related software, the additional CPU, IO, network or memory load can interfere with WarehousePG operations and may affect database performance and stability.

Refer to your endpoint security vendor and perform careful testing in a non-production environment to ensure it does not have any negative impact on WarehousePG operations.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.1 WarehousePG Ports and Protocols

Lists network ports and protocols used within the WarehousePG cluster.

WarehousePG clients connect with TCP to the WarehousePG coordinator instance at the client connection port, 5432 by default. The listen port can be reconfigured in the postgresql.conf configuration file. Client connections use the PostgreSQL libpq API. The `psql` command-line interface, several WarehousePG utilities, and language-specific programming APIs all either use the libpq library directly or implement the libpq protocol internally.

Each segment instance also has a client connection port, used solely by the master instance to coordinate database operations with the segments. The `gpstate -p` command, run on the WarehousePG coordinator, lists the port assignments for the WarehousePG coordinator and the primary segments and mirrors.

Additional WarehousePG network connections are created for features such as standby replication, segment mirroring, statistics collection, and data exchange between segments. Some persistent connections are established when the database starts up and other transient connections are created during operations such as query execution. Transient connections for query execution processes, data movement, and statistics collection use available ports in the range 1025 to 65535 with both TCP and UDP protocols.

> **Note** To avoid port conflicts between WarehousePG and other applications when initializing WarehousePG, do not specify WarehousePG ports in the range specified by the operating system parameter `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range`. For example, if `net.ipv4.ip_local_port_range = 10000 65535`, you could set the WarehousePG base port numbers to values outside of that range:

```
PORT_BASE = 6000
MIRROR_PORT_BASE = 7000
```

Some add-on products and services that work with WarehousePG have additional networking requirements. The following table lists ports and protocols used within the WarehousePG cluster, and includes services and applications that integrate with WarehousePG.

| Service | Protocol/Port | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Coordinator SQL client connection | TCP 5432, libpq | SQL client connection port on the WarehousePG coordinator host. Supports clients using the PostgreSQL libpq API. Configurable. |
| Segment SQL client connection | varies, libpq | The SQL client connection port for a segment instance. Each primary and mirror segment on a host must have a unique port. Ports are assigned when the WarehousePG cluster is initialized or expanded. The `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog records port numbers for each primary (p) or mirror (m) segment in the `port` column. Run `gpstate -p` to view the ports in use. |
| Segment mirroring port | varies, libpq | The port where a segment receives mirrored blocks from its primary. The port is assigned when the mirror is set up. The `gp_segment_configuration` system catalog records port numbers for each primary (p) or mirror (m) segment in the `port` column. Run `gpstate -p` to view the ports in use. |
| WarehousePG Interconnect | UDP 1025-65535, dynamically allocated | The Interconnect transports database tuples between WarehousePG segments during query execution. |
| standby coordinator client listener | TCP 5432, libpq | SQL client connection port on the standby coordinator host. Usually the same as the coordinator client connection port. Configure with the `gpinitstandby` utility `-P` option. |
| standby coordinator replicator | TCP 1025-65535, gpsyncmaster | The `gpsyncmaster` process on the coordinator host establishes a connection to the secondary coordinator host to replicate the coordinator's log to the standby coordinator. |
| WarehousePG file load and transfer utilities: gpfdist, gpload. | TCP 8080, HTTP<br>TCP 9000, HTTPS | The gpfdist file serving utility can run on WarehousePG hosts or external hosts. Specify the connection port with the `-p` option when starting the server.<br><br>The gpload utility runs one or more instances of gpfdist with ports or port ranges specified in a configuration file. |
| Gpperfmon agents | TCP 8888 | Connection port for gpperfmon agents ( `gpmmon` and `gpsmon` ) executing on WarehousePG hosts. Configure by setting the `gpperfmon_port` configuration variable in postgresql.conf on coordinator and segment hosts. |
| Backup completion notification | TCP 25, TCP 587, SMTP | The `gpbackup` backup utility can optionally send email to a list of email addresses at completion of a backup. The SMTP service must be enabled on the WarehousePG coordinator host. |
| WarehousePG secure shell (SSH): gpssh, gpscp, gpssh-exkeys | TCP 22, SSH | Many WarehousePG utilities use scp and ssh to transfer files between hosts and manage the WarehousePG cluster within the cluster. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Service | Protocol/Port | Description |
|---|---|---|
| WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) | TCP 5888 | The PXF Java service runs on port number 5888 on each WarehousePG segment host. |
| Dell EMC PowerProtect (Data Domain) and DD Boost | TCP/UDP 111, NFS portmapper | Used to assign a random port for the mountd service used by NFS and DD Boost. The mountd service port can be statically assigned on the Data Domain server. |
| Dell EMC PowerProtect (Data Domain) and DD Boost | TCP 2052 | Main port used by NFS mountd. This port can be set on the Data Domain system using the `nfs set mountd-port` command . |
| Dell EMC PowerProtect (Data Domain) and DD Boost | TCP 2049, NFS | Main port used by NFS. This port can be configured using the `nfs set server-port` command on the Data Domain server. |
| Dell EMC PowerProtect (Data Domain) and DD Boost | TCP 2051, replication | Used when replication is configured on the Data Domain system. This port can be configured using the `replication modify` command on the Data Domain server. |
| Pgbouncer connection pooler | TCP, libpq | The pgbouncer connection pooler runs between libpq clients and WarehousePG (or PostgreSQL) databases. It can be run on the WarehousePG coordinator host, but running it on a host outside of the WarehousePG cluster is recommended. When it runs on a separate host, pgbouncer can act as a warm standby mechanism for the WarehousePG coordinator host, switching to the WarehousePG standby host without requiring clients to reconfigure. Set the client connection port and the WarehousePG coordinator host address and port in the pgbouncer.ini configuration file. |

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.2 Auditing

Describes WarehousePG events that are logged and should be monitored to detect security threats.

WarehousePG is capable of auditing a variety of events, including startup and shutdown of the system, segment database failures, SQL statements that result in an error, and all connection attempts and disconnections. WarehousePG also logs SQL statements and information regarding SQL statements, and can be configured in a variety of ways to record audit information with more or less detail. The `log_error_verbosity` configuration parameter controls the amount of detail written in the server log for each message that is logged. Similarly, the `log_min_error_statement` parameter allows administrators to configure the level of detail recorded specifically for SQL statements, and the `log_statement` parameter determines the kind of SQL statements that are audited. WarehousePG records the username for all auditable events, when the event is initiated by a subject outside the WarehousePG.

WarehousePG prevents unauthorized modification and deletion of audit records by only allowing administrators with an appropriate role to perform any operations on log files. Logs are stored in a proprietary format using comma-separated values (CSV). Each segment and the coordinator stores its own log files, although these can be accessed remotely by an administrator. WarehousePG also authorizes overwriting of old log files via the `log_truncate_on_rotation` parameter. This is a local parameter and must be set on each segment and coordinator configuration file.

WarehousePG provides an administrative schema called `gp_toolkit` that you can use to query log files, as well as system catalogs and operating environment for system status information. For more information, including usage, refer to *The gp_tookit Administrative Schema* appendix in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

### Viewing the Database Server Log Files

Every database instance in WarehousePG (coordinator and segments) is a running PostgreSQL database server with its own server log file. Daily log files are created in the `pg_log` directory of the coordinator and each segment data directory.

The server log files are written in comma-separated values (CSV) format. Not all log entries will have values for all of the log fields. For example, only log entries associated with a query worker process will have the `slice_id` populated. Related log entries of a particular query can be identified by its session identifier ( `gp_session_id` ) and command identifier ( `gp_command_count` ).

| # | Field Name | Data Type | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | event_time | timestamp with time zone | Time that the log entry was written to the log |
| 2 | user_name | varchar(100) | The database user name |
| 3 | database_name | varchar(100) | The database name |
| 4 | process_id | varchar(10) | The system process id (prefixed with "p") |
| 5 | thread_id | varchar(50) | The thread count (prefixed with "th") |
| 6 | remote_host | varchar(100) | On the coordinator, the hostname/address of the client machine. On the segment, the hostname/address of the coordinator. |
| 7 | remote_port | varchar(10) | The segment or coordinator port number |
| 8 | session_start_time | timestamp with time zone | Time session connection was opened |
| 9 | transaction_id | int | Top-level transaction ID on the coordinator. This ID is the parent of any subtransactions. |
| 10 | gp_session_id | text | Session identifier number (prefixed with "con") |
| 11 | gp_command_count | text | The command number within a session (prefixed with "cmd") |
| 12 | gp_segment | text | The segment content identifier (prefixed with "seg" for primaries or "mir" for mirrors). The coordinator always has a content id of -1. |
| 13 | slice_id | text | The slice id (portion of the query plan being run) |
| 14 | distr_tranx_id text | Distributed transaction ID | |
| 15 | local_tranx_id | text | Local transaction ID |
| 16 | sub_tranx_id | text | Subtransaction ID |
| 17 | event_severity | varchar(10) | Values include: LOG, ERROR, FATAL, PANIC, DEBUG1, DEBUG2 |
| 18 | sql_state_code | varchar(10) | SQL state code associated with the log message |
| 19 | event_message | text | Log or error message text |
| 20 | event_detail | text | Detail message text associated with an error or warning message |
| 21 | event_hint | text | Hint message text associated with an error or warning message |
| 22 | internal_query | text | The internally-generated query text |
| 23 | internal_query_pos | int | The cursor index into the internally-generated query text |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| # | Field Name | Data Type | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| 24 | event_context | text | The context in which this message gets generated |
| 25 | debug_query_string | text | User-supplied query string with full detail for debugging. This string can be modified for internal use. |
| 26 | error_cursor_pos | int | The cursor index into the query string |
| 27 | func_name | text | The function in which this message is generated |
| 28 | file_name | text | The internal code file where the message originated |
| 29 | file_line | int | The line of the code file where the message originated |
| 30 | stack_trace | text | Stack trace text associated with this message |

WarehousePG provides a utility called `gplogfilter` that can be used to search through a WarehousePG log file for entries matching the specified criteria. By default, this utility searches through the WarehousePG coordinator log file in the default logging location. For example, to display the last three lines of the coordinator log file:

```
$ gplogfilter -n 3
```

You can also use `gplogfilter` to search through all segment log files at once by running it through the `gpssh` utility. For example, to display the last three lines of each segment log file:

```
$ gpssh -f seg_host_file
  => source /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
  => gplogfilter -n 3 /data*/*/gp*/pg_log/gpdb*.csv
```

The following are the WarehousePG security-related audit (or logging) server configuration parameters that are set in the postgresql.conf configuration file:

| Field Name | Value Range | Default | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| log_connections | Boolean | off | This outputs a line to the server log detailing each successful connection. Some client programs, like psql, attempt to connect twice while determining if a password is required, so duplicate “connection received” messages do not always indicate a problem. |
| log_disconnections | Boolean | off | This outputs a line in the server log at termination of a client session, and includes the duration of the session. |
| log_statement | NONE<br>DDL<br>MOD<br>ALL | ALL | Controls which SQL statements are logged. DDL logs all data definition commands like CREATE, ALTER, and DROP commands. MOD logs all DDL statements, plus INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, and COPY FROM. PREPARE and EXPLAIN ANALYZE statements are also logged if their contained command is of an appropriate type. |
| log_hostname | Boolean | off | By default, connection log messages only show the IP address of the connecting host. Turning on this option causes logging of the host name as well. Note that depending on your host name resolution setup this might impose a non-negligible performance penalty. |
| log_duration | Boolean | off | Causes the duration of every completed statement which satisfies log_statement to be logged. |
| log_error_verbosity | TERSE<br>DEFAULT<br>VERBOSE | DEFAULT | Controls the amount of detail written in the server log for each message that is logged. |
| log_min_duration_statement | number of milliseconds, 0, -1 | -1 | Logs the statement and its duration on a single log line if its duration is greater than or equal to the specified number of milliseconds. Setting this to 0 will print all statements and their durations. -1 deactivates the feature. For example, if you set it to 250 then all SQL statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Enabling this option can be useful in tracking down unoptimized queries in your applications. |
| log_min_messages | DEBUG5<br>DEBUG4<br>DEBUG3<br>DEBUG2<br>DEBUG1<br>INFO<br>NOTICE<br>WARNING<br>ERROR<br>LOG<br>FATAL<br>PANIC | NOTICE | Controls which message levels are written to the server log. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent to the log. |
| log_rotation_size | 0 - INT_MAX/1024 kilobytes | 1048576 | When greater than 0, a new log file is created when this number of kilobytes have been written to the log. Set to zero to deactivate size-based creation of new log files. |

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

| Field Name | Value Range | Default | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| log_rotation_age | Any valid time expression (number and unit) | 1d | Determines the lifetime of an individual log file. When this amount of time has elapsed since the current log file was created, a new log file will be created. Set to zero to deactivate time-based creation of new log files. |
| log_statement_stats | Boolean | off | For each query, write total performance statistics of the query parser, planner, and executor to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument. |
| log_truncate_on_rotation | Boolean | off | Truncates (overwrites), rather than appends to, any existing log file of the same name. Truncation will occur only when a new file is being opened due to time-based rotation. For example, using this setting in combination with a log_filename such as gpseg#-%H.log would result in generating twenty-four hourly log files and then cyclically overwriting them. When off, pre-existing files will be appended to in all cases. |

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.3 Configuring Client Authentication

Describes the available methods for authenticating WarehousePG clients.

When a WarehousePG cluster is first initialized, the system contains one predefined superuser role. This role will have the same name as the operating system user who initialized the WarehousePG cluster. This role is referred to as gpadmin. By default, the system is configured to only allow local connections to the database from the gpadmin role. If you want to allow any other roles to connect, or if you want to allow connections from remote hosts, you have to configure WarehousePG to allow such connections. This section explains how to configure client connections and authentication to WarehousePG.


- Allowing Connections to WarehousePG
- Editing the pg_hba.conf File
- Authentication Methods
- Limiting Concurrent Connections
- Encrypting Client/Server Connections


**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

### Allowing Connections to WarehousePG

Client access and authentication is controlled by a configuration file named `pg_hba.conf` (the standard PostgreSQL host-based authentication file). For detailed information about this file, see The pg_hba.conf File in the PostgreSQL documentation.

In WarehousePG, the `pg_hba.conf` file of the coordinator instance controls client access and authentication to your WarehousePG cluster. The segments also have `pg_hba.conf` files, but these are already correctly configured to only allow client connections from the coordinator host. The segments never accept outside client connections, so there is no need to alter the `pg_hba.conf` file on segments.

The general format of the `pg_hba.conf` file is a set of records, one per line. Blank lines are ignored, as is any text after a # comment character. A record is made up of a number of fields which are separated by spaces and/or tabs. Fields can contain white space if the field value is quoted. Records cannot be continued across lines.

A record can have one of seven formats:

```
local      <database>  <user>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
host       <database>  <user>  <address>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
hostssl    <database>  <user>  <address>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
hostnossl  <database>  <user>  <address>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
host       <database>  <user>  <IP-address>  <IP-mask>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
hostssl    <database>  <user>  <IP-address>  <IP-mask>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
hostnossl  <database>  <user>  <IP-address>  <IP-mask>  <auth-method>  [<auth-options>]
```

The meaning of the `pg_hba.conf` fields is as follows:

- `local`

  Matches connection attempts using UNIX-domain sockets. Without a record of this type, UNIX-domain socket connections are disallowed.

- `host`

  Matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP. Remote TCP/IP connections will not be possible unless the server is started with an appropriate value for the `listen_addresses` server configuration parameter. WarehousePG by default allows connections from all hosts ( `'*'` ).

- `hostssl`

  Matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with SSL encryption. SSL must be enabled at server start time by setting the `ssl` configuration parameter to on. Requires SSL authentication be configured in `postgresql.conf` . See Configuring postgresql.conf for SSL Authentication.

- `hostnossl`

  Matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that do not use SSL.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `database`

  Specifies which database names this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all databases. Multiple database names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing database names can be specified by preceding the file name with `@`.

- `user`

  Specifies which database role names this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all roles. If the specified role is a group and you want all members of that group to be included, precede the role name with a `+`. Multiple role names can be supplied by separating them with commas. A separate file containing role names can be specified by preceding the file name with `@`.

- `address`

  Specifies the client machine addresses that this record matches. This field can contain either a host name, an IP address range, or one of the special key words mentioned below.

  An IP address range is specified using standard numeric notation for the range's starting address, then a slash (`/`) and a CIDR mask length. The mask length indicates the number of high-order bits of the client IP address that must match. Bits to the right of this should be zero in the given IP address. There must not be any white space between the IP address, the `/`, and the CIDR mask length.

  Typical examples of an IPv4 address range specified this way are `172.20.143.89/32` for a single host, or `172.20.143.0/24` for a small network, or `10.6.0.0/16` for a larger one. An IPv6 address range might look like `::1/128` for a single host (in this case the IPv6 loopback address) or `fe80::7a31:c1ff:0000:0000/96` for a small network. `0.0.0.0/0` represents all IPv4 addresses, and `::0/0` represents all IPv6 addresses. To specify a single host, use a mask length of 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6. In a network address, do not omit trailing zeroes.

  An entry given in IPv4 format will match only IPv4 connections, and an entry given in IPv6 format will match only IPv6 connections, even if the represented address is in the IPv4-in-IPv6 range.

  > **Note** Entries in IPv6 format will be rejected if the host system C library does not have support for IPv6 addresses.

  You can also write `all` to match any IP address, `samehost` to match any of the server's own IP addresses, or `samenet` to match any address in any subnet to which the server is directly connected.

  If a host name is specified (an address that is not an IP address, IP range, or special key word is treated as a host name), that name is compared with the result of a reverse name resolution of the client IP address (for example, reverse DNS lookup, if DNS is used). Host name comparisons are case insensitive. If there is a match, then a forward name resolution (for example, forward DNS lookup) is performed on the host name to check whether any of the addresses it resolves to are equal to the client IP address. If both directions match, then the entry is considered to match.

  The host name that is used in `pg_hba.conf` should be the one that address-to-name resolution of the client's IP address returns, otherwise the line won't be matched. Some host name databases allow associating an IP address with multiple host names, but the operating system will only return one host name when asked to resolve an IP address.

  A host name specification that starts with a dot (.) matches a suffix of the actual host name. So `.example.com` would match `foo.example.com` (but not just `example.com`).

  When host names are specified in `pg_hba.conf`, you should ensure that name resolution is reasonably fast. It can be advantageous to set up a local name resolution cache such as `nscd`. Also, you can enable the server configuration parameter `log_hostname` to see the client host name instead of the IP address in the log.

- `IP-address`

- `IP-mask`

  These two fields can be used as an alternative to the CIDR address notation. Instead of specifying the mask length, the actual mask is specified in a separate column. For example, `255.0.0.0` represents an IPv4 CIDR mask length of 8, and `255.255.255.255` represents a CIDR mask length of 32.

- `auth-method`

  Specifies the authentication method to use when a connection matches this record. See Authentication Methods for options.

- `auth-options`

  After the `auth-method` field, there can be field(s) of the form `name=value` that specify options for the authentication method. Details about which options are available for which authentication methods are described in Authentication Methods.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

Files included by @ constructs are read as lists of names, which can be separated by either whitespace or commas. Comments are introduced by #, just as in `pg_hba.conf`, and nested @ constructs are allowed. Unless the file name following @ is an absolute path, it is taken to be relative to the directory containing the referencing file.

The `pg_hba.conf` records are examined sequentially for each connection attempt, so the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example, you might wish to use `trust` authentication for local TCP/IP connections but require a password for remote TCP/IP connections. In this case a record specifying `trust` authentication for connections from 127.0.0.1 would appear before a record specifying `password` authentication for a wider range of allowed client IP addresses.

The `pg_hba.conf` file is read on start-up and when the main server process receives a SIGHUP signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you must reload the file using this command:

```
$ gpstop -u
```

> **Caution** For a more secure system, remove records for remote connections that use `trust` authentication from the `pg_hba.conf` file. `trust` authentication grants any user who can connect to the server access to the database using any role they specify. You can safely replace `trust` authentication with `ident` authentication for local UNIX-socket connections. You can also use `ident` authentication for local and remote TCP clients, but the client host must be running an ident service and you must `trust` the integrity of that machine.

### Editing the pg_hba.conf File

Initially, the `pg_hba.conf` file is set up with generous permissions for the gpadmin user and no database access for other WarehousePG roles. You will need to edit the `pg_hba.conf` file to enable users' access to databases and to secure the gpadmin user. Consider removing entries that have `trust` authentication, since they allow anyone with access to the server to connect with any role they choose. For local (UNIX socket) connections, use `ident` authentication, which requires the operating system user to match the role specified. For local and remote TCP connections, `ident` authentication requires the client's host to run an indent service. You could install an ident service on the coordinator host and then use `ident` authentication for local TCP connections, for example `127.0.0.1/28`. Using `ident` authentication for remote TCP connections is less secure because it requires you to trust the integrity of the ident service on the client's host.

This example shows how to edit the `pg_hba.conf` file on the coordinator host to allow remote client access to all databases from all roles using encrypted password authentication.

To edit `pg_hba.conf`:

1. Open the file `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/pg_hba.conf` in a text editor.

2. Add a line to the file for each type of connection you want to allow. Records are read sequentially, so the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example:

   ```
   # allow the gpadmin user local access to all databases
   # using ident authentication
   local   all   gpadmin   ident         sameuser
   host    all   gpadmin   127.0.0.1/32  ident
   host    all   gpadmin   ::1/128       ident
   # allow the 'dba' role access to any database from any
   # host with IP address 192.168.x.x and use md5 encrypted
   # passwords to authenticate the user
   # Note that to use SHA-256 encryption, replace md5 with
   # password in the line below
   host    all   dba   192.168.0.0/32  md5
   ```

### Authentication Methods

- Basic Authentication
- GSSAPI Authentication
- LDAP Authentication
- SSL Client Authentication
- PAM-Based Authentication
- Radius Authentication

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Basic Authentication

- Trust

  Allows the connection unconditionally, without the need for a password or any other authentication. This entry is required for the `gpadmin` role, and for WarehousePG utilities (for example `gpinitsystem`, `gpstop`, or `gpstart` amongst others) that need to connect between nodes without prompting for input or a password.

  > **Important** For a more secure system, remove records for remote connections that use `trust` authentication from the `pg_hba.conf` file. `trust` authentication grants any user who can connect to the server access to the database using any role they specify. You can safely replace `trust` authentication with `ident` authentication for local UNIX-socket connections. You can also use `ident` authentication for local and remote TCP clients, but the client host must be running an ident service and you must `trust` the integrity of that machine.

- Reject

  Reject the connections with the matching parameters. You should typically use this to restrict access from specific hosts or insecure connections.

- Ident

  Authenticates based on the client's operating system user name. This is secure for local socket connections. Using `ident` for TCP connections from remote hosts requires that the client's host is running an ident service. The `ident` authentication method should only be used with remote hosts on a trusted, closed network.

- scram-sha-256

  Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication as described in RFC5802 to verify the user's password. SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication is a challenge-response scheme that prevents password sniffing on untrusted connections. It is more secure than the `md5` method, but might not be supported by older clients.

- md5

  Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 or MD5 authentication to verify the user's password. Allows falling back to a less secure challenge-response mechanism for those users with an MD5-hashed password. The fallback mechanism also prevents password sniffing, but provides no protection if an attacker manages to steal the password hash from the server, and it cannot be used when `db_user_namespace` is enabled. For all other users, `md5` works the same as `scram-sha-256`.

- password

  Require the client to supply an unencrypted password for authentication. Since the password is sent in clear text over the network, this authentication method should not be used on untrusted networks.

  Plain `password` authentication sends the password in clear-text, and is therefore vulnerable to password sniffing attacks. It should always be avoided if possible. If the connection is protected by SSL encryption then `password` can be used safely, though. (SSL certificate authentication might be a better choice if one is depending on using SSL).

  When using the WarehousePG `SHA-256` password hashing algorithm, the `password` authentication method must be specifed, and SSL-secured client connections are recommended.

##### Basic Authentication Examples

The password-based authentication methods are `scram-sha-256`, `md5`, and `password`. These methods operate similarly except for the way that the password is sent across the connection.

Following are some sample `pg_hba.conf` basic authentication entries:

```
hostnossl    all   all        0.0.0.0   reject
hostssl      all   testuser   0.0.0.0/0 md5
local        all   gpuser                ident
```

Or:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
local    all           gpadmin         ident
host     all           gpadmin         localhost      trust
host     all           gpadmin         mdw            trust
local    replication   gpadmin         ident
host     replication   gpadmin         samenet        trust
host     all           all             0.0.0.0/0      md5
```

Or:

```
# Require SCRAM authentication for most users, but make an exception
# for user 'mike', who uses an older client that doesn't support SCRAM
# authentication.
#
host    all             mike            .example.com           md5
host    all             all             .example.com           scram-sha-256
```

#### GSSAPI Authentication

GSSAPI is an industry-standard protocol for secure authentication defined in RFC 2743. WarehousePG supports GSSAPI with Kerberos authentication according to RFC 1964. GSSAPI provides automatic authentication (single sign-on) for systems that support it. The authentication itself is secure, but the data sent over the database connection will be sent unencrypted unless SSL is used.

The `gss` authentication method is only available for TCP/IP connections.

When GSSAPI uses Kerberos, it uses a standard principal in the format `servicename/hostname@realm`. The WarehousePG server will accept any principal that is included in the keytab file used by the server, but care needs to be taken to specify the correct principal details when making the connection from the client using the `krbsrvname` connection parameter. (See Connection Parameter Key Words in the PostgreSQL documentation.) In most environments, this parameter never needs to be changed. Some Kerberos implementations might require a different service name, such as Microsoft Active Directory, which requires the service name to be in upper case (POSTGRES).

`hostname` is the fully qualified host name of the server machine. The service principal's realm is the preferred realm of the server machine.

Client principals must have their WarehousePG user name as their first component, for example `gpusername@realm`. Alternatively, you can use a user name mapping to map from the first component of the principal name to the database user name. By default, WarehousePG does not check the realm of the client. If you have cross-realm authentication enabled and need to verify the realm, use the `krb_realm` parameter, or enable `include_realm` and use user name mapping to check the realm.

Make sure that your server keytab file is readable (and preferably only readable) by the `gpadmin` server account. The location of the key file is specified by the krb_server_keyfile configuration parameter. For security reasons, it is recommended to use a separate keytab just for the WarehousePG server rather than opening up permissions on the system keytab file.

The keytab file is generated by the Kerberos software; see the Kerberos documentation for details. The following example is for MIT-compatible Kerberos 5 implementations:

```
kadmin% **ank -randkey postgres/server.my.domain.org**
kadmin% **ktadd -k krb5.keytab postgres/server.my.domain.org**
```

When connecting to the database make sure you have a ticket for a principal matching the requested database user name. For example, for database user name `fred`, principal `fred@EXAMPLE.COM` would be able to connect. To also allow principal `fred/users.example.com@EXAMPLE.COM`, use a user name map, as described in User Name Maps in the PostgreSQL documentation.

The following configuration options are supported for GSSAPI:

- `include_realm`

  If set to 1, the realm name from the authenticated user principal is included in the system user name that is passed through user name mapping. This is the recommended configuration as, otherwise, it is impossible to differentiate users with the same username who are from different realms. The default for this parameter is 0 (meaning to not include the realm in the system user name) but may change to 1 in a future version of WarehousePG. You can set it explicitly to avoid any issues when upgrading.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `map`

  Allows for mapping between system and database user names. For a GSSAPI/Kerberos principal, such as `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or, less commonly, `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`), the default user name used for mapping is `username` (or `username/hostbased`, respectively), unless `include_realm` has been set to 1 (as recommended, see above), in which case `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`) is what is seen as the system username when mapping.

- `krb_realm`

  Sets the realm to match user principal names against. If this parameter is set, only users of that realm will be accepted. If it is not set, users of any realm can connect, subject to whatever user name mapping is done.

#### LDAP Authentication

You can authenticate against an LDAP directory.

- LDAPS and LDAP over TLS options encrypt the connection to the LDAP server.
- The connection from the client to the server is not encrypted unless SSL is enabled. Configure client connections to use SSL to encrypt connections from the client.
- To configure or customize LDAP settings, set the `LDAPCONF` environment variable with the path to the `ldap.conf` file and add this to the `greenplum_path.sh` script.

Following are the recommended steps for configuring your system for LDAP authentication:

1. Set up the LDAP server with the database users/roles to be authenticated via LDAP.
2. On the database:
    1. Verify that the database users to be authenticated via LDAP exist on the database. LDAP is only used for verifying username/password pairs, so the roles should exist in the database.
    2. Update the `pg_hba.conf` file in the `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` to use LDAP as the authentication method for the respective users. Note that the first entry to match the user/role in the `pg_hba.conf` file will be used as the authentication mechanism, so the position of the entry in the file is important.
    3. Reload the server for the `pg_hba.conf` configuration settings to take effect ( `gpstop -u` ).

Specify the following parameter `auth-options`.

- ldapserver

  Names or IP addresses of LDAP servers to connect to. Multiple servers may be specified, separated by spaces.

- ldapprefix

  String to prepend to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

- ldapsuffix

  String to append to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

- ldapport

  Port number on LDAP server to connect to. If no port is specified, the LDAP library's default port setting will be used.

- ldaptls

  Set to 1 to make the connection between PostgreSQL and the LDAP server use TLS encryption. Note that this only encrypts the traffic to the LDAP server — the connection to the client will still be unencrypted unless SSL is used.

- ldapbasedn

  Root DN to begin the search for the user in, when doing search+bind authentication.

- ldapbinddn

  DN of user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- ldapbindpasswd

  Password for user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

- ldapsearchattribute

  Attribute to match against the user name in the search when doing search+bind authentication.

- ldapsearchfilter

  Beginning with WarehousePG 6.22, this attribute enables you to provide a search filter to use when doing search+bind authentication. Occurrences of `$username` will be replaced with the user name. This allows for more flexible search filters than `ldapsearchattribute`. Note that you can specify *either* `ldapsearchattribute` or `ldapsearchattribute`, but not both.

When using search+bind mode, the search can be performed using a single attribute specified with `ldapsearchattribute`, or using a custom search filter specified with `ldapsearchfilter`. Specifying `ldapsearchattribute=foo` is equivalent to specifying `ldapsearchfilter="(foo=$username)"`. If neither option is specified the default is `ldapsearchattribute=uid`.

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration that uses `ldapsearchfilter` instead of `ldapsearchattribute` to allow authentication by user ID or email address:

```
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapbasedn="dc=example, dc=net" ldapsearchfilter="(|(uid=$username)
(mail=$username))"
```

Following are additional sample `pg_hba.conf` file entries for LDAP authentication:

```
host all testuser 0.0.0.0/0 ldap ldap
ldapserver=ldapserver.greenplum.com ldapport=389 ldapprefix="cn=" ldapsuffix=",ou=people,dc=greenplum,dc=com"
hostssl   all   ldaprole   0.0.0.0/0   ldap
ldapserver=ldapserver.greenplum.com ldaptls=1 ldapprefix="cn=" ldapsuffix=",ou=people,dc=greenplum,dc=com"
```

### SSL Client Authentication

SSL authentication compares the Common Name (cn) attribute of an SSL certificate provided by the connecting client during the SSL handshake to the requested database user name. The database user should exist in the database. A map file can be used for mapping between system and database user names.

#### SSL Authentication Parameters

Authentication method:

- Cert

  Authentication options:

  Hostssl : Connection type must be hostssl.

  map=mapping : mapping.

  : This is specified in the `pg_ident.conf`, or in the file specified in the `ident_file` server setting.

  Following are sample `pg_hba.conf` entries for SSL client authentication:

  ```
  Hostssl testdb certuser 192.168.0.0/16 cert
  Hostssl testdb all 192.168.0.0/16 cert map=gpuser
  ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### OpenSSL Configuration

You can make changes to the OpenSSL configuration by updating the `openssl.cnf` file under your OpenSSL installation directory, or the file referenced by `$OPENSSL_CONF`, if present, and then restarting the WarehousePG server.

#### Creating a Self-Signed Certificate

A self-signed certificate can be used for testing, but a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) (either one of the global CAs or a local one) should be used in production so that clients can verify the server's identity. If all the clients are local to the organization, using a local CA is recommended.

To create a self-signed certificate for the server:

1. Enter the following `openssl` command:

   ```
   openssl req -new -text -out server.req
   ```

2. Enter the requested information at the prompts.

   Make sure you enter the local host name for the Common Name. The challenge password can be left blank.

3. The program generates a key that is passphrase-protected; it does not accept a passphrase that is less than four characters long. To remove the passphrase (and you must if you want automatic start-up of the server), run the following command:

   ```
   openssl rsa -in privkey.pem -out server.key
   rm privkey.pem
   ```

4. Enter the old passphrase to unlock the existing key. Then run the following command:

   ```
   openssl req -x509 -in server.req -text -key server.key -out server.crt
   ```

   This turns the certificate into a self-signed certificate and copies the key and certificate to where the server will look for them.

5. Finally, run the following command:

   ```
   chmod og-rwx server.key
   ```

For more details on how to create your server private key and certificate, refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

#### Configuring postgresql.conf for SSL Authentication

The following Server settings need to be specified in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file:

- `ssl` *boolean*. Enables SSL connections.
- `ssl_ciphers` *string*. Configures the list SSL ciphers that are allowed. `ssl_ciphers` *overrides* any ciphers string specified in `/etc/openssl.cnf`. The default value `ALL:!ADH:!LOW:!EXP:!MD5:@STRENGTH` enables all ciphers except for ADH, LOW, EXP, and MD5 ciphers, and prioritizes ciphers by their strength.

  > **Note** With TLS 1.2 some ciphers in MEDIUM and HIGH strength still use NULL encryption (no encryption for transport), which the default `ssl_ciphers` string allows. To bypass NULL ciphers with TLS 1.2 use a string such as `TLSv1.2:!eNULL:!aNULL`.

  It is possible to have authentication without encryption overhead by using `NULL-SHA` or `NULL-MD5` ciphers. However, a man-in-the-middle could read and pass communications between client and server. Also, encryption overhead is minimal compared to the overhead of authentication. For these reasons, NULL ciphers should not be used.

The default location for the following SSL server files is the WarehousePG coordinator data directory (`$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`):

- `server.crt` - Server certificate.
- `server.key` - Server private key.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

- `root.crt` - Trusted certificate authorities.
- `root.crl` - Certificates revoked by certificate authorities.

If WarehousePG coordinator mirroring is enabled with SSL client authentication, the SSL server files *should not be placed* in the default directory `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`. If a `gpinitstandby` operation is performed, the contents of `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY` is copied from the coordinator to the standby coordinator and the incorrect SSL key, and cert files (the coordinator files, and not the standby coordinator files) will prevent standby coordinator start up.

You can specify a different directory for the location of the SSL server files with the `postgresql.conf` parameters `sslcert`, `sslkey`, `sslrootcert`, and `sslcrl`.

#### Configuring the SSL Client Connection

SSL options:

- sslmode

  Specifies the level of protection.

- `require`

  Only use an SSL connection. If a root CA file is present, verify the certificate in the same way as if `verify-ca` was specified.

- `verify-ca`

  Only use an SSL connection. Verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA.

- `verify-full`

  Only use an SSL connection. Verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA and that the server host name matches that in the certificate.

- sslcert

  The file name of the client SSL certificate. The default is `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.crt`.

- sslkey

  The secret key used for the client certificate. The default is `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.key`.

- sslrootcert

  The name of a file containing SSL Certificate Authority certificate(s). The default is `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/root.crt`.

- sslcrl

  The name of the SSL certificate revocation list. The default is `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/root.crl`.

The client connection parameters can be set using the following environment variables:

- `sslmode` - `PGSSLMODE`
- `sslcert` - `PGSSLCERT`
- `sslkey` - `PGSSLKEY`
- `sslrootcert` - `PGSSLROOTCERT`
- `sslcrl` - `PGSSLCRL`

For example, run the following command to connect to the `postgres` database from `localhost` and verify the certificate present in the default location under `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY`:

```
psql "sslmode=verify-ca host=localhost dbname=postgres"
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### PAM-Based Authentication

The "PAM" (Pluggable Authentication Modules) authentication method validates username/password pairs, similar to basic authentication. To use PAM authentication, the user must already exist as a WarehousePG role name.

WarehousePG uses the `pamservice` authentication parameter to identify the service from which to obtain the PAM configuration.

> **Note** If PAM is set up to read `/etc/shadow`, authentication will fail because the PostgreSQL server is started by a non-root user. This is not an issue when PAM is configured to use LDAP or another authentication method.

WarehousePG does not install a PAM configuration file. If you choose to use PAM authentication with WarehousePG, you must identify the PAM service name for WarehousePG and create the associated PAM service configuration file and configure WarehousePG to use PAM authentication as described below:

1. Log in to the WarehousePG coordinator host and set up your environment. For example:

   ```
   $ ssh gpadmin@<gpmaster>
   gpadmin@gpmaster$ . /usr/edb/whpg6/greenplum_path.sh
   ```

2. Identify the `pamservice` name for WarehousePG. In this procedure, we choose the name `greenplum`.

3. Create the PAM service configuration file, `/etc/pam.d/greenplum`, and add the text below. You must have operating system superuser privileges to create the `/etc/pam.d` directory (if necessary) and the `greenplum` PAM configuration file.

   ```
   #%PAM-1.0
   auth        include     password-auth
   account     include     password-auth
   ```

   This configuration instructs PAM to authenticate the local operating system user.

4. Ensure that the `/etc/pam.d/greenplum` file is readable by all users:

   ```
   sudo chmod 644 /etc/pam.d/greenplum
   ```

5. Add one or more entries to the `pg_hba.conf` configuration file to enable PAM authentication in WarehousePG. These entries must specify the `pam` *auth-method*. You must also specify the `pamservice=greenplum` *auth-option*. For example:

   ```

   host     <user-name>     <db-name>     <address>     pam     pamservice=greenplum
   ```

6. Reload the WarehousePG configuration:

   ```
   $ gpstop -u
   ```

### Radius Authentication

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service) authentication works by sending an Access Request message of type 'Authenticate Only' to a configured RADIUS server. It includes parameters for user name, password (encrypted), and the Network Access Server (NAS) Identifier. The request is encrypted using the shared secret specified in the `radiussecret` option. The RADIUS server responds with either `Access Accept` or `Access Reject`.

> **Note** RADIUS accounting is not supported.

RADIUS authentication only works if the users already exist in the database.

The RADIUS encryption vector requires SSL to be enabled in order to be cryptographically strong.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

RADIUS Authentication Options

- radiusserver

  The name of the RADIUS server.

- radiussecret

  The RADIUS shared secret.

- radiusport

  The port to connect to on the RADIUS server.

- radiusidentifier

  NAS identifier in RADIUS requests.

Following are sample `pg_hba.conf` entries for RADIUS client authentication:

```
hostssl  all all 0.0.0.0/0 radius radiusserver=servername radiussecret=sharedsecret
```

### Limiting Concurrent Connections

To limit the number of active concurrent sessions to your WarehousePG cluster, you can configure the `max_connections` server configuration parameter. This is a local parameter, meaning that you must set it in the `postgresql.conf` file of the coordinator, the standby coordinator, and each segment instance (primary and mirror). The value of `max_connections` on segments must be 5-10 times the value on the coordinator.

When you set `max_connections`, you must also set the dependent parameter `max_prepared_transactions`. This value must be at least as large as the value of `max_connections` on the coordinator, and segment instances should be set to the same value as the coordinator.

In `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` (including standby coordinator):

```
max_connections=100
max_prepared_transactions=100
```

In `SEGMENT_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` for all segment instances:

```
max_connections=500
max_prepared_transactions=100
```

> **Note** Raising the values of these parameters may cause WarehousePG to request more shared memory. To mitigate this effect, consider decreasing other memory-related parameters such as `gp_cached_segworkers_threshold`.

To change the number of allowed connections:

1. Stop your WarehousePG cluster:

   ```
   $ gpstop
   ```

2. On the coordinator host, edit `$MASTER_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` and change the following two parameters:

   - `max_connections` – the number of active user sessions you want to allow plus the number of `superuser_reserved_connections`.
   - `max_prepared_transactions` – must be greater than or equal to `max_connections`.

3. On each segment instance, edit `SEGMENT_DATA_DIRECTORY/postgresql.conf` and change the following two parameters:

   - `max_connections` – must be 5-10 times the value on the coordinator.
   - `max_prepared_transactions` – must be equal to the value on the coordinator.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Restart your WarehousePG cluster:

```
$ gpstart
```

### Encrypting Client/Server Connections

WarehousePG has native support for SSL connections between the client and the coordinator server. SSL connections prevent third parties from snooping on the packets, and also prevent man-in-the-middle attacks. SSL should be used whenever the client connection goes through an insecure link, and must be used whenever client certificate authentication is used.

> **Note** For information about encrypting data between the `gpfdist` server and WarehousePG segment hosts, see Encrypting gpfdist Connections.

To enable SSL requires that OpenSSL be installed on both the client and the coordinator server systems. WarehousePG can be started with SSL enabled by setting the server configuration parameter `ssl=on` in the coordinator `postgresql.conf`. When starting in SSL mode, the server will look for the files `server.key` (server private key) and `server.crt` (server certificate) in the coordinator data directory. These files must be set up correctly before an SSL-enabled WarehousePG cluster can start.

> **Important** Do not protect the private key with a passphrase. The server does not prompt for a passphrase for the private key, and the database startup fails with an error if one is required.

A self-signed certificate can be used for testing, but a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) should be used in production, so the client can verify the identity of the server. Either a global or local CA can be used. If all the clients are local to the organization, a local CA is recommended. See Creating a Self-Signed Certificate for steps to create a self-signed certificate.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.4 Configuring Database Authorization

Describes how to restrict authorization access to database data at the user level by using roles and permissions.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

### Access Permissions and Roles

WarehousePG manages database access permissions using *roles*. The concept of roles subsumes the concepts of users and groups. A role can be a database user, a group, or both. Roles can own database objects (for example, tables) and can assign privileges on those objects to other roles to control access to the objects. Roles can be members of other roles, thus a member role can inherit the object privileges of its parent role.

Every WarehousePG cluster contains a set of database roles (users and groups). Those roles are separate from the users and groups managed by the operating system on which the server runs. However, for convenience you may want to maintain a relationship between operating system user names and WarehousePG role names, since many of the client applications use the current operating system user name as the default.

In WarehousePG, users log in and connect through the coordinator instance, which verifies their role and access privileges. The coordinator then issues out commands to the segment instances behind the scenes using the currently logged in role.

Roles are defined at the system level, so they are valid for all databases in the system.

To bootstrap the WarehousePG cluster, a freshly initialized system always contains one predefined superuser role (also referred to as the system user). This role will have the same name as the operating system user that initialized the WarehousePG cluster. Customarily, this role is named `gpadmin`. To create more roles you first must connect as this initial role.

### Managing Object Privileges

When an object (table, view, sequence, database, function, language, schema, or tablespace) is created, it is assigned an owner. The owner is normally the role that ran the creation statement. For most kinds of objects, the initial state is that only the owner (or a superuser) can do anything with the object. To allow other roles to use it, privileges must be granted. WarehousePG supports the following privileges for each object type:

| Object Type | Privileges |
|---|---|
| Tables, Views, Sequences | `SELECT`<br>`INSERT`<br>`UPDATE`<br>`DELETE`<br>`RULE`<br>`ALL` |
| External Tables | `SELECT`<br>`RULE`<br>`ALL` |
| Databases | `CONNECT`<br>`CREATE`<br>`TEMPORARY` or `TEMP`<br>`ALL` |
| Functions | `EXECUTE` |
| Procedural Languages | `USAGE` |
| Schemas | `CREATE`<br>`USAGE`<br>`ALL` |

Privileges must be granted for each object individually. For example, granting `ALL` on a database does not grant full access to the objects within that database. It only grants all of the database-level privileges (`CONNECT`, `CREATE`, `TEMPORARY`) to the database itself.

Use the `GRANT` SQL command to give a specified role privileges on an object. For example:

```
=# GRANT INSERT ON mytable TO jsmith;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

To revoke privileges, use the `REVOKE` command. For example:

```
=# REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON mytable FROM jsmith;
```

You can also use the `DROP OWNED` and `REASSIGN OWNED` commands for managing objects owned by deprecated roles. Only an object's owner or a superuser can drop an object or reassign ownership.) For example:

```
=# REASSIGN OWNED BY sally TO bob;
=# DROP OWNED BY visitor;
```

### About Object Access Privileges

WarehousePG access control corresponds roughly to the Orange Book 'C2' level of security, not the 'B1' level. WarehousePG currently supports access privileges at the object level. WarehousePG does not support row-level access or row-level, labeled security.

You can simulate row-level access by using views to restrict the rows that are selected. You can simulate row-level labels by adding an extra column to the table to store sensitivity information, and then using views to control row-level access based on this column. You can then grant roles access to the views rather than the base table. While these workarounds do not provide the same as "B1" level security, they may still be a viable alternative for many organizations.

### About Password Encryption in WarehousePG

The available password encryption methods in WarehousePG are SCRAM-SHA-256, SHA-256, and MD5 (the default).

You can set your chosen encryption method system-wide or on a per-session basis.

#### Using SCRAM-SHA-256 Password Encryption

To use SCRAM-SHA-256 password encryption, you must set a server configuration parameter either at the system or the session level. This section outlines how to use a server parameter to implement SCRAM-SHA-256 encrypted password storage.

Note that in order to use SCRAM-SHA-256 encryption for password storage, the `pg_hba.conf` client authentication method must be set to `scram-sha-256` rather than the default, `md5`.

#### Setting the SCRAM-SHA-256 Password Hash Algorithm System-wide

To set the `password_hash_algorithm` server parameter on a complete WarehousePG cluster (coordinator and its segments):

1. Log in to your WarehousePG instance as a superuser.
2. Execute `gpconfig` with the `password_hash_algorithm` set to SCRAM-SHA-256:

   ```
   $ gpconfig -c password_hash_algorithm -v 'SCRAM-SHA-256'
   ```

3. Verify the setting:

   ```
   $ gpconfig -s
   ```

   You will see:

   ```
   Master value: SCRAM-SHA-256
   Segment value: SCRAM-SHA-256
   ```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Setting the SCRAM-SHA-256 Password Hash Algorithm for an Individual Session

To set the `password_hash_algorithm` server parameter for an individual session:

1. Log in to your WarehousePG instance as a superuser.
2. Set the `password_hash_algorithm` to SCRAM-SHA-256:

```
# set password_hash_algorithm = 'SCRAM-SHA-256'
```

3. Verify the setting:

```
# show password_hash_algorithm;
```

You will see:

```
SCRAM-SHA-256
```

### Using SHA-256 Password Encryption

To use SHA-256 password encryption, you must set a server configuration parameter either at the system or the session level. This section outlines how to use a server parameter to implement SHA-256 encrypted password storage.

Note that in order to use SHA-256 encryption for password storage, the `pg_hba.conf` client authentication method must be set to `password` rather than the default, `md5`. (See Configuring the SSL Client Connection for more details.) **With this authentication setting, the password is transmitted in clear text over the network; it is highly recommend that you set up SSL to encrypt the client server communication channel.**

#### Setting the SHA-256 Password Hash Algorithm System-wide

To set the `password_hash_algorithm` server parameter on a complete WarehousePG cluster (coordinator and its segments):

1. Log in to your WarehousePG instance as a superuser.
2. Execute `gpconfig` with the `password_hash_algorithm` set to SHA-256:

```
$ gpconfig -c password_hash_algorithm -v 'SHA-256'
```

3. Verify the setting:

```
$ gpconfig -s
```

You will see:

```
Master value: SHA-256
Segment value: SHA-256
```

#### Setting the SHA-256 Password Hash Algorithm for an Individual Session

To set the `password_hash_algorithm` server parameter for an individual session:

1. Log in to your WarehousePG instance as a superuser.
2. Set the `password_hash_algorithm` to SHA-256:

```
# set password_hash_algorithm = 'SHA-256'
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Verify the setting:

```
# show password_hash_algorithm;
```

You will see:

```
SHA-256
```

#### Example

An example of how to use and verify the `SHA-256` `password_hash_algorithm` follows:

1. Log in as a super user and verify the password hash algorithm setting:

```
SHOW password_hash_algorithm
 password_hash_algorithm
 -------------------------------
 SHA-256
```

2. Create a new role with password that has login privileges.

```
CREATE ROLE testdb WITH PASSWORD 'testdb12345#' LOGIN;
```

3. Change the client authentication method to allow for storage of SHA-256 encrypted passwords:

   Open the `pg_hba.conf` file on the coordinator and add the following line:

```
host all testdb 0.0.0.0/0 password
```

4. Restart the cluster.

5. Log in to the database as the user just created, `testdb`.

```
psql -U testdb
```

6. Enter the correct password at the prompt.

7. Verify that the password is stored as a SHA-256 hash.

   Password hashes are stored in `pg_authid.rolpasswod`.

8. Log in as the super user.

9. Execute the following query:

```
# SELECT rolpassword FROM pg_authid WHERE rolname = 'testdb';
Rolpassword
-----------
sha256<64 hexadecimal characters>
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Restricting Access by Time

WarehousePG enables the administrator to restrict access to certain times by role. Use the `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` commands to specify time-based constraints.

Access can be restricted by day or by day and time. The constraints are removable without deleting and recreating the role.

Time-based constraints only apply to the role to which they are assigned. If a role is a member of another role that contains a time constraint, the time constraint is not inherited.

Time-based constraints are enforced only during login. The `SET ROLE` and `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands are not affected by any time-based constraints.

Superuser or `CREATEROLE` privileges are required to set time-based constraints for a role. No one can add time-based constraints to a superuser.

There are two ways to add time-based constraints. Use the keyword `DENY` in the `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE` command followed by one of the following.

- A day, and optionally a time, when access is restricted. For example, no access on Wednesdays.
- An interval—that is, a beginning and ending day and optional time—when access is restricted. For example, no access from Wednesday 10 p.m. through Thursday at 8 a.m.

You can specify more than one restriction; for example, no access Wednesdays at any time and no access on Fridays between 3:00 p.m. and 5:00 p.m.

There are two ways to specify a day. Use the word `DAY` followed by either the English term for the weekday, in single quotation marks, or a number between 0 and 6, as shown in the table below.

| English Term | Number |
|---|---|
| DAY 'Sunday' | DAY 0 |
| DAY 'Monday' | DAY 1 |
| DAY 'Tuesday' | DAY 2 |
| DAY 'Wednesday' | DAY 3 |
| DAY 'Thursday' | DAY 4 |
| DAY 'Friday' | DAY 5 |
| DAY 'Saturday' | DAY 6 |

A time of day is specified in either 12- or 24-hour format. The word `TIME` is followed by the specification in single quotation marks. Only hours and minutes are specified and are separated by a colon ( : ). If using a 12-hour format, add `AM` or `PM` at the end. The following examples show various time specifications.

```
TIME '14:00'     # 24-hour time implied
TIME '02:00 PM'  # 12-hour time specified by PM
TIME '02:00'     # 24-hour time implied. This is equivalent to TIME '02:00 AM'.
```

> **Important** Time-based authentication is enforced with the server time. Timezones are disregarded.

To specify an interval of time during which access is denied, use two day/time specifications with the words `BETWEEN` and `AND` , as shown. `DAY` is always required.

```
BETWEEN DAY 'Monday' AND DAY 'Tuesday'

BETWEEN DAY 'Monday' TIME '00:00' AND
        DAY 'Monday' TIME '01:00'

BETWEEN DAY 'Monday' TIME '12:00 AM' AND
        DAY 'Tuesday' TIME '02:00 AM'

BETWEEN DAY 'Monday' TIME '00:00' AND
        DAY 'Tuesday' TIME '02:00'
        DAY 2 TIME '02:00'
```

The last three statements are equivalent.

> **Note** Intervals of days cannot wrap past Saturday.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following syntax is not correct:

```
DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Saturday' AND DAY 'Sunday'
```

The correct specification uses two DENY clauses, as follows:

```
DENY DAY 'Saturday'
DENY DAY 'Sunday'
```

The following examples demonstrate creating a role with time-based constraints and modifying a role to add time-based constraints. Only the statements needed for time-based constraints are shown. For more details on creating and altering roles see the descriptions of `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE` in the *WarehousePG Reference Guide*.

#### Example 1 – Create a New Role with Time-based Constraints

No access is allowed on weekends.

```
CREATE ROLE generaluser
DENY DAY 'Saturday'
DENY DAY 'Sunday'
...
```

#### Example 2 – Alter a Role to Add Time-based Constraints

No access is allowed every night between 2:00 a.m. and 4:00 a.m.

```
ALTER ROLE generaluser
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Monday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Monday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Tuesday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Tuesday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Wednesday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Wednesday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Thursday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Thursday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Friday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Friday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Saturday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Saturday' TIME '04:00'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Sunday' TIME '02:00' AND DAY 'Sunday' TIME '04:00'
  ...
```

#### Excample 3 – Alter a Role to Add Time-based Constraints

No access is allowed Wednesdays or Fridays between 3:00 p.m. and 5:00 p.m.

```
ALTER ROLE generaluser
 DENY DAY 'Wednesday'
 DENY BETWEEN DAY 'Friday' TIME '15:00' AND DAY 'Friday' TIME '17:00'
```

### Dropping a Time-based Restriction

To remove a time-based restriction, use the ALTER ROLE command. Enter the keywords DROP DENY FOR followed by a day/time specification to drop.

```
DROP DENY FOR DAY 'Sunday'
```

Any constraint containing all or part of the conditions in a DROP clause is removed. For example, if an existing constraint denies access on Mondays and Tuesdays, and the DROP clause removes constraints for Mondays, the existing constraint is completely dropped. The DROP clause completely removes all constraints that overlap with the constraint in the drop clause. The overlapping constraints are completely removed even if they contain more restrictions that the restrictions mentioned in the DROP clause.

Example 1 - Remove a Time-based Restriction from a Role

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
ALTER ROLE generaluser
DROP DENY FOR DAY 'Monday'
   ...
```

This statement would remove all constraints that overlap with a Monday constraint for the role `generaluser` in Example 2, even if there are additional constraints.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.5 Security Best Practices

Describes basic security best practices that you should follow to ensure the highest level of system security.

In the default WarehousePG security configuration:

- Only local connections are allowed.
- Basic authentication is configured for the superuser ( `gpadmin` ).
- The superuser is authorized to do anything.
- Only database role passwords are encrypted.

### System User (gpadmin)

Secure and limit access to the `gpadmin` system user.

WarehousePG requires a UNIX user id to install and initialize the WarehousePG cluster. This system user is referred to as `gpadmin` in the WarehousePG documentation. The `gpadmin` user is the default database superuser in WarehousePG, as well as the file system owner of the WarehousePG installation and its underlying data files. The default administrator account is fundamental to the design of WarehousePG. The system cannot run without it, and there is no way to limit the access of the `gpadmin` user id.

The `gpadmin` user can bypass all security features of WarehousePG. Anyone who logs on to a WarehousePG host with this user id can read, alter, or delete any data, including system catalog data and database access rights. Therefore, it is very important to secure the `gpadmin` user id and only allow essential system administrators access to it.

Administrators should only log in to WarehousePG as `gpadmin` when performing certain system maintenance tasks (such as upgrade or expansion).

Database users should never log on as `gpadmin` , and ETL or production workloads should never run as `gpadmin` .

### Superusers

Roles granted the `SUPERUSER` attribute are superusers. Superusers bypass all access privilege checks and resource queues. Only system administrators should be given superuser rights.

See "Altering Role Attributes" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

### Login Users

Assign a distinct role to each user who logs in and set the `LOGIN` attribute.

For logging and auditing purposes, each user who is allowed to log in to WarehousePG should be given their own database role. For applications or web services, consider creating a distinct role for each application or service. See "Creating New Roles (Users)" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Each login role should be assigned to a single, non-default resource queue.

### Groups

Use groups to manage access privileges.

Create a group for each logical grouping of object/access permissions.

Every login user should belong to one or more roles. Use the `GRANT` statement to add group access to a role. Use the `REVOKE` statement to remove group access from a role.

The `LOGIN` attribute should not be set for group roles.

See "Creating Groups (Role Membership)" in the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

### Object Privileges

Only the owner and superusers have full permissions to new objects. Permission must be granted to allow other rules (users or groups) to access objects. Each type of database object has different privileges that may be granted. Use the `GRANT` statement to add a permission to a role and the `REVOKE` statement to remove the permission.

You can change the owner of an object using the `REASSIGN OWNED BY` statement. For example, to prepare to drop a role, change the owner of the objects that belong to the role. Use the `DROP OWNED BY` to drop objects, including dependent objects, that are owned by a role.

Schemas can be used to enforce an additional layer of object permissions checking, but schema permissions do not override object privileges set on objects contained within the schema.

### Operating System Users and File System

> **Note** Commands shown in this section should be run as the root user.

To protect the network from intrusion, system administrators should verify the passwords used within an organization are sufficiently strong. The following recommendations can strengthen a password:

- Minimum password length recommendation: At least 9 characters. MD5 passwords should be 15 characters or longer.
- Mix upper and lower case letters.
- Mix letters and numbers.
- Include non-alphanumeric characters.
- Pick a password you can remember.

The following are recommendations for password cracker software that you can use to determine the strength of a password.

- John The Ripper. A fast and flexible password cracking program. It allows the use of multiple word lists and is capable of brute-force password cracking. It is available online at http://www.openwall.com/john/.
- Crack. Perhaps the most well-known password cracking software, Crack is also very fast, though not as easy to use as John The Ripper. It can be found online at https://dropsafe.crypticide.com/alecm/software/crack/c50-faq.html.

The security of the entire system depends on the strength of the root password. This password should be at least 12 characters long and include a mix of capitalized letters, lowercase letters, special characters, and numbers. It should not be based on any dictionary word.

Password expiration parameters should be configured. The following commands must be run as `root` or using `sudo`.

Ensure the following line exists within the file `/etc/libuser.conf` under the `[import]` section.

```
login_defs = /etc/login.defs
```

Ensure no lines in the `[userdefaults]` section begin with the following text, as these words override settings from `/etc/login.defs`:

- `LU_SHADOWMAX`
- `LU_SHADOWMIN`
- `LU_SHADOWWARNING`

Ensure the following command produces no output. Any accounts listed by running this command should be locked.

```
grep "^+:" /etc/passwd /etc/shadow /etc/group
```

> **Caution** Change your passwords after initial setup.

```
cd /etc
chown root:root passwd shadow group gshadow
chmod 644 passwd group
chmod 400 shadow gshadow
```

Find all the files that are world-writable and that do not have their sticky bits set.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
find / -xdev -type d \( -perm -0002 -a ! -perm -1000 \) -print
```

Set the sticky bit ( `# chmod +t {dir}` ) for all the directories that result from running the previous command.

Find all the files that are world-writable and fix each file listed.

```
find / -xdev -type f -perm -0002 -print
```

Set the right permissions ( `# chmod o-w {file}` ) for all the files generated by running the aforementioned command.

Find all the files that do not belong to a valid user or group and either assign an owner or remove the file, as appropriate.

```
find / -xdev \( -nouser -o -nogroup \) -print
```

Find all the directories that are world-writable and ensure they are owned by either root or a system account (assuming only system accounts have a User ID lower than 500). If the command generates any output, verify the assignment is correct or reassign it to root.

```
find / -xdev -type d -perm -0002 -uid +500 -print
```

Authentication settings such as password quality, password expiration policy, password reuse, password retry attempts, and more can be configured using the Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) framework. PAM looks in the directory `/etc/pam.d` for application-specific configuration information. Running `authconfig` or `system-config-authentication` will re-write the PAM configuration files, destroying any manually made changes and replacing them with system defaults.

The default `pam_cracklib` PAM module provides strength checking for passwords. To configure `pam_cracklib` to require at least one uppercase character, lowercase character, digit, and special character, as recommended by the U.S. Department of Defense guidelines, edit the file `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the following parameters in the line corresponding to password requisite `pam_cracklib.so try_first_pass` .

```
retry=3:
dcredit=-1. Require at least one digit
ucredit=-1. Require at least one upper case character
ocredit=-1. Require at least one special character
lcredit=-1. Require at least one lower case character
minlen=14. Require a minimum password length of 14.
```

For example:

```
password required pam_cracklib.so try_first_pass retry=3\minlen=14 dcredit=-1 ucredit=-1 ocredit=-1 lcredit=-1
```

These parameters can be set to reflect your security policy requirements. Note that the password restrictions are not applicable to the root password.

The `pam_tally2` PAM module provides the capability to lock out user accounts after a specified number of failed login attempts. To enforce password lockout, edit the file `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the following lines:

- The first of the auth lines should include:

  ```
  auth required pam_tally2.so deny=5 onerr=fail unlock_time=900
  ```

- The first of the account lines should include:

  ```
  account required pam_tally2.so
  ```

Here, the deny parameter is set to limit the number of retries to 5 and the `unlock_time` has been set to 900 seconds to keep the account locked for 900 seconds before it is unlocked. These parameters may be configured appropriately to reflect your security policy requirements. A locked account can be manually unlocked using the `pam_tally2` utility:

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

```
/sbin/pam_tally2 --user {username} --reset
```

You can use PAM to limit the reuse of recent passwords. The remember option for the `pam_ unix` module can be set to remember the recent passwords and prevent their reuse. To accomplish this, edit the appropriate line in `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` to include the remember option.

For example:

```
password sufficient pam_unix.so [ … existing_options …]
remember=5
```

You can set the number of previous passwords to remember to appropriately reflect your security policy requirements.

```
cd /etc
chown root:root passwd shadow group gshadow
chmod 644 passwd group
chmod 400 shadow gshadow
```

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.6 Encrypting Data and Database Connections

This topic describes how to encrypt data at rest in the database or in transit over the network, to protect from eavesdroppers or man-in-the-middle attacks.

- Connections between clients and the coordinator database can be encrypted with SSL. This is enabled with the `ssl` server configuration parameter, which is `off` by default. Setting the `ssl` parameter to `on` allows client communications with the coordinator to be encrypted. The coordinator database must be set up for SSL. See OpenSSL Configuration for more about encrypting client connections with SSL.
- WarehousePG allows SSL encryption of data in transit between the WarehousePG parallel file distribution server, `gpfdist`, and segment hosts. See Encrypting gpfdist Connections for more information.
- The `pgcrypto` module of encryption/decryption functions protects data at rest in the database. Encryption at the column level protects sensitive information, such as social security numbers or credit card numbers. See Encrypting Data at Rest with pgcrypto for more information.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

### Encrypting gpfdist Connections

The `gpfdists` protocol is a secure version of the `gpfdist` protocol that securely identifies the file server and the WarehousePG and encrypts the communications between them. Using `gpfdists` protects against eavesdropping and man-in-the-middle attacks.

The `gpfdists` protocol implements client/server SSL security with the following notable features:

- Client certificates are required.
- Multilingual certificates are not supported.
- A Certificate Revocation List (CRL) is not supported.
- A minimum TLS version of 1.2 is required.
- SSL renegotiation is supported.
- The SSL ignore host mismatch parameter is set to false.
- Private keys containing a passphrase are not supported for the `gpfdist` file server (server.key) or for the WarehousePG (client.key).
- It is the user's responsibility to issue certificates that are appropriate for the operating system in use. Generally, converting certificates to the required format is supported, for example using the SSL Converter at https://www.sslshopper.com/ssl-converter.html.

A `gpfdist` server started with the `--ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdists` protocol. A `gpfdist` server started without the `--ssl` option can only communicate with the `gpfdist` protocol. For more detail about `gpfdist` refer to the *WarehousePG Administrator Guide*.

There are two ways to enable the `gpfdists` protocol:

- Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option and then use the `gpfdists` protocol in the `LOCATION` clause of a `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement.
- Use a YAML control file with the SSL option set to true and run `gpload`. Running `gpload` starts the `gpfdist` server with the `--ssl` option and then uses the `gpfdists` protocol.

When using gpfdists, the following client certificates must be located in the `$PGDATA/gpfdists` directory on each segment:

- The client certificate file, `client.crt`
- The client private key file, `client.key`
- The trusted certificate authorities, `root.crt`

> **Important** Do not protect the private key with a passphrase. The server does not prompt for a passphrase for the private key, and loading data fails with an error if one is required.

When using `gpload` with SSL you specify the location of the server certificates in the YAML control file. When using `gpfdist` with SSL, you specify the location of the server certificates with the --ssl option.

The following example shows how to securely load data into an external table. The example creates a readable external table named `ext_expenses` from all files with the `txt` extension, using the `gpfdists` protocol. The files are formatted with a pipe ( `|` ) as the column delimiter and an empty space as null.

1. Run `gpfdist` with the `--ssl` option on the segment hosts.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Log into the database and run the following command:

```
=# CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE ext_expenses
   ( name text, date date, amount float4, category text, desc1 text )
LOCATION ('gpfdists://etlhost-1:8081/*.txt', 'gpfdists://etlhost-2:8082/*.txt')
FORMAT 'TEXT' ( DELIMITER '|' NULL ' ') ;
```

### Encrypting Data at Rest with pgcrypto

The pgcrypto module for WarehousePG provides functions for encrypting data at rest in the database. Administrators can encrypt columns with sensitive information, such as social security numbers or credit card numbers, to provide an extra layer of protection. Database data stored in encrypted form cannot be read by users who do not have the encryption key, and the data cannot be read directly from disk.

pgcrypto is installed by default when you install WarehousePG. You must explicitly enable pgcrypto in each database in which you want to use the module.

pgcrypto allows PGP encryption using symmetric and asymmetric encryption. Symmetric encryption encrypts and decrypts data using the same key and is faster than asymmetric encryption. It is the preferred method in an environment where exchanging secret keys is not an issue. With asymmetric encryption, a public key is used to encrypt data and a private key is used to decrypt data. This is slower then symmetric encryption and it requires a stronger key.

Using pgcrypto always comes at the cost of performance and maintainability. It is important to use encryption only with the data that requires it. Also, keep in mind that you cannot search encrypted data by indexing the data.

Before you implement in-database encryption, consider the following PGP limitations.

- No support for signing. That also means that it is not checked whether the encryption sub-key belongs to the coordinator key.
- No support for encryption key as coordinator key. This practice is generally discouraged, so this limitation should not be a problem.
- No support for several subkeys. This may seem like a problem, as this is common practice. On the other hand, you should not use your regular GPG/PGP keys with pgcrypto, but create new ones, as the usage scenario is rather different.

WarehousePG is compiled with zlib by default; this allows PGP encryption functions to compress data before encrypting. When compiled with OpenSSL, more algorithms will be available.

Because pgcrypto functions run inside the database server, the data and passwords move between pgcrypto and the client application in clear-text. For optimal security, you should connect locally or use SSL connections and you should trust both the system and database administrators.

pgcrypto configures itself according to the findings of the main PostgreSQL configure script.

When compiled with `zlib`, pgcrypto encryption functions are able to compress data before encrypting.

Pgcrypto has various levels of encryption ranging from basic to advanced built-in functions. The following table shows the supported encryption algorithms.

| Value Functionality | Built-in | With OpenSSL |
|---|---|---|
| MD5 | yes | yes |
| SHA1 | yes | yes |
| SHA224/256/384/512 | yes | yes [^1] |
| Other digest algorithms | no | yes [^2] |
| Blowfish | yes | yes |
| AES | yes | yes [^3] |
| DES/3DES/CAST5 | no | yes |
| Raw Encryption | yes | yes |
| PGP Symmetric-Key | yes | yes |
| PGP Public Key | yes | yes |

[^1]: SHA2 algorithms were added to OpenSSL in version 0.9.8. For older versions, pgcrypto will use built-in code.

[^2]: Any digest algorithm OpenSSL supports is automatically picked up. This is not possible with ciphers, which need to be supported explicitly.

[^3]: AES is included in OpenSSL since version 0.9.7. For older versions, pgcrypto will use built-in code.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### Creating PGP Keys

To use PGP asymmetric encryption in WarehousePG, you must first create public and private keys and install them.

This section assumes you are installing WarehousePG on a Linux machine with the Gnu Privacy Guard ( `gpg` ) command line tool. Use the latest version of GPG to create keys. Download and install Gnu Privacy Guard (GPG) for your operating system from https://www.gnupg.org/download/. On the GnuPG website you will find installers for popular Linux distributions and links for Windows and Mac OS X installers.

1. As root, run the following command and choose option 1 from the menu:

```
# gpg --gen-key
gpg (GnuPG) 2.0.14; Copyright (C) 2009 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.

gpg: directory '/root/.gnupg' created
gpg: new configuration file '/root/.gnupg/gpg.conf' created
gpg: WARNING: options in '/root/.gnupg/gpg.conf' are not yet active during this run
gpg: keyring '/root/.gnupg/secring.gpg' created
gpg: keyring '/root/.gnupg/pubring.gpg' created
Please select what kind of key you want:
 (1) RSA and RSA (default)
 (2) DSA and Elgamal
 (3) DSA (sign only)
 (4) RSA (sign only)
Your selection? **1**
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Respond to the prompts and follow the instructions, as shown in this example:

```
RSA keys may be between 1024 and 4096 bits long.
What keysize do you want? (2048) Press enter to accept default key size
Requested keysize is 2048 bits
Please specify how long the key should be valid.
 0 = key does not expire
 <n> = key expires in n days
 <n>w = key expires in n weeks
 <n>m = key expires in n months
 <n>y = key expires in n years
 Key is valid for? (0) **365**
Key expires at Wed 13 Jan 2016 10:35:39 AM PST
Is this correct? (y/N) **y**

GnuPG needs to construct a user ID to identify your key.

Real name: **John Doe**
Email address: **jdoe@email.com**
Comment:
You selected this USER-ID:
 "John Doe <jdoe@email.com>"

Change (N)ame, (C)omment, (E)mail or (O)kay/(Q)uit? **O**
You need a Passphrase to protect your secret key.
*\(For this demo the passphrase is blank.\)*
can't connect to '/root/.gnupg/S.gpg-agent': No such file or directory
You don't want a passphrase - this is probably a *bad* idea!
I will do it anyway.  You can change your passphrase at any time,
using this program with the option "--edit-key".

We need to generate a lot of random bytes. It is a good idea to perform
some other action (type on the keyboard, move the mouse, utilize the
disks) during the prime generation; this gives the random number
generator a better chance to gain enough entropy.
We need to generate a lot of random bytes. It is a good idea to perform
some other action (type on the keyboard, move the mouse, utilize the
disks) during the prime generation; this gives the random number
generator a better chance to gain enough entropy.
gpg: /root/.gnupg/trustdb.gpg: trustdb created
gpg: key 2027CC30 marked as ultimately trusted
public and secret key created and signed.

gpg:  checking the trustdbgpg:
      3 marginal(s) needed, 1 complete(s) needed, PGP trust model
gpg:  depth: 0  valid:   1  signed:   0  trust: 0-, 0q, 0n, 0m, 0f, 1u
gpg:  next trustdb check due at 2016-01-13
pub   2048R/2027CC30 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
      Key fingerprint = 7EDA 6AD0 F5E0 400F 4D45   3259 077D 725E 2027 CC30
uid                  John Doe <jdoe@email.com>
sub   2048R/4FD2EFBB 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
```

3. List the PGP keys by entering the following command:

```
gpg --list-secret-keys
/root/.gnupg/secring.gpg
------------------------
sec   2048R/2027CC30 2015-01-13 [expires: 2016-01-13]
uid                  John Doe <jdoe@email.com>
ssb   2048R/4FD2EFBB 2015-01-13
```

2027CC30 is the public key and will be used to *encrypt* data in the database. 4FD2EFBB is the private (secret) key and will be used to *decrypt* data.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Export the keys using the following commands:

```
# gpg -a --export 4FD2EFBB > public.key
# gpg -a --export-secret-keys 2027CC30 > secret.key
```

See the pgcrypto documentation for more information about PGP encryption functions.

#### Encrypting Data in Tables using PGP

This section shows how to encrypt data inserted into a column using the PGP keys you generated.

1. Dump the contents of the `public.key` file and then copy it to the clipboard:

```
# cat public.key
-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
vG5rJAe8PuYDSJCJ74I6w7SOH3RiRIc7IfL6xYddV42l3ctd44bl8/i71hq2UyN2
/Hbsjii2ymg7ttw3jsWAx2gP9nssDgoy8QDy/o9nNqC8EGlig96ZFnFnE6Pwbhn+
ic8MD0lK5/GAlR6Hc0ZIHf8KEcavruQlikjnABEBAAG0HHRlc3Qga2V5IDx0ZXN0
a2V5QGVtYWlsLmNvbT6JAT4EEwECACgFAlS1Zf0CGwMFCQHhM4AGCwkIBwMCBhUI
AgkKCwQWAgMBAh4BAheAAAoJEAd9cl4gJ8wwbfwH/3VyVsPkQl1owRJNxvXGt1bY
7BfrvU52yk+PPZYoes9UpdL3CMRk8gAM9bx5Sk08q2UXSZLC6fFOpEW4uWgmGYf8
JRoC3ooezTkmCBW8I1bU0qGetzVxopdXLuPGCE7hVWQe9HcSntiTLxGov1mJAwO7
TAoccXLbyuZh9Rf5vLoQdKzcCyOHh5IqXaQOT100TeFeEpb9TIiwcntg3WCSU5P0
DGoUAOanjDZ3KE8Qp7V74fhG1EZVzHb8FajR62CXSHFKqpBgiNxnTOk45NbXADn4
eTUXPSnwPi46qoAp9UQogsfGyB1XDOTB2UOqhutAMECaM7VtePv79i0Z/NfnBe5
AQ0EVLVl/QEIANabFdQ+8QMCADOipM1bF/JrQt3zUoc4BTqICaxdyzAfz0tUSf/7
Zro2us99GlARqLWd8EqJcl/xmfcJiZyUam6ZAzzFXCgnH5Y1sdtMTJZdLp5WeOjw
gCWG/ZLu4wzxOFFzDkiPv9RDw6e5MNLtJrSp4hS5o2apKdbO4Ex83O4mJYnav/rE
iDDCWU4T0lhv3hSKCpke6LcwsX+7liozp+aNmP0Ypwfi4hR3UUMP70+V1beFqW2J
bVLz3lLLouHRgpCzla+PzzbEKs16jq77vG9kqZTCIzXoWaLljuitRlfJkO3vQ9hO
v/8yAnkcAmowZrIBlyFg2KBzhunYmN2YvkUAEQEAAYkBJQQYAQIADwUCVLVl/QIb
DAUJAeEzgAAKCRAHfXJeICfMMOHYCACFhInZA9uAM3TC44l+MrgMUJ3rW9izrO48
WrdTsxR8WkSNbIxJoWnYxYuLyPb/shc9k65huw2SSDkj//0fRrI61FPHQNPSvz62
WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8Hkk8qb5x/
HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlGWE8pvgEx
/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojDyC65KJci
Pv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=XZ8J
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

2. Create a table called `userssn` and insert some sensitive data, social security numbers for Bob and Alice, in this example. Paste the public.key contents after "dearmor(".

```
CREATE TABLE userssn( ssn_id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
    username varchar(100), ssn bytea);

INSERT INTO userssn(username, ssn)
SELECT robotccs.username, pgp_pub_encrypt(robotccs.ssn, keys.pubkey) AS ssn
FROM (
        VALUES ('Alice', '123-45-6788'), ('Bob', '123-45-6799'))
            AS robotccs(username, ssn)
CROSS JOIN  (SELECT  dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
vG5rJAe8PuYDSJCJ74I6w7SOH3RiRIc7IfL6xYddV42l3ctd44bl8/i71hq2UyN2
/Hbsjii2ymg7ttw3jsWAx2gP9nssDgoy8QDy/o9nNqC8EGlig96ZFnFnE6Pwbhn+
ic8MD0lK5/GAlR6Hc0ZIHf8KEcavruQlikjnABEBAAG0HHRlc3Qga2V5IDx0ZXN0
a2V5QGVtYWlsLmNvbT6JAT4EEwECACgFAlS1Zf0CGwMFCQHhM4AGCwkIBwMCBhUI
AgkKCwQWAgMBAh4BAheAAAoJEAd9cl4gJ8wwbfwH/3VyVsPkQl1owRJNxvXGt1bY
7BfrvU52yk+PPZYoes9UpdL3CMRk8gAM9bx5Sk08q2UXSZLC6fFOpEW4uWgmGYf8
JRoC3ooezTkmCBW8I1bU0qGetzVxopdXLuPGCE7hVWQe9HcSntiTLxGov1mJAwO7
TAoccXLbyuZh9Rf5vLoQdKzcCyOHh5IqXaQOT100TeFeEpb9TIiwcntg3WCSU5P0
DGoUAOanjDZ3KE8Qp7V74fhG1EZVzHb8FajR62CXSHFKqpBgiNxnTOk45NbXADn4
eTUXPSnwPi46qoAp9UQogsfGyB1XDOTB2UOqhutAMECaM7VtePv79i0Z/NfnBe5
AQ0EVLVl/QEIANabFdQ+8QMCADOipM1bF/JrQt3zUoc4BTqICaxdyzAfz0tUSf/7
Zro2us99GlARqLWd8EqJcl/xmfcJiZyUam6ZAzzFXCgnH5Y1sdtMTJZdLp5WeOjw
gCWG/ZLu4wzxOFFzDkiPv9RDw6e5MNLtJrSp4hS5o2apKdbO4Ex83O4mJYnav/rE
iDDCWU4T0lhv3hSKCpke6LcwsX+7liozp+aNmP0Ypwfi4hR3UUMP70+V1beFqW2J
bVLz3lLLouHRgpCzla+PzzbEKs16jq77vG9kqZTCIzXoWaLljuitRlfJkO3vQ9hO
v/8yAnkcAmowZrIBlyFg2KBzhunYmN2YvkUAEQEAAYkBJQQYAQIADwUCVLVl/QIb
DAUJAeEzgAAKCRAHfXJeICfMMOHYCACFhInZA9uAM3TC44l+MrgMUJ3rW9izrO48
WrdTsxR8WkSNbIxJoWnYxYuLyPb/shc9k65huw2SSDkj//0fRrI61FPHQNPSvz62
WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8Hkk8qb5x/
HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlGWE8pvgEx
/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojDyC65KJci
Pv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=XZ8J
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----' AS pubkey) AS keys;
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

3. Verify that the `ssn` column is encrypted.

```
test_db=# select * from userssn;
ssn_id   | 1
username | Alice
ssn      | \301\300L\003\235M%_O\322\357\273\001\010\000\272\227\010\341\216\360\217C\020\261)_\367
[\227\034\313:C\354d<\337\006Q\351('\2330\031lX\263Qf\341\262\200\3015\235\036AK\242fL+\315g\322
7u\270*\304\361\355\220\021\330"\200%\264\274}R\213\377\363\235\366\030\023)\364!\331\303\237t\277=
f \015\004\242\231\263\225%\032\271a\001\035\277\021\375X\232\304\305/\340\334\0131\325\344[~\362\0
37-\251\336\303\340\377_\011\275\301/MY\334\343\245\244\372y\257S\374\230\346\277\373W\346\230\276\
017fi\226Q\307\012\326\3646\000\326\005:E\364W\252=zz\010(:\343Y\237\257iqU\0326\350=v0\362\327\350\
315G^\027:K_9\254\362\354\215<\001\304\357\331\355\323,\302\213Fe\265\315\232\367\254\245%(\\\373
4\254\230\331\356\006B\257\333\326H\022\013\353\216F?\023\220\370\035vH5/\227\344b\322\227\026\362=\
42\033\322<\001}\243\224;)\030zqX\214\340\221\035\275U\345\327\214\032\351\223c\2442\345\304K\016\
011\214\307\227\237\270\026'R\205\205a~1\263\236[\037C\260\031\205\374\245\317\033k|\366\253\037
---------+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
ssn_id   | 2
username | Bob
ssn      | \301\300L\003\235M%_O\322\357\273\001\007\377t>\345\343,\200\256\272\300\012\033M4\265\032L
L[v\262k\244\2435\264\232B\357\370d9\375\011\002\327\235<\246\210b\030\012\337@\226Z\361\246\032\00
7'\012c\353]\355d7\360T\335\314\367\370;X\371\350*\231\212\260B\010#RQ0\223\253c7\0132b\355\242\233\34
1\000\370\370\366\013\022\357\005i\202~\005\\z\301o\012\230Z\014\362\244\324&\243g\351\362\325\375
\213\032\226$\2751\256XR\346k\266\030\234\267\201vUh\004\250\337A\231\223u\247\366/i\022\275\276\350\2
20\316\306|\203+\010\261;\232\254tp\255\243\261\373Rq;\316w\357\006\207\374U\333\365\365\245hg\031\005
\322\347ea\220\015l\212g\337\264\336b\263\004\311\210.4\340G+\221\274D\035\375\2216\241'\346a0\273wE\2
12\342y^\202\262|A7\202t\240\333p\345G\373\253\243oCO\011\360\247\211\014\024{\272\271\322<\001\267
\347\240\005\213\0078\036\210\307$\317\322\311\222\035\354\006<\266\264\004\376\251q\256\220(+\030\
3270\013c\327\272\212%\363\033\252\322\337\354\276\225\232\201\212^\304\210\2269@\3230\370{
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Extract the public.key ID from the database:

```
SELECT pgp_key_id(dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

mQENBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
vG5rJAe8PuYDSJCJ74I6w7SOH3RiRIc7IfL6xYddV42l3ctd44bl8/i71hq2UyN2
/Hbsjii2ymg7ttw3jsWAx2gP9nssDgoy8QDy/o9nNqC8EGlig96ZFnFnE6Pwbhn+
ic8MD0lK5/GAlR6Hc0ZIHf8KEcavruQlikjnABEBAAG0HHRlc3Qga2V5IDx0ZXN0
a2V5QGVtYWlsLmNvbT4JAT4EEwECACgFAlS1Zf0CGwMFCQHhM4AGCwkIBwMCBhUI
AgkKCwQWAgMBAh4BAheAAAoJEAd9cl4gJ8wwbfwH/3VyVsPkQl1owRJNxvXGt1bY
7BfrvU52yk+PPZYoes9UpdL3CMRk8gAM9bx5Sk08q2UXSZLC6fFOpEW4uWgmGYf8
JRoC3ooezTkmCBW8I1bU0qGetzVxopdXLuPGCE7hVWQe9HcSntiTLxGov1mJAwO7
TAoccXLbyuZh9Rf5vLoQdKzcCyOHh5IqXaQOT100TeFeEpb9TIiwcntg3WCSU5P0
DGoUAOanjDZ3KE8Qp7V74fhG1EZVzHb8FajR62CXSHFKqpBgiNxnTOk45NbXADn4
eTUXPSnwPi46qoAp9UQogsfGyB1XDOTB2UOqhutAMECaM7VtpePv79i0Z/NfnBe5
AQ0EVLVl/QEIANabFdQ+8QMCADOipM1bF/JrQt3zUoc4BTqICaxdyzAfz0tUSf/7
Zro2us99GlARqLWd8EqJcl/xmfcJiZyUam6ZAzzFXCgnH5Y1sdtMTJZdLp5WeOjw
gCWG/ZLu4wzxOFFzDkiPv9RDw6e5MNLtJrSp4hS5o2apKdbO4Ex83O4mJYnav/rE
iDDCWU4T0lhv3hSKCpke6LcwsX+7liozp+aNmP0Ypwfi4hR3UUMP70+V1beFqW2J
bVLz3lLLouHRgpCzla+PzzbEKs16jq77vG9kqZTCIzXoWaLljuitRlfJkO3vQ9hO
v/8yAnkcAmowZrIBlyFg2KBzhunYmN2YvkUAEQEAAYkBJQQYAQIADwUCVLVl/QIb
DAUJAeEzgAAKCRAHfXJeICfMMOHYCACFhInZA9uAM3TC44l+MrgMUJ3rW9izrO48
WrdTsxR8WkSNbIxJoWnYxYuLyPb/shc9k65huw2SSDkj//0fRrI61FPHQNPSvz62
WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8Hkk8qb5x/
HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlGWE8pvgEx
/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojDyC65KJci
Pv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=XZ8J
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----'));

pgp_key_id | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
```

This shows that the PGP key ID used to encrypt the `ssn` column is 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB. It is recommended to perform this step whenever a new key is created and then store the ID for tracking.

You can use this key to see which key pair was used to encrypt the data:

```
SELECT username, pgp_key_id(ssn) As key_used
FROM userssn;
username | Bob
key_used | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
---------+-----------------
username | Alice
key_used | 9D4D255F4FD2EFBB
```

> **Note** Different keys may have the same ID. This is rare, but is a normal event. The client application should try to decrypt with each one to see which fits — like handling `ANYKEY`. See pgp_key_id() in the pgcrypto documentation.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Decrypt the data using the private key.

```
SELECT username, pgp_pub_decrypt(ssn, keys.privkey)
                AS decrypted_ssn FROM userssn
                CROSS JOIN
                (SELECT dearmor('-----BEGIN PGP PRIVATE KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v2.0.14 (GNU/Linux)

lQOYBFS1Zf0BCADNw8Qvk1V1C36Kfcwd3Kpm/dijPfRyyEwB6PqKyA05jtWiXZTh
2His1ojSP6LI0cSkIqMU9LAlncecZhRIhBhuVgKlGSgd9texg2nnSL9Admqik/yX
R5syVKG+qcdWuvyZg9oOOmeyjhc3n+kkbRTEMuM3flbMs8shOwzMvstCUVmuHU/V
vG5rJAe8PuYDSJCJ74I6w7SOH3RiRIc7IfL6xYddV42l3ctd44bl8/i71hq2UyN2
/Hbsjii2ymg7ttw3jsWAx2gP9nssDgoy8QDy/o9nNqC8EGlig96ZFnFnE6Pwbhn+
ic8MD0lK5/GAlR6Hc0ZIHf8KEcavruQlikjnABEBAAEAB/wNfjjvP1brRfjjIm/j
XwUNm+sI4v2Ur7qZC94VTukPGf67lvqcYZJuqXxvZrZ8bl6mvl65xEUiZYy7BNA8
fe0PaM4Wy+Xr94Cz2bPbWgawnRNN3GAQy4rlBTrvqQWy+kmpbd87iTjwZidZNNmx
02iSzraq41Rt0Zx21Jh4rkpF67ftmzOH0vlrS0bWOvHUeMY7tCwmdPe9HbQeDlPr
n9CllUqBn4/acTtCClWAjREZn0zXAsNixtTIPC1V+9nO9YmecMkVwNfIPkIhymAM
OPFnuZ/Dz1rCRHjNHb5j6ZyUM5zDqUVnnezktxqrOENSxm0gfMGcpxHQogUMzb7c
6UyBBADSCXHPfo/VPVtMm5p1yGrNOR2jR2rUj9+poZzD2gjkt5G/xIKRlkB4uoQl
emu27wr9dVEX7ms0nvDq58iutbQ4d0JIDlcHMeSRQZluErblB75Vj3HtImblPjpn
4Jx6SWRXPUJPGXGI87u0UoBH0Lwij7M2PW7l1ao+MLEA9jAjQwQA+sr9BKPL4Ya2
r5nE72gsbCCLowkC0rdldf1RGtobwYDMpmYZhOaRKjkOTMG6rCXJxrf6LqiN8w/L
/gNziTmch35MCq/MZzA/bN4VMPyeIlwzxVZkJLsQ7yyqX/A7ac7B7DH0KfXciEXW
MSOAJhMmklW1Q1RRNw3cnYi8w3q7X40EAL/w54FVvvPqp3+sCd86SAAapM4UO2R3
tIsuNVemMWdgNXwvK8AJsz7VreVU5yZ4B8hvCuQj1C7geaN/LXhiT8foRsJC5o71
Bf+iHC/VNEv4k4uDb4lOgnHJYYyifB1wC+nn/EnXCZYQINMia1a4M6Vqc/RIfTH4
nwkZt/89LsAiR/20HHRlc3Qga2V5IDx0ZXN0a2V5QGVtYWlsLmNvbT6JAT4EEwEC
ACgFAlS1Zf0CGwMFCQHhM4AGCwkIBwMCBhUIAgkKCwQWAgMBAh4BAheAAAoJEAd9
cl4gJ8wwbfwH/3VyVsPkQl1owRJNxvXGt1bY7BfrvU52yk+PPZYoes9UpdL3CMRk
8gAM9bx5Sk08q2UXSZLC6fFOpEW4uWgmGYf8JRoC3ooezTkmCBW8I1bU0qGetzVx
opdXLuPGCE7hVWQe9HcSntiTLxGov1mJAwO7TAoccXLbyuZh9Rf5vLoQdKzcCyOH
h5IqXaQOT100TeFeEpb9TIiwcntg3WCSU5P0DGoUAOanjDZ3KE8Qp7V74fhG1EZV
zHb8FajR62CXSHFKqpBgiNxnTOk45NbXADn4eTUXPSnwPi46qoAp9UQogsfGyB1X
DOTB2UOqhutAMECaM7VtpePv79i0Z/NfnBedA5gEVLVl/QEIANabFdQ+8QMCADOi
pM1bF/JrQt3zUoc4BTqICaxdyzAfz0tUSf/7Zro2us99GlARqLWd8EqJcl/xmfcJ
iZyUam6ZAzzFXCgnH5Y1sdtMTJZdLp5WeOjwgCWG/ZLu4wzxOFFzDkiPv9RDw6e5
MNLtJrSp4hS5o2apKdbO4Ex83O4mJYnav/rEiDDCWU4T0lhv3hSKCpke6LcwsX+7
liozp+aNmP0Ypwfi4hR3UUMP70+V1beFqW2JbVLz3lLLouHRgpCzla+PzzbEKs16
jq77vG9kqZTCIzXoWaLljuitRlfJkO3vQ9hOv/8yAnkcAmowZrIBlyFg2KBzhunY
mN2YvkUAEQEAAQAH/A7r4hDrnmzX3QU6FAzePlRB7niJtE2IEN8AufF05Q2PzKU/
c1S72WjtqMAIAgYasDkOhfhcxanTneGuFVYggKT3eSDm1RFKpRjX22m0zKdwy67B
Mu95V2Oklul6OCm8dO6+2fmkGxGqc4ZsKy+jQxtxK3HG9YxMC0dvA2v2C5N4TWi3
Utc7zh//k6IbmaLd7F1d7DXt7Hn2Qsmo8I1rtgPE8grDToomTnRUodToyejEqKyI
ORwsp8n8g2CSFaXSrEyU6HbFYXSxZealhQJGYLFOZdR0MzVtZQCn/7n+IHjupndC
Nd2a8DVx3yQS3dAmvLzhFacZdjXi31wvj0moFOkEAOCz1E63SKNNksniQ11lRMJp
gaov6Ux/zGLMstwTzNouI+Kr8/db0GlSAy1Z3UoAB4tFQXEApoX9A4AJ2KqQjqOX
cZVULenfDZaxrbb9Lid7ZnTDXKVyGTWDF7ZHavHJ4981mCW17lU11zHBB9xMlx6p
dhFvb0gdy0jSLaFMFr/JBAD0fz3RrhP7e6Xll2zdBqGthjC5S/IoKwwBgw6ri2yx
LoxqBr2pl9PotJJ/JUMPhD/LxuTcOZtYjy8PKgm5jhnBDq3Ss0kNKAY1f5EkZG9a
6I4iAX/NekqSyF+OgBfC9aCgS5RG8hYoOCbp8na5R3bgiuS8IzmVmm5OhZ4MDEwg
nQP7BzmR0p5BahpZ8r3Ada7FcK+0ZLLRdLmOYF/yUrZ53SoYCZRzU/GmtQ7LkXBh
Gjqied9Bs1MHdNUolq7GaexcjZmOWHEf6w9+9M4+vxtQq1nkIWqtaphewEmd5/nf
EP3sIY0EAE3mmiLmHLqBju+UJKMNwFNeyMTqgcg50ISH8J9FRIkBJQQYAQIADwUC
VLVl/QIbDAUJAeEzgAAKCRAHfXJeICfMMOHYCACFhInZA9uAM3TC44l+MrgMUJ3r
W9izrO48WrdTsxR8WkSNbIxJoWnYxYuLyPb/shc9k65huw2SSDkj//0fRrI61FPH
QNPSvz62WH+N2lasoUaoJjb2kQGhLOnFbJuevkyBylRz+hI/+8rJKcZOjQkmmK8H
kk8qb5x/HMUc55H0g2qQAY0BpnJHgOOQ45Q6pk3G2/7Dbek5WJ6K1wUrFy51sNlG
WE8pvgEx/UUZB+dYqCwtvX0nnBu1KNCmk2AkEcFK3YoliCxomdOxhFOv9AKjjojD
yC65KJciPv2MikPS2fKOAg1R3LpMa8zDEtl4w3vckPQNrQNnYuUtfj6ZoCxv
=fa+6
-----END PGP PRIVATE KEY BLOCK-----') AS privkey) AS keys;

username | decrypted_ssn
----------+---------------
 Alice    | 123-45-6788
 Bob      | 123-45-6799
(2 rows)
```

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

If you created a key with passphrase, you may have to enter it here. However for the purpose of this example, the passphrase is blank.

#### Key Management

Whether you are using symmetric (single private key) or asymmetric (public and private key) cryptography, it is important to store the master or private key securely. There are many options for storing encryption keys, for example, on a file system, key vault, encrypted USB, trusted platform module (TPM), or hardware security module (HSM).

Consider the following questions when planning for key management:

- Where will the keys be stored?
- When should keys expire?
- How are keys protected?
- How are keys accessed?
- How can keys be recovered and revoked?

The Open Web Application Security Project (OWASP) provides a very comprehensive guide to securing encryption keys.

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.

## 9.7 Securing the Database

Introduces WarehousePG security topics.

The intent of security configuration is to configure the WarehousePG server to eliminate as many security vulnerabilities as possible. This guide provides a baseline for minimum security requirements, and is supplemented by additional security documentation.

The essential security requirements fall into the following categories:

- Authentication covers the mechanisms that are supported and that can be used by the WarehousePG server to establish the identity of a client application.
- Authorization pertains to the privilege and permission models used by the database to authorize client access.
- Auditing, or log settings, covers the logging options available in WarehousePG to track successful or failed user actions.
- Data Encryption addresses the encryption capabilities that are available for protecting data at rest and data in transit. This includes the security certifications that are relevant to the WarehousePG.

### Accessing a Kerberized Hadoop Cluster

You can use the WarehousePG Platform Extension Framework (PXF) to read or write external tables referencing files in a Hadoop file system. If the Hadoop cluster is secured with Kerberos ("Kerberized"), you must configure WarehousePG and PXF to allow users accessing external tables to authenticate with Kerberos. Refer to Authenticating with Kerberos for the procedure to perform this setup.

### Platform Hardening

Platform hardening involves assessing and minimizing system vulnerability by following best practices and enforcing federal security standards. Hardening the product is based on the US Department of Defense (DoD) guidelines Security Template Implementation Guides (STIG). Hardening removes unnecessary packages, deactivates services that are not required, sets up restrictive file and directory permissions, removes unowned files and directories, performs authentication for single-user mode, and provides options for end users to configure the package to be compliant to the latest STIGs.

**Parent topic:** WarehousePG Security Configuration Guide

Copyright © 2009 - 2026 EnterpriseDB Corporation. All rights reserved.